

THE TRUE HISTORY
OF THE
CONQUEST OF NEW SPAIN.

BY
BERNAL DÍAZ DEL CASTILLO,
ONE OF ITS CONQUERORS.

From the only exact copy made of the Original Manuscript.

EDITED AND PUBLISHED IN MEXICO,

BY
GENARO GARCÍA.

Translated into English, with Introduction and Notes,

BY
ALFRED PERCIVAL MAUDSLAY, M.A.,
HON. PROFESSOR OF ARCHEOLOGY, NATIONAL MUSEUM, MEXICO.

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR THE HAKLUYT SOCIETY.

COUNCIL
OF
THE HAKLUYT SOCIETY.

SIR CLEMENTS MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., Ex-Pres. R.G.S., *President*.
THE RIGHT HON. THE LORD AMHERST OF HACKNEY, *Vice-President*.
THE RIGHT HON. THE LORD PECKOVER OF WISBECH, *Vice-President*.
THE RIGHT HON. LORD BELHAVEN AND STENTON.
THOMAS B. BOWRING.
COLONEL GEORGE EARL CHURCH.
COLONEL CHARLES FREDERICK CLOSE, C.M.G., R.E.
SIR WILLIAM MARTIN CONWAY.
THE REV. CANON JOHN NEALE DALTON, C.M.G., C.V.O.
MAJOR LEONARD DARWIN, late R.E., Pres. R.G.S.
WILLIAM FOSTER, B.A.
THE RIGHT HON. SIR GEORGE TAUBMAN GOLDIE, K.C.M.G., D.C.L.,
LL.D., F.R.S., Ex-Pres. R.G.S.
ALBERT GRAY, K.C.
EDWARD HEAWOOD, M.A., *Hon. Treasurer*.
JOHN SCOTT KELTIE, LL.D.
ADMIRAL SIR ALBERT HASTINGS MARKHAM, K.C.B.
ADMIRAL OF THE FLEET SIR EDWARD HOBART SEYMOUR, G.C.B., O.M.
LIEUT.-COLONEL SIR RICHARD CARNAC TEMPLE, BART., C.I.E.
BASIL HOME THOMSON, Esq., M.A.
ROLAND VENABLES VERNON, B.A.
BASIL H. SOULSBY, B.A., F.S.A., F.R.G.S., *Hon. Secretary*.

"A PAINFULL WORK IT IS I'LL ASSURE YOU, AND MORE THAN
DIFFICULT; WHEREIN WHAT TOYLE HATH BEEN TAKEN, AS NO
MAN THINKETH, SO NO MAN BELIEVETH, BUT HE THAT HATH
MADE THE TRIALL."

ANTHONY A WOOD,—*History of Oxford*

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
EXTRACTS FROM INTRODUCTION BY SEÑOR DON GENARO GARCÍA	i
BERNAL DÍAZ DEL CASTILLO: HIS LIFE	ix
INTRODUCTION BY THE TRANSLATOR	xliii
NOTE ON SPELLING, ETC.	lxii
ITINERARY—FEBRUARY 8, 1517, TO APRIL 21, 1519	lxiii
PREFACE BY THE AUTHOR	3

BOOK I.

THE DISCOVERY.

THE EXPEDITION UNDER FRANCISCO HERNÁNDEZ DE
CÓRDOVA.

CHAPTER I.

The Beginning of the Story	5
--------------------------------------	---

CHAPTER II.

How we discovered the Province of Yutacan.	14
--	----

CHAPTER III.

How we coasted along towards the west, discovering capes and deep water, roadsteads and reefs	18
--	----

CHAPTER IV.

Concerning the attack made on us as we stood among the farms and maize fields already mentioned	22
--	----

CHAPTER V.

How we agreed to return to the Island of Cuba and of the great hardships we endured before arriving at the Port of Havana	26
--	----

CHAPTER VI.

	PAGE
How twenty of us soldiers went ashore in the Bay of Florida, in company with the Pilot Alaminos, to look for water, and the attack that the natives of the land made upon us, and what else happened before we returned to Havana . . .	28

CHAPTER VII.

About the hardships which I endured on the way to a town called Trinidad . . .	33
--	----

THE EXPEDITION UNDER JUAN DE GRIJALVA.

CHAPTER VIII.

How Diego Velásquez, Governor of the Island of Cuba, ordered another fleet to be sent to the lands which we had discovered and a kinsman of his, a nobleman named Juan de Grijalva, went as Captain General, besides three other Captains, whose names I will give later on . . .	36
---	----

CHAPTER IX.

How we followed the same course that we had taken with Francisco Hernández de Córdova, how we landed at Champoton and how an attack was made on us, and what else happened . . .	42
--	----

CHAPTER X.

How we went on our way and entered a large and broad river to which we then gave the name of the "Boca de Términos" . . .	44
---	----

CHAPTER XI.

How we arrived at the Rio de Tabasco which we named the River Grijalva, and what happened to us there . . .	45
---	----

CHAPTER XII.

How we followed along the coast towards the setting sun, and arrived at a river called the Rio de Banderas, and what happened there . . .	49
---	----

CHAPTER XIII.

How we arrived at the Rio de Banderas, and what happened there . . .	51
--	----

CONTENTS.

xi

CHAPTER XIV.

	PAGE
How we arrived at the Island now called San Juan de Ulúa, and the reason why that name was given to it, and what happened to us there.	55

CHAPTER XV.

How Diego Velásquez, the Governor of Cuba, sent a ship in search of us, and what else happened	58
---	----

CHAPTER XVI.

How we went on exploring the coast as far as the Province of Panuco, and what else happened before our return to Cuba.	59
---	----

BOOK II.

THE EXPEDITION UNDER HERNANDO CORTÉS. THE VOYAGE.

CHAPTER XVII.

How Diego Velásquez sent to Spain to petition His Majesty to grant him a commission to trade with, and conquer the country, and to settle and apportion the land as soon as peace was established	64
--	----

CHAPTER XVIII.

Concerning some errors and other things written by the His- torians Gomara and Yllescas about affairs in New Spain	66
---	----

CHAPTER XIX.

How we came again with another fleet to the newly dis- covered lands with the valiant and energetic Don Hernando Cortés (who was afterwards Marqués del Valle) as Captain of the Fleet, and the attempts which were made to prevent his going in command	67
--	----

CHAPTER XX.

How Cortés prepared and continued the arrangements necessary for the despatch of the Fleet	72
---	----

CHAPTER XXI.

What Cortés did when he arrived at the Town of Trinidad, and concerning the soldiers who there joined him to go in his company, and other things that happened	PAGE 77
--	------------

CHAPTER XXII.

How the Governor Diego Velásquez sent two of his servants post haste to the Town of Trinidad with orders and authority to cancel the appointment of Cortés, detain the Fleet, arrest Cortés and send him as a prisoner to Santiago	79
--	----

CHAPTER XXIII.

How the Captain Hernando Cortés with all the soldiers sailed along the south coast to the Port of Havana, and how another ship was sent along the north coast to the same port, and what else took place	82
--	----

CHAPTER XXIV.

How Diego Velásquez sent a servant named Gaspar de Garnica with orders and instructions that in any case Cortés should be arrested and the Fleet taken from him, and what was done about it	88
---	----

CHAPTER XXV.

How Cortés set sail with all his Company of Gentlemen and Soldiers for the Island of Cuba and what happened there	90
---	----

CHAPTER XXVI.

How Cortés reviewed all his army and what else happened to us	92
---	----

CHAPTER XXVII.

How Cortés came to know that the Indians of Cape Catoche held two Spaniards in captivity, and what he did about it	93
--	----

CHAPTER XXVIII.

How Cortés allotted the ships and appointed captains to go in them, and gave instructions to the pilots and arranged lantern signals for the night time, and what else happened to us	98
---	----

CHAPTER XXIX.

- How the Spaniard named Jerónimo de Aguilar, who was a
 prisoner among the Indians, heard that we had returned to
 Cozumel and came to us, and what else took place . . . 100

CHAPTER XXX.

- How we again embarked and made sail for the Rio de Grijalva,
 and what happened to us on the voyage. . . 103

CHAPTER XXXI.

- How we arrived at the Rio de Grijalva, which in the language of
 the Indians is called Tabasco, of the attack which the
 Indians made on us, and what else happened to us with
 them . . . 107

CHAPTER XXXII.

- How Cortés ordered two of his Captains each with a hundred
 soldiers to go and examine the country further inland and
 what else happened to us . . . 113

CHAPTER XXXIII.

- How Cortés told us all to get ready by the next day to go
 in search of the Indian host, and ordered the horses to
 be brought from the ships, and what happened in the battle
 which we fought . . . 116

CHAPTER XXXIV.

- How all the Caciques of Tabasco and its dependencies attacked
 us, and what came of it . . . 118

CHAPTER XXXV.

- How Cortés sent to summon all the Caciques of those Provinces
 and what was done about it . . . 122

CHAPTER XXXVI.

- How all the Caciques and Calchonis from the Rio de Grijalva
 came and brought a present, and what took place about it . . . 126

CHAPTER XXXVII.

- Showing that Doña Marina was a *Cacica* and the daughter of
 persons of high rank, and was the mistress of towns and
 vassals, and how it happened that she was taken to Tabasco . . . 132

BOOK III.

THE MARCH INLAND

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

How we arrived with all the ships at San Juan de Ulúa, and what happened there	PAGE 136
--	-------------

CHAPTER XXXIX.

How Tendile went to report to his Prince Montezuma and to carry the present, and what we did in our camp	142
--	-----

CHAPTER XL.

How Cortés sent to look for another harbour and site where to make a settlement, and what was done about it.	146
--	-----

CHAPTER XLI.

What was done about the bartering for gold, and other things that took place in camp	149
--	-----

CHAPTER XLII.

How we raised Hernando Cortés to the post of Captain General and Chief Justice, until His Majesty's wishes on the matter should be known, and what was done about it	154
--	-----

CHAPTER XLIII.

How the party of Diego Velásquez tried to upset the powers we had given to Cortés, and what was done about it	158
---	-----

CHAPTER XLIV.

How it was arranged to send Pedro de Alvarado inland to look for maize and other supplies and what else happened	160
--	-----

CHAPTER XLV.

How we entered Cempoala, which at that time was a very fine town, and what happened to us there	163
---	-----

CHAPTER XLVI.

How we entered Quiahuitztlan, which was a fortified town, and were peaceably received	167
---	-----

CHAPTER XLVII.

	PAGE
How Cortés ordered the five tax gatherers of Montezuma to • be taken prisoners and gave out that from that time forward neither obedience nor tribute should be rendered to the Mexicans, and how the rebellion against Montezuma was started	171

CHAPTER XLVIII.

How we determined to found "La Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz" and to build a fort in some meadows near the salt marshes, and close to the harbour with the ugly name (Bernal) where our ships were at anchor, and what we did there	174
---	-----

CHAPTER XLIX.

How the fat cacique and other chieftains came to complain to Cortés, that in a fortified town named Cingapacinga, there was a garrison of Mexicans which did them much damage, and what was done about it	178
--	-----

CHAPTER L.

How certain soldiers, partizans of Diego Velásquez, seeing that we positively intended to make settlements, and establish peace in the towns, said that they did not want to go on any expedition, but wished to return to the Island of Cuba	180
--	-----

CHAPTER LI.

What happened to us at Cingapacinga, and how, on our return by way of Cempoala, we demolished the idols; and other things that happened	182
---	-----

CHAPTER LII.

How Cortés had an altar made and set up an image of Our Lady and a Cross, and how mass was said and the eight Indian damsels were baptized	189
--	-----

CHAPTER LIII.

How we returned to Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz and what happened there	192
--	-----

CHAPTER LIV.

The narrative and letter which we sent to His Majesty by our proctors, Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero and Francisco de Montejo, which letter was signed by a number of the Captains and soldiers	194
---	-----

CHAPTER LV.

How Diego Velásquez, the Governor of Cuba, learned for certain from letters, that we were sending proctors with an embassy and presents to our King and Lord, and what he did about it	PAGE 199
--	-------------

CHAPTER LVI.

How our Proctors passed through the Bahama Channel in good weather and in a short time arrived in Castille, and what happened to them at Court	202
--	-----

CHAPTER LVII.

What was done in camp and the judgment which Cortés delivered after our ambassadors had departed to go to His Majesty with all the gold and letters and narratives	206
--	-----

CHAPTER LVIII.

How we settled to go to Mexico and to destroy all the ships before starting, and what else happened, and how the plan of destroying the ships was done by advice and decision of all of us who were friends with Cortés	208
---	-----

CHAPTER LIX.

About a discourse which Cortés made to us after the ships had been destroyed, and how we hastened our departure for Mexico	210
--	-----

CHAPTER LX.

How Cortés went to where the ship was anchored and how we captured six of the soldiers and mariners who belonged to the ship, and what happened about it	212
--	-----

CHAPTER LXI.

How we settled to go to the City of Mexico, and on the advice of the Cacique we went by way of Tlascala, and what happened to us in our warlike engagements and other matters	217
---	-----

BOOK IV.

THE WAR IN TLAXCALA.

CHAPTER LXII.

How we decided to go by way of Tlaxcala, and how we sent messengers to induce the Tlaxcalans to agree to our passage through their country, how the messengers were taken prisoners and what else happened	PAGE 225
--	-------------

CHAPTER LXIII.

Of the war which was waged and the perilous battles which we fought against the Tlaxcalans and what else happened	230
---	-----

CHAPTER LXIV.

How we pitched our camp in some towns and hamlets called Teaoacingo or Tevaçingo and what we did there	234
--	-----

CHAPTER LXV.

Concerning the great battle which we fought against the forces of Tlaxcala, in which it pleased our Lord God to give us the victory, and what else happened	237
---	-----

CHAPTER LXVI.

How next day we sent messengers to the Caciques of Tlaxcala, begging them to make peace, and what they did about it	240
---	-----

CHAPTER LXVII.

How we again sent messengers to the Caciques of Tlaxcala to bring them to peace and what they did about it and decided	245
--	-----

CHAPTER LXVIII.

How we agreed to go to a town which was near to our camp, and what we did about it	248
--	-----

CHAPTER LXIX.

How when we returned with Cortés from Tzumpantzinco with supplies, we found certain discussions being carried on in our camp, and what Cortés replied to them	251
---	-----

CHAPTER LXX.

How the Captain Xicotenga had got ready twenty thousand picked warriors to attack our camp and what was done about it	PAGE 257
---	-------------

CHAPTER LXXI.

How the four chieftains who had been sent to treat for peace arrived in our camp and the speech they made, and what else happened	260
---	-----

CHAPTER LXXII.

How ambassadors from Montezuma, the great lord of Mexico, came to our camp, and of the present which they brought . . .	264
---	-----

CHAPTER LXXIII.

How Xicotenga, the Captain General of Tlaxcala, came to treat for peace, and what he said and what he settled with us . . .	265
---	-----

CHAPTER LXXIV.

How the old Caciques of Tlaxcala came to our camp to beg Cortés and all of us to go at once with them to their city, and what happened about it	271
---	-----

CHAPTER LXXV.

How we went to the City of Tlaxcala, and what the old Caciques did, about the present that they gave us and how they brought their daughters and nieces, and what else happened . . .	274
---	-----

CHAPTER LXXVI.

How Mass was said in the presence of many of the Caciques, and about a present which the old Caciques brought us	277
--	-----

CHAPTER LXXVII.

How they brought their daughters to present to Cortés and to all of us, and what was done about it	279
--	-----

CHAPTER LXXVIII.

How Cortés questioned Mase Escasi and Xicotenga about things in Mexico, and what account they gave of them	283
--	-----

CONTENTS.

XIX

CHAPTER LXXIX.

	PAGE
How our Captain Hernando Cortés decided that all of us Captains and soldiers should go to Mexico, and what happened about it	289

CHAPTER LXXX.

How the great Montezuma sent four chieftains of great importance with a present of gold and cloth and what they said to our Captain	292
---	-----

CHAPTER LXXXI.

How the people of Cholula sent four Indians of little consequence to make their excuses for not having come to Tlaxcala, and what happened about it	296
---	-----

CONTENTS

BOOK V.

THE MARCH TO MEXICO.

CHAPTER LXXXII.

	PAGE
How we went to the City of Cholula, and of the great reception which they gave us there	I

CHAPTER LXXXIII.

How, at the orders of Montezuma, they had planned to kill us in the City of Cholula, and what happened about it	4
---	---

CHAPTER LXXXIV.

About certain messages and messengers that we sent to the Great Montezuma	22
---	----

CHAPTER LXXXV.

How the Great Montezuma sent a present of gold, and what he sent to say to us, and how we decided to set out for Mexico, and what else happened about it	24
--	----

CHAPTER LXXXVI.

How we began our march to the City of Mexico, what happened to us on the road, and what Montezuma sent to say	28
---	----

CHAPTER LXXXVII.

How the great Montezuma again sent other Ambassadors to us with a present of gold and cloths, and what they said to Cortés and what he replied to them	33
--	----

CHAPTER LXXXVIII.

About the great and solemn reception which the Great Montezuma gave Cortés and all of us at the entering of the great City of Mexico	39
--	----

BOOK VI.

THE STAY IN MEXICO.

CHAPTER LXXXIX.

	PAGE
How the Great Montezuma came to our quarters with many Caciques accompanying him, and the conversation that he had with our Captain	53

CHAPTER XC.

How on the following day our Captain Cortés went to see the Great Montezuma, and about a certain conversation that took place	55
---	----

CHAPTER XCI.

Of the manner and appearance of the Great Montezuma and what a great Prince he was	60
--	----

CHAPTER XCII.

How our Captain went out to see the City of Mexico and Tlatelolco, which is the great market place and the great Cue of Huichilobos, and what else happened	66
---	----

CHAPTER XCIII.

How we made our Church and altar in our quarters and placed a Cross outside the chamber, and what else happened, and how we found the hall and treasure chamber of Montezuma's father, and how we decided to seize Montezuma	83
--	----

CHAPTER XCIV.

How the Mexican Captains fought a battle against Juan de Escalante, and killed him and a horse and six soldiers and many of our Totonac allies	88
--	----

CHAPTER XCV.

Of the Seizure of Montezuma and what was done about it	92
--	----

CHAPTER XCVI.

How our Cortés sent a gentleman named Alonzo de Grado as his lieutenant and captain to Villa Rica, in place of the Chief Alguacil Juan de Escalante, and how he gave the office of Chief Alguacil to Gonzalo de Sandoval, who from this time on was Alguacil Mayor, and what happened about it I will go on to tell	100
---	-----

CHAPTER XCVII.

	PAGE
How when the great Montezuma was a prisoner, Cortés and all of us soldiers always entertained him and cheered him up, and even gave him permission to go hunting, and this was given in order to find out what his intentions were .	104

CHAPTER XCVIII.

How Cortés ordered two sloops to be built, of considerable burden and fast sailers, for use on the lake, and how the great Montezuma asked Cortés to give him permission to go and pray at his temples, and what Cortés answered, and how he gave him permission .	109
--	-----

CHAPTER XCIX.

How we launched the two sloops, and how the Great Montezuma said that he wished to go hunting, and went in the sloops to a rocky Island where there were many deer and much other game, for no one went hunting there under pain of very severe punishment .	112
--	-----

CHAPTER C.

How the nephews of the great Montezuma went about assembling the other Lords and persuading them to come to Mexico and free the great Montezuma from his imprisonment and drive us out of the City and kill us .	115
--	-----

CHAPTER CI.

How the great Montezuma and many Caciques and chieftains of the territory gave their fealty to His Majesty, and what else happened about it .	123
---	-----

CHAPTER CII.

How our Cortés endeavoured to find out about the Gold Mines, what was their value, and in what rivers they were found, and what harbours there were for ships between Panuco and Tabasco, especially about the great river at Coatzacoalcos, and what happened about it .	127
---	-----

CHAPTER CIII.

How the Captains returned whom our Cortés had sent to examine the mines, and take soundings of the harbour and river of Coatzacoalcos .	130
---	-----

CHAPTER CIV.

How Cortés told the great Montezuma that he should order all his Caciques through the land to pay tribute to His Majesty, for it was generally known that they possessed gold, and what was done about it PAGE
135

CHAPTER CV.

How the gold which we had obtained was divided, both that which was given by the Great Montezuma as well as that which had been collected from the towns, and what happened to a soldier about it 140

CHAPTER CVI.

How Juan Velásquez de Leon and the Treasurer, Gonzalo Mejía, had words about the gold that was missing from the heaps before it was melted down, and what Cortés did about it . . . 143

CHAPTER CVII.

How the Great Montezuma told Cortés that he wished to give him one of his daughters in marriage, and what Cortés answered. Nevertheless he took her and they served and honoured her as was becoming to the daughter of such a Prince 146

CHAPTER CVIII.

How the great Montezuma told our Captain Cortés to leave Mexico with all his soldiers, for all the Caciques and priests wanted to rise and wage war on us until they killed us, for so it had been decreed and advised by their Idols, and what Cortés did about it 148

BOOK VII.

THE EXPEDITION AGAINST NARVAEZ.

CHAPTER CIX.

How Diego Velásquez the Governor of Cuba hastened to send his Armada against us with Pánfilo de Narvaez as Captain General, and how there came in his company the Licentiate Lucas Vásquez de Ayllon, Oidor of the Royal Audiencia of Santo Domingo, and what was done about it 153

CHAPTER CX.

	PAGE
How Pánfilo de Narvaez arrived at the port of San Juan de Ulúa, which is called Vera Cruz, with all his fleet, and what happened to him	155

CHAPTER CXI.

How Pánfilo de Narvaez sent five persons from his fleet to demand of Gonzalo de Sandoval, who was in command at Villa Rica, that he should surrender himself and all the settlers, and what happened about it	159
---	-----

CHAPTER CXII.

How Cortés, after he had been fully informed who was in command, and who and how many had come in the Fleet, and what munitions of war they had brought, and about our three false soldiers who had gone over to Narvaez, wrote to the Captain and to his other friends, especially Andrés de Duero, the Secretary of Diego Velásquez. He also learnt how Montezuma had sent gold and cloth to Narvaez, and what reply Narvaez had sent back to Montezuma, and how the Licentiate Lucas Vázquez de Ayllon, Oidor of the Royal Audiencia of Santa Domingo, had come with the Fleet, and the instructions that he brought	163
---	-----

CHAPTER CXIII.

How the Captain Pánfilo de Narvaez had words with the Oidor Lucas Vázquez de Ayllon, and how Narvaez ordered him to be seized and sent as a prisoner to Cuba or Spain, and what happened about it	166
---	-----

CHAPTER CXIV.

How Narvaez, after he had made prisoners of the Oidor Lucas Vázquez Ayllon and his clerk, went with all his forces to a town named Cempoala which at that time was a large town, and what he effected there, and what our Captain Cortés did and all of us who were in Mexico, and how we decided to march against Narvaez	169
--	-----

CHAPTER CXV.

How the great Montezuma asked Cortés why he wished to go against Narvaez, seeing that Narvaez had brought many men with him and that Cortés had but a few, and that he should regret it if any evil happened to us	172
--	-----

CHAPTER CXVI.

PAGE

How Cortés agreed with all us soldiers that the Fraile de la Merced should be again sent to the camp of Narvaez, for he was very sagacious and a good mediator, and that he should protest himself a good servant of Narvaez, and show himself more in favour of his party than that of Cortés, and that he should secretly summon the artilleryman named Rodrigo Martin and the other artilleryman named Usagre, and that he should speak to Andrés de Duero and get him to come and see Cortés, and he should give into the hands of Narvaez another letter that we had written to him. That he should be ready to take advantage of anything that might happen, and on this account he took with him a large number of ingots and chains of gold for distribution . . . 179

CHAPTER CXVII.

How the Fraile de la Merced went to Cempoala where Narvaez and all his captains were stationed and what happened when he gave them the letter . . . 181

CHAPTER CXVIII.

How in our Camp we held a Muster of the soldiers who were present, and how they brought two hundred and fifty very long pikes with two copper spikes each, which Cortés had ordered to be made in some towns which they call [the towns of] the Chinantecas and how we taught ourselves to handle them so as to defeat the horsemen of Narvaez, and other things that happened in camp . . . 185

CHAPTER CXIX.

How there came to our camp Andrés de Duero and the soldier Usagre and two Cuban Indians, servants of Duero, and who Duero was, and what he came for, and what we accepted as certain, and what was arranged . . . 187

CHAPTER CXX.

How Juan Velásquez de Leon and Cortés's orderly named Juan del Rio, arrived at the Camp of Narvaez, and what happened there . . . 191

CXXI.

What was done in the camp of Narvaez after our ambassadors had left it . . . 198

CHAPTER CXXII.

	PAGE
About the plan and commands that were issued in our camp for the march against Narvaez, and the speech which Cortés made to us, and what we replied	200

CHAPTER CXXIII.

How after the defeat of Narvaez in the way I have related, there arrived the Indians of Chinantla whom Cortés had sent to summon, and about other things that happened	214
--	-----

CHAPTER CXXIV.

How Cortés sent Captain Francisco de Lugo to the port, accompanied by two soldiers who had been masters of ships [with orders] to bring at once to Cempoala all the Masters and mates from the ships of the fleet of Narvaez, and to remove the sails, rudders and compasses so that they could not go to Diego Velásquez in the Island of Cuba to report what had taken place ; and how he appointed an Admiral of the Sea, and other things that happened	215
---	-----

BOOK VIII.

THE FLIGHT FROM MEXICO.

CHAPTER CXXV.

How we went by forced marches, Cortés as well as all his captains and all the followers of Narvaez except Pánfilo de Narvaez himself and Salvatierra who remained prisoners	221
---	-----

CHAPTER CXXVI.

How they made war on us in Mexico, and the attacks they made on us and other things that happened	226
---	-----

CHAPTER CXXVII.

When Montezuma was dead Cortés decided to tell the news to his Captains and chieftains who were making war on us, and what else took place about it	239
---	-----

CHAPTER CXXVIII.

How we determined to flee from Mexico and what was done
about it PAGE
241

CHAPTER CXXIX.

How we went to the Capital and largest town in Tlaxcala, and
what happened to us there 258

BOOK IX.

THE HALT AT TEPEACA.

CHAPTER CXXX.

How we went to the province of Tepeaca, and what we did there,
and other things that happened 269

CHAPTER CXXXI.

How a ship came from Cuba, sent by Diego Velásquez with
Pedro Barba as her captain; and the method which the
admiral, whom our Cortés had appointed as guardian of the
sea, adopted in order to capture them, and it was in this
way 274

CHAPTER CXXXII.

How the Indians of Guacachula came to beg help from Cortés,
because the Mexican armies were ill-treating them and
robbing them, and what was done about it 277

CHAPTER CXXXIII.

How there arrived at the rock and port which is near Villa Rica,
a ship, one of those that Francisco de Garay had sent to
form a settlement at the Rio Panuco, and what else happened
about it 282

CHAPTER CXXXIV.

How Cortés sent Gonzalo de Sandoval to bring to peace the
towns of Xalacincó and Çacatami, and to find out what
Spaniards had been killed in them and what arms they had
captured, and what the country was like, and to demand of
the people the gold that they had stolen; for this purpose
he took with him two hundred soldiers and twenty horsemen
and twelve crossbowmen 286

CHAPTER CXXXV.

PAGE

- How all the men and women slaves in our camp, whom we had captured in the affairs of Tepeaca, Quecholac, Tecamachalco and Castil Blanco and their territories, were collected together to be branded in the name of His Majesty, with the iron which had been made, and what happened about it . 293

CHAPTER CXXXVI.

- How the Captains and principal persons who had come in the Company of Narvaez asked leave of Cortés to return to the Island of Cuba, and Cortés granted it, and they set out; and how Cortés despatched ambassadors to Castile and Santo Domingo, and Jamaica, and what happened in each case . 296

APPENDIX A.—The Iztapalapa Causeway 307

APPENDIX B.—The Tacuba (Tlacopan) Causeway 318

APPENDIX C.—Itinerary 321

APPENDIX D.—A Genealogical Table of the Aztec Kings. Prepared by Señor Don Ignacio B. del Castillo . *To face* 326

INDEX 329

CONTENTS

BOOK X.

THE RETURN TO THE VALLEY.

CHAPTER CXXXVII.

	PAGE
How we marched with all our Army on the way to the City of Texcoco, and what happened to us on the road, and other things that took place	1

CHAPTER CXXXVIII.

How we went to Iztapalapa with Cortés, who took Cristóbal de Olid and Pedro de Alvarado in his company and left Gonzalo de Sandoval to guard Texcoco, and what happened to us in the capture of the town, and other things that were done there	10
---	----

CHAPTER CXXXIX.

How three pueblos in the neighbourhood of Texcoco sent to ask for peace and pardon for the wars that were passed, and for the death of Spaniards, and the excuses that they made about it, and how Gonzalo de Sandoval went to Chalco and Tlamanalco to help them against the Mexicans, and what else happened	13
--	----

CHAPTER CXL.

How Gonzalo de Sandoval went to Tlaxcala to fetch the timber for the launches, and what else he did on the road at a pueblo which we named the town of the Moors (el Pueblo Morisco)	24
--	----

BOOK XI.

PRELIMINARY EXPEDITIONS.

CHAPTER CXLI.

PAGE

How our Captain Cortés went on an expedition to the pueblo of Saltocan which stands in a lake about six leagues distant from the City of Mexico, and how he went from there to other pueblos, and what happened on the road I will go on to say 30

CHAPTER CXLII.

How Captain Gonzalo de Sandoval went to Chalco and Tlamanalco with the whole of his army; and I will go on to tell what happened on the march 44

CHAPTER CXLIII.

How the slaves were branded in Texcoco, and how the news came that a ship had arrived at the Port of Villa Rica, and what passengers had come in her and other things that happened, which I will go on to relate 54

CHAPTER CXLIV.

How our Captain Cortés went on an expedition and made a circuit of the lake and of all the cities and large pueblos that were to be found in its neighbourhood, and what else happened on that expedition 57

CHAPTER CXLV.

About the great thirst that we endured on the march and the great danger that we were in at Xochimilco from the many battles and skirmishes which we fought against the Mexicans and the natives of that city, and the many other warlike encounters which we went through before returning to Texcoco 70

CHAPTER CXLVI.

PAGE

How when we arrived at Texcoco with Cortés and all our army from the expedition after making a circuit of the towns of the lake, it had been settled among certain of those persons who came with Narvaez to kill Cortés and all who should go to his defence. And he who was the principal author of this farce was one who had been a servant of Diego Velásquez the Governor of Cuba, and Cortés ordered this soldier to be hanged ; and how the slaves were branded, and all the camp and the friendly towns were got ready, and a review was held, and orders given and other things that happened 87

BOOK XII.

THE SIEGE AND FALL OF MEXICO.

CHAPTER CXLVII.

How Cortés ordered all the pueblos which were friendly to us in the neighbourhood of Texcoco to make a store of arrows and copper arrow heads, and what other orders he gave in our camp 91

CHAPTER CXLVIII.

How a review was held in the City of Texcoco, in the great courts of that city, and what horsemen and crossbowmen and musketeers and soldiers were present, and the orders that were proclaimed and other things that were done 93

CHAPTER CXLIX.

How Cortés sought the rowers who were needed to row the launches, and appointed the Captains who were to go in them, and other things that were done 96

CHAPTER CL.

How Cortés ordered three divisions [each composed] of cavalry, crossbowmen, and musketeers to go and invest the great city of Mexico, and the Captains that he named for each division, and the soldiers, horsemen, crossbowmen, and musketeers that he divided between them, and the positions and cities where we were to establish our camps 99

CHAPTER CLI.

- How Cortés ordered the twelve launches to be stationed and ordered the men to be taken out of the smallest one which was called "Busca ruido" (the riot seeker) and what else happened 116

CHAPTER CLII.

- About the battles and encounters that we went through and about the defeat that Cortés suffered at his camp, and about many other things that happened in our camp at Tacuba, and how they carried off sixty six soldiers whom they sacrificed 137

CHAPTER CLIII.

- About the way in which we fought, and the many attacks that the Mexicans made on us, and the parleys we had with them, and how our allies left us and went to their towns, and many other things that happened 153

CHAPTER CLIV.

- How Cortés sent three Mexican chieftains, who had been taken prisoners in the recent battles, to beg Guatemoc to make peace with us, and what Guatemoc replied, and what else happened 164

CHAPTER CLV.

- How Guatemoc had arranged with the provinces of Matatzingo and Tulapa and Malinalco and other pueblos to come to his assistance and make an attack on our camp, which is that of Tacuba, and on that of Cortés, and how the whole force of Mexico would sally out while they were fighting with us and would attack us on the flank, and what was done about it 168

CHAPTER CLVI.

- How Gonzalo de Sandoval with twelve launches entered into the part of the City where Guatemoc was [had taken refuge] and took him prisoner, and what happened about it 179

CHAPTER CLVII.

- What Cortés ordered to be done and certain commands that he gave after the Very Great City of Mexico had been captured and Guatemoc and his captains had been made prisoners 193

BOOK XIII.

THE SETTLEMENT.

CHAPTER CLVIII.

How letters reached Cortés [to say] that a certain Cristóbal de Tápia had arrived at the Port of Vera Cruz with two ships and was bringing commissions from His Majesty appointing him to rule New Spain and what was decided and done about it	PAGE 204
---	-------------

CHAPTER CLIX.

How Cortés and the King's officers decided to send to His Majesty all the gold that had accrued to the royal fifth from the spoils of Mexico, and how there was sent separately the personal property of gold and jewels which had belonged to Montezuma and Guatemoc, and what happened about it	218
---	-----

CHAPTER CLX.

How Gonzalo de Sandoval arrived with his army at a pueblo called Tuxtepec, and what he did there and how he afterwards went on to Coatzacoalcos and all the rest that happened to him. Mind one place is called Tuxtepec and the other Tututepec	228
--	-----

CHAPTER CLXI.

How Pedro de Alvarado went to Tututepec to found a town and what happened to him in the pacification of that Province and the founding of the town	241
--	-----

CHAPTER CLXII.

How Francisco de Garay came from Jamaica to Panuco with a great fleet, and what happened to him and many things that took place	246
---	-----

CHAPTER CLXIII.

How the Licentiate Alonso de Zuazo came in a Caravel to New Spain and ran on some Islands called Las Víboras (the Vipers) and what else happened to him	268
---	-----

CHAPTER CLXIV.

	PAGE
How Cortés sent Pedro de Alvarado to the province of Guatemala to found a city and bring the people to peace, and what was done about it	272

CHAPTER CLXV.

How Cortés sent a fleet to pacify and conquer the provinces of Higueras and Honduras, and sent Cristóbal de Olid as Captain, and what happened I will go on to relate	283
---	-----

CHAPTER CLXVI.

How those of us who had settled at Coatzacoalcos were constantly going about pacifying the provinces which revolted against us, and how Cortés ordered Captain Luis Marin to go and conquer and pacify the Province of Chiapas and ordered me to go with him and what happened during the pacification	289
--	-----

CHAPTER CLXVII.

How our Proctors who were in Spain challenged the jurisdiction of the Bishop of Burgos, and what else happened	315
--	-----

CHAPTER CLXVIII.

How Pánfilo de Narvaez and Cristóbal de Tápia and a pilot named Gonzalo de Umbria, and another soldier named Cárdenas appeared before His Majesty with the support of the Bishop of Burgos (although he had no authority to interfere in matters concerning the Indies, for they had already taken his authority from him); these named by me were all staying in Toro, and they brought before His Majesty many complaints against Cortés, and what was done about it	320
--	-----

CHAPTER CLXIX.

What Cortés was engaged upon after he was invested with the Government of New Spain, how and in what way he allotted the pueblos of Indians and other things that took place, and a sort of grumbling it led to among the recipients	338
--	-----

CHAPTER CLXX.

PAGE.

How Captain Hernando Cortés sent to Castile to His Majesty eighty thousand pesos in gold and silver and sent a cannon which was a culverin very richly adorned with many figures all over it and the greater part of it consisted of low-grade gold mixed with silver from Michoacan, and the name given to it was the Phoenix; he also sent to his father Martin Cortés over five thousand pesos de oro, and what happened about it I will go on to relate . . . 352

CHAPTER CLXXI.

How there came to the Port of Vera Cruz twelve Franciscan Friars, men of very holy lives, and there came as their vicar and guardian Fray Martin de Valencia, a priest so pure that he had the reputation of working miracles. He was a native of a town of Tierra de Campos called Valencia de Don Juan, and about what Cortés did on their arrival . . . 357

CHAPTER CLXXII.

How Cortés wrote to His Majesty and sent him thirty thousand pesos de oro and told him how he was devoting himself to the conversion of the Indians and the rebuilding of Mexico, and how he had sent a Captain named Cristóbal de Olid with a strong fleet to pacify the provinces of Honduras and that he (Olid) had risen in rebellion with it, and he reported other things which had happened in Mexico. In the ship which sailed with the letters the Accountant named Rodrigo de Albornoz sent other very secret letters and said in them many evil things of Cortés and all those who went out with him, and what His Majesty decreed about it . . . 360

CHAPTER CLXXIII.

How when Cortés learnt that Cristóbal de Olid had rebelled with his fleet and had entered into partnership with Diego Velásquez, Governor of Cuba, he sent against him a Captain named Francisco de Las Casas, and what happened to him I will go on to relate . . . 367

APPENDIX.—Diary of the Siege of Mexico . . . 375

INDEX . . . 381

CONTENTS

BOOK XIV.

THE EXPEDITION TO HONDURAS.

CHAPTER CLXXIV.

	PAGE
How Hernando Cortés set out from Mexico on the road to Las Higueras in search of Cristóbal de Olid and Francisco de Las Casas and the other Captains, soldiers, and gentlemen whom he had sent there ; and what Captains he took from Mexico to accompany him, and about the material and retinue he took with him as far as the town of Coatzacoalcos, and other things that happened	I

CHAPTER CLXXV.

What Cortés arranged after the Factor and Veedor returned to Mexico, and about the hardships we endured on our long journey, and about the great bridges we made and the hunger we suffered during the two years and three months that we spent on the journey	8
--	---

CHAPTER CLXXVI.

How we had arrived at the town of Ciguatpecad and how he [Cortés] sent Francisco de Medina to meet Simon de Cuenca and proceed with the two vessels already mentioned by me to Triunfo de la Cruz or to the Golfo Dulce, and what else happened	17
---	----

CHAPTER CLXXVII.

	PAGE
What Cortés attended to after reaching Acalá, and how, in another pueblo further ahead, subject to this same Acalá, he ordered Guatemoc the Great Cacique of Mexico, and another Cacique, the lord of Tacuba, to be hanged, and the reason why he did it, and other things that happened	24

CHAPTER CLXXVIII.

How we went on our way, and what happened to us.	31
--	----

CHAPTER CLXXIX.

How Cortés entered the town where the followers of Gil González de Ávila were settled, and about the great joy shown by all the inhabitants, and what Cortés decreed	46
--	----

CHAPTER CLXXX.

How the day after arriving at that town, which I know by no other name than that of San Gil de Buena Vista, we set out with Captain Luis Marin and nearly eighty soldiers, all on foot, to search for maize and explore the country, and what happened I will go on to relate	49
---	----

CHAPTER CLXXXI.

How Cortés embarked with all the soldiers, both those which he had brought in his company and those who had remained at San Gil de Buena Vista, and went to settle the place now called Puerto de Caballos, which he named La Natividad, and what he did there	53
--	----

CHAPTER CLXXXII.

How the Captain Gonzalo de Sandoval began the pacification of that Province of Naco, and what else he did	57
---	----

CHAPTER CLXXXIII.

How Cortés disembarked at the Port of Trujillo, and how all the settlers at that town came out to receive him, and how content they were with him, and what he did there	59
--	----

CHAPTER CLXXXIV.

PAGE

- How Captain Gonzalo de Sandoval, who was at Naco, captured forty Spanish soldiers and their Captain, who had come from the province of Nicaragua, and did much damage and robbed the Indians of the pueblos through which they passed 66

CHAPTER CLXXXV.

- How the Licentiate Zuazo sent a letter to Cortés from the . . . Havana, and what was contained in it I will now relate . . . 71

CHAPTER CLXXXVI.

- How certain friends of Pedrarias de Ávila went post haste from Nicaragua to inform him that Francisco Hernandez, whom he had sent as Captain to Nicaragua, was in correspondence by letter with Cortés, and had revolted with the provinces, and what Pedrarias did about it 82

CHAPTER CLXXXVII.

- How Cortés, going by sea in the direction of Mexico, met with a hurricane, and twice turned back to the port of Trujillo, and what happened to him there 83

CHAPTER CLXXXVIII.

- How Cortés sent a Ship to New Spain, with a follower of his named Martin de Orantes as Captain, with letters and decrees appointing Francisco de las Casas and Pedro de Alvarado as Governors if they were there, and if not then Alonso de Estrada and Albornoz 86

CHAPTER CLXXXIX.

- How the Treasurer and many other gentlemen prayed the Franciscan Friars to send one Fray Diego Altamirano, a relation of Cortés, in a ship to Trujillo to make him [Cortés] return, and what happened about it 92

BOOK XV.

THE RETURN TO MEXICO.

CHAPTER CXC.

PAGE

- How Cortés embarked at Havana to go to New Spain and with favourable weather arrived at Vera Cruz, and the delight shown by all at his coming 98

CHAPTER CXCI.

- How the Licentiate Luis Ponce de Leon, who came to take the 'Residencia' of Cortés, arrived at this very moment at the port of Vera Cruz with three ships, and what happened about it 102

CHAPTER CXCII.

- How the Licentiate Luis Ponce, after he had exhibited the Royal Decrees and met with obedience, ordered the Residencia of Cortés and those who had held judicial office to be proclaimed, and how he fell ill of sleeping sickness and died of it, and what else happened 112

CHAPTER CXCIIL.

- How, after the death of the Licentiate Luis Ponce de Leon, the Licentiate Marcos de Aguilar began to govern, and the disputes that arose about it ; and how Captain Luis Marin and all those of us who were in his company chanced to meet Pedro de Alvarado who was marching in search of Cortés, and how both parties rejoiced, because the country was hostile and could not be traversed without great danger 116

CHAPTER CXCIV.

PAGE

How Marcos de Aguilar died, and by his will appointed the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada as Governor (but he was not to give judgment in the suits of the Factor or Veedor, nor to grant or take away Indians, until His Majesty should ordain what was most to his advantage), in the same way as Luis Ponce had delegated his authority to him . . . 126

CHAPTER CXCV.

How letters came to Cortés from Spain from Don Garcia de Loaysa, Cardinal of Siguenza, who was President of the [Council of] the Indies and soon afterwards Archbishop of Seville, and from other gentlemen, [advising him] in any case to come at once to Castile, and they brought the news that his father Martin Cortés was dead, and what he did about it . . . 139

BOOK XVI.

THE RULE OF THE AUDIENCIA.

CHAPTER CXCVI.

How during the time Cortés was in Castile with the title of Marquis, the Royal Audiencia came to Mexico, and with what it was busied . . . 154

CHAPTER CXCVII.

How Nuño de Guzman, [when he] learned from letters which came to him from Castile that his Majesty had ordered him to be deprived of the Presidency, and the Oidores [to be dismissed], and that others would come in their places, decided to go and bring to peace and conquer the province of Jalisco which is now called New Galicia . . . 167

CHAPTER CXCVIII.

	PAGE
How the Royal Audiencia arrived at Mexico, and what it very justly accomplished	169

CHAPTER CXCIX.

How Don Hernando Cortés, Marques del Valle, came from Spain, married to the Señora Doña Juana de Zuñiga, and with the title of Marques del Valle and Captain General of New Spain and of the South Sea, and about the reception given to him	176
--	-----

CHAPTER CC.

Of the expenditure which the Marquis Don Hernando Cortés incurred for the fleet which he sent on voyages of discovery, and how he had no good luck at all	178
---	-----

CHAPTER CCI.

How great festivities and banquets were celebrated in Mexico and what rejoicing [took place] at the peace [made] between the Most Christian Emperor our Lord of Glorious Memory, and Don Francisco the King of France, when they met at Aguas Muertas	188
---	-----

CHAPTER CCII.

How the Viceroy Don Antonio de Mendoza sent three ships to explore the South Coast in search of Francisco Vasquez Coronado and sent him provisions and soldiers, supposing that he was engaged in the conquest of Cibola	201
--	-----

CHAPTER CCIII.

About a fleet which the Adelantado Don Pedro de Alvarado fitted out from a port called Acajutla in the province of Guatemala	204
--	-----

CHAPTER CCIV.

What the Marquis did when he was in Castile	209
---	-----

BOOK XVII.

THE RECORD OF THE CONQUISTADORES.

CHAPTER CCV.

	PAGE
A Record of the gallant Captains and stout and valiant soldiers who left the Island of Cuba with the daring and courageous Captain Don Hernando Cortés, who after conquering Mexico became Marquis del Valle and had other titles . . .	222

CHAPTER CCVI.

About the stature and shape of certain of the Captains and brave soldiers and the age they had attained when we came to conquer New Spain . . .	252
---	-----

CHAPTER CCVII.

About the matters dealt with herein concerning the merits which we the true Conquistadores possess, which will be pleasant to hear . . .	260
--	-----

CHAPTER CCVIII.

How the Indians throughout New Spain practised many sacrifices and vices, and [how] we did away with these and instructed them in the holy matters of good doctrine . . .	262
---	-----

CHAPTER CCIX.

How we impressed very good and holy doctrines on the Indians of New Spain, and about their conversion and how they were baptised and turned to our holy faith, and how we taught them the Offices in use in Castile, and to comprehend and secure justice . . .	265
---	-----

CHAPTER CCX.

About other matters and advantages which have followed from our renowned conquests and labours . . .	271
--	-----

CHAPTER CCXI.

PAGE

How in the year IVVI (1550) when the Court was at Valladolid there met together in the Royal Council of the Indies certain prelates and gentlemen who came from New Spain and Peru as Proctors, and other noblemen who were present, in order to give the order that the Assignment [of Indians or Pueblos] should be in perpetuity, and what was said and done at the meeting is what I shall relate . . .	280
---	-----

CHAPTER CCXII.

About other discussions and stories which are here made known and will be pleasant to hear . . .	286
--	-----

CHAPTER CCXIII.

Why many Indian men and women were branded as slaves in New Spain, and the story I tell about it . . .	301
--	-----

CHAPTER CCXIV.

About the Governors who have been in New Spain up to the year fifteen hundred and sixty-eight . . .	311
---	-----

APPENDIX A	333
APPENDIX B	343
FIFTH LETTER OF HERNANDO CORTÉS TO THE EMPEROR CHARLES V	347
INDEX	449

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

1. Portrait of Hernando Cortés. From an oil painting in the Hospital de Jesus Nazareno, City of Mexico. From a photograph by Alfred P. Maudslay, F.S.A. *Frontispiece*
2. Part of a Mural Painting of a Battle, from the Ball Court Temple, Chichén Itzá, Yucatan. From a drawing by Miss Adela Breton *To face* 22
3. Reduced facsimile of Title-page of Decade II of Ant. de Herrera : *Historia General*, 1601-1616, fol. With portraits of Diego Velasquez, and Juan de Grijalva. From Mr. Thomas Grenville's copy in the British Museum. *To face* 36
4. *Id.*, Decade III. With portraits of Hernando Cortés, Cristoval de Olid, Gonzalo de Sandoval, the capture of Guatemoc, etc. *To face* 58
5. *Id.*, Decade IX. Showing Mexican Gods, Temples, etc. *To face* 62
6. *Cartas, Ynstruciones y Cédulas de su Magestad, etc.*, by Bautista Antonelli. 1608. Reproduced through the courtesy of Mr. Bernard Quaritch, who purchased the

- illuminated MS. at the Amherst Sale at Sotheby's,
December, 1908 *To face* 303
6. Facsimile of Title-page.
7. Prefatory leaf.
8. Fol. 135. Map of the Coast near San Juan de Ulúa,
showing the City of Vera Cruz on the Rio Antigua,
whither it was moved after its previous foundation
near Quiahuistla.
9. Fol. 139. Description and perspective of San Juan
de Ulúa.
10. Temple on the Isla de las Mugerres, Yucatan. Drawn
by Miss Annie Hunter from a photograph by W. H.
Holmes (*Archæological Studies*, Chicago, 1879), and a
drawing by F. Catherwood (*Incidents of Travel in*
Yucatan, by John L. Stephens, London, 1843 . . . *To face* 105
11. Map of the Ruins of Cintla, after Dr. C. H. Berendt. Scale,
1 inch = 5 statute miles. Reproduced by H. F. Milne,
R.G.S. *To face* 108
12. Reduced facsimile of Title-page of Decade IV of Ant. de
Herrera: *Historia General*, 1601-1615, fol. With portraits
of Pedro de Alvarado, Diego de Ordás, the Volcano of
Popocatepétl, etc. *To face* 287
- 13-16. Masks of Quetzalcoatl and Tezcatlipoca, given by Monte-
zuma to Cortés, who sent them to the Emperor Charles V.
From the originals in the British Museum :—
13. Quetzalcoatl *To face* 299
14. Quetzalcoatl *To face* 300
15. Tezcatlipoca (front view) *To face* 302
16. Tezcatlipoca (back view) *To face* 302
17. Map of part of Mexico, showing the route of the Spaniards
from Vera Cruz to the City of Mexico, 1519-1520. Scale,
1 : 950,400, or 1 inch = 15 statute miles. Prepared from
the Mexican Staff Map, 1889-1907, (Scale, 1 : 100,000), by
H. F. Milne, R.G.S. *In pocket at end.*
8. The West Indies and Spanish Main, showing Coast-line
known to the Spaniards, 1516. Scale, 150 statute miles
= $1\frac{3}{8}$ inches. Prepared by H. F. Milne, R.G.S.
In pocket at end.

NOTE—Nos. 2-10, and 12-16 have been reproduced for the Hakluyt
society by Mr. Donald Macbeth, of 66, Ludgate Hill, E.C.

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

- Portrait of Hernando Cortés. From an oil painting in the Municipal Palace, City of Mexico, photographed by Alfred P. Maudslay *Frontispiece*
- Cholula. The foundation mound of the Great Temple. Now surmounted by a Christian Church. Photograph by A. P. M. *To face* 6
- Panorama. On the road from Cholula to Mexico. The Pass between Popocatepetl and Ixtaccihuatl. Photograph taken from near the Ranchos de Yscalpan by A. P. M. *To face* 24

Panorama. A view of the Valley of Mexico from La Estrella. drawn by Miss A. Hunter, from photographs by A. P. M., and corrected on the spot.	
<i>To face p. 40. Placed at the end of the Volume</i>	
Panorama. A view of the Valley of Mexico from La Estrella, with the lake restored to its level at the time of the Con- quest, drawn by Miss A. Hunter.	
<i>To face p. 40. Placed at the end of the Volume</i>	
Near Xochimilco. Photograph by A. P. M.	<i>To face 44</i>
Chinampas on Lake Xochimilco. Photograph by A. P. M.	<i>To face 46</i>
Native Houses on the outskirts of the City of Mexico. Photo- graph by A. P. M.	<i>To face 48</i>
Plan showing the position of the Causeways connecting the Island City of Mexico with the mainland	<i>To face 52</i>
Portrait of Charles V, from <i>Præclara Ferdinãdi Cortesii Noua Maris Oceani Hyspania Narratio, MDXXIIII</i>	<i>To face 126</i>
Ruins of Temples at Cempoala. Where the fighting between Cortés and Narvaez took place. After photographs by Dr. J. W. Fewkes	<i>To face 208</i>
The Tree of the Noche Triste at Popotla. Photograph by A. P. M.	<i>To face 246</i>
The Church of Nuestra Señora de los Remedios. Photograph by C. E. Waite	<i>To face 248</i>
A Rough Sketch Map of the City of Mexico. Showing the direction of the principal Causeways and Canals and the sites of some of the principal buildings and Teocallis at the time of the Conquest. Drawn by A. P. M.	<i>In the pocket at the end</i>

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

Arms granted by the Emperor Charles V to Hernando Cortés.	
From the <i>Libro de Armas</i> , preserved in the Hospital de Jesus, Mexico	<i>Frontispiece</i>
A View from Cuernavaca	<i>To face page 68</i>
Plan of the Ruins of Utatlan	<i>To face page 276</i>
Plan of the Ruins of Iximché (Guatemala)	<i>To face page 278</i>
The Lake of Atitlan	<i>To face page 280</i>
A Sketch Map of part of Mexico and Guatemala.	
	<i>At the end of the Volume</i>

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

1. Tayasal (Flores), Lake of Peten-Itzá. From a photograph
by A. P. M. *To face page* 33
2. House at Castilleja de la Cuesta, where Cortés died. Photo-
graph by A. P. M. *To face page* 211

MAPS.

- Map of Tabasco, by Melchor Alfaro de Santa Cruz, 1579.
From the Archivo General de Indias, Seville.
In the pocket at the end.
- Map of Tabasco, showing the route followed by Hernando
Cortés in 1524-5. Compiled from modern sources.
In the pocket at the end.
- Map of Guatemala and the adjacent Countries, showing the
routes followed by Hernando Cortés and by Luis Marín
and Bernal Díaz *In the pocket at the end*



EXTRACTS FROM THE INTRODUCTION

BY

SEÑOR DON GENARO GARCÍA.¹



THE *True History of the Conquest of New Spain*, written by Bernal Díaz del Castillo, one of the Conquerors, was known and appreciated by historians and bibliographers before it was published. Antonio de Herrera² quotes it frequently, Friar Juan de Torquemada³ also refers to it on several occasions, and

¹ The following extracts are translated direct from Señor Don Genaro García's Introduction. Any differences entertained with regard to the names of persons or places or the routes followed, will be explained in note attached to the translation of the text of Bernal Díaz's narrative.

² *Historia general de los hechos de los castellanos en las Islas y Tierra Firme del Mar Oceano*. Madrid, 1726-30, Decada 2^a passim. The first edition was published in 1601.

³ *Los Veinte i un libros rituales y Monarchia Indiana*. Madrid, 1723, Tomo I passim. The first edition was published in 1615.

the Licentiate Antonio de Leon Pinelo¹ devotes some lines to it in his brief bibliography.

Although the original manuscript has always been kept in Guatemala, first by the Author, and afterwards by his descendants, and still later by the Municipality of the Capital, in whose archives it is preserved to-day, a copy of it was made in the sixteenth century and sent to Spain to King Philip II² and was there consulted by the Royal chroniclers. After its publication in Madrid by Friar Alonzo Remón of the Order of Mercy in the year 1632 the *True History* was universally accepted from that time onwards as the most complete and trustworthy of the chronicles of the Conquest of New Spain. A second edition followed almost immediately in the same city, some four years later a third, a fourth, and a fifth. It was translated into English by Maurice Keatinge in 1800 and John Ingram Lockhart in 1844; into German by Ph. J. von Rehfues in 1838 and Karl Ritter in 1848; into French by D. Jourdanet in 1876 and José María de Heredia in 1877.³

¹ *Epitome de la Biblioteca Oriental i Occidental, Nautica y Geografica*. Madrid, 1629. Page 75.

² So it was stated by Juan Rodriguez Cabrillo de Medrano in 1579. In the *Historia de Guatemala ó Recordacion Florida*, by D. Francisco Antonio de Fuentes y Guzmán. Madrid, 1882-83. Vol. i, page 398.—G. G.

³ The French translations were—although an interval of one year lay between their publication—written simultaneously by the distinguished author of the *Influence de la pression de l'air sur la vie de l'homme*, and the excellent poet to whom France is indebted for the inimitable *Les Trophées*. This synchronism

and into Hungarian by Károly Brózik in 1878 and Moses Gaal in 1899.

• Several of these translations obtained the honours of a second edition, as that of Keatinge in 1803, that of Rehfuës in 1843, and that of Jourdanet in 1877.

* * * *

It must be pointed out that no secret has ever been made of Remón's extensive corruption of the original text. Don Antonio de Leon Pinelo, in his account of the *True History* in 1629, says, no doubt without malice, that Friar Alonzo Remón kept in readiness a "corrected" copy for publication. It was no sooner printed than the author of the *Isagoge Histórico Apologético*¹ found in it "many things added which were not found in the original." More explicitly and with a better judgment Don Francisco Antonio de Fuentes y Guzmán, the great-great-grandson of the author, and at that time the possessor of the manuscript, wrote at the end of the same century that the book, published by the reverend father Friar Alonzo Remón, differs considerably from the original, "for in some places there is more and in others less than what my great-grandfather the author wrote, for I find corruptions in chapters 164 and 171, and in the same way in other parts in the course of the history, in which not only is the credibility and fidelity of my

strongly indicates the extraordinary importance attributed to the *Historia Verdadera*.—G. G.

¹ Published in Madrid, 1892.

Castillo clouded over, but many real heroes are defrauded of their just merit."

Fuentes y Guzmán states that this corruption (of the text) was not the least important of the motives that induced him to write his own work.¹ At the beginning of the following century Friar Francisco Vázquez proved that Friar Bartolomé de Olmedo was not in Guatemala at the time of its conquest, as is stated in the edition of Remón, and therefore he was not the first to spread the Christian faith through that province, unless, as he says, one should concede another miracle such as that of Saint Anthony of Padua, who managed to be in two different places at the same time.

Some years afterwards Don Andrés González Barcia, referring to the charge that Fuentes y Guzmán had launched against Remón, arbitrarily surmised that the differences that existed between the edition published by the latter and the original manuscript were matters of no importance, and simply inferred that it was "easy to believe that in copying the author should make some alterations, as ordinarily happens." This defence was not convincing, and on this account our great bibliographer in Mexico, Don Juan José de Eguiara y Eguren, delicately objected that P. Vázquez had declared even the first edition to be falsified, while in Spain the indefatigable chronicler Don Juan Bautista Muñoz endeavoured to procure a copy of the original

¹ *Historia de Guatemala ó Recordación Florida*, page 8.

manuscript with the object of ascertaining the alterations due to Padre Remón.

• Finally, if there could be any doubt remaining about the bad faith of Remón, it was completely dispelled by the Guatemalan historians Padre Domingo Juarros, Don José Milla, the Bishop Don Francisco de Paula García Paláez, and Don Ramón A. Salazar, who from personal inspection fully corroborated what had been asserted by their predecessors the author of the *Isagoge*, Fuentes y Guzmán, and Vásquez.

As a matter of fact we can see at a glance in the following notes (par. iv. and Appendix No. 2)¹ that Fray Alonzo Remón in printing the *True History* suppressed whole pages of the manuscript, interpolated others, garbled the facts, changed the names of persons and places, increased or lessened the numbers, modified the style and modernised the orthography, moved thereto either by religious fervour and false patriotism, or by personal sympathy and vile literary taste. As all the later editions, and all the translations without exception were copied from the first edition published by

¹ This paragraph and appendix has not been translated. As we have now before us an accurate copy of the original text, the reader would not be much interested in a discussion of the corruptions of the text by Padre Remón. In most instances these corruptions of the text were introduced for the purpose of magnifying the importance of Padre Olmedo and the Friars of the Order of Mercy, of which Order Padre Remón was himself a member. In the edition of Don Genaro García these matters are fully investigated, and a complete bibliography is given.

Remón, it results that in reality we do not know the *True History*.

*

On the 20th October, 1895, Don Emilio León, the Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary from the Republic of Guatemala accredited to Mexico, presented in the name of his Government to ours, "as a proof of friendship and especial regard," a photographic reproduction of the original manuscript. It was then, with some reason, believed that, at last, we should see the *True History* published; but this could not be carried out, for accompanying the gift of the reproduction was a prohibition against its being copied and printed.

Five years later, when I wrote my book entitled "Caracter de la Conquista Española en America y en México," I was convinced that to perfect our Ancient history an exact edition of the *True History* was indispensable, and I desired to carry this work through.

Soon afterwards, in August, 1901, I wrote to the then President of Guatemala, Don Manuel Estrada Cabrera, telling him of my wish to print the precious manuscript.

This distinguished official had the kindness to reply on the first of the following month that on that very day he had decreed that "an exact and complete copy of the manuscript" should be made and sent to me for the purpose that I had stated. Señor Don Juan I. Argueta, Secretary of the Interior and Justice in that Republic, at once

• began punctually to send me instalments of the copy as soon as they were made, which copy I corrected here, and perfected with all care and accuracy by comparing it with the photographic reproduction already referred to, which is preserved in our National Library.

* * * *

The author says that, after making a fair copy of his narrative, two licentiates of Guatemala begged him to lend it to them, and that he did so most willingly; but he warned them not to correct it in any way, neither by addition nor deletion, for all that he had written was true.

Assuredly with regard to truth the author would find no fault with us, for we have taken care to religiously respect the original text, without introducing the slightest variation, not even of the artless orthography or punctuation.

Any change would have been dangerous, and we might have fallen into the same error that we attribute to Remón; everybody knows that by a single comma one might reverse the meaning of a statement.

We reproduce in notes placed at the foot of the page all the erasures that can have any interest for inquiring readers, and in like manner we have transcribed all the various words blotted out, which, besides exhibiting important variations, give an idea of the method of composition employed by the author.

Occasionally, when a full understanding of the

text necessitates it, or for the purpose of finishing off a clearly implied word or phrase, or of correcting some manifest numerical error, we have ventured to insert some word or number between brackets, so that it can be known at once that it is not the author who is speaking, and the readers are left at liberty to admit or reject the slight interpolation; finally, we have allowed ourselves to indicate by dotted lines the gaps that are found in the original manuscript, which, happily, are very few in number, except on the first and last pages, which, in the course of time, have naturally suffered more than the others.

May our modest effort meet with the approbation of the intelligent and learned, for we long for it as much as we fear their censure.

BERNAL DIAZ DEL CASTILLO.

HIS LIFE.

* * * *

Bernal Díaz del Castillo was born in the very noble, famous and celebrated town¹ of Medina del Campo in the year 1492 at the very time when Christopher Columbus was joining the two worlds.

Bernal tells us that at the time that he made up his mind to come to New Spain, about the year 1517, he was a youth "of about twenty-four years," a statement which corroborates the date of his birth.

His parents were Don Francisco Díaz del Castillo and Doña María Díez Rejón.

* * * *

Bernal was not the only son, he tells us of his brother, probably older than himself, whom he wished to imitate.

* * * *

Bernal himself writes that he was a gentleman,² and that his grandparents, his father and his brother were always servants of the Crown and of their Catholic Majesties Don Fernando and Doña Isabel, which Carlos V. confirms by calling them "our retainers and servants."

¹ "Muy noble é insigne y muy nombrada Villa." In old Spain towns and cities were formally granted such titles of honour.

² Hijodalgo.

If the family of Bernal had not enjoyed esteem and respect in Medina del Campo, the inhabitants would not have chosen Don Francisco as their *Regidor*.¹ On the other hand, his financial position must have been a very modest one, for the author most certainly came here to seek his fortune, and often complains of his poverty.

After all, the fact that in the *True History* he discloses a very scrupulous moral sense, a fair amount of learning, accurate philosophy, and a piety out of the common, permits us to infer that his family educated him with great care; it would be exceptional for a man illiterate and untaught during his youth to acquire such qualities in his old age; it is proven, on the other hand, that the author knew how to write when he reached New Spain. Nevertheless, we know nothing for certain about the childhood and youth of Bernal, our information begins in the year 1514.

The author was then twenty-two years old.

From some of his remarks one may judge that he was tall or of middle height, active, quick, well made and graceful; his comrades called him "the elegant" (*el galan*).

* * * *

Following the example of so many other Spanish youths, Bernal left his country in the year 1514 to emigrate to America in search of adventures and riches, resolved to be worthy of his ancestry. He

¹ *Regidor* = magistrate, prefect.

accompanied Pedro Arias de Avila, the Governor of Tierra Firme, as one of his soldiers.

• When he reached Nombre de Dios he remained there three or four months, until an epidemic that broke out and certain disputes that arose between the Governor and his son-in-law, Vasco Nuñez de Balboa, obliged him to flee to Cuba, to his relation, Diego Velásquez, who was Governor of the Island.

During three years Bernal "did nothing worthy of record," and on that account he determined to set out on the discovery of unknown lands with the Captain Francisco Hernández de Córdova and one hundred and ten companions.

They sailed in three ships from the port of Ajaruco on the 8th February, 1517, and after enduring a passage occupying twenty-one days and one fierce gale, they arrived at Cape Catoche, where the natives gave them a hostile reception.

After touching at Lázaro they stopped at Chanpotón, where the natives killed forty-eight Spaniards, captured two of them, and wounded the rest, including the captain, who received ten arrow wounds, and the author, who received "three, and one of them in the left side which pierced my ribs, and was very dangerous."

The survivors returned by way of Florida to Cuba, disillusioned and in ill-health, suffering from burning thirst and barely escaping shipwreck, for the ships were leaking badly. When recounting these calamities the author exclaims—

"Oh! what a troublesome thing it is to go and •

discover new lands and the risks we took it is hardly possible to exaggerate."

Nevertheless Bernal was not discouraged by experience; his poverty, which, of necessity, increased daily, impelled him to seek his fortune even at the risk of losing his life, and his youth made him naturally impatient; he did not care to wait for the Indians which Diego Velásquez had promised to give him as soon as there were some unemployed, and he at once enlisted in a second expedition, composed of four ships and two hundred soldiers, under the command of Juan de Grijalva, which weighed anchor in the port of Matanzas on the 8th April, 1518.

The author says that he went "as ensign," but it is doubtful.

The expedition went by way of Cozumel and Chanpotón, whose intrepid inhabitants wounded Grijalva and broke two of his teeth, and killed seven soldiers, by the Boca de Términos, the Rio de Tabasco which they called the Rio de Grijalva, La Rambla, the Rios de Tonalá or de Santo Antón, de Coatzacoalcos, de Papaloapan or de Alvarado, and the Rio de Banderas, where they obtained by barter "more than sixteen thousand pesos in jewels and low grade gold." They sighted the Isla Blanca and the Isla Verde, and landed on the Isla de Sacrificios and the sand dunes of Ulúa; thence Alvarado, accompanied by certain soldiers, returned to Cuba in search of reinforcements, while Grijalva, with the rest of his followers, including the author,

pushed ahead by Tuxtla,¹ Tuxpan and the Rio de Canoas, where the Spaniards were attacked by the natives to Cape Rojo; then Grijalva, yielding to the entreaties of his soldiers, agreed to return to Cuba.

Velásquez, fascinated beyond measure by the gold which Grijalva had obtained by barter, organised a third expedition consisting of "eleven ships great and small," and appointed Hernan Cortés to command it. Bernal again enlisted, as at this time he found himself much in debt. Cortés set out from the Port of Trinidad on the 18th February, 1519. The author had started eight days earlier in the company of Pedro de Alvarado. All met together again at the Island of Cozumel, where a review was held, which showed a muster of five hundred and eight soldiers, "not including ship-masters, pilots and seamen, who numbered one hundred, and sixteen horses and mares." Keeping on their course they passed close by Chanpotón without venturing to land; they stopped at Tabasco, where they fought with the natives, who gave the author "an arrow wound in the thigh but it was not a severe wound," and finally they arrived at Ulúa.

They went inland and marched to Cempoala and Quiahuiztlan, and in the neighbourhood of the latter they founded the Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz, and they determined to push on to México, whose

¹ This is an error. Tuxtla was passed before reaching the Isla de Sacrificios.

Prince, Motecuhzoma,¹ had been exciting their cupidity by rich presents of gold and other objects of value.

Before undertaking this march, the friends of Cortés (one of whom was Bernal) advised him to destroy the ships, lest any of the soldiers should mutiny and wish to return to Cuba, and so that he could make use of the ship-masters, pilots and seamen "who numbered nearly one hundred persons" as we have already stated. When this had been done, "without concealment and not as the chronicler Gómara describes it," they started for Mexico in the middle of August, probably on the sixteenth, and passed without incident through Jalapa Xicochimalco, Ixhuacan, Texutla, Xocotla and Xalacingo, but on reaching the frontiers of Tlaxcala they were stopped by the natives, who fought against them for several days. There the author received "two wounds, one on the head from a stone, and the other an arrow wound in the thigh," from which he was seriously ill in the Capital of Tlaxcala, after Cortés had made peace and an alliance with the inhabitants.

"On the 12th October" they continued their march by Cholula, where they committed a shocking massacre, Itzcalpan, Tlamanalco, and Itztapalatengo. Here Cacamatzin the Lord of Tetzaco met them in royal state to welcome them in the name of Motecuhzoma, and they accompanied him along the

¹ Montezuma.

causeway of Itztapalapa, which crossed the lake in a straight line to Mexico, and from it could be seen on both sides innumerable "cities and towns," some in the water and others on dry land, all of them beautified by stately temples and palaces. This wonderful panorama, as picturesque as it was novel, made the deepest impression on Bernal and his companions, and he says, "we were amazed and said that it was like the enchantments they tell us of in the story of Amadis, on account of the great towers and cues¹ and buildings rising from the water, and all built of masonry. And some of our soldiers even asked whether the things that we saw were not all a dream."

When they reached the junction of the causeways of Itztapalapa and Coyohuacan they met many Caciques and Chieftains of importance coming in advance of Motecuhzoma, who received the Spaniards a little further on, almost at the gates of Mexico, with sumptuous pomp and extreme ceremony. Many times the Mexican sovereign had contemplated attacking the Spaniards, but weighed down by superstition and rendered powerless by a timid and vacillating character, he now conducted them into the great Tenochtitlan, only to deliver it up to them at once. The autocrat felt himself fatally conquered before beginning the struggle.

Thence step by step within a few days he suffered seven Spaniards, among whom was Bernal, to make

¹ Cue = temple. This is not a Nahua or Maya word but one picked up by the Spaniards in the Antilles.

him a prisoner in his own palace : he allowed his jailors to burn [to death] Quauhpopoca and other native chieftains, whose crime consisted in having, by his own orders, given battle to Juan de Escalante and other Spanish soldiers ; he handed over to Cortés Cacamatzin, Totoquihuatzin, Cuitláhuac and Cuauhtémoc, lords respectively of Tetz coco, Tlacopan, Itztapalapan and Tlatelolco, who wished to set their sovereign at liberty, and finally, weeping like a tender unhappy woman, he swore fealty to the King of Spain.

With ease and in a short time Cortés was able to collect an immense treasure which amounted to "seven hundred thousand gold dollars," which he found it necessary to divide among his soldiers ; nevertheless, he made the division with such trickery and cunning that there fell to the soldiers "a very small share, only one hundred dollars each, and it was so very little that many of the soldiers did not want to take it, and Cortés was left with it all." If the author did not complain of this as much as some of his companions, for example, as Cárdenas, who even "fell ill from brooding and grief," it was owing to his having already received from Moteuhzoma some presents of "gold and cloths," as well as of "a beautiful Indian girl . . . the daughter of a chieftain," whom he ventured to beg of the Sovereign through the good offices of the page Orteguilla, a gift which he certainly thought that he had gained by his respectful courtesy "for whenever I was on guard over him, or passed before

him, I doffed my helmet to him with the greatest respect."

The Spaniards began to enjoy the gold divided among them, abandoning themselves to a life of licentious pleasure, when in March 1520 Pánfilo de Narvaez arrived at Ulúa with sixteen ships,¹ fourteen hundred soldiers, ninety crossbowmen, seventy musketeers, and eighty horses.

Diego Velásquez had sent him to punish Cortés and his followers as traitors, because they had rebelled against him without reason. However, as Cortés was immensely rich, and there is no power greater than riches, he soon won over almost all the soldiers of Narvaez with ingots and jewels of gold, in such a way that when the fight took place at Cempoala, Narvaez was the only man who fought in earnest, until he was wounded and lost an eye. The author figures among his captors: "the first to lay hands on him was Pedro Sanchez Farfan, a good soldier, and I handed him (Narvaez) over to Sandoval."

After his victory Cortés returned with all speed to Mexico, where the inhabitants had risen in arms with the purpose of avenging the inhuman massacre carried out by Pedro de Alvarado in the precincts of the great Teocalli, which Alonzo de Avila pronounced to be disgraceful, saying that it would

¹ The author says that there were nineteen, but the Oidor Lucas Vázquez de Ayllon, who accompanied Narvaez, writes that there were sixteen. (Hernan Cortés, *Cartas y Relaciones*, Paris, 1866. Page 42.)—G.G.

for ever remain "an ill memory in New Spain." Cortés now brought with him over thirteen hundred soldiers, eighty crossbowmen and as many musketeers, and ninety mounted men, without counting his numerous native allies.

Although they all reached the great Tenochtitlan "on the day of San Juan de Junio (St. John's Day) in the year 1520" they could not make a stand against the Mexicans, who, under the command of Cuitláhuac and Cuauhtémoc, killed the greater number of the invaders and forced the rest, wounded and ruined, for they were unable to save the riches they had collected, to flee to Tlaxcala. The Tlaxcalans received them, lodged them and attended to them with affection. When they were somewhat recovered, the Spaniards began Vandal-like forays through Tepeyácac, Cachula, Guacachula, Tecamachalco, the town of the Guayabos, Ozúcar, Xalacingo, Zacatami, and other places in the neighbourhood, enslaving and branding with a hot iron all the youths and women they met with ; "they did not trouble about the old men : " the inhuman mark was placed "on the face," and not even the most beautiful young woman escaped it.

The author did not assist in all these forays because "he was very ill from fever, and was spitting blood."

Cortés then founded a second city, which he named Segura de la Frontera.

After the Spaniards had been reinforced by various expeditions that had come from Cuba, they

resolved to return to Mexico to recover their lost treasure, and they forthwith took the road to Tetzcoco.

They took with them many thousands of native allies.

When the headquarters had been established at Tetzcoco, Cortés opened hostilities by an assault on Itztapalapa, where he and his followers nearly lost their lives by drowning, for the Mexicans "burst open the canals of fresh and salt water and tore down a causeway:" the author was "very badly wounded by a lance thrust which they gave me in the throat near the windpipe, and I was in danger of dying from it, and retain the scar from it to this day."

Cortés did not think of a direct attack on Mexico, he understood that it could lead to no satisfactory result; he proposed merely to invest the city and reduce it by starvation; so as to accomplish this he had entrusted to the Tlaxcalans the construction of thirteen launches, which he anxiously awaited.

Meanwhile, he attacked the neighbouring towns with fire and sword. The author did not join in these earlier combats as he was still ill from his dangerous wound, but as soon as it healed, he again took up arms, and accompanied Cortés, who went to assist the natives of Chalco, and distinguished himself among the most intrepid soldiers.

On his side, Cuauhtémoc, who was now Lord

of Mexico, took measures for the defence of his country with unequalled courage; he had obtained from his subjects a promise "that they would never make peace, but would either all die fighting or take our lives."

The strife was remarkably prolonged and bloody, and no quarter was given.

The siege began on the 21st May, 1521, and lasted eighty-five days. Not for one moment did the Mexicans show signs of discouragement, notwithstanding the scarcity of fresh water and provisions, the superiority of the arms of the Spaniards, and the immense number of their native allies;¹ each day as it came was for them as the first day of the strife, so great was the determination and the strength with which they appeared on the field of battle, and, moreover, they never ceased fighting "from dawn to dusk."

When the greater number of them had already perished, the few who still remained stoically resisted thirst, hunger, weariness and pestilence in the defence of their country, and even then refused, with indomitable fortitude, the proposals of peace which Cortés repeatedly made to them. In this manner only did they die.

The army which was to attack the Mexicans by

¹ The author makes immoderate efforts to lessen the number of the allies, but Cortés informs us that there were "numberless people," "an infinite number," "which could not be counted," that those that accompanied him alone numbered "more than one hundred and fifty thousand men."—G. G.

land was divided from the beginning into three sections. It fell to the lot of the author to serve in that of Tlacopan, commanded by Pedro de Alvarado. Many times Bernal was in danger of losing his life, first of all when the siege had just been commenced; a few days later when the Mexicans succeeded in seizing him, "many Indians had already laid hold of me, but I managed to get my arm free, and our Lord Jesus Christ gave me strength so that by some good sword thrusts that I gave them, I saved myself, but I was badly wounded in one arm;" on another occasion they succeeded in taking him prisoner, but "it pleased God that I should escape from their power;" and, finally, at the end of June on the day that Cortés suffered his terrible defeat, the author received "an arrow wound and a sword thrust."

The siege ended on the 13th August, 1521, with the capture of the north-east corner of the city, where the few surviving Mexicans still offered a heroic resistance.

As soon as Cortés was master of the Great Tenochtitlan, he got together, for the second time, a great quantity of gold, although it was not as much as he had acquired before. On the division being made, again for the second time the Spaniards were profoundly discontented, for they found that after all their terrible hardships and their constant danger of death, "there fell to the share of a horseman eighty dollars, and to that of the cross-bowmen, musketeers and shield bearers sixty or

fifty, I do not well remember which." The most annoying thing for the Spanish adventurers was "that some owed fifty or sixty dollars for cross-bows, and others fifty dollars for a sword, and similarly everything that we bought was equally dear, then too a surgeon named Master Juan, who dressed some severe wounds, charged an exorbitant price for his cures, as did also a sort of quack doctor named Murçia, who was an apothecary and barber and also undertook cures, and there were thirty other traps and trickeries for which we were in debt."

The author continued to contract debts in consequence, in spite of his sturdy fighting and his many and serious wounds.

Although his expectations had not been fulfilled, Bernal did not abandon the hope of mending his fortunes, which had brought him to Mexico, and he accompanied his friend Gonzalo de Sandoval to the conquest of Tuxtépec, a place which, according "to the tribute rolls of Montezuma," which the author had studied, abounded in gold. When he arrived there, Sandoval advised him to stay there, and offered him in allotment "the rich towns of Matlatan, Orizaba and Ozotequipa; but Bernal refused, "for it seemed to me that unless I went with Sandoval and as his friend, that I should not be doing what was becoming to my rank."

He passed on to Coatzacoalcos, where the town of Espíritu Santo was established, and here Bernal

settled, for on the 20th September, 1522, Cortés gave him in allotment the towns of "Tlapa and Potonchan," which belonged to the province of Cimatán. Neither one nor the other proved satisfactory to him, because the land was poor, or more probably because he found no gold there, the metal which represented the only acceptable form of riches to the author and his companions, who had migrated on that very account from the Valley of Mexico, because it produced "merely an abundance of maize and aloes."

The settlers at the town of Espíritu Santo chose him as their Magistrate, a clear proof of the esteem and consideration in which he was held.

After all, the new life that Bernal led did not free him from frequent turmoil; he was continually obliged to sally forth and pacify the towns in the province, and this was not without risk, for on one occasion he was "struck by an arrow wound in the throat, and the great loss of blood, for at the time it was not possible either to bandage [the wound] or staunch the flow, greatly endangered my life."

During Lent in the year 1523 he set out with Captain Luis Marín to fight the natives of Chiapas, "the greatest warriors that I had seen in the whole of New Spain, although that includes Tlaxcalans, Mexicans, Zapotecs and Minxes."

The author now travelled on horseback—doubtless his towns were not in such poor land as he had imagined..

He had to suffer many hardships during this

expedition; the people of Chiapas fought like "rabid lions," and in Chamula they gave him "a good blow with a lance which pierced my armour, and had it not been made of thick cotton and well quilted, they would have killed me, for good as it was they thrust through it and out came a thick wad of cotton, and they gave me a slight wound." In spite of this he was one of the two first soldiers who stormed and took the fortress of the natives. As a reward for his heroic conduct Luis Marín gave him in allotment this town of Chamula, a place of great importance.

On the return to Espíritu Santo he fought [a duel] of swords with Godoy in a most noble cause, and both were wounded.

Bernal did not enjoy his ease for long, for in obedience to an order from Cortés, whom all the *Conquistadores* greatly feared, he found himself forced to follow Rodrigo Rangel to the conquest of the Zapotecs; it is fair to say that, although he did so unwillingly, for he already felt wearied, and Rangel did not inspire sympathy, he acquitted himself with great efficiency throughout the expedition, for which he gained honourable praise. It was then¹ when the natives "had hung seven arrows on him, which only failed to pierce on account of the thickness of the cotton armour, and nevertheless I emerged wounded in one leg;" he would, however,

¹ This happened in a subsequent expedition under Rangel in Tabasco.

not give way, but, in spite of all, he pursued the natives for a long distance until "they took refuge in some great quaking morasses which no man who entered them could get out of again except on all fours or with much assistance."

He returned to Espíritu Santo without having accomplished anything to his profit, and went on to Mexico, where he was present on the 18th or 19th June, 1524, at the magnificent reception given by Cortés to Fray Martín de Valencia and his twelve Franciscan companions, among them Fray Toribio de Benavente, whom the Indians named Motolinía, "which means in their language the poor Friar, for all that was given him for the sake of God he gave to the Indians, so that at times he went without food, and wore very ragged garments and walked barefoot, and he always preached to them, and the Indians loved him greatly for he was a saintly person."

The author returned to his town almost at once. He was there at the end of October in the same year when Cortés arrived on his way to the Hibueras,¹ whither he was going personally, resolved to punish Cristóbal de Olid, who had rebelled.

The conqueror was followed by a formidable army, and a numerous court of friars and clergy, doctors and surgeons, major domos, waiters, butlers, chamberlains, stewards, and keepers of his "great

¹ Honduras.

services of gold and silver," pages, orderlies, huntsmen, pipers, trumpeters and fifers, acrobats, conjurers, puppet players, equerries and muleteers, and "a great herd of pigs that they ate as they went along." Among the soldiers and attendants of Cortés there also marched, but not of their own will, Cuauhtémoc and other great native princes.

When Cortés arrived at Coatzacoalcos he ordered all the settlers to go with him to the Hibueras, and it was owing to this that the author had to accompany him: nobody would have then dared to disobey Cortés.

It was hard luck for Bernal, for as he says "At the time when we should have been resting from our great labours and endeavouring to secure some property and profit, he ordered us to go on a journey of over five hundred leagues, the greater part of it through hostile country, and all that we possessed we left behind and lost."

Bernal was not consoled by Cortés appointing him Captain on this occasion, nor by taking his own followers with him, who had been recruited from the towns of his *encomienda*.¹

While the author marched upon Cimatán at the head of thirty Spaniards and three thousand natives, Cortés overran the towns of Tonalá and Ayagua-

¹ Encomienda = The Indian townships and land, with the Indians necessary for its cultivation, assigned or allotted to a Spaniard.

lulco, crossed a neighbouring estuary after throwing across it "a bridge which was nearly half a quarter of a league long, an astonishing feat, in the way they did it," and he went along the great river Mazapa to the towns of Iquinuapa where he rejoined the author.

Together, they soon passed through the towns of Copilco, Nacaxuxuyca, Zaguatan, Tepetitan and Itztapa. Going on in search of Hueyacalá, or "the great Acalá, for there was another town called Acalá the lesser," they penetrated into the forest [monte] and lost their way, and found themselves then compelled to clear a track with their swords through the thick undergrowth; they suffered from hunger and four Spaniards and many of the natives died from it, for they fell down "as though in despair." In this extremity Bernal and Pero López saved the army, for they found the lost road which soon led them to Temastépec. The pipers, trumpeters and fifiers no longer made music, for "they were used to luxury and did not understand hardship and they had sickened with the hunger; only one of them had the spirit to play, and all of us soldiers refused to listen to him, and said that it sounded like the howling of foxes and coyotes and that it would be better to have maize to eat than music."

In Ciguatépécad the author and Gonzalo Mexía went on ahead by the order of Cortés to win over peacefully the inhabitants of Acalá, a mission which Bernal, on his part, accomplished satisfactorily, for

he soon returned with a large quantity of provisions; but as the soldiers were starving they seized them all and fought one another for them. In vain did the Steward cry out to them that they should leave something for Cortés, the soldiers answered petulantly "you and Cortés have had fine pigs to eat." When Cortés heard what had happened he put up with it, and asked the author in the mildest manner whether he had not left a little of the food hidden on the road, and ended by asking him most humbly for a share of it. The author consented and generously invited him to partake of that which he had reserved for himself and the natives from the towns of his *encomiendas*.

The army entered the province of Acalá, and there at Izancánac Cortés ordered Cuauhtémoc and his cousin Tetepanquetzatl, the lord of Tlacopan, to be hanged, on suspicion of engaging in a conspiracy. The author tells us that he was very sorry for these great princes, and adds, "their death was very unjust and appeared an evil thing to all of us, who were on the march." This was at Shrovetide in 1525.

Cortés arrived at the land of the Mazatecas, and after passing through two towns, one situated on an island and another near a fresh-water lake, entered into Tayasal. A little further on Bernal began to feel very ill "from fever and from the power of the sun which had affected my head and all my body." In this condition, nevertheless, he was obliged to cross the toilsome range of the Pedernales, not so

very lofty, but whose stones "cut like knives." In front of Tayca a river "which one could clearly hear two leagues off" delayed the army for three days, and Cortés threw a bridge across it similar to the one constructed at Ayagualulco, bridges which survived for many years, for the admiration of travellers who were accustomed to say, "here are Cortés' bridges as though they were speaking of the Pillars of Hercules."

Again they felt the pangs of hunger, such as the author had never before experienced; he suffered anguish at this time "for I had nothing to eat or to give to my people and I was ill with fever." Cortés ordered him nevertheless to go out and seek for food for the army, and the author, rising superior to his serious infirmities, obeyed him. Guided by his experience and sagacity, he was not long in finding poultry, maize, beans and "other vegetables," with which he promptly supplied all the soldiers.

They went on to Tania, a town surrounded by rivers and streams, from which they were unable to get out, for once more they lost their way. Cortés despatched several Spaniards to find it again, but without result. It was necessary to confide the task to the author, in spite of his illness, for after God it was in him "that he had confidence that he would bring help," and when he brought it, for he succeeded in finding the road which they were to follow, Cortés evinced profound gratitude, and made him fair promises: "I pledge you," he

told him, "this, my beard, that I owe your honour a debt."

The conqueror arrived at last with his huge army at Ocoliztle, a town quite close to Naco, where he expected to fight with Cristóbal de Olid; it was not until then he learnt that he (Olid) had had his throat cut long before by Gil González de Avila and Francisco de las Casas. Nevertheless, before returning to Mexico, he wished to leave his rule established in that far off district, his boundless ambition making the vast territory of New Spain appear small to him. Thus he founded the town of La Natividad, "which is now called Puerto de Caballos," and obliged the natives who had been scared away to return and repopulate Naco.

While this was happening, news was received from Mexico that the Agent Gonzalo de Salazar, after spreading the report that Cortés and his soldiers had perished, seized their property and their Indians to divide them among his partizans; and he ordered the wives who had become widows to pray for the souls of their husbands and promptly proceed "to marry again, and he even sent to say so to Guaçacualco and other towns." It is certain that the wife of Alonzo Yáñez, an inhabitant of Mexico, respected the order, and hurriedly re-married.

Nevertheless, while all the soldiers were indignant and excited, as was only natural, and prepared themselves to return as fast as possible to New Spain to recover their wives, their Indians

and their property, and even cursed Cortés and Salazar, "and our hearts throbbed with anger," Cortés, formerly energetic, prompt and venturesome to rashness, now weak, irresolute and timid, confined himself to weeping disconsolately, shutting himself up for long hours in his room, and permitting no one to see him: overmuch power had weakened his character. When at last he came out of his room, the soldiers unanimously addressed him and entreated him to embark at once in the three ships that were there and go to New Spain, and he answered us very affectionately: "Oh my children and companions, I see on one side that evil man, the Agent, has become very powerful, and I fear that when he knows that we are in the port, he will do some other shameless and daring things to us beyond what he has already done, or he will kill or drown me, or make me and all of you prisoners." The abundant riches which Cortés now possessed made him love life too much.

Selfishly abandoning the bulk of his army, he set out on the sea with a few followers. The author had begged him very urgently to take him in his company; he had an abundant right to ask this and other much greater favours, but Cortés, ever deaf to gratitude, left him there to return by land.

So by land he went, once more suffering daily hardships, and having also to fight against the natives. He passed through Maniani and Cholulteca-Malalaca, the Chaparrastiques, Cuzcatlan or Cascacatan, whose inhabitants gave him an arrow

wound, Petapa, Guatemala, Olnitépec, Soconusco, Tehuantepec, Oaxaca and Mexico. He entered the capital in the beginning of 1527, after a most laborious march extending over more than "two years and three months," during which he had served throughout "very well and loyally" without receiving "pay or any favour whatever." He returned poor, in debt, and with ragged clothes. Andrés de Tápia received him in his house, and Gonzalo de Sandoval sent him garments with which to clothe himself, "and gold and cacao to spend."

At this time Marcos de Aguilar was governing New Spain, and Bernal begged him to give him Indians in Mexico as those of Coatzacoalcos "were of no profit." Aguilar merely made him fine promises, alleging that he had not yet received power to apportion Indians.

During the same year Aguilar was succeeded by Alonzo de Estrada, first of all in company with Sandoval and afterwards alone, whose rule was very unfortunate for the author; under it Baltazar Osorio and Diego de Mazariegos turned him out "by force" from his *encomiendas* of Micapy, Tlapa and Chamula, to the end that they might be incorporated in the new towns of Chiapas and Tabasco.

The author, finding it impossible "to carry on lawsuits with two towns," went to Estrada to obtain justice, and got from him, dated 3rd April, 1528, the *encomienda* "of the towns of Gualpitán and

Micapa, which are in the Cachulco range, and used to be subject to Cimatán, and of Popoloatán in the province of Citla." Nevertheless, the author was not satisfied owing to the fact that these towns were of little importance, and did not nearly compensate him for the loss of Tlapa, which contained "more than a thousand houses," and that of Chamula, which numbered "more than four hundred, and the farms more than two hundred."

At the end of this same year, 1528, Estrada was succeeded by the First *Audiencia*,¹ which wished to proceed at once to the perpetual assignment² of the Indians, and with this object ordered the cities and towns settled by Spaniards to appoint attorneys to come to the Capital. The arrangement could not have been more opportune nor more agreeable for Bernal, who could now believe with good reason that his labours and his poverty were soon going to cease. He set out in all haste for Espíritu Santo, and was successful in arranging that the settlers should entrust him with their authority, and he returned at once to Mexico. However, the much talked of division came to nothing, and the judges, far from favouring Bernal, imprisoned him twice on despicable pretexts, together with other old *Conquistadores*. He was obliged at last to return to Coatzacoalcos, persuaded that he would obtain no protection from the First Audiencia, and that he must resign himself to live there "in the midst of

¹ Audiencia = a Council of Government.

² The "Repartimiento."

want," but maintaining "his high honour, and seeing to it that he lived uprightly and without indulging in any vice," and justly enjoying "a very good reputation."

When the First Audiencia retired in the month of January 1531, the honest members of the Second Audiencia assumed control, and, as they appreciated the merits of the author, they nominated him *Visitador General* of Coatzacoalcos and Tabasco, and they entrusted to him the delimitation of both those settlements, a duty which he carried out with prudence in company with the stipendiary Benito López. Encouraged by these distinctions, and trusting in the rectitude of the Second Audiencia, Bernal approached it [with a request] that he should be given some Indian towns in compensation for those "that had been taken from him by force," but the Judges told him that "unless the order came from his Majesty in Spain they were not able to give them."

In the year 1535 the first Viceroy, Don Antonio de Mendoza, arrived in Mexico, and Bernal approached him also with the same demand, and again met with a similar refusal.

However, if adversity and deception never ceased to lay in wait for and wound the author, he, on the other hand, never gave way to their blows, and always knew how to preserve his energy undiminished. It must certainly have been towards 1535 when, in spite of having already reached the age of forty-three years, and feeling "very weary

and poor," he married Teresa Becerra, the eldest legitimate daughter of Captain Bartolomé Becerra, a *Conquistador* of Guatemala, and the first regular Mayor of that city. By this marriage Bernal had several sons and daughters, the eldest being Francisco, who was born a year after the wedding.

Bernal had already born to him other children by a native woman, who was perhaps that beautiful girl he had begged from Montezuma through the good offices of the page Orteguilla. Baltasar Dorantes de Carranza knew a "Diego Díaz de Castillo, a half-caste" and a natural son of Bernal, and Philip II mentions in a Royal Decree some brothers of this Diego.

The author proved to be an excellent father of a family, the greatest, in fact the chief, anxiety throughout his life, was not having the means with which to secure the future of his wife and children ; he constantly mentions this subject in all his letters, as well as in the *True History*.

As Bernal's difficulties necessarily increased with his growing family, and he knew by sad experience that he could hope for nothing from those governing New Spain, he resolved to go to Court to beg for justice from the Lords of the Royal Council. Cortés and the Viceroy gave him letters of recommendation to them with which, and the authenticated record of his merits and services, he arrived in Spain about 1540. Once there, he presented his petition in [proper] form. The Lords of the Royal Council ordered it to be handed over to the Fiscal,

the Licentiate Don Juan de Villalobos, who declared openly and frankly, for some reason of which we know nothing, that he would not allow him anything, because "he had not been a *Conquistador* such as he asserted."

The Fiscal doubly offended the author, because at the same time that he ignored his services given during so many years with painful toil and in frequent danger of death, he treated him publicly as an impostor, him who judged and proclaimed the truth to be "a thing blessed and holy."

This disillusion was without any doubt the most painful of all the author's sufferings. Fortunately the Lords of the Royal Council took no notice of the Fiscal's pleading in settling the matter, and issued a writ on the 15th April, 1541, advising that a Royal Decree should be given to the author addressed to the Viceroy of New Spain, to the end that "he should examine the quality and number of the towns which had been given to the said Bernal Díaz and which he held possessed and which were taken away from him to form the townships of Chiapas and Tabasco, and should give him in recompense for them other towns of the same kind and as good in the same province so that he might gain profit therefrom during his Majesty's pleasure."

The Decree was issued two months later, together with another to the same effect, which was addressed to Pedro de Alvarado, the Governor of Guatemala, which the author asked for with a view of obtaining the new towns in either of the two provinces,

wherever they could most promptly be granted. Provided with these two Decrees he returned immediately to the New World. He obtained nothing in New Spain, but, when he went on to Guatemala, the Licentiate Alonzo Maldonado, who was Governor on the death of Alvarado, assigned him the towns of Zacatépec, Joanagacapa and Misten, which were clearly of "little worth," and promised him that as soon as there were others of greater importance he would give them to him and put him in charge of them. As the promise was never realised, Bernal never escaped from his life of poverty.

Without any incidents worth recording—at least so far as is known to us—time went on until 1550, in which year Bernal was summoned to Spain to assist at the Congress of Valladolid, in the character of "the oldest *Conquistador* of New Spain." He went there, joined in the Congress and voted for the perpetual assignment of the Indians, in spite of having heard the humanitarian and persuasive arguments alleged against it by the eminent Fray Bartolomé de las Casas and his worthy companions Fray Rodrigo de Labrada and Fray Tomás de San Martín; his own poverty was a stronger argument.

Bernal utilised his short stay at Court to obtain a Royal Decree, dated the 1st December, 1550, ordering the Licentiate Alonzo López Zerrato, President of the Audiencia of Guatemala, to carry out the previous Decree recorded in 1541, and have it respected.

On the 1st September, 1551, the author exhibited his new Decree before the Licentiate López Zerrato, who unfortunately did not execute it, in spite of having that very day taken it in his hands, examined it and placed it above his head as was the custom, to show that he would obey it and carry it out.

We say that he did not carry it out, because a year later Bernal wrote to his Majesty that the said Licentiate cared only to give assignments "to his relations, servants and friends," without taking any notice of the *Conquistadores* who had won [the country] "by their sweat and blood;" on this account the author prays that his Majesty may be pleased to order him to be admitted "into his Royal house as one of his servants."

This petition shows that Bernal did not harbour any hope of improving his miserable lot. Here he nevertheless remained, for he did not succeed in being admitted into the number of his Majesty's servants.

Moreover, if it had not been possible for him to prosper during youth and middle life, it was still less so now that he was entering on old age, and we find, as was natural and even to be expected, that he writes to Fray Bartolomé de las Casas, on 20th February, 1558, that he was still "very straightened as he possessed so little property."¹

¹ As the author then adds that he was "heavily burdened by children and grandchildren," and that he had a young wife, it is not hazardous to think that he had recently contracted a second marriage, etc.—G. G.

It must have been a great consolation to him that he continued to be esteemed and respected in Guatemala. He had not ceased to be a Magistrate, and this same year he was elected "arbitrator and executor," and he had been named the previous year to carry the banner on the feast of Santa Cecilia, an honour which was again conferred on him in 1560, on the occasion of the feast of Saint James the Apostle.¹ The affection and consideration which all the persons who knew him had for Bernal Díaz was owing to his "charming conversation" and noble sentiments, but principally to the fact that in spite of his poverty, he always managed to live "with great dignity."

Thus then, poor enough, although much loved and esteemed, fearing no one, he dedicated himself to the writing of his *True History* when he was over seventy years of age, convinced that in the history of the world there was no more daring deed than the conquest, nor more heroic men in existence than the *Conquistadores*, resigned to not having received the reward which was justly due to him, free from pessimism, rancour and regrets, with a perfectly tranquil conscience, with an exceptional memory and an intelligence uncommon in its full vigour. His work was now and then interrupted by visits to the towns assigned to him, sometimes accompanied by friends. Neither travel nor change of climate broke down his health; he

¹ García Peláez. *Memoria para la Historia del Antiguo Reyno de Guatemala*. Guatemala, 1851-52, vol. ii, page 227.—G. G.

himself tells us that even at that time he did not use a bed, from habit acquired during the conquest, nor was he able to sleep unless he walked "some time in the open air, and this without any covering on his head, neither cap nor kerchief, and, thanks to God, it did me no harm." With all this, he also tells us, not perhaps without exaggeration, that by that time he had "lost his sight and hearing." He had penned but little of the History when the Chronicles composed by Paulo Giovio, Francisco López de Gómara and Gonzalo de Illescas¹ came into his hands. As soon as he began to read them, "and observed from their good style the roughness and lack of polish of my language," he gave up writing his History. However, when the first impression had faded, he returned to their perusal, and was then able to decide that they spoke truth neither in the beginning, nor the middle, nor the end, and for this reason he definitely resolved to continue his own work. Probably this did not happen before 1566, for Bernal knew no Latin, and could not, therefore, understand the Chronicle of Giovio until Baeza published his translation in Spanish.

However that may be, it is clear that in the year 1568 he made the fair copy of the *True History*.

We know nothing more of his life. We can

¹ The work of Giovio was published in Latin in 1550-52, and translated into Spanish by Gaspar de Baeza in 1566; Gomara printed his Chronicle in 1552-53, and Illescas published his in 1564. All three soon went through several editions.—G. G.

only add that the author died in Guatemala about 1581, poor as he had lived, leaving his numerous family no riches except "his true and wonderful story," which was, nevertheless, the chief title to glory for his descendants, for in it was enshrined his fair name of honourable *Conquistador* and genial Historian.

The original manuscript of the *True History* forms a large folio volume, containing 297 leaves in an old leather binding. Although it is generally in a fairly good condition, there are some leaves partly destroyed, principally those at the beginning and at the end.

All the writing, which covers both sides of the leaves, is in the handwriting of the author; on some pages it is well done and normal, on others careless and irregular. The author could not have preserved the same composure throughout the long time occupied in writing his work.

The principal subject of this work is the Conquest "of New Spain and its provinces and the Cape of Honduras and all that lies within these lands." Those who tax Bernal with vanity and conceit suppose that when he began the *True History* his only object was to tell about himself, an entirely gratuitous supposition, for the author frequently chronicles a series of years, without including one of his personal deeds. His work begins within the year 1514 and ends with that of 1568. He divides it into 214 chapters, perhaps

intending to finish it with Chapter ccxii, at the end of which he placed his signature and *rubrica*,¹ but he changed his intention, and wrote two new chapters in the same year in which he had written Chapter ccxii, namely, the year 1568. He still intended to write another, or others, for he declares at the end of Chapter ccxiv: "It will be well in another chapter to speak of the Archbishops and Bishops that there have been." Surely Bernal did not finish his work, unless one assumes the loss of the final pages, which is not probable. The binder who bound up the manuscript understood little of the composition of ancient writings, and attached to the last folio the leaf which contained the signature of the author.

Bernal did not pretend to be a man of letters; he confesses his slight knowledge of literature, and on this account humbly begs the indulgence of his readers: "May your honours pardon me in that I cannot express it better." Nevertheless, his mode of speech is still current to-day, and is interesting and expressive, in spite of the immoderate use of copulative conjunctions, of its almost complete want of imagery, its words with variable spelling, either obsolete or incorrect, its semi-arbitrary punctuation, its erroneous concordances, its strange contractions and its unusual abbreviations.

¹ *Rubrica*, the flourish which then and at the present time forms part of a signature among Spaniards.



INTRODUCTION

BY THE

TRANSLATOR.



OUR eye-witnesses of the discovery and conquest of Mexico have left written records :—

Hernando Cortés, who wrote five letters known as the *Cartas de Relación* to the Emperor Charles V.

The First of these letters, despatched from Vera Cruz, has never been found, but its place is supplied by a letter written to the Emperor at the same time by the Municipality of Vera Cruz, dated 10th July, 1519.

The Second letter, from Segura de la Frontera (Tepeaca), is dated 30th October, 1520.

The Third letter was written from Coyoacan, and dated 15th May, 1522.

The Fourth letter was written from the city of Temixtitan (Mexico), and dated 15th October, 1524.

The Fifth letter, written from Temixtitan

(Mexico), dated 3rd September, 1526, deals with the march to Honduras.

The Anonymous Conqueror whose identity has never been ascertained.

The original of this document is lost, and its contents are preserved to us in an Italian translation. It deals only with the customs, arms, food, religion, buildings, etc., of the inhabitants of the city of Mexico, and adds nothing to our knowledge of events during the Conquest.

Andrés de Tápia, whose short but interesting account of the expedition under Cortés ends with the defeat of Narvaez.

This document was only brought to light during the last century.

Bernal Díaz del Castillo, whose stirring and picturesque narrative is given in the following pages.

To these may be added the *Itinerario de Grijalva*, an account written by the chaplain who accompanied Grijalva on his expedition when the coast of Mexico was first discovered; but this account ends with the return of the expedition to Cuba, and does not deal with the conquest of the country.

The original of this document has been lost, and it comes down to us in an Italian translation. If the title is correct, it must have been written by the priest Juan Diaz who accompanied the expedition. It seems to be written in a hostile spirit, and its statements should be received with caution.

Many writers followed during the next forty

years who had conversed with actors in the events, and some of whom had heard the story from the mouths of the conquered Indians, and much additional information was thus added to the record; but for a vivid impression of this daring plunge into the unknown, and the triumphant struggle of an isolated handful of Spaniards against a powerful and warlike race, we must rely on the accounts given by those two great soldiers and adventurers, leader and follower, Hernando Cortés and Bernal Díaz del Castillo.

The scene of the principal part of Bernal Díaz's narrative lies within the southern half of the present republic of Mexico, Western Central America and the peninsula of Yucatan, a land wholly within the tropics, which, however, owing to its physical conformation, furnishes almost every variety of climate.

A great range of volcanic mountains runs almost continuously through Mexico and the greater part of Central America, near the Pacific Coast and parallel to it. A second range of mountains, not so continuous and distinct, runs almost parallel to the Atlantic coast. The whole of the interior of the country between these two ranges may be said to be mountainous but intersected by many high-lying plains from 4000 to 8000 feet above sea level, which form one of the most characteristic features of the country. These plains are sometimes seamed with narrow *barrancas*¹ hundreds of feet in depth,

¹ *Canyons, ravines.*

often with precipitous sides, caused by the washing away of the thick covering of light volcanic ash down to the bed rock. In common speech the land is divided into the *tierra caliente*, the *tierra templada*, and the *tierra fria*, the hot, temperate and cold lands. As the slope of the mountains is rather more gradual towards the Atlantic than towards the Pacific, the *tierra caliente* is more extensive in the former direction. Three volcanic peaks, Orizaba, Popocatépetl and Ixtacshuatl, almost in the middle of Southern Mexico, rise above the line of perpetual snow and reach a height of about 17,000 feet, and several of the somewhat lower peaks are snow-capped during some months of the year. None of the rivers of Mexico west of the Isthmus of Tehuantepec are navigable in the sense of being highways of commercial importance. Passing to the east of the Isthmus of Tehuantepec the country of Chiapas and Guatemala does not differ materially in its general characteristics from that already described, with the exception that the rivers are relatively of greater importance, and the waters of the Usumacinta and Grijalva form innumerable lagoons and swamps before entering the Gulf of Mexico.

North and west of the Usumacinta and its tributaries, the land, with the exception of the Cockscomb range in British Honduras, is all low, and the peninsula of Yucatan appears to be little more than a coral reef slightly raised above sea level. There are no rivers, for the rain sinks easily

- through the porous limestone rock, and the natives
- have often to seek their drinking water 100 feet or more below the surface in the great *cenotes* (*tznótes*) or limestone caverns.

The sea round the north and west coast of the peninsula is very shallow, the 100 fathom line being in some parts as much as ninety miles distant from the shore.

The wet season in Mexico and Central America may (subject to local variations) be said to extend from June to October, but it lasts somewhat longer on the Atlantic than on the Pacific slope. During these months the rainfall is often very heavy, the States of Tabasco and Vera Cruz probably receiving the larger amount.

During the winter months occasional strong cold gales sweep the Gulf of Mexico from the North, the dreaded *Norte* so often mentioned in Bernal Díaz's narrative. This wind causes some discomfort even on the high plateau of the *tierra templada*, which, notwithstanding this drawback, may safely be said to possess one of the most perfect climates in the world.

The first question always asked regarding the Conquest is, "Who were the Mexicans, and how did they get to Mexico?" and to these questions no certain answer can be given. All that can be said is that the whole American race, although it may have originated from more than one stock, reached America in a very early stage of human development, and that the Nahua tribes to which

Mexicans belong came from the north-west coast, which is generally assumed to have been the earliest home of the American race. Whether the people came from Asia at a time when the Northern continents were continuous is a question not easily settled, but if such were the case, the migration must have taken place before the cultivation of cereal crops or the smelting of iron ore was known to the Northern Asiatics, for no iron implements were found in America, and no cereal was found there that was known in the East, the only cereal cultivated in America being the Indian corn or maize, and this is clearly of indigenous origin.

It is, therefore, not necessary to consider further such a very distant connection, if such existed, between the extreme east and west.

There is, of course, the possibility of isolated drifts from Asia to America; several instances of Polynesians having drifted in their canoes almost incredible distances in the Pacific are on record, and derelict junks have been known to reach the coast of America; but the survivors of such drifts, although they may have introduced a new game or some slight modification of an existing art, are not likely to have affected very materially the development of American culture.

The waves of migration from north to south, due probably to pressure of population or search for supplies of food, must necessarily have been intermittent and irregular, and must have been

broken up by numerous cross currents due to natural obstacles. It seems natural to speak of a wave of migration, and to treat it as though it followed the laws governing a flow of water; but to make the simile more complete we must imagine not a flow of water, but of a fluid liable to marked chemical change due to its surroundings, which here may slowly crystallise into a stable form, and there may boil over with noticeable energy, redissolving adjacent crystals and mixing again with a neighbouring stream. There is no reason to suppose that this process had not been going on in America as long as it had in other parts of the world, but there we are often helped to understand the process by written or carved records, which go back for hundreds and even thousands of years, whereas in America written records are almost non-existent, and carved records are confined to a small area, and both are almost undecipherable.

In Mexico and Central America accepted tradition appears to begin with the arrival of the Toltecs, a branch of the Nahua race, and history with that of the later Nahua tribes, but as to who the people were whom the Toltecs found in possession of the country, tradition is silent.

The commonly accepted story is that the Toltecs, whose capital was at Tula, were a people of considerable civilisation, who, after imparting something of their culture to ruder Nahua hordes that followed them from the North, themselves migrated

to Guatemala and Yucatan, where they built the great temples and carved the monuments which have been so often described by modern travellers. I am not, however, myself able to accept this explanation of the facts known to us. The monuments and architectural remains of Guatemala and Yucatan are undoubtedly the work of the Mayas, who, although nearly related to the Nahuas, are admitted to be a distinct race, speaking a different language; and I am inclined to believe that the Maya race formerly inhabited a considerable portion of Central and Southern Mexico, and it is to it that we must give credit for Tula, Cholula and, possibly, Teotihuacan, all lying within Central Mexico, as well as for the highest culture ever attained by natives on the continent of North America.

Driven from their Mexican homes by the pressure of Nahua immigrants, they doubtless took refuge in the high lands of Chiapas and Guatemala, and along the banks of the Rivers Usumacinta and Motagua, and pressed on as far as the present frontier of Guatemala and Honduras; but it must be admitted that, so far, no account of this migration and settlement is known to us.

Once settled in Central America, the Mayas would have held a strong defensive position against Nahua invaders, for they were protected on the Gulf side by the intricate swamps and waterways which Cortés found so much difficulty in crossing on his march to Honduras, and on the land side

by the mountain ranges which rise abruptly to the east of the Isthmus of Tehuantepec. The passes through the great volcanic barrier which runs parallel to the Pacific Coast could have been easily defended, while a road was left open along the lowlands between the mountains and the sea, of which the Nahua hordes apparently availed themselves, for Nahua names and dialects are found as far east as Nicaragua.

Judging from the architectural remains and the sculptured stones, it may be safely assumed that it was in Central America that the Mayas reached the highest point of their culture, and that they there developed their peculiar script. No Maya hieroglyphic inscriptions have yet been found in Central Mexico, and it is only within the last few years that attention has been called to what appears to be a somewhat crude form of Maya script unearthed as far west as Monte Alban in the State of Oaxaca.

I am further inclined to believe, that after some centuries of peaceful development had elapsed, the Maya defence failed, and that the people were again driven from their homes by invaders from the North-west, and leaving Chiapas and Guatemala, took refuge in Yucatan, where they founded Chichén-Itzá, Uxmal and the numerous towns whose ruins may still be seen throughout the northern part of the peninsula. It is worthy of note that weapons of war are almost entirely absent from the Central American sculptures, and at Copan one of the most important sculptured figures is that of a woman,

whereas in Yucatan every man is depicted as a warrior with arms in his hands, and the only representation of a woman known to me is in a mural painting at Chichén-Itzá, where the women stand among the houses of a beleaguered town, apparently bewailing their fate, while the battle rages outside.

At the time of the Spanish conquest the highlands of Guatemala were held by tribes of the Maya Quiché race, who were probably descendants of the Mayas and their Nahua conquerors, and were of an entirely lower standard of culture than the pure Mayas.

Yucatan was still Maya, but the influence of its powerful Nahua neighbours was strongly felt, and civil wars had caused the destruction and abandonment of most of the old towns.

There is yet one Maya area which has so far not been mentioned, the land of the Huastecs around the mouth of the Rio Panuco (the river dividing the modern States of Vera Cruz and Tamaulipas). It seems probable that the Huastecs, and possibly also their neighbours the Totonacs, were the remnant of the Maya race left behind when the main body was driven to the south-east. If they were a Maya colony from the south, as has sometimes been asserted, they would certainly have brought with them the Maya script, but no Maya hieroglyphs have, so far as I know, ever been found in the Huastec country. If, however, they were a remnant left behind when the Mayas migrated to the south-east, we should not expect to find the

Maya script in their country, for if my assumption is correct, at the time of the migration that script had not yet been developed. It should be noted that Tula, the reputed capital of the Toltecs, stands on the head waters of the Rio Panuco, and it may be that if such people existed, on occupying Tula they acquired something of the Maya culture, and thus gained their reputation of great builders and the teachers of the later Nahua immigrants.

The exact reason for the disappearance of the earlier races who inhabited Mexico, and of the abandonment of the Central American cities, may never be known, but religious differences cannot be left out of the question, and one way of regarding the change is as the triumph of the ruthless and sanguinary War God Huitzilopochtli over the mild and civilising cult of Quetzalcoatl or Kukulcan. Were I asked to give definitely all my reasons in support of the foregoing statements, which differ very considerably from those made by such a recent authority as Mr. Payne in his history of the American people, I must own that I should be at a loss how to do so. However, I think it will be admitted by all students of the subject that we are a very long way indeed from having collected and sifted all the evidence procurable, and until the architecture, sculpture and other remains of the very numerous ruined towns which may be found throughout the country are more carefully studied and classified, and until the inscriptions have been deciphered, we must put up with such working

hypotheses as may best enable us to group such information as has already been obtained.

In my own case, a somewhat intimate acquaintance with the sculptures and ruined buildings both in Central America and Mexico has left impressions on my mind as to their relation to one another which it is not always easy to express in definite terms. In another place¹ I have given my reasons for believing that the ruined towns of Central America, and probably the majority of those of Yucatan, had been abandoned by their inhabitants long before the Spanish conquest, and consequently the Spaniards are not responsible for the amount of damage that is sometimes attributed to them.

In the story of Bernal Díaz, we shall meet with the Mayas in the early pages describing the discovery of Yucatan and the passage of the three expeditions along the coast of the peninsula, and then again we shall come in touch with them after the conquest of Mexico on Cortés' journey across the base of the peninsula to Honduras.

No attempt was made to subdue the Mayas until 1527, six years after the fall of Mexico, and such redoubtable warriors did they prove themselves to be that, although Francisco de Montejo landed his forces and marched right across the northern part of the peninsula, he was eventually obliged to retreat, and by 1535 every Spaniard was driven out of the country. It was not until 1547

¹ *A Glimpse at Guatemala.* John Murray, London, 1899.

that the Spaniards brought the Mayas into subjection.

To turn now to the time of the Spanish conquest we find Mexico peopled by a number of different tribes more or less nearly alike in habits and customs, and not differing greatly from each other in race, but speaking different languages and dialects. Some of these peoples or tribes, such as the Zapotecs and Mixtecs of Oaxaca and the Tarascos of Michoacan, extended over a considerable extent of country; they were not however homogeneous nations acting under the direction of one chief or of a governing council. The township or *pueblo* appears to have been the unit of society, and the *pueblos* of the same race and speech acted together when compelled by necessity to do so, as it will be seen that the Tlaxcalans acted together owing to the continued hostility of the Mexicans. The main factor in the situation at the time when the Spaniards landed was the dominance of the *Pueblo* of Tenochtitlan or Mexico.

The Mexicans or Aztecs were a people of Nahua race who, after many years of wandering on their way from the North, finally settled in the high plain, or valley, which still retains their name. For some years they appear to have been almost enslaved by other tribes of the Nahua race, who had already settled in the valley, and it was not until the fourteenth century that they established their home on the two small muddy islands of Tlatelulco and Tenochtitlan in the Great Lake.

By their own warlike prowess and diplomatic alliances with neighbouring towns they gradually increased in power until they gained the hegemony of the tribes and peoples of the valley, and then carried their warlike enterprises into distant parts of the country, even as far as Tabasco and Guatemala. In fact, they became the head of a military and predatory empire, dependent for their food, as well as their wealth, on tribute drawn from subject tribes and races. They were not a civilising power, and as long as the tribute was paid, they did not appear to concern themselves with the improvement of the local government of their dependencies. The education of the sons and daughters of the upper classes was carefully attended to under the direction of the priesthood, but, as was only natural in a society so constituted, soldierly qualities were those most valued in the men, and the highest reward went to those who showed the greatest personal bravery in battle.

As the field of tribute extended, and wealth accumulated, the office of the principal *Cacique*¹ of Mexico, who was also the natural leader of their armies, rose in importance and dignity; and we learn from the narrative that Montezuma, who was the ninth in succession of the great *Caciques* of Mexico, was treated by his people with more than royal ceremonial.

¹ *Cacique* is the term usually employed by the Spaniards as equivalent to chief or king. It is not a Mexican but a Cuban word.

The arms and armour of all the Indian tribes appear to have been nearly alike, and they are often described by the conquerors, and are shown in the native picture writings that have come down to us. They are the

Macana or *Maquahuitl*, called by the Spaniards a sword, a flat blade of wood three to four feet long, and three inches broad, with a groove along either edge, into which sharp-edged pieces of flint or obsidian were inserted, and firmly fixed with some adhesive compound.

Bows and stone-tipped *arrows*.

Slings.

Long Spears with heads of stone or copper.

Javelins made of wood with points hardened in the fire (*varas tostadas*). These javelins, which were much dreaded by the Spaniards, were hurled from an *Atlatl* or throwing stick (*tiradera*).

It is worth noting that no bows or arrows are shown on any of the Maya sculptures, but in the stone carvings in Yucatan (on which weapons are always prominent) all the men are represented as armed with short spears or javelins and an *Atlatl*.

It may be that bows and arrows were unknown to the Mayas until they were introduced by the Nahua races.¹

¹ I cannot call to mind any Mexican or Central American sculpture showing bows and arrows. Such representations appear to be confined to the *lienzos* (painted cloths) and picture writings, but I am not now able to verify this statement.

The defensive armour consisted of padded quilted cotton worn on the arms or body—a protection which the Spaniards themselves hastened to adopt—and shields, usually round shields made of wicker and covered with hide or other material, and often beautifully decorated. Sometimes they were oblong in shape, and large enough to cover the whole body; these latter could be folded up when not in use. Head-dresses or helmets, usually in the form of grotesque animals' heads, were used by the Chieftains, and feathers were freely used in decoration, both in the form of beautiful feather patterns worked into cotton fabrics or as *penuchos*, lofty head-dresses of feathers supported on a light wood or reed framework.

A Mexican army in battle array must have been both a beautiful and imposing spectacle, a blaze of colour and barbaric splendour.

This is not the place to discuss fully the moral aspects of the Conquest, but in considering the conduct of the *Conquistadores* and their leader we must always keep in mind the traditions that influenced them and the laxity of the moral code of the time in which they lived. Some of the Spaniards had served in Italy under Gonsalvo de Córdoba, *el gran Capitan*, and may have seen Cæsar Borgia himself—what can we expect from such associations? All of them were adventurers seeking for wealth; some, no doubt, were free-booting vagabonds who would have been a pest in any community. The wonder of it all is that

Cortés, with no authority from the Crown and only a few ardent partizans to support him, could have kept the control of such a company for so long. He dared to cheat these men out of part of their hard-earned spoil that he might have gold with which to bribe the leaders of the force which he must always have known would be sent in pursuit of him. When the city fell he allowed Guatémoc to be tortured to force him to disclose the supposed secret of where his treasure was hidden—could even his authority have prevented it? It would have been a splendid act of heroism had he made the attempt; but we must think of the disappointed men around him, with the terrible strain of the siege suddenly relaxed, and all their hopes of riches dissipated. Then there is the greatest blot of all on Cortés' career, the execution of Guatémoc during the march to Honduras; no one can help feeling that it was wrong, but there is nothing to show that the reason advanced by Cortés was not a good one. It was only too probable that the Mexicans, longing to return to their homes, were plotting against the Spaniards to effect it. Had such a plot been successful the Spaniards were inevitably lost. That Cortés was not in a state of mind propitious to the careful weighing of evidence may at once be admitted; a long, dangerous and toilsome march through a tropical forest is not conducive to unruffled temper. However, the execution of Guatémoc, if it was an error, may have been more distinctly an error than a crime.

.

From our point of view the Spaniards were cruel and ruthless enough; an army of unbaptized Indians was no more to them than a herd of swine, but their callous cruelty can be no more surprising to us than their childlike belief in the miraculous power of the images and crosses which they substituted for the native idols, or their firm belief in the teaching of their Church, which did not admit that an Indian had the rights of a human being until he was baptized.

Neither in the sixteenth nor the twentieth century would troops that have seen their companions-in-arms captured and led to execution to grace the festival of a heathen god, and afford material for a cannibal feast, be likely to treat their enemies with much consideration, but the fate of the vanquished Mexicans was humane to what it would have been had the victors been Tlaxcalans or other tribes of their own race and religion.

These concluding remarks are not made with the intention of whitewashing the character of the *Conquistadores*, their faults are sufficiently evident, but to impress on the reader the necessity of taking all the factors of the case into consideration when forming a judgment.

The bravery of the Indians was magnificent, and their courage and endurance during the last days of the siege of Mexico is unrivalled, but Bernal Díaz's narrative is written from the Spanish point of view, and it is on the conduct of the Spaniards alone that I feel the need of making any comment.

The character of Bernal Díaz himself shows clearly enough in his story ; it is that of a lovable old soldier such as novelists have delighted to portray in Napoleon's "Old Guard," simple, enduring, splendidly courageous and unaffectedly vain.

Censure without stint has been heaped on Cortés and his followers for their treatment of the Indians, but no one has ever ventured to question the spirit and resource of that great leader nor the daring courage and endurance shown both by him and his followers.

I gladly take this opportunity of thanking Don Genaro García for permission to make the Translation from his Edition of the *True History* and for his unfailing courtesy and encouragement during the progress of the work, and of thanking Don José Romero of the Mexican Foreign Office for the loan of books of reference from his valuable collection and for other acts of kindness.

NOTE ON SPELLING, ETC.

GREAT difficulty has arisen over the spelling of the Indian names of persons and places. In the original text a native name has often several variants, and each one of these may differ from the more generally-accepted form.

In the Translation a purely arbitrary course has been adopted, but it is one which will probably prove more acceptable to the general reader. Such words as Montezuma (Motecuhzoma) and Huichilobos (Huitzilopochtli) are spelt as Bernal Díaz usually spells them; others, such as Guaçacalco, which occurs in the text in at least three different forms, has in the Translation always been given in the more generally-accepted form of Coatzacoalcos.

At the end of each volume a list of names is printed, arranged alphabetically, showing the variants in the original text, the usually-accepted forms, the spelling of place-names generally found in modern maps, and when possible the form now used by modern Maya and Nahuatl scholars.

Spanish names are always printed in the Translation in the generally-accepted forms: thus Xpvl de Oli of the text is printed as Cristóbal de Olid. The names of certain Spanish offices, such as Alguacil, Regidor, are retained in the Translation, as well as the "Fraile (or Padre) de la Merced" for the "Friar of the Order of Mercy," but all foreign words used in the Translation are printed in italics when they first occur, and are referred to in foot-notes, and a Glossary is given at the end of each volume.

Square brackets [] enclose words inserted by the translator.

Notes to the Mexican Edition of 1904, edited by Sr Don Genaro García, are marked "G. G."

The 214 Chapters have been divided into Books with sub-headings by the Translator for convenience of reference. No such division or sub-headings exist in the original Manuscript or in Sr García's Mexican Edition.

ITINERARY.

THE EXPEDITION UNDER FRANCISCO HERNÁNDEZ DE CÓRDOVA.

	Santiago de Cuba.
8th Feb., 1517	. Axaruco (Jaruco).
	Gran Cairo, Yucatan (near Cape Catoche).
Sunday, day of San Lázaro.	Campeche (San Lázaro).
	Chanpotón (or Potonchan).
(Return Voyage)	. Estero de los Lagartos.
	Florida.
	Los Martires—The Shoals of the Martyrs.
	Puerto de Carenas (the modern Havana).

THE EXPEDITION UNDER JUAN DE GRIJALVA.

	Santiago de Cuba.	
8th April, 1518	. Matanzas . . .	18 April, 1518.
	<i>Puerto de Carenas (Havana)</i>	22 April, 1518.
	<i>Cape San Anton</i> . . .	1 May.
The day of Santa Cruz, 3rd May.	Cozumel (Santa Cruz) . . .	3-11 May.
	<i>Bahía de la Ascencion</i> . . .	13-16 May.
	Chanpotón	25-28 May.
	Boca de Términos (Puerto Descado or P. Real).	31 May to 5 June.
	Rio de Grijalva (Tabasco) . . .	7-11 June.
	Sighted Ayagualulco (La Rambla).	
	Sighted Rio de Tonalá (San Anton).	
	Sighted Rio de Coatzacoalcos.	
	Sighted Sierra de San Martin.	
	Rio de Papaloapan (Rio de Alvarado) and Tlacotalpan.	
	Rio de Banderas (Rio Jamapa)	
	Sighted Isla Blanca and Isla Verde.	
	Isla de Sacrificios	17 June.

St. John's day, 24th June.	San Juan de Ulua . . .	18-24 June.
	Sighted the Sierra de Tuxpan.	
	Rio de Canoas (R. Tanguijo) (Cape Rojo).	28 June.
Return Voyage .	Sighted Rio de Coatzacoalcos	9 July.
	Rio de Tonalá (San Anton) .	12-20 July.
	<i>Puerto de Términos</i> . . .	17-22 August.
	<i>Puerto Deseado</i> . . .	1 September.
	<i>Small island near Champotón</i>	3 September.
	<i>Campeche</i> . . .	5-8 September.
	<i>Bajos de Sisal (?)</i> . . .	11-12 September.
	<i>Rio de Lagartos</i> . . .	14-15 September.
	<i>Conil near Cape Catoche</i> .	21 September.
	<i>Sighted Cuba</i> . . .	29 September.
	<i>Puerto de Carenas (Havana)</i>	30 September.
	<i>Jaruco</i> . . .	4 October.
	<i>Santiago de Cuba</i> . . .	15 November. ¹

EXPEDITION UNDER HERNANDO CORTÉS.

	Santiago de Cuba . . .	18th Nov., 1518.
	Sailed from Trinidad . . .	January, 1519.
10th Feb., 1519	Sailed from (San Cristóbal?) de Havana on the South Coast near Batabano.	10th Feb., 1519.
	Sailed from Cape San Anton . .	11th Feb., 1519.
	Sailed from Cozumel . . .	5th March.
	Sailed from Punta de las Mujeres	6th March.
	Returned to Cozumel.	
4th March .	Sailed from Cozumel . . .	13th March.
	Boca de Términos.	
12th March ² .	Arrived at Rio de Grijalva or Tabasco.	22nd March.
25th March, Lady Day.	Battle of Cintla . . .	25th March.
Palm Sunday .	Sailed from Santa Maria de la Victoria.	18th April.
Holy Thursday	Arrived at San Juan de Ulua . .	21st April, Holy Thursday.

In the above Itineraries the dates given by Bernal Díaz, which are few in number, are placed on the left.

¹ See Padre Agustin Rivera, *Anales Mexicanos*, vol. i, p. 47.

² This is clearly an error.

Orozco y Berra (*Hist. Antigua*, vol. iv) has compiled an account of the voyage, with dates, from many sources, including "The Itinerario," Oviedo, Las Casas, Herrera, Gomara, etc. These dates will be found on the right-hand column.

Places not mentioned by Bernal Díaz as stopping-places of the expedition are printed in italics.



[PREFACE.]

I HAVE observed that the most celebrated chroniclers before they begin to write their histories, first set forth a prologue and preface with the argument expressed in lofty rhetoric in order to give lustre and repute to their statements, so that the studious readers who peruse them may partake of their melody and flavour. But I, being no Latin scholar, dare not venture on such a preamble or prologue, for in order properly to extol the adventures which we met with and the heroic deeds we accomplished during the Conquest of New Spain and its provinces in the company of that valiant and doughty Captain, Don Hernando Cortés (who later on, on account of his heroic deeds, was made Marqués del Valle¹) there would be needed an eloquence and rhetoric far beyond my powers. That which I have myself seen and the fighting I have gone through, with the help of God I will describe, quite simply, as a fair eye witness without twisting events one way or another. I am now an old man, over eighty-four years of age, and I have lost my sight and hearing, and, as luck would have it, I have gained nothing of value to leave to my children and descendants, but this my true

¹ Created Marqués del Valle de Guajaca (Oaxaca) by the Emperor Charles V. The *Cedula* is dated Barcelona, 6th July, 1529.

story, and they will presently find out what a wonderful story it is.

I will do no more now than give evidence of my nationality and birthplace, and note the year in which I set out from Castille and the names of the captains in whose company I went as a soldier, and state where I am now settled and have my home.

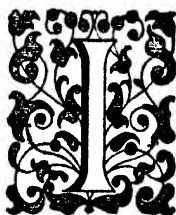


BOOK I.—THE DISCOVERY.

THE EXPEDITION UNDER FRANCISCO HERNÁNDEZ DE CÓRDOVA,

CHAPTER I.

The beginning of the story.



BERNAL DÍAZ DEL CASTILLO, citizen and Regidor of the most loyal city of Santiago de Guatemala, one of the first discoverers and conquerors of New Spain and its provinces, and the Cape of Honduras and all that lies within that land, a Native of the very noble and distinguished town of Medina del Campo, and the son of its former *Regidor*, Francisco Díaz del Castillo, who was also called "The graceful," (may his soul rest in glory), speak about that which concerns myself and all the true conquerors my companions who served His Majesty by discovering, conquering, pacifying and settling most of the provinces of New Spain, and that it is one of the best countries yet discovered in the New World, we found out by our own efforts without His Majesty knowing anything about it.

I also speak here in reply to all that has been said and written by persons who themselves knowing nothing, have received no true account from others of what really took place, but who nevertheless now put forward any statements that happen to suit their fancy. As there is no account of our many and remarkable services such as their merits deserve * * * * * these indifferent story-tellers are now unwilling that we should receive the recompense and * * * * * which His Majesty has ordered his Governors and Viceroys to afford us.

Apart from these reasons such deeds as those I am going on to describe, cannot be forgotten, and the truth about them will be proved afresh, but, as in the books which have been written on the subject the truth has so often been perverted, [I write this history] so that when tales are told of daring deeds our fame shall not suffer, and that on account of such brilliant adventures our names may be placed among the most famous, for we have run the risk of death and wounds, and have suffered a thousand other miseries, venturing our lives in discovering lands about which nothing whatever was known, battling by day and by night with a host of doughty warriors, at so great a distance from Castille that no aid or assistance could reach us, save the only true help, namely the loving kindness of our Lord God whom it has pleased that we should conquer New Spain and the far-famed city of Tenochtitlan,¹ Mexico, for so it is called, and many other cities and provinces which are too numerous for me to name. As soon as we had the country pacified and settled by Spaniards, we thought it to be our duty as good and loyal subjects of His Majesty, with much respect for our King and natural Lord, to hand the country over to him. With that

¹ Tenuztitlan in the original.

intent we sent our Ambassadors to Castille and thence to Flanders where his Majesty at that time held his Court. I shall also tell about all the good results that came of it, and about the large number of souls which have been saved, and are daily being saved, by conversion to the faith, all of which souls were formerly lost in Hell. In addition to this holy work, attention will be called to the great treasure which we sent as a present to his Majesty, and that which has been sent and is being sent daily and is in the form of the Royal Fifths,¹ as well as in the large amounts carried off by many persons of all classes. I shall tell in this story who was the first discoverer of the province of Yucatan, and how we went to the discovery of New Spain and who were the Captains and soldiers who conquered and settled it and many other things which happened during the conquest, which are worth knowing and should not be forgotten; all this I shall relate as briefly as possible, and above all with the assured truth of an eye witness.

²If I were to remember and recount one by one the heroic [deeds] which we, one and all of us valiant captains and brave [soldiers] accomplished, from the beginning to the end of the conquest, reciting each deed as it deserved, it would, indeed, be a great [undertaking,] and would need a very famous historian [to carry it out] with greater eloquence and style than my poor words [can compass.] As later on * * * * when I was present and saw and understood, and I will call to mind * * * * that repeats * * * * imposed as a duty—and delicate style and I * * * * I will write it with God's

¹ The tax on all bullion and other treasure paid to the Crown.

² In the following passages many of the words of the Manuscript are rubbed and worn out. When the meaning is obvious the missing words are supplied in brackets in the translation. When the meaning is not clear the spaces are marked with asterisks.

help with honest truth * * * * of the wise elders who say that a good style * * * * is to tell the truth and * * * * [not] to exaggerate and flatter * * * * others, especially in a narrative like this * * * * would die of it, and because I am no latin scholar and do not understand the art * * * * I will not treat of it, for I say I understand [only] the battles and pacifications where I was myself present, for I was one of the first [to set out] from Cuba in the company of a Captain named Francisco [Hernández de Córdova] and we were accompanied on that voyage by one hundred and ten soldiers, we explored * * * * they stopped (?) at the first place at which one landed which is called Cape [Catoche and at] a town further on called Chanpoton more than half of us [were killed and] the Captain received ten arrow wounds and all the rest of us soldiers got two [arrow wounds and the Indians] a[tta]ck]ing us with such skill we were obliged, with the greatest difficulty to return to the Island [of Cuba whence] we had set out with the fleet, and the captain died almost as soon as we landed, and of the one hundred and ten soldiers who set out with us, fifty-seven were left behind, dead.

After this first warlike expedition, I set out a second time from this same Island of Cuba under another captain, named Juan de Grijalva, and we again had great warlike encounters with these same Indians of the *Pueblo* of Chanpoton, and in this second battle many of our soldiers were killed. From that *Pueblo* we went on along the coast, exploring, until we arrived at New Spain and then kept on our way until we reached the province of Panuco. Then a second time we had to turn back to the Island of Cuba, baffled and exhausted both from hunger and thirst, and from other reasons which I will set forth in the chapter which treats of this expedition.

To go back to my story ; I set out for the third time with the daring and valiant captain Don Hernando Cortés, who later on was made Marqués del Valle and received other titles of honour. I repeat that no other captain or soldier went to New Spain three times in succession on one expedition after another as I did, so that I am the earliest discoverer and conqueror who has ever lived or is now living in New Spain. Although many soldiers went twice on voyages of discovery, the first time with Juan de Grijalva whom I have already mentioned, and the second time with the gallant captain Cortés, yet they never went three times in succession. If they went the first time with Francisco Hernández de Córdova, they did not go the second time with Grijalva, nor the third time with the valiant Cortés. God has been pleased to preserve me through many risks of death, both during this laborious discovery, and in the very bloody Mexican wars (and I give God many thanks for it), in order that I may tell and declare the events that happened in those wars, so that studious readers may give them attention and thought.

I was twenty-four years old when Diego Velásquez, the Governor of the Island of Cuba, who was my kinsman, promised to give me some Indians as soon as there were any available, but I did not care to be kept waiting until this should happen. I always had a zeal for soldiering, as it is becoming that a man should have, both in order to serve God and the king and to endeavour to gain renown, and as being such a life that honourable men should seek, and I gradually put from my mind the death of my companions who were killed in those times and the wounds that I myself received, and the fatigue and hardship I endured and which all must endure who set out to discover new lands, and, being as we were, but a small company, dare to enter into great towns swarming with hostile warriors. I myself was always at the front and never

descended to the many vices prevalent in the island of Cuba, as will be clearly seen in the course of this story.

In the year fifteen hundred and fourteen, I came from Castille and began my career as a soldier on Tierra-firme,¹ then went on to the discovery of Yucatan and New Spain, and as my forefathers, my father and my brother had always been servants of the crown and of the Catholic kings of glorious memory Don Fernando and Doña Ysabel, I wished to be something like them.

In the year 1514, as I have already said, there came out as Governor of Tierra-firme, a gentleman named Pedrías Dávila.² I agreed to go with him to his Government and the country conquered by him. So as to shorten the story, I will not relate what happened on the voyage, more than to say sometimes with good weather and other times with bad weather, we arrived at Nombre de Dios, for so it was named.

Some three or four months after the settlement was formed, there came a pestilence from which many soldiers died, and in addition to this, all the rest of us fell ill and suffered from bad ulcers on the legs. Then disputes arose between the Governor and a nobleman named Vasco Núñez de Balboa, the captain, who had conquered that province, to whom Pedrías Dávila had given his daughter (Doña somebody Arias de Peñalosa) in marriage. But it seems that after marriage, he grew suspicious of his son-in-law, believing that he would rise in rebellion and lead a body of soldiers towards the South Sea, so he gave orders that Balboa should have his throat cut and certain of the soldiers should be punished.

As we were witnesses of what I have related, and of other revolts among the captains, and as the news reached

¹ Tierra-firme=the Spanish Main.

² Pedro Arias de Ávila.

us that the Island of Cuba had lately been conquered and settled, and that a gentleman named Diego Velásquez, a native of Cuellar, who has already been mentioned by me, had been made Governor of the Island, some of us gentlemen and persons of quality, who had come out with Pedrarias Dávila, made up our minds to ask him to give us permission to go to Cuba, and he willingly did so, as he had no need of all the soldiers he had brought with him from Castille, as there was no one left to conquer. Indeed the country under his rule is small and thinly peopled, and his son-in-law Vasco Nuñez de Balboa had already conquered it and ensured peace.

As soon as leave was granted we embarked in a good ship and with fair weather reached the Island of Cuba. On landing we went at once to pay our respects to the Governor, who was pleased at our coming, and promised to give us Indians as soon as there were any to spare.

When three years had gone by, counting both the time we were in Tierra-firme and that which we had passed in the Island of Cuba, and it became evident that we were merely wasting our time, one hundred and ten of us got together, most of us comrades who had come from Tierra-firme, and the other Spaniards of Cuba who had had no Indians assigned to them, and we made an agreement with a gentleman named Francisco Hernández de Córdova,¹ whose name I have already mentioned, a rich man who owned an Indian Pueblo in the Island, that he should be our leader, for he was well fitted for the post, and that we should try our fortune in seeking and exploring new lands where we might find employment.

With this object in view, we purchased three ships, two

¹ The three partners in this expedition were Francisco Hernández de Córdova, Lope Ochoa de Caicedo and Cristóval Morante. (See letter from the Municipality of Vera Cruz, dated 10th July, 1519. Usually known as Cortés' first letter.)

of them of good capacity, and the third, a bark, bought on credit from the Governor, Diego Velásquez, on the condition that all of us soldiers should go in the three vessels to some islands lying between Cuba and Honduras, which are now called the Islands of the Guanajes,¹ and make war on the natives and load the vessels with Indians, as slaves, with which to pay him for his bark. However, as we soldiers knew that what Diego Velásquez asked of us was not just, we answered that it was neither in accordance with the law of God nor of the king, that we should make free men slaves. When he saw that we had made up our minds, he said that our plan to go and discover new countries was better than his, and he helped us in providing food for our voyage. Certain inquisitive gentlemen have asked me why I have written down these words which Diego Velásquez uttered about selling us the ship, and they say they have an ugly look and should not have been inserted in this history. I reply that I write them here because it is desirable on account of the law suits which Diego Velásquez and the Bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosano, whose name is Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca, brought against us.

To return to my story, we now found ourselves with three ships stored with Cassava² bread, which is made from a root, and we bought some pigs which cost three dollars apiece, for in those days there were neither sheep nor cattle in the Island of Cuba, for it was only beginning to be settled, and we added a supply of oil, and bought beads and other things of small value to be used for barter. We then sought out three pilots, of whom the chief, who took charge of the fleet, was called Anton de Alaminos a native of Palos, the second came from Triana

¹ Roatan, Bonacca, etc. Islands near the coast of Honduras.

² Cassava bread. Made from the root of *Manihoc utilissima*.

and was named Camacho, and the third was Juan Alvarez "el Manquillo"¹ from Huelva. We also engaged the necessary number of sailors and procured the best supply that we could afford of ropes, cordage, cables, and anchors, and casks for water and other things needed for the voyage, and this all to our own cost and regret.

When all the soldiers were mustered, we set out for a port which in the Indian language is called Axaruco,² on the North coast, eight leagues from a town named San Cristóbal, which was then inhabited and which two years later was moved to the present site of Havana. In order that our voyage should proceed on right principles we wished to take with us a priest named Alonso González who was then living in the said town of San Cristóbal, and he agreed to come with us. We also chose for the office of *Veedor*,³ (in his Majesty's name), a soldier named Bernaldino Yñiguez, a native of Santo Domingo de la Calzada, so that if God willed that we should come on rich lands, or people who possessed gold or silver or pearls or any other kind of treasure, there should be a responsible person to guard the Royal Fifth.

After all was arranged and we had heard Mass, we commended ourselves to God our Lord, and to Our Lady, the sainted Virgin Mary, His blessed Mother, and set out on our voyage in the way I will now relate.

¹ El Manquillo = the little maimed or one-handed man.

² Jaruco is shown on modern maps about twelve miles to the east of the present city of Havana.

The name of Havana at this time appears to have applied to the district.

San Cristóbal was on the south coast of the Island, which is here about eight leagues across from sea to sea.

³ *Veedor* (obsolete) = overseer, caterer, official in charge of the stores.

CHAPTER II.

How we discovered the Province of Yucatan.

ON the eighth day of the month of February in the year fifteen hundred and seventeen, we left the Havana from the port of Axaruco, which is on the North coast, and in twelve days we doubled Cape San Antonio, which is also called in the Island of Cuba the land of the Guanahataveyes, who are Indians like savages. When we had passed this Cape we were in the open sea and trusting to luck we steered towards the setting sun, knowing nothing of the depth of water, nor of the currents, nor of the winds which usually prevail in that latitude, so we ran great risk of our lives, then a storm struck us which lasted two days and two nights, and raged with such strength that we were nearly lost. When the weather moderated, we kept on our course, and twenty-one days after leaving port, we sighted land, at which we rejoiced greatly and gave thanks to God. This land had never been discovered before and no report of it had reached us. From the ships we could see a large town standing back about two leagues from the coast, and as we had never seen such a large town in the Island of Cuba nor in Hispaniola, we named it the Great Cairo.

We arranged that the two vessels which drew the least water should go in as near as possible to the Coast, to examine the land and see if there was an anchorage near the shore. On the morning of the 4th March, we saw ten large canoes, called *piraguas*, full of Indians from the town, approaching us with oars and sails. The canoes were large ones made like hollow troughs cleverly cut out from huge single logs, and many of them would hold forty Indians.

To go back to my story; the Indians in the ten canoes

came close to our ships, and we made signs of peace to them, beckoning with our hands and waving our cloaks to induce them to come and speak to us, although at that time we had no interpreters who could speak the languages of Yucatan and Mexico. They approached quite fearlessly and more than thirty of them came on board the flagship, and we gave them each a present of a string of green beads, and they passed some time examining the ships. The chief man among them, who was a *Cacique*, made signs to us that they wished to embark in their canoes and return to their town, and that they would come back again another day with more canoes in which we could go ashore.

These Indians were clothed in cotton shirts made like jackets, and covered their persons with a narrow cloth which they call *masteles*, and they seemed to us a people superior to the Cubans, for the Cuban Indians go about naked, only the women wearing a cloth reaching to the thighs, which cloths they call *naguas*.¹

To return to my story; the next morning the same *Cacique* returned to the ships and brought twelve large canoes, which I have already said are called *piraguas*, with Indian rowers, and with a cheerful face and every appearance of friendliness, made signs that we should go to his town, where they would feed us and supply all our needs, and that in those canoes of his we could land.

He kept on saying in his language, "*cones catoche*", "*cones catoche*", which means "come to my houses", and for that reason we called the land Cape Catoche, and it is still so named on the charts.

When our captain and the soldiers saw the friendly

¹ Why the author should have written "que llaman naguas" is not clear. Enaguas or naguas is the Spanish, not the Cuban, word for the skirt, petticoat or upper skirt of a woman's dress.

overtures the chief was making to us, we agreed to lower the boats from our ships, and in the vessel of least draught, and in the twelve canoes, to go ashore all together, and because we saw that the shore was crowded with Indians from the town, we arranged to land all of us at the same moment. When the Cacique saw us all on shore, but showing no intention of going to his town, he again made signs to our captain that we should go with him to his houses, and he showed such evidence of peace and good-will, that our captain asked our advice whether we should go on or no, and most of the soldiers were of opinion that with the precaution of taking all our arms with us we should go on, and we took with us fifteen crossbows and ten muskets, so with the Cacique as our guide, we began our march along the road, accompanied by many Indians.

We moved on in this way until we approached some brush-covered hillocks, when the Cacique began to shout and call out to some squadrons of warriors who were lying in ambush ready to fall upon us and kill us. On hearing the Cacique's shouts, the warriors attacked us in great haste and fury, and began to shoot with such skill that the first flight of arrows wounded fifteen soldiers.

These warriors wore armour made of cotton reaching to the knees and carried lances and shields, bows and arrows, slings and many stones.

After the flight of arrows, the warriors, with their feathered crests waving, attacked us hand to hand, and hurling their lances with all their might they did us much damage. However, thank God, we soon put them to flight when they felt the sharp edge of our swords, and the effect of our guns and crossbows, and fifteen of them fell dead.

A short distance ahead of the place where they attacked us, was a small *plaza* with three houses built of masonry,

which served as *Cues*¹ and oratories.² These houses contained many pottery Idols, some with the faces of demons and others with women's faces, and there were others of evil figures of Indians who appeared to be committing sodomy one with another.

Within the houses were some small wooden chests, and in them were some other Idols, and some little discs made partly of gold but more than half of copper, and some necklaces and three diadems, and other small objects in the form of fish and others like the ducks of the country, all made of inferior gold.

When we had seen the gold and the houses of masonry, we felt well content at having discovered such a country, for at that time Peru was unknown, indeed, it was not discovered until twenty years later.

While we were fighting with the Indians, the priest González had accompanied us, and he took charge of the chests and the gold, and the Idols, and carried them to the ship. In these skirmishes we took two Indians prisoners, and later on, when they were baptized, one was named Julian and the other Melchior, both of them were cross-eyed. When the fight was over we returned to our ships, and went on exploring along the coast towards the setting sun, we set sail as soon as the wounded were cared for, and what else happened I will tell later on.

¹ *Cue* is the name commonly applied to the Indian shrines or temples, usually small buildings raised on pyramidal foundations. It is not a Maya or Mexican word, but one picked up by the Spaniards in the Antilles.

² It should be noted that, although the Spaniards had now been in America for twenty-four years and had explored the Islands and the coast of the mainland from the mouth of the Orinoco to the Bay of Honduras, and part of the coast of Florida, this was the first time they had seen houses and temples built of stone; and with the exception of the crew of a canoe which Columbus met during his fourth voyage near the Islands of the Guanajes off the coast of Honduras, this was the first meeting of the Spaniards with any of the more civilised races of America.

CHAPTER III.

How we coasted along towards the west, discovering capes and deep water, roadsteads and reefs.

BELIEVING this land to be an Island, as the Pilot, Anton de Alaminos, had assured us that it was, we travelled with the greatest caution, sailing only by day and anchoring by night. After voyaging in this manner for fifteen days, we descried from the ship, what appeared to be a large town near to a great bay or creek, and we thought that there might be a river or stream there, where we could provide ourselves with water of which we had great need, because the casks and other vessels which we had brought with us, were not watertight. It was because our fleet was manned by poor men who had not money enough to purchase good casks and cables, that the water ran short. We had to land near the town, and as it was Sunday, the day of San Lázaro, we gave the town that name, and so it is marked on the charts, but its proper Indian name is Campeche.

In order that we could all of us land at the same time, we agreed to approach the shore in the smallest of the vessels, and in the three boats, with all our arms ready, so as not to be caught as we had been at Cape Catoche.

In these roadsteads and bays, the water shallows very considerably at low tide, so that we had to leave our ships anchored more than a league from the shore.

We went ashore near the town where there was a pool of good water, used by the people of the place for drinking water, for as far as we had seen there were no rivers in this country. We landed the casks, intending to fill them with water, and return to our ships. When the casks were full, and we were ready to embark, a company of about fifty Indians, clad in good cotton mantles, came out in a peace-

ful manner from the town. From their appearance we believed them to be Caciques, and they asked us by signs what it was we were looking for, and we gave them to understand that we had come for water, and wished to return at once to our ships. They then made signs with their hands to find out whether we came from the direction of the sunrise, repeating the word "Castilan" "Castilan" and we did not understand what they meant by Castilan. They then asked us by signs to go with them to their town, and we took council together as to what we should do, and decided to go with them, keeping well on the alert and in good formation.

They led us to some large houses very well built of masonry, which were the Temples of their Idols, and on the walls were figured the bodies of many great serpents and snakes and other pictures of evil-looking Idols. These walls surrounded a sort of Altar covered with clotted blood. On the other side of the Idols were symbols like crosses, and all were coloured. At all this we stood wondering, as they were things never seen or heard of before.

It seemed as though certain Indians had just offered sacrifices to their Idols so as to ensure victory over us. However, many Indian women moved about us, laughing, and with every appearance of good will, but the Indians gathered in such numbers that we began to fear that there might be some trap set for us as at Catoche. While this was happening, many other Indians approached us, wearing very ragged mantles and carrying dry reeds, which they deposited upon the plain, and behind them came two squadrons of Indian archers in cotton armour, carrying lances and shields, slings and stones, and each captain drew up his squadron at a short distance from where we stood. At that moment, there sallied from another house, which was an oratory of their Idols, ten

Indians clad in long white cotton cloaks, reaching to their feet, and with their long hair reeking with blood, and so matted together, that it could never be parted or even combed out again, unless it were cut. These were the priests of the Idols, who in New Spain are commonly called *papas* and such I shall call them hereafter. These priests brought us incense of a sort of resin which they call *copal*, and with pottery braziers full of live coals, they began to fumigate us, and by signs they made us understand that we should quit their land before the firewood which they had piled up there should burn out, otherwise they would attack us and kill us. After ordering fire to be put to the reeds, the priests withdrew without further speech. Then the warriors who were drawn up in battle array began to whistle and sound their trumpets and drums. When we perceived their menacing appearance and saw great squadrons of Indians bearing down on us we remembered that we had not yet recovered from the wounds received at Cape Catoche, and had been obliged to throw overboard the bodies of two soldiers who had died, and fear fell on us, so we determined to retreat to the coast in good order, and began to march along the shore towards a large rock which rose out of the sea, while the boats and the small bark laden with the water casks coasted along close in shore. We had not dared to embark near the town where we had landed, on account of the great press of Indians, for we felt sure they would attack us as we tried to get in the boats. As soon as we had embarked and got the casks on board the ships, we sailed on for six days and nights in good weather, then we were struck by a *norther* which is a foul wind on that coast and it lasted four days and nights, and so strong was the storm that it nearly drove us ashore, so that we had to drop anchor, but we broke two cables, and one ship began to drag her anchor. Ah! the danger was terrible, for if

our last cable had given way we should have been driven ashore to destruction, but thank God we were able to ease the strain on the cable by lashing it with pieces of rope and hawsers, and at last the weather moderated. Then we kept on our course along the coast, going ashore whenever we were able to do so to get water, for, as I have already said, the casks we carried were not only leaky, but were gaping open, and we could not depend upon them, and we hoped that by keeping near the coast we should be able to find water, whenever we landed, either in pools or by digging for it.

As we were sailing along on our course, we came in sight of a town, and about a league on the near side of it, there was a bay which looked as though it had a river or stream running into it; so we determined to anchor. On this coast the tide runs out so far that there is danger of the ships being stranded, so for fear of this we dropped anchor at the distance of a league from the shore, and we landed in that bay from the vessel of least draught and from the boats, carrying all our casks along with us to fill them with water. We landed soon after mid-day, well armed with crossbows and guns. This landing place was about a league from the town, near to some pools of water, and maize plantations, and a few small houses built of masonry. The town is called Potonchan.¹

¹ This town is called both Potonchan and Chanpoton by Bernal Díaz, and Chanpoton in the "Itinirario" and in the Letter from the Municipality of Vera Cruz to Chas. V. In modern maps it is called Champoton. There is a further difficulty about the name of this town, because the town at the mouth of the Río de Grijalva (Sta. Maria de la Victoria) was also called Potonchon or Potonchan. In the "Relacion de la Villa de Santa Maria de la Victoria" (1579), printed in the Documentos Ineditos, Relaciones de Yucatan (Madrid, 1898) we find: "This province is called the province of Tabasco, because the Lord of this town was called Tabasco, and the name of the town is Potonchan, which in Spanish means the Chontal tongue, almost as though we should say the barbarous tongue, for Chontal in the Mexican language is the same as barbarous, and so this town is called Potonchan, as that is the language generally used in this province; and as

We filled our casks with water, but we could not carry them away on account of the great number of warriors who fell on us. I will stop now and tell later on about the attack they made on us.

CHAPTER IV.

Concerning the attack made on us as we stood among the farms and maize fields already mentioned.

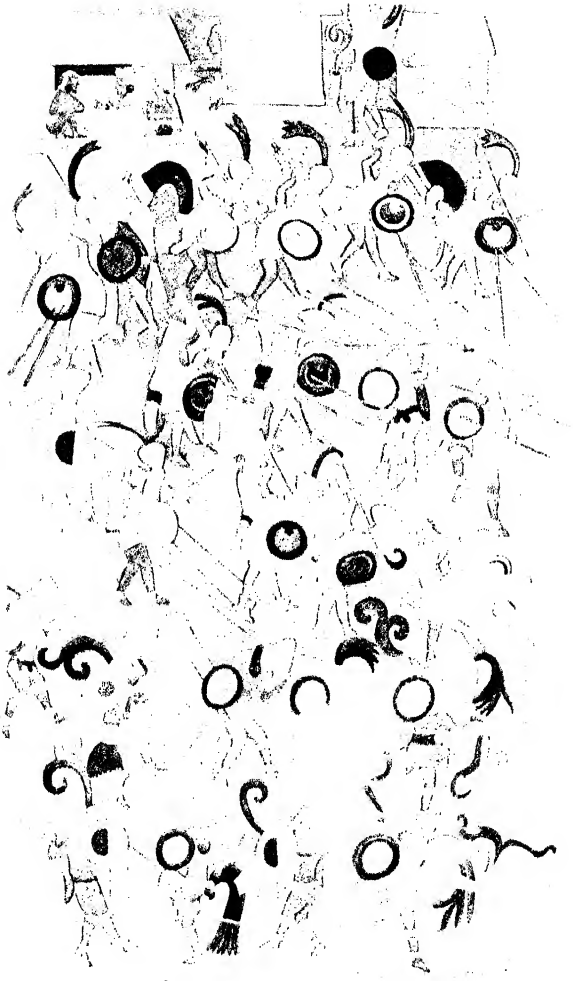
As we were filling our casks with water there came along the coast towards us from the town of Potonchan¹ (as it is called) many squadrons of Indians clad in cotton armour reaching to the knees, and armed with bows and arrows, lances and shields, and swords like two handed broad swords, and slings and stones and carrying the feathered crests which they are accustomed to wear. Their faces were painted black and white, and ruddled and they came in silence straight towards us, as though they came in peace, and by signs they asked whether we came from where the sun rose, and we replied that we did come from the direction of the sunrise. We were at our wits end considering the matter and wondering what the words were which the Indians called out to us for they were the same as those used by the people of Lázaro, but we never made out what it was that they said.

the Lord of this town was called Tabasco the province is called Tabasco."

Santa Maria de la Victoria appears to have lost both its original native and its Spanish name, and soon became known as the town of Tabasco, and is so marked on the map of Melchor de Santa Cruz (1579); not long afterwards the town itself disappeared.

Chanpoton has retained its name, and when Bernal Díaz mentions Chanpoton or Potonchan he invariably intends to indicate the site of the modern Chanpoton, between Campeche and the Laguna de Términos, the "Costa de Mala Pelea" of the expedition under Francisco Hernández de Córdova.

¹ Here written Pontuchan in the original text = Chanpoton.



Part of a Mural Painting of a
BATTLE FROM THE BALL COURT TEMPLE CHICHÉN ITZÁ, YUCATAN.
After a drawing by Miss Adela Brélon.
Reproduced and printed for the Hakluyt Society by Donald Macbeth, 1968.

- All this happened about the time of the Ave Maria, and the Indians then went off to some villages in the neighbourhood, and we posted watchmen and sentinels for security, for we did not like such a large gathering of Indians.

While we were keeping watch during the night we heard a great squadron of Indian warriors approaching from the town and from the farms, and we knew well that their assembly boded us no good, and we took council together as to what should be done. Some of the soldiers were of opinion that we should embark without delay ; however as always happens in such cases, some said one thing and some said another, but the Indians being in such numbers it seemed to most of my companions that if we made any attempt to embark they would be sure to attack us, and we should run great risk of losing our lives. Some others were of opinion that we should fall upon the Indians that very night, for, as the proverb says "who attacks conquers". On the other hand we could see that there were about two hundred Indians to every one of us. While we were still taking council the dawn broke, and we said one to the other "let us strengthen our hearts for the fight, and after commending ourselves to God let us do our best to save our lives."

As soon as it was daylight we could see, coming along the coast, many more Indian warriors with their banners raised, and with feathered crests and drums, and they joined those warriors who had assembled the night before. When their squadrons were formed up they surrounded us on all sides and poured in such showers of arrows and darts, and stones thrown from their slings that over eighty of us soldiers were wounded, and they attacked us hand to hand, some with lances and the others shooting arrows, and others with two-handed

knife edged swords,¹ and they brought us to a bad pass. We gave them a good return of thrusts and cuts and the guns and crossbows never ceased their work, some being loaded while the others were fired. At last feeling the effects of our sword play they drew back a little, but it was not far, and only enabled them to shoot their stones and darts at us with greater safety to themselves.

While the battle was raging the Indians called to one another in their language "*al Calachuni, Calachuni*" which means "let us attack the Captain and kill him," and ten times they wounded him with their arrows ; and me they struck thrice, one arrow wounding me dangerously in the left side, piercing through the ribs. All the other soldiers were wounded by spear thrusts and two of them were carried off alive, one named Alonzo Boto, and the other an old Portuguese man.

Our captain then saw that our good fighting availed us nothing ; other squadrons of warriors were approaching us fresh from the town, bringing food and drink with them and a large supply of arrows. All our soldiers were wounded with two or three arrow wounds, three of them had their throats pierced by lance thrusts, our captain was bleeding from many wounds and already fifty of the soldiers were lying dead.

Feeling that our strength was exhausted we determined with stout hearts to break through the battalions surrounding us and seek shelter in the boats which awaited us near the shore, and proved to be a great assistance to us ; so we formed in close array and broke through the enemy.

Ah ! then to hear the yells, hisses and cries, as the

¹ *Macana* or *Macuahuitl*, a wooden sword edged with sharp flint or obsidian.

- enemy showered arrows on us and hurled lances with all their might, wounding us sorely.

Then another danger befell us ; as we all sought shelter in the boats at the same time and there were so many of us they began to sink, so in the best way we could manage hanging on to the waterlogged boats and half swimming, we reached the vessel of lightest draught which came in all haste to our assistance.

Many of us were wounded while we embarked, especially those who were sitting in the stern of the boats, for the Indians shot at them as targets, and even waded into the sea with their lances and attacked us with all their strength. Thank God ! by a great effort we escaped with our lives from the clutches of those people.

When we got on board the ships we found that over fifty of our soldiers were missing, among them two who had been carried off alive. Within a few days we had to cast into the sea five others who died of their wounds and of the great thirst which we suffered. The whole of the fighting occupied only one hour.

The place is called Potonchan,¹ but the pilots and sailors have marked it on the chart as the "Costa de Mala Pelca" (the coast of the disastrous battle). When we were safely out of that affray we gave hearty thanks to God.

As the wounds of the soldiers were being dressed, some of them complained of the pain they felt, for they began to be chilled and the salt water caused considerable swelling, and some of them began to curse the pilot Anton de Alaminos and his voyage and discovery of the Island, for he always maintained that it was an Island and not the main land.

Here I must leave off and I will tell what happened to us later on.

¹ Chanpoton.

CHAPTER V.

How we agreed to return to the Island of Cuba and of the great hardships we endured before arriving at the Port of Havana.

AS soon as we got on board ship again, in the way I have related, we gave thanks to God, and after we had attended to the wounded (and there was not a man among us who had not two, three or four wounds, and the Captain was wounded in ten places and only one soldier escaped without hurt) we decided to return to Cuba.

As almost all the sailors also were wounded we were shorthanded for tending the sails, so we abandoned the smallest vessel and set fire to her after removing the sails, cables and anchors, and we divided the sailors who were unwounded between the two larger vessels. However, our greatest trouble arose from the want of fresh water, for owing to the attack made on us at Chanpoton, and the haste with which we had to take to the boats, we could not carry away with us the casks and barrels which we had filled with water, and they were all left behind.

So great was our thirst that our mouths and tongues were cracked with the dryness, and there was nothing to give us relief. Oh! what hardships one endures, when discovering new lands, in the way we set out to do it; no one can appreciate the excessive hardships who has not passed through them as we did.

We kept our course close to the land in hope of finding some stream or bay where we could get fresh water, and at the end of three days we found a bay where there appeared to be a river or creek which we thought might hold fresh water. Fifteen of the sailors who had remained on board and were unwounded and three soldiers who were out of danger from their wounds went ashore, and

- they took hoes with them, and some barrels to fill with water; but the water of the creek was salt, so they dug holes on the beach, but there also the water was as salt and bitter as that in the creek. However, bad as the water was, they filled the casks with it and brought it on board, but no one could drink such water and it did harm to the mouths and bodies of the few soldiers who attempted to drink it.

There were so many large alligators in that creek that it has always been known as the *estero de los Lagartos* and so it is marked on the charts.

While the boats went ashore for water there arose such a violent gale from the North East that the ships began to drag their anchors and drift towards the shore, for on that coast contrary winds prevail from the North or North East. When the sailors who had gone on shore saw what the weather was like they returned with the boats in hot haste and arrived in time to put out other anchors and cables, so that the ships rode in safety for two days and nights. Then we got up anchor and set sail continuing our voyage back to the island of Cuba.

The pilot Alaminos then took council with the other two pilots, and it was settled that from the place we then were we should cross over to Florida, for he judged from his charts and observations that it was about seventy leagues distant, and that having arrived in Florida they said that it would be an easier voyage and shorter course to reach Havana than the course by which we had come.

We did as the pilot advised, for it seems that he had accompanied Juan Ponce de Leon on his voyage of discovery to Florida fourteen or fifteen years earlier,¹ when in that same land Juan Ponce was defeated and

¹ Juan Ponce de Leon discovered Florida on Easter Sunday (Pascua Florida), 27th March, 1513.

killed. After four days' sail we came in sight of the land of Florida, and what happened to us there I will tell next.

CHAPTER VI.

How twenty of us soldiers went ashore in the Bay of Florida, in company with the Pilot Alaminos, to look for water, and the attack that the natives of the land made on us, and what else happened before we returned to Havana.

WHEN we reached Florida it was arranged that twenty of the soldiers, those whose wounds were best healed, should go ashore. I went with them, and also the Pilot, Anton de Alaminos, and we carried with us such vessels as we still possessed, and hoes, and our crossbows and guns. As the Captain was very badly wounded, and much weakened by the great thirst he had endured, he prayed us on no account to fail in bringing back fresh water as he was parching and dying of thirst, for, as I have already said, the water we had on board was salt and not fit to drink.

We landed near a creek which opened towards the sea, and the Pilot Alaminos carefully examined the coast and said that he had been at this very spot when he came on a voyage of discovery with Juan Ponce de Leon and that the Indians of the country had attacked them and had killed many soldiers, and that it behoved us to keep a very sharp look out. We at once posted two soldiers as sentinels while we dug deep holes on a broad beach where we thought we should find fresh water, for at that hour the tide had ebbed. It pleased God that we should come on very good water, and so overjoyed were we that what with satiating our thirst, and washing out cloths with which to bind up wounds, we must have stayed there an hour. When, at last, very well satisfied, we wished to go

on board with the water, we saw one of the soldiers whom we had placed on guard coming towards us crying out, "to arms, to arms! many Indian warriors are coming on foot and others down the creek in canoes." The soldier who came shouting, and the Indians reached us nearly at the same time.

These Indians carried very long bows and good arrows and lances, and some weapons like swords, and they were clad in deerskins and were very big men. They came straight on and let fly their arrows and at once wounded six of us, and to me they dealt a slight arrow wound. However, we fell on them with such rapidity of cut and thrust of sword and so plied the crossbows and guns that they left us to ourselves and set off to the sea and the creek to help their companions who had come in the canoes and were fighting hand to hand with the sailors, whose boat was already captured and was being towed by the canoes up the creek, four of the sailors being wounded, and the Pilot Alaminos badly hurt in the throat. Then we fell upon them, with the water above our waists, and at the point of the sword, we made them abandon the boat. Twenty of the Indians lay dead on the shore or in the water, and three who were slightly wounded we took prisoners, but they died on board ship.

As soon as the skirmish was over we asked the soldier who had been placed on guard what had become of his companion Berrio (for so he was named). He replied that he had seen him go off with an axe in his hand to cut down a small palm tree, and that he went towards the creek, whence the Indian warriors had approached us, that he then heard cries in Spanish, and on that account he had hurried towards us to give us warning, and it was then that his companion must have been killed.

The soldier who had disappeared was the only man who had escaped unwounded from the fight at Potonchan¹ and it was his fate to come on here to die. We at once set to work to search for our soldier along the trail made by the Indians who had attacked us. We found a palm tree partly cut through, and near by the ground was much trampled by footsteps more than in other parts, and as there was no trace of blood we took it for certain that they had carried him off alive. We searched and shouted all round about for more than an hour, but finding no trace of him we got into the boats and carried the fresh water to the ship, at which the soldiers were as overjoyed as though we had given them their lives. One soldier jumped from the ship into the boat, so great was his thirst, and clasping a jar of water to his chest drank so much water that he swelled up and died within two days.

As soon as we had got the water on board and had hauled up the boats, we set sail for Havana, and during the next day and night the weather was fair and we were near some Islands called *Los Martires* among the shoals called the shoals of the Martyrs. Our deepest soundings gave four fathoms, and the flagship struck the ground when going between the Islands and made water fast, and with all of us soldiers working at the pumps we were not able to check it, and we were in fear of foundering.

We had some Levantine sailors on board with us, and we called to them, "Comrades, come and help to work the pump, for you can see that we are all badly wounded and weary from working day and night." And the Levantines answered, "Do it yourselves, for we do not get any pay as you do, but only hunger and thirst, toil and wounds." So then we made them help us with the work.

¹ Chanpoton.

Ill and wounded as we were we managed to trim the sails and work the pump until our Lord carried us into the Port of Carenas,¹ where now stands the city of Havana, but it used to be called *Puerto de Carenas*, and when we got to land we gave thanks to God.

I must remember to say that when we got to Havana, a Portuguese diver who happened to be in that port soon got the water out of the flagship.

We wrote in great haste to the Governor of the Island, Diego Velásquez, telling him that we had discovered thickly-peopled countries, with masonry houses, and people who covered their persons and went about clothed in cotton garments, and who possessed gold and who cultivated maize fields, and other matters which I have forgotten.

From Havana our Captain Francisco Hernández went by land to the town of Santispritus, for so it is called, of which he was a citizen, and where he had his Indians ; but he was so badly wounded that he died within ten days.

Three soldiers died of their wounds in Havana, and all the rest of us dispersed and went some to one and some to other parts of the Island. The ships went on to Santiago where the Governor was living, and the two Indians whom we captured at Cape Catoche, whom we named Melchorejo and Julianillo were sent on shore, as were also the little chest with the diadems and the ducks and little fish and other articles of gold and the many idols. These showed such skilful workmanship that the fame of them travelled throughout the Islands including Santo Domingo and Jamaica and even reached Spain. It was said that better lands had never been discovered in the world ; and when the pottery idols with so many different

¹ The Havana of to-day.

shapes were seen, it was said that they belonged to the Gentiles, and others said that they were the work of the Jews whom Titus and Vespasian had turned out of Jerusalem and sent to sea in certain ships which had carried them to this land which as Peru was as yet undiscovered (indeed it was not discovered for another twenty years) was held in high estimation.

There was another matter about which Diego Velásquez questioned these Indians, whether there were gold mines in their country, and to all his questions they answered by signs "Yes." They were shown gold dust, and they said that there was much of it in their land, and they did not speak the truth, for it is clear that neither at Cape Catoche nor in all Yucatan are there any mines either of gold or of silver. These Indians were also shown the mounds of earth in which the plants are set, from the roots of which Cassava bread is made. This plant is called *Yuca* in the Island of Cuba and the Indians said that it grew in their country, and they said *Tlati* for so they call the ground in which the roots are planted; and, because *Yuca* and *Tlati* would make *Yucatan* the Spaniards who had joined in the conversation between Diego Velásquez and the Indians, said, "Señor, these Indians say that their country is called *Yucutlan*"; so it kept that name, but in their own language they do not call it by that name.

I must leave this subject and say that all of us soldiers who went on that voyage of discovery spent the little we possessed on it and we returned to Cuba wounded and in debt. So each soldier went his own way, and soon afterwards our captain died, and we were a long time recovering from our wounds, and according to our count, fifty-seven soldiers died, and this was all the profit we gained by that expedition and discovery. But Diego Velásquez wrote to the Lords Councillors who were at that time managing the Royal Council of the Indies, to say that he had made

the discovery, and had expended on the expedition a great number of gold dollars, and so it was stated and published by Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca, Bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosano (for thus he was called) who was President of the Council of the Indies, and he wrote to that effect to His Majesty in Flanders, giving much credit in his letters to Diego Velásquez, and he made no mention of us who made the discovery. Now I must stop, and I will tell later about the hardships which befel me and three other soldiers.

CHAPTER VII.

About the hardships I endured on the way to a town called Trinidad.

I HAVE already said that some of us soldiers who had not yet recovered from our wounds remained in Havana, and when we had got better three of us soldiers wished to go to the town of Trinidad, and we arranged to go with a certain Pedro de Ávila, a resident in Havana who was going to make the voyage in a canoe along the southern coast.¹ The canoe was laden with cotton shirts which Pedro de Ávila intended to sell at the town of Trinidad.

I have already said that the canoes are made like hollow troughs, and in these countries they are used for paddling along the coasts.

The arrangement we made with Avila was that we should give him ten gold dollars to take us in his canoe. So we set out along the coast, sometimes rowing and sometimes sailing, and after eleven days travelling, when near a village of friendly Indians, called Canarreo, which

¹ Bernal Díaz crossed overland to San Cristóval de Havana—the Havana of that time—situated on the south coast (on the river Onicaxinal, see *Orzco y Berra*, vol. iv., p. 71), and thence took canoe to Trinidad.

was the boundary of the township of Trinidad, there arose such a heavy gale in the night that the canoe could not make headway against the sea although we were all of us rowing, as well as Pedro de Ávila and some Indians from Havana, very good rowers whom we had hired to come with us; we were cast upon some rocks (*Seborucos*), which thereabouts are very large, and in so doing the canoe went to pieces and Ávila lost his property. We all got ashore disabled and naked to the skin, for so as to swim more freely in our efforts to keep the canoe from breaking up we had thought it best to take off all our clothes.

Having escaped from that mishap we found that there was no trail along the coast to the town of Trinidad, nothing but rough ground and *Seborucos* as they call them, stones that pierce the soles of one's feet; moreover the waves continually broke over us, and we had nothing whatever to eat. To shorten the list of hardships I will leave out all one might say about the bleeding from our feet and other parts of our bodies.

It pleased God that after great toil we came out on a sandy beach, and after travelling along it for two days we arrived at an Indian village named Yaguarama, which at that time belonged to Padre Fray Bartolomé de las Casas who was the parish priest, whom I afterwards knew as a doctor and a Dominican friar, and who afterwards became Bishop of Chiapas,—and at that village they gave us food.

Next day we went on to a village called Chipiana which belonged to Alonzo de Ávila, and a certain Sandoval, (not the Captain Sandoval of New Spain, but another, a native of Tudela de Duero) and from there we went to Trinidad.

A friend and countryman of mine named Antonio de Medina supplied me with some clothes, such as are worn in the Island. From Trinidad with my poverty and hardships I went to Santiago de Cuba where lived

the Governor, who received me with a good grace ; he was already making haste to send off another fleet.

When I went to pay my respects to him, for we were kinsmen, he joked with me, and going from one subject to another, asked me if I was well enough to return to Yucatan, and I, laughing, asked him who had given the name Yucatan for in that country it was not so called, and he replied, "the Indians you brought back with you call it so," so I told him "you had better call it the land where half the soldiers who went there were killed and all those who escaped death were wounded." He answered, "I know that you suffered many hardships, that always happens to those who set out to discover new lands and gain honour, and His Majesty will reward you, and I will write to him about it, and now my son, go again in the fleet I am getting ready and I will tell the Captain Juan de Grijalva to treat you with honour." I will stop here and relate what happened later.

Here ends the discovery made by Francisco Hernández whom Bernal Díaz del Castillo accompanied ;—Let us relate what Diego Velásquez was proposing to do.

THE EXPEDITION UNDER JUAN DE GRIJALVA.

CHAPTER VIII.

How Diego Velásquez, Governor of the Island of Cuba, ordered another fleet to be sent to the lands which we had discovered and a kinsman of his, a nobleman named Juan de Grijalva, went as Captain General, besides three other Captains, whose names I will give later on.

IN the year 1518 the Governor of Cuba hearing the good account of the land which we had discovered, which is called Yucatan, decided to send out another fleet, and made search for four vessels to compose it. Two of these vessels were two of the three which had accompanied Francisco Hernández, the other two were vessels which Diego Velásquez bought with his own money.

At the time the fleet was being fitted out, there were present in Santiago de Cuba, where Velásquez resided Juan de Grijalva, Alonzo de Ávila, Francisco de Montejo, and Pedro de Alvarado, who had come to see the Governor on business, for all of them held *encomiendas* of Indians in the Island. As they were men of distinction, it was agreed that Juan de Grijalva who was a kinsman of Diego Velásquez, should go as Captain General, that Alonzo de Ávila, Pedro de Alvarado, and Francisco de Montejo should each have command of a ship. Each of these Captains contributed the provisions and stores of Cassava bread and salt pork, and Diego Velásquez provided the four ships, crossbows and guns, some beads and other articles of small value for barter,



Facsimile (reduced) of Title-page of

HERRERA, DECADE II.

Showing portraits of DIEGO VELASQUEZ, & JUAN DE GRIJALVA.

From Mr. Grenville's copy in the British Museum.

Reproduced and printed for the Hakluyt Society by Donald Macbeth, 1908.

and a small supply of beans. Then Diego Velásquez ordered that I should go with these Captains as ensign.

As the report had spread that the lands were very rich and that there were masonry houses there, and the Indian Julianillo whom we had brought from Cape Catoche had said that there was gold, the soldiers and settlers who possessed no Indians in Cuba were greedily eager to go to the new land, so that 240 companions were soon got together.

Then every one of us, out of his own funds, added what he could of stores and arms and other suitable things; and I set out again on this voyage as ensign, as I have already stated.

As far as I can make out the instructions given by the Governor were that we should obtain by barter all the gold and silver that could be procured, and that if it appeared to be advisable to form a settlement, and if we could venture to do so, that a settlement should be made, but if not that then we should return to Cuba.

There came with us, as Veedor of the fleet, a man named Peñalosa, a native of Segovia, and we took with us a priest named Juan Diaz, a native of Seville, and the same two pilots who were with us on the former voyage, namely, Anton de Alaminos of Palos, Camacho of Triana, besides Juan Álvarez el Manquillo, from Huelva, and there was also another pilot who called himself Sopuesta, who came from Moguer.

Before I go any further, as I shall have to speak many times of these *hidalgos* who were our Captains, and it seems to me discourteous merely to give their names, let it be known that later on they all become persons of title; Pedro de Alvarado became Adelantado¹ and Governor of Guatemala and a Commander of the Order of Santiago,

¹ Adelantado = Governor-in-chief.

Montejo, Adelantado of Yucatan and Governor of Honduras, but Alonzo de Ávila did not have the same luck as the others for he was captured by the French, as I will relate later on in the chapter which treats of the subject. I shall speak of these gentlemen simply by their own names, until such time as His Majesty conferred on them the dignities I have mentioned.

To return to my story; we set out in the four ships along the north coast to a port called Matanzas, near to the old Havana,¹ (for at that time Havana was not in its present position), and in that port most of the settlers of Havana had their farms whence the ships obtained all the supplies they needed of Cassava and pork, for, as I have already said, there were as yet neither sheep nor cattle in Cuba, for the Island was but lately conquered. Here we were joined by the Captains and soldiers who were going to make the voyage.

Before going on, although it does not concern the story, I wish to say why this port was called Matanzas. I call it to mind because I have been asked the question by a historian in Spain who records matters that have happened, and this is the reason why the name was given it. Before the Island of Cuba was conquered a ship with more than thirty Spanish men and two women on board was driven ashore on the coast near the river and port now called Matanzas. Many Indians from Havana and the neighbouring towns came out with the intention of killing the Spaniards, but, as the Indians did not dare to attack them on land, they offered, with fair words and flattery, to ferry the Spaniards in canoes across the river, which is very large and rapid, and to take them to their houses and give them food.

When the middle of the river was reached, the Indians

¹ Axaruco.

- upset the canoes and killed all the Spaniards except three men and one woman who was beautiful and was carried off by one of the caciques concerned in the plot, and the three Spanish men were divided among the other caciques. This is the reason why the place is called Matanzas.¹

I knew the woman, and after the conquest of Cuba she was taken from the Cacique in whose power she had been, and I saw her married to a settler named Pedro Sánchez Farfan in the town of Trinidad. I also knew the three Spaniards, one was named Gonzalo Mejía, an old man from Jerez, another was Juan Santistéban, a youth from Madrigal, and the other was called Cascorro² a seaman, a native of Moguer.

I have delayed too long in telling this old tale, and it will be said that in spinning old yarns I am forgetting my narrative, so let us get back to it :—

As soon as all of us soldiers had got together and the pilots had received their instructions and the lantern signals had been arranged, after hearing mass, we set out on the 8th April, 1518.

In ten days we doubled the point of Guaniguanico which is also called San Anton and after eight days sailing we sighted the Island of Cozumel,³ which was then first discovered, for with the current that was running we made much more lee-way than when we came with Francisco Hernández de Córdoba, and we went along the south side of the Island and sighted a town with a

¹ *I.e.*, the place of killing.

² The Alonzo Remón Edition adds : "The cacique with whom he stayed married him to his daughter, and he had his ears and nose pierced like an Indian."

³ This would imply that land was first sighted on the 26th April. The *Itinerario* says that the fleet left Cuba on the 1st May, and that land was sighted on the 3rd May, and as it was the day of Santa Cruz they gave the land that name.

few houses, near which was a good anchorage free from reefs.

We went on shore with the Captain and a large company of soldiers, and the natives of the town had taken to flight as soon as they saw the ships coming under sail, for they had never seen such a thing before.

We soldiers who landed found two old men, who could not walk far, hidden in the maize fields and we brought them to the Captain. With the help of the two Indians Julianillo and Melchorejo whom Francisco Hernández brought away, who thoroughly understood that language (for there is not more than four leagues of sea between their land and the Island of Cozumel, and the language is the same) the captain spoke kindly to these old men and gave them some beads and sent them off to summon the cacique of the town, and they went off and never came back again.

While we were waiting, a good-looking Indian woman appeared and began to speak in the language of the Island of Jamaica, and she told us that all the men and women of the town had fled to the woods for fear of us. As I and many of our soldiers knew the language she spoke very well, for it is the same as that spoken in Cuba, we were very much astonished, and asked the woman how she happened to be there; she replied that two years earlier she had started from Jamaica with ten Indians in a large canoe intending to go and fish near some small islands, and that the currents had carried them over to this land where they had been driven ashore, and that her husband and all the Jamaica Indians had been killed and sacrificed to the Idols. When the Captain heard this it seemed to him that this woman would serve very well as a messenger, so he sent her to summon the people and caciques of the town, and he gave her two days in which to go and return. We were afraid that the

- Indians Melchorejo and Julianillo if once they got away from us would go off to their own country which was near by, and on that account we could not trust them as messengers.

To return to the Indian woman from Jamaica, the answer she brought was that notwithstanding her efforts she could not persuade a single Indian to approach us.

We called the town Santa Cruz because it was the day of Santa Cruz when we first entered it; we found there very good hives of honey and many sweet potatoes, and herds of the pigs of the country which have the navel¹ above the spine.

- There are three townships on the Island, the one where we landed being the largest and the other two smaller, and each one stood at one end of the island, these I saw and visited when I returned the third time with Cortez.

The Island is about two leagues² in circumference.

I must go on to say that as the Captain Juan de Grijalva saw that it would be merely losing time to wait there any longer, he ordered us to go on board ship, and the Indian woman went with us, and we continued our voyage.³

¹ A scent gland.

² This must be a misprint for "twenty leagues," for the island is at least fifty-five miles in circumference.

³ From the accounts given in the *Itinerario de Grijalva* and in the letter written to Charles V by the Municipality of Vera Cruz (10th July, 1519) it seems clear that on leaving Cozumel, Grijalva sailed for about fifty miles southwards along the east coast of Yucatan until he reached the Bay of Ascension, which he named, and then turned north again and rounded Cape Catoche. In this passage the author of the *Itinerario* says, "Arrived at the coast we saw three large towns separated about two miles one from the other, and we saw in them many stone houses and very high towers, and many houses of thatch."

Possibly this town was what is now known as the Ruins of Tulum.

CHAPTER IX.

How we followed the same course that we had taken with Francisco Hernández de Córdova ; how we landed at Chanpoton and how an attack was made on us, and what else happened.

AS soon as we were all on board we kept on the old course, the same that was followed by Francisco Hernández de Córdova, and in eight days we reached the neighbourhood of the town of Chanpoton which was the place where the Indians of that province had defeated us, as I have already related in a former chapter. As the tide runs out very far in the bay, we anchored our ships a league from the shore and then making use of all the boats we disembarked half the soldiers close to the houses of the town.

The Indians of the town and others from the neighbourhood at once assembled, as they had done on the other occasion when they killed over fifty-six of our soldiers and wounded all the rest, as I have already related, and for that reason they were now very proud and haughty, and they were well armed in their own manner with bows, arrows, and lances, some of them as long as our lances and some of them shorter, and shields and *macanas* and two-handed swords and slings and stones, and they wore cotton armour and carried trumpets and drums, and many of them had their faces painted black and others red and white. They were drawn up in array and awaited us on the shore, ready to fall on us as we landed. As we had already gained experience from our former expedition, we had brought with us in the boat some falconets and were well supplied with crossbows and guns.

As we approached the shore they began to shoot arrows and hurl lances at us with all their might, and although we did them much damage with our falconets, such a hail storm of arrows fell on us before we could land that half of us were wounded. As soon as all the soldiers got on shore

we checked their ardour with our good sword play and with our crossbows, and although they still shot at us as at targets, we all wore cotton armour, yet they kept up the fight against us for a good while until we drove them back into some swamps near to the town. In this fight seven soldiers were killed, among them Juan de Quiteria, a man of importance, and our Captain Juan de Grijalva received three arrow wounds, and had two of his teeth broken, and more than sixty of us were wounded.¹

When we saw that all the enemy had taken to flight we entered the town and attended to the wounded and buried the dead. We could not find a single person in the town, nor could we find those who had retreated into the swamp for they had all disappeared. In that skirmish we captured three Indians one of whom was a chief, and the Captain sent them off to summon the cacique of the town, giving them clearly to understand through the interpreters Julianillo and Melchorejo that they were pardoned for what they had done, and he gave them some green beads to hand to the cacique as a sign of peace, and they went off and never returned again. So we believed that the Indians, Julianillo and Melchorejo had not repeated to the prisoners what they had been told to say to them but had said something quite different.

At that town we stayed for three days.

I remember that this fight took place in some fields where there were many locusts, and while we were fighting they jumped up and came flying in our faces, and as the Indian archers were pouring a hail storm of arrows on us we sometimes mistook the arrows for locusts and did not shield ourselves from them and so got wounded ; at other times we thought that they were arrows coming towards

¹ The author of the *Itinerario* and the Letter from the Municipality of Vera Cruz to Charles V make this fight take place at Campeche

us, when they were only flying locusts and it greatly hampered our fighting. I must leave this and go on to tell how we embarked and kept on our course.

CHAPTER X.

How we went on our way and entered a large and broad river to which we then gave the name of the Boca de Términos.

KEEPING on our course we reached what seemed to be the mouth of a very rapid river, very broad and open, but it was not a river as we at first thought it to be, but it was a very good harbour.

Because there was land on both sides of us and the water was so wide that it looked like a strait, the pilot Alamínos said that here the Island ended and the mainland began, and that was the reason why we called it the Boca de Términos,¹ and so it is named on the charts.

The Captain Juan de Grijalva went ashore with all the other Captains already mentioned and many soldiers. We spent three days taking soundings at the mouth of the strait and exploring up and down the bay until we came to the end of it, and found out that there was no island, but that we were in a bay which formed a very good harbour. On shore we found some houses built of masonry, used as oratories of their Idols, and many Idols of pottery, wood and stone, which were the images of their gods, and some of them were figures of women

¹ It is not quite clear by which opening the vessels entered the Laguna de Términos. Orozco y Berra (*Hist. Antigua*, vol. iv, page 31) says at the Puerto Escondido—it seems more likely to have been at the Puerto Real. Had they entered by the west entrance or Puerto Principal they must have attracted the attention of the people of Xicolango, then a considerable town and a Mexican outpost. (See *Relacion de Melchor de Alfaro Santa Cruz* in *Coleccion de Documentos Inéditos, Relaciones de Yucatan*, vol. ii. Madrid, 1898).

and others figures of serpents and there were many deer's antlers.

We thought there must be a town close by, and as it was such a safe port we considered that it would be a good place for a settlement, but we found out that it was altogether uninhabited, and that the oratories were merely those belonging to traders and hunters who put into the port when passing in their canoes and made sacrifices there. We had much deer and rabbit hunting and with the help of a lurcher we killed ten deer and many rabbits. At last when we had finished our soundings and explorations we made ready to go on board ship, but the lurcher got left behind. The sailors call this place the Puerto de Términos.

As soon as we were all on board we kept our course close along the shore until we arrived at a river which they call the Rio de Tabasco, which we named Rio de Grijalva.

CHAPTER XI.

How we arrived at the Rio de Tabasco which we named the River Grijalva, and what happened to us there.

MAKING our way along the coast towards the west, by day, but not daring to sail during the night for fear of shoals and reefs, at the end of three days we came in sight of the mouth of a very broad river, and we went near in shore with the ships, as it looked like a good port. As we came nearer in we saw the water breaking over the bar at the mouth of the river, so we got out boats, and by sounding we found out that the two larger vessels could not enter the river, so it was agreed that they should anchor outside in the sea, and that all the soldiers should go up the river in the other two vessels which drew less water and in the boats.

This we did because we saw many Indians in canoes along the banks of the river armed with bows and arrows and other weapons, after the manner of the people of Chanpoton, and we knew that there must be a large town in the neighbourhood.

As we had coasted along we had already seen nets set in the sea for catching fish, and had gone in the boat which was towed astern of the flagship and had taken fish out of two of them.

This river was called the Rio de Tabasco because the chief of the town called himself Tabasco, and as we discovered it on this voyage and Juan de Grijalva was its discoverer, we named it the Rio de Grijalva and so it is marked on the charts.

To go back to my story, when we arrived within half a league of the town we could hear the sound of chopping wood for the Indians were making barriers and stockades and getting ready to give us battle. When we were aware of this, so as to make certain, we disembarked half a league from the town on a point of land where some palm trees were growing. When the Indians saw us there a fleet of fifty canoes approached us full of warriors clad in cotton armour and carrying bows and arrows, lances and shields, drums and plumes of feathers. Many other canoes full of warriors were lying in the creeks, and they kept a little way off as though they did not dare to approach as did the first fleet. When we perceived their intentions we were on the point of firing at them with guns and crossbows, but it pleased God that we agreed to call out to them, and through Julianillo and Melchorejo, who spoke their language very well, we told them that they need have no fear, that we wished to talk to them, for we had things to tell them which when they understood them they would be glad that we had come to their country and their homes.

- Moreover, we wished to give them some of the things we had brought with us. As they understood what was said to them, four of the canoes came near with about thirty Indians in them, and we showed them strings of green beads and small mirrors and blue cut glass beads,¹ and as soon as they saw them they assumed a more friendly manner, for they thought that they were *chalchihuites*² which they value greatly.

Then through Julianillo and Melchorejo as interpreters, the Captain told them that we came from a distant country and were the vassals of a great Emperor named Don Carlos, who had many great lords and chiefs as his vassals, and that they ought to acknowledge him as their lord, and it would be to their advantage to do so, and that in return for the beads they might bring us some food and poultry.

Two of the Indians answered us, one of them was a chief and the other was a Papa, that is, a sort of priest who has care of their Idols, for as I have said before, in New Spain they are called Papas. They replied that they would bring the food which we asked for, and would barter their things for ours; but as for the rest, they already had a chief, that we were only just now arrived and knew nothing about them, and yet we wanted to give them a chief. Let us beware not to make war on them as we had done at Potonchan,³ for they had more than three *jiquipiles* of warriors from all the provinces around in readiness (every *jiquipil* numbers eight thousand men) and they said that they were well aware that only a few days earlier we had killed and wounded more than two hundred men at Potonchan³ but that they were not

¹ Literally, blue diamonds.

² Chalchihuitli is Jadeite, which was treasured as a precious stone by the Indians.

³ Chanpoton.

weaklings such as those, and for this reason they had come to talk to us and find out what we wanted, and that whatever we should tell them they would go and report to the chiefs of many towns who had assembled to decide on peace or war.

Then our Captain embraced the Indians as a sign of peace, and gave them some strings of beads and told them to go and bring back an answer as soon as possible, but he said that although we did not wish to anger them, that if they did not return we should have to force our way into their town.

These messengers whom we sent spoke to the Caciques and Papas, who also have a voice in their affairs, and they decided that it was better to keep the peace and supply us with food, and that between them and the neighbouring towns they would soon seek a present of gold to give us and secure our friendship, so that what had happened to the people of Potonchan¹ would not happen to them.

From what I saw and learnt afterwards, it is the custom in these provinces, and in other countries in New Spain to give presents when making peace, and this will be clearly seen later on.

The following day more than thirty Indians with their chief came to the promontory under the palm trees where we were camped and brought roasted fish and fowls, and zapote fruit and maize bread, and brasiers with live coals and incense, and they fumigated us all. Then they spread on the ground some mats, which here they call *petates*, and over them a cloth, and they presented some golden jewels, some were diadems, and others were in the shape of ducks, like those in Castille, and other jewels like lizards and three necklaces of hollow beads, and other articles of gold but not of much value, for they were not

¹ Chanpoton.

worth more than two hundred dollars. They also brought some cloaks and skirts, such as they wear, and said that we must accept these things in good part as they had no more gold to give us, but that further on, in the direction of the sunset, there was plenty of gold, and they said "Colua, Colua, Méjico, Méjico," but we did not know what this Colua or Méjico could be. Although the present that they brought us was not worth much, we were satisfied, because we thus knew for certain that they possessed gold. As soon as they had given their present they said that we should at once set out on our way and the Captain, Juan de Grijalva, thanked them for their gift and gave them a present of beads. It was decided that we should go on board at once, for the two ships were in much danger should a northerly gale blow for it would put them on a lee shore, and moreover we wanted to get nearer to where we were told there was gold.

CHAPTER XII.

How we followed along the coast towards the setting sun, and arrived at a river called the Rio de Banderas, and what happened there.

WE returned on board and set our course along the coast and in two days came in sight of a town called Ayagualulco, and many of the Indians from that town marched along the shore with shields made of the shells of turtle, which sparkled as the sun shone on them, and some of our soldiers contended that they were made of low grade gold.

The Indians who carried them as they marched along the sandy beach, knowing that they were at a safe distance,

cut capers, as though mocking at the ships. We gave the town the name of La Rambla, and it is thus marked on the charts.

Coasting along we came in sight of a bay into which flows the river Tonalá, which we entered on our return journey and named the Rio de San Antonio, and so it is marked on the charts.

As we sailed along we noted the position of the great river Coatzacoalcos, and we wished to enter the bay [not merely] to see what it was like, but because the weather was unfavourable. Soon we came in sight of the great snow mountains, which have snow on them all the year round, and we saw other mountains, nearer to the sea, which we called the range of San Martin, and we gave it that name because the first man to see them was a soldier from Havana who had come with us named San Martin.

As we followed along the coast, the Captain Pedro de Alvarado, went ahead with his ship and entered a river which the Indians call Papaloapan, and which we then called the Rio de Alvarado because Alvarado was the first to enter it. There, some Indian fishermen, natives of a town called Tlacotalpa gave him some fish. We waited at the mouth of the river with the other three ships until Alvarado came out, and the General was very angry with him for going up the river without his permission, and ordered him never to go ahead of the other ships again, lest an accident should happen when we could not give him help.

We kept on our course, all four ships together until we arrived at the mouth of another river, which we called the Rio de Banderas,¹ because we there came on a great number of Indians with long lances, and on every

¹ Rio de Banderas is the Rio Jamapa of the modern maps.

lance a great cloth banner which they waved as they beckoned to us. And what happened I will tell in the next chapter.

CHAPTER XIII.

How we arrived at the Rio de Banderas and what happened there.

SOME studious readers in Spain and other people who have been to New Spain, may have heard that Mexico was a very great city built in the water like Venice, and that it was governed by a great prince who was King over many provinces and ruled over all the lands of New Spain, a territory which is more than twice as large as Castille, and that this Prince was called Montezuma, and that as he was so powerful he wished to extend his rule beyond what was possible. He had received news of our arrival when we came first, with Francisco Hernández de Córdova, and of what had happened at the battle of Catoche and at Chanpoton, and also what had happened at the battle at this same Chanpoton during this voyage, and he knew that we soldiers being few in number had defeated the warriors of that town and their very numerous allies, and he knew as well that we had entered the Rio Tabasco and what had taken place between us and the caciques of that town, moreover he understood that our object was to seek for gold, in exchange for the things we had brought with us. All this news had been brought to him painted on a cloth made of *hennequen*¹ which is like linen, and as he knew that we were coasting along towards his provinces he sent orders to his governors that if we should arrive in their

¹ Hennequen, or Sisal hemp, is a species of Aloe (*Agave Ixtli*) now largely used for cordage.

neighbourhood with our ships that they should barter gold for our beads, especially the green beads, which are something like their *chalchihuites*, which they value as highly as emeralds; he also ordered them to find out more about our persons and our plans.

It is a fact, as we now know, that their Indian ancestors had foretold that men with beards would come from the direction of the sunrise and would rule over them. Whatever the reason may have been many Indians sent by the Great Montezuma were watching for us at the river I have mentioned with long poles, and on every pole a banner of white cotton cloth, which they waved and called to us, as though making signals of peace, to come to them.

When from the ships we saw such an unusual sight we were fairly astonished, and the general and most of the Captains were agreed that to find out what it meant we should lower two of the boats, and that all those who carried guns or crossbows and twenty of the most daring and active soldiers should go in them, and that Francisco de Montejo should accompany us, and that if we should discover that the men who were waving the banners were warriors that we should at once bring news of it and of anything else that we could find out.

Thank God at that time we had fine weather which is rare enough on this coast. When we got on shore we found three Caciques, one of them the governor appointed by Montezuma, who had many of the Indians of his household with him. They brought many of the fowls of the country and maize bread such as they always eat, and fruits such as pineapples and zapotes, which in other parts are called mameies, and they were seated under the shade of the trees, and had spread mats on the ground, and they invited us to be seated, all by signs, for Julianillo the man from Cape Catoche, did not understand their language which is Mexican. Then they

brought pottery braziers with live coals, and fumigated us with a sort of resin.

As soon as the Captain Montejo had reported all that had taken place to the general, he [the captain general] determined to anchor his ships and go ashore with all his captains and soldiers. When the Caciques and governors saw him on land and knew that he was the Captain General of us all, according to their custom, they paid him the greatest respect. In return he treated them in a most caressing manner and ordered them to be given blue and green glass beads and by signs he made them understand that they should bring gold to barter with us. Then the Governor sent orders to all the neighbouring towns to bring jewels to exchange with us, and during the six days that we remained there they brought more than sixteen thousand dollars worth of jewelry of low grade gold, worked into various forms.

This must be the gold which the historians Gómara, Yllescas and Jovio say was given by the natives of Tabasco, and they have written it down as though it were true, although it is well known to eye witnesses that there is no gold in the Province of the Rio de Grijalva or anywhere near it and very few jewels.

When the General saw that the Indians were not bringing any more gold to barter, and as we had already been there six days and the ships ran risk of danger from the North and North East wind, he thought it was time to embark.

So we took [formal] possession of the land in the name of His Majesty, and as soon as this had been done the General spoke to the Indians and told them that we wished to return to our ships and he gave them presents of some shirts from Spain. We took one of the Indians from this place on board ship with us, and after he had learnt our language he became a Christian and was named

Francisco, and later on I met him living with his Indian wife.

As we sailed on along the coast we sighted an Island¹ of white sand which the sea washed over, it appeared to be about three leagues distant from the land, and we called it the Isla Blanca and it is marked thus on the charts. Not far from the Isla Blanca we observed another Island with many green trees on it, lying about four leagues from the coast and we gave it the name of Isla Verde and going on further we saw an Island somewhat larger than the others about a league and a half off the shore, and in front of it there was a good roadstead where the General gave orders for the ships to come to anchor.

As soon as the boats were launched the Captain Juan de Grijalva and many of us soldiers went off to visit the Island for we saw smoke rising from it, and we found two masonry houses very well built, each house with steps leading up to some altars, and on these altars were idols with evil looking bodies, which were the gods of the Indians and that very night five Indians had been sacrificed before them; their chests had been cut open, and the arms and thighs had been cut off and the walls were covered with blood.

At all this we stood greatly amazed, and gave the Island the name of the Isla de Sacrificios and it is so marked on the charts.

We all of us went ashore opposite that Island, and on the broad sandy beach we put up huts and shelters made with branches of trees and sails taken from the ships.

Now many Indians had come down to the coast bringing gold made into small articles which they wished to barter as they had done at the Rio de Banderas, and, as we

¹ Bernal Díaz is not quite correct about the comparative size of the Islands. The accompanying chart shows their size and position.

afterwards found out the great Montezuma had ordered them to do so. These Indians who brought the gold were very timid and the gold was small in quantity, for this reason the Captain Juan de Grijalva ordered the anchors to be raised and sail set, and we went on to anchor opposite another Island, about half a league from land, and it is at this Island that the port of Vera Cruz is now established.

CHAPTER XIV.

How we arrived at the Island now called San Juan de Ulúa, and the reason why that name was given to it, and what happened to us there.

WE landed on a sandy beach, and so as to escape the swarms of mosquitos we built huts on the tops of the highest sand dunes, which are very extensive in these parts.

From our boats we made careful soundings of the harbour and found that there was a good bottom and that under the shelter of the Island our ships would be safe from the Northerly gales.

As soon as this was done the General and thirty of us soldiers, well armed, went in two boats to the Island and we found there a temple where there was a very large and ugly idol which was called Tescatepuca¹ and in charge of it were four Indians with very large black cloaks and hoods, such as the Dominicans or canons wear, or very much like them, and these were the priests of the idols, and they are commonly called Papas in New Spain, as I have said before.

They had this day sacrificed two boys and cut open

• ¹ Tetzcatlipoca.

their chests, and offered the blood and hearts to that cursed Idol. The priests came towards us to fumigate us with the incense with which they had fumigated their Tescatepuca, for when we approached them they were burning something which had the scent of incense, but we would not allow them to fumigate us, for we all felt much pity at seeing those two boys who had just been killed and at beholding such great cruelty. The General asked the Indian Francisco, already mentioned by me, whom we had brought from the Rio de Banderas, and who seemed to be fairly intelligent what they had done this for, and Francisco by means of signs (we had no interpreter, for as I have already said, Julianillo and Melchorejo did not understand the Mexican language) replied that the people of Culúa had ordered the sacrifice to be made. As he was halting in his speech he said Ulúa, Ulúa, and as our Captain who was present was named Juan, and it was the day of San Juan in June, we called the Island San Juan de Ulúa. This port is now very well known, and great shelter walls have been erected so as to protect the ships from the North wind, and it is here that all the merchandise from Castille for Mexico and New Spain is landed.

To go back to my story, while we were encamped on the sand hills, Indians from the towns round about came to barter gold and jewels in exchange for our goods, but they brought so few things and those of such poor value that we took no count of it.

We stayed there for seven days, but we could not endure the mosquitos, and seeing that we were wasting time, and as we now knew for certain that these lands were not Islands but the Mainland, and that it contained large towns and multitudes of Indians, and seeing that our cassava bread was very mouldy and dirty with weevils and was going sour, and that the soldiers of our company

were not numerous enough to form a settlement, all the more so as thirteen soldiers had died of their wounds, and four others were still suffering, so taking all I have said into consideration it was agreed that we should send to inform the Governor Diego Velásquez of our condition, so that he could send us help.

Juan de Grijalva had the greatest desire to form a settlement even with the few soldiers he had with him, and always showed the courage of a very valiant and energetic Captain, and was not such a man as the historian Gómara describes.

It was therefore decided that the Captain Pedro de Alvarado should go in a very good ship called the *San Sebastian* to carry the message. This was agreed to for two reasons, one was that Juan de Grijalva and the other captains were not on good terms with Alvarado on account of his entry into the Rio Papaloapan (which we then named the Rio Alvarado) the other reason was that Alvarado had come on this voyage unwillingly, as he was far from well.

It was also arranged that the sick men and all the gold and the cloth which had been gained by barter should be sent back in the *San Sebastian*. The Captains wrote to Diego Velásquez, each one what he thought fit, and then the ship set sail and made for the Island of Cuba, and there I will leave them for the present, both Pedro de Alvarado and his voyage, and will tell how Diego Velásquez had sent in search of us.

CHAPTER XV.

How Diego Velásquez, the Governor of Cuba, sent a ship in search of us, and what else happened.

NO sooner had we sailed from the Island of Cuba on our voyage with Captain Juan de Grijalva, than Diego Velásquez began to be anxious lest some calamity had befallen us, and he was always longing for news of us, so he sent a small ship with some soldiers in search of us, under the command of Cristóval de Olid, a person of consideration and very energetic (who was afterwards *Maestro de Campo*¹ in the expedition under Cortés). Diego Velásquez ordered him to follow the track of Francisco Hernández de Córdova until he should overtake us.

It appears that Cristóval de Olid, when he went in search of us, was struck by a heavy gale while anchored near the coast of Yucatan, and the pilot whom they had on board, so as to save the vessel from foundering at anchor, ordered the cables to be cut, so they lost their anchors and returned to Santiago de Cuba.

Diego Velásquez was at the port and heard that they brought no news of us, and if he was anxious before, he was doubly so now. However, about this time the Captain, Pedro de Alvarado, arrived with the gold, and the cloth, and the sick men, and with the whole story of what we had discovered; and when the Governor beheld the gold jewelry that the Captain Pedro de Alvarado had brought with him, he greatly overestimated its value.

There were present with Diego Velásquez many inhabitants from the city and from other parts of the Island, who had come on business, and when the king's

¹ Quartermaster. •



Facsimile (reduced) of Title-page of
HERRERA, DECADE III.

Showing portraits of CORTES, CRISTOVAL DE OLID, GONZALO DE SANDOVAL,
the capture of GUATEMOC, etc.

Reproduced and printed for the Hakluyt Society by Donald Macbeth, 1908.

officers took the Royal Fifth, which belongs to His Majesty, they were astonished at our having discovered such rich lands, (for Peru was not discovered until twenty years later).

Pedro de Alvarado knew very well how to tell his story, and they say that Diego Velásquez could do nothing but embrace him, and order great rejoicings and sports for eight days. Report had been rife enough before about these rich lands, and with the arrival of the gold it rose to exaggeration throughout the Islands and in Castille, as I shall tell later on ; but I must leave Diego Velásquez keeping holiday, and return to our ships which were at San Juan de Ulúa, and I shall go on to relate how we agreed to proceed with our exploration of the coast.

CHAPTER XVI.

How we went on exploring the coast as far as the Province of Panuco, and what else happened before our return to Cuba.

AFTER the Captain, Pedro de Alvarado had left us to go to the Island of Cuba, (as I have already related) it was decided by the General, Captains, and soldiers, and approved of by the Pilots, that we should keep in close to the shore and discover all that we were able on the coast. Keeping on our course we came in sight of the Sierra de Tuztla,¹ and further on, two days later, we saw some other higher ranges which are now called the Sierra de Tuzpa, after a town of that name near by. As we coasted along, we saw many towns apparently two or

¹ This is an error ; the Sierra de Tuxtla lies between the Sierra San Martin and the mouth of the Papaloapan River, and had been passed before arriving at San Juan de Ulúa. It is Tuxpan (about lat. 20 deg. N.) that was now sighted.

three leagues inland and these would belong to the province of Panuco. Continuing our course, we came to a great and rapid river which we called the Rio de Canoas¹ and dropped anchor at the mouth of it.

When all three ships were anchored and we were a little off our guard, twenty large canoes filled with Indian warriors, armed with bows, arrows, and lances, came down the river and made straight for the smallest ship which lay nearest the shore, and was commanded by Francisco de Montejo. The Indians shot a flight of arrows which wounded five soldiers, and they made fast to the ship with ropes intending to carry her off, and even cut one of her cables with their copper axes. However, the captain and soldiers fought well, and upset three of the canoes, and we hastened to their assistance in our boats, with guns and crossbows, and we wounded more than a third of the Indians, so they returned from their unlucky expedition whence they had come. Then we got up anchor and set sail and followed along the coast until we came to a great Cape² which was most difficult to double, for the currents were so strong we could make no headway.

Then the Pilot, Alaminos, said to the General, that it was no use trying to go further in that direction, and gave many reasons for his opinion. So counsel was taken as to what had best be done, and it was settled that we should return to Cuba. One reason for this was that the rains³ had already begun, and we were short of provisions, and one ship was leaking badly. However, the Captains were not of one mind, for Juan de Grijalva said that he wanted

¹ Orozco y Berra says, in a note (page 55), that this Rio de Canoas is the Rio Tanhuijo, 21 deg. 15 mins. 48 secs. N. lat.

² Punta Majahua or Cabo Rojo.

³ *Invierno* (winter) is the word in the text; it must here mean the rainy season.

to form a settlement, and Alonzo de Ávila, and Francisco de Montejo objected, saying that they would not be able to hold out against the great number of warriors which the country contained, moreover, all of us soldiers were thoroughly tired of seafaring.

So we turned round and set all sail before the wind, and aided by the currents, in a few days we reached the mouth of the great Rio de Coatzacoalcos, but we could not enter it on account of unfavourable weather, and going close in shore we entered the Rio de Tonalá, to which we gave the name of San Anton. There we carcened one of the ships which was making water fast, for on entering the river she had struck on the bar where the water is very shallow.

While we were repairing the ship many Indians came in a most friendly manner from the town of Tonalá, which is about a league distant, and brought maize bread, and fish and fruit, and gave them to us with great good will. The captain showed them much attention and ordered them to be given white and green beads, and made signs to them that they should bring gold for barter and we would give them our goods in exchange ; so they brought jewels of low grade gold, and we gave them beads in return. People came also from Coatzacoalcos and the other towns in the neighbourhood and brought jewelry, but this did not amount to anything.

Besides these things for barter, the Indians of that province usually brought with them highly polished copper axes with painted wooden handles, as though for show or as a matter of elegance, and we thought that they were made of inferior gold, and began to barter for them, and in three days we had obtained more than six hundred, and we were very well contented thinking that they were made of debased gold, and the Indians were even more contented with their beads, but it was no

good to either party, for the axes were made of copper, and the beads were valueless. One sailor had bought seven axes, and was very well pleased with them.¹

I also remember that a soldier named Bartolomé Pardo, went to one of the Idol Houses which stood on a hill, (which as I have already said are called Cues, which means houses of the Gods) and in that house he found many Idols, and copal, which is a resin used as incense, and stone knives used for sacrifices and circumcision, and in a wooden chest he found many articles of gold, such as diadems and necklaces, and two Idols and some hollow beads. The soldier took the gold for himself and the other Idols and offerings he brought to the captain. However, someone had seen what was done, and reported it to Grijalva, and he wanted to take the gold from the soldier, but we begged that it might be left to him, as he was a respectable man, so after the Royal Fifth had been taken for His Majesty, the rest was given back to the poor soldier, and it was worth about one hundred and fifty dollars.²

¹ The Alonzo Remón Edition says that he bought them secretly, "and it seems that another sailor told this to the captain, and he ordered them to be given up, but as we all pleaded for him, thinking that the axes were gold, the captain gave them back again."

² In the original MSS. the following passage is blotted out :—

I sowed the seeds of some oranges near to another Idol house, and it happened thus :—There were so many mosquitos near the river that ten of us soldiers went up to sleep in a lofty Idol house, and close by that house I sowed the seeds which I had brought from Cuba, for there was a rumour that we were coming back to settle, they came up very well, for it seems that the Papas, when they saw that they were plants differing from those they knew, protected them and watered them and kept them free from weeds ; and all the oranges in that province are the descendants of these plants. I know well that it will be said that these old tales have nothing to do with my history, so I must leave off telling them.—G. G.

The Alonzo Remón Edition adds :—And I have called this to mind because these were the first oranges planted in New Spain. After the fall of Mexico, when the towns subject to Coatzacoalcos had been pacified, this was looked on as the best province, being the best situated in all New Spain, both on account of the mines it possessed



Pacsimile (reduced) of Title-page of
HERRERA'S "DESCRIPCION," 1601.
Showing Mexican Gods, Temples, etc.

Reproduced and printed for the Hakluyt Society by Donald Macbeth, 1908.

We left the Indians of those provinces well contented, and going on board ship again, we went on our way towards Cuba,¹ and in forty-five days, sometimes with fair weather and at other times with bad weather, we arrived at Santiago de Cuba where Diego Velásquez was residing, and he gave us a very good reception.

When the Governor saw the gold that we brought, which was worth four thousand dollars, and with that which had already been brought by Pedro de Alvarado, amounted in all to twenty thousand dollars, (and some say that it was more) he was well contented. Then the officers of the King took the Royal Fifth, but when the six hundred axes which we thought were low grade gold were brought out, they were all rusty like copper which they proved to be, and there was a good laugh at us, and they made great fun of our trading.

The Governor was very pleased at all this, but he did not seem to be on good terms with his kinsman Grijalva, and he had no cause for it, merely that Francisco de Montejo and Pedro de Alvarado were not on good terms with Grijalva, and Alonzo de Ávila added to the trouble. As soon as these squabbles were over there began to be talk of sending another fleet, and gossip as to who would be chosen as captain, but I will leave this for the present and will tell how Diego Velásquez sent to Spain to petition His Majesty to give him a commission to trade and to conquer, settle and apportion, the lands which had been discovered.

as well as for its good harbour, for it was a land both rich in gold, and in pasture for cattle. For this reason it was settled by the principal *Conquistadores* of Mexico, of whom I was one. So I went to look for my orange trees and transplanted them and they turned out very well.

¹ The author of the *Itinerario* says that they touched at Campeche and secured enough maize, water and firewood to supply them for the remainder of the voyage.





BOOK II.

THE EXPEDITION UNDER HERNANDO CORTÉS. THE VOYAGE.

CHAPTER XVII.

How Diego Velásquez sent to Spain to petition His Majesty to grant him a commission, to trade with, and conquer the country, and to settle and apportion the land as soon as peace was established.



ALTHOUGH it may seem to the reader that in relating what I now call to mind, I am wandering far away from my story, nevertheless it seems to me proper that, before I begin to tell about the valiant and energetic Captain

Cortés, certain things should be mentioned, both for reasons which will be apparent later on, and because when two or three events happen at the same time, one cannot relate them together, but only that one which falls into its place in the story.

The fact is that when the captain, Pedro de Alvarado arrived at Santiago de Cuba with the gold from the lands which we had discovered, as I have already related, Diego Velásquez was in fear lest, before he could make his report to His Majesty, some court favourite should rob

him of his reward, and ask it from His Majesty for himself. For this reason he sent to Spain his chaplain, named Benito Martínez, a man well skilled in business, with the evidence and letters for Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca, Bishop of Burgos, and Archbishop of Rosano, for such are his titles, and to the Licentiate, Luis Zapata, and to the Secretary, Lope de Conchillos, who at that time looked after the Affairs of the Indies. Diego Velásquez was the very humble servant of them all, especially of the Bishop, and he gave them Indian townships in the Island of Cuba, so that their inhabitants might extract gold from the mines for them, and for this reason they were ready to do much for Diego Velásquez.

At this time His Majesty was away in Flanders. Velásquez also sent to these gentlemen, just now mentioned by me, some of the jewels of gold which we had obtained by barter. Now everything that was done by the Royal Council of the Indies was done by the orders of these gentlemen, and that which Diego Velásquez wished to have arranged was, that he should be given authority to trade with, conquer and settle all this land which he had recently discovered, and any that he might thereafter discover. He said in his reports and letters that he had spent many thousands of gold dollars in the discovery. So the Chaplain, Benito Martínez, went to Spain and succeeded in obtaining all that he asked for, and even more, for he brought back a decree appointing Diego Velásquez, Adelantado of the Island of Cuba. Although what I have here stated was already settled, the despatches did not arrive before the valiant Cortés had already sailed with a fresh fleet. I must leave this matter here, both the despatches of which Benito Martínez was the bearer, and the fleet of the captain Cortés, and state that while writing this story I have seen the chronicles written by the historian, Francisco

Lopes de Gómara, and those of the Doctor Yllescas and of Jovio, in which they treat of the conquest of New Spain. I feel bound to declare that, wherever it appears to contradict the others, my story represents events clearly and truly, and runs very differently from what the historians I have named have written.

CHAPTER XVIII.

Concerning some errors and other things written by the Historians Gómara and Yllescas about affairs in New Spain.

WHILE I was writing this story, I saw by chance, what had been written by Gómara, Yllescas and Jovio, about the conquest of Mexico and New Spain, and when I had read their accounts and saw and appreciated their polished style, and thought how rudely and lamely my story was told, I stopped writing it, seeing that such good histories already existed. Being in this perplexed state of mind, I began to look into the arguments and discourses which are told in these books, and I saw that from beginning to end they did not tell correctly what took place in New Spain. When they begin to write about the great cities, and the great number of the inhabitants, they are as ready to write eighty thousand as eight thousand. Then about the great slaughter which they say we committed:—As we were only four hundred and fifty soldiers who marched to that war, we had enough to do to defend ourselves from being killed or defeated and carried off; and even had the Indians been craven cowards, we could not have committed all the slaughter attributed to us, more particularly as the Indians were very bold warriors who had cotton armour which shielded their bodies, and were armed with bows, arrows, shields, long lances, and two-handled stone-edged swords, which cut better than our swords did,

Nevertheless, the historians say that we made as great a slaughter and committed as great cruelties as did Alaric, that bravest of kings, and the haughty warrior Attila, on the battlefields of Catalonia. To go back to my story, they say that we destroyed and burnt many cities and temples, that is their *Cues*, and in saying this, they seem to think that they are giving pleasure to those who read their histories, and they do not understand when they write, that the conquerors themselves, and the inquisitive readers, who know what really took place, could tell them clearly that if they write other histories in the way they have written that of New Spain, such history will be worthless. The amusing part of it is, that they exalt some captains, and belittle others, and they speak of some, who were not even present at the conquest, as though they were there, and they make many other statements of equal value, but there are so many matters about which they are ignorant, that I cannot note them all. But there is one thing that they say worse than all and that is that Cortés sent secret orders to scuttle the ships, on the contrary, it was on the distinct advice of most of the other soldiers and my own, that he sent to have the ships sunk without any concealment whatever, and it was done so that the sailors who were in them might help to keep watch and make war. Indeed, in all they write, they speak with prejudice, so why should I go on dipping my pen to mention each item separately, it is merely wasting ink and paper, moreover I should say it badly, for I have got no style.

Let us leave this discussion and get back to my theme. After having carefully examined all that I have said as to the nonsense that has been written about the affairs of New Spain, I continued writing my own story, for it is the truest politeness and the most courteous style to tell the truth in what one writes, and knowing this, I made up my mind to carry out my plan, with such embellishments

and discourses as will be seen further on, so that the conquest of New Spain may be brought to light and may be clearly seen in the way it ought to be seen.

I wish to return to my story pen in hand as a good pilot carries his lead in hand at sea, looking out for shoals ahead, when he knows that they will be met with, so will I do in speaking of the errors of the historians, but I shall not mention them all, for if one had to follow them item by item, the trouble of discarding the rubbish would be greater than that of gathering in the harvest.

I say that upon this story of mine the historians may build up and give as much praise as pleases them to the valiant captain Cortés and to the sturdy Conquistadores. It was a great enterprise that was accomplished by our hands, and what historians may write about it, we, who were eye witnesses will certify when it is true, as we now certify to the errors, and as so much daring and zeal has been shown in writing falsely and with prejudice, we appreciate how holy and blessed is the truth, and that all that is said against it is cursed.

Moreover it appears that Gómara¹ was inspired to write with such laudation of Cortés, for we look upon it as certain that his palms were greased, for he dedicated his history to the present Marquis, the son of Cortés, insisting on his right so to dedicate and recommend it before our lord the King, and the members of the Royal Council of the Indies ought to have had the mistakes erased that are written down in his books.

¹ Alonzo Remón Edition adds :—" Not only did Gómara write down so many mistakes and things that are not true, but he misled many writers and historians who since his time have written about the affairs of New Spain, such as the Doctor Yllescas and Pablo Jovio who copy his very words."

CHAPTER XIX.

How we came again with another fleet to the newly discovered lands with the valiant and energetic Don Hernando Cortés (who was afterwards Marqués del Valle) as captain of the fleet, and the attempts that were made to prevent his going in command.

AFTER the return of the Captain Juan de Grijalva to Cuba, when the Governor Diego Velásquez understood how rich were these newly discovered lands, he ordered another fleet, much larger than the former one to be sent off, and he had already collected in the Port of Santiago, where he resided, ten ships, four of them were those in which we had returned with Juan de Grijalva, which had at once been careened, and the other six had been got together from other ports in the Island. He had them furnished with provisions, consisting of Cassava bread and salt pork, for at that time there were neither sheep nor cattle in the Island of Cuba, as it had been only recently settled. These provisions were only to last until we arrived at Havana, for it was at that port that we were to take in our stores, as was afterwards done.

I must cease talking of this and tell about the disputes which arose over the choice of a captain for the expedition. There were many debates and much opposition, for some gentleman said that Vasco Porcallo, a near relation of the Conde de Feria, should be captain, but Diego Velásquez feared that he would rise against him with the fleet, for he was very daring; others said that Agustin Bermudez or Antonio Velásquez Borrejo, or Bernadino Velásquez, kinsman of Diego Velásquez should go in command.

Most of us soldiers who were there said that we should prefer to go again under Juan de Grijalva, for he was a good captain, and there was no fault to be found either with his person or his capacity for command.

While things were going on in the way I have related,

two great favourites of Diego Velásquez named Andrés de Duero, the Governor's Secretary, and Amador de Lares, His Majesty's accountant, secretly formed a partnership with a gentleman named Hernando Cortés, a native of Medellín, who held a grant of Indians in the Island. A short while before, Cortés had married a lady named Catalina Juarez la Marçayda; this lady was sister of a certain Juan Juarez who after the conquest of New Spain was a settler at Mexico. As far as I know, and from what others say, it was a love match. On this matter of the marriage other persons who saw it have had much to say, and for that reason I will not touch any more on this delicate subject.

I will go on to tell about this partnership, it came about in this manner:—These two great favourites of Velásquez agreed that they would get him to appoint Cortés Captain General of the whole fleet, and that they would divide between the three of them, the spoil of gold, silver and jewels which might fall to Cortés' share. For secretly Diego Velásquez was sending to trade and not to form a settlement, as was apparent afterwards from the instructions given about it, although it was announced and published that the expedition was for the purpose of founding a settlement.

When this arrangement had been made, Duero and the accountant went to work in such a way with Diego Velásquez, and addressed such honied words to him, praising Cortés highly, as the very man for the position of Captain, as in addition to being energetic he knew how to command and ensure respect, and as one who would be faithful in everything entrusted to him, both in regard to the fleet and in everything else, (pointing out too, that he was his godson, for Velásquez was his sponsor when Cortés married Doña Catalina Juarez), that they persuaded him to choose Cortés as Captain General.

Andrés de Duero, the Governor's Secretary, drew up the documents in very good ink¹ as the proverb says, in the way Cortés wished with very ample powers.

When the appointment was made public, some persons were pleased and others annoyed.

One Sunday when Diego Velásquez went to Mass,—and as he was Governor he was accompanied by the most distinguished persons in the town,—he placed Hernando Cortés on his right hand so as to pay him honour. A buffoon, called the mad Cervantes, ran in front of Diego Velásquez, making grimaces and cracking jokes and he cried out—

“The parade of my friend Diego, Diego,

“Who then is this captain of your choice?

“He comes from Medellín in Estramadura

“A very valiant captain indeed

“Have a care lest he run off with the fleet

“For all judge him a man to take care of his own.”

And he cried out other nonsense, all of it somewhat malicious. And as he would go on shouting in this way, Andrés de Duero who was walking near Diego Velasquez, gave the buffoon a cuff and said “Silence thou crazy drunkard, and don't be such a rogue, for we are well aware that these malicious sayings, passed off as wit, are not made up by thee,” and still the madman ran on, notwithstanding the cuffs, saying, “Viva, Viva, the parade of my friend Diego and his daring Captain Cortés, I swear friend Diego that so as not to see thee weeping over the bad bargain thou hast made this day, I wish to go with Cortés to these rich lands.” There is no doubt that some kinsman of the Governor had given gold pieces to the buffoon to utter these malicious sayings, passing them off as witty. However, this all came true, and it is said that madmen do sometimes hit the mark in their speeches.

¹ De muy buena tinta = most efficiently.

Truly Hernando Cortés was chosen to exalt our holy faith and to serve his Majesty, as I will tell later on.

Before going any further I wish to say that the valiant and energetic Hernando Cortés was a gentleman by birth (hijo-d'algo) by four lines of descent. The first through the Cortéses, for so his father Martin Cortés was named, the second through the Pizarros, the third through the Monroys and the fourth through the Altamiranos. Although he was such a valiant, energetic and daring captain, I will not from now on, call him by any of these epithets of valiant, or energetic, nor will I speak of him as Marqués del Valle, but simply as Hernando Cortés. For the name Cortés alone was held in as high respect throughout the Indies as well as in Spain, as was the name of Alexander in Macedonia, and those of Julius Caesar and Pompey and Scipio among the Romans, and Hannibal among the Carthaginians, or in our own Castille the name of Gonzalo Hernández, the Great Captain. And the valiant Cortés himself was better pleased not to be called by lofty titles but simply by his name, and so I will call him for the future. And now I must cease talking of this, and relate in the next chapter what he undertook and accomplished about the preparation of his fleet.

CHAPTER XX.

How Cortés prepared and continued the arrangements necessary for the dispatch of the fleet.

AS soon as Hernando Cortés had been appointed General in the way I have related, he began to search for all sorts of arms, guns, powder and crossbows and every kind of warlike stores which he could get together, and all sorts of articles to be used for barter, and other things necessary for the expedition.

Moreover he began to adorn himself and be more careful of his appearance than before, and he wore a plume of feathers with a medal, and a gold chain, and a velvet cloak trimmed with knots of gold, in fact he looked like a gallant and courageous Captain. However, he had no money to defray the expenses I have spoken about, for at that time he was very poor and much in debt, although he had a good *encomienda* of Indians who were getting him a return from his gold mines, but he spent all of it on his person and on finery for his wife whom he had recently married, and on entertaining some guests who had come to visit him. For he was affable in his manner and a good talker, and he had twice been chosen *Alcalde*¹ of the town of Santiago Baracoa where he had settled, and in that country it is esteemed a great honour to be chosen as *Alcalde*.

When some merchant friends of his named Jaime Tria, Jerónimo Tria and Pedro de Jerez saw that he had obtained this command as Captain General, they lent him four thousand gold dollars in coin and gave him merchandise worth another four thousand dollars secured on his Indians and estates. Then he ordered two standards and banners to be made, worked in gold with the royal arms and a cross on each side with a legend which said, "Comrades, let us follow the sign of the holy Cross with true faith, and through it we shall conquer." And he ordered a proclamation to be made with the sound of drums and trumpets in the name of His Majesty and by Diego Velásquez in the King's name, and in his own as Captain General, to the effect that whatsoever person might wish to go in his company to the newly discovered lands to conquer them and to settle there, should receive his share of the gold, silver and riches which might be gained

¹ Alcalde = Mayor.

and an *encomienda* of Indians after the country had been pacified, and that to do these things Diego Velásquez held authority from His Majesty.

Although he put in the proclamation this about the authority of Our Lord the King, the Chaplain, Benito Martínez, had not yet arrived from Spain with the Commission which Diego Velásquez had sent him to obtain, as I have already mentioned in a former chapter.

When this news was known throughout Cuba, and Cortés had written to all his friends in the different towns begging them to get ready to come with him on this expedition, some of them sold their farms so as to buy arms and horses, others began to prepare cassava bread and to salt pork for stores, and to make quilted cotton armour, and they got ready what was necessary as well as they could.

We assembled at Santiago de Cuba, whence we set out with the fleet more than three hundred and fifty soldiers in number. From the house of Velásquez there came Diego de Ordás, the chief Mayordomo, whom Velásquez himself sent with orders to keep his eyes open and see that no plots were hatched in the fleet, for he was always distrustful of Cortés although he concealed his fears. There came also Francisco de Morla and an Escobar, whom we called The Page, and a Heredia, and Juan Ruano and Pedro Escudero, and Martin Ramos de Lares, and many others who were friends and followers of Diego Velásquez; and I place myself last on the list for I also came from the house of Diego Velásquez, for he was my kinsman.

I have put down here the names of these soldiers from memory, later on, at the proper time and place I will record all those who went in the fleet whose names I can call to mind, and say from what part of Spain they came.

Cortés worked hard to get his fleet under way and hastened on his preparations, for already envy and malice had taken possession of the relations of Diego Velásquez who were affronted because their kinsman neither trusted them nor took any notice of them and because he had given charge and command to Cortés, knowing that he had looked upon him as a great enemy only a short time before, on account of his marriage, already mentioned by me; so they went about grumbling at their kinsman Diego Velásquez and at Cortés, and by every means in their power they worked on Diego Velásquez to induce him to revoke the commission.

Now Cortés was advised of all this, and for that reason never left the Governor's side, and always showed himself to be his zealous servant, and kept on telling him that, God willing, he was going to make him a very illustrious and wealthy gentleman in a very short time. Moreover Andrés de Duero was always advising Cortés to hasten the embarkation of himself and his soldiers, for Diego Velásquez was already changing his mind owing to the importunity of his family.

When Cortés knew this he sent orders to his wife that all provisions of food which he wished to take and any other gifts (such as women usually give to their husbands when starting on such an expedition) should be sent at once and placed on board ship.

He had already had a proclamation made that on that day by nightfall all ships, Captains, pilots and soldiers should be on board and no one should remain on shore. When Cortés had seen all his company embarked he went to take leave of Diego Velásquez, accompanied by his great friends and many other gentlemen, and all the most distinguished citizens of that town.

After many demonstrations and embraces of Cortés by the Governor, and of the Governor by Cortés, he took his

leave. The next day very early after having heard Mass we went to our ships, and Diego Velásquez himself accompanied us, and again they embraced with many fair speeches one to the other until we set sail.

A few days later, in fine weather, we reached the Port of Trinidad where we brought up in the harbour and went ashore, and nearly all the citizens of that town came out to meet us; and entertained us well.

Here in this story will be seen all the opposition which Cortés met with, and how what happened differed entirely from the account given by Gómara in his history.

NOTE.—This account differs very considerably from that given by Las Casas (Lib. III, cap. cxv). It appears that Diego Velásquez had already determined to take the command from Cortés, "at once on the very night that he became aware of what was going on, as soon as Diego Velásquez was in bed, and all those who belonged to [him,] Cortés, had left the Palace, he went in the profound silence of the night in the utmost haste to awaken the rest of his friends telling them that it was advisable to embark at once. Taking with him a company sufficient to defend his person, he immediately went off to the slaughter house and, although it troubled the contractor who had to supply the whole town with meat, he took it all away without leaving a single cow, pig, or sheep, and had it carried to the ships, exclaiming, but not out loud, for it might perhaps have cost him his life, that they could lay the blame on him [Cortés] for not supplying meat to the town. Then Cortés took off a small golden chain that he wore round his neck and gave it to the contractor or butcher, and *this Cortés told me himself.*

"Cortés at once went on board ship with all the people that he could arouse without noise. Many of the people who had agreed to go with him and who really went were already on board.

"When he was gone either the butcher or others who knew of his departure advised Diego Velásquez that Cortés was gone and was already on board ship. Diego Velásquez got up and mounted his horse, and all the people of the city, in a state of astonishment, accompanied him to the landing place by the sea at daybreak. When Cortés saw him he ordered a boat to be got ready with cannon, guns, muskets and crossbows, and all the necessary arms, and accompanied by the men he could trust best, with his magistrate's wand [in his hand] he came within crossbow shot of the land and

there stopped. Diego Velásquez said to him 'How is it, compadre,¹ that you are going off like this? Is this the right way to take leave of me?' Cortés replied 'Señor, may your Excellency pardon me, but these things and the like are done before they are thought about, I am at your Excellency's orders.' Diego Velásquez had nothing to say when he saw his infidelity and shamelessness. Cortés ordered the boat's head to be turned and went back to the ships, and ordered the sails to be hoisted in all haste [and] on the 18th Nov. 1518 [he set out] with very little food for the ships were not yet fully laden."

CHAPTER XXI.

What Cortés did when he arrived at the town of Trinidad and concerning the soldiers who there joined him to go in his company, and other things that happened.

THE leading inhabitants of that town soon provided quarters for Cortés and all of us among their neighbours. Cortés was lodged in the house of Captain Juan de Grijalva, and he ordered his standard and the Royal pennant to be set up in front of his quarters and issued a proclamation as he had done in Santiago, and ordered search to be made for all sorts of arms, and food and other necessities to be purchased.

From that town there came to join us five brothers, namely Pedro de Alvarado and Jorge de Alvarado, and Gonzalo and Gómez, and Juan de Alvarado the elder, who was a bastard. The Captain Pedro de Alvarado has often been mentioned by me already. There also joined us from this town Alonzo de Ávila, who went as a Captain in Grijalva's expedition, and Juan de Escalante and Pedro Sanchez Farfan, and Gonzalo Mejía who later on became treasurer in Mexico, and a certain Baena and Juanes of Fuenterrabia, and Lares, the good horseman, so called because there was another Lares, and Cristóbal de Olid, the Valiant, who was Maestro de Campo during the

¹ ¹ Compadre = friend, crony.

Mexican wars, and Ortis the Musician, and Gaspar Sanchez, nephew of the treasurer of Cuba, and Diego de Pineda or Pinedo, and Alonzo Rodríguez, who owned some rich gold mines, and Bartolomé García and other gentlemen whose names I do not remember, all persons of quality.

From Trinidad Cortés wrote to the town of Santispíritus which was eighteen leagues distant, informing all the inhabitants that he was setting out on this expedition in His Majesty's service, adding fair words and inducements to attract many persons of quality who had settled in that town, among them Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero cousin of the Count of Medellin, and Gonzalo de Sandoval who became later on, in Mexico, *Alguazil Mayor*,¹ and for eight months was Governor of New Spain and Juan Velásquez de Leon came, a kinsman of Diego Velásquez, and Rodrigo Reogel, and Gonzalo López de Jimena, and his brother, and Juan Sedeño also came. This Juan Sedeño was a settler in the town, I mention this because we had two others of the name Juan Sedeño in the fleet. All these distinguished persons whom I have named came from the town of Santispíritus to Trinidad where Cortés was staying, and when he heard that they were coming he went out to meet them with all the soldiers of his company and received them with great cordiality and they treated him with the highest respect.

All these settlers whom I have named possessed farms near the town where they made Cassava bread and kept herds of swine, and each one endeavoured to contribute as much food as he could.

We continued to enlist soldiers and to buy horses, which at that time were both scarce and costly, and as that gentleman already mentioned by me, Alonzo Hernández

¹ Chief Constable.*

Puertocarrero, neither possessed a horse nor the wherewithal to buy one, Hernando Cortés bought him a gray mare, and paid for it with some of the golden knots off the velvet cloak which as I have said he had had made at Santiago de Cuba.

At that very time a ship arrived in port from Havana, which a certain Juan Sedeño, a settler at Havana, was taking, freighted with Cassava bread and salt pork to sell at some gold mines near Santiago de Cuba.

Juan Sedeño landed and went to pay his respects to Cortés, and after a long conversation Cortés bought the ship and the pork and bread on credit, and it all came with us. So we already had eleven ships and thank God all was going well with us.

Meanwhile Diego Velásquez had sent letters and commands for the fleet to be detained and Cortés to be sent to him as a prisoner.

CHAPTER XXII.

How the Governor Diego Velásquez sent two of his servants post haste to the town of Trinidad with orders and authority to cancel the appointment of Cortés, detain the fleet, arrest Cortés and send him as a prisoner to Santiago.

I MUST go back a little from our story, to say that after we had set out from Santiago de Cuba with all the ships, in the way I have already related, so many things were said to Diego Velásquez against Cortés, that he was forced to change his mind, for they told him that Cortés was already in rebellion, and that he left the port by stealth, and that he had been heard to say that although Diego Velásquez and his relations might regret it, he intended to be Captain and that was the reason why he had embarked

all his soldiers by night, so that if any attempt were made to detain him by force he might set sail; they also said that Andrés de Duero, the Secretary, and the Accountant Amador de Lares had deceived Diego Velásquez on account of arrangements made between them and Cortés. Those who took the leading part in persuading Diego Velásquez to revoke the authority he had given to Cortés were some members of the Velásquez family and an old man named Juan Millan whom some called the astrologer, but others said he had a touch of madness because he acted without reflection, and this old man kept repeating to Diego Velásquez "Take care, Sir, for Cortés will take vengeance on you for putting him in prison,¹ and as he is sly and determined he will ruin you if you do not prevent it at once."

And Velásquez listened to these speeches, and was always haunted by suspicions, so without delay he sent two messengers whom he trusted, with orders and instructions to Francisco Verdugo, the Chief Alcalde of Trinidad, who was his brother-in-law, and wrote letters to other friends and relations, to the effect that on no account should the fleet be allowed to sail, and he said in his orders that Cortés should be detained or taken prisoner as he was no longer its captain, for he had revoked his commission and given it to Vasco Porcallo. The messengers also carried letters to Diego de Ordás and Francisco de Morla and other dependents of his begging them not to allow the fleet to sail.

When Cortés heard of this, he spoke to Ordás and Francisco Verdugo and to all the soldiers and settlers at Trinidad, whom he thought would be against him and in favour of the instructions, and he made such speeches and

¹ This refers to an earlier incident in the relations between Cortés and Diego Velásquez.

promises to them that he brought them over to his side. Diego Ordás himself spoke at once to Francisco Verdugo, the Alcalde Mayor advising him to have nothing to do with the affair but to hush it up, and bade him note that up to that time they had seen no change in Cortés, on the contrary that he showed himself to be a faithful servant of the Governor, and that if Velásquez wished to impute any evil to him in order to deprive him of the command of the fleet, it was as well to remember that Cortés had many men of quality among his friends, who were unfriendly to Velásquez because he had not given them good grants of Indians. In addition to this, that Cortés had a large body of soldiers with him and was very powerful and might sow strife in the town, and perhaps the soldiers might sack the town and plunder it, and do even worse damage.

So the matter was quietly dropped and one of the messengers who brought the letters and instructions, named Pedro Lazo de la Vega joined our company, and by the other messenger Cortés sent a letter to Diego Velásquez written in a very friendly manner, saying that he was amazed at His Honour having come to such a decision, that his desire was to serve God and his Majesty, and to obey him as His Majesty's representative, and that he prayed him not to pay any more attention to what was said by the gentlemen of his family, nor to change his mind on account of the speeches of such an old lunatic as Juan Millan. He also wrote to all his friends and especially to his partners Duero and the Treasurer.

When these letters had been written Cortés ordered all the soldiers to polish up their arms, and he ordered the blacksmiths in the town to make head pieces, and the cross bowmen to overhaul their stores and make arrows, and he also sent for the two blacksmiths and persuaded them to accompany us, which they did. We were ten days

in that town. Here I will leave off and go on to tell how we embarked for Havana.

However, I wish first to point out to my readers how different this is from the story of Francisco Gómara who says that Diego Velásquez sent to Ordás telling him to invite Cortés to dinner on board a ship, and then to carry him off as a prisoner to Santiago, and makes other statements calculated to mislead in his history, but, so as not to become prolix, I will leave them to the judgment of interested readers.

CHAPTER XXIII.

How the Captain Hernando Cortés with all the soldiers sailed along the south coast to the port of Havana,¹ and how another ship was sent along the north coast to the same port, and what else took place.

WHEN Cortés saw that there was nothing more to be done at the town of Trinidad he summoned all the soldiers who had assembled there to go with him * * * * * (Pedro) de Alvarado that he should go by land to Havana² * * * * * to pick up some soldiers who lived on farms along the road, and I went in his company. Cortés also sent a gentleman named Juan de Escalante, a great friend of his, in a ship along the north coast, and he sent all the horses by land. When

¹ This was on the south coast, not the present port of Havana on the north coast, which must have been about thirty miles distant. Cortés and his fleet sailed along the south coast of Cuba, and the "San Sebastian" and the vessel commanded by Juan de Escalante were the only vessels on the north side of the Island.

² The Alonzo Remón edition says "he summoned all the gentlemen and soldiers who had assembled there to go with him either to embark on the ships which were in port on the south coast, or if they preferred it to go by land to Havana with Pedro de Alvarado who was going to pick up some soldiers who lived on farms along the road."

all this had been done Cortés went on board the flagship to set sail with all the fleet for Havana.

It appears that the ships of the Convoy did not see the flagship in which Cortés had embarked, for it was night time and they went on to the port [of Havana]. We also arrived by land at the town of Havana with Pedro de Alvarado, and the ship in which Juan de Escalante had come along the north coast had already arrived, and all the horses which had been sent by land, but Cortés did not appear, and no one knew where he was delayed. Five days passed without news of his ship and we began to wonder whether he had been lost on the *Jardines*, ten or twelve miles from Havana near the Isle of Pines where there are many shallows. We all agreed that three of the smaller vessels should go in search of Cortés, and in preparing the vessels and in debates whether this or the other man—Pedro or Sancho—should go, two more days went by and Cortés did not appear. Then parties began to be formed, and we all played the game of "Who shall be Captain until Cortés comes?" And the man who took the lead in this was Diego de Ordás, as the chief Mayor-domo of Velásquez, who had been sent by the Governor merely to look after the fleet and see that there should be no mutiny.

Let us leave this subject and return to Cortés who, as I have already said, had embarked on the largest ship of the fleet, and in the neighbourhood of the Isle of Pines, or near the *Jardines*, where there are many shallows, the ship ran aground and remained there hard and fast and could not be floated.

Cortés ordered all the cargo which could be removed to be taken ashore in the boat, for there was land near by where it could be stored, and when it was seen that the ship was floating and could be moved, she was taken into deeper water and was laden again with the cargo which

had been taken ashore, sail was then set and the voyage continued to the port of Havana.

When Cortés arrived nearly all of us gentlemen and soldiers who were awaiting him were delighted at his coming, all except some who had hoped to be Captains, for the game of choosing captains came to an end.

As soon as we had lodged Cortés in the house of Pedro Barba, who was the lieutenant of Diego Velásquez in that town, he ordered the standards to be brought out and placed in front of the buildings in which he was lodged and ordered proclamation to be made, as he had done before.

From the Havana there came the Hidalgo Francisco Montejo very often mentioned by me, who after the conquest of Mexico was appointed Governor and Adelantado of Yucatan, and there also came Diego de Soto of Toro who was Mayordomo to Cortés in Mexico, and a certain Angulo y Garcicaro, and Sebastian Rodríguez and a Pacheco and a somebody Gutierrez, and a Rójas (not Rójas el Rico) and a youth named Santa Clara, and two brothers called the Martínez del Freginal, and a Juan de Najara (I don't mean the deaf one who played Pelota¹ in Mexico), all persons of quality, not counting other soldiers whose names I cannot remember.

When Cortés beheld all these Hidalgos collected together he was greatly pleased. He sent a ship to the Cape of Guaniguanico, to an Indian town there, where they made Cassava bread and kept many pigs, to have her laden with salt pork, for the farm belonged to the Governor Diego Velásquez,² and he sent Diego de Ordás

¹ A ball game.

² In a conversation with Las Casas in the year 1542, Cortés, speaking of this expedition, laughingly remarked, "A mi fé, anduve por allí como un gentil corsario." "By my faith I went about there like an excellent robber." (Las Casas, *Hist. de Indias*, Lib. III, cap. cxvi).

who was the chief Mayordomo of the property of Velásquez in command of the ship, as he wished to get him out of the way, for he knew that Diego de Ordás did not show himself to be very well disposed towards him at the time when his ship went ashore near the Isle of Pines and the question arose as to who should be chosen captain. So in order to avoid disputes with him he sent Diego de Ordás off with orders that after freighting the ship with supplies of food, he should remain at the port of Guaniguanico until he was joined by the other ship which was going along the north coast, and then that the two should sail together for Cozumel, but that [in case of any change of plans] he would send Indians in canoes to advise him what was to be done.

I must not forget to say that Francisco de Montejo and all the other settlers at Havana sent on board great stores of Cassava bread and salt pork, for other provisions were not to be had.

Cortés now ordered all the artillery, which consisted of ten brass guns and some falconets, to be brought out of the ships, and gave them in charge of an artilleryman named Mesa, and of a levantine named Arbenga, and a certain Juan Catalan, with orders to have them thoroughly cleaned and tested, and to see that the balls and powder were in readiness, and he gave them wine and vinegar with which to clean them. He gave the gunners as a companion a certain Bartolomé de Usagre. He also ordered that the crossbows with their cords, nuts, and other necessities should be overhauled, and that they should be tested at a target, so as to see how far each of them would carry.

As in the country round Havana there is much cotton, we made well padded armour for ourselves, which is most necessary when fighting Indians, on account of the great use they make of darts, arrows and lances, and stones which fall on one like hail.

It was here in Havana that Cortés began to organize a household and to be treated as a Lord. The first Marshal of the household,¹ whom he appointed was a certain Guzman who soon afterwards died or was killed by the Indians (this was not Cristóbal de Guzman, the Mayordomo of Cortés who took Guatemoc² prisoner during the war in Mexico) and he had as *camarero*³ Rodrigo Ranguel, and for Mayordomo, Juan de Cáceres who became a rich man after the conquest of Mexico.

When all this was settled we got ready to embark and the horses were divided among all the ships, and mangers were made for them and a store of maize and hay put on board. I will now call to mind all the mares and horses that were shipped :—

The Captain Cortés :—A vicious dark chestnut horse, which died as soon as we arrived at San Juan de Ulúa.

Pedro de Alvarado and Hernando López de Ávila :—a very good sorrel mare, good both for sport and as a charger. When we arrived at New Spain Pedro de Alvarado bought the other half share in the mare or took it by force.

Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero :—a grey mare, a very good charger which Cortés bought for him with his gold buttons.

Juan Velásquez de Leon :—A very powerful gray mare which we called "La Rabona,"⁴ very handy and a good charger.

Cristóbal de Olid :—a dark chestnut horse, fairly good.

Francisco de Montejo and Alonzo de Ávila :—a parched sorrel horse, no use for warfare.

¹ Maestresala = the chief waiter in a nobleman's household.

² Guatemuz in the original.

³ *Camarero* = chamberlain.

⁴ La Rabona = the bob-tailed.

Francisco de Morla :—a dark chestnut horse, very fast and very easily handled.

Juan de Escalante :—a light chestnut horse with three white stockings, not much good.

Diego de Ordás, a gray mare, barren, tolerably good, but not fast.

Gonzalo Domínguez :—a wonderfully good horseman ; a very good dark chestnut horse, a grand galloper.

Pedro González de Trujillo :—a good chestnut horse, all chestnut, a very good goer. .

Moron, a settler at Bayamo :—a dappled horse with stockings on the forefeet, very handy.

Baena : a settler at Trinidad :—a dappled horse almost black, no good for anything.

Lares, a very good horseman :—an excellent horse of rather light chestnut colour, a very good goer.

Ortiz the musician and Bartolomé García, who once owned gold mines :—a very good dark horse called "El Arriero,"¹ this was one of the best horses carried in the fleet.

Juan Sedeño, a settler at Havana :—a chestnut mare which foaled on board ship.

This Juan Sedeño passed for the richest soldier in the fleet, for he came in his own ship with the mare, and a negro and a store of cassava bread and salt pork, and at that time horses and negroes were worth their weight in gold, and that is the reason why more horses were not taken, for there were none to be bought. I will leave off here and tell what next happened to us, when we were just about to embark.

¹ *El arriero* = the muleteer, carrier.

CHAPTER XXIV.

How Diego Velásquez sent a servant named Gaspar de Garnica with orders and instructions that in any case Cortés should be arrested and the fleet taken from him, and what was done about it.

To make my story clear, I must go back and relate that when Diego Velásquez knew for certain that his lieutenant and brother-in-law Francisco Verdugo who was stationed at the town of Trinidad not only refused to compel Cortés to leave the fleet, but, together with Diego de Ordás, had helped him to get away, they say that he was so angry that he roared with rage and told his secretary Andrés de Duero and the Treasurer Amador de Lares that they had deceived him by the agreement they had made, and that Cortés was mutinous. He made up his mind to send a servant with letters and orders to Pedro Barba, his lieutenant at Havana, and wrote very graciously to all his friends who were settlers in that town, and to Diego de Ordás and to Juan Velásquez de Leon who were his friends and kinsmen praying them neither for good nor ill to let the fleet get away, and to seize Cortés at once and send him under a strong guard to Santiago de Cuba.

On the arrival of Garnica (that was the name of the man who brought the letters and orders to Havana) it was known at once what he had brought with him, for by the same messenger Cortés was advised of what Velásquez was doing. It happened in this way:—it appears that a friar of the Order of Mercy, who gave himself out to be a follower of Velásquez, was in the Governor's company at the time, and he wrote a letter to another friar of his order named Bartolomé del Olmedo, who was with us, and in that letter, written by the friar, Cortés was informed by his two associates, Andrés de Duero and the treasurer of all that had happened.

To go back to my story :—As Cortés had sent away Diego de Ordás in a ship to collect stores, there was no one to oppose him except Juan Velásquez de Leon, and as soon as Cortés spoke to him he brought him over to his side,—all the more easily because Juan Velásquez was put out with his kinsman for not giving him a good grant of Indians.

Not one of the others to whom Diego Velásquez had written favoured his proposal, indeed one and all declared for Cortés, the lieutenant Pedro Barba above all. In addition to this the Alvarados, Alonzo Hernández Puerto-carrero, Francisco de Montejo, Cristóval de Olid, Juan de Escalante, Andrés de Monjaraz, and his brother Gregorio de Monjaraz and all of us would have given our lives for Cortés. So that if in the Town of Trinidad the orders of Velásquez were slighted, in the town of Havana they were absolutely ignored.

By this same Garnica, the lieutenant Pedro Barba wrote to Diego Velásquez that he did not dare to seize Cortés as he was too strongly supported by soldiers, and he was afraid lest Cortés should sack and plunder the town and carry off all the settlers along with him ; that from all that he had gathered Cortés was the Governor's faithful servant and would not dare to be anything else. Cortés also wrote to Velásquez in the agreeable and complimentary terms which he knew so well how to use, and told him that he should set sail next day and that he remained his humble servant.

CHAPTER XXV.

How Cortés set sail with all his company of Gentlemen and soldiers for the Island of Cozumel and what happened there.

THERE was to be no parade of the forces until we arrived at Cozumel. Cortés ordered the horses to be taken on board ship, and he directed Pedro de Alvarado to go along the North coast in a good ship named the *San Sebastian*, and he told the pilot who was in charge to wait for him at Cape San Antonio as all the ships would meet there and go in company to Cozumel. He also sent a messenger to Diego de Ordás, who had gone along the North Coast to collect supplies of food with orders to do the same and await his coming.

On the 10th February 1519, after hearing Mass, they set sail along the south coast with nine ships and the company of gentlemen and soldiers whom I have mentioned, so that with the two ships absent on the north coast there were eleven ships in all, including that which carried Pedro de Alvarado with seventy soldiers and I travelled in his company.

The Pilot named Camacho who was in charge of our ship paid no attention to the orders of Cortés and went his own way and we arrived at Cozumel two days before Cortés and anchored in the port which I have often mentioned when telling about Grijalva's expedition.

Cortés had not yet arrived, being delayed by the ship commanded by Francisco de Morla having lost her rudder in bad weather, however she was supplied with another rudder by one of the ships of the fleet,¹ and all then came on in company.

¹ Blotted out in the original MS. "They turned back looking for the rudder in the sea and they found it and put it in its place, so that they were soon able to navigate the ship."—G. G.

To go back to Pedro de Alvarado. As soon as we arrived in port we went on shore with all the soldiers to the town of Cozumel, but we found no Indians there as they had all fled. So we were ordered to go on to another town about a league distant, and there also the natives had fled and taken to the bush, but they could not carry off their property and left behind their poultry and other things and Pedro de Alvarado ordered forty of the fowls to be taken. In an Idol house there were some altar ornaments made of old cloths and some little chests containing diadems, Idols, beads and pendants of gold of poor quality, and here we captured two Indians and an Indian woman, and we returned to the town where we had disembarked.

While we were there Cortés arrived with all the fleet, and after taking up his lodging the first thing he did was to order the pilot Camacho to be put in irons for not having waited for him at sea as he had been ordered to do. When he saw the town without any people in it, and heard that Pedro de Alvarado had gone to the other town and had taken fowls and cloths and other things of small value from the Idols, and some gold which was half copper, he showed that he was very angry both at that and at the pilot not having waited for him, and he reprimanded Pedro de Alvarado severely, and told him that we should never pacify the country in that way by robbing the natives of their property, and he sent for the two Indians and the woman whom we had captured, and through Melchorejo, (Julianillo his companion was dead) the man we had brought from Cape Catoche who understood the language well, he spoke to them telling them to go and summon the Caciques and Indians of their town, and he told them not to be afraid, and he ordered the gold and the cloths and all the rest to be given back to them, and for the fowls (which had already been eaten)

he ordered them to be given beads and little bells, and in addition he gave to each Indian a Spanish shirt. So they went off to summon the lord of the town, and the next day the Cacique and all his people arrived, women and children and all the inhabitants of the town, and they went about among us as though they had been used to us all their lives, and Cortés ordered us not to annoy them in any way. Here in this Island Cortés began to rule energetically, and Our Lord so favoured him that whatever he put his hand to it turned out well for him, especially in pacifying the people and towns of these lands, as we shall see further on.

CHAPTER XXVI.

How Cortés reviewed all his army and what else happened to us.

WHEN we had been in Cozumel three days Cortés ordered a muster of his forces so as to see how many of us there were, and he found that we numbered five hundred and eight, not counting the shipmasters, pilots and sailors, who numbered about one hundred. There were sixteen horses and mares all fit to be used for sport or as chargers.

There were eleven ships both great and small, and one a sort of launch which a certain Gines Nortes brought laden with supplies.

There were thirty two cross bowmen and thirteen musketeers;—*escopeteros*, as they were then called and ¹ brass guns, and four falconets, and much powder and ball. About the number of cross bowmen my memory

¹ Blotted out in the original MS. is the word "ten."—G. G.

does not serve me very well, but it is not material to my story.

After the review Cortés ordered Mesa surnamed "the gunner" and Bartolomé de Usagre and Arbenga and a certain Catalan who were all artillerymen, to keep their guns clean and in good order, and the ammunition ready for use. He appointed Francisco de Orozco, who had been a soldier in Italy to be captain of the Artillery. He likewise ordered two crossbowmen named Juan Benítez and Pedro del Guzman the crossbowman, who were masters of the art of repairing crossbows, to see that every crossbow had two or three [spare] nuts and cords and fore cords and to be careful to keep them stored and to have smoothing tools and *inguijuela*¹ and [to see] that the men should practice at a target. He also ordered all the horses to be kept in good condition.

I don't know why I should expend so much ink in telling about these preparations of arms and the rest of it, for in truth Cortés was most vigilant about everything.

CHAPTER XXVII.

How Cortés came to know that the Indians of Cape Catoche held two Spaniards in captivity, and what he did about it.

AS Cortés was most diligent in all matters, he sent for me and a Biscayan named Martin Ramos, and asked us what we thought about those words which the Indians of Campeche had used when we went there with Francisco Hernández de Córdova, when they cried out "Castilan, Castilan" as I have already stated in the chapter which treats of that expedition. We again related to Cortés all that we had seen and heard about the matter, and he said

¹ Probably some technical term now obsolete.

that he also had often thought about it, and that perhaps there might be some Spaniards living in the country, and added "It seems to me that it would be well to ask these Caciques of Cozumel if they know anything about them." So through Melchorejo, the man from Cape Catoche, who already understood a little Spanish and knew the language of Cozumel very well, all the chiefs were questioned, and every one of them said that they had known of certain Spaniards and gave descriptions of them, and said that some Caciques, who lived about two days' journey inland, kept them as slaves, and that here in Cozumel were some Indian traders who spoke to them only a few days ago. We were all delighted at this news, and Cortés told the Caciques that they must go at once and summon the Spaniards, taking with them letters, (which in the Indian language they call *amales*) and he gave shirts to the Caciques and Indians who went with the letters and spoke reassuringly to them, and told them that when they returned he would give them some more beads. The Cacique advised Cortés to send a ransom to the owners who held these men as slaves, so that they should be allowed to come, and Cortés did so, and gave to the messengers all manner of beads. Then he ordered the two smallest vessels to be got ready (one of them was little larger than a launch) and twenty men with guns and crossbows, under the command of Diego de Ordás, and he sent them off to the coast near Cape Catoche where the larger vessel was to wait for eight days while the smaller vessel should go backwards and forwards and bring news of what was being done, for the land of Cape Catoche was only four leagues distant, and the one country could be seen from the other.

In the letter Cortés said :—"Gentlemen and brothers, here in Cozumel I have learnt that you are captives in the hands of a Cacique, and I pray you that you come here to Cozumel at once, and for this purpose I have sent a ship

with soldiers, in case you have need of them, and a ransom to be paid to those Indians with whom you are living. The ship will wait eight days for you. Come in all haste, and you will be welcomed and protected. I am here at this Island with five hundred soldiers and eleven ships, in which I go on, please God, to a town called Tabasco or Potonchan."

The two vessels were soon despatched with the two Indian traders from Cozumel who carried the letters, and they crossed the strait in three hours and the messengers with the letters and ransom were landed. In two days the letters were delivered to a Spaniard named Jerónimo de Aguilar, for that we found to be his name, and so I shall call him in future. When he had read the letter and received the ransom of beads which we had sent to him he was delighted, and carried the ransom to the Cacique his master, and begged leave to depart, and the Cacique at once gave him leave to go wherever he pleased. Aguilar set out for the place, five leagues distant, where his companion Gonzalo Guerrero was living, but when he read the letter to him he answered, "Brother Aguilar, I am married and have three children and the Indians look on me as a Cacique and captain in wartime,—You go and God be with you, but I have my face tatooed and my ears pierced, what would the Spaniards say should they see me in this guise? and look how handsome these boys of mine are, for God's sake give me those green beads you have brought and I will give the beads to them and say that my brothers have sent them from my own country." And the Indian wife of Gonzalo spoke to Aguilar in her own tongue very angrily and said to him, "What is this slave coming here for talking to my husband,—go off with you, and don't trouble us with any more words."

Then Aguilar reminded Gonzalo that he was a Christian and said that he should not imperil his soul for the sake of

an Indian woman, and as for his wife and children he could take them with him if he did not wish to desert them. But by no words or admonishments could he be persuaded to come. It appears that Gonzalo Guerrero was a sailor and a native of Palos.

When Jerónimo de Aguilar saw that Gonzalo would not accompany him he went at once, with the two Indian messengers, to the place where the ship had been awaiting his coming, but when he arrived he saw no ship for she had already departed. The eight days during which Ordás had been ordered to await and one day more had already expired, and seeing that Aguilar had not arrived Ordás returned to Cozumel without bringing any news about that for which he had come.

When Aguilar saw that there was no ship there he became very sad, and returned to his master and to the town where he usually lived.

Now I will leave this and say that when Cortés saw Ordás return without success or any news of the Spaniards or Indian messengers he was very angry, and said haughtily to Ordás that he thought that he would have done better than to return without the Spaniards or any news of them, for it was quite clear that they were prisoners in that country.

At that moment it happened that some sailors called the Peñates,¹ natives of Gibráleon,² had stolen some pieces of salt pork from a soldier named Berrio and would not return them, so Berrio complained to Cortés and the sailors were put on oath, and they perjured themselves, but in the enquiry the fact of the theft was proved, and that the pork had been divided among seven sailors, and Cortés ordered four of them to be flogged, in spite of the appeals of some of the Captains.

¹ Peñates = rock men.

² Gibráleon.

Here I must leave both this matter of the sailors and that of Aguilar, and keep the story of our journey up to date and tell how many Indians both the natives of the towns near Cape Catoche and those from other parts of Yucatan came on pilgrimages to the Island of Cozumel, for it appeared that there were some very hideous idols kept in a certain oratory on Cozumel to which it was the custom of the people of the land to offer sacrifices at that season. One morning the courtyard of the oratory where the Idols were kept was crowded with Indians, and many of them both men and women were burning a resin like our incense. As this was a new sight to us we stood round watching it with attention, and presently an old Indian with a long cloak, who was the priest of the Idols (and I have already said that the priests in New Spain are called *Papas*) went up on the top of the oratory and began to preach to the people. Cortés and all of us were wondering what would be the result of that black sermon. Cortés asked Melchorejo, who understood the language well, what the old Indian was saying, for he was informed that he was preaching evil things, and he sent for the Cacique and all the principal chiefs and the priest himself, and, as well as he could through the aid of our interpreter, he told them that if we were to be brothers they must cast those most evil Idols out of their temple, for they were not gods at all but very evil things which led them astray and could lead their souls to hell. Then he spoke to them about good and holy things, and told them to set up in the place of their Idols an image of Our Lady which he gave them, and a cross, which would always aid them and bring good harvests and would save their souls, and he told them in a very excellent way other things about our holy faith.

The Priest and the Caciques answered that their forefathers had worshipped those Idols because they were good, and that they did not dare to do otherwise, and that

if we cast out their Idols we would see how much harm it would do us, for we should be lost at sea. Then Cortés ordered us to break the Idols to pieces and roll them down the steps,¹ and this we did; then he ordered lime to be brought, of which there was a good store in the town, and Indian masons, and he set up a very fair altar on which we placed the figure of Our Lady; and he ordered two of our party named Alonzo Yáñez and Álvaro López who were carpenters and joiners to make a cross of some rough timber which was there, and it was placed in a small chapel near the altar and the priest named Juan Díaz said mass there, and the Cacique and the heathen priest and all the Indians stood watching us with attention.

The Caciques in this Island of Cozumel are called Calachiones as I have already said when telling about our doings at Potonchan. Now I will leave off here, and will go on to tell how we embarked on board ship.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

How Cortés allotted the ships and appointed captains to go in them, and gave instructions to the pilots and arranged lantern signals for the night time, and what else happened to us.

CORTÉS himself took command of the flagship, Pedro de Alvarado and his brothers took charge of the *San Sebastian*, a very good ship, and the commands of the other ships were given to Alonso Hernández Puertocarrero, Francisco de Montejo, who had a good ship, Cristóval de Olid, Diego de Ordás, Juan Velásquez de Leon, Juan de Escalante,

¹ In the "Itinerary of Grijalva" a temple or oratory of the Idols is thus described:—"It was eighteen steps (of a stairway) in height and the base was solid, and the measurement round it was one hundred and eighty feet. On the top of this was a small tower the height of two men one above the other and inside were certain figures and bones and *Cenis* which are the Idols which they worship."

Francisco de Morla, the Page Escobar, and the smallest vessel of all, a launch, was commanded by Gines Nortes. Each ship had its pilot; Anton de Alaminos was Pilot in Chief, and instructions were given about the course to be steered and other matters, and about the lantern signals for the night time.

Cortés took leave of the Caciques and priests and confided to their care the Image of Our Lady and told them to reverence the cross and keep it clean and wreathed with flowers and they would see what advantage they would gain by so doing, and the Indians replied that they would do so, and they brought four fowls and two jars of honey and they embraced him.

We embarked and set sail on a day in the Month of March 1519, and went on our way in fair weather. At ten o'clock that same morning loud shouts were given from one of the ships, which tried to lay to, and fired a shot so that all the vessels of the fleet might hear it, and when Cortés heard this he at once checked the flagship and seeing the ship commanded by Juan de Escalante bearing away and returning towards Cozumel, he cried out to the other ships which were near him "What is the matter? What is the matter?" And a soldier named Luis de Zaragoza answered that Juan de Escalante's ship with all the Cassava bread on board was sinking, and Cortés cried, "Pray God that we suffer no such disaster," and he ordered the Pilot Alaminos to make signal to all the other ships to return to Cozumel. So this same day we returned to the port whence we had sailed, and sent the Cassava bread on shore, and we found the image of Our Lady and the Cross well cared for with incense burning in front of it, and this pleased us greatly. The Cacique and priests came to speak to Cortés and asked why we had returned, and he replied, because one of the ships was leaking and we wished to caulk her, and he asked them to

come in their canoes and help the ships boats to bring the Cassava bread on shore, and this they did.

We were four days repairing the ship. Now I will stop writing about this, and will relate how the Spaniard named Aguilar who was a prisoner among the Indians heard of our return, and what else happened.

CHAPTER XXIX.

How the Spaniard named Jerónimo de Aguilar, who was a prisoner among the Indians, heard that we had returned to Cozumel and came to us, and what else took place.

WHEN the Spaniard who was a prisoner among the Indians, knew for certain that we had returned to Cozumel with the ships, he was very joyful and gave thanks to God, and he came in all haste with the two Indians who had carried the letters and ransom, and embarked in a canoe, and as he was able to pay well with the green beads we had sent him, he soon hired a canoe and six Indian rowers, and they rowed so fast that, meeting no head wind, in a very short time they crossed the strait between the two shores, which is a distance of about four leagues.

When they arrived on the coast of Cozumel and were disembarking, some soldiers who had gone out hunting (for there were wild pigs on the island) told Cortés that a large canoe, which had come from the direction of Cape Catoche, had arrived near the town. Cortés sent Andrés de Tápia and two other soldiers to go and see, for it was a new thing for Indians to come fearlessly in large canoes into our neighbourhood. So they set out, and as soon as the Indians who came in the canoe which Aguilar had hired caught sight of the Spaniards, they were frightened and wished to get back into the canoe and flee away. Aguilar told them in their own language not to be afraid,

that these men were his brothers. When Andrés de Tápia saw that they were only Indians (for Aguilar looked neither more nor less than an Indian), he at once sent word to Cortés by a Spaniard that they were Cozumel Indians who had come in the canoe. As soon as the men had landed, the Spaniard in words badly articulated and worse pronounced, cried *Dios y Santa Maria de Sevilla*, and Tápia went at once to embrace him. The other soldier who had accompanied Tápia when he saw what had happened, promptly ran to Cortés to beg a reward for the good news, for it was a Spaniard who had come in the canoe, and we were all delighted when we heard it.

Tápia soon brought the Spaniard to Cortés, but before he arrived where Cortés was standing, several Spaniards asked Tápia where the Spaniard was? although he was walking by his side, for they could not distinguish him from an Indian as he was naturally brown and he had his hair shorn like an Indian slave, and carried a paddle on his shoulder, he was shod with one old sandal and the other was tied to his belt, he had on a ragged old cloak, and a worse loin cloth with which he covered his nakedness, and he had tied up, in a bundle in his cloak, a Book of Hours, old and worn. When Cortés saw him in this state, he too was deceived like the other soldiers, and asked Tápia "Where is the Spaniard?" On hearing this, the Spaniard squatted down on his haunches as the Indians do and said "I am he." Cortés at once ordered him to be given a shirt and doublet and drawers and a cape and sandals, for he had no other clothes, and asked him about himself and what his name was and when he came to this country. The man replied, pronouncing with difficulty, that he was called Jerónimo de Aguilar, a native of Ecija, and that he had taken holy orders, that eight years had passed since he and fifteen other men and two women left Darien for the Island of Santo Domingo, where he had

some disputes and a law-suit with a certain Enciso y Valdívia, and he said that they were carrying ten thousand gold dollars and the legal documents of the case, and that the ship in which they sailed, struck on the *Alacranes* so that she could not be floated, and that he and his companions and the two women got into the ship's boat, thinking to reach the Island of Cuba or Jamaica, but that the currents were very strong and carried them to this land, and that the Calachiones of that district had divided them among themselves, and that many of his companions had been sacrificed to the Idols, and that others had died of disease, and the women had died of overwork only a short time before, for they had been made to grind corn ; that the Indians had intended him for a sacrifice, but that one night he escaped and fled to the Cacique with whom since then he had been living (I don't remember the name that he gave) and that none were left of all his party except himself and a certain Gonzalo Guerrero, whom he had gone to summon, but he would not come.

When Cortés heard all this, he gave thanks to God, and said that he would have him well looked after and rewarded. He questioned Aguilar about the country and the towns, but Aguilar replied that having been a slave, he knew only about hewing wood and drawing water and digging in the fields, that he had only once travelled as far as four leagues from home when he was sent with a load, but, as it was heavier than he could carry, he fell ill, but that he understood that there were very many towns. When questioned about Gonzalo Guerrero, he said that he was married and had three sons, and that his face was tattooed and his ears and lower lip were pierced, that he was a seaman and a native of Palos, and that the Indians considered him to be very valiant ; that when a little more than a year ago a captain and three vessels arrived at Cape Catoche, (it seems probable that this was when we

came with Francisco Hernández de Córdoba) it was at the suggestion of Guerrero that the Indians attacked them, and that he was there himself in the company of the Cacique of the large town, whom I have spoken about when describing the expedition of Francisco Hernández de Córdoba. When Cortés heard this he exclaimed "I wish I had him in my hands for it will never do to leave him here."

When the Caciques of Cozumel found out that Aguilar could speak their language, they gave him to eat of their best, and Aguilar advised them always to respect and revere the holy image of Our Lady and the Cross, for they would find that it would benefit them greatly.

On the advice of Aguilar the Caciques asked Cortés to give them a letter of recommendation, so that if any other Spaniards came to that port they would treat the Indians well and do them no harm, and this letter was given to them. After bidding the people good-bye with many caresses and promises we set sail for the Rio de Grijalva.

This is the true story of Aguilar, and not the other which the historian Gómara has written; however, I am not surprised that what he says is news to me. Now I must go on with my story.

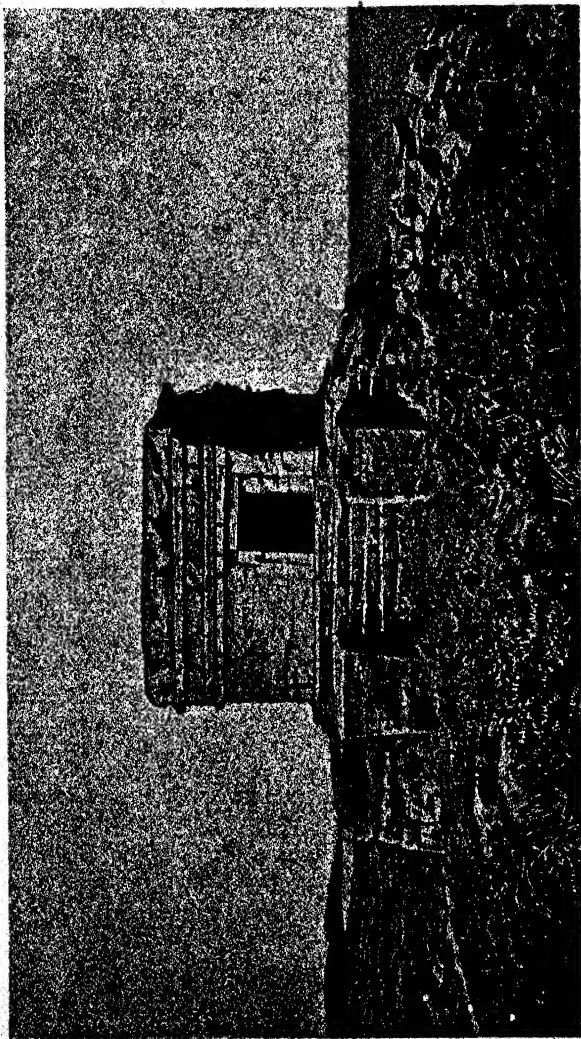
CHAPTER XXX.

How we again embarked and made sail for the Rio de Grijalva, and what happened to us on the voyage.

ON the 4th March 1519, with the good fortune to carry such a useful and faithful interpreter along with us, Cortés gave orders for us to embark in the same order as we

had followed before we ran back to Cozumel, under the same instructions and with the same lantern signals by night.

We sailed along in good weather, until at nightfall a head wind struck us so fiercely that the ships were dispersed and there was great danger of being driven ashore. Thank God, by midnight the weather moderated, and as soon as dawn broke the ships got together again, excepting the vessel under the command of Juan Velásquez de Leon. We went on our way and up to midday had seen nothing of the missing vessel which distressed us all as we feared she had been lost on a shoal. When the whole day had passed and she did not appear Cortés told the pilot Alaminos that it was no good going on any further without news of the missing ship, so the pilot made signal for all the vessels to lay to, and wait to see if by chance the storm had driven her into some bay whence she could not get out again against a head wind. However, when she still failed to appear, the pilot said to Cortés, "Sir, I feel certain that she put into a sort of port or bay which we have already passed, and that a head wind keeps her there, for the pilot on board of her is Juan Álvarez el Manquillo who was with Francisco Hernández de Córdova and again with Grijalva and he knows that port." So it was agreed that the whole fleet should go back and search for the missing ship, and we found her at anchor in the bay of which the pilot had spoken, which was a great relief to us all. We stayed in that bay for a day and we lowered two boats and the pilot and a Captain called Francisco de Lugo went on shore and found farms and maize plantations, and some places where the Indians made salt, and there were four *Cues* which are the houses of their Idols, and there were many Idols in them, nearly all of them figures of tall



TEMPLE ON THE ISLA DE LAS MUGERRES.

Drawn by Miss Annie Hunter from a photograph by W. H. Holmes and a drawing by F. Catherwood.

Reproduced for the Hakluyt Society by Donald Macbeth, 1908.

women so that we called that place the *Punta de las Mujeres*.¹

I remember that Aguilar said that the town where he was held in slavery was near these farms and that he had come there with a load, and his master had taken him there, and that he fell ill on account of the weight of the load, and he said that the town where Gonzalo Guerrero lived was not far off, and that there was some gold in all the towns, but it did not amount to much; that if we liked he would guide us to the towns, and advised us to go there. Cortés replied, laughing, that we were not after such small game, but to serve God and the King.

Soon afterwards Cortés ordered a Captain named Escobar to go in the vessel under his command, which was a fast sailer and drew little water, to the Boca de Términos and to examine the place thoroughly and find out if it would be a good port for a settlement, and if game were plentiful there as he had been told it was. That after he had examined the place he should put up some sign and break down some trees at the mouth of the harbour, or that he should write a letter and place it where we could see it from either side of the harbour, so that we should know that he had gone in there; or that, after examining the port he should beat up to windward and await the fleet at sea. This order was given on the

¹ Punta de las Mujeres = the cape of the women. The Island which forms the bay is still called *Isla de las Mujeres*. Bernal Díaz says nothing about this locality in his description of the two earlier voyages, but the author of the *Itinerario* says that Grijalva observed it, after leaving Cozumel:—"We made sail and went towards the Island of Yucatan along the North Coast, and as we coasted along we came to a beautiful tower on a point, which is said to be inhabited by women who live without men. One might believe them to be a race of Amazons." As Grijalva could not possibly have had any information on the subject, it seems to show that the *Itinerario* was written at a later date than is usually assigned to it, and gave this explanation to account for the name given to the locality by Cortés.

advice of the pilot, so that when we arrived at the Boca de Términos with the fleet we should not be delayed by going into port.

So Escobar left us and went to the Puerto de Términos and did all that he was told to do, and he found the lurcher which had been left there in Grijalva's time, and she was fat and sleek. Escobar said that when the lurcher saw the ship come into port she wagged her tail and showed other signs of delight, and came at once to the soldiers and went with them on board the ship.

After carrying out his orders Escobar put to sea again and awaited the fleet, and it appears that with the south wind that was blowing he was not able to lay to but was driven out to sea.

To go back to our fleet; we remained at the Punta de las Mugeres until the next day when we put to sea with a good breeze off the land and went on until we arrived at the Boca de Términos, but, as we did not meet Escobar, Cortés ordered a boat to be lowered, and with ten cross-bowmen went to look for him in the Boca de Términos, or to see if there was any signal or letter. They soon found trees that had been cut down, and a letter in which Escobar said that the harbour was a good one, that the land was fertile, and that there was an abundance of game, and he told about the lurcher. However, the pilot Alaminos told Cortés that we had better keep on our course, for with the wind from the south Escobar must have been driven out to sea, but that he would not be far off as he would lie close to the wind. But Cortés was anxious lest some accident had befallen him, so he ordered the sheets to be slacked away and we soon came up to Escobar who made his report to Cortés and told him why he could not await his coming.

While this was taking place we arrived near Potonchan

[Chanpoton] and Cortés ordered the Pilot to drop anchor in the bay, but the Pilot replied that it was a bad port, for the tide ran out so far that the ships had to be brought up more than two leagues from the shore. Cortés had a mind to give the Indians a lesson on account of the defeat they had inflicted on Francisco Hernández de Córdova and Grijalva, and many of us soldiers who had been in those battles begged him to go in, and not to leave without giving the Indians a good chastisement, even if it did detain us two or three days. But the Pilot Alaminos and the other pilots contended that if we should go in it might, with a head wind, be eight days before we could get out again; that we had a fair wind now for Tabasco and could get there in two days. So we passed on and after three days sail arrived at the Rio de Grijalva called in the Indian language the Tabasco River, and what happened to us there and the attack that was made on us I will go on to relate.

CHAPTER XXXI.

How we arrived at the Rio de Grijalva, which in the language of the Indians is called Tabasco, of the attack the Indians made on us, and what else happened to us with them.

ON the 12th March, 1519, we arrived with all the fleet at the Rio de Grijalva, which is also called Tabasco, and as we already knew from our experience with Grijalva that vessels of large size could not enter into the river, the larger vessels were anchored out at sea, and from the smaller vessels and boats all the soldiers were landed at the Cape of the Palms (as they were in Grijalva's time) which was about half a league distant from the town of

Tabasco.¹ The river, the river banks and the mangrove thickets were swarming with Indians, at which those of us who had not been here in Grijalva's time were much astonished.

In addition to this there were assembled in the town more than twelve thousand warriors² all prepared to make war on us, for at this time the town was of considerable importance and other large towns were subject to it and they had all made preparation for war and were well supplied with the arms which they are accustomed to use.

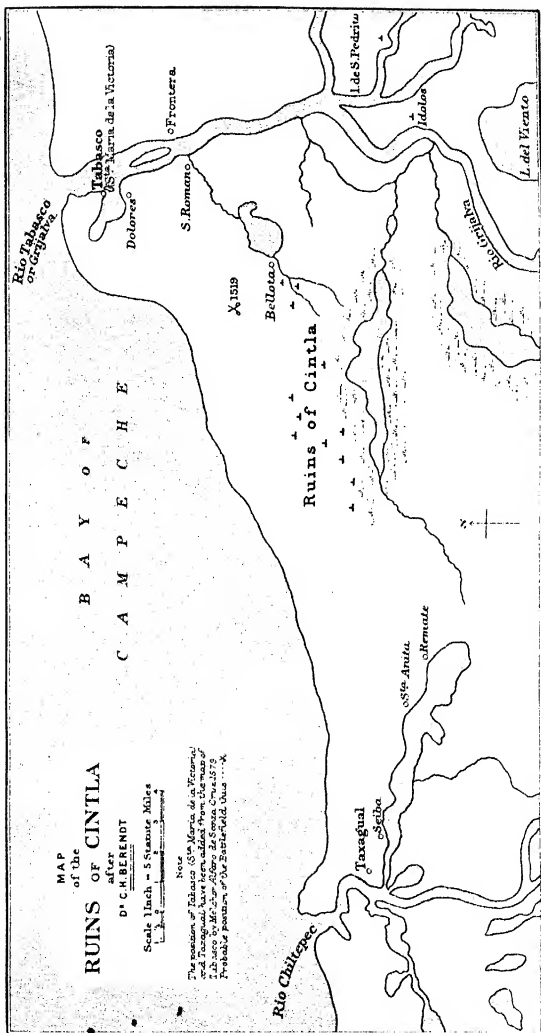
The reason for this was that the people of Potonchan³ and Lázaro and the other towns in that neighbourhood had looked upon the people of Tabasco as cowards, and had told them so to their faces, because they had given

¹ The large town which the author here calls Tabasco appears originally to have been called Potonchan; it was renamed by the Spaniards Santa Maria de la Victoria; it was later on called Tabasco, and it soon fell into ruin and disappeared altogether, its place as a port being taken by Frontera on the other side of the river. In the *Relacion de la Villa de Santa Maria de la Victoria*, 1579 (*Relaciones de Yucatan*, vol. ii, p. 341), we find: "This river and port is at 18° 30' (N. Lat.), where this town was established about a league from the mouth of the river on a *placel** of water which is formed on the north side, and on a branch of the river which leads to a town called Taxagual, of fifteen households (*vecinos*) more or less, which is three leagues from this town and one league away from the river. The land of this town [Santa Maria] is sterile because it is built on sand and swamps. This branch of the river turns to the south-west, and into it enter swamps and lagoons, and it has many deep places (*bajos*). The barques and frigates anchor in this branch of the river when they come to this town to load or unload at the foot of the Cross which is at the end of the street and the mound on which it stands." See also Note to Chapter III. In the *American Antiquarian* for September, 1896, Dr. Daniel Brinton published an article on "The Battle and the Ruins of Cintla," taken principally from notes made by the late Dr. C. H. Berendt, who visited and surveyed the ruins in March and April, 1869.

² Blotted out in the original: "twenty eight thousand."

³ Chanpoton.

* "Sobre un placel de Agua que se hace de la parte del Norte" = on a sandbank which has formed to the north of the water (?)*



Grijalva the gold jewels which I have spoken about in an earlier chapter, and they said that they were too faint hearted to attack us although they had more towns and more warriors than the people of Potonchan and Lázaro. This they said to annoy them and added that they in their towns had attacked us and killed fifty six of us. So on account of these taunts which had been uttered, the people of Tabasco had determined to take up arms.

When Cortés saw them drawn up ready for war he told Aguilar the interpreter, who spoke the language of Tabasco well,¹ to ask the Indians who passed near us, in a large canoe and who looked like chiefs, what they were so much disturbed about, and to tell them that we had not come to do them any harm, but were willing to give them some of the things we had brought with us and to treat them like brothers, and we prayed them not to begin a war as they would regret it, and much else was said to them about keeping the peace. However, the more Aguilar talked to them the more violent they became, and they said that they would kill us all if we entered their town, and that it was fortified all round with fences and barricades of large trunks of trees.

Aguilar spoke to them again and asked them to keep the peace, and allow us to take water and barter our goods with them for food, and permit us to tell the Calachiones² things which would be to their advantage and to the service of God our Lord, but they still persisted in saying that if we advanced beyond the palm trees they would kill us.

When Cortés saw the state of affairs he ordered the

¹ These people were Tzendals, a branch of the Maya stock, and Aguilar, who spoke Maya, could understand and speak to them.

² Calachiones?

boats and small vessels to be got ready and ordered three cannon to be placed in each boat and divided the crossbowmen and musketeers among the boats. We remembered that when we were here with Grijalva we had found a narrow path which ran across some streams from the palm grove to the town, and Cortés ordered three soldiers to find out in the night if that path ran right up to the houses, and not to delay in bringing the news, and these men found out that it did lead there. After making a thorough examination of our surroundings the rest of the day was spent in arranging how and in what order we were to go in the boats.

The next morning we had our arms in readiness and after hearing mass Cortés ordered the Captain Alonzo de Avila and a hundred soldiers among whom were ten crossbowmen, to go by the little path which led to the town, and, as soon as he heard the guns fired, to attack the town on one side while he attacked it on the other. Cortés himself and all the other Captains and soldiers went in the boats and light draft vessels up the river. When the Indian warriors who were on the banks and among the mangroves saw that we were really on the move, they came after us with a great many canoes with intent to prevent our going ashore at the landing place, and the whole river bank appeared to be covered with Indian warriors carrying all the different arms which they use, and blowing trumpets and shells and sounding drums. When Cortés saw how matters stood he ordered us to wait a little and not to fire any shots from guns or crossbows or cannon, for as he wished to be justified in all that he might do he made another appeal to the Indians through the interpreter Aguilar, in the presence of the King's Notary, Diego de Godoy, asking the Indians to allow us to land and take water and speak to them about God and about His Majesty, and adding that should

they make war on us, that if in defending ourselves some should be killed and others hurt, theirs would be the fault and the burden and it would not lie with us, but they went on threatening that if we landed they would kill us.

Then they boldly began to let fly arrows at us, and made signals with their drums, and like valiant men they surrounded us with their canoes, and they all attacked us with such a shower of arrows that they kept us in the water in some parts up to our waists. As there was much mud and swamp at that place we could not easily get clear of it, and so many Indians fell on us, that what with some hurling their lances with all their might and others shooting arrows at us, we could not reach the land as soon as we wished.

While Cortés was fighting he lost a shoe in the mud and could not find it again, and he got on shore with one foot bare. Presently someone picked the shoe out of the mud and he put it on again.

While this was happening to Cortés, all of us Captains as well as soldiers, with the cry of "Santiago," fell upon the Indians and forced them to retreat, but they did not fall back far, as they sheltered themselves behind great barriers and stockades formed of thick logs until we pulled them apart and got to one of the small gateways of the town. There we attacked them again, and we pushed them along through a street to where other defences had been erected, and there they turned on us and met us face to face and fought most valiantly, making the greatest efforts, shouting and whistling and crying out "al calacheoni", "al calacheoni", which in their language meant an order to kill or capture our Captain. While we were thus surrounded by them Alonzo de Ávila and his soldiers came up.

As I have already said they came from the Palm grove by land and could not arrive sooner on account of the swamps and creeks. Their delay was really unavoidable,

just as we also had been delayed over the summons of the Indians to surrender, and in breaking openings in the barricades, so as to enable us to attack them. Now we all joined together to drive the enemy out of their strongholds, and we compelled them to retreat, but like brave warriors they kept on shooting showers of arrows and fire-hardened darts, and never turned their backs on us until [we gained] a great court with chambers and large halls, and three Idol houses, where they had already carried all the goods they possessed. Cortés then ordered us to halt, and not to follow on and overtake the enemy in their flight.

There and then Cortés took possession of that land for His Majesty, performing the act in His Majesty's name. It was done in this way; he drew his sword and as a sign of possession he made three cuts in a huge tree called a *Ceiba*, which stood in the court of that great square, and cried that if any person should raise objection, that he would defend the right with the sword and shield which he held in his hands.

All of us soldiers who were present when this happened cried out that he did right in taking possession of the land in His Majesty's name, and that we would aid him should any person say otherwise. This act was done in the presence of the Royal Notary. The partizans of Diego Velásquez chose to grumble at this act of taking possession.¹

I call to mind that in that hard fought attack which the Indians made on us, they wounded fourteen soldiers, and

¹ This was the first overt act showing the intention of Cortés to free himself from the control of Velásquez and place himself directly under the protection of his sovereign, a policy which was consummated a few weeks later on the sands at Vera Cruz. Had Cortés intended to continue his subservience to Diego Velásquez, his name would have been used in the formal act of taking possession as it had been used in the proclamations made by Cortés in Cuba.

they gave me an arrow wound in the thigh, but it was only a slight wound ; and we found eighteen Indians dead in the water where we disembarked.

We slept there [in the great square] that night with guards and sentinels on the alert. I will stop here and go on to tell what more happened.

NOTE.—The Carta de Vera Cruz says that the Indians then sent a deputation and a small present to Cortés, but still insisted that the Spaniards should leave the country. Cortés demanded food for his men, and the Indians promised to send it. Cortés then waited for two days, and as no Indians with food made their appearance he sent out the foraging expeditions described in the following Chapter.

CHAPTER XXXII.

How Cortés ordered two of his Captains each with a hundred soldiers to go and examine the country further inland, and what happened to us.

THE next morning Cortés ordered Pedro de Alvarado to set out in command of a hundred soldiers, fifteen of them with guns and crossbows, to examine the country inland for a distance of two leagues, and to take Melchorejo the interpreter from Cape Catoche in his company. When Melchorejo was looked for he could not be found as he had run off with the people of Tabasco, and it appears that the day before he had left the Spanish clothes that had been given to him hung up in the palm grove, and had fled by night in a canoe. Cortés was much annoyed at his flight, fearing that he would tell things to his fellow countrymen to our disadvantage,—well, let him go as a bit of bad luck, and let us get back to our story. Cortés also sent the Captain Francisco de Lugo, in another direction, with a hundred soldiers, twelve of them musketeers and crossbowmen, with instructions not to go beyond two leagues and to return to the camp to sleep.

When Francisco de Lugo and his company had marched about a league from camp he came on a great host of Indian archers carrying lances and shields, drums and standards and they made straight for our company of soldiers and surrounded them on all sides. They were so numerous and shot their arrows so deftly that it was impossible to withstand them, and they hurled their fire-hardened darts and cast stones from their slings in such numbers that they fell like hail, and they attacked our men with their two-handed knife-like swords.¹ Stoutly as Francisco de Lugo and his soldiers fought, they could not ward off the enemy, and when this was clear to them, while still keeping a good formation, they began to retreat towards the camp. A certain Indian, a swift and daring runner, had been sent off to the camp to beg Cortés to come to their assistance, meanwhile Francisco de Lugo by careful management of his musketeers and crossbowmen, some loading while others fired, and by occasional charges was able to hold his own against all the squadrons attacking him.

Let us leave him in the dangerous situation I have described and return to Captain Pedro de Alvarado, who after marching about a league came on a creek which was very difficult to cross, and it pleased God our Lord so to lead him that he should return by another road in the direction where Francisco de Lugo was fighting. When he heard the reports of the muskets and the great din of drums and trumpets, and the shouts and whistles of the Indians, he knew that there must be a battle going on, so with the greatest haste but in good order he ran towards the cries and shots and found Captain Francisco de Lugo and his men fighting with their faces to the enemy, and five of the enemy lying dead. As soon as he joined forces

¹ Macanas or Maquahuittls—edged with flint or obsidian.

with Francisco de Lugo they turned on the Indians and drove them back, but they were not able to put them to flight, and the Indians followed our men right up to the camp.

In like manner other companies of warriors had attacked us where Cortés was guarding the wounded, but we soon drove them off with our guns, which laid many of them low, and with our good sword play.

When Cortés heard of Francisco de Lugo's peril from the Cuban Indian who came to beg for help, we promptly went to his assistance, and we met the two captains with their companies about half a league from the camp. Two soldiers of Francisco de Lugo's company were killed and eight wounded, and three of Pedro de Alvarado's company were wounded. When we arrived in camp we buried the dead and tended the wounded, and stationed sentinels and kept a strict watch.

In those skirmishes we killed fifteen Indians and captured three, one of whom seemed to be a chief, and through Aguilar, our interpreter, we asked them why they were so mad as to attack us, and that they could see that we should kill them if they attacked us again. Then one of these Indians was sent with some beads to give to the Caciques to bring them to peace, and that messenger told us that the Indian Melchorejo whom we had brought from Cape Catoche, went to the chiefs the night before and counselled them to fight us day and night and said that they would conquer us as we were few in number; so it turned out that we had brought an enemy with us instead of a help.

This Indian whom we despatched with the message went off and never returned. From the other two Indian prisoners Aguilar the interpreter learnt for certain that by the next day the Caciques from all the neighbouring towns of the province would have assembled with all their forces

ready to make war on us, and that they would come and surround our camp, for that was Melchorejo's advice to them.

I must leave off here, and will go on to tell what we did in the matter.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

How Cortés told us all to get ready by the next day to go in search of the Indian host, and ordered the horses to be brought from the ships, and what happened in the battle which we fought.

As soon as Cortés knew for certain that the Indians intended to make war on us, he ordered all the horses to be landed from the ships without delay, and the cross-bowmen and musketeers and all of us soldiers, even those who were wounded, to have our arms ready for use.

When the horses were brought on shore they were very stiff and afraid to move, for they had been many days on board ship, but the next day they moved quite freely.

At that time it happened that six or seven soldiers, young men and otherwise in good health, suffered from pains in their loins, so that they could not stand on their feet and had to be carried on men's backs. We did not know what this sickness came from, some say that they fell ill on account of the [quilted] cotton armour which they never took off, but wore day and night, and because in Cuba they had lived daintily and were not used to hard work, so in the heat they fell ill. Cortés ordered them not to remain on land but to be taken at once on board ship.

The best horses and riders were chosen to form the cavalry, and the horses had little bells attached to their breastplates. The men were ordered not to stop to spear those who were down, but to aim their lances at the faces of the enemy.

Thirteen gentlemen were chosen to go on horseback with Cortés in command of them, and I here record their names :—Cortés, Cristóval de Olíd, Pedro de Alvarado, Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero, Juan de Escalante, Francisco de Montejo, and Alonzo de Ávila to whom was given the horse belonging to Ortiz the musician and Bartolomé García, for neither of these men were good horsemen, Juan Velásquez de Leon, Francisco de Morla, and Lares the good horseman (I call him so because there was another Lares), Gonzalo Domínguez, an excellent horseman, Moron of Bayamo, and Pedro González of Trujillo. Cortés selected all these gentlemen and went himself as their captain.

Cortés ordered Mesa the artilleryman to have his guns ready, and he placed Diego de Ordás in command of us foot soldiers and he also had command of the musketeers and bowmen, for he was no horseman.

Very early the next day which was the day of Nuestra Señora de Marzo¹ after hearing mass, which was said by Fray Bartolomé de Olmedo, we formed in order under our standard bearer, who at that time was Antonio de Villaroel the husband of Isabel de Ojeda, who afterwards changed his name to Antonio Serrano de Cardona, and marched to some large savannas where Francisco de Lugo and Pedro de Alvarado had been attacked, about a league distant from the camp we had left ; and that savanna and township was called Cintla, and was subject to Tabasco.

Cortés [and the horsemen] were separated a short distance from us on account of some swamps which could not be crossed by the horses, and as we were marching along in the way I have said, we came on the whole force of Indian warriors who were on the way to attack us in our

¹ Lady-day, 25th March.

camp. It was near the town of Cintla that we met them on an open plain. So it happened that those warriors were looking for us with the intention of attacking us, and we were looking for them for the very same purpose. I must leave off here, and will go on to tell what happened in the battle, and one may well call it a battle, as will be seen further on.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

How all the Caciques of Tabasco and its dependencies attacked us,
and what came of it.

I HAVE already said how we were marching along when we met all the forces of the enemy which were moving in search of us, and all the men wore great feather crests and they carried drums and trumpets, and their faces were coloured black and white, and they were armed with large bows and arrows, lances and shields and swords shaped like our two-handed swords, and many slings and stones and fire-hardened javelins, and all wore quilted cotton armour. As they approached us their squadrons were so numerous that they covered the whole plain, and they rushed on us like mad dogs completely surrounding us, and they let fly such a cloud of arrows, javelins and stones that on the first assault they wounded over seventy of us, and fighting hand to hand they did us great damage with their lances, and one soldier¹ fell dead at once from an arrow wound in the ear, and they kept on shooting and wounding us.² With our muskets and crossbows and with

¹ Alonzo Remón Edition says "a soldier named Saldaña."

² Carta de Vera Cruz says that only twenty were wounded in all, and that no one died of their wounds. Goniara says seventy were wounded.

good sword play we did not fail as stout fighters, and when they came to feel the edge of our swords little by little they fell back, but it was only so as to shoot at us in greater safety. Mesa, our artilleryman, killed many of them with his cannon, for they were formed in great squadrons and they did not open out so that he could fire at them as he pleased, but with all the hurts and wounds which we gave them, we could not drive them off. I said to Diego de Ordás "it seems to me that we ought to close up and charge them," for in truth they suffered greatly from the strokes and thrusts of our swords, and that was why they fell away from us, both from fear of these swords, and the better to shoot their arrows and hurl their javelins and the hail of stones. Ordás replied that it was not good advice, for there were three hundred Indians to every one of us, and that we could not hold out against such a multitude,—so there we stood enduring their attack. However, we did agree to get as near as we could to them, as I had advised Ordás, so as to give them a bad time with our swordsmanship, and they suffered so much from it that they retreated towards a swamp.

During all this time Cortés and his horsemen failed to appear, although we greatly longed for him, and we feared that by chance some disaster had befallen him.

I remember that when we fired shots the Indians gave great shouts and whistles and threw dust and rubbish into the air so that we should not see the damage done to them, and they sounded their trumpets and drums and shouted and whistled and cried "Alala! alala!"

Just at this time we caught sight of our horsemen, and as the great Indian host was crazed with its attack on us, it did not at once perceive them coming up behind their backs, and as the plain was level ground and the horsemen were good riders, and many of the horses were very handy and fine gallopers, they came quickly on the

enemy and speared them as they chose. As soon as we saw the horsemen we fell on the Indians with such energy that with us attacking on one side and the horsemen on the other, they soon turned tail. The Indians thought that the horse and its rider was all one animal, for they had never seen horses up to this time.

The savannas and fields were crowded with Indians running to take refuge in the thick woods near by.

After we had defeated the enemy Cortés told us that he had not been able to come to us sooner as there was a swamp in the way, and he had to fight his way through another force of warriors before he could reach us, and three horsemen and five horses had been wounded.

As soon as the horsemen had dismounted under some trees and houses, we returned thanks to God for giving us so complete a victory.

As it was Lady day we gave to the town which was afterwards founded here the name of Santa Maria de la Victoria, on account of this great victory being won on Our Lady's day. This was the first battle that we fought under Cortés in New Spain.

After this we bound up the hurts of the wounded with cloths, for we had nothing else, and we doctored the horses by searing their wounds with the fat from the body of a dead Indian which we cut up to get out the fat, and we went to look at the dead lying on the plain and there were more than eight hundred of them, the greater number killed by thrusts, the others by the cannon, muskets and crossbows, and many were stretched on the ground half dead. Where the horsemen had passed, numbers of them lay dead or groaning from their wounds. The battle lasted over an hour, and the Indians fought all the time like brave warriors, until the horsemen came up.

We took five prisoners, two of them Captains. As it was late and we had had enough of fighting, and we had

not eaten anything, we returned to our camp. Then we buried the two soldiers who had been killed, one by a wound in the ear, and the other by a wound in the throat, and we seared the wounds of the others and of the horses with the fat of the Indian, and after posting sentinels and guards, we had supper and rested.

It is on this occasion that Francisco López de Gomara says that Francisco de Morla set out on a dapple gray horse before Cortés and the other horsemen arrived, and that the sainted apostles Señor Santiago and Señor San Pedro appeared. I say that all our doings and our victories are at the hands of our Lord Jesus Christ, and that in this battle there were so many Indians to every one of us that they could have blinded us with the dust they raised but for the pity of God who always helped us. It may be that as Gomara says the Glorious Apostles Señor Santiago and Señor San Pedro came to our aid and that I, being a sinner was not worthy to behold them. What I saw was Francisco de Morla, on a chestnut horse, who came up at the same time as Cortés, and it seems to me that now as I write I can see again with these sinful eyes all that battle in the very way that it took place, and although I am a poor sinner and not worthy to see either of those glorious apostles, there were there in our company over four hundred soldiers and Cortés himself and many other gentlemen, and it would have been talked about, and evidence would have been taken, and a church would have been built when the town was founded, and the town would have been named Santiago de la Victoria, or San Pedro de la Victoria instead of Santa Maria de la Victoria. If it was as Gomara says we must have all been very bad Christians, when our Lord God sent his holy Apostle to us, not to recognise the great favour that he was showing to us, and not daily to have venerated that church. I wish to God it were as the historian Gomara says, but, until I read

his history, one never heard about it among the conquistadores who were there at the time.

I will leave off here and go on to tell what else happened to us.

CHAPTER XXXV.

How Cortés sent to summon all the Caciques of those provinces and what was done about it.

I HAVE already said that we captured five Indians during the battle of whom two were captains. When Aguilar spoke to these men he found out from what they said that they were fit persons to be sent as messengers, and he advised Cortés to free them, so that they might go and talk to the Caciques of the town and any others they might see. These two messengers were given green and blue beads, and Aguilar spoke many pleasant and flattering words to them, telling them that they had nothing to fear as we wished to treat them like brothers, that it was their own fault that they had made war on us, and that now they had better collect together all the Caciques of the different towns as we wished to talk to them, and he gave them much other advice in a gentle way so as to gain their good will. The messengers went off willingly and spoke to the Caciques and chief men, and told them all we wished them to know about our desire for peace.

When our envoys had been listened to, it was settled among them that fifteen Indian slaves, all with stained faces and ragged cloaks and loin cloths, should at once be sent to us with fowls and baked fish and maize cakes. When these men came before Cortés he received them graciously, but Aguilar the interpreter asked them rather angrily why they had come with their faces in that state, that it looked more as though they came to fight than to treat for peace; and he told them to go back to the

Caciques and inform them, that if they wished for peace in the way we offered it, chieftains should come and treat for it, as was always the custom, and that they should not send slaves. But even these painted faced slaves were treated with consideration by us and blue beads were sent by them in sign of peace, and to soothe their feelings.

The next day thirty Indian Chieftains, clad in good cloaks, came to visit us and brought fowls, fish, fruit and maize cakes, and asked leave from Cortés to burn and bury the bodies of the dead who had fallen in the recent battles, so that they should not smell badly or be eaten by lions and tigers. Permission was at once given them and they hastened to bring many people to bury and burn the bodies according to their customs.

Cortés learnt from the Caciques that over eight hundred men were missing, not counting those who had been carried off wounded.¹

They said that they could not tarry with us either to discuss the matter or make peace, for on the morrow the chieftains and leaders of all the towns would have assembled, and that then they would agree about a peace.

As Cortés was very sagacious about everything, he said, laughing, to us soldiers who happened to be in his company, "Do you know, gentlemen, that it seems to me that the Indians are terrified at the horses and may think that they and the cannon alone make war on them. I have thought of something which will confirm this belief, and that is to bring the mare belonging to Juan Sedeño, which foaled the other day on board ship, and tie her up where I am now standing and also to bring the stallion of Ortiz the musician, which is very excitable, near enough to scent the mare, and when he has scented her to lead

¹ The Carta de Vera Cruz says the Indians were 40,000 in number and that they lost 220 killed.

each of them off separately so that the Caciques who are coming shall not hear the horse neighing as they approach, not until they are standing before me and are talking to me." We did just as Cortés ordered and brought the horse and mare, and the horse soon detected the scent of her in Cortés's quarters. In addition to this Cortés ordered the largest cannon that we possessed to be loaded with a large ball and a good charge of powder.

About mid-day forty Indians arrived, all of them Caciques of good bearing, wearing rich mantles such as are used by them. They saluted Cortés and all of us, and brought incense and fumigated all of us who were present, and they asked pardon for their past behaviour, and said that henceforth they would be friendly.

Cortés, through Aguilar the Interpreter, answered them in a rather grave manner, as though he were angry, that they well knew how many times he had asked them to maintain peace, that the fault was theirs, and that now they deserved to be put to death, they and all the people of their towns, but that as we were the vassals of a great King and Lord named the Emperor Don Carlos, who had sent us to these countries, and ordered us to help and favour those who would enter his royal service, that if they were now as well disposed as they said they were, that we would take this course, but that if they were not, some of those *Tepustles* would jump out and kill them (they call iron *Tepustle* in their language) for some of the *Tepustles* were still angry because they had made war on us. At this moment the order was secretly given to put a match to the cannon which had been loaded, and it went off with such a thunderclap as was wanted, and the ball went buzzing over the hills, and as it was mid-day and very still it made a great noise, and the Caciques were terrified on hearing it. As they had never seen anything like it they believed what Cortés had told them was true.

Then Cortés told them, through Aguilar, not to be afraid for he had given orders that no harm should be done to them.

Just then the horse that had scented the mare was brought and tied up not far distant from where Cortés was talking to the Caciques, and, as the mare had been tied up at the place where Cortés and the Indians were talking, the horse began to paw the ground and neigh and become wild with excitement, looking all the time towards the Indians and the place whence the scent of the mare had reached him, and the Caciques thought that he was roaring at them and they were terrified. When Cortés observed their state of mind, he rose from his seat and went to the horse and told two orderlies to lead it far away, and said to the Indians that he had told the horse not to be angry as they were friendly and wished to make peace.

While this was going on there arrived more than thirty Indian carriers, whom the natives call *Tamenes*, who brought a meal of fowls and fish and fruits and other food, and it appears that they had lagged behind and could not reach us at the same time as the Caciques.

Cortés had a long conversation with these chieftains and Caciques and they told him that they would all come on the next day and would bring a present and would discuss other matters, and then they went away quite contented.

And there I will leave them until the next day.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

How all the Caciques and Calachonis from the Rio de Grijalva came and brought a present, and what took place about it.

EARLY the next morning, the 15th March, 1519,¹ many Caciques and chiefs of Tabasco and the neighbouring towns arrived and paid great respect to us all, and they brought a present of gold, consisting of four diadems and some gold lizards, and two [ornaments] like little dogs, and earrings, and five ducks, and two masks² with Indian faces, and two gold soles for sandals, and some other things of little value. I do not remember how much the things were worth; and they brought cloth, such as they make and wear, which was quilted stuff. My readers will have heard from those who know that province that there is nothing of much value in it.

This present, however, was worth nothing in comparison with the twenty women that were given us, among them one very excellent woman called Doña Marina, for so she was named when she became a Christian. I will leave off talking about her and the other women who were brought to us, and will tell how Cortés received this present with pleasure and went aside with all the Caciques, and with Aguilar, the interpreter, to hold converse, and he told them that he gave them thanks for what they had brought with them, but there was one thing that he must ask of them, namely, that they should re-occupy the town with all their people, women and children, and he wished to see it repeopled within two days, for he would recognize that as a sign of true peace. The Caciques

¹ This is evidently an error, as Bernal Díaz has already stated that the Battle of Cintla was fought on Lady day, the 25th March.

² In the text "dos figuras de Caras de Indios."

sent at once to summon all the inhabitants with their women and children and within two days they were again settled in the town.

One other thing Cortés asked of the chiefs and that was to give up their idols and sacrifices, and this they said they would do, and, through Aguilar, Cortés told them as well as he was able about matters concerning our holy faith, how we were Christians and worshipped one true and only God, and he showed them an image of Our Lady with her precious Son in her arms and explained to them that we paid the greatest reverence to it as it was the image of the Mother of our Lord God who was in heaven. The Caciques replied that they liked the look of the great *Teleciguata* (for in their language great ladies are called *Teleciguatas*) and [begged] that she might be given them to keep in their town, and Cortés said that the image should be given to them and ordered them to make a well-constructed altar, and this they did at once.

The next morning, Cortés ordered two of our carpenters, named Alonzo Yañez and Alvaro López, to make a very tall cross.

When all this had been settled Cortés asked the Caciques what was their reason for attacking us three times when we had asked them to keep the peace; the chief replied that he had already asked pardon for their acts and had been forgiven, that the Cacique of Chanpoton, his brother, had advised it, and that he feared to be accused of cowardice, for he had already been reproached and dishonoured for not having attacked the other captain who had come with four ships, (he must have meant Juan de Grijalva) and he also said that the Indian whom we had brought as an Interpreter, who escaped in the night, had advised them to attack us both by day and night.

Cortés then ordered this man to be brought before him without fail, but, they replied that when he saw that the

battle was going against them, he had taken to flight, and they knew not where he was although search had been made for him ; but we came to know that they had offered him as a sacrifice because his counsel had cost them so dear.

Cortés also asked them where they procured their gold and jewels, and they replied, from the direction of the setting sun, and said "Culua" and "Mexico," and as we did not know what Mexico and Culua meant we paid little attention to it.

Then we brought another interpreter named Francisco, whom we had captured during Grijalva's expedition, who has already been mentioned by me, but he understood nothing of the Tabasco language only that of Culua¹ which is the Mexican tongue. By means of signs he told Cortés that Culua was far ahead, and he repeated "Mexico" which we did not understand.

So the talk ceased until the next day when the sacred image of Our Lady and the Cross were set up on the altar and we all paid reverence to them, and Padre Fray Bartolomé de Olmedo said mass and all the Caciques and chiefs were present and we gave the name of Santa Maria de la Victoria to the town, and by this name the town of Tabasco is now called. The same friar, with Aguilar as interpreter, preached many good things about our holy faith to the twenty Indian women who had been given us, telling them not to believe in the Idols which they had been wont to trust in, for they were evil things and not gods, and that they should offer no more sacrifices to them for they would lead them astray, but that they should worship our Lord Jesus Christ, and immediately afterwards they were baptized. One Indian lady who was given to us here was christened Doña Marina, and she was truly a great chief-

¹ The word in the text is Cuba, but clearly it must be intended for Culua, as is shown in the context.

tainess and the daughter of great Caciques and the mistress of vassals, and this her appearance clearly showed. Later on I will relate why it was and in what manner she was brought here.

I do not clearly remember the names of all the other women, and it is not worth while to name any of them ; however, they were the first women to become Christians in New Spain.

Cortés allotted one of them to each of his captains and Doña Marina, as she was good looking and intelligent and without embarrassment, he gave to Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero, who I have already said was a distinguished gentleman, and cousin of the Count of Medellín. When Puertocarrero went to Spain, Doña Marina lived with Cortés, and bore him a son named Don Martín Cortés.

We remained five days in this town, to look after the wounded and those who were suffering from pain in the loins, from which they all recovered. Furthermore, Cortés drew the Caciques to him by kindly converse, and told them how our master the Emperor, whose vassals we were, had under his orders many great lords, and that it would be well for them also to render him obedience, and that then, whatever they might be in need of, whether it was our protection or any other necessity, if they would make it known to him, no matter where he might be, he would come to their assistance.

The Caciques all thanked him for this, and thereupon all declared themselves the vassals of our great Emperor. These were the first vassals to render submission to His Majesty in New Spain.

Cortés then ordered the Caciques to come with their women and children early the next day, which was Palm Sunday, to the altar, to pay homage to the holy image of Our Lady and to the Cross, and at the same time Cortés ordered them to send six Indian carpenters to accompany

our carpenters to the town of Cintla where our Lord God was pleased to give us victory in the battle which I have described, there to cut a cross on a great tree called a Ceiba which grew there, and they did it so that it might last a long time, for as the bark is renewed the cross will show there for ever. When this was done he ordered the Indians to get ready all the canoes that they owned to help us to embark, for we wished to set sail on that holy day because the pilots had come to tell Cortés that the ships ran a great risk from a *Norther* which is a dangerous gale.

The next day, early in the morning, all the Caciques and chiefs came in their canoes with all their women and children and stood in the court where we had placed the church and cross, and many branches of trees had already been cut ready to be carried in the procession. Then the Caciques beheld us all, Cortés, as well as the captains, and every one of us marching together with the greatest reverence in a devout procession, and the Padre de la Merced and the priest, Juan Diaz, clad in their vestments, said mass, and we paid reverence to and kissed the Holy Cross, while the Caciques and Indians stood looking on at us.

When our solemn festival was over the chiefs approached and offered Cortés ten fowls, and baked fish and vegetables, and we took leave of them, and Cortés again commended to their care the Holy image and the sacred crosses and told them always to keep the place clean and well swept and to deck the cross with garlands and to reverence it, and then they would enjoy good health and bountiful harvests.

It was growing late when we got on board ship and the next day, Monday, we set sail in the morning and with a fair wind laid our course for San Juan de Ulúa, keeping close in shore all the time

As we sailed along in the fine weather, we soldiers who knew the coast would say to Cortés, "Señor, over there is La Rambla, which the Indians call Ayagualulco," and soon afterwards we arrived off Tonalá which we called San Antonio, and we pointed it out to him. Further on we showed him the great river of Coatzacoalcos, and he saw the lofty snow capped mountains, and then the Sierra of San Martin, and further on we pointed out the split rock, which is a great rock standing out in the sea with a mark on the top of it which gives it the appearance of a seat. Again further on we showed him the Rio de Alvarado, which Pedro de Alvarado entered when we were with Grijalva, and then we came in sight of the Rio de Banderas, where we had gained in barter the sixteen thousand dollars, then we showed him the Isla Blanca, and told him where lay the Isla Verde, and close in shore we saw the Isla de Sacrificios where we found the altars and the Indian victims in Grijalva's time; and at last our good fortune brought us to San Juan de Ulúa soon after midday on Holy Thursday.

I remember that a gentleman, Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero came up to Cortés and said: "It seems to me, sir, that these gentlemen who have been twice before to this country are saying to you:—

Cata Francia, Montesinos.	Behold France, Montesinos.
Cata Paris la ciudad.	Look at Paris, the city.
Cata las aguas de Duero	See the waters of the Duero
Do van a dar en la Mar.	Flowing to the sea.

I say that you are looking on rich lands, may you know how to govern them well!"

Cortés knew well the purpose for which these words were said, and answered: "Let God give us the good fortune in fighting which He gave to the Paladin Roldan, and with Your Honour and the other gentlemen for leaders, I shall know well how to manage it."

Let us leave off here, for this is what took place and Cortés did not go into the Rio de Alvarado, as Gomara says he did.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

Showing that Doña Marina was a *Cacica* and the daughter of persons of high rank, and was the mistress of towns and vassals, and how it happened that she was taken to Tabasco.

BEFORE telling about the great Montezuma and his famous City of Mexico and the Mexicans, I wish to give some account of Doña Marina, who from her childhood had been the mistress and *Cacica* of towns and vassals. It happened in this way :

Her father and mother were chiefs and *Caciques* of a town called Paynala, which had other towns subject to it, and stood about eight leagues from the town of Coatza-coalcos. Her father died while she was still a little child, and her mother married another *Cacique*, a young man, and bore him a son. It seems that the father and mother had a great affection for this son and it was agreed between them that he should succeed to their honours when their days were done. So that there should be no impediment to this, they gave the little girl, Doña Marina, to some Indians from Xicalango¹ and this they did by night so as to escape observation, and they then spread the report that she had died, and as it happened at this time that a child of one of their Indian slaves died they gave out that it was their daughter and the heiress who was dead.

The Indians of Xicalango gave the child to the people of Tabasco, and the Tabasco people gave her to Cortés. I myself knew her mother, and the old woman's son and

¹ Xicalango, on the southern side of the Laguna de Términos, was an outlying stronghold of the Aztec Empire. (See *Relacion de Melchor de Sta. Cruz.*)

her half-brother, when he was already grown up and ruled the town jointly with his mother, for the second husband of the old lady was dead. When they became Christians, the old lady was called Marta and the son Lázaro. I knew all this very well because in the year 1523 after the conquest of Mexico and the other provinces, when Cristóval de Olid revolted in Honduras, and Cortés was on his way there, he passed through Coatzacoalcos and I and the greater number of the settlers of that town accompanied him on that expedition as I shall relate in the proper time and place. As Doña Marina proved herself such an excellent woman and good interpreter throughout the wars in New Spain, Tlascala and Mexico (as I shall show later on) Cortés always took her with him, and during that expedition she was married to a gentleman named Juan Jaramillo at the town of Orizaba, before certain witnesses, one of whom was named Aranda, a settler in Tabasco and this man told [me] about the marriage (not in the way the historian Gomara relates it).

Doña Marina was a person of the greatest importance and was obeyed without question by the Indians throughout New Spain.

When Cortés was in the town of Coatzacoalcos he sent to summon to his presence all the Caciques of that province in order to make them a speech about our holy religion, and about their good treatment, and among the Caciques who assembled was the mother of Doña Marina and her half-brother, Lázaro.

Some time before this Doña Marina had told me that she belonged to that province and that she was the mistress of vassals, and Cortés also knew it well, as did Aguilar, the interpreter. In such a manner it was that mother, daughter and son came together, and it was easy enough to see that she was the daughter from the strong likeness she bore to her mother.

These relations were in great fear of Doña Marina, for they thought that she had sent for them to put them to death, and they were weeping.

When Doña Marina saw them in tears, she consoled them and told them to have no fear, that when they had given her over to the men from Xicalango, they knew not what they were doing, and she forgave them for doing it, and she gave them many jewels of gold, and raiment, and told them to return to their town, and said that God had been very gracious to her in freeing her from the worship of idols and making her a Christian, and letting her bear a son to her lord and master Cortés and in marrying her to such a gentleman as Juan Jaramillo, who was now her husband. That she would rather serve her husband and Cortés than anything else in the world, and would not exchange her place to be Cacica of all the provinces in New Spain.

All this which I have repeated here I know for certain (and I swear to it).¹

This seems to me very much like what took place between Joseph and his brethren in Egypt when they came into his power over the matter of the wheat. It is what actually happened and not the story which was told to Gomara, who also says other things which I will leave unnoticed.

To go back to my subject: Doña Marina knew the language of Coatzacoalcos, which is that common to Mexico, and she knew the language of Tabasco, as did also Jerónimo de Aguilar, who spoke the language of Yucatan and Tabasco, which is one and the same. So that these two could understand one another clearly, and Aguilar translated into Castilian for Cortés.

¹ The words in brackets are blotted out in the original MS.
—G. G.

This was the great beginning of our conquests and thus, thanks be to God, things prospered with us. I have made a point of explaining this matter, because without the help of Doña Marina we could not have understood the language of New Spain and Mexico.

Here I will leave off, and go on later to tell how we disembarked in the Port of San Juan de Ulúa.





BOOK III.

THE MARCH INLAND.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

How we arrived with all the ships at San Juan de Ulúa, and what happened there.



N Holy Thursday, the anniversary of the Last Supper of Our Lord, in the year 1519, we arrived with all the fleet at the Port of San Juan de Ulúa, and as the Pilot Alaminos knew the place well from having come there with Juan de Grijalva he at once ordered the vessels to drop anchor where they would be safe from the northerly gales. The flagship hoisted her royal standards and pennants, and within half an hour of anchoring, two large canoes (which in those parts are called piraguas) came out to us, full of Mexican Indians. Seeing the big ship with the standards flying they knew that it was there they must go to speak with the captain ; so they went direct to the flagship and going on board asked who was the Tatuan¹ which in their language means the chief. Doña Marina who understood the language well, pointed him out. Then the Indians paid many marks

¹ Tlatoan.

of respect to Cortés, according to their usage, and bade him welcome, and said that their lord, a servant of the great Montezuma, had sent them to ask what kind of men we were and of what we were in search, and added that if we were in need of anything for ourselves or the ships, that we should tell them and they would supply it. Our Cortés thanked them through the two interpreters, Aguilar and Doña Marina, and ordered food and wine to be given them and some blue beads, and after they had drunk he told them that we came to see them and to trade with them and that our arrival in their country should cause them no uneasiness but be looked on by them as fortunate. The messengers returned on shore well content, and the next day, which was Good Friday, we disembarked with the horses and guns, on some sand hills which rise to a considerable height, for there was no level land, nothing but sand dunes; and the artilleryman Mesa placed the guns in position to the best of his judgment. Then we set up an altar where mass was said and we made huts and shelters for Cortés and the captains, and three hundred of the soldiers brought wood and made huts for themselves and we placed the horses where they would be safe and in this way was Good Friday passed.

The next day, Saturday, Easter Eve, many Indians arrived sent by a chief who was a governor under Montezuma, named Pitalpitoque¹ (whom we afterwards called Ovandillo), and they brought axes and dressed wood for the huts of the captain Cortés and the other ranchos near to it, and covered them with large cloths on account of the strength of the sun, for as it was in Lent the heat was very great—and they brought fowls and maize cakes and plums, which were then in season, and I think that they brought

¹ Pitalpitoque = Cuitlāpitoc, who had been sent as an ambassador to meet Grijalva. See *Orozco y Berra*, pp. 44 and 132, vol. iv.

some gold jewels, and they presented all these things to Cortés; and said that the next day a governor would come and would bring more food. Cortés thanked them heartily and ordered them to be given certain articles in exchange with which they went away well content. The next day, Easter Sunday, the governor whom they spoke of arrived. His name was Tendile,¹ a man of affairs, and he brought with him Pitalpitoque who was also a man of importance amongst the natives and there followed them many Indians with presents of fowls and vegetables. Tendile ordered these people to stand aside on a hillock and with much humility he made three obeisances to Cortés according to their custom,² and then to all the soldiers who were standing around. Cortés bade them welcome through our interpreters and embraced them and asked them to wait, as he wished presently to speak to them. Meanwhile he ordered an altar to be made as well as it could be done in the time, and Fray Bartolomé de Olmedo, who was a fine singer, chanted Mass, and Padre Juan Diaz³ assisted, and the two governors and the other chiefs who were with them looked on. When Mass was over, Cortés and some of our captains and the two Indian officers of the great Montezuma dined together. When the tables had been cleared away—Cortés went aside with the two Caciques and our two interpreters and explained to them that we were Christians and vassals of the greatest lord on earth, called the Emperor Don Carlos, who had many great princes as his vassals and servants, and that it was at his orders that we had come to this country, because for many years he had heard rumours

¹ Teuhtilli, Governor of Cuetlaxtla (Cotaxtla of modern maps).

² Blotted out in the original—"and they brought much incense on live coals in pottery brasiers."—G. G.

³ Blotted out in the original—"and other soldiers who helped him."—G. G.

about the country and the great prince who ruled it. That he wished to be friends with this prince and to tell him many things in the name of the Emperor which things, when he knew and understood them, would please him greatly. Moreover he wished to trade with their prince and his Indians in good friendship, and he wanted to know where this prince would wish that they should meet so that they might confer together. Tendile replied somewhat proudly, and said—"You have only just now arrived and you already ask to speak with our prince; accept now this present which we give you in his name, and afterwards you will tell me what you think fitting." With that he took out a *petaca*—which is a sort of chest, many articles of gold beautifully and richly worked and ordered ten loads of white cloth made of cotton and feathers to be brought, wonderful things to see, and there were other things which I do not remember, besides quantities of food consisting of fowls of the country,¹ fruit and baked fish. Cortés received it all with smiles in a gracious manner and gave in return, beads of twisted glass and other small beads from Spain, and he begged them to send to their towns to ask the people to come and trade with us as he had brought many beads to exchange for gold, and they replied that they would do as he asked. As we afterwards found out, these two men, Tendile and Pitalpitoque, were the governors of the provinces named Cotustan, Tustepeque,² Guazpaltepeque and Tatalteco, and of some other townships lately conquered. Cortés then ordered his servants to bring an arm-chair, richly carved and inlaid and some *margaritas*,³ stones with many [intricate] designs in them, and a string

¹ Turkeys, Huajolotes (Mex.).

² Cotaxtla, Tuxtepec.

³ Piedras margaritas, possibly margajita; probably mossagate or lapis lazuli.

of twisted glass beads¹ packed in cotton scented with musk and a crimson cap with a golden medal engraved with a figure of St. George on horseback, lance in hand, slaying the dragon, and he told Tendile that he should send the chair to his prince Montezuma (for we already knew that he was so called) so that he could be seated in it when he, Cortés, came to see and speak with him, and that he should place the cap on his head, and that the stones and all the other things were presents from our lord the King, as a sign of his friendship, for he was aware that Montezuma was a great prince, and Cortés asked that a day and a place might be named where he could go to see Montezuma. Tendile received the present and said that his lord Montezuma was such a great prince that it would please him to know our great King and that he would carry the present to him at once and bring back a reply.

It appears that Tendile brought with him some clever painters such as they had in Mexico and ordered them to make pictures true to nature of the face and body of Cortés and all his captains, and of the soldiers, ships, sails and horses, and of Doña Marina and Aguilar, even of the two greyhounds, and the cannon and cannon balls, and all of the army we had brought with us, and he carried the pictures to his master. Cortés ordered our gunners to load the lombards with a great charge of powder so that they should make a great noise when they were fired off, and he told Pedro de Alvarado that he and all the horsemen should get ready so that these servants of Montezuma might see them gallop and told them to attach little bells to the horses' breastplates. Cortés also mounted his horse and said—"It would be well if we could gallop on these sand dunes but they will observe that even when

¹ Diamantes torcidos.

on foot we get stuck in the sand—let us go out to the beach when the tide is low and gallop two and two;”—and to Pedro de Alvarado whose sorrel coloured mare was a great galloper, and very handy, he gave charge of all the horsemen.

All this was carried out in the presence of the two ambassadors, and so that they should see the cannon fired, Cortés made as though he wished again to speak to them and a number of other chieftains, and the lombards were fired off, and as it was quite still at that moment, the stones went flying through the forest resounding with a great din, and the two governors and all the other Indians were frightened by things so new to them, and ordered the painters to record them so that Montezuma might see. It happened that one of the soldiers had a helmet half gilt but somewhat rusty and this Tendile noticed, for he was the more forward of the two ambassadors, and said that he wished to see it as it was like one that they possessed which had been left to them by their ancestors of the race from which they had sprung, and that it had been placed on the head of their god—Huichilobos,¹ and that their prince Montezuma would like to see this helmet. So it was given to him, and Cortés said to them that as he wished to know whether the gold of this country was the same as that we find in our rivers, they could return the helmet filled with grains of gold so that he could send it to our great Emperor. After this, Tendile bade farewell to Cortés and to all of us and after many expressions of regard from Cortés he took leave of him and said that he would return with a reply without delay. After Tendile had departed we found out that besides being an Indian employed in matters of great importance, Tendile was the most active of the servants whom his master, Montezuma, had in

his employ, and he went with all haste and narrated everything to his prince, and showed him the pictures which had been painted and the present which Cortés had sent. When the great Montezuma gazed on it he was struck with admiration and received it on his part with satisfaction. When he examined the helmet and that which was on his Huichilobos, he felt convinced that we belonged to the race which, as his forefathers had foretold would come to rule over that land. It is here that the historian Gomara relates many things which were not told to him correctly.

I will leave off here, and then go on to say what else happened.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

How Tendile went to report to his Prince Montezuma and to carry the present, and what we did in our camp.

WHEN Tendile departed with the present which the Captain Cortés gave him for his prince Montezuma, the other governor, Pitalpitoque, stayed in our camp and occupied some huts a little distance from ours, and they brought Indian women there to make maize bread, and brought fowls and fruit and fish, and supplied Cortés and the captains who fed with him. As for us soldiers, if we did not hunt for shell fish on the beach, or go out fishing, we did not get anything.

About that time, many Indians came from the towns already mentioned by me over which these two servants of Montezuma were governors, and some of them brought gold and jewels of little value, and fowls to exchange with us for our goods, which consisted of green beads and clear glass beads and other articles, and with this we managed to supply ourselves with food. Almost all the soldiers had brought things for barter, as we learnt in Grijalva's time

that it was a good thing to bring beads—and in this manner six or seven days passed by.

Then one morning, Tendile arrived with more than one hundred laden Indians, accompanied by a great Mexican Cacique, who in his face, features and appearance bore a strong likeness to our Captain Cortés and the great Montezuma had sent him purposely, for it is said that when Tendile brought the portrait of Cortés all the chiefs who were in Montezuma's company said that a great chief named Quintalbor looked exactly like Cortés and that was the name of the Cacique who now arrived with Tendile; and as he was so like Cortés we called them in camp "our Cortés" and "the other Cortés." To go back to my story, when these people arrived and came before our Captain they first of all kissed the earth¹ and then fumigated him and all the soldiers who were standing around him, with incense which they brought in brasiers of pottery. Cortés received them affectionately and seated them near himself, and that chief who came with the present (who I have already said was named Quintalbor) had been appointed spokesman together with Tendile. After welcoming us to the country and after many courteous speeches had passed he ordered the presents which he had brought to be displayed, and they were placed on mats which they call petates over which were spread cotton cloths.² The first article presented was a wheel like a sun, as big as a cart-wheel, with many sorts of pictures on it, the whole of fine gold, and a wonderful thing to behold, which those who afterwards weighed it said was worth more than ten thousand dollars. Then another wheel was presented of greater size made of silver of great brilliancy in

¹ On seeing Don Hernando Cortés they made the usual obeisance, placing the forefinger (*dedo mayor*) of the right hand on the ground and raising it to the mouth. (*Orozco y Berra*, vol. iv, p. 127.)

² See Appendix A. Montezuma's gifts to Cortés.

imitation of the moon with other figures shown on it, and this was of great value as it was very heavy—and the chief brought back the helmet full of fine grains of gold, just as they are got out of the mines, and this was worth three thousand dollars. This gold in the helmet was worth more to us than if it had contained \$20,000, because it showed us that there were good mines there. Then were brought twenty golden ducks, beautifully worked and very natural looking, and some [ornaments] like dogs, of the kind they keep, and many articles of gold worked in the shape of tigers and lions and monkeys, and ten collars beautifully worked and other necklaces; and twelve arrows and a bow with its string, and two rods like staffs of justice, five palms long, all in beautiful hollow work of fine gold. Then there were presented crests of gold and plumes of rich green feathers and others of silver, and fans of the same materials, and deer copied in hollow gold and many other things that I cannot remember for it all happened so many years ago. And then over thirty loads of beautiful cotton cloth were brought worked with many patterns and decorated with many coloured feathers, and so many other things were there that it is useless my trying to describe them for I know not how to do it. When all these things had been presented this great Cacique Quintalbor and Tendile asked Cortés to accept this present with the same willingness with which his prince had sent it, and divide it among the *teules*¹ and men who accompanied him. Cortés received the present with delight and then the ambassadors told Cortés that they wished to repeat what their prince, Montezuma, had sent them to say. First of all they told him that he was pleased that such valiant men, as he had heard that w

¹ *Teules*, "for so they call the Idols which they worship." See p. 172.

were, should come to his country, for he knew all about what we had done at Tabasco, and that he would much like to see our great emperor who was such a mighty prince and whose fame was spread over so many lands, and that he would send him a present of precious stones ; and that meanwhile we should stay in that port ; that if he could assist us in any way he would do so with the greatest pleasure ; but as to the interview, they should not worry about it ; that there was no need for it and they (the ambassadors) urged many objections. Cortés kept a good countenance, and returned his thanks to them, and with many flattering expressions gave each of the ambassadors two holland shirts and some blue glass beads and other things, and begged them to go back as his ambassadors to Mexico and to tell their prince, the great Montezuma, that as we had come across so many seas, and had journeyed from such distant lands solely to see and speak with him in person, that if we should return thus, that our great king and lord would not receive us well, and that wherever their prince Montezuma might be we wished to go and see him and do what he might order us to do. The ambassadors replied that they would go back and give this message to their prince, but as to the question of the desired interview—they considered it superfluous. By these ambassadors Cortés sent what our poverty could afford as a gift to Montezuma : a glass cup of Florentine ware, engraved with trees and hunting scenes and gilt, and three holland shirts and other things, and he charged the messengers to bring a reply. The two governors set out and Pitalpitoque remained in camp ; for it seems that the other servants of Montezuma had given him orders to see that food was brought to us from the neighbouring towns. Here I will leave off, and then go on to tell what happened in our camp.

CHAPTER XL.

How Cortés sent to look for another harbour and site where to make a settlement, and what was done about it.

AS soon as the messengers had been sent off to Mexico, Cortés despatched two ships to go and explore the coast further along, and placed Francisco de Montejo in command of them and ordered him to follow the course we had taken with Grijalva (for Montejo had accompanied us during Grijalva's expedition) and to seek out a safe harbour, and search for lands where we could settle, for it was clear that we could not settle on those sand dunes, both on account of the mosquitoes and the distance from other towns. Cortés ordered Alaminos and Juan Álvarez el Manquillo to go as pilots as they knew the route, and told them to sail as far along the coast as was possible in ten days. They did as they were told and arrived at the Rio Grande, which is close to Panuco,¹ which we had reached during the expedition under the Captain Juan de Grijalva. They were not able to proceed any further on account of the strong currents. Seeing how difficult the navigation had become, they turned round and made for San Juan de Ulúa, without having made any further progress, or having anything to tell us, beyond the news that, twelve leagues away, they had seen a town looking like a fortified harbour which was called Quiahuitztlan, and that near that town was a harbour where the pilot Alaminos thought that the ships would be safe from the northerly gales. He gave to it an ugly name, that of Bernal, for it is like another harbour in Spain of that name. In these comings and goings Montejo was occupied ten or twelve days.

¹ The expedition under Grijalva did not pass beyond Cape Rojo.

I must now go back to say that the Indian Pitalpitoque, who remained behind to look after the food, slackened his efforts to such an extent that no provisions reached the camp and we were greatly in need of food, for the cassava turned sour from the damp and rotted and became foul with weevils and if we had not gone hunting for shell fish we should have had nothing to eat. The Indians who used to come bringing gold and fowls for barter, did not come in such numbers as on our first arrival and those who did come were very shy and cautious and we began to count the hours that must elapse before the return of the messengers who had gone to Mexico. We were thus waiting when Tendile returned accompanied by many Indians, and after having paid their respects in the usual manner by fumigating Cortés and the rest of us with incense, he presented ten loads of fine rich feather cloth, and four chalchihuites, which are green stones of very great value, and held in the greatest esteem among the Indians, more than emeralds are by us, and certain other gold articles. Not counting the chalchihuites, the gold alone was said to be worth three thousand dollars. Then Tendile and Pitalpitoque approached (the other great cacique, Quintalbor, fell ill on the road and did not return) and those two governors went aside with Cortés and Doña Marina and Aguilar, and reported that their prince Montezuma had accepted the present and was greatly pleased with it, but as to an interview, that no more should be said about it; that these rich stones of chalchihuite should be sent to the great Emperor as they were of the highest value, each one being worth more and being esteemed more highly than a great load of gold, and that it was not worth while to send any more messengers to Mexico. Cortés thanked the messengers and gave them presents, but it was certainly a disappointment to him to be told so distinctly that we could not see Montezuma,

and he said to some soldiers who happened to be standing near : " Surely this must be a great and rich prince, and some day, please God, we must go and see him"—and the soldiers answered : " We wish that we were already living with him !"

Let us now leave this question of visits and relate that it was now the time of the Ave Maria, and at the sound of a bell which we had in the camp we all fell on our knees before a cross placed on a sand hill and said our prayers of the Ave Maria before the cross. When Tendile and Pitalpitoque saw us thus kneeling, as they were very intelligent, they asked what was the reason that we humbled ourselves before a tree cut in that particular way. As Cortés heard this remark he said to the Padre de la Merced who was present : " It is a good opportunity, father, as we have good material at hand, to explain through our interpreters matters touching our holy faith." And then he delivered a discourse to the Caciques so fitting to the occasion that no good theologian could have bettered it. After telling them that we were Christians and relating all the matters pertaining to our holy religion, he told them that their idols were not good but evil things which would take flight at the presence of that sign of the cross, for on a similar cross the Lord of Heaven and earth and all created things suffered passion and death ; that it is He whom we adore and in whom we believe, our true God, Jesus Christ, who had been willing to suffer and die in order to save the whole human race ; that the third day He rose again and is now in heaven ; and that by Him we shall all be judged. Cortés said many other things very well expressed, which they thoroughly understood, and they replied that they would report them to their prince Montezuma. Cortés also told them that one of the objects for which our great Emperor had sent us to their countries was to abolish human sacrifices, and the other

evil rites which they practised and to see that they did not rob one another, or worship those curséd images. And Cortés prayed them to set up in their city, in the temples where they kept the idols which they believed to be gods, a cross like the one they saw before them, and to set up in the same place an image of Our Lady, which he would give them, with her precious son in her arms, and they would see how well it would go with them, and what our God would do for them. However, as many other arguments were used and as I do not know how to write them all out at length I will leave the subject and recall to mind that on this latest visit many Indians came with Tendile, who were wishing to barter articles of gold, which, however, were of no great value. So all the soldiers set about bartering, and the gold which we gained by this barter we gave to the sailors who were out fishing in exchange for their fish so as to get something to eat, for otherwise we often underwent great privations through hunger. Cortés was pleased at this although he pretended not to see what was going on, and many of the servants and friends of Diego Velásquez asked him why he did not prevent us from bartering. What happened about this I will tell later.

CHAPTER XLI.

What was done about the bartering for gold, and other things that took place in camp.

WHEN the friends of Diego Velásquez saw that some of us soldiers were bartering for gold, they asked Cortés why he permitted it, and said that Diego Velásquez did not send out the expedition in order that the soldiers should carry off most of the gold, and that it would be as well to issue an order that for the future no gold should be

bartered for by anyone but Cortés himself and that all the gold already obtained should be displayed so that the royal fifth might be taken from it, and that some suitable person should be placed in charge of the treasury.

To all this Cortés replied that all they said was good, and that they themselves should name that person, and they chose Gonzalo Mejia. When this had been done, Cortés turned to them with angry mien and said: "Observe, gentlemen, that our companions are suffering great hardships from want of food, and it is for this reason that we ought to overlook things, so that they may all find something to eat; all the more so as the amount of gold they bargain for is but a trifle,—and God willing, we are going to obtain a large amount of it. However, there are two sides to everything; the order has been issued that bartering for gold shall cease, as you desired; we shall see next what we will get to eat."

This is where the historian, Gomara, states that Cortés did this so that Montezuma might think that we cared nothing for gold, but he (Gomara) was not well informed, for ever since the event of Grijalva's visit to the Rio de Banderas, Montezuma must have understood well enough, and even more so when we sent the helmet to him with a request that it should be filled with gold grains from the mines, besides they had seen us bargaining and the Mexicans were not the sort of people to misunderstand the meaning of it all.

Let us drop this subject then, which Gomara says he knows about because "they told him so" and I will go on to relate how, one morning, we woke up to find not a single Indian in any of their huts, neither those who used to bring the food, nor those who came to trade, nor Pitalpitoque himself; they had all fled without saying a word. The cause of this, as we afterwards learned, was that Montezuma had sent orders to avoid further conversation

with Cortés and those in his company ; for it appears that Montezuma was very much devoted to his idols, named Tezcatepuca, and Huichilobos, the latter the god of war, and Tezcatepuca, the god of hell ; and daily he sacrificed youths to them so as to get an answer from the gods as to what he should do about us ; for Montezuma had already formed a plan, if we did not go off in the ships, to get us all into his power, and to raise a breed of us¹ and also to keep us for sacrifice. As we afterwards found out, the reply given by the gods was that he should not listen to Cortés, nor to the message which he sent about setting up a cross and an image of Our Lady, and that such things should not be brought to the city. This was the reason why the Indians left our camp without warning. When we heard the news we thought that they meant to make war on us, and we were very much on the alert. One day, as I and another soldier were stationed on some sand dunes keeping a look out, we saw five Indians coming along the beach, and so as not to raise a scare in camp over so small a matter, we permitted them to approach. When they came up to us with smiling countenances they paid us homage according to their custom, and made signs that we should take them into camp. I told my companion to remain where he was and I would accompany the Indians, for at that time my feet were not as heavy as they are now that I am old, and when we came before Cortés the Indians paid him every mark of respect and said : *Lope luzio, lope luzio*—which in the Totonac language means : “ prince and great lord.” These men had large holes in their lower lips, some with stone disks in them spotted with blue, and others with thin leaves of gold. They also had their ears pierced with large holes in which were placed disks of

¹ Blotted out in the original MS.—With which to make war.
—G. G.

stone or gold, and in their dress and speech they differed greatly from the Mexicans who had been staying with us. When Doña Marina and Aguilar, the Interpreters, heard the word *Lope luzio* they did not understand it, and Doña Marina asked in Mexican if there were not among them *Nahuatatos*, that is, interpreters of the Mexican language, and two of the five answered yes, that they understood and spoke it, and they bade us welcome and said that their chief had sent them to ask who we might be, and that it would please him to be of service to such valiant men, for it appeared that they knew about our doings at Tabasco and Potonchan, and they added that they would have come to see us before but for fear of the people of Culua who had been with us, (by Culua they meant Mexicans, as we might say Cordovans, or rustics) and that they knew that three days ago they had fled back to their own country, and in the course of their talk Cortés found out that Montezuma had opponents and enemies, which he was delighted to hear, and after flattering these five messengers and giving them presents he bade them farewell, asking them to tell their chief that he would very soon come and pay them a visit. From this time on we called those Indians the *Lope luzios*. I must leave them now and go on to say that in those sand dunes where we were camped there were always many mosquitos, both long-legged ones and small ones which are called *xexenes* which are worse than the large ones, and we could get no sleep on account of them. We were very short of food and the cassava bread was disappearing, and what there was of it was very damp and foul with weevils. Some of the soldiers who possessed Indians in the Island of Cuba were continually sighing for their homes, especially the friends and servants of Diego Valásquez. When Cortés noted the state of affairs and the wishes of these men he gave orders that we should go to the fortified town which had been seen by Montejo and

the pilot, Alaminos, named Quiahuitztlan where the ships would be under the protection of the rock which I have mentioned. When arrangements were being made for us to start, all the friends, relations and servants of Diego Velásquez asked Cortés why he wanted to make that journey without having any provisions, seeing that there was no possibility of going on any further and that over thirty five soldiers had already died in camp from wounds inflicted at Tabasco, and from sickness and hunger ; that the country we were in was a great one and the settlements very thickly peopled and that any day they might make war on us ; that it would be much better to return to Cuba and account to Diego Velásquez for the gold gained in barter, which already amounted to a large sum, and the great presents from Montezuma, the sun and the silver moon and the helmet full of golden grains from the mines, and all the cloths and jewels already mentioned by me. Cortés replied to them that it was not good advice to recommend our going back without reason ; that hitherto we could not complain of our fortune and should give thanks to God who was helping us in everything, and as for those who had died, that that always happened in wars and under hardship ; that it would be as well to find out what the country contained ; that meanwhile we could eat the maize and other food held by the Indians and by the neighbouring towns, unless our hands had lost their cunning. With this reply, the partisans of Diego Velásquez were somewhat, but not wholly appeased, for there were already cliques formed in camp who discussed the return to Cuba. I will leave off here and then go on to say what happened.

CHAPTER XLII.

How we raised Hernando Cortés to the post of Captain General and Chief Justice, until His Majesty's wishes on the matter should be known, and what was done about it.

I HAVE already said that the relations and friends of Diego Velásquez were going about the camp raising objections to our going on any further and insisting that we should return at once from San Juan de Ulúa to the Island of Cuba. It appears that Cortés had already talked the matter over with Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero, and Pedro de Alvarado and his four brothers, Jorge, Gonzalo, Gómez and Juan, and with Cristóbal de Olid, Alonzo de Ávila, Juan de Escalante, Francisco de Lugo, and with me and other gentlemen and captains, and suggested that we should beg of him to be our captain. Francisco de Montejo understood what was going on and was on the watch. One night, after midnight, Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero, Juan de Escalante and Francisco de Lugo, came to my hut. Francisco de Lugo and I came from the same country and were distant kinsmen. They said to me: "Señor Bernal Díaz, come out with your arms and go the rounds; we will accompany Cortés who is just now going the rounds." When I was a little distance from the hut they said to me: "Look to it, sir, that you keep secret for a time what we wish to tell you, for it is a matter of importance, and see that your companions in your hut know nothing about it, for they are of the party of Diego Velásquez." What they said to me was: "Sir, does it seem to you to be right that Hernando Cortés should have deceived us all in bringing us here, he having proclaimed in Cuba that he was coming to settle, and now we find out that he has no power to do so, but only to trade, and they want us to return to Santiago de Cuba with all the gold

that has been collected, and we shall lose our all, for will not Diego Velásquez take all the gold as he did before? Look, sir, counting this present expedition, you have already come to this country three times, spending your own property and contracting debts and risking your life many times with the wounds you have received. Many of us gentlemen who know that we are your honour's friends wish you to understand that this must not go on; that this land must be settled in the name of His Majesty, and by Hernando Cortés in His Majesty's name, while we await the opportunity to make it known to our lord the King in Spain. Be sure, sir, to cast your vote so that all of us unanimously and willingly choose him captain, for it will be a service to God and our lord the King." I replied that it was not a wise decision to return to Cuba and that it would be a good thing for the country to be settled and that we should choose Cortés as General and Chief Justice until his Majesty should order otherwise. This agreement passed from soldier to soldier and the friends and relations of Diego Velásquez, who were more numerous than we were, got to know of it, and with overbold words asked Cortés why he was craftily arranging to remain in this country instead of returning to render an account of his doings to the man who had sent him as captain, and they told him that Diego Velásquez would not approve of it, and that the sooner we embarked the better; that there was no use in his subterfuges and secret meetings with the soldiers, for we had neither supplies nor men, nor any possibility of founding a settlement. Cortés answered without a sign of anger, and said that he agreed with them; that he would not go against the instructions and notes which he had received from Diego Velásquez, and he issued an order for us all to embark on the following day, each one in the ship in which he had come. We who had made the agreement answered that it was

not fair to deceive us so, that in Cuba he had proclaimed that he was coming to make a settlement, whereas he had only come to trade; and we demanded on behalf of our Lord God and of His Majesty that he should at once form a settlement and give up any other plan, because that would be of the greatest benefit and service to God and the King; and they placed many other well-reasoned arguments before him saying that the natives would never let us land again as they had done this time, and that as soon as a settlement was made in the country soldiers would gather in from all the islands to give us help and that Velásquez had ruined us all by stating publicly that he had received a decree from His Majesty to form a settlement, the contrary being the case; that we wished to form a settlement, and to let those depart who desired to return to Cuba. So Cortés agreed to it, although he pretended to need much begging, as the saying goes: "You are very pressing, and I want to do it,"¹—and he stipulated that we should make him Chief Justice and Captain General, and the worst of all that we conceded was that we should give him a fifth of all the gold which should be obtained, after the royal fifth had been deducted, and then we gave him the very fullest powers in the presence of the King's Notary, Diego de Godoy, embracing all that I have here stated. We at once set to work to found and settle a town, which was called the "Villa rica de la Vera Cruz" because we arrived on Thursday of the (last) supper and landed on "Holy Friday of the Cross" and "rich" because of what that gentleman said, as I have related in a former chapter (XXVI) who approached Cortés and said to him: "Behold rich lands! May you know how to govern them well!" and what he wanted to say was—"May you

¹ "Tu me lo ruegas y yo me lo quiero."

remain as their Captain General." That gentleman was Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero.

To go back to my story : as soon as the town was founded we appointed *alcaldes* and *regidores* ; the former were Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero and Francisco Montejo. In the case of Montejo, it was because he was not on very good terms with Cortés that Cortés ordered him to be named as *Alcalde*, so as to place him in the highest position. I need not give the names of the *Regidores*, for it is no use naming only a few of them ; but I must mention the fact that a pillory was placed in the Plaza and a gallows set up outside the town. We chose Pedro de Alvarado as captain of expeditions and Cristóbal de Olid as *Maestro de Campo*.¹ Juan de Escalante was chosen chief *Alguacil* ;² Gonzalo Mejia, treasurer, and Alonzo de Ávila accountant. A certain Corral was named as *Ensign*, because Villaroel who had been *Ensign* was dismissed from the post on account of some offence (I do not exactly know what) he had given Cortés about an Indian woman from Cuba. Ochoa, a Biscayan, and Alonzo Romero were appointed *Alguaciles* of the Camp.³

It will be said that I have made no mention of the Captain Gonzalo de Sandoval, he of whom our lord the Emperor has heard such reports, who was such a renowned captain that he ranked next to Cortés⁴ in our estimation. I say this was because at that time he was a youth, and we did not take such count of him and of other valiant captains until we saw him grow in worth in such a way that Cortés and all the soldiers held him in the same esteem as Cortés himself, as I shall tell later on.

¹ *Maestro de Campo* = Quartermaster.

² *Alguacil Mayor* = High Constable.

³ *Alguacil del Real* = Constables and storekeepers.

⁴ Blotted out in the original : "y Pedro de Alvarado."—G. G.

I must leave my story here and say that the historian, Gomara, states that he was told all that which he has written down. But I assert that these things happened as I have related them. Gomara is wrong in other things that he wrote because his informants did not give him a true account. However good the style may be in which he tells the story, so that all may appear to be true, I assert that all he says about this matter is wrong.

I will drop the subject now and go on to tell how the party of Diego Velásquez tried to stop the election of Cortés as captain, and to insist on our returning to the Island of Cuba.

CHAPTER XLIII.

How the party of Diego Velásquez tried to upset the powers we had given to Cortés, and what was done about it.

WHEN the partisans of Diego Velásquez realized the fact that we had chosen Cortés for our Captain and Chief Justice, and had founded a town and chosen the Alcaldes and Regidores, and appointed Pedro de Alvarado as captain [of expeditions] and named the Alguacil Mayor and Maestro de Campo and had done all that I have narrated, they were angry and furious and they began to excite factions and meetings and to use abusive language about Cortés and those of us who had elected him, saying that it was not right to do these things unless all the captains and soldiers who had come on the expedition had been parties to it; that Diego Velásquez had given Cortés no such powers, only authority to trade, and that we partisans of Cortés should take care that our insolence did not so increase as to bring us to blows. Then Cortés secretly told Juan de Escalante that we should make him produce the instructions given him by Diego Velásquez.

Upon this Cortés drew them from his bosom and gave them to the King's scribe to read aloud. In these instructions were the words: "As soon as you have gained all you can by trading, you will return," and the document was signed by Diego Velásquez and countersigned by his Secretary, Andrés de Duero. We begged Cortés to cause this document to be attached to the deed recording the power we had given him, as well as the proclamation which he issued in the Island of Cuba. And this was done so that his Majesty in Spain should know that all that we did was done in his royal service, and that they should not bring against us anything but the truth; and it was a good precaution, seeing how we were treated in Spain by Don Juan Rodriguez de Fonseca, Bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosano (for such were his titles) who, we knew for certain, took steps to destroy us as I shall tell later on.

After this was done, these same friends and dependents of Diego Velásquez returned to Cortés to say that it was not right that he should have been chosen Captain without their consent and that they did not wish to remain under his command, but to return at once to the Island of Cuba. Cortés replied that he would detain no one by force, and that to anyone who came to ask leave to return, he would willingly grant it, even although he were left alone. With this some of them were quieted, but not Juan Velásquez de Leon who was a relation of Diego Velásquez, and Diego de Ordás, and Escobar, whom we called the Page, for he had been brought up by Diego Velásquez, and Pedro Escudero and other friends of Diego Velásquez; and it came to this, that they refused all obedience to Cortés. With our assistance, Cortés determined to make prisoners of Juan Velásquez de Leon, and Diego de Ordás, and Escobar the Page, and Pedro Escudero and others whose names I do not remember, and we took care that the others should create no disturbance. These men re-

mained prisoners for some days, in chains and under guard.

I will go on to tell how Pedro de Alvarado made an expedition to a town in the neighbourhood. Here the chronicler, Gomara, in his history gives quite a wrong account of what happened, and whoever reads his history will see that his story is greatly exaggerated, had he been correctly informed he would have related what [really] took place.

CHAPTER XLIV.

How it was arranged to send Pedro de Alvarado inland to look for maize and other supplies and what else happened.

WHEN all that I have related had been settled and done with, it was arranged that Pedro de Alvarado should go inland to some towns which we had been told were near by and see what the country was like and bring back maize and some sort of supplies, for there was a great want of food in camp. Alvarado took one hundred soldiers with him, among them fifteen crossbowmen and six musketeers. More than half his soldiers were partisans of Diego Velásquez. All Cortés' party remained with him for fear there should be any further disturbance or tricks played or any rising against him, until things became more settled.

Alvarado went first to some small towns subject to another town called Cotastan,¹ where the language of Culua was spoken. This name, Culua, in this country means the common language of the partisans of Mexico and Montezuma ; so that in all that country when Culua is mentioned, it means people vassal and subject to Mexico, and must be thus understood, just as we should speak of the Romans and their allies.

¹ Cotaxtla.

When Pedro de Alvarado reached these towns he found that they had all been deserted that same day, and he found in the *cues* bodies of men and boys who had been sacrificed, and the walls and altars stained with blood and the hearts placed as offerings before the Idols. He also found the stones on which the sacrifices were made and the stone knives with which to open the chest so as to take out the heart.

Pedro de Alvarado said that he found most of the bodies without arms or legs, and that he was told by some Indians that they had been carried off to be eaten, and our soldiers were astounded at such great cruelty. I will not say any more of the number of sacrifices, although we found the same thing in every town we afterwards entered, and I will go back to Pedro de Alvarado and say that he found the towns well provisioned but deserted that very day by their inhabitants, so that he could not find more than two Indians to carry maize, and each soldier had to load himself with poultry and vegetables, and he returned to camp without doing any other damage (although he had good opportunity for doing it) because Cortés had given orders to that effect, so that there should be no repetition of what happened at Cozumel.

We were pleased enough in camp even with the little food that had been brought, for all evils and hardships disappear when there is plenty to eat.

Here it is that the historian, Gomara, says that Cortés went inland with four hundred soldiers. He was misinformed, for the first to go was [Alvarado] as I have stated here, and no other.

To go back to my story: As Cortés was most energetic in every direction, he managed to make friends with the partisans of Diego Velásquez, for, with that solvent of hardness, presents of gold from our store to some, and promises to others, he brought them over to his side, and

took them out of prison ; all except Juan Velásquez de Leon and Diego de Ordás, who were in irons on board ship. These, too, he let out of prison after a few days, and made good and true friends of them as will be seen further on,—and all through gold which is such a pacifier !

When everything had been settled, we arranged to go to the fortified town already mentioned by me, which was called Quiahuitztlan. The ships were to go to the rock and harbour which was opposite that town, about a league distant from it. I remember that as we marched along the coast we killed a large fish which had been thrown up high and dry by the sea. When we arrived at the river where Vera Cruz is now situated¹ we found the water to be deep, and we crossed over it in some broken canoes like troughs, and others crossed by swimming, or on rafts.

Then we came on some towns subject to the large town named Cempoala, whence came the five Indians with the golden labrets, who I have already said came as messengers to Cortés at the sand dunes, and whom we called *Lopezluzios*. We found some idol houses and places of sacrifice, and blood splashed about, and incense used for fumigation and other things belonging to the idols, and stones with which they made the sacrifices, and parrots' feathers and many paper books doubled together in folds like Spanish cloth ; but we found no Indians, they having already fled, for as they had never before seen men like us, nor horses, they were afraid.

We slept there that night, and went without supper, and next day, leaving the coast, we continued our march inland towards the west, without knowing the road we were taking, and we came on some good meadows called *savanas* where deer were grazing, and Pedro de Alvarado rode after one on his sorrel mare and struck at it with his

¹ The third site, now known as La Aptigua.

lance and wounded it, but it got away into the woods and could not be caught.

While this was happening we saw twelve Indians approaching, inhabitants of the farms where we had passed the night. They came straight from their Cacique, and brought fowls and maize cakes, and they said to Cortés, through our interpreters, that their chief had sent the fowls for us to eat, and begged us to come to his town, which was, according to the signs they made, distant one sun's (that is one day's) march.

Cortés thanked them and made much of them, and we continued our march and slept in another small town, where also many sacrifices had been made, but as my readers will be tired of hearing of the great number of Indian men and women whom we found sacrificed in all the towns and roads we passed, I shall go on with my story without stopping to say any more about them.

They gave us supper at the little town and we learnt that the road to Quiahuitztlan, which I have already said is a fortress, passed by Cempoala. I will go on to say how we entered Cempoala.

CHAPTER XLV.

How we entered Cempoala, which at that time was a very fine town and what happened to us there.

WE slept at the little town where the twelve Indians I have mentioned had prepared quarters for us, and after being well informed about the road which we had to take to reach the town on the hill, very early in the morning we sent word to the Caciques of Cempoala that we were coming to their town and that we hoped they would approve. Cortés sent six of the Indians with this message

and kept the other six as guides. He also ordered the guns, muskets and crossbows to be kept ready for use, and sent scouts on ahead on the look out, and the horsemen and all the rest of us were kept on the alert, and in this way we marched to within a league of the town. As we approached, twenty Indian chieftains came out to receive us in the name of the Cacique, and brought some cones made of the roses of the country with a delicious scent, which they gave to Cortés and those on horseback with every sign of friendliness, and they told Cortés that their Lord was awaiting us at our apartments, for, as he was a very stout and heavy man, he could not come out to receive us himself. Cortés thanked them and we continued our march, and as we got among the houses and saw what a large town it was, larger than any we had yet seen, we were struck with admiration. It looked like a garden with luxuriant vegetation, and the streets were so full of men and women who had come to see us, that we gave thanks to God at having discovered such a country.

Our scouts, who were on horseback, reached a great plaza with courts, where they had prepared our quarters, and it seems that during the last few days they had been whitewashed and burnished, a thing they knew well how to do, and it seemed to one of the scouts that this white surface which shone so brightly must be silver and he came back at full speed to tell Cortés that the walls of the houses were made of silver! Doña Marina and Aguilar said that it must be plaster or lime and we had a good laugh over the man's silver and excitement and always afterwards we told him that everything white looked to him like silver. I will leave our jokes and say that we reached the buildings, and the fat Cacique came out to receive us in the court. He was so fat that I shall call him by this name; and he made deep obeisance to Cortés and fumigated him, as is their custom, and Cortés embraced

him and we were lodged in fine and large apartments that held us all, and they gave us food and brought some baskets of plums which were very plentiful at that season, and maize cakes, and as we arrived ravenous and had not seen so much food for a long time, we called the town Villa Viciosa ; and others called it Sevilla.

Cortés gave orders that none of the soldiers should leave the plaza and that on no account should they give any offence to the Indians. When the fat Cacique heard that we had finished eating he sent to tell Cortés that he wished to come and visit him ; and he came in company with a great number of Indian chieftains, all wearing large gold labrets and rich mantles. Cortés left his quarters to go out and meet them, and embraced the Cacique with great show of caressing and flattery, and the fat Cacique ordered a present to be brought which he had prepared, consisting of gold, jewels and cloths ; but although it did not amount to much and was of little value he said to Cortés : "*Lope luzio*, *Lope luzio*, accept this in good part ; if I had more I would give it to you !" I have already said that in the Totonac language *Lope luzio* means Señor or great lord.

Cortés replied through Doña Marina and Aguilar that he would pay for the gift in good works, and that if the Cacique would tell him what he wanted to be done that he would do it for them for we were the vassals of a great prince, the Emperor Don Carlos, who ruled over many kingdoms and countries, and had sent us to redress grievances and punish evil doers, and to put an end to human sacrifices. And he explained to them many things touching our holy religion. When the fat Cacique heard this, he sighed, and complained bitterly of the great Montezuma and his governors saying that he had recently been brought under his yoke ; that all his golden jewels had been carried off, and he and his people were so grievously

oppressed, that they dared do nothing without Montezuma's orders, for he was the Lord over many cities and countries and ruled over countless vassals and armies of warriors.

As Cortés knew that he could not attend at that time to the complaints which they made, he replied that he would see to it that they were relieved of their burdens, that he was now on the way to visit his *Acales* (for so they call the ships in the Indian language) and take up his residence and make his headquarters in the town of Quiahuitztlan, and that as soon as he was settled there he would consider the matter more thoroughly. To this the fat Cacique replied that he was quite satisfied that it should be so.

The next morning we left Cempoala, and there were awaiting our orders over four hundred Indian carriers, who are here called *tamenés* who carry fifty pounds weight on their backs and march five leagues with it. When we saw so many Indians to carry burdens we rejoiced, as before this, those of us who had not brought Indians with us from Cuba had to carry knapsacks on our own backs. And only six or seven Cubans had been brought in the fleet, and not a great number as Gomara asserts. Doña Marina and Aguilar told us that in these parts in times of peace the Caciques are bound to furnish *tamenés* to carry burdens, as a matter of course, and from this time forward wherever we went we asked for Indians to carry loads.

Cortés took leave of the fat Cacique, and on the following day we set out on our march and slept at a little town which had been deserted near to Quiahuitztlan, and the people of Cempoala brought us food. The historian, Gomara, says that Cortés remained many days in Cempoala and planned a league and rebellion against Montezuma, but he was not correctly informed, because, as I have said, we left Cempoala on the following morning, and where the

rebellion was planned and what was the reason of it, I will relate further on.

I will pause here and go on to tell how we entered Quiahuitztlan.

CHAPTER XLVI.

How we entered Quiahuitztlan, which was a fortified town, and were peaceably received.

THE next day about ten o'clock we reached the fortified town called Quiahuitztlan, which stands amid great rocks and lofty cliffs and if there had been any resistance it would have been very difficult to capture it. Expecting that there would be fighting we kept a good formation with the artillery in front and marched up to the fortress in such a manner that if anything had happened we could have done our duty.

At this time, Alonzo de Ávila was acting as captain, and as he was arrogant and bad tempered, when a soldier named Hernando Alonzo de Villanueva failed to keep his place in the ranks, he gave him a thrust with a lance in his arm which maimed him; and after this Hernando Alonzo de Villanueva was always called "El Manquillo."¹ It will be said that I am always turning aside to tell old stories, so I must leave off and go on to say that we went half way through the town without meeting a single Indian to speak to, at which we were very much surprised, for they had fled in fear that very day when they had seen us climbing up to their houses. When we had reached the top of the fortress in the plaza near by where they had their *cues* and great idol houses, we saw fifteen Indians awaiting us all clad in good mantles, and each one with a brasier in his hand

¹ El Manquillo = the one armed or the maimed.

containing incense, and they came to where Cortés was standing and fumigated him and all the soldiers who were standing near and with deep obeisances they asked pardon for not coming out to meet us, and assured us that we were welcome and asked us to rest. And they said that they had fled and kept out of the way until they could see what sort of things we were, for they were afraid of us and of our horses, but that night they would order all the people to come back to the town.

Cortés displayed much friendship toward them and told them many things about our holy religion ; this we were always in the habit of doing wherever we might go. And he told them that we were the vassals of our great Emperor, Don Carlos, and he gave them some green beads and other trifles from Spain, and they brought fowls and maize cakes. While we were talking, someone came to tell Cortés that the fat Cacique from Cempoala was coming in a litter carried on the shoulders of many Indian chieftains. When the fat Cacique arrived he, together with the Cacique and chiefs of the town addressed Cortés, relating their many causes of complaint against Montezuma and telling him of his great power, and this they did with such sighs and tears that Cortés and those who were standing with him were moved to pity. Besides relating the way that they had been brought into subjection, they told us that every year many of their sons and daughters were demanded of them for sacrifice, and others for service in the houses and plantations of their conquerors ; and they made other complaints which were so numerous that I do not remember them all ; but they said that Montezuma's tax gatherers carried off their wives and daughters if they were handsome and ravished them, and this they did throughout the land where the Totonac language was spoken, which contained over thirty towns.

Cortés consoled them as well as he was able through our

interpreters and said he would help them all he could, and would prevent these robberies and offences, as it was for that our lord the Emperor had sent us to these parts, and that they should have no anxiety, for they would soon see what we would do in the matter ; and they seemed to gather some satisfaction from this assurance but their hearts were not eased on account of the great fear they had of the Mexicans.

While this conversation was going on, some Indians from the town came in great haste to tell the Caciques who were talking to Cortés, that five Mexicans, who were Montezuma's tax gatherers, had just arrived. When they heard the news they turned pale and trembled with fear, and leaving Cortés alone they went off to receive the Mexicans, and in the shortest possible time they had decked a room with flowers, and had food cooked for the Mexicans to eat, and prepared plenty of cacao, which is the best thing they have to drink.

When these five Indians entered the town, they came to the place where we were assembled, where were the houses of the Cacique and our quarters, and approaching us with the utmost assurance and arrogance, without speaking to Cortés or to any of us, they passed us by. Their cloaks and loin cloths were richly embroidered (for at that time they wore loin cloths), and their shining hair was gathered up as though tied on their heads, and each one was smelling the roses that he carried, and each had a crooked staff in his hand. Their Indian servants carried fly-whisks, and they were accompanied by many of the chief men of the other Totonac towns, who until they had shown them to their lodgings and brought them food of the best, never left them.

As soon as they had dined they sent to summon the fat Cacique and the other chiefs, and scolded them for entertaining us in their houses, for now they would have to

speaking and deal with us which would not please their lord Montezuma ; for without his permission and orders they should not have sheltered us, nor given us presents of golden jewels, and on this subject they uttered many threats against the fat Cacique and the other chiefs and ordered them at once to provide twenty Indians, men and women, to appease their gods for the wrong that had been done.

When he saw what was going on, Cortés asked our interpreters, Doña Marina and Jerónimo de Aguilar why the Caciques were so agitated since the arrival of those Indians, and who they were. Doña Marina who understood full well what had happened, told him what was going on ; and then Cortés summoned the fat Cacique and the other chiefs, and asked them who these Indians were, and why they made such a fuss about them. They replied that they were the tax gatherers of the great Montezuma and that they had come to inquire why they had received us in their town without the permission of their lord, and that they now demanded twenty men and women to sacrifice to their god, Huichilobos, so that he would give them victory over us, for they [the tax gatherers] said that Montezuma had declared that he intended to capture and make slaves of us.

Cortés reassured them and bade them have no fear for he was here with all of us in his company and that he would chastise them [the tax gatherers].

In the next chapter I will tell in full what was done about it.

CHAPTER XLVII.

How Cortés ordered the five tax gatherers of Montezuma to be taken prisoners and gave out that from that time forward neither obedience nor tribute should be rendered to the Mexicans, and how the rebellion against Montezuma was started.

As soon as Cortés understood what the chiefs were telling him, he said that he had already explained to them that our lord the King had sent him to chastise evil doers and that he would not permit either sacrifice or robbery, and that as these tax gatherers had made this demand, he ordered them to make prisoners of them at once and to hold them in custody until their lord Montezuma should be told the reason, namely, how they had come to rob them and carry off their wives and children as slaves and commit other violence. When the Caciques heard this they were thunderstruck at such daring. What!—to order the messengers of the great Montezuma to be maltreated? They said that they were too much afraid, and did not dare to do it. But Cortés went on impressing on them that the messengers should be thrown into prison at once, and so it was done, and in such a way that with some long poles and collars (such as are in use among them) they secured them so that they could not escape, and they flogged one of them who would not allow himself to be bound. Then Cortés ordered all the Caciques to pay no more tribute or obedience to Montezuma, and to make proclamation to that effect in all their friendly and allied towns, and if any tax gatherers came to their other towns, to inform him of it, and he would send for them. So the news was known throughout that province, for the fat Cacique promptly sent messengers to spread the tidings, and the chiefs who had come in company with the tax gatherers, as soon as they had seen them taken prisoners,

noised it abroad, for each one returned to his own town to deliver the order and relate what had happened.

When they witnessed deeds so marvellous and of such importance to themselves they said that no human beings would dare to do such things, and that it was the work of Teules, for so they call the idols which they worship, and for this reason from that time forth, they called us Teules, which, as I have already explained, is as much as to say that we were either gods or demons. When in the course of my story I may use the word *Teule* in matters connected with our persons, let it be understood that we (Spaniards) are meant.

I must go back to tell about the prisoners. It was the advice of all the Caciques that they should be sacrificed so that none of them could return to Mexico to tell the story; but when Cortés heard this he said that they should not be killed, and that he would take charge of them, and he set some of our soldiers to guard them. At midnight, Cortés sent for these soldiers who were in charge and said to them: "See to it that two of the prisoners are loosened [the two] that appear to you the most intelligent, in such a way that the Indians of this town shall know nothing about it." And he told them to bring the prisoners to his lodging. When the prisoners came before him, he asked them through our interpreters why they were prisoners and what country they came from, as though he knew nothing about them. They replied that the Caciques of Cempoala and of this town, with the aid of their followers and ours, had imprisoned them, and Cortés answered that he knew nothing about it, and was sorry for it, and he ordered food to be brought them and talked in a very friendly manner to them, and told them to return at once to their lord Montezuma and tell him that we were all his good friends and entirely at his service, and that lest any harm should happen to them he had taken them from their prison, and

had quarrelled with the Caciques who had seized them and that anything he could do to serve them he would do with the greatest good will, and that he would order the three Indians their companions who were still held prisoners to be freed and protected. That they two should go away at once and not turn back to be captured and killed.

The two prisoners replied that they valued his mercy and said they still had fear of falling into the hands of their enemies, as they were obliged to pass through their territory. So Cortés ordered six sailors to take them in a boat during the night a distance of four leagues and set them on friendly ground beyond the frontier of Cempoala. When the morning came and the Caciques of the town and the fat Cacique found that the two prisoners were missing they were all the more intent on sacrificing those that remained, if Cortés had not put it out of their power and pretended to be enraged at the loss of the two who had escaped. He ordered a chain to be brought from the ships and bound the prisoners to it, and then ordered them to be taken on board ship, saying that he himself would guard them, as such bad watch had been kept over the others. When they were once on board he ordered them to be freed from their chains and with friendly words he told them that he would soon send them back to Mexico.

I must leave this subject and say that when this was done, all the Caciques of this town and of Cempoala, and all the other Totonac chiefs who had assembled, asked Cortés what was to be done, and that all the force of the great Montezuma and of Mexico would descend upon them and they could not escape death and destruction.

Cortés replied with the most cheerful countenance that he and his brothers who were here with him would defend them and would kill anyone who wished to molest them. Then the Caciques and other townsmen vowed one and all

that they would stand by us in everything we ordered them to do and would join their forces [with ours] against Montezuma and all his allies. Then, in the presence of Diego de Godoy, the scribe, they pledged obedience to his Majesty and messengers were sent to relate all that had happened to the other towns in that province. And as they no longer paid any tribute and no more tax gatherers appeared there was no end to the rejoicing at being rid of that tyranny.

Now, I will leave this incident and tell how we agreed to descend to the plain to some fields where we began to build a fort. This is what really took place and not the story that was told to the historian Gomara.¹

CHAPTER XLVIII.

How we determined to found "La Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz" and to build a fort in some meadows near the salt marshes, and close to the harbour with the ugly name [Bernal] where our ships were at anchor, and what we did there.

As soon as we had made this federation and friendship with more than twenty of the hill towns, known as [the towns of] the Totonacs, which at this time rebelled against the great Montezuma, and gave their allegiance to His Majesty, and offered to serve us—we determined with their ready help at once to found the Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz on a plain half a league from this fortress-like town, called Quiahuitztlan, and we laid out plans of a church, market-place and arsenals, and all those things that are needed for a town, and we built a fort, and from the laying of the foundations until the walls were high enough to receive

¹ Blotted out in the original MS. "No matter how eloquently he may relate it."—G. G.

the woodwork, loopholes, watch-towers, and barbicans, we worked with the greatest haste.

Cortés himself was the first to set to work to carry out the earth and stone on his back, and to dig foundations, and all his captains and soldiers followed his example; and we kept on labouring [without pause] so as to finish the work quickly, some of us digging foundations and others building walls,¹ carrying water, working in the lime kilns, making bricks and tiles, or seeking for food. Others worked at the timber, and the blacksmiths, for we had two blacksmiths with us, made nails. In this way we all laboured without ceasing, from the highest to the lowest; the Indians helping us, so that the church and some of the houses were soon built and the fort almost finished.

While we were thus at work, it seems that the great Montezuma heard the news in Mexico about the capture of his tax gatherers and the rebellion against his rule, and how the Totonac towns had withdrawn their allegiance and risen in revolt. He showed much anger against Cortés and all of us, and had already ordered a great army of warriors to make war on the people who had rebelled against him, and not to leave a single one of them alive. He was also getting ready to come against us with a great army with many companies.

Just at this moment there arrived two Indian prisoners whom Cortés had ordered to be set free, as I have related in the last chapter, and when Montezuma knew that it was Cortés who had taken them out of prison and had sent them to Mexico,—and when he heard the words and promises which he had sent them to report, it pleased our Lord God that his anger was appeased, and he resolved to send and gather news of us. For this purpose he despatched his two young nephews under the charge of four old men

¹ Tapias = walls made of earth stamped into a mould.

who were Caciques of high rank, and sent with them a present of gold and cloth, and told his messengers to give thanks to Cortés for freeing his servants.

On the other hand, he sent many complaints, saying that it was owing to our protection that those towns had dared to commit such a great treason as to refuse to pay him tribute and to renounce their allegiance to him, and that now, having respect for what he knew to be true—that we were those whom his ancestors had foretold were to come to their country, and must therefore be of his own lineage, how was it that we were living in the houses of these traitors? He did not at once send to destroy them, but the time would come when they would not brag of such acts of treason.

Cortés accepted the gold and the cloth, which was worth more than two thousand dollars, and he embraced the envoys and gave as an excuse that he and all of us were very good friends of the Lord Montezuma, and that it was as his servant that he still kept guard over the three tax gatherers, and he sent at once to have them brought from the ships—where they had been well treated and well clothed, and he delivered them up to the messengers.

Then Cortés, on his part, complained greatly of Montezuma, and told the envoys how the Governor, Pitalpitoque, had left the camp one night without giving him notice, which was not well done and that he believed and felt certain that the Lord Montezuma had not authorized any such meanness, and that it was on account of this that we had come to these towns where we were now residing and where we had been well treated by the inhabitants. And he prayed him to pardon the disrespect of which the people had been guilty. As to what he said about the people no longer paying tribute, they could not serve two masters and during the time we had been there they had rendered service to us in the name of our Lord and King; but

as he, Cortés, and all his brethren were on their way to visit him, and place themselves at his service, that when we were once there, then his commands would be attended to.

When this conversation and more of the same nature was over, Cortés ordered blue and green glass beads to be given to the two youths, who were Caciques of high rank, and to the four old men who had come in charge of them, who were also chieftains of importance, and paid them every sign of honour. And as there were some good meadows in the neighbourhood, Cortés ordered Pedro de Alvarado who had a good and very handy sorrel mare, and some of the other horsemen, to gallop and skirmish before the Caciques, who were delighted at the sight of their galloping, and they then took leave of Cortés and of all of us well contented, and returned to Mexico.

About this time Cortés' horse died, and he bought or was given another called "El Arriero," a dark chestnut which belonged to Ortiz, the musician, and Bartolomé Garcia, the miner; it was one of the best of the horses that came in the fleet.

I must stop talking about this, and relate that as these towns of the sierra, our allies, and the town of Cempoala had hitherto been very much afraid of the Mexicans, believing that the great Montezuma would send his great army of warriors to destroy them, when they saw the kinsmen of the great Montezuma arriving with the presents I have mentioned, and paying such marked respect to Cortés and to all of us, they were fairly astounded and the Caciques said to one another that we must be Teules for Montezuma had fear of us, and had sent us presents of gold. If we already had reputation for valour, from this time forth it was greatly increased. But I must leave off here and go on to say what the fat Cacique and his friends were about.

CHAPTER XLIX.

How the fat Cacique and other chieftains came to complain to Cortés, that in a fortified town named Cingapacinga,¹ there was a garrison of Mexicans which did them much damage, and what was done about it.

AS soon as the Mexican messengers had departed, the fat Cacique with many other friendly chieftains, came to beg Cortés to go at once to a town named Cingapacinga, two days' journey from Cempoala (that is about eight or nine leagues)—as there were many warriors of the Culuas, or Mexicans, assembled there, who were destroying their crops and plantations, and were waylaying and ill-treating their vassals, and doing other injuries. Cortés believed the story as they told it so earnestly. He had promised that he would help them, and would destroy the Culuas and other Indians who might annoy them, and noting with what importunity they pressed their complaints, he did not know what to answer them, unless it were to say that he would willingly go, or send some soldiers under one of us, to turn these Mexicans out. As he stood there thinking the matter over, he said laughingly to some of us companions who were with him: "Do you know, gentlemen, that it seems to me that we have already gained a great reputation for valour throughout this country and that from what they saw us do in the matter of Montezuma's tax-gatherers, the people here take us for gods or beings like their idols. I am thinking that so as to make them believe that one of us is enough to defeat those Indian warriors, their enemies, who they say are occupying the town with the fortress, that we will send Heredia against

¹ Not marked on the modern maps. Orozco y Berra (vol. iv, p. 163) says that it no longer exists, but that he found it marked in a MS. map of Patiño under the name of Tizapanecingo, eight or nine leagues N.W. of Cempoala.

them." Now, this old man was a Biscayan musketeer who had a bad twitch in his face, a big beard, a face covered with scars, and was blind of one eye and lame of one leg.

Cortés sent for him and said : "Go with these Caciques to the river which is a quarter of a league distant, and when you get there, stop to drink and wash your hands, and fire a shot from your musket, and then I will send to call you back. I want this to be done because the people here think that we are gods, or at least they have given us that name and reputation, and as you are ugly enough, they will believe that you are an idol." Heredia did what he was told, for he was an intelligent and clever man who had been a soldier in Italy, and Cortés sent for the fat Cacique and the other chieftains, who were waiting for his help and assistance, and said to them : "I am sending this brother of mine with you to kill or expel all the Culuas from this town you speak of, and to bring me here as prisoners all who refuse to leave." The Caciques were surprised when they heard this and did not know whether to believe it or not, but seeing that Cortés never changed his face, they believed that what he told them was true. So old Heredia shouldered his musket and set out with them, and he fired shots into the air as he went through the forest so that the Indians might see and hear him. And the Caciques sent word to the other towns that they were bringing along a Teule to kill all the Mexicans who were in Cingapacinga. I tell this story here merely as a laughable incident, and to show the wiles of Cortés. When Cortés knew that Heredia had reached the river that he had been told about, he sent in haste to call him back, and when old Heredia and the Caciques had returned, he told them that on account of the good will he bore them that he, Cortés himself, would go in person with some of his brethren to afford them the help they needed and visit the country and fortresses ; and he ordered them

at once to bring one hundred Indian carriers to transport the *tepusques*, that is, the cannon, and they came early the next morning, and we set out that same day with four hundred men and fourteen horsemen, and crossbowmen and musketeers who were all ready. Certain soldiers belonging to the party of Diego Velásquez refused to go and told Cortés that he could set out with those who were willing, but that they wished to go back to Cuba.

What was done about this I will tell in the next chapter.

CHAPTER L.

How certain soldiers, partisans of Diego Velásquez, seeing that we positively intended to make settlements, and establish peace in the towns, said that they did not want to go on any expedition, but wished to return to the Island of Cuba.

YOU have already heard me tell in the preceding chapter how Cortés had undertaken to go to a town named Cingapacinga, and take with him four hundred soldiers and fourteen horsemen and musketeers and crossbowmen, and we took good care to make certain soldiers of the party of Diego Velásquez go with us. When the officers went to warn them to get their arms ready, and those who had them to bring their horses, they answered haughtily that they did not want to go on any expedition but back to their farms and estates in Cuba; that they had already lost enough through Cortés having enticed them from their homes, and that he had promised them on the sand dunes that whosoever might wish to leave, that he would give them permission to do so and a ship and stores for the voyage; and for that reason there were now seven soldiers all ready to return to Cuba. When Cortés heard this he sent to summon these men before him, and when he asked them why they were doing such a mean thing they replied

somewhat indignantly and said that they wondered at his honour, with so few soldiers under his command, wishing to settle in a place where there were reported to be such thousands of Indians and such great towns; that as for themselves, they were invalids and could hardly crawl from one place to another and that they wished to return to their homes and estates in Cuba, and they asked him to grant them leave to depart as he had promised that he would do. Cortés answered them gently that it was true that he had promised it, but that they were not doing their duty in deserting from their captain's flag. And then he ordered them to embark at once without any delay and assigned a ship to them and ordered them to be furnished with cassava bread and a jar of oil and such other supplies as we possessed.

One of these soldiers, a certain Moron, a native of the town of Bayamo, owned a good dappled (gray) horse, with stockinged fore-feet, and he sold it a good bargain to Juan Ruano in exchange for some property which Juan Ruano had left in Cuba.

When these people were ready to set sail, all of us comrades, and the Alcaldes and Regidores of our town of Villa Rica, went and begged Cortés on no account to allow anyone to leave the country, for, in the interest of the service of our Lord God and His Majesty, any person asking for such permission should be considered as deserving the punishment of death, in accordance with military law, as a deserter from his captain and his flag in time of war and peril, especially in this case when, as they had stated, we were surrounded by such a great number of towns peopled by Indian warriors.

Cortés acted as though he wished to give them leave to depart, but in the end he revoked the permission and they remained baffled, and even ashamed of themselves; however Moron had sold his horse and Juan Ruano, who

had possession of it, did not want to give it back again ; but Cortés arranged all this and we set out on our expedition to Cingapacinga.

CHAPTER LI.

What happened to us at Cingapacinga, and how, on our return by way of Cempoala, we demolished the idols ; and other things that happened.

AS soon as the seven men who wished to return to Cuba had calmed down, we set out with the force of horsemen and foot soldiers already mentioned, and slept that night at the town of Cempoala. Two thousand Indian warriors divided into four commands, were all ready to accompany us, and on the first day we marched five leagues in good order. The next day, a little after dusk¹ we arrived at some farms near to the town of Cingapacinga, and the natives of the town heard the news of our coming. When we had already begun the ascent to the fortress and houses which stood amid great cliffs and crags, eight Indian chieftains and priests came out to meet us peacefully and asked Cortés with tears, why he wished to kill and destroy them when they had done nothing to deserve it ; that we had the reputation of doing good to all and of relieving those who had been robbed, and we had imprisoned the tax gatherers of Montezuma ; that these Cempoala Indians who accompanied us were hostile to them on account of old enmities over the land claims and boundaries, and under our protection they had come to kill and rob them. It was true, they said, that there was formerly a Mexican garrison in the town, but that they had left for their own country a few days earlier when they heard that we had

¹ A poco mas de Visperas.

taken the other tax gatherers prisoners, and they prayed us not to let the matter go any further, but to grant them protection. When Cortés thoroughly understood what they had said through our interpreters, Doña Marina and Aguilar, without delay he ordered Captain Pedro de Alvarado, and the quartermaster Cristovól de Olid, and all of us comrades who were with him, to restrain the Indians of Cempoala and prevent them from advancing; and this we did. But although we made haste to stop them, they had already begun to loot the farms. This made Cortés very angry and he sent for the captains who had command of the Cempoala warriors, and with angry words and serious threats, he ordered them to bring the Indian men and women and cloths and poultry that they had stolen from the farms, and forbade any Cempoala Indian to enter the town, and said that for having lied and for having come under our protection merely to rob and sacrifice their neighbours, they were deserving of death, and that our Lord and King, whose servants we were, had not sent us to these countries to commit such indignities, and that they should keep their eyes wide open in order that such a thing did not happen again, otherwise he would not leave one of them alive. Then the Caciques and captains of the Cempoalans brought to Cortés everything they had seized, both Indian men and women and poultry, and he gave them all back to their owners and with a face full of wrath he turned [to the Cempoalans] and ordered them to retire and sleep in the fields—and this they did.

When the caciques and priests¹ of that town saw how just we were [in our dealings] and heard the affectionate words that Cortés spoke to them through our interpreters, including matters concerning our holy religion which it was always our custom to explain, and his advice to them

¹ Papas.

to give up human sacrifices and robbing one another, and the filthy practice of sodomy, and the worship of their cursed Idols, and much other good counsel which he gave them, they showed such good will towards us that they at once sent to call together the people of the neighbouring towns, and all gave their fealty to his Majesty.

They soon began to utter many complaints against Montezuma, just as the people of Cempoala had done when we were at the town of Quiahuitztlan. On the next morning Cortés sent to summon the captains and caciques of Cempoala, who were waiting in the fields to know what we should order them to do, and still in terror of Cortés on account of the lies they had told him. When they came before him he made them make friends with the people of the town, a pact which was never broken by any of them.

Then we set out for Cempoala by another road and passed through two towns friendly to Cingapacinga, where we rested, for the sun was very hot and we were wearied with carrying our arms on our backs. A soldier, (a something) de Mora, a native of Ciudad-Rodrigo, took two chickens from an Indian house in one of the towns, and Cortés who happened to see it, was so enraged at that soldier for stealing chickens in a friendly town before his very eyes, that he immediately ordered a halter to be put around his neck, and he would have been hanged there if Pedro de Alvarado, who chanced to be near Cortés, had not cut the halter with his sword when the poor soldier was half dead. I call this story to mind here to show my curious readers, and even the priests who nowadays have charge of administering the holy sacraments and teaching the doctrine to the natives of the country, that because the poor soldier stole two fowls in a friendly town, it nearly cost him his life, so that they can see how one ought to act towards the Indians, and not seize their

property. This same soldier was killed later on in a battle fought on a rocky height in the province of Guatemala.

To go on with my story—when we had left those towns in peace and continued our march towards Cempoala, we met the fat cacique and other chiefs waiting for us in some huts with food, for although they were Indians, they saw and understood that justice is good and sacred, and that the words Cortés had spoken to them, that we had come to right wrongs and abolish tyranny, were in conformity with what had happened on that expedition, and they were better affected towards us than ever before.

We slept the night in those huts, and all the caciques bore us company all the way to our quarters in their town. They were really anxious that we should not leave their country, as they were fearful that Montezuma would send his warriors against them, and they said to Cortés that as we were already their friends, they would like to have us for brothers, and that it would be well that we should take from their daughters, so as to have children by them ; and to cement our friendship, they brought eight damsels, all of them daughters of caciques, and gave one of these cacas, who was the niece of the fat cacique, to Cortés ; and one, who was the daughter of another great cacique, (called Cuesco in their language,) was given to Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero. All eight of them were clothed in the rich garments of the country, beautifully ornamented as is their custom. Each one of them had a golden collar around her neck and golden ear-rings in her ears, and they came accompanied by other Indian girls who were to serve as their maids. When the fat cacique presented them, he said to Cortés : “Tecele, (which in their language means Lord)—these seven women are for your captains, and this one, who is my niece, is for you, and she is the señora of towns and vassals.” Cortés received them with a cheerful countenance and thanked the caciques for the gift, but he

said that before we could accept them and become brothers, they must get rid of those idols which they believed in and worshipped, and which kept them in darkness, and must no longer offer sacrifices to them, and that when he could see those cursed things thrown to the ground and an end put to sacrifices that then our bonds of brotherhood would be most firmly tied. He added that these damsels must become Christians before we could receive them, and the people must free themselves from sodomy, for there were boys dressed like women who went about for gain by that cursed practice, and every day we saw sacrificed before us three, four or five Indians whose hearts were offered to the idols and their blood plastered on the walls, and the feet, arms and legs of the victims were cut off and eaten, just as in our country we eat beef brought from the butchers. I even believe that they sell it by retail in the *tiangués*¹ as they call their markets. Cortés told them that if they gave up these evil deeds and no longer practiced them, not only would we be their friends, but we would make them lords over other provinces. All the caciques, priests, and chiefs replied that it did not seem to them good to give up their idols and sacrifices and that these gods of theirs gave them health and good harvests and everything of which they had need ; and that as for sodomy, measures would be taken to put a stop to it so that it should no longer be practiced.

When Cortés and all of us who had seen so many cruelties and infamies which I have mentioned heard that disrespectful answer, we could not stand it, and Cortés spoke to us about it and reminded us of certain good and holy doctrines and said : " How can we ever accomplish anything worth doing if for the honour of God we do not first abolish these sacrifices made to idols ?" and he told us

¹ Tianguiz or Tianguiztli.

to be all ready to fight should the Indians try to prevent us ; but even if it cost us our lives the idols must come to the ground that very day. We were all armed ready for a fight as it was ever our custom to be so, and Cortés told the caciques that the idols must be overthrown. When they saw that we were in earnest, the fat cacique and his captains told all the warriors to get ready to defend their idols, and when they saw that we intended to ascend a lofty *cue*—which was their temple—which stood high and was approached by many steps,—I cannot remember how many (steps there were)—the fat cacique and the other chieftains were beside themselves with fury and called out to Cortés to know why he wanted to destroy their idols, for if we dishonoured them and overthrew them, that they would all perish and we along with them. Cortés answered them in an angry tone, that he had already told them that they should offer no more sacrifices to those evil images ; that our reason for removing them was that they should no longer be deluded, and that either they, themselves, must remove the idols at once, or we should throw them out and roll them down the steps, and he added that we were no longer their friends but their mortal enemies, for he had given them good advice which they would not believe ; besides he had seen their companies come armed for battle and he was angry with them and would make them pay for it by taking their lives.

When the Indians saw Cortés uttering these threats, and our interpreter Doña Marina knew well how to make them understood, and even threatened them with the power of Montezuma which might fall on them any day, out of fear of all this they replied that they were not worthy to approach their gods, and that if we wished to overthrow them it was not with their consent, but that we could overthrow them and do what we chose.

The words were hardly out of their mouths before more

than fifty of us soldiers had clambered up [to the temple] and had thrown down their idols which came rolling down the steps shattered to pieces. The idols looked like fearsome dragons, as big as calves, and there were other figures half men and half great dogs of hideous appearance. When they saw their idols broken to pieces the caciques and priests who were with them wept and covered their eyes, and in the Totonac tongue they prayed their gods to pardon them, saying that the matter was no longer in their hands and they were not to blame, but these Teules who had overthrown them, and that they did not attack us on account of the fear of the Mexicans.

When this was over the captains of the Indian warriors who, as I have said, had come ready to attack us, began to prepare to shoot arrows at us, and when we saw this, we laid our hands on the fat cacique and the six priests and some other chiefs, and Cortés cried out that on the least sign of hostility they would all be killed. Then the fat cacique commanded his men to retire from our front and not attempt to fight, and when Cortés saw them calmed, he made them a speech which I will record later on, and thus they were all pacified.

This affair of Cingapacinga was the first expedition made by Cortés in New Spain, and it was very successful, and we did not, as the historian Gómara says, kill and capture and destroy thousands of men in this affair at Cingapacinga, and he who reads this can see how far one story differs from the other, and however good the style of his history may be, nothing is set down as it really happened.

CHAPTER LII.

How Cortés had an altar made and set up an image of Our Lady and a Cross, and how mass was said and the eight Indian damsels were baptized.

WHEN the Caciques, priests and chieftains were silenced, Cortés ordered all the idols which we had overthrown and broken to pieces to be taken out of sight and burned. Then eight priests who had charge of the idols came out of a chamber and carried them back to the house whence they had come, and burned them. These priests wore black cloaks like cassocks and long gowns reaching to their feet, and some had hoods like those worn by canons, and others had smaller hoods like those worn by Dominicans, and they wore their hair very long, down to the waist, with some even reaching down to the feet, covered with blood and so matted together that it could not be separated, and their ears were cut to pieces by way of sacrifice, and they stank like sulphur, and they had another bad smell like carrion, and as they said, and we learnt that it was true, these priests were the sons of chiefs and they abstained from women, but they indulged in the cursed practice of sodomy, and they fasted on certain days, and what I saw them eat was the pith or seeds of cotton when the cotton was being cleaned, but they may have eaten other things which I did not see.

Let us leave the priests and go back to Cortés who made them a good speech through our interpreters, Doña Marina and Jerónimo de Aguilar, and told them that now we would treat them as brothers and would help them all we could against Montezuma and his Mexicans, and we had already sent to tell him not to make war on them or levy tribute, and that as now they were not to have any more idols in their lofty temples he wished to leave with them

a great lady who was the Mother of our Lord Jesus Christ whom we believe in and worship, and that they too should hold her for Lady and intercessor, and about this matter and others which were mentioned he made them an excellent discourse, so concisely reasoned, considering the time at his disposal, that there was nothing left to be said. He told them many things about our holy religion as well stated as only a priest could do it nowadays, so that it was listened to with good will. Then he ordered all the Indian masons in the town to bring plenty of lime so as to clean the place and he told them to clear away the blood which encrusted the cues and to clean them thoroughly. The next day when they were whitewashed, an altar was set up with very good altar cloths and he told the Indians to bring many of the roses which grew in the country and are very sweet-scented, and branches of flowers, and told the people to adorn the altar with garlands and always keep the place swept and clean. He then ordered four of the priests to have their hair shorn, for, as I have already said, they wore it long, and to change their garments and clothe themselves in white, and always keep themselves clean, and he placed them in charge of the altar and of that sacred image of our Lady, with orders to keep the place swept clean and decked with flowers. So that it should be well looked after, he left there as hermit one of our soldiers named Juan de Torres de Córdoba, who was old and lame. He ordered our carpenters, whose names I have already given, to make a cross and place it on a stone support which we had already built and plastered over.

The next morning, mass was celebrated at the altar by Padre Fray Bartolomé de Olmedo, and then an order was given to fumigate the holy image of Our Lady and the sacred cross with the incense of the country, and we showed them how to make candles of the native wax and ordered these candles always to be kept burning on the altar, for

up to that time they did not know how to use the wax. The most important chieftains of that town and of others who had come together, were present at the Mass.

At the same time the eight Indian damsels were brought to be made Christians, for they were still in the charge of their parents and uncles and they were given to understand that they must not offer more sacrifices, nor worship idols, but believe in our Lord God. And they were admonished about many things touching our holy religion and were then baptized. The niece of the fat Cacique was named Doña Catalina, and she was very ugly; she was led by the hand and given to Cortés who received her and tried to look pleased. The daughter of the great Cacique, Cuesco, was named Doña Francisca, she was very beautiful for an Indian, and Cortés gave her to Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero. I cannot now recall to mind the names of the other six, but I know that Cortés gave them to different soldiers. When this had been done, we took leave of all the Caciques and chieftains who from that time forward always showed us good will, especially when they saw that Cortés received their daughters and that we took them away with us, and after Cortés had repeated his promises of assistance [against their enemies] we set out for our town of Villa Rica.

What happened there I will speak of later on. This, however, is the true account of what took place in the town of Cempoala, and differs from the stories told by Gómara and the other historians which are all stuff and nonsense.

CHAPTER LIII.

How we returned to Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz and what happened there.

AFTER we had finished our expedition and the people of Cempoala and Cingapacinga had been reconciled to one another, and the other neighbouring towns had given their fealty to His Majesty, and the idols had been overturned and the image of Our Lady and the Holy Cross set up in their place, and the old soldier placed in charge as hermit, and all the other things that I have told about had happened, we returned to our settlement and took with us certain chieftains from Cempoala. On the day of our arrival there came into port a ship from the Island of Cuba, under the command of Francisco de Saucedo, whom we called *El Pulido*.¹ We called him this from his excessive pride in his good looks and elegance. They say that he was a native of Medina Rio Seco, and had been *Maestresala*² to the Admiral of Castille.

At the same time there arrived Luis Marin (a man of great merit who was afterwards a captain in the expedition against Mexico) and ten soldiers. Saucedo brought a horse, and Luis Marin a mare; and they brought from Cuba the news that the decree had reached Diego Velásquez from Spain giving him authority to trade and found settlements, at which his friends were greatly rejoiced, all the more when they learned that he had received his commission appointing him Adelantado of Cuba.

Being in that town without any plans beyond finishing the fort, for we were still at work on it, most of us soldiers suggested to Cortés to let the fort stand as it was, for a

¹ The elegant.

² *Maestresala*, the chief waiter at a nobleman's table.

memorial, (it was just ready to be roofed), for we had already been over three months in the country and it seemed to us better to go and see what this great Montezuma might be like and to earn an honest living and make our fortune ; but that before we started on our journey we should send our salutations to His Majesty, the Emperor, and give him an account of all that had happened since we left the Island of Cuba. It also began to be debated whether we should send to His Majesty all the gold that we had received, both what we had got from barter, as well as the presents that Montezuma had sent us. Cortés replied that it was a very wise decision and that he had already talked to some of the gentlemen about it, and that as perchance in this matter of the gold there might be some soldiers who wished to keep their shares, and if it were divided up there would be very little to send, that for this reason he had appointed Diego de Ordás and Francisco de Montejo who were good men of business, to go from soldier to soldier among those whom it was suspected would demand their share of the gold, and say these words: "Sirs, you already know that we wish to send His Majesty a present of the gold which we have obtained here, and as it is the first [treasure] that we are sending from this land it ought to be much greater ; it seems to us that we should all place at his service the portions that fall to our share. We gentlemen and soldiers who have here written our names have signed as not wishing to take anything, but to give it all voluntarily to His Majesty, so that he may bestow favours on us. If anyone wishes for his share it will not be refused him, but whoever renounces it let him do as we have all done, and sign here."

In this way they all signed to a man. When this was settled, Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero and Francisco de Montejo were chosen as proctors to go to Spain, for Cortés had already given them over two thousand dollars to keep

them in his interest. The best ship in the fleet was got ready, and two pilots were appointed, one of them being Anton de Alaminos, who knew the passage through the Bahama Channel, for he was the first man to sail through it, and fifteen sailors were told off, and a full supply of ship's stores given to them. When everything was ready, we agreed to write to tell His Majesty all that had happened. Cortés wrote on his own account, so he told us, an accurate narrative of the events, but we did not see his letter.

The Cabildo¹ wrote a letter jointly with ten of the soldiers from among those who wished to settle in the land and had appointed Cortés as their general, and the letter was drawn up with great accuracy so that nothing was omitted, and I put my signature to it; and besides these letters and narratives, all the captains and soldiers together wrote another letter and narrative, and what was contained in the letter which we wrote is as follows:

CHAPTER LIV.

The narrative and letter which we sent to His Majesty by our proctors, Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero and Francisco de Montejo, which letter was signed by a number of the Captains and soldiers.

AFTER beginning with the expressions of well deserved respect which were due from us to the great Majesty of the Emperor our Lord, for such his Catholic Christian Royal Majesty was, and after adding other matters which it was appropriate to state in a narrative and account of our doings and voyage, each chapter by itself, there followed this which I will here briefly recapitulate. How we sailed from

¹ Cabildo—Municipality, the alguaciles, etc., already mentioned.

the Island of Cuba with Hernando Cortés ; and the proclamations which were made ; how we intended coming to settle, but that Diego Velásquez was secretly minded to trade and not to settle. How Cortés wished to return with certain gold gained by barter in accordance with the instructions that he brought from Diego Velásquez which we have submitted to His Majesty. How we insisted on Cortés forming a settlement, and chose him as Captain General and Chief Justice, until His Majesty might please to order otherwise. How we promised him [Cortés] the fifth of what should be obtained, after the Royal fifth had been deducted. How we arrived at Cozumel and by what chance Jerónimo de Aguilar happened to be at Cape Catoche, and about the way he said that he got there, he and a certain Gonzalo Guerrero, who remained with the Indians because he was married and had children and had already become like an Indian. How we arrived at Tabasco, and of the war they waged against us, and the battle we fought with them, and how we brought them to peace. How that wherever we went excellent discourses were addressed to them [the Indians] to induce them to abandon their Idols, and matters concerning our Holy faith were explained to them. How they gave their fealty to His Royal Majesty, and became the first vassals that he has in these parts. How they [the Indians] brought a present of women, and among them a Cacica, for an Indian a woman of great importance, who knew the Mexican language, which is the language used throughout the country and that with her and Aguilar we possessed reliable interpreters. How we landed at San Juan de Ulúa, and about the speeches of the Ambassadors of the Great Montezuma, and who the Great Montezuma was and what was said about his greatness, and about the present that they brought. How we went to Cempoala, which is a large town, and thence to another town named Quiahuitztlan, which is fortified, and how in

that town an alliance and confederation was made with us and more than thirty towns withdrew their obedience from Montezuma, and all gave their fealty to His Majesty and are now part of his Royal possessions. The expedition to Cingapacinga, how we made a fortress, and that we are now on the road to the interior of the country to see Montezuma himself. How this country is very large with many cities and thickly peopled and the natives are great warriors. How there is a great diversity of languages among them and they make war one against the other. How they are idolators and kill and sacrifice many men, women and children, and eat human flesh and practice other iniquities. How the first discoverer was Francisco Hernández de Córdova, and Juan de Grijalva came soon after and that now at the present time we offer him [His Majesty] the gold that we have gained, that is, the golden sun and silver moon and a helmet full of gold in grains as they take it from the mines, many different kinds of golden articles shaped in various ways, and cotton cloths much embroidered with feathers, of great excellence, and many other golden objects such as fly whisks and shields, and other things which, as so many years have already gone by, I cannot now call to mind. We also present four Indians whom we liberated in Cempoala whom they had kept in wooden cages to fatten, so that when they were fat they might be sacrificed and eaten. After giving the report of this and other things, we gave an account and narration of how we, four hundred and fifty soldiers in these his Majesty's dominions, were placed in very great danger among such a great number of towns, and such quarrelsome people and such great warriors, in order to serve God and His Royal Crown, and we begged him to show us favour in all that we might need, and that he would not grant the government of these countries or crown offices to any person whatever, for they are of such quality

and so rich with such great towns and cities, that they are suitable for an *Infante* or Great Lord, and we are thinking that as Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca, Bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosano, is President of the Council and rules all the Indies, that he will give it [the government] to some relation of his own or to some friend, especially to one Diego Velásquez who is governor of the Island of Cuba, and the reason why he will give him the government or any other office, is that he [Diego Velásquez] is always giving him presents of gold and has set apart for him in this same island, townships of Indians to get out the gold from the mines, and from among these he ought first of all to have given the best to the Royal Crown, but he did not set aside one of them, and on this account he is not worthy to receive favours. As in all things, we are his [Majesty's] most loyal servants, and are ready to lay down our lives in his service, we inform him of this so that he may know all about it and we are determined that until he has deigned to permit our proctors, whom we are sending, to kiss his feet, and has seen our letter, and until we see his Royal signature (when prostrate we may obey his Royal commands), that should the Bishop of Burgos on his own authority send us any one soever to govern us or be our captain, then, before obeying him, we would bring it to His Majesty's personal knowledge wherever he may be, and that whatever he should order, that would we obey as we are bound to do, as the command of our King and Lord.

Besides these narratives, we begged him, until he be pleased to order otherwise, to grant the government to Hernando Cortés, and we praised him so highly as his most obedient servant, as to raise him to the clouds, and after having written all these narratives with the greatest respect and humility as well as we were able and as was proper, explaining every event, how and when and

in what manner they happened, in the form of a letter intended for our King and not in the style that is here set down in my story, we captains and soldiers who were on the side of Cortés, all of us signed it. Two copies were made of the letter, and Cortés begged us to show them to him, and when he saw such a true narrative, and the great praise which we gave to him, he was very pleased and said that he would remember it to our credit and made us great promises, but he did not wish us to mention or allude to the fifth of the gold that we had promised him, nor to say who were the first discoverers, because, as we understood, he gave no account in his letter of Francisco Hernández de Córdoba nor of Grijalva, but attributed the discovery, and the honour and glory of it all, to himself alone, and he said that now at this time it would be better to write thus, and not to report it to His Majesty. There were not wanting those who said to him that to our King and Lord nothing that had happened should be left untold. When these letters had been written and given to our proctors, we impressed on them strongly, that on no account should they enter Havana or go to a farm which one of them, Francisco de Montejo, owned there, which was called *El Marien* and was a harbour for ships, lest Diego Velásquez should get to know what was happening. They did not do as they were told as I shall show later on. When everything was ready for them to embark, the Padre de la Merced said Mass, commending them to the guidance of the Holy Spirit.

On the 26th July 1519 they left San Juan de Ulúa and with good weather, arrived at Havana, and Francisco de Montejo with the greatest importunity allured and induced the pilot Alaminos to steer to his farm, saying that he was going to obtain supplies of pigs and cassava, until he got him to do what he wanted which was to drop anchor at his

no attention to him, and on the very night they arrived they despatched a sailor from the ship by land with letters and information for Diego Velásquez, and we know that Montejo sent the man who went with the letters, and this sailor went post haste through the Island of Cuba, from town to town making known all that I have here told, until Diego Velásquez himself knew it, and what he did about it I will tell later on.

CHAPTER LV.

How Diego Velásquez, the Governor of Cuba, learned for certain from letters, that we were sending proctors with an embassy and presents to our King and Lord, and what he did about it.

As Diego Velásquez the Governor of Cuba learnt the news both from the letters which were secretly sent him, (rumour said by Montejo) as well as from the sailor, who had been present during all that I have related in the last chapter, and who swam ashore to carry the letters to him, and when he understood about the great present of gold that we were sending to His Majesty, and knew who were the Ambassadors and proctors, he was taken with cold sweats as of death and uttered most lamentable words and curses against Cortés, and against his own secretary Duero, and the accountant Amador de Lares who had advised him to make Cortés a general, and he promptly ordered two ships of small burden which were fast sailors, to be armed with all the artillery and soldiers that could be provided and two captains, one named Gabriel de Rojas, and the other so and so de Guzman, to go in them and he ordered them to go as far as the Havana, and thence to the Bahama Channel and in any case to capture and bring the ship in which our proctors were sailing and all the gold that they were carrying. With all haste, in compliance with his commands, they arrived after some days of sailing at the

Bahama Channel, and asked of some of the vessels which were crossing the sea with cargo if they had seen a ship of large size go by and all gave news of her and said that she would already have passed out of the Bahama Channel, for they had had continuous good weather. So after beating about with those two ships between the Bahama Channel and the Havana and finding no news of what they came to seek they returned to Santiago de Cuba, and if Diego Velásquez was upset before he despatched the vessels, he was far more afflicted when he saw them return in this way, and his friends promptly advised him to send to Spain and complain to the Bishop of Burgos who was President of the Council of the Indies, and was doing much for him. He also sent his complaints to the Island of Santo Domingo to the Royal *Audiencia* which resided there and to the Jeronimite friars who were governors of the Island, named Fray Luis de Figuerea and Fray Alonzo de Santo Domingo and Fray Bernadino de Manzanedo, and these ecclesiastics were wont to stay and reside in the Mejorada Monastery two miles distant from Medina del Campo, and he sent a ship post haste to them to make many complaints against Cortés and all of us. When they came to know about our great services, the answer that the Jeronimite fathers gave him was that no blame could be laid on Cortés and those who went with him, for on all matters we turned to our King and Master, and we had sent him so great a present, such as had not been seen for a long time past in our Spain, and they said this because at that time and season no Peru existed nor any thought of it. They also sent to tell him that on the contrary we were worthy to receive the greatest favours from His Majesty; at the same time they sent to Cuba a Licentiate named Zuazo to take the *residencia*¹ of Diego

¹ Residencia—that is the examination and formal account demanded of a person holding public office.

Velásquez, or at least he arrived at the Island a few months later, and this same Licentiate made his report to the Jeronimite Friars. When that reply was brought to Diego Velásquez he was more dismayed than ever, and whereas before he was very stout he at this time became thin. With the greatest energy he at once ordered all the ships that could be found in the Island of Cuba to be searched out and soldiers and Captains to be got ready, and he took steps to send a powerful fleet to take Cortés and all of us prisoners, and he showed such personal energy, going from town to town and from one estate to the other, writing to all parts of the Island where he was not able to go himself, and entreating his friends to go on that expedition, that within eleven months or a year he got together eighteen sail, great and small, and over thirteen hundred soldiers including captains and seamen, for as they saw that he was so zealous and prompt, all the principal inhabitants of Cuba, his relations as well as those who possessed Indians, got ready to serve him. He sent as Captain General of the Fleet a gentleman named Pánfilo de Narvaez, a man tall of stature and robust, whose voice sounded hollow as if from a vault; he was a native of Valladolid and married in the Island of Cuba a lady who was already a widow, named Maria de Valenzuela and he owned good towns of Indians and was very rich.

Here I will now leave him, forming and preparing his fleet, and will go back to our proctors and their good voyage, and as three or four things happened at the same time I must leave the story and subject which I was discussing, so as to be able to speak of that which is more material, and for this reason they must not blame me because I set out and depart from the regular course of events in order to speak of what happened later on.

CHAPTER LVI.

How our Proctors passed through the Bahama Channel in good weather and in a short time arrived in Castille, and what happened to them at Court.

I HAVE already said that our Proctors left the port of San Juan de Ulúa on the 6th July, 1519, and after a good passage they arrived at Havana and they soon passed through the Bahama Channel, and it is said that this was the first time that it was navigated, and in a short time they reach the Islands of Tercera¹ and thence went to Seville. They journeyed post haste to the court which was at Valladolid and to the President of the Royal Council of the Indies, Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca, Bishop of Burgos (who styled himself Archbishop of Rosano), and ruled all the Court because our Lord the Emperor was absent in Flanders.² When our proctors quite cheerfully, expecting that he would show them favour, went to kiss the hands of the President, and to give him our letters and narrative and deliver all the gold and jewels, and begged him to send a messenger at once to His Majesty to hand over to him the present and letters, with whom they themselves would go to kiss the Royal feet, he received them with such an evil frown and such ill will, and even spoke to them contemptuously because they had thus addressed him, that our ambassadors were about to retort. However, they restrained themselves and replied that his Lordship should consider the great services that Cortés and his companions were rendering to His Majesty and they again begged him at once to send all those golden jewels and the letters and narratives to His Majesty that he might know what had happened, and that they

¹ Terceira in the Azores.

² This is an error; Charles V was in Catalonia.

would go to him. He retorted very haughtily and even ordered that they should not have charge of it [the letters and jewels]; that he himself would write to say what was really happening, and not what they reported, for they had risen in rebellion against Diego Velásquez; and many other bitter words passed between them.

At this time Benito Martin, Chaplain to Diego Velásquez, who has been already mentioned by me, arrived at Court, and made many complaints against Cortés and all of us, which still more incensed the Bishop against us. As Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero was a gentleman and cousin of the Count de Medellin (for Montejo held back and did not dare to displease the President), he said to the Bishop that he appealed to him most earnestly to listen to them without passion, and not to utter such words as he had spoken, and at once to despatch those presents as they were brought for His Majesty; that we were most faithful servants of the Royal Crown, and worthy of favours and not of insults and rude words. When the Bishop heard that, he ordered him to be arrested, for he was told that three years before, he [Alonzo Puertocarrero] had seized a woman of Medellin and carried her off to the Indies. So all our merits and presents of gold were in the position that I have here related, and our Ambassadors decided to hold their tongues until the right time and place should occur.

The Bishop wrote to Flanders to his Majesty in favour of his favourite and friend Diego Velásquez and very evil words against Cortés and against all of us, and he made no report of the letters that we were bringing him, but merely said that Hernando Cortés had risen in rebellion against Diego Velásquez, and such-like things.

Let me go back to say that Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero and Francisco de Montejo and even Martin Cortés the father of Cortés and a certain Nuñez, a licentiate and a

Reporter of His Majesty's Royal Council and a near relation of Cortés, who worked on his behalf, decided to send a messenger to Flanders with other letters, the same as those they had given to the Bishop, for duplicates had been sent by our Proctors, and they wrote to His Majesty an account of all that was happening, and a memorandum of the golden jewels of the present, and made complaint of the Bishop and disclosed his business connection with Diego Velásquez. There were even other gentlemen who favoured them, those who did not stand well with Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca, for it was rumoured that he was generally disliked on account of the great injustice and arrogance he displayed in the high offices that he held. As our great services were for God our Lord and for His Majesty, and we always put our full strength into them, it pleased God that His Majesty arrived at a clear knowledge of the affair and when he saw and understood it he and the Duke, Marquises, Counts and other gentlemen who were at his royal Court, showed such great satisfaction that they talked of nothing else but of Cortés and all of us who were helping him in the conquests for several days, and of the riches we were sending him from these lands. As for the letters of comment which the Bishop of Burgos had written to him about the matter, when His Majesty saw that it was all contrary to the truth, from then onwards he took a particular dislike to the Bishop, especially because he had not sent all the articles of gold but had kept back a great number of them. The Bishop got to know all this when it was written to him from Flanders, and he was very angry about it, and if the Bishop had spoken much that was evil of Cortés and all of us before our letters had come before His Majesty, from that time forward he openly called us traitors, but it pleased God that he lost his fury and vigour, and within two years he was defied and even shamed and dishonoured and we were reputed as very

loyal subjects, as I shall relate further on when occasion arises. His Majesty wrote to say that he was soon coming to Castille and would take notice of the matters concerning us, and would grant us favours. As I shall later on narrate more fully, how and in what manner this happened, I will leave the matter here, with our Proctors awaiting the arrival of His Majesty.

Before I go on any further I wish to speak with regard to what certain gentlemen who are curious in the matter have asked me, and they have a right to know about it, how it is that I am able to write down in this narrative things that I did not see, as at the time when our Proctors delivered the letters, messages, and presents of gold which they were carrying for His Majesty and had these disputes with the Bishop of Burgos, I was engaged in the conquest of New Spain. I say this, that our Proctors wrote to us the true *conquistadores*, word for word in Chapters, all that was happening, both about the Bishop of Burgos, as well as what His Majesty was pleased to promise in our favour, and how it all happened ; and Cortés sent us to the towns where we were living at the time, other letters that he had received from our Proctors that we might see how well they negotiated with His Majesty and how hostile the Bishop was to us. This I give as an answer to what I have been asked. Let us leave this subject and tell in another chapter what happened in our camp.

CHAPTER LVII.

What was done in camp and the judgment which Cortés delivered after our ambassadors had departed to go to His Majesty with all the gold and letters and narratives.

WITHIN four days of the departure of our proctors to present themselves before our Lord the Emperor, as I have already narrated, (as it seems that men's hearts are of many kinds and are swayed by different thoughts,) some of the friends and dependents of Diego Velásquez, named Pedro Escudero, Juan Cermeño, and Gonzalo de Umbria a pilot, and Bernaldino de Coria, who was afterwards a settler in Chiapas, the father of a certain Centeno and a priest named Juan Diaz, and certain sailors who called themselves Peñates¹, natives of Gibraltar², who bore Cortés ill will, some of them because he had not given them leave to return to Cuba when he had promised to do so, others because they had not received their shares of the gold which had been sent to Spain, and the Peñates on account of the flogging they had received in Cozumel for stealing salt pork from a soldier named Barrio, as I have already related. These men determined to seize a small ship and sail in her to Cuba to give notice to Diego Velásquez and advise him how at Havana he might be able to seize our proctors on the estate of Francisco de Montejo, with all the gold and the messages, for it appears that they [the conspirators] had been advised by other persons in our camp that they [the proctors] would go to that estate and they [the other persons] had even written to Diego Velásquez that he would have an opportunity of capturing them. Thus, these men, whom I have named, had already got their stores in the ship, such as cassava bread, oil, fish, water, and made other preparations, and the time being past midnight, were ready to embark, when

¹ Peñates = rockmen.

² Gibráleon in the text.

one of them (it was a certain Bernaldino de Coria) seems to have repented of his wish to return to Cuba, and went to report the matter to Cortés. When Cortés heard of it and learned how many there were and why they wished to get away, and who had given counsel and held the threads of the plot, he ordered the sails, compass and rudder to be removed at once from the ship, and had the men arrested, and their confessions taken down. They all told the truth, and their confessions involved in their guilt others who were remaining with us, but Cortés kept this quiet at the time as there was no other course open to him. The sentence which Cortés delivered was that Pedro Escudero and Juan Cermeño should be hanged ; that the pilot Gonzalo de Umbria, should have his feet cut off, and the sailors, Peñates, should receive two hundred lashes each, and Father Juan Diaz, but for the honour of the church, would have been punished as well ; as it was he gave him a great fright. I remember that when Cortés signed that sentence, he said with great grief and sighs : " Would that I did not know how to write, so as not to have to sign away men's lives !"—and it seems to me that that saying is common among judges who have to sentence men to death, and is a quotation taken from that cruel Nero at the time when he showed signs of being a good Emperor.

As soon as the sentence was carried out,¹ Cortés rode off at break-neck speed for Cempoala which was five leagues distant, and ordered two hundred of us soldiers, and all the horsemen to follow him ; and I remember that Pedro de Alvarado, who three days before had been sent by Cortés with two hundred soldiers to the hill towns so as to get enough to eat, for in our town there was a great scarcity of supplies, was also ordered to go to Cempoala,

¹ As the signature of Juan Cermeño is attached to the letter written by the army in 1520, it looks as though the sentence was not executed.

so that orders could be there issued for our journey to Mexico. So Pedro de Alvarado was not present when, as I have described, justice was executed.

The orders which were issued when we came together in Cempoala, I will relate fully further on.

CHAPTER LVIII.

How we settled to go to Mexico and to destroy all the ships before starting, and what else happened, and how the plan of destroying the ships was done by advice and decision of all of us who were friends with Cortés.

BEING in Cempoala, as I have stated, and discussing with Cortés questions of warfare, and our advance into the country, and going on from one thing to another, we, who were his friends, counselled him, although others opposed it, not to leave a single ship in the port, but to destroy them all at once, so as to leave no source of trouble behind, lest, when we were inland, others of our people should rebel like the last ; besides, we should gain much additional strength from the masters, pilots and sailors who numbered nearly one hundred men, and they would be better employed helping us to watch and fight than remaining in port.

As far as I can make out, this matter of destroying the ships which we suggested to Cortés during our conversation, had already been decided on by him, but he wished it to appear as though it came from us, so that if any one should ask him to pay for the ships, he could say that he had acted on our advice and we would all be concerned in their payment. Then he sent Juan de Escalante (who was chief alguacil and a person of distinguished bravery and a great friend of Cortés, and an enemy of Diego Velásquez, because he had not given him good Indians in the Island of Cuba) to Villa Rica with orders to bring on shore all

the anchors, cables, sails, and everything else on board which might prove useful, and then to destroy the ships and preserve nothing but the boats, and that the pilots, sailing masters and sailors, who were old and no use for war, should stay at the town, and with the two nets they possessed should undertake the fishing, for there was always fish in that harbour, although they were not very plentiful. Juan de Escalante did all that he was told to do, and soon after arrived at Cempoala with a company of sailors, whom he had brought from the ships, and some of them turned out to be very good soldiers.

When this was done, Cortés sent to summon all the Caciques of the hill towns who were allied to us and in rebellion against Montezuma, and told them how they must give their service to the Spaniards who remained in Villa Rica, to finish building the church, fortress and houses, and Cortés took Juan de Escalante by the hand before them all, and said to them : " This is my brother," and told them to do whatever he should order them, and that should they need protection or assistance against the Mexicans, they should go to him and he would come in person to their assistance.

All the Caciques willingly promised to do what might be asked of them, and I remember that they at once fumigated Juan de Escalante with incense, although he did not wish it done. I have already said that he was a man well qualified for any post and a great friend of Cortés, so he could place him in command of the town and harbour with confidence, so that if Diego Velásquez should send an expedition there, it would meet with resistance. I must leave him here and go on with my story.

It is here that the historian Gomara says that when Cortés ordered the ships to be scuttled that he did not dare to let the soldiers know that he wished to go to Mexico in search of the great Montezuma. It was not as

he states, for what sort of Spaniards should we be not to wish to go ahead, but to linger in places where there was neither profit nor fighting? This same Gomara also says that Pedro de Ircio remained as captain in Vera Cruz ; he was misinformed. I repeat that it was Juan de Escalante who remained there as Captain and chief Alguacil of New Spain, and that so far, Pedro de Ircio had not been given any position whatever—not even charge of a company.

CHAPTER LIX.

About a discourse which Cortés made to us after the ships had been destroyed, and how we hastened our departure for Mexico.

WHEN the ships had been destroyed, with our full knowledge, and not [secretly] as is said by the historian Gomara, one morning after we had heard mass, when all the captains and soldiers were assembled and were talking to Cortés about military matters, he begged us to listen to him, and argued with us as follows:—

“We all understood what was the work that lay before us, and that with the help of our Lord Jesus Christ we must conquer in all battles and encounters [that fell to our lot], and must be as ready for them as was befitting, for if we were anywhere defeated, which pray God would not happen, we could not raise our heads again, as we were so few in numbers, and we could look for no help or assistance, but that which came from God, for we no longer possessed ships in which to return to Cuba, but must rely on our own good swords and stout hearts,”—and he went on to draw many comparisons and relate the heroic deeds of the Romans. One and all we answered him that we would obey his orders, that the die was cast for good fortune, as Cæsar said when he crossed the Rubicon, and that we

were all of us ready to serve God and the King. After this excellent speech, which was delivered with more honied words and greater eloquence than I can express here, he [Cortés] at once sent for the fat Cacique and reminded him that he should treat the church and cross with great reverence and keep them clean; and he also told him that he meant to depart at once for Mexico to order Montezuma not to rob or offer human sacrifices, and that he now had need of two hundred Indian carriers to transport his artillery, for as I have already said these Indians can carry two arrobas¹ on their backs and march five leagues with it. He also asked fifty of the leading warriors to go with us. Just as we were ready to set out, a soldier, whom Cortés had sent to Villa Rica with orders for some of the men remaining there to join him, returned from the town bearing a letter from Juan de Escalante, saying that there was a ship sailing along the coast, and that he had made smoke signals and others, and had raised some white cloths as banners, and had galloped along on horseback waving a scarlet cape so that those on ship-board might see it, and he believed that they had seen his signals, banners, horse and cape, but that they did not wish to come into the harbour, and that he had sent some Spaniards to watch to what place the ships should go, and they had reported that the ship had dropped anchor near the mouth of a river distant about three leagues, and that he wished to know what he should do.

When Cortés had read the letter he at once ordered Pedro de Alvarado to take charge of all his army at Cempoala and with him Gonzalo de Sandoval who was already giving proofs of being a very valorous man, as he always remained. This was the first time that Sandoval was given a command, and because he was appointed

¹ Two arrobas = 50 lbs.

to this command, and Alonzo de Ávila was passed over, there arose certain irritation between Alonzo de Ávila and Sandoval.

Then Cortés rode off at once in company with four horsemen, leaving orders for fifty of the most active soldiers to follow him, and he named those of us who were to form this company and that same night we arrived at Villa Rica. What happened there, I will tell further on.

CHAPTER LX.

How Cortés went to where the ship was anchored and how we captured six of the soldiers and mariners who belonged to the ship, and what happened about it.

WHEN, as I have related, we reached Villa Rica, Juan de Escalante came to speak to Cortés and said that it would be as well to go to the ship that night, lest she should set sail and depart, and that he would go and do this with twenty soldiers while Cortés rested himself. Cortés replied that he could not rest, that "a lame goat must not nap," that he would go in person with the soldiers he had brought with him. So before we could get a mouthful of food we started to march along the coast and on the road we came on four Spaniards who had come to take possession of the land in the name of Francisco de Garay the governor of Jamaica. These men had been sent by a captain named Alonzo Álvarez de Pineda or Pinedo, who a few days before had made a settlement on the Rio Panuco.¹ These four Spaniards whom we captured were named Guillen de la Loa, who had come as notary, and the witnesses he had brought with him to take possession

¹ Pinedo had brought his ships right around the Gulf of Mexico from the coast of Florida. See *Orozco y Berra*, vol. iv, p. 176.

of the country were Andrés Nuñez, who was a boat builder, another named Master Pedro, he of the harp¹ from Valencia, and another whose name I cannot now remember.

When Cortés clearly understood that they had come to take possession of the country in the name of Francisco de Garay, and knew that he was staying behind in Jamaica and sending captains to do the work, Cortés asked them by what right and title those captains came. The four men replied that in the year 1518 as the fame of the lands we had discovered by the expeditions of Francisco Hernández de Córdova and Juan de Grijalva and of the twenty thousand golden dollars which we had taken to Cuba for Diego Velásquez had spread throughout the Islands, that then Garay had information from the pilot, Anton de Alaminos, and the other pilot who had accompanied us, that he could beg from His Majesty the right to all the country he could discover from the Rio San Pedro and San Pablo towards the north.

As Garay had friends at Court who could support his petition, namely, the Bishop of Burgos, the lawyer Zapata, and the secretary Conchillos, he hoped to obtain their assistance, and he sent his Mayordomo, named Torralva, to negotiate the matter, and this man brought back a commission for him as Adelantado and Governor of all [the land] he could discover [north] of the Rio San Pedro and San Pablo. Under this commission he at once despatched three ships with about two hundred and seventy soldiers and supplies and horses under the captain whom I have already mentioned named Alonzo Álvarez Pineda or Pinedo, who was settling on the Rio Panuco, about seventy leagues away ; and these Spaniards said that they

¹ Maestre Pedro, el de la Arpa :—another named the shipmaster (or mate) Pedro, he of the harp (probably a musician).

were merely doing what their captain told them to do, and were in no way to blame.

When Cortés had learned their business he cajoled them with many flattering speeches and asked them whether we could capture the ship. Guillen de la Loa, who was the leader of the four men, answered that they would wave to the ship and do what they could, but although they shouted and waved their cloaks and made signals, they would not come near, for, as those men said, their captain knew that the soldiers of Cortés were in the neighbourhood and had warned them to keep clear of us.

When we saw that they would not send a boat, we understood that they must have seen us from the ship as we came along the coast, and that unless we could trick them they would not send the boat ashore again. Cortés asked the four men to take off their clothes so that four of our men could put them on, and when this was done we returned along the coast the way we had come, so that our return could be seen from the ship and those on board might think that we had really gone away. Four of our soldiers remained behind wearing the other men's clothes, and we remained hidden in the wood with Cortés until past midnight, and then when the moon set it was dark enough to return to the mouth of the creek, but we kept well hidden so that only the four soldiers could be seen. When the dawn broke the four soldiers began to wave their cloaks to the ship, and six sailors put off from her in a boat. Two of the sailors jumped ashore to fill two jugs with water and we who were with Cortés kept in hiding waiting for the other sailors to land ; but they stayed where they were and our four soldiers who were wearing the clothes of Garay's people pretended that they were washing their hands and kept their faces hidden. The men in the boat cried out : " Come on board, what are you doing ? Why don't you come ? " One of our men answered :

"Come on shore for a minute and you will see." As they did not know his voice, they pushed off with their boat, and although we shouted to them they would answer nothing. We wanted to shoot at them with muskets and cross bows, but Cortés would not allow it, and said: "Let them go in peace and report to their captain."

So six soldiers from that ship remained in our company, the four we had first captured, and the two sailors who had come ashore. And we returned to Villa Rica without having had anything to eat since we first started.

This is really what happened and not what the historian Gomara relates, for he says that Garay came at this time; but it was not so, for before he himself came he first sent three captains with ships, and later on I will explain at what time they came and what happened to them, and I will tell, as well, about the coming of Garay. But we must get on now and I will relate how we settled to go to Mexico.

THE MARCH FROM CEMPOALA TO TLAXCALA.

Introductory Note to Chapter LXI.

THE Spaniards left Cempoala on the 16th August and crossed the frontier into Tlaxcalan territory on the 31st August.

Bernal Díaz says that they reached Jalapa on the first day, but that is not probable. Between Jalapa and Ixtacmaxtitlan there is no name given by Bernal Díaz or Cortés which coincides with a name on the modern map, although the Socochina of the narrative is undoubtedly Xico Viejo, a few miles from the modern village of Xico. The ruins of Xico Viejo were recently visited by Dr. J. W. Fewkes, who says that "the last half mile of the road is practically impassable for horses, and must be made on foot, justifying the statements of Gomara regarding the difficulties the horsemen of Cortés encountered in reaching the pueblo." (Twenty-fifth Annual Report, Bureau of American Ethnology, 1903-4.)

The Theuhixuacan mentioned by Gomara must be the Ixuacan of the modern map.

The Spaniards passed to the south of the great mountain mass of the Cofre de Perote (13,403 ft.) between that mountain and the

snowcapped volcano of Orizaba (17,365 ft.) to the tableland of Tlaxcala.

There is a considerable rise between Cempoala and Jalapa, which stands at an elevation of 4608 ft.

I am unable to ascertain the height of the pass between Perote and Orizaba, but it probably exceeds 10,000 ft., followed by a descent of about 3000 ft. to the plains of Tlaxcala and Puebla, which are 7000 ft. to 8000 ft. above sea level.

According to Bernal Díaz, the most difficult pass (Puerto de Nombre de Dios) was crossed before reaching the main divide.

After the passage between the mountains the Spaniards came to the salt lakes, marshes, and inhospitable stretches of sand and volcanic ash which extend along the western slope of the Cofre de Perote.

It is impossible to locate the exact route between the mountain pass and Zocotlan, as no names are given and part of the country is uninhabitable. Zocotlan itself was in all probability the Zautla of the modern map, but we are not on secure ground until the Spaniards reach Ixtacmaxtitlan, near the Tlaxcalan frontier. This frontier is still marked by the ruins of the wall built by the Tlaxcalans as a defence against their enemies, but the ruins are not marked on the Government map. However, the natural line of travel would be up stream from Ixtacmaxtitlan, and this would bring us to a place marked on the map Altlatlaya (no doubt *Atalaya*, which means a *watch tower*), and I have taken this to be the spot where the Spaniards passed the wall, and have so marked it on the map which accompanies this volume.

The march from Jalapa to Zocotlan must have been a most arduous one, and all the more difficult from the fact that it was undertaken in the middle of the rainy season. There is a much easier, although somewhat longer, route passing round the north of Cofre de Perote, but this was probably avoided by the Cempoalans as passing through too much of the enemies' country.

Appended is an Itinerary, with dates compiled from the writings of Bernal Díaz¹, Cortés,² Gomara³, and Andrés de Tápia,⁴ with the modern spelling of some of the names taken from Padre Agustín Rivera.⁵

August

16. Leave Cempoala.

17.

18. Jalapa.

19. Xico (modern map), Cocochima (B. D.), Sienchimalen (C.), Sienchimatl (G.), Xicochimilco (R.)

¹ (B. D.)

² (C.)

³ (G.)

⁴ (T.)

⁵ (R.)

20. A high pass and Tejutla (B. D.), Puerto de Nombre de Dios and Ceyconacan (C.), Theuhixuacan (G.), Ceycoccnacan, now Ishuacan de los Reyes (note to Cortés' letter in Rivadeneyra Edition), Ixuacan, modern map.
 21. Finish ascent of Mountain (B. D.), Despoblado—uninhabited country.
 22. Despoblado. Lakes of salt water and Salitrales (T.), Salitrales (G.)
 23. Despoblado. Puerto de la Leña. March 2 leagues to
 24. Çocotlan (B. D.), Zaclotan (G.), Xocotla (R.), valley called Caltanmi (C.), Zacatami (G.). Spaniards called it Castil Blanco. Probably the Zautla of modern maps.
 25. Xocotlan.
 26. Xocotlan.
 27. Xocotlan. March 2 leagues up the valley to
 28. Iztacmastitan (C.), Iztacmixtlitan (G.), Ixtamaxtitlan (R.), Ixtacamastitlan (modern map).
Xalacingo of Bernal Díaz (evidently an error.)
 29. Ixtacamastitlan.
 30. Ixtacamastitlan.
 31. Cross the frontier into Tlaxcala at the great wall. March 4 leagues, skirmish with force of Tlaxcalans and Otomies.
- September.
2. First battle with the Tlaxcalan army under Xicotenga.
 5. Second battle.
 23. Spaniards enter the city of Tlaxcala.

CHAPTER LXI.

How we settled to go to the City of Mexico and on the advice of the Cacique we went by way of Tlaxcala, and what happened to us in our warlike engagements and other matters.

WHEN our departure for Mexico had received full consideration, we sought advice as to the road we should take, and the chieftains of Cempoala were agreed that the best and most convenient road for us to take was through the province of Tlaxcala, for they [the Tlaxcalans] were their allies and mortal enemies of the Mexicans.

Forty chieftains, all warriors, were already prepared to accompany us and were of great assistance to us on that journey; and they provided us as well with two

hundred carriers to transport our artillery. We poor soldiers had no need of help, for at that time we had nothing to carry except our arms, lances, muskets, cross-bows, shields and the like, with which we both marched and slept, and we were shod with hempen shoes, and as I have often said, were always prepared for a fight.

In the middle of August, 1519, we set out from Cempoala, keeping always in good formation, with scouts and some of the most active soldiers in advance.

The first day we marched to a town named Jalapa, and thence to Socochima, a strong place with a difficult approach, and inside there were many vines of the grapes of the country¹ on trellises. In both these towns, through our interpreters, Doña Marina and Jerónimo de Aguilar, all matters touching our holy religion were explained to the people, and that we were the vassals of the Emperor Don Carlos, who had sent us to put an end to human sacrifices and robbery, and they were told other things which it was advantageous to state. As they were friends of the Cempoalans and did not pay tribute to Montezuma, we found them very well disposed towards us, and they provided us with food. A cross was erected in each town and its meaning was explained to them and they were told to hold it in great reverence.

Beyond Socochima we crossed some high mountain ranges by a pass, and arrived at another town named Texutla, where we were also well received, for like the others they paid no tribute to Mexico. On leaving that town we finished the ascent of the mountains and entered an uninhabited country, and it was very cold and hail and rain fell that night. There was a great scarcity of food and a wind came down from the snowy hills on one side of us which made us shiver with cold. As we had come from

¹ These were probably grenadillas, the fruit of passion flowers.

the Island of Cuba and from Villa Rica, where the whole coast is very hot, and had entered a cold country and had nothing with which to cover ourselves, only our armour, we suffered from the frost, for we were not accustomed to a different temperature.

Then we entered another pass where there were some hamlets and large temples with idols, which I have already said are called *Cues*, and they had great piles of firewood for the service of the idols which were kept in those temples ; but still there was nothing to eat, and the cold was intense.

We next entered into the land belonging to the town of Xocotlan, and we sent two Cempoala Indians to advise the Cacique how we were faring so that the people might receive us favourably. This town was subject to Mexico, so we always marched on the alert and in good order for we could see that we were already in a different sort of country, and when we saw the white gleam of the roof tops and the houses of the Caciques and the cues and numerous oratories, which were very lofty and covered with white plaster, they looked very pleasing like a town in our own Spain, so we called the place Castilblanco, for some Portuguese soldiers said that it reminded them of Castilblanco in Portugal, and so it is called to this day. And when, through our messengers, they knew in this town that we were approaching, the Cacique and other chieftains came out to meet us close by their houses. The name of the Cacique was Olintecle, and he conducted us to some lodgings and gave us food, but there was very little of it and it was given with ill will.

As soon as we had eaten, Cortés asked through our interpreters about their Lord Montezuma. The chief told us of his great strength in warriors, which he kept in all the provinces under his sway, without counting many other armies which were posted on the frontiers and in neighbouring provinces, and he [the chief] then spoke of the

great fortress of Mexico, and how the houses were built in the water, and how one can only pass from one house to another by means of bridges which they have made, or canoes; and how all the houses have flat roofs, which, by raising breastworks when they are needed, can be turned into fortresses. That the city is entered by three causeways, each causeway having four or five openings in it through which the water can flow from one part to another, and each opening has a wooden bridge over it so that when any one of those bridges is raised no one can enter the city of Mexico. Then the chief told us of the great store of gold and silver, and chalchihuite stones and other riches which Montezuma, his lord, possessed, and he never ceased telling us how great a lord he was, so that Cortés and all of us marvelled at hearing him. The more he told us about the great fortress and bridges, of such stuff are we Spanish soldiers made, the more we wanted to try our luck against them, although it seemed a hopeless enterprise, judging from what Olintecle explained and told us. In reality Mexico was much stronger and had better munitions and defences than anything he told us about, for it is one thing to have seen the place itself and its strength, and quite another thing to describe it as I do. He added that Montezuma was so great a prince that he placed anything he chose under his rule, and that he did not know if he would be pleased when he heard of our stay in that town, and that we had been given lodgings and food without his permission.

Cortés replied through our interpreters :—" I would have you know that we have come from distant lands at the order of our lord and King, the Emperor Don Carlos, who has many and great princes as his vassals, and he sends us to command your great Prince Montezuma not to sacrifice or kill any more Indians, or to rob his vassals, or to seize any more lands, but to give his fealty to our lord the King.

And now I say the same to you, Olintecle, and to all the other Caciques who are with you, desist from your sacrifices, and no longer eat the flesh of your own relations, and cease to commit sodomy, and the other evil customs which you practice, for such is the will of our Lord God, whom we believe in and worship, the giver of life and death who will take us up to heaven."

He told them many other things concerning our holy religion, to all of which things they made no reply.

Cortés said to the soldiers who were present around him : " It seems to me, gentlemen, that there remains nothing for us to do but to set up a cross." But Padre Fray Bartolomé de Olmedo replied :—" It seems to me, sir, that the time has not yet come to leave crosses in the charge of these people for they are somewhat shameless and without fear, and as they are vassals of Montezuma they may burn the crosses or do some other evil thing, and what you have said to them is enough until they know something more of our holy religion." So the matter was settled and no cross was set up. Let us leave this subject and that of the holy warnings which we gave them, and I will go on to say that we had with us a very large lurcher which belonged to Francisco de Lugo, which barked much of a night, and it seems that the Caciques of the town asked our friends whom we had brought from Cempoala, whether it was a tiger or a lion, or an animal with which to kill Indians, and they answered them : " They take it with them to kill anyone who annoys them."

They also asked what we did with the artillery we had brought with us, and the Cempoalans replied that with some stones which we put inside them we could kill anyone we wished to kill, and that the horses ran like deer and they would catch anyone we told them to run after. Then Olintecle said to the other chiefs : " Surely they must be Teules!" I have already said that Teule is the name they

give to their gods or idols and such like evil things. Our Indian friends replied : " So at last you have found it out ! Take care not to do anything to annoy them, for they will know it at once ; they even know one's thoughts. These Teules are those who captured the tax gatherers of your great Montezuma and decreed that no more tribute should be paid throughout the sierras nor in our town of Cempoala ; and they are the same who turned our Teules out of their temples and replaced them with their own gods and who have conquered the people of Tabasco and Chanpoton, and they are so good that they have made friendship between us and the people of Cingapacinga. In addition to this you have seen how the great Montezuma, notwithstanding all his power, has sent them gold and cloth, and now they have come to your town and we see that you have given them nothing ;—run at once and bring them a present ! "

It seems that we had brought good advocates with us, for the townspeople soon brought us four pendants, and three necklaces, and some lizards, all made of gold, but all the gold was of poor quality ; and they brought us four Indian women who were good for grinding maize for bread, and one load of cloth. Cortés received these things with a cheerful good will and with many expressions of thanks.

I remember that in the plaza where some of their oratories stood, there were piles of human skulls so regularly arranged that one could count them, and I estimated them at more than a hundred thousand. I repeat again that there were more than one hundred thousand of them. And in another part of the plaza there were so many piles of dead men's thigh bones that one could not count them ; there was also a large number of skulls strung between beams of wood, and three priests who had charge of these bones and skulls were guarding them. We had occasion to see many such things later on as we penetrated into the

country for the same custom was observed in all the towns, including those of Tlaxcala.

After all that I have related had happened, we determined to set out on the road to Tlaxcala which our friends told us was very near, and that the boundary was close by where some boundary stones were placed to mark it. So we asked the Cacique Olintecle, which was the best and most level road to Mexico, and he replied the road which passed by the large town named Cholula, and the Cempoalans said to Cortés :—" Sir, do not go by Cholula for the people there are treacherous, and Montezuma always keeps a large garrison of warriors in that town ;"—and they advised us to go by way of Tlaxcala where the people were their friends and enemies of the Mexicans. So we agreed to take the advice of the Cempoalans, trusting that God would direct us.

Cortés demanded of Olintecle twenty warrior chiefs to go with us, and he gave them at once. The next morning we set out for Tlaxcala and arrived at a little town belonging to the people of Xalacingo. From this place we sent two of the Cempoala chieftains as messengers, choosing two who had said much in praise of the Tlaxcalans and had declared that they were their friends, and by them we sent a letter to the Tlaxcalans, although we knew that they could not read it; and also a red fluffy Flemish hat, such as was then worn.

What happened I will relate further on.



Introductory Note.

BETWEEN the 31st August when the Spaniards crossed the Tlaxcalan frontier and fought a skirmish with some Otomi-Tlaxcalan troops, and the 23rd September when they entered the Capital of Tlaxcala, only two dates are mentioned by Bernal Díaz. He gives the 2nd September (Gómara says the 1st September) as the date of the first great battle against the Tlaxcalan army under Xicotenca (Xicotencatl), and the name of the battlefield as Tehuacingo or Tehuacacingo, which cannot now be identified.

After the battle the Spaniards took shelter in a village with a temple on a hill; this hill is still pointed out by the natives as the site of Cortés' camp. Here the Spaniards formed a fortified camp, which continued to be their headquarters until the war was over, and they marched to the Capital of Tlaxcala.

Bernal Díaz tells us that this camp was near Cunpanzingo, probably the Tzompantzingo of the modern maps.

Bernal Díaz gives the 5th September as the date of the second great battle, which was fought close by the camp.

Although the accounts of the war in Tlaxcala given by Bernal Díaz and Cortés agree in the main points, they do not always give the events in the same order. It seems probable that Bernal Díaz places the night attack too early, and that it took place after Xicotenga had sent the spies to the Spanish camp.

The boundaries of the so-called Republic of Tlaxcala appear to have been almost identical with those of the modern state of the same name.

It has become a commonplace to describe the Tlaxcalans as hardy mountaineers and their form of Government as Republican, but such discrimination is misleading. Their country was no more mountainous than that of the Mexicans, and their form of Government was much the same as that of other Nahuá communities; but as they had achieved no foreign conquests, they were compelled to be self-supporting, and in that differed from the Mexicans, who were becoming a military caste, supported to a great extent by tribute from conquered tribes. Their country was fertile, and there must have been a large agricultural population, and all the men were inured to hardship and continual border warfare.

According to Andrés de Tápia, the existence of the Tlaxcalans as an independent nation was owing to the forbearance of the Mexicans themselves, for when he asked why they had not been conquered, Montezuma himself answered: "We could easily do so, but then there would be nowhere for the young men to exercise themselves without going a long way off, and besides we always like to have people to sacrifice to our Gods."



BOOK IV.

THE WAR IN TLAXCALA.

CHAPTER LXII.

How we decided to go by way of Tlaxcala, and how we sent messengers to induce the Tlaxcalans to agree to our passage through their country, how the messengers were taken prisoners, and what else happened.



O we set out from Castilblanco and began our march with the scouts in advance, constantly on the alert, and the musketeers and crossbowmen in good order, as was necessary, and the horsemen in even closer order, and we all carrying our arms, as was always our custom. I will say nothing more about this, for it is no use wasting words over it, for we were always so much on the alert both by day and night that if an alarm had been given ten times over we should have been found ready every time.

In such order we arrived at a little town of Xalacingo, where they gave us a golden necklace and some cloth and two Indian women, and from that town we sent two Cempoalan chieftains as messengers to Tlaxcala, with a letter, and a fluffy red Flemish hat, such as was then worn. We well knew that the Tlaxcalans could not read

the letter, but we thought that when they saw paper different from their own, they would understand that it contained a message; and what we sent to tell them was that we were coming to their town, and hoped they would receive us well, as we came, not to do them harm, but to make them our friends. We did this because in this little town they assured us that the whole of Tlaxcala was up in arms against us, for it appears that they had already received news of our approach and that we were accompanied by many friends, both from Cempoala and Zocotlan, and other towns through which we had passed. As all these towns usually paid tribute to Montezuma, the Tlaxcalans took it for granted that we were coming to attack Tlaxcala, as their country had often been entered by craft and cunning and then laid waste, and they thought that this was another attempt to do so. So as soon as our two messengers arrived with the letter and the hat and began to deliver their message, they were seized as prisoners before their story was finished, and we waited all that day and the next for an answer and none arrived.

Then Cortés addressed the chiefs of the town [where we had halted] and repeated all he was accustomed to tell the Indians about our holy religion and how we were vassals of our Lord and King who had sent us to these parts to put an end to human sacrifices, and the eating of human flesh, and the other evils which they were used to practise, and he told them many other things which we usually repeated in most of the towns we passed through, and after making them many promises of assistance, he asked for twenty Indian warriors of quality to accompany us on our march, and they were given us most willingly.

After commending ourselves to God, with a happy confidence we set out on the following day for Tlaxcala, and as we were marching along, we met our two messengers who had been taken prisoners. It seems that the Indians

who guarded them were perplexed by the warlike preparations and had been careless of their charge, and in fact, had let them out of prison. They arrived in such a state of terror at what they had seen and heard that they could hardly succeed in expressing themselves.

According to their account, when they were prisoners the Tlaxcalans had threatened them, saying : " Now we are going to kill those whom you call Teules, and eat their flesh, and we will see whether they are as valiant as you announce ; and we shall eat your flesh too, you who come here with treasons and lies from that traitor Montezuma ! " and for all that the messengers could say, that we were against the Mexicans, and wished to be brothers to the Tlaxcalans, they could not persuade them of its truth.

When Cortés and all of us heard those haughty words, and learned how they were prepared for war, although it gave us matter for serious thought, we all cried :—" If this is so, forward—and good luck to us ! " We commended ourselves to God and marched on, the Alferez, Corral, unfurling our banner and carrying it before us, for the people of the little town where we had slept, as well as the Cempoalans assured us that the Tlaxcalans would come out to meet us and resist our entry into their country.

Marching along as I have described, we discussed how the horsemen—in parties of three so as to help one another—should charge and return at a hand gallop with their lances held rather short, and when they broke through the hostile ranks should hold their lances before their faces and not stop to give thrusts, so that the Indians should not be able to seize hold of their lances ; and if by chance a lance were seized, the horseman should use all his strength and put spurs to his horse, so that helped by the leverage of the lance held beneath his arm, the furious rush of the horse might enable him to wrench it from the grasp of the Indian, or should drag him along with

it. It will be said to-day—what was the use of all this preparation when there were no hostile warriors in sight to attack us? I answer this by repeating the words of Cortés :—"Gentlemen and comrades, seeing how few of us there are, it behoves us to be always as well prepared and as much on the alert as though we saw the enemy approaching to attack us, and not only saw them approaching, but we should behave as though we were already fighting them; and, as it often happens that they seize the lances with their hands, we have to be prepared for such an emergency as well as for anything else that may happen to a soldier. I have fully understood that, when fighting, there should be no need of directions, for I know, and am very willing to acknowledge it, that you behave much more courageously [without them]."

In this way we marched about two leagues, when we came upon a fortress strongly built of stone and lime and some other cement, so strong that with iron pickaxes it was difficult to demolish it and it was constructed in such a way both for offence and defence, that it would be very difficult to capture. We halted to examine it, and Cortés asked the Indians from Zocotlan for what purpose the fortress had been built in such a way. They replied that, as war was always going on between the people of Tlaxcala and their lord, Montezuma, the Tlaxcalans had built this fort so strong the better to defend their towns, for we were already in their territory. We rested awhile and this, our entry into the land of Tlaxcala and the fortress, gave us plenty to think about. Cortés said: "Sirs, let us follow our banner which bears the sign of the holy cross, and through it we shall conquer!" Then one and all we answered him: "May good fortune attend our advance, for in God lies the true strength." So we began our march again in the order I have already noted.

We had not gone far when our scouts observed about

thirty Indians who were spying. These carried two-handed swords, shields, lances and plumes of feathers. The swords are made with stones which cut worse than knives, so cleverly arranged, that one can neither break nor pull out the blades ; they are as long as broadswords ; and as I have already said, these spies wore devices and feather head-dresses, and when our scouts observed them they came back to give us notice. Cortés then ordered the same scouts to follow the spies, and to try and capture one of them without hurting them ; and then he sent five more mounted men as a support, in case there should be an ambush. Then all our army hastened on in good order and with quick step, for our Indian friends who were with us said that there was sure to be a large body of warriors waiting in ambush.

When the thirty Indian spies saw the horsemen coming towards them, and beckoning to them with their hands, they would not wait for them to come up and capture one of them ; furthermore, they defended themselves so well, that with their swords and lances they wounded some of the horses.

When our men saw how fiercely the Indians fought and that their horses were wounded, they were obliged to kill five of the Indians. As soon as this happened, a squadron of Tlaxcalans,¹ more than three thousand strong, which was lying in ambush, fell on them all of a sudden, with great fury and began to shower arrows on our horsemen who were now all together ; and they made a good fight with their arrows and fire-hardened darts, and did wonders with their two-handed swords. At this moment we came up with our artillery, muskets and crossbows, and

¹ Probably Otomís from the Otomí town of Tecuac. Cortés says the chiefs of Tlaxcala sent messengers to say that the attack was made by communities (of Otomís?) without their knowledge.

little by little the Indians gave way, but they had kept their ranks and fought well for a considerable time.

In this encounter they wounded four of our men and I think that one of them died of his wounds a few days later.

As it was now late the Tlaxcalans beat a retreat and we did not pursue them ; they left about seventeen dead on the field, not counting many wounded. Where these skirmishes took place the ground was level and there were many houses and plantations of maize and magueys, which is the plant from which they make their wine.

We slept near a stream, and with the grease from a fat Indian whom we had killed and cut open, we dressed our wounds, for we had no oil, and we supped very well on some dogs which the Indians breed [for food] for all the houses were abandoned and the provisions carried off, and they had even taken the dogs with them, but these came back to their homes in the night, and there we captured them, and they proved good enough food.

All night we were on the alert with watches and patrols and scouts, and the horses bitted and saddled, in fear lest the Indians would attack us.

I will leave off here and go on to tell of the war they waged against us.

CHAPTER LXIII.

Of the war which was waged and the perilous battles which we fought against the Tlaxcalans, and what else happened.

THE next day, after commending ourselves to God, we set out with all our ranks in good order, the horsemen well instructed in the way they should charge through the enemy and return to us, and to see that the enemy should not be permitted to break our ranks and separate us one

from the other. As we thus marched on, two armies of warriors approached to give us battle. They numbered six thousand men [and they came on us] with loud shouts and the din of drums and trumpets, as they shot their arrows and hurled their darts and acted like brave warriors. Cortés ordered us to halt, and sent forward the three prisoners whom we had captured the day before, to tell them not to make war on us as we wished to treat them as brothers. He also told one of our soldiers, named Diego de Godoy, who was a royal notary, to watch what took place so that he could bear witness if it should be necessary, so that at some future time we should not have to answer for the deaths and damages which were likely to take place, for we begged them to keep the peace.

When the three prisoners whom we had sent forward began to speak to the Indians, it only increased their fury and they made such an attack on us that we could not endure it. Then Cortés shouted:—"Santiago—and at them!" and we attacked them with such impetuosity that we killed and wounded many of them with our fire and among them three captains. They then began to retire towards some ravines, where over forty thousand warriors and their captain general, named Xicotenga, were lying in ambush, all wearing a red and white device for that was the badge and livery of Xicotenga.

As there was broken ground there we could make no use of the horses, but by careful manœuvring we got past it, but the passage was very perilous for they made play with their good archery and with their lances and broadswords did us much hurt, and the hail of stones from their slings was even more damaging. When we reached the level ground with our horsemen and artillery, we paid them back and slew many of them, but we did not dare to break our formation, for any soldier who left the ranks to follow some of the Indian captains and swordsmen was at once

wounded and ran great danger. As the battle went on they surrounded us on all sides and we could do little or nothing. We dared not charge them, unless we charged all together, lest they should break up our formation ; and if we did charge them, as I have said, there were twenty squadrons ready to resist us, and our lives were in great danger for they were so numerous they could have blinded us with handfuls of earth, if God in his great mercy had not succoured us.

While we found ourselves in this conflict among these great warriors and their fearful broad swords, we noticed that many of the strongest among them crowded together to lay hands on a horse. They set to work with a furious attack, laying hands on a good mare known to be very handy either for sport or for charging. The rider, Pedro de Moron, was a very good horseman, and as he charged with three other horsemen into the ranks of the enemy (they were ordered thus to charge together, so as to help one another) the Indians seized hold of his lance and he was not able to drag it away, and others gave him cuts with their broadswords and wounded him badly, and then they slashed at the mare, and cut her head off at the neck so that it hung by the skin, and she fell dead. If his mounted companions had not come at once to his rescue they would also have finished killing Pedro de Moron. We might possibly have helped him with our whole battalion, but I repeat again that we hardly dared to move from one place to another for fear that they would finally rout us, and we could not move one way or another ; it was all we could do to hold our own and prevent ourselves from being defeated. However, we rushed to the conflict around the mare and managed to save Moron from the hands of the enemy who were already dragging him off half dead and we cut the mare's girths so as not to leave the saddle behind. In that act of rescue, ten of our men

were wounded and I remember that at the same time we killed four of the (Indian) captains, for we were advancing in close order and we did great execution with our swords. When this had happened, the enemy began to retire, carrying the mare with them, and they cut her in pieces to exhibit in all the towns of Tlaxcala, and we learnt afterwards that they made an offering to their idols of the horseshoes, of the Flemish felt hat, and the two letters which we had sent them offering peace.

The mare that was killed belonged to Juan Sedeño and it was because Sedeño had received three wounds the day before that he had given her to Moron who was a good horseman. I did not see Moron again for he died of his wounds two days later.

To return to our battle: we were a full hour fighting in the fray, and our shots must have done the enemy much damage for they were so numerous and in such close formation, that each shot must have hit many of them. Horsemen, musketeers, crossbowmen, swordsmen, and those who used lance and shield, one and all, we fought like men to save our lives and to do our duty, for we were certainly in the greatest danger in which we had ever found ourselves. Later on they told us that we killed many Indians in this battle, and among them eight of their leading captains, sons of the old Caciques who lived in their principal town, and for this reason they drew off in good order. We did not attempt to follow them, and we were not sorry for it as we were so tired out we could hardly stand, and we stayed where we were in that little town. All the country round was thickly peopled, and they even have some houses underground like caves in which many of the Indians live.

The place where this battle took place is called Tehuacingo or Tehuacacingo and it was fought on the 2nd day of the month of September in the year 1519. When we

saw that victory was ours we gave thanks to God who had delivered us from such great danger.

From the field of battle we withdrew the whole force to some Cues which were strong and lofty like a fortress. We dressed the wounded men, who numbered fifteen, with the fat of the Indian I mentioned before. One man died of his wounds. We also doctored four or five horses which had received wounds, and we rested and supped very well that night, for we found a good supply of poultry and little dogs in the houses. And taking every precaution by posting spies, patrols and scouts, we rested until the next morning.

In that battle we captured fifteen Indians, two of them chieftains. There was one peculiarity that the Tlaxcalans showed in this and all the other battles—that was to carry off any Indian as soon as he was wounded so that we should not be able to see their dead.

CHAPTER LXIV.

How we pitched our camp in some towns and hamlets called Teoaçingo or Tevaçingo and what we did there.

AS we felt weary after the battles we had fought, and many of the soldiers and horses were wounded and some died there, and it was necessary to repair the crossbows and replenish our stock of darts, we passed one day without doing anything worthy of mention. The following morning Cortés said that it would be as well for all the horsemen who were fit for work to scour the country, so that the Tlaxcalans should not think that we had given up fighting on account of the last battle, and that they should see that we meant to follow them up ; for on the previous day we had halted without sallying forth to look for them, and it was better for us to go out and attack them than for them

to come and attack us and thus find out our weakness. As the country was level and thickly populated, we set out with seven horsemen and a few musketeers and crossbowmen and about two hundred soldiers and our Indian allies, leaving the camp as well guarded as was possible. In the houses and towns through which we passed, we captured about twenty Indian men and women without doing them any hurt, but our allies, who are a cruel people, burnt many of the houses and carried off much poultry and many dogs for food. When we returned to the camp which was not far off, Cortés set the prisoners free, after giving them something to eat, and Doña Marina and Aguilar spoke kindly to them and gave them beads and told them not to be so mad any longer, but to make peace with us, as we wished to help them and treat them as brothers. Then we also released the two prisoners who were chieftains and they were given another letter, and were to tell the high Caciques who lived in the town—which was the capital of all the towns of the province—that we had not come to do them any harm or to annoy them, but to pass through their country on our way to Mexico to speak to Montezuma. The two messengers went to Xicotenga's camp which was distant about two leagues among some towns and houses which I think they called Cuadçinpacingo, and when they gave him the letter and our message the reply that their captain Xicotenga gave them was, that we might go to his town where his father was living; that there peace would be made by satiating themselves on our flesh, and honour paid to his gods with our hearts and blood, and that we should see his answer the very next day.

When Cortés and all of us heard that haughty message, as we were already tired out with the battles and encounters we had passed through, we certainly did not think that things looked well. So Cortés flattered the messengers with soft words for it seemed that they had lost all fear,

and ordered them to be given some strings of beads, as he wished to send them back as messengers of peace.

Cortés then learned from them more fully all about the Captain Xicotenga, and what forces he had with him. They told him that Xicotenga had many more men with him now than he had when he attacked us before for he had five captains with him and each captain had brought ten thousand warriors. This was the way in which the count was made : Of the followers of Xicotenga who was blind from age—the father of the captain of the same name—ten thousand ; of the followers of another great chief named Mase Escasi,¹ another ten thousand ; of the followers of another great chief named Chichimecatecle,² the same number ; of another great Cacique, lord of Topeyanco, named Tecapacaneca, another ten thousand ; and of another great chief named Guaxoban, another ten thousand ; so that there were in all fifty thousand. That their banner and standard had been brought out, which was a white bird with the appearance of an ostrich, with wings outstretched, as though it wished to fly, and that each company had its device and uniform, for each Cacique had a different one, as do our dukes and counts in our own Castile.

All that I have here said we accepted as perfectly true, for certain Indians among those whom we had captured and who were released that day, related it very clearly, although they were not then believed. When we knew this, as we were but human and feared death, many of us, indeed the majority of us, confessed to the Padre de la Merced and to the priest, Juan Díaz, who were occupied all night in hearing our repentance and commending us to God and praying that He would pardon us and save us

¹ Maxixcatzin.

² Chichimecatecuhtli.

from defeat. In this way the time passed until the next day, and the attack which they made on us I will now describe.

CHAPTER LXV.

Concerning the great battle which we fought against the forces of Tlaxcala, in which it pleased our Lord God to give us the victory, and what else happened.

THE next morning, the 5th of September, 1519, we mustered the horses. There was not one of the wounded men who did not come forward to join the ranks and give as much help as he could. The crossbowmen were warned to use the store of darts very cautiously, some of them loading while the others were shooting, and the musketeers were to act in the same way, and the men with sword and shield were instructed to aim their cuts and thrusts at the bowels [of their enemies] so that they would not dare to come as close to us as they did before. The artillery was all ready for action, and the horsemen had already been instructed to aid one another and to hold their lances short, and not to stop to spear anyone except in the face and eyes—charging and returning at a hand gallop and no soldier was on any account to break away from the ranks. With our banner unfurled, and four of our comrades guarding the standard-bearer, Corral, we set out from our camp. We had not marched half a quarter of a league before we began to see the fields crowded with warriors with great feather crests and distinguishing devices, and to hear the blare of horns and trumpets.

Here would be a great opportunity to write down in proper order what happened to us in this most perilous and doubtful battle, for so many warriors surrounded us on all sides that [the situation] might be compared to a

great plain, two leagues long and about the same breadth, and in its midst, four hundred men. Thus all the plain was swarming with warriors and we stood four hundred men in number, and of those many sick and wounded. And we knew for certain that this time our foe came with the determination to leave none of us alive excepting those who would be sacrificed to their idols.

To go back to our battle : How they began to charge on us ! What a hail of stones sped from their slings ! As for their bowmen, the javelins lay like corn on the threshing floor ; all of them barbed and fire-hardened, which would pierce any armour and would reach the vitals where there is no protection ; the men with swords and shields and other arms larger than swords, such as broadswords, and lances, how they pressed on us and with what valour and what mighty shouts and yells they charged upon us ! The steady bearing of our artillery, musketeers and crossbowmen, was indeed a help to us, and we did the enemy much damage, and those of them who came close to us with their swords and broadswords met with such sword play from us that they were forced back and they did not close in on us so often as in the last battle. The horsemen were so skilful and bore themselves so valiantly that, after God who protected us, they were our bulwark. However, I saw that our troops were in considerable confusion, so that neither the shouts of Cortés nor the other captains availed to make them close up their ranks, and so many Indians charged down on us that it was only by a miracle of sword play that we could make them give way so that our ranks could be reformed. One thing only saved our lives, and that was that the enemy were so numerous and so crowded one on another that the shots wrought havoc among them, and in addition to this they were not well commanded, for all the captains with their forces could not come into action, and from what we knew, since the

last battle had been fought, there had been disputes and quarrels between the Captain Xicotenga and another captain the son of Chichimecatecle, over what the one had said to the other, that he had not fought well in the previous battle; to this the son of Chichimecatecle replied that he had fought better [than Xicotenga] and was ready to prove it by personal combat. So in this battle Chichimecatecle and his men would not help Xicotenga, and we knew for a certainty that he had also called on the company of Huexotzinco to abstain from fighting. Besides this, ever since the last battle they were afraid of the horses and the musketry, and the swords and crossbows, and our hard fighting; above all was the mercy of God which gave us strength to endure. So Xicotenga was not obeyed by two of the commanders, and we were doing great damage to his men, for we were killing many of them, and this they tried to conceal; for as they were so numerous, whenever one of their men was wounded, they immediately bound him up and carried him off on their shoulders, so that in this battle, as in the last, we never saw a dead man.

The enemy were already losing heart, and knowing that the followers of the other two captains whom I have already named, would not come to their assistance, they began to give way. It seems that in that battle we had killed one very important captain, not to mention others, and the enemy began to retreat in good order, our horsemen following them at a hand gallop for a short distance, for they could not sit their horses for fatigue, and when we found ourselves free from that multitude of warriors, we gave thanks to God.

In this engagement, one soldier was killed, and sixty were wounded, and all the horses were wounded as well. They gave me two wounds, one in the head with a stone, and one in the thigh with an arrow; but this did not prevent me from fighting, and keeping watch, and helping our

soldiers, and all the soldiers who were wounded did the same ; for if the wounds were not very dangerous, we had to fight and keep guard, wounded as we were, for few of us remained unwounded.

Then we returned to our camp, well contented, and giving thanks to God. We buried the dead in one of those houses which the Indians had built underground, so that the enemy should not see that we were mortals, but should believe that, as they said, we were Teules. We threw much earth over the top of the house, so that they should not smell the bodies, then we doctored all the wounded with the fat of the Indian, as I have related before. It was cold comfort to be even without salt or oil with which to cure the wounded. There was another want from which we suffered, and it was a severe one—and that was clothes with which to cover ourselves, for such a cold wind came from the snow mountains, that it made us shiver, for our lances and muskets and crossbows made a poor covering. That night we slept with more tranquillity than on the night before, when we had so much duty to do, with scouting, spies, watchmen and patrols.

I will leave off here and relate what we did on the next day. In this battle we captured three Indian chieftains.

CHAPTER LXVI.

How next day we sent messengers to the Caciques of Tlaxcala, begging them to make peace, and what they did about it.

AFTER the battle which I have described was over, in which we had captured three Indian chieftains, our Captain Cortés sent them at once in company with the two others who were in our camp and who had already been sent as messengers, and ordered them to go to the Caciques of Tlaxcala and tell them that we begged them to make peace

and to grant us a passage through their country on our way to Mexico, as we had already sent to request them, and to say that if they did not now come to terms, we would slay all their people, but that as we were well disposed towards them and wished to treat them as brothers, we had no desire to annoy them, unless they gave us reason to do so; and he said many flattering things to them so as to make friends of them, and the messengers then set out eagerly for the capital of Tlaxcala and gave their message to all the Caciques already mentioned by me, whom they found gathered in council with many other elders and priests. They were very sorrowful both over the want of success in the war and at the death of those captains, their sons and relations, who had fallen in battle. As they were not very willing to listen to the message, they decided to summon all the soothsayers, priests, and those others called *Tacal nagueas* (who are like wizards and foretell fortunes), and they told them to find out from their witchcraft, charms, and lots what people we were, and if by giving us battle day and night without ceasing we could be conquered, and to say if we were Teules, (which, as I have already said many times, are evil beings, like devils,) as the people of Cempoala asserted, and to tell them what things we ate, and ordered them to look into all these matters with the greatest care.

When the soothsayers and wizards and many priests had got together and made their prophecies and forecasts, and performed all the other rites according to their use, it seems that they said that by their divinations they had found out we were men of flesh and blood and ate poultry and dogs and bread and fruit when we had them, and that we did not eat the flesh nor the hearts of the Indians whom we killed. It seems that our Indian friends whom we had brought from Cempoala had made them believe that we were Teules, and that we ate the

hearts of Indians, and that the cannon shot forth lightning, such as falls from heaven, and that the Lurcher, which was a sort of lion or tiger, and the horses, were used to catch Indians when we wanted to kill them, and much more nonsense of the same sort.

The worst of all that the priests and wizards told the Caciques was, that it was not during the day, but only at night that we could be defeated, for as night fell, all our strength left us. Furthermore, their wizards told them that by day we were very valiant, and all this strength lasted throughout the day up to sunset, but that as soon as night came on we had no strength whatever. When the Caciques heard this, and they were quite convinced of it, they sent to tell their captain general Xicotenga that as soon as it was possible he should come and attack us in great force by night. On receiving this order Xicotenga assembled ten thousand of the bravest of his Indians and came to our camp, and from three sides they began alternately to shoot arrows and throw single pointed javelins from their spear throwers, and from the fourth side the swordsmen and those armed with macanas and broadswords approached so suddenly, that they felt sure that they would carry some of us off to be sacrificed. Our Lord God provided otherwise, for secretly as they approached, they found us well on the alert, and as soon as our outposts and spies perceived the great noise of their movement, they ran at breakneck speed to give the alarm, and as we were all accustomed to sleep ready shod, with our arms on us and our horses bitted and saddled, and with all our arms ready for use, we defended ourselves with guns, crossbows and sword play so that they soon turned their backs. As the ground was level and there was a moon the horsemen followed them a little way, and in the morning we found lying on the plain about twenty of them dead and wounded. So they went back with great loss and sorely repenting

this night expedition, and I have heard it said, that as what the priests and wizards had advised did not turn out well they sacrificed two of them.

That night, one of our Indian friends from Cempoala was killed and two of our soldiers were wounded and one horse, and we captured four of the enemy. When we found that we had escaped from that impetuous attack we gave thanks to God, and we buried our Cempoala friend and tended the wounded and the horse, and slept the rest of the night after taking every precaution to protect the camp as was our custom.

When we awoke and saw how all of us were wounded, even with two or three wounds, and how weary we were and how others were sick and clothed in rags, and knew that Xicotenga was always after us, and already over forty-five of our soldiers had been killed in battle, or succumbed to disease and chills, and another dozen of them were ill, and our Captain Cortés himself was suffering from fever as well as the Padre de la Merced, and what with our labours and the weight of our arms which we always carried on our backs, and other hardships from chills and the want of salt, for we could never find any to eat, we began to wonder what would be the outcome of all this fighting, and what we should do and where we should go when it was finished. To march into Mexico we thought too arduous an undertaking because of its great armies, and we said to one another that if those Tlaxcalans, which our Cempoalan friends had led us to believe were peacefully disposed, could reduce us to these straits, what would happen when we found ourselves at war with the great forces of Montezuma? In addition to this we had heard nothing from the Spaniards whom we had left settled in Villa Rica, nor they of us. As there were among us very excellent gentlemen and soldiers, steady and valiant men of good counsel, Cortés never said or did anything [important] without first asking

well considered advice, and acting in concert with us. Although the historian Gomara says Cortés did this and that, and came here and went there, and says many other things without reason, even if Cortés were made of iron, as Gomara in his history says he was, he could not be everywhere at once. Suffice it to say that he bore himself like a good commander. This I say, for after all the great mercies which our Lord granted us in all our doings, and in the late victories, and in everything else, it seems that God gave us soldiers grace and good counsel to advise Cortés how to do all things in the right way.

Let us cease praising and cease speaking of past praises, for they do not add much to our history, and let me relate how one and all we put heart into Cortés, and told him that he must get well again and reckon upon us, and that as with the help of God we had escaped from such perilous battles, our Lord Jesus Christ must have preserved us for some good end; that he [Cortés] should at once set our prisoners free and send them to the head Caciques already named by me, so as to bring them to peace, when all that had taken place would be pardoned, including the death of the mare.

Let us leave this and say how Doña Marina who, although a native woman, possessed such manly valour that, although she had heard every day how the Indians were going to kill us and eat our flesh with chili, and had seen us surrounded in the late battles, and knew that all of us were wounded and sick, yet never allowed us to see any sign of fear in her, only a courage passing that of woman. So Doña Marina and Jerónimo de Aguilar spoke to the messengers whom we were now sending and told them that they must come and make peace at once, and that if it was not concluded within two days we should go and kill them all and destroy their country and would come to seek them in their city, and with these brave words they were dispatched

to the capital where Xicotenga the elder and Mase Escasi were [residing].

Let us leave this, and I will mention another thing that I have noticed, that the historian Gomara does not mention or make any record in his history of the fact that any of us were killed or wounded, or underwent any hardships, or suffered, but writes about it all as though we were going to a wedding, and it is thus that we find it recorded. Oh!—how badly those men advised him when they told him to put such things in his history! It has made all of us conquerors reflect upon what he wrote down, which not being true, he ought to have remembered, that as soon as we saw his history we must out with the truth!

Let us forget Gomara and say that our messengers went to the capital of Tlaxcala with our message, and I think that they carried a letter, for although we knew they could not understand it, yet they would look on it as an order, and with it was sent an arrow, and they found the two chief Caciques who were in conference with the other chieftains, and what they answered I will go on to relate.

CHAPTER LXVII.

How we again sent messengers to the Caciques of Tlaxcala to bring them to peace, and what they did about it and decided.

WHEN the messengers whom we had sent to treat for peace arrived at Tlaxcala, they found the two principal Caciques in consultation, namely: Mase Escasi and Xicotenga, the elder (the father of the Captain General Xicotenga, so often mentioned by me, who bore the same name). When they had heard the embassy, they were undecided and kept silence for a few moments, and it pleased God to guide their thoughts towards making peace

with us ; and they sent at once to summon all the other Caciques and captains who were in their towns, and those of a neighbouring province called Huexotzingo who were their friends and allies, and when all had come together to the town where they were, which was their capital, Mase Escasi and Xicotenga the elder, who were very wise men, made them a speech, as we afterwards learned, to the following effect, if not exactly in these words :

“ Brothers and friends, you have already seen how many times these Teules who are in this country expecting to be attacked, have sent us messengers asking us to make peace, saying that they come to assist us and adopt us as brothers ; and you have also seen how many times they have taken prisoners numbers of our vassals to whom they do no harm, and whom they quickly set free. You well know how we have three times attacked them with all our forces, both by day and by night, and have failed to conquer them, and that they have killed during the attacks we made on them, many of our people, and of our sons, relations and captains. Now, again, they have sent to ask us to make peace and the people of Cempoala whom they are bringing in their company say that they are the enemies of Montezuma and his Mexicans, and have ordered the towns of the Totonac sierra and those of Cempoala no longer to pay tribute to Montezuma. You will remember well enough that the Mexicans make war on us every year, and have done so for more than a hundred years, and you can readily see that we are hemmed in in our own lands, so that we do not dare to go outside even to seek for salt, so that we have none to eat, and we have no cotton, and bring in very little cotton cloth, and if some of our people go out or have gone out to seek for it, few of them return alive, for those traitorous Mexicans and their allies kill them or make slaves of them. Our wizards¹ and sooth-

¹ Tacal naguas.

sayers and priests have told us what they think about the persons of these Teules, and that they are very valiant. It seems to me that we should seek to be friends with them, and in either case, whether they be men or Teules, that we should make them welcome, and that four of our chieftains should set out at once and take them plenty to eat, and should offer them friendship and peace, so that they should assist us and defend us against our enemies, and let us bring them here to us, and give them women, so that we may have relationship with their offspring, for the ambassadors whom they have sent to treat for peace, tell us that they have some women with them."

When they had listened to this discourse, all the Caciques and chiefs approved of it and said that it was a wise decision and that peace should be made at once, and that notice should be sent to the Captain Xicotenga and the other captains who were with him to return at once and not to attack again, and that they should be told that peace was already made, and messengers were immediately sent off to announce it. However, the Captain Xicotenga the younger would not listen to the four chiefs, and got very angry and used abusive language against them, and said he was not for peace, for he had already killed many of the Teules and a mare, and that he wished to attack us again by night and completely conquer us and slay us.

When his father, Xicotenga the elder, and Mase Escasi and the other Caciques heard this reply they were very angry, and sent orders at once to the captains and to all the army that they should not join Xicotenga in attacking us again, and should not obey him in anything that he ordered unless it was in making peace. And even so he would not obey, and when they [the Caciques] saw the disobedience of their captain, they at once sent the same four chieftains whom they had sent before, to bring food to our camp and treat for peace in the name of all

Tlaxcala and Huexotzingo, but, from fear of Xicotenga the younger, the four old men did not come at that time, and as two or three things happened at the same moment, both in our camp and in the treating for peace, and as I must take in hand that which seems most convenient, I will cease speaking about the four Indian chieftains who were sent to treat for peace but did not dare to come for fear of Xicotenga, for at this time we went with Cortés to a town near our camp, and what happened I will tell in the next chapter.

CHAPTER LXVIII.

How we agreed to go to a town which was near to our camp, and what we did about it.

As two days had passed without our doing anything worthy of record, we suggested to Cortés, and it was agreed to, that as there was a town about one league distant from our camp which had sent no reply when summoned to make peace, that we should march against it by night and take it by surprise, not with intent to do it any harm, I mean not to kill or wound its inhabitants, or take them prisoners, but to carry off food and to frighten or talk them into making peace, according to the way they might act.

This town was called Tzumpantzingo,¹ and was the capital of many other small towns, and the township where our camp was placed, which was called Tecoadçunpançingo, was subject to it, and all round about it was thickly peopled.

So one night, long before the approach of dawn, we rose early to go to that town with six of the best horsemen and

¹ Çunpanzingo in the original.

the healthiest of the soldiers and ten crossbowmen and eight musketeers, with Cortés as our captain, although he was suffering from tertian fever, and we left the camp as well guarded as was possible. We started on our march two hours before dawn came, and there was such a cold wind that morning blowing down from the snowy mountains that it made us shiver and shake, and the horses we had with us felt it keenly, for two of them were seized with colic and were trembling all over, which worried us a good deal as we feared that they would die. Cortés ordered their owners to take them back to the camp and try to cure them.

As the town was not far off we arrived there before daylight, and when the natives perceived our approach, they fled from their houses shouting to one another to look out for the Teules who were coming to kill them, and the parents, in their panic, did not even wait to look after their children. When we saw what was happening, we halted in a court until it was daylight, so as not to do the people any harm. As soon as the priests who were in the temples, the elders of the town and some of the old chieftains saw that we stood there without doing any harm, they came to Cortés and asked his pardon for not coming to our camp peacefully and bringing food when we had summoned them to do so, the reason being that the captain Xicotenga, who was in the neighbourhood, had sent to them to say that they should not give us any, because his camp was supplied from that town and from many others, and he had with him as warriors the sons of the people of that town and from all the territory of Tlaxcala. Cortés told them through our interpreters, Doña Marina and Aguilar, who always went with us on every expedition—even when it took place at night—to have no fear, but to go at once to the Caciques at the capital and tell them to come and make peace, for the war was disastrous to them,

and he [Cortés] sent those [same] priests [as messengers], for, by the other messengers whom we had sent we had so far received no reply whatever. Concerning the circumstance I have mentioned of the Caciques of Tlaxcala sending four chieftains to treat for peace, up to that time these had not arrived.

These priests of the town quickly searched for more than forty cocks and hens and two women to grind tortillas, and brought them to us, and Cortés thanked them for it, and ordered them at once to send twenty Indians to our camp, and they came with the food without any fear whatever and stayed in the camp until the afternoon, and they were given little beads with which they returned well contented to their homes, and in all the small hamlets in our neighbourhood they spread word that we were good because we caused them no annoyance, and the priests and elders sent notice to the captain Xicotenga and told him how they had given us the food and the women, and he rated them severely, and they went at once to the capital to make it known to the old Caciques. As soon as they heard that we had not done the people any harm, although we might have killed many of them that night, and that we were sending them to treat for peace, they were greatly pleased, and ordered that we should be supplied every day with all that we needed ; and they again ordered the four Caciques, whom they had before charged with the mission of peace, to depart instantly for our camp, and carry with them all the food that had been prepared. We then returned to our camp with our supplies of food and the Indian women, all of us well contented.

I must leave off here and relate what passed in the camp while we were gone away to that town.

CHAPTER LXIX.

How when we returned with Cortés from Tzumpantzingo¹ with supplies, we found certain discussions being carried on in our camp, and what Cortés replied to them.

WHEN we returned from Tzumpantzingo,² as the town is called, with our supplies of food, very contented at leaving the place pacified, we found that in camp there had been meetings and discussions about the very great danger we were running day by day during this war, and on our arrival the discussion grew most lively. Those who talked most and were most persistent, were those who had left houses and assignments of Indians behind them in Cuba, and as many as seven of these men (whose names I will not mention so as to save their honour) met together and went to the hut where Cortés was lodging, and one of them who spoke for all, for he was very fluent of speech and knew very well what they had come to propose, said, as though he were giving advice to Cortés, that he should take heed of the condition we were in, wounded and thin and half-hearted, and the great hardships that we endured by night as sentinels and spies, or patrols and scouts, and both by day and night in fighting. According to the accounts he had made up, since leaving Cuba we had lost over fifty-five of our comrades, and knew nothing about those whom we had left as settlers at Villa Rica; and although God had given us victory in the battles and skirmishes since we came from Cuba to this province and by His great pity had sustained us, we ought not to tempt Him so many times, and might it not turn out worse than Pedro Carbonero³; that he [Cortés] had got us into an

¹ Cinpancingo in the original.

² Çunpanzingo in the original.

³ Spoken proverbially of Pedro Carbonero, who penetrated into the land of the Moors, but failed to return, and perished there with all his followers.

unexpected situation, and that some day or other we should be sacrificed to the idols, which please God would not happen ; but that it would be a good thing to return to our town and the fortress which we had built, and stay among the towns of our friends the Totonacs until we could build a ship which should be dispatched to Diego Velásquez and to other parts and islands to ask them to send us help and assistance ; and that now the ships which we sunk would have been useful to us, and we might have left at least two of them in case of necessity arising, but without consulting them about this, or about anything else, by the advice of those who did not know how to provide for changes of fortune, he [Cortés] had ordered them all to be sunk, and please God that he and those who had given him such advice would not repent of it ; that we were no longer able to support the burden much less the many overburdens [which we were carrying] and that we were going along worse than beasts of burden ; for when a beast has done its day's work its packsaddle is taken off and it is given food and rest ; but we went booted and loaded down with our arms both by day and night ; and they told Cortés besides that he could see in any history that neither the Romans nor Alexander, nor any other of the most famous captains whom the world had known, had dared to destroy their ships and with such a small force throw themselves against such a great population with so many warriors as he had done, and that it would be the cause of his own death and that of all his followers ; that he should wish to preserve his life and the lives of us all, and that we should at once return to Villa Rica as the country there was at peace ; that they had not said all this before, as there had been no time to do so on account of the many warriors who were opposed to us every day, both in front and on our flanks ; and although they had not returned to the attack they believed that they

would do so, and since Xicotenga with his great power had not been to look for us during the last three days, that he must be collecting his forces and we ought not to await another battle like the last; and they said more to the same effect.

Cortés noticing that they spoke somewhat haughtily, considering that their words took the form of unasked advice, answered them very gently and said that he was aware of many of the things that they had mentioned, and that from what he had seen and believed, there was not in the whole world another [company of] Spaniards who were hardier, or who had fought with greater courage, or had endured such excessive hardships as we had, and that if we had not marched with arms continually on our backs, and kept watch, and gone on patrol, and suffered cold, and if we had not done all this we should already have perished, and that it was to save our lives that we had to endure those hardships and even greater ones, and he said: "Why, sirs, should we talk about deeds of valour when in truth our Lord is pleased to help us? When I remember seeing us surrounded by so many companies of the enemy and watching the play of their broadswords so close to us, it even now terrifies me, especially when they killed the mare with a single sword cut; we indeed seemed to be defeated and lost, and then I appreciated your great courage more than ever. As God then freed us from such great danger, so I have trust in Him that He will do the same in the future; and I will say more—that in all such dangers you will find no slackness on my part when I share them with you." He had good reason to say so for in all the battles he was to be found in the front. "I wish you, sirs, to bear in mind, that as our Lord has been pleased to help us, we have hope that so it may be in the future, for ever since we have penetrated into this country, in all the towns we have passed through, we have preached

the holy doctrine as well as we were able, and have induced the Indians to destroy their idols. As we already see that neither Xicotenga nor his captains put in a appearance and that they are afraid to return, for we must have done them great damage in the late battles, and that they are not able to assemble their followers, as they have already been defeated three times"; for these reasons he had confidence in God and his advocate, San Pedro, who prays for us, that the war in this province is ended. "Now as you have seen, the people of Cinpancingo are bringing food and have made peace and so have our neighbour here who have returned to live in their houses." As for the destruction of the ships, it was very well advised, and that if some of them were not consulted in the matter, as the other gentlemen were, it was because he [Cortés] resented what happened on the beach, which he did not now wish to call to mind; that the opinion and advice which they now gave him was on a par with that which they gave on the occasion; that they could see that there were many other gentlemen in the camp who strongly opposed what they were now asking and advising, and that it would be better to trust all matters to God and to follow them up in His holy service. "As to what you say, sirs, that the most renowned Roman captains have never done such great deeds as we have—you tell the truth. And from now onwards, God helping us, they will say in the histories that record these events far more than they may have said about those that happened before; so, as I have already said, all our labours are devoted to the service of God and our great Emperor Don Carlos, and under his true justice and Christianity will be aided by the mercy of our Lord and He will support us as we go from good to better. So gentlemen, it is clearly no good to go back a single step for if these people and those whom we leave behind in peace were to see us in retreat, the very stones would rise up

against us. As at the present time they take us for gods and idols, and so call us, they would then look on us as cowards and weaklings."

"As for what you say about staying among the friendly Totonacs, our allies, if they should see us return without going to Mexico, they would rise against us, and the reason for this would be that, as we stopped them from paying tribute to Montezuma, he would send his Mexican forces against them to bring them again under tribute and make war on them and would order them to make war on us, and they, so as to escape destruction, for they greatly fear the Mexicans, would soon set to work; so that where we expected to have friends we would find enemies. Then as soon as the great Montezuma learned that we had retreated, what would he say? What would he think of our words, and of what we sent to tell him? That it was all a joke or child's play. So, gentlemen, if one way is bad, the other way is worse, and it is better to stay where we are, where there is open ground thickly inhabited, and our camp is well supplied with food, sometimes poultry, at others dogs, and thank God there is no lack of food. And I wish we had salt—which is our greatest want at present, and clothes to protect us from the cold. As to what you say, sirs, that we have lost fifty-five soldiers, since we left the Island of Cuba, from wounds, starvation, cold, illness and hardship, and that we are now few in number and all sick and wounded, God gives us the strength of a host; it is clearly a fact that wars use up men and horses, and that sometimes we feed well, but we did not come here to rest ourselves, but to fight when opportunity offered. Therefore, I pray you, sirs, have the goodness to act like gentlemen, as persons who are used to put courage into those you may see showing weakness, and from now on give up thinking of the Island of Cuba and what you left there, and try to do what you have hitherto always done—

your duty—as good soldiers; for after God, who is your aid and support, we must rely on our own strong arms.”

When Cortés had given this reply, those soldiers renewed their argument. They admitted that all that Cortés had told them had been well said, but that when we left the town where we had made a settlement, our intention was, and now still is, to go to Mexico, which has such a great reputation on account of the strength of the city and its great number of warriors. The people of Cempoala said that the Tlaxcalans were a peaceful people, and they had no such reputation as those of Mexico, yet we had been in great danger of losing our lives, and if they should attack us next day in another battle such as those we had gone through, we were too exhausted to hold our own. If they did not attack us again, still the journey to Mexico seemed to them a very terrible thing, and that he should reconsider what he was saying and commanding.

Cortés answered half angrily that “It was better to die in a good cause, as the Psalms said, than to live dishonoured!” And in addition to this which Cortés told them, the greater number of the soldiers, those who had elected Cortés captain, and had given him counsel about destroying the ships, cried out loudly that he should not trouble himself about gossip or listen to such tales, for with the help of God, by acting well together, we should be ready to do the right thing, and so all the talk ended.

It is true enough that they grumbled at Cortés and cursed him, and even at us who had advised him, and at the Cempoalans who had brought us here, and said other unworthy things, but in such times they were overlooked. Finally all were fairly obedient, and I will leave off talking about this, and will relate how the aged Caciques again sent messengers from the capital of Tlaxcala to their captain general Xicotenga to say that without fail he should immediately visit us in peace and bring us food,

for so it was decreed by all the caciques and chieftains of their land and of Huexotzingo. They also sent to order the captains who were in Xicotenga's company, to refuse him all obedience if he did not go and make peace. This they sent to say three times, for they knew for certain that Xicotenga did not wish to obey them, but was determined once again to attack our camp by night, and for this purpose had assembled twenty thousand men, and being haughty and very stubborn, that now, as at other times, he would not obey.

What he did in the matter I will tell further on.

CHAPTER LXX.

How the Captain Xicotenga had got ready twenty thousand picked warriors to attack our camp and what was done about it.

WHEN Mase Escasi and Xicotenga the elder, and the greater number of the Caciques of the capital of Tlaxcala sent four times to tell their captain not to attack us but to go and treat for peace, he was very close to our camp, and they sent to the other captains who were with him and told them not to follow him unless it was to accompany him when he went to see us peacefully.

As Xicotenga was bad tempered and obstinate and proud, he decided to send forty Indians with food, poultry, bread and fruit and four miserable looking old Indian women, and much copal and many parrots' feathers. From their appearance we thought that the Indians who brought this present came with peaceful intentions, and when they reached our camp they fumigated Cortés with incense without doing him reverence, as was usually their custom. They said: "The Captain Xicotenga sends you all this so that you can eat. If you are savage Teules, as the Cempoalans say you are, and if you wish for a sacrifice,

take these four women and sacrifice them and you can eat their flesh and hearts, but as we do not know your manner of doing it, we have not sacrificed them now before you ; but if you are men, eat the poultry and the bread and fruit, and if you are tame Teules we have brought you copal (which I have already said is a sort of incense) and parrots' feathers ; make your sacrifice with that."

Cortés answered through our interpreters that he had already sent to them to say that he desired peace and had not come to make war, but had come to entreat them and make clear to them on behalf of our Lord Jesus Christ, whom we believe in and worship, and of the Emperor Don Carlos, whose vassals we are, that they should not kill or sacrifice anyone as was their custom to do. That we were all men of bone and flesh just as they were, and not Teules but Christians, and that it was not our custom to kill anyone ; that had we wished to kill people, many opportunities of perpetrating cruelties had occurred during the frequent attacks they had made on us, both by day and night. That for the food they had brought he gave them thanks, and that they were not to be as foolish as they had been, but should now make peace.

It seems that these Indians whom Xicotenga had sent with the food were spies sent to examine our huts and ranchos, and horses and artillery and [to report] how many of us there were in each hut, our comings and goings, and everything else that could be seen in the camp. They remained there that day and the following night, and some of them went with messages to Xicotenga and others arrived. Our friends whom we had brought with us from Cempoala looked on and bethought them that it was not a customary thing for our enemies to stay in the camp day and night without any purpose, and it was clear to them that they were spies, and they were the more suspicious of them in that when we went on the expedition to the little town of

Tzumpantzingo, two old men of that town had told the Cempoalans that Xicotenga was all ready with a large number of warriors to attack our camp by night, in such a way that their approach would not be detected, and the Cempoalans at that time took it for a joke or bravado, and not believing it they had said nothing to Cortés; but Doña Marina heard of it at once and she repeated it to Cortés.

So as to learn the truth, Cortés had two of the most honest looking of the Tlaxcalans taken apart from the others, and they confessed that they were spies; then two others were taken and they also confessed that they were spies from Xicotenga and the reason why they had come. Cortés ordered them to be released, and we took two more of them and they confessed that they were neither more nor less than spies, but added that their Captain Xicotenga was awaiting their report to attack us that night with all his companies. When Cortés heard this he let it be known throughout the camp that we were to keep on the alert, believing that they would attack as had been arranged. Then he had seventeen of those spies captured and cut off the hands of some and the thumbs of others and sent them to the Captain Xicotenga to tell him that he had had them thus punished for daring to come in such a way, and to tell him that he might come when he chose by day or by night, for we should await him here two days, and that if he did not come within those two days that we would go and look for him in his camp, and that we would already have gone to attack them and kill them, were it not for the liking we had for them, and that now they should quit their foolishness and make peace.

They say that it was at the very moment that those Indians set out with their hands and thumbs cut off, that Xicotenga wished to set out from his camp with all his forces to attack us by night as had been arranged; but when he saw his spies returning in this manner he wondered

greatly and asked the reason of it, and they told him all that had happened, and from this time forward he lost his courage and pride, and in addition to this one of his commanders with whom he had wrangles and disagreements during the battles which had been fought, had left the camp with all his men.

Let us get on with our story.

CHAPTER LXXI.

How the four chieftains who had been sent to treat for peace arrived in our camp and the speech they made, and what else happened.

WHILE we were in camp not knowing that they would come in peace, as we had so greatly desired, and were busy polishing our arms and making arrows, each one of us doing what was necessary to prepare for battle, at that moment one of our scouts came hurrying in to say that many Indian men and women with loads were coming along the high road from Tlaxcala, and without leaving the road were making for our camp, and that the other scout, his companion, who was on horseback, was watching to see which way they went; meanwhile the other scout, his companion, who was on horseback, arrived and said that the people were close by and coming straight in our direction, and every now and then were making short stops. Cortés and all of us were delighted at this news, for we believed that it meant peace, as in fact it did, and Cortés ordered us to make no display of alarm and not to show any concern, but to stay hidden in our huts. Then, from out of all those people who came bearing loads, the four chieftains advanced who were charged to treat for peace, according to the instructions given by the old caciques. Making signs of peace by bowing the head, they came straight to the hut where Cortés was lodging and

placed one hand on the ground and kissed the earth and three times made obeisance and burnt copal, and said that all the Caciques of Tlaxcala and their allies and vassals, friends and confederates, were come to place themselves under the friendship and peace of Cortés and of his brethren the Teules who accompanied him. They asked his pardon for not having met us peacefully, and for the war which they had waged on us, for they had believed and held for certain that we were friends of Montezuma and his Mexicans, who have been their mortal enemies from times long past, for they saw that many of his vassals who paid him tribute had come in our company, and they believed that they were endeavouring to gain an entry into their country by guile and treachery, as was their custom to do, so as to rob them of their women and children; and this was the reason why they did not believe the messengers whom we had sent to them. In addition to this they said that the Indians who had first gone forth to make war on us as we entered their country had done it without their orders or advice, but by that of the Chuntales¹ Estomies, who were wild people and very stupid, and that when they saw that we were so few in number, they thought to capture us and carry us off as prisoners to their lords and gain thanks for so doing; that now they came to beg pardon for their audacity, and had brought us food, and that every day they would bring more and trusted that we would receive it with the friendly feeling with which it was sent; that within two days the captain Xicotenga would come with other Caciques and give a

¹ "Chontal in the Mexican language means barbarous," *Relaciones de Yucatan*, vol. ii, p. 342; it here means the barbarous Otomís. The Otomís, according to Aztec tradition, were the earliest owners of the soil in Central Mexico; their headquarters were in what are now known as the States of Queretaro and Guanajuato, but there were Otomí communities living among other tribes in many parts of Central Mexico.

further account of the sincere wish of all Tlaxcala to enjoy our friendship.

As soon as they had finished their discourse they bowed their heads and placed their hands on the ground and kissed the earth. Then Cortés spoke to them through our interpreters very seriously, pretending he was angry, and said that there were reasons why we should not listen to them and should reject their friendship, for as soon as we had entered their country we sent to them offering peace and had told them that we wished to assist them against their enemies, the Mexicans, and they would not believe it and wished to kill our ambassadors; and not content with that, they had attacked us three times both by day and by night, and had spied on us and held us under observation; and in the attacks which they made on us we might have killed many of their vassals, but he would not, and he grieved for those who were killed; but it was their own fault and he had made up his mind to go to the place where the old chiefs were living and to attack them; but as they had now sought peace in the name of that province, he would receive them in the name of our lord the King and thank them for the food they had brought. He told them to go at once to their chieftains and tell them to come or send to treat for peace with fuller powers, and that if they did not come we would go to their town and attack them.

He ordered them to be given some blue beads to be handed to their Caciques as a sign of peace, and he warned them that when they came to our camp it should be by day and not by night, lest we should kill them.

Then those four messengers departed, and left in some Indian houses a little apart from our camp, the Indian women whom they had brought to make bread, some poultry, and all the necessaries for service, and twenty Indians to bring wood and water. From now on they

brought us plenty to eat, and when we saw this and believed that peace was a reality, we gave great thanks to God for it. It had come in the nick of time, for we were already lean and worn out and discontented with the war, not knowing or being able to forecast what would be the end of it.

In the past chapters the historian Gomara says that Cortés ascended some cliffs and saw the town of Tzumpantzingo. I repeat that it was close by our camp and that the soldier must have been very blind who wishing to see it could not see it and see it very clearly. He also says that the soldiers wanted to mutiny and rebel, and he says other things which I do not care to write down, as it is a waste of words. I say that never in the world was a captain obeyed with more respect and punctuality, as will be seen further on. No such thought entered into the head of a single soldier from the time we marched inland, unless it was on the one occasion of the sand dunes.

The words which were said in this last chapter were by way of advice and because it seemed to them that they were right and not for any other reason, for the men always followed him truly and loyally. Whoever sees Gomara's history will believe it to be true, as it is expressed with such eloquence, although it is quite the reverse of what really took place.

I will leave off here and will go on to tell what took place later, about some messengers sent by the great Montezuma.

CHAPTER LXXII.

How ambassadors from Montezuma, the great lord of Mexico, came to our camp, and of the present which they brought.

As our Lord God, through his great loving kindness, was pleased to give us victory in those battles in Tlaxcala, our fame spread throughout the surrounding country, and reached the ears of the great Montezuma in the great City of Mexico ; and if hitherto they took us for Teules, which is the same as their idols, from now on they held us in even greater respect as valiant warriors, and terror fell on the whole country at learning how, being so few in number and the Tlaxcalans in such great force, we had conquered them and that they had sued us for peace. So that now Montezuma, the great Prince of Mexico, powerful as he was, was in fear of our going to his city, and sent five chieftains, men of much importance, to our camp at Tlaxcala to bid us welcome, and say that he was rejoiced at our great victory against so many squadrons of warriors, and he sent a present, a matter of a thousand dollars worth of gold, in very rich jewelled ornaments, worked in various shapes, and twenty loads of fine cotton cloth, and he sent word that he wished to become the vassal of our great Emperor, and that he was pleased that we were already near his city, on account of the good will that he bore Cortés and all his brothers, the Teules, who were with him (for so they called us) and that he [Cortés] should decide how much tribute he wished for every year for our great Emperor, and that he [Montezuma] would give it in gold and silver, cloth and chalchihuites, provided we would not come to Mexico. This was not because he would not receive us with the greatest willingness, but because the land was rough and sterile, and he would regret to see us undergo such hardships which perchance he might not

be able to alleviate as well as he could wish. Cortés answered by saying that he highly appreciated the good will shown us, and the present which had been sent, and the offer to pay tribute to his Majesty, and he begged the messengers not to depart until he went to the capital of Tlaxcala, as he would despatch them from that place, for they could then see how that war ended, and he did not wish to give them his reply at once, because he had purged himself the day before with some camomiles such as are found in the Island of Cuba, and are very good for one who knows how to take them. I will leave this subject and tell what else happened in our camp.

CHAPTER LXXIII.

How Xicotenga, the Captain General of Tlaxcala, came to treat for peace, and what he said and what he settled with us.

CORTÉS was talking to the ambassadors of Montezuma, as I have already said, and wanted to take some rest, for he was ill with fever and had purged himself the day before, when they came to tell him that the Captain Xicotenga was arriving with many other Caciques and Captains, all clothed in white and red cloaks, half of the cloak was white and the other half red, for this was the device and livery of Xicotenga, [who was approaching] in a very peaceful manner, and was bringing with him in his company about fifty chieftains.

When Xicotenga reached Cortés's quarters he paid him the greatest respect by his obeisance, and ordered much copal to be burned. Cortés, with the greatest show of affection, seated him by his side and Xicotenga said that he came on behalf of his father and of Mase Escasi and all the Caciques, and Commonwealth of Tlaxcala to pray Cortés

to admit them to our friendship, and that he came to render obedience to our King and Lord, and to ask pardon for having taken up arms and made war upon us. That this had been done because they did not know who we were, and they had taken it for certain that we had come on behalf of their enemy Montezuma, and as it frequently happened that craft and cunning was used to gain entrance to their country so as to rob and pillage it, they had believed that this was now the case, and for that reason had endeavoured to defend themselves and their country, and were obliged to show fight. He said that they were a very poor people who possessed neither gold, nor silver, nor precious stones, nor cotton cloth, nor even salt to eat, because Montezuma gave them no opportunity to go out and search for it, and that although their ancestors possessed some gold and precious stones, they had been given to Montezuma on former occasions when, to save themselves from destruction, they had made peace or a truce, and this had been in times long past ; so that if they had nothing to give now, we must pardon them for it, for poverty and not the want of good will was the cause of it. He made many complaints of Montezuma and his allies who were all hostile to them and made war on them, but they had defended themselves very well. Now they had thought to do the same against us, but they could not do it although they had gathered against us three times with all their warriors, and we must be invincible, and when they found this out about our persons they wished to become friends with us and the vassals of the great prince the Emperor Don Carlos, for they felt sure that in our company they and their women and children would be guarded and protected, and would not live in dread of the Mexican traitors, and he said many other words placing themselves and their city at our disposal.

Xicotenga was tall, broad shouldered and well made ;

his face was long, pockmarked and coarse, he was about thirty-five years old and of a dignified deportment.

Cortés thanked him very courteously, in a most flattering manner, and said that he would accept them as vassals of our King and Lord, and as our own friends. Then Xicotenga begged us to come to his city, for all the Caciques, elders and priests were waiting to receive us with great rejoicing. Cortés replied that he would go there promptly, and would start at once, were it not for some negotiations which he was carrying on with the great Montezuma, and that he would come after he had despatched the messengers. Then Cortés spoke somewhat more sharply and severely about the attacks they had made on us both by day and night, adding that as it could not now be mended he would pardon it. Let them see to it that the peace we now were granting them was an enduring one, without any change, for otherwise he would kill them and destroy their city and that he [Xicotenga] should not expect further talk about peace, but only of war.

When Xicotenga and all the chieftains who had come with him heard these words they answered one and all, that the peace would be firm and true, and that to prove it they would all remain with us as hostages.

There was further conversation between Cortés and Xicotenga and most of his chiefs, and they were given blue and green beads for Xicotenga's father, for himself, and for the other Caciques, and were told to report that Cortés would soon set out for their city.

The Mexican Ambassadors were present during all these discussions and heard all the promises that were made, and the conclusion of peace weighed on them heavily, for they fully understood that it boded them no good. And when Xicotenga had taken his leave these Ambassadors of Montezuma half laughingly asked Cortés whether he believed any of those promises which were made on behalf

of all Tlaxcala, [alleging] that it was all a trick which deserved no credence, and the words were those of traitors and deceivers; that their object was to attack and kill us as soon as they had us within their city in a place where they could do so in safety; that we should bear in mind how often they had put forth all their strength to destroy us and had failed to do so, and had lost many killed and wounded, and that now they offered a sham peace so as to avenge themselves. Cortés answered them, with a brave face, that their alleged belief that such was the case did not trouble him, for even if it were true he would be glad of it so as to punish them [the Tlaxcalans] by taking their lives, that it did not matter to him whether they attacked him by day or by night, in the city or in the open, he did not mind one way or the other, and it was for the purpose of seeing whether they were telling the truth that he was determined to go to their city.

The Ambassadors seeing that he had made up his mind begged him to wait six days in our camp as they wished to send two of their companions with a message to their Lord Montezuma, and said that they would return with a reply within six days. To this Cortés agreed, on the one hand because, as I have said he was suffering from fever, and on the other because, although when the Ambassadors had made these statements he had appeared to attach no importance to them, he thought that there was a chance of their being true, and that until there was greater certainty of peace, they were of a nature requiring much consideration.

As at the time that this peace was made the towns all along the road that we had traversed from our Villa Rica de Vera Cruz were allied to us and friendly, Cortés wrote to Juan de Escalante who, as I have said, remained in the town to finish building the fort, and had under his command the sixty old or sick soldiers who had been left behind.

In these letters he told them of the great mercies which our Lord Jesus Christ had vouchsafed to us in the victories which we had gained in our battles and encounters since we had entered the province of Tlaxcala, which had now sued for peace with us, and asked that all of them would give thanks to God for it. He also told them to see to it that they always kept on good terms with our friends in the towns of the Totonacs, and he told him to send at once two jars of wine which had been left behind, buried in a certain marked place in his lodgings, and some sacred wafers for the Mass, which had been brought from the Island of Cuba, for those which we had brought on this expedition were already finished.

These letters were most welcome, and Escalante wrote in reply to say what had happened in the town, and all that was asked for arrived very quickly.

About this time we set up a tall and sumptuous cross in our camp, and Cortés ordered the Indians of Tzumpantzingo and those who dwelt in the houses near our camp to whitewash it, and it was beautifully finished.

I must cease writing about this and return to our new friends the Caciques of Tlaxcala, who when they saw that we did not go to their city, came themselves to our camp and brought poultry and tunas,¹ which were then in season, each one brought some of the food which he had in his house and gave it to us with the greatest good will without asking anything in return, and they always begged Cortés to come with them soon to their city. As we had promised to wait six days for the return of the Mexicans, Cortés put off the Tlaxcalans with fair speeches. When the time expired, according to their word, six chieftains, men of great importance, arrived from Mexico, and brought a rich present from the great Montezuma consisting of valuable

¹ Tuna=the prickly pear, the fruit of the Nopal Cactus (Opuntia).

gold jewels wrought in various shapes worth three thousand pesos in gold, and two hundred pieces of cloth, richly worked with feathers and other patterns. When they offered this present the Chieftains said to Cortés that their Lord Montezuma was delighted to hear of our success, but that he prayed him most earnestly on no account to go with the people of Tlaxcala to their town, nor to place any confidence in them, that they wished to get him there to rob him of his gold and cloth, for they were very poor, and did not possess a decent cotton cloak among them, and that the knowledge that Montezuma looked on us as friends, and was sending us gold and jewels and cloth, would still more induce the Tlaxcalans to rob us.

Cortés received the present with delight, and said that he thanked them for it and would repay their Lord Montezuma with good works, and if he should perceive that the Tlaxcalans had that in mind against which Montezuma had sent them to warn him, they would pay for it by having all their lives taken, but he felt sure they would be guilty of no such villainy, and he still meant to go and see what they would do.

While this discussion was proceeding, many other messengers from Tlaxcala came to tell Cortés that all the old Caciques from the Capital and from the whole province had arrived at our ranchos and huts, in order to see Cortés and all of us, and to take us to their city. When Cortés heard this he begged the Mexican Ambassadors to wait for three days for the reply to their prince, as he had at present to deliberate and decide about the past hostilities and the peace which was now offered, and the Ambassadors said that they would wait.

What the old Caciques said to Cortés I will now go on to relate.

CHAPTER LXXIV.

How the old Caciques of Tlaxcala came to our Camp to beg Cortés and all of us to go with them at once to their city, and what happened about it.

WHEN the old Caciques from all Tlaxcala saw that we did not come to their city, they decided to come to us, some in litters, others in hammocks or carried on men's backs, and others on foot. These were the Caciques already mentioned by me, named Masc Escasi, Xicotenga the elder, Guaxolocingo, Chichimecatecle, and Tecapaneca of Topey-anco.¹ They arrived at our camp with a great company of chieftains, and with every sign of respect made three obeisances to Cortés and to all of us, and they burnt copal and touched the ground with their hands and kissed it, and Xicotenga the elder began to address Cortés in the following words:—

“Malinche, Malinche,² we have sent many times to implore you to pardon us for having attacked you and to state our excuse, that we did it to defend ourselves from the hostility of Montezuma and his powerful forces, for we believed that you belonged to his party and were allied to him. If we had known what we now know, we should not only have gone out to receive you on the roads with supplies of food, but would even have had them swept for you, and we would even have gone to you to the sea where you keep your *acales* (which are the ships). Now that you have pardoned us, what I and all these Caciques have come to request is, that you will come at once with us to our City, where we will give you of all that we possess and will serve you with our persons and property. Look to it

¹ Padre Rivera gives the names of the four Caciques of Tlaxcala as Maxixcatzin, Xicotencatl, Tlehuexolotzin, and Citlalpopocatzin. (*Anales Mexicanos*, p. 98.)

² Sometimes spelt Malinchi, sometimes Malinche.

Malinche that you do not decide otherwise or we will leave you at once, for we fear that perchance these Mexicans may have told you some of the falsehoods and lies that they are used to tell about us. Do not believe them nor listen to them, for they are false in everything, and we well know that it is on their account that you have not wished to come to our City."

Cortés answered them with cheerful mien and said, that it was well known, many years before we had come to these countries, what a good people they were and that it was on this account that he wondered at their attacking us.

He said that the Mexicans who were there were [merely] awaiting a reply which he was sending to their Lord Montezuma.

He thanked them heartily for what they said about our going at once to their city and for the food which they were continually sending and for their other civilities, and he would repay them by good deeds. He said that he would already have set out for their City if he had had anyone to carry the *tepuzques* (that is the cannon). As soon as they heard these words the Tlaxcalans were so pleased that one could see it in their faces, and they said "So this is the reason why you have delayed, and never mentioned it." And in less than half an hour they provided over five hundred Indian carriers.

The next day early in the morning we began our march along the road to the Capital of Tlaxcala keeping in good formation, the artillery as well as the horsemen, musketeers, crossbowmen and the rest, as it was always our custom to do.

The messengers of Montezuma had already begged Cortés that they might go with us to see how affairs were settled at Tlaxcala and that he would despatch them from there, and that they should be quartered in his own

lodgings so as not to receive any insults, for, as they said, they feared such from the Tlaxcalans.

Before going on any further I wish to say that in all the towns we had passed through, and in others where they had heard of us, Cortés was called Malinche, and so I will call him Malinche from now henceforth in all the accounts of conversations which were held with any of the Indians, both in this province as well as in the City of Mexico. And I will not call him Cortés except in such places as it may be befitting.

The reason why he was given this name is that Doña Marina, our interpreter, was always in his company, particularly when any Ambassadors arrived, and she spoke to them in the Mexican language. So that they gave Cortés the name of "Marina's Captain" and for short Malinche.

This name was also attached to a certain Juan Perez de Artiaga¹ (a settler at Puebla) because he always went with Doña Marina and Jerónimo de Aguilar in order to learn the language, and for this reason they called him Juan Perez Malinche, as a title of distinction to Artiaga, as we learnt about two years later on.

I have liked to call some of these things to mind although there is no particular reason for it, excepting that it should be understood from now onwards that when Malinche is mentioned it means Cortés.

I also wish to say that from the time we entered the territory of Tlaxcala until we set out for the city, twenty

¹ Written in the original Artiaga or Artiago. In the letter from the army of Cortés to the Emperor (Icazbalceta's *Coleccion de Documentos para la Historia de México*) the name is signed as what appears to be Juan Perez de Aquitiano, but the word Aquitiano is so imperfectly written that Icazbalceta has printed it in a different type as doubtful.

four days had elapsed, and we entered the city on the 23rd September, 1519. Now let us begin a fresh chapter and I will relate what happened to us there.

CHAPTER LXXV.

How we went to the City of Tlaxcala, and what the old Caciques did, about the present that they gave us, and how they brought their daughters and nieces, and what else happened.

WHEN the Caciques saw that our baggage was on the way to their city, they at once went on ahead to see that everything was ready for our reception and that our quarters were decked with garlands.

When we arrived within a quarter of a league of the city, these same Caciques who had gone on ahead came out to receive us, and brought with them their sons and nephews and many of the leading inhabitants, each group of kindred and clan and party by itself. There were four parties in Tlaxcala, without counting that of Tecapaneca the lord of Topeyanco which made five. Their followers also came from all parts of the country wearing their different liveries, and although they were made of henequen, for there was no cotton to be obtained, they were very fine and beautifully embroidered and painted. Then came the priests from all parts of the province, and they were very numerous on account of the great oratories which they possess, which I have said are called Cues by the people, and are the places where they keep their idols and offer sacrifices. These priests carried braziers with live coals and incense and fumigated all of us, and some of them were clothed in very long garments like fur cloaks and these were white, and they wore hoods over them which looked like those used by canons, as I have already said, and their hair was very long and tangled so that it could

not be parted unless it were cut, and it was clotted with blood which oozed from their ears, which on that day they had cut by way of sacrifice ; and they lowered their heads as a sign of humility when they saw us.

•The nails on their fingers were very long, and we heard it said that these priests were very pious and led good lives.

Many of the chieftains came near to Cortés and accompanied him, and when we entered the town there was not space in the streets and on the roofs for all the Indian men and women with happy faces who came out to see us. They brought us about twenty cones made of sweet scented native roses of various colours, and gave them to Cortés and to the other soldiers whom they thought were Captains, especially to the horsemen. When we arrived at some fine courts where our quarters were, Xicotenga the elder and Mase Escasi took Cortés by the hand and led him into his lodging. For each one of us had been prepared a bed of matting such as they use, and sheets of henequen. Our friends whom we had brought from Cempoala and Zocatlan were lodged near to us, and Cortés asked that the messengers from the great Montezuma might also be given quarters close to his lodging.

Although we could see clearly that we were in a land where they were well disposed towards us, and were quite at peace, we did not cease to be very much on the alert as was always our custom, and it appears that one captain whose duty it was to station the scouts and spies and watchmen said to Cortés, "It seems, sir, that the people are very peaceful and we do not need so many guards, nor to be so circumspect as we are accustomed to be." Cortés replied, "Well gentlemen, I can myself see all that you have brought to my notice, but it is a good custom always to be prepared, and although these may be very good people, we must not trust to their peacefulness, but must

be as alert as we should be if they intended to make war on us and we saw them coming on to the attack, for many captains have been defeated through overconfidence and carelessness. It is especially necessary for us always to be on the alert as we are so few in number, and whether it was done in good faith or bad, we must remember that the great Montezuma has sent to warn us." Let us stop talking about all the arrangements and order which we kept up in our watches and guards, and go on to say how Xicotenga the elder and Mase Escasi, who were the great Caciques, were greatly annoyed with Cortés and said to him through our interpreters, "Malinche, either you take us for enemies or you show signs in what we see you doing that you have no confidence in us or in the peace which you promised to us and we promised to you, and we say this to you because we see that you keep watch, and travelled along the road all ready for action in the same way as when you attacked our squadrons, and we believe that you, Malinche, do this on account of the treasons and abominations which the Mexicans have told you in secret so as to turn you against us. See to it that you do not believe them, for you are established here, and we will give you all that you desire, even ourselves and our children, and we are ready to die for you, so you can demand as hostages whatever you may wish."

Cortés and all of us marvelled at the courtesy and affection with which they spoke, and Cortés answered them that he had always believed them, and there was no need of hostages, it was enough to note their good will, and that as to being on the alert, it was always our custom, and they must not be offended at it. He thanked them for all they had offered us, and would repay them for their kindness in time to come. When this conversation was over, other chiefs arrived with a great supply of poultry and maize bread, and tunas and other fruits and vegetables which the

country produced, and supplied the camp very liberally, and during the twenty days that we stayed there there was always more than enough to eat.

We made our entry into the city, as I have said, on the 23rd September, 1519. I will leave off here, and go on to say what else happened.

CHAPTER LXXVI.

How Mass was said in the presence of many of the Caciques, and about a present which the old Caciques brought us.

EARLY next day Cortés ordered an Altar to be put up and Mass to be said, for now we had both the wine and the sacred wafers.

It was the priest Juan Diaz who said the Mass, for the Padre de la Merced was ill with fever and very feeble. There were present Mase Escasi and Xicotenga the elder and other Caciques. When Mass was over Cortés entered his lodging with some of us soldiers who usually accompanied him, and the two old Caciques, and Xicotenga said to him that they wished to bring him a present, and Cortés showed much affection to them, and said that they should bring it whenever they wished, so some mats were at once spread out and covered with a cloth, and they brought six or seven trifles of gold, and some stones of small value, and some loads of henequen cloth; it was all very poor and not even worth twenty dollars and when it had been presented, those Caciques said, laughing, "Malinche, we know well enough that as what we have to give is so small you will not receive it with good grace. We have already sent to tell you that we are poor and that we own neither gold nor riches, and the reason of it is that these traitorous and evil Mexicans and Montezuma, who is now their Lord, have taken all that we once possessed, when we asked them

for peace or a truce, to prevent their making war on us, so do not consider the small value of the gift, but accept it with a good grace as the gift of friends and servants which we will be to you." Then they brought, separately, a large supply of food.

Cortés accepted it most cheerfully, and said to them that he valued it more as coming from their hands with the good will with which it was offered, than he would a house full of grains of gold brought by others, and it was in this spirit that he accepted it, and he displayed much affection towards them.

It appears that it had been arranged among all the Caciques to give us from among their daughters and nieces the most beautiful of the maidens who were ready for marriage, and Xicotenga the elder said "Malinche, so that you may know more clearly our good will towards you and our desire to content you in everything, we wish to give you our daughters, to be your wives, so that you may have children by them, for we wish to consider you as brothers as you are so good and valiant. I have a very beautiful daughter who has not been married, and I wish to give her to you," so also Mase Escasi and all the other Caciques said that they would bring their daughters, and that we should accept them as wives, and they made many other speeches and promises. Throughout the day Mase Escasi and Xicotenga the elder never left Cortés' immediate neighbourhood. As Xicotenga the elder was blind from old age, he felt Cortés all over his head and face and beard and over all his body.

Cortés replied to them that, as to the gift of the women, he and all of us were very grateful and would repay them with good deeds as time went on. The Padre de la Merced was present and Cortés said to him "Señor Padre, it seems to me that this would be a good time to make an attempt to induce these Caciques to give up their

Idols and their sacrifices, for they will do anything we tell them to do on account of the great fear they have of the Mexicans." The friar replied, "Sir, that is true, but let us leave the matter until they bring their daughters and then there will be material to work upon, and your honour can say that you do not wish to accept them until they give up sacrifices—if that succeeds, good, if not we shall do our duty."

So thus the matter rested until next day, and what was done I will go on to relate.

CHAPTER LXXVII.

How they brought their daughters to present to Cortés and to all of us, and what was done about it.

THE next day the same old Caciques came and brought with them five beautiful Indian maidens, and for Indians they were very good looking and well adorned, and each of the Indian maidens brought another Indian girl as her servant, and all were the daughters of Caciques, and Xicotenga said to Cortés, "Malinche, this is my daughter who has never been married and is a maiden, take her for your own," and he gave her to him by the hand, "and let the others be given to the captains." Cortés expressed his thanks, and with every appearance of gratification said that he accepted them and took them as our own, but that for the present they should remain in the care of their parents. The Chiefs asked him why he would not take them now, and Cortés replied that he wished first to do the will of God our Lord, whom we believed in and worshipped, and that for which our Lord the King had sent us, which was to induce them to do away with their Idols, and no longer to kill and sacrifice human beings, and the other infamies they were wont to practise, and to lead them to

believe in that which we believed, that is in one true God, and he told them much more touching our holy faith, and in truth he expressed it very well, for Doña Marina and Aguilar, our interpreters, were already so expert at it that they explained it very clearly. He showed the Caciques an image of our Lady, with her precious Infant in her arms, and explained to them how that image was in the likeness of our Lady, who is called Santa Maria, who dwells in the high heavens and is the mother of our Lord, who is that Child Jesus whom she holds in her arms, whom she conceived by the grace of the Holy Spirit, being a virgin before His birth, and remaining a Virgin during His birth, and after His birth, and how that Great Lady prays for us to her precious Son who is our God and Lord, and he told them many other things which it was fitting to say about our holy faith. He also told them that if they wished to be our brothers and to have true friendship with us, so that we should willingly accept their daughters and take them, as they said, for our wives, that they should at once give up their evil Idols and believe in and worship our Lord God, who is He in whom we believe and whom we worship, and they would see how well things would go with them, for in addition to having good health and good seasons, other things would prosper with them, and when they died their souls would go to Heaven to enjoy glory everlasting; but that if they went on making sacrifices as they were accustomed to do to their Idols, which were devils, they would be led to Hell where they would burn for ever in live flames. And as in other discourses he had already said much about the giving up of their Idols, he said nothing more now and what they replied to it all is as follows:—

“Malinche, we have already understood from you before now, and we thoroughly believe that this God of yours and this great Lady are very good, but look you, you have only

just come to our homes, as time goes on we shall understand your beliefs much more clearly, and see what they are, and will do what is right. But how can you ask us to give up our Teules which for many years our ancestors have held to be gods and have made sacrifices to them and have worshipped them? Even if we, who are old men, might wish to do it to please you, what would our priests say, and all our neighbours, and the youths and children throughout the province? They would rise against us, especially as the priests have already consulted the greatest of our Teules, and he told them not to forget the sacrifice of men and all the rites they were used to practise, otherwise the gods would destroy the whole province with famine, pestilence and war." Thus they spoke and gave as their answer that we should not trouble to talk to them on that subject again for they were not going to leave off making sacrifices even if they were killed for it.

When we heard that reply which they gave so honestly and without fear, the Padre de la Merced, who was a wise man, and a theologian, said, "Sir, do not attempt to press them further on this subject, for it is not just to make them Christians by force, and I would not wish that you should do what we did in Cempoala, that is, destroy their Idols, until they have some knowledge of our Holy Faith. What good is it to take away now their Idols from one oratory or cue, if they carry them at once to another. It would be better that they should gradually feel the weight of our admonitions which are good and holy, so that later on they may realize the good advice which we are giving them." Furthermore three gentlemen, namely, Juan Velásquez de Leon and Francisco de Lugo, spoke to Cortés and said "The Padre is right in what he says, you have fulfilled your duty with what you have done, and do not touch again on this matter when speaking to these Caciques," and so the subject dropped. What we induced

the Caciques to do, by entreaty, was at once to clear out one of the cues, which was close by and had been recently built, and after removing the Idols, to clean it and white-wash it so that we could place a cross in it and the image of Our Lady, and this they promptly did. Then Mass was said there and the Cacicas were baptized. The daughter of the blind Xicotenga was given the name of Doña Luisa, and Cortés took her by the hand and gave her to Pedro de Alvarado, and said to Xicotenga that he to whom he gave her was his brother and his Captain, and that he should be pleased at it as she would be well treated by him, and Xicotenga was contented that it should be so. The daughter or niece of Mase Escasi was named Doña Elvira and she was very beautiful and it seems to me that she was given to Juan Velásquez de Leon. The others were given baptismal names, always with the title of nobility (doña), and Cortés gave them to Gonzalo de Sandoval, and Cristóbal de Olid and Alonzo de Ávila. When this had been done Cortés told them the reason why he put up two crosses, and that it was because their Idols were afraid of them, and that wherever we were encamped or wherever we slept they were placed in the roads; and at all this they were quite content.

Before I go on any further I wish to say about the Cacica the daughter of Xicotenga, who was named Doña Luisa and was given to Pedro de Alvarado, that when they gave her to him all the greater part of Tlascala paid reverence to her, and gave her presents, and looked on her as their mistress, and Pedro de Alvarado who was then a bachelor, had a son by her named Don Pedro, and a daughter named Doña Leonor who is now the wife of Don Francisco de la Cueva, a nobleman, and a cousin of the Duke of Alberquerque, who had by her four or five sons, very good gentlemen, and that lady Doña Leonor, is so very excellent a lady, as might be expected, being

the daughter of such a father, who was a commendador of [The Order of] Santiago, Adelantado and Governor of Guatemala, and the same who went to Peru with a great fleet, and through his relation to Xicotenga was a great Lord of Tlaxcala.

I must leave these stories and return to Cortés who questioned those Caciques and informed himself more completely about the affairs of Mexico. What they said about it is what I shall go on to relate.

CHAPTER LXXVIII.

How Cortés questioned Mase Escasi and Xicotenga about things in Mexico, and what account they gave of them.

CORTÉS then took those Caciques aside and questioned them very fully about Mexican affairs. Xicotenga, as he was the best informed and a great chieftain, took the lead in talking, and from time to time he was helped by Mase Escasi who was also a great chief.

He said that Montezuma had such great strength in warriors that when he wished to capture a great city or make a raid on a province, he could place a hundred and fifty thousand men in the field, and this they knew well from the experience of the wars and hostilities they had had with them for more than a hundred years past.

Cortés asked them how it was that with so many warriors as they said came down on them they had never been entirely conquered. They answered that although the Mexicans sometimes defeated them and killed them, and carried off many of their vassals for sacrifice, many of the enemy were also left dead on the field and others were made prisoners, and that they never could come so secretly that they did not get some warning, and that when they knew of their approach they mustered all

their forces and with the help of the people of Huexotzing they defended themselves and made counter attacks. Thus as all the provinces which had been raided by Montezuma and placed under his rule were ill disposed towards the Mexicans, and that as their inhabitants were carried off by force to the wars, they did not fight with good will; indeed it was from these very men that they received warnings; and for this reason they had defended their country to the best of their ability.

The place from which the most continuous trouble came to them was a very great city a day's march distant, which is called Cholula, whose inhabitants are most treacherous. It was there that Montezuma secretly mustered his companies and, as it was near by, they made their raids by night. Moreover, Mase Escasi said that Montezuma kept garrisons of many warriors stationed in all the provinces in addition to the great force he could bring from the city, and that all the provinces paid tribute of gold and silver, feathers, stones, cloth and cotton, and Indian men and women for sacrifice and others for servants, that he [Montezuma] was such a great prince that he possessed everything he could desire, that the houses where he dwelt were full of riches and [precious] stones and chalchihuites which he had robbed and taken by force from those who would not give them willingly, and that all the wealth of the country was in his hands.

Then they told us about the great staff of servants in his house, and the story would never cease were I to attempt to describe it all here, and of the many women he possessed, and how he married off some of them; in fact they gave us an account of everything.

Then they spoke of the great fortifications of the city, and what the lake was like, and the depth of water, and about the causeways that gave access to the city, and the wooden bridges in each causeway, and how one can go in

under which canoes could pass; but, if they were removed, the space between every two sections became an island, and all entrance to the town was completely cut off. Nearly the whole of the houses of the city were built in the water, and it was only possible to get from one building to another 'by means of drawbridges: or canoes. Balconies were attached to each house that were provided with a kind of breastwork, so that the inhabitants were able to defend themselves from the tops of the houses. Yet the whole town was well supplied with sweet water from the spring of Chapultepec that lay about two miles from the town, whence the water was partly conveyed to the houses by means of pipes, partly in boats through the canals, and then retailed to the inhabitants. With respect to the weapons employed by this nation, they consisted in two-edged lances that they threw by means of a thong, and would penetrate through any cuirass. They were likewise excellent shots with the bow and arrow, and carried pikes with blades made of flint that were of very skilful workmanship and as sharp as razors. Besides these, they carried shields, and wore cotton cuirasses. They likewise employed a great number of slingers, who were provided with round stones, long pikes, and sharp swords that arc used with both hands. To explain all this they brought forth large pieces of nequen, on which were depicted their battles and their art of warfare. When Cortes and we others considered we had gained sufficient information of these things, the discourse turned on subjects of greater importance. Our friends told us how and whence they came into this country, and how they had settled themselves there ; how it came that, notwithstanding their vicinity to the Mexicans, they resembled each other so little, and lived in perpetual warfare with each other.

They said that their ancestors had told them, that in times past there had lived among them men and women of giant size with huge bones, and because they were very bad people of evil manners that they had fought with them and killed them, and those of them who remained died off. So that we could see how huge and tall these people had been they brought us a leg bone of one of them which was very thick and the height of a man of ordinary stature, and that was the bone from the hip to the knee. I measured myself against it and it was as tall as I am although I am of fair size. They brought other pieces of bones like the first, but they were already eaten away and destroyed by the soil. We were all amazed at seeing those bones and felt sure that there must have been giants in this country, and our Captain Cortés said to us that it would be well to send that great bone to Castille so that His Majesty might see it, so we sent it with the first of our agents who went there.

These Caciques also told us that they had learnt from their forefathers that one of their Idols, to which they paid the greatest devotion, had told them that men would come from distant lands in the direction of the rising sun to subjugate them and govern them, and that if we were those men, they were rejoiced at it, as we were so good and brave, and that when they made peace with us they had borne in mind what their Idols had said, and for this reason they had given us their daughters so as to obtain relations who would defend them against the Mexicans.

When they had finished their discourse we were all astounded and said, can they possibly have spoken the truth? Then our Captain Cortés replied to them and said that certainly we came from the direction of the sunrise, and that our Lord the King had sent us for this very purpose that we should become as brothers to them ; for



Facsimile (reduced) of Title-page of
HERRERA, DECADE IV.

Showing Portraits of PEDRO DE ALVARADO, DIEGO DE ORDÁS, the Volcano of Popocatepetl, etc.

Reproduced and printed for the Hakluyt Society by Donald Macbeth, 1908.

he had heard of them, and that he prayed God to give us grace, so that by our hands and our intercession they would be saved, and we all said Amen.

The gentlemen who read this will be weary of hearing the discussions and conversations between us and the Tlaxcalans and the Tlaxcalans and us, so I would wish to finish them, but I feel bound to dwell on one other thing which they discussed with us, and that is the volcano near Huexotzingo which at the time we were in Tlaxcala was throwing out much fire, much more than usual. Our Captain Cortés and all of us were greatly astonished as we had never seen such a thing before. One of our Captains named Diego de Ordás was very anxious to go and see what sort of a thing it was, and asked leave of the general to ascend the mountain, and leave was given,¹ and he even expressly ordered him to do it. He took with him two of our soldiers and certain Indian chiefs from Huexotzingo, and the chiefs that he took with him frightened him by saying that when one was half way up Popocatepetl, for so the volcano is called, one could not endure the shaking of the ground and the flames and stones and ashes which were thrown out of the mountain, and that they would not dare to ascend further than where stood the cues of the Idols which are called the Teules of Popocatepetl. Nevertheless Diego de Ordás and his two companions went on up until they reached the summit, and the Indians who had accompanied them remained below and did not dare to make the ascent. It appears from what Ordás and the two soldiers said afterwards, that, as they ascended, the volcano began to throw out great tongues of flame, and half burnt stones of little weight and a great quantity of ashes, and that the whole of the

¹ This account of the ascent of Popocatepetl appears to be given in the wrong place by Bernal Díaz: it probably took place when the Spaniards left Cholula. See Cortés' Second Letter.

mountain range where the volcano stands was shaken, and that they stopped still without taking a step in advance for more than an hour, when they thought that the outburst had passed and not so much smoke and ashes were being thrown out; then they climbed up to the mouth which was very wide and round, and opened to the width of a quarter of a league. From this summit could be seen the great city of Mexico, and the whole of the lake, and all the towns which were built in it. This volcano is distant twelve or thirteen leagues from Mexico.

Ordás was delighted and astonished at the sight of Mexico and its cities and after having had a good look at the view he returned to Tlaxcala with his companions, and the Indians of Huexotzingo and of Tlaxcala looked on it as a deed of great daring. When he told his story to Captain Cortés and all of us, we were greatly astonished at it, for at that time we had not seen nor heard of such things as we have to-day, when we know all about it, and many Spaniards and even some Franciscan friars have made the ascent to the crater.

When Diego de Ordás went to Castille he asked the King for it [the mountain] as his [coat of] arms and his nephew who lives at Puebla, now bears them.

Since we have been settled in this land we have never known the volcano to throw out so much fire or make such a noise as it did when we first arrived, and it has even remained some years without throwing out any fire, up to the year 1539 when it threw up great flames and stones and ashes.

Let us cease telling about the volcano, for now that we know what sort of a thing it is, and have seen other volcanoes such as those of Nicaragua and Guatemala, one might have been silent about those of Huexotzingo, and left them out of the story.

I must tell how in this town of Tlaxcala we found

wooden houses furnished with gratings, full of Indian men and women imprisoned in them, being fed up until they were fat enough to be sacrificed and eaten. These prisons we broke open and destroyed, and set free the prisoners who were in them, and these poor Indians did not dare to go in any direction, only to stay there with us and thus escape with their lives. From now on, in all the towns that we entered, the first thing our Captain ordered us to do was to break open these prisons and set free the prisoners.

These prisons are common throughout the land and when Cortés and all of us saw such great cruelty, he showed that he was very angry with the Caciques of Tlaxcala, and quarrelled with them very angrily about it, and they promised that from that time forth they would not kill and eat any more Indians in that way. I said [to myself] of what benefit were all those promises, for as soon as we turned our heads they would commit the same cruelties. Let us leave this subject, and I will relate how we arranged to go to Mexico.

CHAPTER LXXIX.

How our Captain Hernando Cortés decided that all of us Captains and soldiers should go to Mexico, and what happened about it.

WHEN our Captain remembered that we had already been resting in Tlaxcala for seventeen days, and that we had heard so much said about the great wealth of Montezuma and his flourishing city, he arranged to take counsel with all those among our captains and soldiers whom he could depend on as wishing to advance, and it was decided that our departure should take place without delay, but there was a good deal of dissent expressed in camp about this

decision, for some soldiers said that it was a very rash thing to go and enter into such a strong city, as we were so few in number, and they spoke of the very great strength of Montezuma. Our Captain Cortés replied that there was now no other course open to us, for we had constantly asserted and proclaimed that we were going to see Montezuma, so that other counsels were useless.

His opponents seeing with what determination Cortés expressed himself, and knowing that many of us soldiers were ready to help him by crying: "Forward and good luck to us," dropped all further opposition. The men opposed [to Cortés] in this discussion were those who owned property in Cuba. I and other poor soldiers had always dedicated our souls to God who created them, and our bodies to wounds and hardships, and even to death in the service of Our Lord God and of His Majesty.

When Xicotenga and Mase Escaci, the lords of Tlaxcala, saw that we were determined to go to Mexico, their spirits were weighed down, and they were constantly with Cortés advising him not to enter on such an undertaking, and not to trust Montezuma neither in great things nor in small, nor any other Mexican, and not to put faith in the great show of reverence he had made, nor in his words, however humble and courteous they might be, nor even in all the presents that had been sent to him, nor in any of his promises, for all was the work of traitors, who would turn on him and take back in an hour all that they had given, and that he must be on his guard against them both by day and by night, for they felt sure that when we were most off our guard they would attack us. They advised us when we fought with them [the Mexicans] to leave none alive that we were able to kill, neither the youths, so that they should never be able to carry arms, nor the old, lest they should give counsel; and they gave us much other advice.

Our captain said to them that he thanked the Caciques for their good counsel, and he showed them much affection, and made them many promises, and he gave as presents to Xicotenga the elder, and to Mase Escasi and most of the other Caciques a great part of the fine cloth which Montezuma had presented, and told them that it would be a good thing to make peace between them and the Mexicans, so that they should become friends and they could then obtain salt and cotton and other merchandise. Xicotenga replied that peace was useless, and that enmity was deeply rooted in their hearts, for such were the Mexicans that, under cover of peace, they would only be guilty of greater treachery, for they never told the truth in anything that they promised, and that he was not to trouble about saying more on the subject, and that they could only again implore us to take care not to fall into the hands of such bad people.

We went on to talk about the road which we should take to reach Mexico, for the ambassadors from Montezuma, who remained with us and were to be our guides, said that the most level and the best road was by the city of Cholula, where the people were vassals of Montezuma and there we should receive proper attention. To all of us this appeared to be good advice, that we should go by that city. When however the Caciques of Tlaxcala heard that we wished to go by a road which the Mexicans were choosing for us, they became very sorrowful, and begged us in any case to go by Huexotzingo, where the people were their relations and our friends, and not by way of Cholula, for in Cholula Montezuma always kept his double dealings concealed.

For all that they talked and advised us not to enter into that city, our Captain, (in accordance with our counsel which had been well talked over,) still determined to go by Cholula, on the one hand, because all agreed that it was a large town, and well furnished with towers, and fine and

tall cues, and situated on a beautiful plain—and indeed at that time it looked from a distance like our city of Valladolid in Old Castile,—and on the other hand, because it was almost surrounded by other considerable towns and could provide ample supplies, and our friends of Tlaxcála were near at hand. We intended to stay there until we could decide how to get to Mexico without having to fight for it, for the great power of the Mexicans was a thing to be feared, and unless God our Lord, by His Divine mercy which always helped us and gave us strength, should first of all so provide, we could not enter Mexico in any other manner.

After much discussion it was settled that we should take the road by Cholula, and Cortés at once sent messengers to ask the people of Cholula how it happened that being so near to us they had not come to visit us, and pay that respect which was due to us as the messengers of so great a prince as the King who had sent us to the country to tell them of their salvation. He then requested all the Caciques and priests of that city to come and see us and give their fealty to our Lord and King, and if they did not come he would look upon them as ill disposed towards us. While he was giving this message and saying other things about which it seemed right that they should be informed, someone came to tell Cortés that the great Montezuma had sent four Ambassadors with presents of gold, (for so far as we have seen they never send a message without a present of gold and cloth, as it is looked on as an affront to send a message without sending a present with it,) and what these messengers said I will go on to relate.

CHAPTER LXXX.

How the great Montezuma sent four Chieftains of great importance
• with a present of gold and cloth, and what they said to our Captain.

WHILE Cortés was talking to us all and to the Caciques of Tlaxcala about our departure and about warfare, they came to tell him that four Ambassadors, all four chieftains who were bringing presents, had arrived in the town.

Cortés ordered them to be called, and when they came before him they paid the greatest reverence to him and to all of us soldiers who were there with him, and presented their gift of rich jewels of gold of many sorts of workmanship, well worth two thousand dollars, and ten loads of cloth beautifully embroidered with feathers.

Cortés received them most graciously, and the Ambassadors said, on behalf of their Lord Montezuma, that he greatly wondered that we should stay so many days among a people who were so poor and so ill bred, who were so wicked, and such traitors and thieves that they were not fit even to be slaves, and that when either by day or by night we were most off our guard they would kill us in order to rob us. That he begged us to come at once to his city, and he would give us of all that he possessed, although it would not be as much as we deserved or he would like to give, and that although all the supplies had to be carried into the city, he would provide for us as well as he was able.

Montezuma did this so as to get us out of Tlaxcala, for he knew of the friendship we had made, which I have recorded in the chapter which treats of that subject, and how, to perfect it, they [the Tlaxcalans] had given their daughters to Malinche, and the Mexicans fully understood that our confederation could bring no good

to them. It was for this reason that they primed us with gold and presents, so as to induce us to go to their country or at least to get us out of Tlaxcala.

I must add regarding the ambassadors, that the people of Tlaxcala knew them well, and told our Captain that all of them were lords over towns and vassals, and men whom Montezuma employed to conduct affairs of the greatest importance.

Cortés thanked the messengers with many caressing expressions and signs of affection, and gave as his answer that he would go very soon to see their Lord Montezuma, and he begged them to remain a few days with us.

At that time Cortés decided that two of our Captains, men especially chosen, should go and see and speak to the great Montezuma, and see the great city of Mexico and its great armies and fortresses, and Pedro de Alvarado and Bernaldino Vásquez de Tápia had already set out on the journey, accompanied by some of the ambassadors of the great Montezuma who were used to being with us, and the four ambassadors who had brought the present remained with us as hostages. As at that time Cortés had sent those gentlemen trusting to good luck, we dissuaded him from it, saying that as he was sending them to Mexico merely to see the city¹ and its strength, we did not think it well advised, and that he should send and tell them not to proceed any further, so he wrote to them telling them to return at once. Besides this Bernaldino Vásquez de Tápia had already fallen ill of fever on the road, and as soon as they saw the letters they returned.

The ambassadors with whom they were travelling gave an account of their doings to Montezuma, and he asked them what sort of faces and general appearance had the two Teules who were coming to Mexico, and whether they

¹ See note at end of chapter.

were Captains, and it seems that they replied that Pedro de Alvarado was of very perfect grace both in face and person, that he looked like the Sun, and that he was a Captain, and in addition to this they brought with them a picture of him with his face very naturally portrayed, and from that time forth they gave him the name of Tonatio, which means the Sun or the child of the Sun, and so they called him ever after. Of Bernaldino Vásquez de Tápia, they said that he was a robust man, and of a very pleasant disposition, and that he also was a captain, and Montezuma was much disappointed that they had turned back again. Those ambassadors had reason for the description given to the Lord Montezuma both as to features and general appearance, for Pedro de Alvarado was very well made and active, and of good features and bearing, and both in appearance and in speech and in everything else he was so pleasing that he seemed always to be smiling. Bernaldino Vásquez de Tápia was somewhat sturdy, but he had a good presence; when they returned to our camp, we joked with them and told them that it was not a very successful mission that Cortés had sent them on. Let us leave this subject, for it does not bear much on our story, and I will tell about the messengers whom Cortés sent to Cholula and the reply that they brought.

NOTE.—In the original MS. the following passage is scratched out : “To see the great city of Mexico and its great army and fortresses, and it seems to me that they were Pedro de Alvarado and Bernaldino Vásquez de Tápia, and four of the ambassadors who brought the present remained as hostages, and the others went with them. As at that time I was very badly wounded and was fully occupied in trying to get well I did not know everything that was going on. I have already written to Mexico to three of my friends who were present throughout the conquest to send me an account [of what took place], so that the matter should not be in doubt. If I do not repeat here all that they say on the subject, I submit myself to the conquerors for correction, but I know without any doubt that Bernaldino Vásquez de Tápia, when on the road had a bad fever and remained at a town

called * * * *, and that Pedro de Alvarado went towards Mexico and turned back on the road, and that it was then that those four chieftains whom he took with him gave him the name of Tonatio, which in the Mexican language means Sun, and so they called him from that time on. They gave him that name because he was of fine presence and active and of good features and bearing, so that both in face and in speech and in everything else he was so pleasing, that he appeared always to be smiling. I also know what I have stated that these said Captains never arrived at Mexico, for when they set out from our camp all the soldiers were distressed at their going, and we said to our Captain, 'why send two such excellent men when there is a chance that they may be killed'; so Cortés wrote to them at once to return. I am not quite sure about it, I leave it to the judgment of those who were present. Others of the Conquistadores have told me that as Bernaldino Vásquez de Tápia was ill in one of the towns, that the messengers informed Montezuma of the fact, and he sent to say that neither he nor Pedro de Alvarado should proceed any further, for if they should go to Mexico there would not be a thing that would not be clearly known to all the soldiers."

CHAPTER LXXXI.

How the people of Cholula sent four Indians of little consequence to make their excuses for not having come to Tlaxcala, and what happened about it.

I HAVE already said in the last chapter how our Captain sent messengers to Cholula to tell the Caciques of that City to come and see us at Tlaxcala. When the Caciques understood what Cortés ordered them to do, they thought that it would be sufficient to send four unimportant Indians to make their excuses, and to say that because they were ill they had not come, and they brought neither food nor anything else, but merely stated that curt reply. The Caciques of Tlaxcala were present when these messengers arrived, and they said to our Captain, that the people of Cholula had sent those Indians to make a mock of him.

and of all of us, for they were only commoners of no standing; so Cortés at once sent them back with four other Cempoala Indians to tell the people of Cholula that they must send some chieftains, and as the distance was only five leagues that they must arrive within three days, otherwise he should look on them as rebels; that when they came he wished to tell them some things necessary for the salvation of their souls and for the cleanliness of their well being, and to receive them as friends and brothers as he had received their neighbours the people of Tlaxcala, and that if they decided otherwise and did not wish for our friendship that we should take measures which would displease them and anger them.

When the Caciques of Cholula had listened to that embassy they answered that they were not coming to Tlaxcala, for the Tlaxcalans were their enemies, and they knew that they [the Tlaxcalans] had said many evil things about them and about their Lord Montezuma; that it was for us to come to their city and to leave the confines of Tlaxcala, and that then if they did not do what they ought to do we could treat them as such as we had sent to say they were.

When our Captain saw that the excuse that they made was a just one we resolved to go to Cholula, and as soon as the Caciques of Tlaxcala perceived that we were determined to go there, they said to Cortés, "So you wish to trust to the Mexicans and not to us who are your friends, we have already told you many times that you must beware of the people of Cholula and of the power of Mexico, and so that you can receive all the support possible from us, we have got ready ten thousand warriors to accompany you." Cortés thanked them very heartily for this, but after consultation with all of us it was agreed that it would not be advisable to take so many warriors to a country in which we were seeking friends, and that it

would be better to take only one thousand, and this number we asked of the Tlaxcalans and said that the rest should remain in their houses. Let us leave this discussion and I will tell about our march.





MASK OF QUETZALCOATL.

From the original in the British Museum.

Reproduced and printed for the Hakluyt Society by Donald Macbeth, 1908.

APPENDIX.

MONTEZUMA'S GIFTS TO CORTÉS.

PADRE SAHAGUN, in his history of the Conquest, states that the first presents sent by Montezuma to Cortés were the ornaments of the Temple of Quetzalcoatl. Montezuma is reported to have said to his messengers: "Our Lord Quetzalcoatl has arrived, go and receive him and listen to what he says with great attention, see to it that you do not forget anything that he may say, you see that these jewels that you are presenting to him on my behalf, are all the priestly ornaments that belong to him." Then follows a detailed description of the ornaments of the deity beginning with "A mask worked in a mosaic of turquoise; this mask has a double and twisted snake worked in the same stones whose fold was (on) the projection of the nose, then the tail was parted from the head and the head with part of the body went above one of the eyes so that it formed an eyebrow, and the tail with a part of the body went over the other eye to form the other eyebrow. This mask was decked with a great and lofty crown, full of rich feathers, very long and beautiful, so that on placing the crown on the head, the mask was placed over the face," etc. The messengers also carried for presentation to Cortés "The ornaments or finery with which Tezcatlipoca was decorated," and "the ornaments and finery of the God called Tlalocantecutli" (Tlaloc). Also other ornaments of the same Quetzalcoatl, a mitre of tiger skins, etc.

It is interesting to know that the masks belonging to these four costumes and adornments of the Gods are still in existence, and that three of them can be seen in the

room devoted to American Antiquities in the British Museum.

The mask of Quetzalcoatl with the folds of the snake's body forming the eyebrows is easily identified, and the mask with the eyes of pyrites and the bands across the face is probably the mask of the God Tezcatlipoca.

The presents sent by Cortés to Charles V were conveyed to Spain in the charge of Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero and Francisco de Montejo, who sailed from Villa Rica in July, 1519, and reached Valladolid probably in October of the same year, where they awaited the arrival of the Emperor. Bernal Díaz says that Charles V was in Flanders when the presents arrived in Spain, but this is not correct; the Emperor was in Catalonia and did not return to Valladolid until some time in 1520, when he was on his way to Coruña, whence he sailed for Flanders in May, 1520.

It is, however, remarkable that these masks and ornaments of the Gods do not appear in the list of the presents, signed by Puertocarrero and Montejo, which accompanied the letter from the Municipality of Vera Cruz, dated 10th July, 1519, nor in the *Manual del Tesorero de la Casa de Contratacion de Sevilla*, both of which documents were published in the *Documentos Ineditos para la historia de España*, Madrid, 1842. A note to the former document states that the gifts and the letter from the Municipality were received by the King, Don Carlos, in Valladolid during Holy Week, in the beginning of April, 1520.

As, however, this note mentions the letter from the Municipality only (*con la carta y relacion de suso dicha que el concejo de la Vera Cruz envió*), and makes no mention of the first letter sent to the Emperor by Cortés himself, which letter has never yet been found, it is possible that the masks and ornaments of the Gods were sent separately with Cortés's first letter, and were therefore not included



MASK OF QUETZALCOATL.

From the original in the British Museum.

Reproduced and printed for the Hakluyt Society by Donald Macbeth, 1908.

in the list of gifts sent by Cortés in conjunction with the Municipality.

Las Casas (*Hist. de las Indias*, Cap. CXXI), writing about these presents, which included two great discs, one of gold and the other of silver, says:—"These wheels were certainly wonderful things to behold. I saw them and all the rest (of the presents) in the year 1520 at Valladolid, on the day that the emperor saw them, for they arrived there then sent by Cortés."

There is a tradition that Charles V presented these gifts to the Pope (a Medici) for the family Museum, which is well known to have existed, and of which the present Museum of Natural History at Florence is an outcome. If these gifts were sent to Rome, as is probable, soon after their arrival in Spain, they must have been sent to Leo X (Giovanni de Medici), who died in 1521. If they were not sent before the death of Leo X, it is not likely that they were sent to Italy during the troublous years that followed, but they may have been taken to Spain by Cortés himself when he returned in 1528 and have been given to Clement VII (Giulio de Medici) when Charles V was crowned by him as King of the Romans at Bologna in 1529-30.

However that may be, I have the authority of Professor H. Giglioli, the Director of the Museum of Natural History in Florence, for stating that nearly all the known group of objects—namely, mosaic masks, mosaic decorated knife-handles, gold-plated and figured atlatls (spear throwers), etc.—were at one time in Florence. At the end of the sixteenth century, when Aldrovandi, who was a friend of the the Medici, founded his celebrated Museum at Bologna, he was given some of these articles from the Medici Collection at Florence; and these, with the exception of the turquoise mosaic mask mentioned below, were discovered by Professor L. Pigorini in the attics of the Bologna University and transferred to the Ethnographic Museum in Rome,

which he was then forming and which now contains perhaps the finest collection of these relics. However, the greater number of them up to the years 1819-21 were registered in the Florentine Museum under the title of *Maschere e strumenti de popoli barbari*, and were partly sent thence to the *Officina delle pietre dure* in that city to be broken up and used for mosaic work, being *Maschere di cattivi turchesi*!

The last turquoise mosaic mask (now in Rome) was found a few years ago by Professor Luigi Pigorini in the store-room of the *pietre dure* laboratory, labelled with an inventory value of two francs and a half! As this mask shows the remains of tusk-like teeth, it is probably the Mask of Tlaloc.

Five years ago two magnificent plated atlatls¹ were found in the garret of a nobleman's palace in Florence, and sold by a dealer to the Ethnographical Museum in that city, for 500 *lire*, as "Indian Sceptres"; they were in a leathern case, stamped with the Medici arms. One of them is double-grooved, for throwing two darts at a time.

The whole number of known examples of this class of Mexican work did not exceed twenty in 1893, and of these eight are now in the British Museum. Many of them were bought by Mr. Christy and Sir Augustus Franks in Northern Italy, where they had been scattered after the dispersal of the Medicean Collection.

A full account of these interesting objects, by Mr. C. H. Read, is given, with illustrations, in *Archæologia*, vol. 1⁷, 1895. Professor Pigorini published, in 1885, a full acco.¹⁶, with coloured plates, of the collection in the Ethnograph¹¹ Museum at Rome, in the *Memorie* of the R. Accademi¹²a dei Lincei at Rome. Another interesting paper on the subject was published by Dr. W. Lehmann in *Glob¹³* (Band 91, No. 21), 6th June, 1907.

¹ Described and figured in the *American Anthropologist* (N.S.), vol. vii, No. 2, April-June, 1905.



MASK OF TEZCATLIPOCA.

From the original in the British Museum.

Reproduced and printed for the Hakluyt Society by Donald Macbeth, 1908.



MASK OF TEZCATLIPOCA.

Back view, showing how it was worn.

From the original in the British Museum.

Reproduced and printed for the Hakluyt Society by Donald Macbeth, 1908.

*salado de la lebrania de clachet de Liche en la indit. januar. 8 de 1608.
for. Hispania*

CARTAS YNSTRVCIO
NES Y CEDVLAS. DESV
MAGESTAD. I FORTIFICA
CIONES. ECHAS POREL IN
GENERO BAVTISTA AN.

TONELI. Ansi en españa como en las yn
dias occidentales. con las plantas y discrepciones
delos puertos y costas. Y offensa y defensa dellas
yan si mismo de algunas placas de africa como
se viscurso sebera. Año de. 1608

170
f. 16 - H. 11.

Facsimile of Title-page of

BAUTISTA ANTONELI: CARTAS, &c., 1608.

Reproduced, through the courtesy of Mr. Bernard Quaritch,
by Donald Macbeth for the Hakluyt Society, 1908.

El Rey

Bautista Antonel Vinos Via carta de veinte y nueve despachos
yella bien que amittais alas obras y fortificaciones de península
yento de los beinos y cinco Ducados de sueldo al mes que decia si se
nialo Verpanano Gencaza colera nro lugar Themiante y capitán
General de es Reinos y que don Luis Ferrer pruzgo que recí quita
sen y emar escripto al dho Don Luis Ferrer que a lu aya continuando
san Lorenzo el Real aboimreytas de fusis mil y quinientos setenta
y ocho Años.

Yo el Rey

Por mandado de su Magestad

Bautista Antonel

Juan delgado.

Abilla de península en el Reyno de Valencia esta quauina
y dos quadros de elevación del solo sea lugar de sus ciénas canas esta
situado sobre Vngenas de mas de ochenta pies de alto esta caña

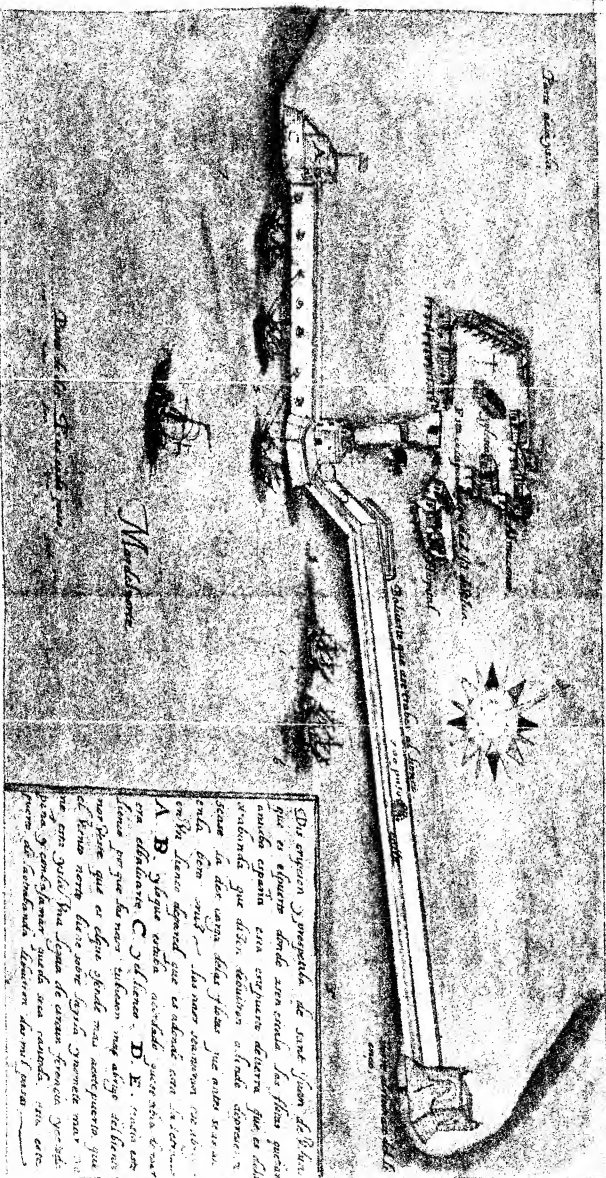
Facsimile of Prefatory leaf

BAUTISTA ANTONELI: CARTAS, &c., 1608.

Reproduced, through the courtesy of Mr. Bernard Quaritch,
by Donald Macbeth for the Hakluyt Society, 1908.



THE COAST OF MEXICO NEAR SAN JUAN DE ULUA, AFTER BAUTISTA ANTONELLI, 1608.
Reproduced through the courtesy of Mr. Bernard Quaritch, by Donald Macbeth for the Zoological Society, 1906.



Perspective of
SAN JUAN DE ULÚA, AFTER BAUTISTA ANTUNEL, 1638.
Reproduced through the courtesy of Mr. Hernand Quetzilich, by Donald Macbeth for the Habbagly Society, 1968



BOOK V.

THE MARCH TO MEXICO.

CHAPTER LXXXII.

How we went to the City of Cholula,¹ and of the great reception which they gave us there.



NE morning we started on our march to the city of Cholula and we took the greatest possible precautions, for, as I have often said, where we expected to encounter tumults or wars we were much more on the alert.

That day we went on to sleep at a river which runs within a short league of Cholula, where there is now a stone bridge, and there they put up for us some huts and ranchos. This same night the Caciques of Cholula sent some chieftains to bid us welcome to their country, and they brought supplies of poultry and maize bread, and said that in the morning all the Caciques and priests would come out to receive us, and they asked us to forgive their not having come sooner. Cortés told them

¹ Blotted out in the original "On the twelfth day of October in the year fifteen hundred and nineteen."—G. G.

through our interpreters Doña Marina and Jerónimo de Aguilar, that he thanked them both for the food they had brought and for the good will which they showed us.

We slept there that night after posting watchmen and spies and scouts, and at dawn we began to march towards the city. As we were going along and were already close to the town, the Caciques and priests and many other Indians came out to receive us. Most of them were clothed in cotton garments made like tunics, such as the Zapotec Indians wear, I say this for those persons who have been in that province and have seen them, for that is what they wear in that city. They came in a most peaceable manner and willingly, and the priests carried braziers containing incense with which they fumigated our Captain and us soldiers who were standing near him. When these priests and chiefs saw the Tlaxcalan Indians who came with us, they asked Doña Marina to tell the General that it was not right that their enemies with arms in their hands should enter their city in that manner. When our Captain understood this, he ordered the soldiers and the baggage to halt, and, when he saw us all together and that no one was moving, he said—"It seems to me, Sirs, that before we enter Cholula these Caciques and priests should be put to the proof with a friendly speech, so that we can see what their wishes may be; for they come complaining of our friends the Tlaxcalans and they have much cause for what they say, and I want to make them understand in fair words the reason why we come to their city, and as you gentlemen already know, the Tlaxcalans have told us that the Cholulans are a turbulent people, and, as it would be a good thing that by fair means they should render their obedience to His Majesty, this appears to me to be the proper thing to do."

Then he told Doña Marina to call up the Caciques and priests to where he was stationed on horseback with all of

around him, and three chieftains and two priests came at once, and they said—"Malinche, forgive us for not coming to Tlaxcala to see you and to bring food, it was not for want of good will but because Mase Escasi and Xicotenga and all Tlaxcala are our enemies, and have said many evil things of us and of the Great Montezuma our Prince, and as though what they said were not enough, they now have the boldness, under your protection, to come armed into our city, and we beg you as a favour to order them to return to their own country, or at least to stay outside in the fields and not to enter our city in such a manner." But as for us they said that we were very welcome.

As our Captain saw that what they said was reasonable, he at once sent Pedro de Alvarado and Cristóbal de Olid, the Quartermaster, to ask the Tlaxcalans to put up their huts and ranchos there in the fields, and not to enter the city with us, excepting those who were carrying the cannon, and our friends from Cempoala, and he told them to explain to the Tlaxcalans that the reason why he asked them to do so was that all the Caciques and priests were afraid of them, and that when we left Cholula on our way to Mexico we would send to summon them, and that they were not to be annoyed at what he was doing. When the people of Cholula knew what Cortés had done, they appeared to be much more at ease.

Then Cortés began to make a speech to them, saying that our Lord and King, whose vassals we were, had very great power and held beneath his sway many great princes and Caciques, and that he had sent us to these countries to give them warning, and command them not to worship Idols, nor sacrifice human beings, or eat their flesh, or practice sodomy or other uncleanness, and as the road to Mexico, whither we were going to speak with the Great Montezuma, passed by there, and there was no other shorter road, we had come to visit their city and to treat

4 MONTEZUMA INCITES THE PEOPLE OF CHOLULA

them as brothers. As other great Caciques had given their obedience to His Majesty, it would be well that they should give theirs as the others had done.

They replied that we had hardly entered into their country, yet we already ordered them to give up their Teules (for so they called their Idols), and that they could not do it. As to giving their obedience to our King, they were content to do so. And thus they pledged their word, but it was not done before a notary. When this was over we at once began our march towards the City, and so great was the number of people who came out to see us that both the streets and house tops were crowded, and I do not wonder at this for they had never seen men such as we are, nor had they ever seen horses.

They lodged us in some large rooms where we were all together with our friends from Cempoala and the Tlaxcalans who carried the baggage, and they fed us on that day and the next very well and abundantly. I will stop here and go on to say what else happened.

CHAPTER LXXXIII.

How, at the orders of Montezuma, they had planned to kill us in the City of Cholula, and what happened about it.

AFTER the people of Cholula had received us in the festive manner already described, and most certainly with [a show of] good will, it presently appeared that Montezuma sent orders to his ambassadors, who were still in our company, to negotiate with the Cholulans that an army of 20,000 men which Montezuma had sent and equipped, should on entering the city, join with them in attacking us by night or by day, get us into a hopeless plight,¹ and bring all

¹ *Acapillasen*; literally, place us in chapel, *i.e.*, the place where those condemned to death spend their last night.

of us that they could [capture] bound to Mexico. And he sent grand promises together with many presents of jewels and cloths, also a golden drum, and he also sent word to the priests of the city that they were to retain twenty of us as sacrifice to their idols.

All was in readiness and the warriors whom Montezuma quickly sent were stationed in some ranchos and some rocky thickets about half a league from Cholula and some were already posted within the houses, and all had their arms ready for use, and had built up breastworks on the *Azoteas* and had dug holes and ditches in the streets so as to impede the horsemen, and they had already filled some houses with long poles and leather collars and cords with which they were to bind us and lead us to Mexico; but our Lord God so ordained that all their plots should be turned against them.

Let us leave this now and go back to say that when, as I have said, they had taken us to our quarters they fed us very well for the first two days, and although we saw them so peacefully inclined, we never gave up our good custom of keeping fully prepared, and on the third day they neither gave us anything to eat nor did any of the Caciques or priests make their appearance, and if any Indians came to look at us, they did not approach us, but remained some distance off, laughing at us as though mocking us. When our Captain saw this, he told our interpreters Doña Marina and Jerónimo de Aguilar to tell the Ambassadors of the Great Montezuma, who remained with us, to order the Caciques to bring some food, but all they brought was water and fire wood, and the old men who brought it said that there was no more maize.

That same day other Ambassadors arrived from Montezuma, and joined those who were already with us and they said to Cortés, very impudently, that their Prince had

sent them to say that we were not to go to his city because he had nothing to give us to eat, and that they wished at once to return to Mexico with our reply. When Cortés saw that their speech was unfriendly, he replied to the Ambassadors in the blindest manner, that he marvelled how such a great Prince as Montezuma should be so vacillating, and he begged them not to return to Mexico, for he wished to start himself on the next day, to see their Prince, and act according to his orders, and I believe that he gave the Ambassadors some strings of beads and they agreed to stay.

When this had been done, our Captain called us together, and said to us—"I see that these people are very much disturbed, and it behoves us to keep on the alert, in case some trouble is brewing among them," and he at once went for the principal Cacique, whose name I now forget, telling him either to come himself or to send some other chieftains. The Cacique replied that he was ill and could not come.

When our Captain heard this, he ordered us to bring before him, with kindly persuasion, two of the numerous priests who were in the great Cue near our quarters. We brought two of them, without doing them any disrespect, and Cortés ordered each of them to be given a chalchihuite, which are held by them to be as valuable as emeralds, and addressing them with friendly words he asked them what was the reason that the Cacique and chieftains and most of the priests were frightened, for he had sent to summon them and they did not want to come. It seems that one of these priests was a very important personage among them, who had charge of or command over all the Cues in the City, and was a sort of Bishop among the priests and was held in great respect. He replied that they, who were priests, had no fear of us, and if the Cacique and chieftain did not wish to come, he would go himself and summon them, and that if he spoke to them he

believed they would do as he told them and would come.

Cortés at once told him to go, and that his companion should await his return. So the priests departed and summoned the Cacique and chieftains who returned in his company to Cortés' quarters. Cortés asked them, through our interpreters, what it was they were afraid of, and why they had not given us anything to eat, and said that if our presence in their city were an annoyance to them, we wished to leave the next day for Mexico to see and speak to the Lord Montezuma, and he asked them to provide carriers for the transport of the baggage and *tepusques* (which are the cannon) and to send us some food at once.

The Cacique was so embarrassed that he could hardly speak, he said that they would look for the food, but their Lord Montezuma had sent to tell them not to give us any, and was not willing that we should proceed any further.

While this conversation was taking place, three of our friends, the Cempoala Indians, came in and said secretly to Cortés, that close by where we were quartered they had found holes dug in the streets, covered over with wood and earth, so that without careful examination one could not see them, that they had removed the earth from above one of the holes and found it full of sharp pointed stakes to kill the horses when they galloped, and that the *Azoteas* had breastworks of *adobes*¹ and were piled up with stones, and certainly this was not done with good intent for they also found barricades of thick timbers in another street. At this moment eight Tlaxcalans arrived, from the Indians whom we had left outside in the fields with orders that they were not to enter Cholula, and they said to Cortés—

¹ Sun-dried bricks.

"Take heed, Malinche, for this City is ill disposed, and we know that this night they have sacrificed to their Idol, which is the God of War, seven persons, five of them children, so that the God may give them victory over you, and we have further seen that they are moving all their baggage and women and children out of the city." When Cortés heard this, he immediately sent these Tlaxcalans back to their Captains, with orders to be fully prepared if we should send to summon them, and he turned to speak to the Cacique, priests and chieftains of Cholula and told them to have no fear and show no alarm, but to remember the obedience which they had promised to him, and not to swerve from it, lest he should have to chastise them. That he had already told them that we wished to set out on the morrow and that he had need of two thousand¹ warriors from the city to accompany us, just as the Tlaxcalans had provided them, for they were necessary on the road. They replied that the men would be given, and asked leave to go at once to get them ready, and they went away very well contented, for they thought that between the warriors with whom they were to supply us, and the regiments sent by Montezuma, which were hidden in the rocky thickets and barrancas, we could not escape death or capture, for the horses would not be able to charge on account of certain breastworks and barricades which they immediately advised the troops to construct, so that only a narrow lane would be left through which it would be impossible for us to pass. They warned the Mexicans to be in readiness as we intended to start on the next day and told them that they were going to give us two thousand² warriors to accompany us, so that as we marched along, off our guard, between the two forces our capture would

¹ "Blotted out 'three or four.'—G. G.

² Blotted out "four."—G. G.

be sure and they would be able to bind us, and this they might look on as a certainty, for they [the Cholulans] had made sacrifices to their War Idols who had promised them victory.

Let us cease speaking of this which they looked on as a sure thing and return to our Captain who, as he wished to be more thoroughly informed about the plot and all that was happening, told Doña Marina to take more chalchihuites to the two priests who had been the first to speak, for they were not afraid, and to tell them with friendly words that Malinche wished them to come back and speak to him, and to bring them back with her. Doña Marina went and spoke to the priests in the manner she knew so well how to use, and thanks to the presents they at once accompanied her. Cortés addressed them and asked them to say truly what they knew, for they were the priests of Idols and chieftains and ought not to lie, and that what they should say would not be disclosed in any manner, for we were going to leave the next morning, and he would give them a large quantity of cloth. They said the truth was that their Lord Montezuma knew that we were coming to their city, and that every day he was of many minds and could not come to any decision on the matter, that sometimes he sent to order them to pay us much respect when we arrived and to guide us on the way to his city, and at other times he would send word that it was not his wish that we should go to Mexico, and now recently his [Gods] Tescatepuca and Huichilobos, to whom he paid great devotion, had counselled him that we should either be killed here in Cholula or should be sent, bound, to Mexico. That the day before he had sent out twenty thousand warriors, and half of them were already within this city and the other half were stationed near by in some gullies, and that they already knew that we were about to start to-morrow; they also

told us about the barricades which they had ordered to be made and the two thousand warriors that were to be given to us, and how it had already been agreed that twenty of us were to be kept to be sacrificed to the Idols of Cholula.

Cortés ordered these men to be given a present of richly embroidered cloth, and told them not to say anything [about the information they had given us] for, if they disclosed it, on our return from Mexico we would kill them. He also told them that we should start early the next morning, and he asked them to summon all the Caciques to come then so that he might speak to them.

That night Cortés took counsel of us as to what should be done, for he had very able men with him whose advice was worth having, but as in such cases frequently happens, some said that it would be advisable to change our course and go by Huexotzingo, others that we must manage to preserve the peace by every possible means and that it would be better to return to Tlaxcala, others of us gave our opinion that if we allowed such treachery to pass unpunished, wherever we went we should be treated to worse [treachery], and that being there in the town, with ample provisions, we ought to make an attack, for the Indians would feel the effect of it more in their own homes than they would in the open, and that we should at once warn the Tlaxcalans so that they might join in it. All thought well of this last advice. As Cortés had already told them that we were going to set out on the following day for this reason we should make a show of tying together our baggage, which was little enough, and then in the large courts with high walls, where we were lodged, we should fall on the Indian warriors, who well deserved their fate. As regards the Ambassadors of Montezuma, we should dissemble and tell them that the evil-minded Cholulans had intended treachery and had attempted to put the blame for it on their Lord Montezuma, and on themselves

as his Ambassadors, but we did not believe Montezuma had given any such orders, and we begged them to stay in their apartments and not have any further converse with the people of the city, so that we should not have reason to think they were in league with them in their treachery, and we asked them to go with us as our guides to Mexico.

They replied that neither they themselves nor their Lord Montezuma knew anything about that which we were telling them. Although they did not like it, we placed guards over the Ambassadors, so that they could not go out without our permission, and Montezuma should not come to know that we were well aware how it was he who had ordered it to be done.

At that night we were on the alert and under arms with the horses saddled and bridled, and with many sentinels and patrols, although indeed it was always our custom to keep a good watch, for we thought that for certain all the companies of the Mexicans as well as the Cholulans would attack us during the night.

There was an old Indian woman, the wife of a Cacique, who knew all about the plot and trap which had been arranged, and she had come secretly to Doña Marina our interpreter, having noticed that she was young and good looking and rich, and advised her, if she wanted to escape with her life, to come with her to her house, for it was certain that on that night or during the next day we were all going to be killed, for the Great Montezuma had so arranged and commanded that the Mexicans and the people of the city were to join forces, and not one of us was to be left alive, except those who would be carried bound to Mexico. Because she knew of this, and on account of the compassion she felt for Doña Marina, she had come to tell her that she had better get all her possessions together and come with her to her house, and

she would there marry her to her son, the brother of a youth who was with another old woman who accompanied her.

When Doña Marina understood this (as she was always very shrewd) she said to her, "O mother, thank you much for this that you have told me, I would go with you at once but that I have no one here whom I can trust to carry my clothes and jewels of gold of which I have many, for goodness sake, mother, wait here a little while, you and your son, and to-night we will set out, for now, as you can see, these Teules are on the watch and will hear us."

The old woman believed what she said, and remained chatting with her, and Doña Marina asked her how they were going to kill us all, and how and when and where the plot was made. The old woman told her neither more nor less than what the two priests had already stated, and Doña Marina replied—"If this affair is such a secret, how is it that you came to know about it?" and the old woman replied that her husband had told her, for he was a captain of one of the parties in the city, and as captain he was now away with his warriors giving orders for them to join the squadrons of Montezuma in the barrancas, and she thought that they were already assembled waiting for us to set out, and that they would kill us there; as to the plot she had known about it for three days, for a gilded drum had been sent to her husband from Mexico, and rich cloaks and jewels of gold had been sent to three other captains to induce them to bring us bound to their Lord Montezuma.

When Doña Marina heard this she deceived the old woman and said—"How delighted I am to hear that your son to whom you wish to marry me is a man of distinction. We have already talked a good deal, and I do not want them to notice us, so Mother you wait here while I begin to bring my property, for I cannot bring it all at once, and you and your son, my brother, will take care of it, and then

we shall be able to go." The old woman believed all that was told her, and she and her son sat down to rest. Then Doña Marina went swiftly to the Captain and told him all that had passed with the Indian woman. Cortés at once ordered her to be brought before him, and questioned her about these treasons and plots, and she told him neither more nor less than the priests had already said, so he placed a guard over the woman so that she could not escape.

When dawn broke, it was a sight to see the haste with which the Caciques and priests brought in the warriors, laughing and contented as though they had already caught us in their traps and nets, and they brought more Indian warriors than we had asked for, and large as they are (for they still stand as a memorial of the past) the courtyards would not hold them all.

Early as it was when the Cholulans arrived with the warriors, we were already quite prepared for what had to be done. The soldiers with swords and shields were stationed at the gate of the great court so as not to let a single armed Indian pass out. Our Captain was mounted on horseback with many soldiers round him, as a guard, and when he saw how very early the Caciques and priests and warriors had arrived, he said—"How these traitors long to see us among the barrancas so as to gorge on our flesh, but Our Lord will do better for us." Then he asked for the two priests who had let out the secret, and they told him that they were at the gate of the courtyard with the other Caciques who wished to come in, and he sent our interpreter, Aguilar, to tell them to go to their houses, for he had no need of their presence now. This was in order that, as they had done us a good turn, they should not suffer for it, and should not get killed. Cortés was on horseback and Doña Marina near to him, and he asked the Caciques, why was it, as we had done them no harm what-

ever, that they had wished to kill us on the previous night? and why should they turn traitors against us, when all we had said or done was to warn them against certain things of which we had already warned all the towns that we had passed through, namely, that they should not be wicked and sacrifice human beings, nor worship Idols, nor eat the flesh of their neighbours, nor commit unnatural crimes, but that they should live good lives; and to tell them about matters concerning our holy faith, and this without compulsion of any kind. To what purpose then had they quite recently prepared many long and strong poles with collars and cords and placed them in a house near to the Great Temple, and why for the last three days had they been building barricades and digging holes in the streets and raising breastworks on the roofs of the houses, and why had they removed their children and wives and property from the city? Their ill will however had been plainly shown, and they had not been able to hide their treason. They had not even given us food to eat, and as a mockery had brought us firewood and water, and said that there was no maize. He knew well that in the barrancas near by, there were many companies of warriors and many other men ready for war who had joined the companies that night, laying in wait for us, ready to carry out their treacherous plans, thinking that we should pass along that road towards Mexico. So in return for our having come to treat them like brothers and to tell them what Our Lord God and the King have ordained, they wished to kill us and eat our flesh, and had already prepared the pots with salt and peppers and tomatoes. If this was what they wanted it would have been better for them to make war on us in the open field like good and valiant warriors, as did their neighbours the Tlaxcalans. He knew for certain all that had been planned in the city and that they had even promised to their Idol, the patron of warfare, that twenty of

us should be sacrificed before it, and that three nights ago they had sacrificed seven Indians to it so as to ensure victory, which was promised them; but as the Idol was both evil and false, it neither had, nor would have power against us, and all these evil and traitorous designs which they had planned and put into effect were about to recoil on themselves. Doña Marina told all this to them and made them understand it very clearly, and when the priests, Caciques, and captains had heard it, they said that what had been stated was true but that they were not to blame for it, for the Ambassadors of Montezuma had ordered it at the command of their Prince.

Then Cortés told them that the royal laws decreed that such treasons as those should not remain unpunished and that for their crime they must die. Then he ordered a musket to be fired, which was the signal that we had agreed upon for that purpose, and a blow was given to them which they will remember for ever, for we killed many of them,¹ so that they gained nothing from the promises of their false Idols.

Not two hours had passed before our allies, the Tlaxcalans, arrived, whom I have already said we had left out in the fields, and they had fought very fiercely in the streets where the Cholulans had posted other companies to defend the streets and prevent their being entered, but these were soon defeated. They [the Tlaxcalans] went about the city, plundering and making prisoners and we could not stop them, and the next day more companies from the Tlaxcalan towns arrived, and did great damage, for they were very hostile to the people of Cholula, and when we saw this, both Cortés and the captains and the soldiers, on account of the compassion that we had felt for them, restrained the Tlaxcalans from doing further damage, and

¹ Blotted out; "and others were burned."—G. G.

Cortés ordered Cristóbal de Olid to bring him all the Tlaxcalan captains together so that he could speak to them, and they did not delay in coming; then he ordered them to gather together all their men and go and camp in the fields, and this they did, and only the men from Cempoala remained with us.

Just then certain Caciques and priests of Cholula who belonged to other districts of the town, and said that they were not concerned in the treasons against us (for it is a large city and they have parties and factions among themselves), asked Cortés and all of us to pardon the provocation of the treachery that had been plotted against us, for the traitors had already paid with their lives. Then there came the two priests who were our friends and had disclosed the secret to us, and the old woman, the wife of the captain, who wanted to be the mother-in-law of Doña Marina, as I have already related, and all prayed Cortés for pardon.

When they spoke to him, Cortés made a show of great anger and ordered the Ambassadors of Montezuma, who were detained in our company, to be summoned. He then said that the whole city deserved to be destroyed, but that out of respect for their Lord Montezuma, whose vassals they were, he would pardon them, and that from now on they must be well behaved, and let them beware of such affairs as the last happening again, lest they should die for it.

Then, he ordered the Chiefs of Tlaxcala, who were in the fields, to be summoned, and told them to return the men and women whom they had taken prisoners, for the damage they had done was sufficient. Giving up the prisoners went against the grain with them [the Tlaxcalans], and they said that the Cholulans had deserved far greater punishment for the many treacheries they had constantly received at their hands. Nevertheless as Cortés

ordered it, they gave back many persons, but they still remained rich, both in gold and mantles, cotton cloth, salt and slaves. Besides this Cortés made them and the people of Cholula friends, and, from what I have since seen and ascertained, that friendship has never been broken.

Furthermore Cortés ordered all the priests and Caciques to bring back the people to the city, and to hold their markets and fairs, and not to have any fear, for no harm would be done to them. They replied that within five days the city would be fully peopled again, for at that time nearly all the inhabitants were in hiding. They said it was necessary that Cortés should appoint a Cacique for them, for their ruler was one of those who had died in the Court, so he asked them to whom the office ought to go, and they said to the brother [of the late Cacique] so Cortés at once appointed him to be Governor, until he should receive other orders.

In addition to this, as soon as he saw the city was reinhabited, and their markets were carried on in safety, he ordered all the priests, captains and other chieftains of that city to assemble, and explained to them very clearly all the matters concerning our holy faith, and told them that they must cease worshipping idols, and must no longer sacrifice human beings or eat their flesh, nor rob one another, nor commit the offences which they were accustomed to commit, and that they could see how their Idols had deceived them, and were evil things not speaking the truth; let them remember the lies which they told only five days ago when seven persons had been sacrificed to them and they promised to give them victory, therefore as all they tell to the priests and to them is altogether evil, he begged them to destroy the Idols and break them in pieces. That if they did not wish to do it themselves we would do it for them. He also ordered them to white-wash a temple, so that we might set up a cross there.

They immediately did what we asked them in the matter of the cross, and they said that they would remove their Idols, but although they were many times ordered to do it, they delayed. Then the Padre de la Merced said to Cortés that it was going too far, in the beginning, to take away their Idols until they should understand things better, and should see how our expedition to Mexico would turn out, and time would show us what we ought to do in the matter, that for the present the warnings we had given them were sufficient, together with the setting up of the Cross.

I will cease speaking of this and will tell how that city was situated on a plain, in a locality where there were many neighbouring towns, such as Tepeaca, Tlaxcala, Chalco, Tecamachalco, Huexotzingo and many others, so numerous that I will not name them, and it is a land fruitful in maize and other vegetables, and much Chili pepper, and the land is full of Magueys from which they make their wine. They make very good pottery in the city of red and black and white clay with various designs, and with it supply Mexico and all the neighbouring provinces as, so to say, do Talavera or Placencia in Spain. At that time there were many high towers in the city which were their Cues or oratories where the Idols stood, especially the Great Cue which was higher than that of Mexico, although the Mexican Cue was very lofty and magnificent. There were courts for the service of the Cues, and, as we understood, they possessed a very great *I'ol* whose name I forget, but among themselves they held it in great reverence, and people came from all parts to sacrifice to it and to hold services like Novenas and to make offerings of property they possessed. I remember that when we entered into that city and saw such white and lofty towers, it looked like Valladolid itself.

I must stop talking about this City and all that hap-

pened there, and say that the Squadrons sent by the Great Montezuma, which were already stationed in the ravines near Cholula and had, as was agreed, constructed barricades and narrow passages so that the horses could not gallop, as I have already related, as soon as they learned what had happened, returned, faster than at a walk, to Mexico and told Montezuma how it all happened. But fast as they went the news had already reached him, through the two Chieftains who had been with us and who went to him post-haste. We learned on good authority that when Montezuma heard the news he was greatly grieved and very angry, and at once sacrificed some Indians to his Idol Huichilobos, whom they looked on as the God of War, so that he might tell him what was to be the result of our going to Mexico, or if he would permit us to enter the city. We even knew that he was shut in at his devotions and sacrifices for two days in company with ten of the Chief Priests, and that a reply came from those Idols which was, that they advised him to send messengers to us to disclaim all blame for the Cholulan affair, and that with demonstrations of peace we should be allowed to enter into Mexico, and that when we were inside, by depriving us of food and water, or by raising some of the bridges, they would kill us; that one day only would suffice, if he attacked us, to leave none of us alive, and then he could offer his sacrifices to Huichilobos who had given this reply, and to Tescatepuca the god of Hell, and they could feast on our thighs and legs and arms, and the snakes and serpents and tigers which they kept in wooden cages, (as I shall tell later on at the proper time and place,) could gorge on our entrails and bodies and all that was left of us.

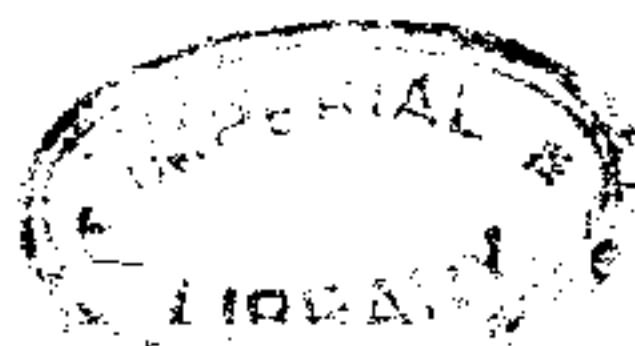
Let us stop talking about what Montezuma felt and say how this affair and punishment at Cholula became known throughout the provinces of New Spain and if we had a

reputation for valour before, (for they had heard of the wars at Potonchan and Tabasco, of Cingapacinga and Tlaxcala, and they called us Teules, which is to call us gods or evil things), from now on they took us for sorcerers, and said that no evil that was planned against us could be so hidden from us that it did not come to our knowledge, and on this account they showed us good will.

I think that the curious reader must be already satiated hearing this story about Cholula and I wish that I had finished writing about it, but I cannot avoid calling to mind the prisons of thick wooden beams which we found in the city, which were full of Indians and boys being fattened so that they could be sacrificed and their flesh eaten. We broke open all these prisons, and Cortés ordered all the Indian prisoners that were confined within them to return to their native countries, and with threats he ordered the Caciques and captains and priests of the city not to imprison any more Indians in that way, and not to eat human flesh. They promised not to do so, but what use were such promises? as they never kept them.

Let us anticipate and say that these were the great cruelties that the Bishop of Chiapas, Fray Bartolomé de las Casas, wrote about and never ceased talking about, asserting that for no reason whatever, or only for our pastime and because we wanted to, we inflicted that punishment, and he even says it so artfully in his book that he would make those believe, who neither saw it themselves, nor I now about it, that these and other cruelties about which he writes were true (as he states them) while it is altogether the reverse of true.¹ It did not happen as he describes it. Let the monks of the order of Santo Domingo see what they can read in the book in which he has written it, and

¹ Blotted out in the original: "I beg your Lordship's pardon for stating it so clearly."—G. G.



they will find it to be very different the one from the other. I also wish to say that some good Franciscan monks, who were the first friars whom his Majesty sent to this New Spain after the Conquest of Mexico, as I shall relate further on, went to Cholula to inform themselves and find out how and in what way that punishment was carried out, and for what reason, and the enquiry that they made was from the same priests and elders of the city, and after fully informing themselves from these very men, they found it to be neither more nor less than what I have written down in this narrative, and not as the Bishop has related it. If perchance we had not inflicted that punishment, our lives would have been in great danger on account of the squadron and companies of Mexican and Cholulan warriors who were there, and the barricades and breastworks, and if to our misfortune they had killed us there, this New Spain would not have been so speedily conquered, nor would another Armada have dared to have come, and if it did, it would have been under greater difficulty, for the Mexicans would have defended their ports, and they would still have continued in a state of Idolatry.

I have heard a Franciscan Friar called Fray Toribio Motolinea, who led a good life, say that it would have been better if that punishment could have been prevented, and they had not given cause for its being carried out; but, as it had been carried out, it was a good thing that all the Indians of the provinces of New Spain should see and understand that those Idols and all the rest of them were evil and lying, for it showed that all their promises turned out false, and they lost the adoration which the people had hitherto given them, and thenceforth they would not sacrifice to them, nor come on pilgrimages to them from other parts, as they used to do. From that time they did not care for it [the principal Idol] and removed it from the lofty cue where it had stood, and either hid it or broke it up, so

that it never appeared again, and they have put up another Idol in its place. Let us leave this subject and I will relate what we went on to do.

CHAPTER LXXXIV.

About certain messages and messengers that we sent to the Great Montezuma.

As fourteen days had already passed since we had come to Cholula we had nothing more to do there, for we saw that the city was again fully peopled, and that they held their markets, and we had established friendship between them and the people of Tlaxcala; and we had also set up a cross, and informed them about matters concerning our holy faith. But as we saw that the Great Montezuma was secretly sending spies to our camp to enquire and find out what our plans were and if we intended to go on to his city (for he came to know everything very thoroughly through the two Ambassadors who were in our company), our Captain determined to take counsel of certain captains and soldiers, whom he knew to be well disposed towards him (who besides being very valiant, were wise counsellors), because he never did anything without first asking our advice about it. It was agreed that we should send to tell the Great Montezuma, gently and amicably, that in order to carry out the purpose for which our Lord and King had sent us to these parts, (which was only to see him and tell him certain things which would be greatly to his benefit when he understood them), we had crossed many seas and distant lands, and that while we were marching towards his city, his ambassadors had guided us by way of Cholula, where they said the people were his vassals, and for the first two days after our arrival the people treated us very well, but on the next day they had

plotted a treason with the intention of killing us ; and as we are men of such character that it would be impossible to hide any matter of double dealing, or treachery, or iniquity, which they might wish to enact against us without our knowing of it at once, for this reason we punished some of those who intended to carry out the plot. As he [our Captain] knew that they were his [Montezuma's] subjects, [it was only] out of respect for his person, and on account of our great friendship, that he refrained from destroying and killing all those who were concerned in the treason. However, the worst of it all is that the priests and Caciques say it was on his advice and command, and that of his ambassadors, that they intended to do it. This of course we never believed, that such a great prince as he is could issue such orders, especially as he had declared himself our friend, and we had inferred from his character that since his Idols had put such an evil thought as making war on us into his head, he would surely fight us in the open field ; however, whether he fought in the open or in a town, by day or by night, we would kill those who thought of doing such a thing. But as we look upon him as our great friend and wish to see and speak to him, we are setting out at once for his city to give him a more complete account of what Our Lord the King had commanded us to do.

When Montezuma heard this message and learned through the people of Cholula that we did not lay all the blame on him, we heard it said that he returned again with his priests to fast and make sacrifices to his Idols, to know if they would again repeat their permission to allow us to enter into the city or no, and whether they would reiterate the commands they had already given him. The answer which they gave was the same as the first, that he should allow us to enter and that once inside the city he could kill us when he chose. His captains and

priests also advised him that if he should place obstacles in the way of our entry, we would make war on him through his subject towns, seeing that we had as our friends the Tlaxcalans, and all the Totonacs of the hills, and other towns which had accepted our alliance, and to avoid these evils the best and most sensible advice was that which Huichilobos had given.

Let us stop talking about what Montezuma had decided, and I will relate what he did about it and how we agreed to set out for Mexico, and that when we were ready to start messengers arrived from Montezuma with a present, and what he sent to say.

CHAPTER LXXXV.

How the Great Montezuma sent a present of gold, and what he sent to say to us, and how we decided to set out for Mexico, and what else happened about it.

So the great Montezuma again took counsel with his Huichilobos, and his priests and captains, and all advised him to allow us to enter the city, as there he could kill us in safety. When he heard the message which we sent to him concerning our friendship and the other fearless remarks, (to the effect that we were men from whom no treason which was plotted against us could be hidden without our finding it out, and that as for fighting, nothing suited us better, either in the open fields or in the towns, either by night or by day or in any way whatever) and as he had heard about our war with Tlaxcala, and knew of the affairs at Potonchan and Tabasco and Cingapacinga, and now about that at Cholula, he was dazed and even afraid. After much deliberation he despatched six chieftains with a present of gold and jewels of a variety of shapes which were estimated to be worth over two thousand dollars,

and he sent certain loads of very rich mantles beautifully worked.

When the Chiefs came before Cortés with the present they touched the ground with their hands and with great reverence, such as they use among themselves, they said—“Malinche, Our Lord the Great Montezuma, sends thee this present, and asks thee to accept it with the great affection which he has for thee and all thy brethren, and he says that the annoyance that the people of Cholula have caused him weighs heavily on him, and he wishes to punish them more in their persons, for they are an evil and a lying people in that they have thrown the blame of the wickedness which they wished to commit upon him and his ambassadors,” that we might take it as very certain that he was our friend, and that we could go to his City whenever we liked, for he wished to do us every honour as very valiant men, and the messengers of such a great King as you say that he (your King) is. But because he had nothing to give us to eat, for everything has to be carried into the city by carriers as it is built on the lake, he could not entertain us very satisfactorily, but he would endeavour to do us all the honour that was possible, and he had ordered all the towns through which we had to pass to give us what we might need. He also made many other complimentary speeches. When Cortés understood them through our interpreters, he received the present with demonstrations of affection and embraced the messengers, and ordered them to be given certain twisted cut glass beads. All our captains and soldiers were delighted at such good news, as that he [Montezuma] should bid us to come to his city, for, from day to day, the greater number of us soldiers were wishing for it, especially those who had left nothing behind them in the Island of Cuba, and had been on the two expeditions of discovery before this one with Cortés.

Let us leave this subject and say that the Captain gave the Ambassadors a suitable and affectionate reply and ordered the messengers who had come with the present to remain with us as guides and the other three to return with the answer to their Prince, and to advise him that we were already on the road.

When the Chief Caciques of Tlaxcala, whom I have often mentioned before, named Xicotenga the elder and the blind, and Mase Escasi, understood that we were going, their souls were afflicted and they sent to say to Cortés that they had already warned him many times that he should be careful what he was about, and should refrain from entering such a strong city where there was so much war-like preparation and such a multitude of warriors, for one day or the other we would be attacked, and they feared that we would not escape alive, and on account of the good will that they bore us, they wished to send ten thousand men under brave captains to go with us and carry food for the journey.

Cortés thanked them heartily for their good wishes and told them that it was not just to enter into Mexico with such a host of warriors, especially when one party was so hostile to the other, that he only had need of one thousand men to carry the tepusques and the baggage, and to clear some of the roads, (I have already said that *tepusques* was the name they gave in these parts to the iron cannon which we carried with us) and they at once sent us five thousand Indians very well equipped.

Just as we were ready to set out, there came to Cortés, all the Caciques and all the principal warriors whom we had brought from Cempoala, who had marched in our company and served us well and loyally, and said that they wanted to go back to Cempoala and not to proceed beyond Cholula in the direction of Mexico, for they felt certain that if they went there it would be for them and for us to go to

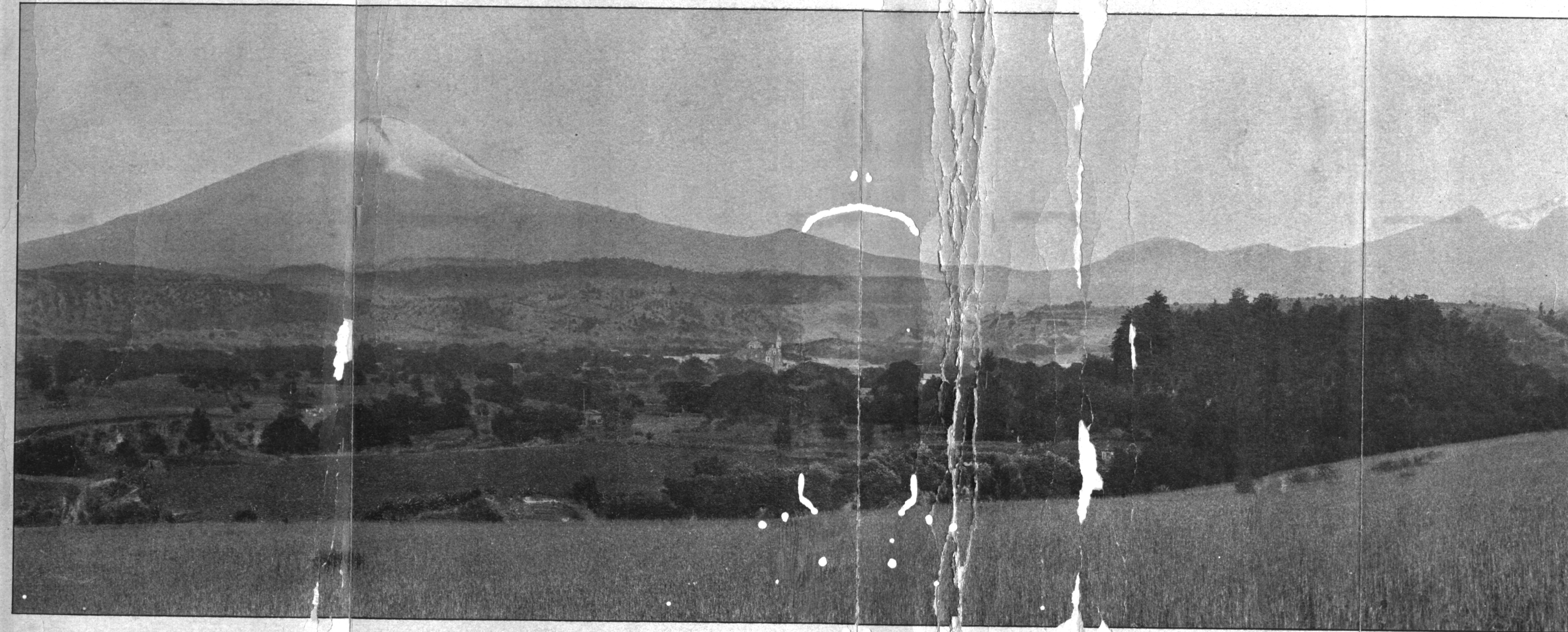
our deaths. The Great Montezuma would order them to be killed because they were leading chiefs of Cempoala, and had broken their fealty by refusing to pay him tribute and by imprisoning his tax gatherers when the rebellion took place which I have already written about in the course of this story.

When Cortés observed the determination with which they demanded permission, he answered them through Doña Marina and Aguilar that they need not have the slightest fear that they would come to any harm, for, as they would go in our company, who would dare to annoy either them or us? and he begged them to change their minds and stay with us, and he promised to make them rich. Although Cortés pressed them to stay, and Doña Marina put it in the most warm-hearted manner, they never wished to stay, but only to return to their homes. When Cortés perceived this he said, "God forbid that these Indians who have served us so well should be forced to go," and he sent for many loads of rich mantles and divided them among them, and he also sent to our friend the fat Cacique who was Lord of Cempoala two loads of mantles for himself and for his nephew the other great Cacique named Cuesco. He also wrote to his lieutenant Juan de Escalante whom we had left there as Captain, and who at that time was Alguacil Mayor, and told him all that had happened to us, and how we were now on our way to Mexico, and he told him to look well after his neighbours, and to keep a good watch, and by day and night to be on the alert, and to finish building the fortress, and to help the natives of those towns against the Mexicans, and not to let any of the soldiers who were with him annoy the [friendly] natives in any way whatever. When this letter was written and the people of Cempoala had left us, we set out on our journey, keeping well on the alert.

CHAPTER LXXXVI.

How we began our march to the City of Mexico, what happened to us on the road, and what Montezuma sent to say.

WE set out from Cholula in carefully arranged order as we were always accustomed to do, the mounted scouts examining the country ahead and some very active foot soldiers accompanying them, so that should they come to any bad ground or other obstacle they might help one another; then [followed] our cannon all ready for action, and the musketeers and crossbowmen, and then the horsemen in parties of three so that they could help one another, then all the rest of the soldiers in good order. I don't know why I call all this so clearly to mind, but when writing about war, one feels obliged to make mention of it, so that it can be seen how we marched always "with chin on shoulder." Marching in this way we arrived that day at some ranchos standing on a hill about four leagues from Cholula, they are peopled from Huexotzingo, and I think they are called the Ranchos of Yscalpan. To this place soon came the Caciques and priests of the towns of Huexotzingo which were near by, and they were friends and allies of the Tlaxcalans, and there also came people from other small towns, which stand on the slopes of the volcano near their boundary line, who brought us food and a present of golden jewels of small value, and they asked Cortés to accept them and not consider the insignificance of the gift but the good will with which it was offered. They advised him not to go to Mexico as it was a very strong city and full of warriors, where we should run much risk. They also told us to look out, if we had decided upon going, for when we had ascended to the pass we should find two broad roads, one leading to a town named Chalco, and the other to another



ON THE ROAD FROM CHOLULA TO MEXICO. THE PASS BETWEEN POPOCATEPETL AND IXTACCIHUATL.
Photograph taken from near the Ranches of Yscalpa. See page 28.

town called Tlamanalco,¹ both of them subject to Mexico ; that the one road was well swept and cleared so as to induce us to take it, and that the other road had been closed up and many great pines and other trees had been cut down so that horses could not use it and we could not march along it. That a little way down the side of the mountain along the road that had been cleared, the Mexicans (thinking that we must take that road) had cut away a piece of the hill side, and had made ditches and barricades, and that certain squadrons of Mexicans had waited at that point so as to kill us there. So they counselled us not to go by the road which was clear, but by the road where the felled trees were, saying that they would send many men with us to clear it, and as the Tlascalans were also with us, between them they would clear away the trees, and they said that that road came out at Tlamanalco.

Cortés received their present very kindly and told them that he thanked them for the counsel they had given him, and that with God's help he would not abandon his march but would go the way they advised him. Early the next morning we began our march, and it was nearly midday when we arrived at the ridge of the mountain where we found the roads just as the people of Huexotzingo had said. There we rested a little and began to think about the Mexican squadrons on the intrenched hillside where the earth works were that they had told us about.

Then Cortés ordered the Ambassadors of the great Montezuma who came in our company to be summoned, and he asked them how it was that those two roads were

¹ Bernal Díaz seems to have gone wrong in his topography. At the gap between the two volcanoes the roads probably divided; one (to the right) going by way of Tlamanalco to Chalco, the other (more direct) going to Amecameca. The Spaniards probably took the more direct (the blocked up) road to Amecameca, and did not go to Tlamanalco at all. Cortés, in his second letter, says that he went to Amecameca, and does not mention Tlamanalco.

in that condition, one very clean and swept and the other covered with newly-felled trees. They replied that it was done so that we should go by the cleared road which led to a city named Chalco, where the people would give us a good reception, for it belonged to their Prince Montezuma, and that they had cut the trees and closed up the other road to prevent our going by it, for there were bad passes on it, and it went somewhat round about before going to Mexico, and came out at another town which was not as large as Chalco. Then Cortés said that he wished to go by the blocked up road, and we began to ascend the mountain with the greatest caution, our allies moving aside the huge thick tree trunks, by which we had to pass, with great labour, and some of them still lie by the roadside to this very day. As we rose higher it began to snow and the snow caked on the ground. Then we descended the hill and went to sleep at a group of houses¹ which they build like inns or hostels where the Indian traders lodge, and we supped well, but the cold was intense, and we posted our watchmen, sentinels, and patrols and even sent out scouts. The next day we set out on our march, and, about the hour of high mass, arrived at a town which I have already said is called Tlamanalco,² where they received us well and where there was no scarcity of food.

When the other towns [in the neighbourhood] heard of our arrival, people soon came from Chalco and joined with the people of Tlamanalco, and they came from Chimaloacan and Mecameca and from Acacingo³ where the canoes are, for it is their port, and other small towns whose names I cannot now call to mind. All of them together brought a present of gold and two loads of mantles and eight Indian women and the gold was worth over one hundred

¹ Padre Rivera gives the name as Ithualco (*Anales Mexicanos*).

² Amecameca according to Cortés,

³ Ayotzingo.

and fifty pesos and they said:—"Malinche, accept these presents which we give you and look on us in the future as your friends." Cortés received them with great good will and promised to help them in whatever they needed, and when he saw them together he told the Padre de la Merced to counsel them regarding matters touching our holy faith, and that they should give up their Idols, and he told them all that we were accustomed to say in all the towns through which we had passed, and to all this they replied that it was well said and that they would see to it in the future. Cortés also explained to them about the great power of our Lord, the Emperor, and how we had come to right wrongs and to stop robbery, for it was for this purpose that our Emperor sent us to these countries.

When they heard this, all these towns that I have named, secretly, so that the Mexican Ambassadors should not hear them, made great complaints about Montezuma and his tax gatherers, who robbed them of all they possessed, and violated their wives and daughters, if they were handsome, before them and their husbands, and carried them off, and made the men work as though they were slaves, and made them carry pine timber and stone and firewood and maize either in their canoes or over land, and many other services such as planting cornfields, and they took their lands for the service of the Idols. They made many other complaints, which, as it was many years ago, I do not remember.

Cortés comforted them with kindly words which he knew well how to say to them through Doña Marina, but added that at the present moment, he could not undertake to see justice done them and they must bear it awhile [and] he would [presently] free them from that rule, and he secretly ordered two of their chiefs to go with four of our Tlaxcalan allies, and inspect the cleared road, which the people of Huexotzingo had told us not to follow, and to

see what ditches and ramparts there were there, and if there were any squadrons of warriors. But the Caciques answered him—"Malinche, there is no necessity to go and see, for it is now all levelled and put right, for you should know that six days ago there was a difficult pass there, for they had cut away the hill so that you could not get by, and many warriors of the Great Montezuma [were stationed there], but we have learnt that their Huichilobos, who is their god of War, advised them to allow you to pass, for when you have entered the city of Mexico there they will kill you. Therefore, we are of opinion that you should stay here with us, and we will give you what we possess, and that you should give up going to Mexico, as we know for certain it is very strong and full of warriors, and they will not spare your lives."

Cortés replied to them, with a cheerful mien, that we had no fear that the Mexicans, or any other nation, could destroy us, only our Lord God in whom we believe, and, so that they should understand, we were going to explain to Montezuma himself and all his Caciques and priests, what our God had commanded. As we wished to start at once, he asked them to give him twenty of their principal men to go in his company; and he would do much for them, and would have justice done to them as soon as he arrived in Mexico, so that neither Montezuma nor his tax gatherers should perpetrate the abuses nor use the violence which they said had been used towards them.

With cheerful faces the people from all these towns I have named gave satisfactory replies to this speech and they brought us the twenty Indians, and just as we were ready to set out, messengers arrived from the Great Montezuma, and what they said I will go on to relate.

CHAPTER LXXXVII.

How the great Montezuma again sent other Ambassadors to us with a present of gold and cloths, and what they said to Cortés and what he replied to them.

As we were starting on our march to Mexico there came before Cortés four Mexican chiefs sent by Montezuma who brought a present of gold and cloths. After they had made obeisance according to their custom, they said —“ Malinche, our Lord the Great Montezuma sends you this present and says that he is greatly concerned for the hardships you have endured in coming from such a distant land in order to see him, and that he has already sent to tell you that he will give you much gold and silver and chalchihuites as tribute for your Emperor and for yourself and the other Teules in your company, provided you will not come to Mexico, and now again he begs as a favour, that you will not advance any further but return whence you have come, and he promises to send you to the port a great quantity of gold and silver and rich stones for that King of yours, and, as for you, he will give you four loads of gold and for each of your brothers one load, but as for going on to Mexico your entrance into it is forbidden, for all his vassals have risen in arms to prevent your entry, and besides this there is no road thither, only a very narrow one, and there is no food for you to eat.” And he used many other arguments about the difficulties to the end that we should advance no further.

Cortés with much show of affection embraced the Ambassadors, although the message grieved him, and he accepted the present; I forget how much it was worth, but, as far as I could see and understand, Montezuma never omitted to send gold, little or much, when he sent messengers, as I have already related. To return to our

story, Cortés answered them that he marvelled how the Lord Montezuma, having given himself out as our friend, and being such a great Prince, should be so inconstant; that one time he says one thing and another time sends to order the contrary, and regarding what he says about giving gold to our Lord the Emperor and to ourselves, he is grateful to him for it, and what he sends him now he will pay for in good works as time goes on. How can he deem it befitting that being so near to his city, we should think it right to return on our road without carrying through what our Prince has commanded us to do? If the Lord Montezuma had sent his messengers and ambassadors to some great prince such as he is himself, and if, after nearly reaching his house, those messengers whom he sent should turn back without speaking to the Prince about that which they were sent to say, when they came back into his [Montezuma's] presence with such a story, what favour would he show them? He would merely treat them as cowards of little worth; and this is what our Emperor would do with us, so that in one way or another we were determined to enter his city, and from this time forth he must not send any more excuses on the subject, for he [Cortés] was bound to see him, and talk to him and explain the whole purpose for which we had come, and this he must do to him personally. Then after he understood it all, if our presence in the city did not seem good to him, we would return whence we had come. As for what he said about there being little or no food, not enough to support us, we were men who could get along even if we have but little to eat, and we were already on the way to his city, so let him take our coming in good part.

As soon as the messengers had been despatched, we set out for Mexico, and as the people of Huexotzingo and Chalco had told us that Montezuma had held consultations with his Idols and priests whether he should allow us to

enter Mexico, or whether he should attack us, and all the priests had answered that his Huichilobos had said he was to allow us to enter and that then he could kill us, as I have already related in the chapter that deals with the subject, and as we are but human and feared death, we never ceased thinking about it. As that country is very thickly peopled we made short marches, and commended ourselves to God and to Our Lady his blessed Mother, and talked about how and by what means we could enter [the City], and it put courage into our hearts to think that as our Lord Jesus Christ had vouchsafed us protection through past dangers, he would likewise guard us from the power of the Mexicans.

We went to sleep at a town called Iztapalatengo¹ where half the houses are in the water and the other half on dry land, where there is a small mountain, (and now there is an Inn there) and there they gave us a good supper.

Let us leave this and return to the Great Montezuma who, when his messengers arrived and he heard the reply which Cortés had sent to him, at once determined to send his nephew named Cacamatzin, the Lord of Texcoco, with great pomp to bid welcome to Cortés and to all of us, and as we were always accustomed to post sentinels and scouts, one of the scouts came in to tell us that a large crowd of friendly Mexicans was coming along the road, and that to all appearance they were coming clad in rich mantles. It was very early in the morning when this happened, and we were ready to start, and Cortés ordered us to wait in our quarters until he could see what the matter was.

At that moment four chieftains arrived, who made deep obeisance to Cortés and said that close by there was approaching Cacamatzin, the great Lord of Texcoco, a

¹ This is clearly a mistake, the town was Ayotzingo.

nephew of the Great Montezuma, and he begged us to have the goodness to wait until he arrived.

He did not tarry long, for he soon arrived with greater pomp and splendour than we had ever beheld in a Mexican Prince, for he came in a litter richly worked in green feathers, with many silver borderings, and rich stones set in bosses made out of the finest gold. Eight Chieftains, who, it was said, were all Lords of Towns, bore the litter on their shoulders. When they came near to the house where Cortés was quartered, the Chieftains assisted Cacamatzin to descend from the litter, and they swept the ground, and removed the straws where he had to pass, and when they came before our Captain they made him a deep reverence, and Cacamatzin said—

“Malinche, here we have come, I and these Chieftains to place ourselves at your service, and to give you all that you may need for yourself and your companions and to place you in your home, which is our city, for so the Great Montezuma our Prince has ordered us to do, and he asks your pardon that he did not come with us himself, but it is on account of ill-health that he did not do so, and not from want of very good will which he bears towards you.”

When our Captain and all of us, beheld such pomp and majesty in those chiefs, especially in the nephew of Montezuma, we considered it a matter of the greatest importance, and said among ourselves, if this Cacique bears himself with such dignity, what will the Great Montezuma do?

When Cacamatzin had delivered his speech, Cortés embraced him, and gave many caresses to him and all the other Chieftains, and gave him three stones which are called Margaritas, which have within them many markings of different colours, and to the other chieftains he gave blue glass beads, and he told them that he thanked them

and when he was able he would repay the Lord Montezuma for all the favours which every day he was granting us.

As soon as the speech-making was over, we at once set out, and as the Caicques whom I have spoken about brought many followers with them, and as many people came out to see us from the neighbouring towns, all the roads were full of them.¹

The next day, in the morning, we arrived at a broad Causeway,³ and continued our march towards Iztapalapa, and when we saw so many cities and villages built in the water and other great towns on dry land and that straight and level causeway going towards Mexico, we were amazed and said that it was like the enchantments they tell of in the legend of Amadis, on account of the great towers and cues and buildings rising from the water, and all built of masonry. And some of our soldiers even asked whether the things that we saw were not a dream? It is not to be wondered at that I here write it down in this manner, for there is so much to think over that I do not know how to describe it, seeing things as we did that had never been heard of or seen before, not even dreamed about.

Thus, we arrived near Iztapalapa, to behold the

¹ Blotted out in the original—"So that we could not proceed and the Caciques themselves told their vassals to make room for us, and to remember that we were Teules, and that if they did not make room we would be angry with them. On account of these words that were said they cleared the road for us, and we went on to sleep at another town, which is built in the water, which I think was called Mezquique,² and was afterwards named Venezuela, and it had many whitened towers and Cues, and the Cacique and chieftains treated us with much honour and gave Cortés a present of gold and rich mantles, and the gold was worth four hundred dollars and Cortés gave them many thanks for it. There we told them things about our holy faith as we did in all towns we came to. It seemed that the people of that town were on very bad terms with Montezuma on account of the many injuries he had done them and they complained of them and Cortés told them that he would soon remedy their ills if it should please God that we should soon reach Mexico."

² Mexquic.

³ The Causeway of Cuitlahuac separating the lake of Chalco from the lake of Xochimilco.

splendour of the other Caciques who came out to meet us, who were the Lord of the town named Cuitlahuac,¹ and the Lord of Culucan, both of them near relations of Montezuma. And then when we entered that city of Iztapalapa, the appearance of the palaces in which they lodged us! How spacious and well built they were, of beautiful stone work and cedar wood, and the wood of other sweet scented trees, with great rooms and courts, wonderful to behold, covered with awnings of cotton cloth.

When we had looked well at all of this, we went to the orchard and garden, which was such a wonderful thing to see and walk in, that I was never tired of looking at the diversity of the trees, and noting the scent which each one had, and the paths full of roses and flowers, and the many fruit trees and native roses, and the pond of fresh water. There was another thing to observe, that great canoes were able to pass into the garden from the lake through an opening that had been made so that there was no need for their occupants to land. And all was cemented and very splendid with many kinds of stone [monuments] with pictures on them, which gave much to think about. Then the birds of many kinds and breeds which came into the pond. I say again that I stood looking at it and thought that never in the world would there be discovered other lands such as these, for at that time there was no Peru, nor any thought of it. [Of all these wonders that I then beheld] to-day all is overthrown and lost, nothing left standing.

Let us go on, and I will relate that the Caciques of that town and of Coyoacan² brought us a present of gold, worth more than two thousand dollars, and Cortés gave them hearty thanks for it, and showed them much affection, and he told them through our interpreters things concerning

¹ Coadlabaca in the text.

² Cuyuacan in the text.

our holy faith, and explained to them the great power of our Lord, the Emperor, and as there were was much other conversation, I will not repeat it.

I must state that at that time this was a very large town, half of the houses being on land and the other half in the water, and now at this time it is all dry land and they plant corn where it was formerly lake, and it is so changed in other ways that if one had not then seen it, one would say that it is impossible that what are now fields planted with maize, could at one time have been covered with water.

I will leave off here and will tell of the solemn reception given by Montezuma to Cortés and all of us when we entered the great city of Mexico.

CHAPTER LXXXVIII.

About the great and solemn reception which the Great Montezuma gave Cortés and all of us at the entering of the great City of Mexico.

EARLY next day we left Iztapalapa with a large escort of those great Caciques whom I have already mentioned. We proceeded along the Causeway which is here eight paces in width and runs so straight to the City of Mexico that it does not seem to me to turn either much or little, but, broad as it is, it was so crowded with people that there was hardly room for them all, some of them going to and others returning from Mexico, besides those who had come out to see us, so that we were hardly able to pass by the crowds of them that came; and the towers and cues were full of people as well as the canoes from all parts of the lake. It was not to be wondered at, for they had never before seen horses or men such as we are.

Gazing on such wonderful sights, we did not know what to say, or whether what appeared before us was real, for on

one side, on the land, there were great cities, and in the lake ever so many more, and the lake itself was crowded with canoes, and in the Causeway were many bridges at intervals, and in front of us stood the great City of Mexico, and we,—we did not even number four hundred soldiers! and we well remembered the words and warnings given us by the people of Huexotzingo and Tlaxcala and Tlamanalco, and the many other warnings that had been given that we should beware of entering Mexico, where they would kill us, as soon as they had us inside.

Let the curious readers consider whether there is not much to ponder over in this that I am writing. What men have there been in the world who have shown such daring? But let us get on, and march along the Causeway. When we arrived where another small causeway branches off (leading to Coyoacan, which is another city) where there were some buildings like towers, which are their oratories, many more chieftains and Caciques approached clad in very rich mantles, the brilliant liveries of one chieftain differing from those of another, and the causeways were crowded with them. The Great Montezuma had sent these great Caciques in advance to receive us, and when they came before Cortés they bade us welcome in their language, and as a sign of peace, they touched their hands against the ground, and kissed the ground with the hand.

There we halted for a good while, and Cacamatzin, the Lord of Texcoco, and the Lord of Iztapalapa and the Lord of Tacuba and the Lord of Coyoacan went on in advance to meet the Great Montezuma, who was approaching¹ in a rich litter accompanied by other great Lords and Caciques, who owned vassals. When we arrived near to Mexico, where there were some other small towers, the Great Montezuma

¹ Que venia cerca.

got down from his litter, and those great Caciques supported him with their arms beneath a marvellously rich canopy of green coloured feathers with much gold and silver embroidery and with pearls and chalchihuites suspended from a sort of bordering, which was wonderful to look at. The Great Montezuma was richly attired according to his usage, and he was shod with sandals [*cotoras*], for so they call what they wear on their feet, the soles were of gold and the upper part adorned with precious stones. The four Chieftains who supported his arms were also richly clothed according to their usage, in garments which were apparently held ready for them on the road to enable them to accompany their prince, for they did not appear in such attire when they came to receive us. Besides these four Chieftains, there were four other great Caciques, who supported the canopy over their heads, and many other Lords who walked before the Great Montezuma, sweeping the ground where he would tread and spreading cloths on it, so that he should not tread on the earth. Not one of these chieftains dared even to think of looking him in the face, but kept their eyes lowered with great reverence, except those four relations, his nephews, who supported him with their arms.

When Cortés was told that the Great Montezuma was approaching, and he saw him coming, he dismounted from his horse, and when he was near Montezuma, they simultaneously paid great reverence to one another. Montezuma bade him welcome and our Cortés replied through Doña Marina wishing him very good health. And it seems to me that Cortés, through Doña Marina, offered him his right hand, and Montezuma did not wish to take it, but he did give his hand to Cortés and then Cortés brought out a necklace which he had ready at hand, made of glass stones, which I have already said are called Margaritas, which have within them many patterns of

diverse colours, these were strung on a cord of gold and with musk so that it should have a sweet scent, and he placed it round the neck of the Great Montezuma and when he had so placed it he was going to embrace him, and those great Princes who accompanied Montezuma held back Cortés by the arm so that he should not embrace him, for they considered it an indignity.

Then Cortés through the mouth of Doña Marina told him that now his heart rejoiced at having seen such a great Prince, and that he took it as a great honour that he had come in person to meet him and had frequently shown him such favour.

Then Montezuma spoke other words of politeness to him, and told two of his nephews who supported his arms, the Lord of Texcoco and the Lord of Coyoacan, to go with us and show us to our quarters, and Montezuma with his other two relations, the Lord of Cuitlahuac¹ and the Lord of Tacuba who accompanied him, returned to the city, and all those grand companies of Caciques and chieftains who had come with him returned in his train. As they turned back after their Prince we stood watching them and observed how they all marched with their eyes fixed on the ground without looking at him, keeping close to the wall, following him with great reverence. Thus space was made for us to enter the streets of Mexico, without being so much crowded. But who could now count the multitude of men and women and boys who were in the streets and on the azoteas, and in canoes on the canals, who had come out to see us. It was indeed wonderful, and, now that I am writing about it, it all comes before my eyes as though it had happened but yesterday. Coming to think it over it seems to be a great mercy that our Lord Jesus Christ was pleased to give us grace and courage to dare to enter

¹ Cuedlabaca in the text.

into such a city; and for the many times He has saved me from danger of death, as will be seen later on, I give Him sincere thanks, and in that He has preserved me to write about it, although I cannot do it as fully as is fitting or the subject needs. Let us make no words about it, for deeds are the best witnesses to what I say here and elsewhere.

Let us return to our entry to Mexico. They took us to lodge in some large houses, where there were apartments for all of us, for they had belonged to the father of the Great Montezuma, who was named Axayaca, and at that time Montezuma kept there the great oratories for his idols, and a secret chamber where he kept bars and jewels of gold, which was the treasure that he had inherited from his father Axayaca, and he never disturbed it. They took us to lodge in that house, because they called us Teules, and took us for such, so that we should be with the Idols or Teules which were kept there. However, for one reason or another, it was there they took us, where there were great halls and chambers canopied with the cloth of the country for our Captain, and for every one of us beds of matting with canopies above, and no better bed is given, however great the chief may be, for they are not used. And all these palaces were [coated] with shining cement and swept and garlanded.

As soon as we arrived and entered into the great court, the Great Montezuma took our Captain by the hand, for he was there awaiting him, and led him to the apartment and saloon where he was to lodge, which was very richly adorned according to their usage, and he had at hand a very rich necklace made of golden crabs, a marvellous piece of work, and Montezuma himself placed it round the neck of our Captain Cortés, and greatly astonished his [own] Captains by the great honour that he was bestowing on him. When the necklace had been

fastened, Cortés thanked Montezuma through our interpreters, and Montezuma replied—"Malinche you and your brethren are in your own house, rest awhile," and then he went to his palaces which were not far away, and we divided our lodgings by companies, and placed the artillery pointing in a convenient direction, and the order which we had to keep was clearly explained to us, and that we were to be much on the alert, both the cavalry and all of us soldiers. A sumptuous dinner was provided for us according to their use and custom, and we ate it at once. So this was our lucky and daring entry into the great city of Tenochtitlan¹ Mexico on the 8th day of November the year of our Saviour Jesus Christ 1519.

Thanks to our Lord Jesus Christ for it all. And if I have not said anything that I ought to have said, may your honours pardon me, for I do not know now even at the present time how better to express it.

Let us leave this talk and go back to our story of what else happened to us, which I will go on to relate.

¹ Tenustitan in the text.





NEAR MOCHIMILCO.

Photo by A. P. Maudslay.

THE VALLEY OF MEXICO.

Introductory Notes to Book VI.

THE Valley of Mexico is a level plain about 7424 feet above the sea, completely surrounded by mountains which leave no exit for the escape of the water from a fairly abundant rainfall, and as a consequence the whole valley at one period must have formed one vast lake, whose volume was limited only by soakage and the very rapid evaporation due to a tropical sun. At the time of the Conquest the area of the surface of the lakes was (very roughly) 442 square miles.

A red line on the map¹ marks the shape and size of this basin, taking as a limit the crests of the mountains and hills that surround it and the dividing line of the watershed; this includes about 3110 square miles.

The mountains surrounding the valley may be roughly divided into three ranges. To the East the Sierra Nevada, with the great peaks of Popocatepetl (17,887 ft.) and Ixtaccihuatl (17,342 ft.) capped with perpetual snow, and the three lower peaks to the North, Papayo, Telapon and Tlaloc; to the South lies the great volcanic barrier of Ajusco, to the West the range of Las Cruces, and to the North that of Pachuca. Towards the south part of the valley the intrusion of the low volcanic cones of Chimalhuacan, Santa Catarina, la Estrella and their neighbours, reduced the water surface between the lakes of Xochimilco and Texcoco to a narrow space, and, to the north of the valley, the northern end of the Sierra de Guadalupe and the volcano of Chiconahutla narrowed the water space between the lakes of Texcoco and Xaltocan. The rainfall appears to be more considerable on the western than on the eastern side of the lakes. The streams flowing into the lakes are of necessity short in their courses and mostly torrential, by far the most important being the Rio de Guatitlan on the North-west.

Although the lakes have received different names, the water surface must have been continuous until separated by the earth-works of the Indians. Starting from the North the lakes are named Zumpango, Xaltocan (the southern part was called San Cristóbal by the Spaniards), Texcoco, Xochimilco and Chalco.

Of this chain of lakes Texcoco lies lowest, and measurements made in recent years, after much of the water had been drained away, show the following heights above the level of Texcoco. To this list is also

¹ Map No. 1.

appended the depths of the lakes as determined by the drainage commission of 1861.

Name.	Level above Texcoco in Metres.	Depth in Metres.
Texcoco	0.00	0.50
Zumpango	6.06	0.80
Xaltocan	3.47	0.40
San Cristóbal	3.60	0.60
Xochimilco	3.14	2.40 to 3.00
Chalco	3.08	2.40
City of Mexico	1.90	—

Silt may have made a considerable difference to the level of the lakes during four hundred years, but no possible allowance for silt could alter the conclusion that at the time of the Conquest the lakes must have been very shallow.

The site of the City was originally, in all probability, two reed-covered mud banks or islands, which may have been cultivated in much the same manner as were the *chinampas* or floating gardens at the time of the Conquest, or as the chinampas of Xochimilco are at the present day, and these two islands became respectively the sites of the towns of Tlatelolco and Tenochtitlan, and the space between them was eventually reduced to a rather broad canal.

Islands in lakes, or rocky knolls on the land surrounded by deep barrancas or gulches, were frequently chosen by the Indians tribes as sites for towns on account of the facility for defence, and the number of such sites in Mexico and Central America¹ still either occupied by towns or containing the ruins of ancient buildings are evidence of a continual state of intertribal warfare.

The chinampas were formed by heaping up the soft mud from the lake on to wattles in order to form seed beds for flowers and vegetables, and these floating gardens gradually increased in size and became more compact from the growth of the interlacing roots of the willows and other water-loving plants until they may have supported a small hut for the owner and his family, and the lengthening roots eventually anchored them on the shallow margin of the lake. Two large groups of such gardens are shown on the map published in Clavigero's *History of Mexico* lying off

¹ Cf. Mixquic, Tlahuac and Xochimilco in the lakes of Mexico, Tayasal in the lake of Peten, and the island homes of the Lacandones in Guatemala. Towns almost surrounded by barrancas are Cuernavaca and Yacapistla in Mexico, and Utatlan and Iximché, etc., in Guatemala. It is as well to note here that such sites were not chosen for cities of the older culture such as Teotihuacan, Cholula, Mitla, Palenque, Copan, etc.



CHINAMPAS ON LAKE XOCHIMILCO.

Photo by A. P. Maudslay.

Iztapalapa and Xochimilco, and at the present day a similar form of cultivation, although the gardens are no longer floating, may be seen at Xochimilco and along the banks of the Viga Canal, the water-way connecting Xochimilco with the City of Mexico.

These gardens are divided into long narrow strips with canals running between just wide enough for the passage of a dug-out canoe. The Indian cultivator poles his canoe along the narrow channels and scoops up the soft mud from the bottom to spread it over the land, and splashes the water over the growing plants with his paddle. It was probably this method of cultivation which gave the mainly rectangular arrangement of the streets of the City of Mexico, the more unsymmetrical canals showing the original water ways between the mud banks, while the aggregation of chinampas may have left an irregular margin of outlying houses and gardens.

The very slight difference in level between the Lake of Texcoco and the site of the City made the latter liable to frequent inundations, and this difficulty was met by the inhabitants by engineering works of considerable importance. A causeway was built passing through the island town of Tlahuac, dividing the Lake of Chalco from that of Xochimilco, and a second causeway separated the waters of Xochimilco from those of Texcoco. The City of Mexico had probably already been joined to the mainland, for purposes of communication, by the causeways of Tlacopan (Tacuba) and Tepeyac (Guadalupe), and a third and longer causeway was added by connecting the City with the barrier holding back the waters of Xochimilco; this third causeway was known as the causeway of Iztapalapa. The lakes of Zumpango and Zaltocan were also traversed by causeways, but it is not now possible to locate their position.

These various causeways did much to control the movement of the waters of the lakes during the rainy season, but they were not sufficient to prevent serious inundations, and native tradition and a picture in a Mexican codex¹ go to prove that during the reign of Motecuhzoma (Montezuma) Illhuicamina, between the years 1440 and 1450, a very wet season caused the waters of Lake Texcoco to rise so much that the City was almost destroyed and the inhabitants had to take refuge in their canoes and piraguas. Montezuma applied for assistance and advice to his friend Netzahualcoyotl the King of Texcoco, and under his sage direction a great dyke was constructed, known as the "Albarradon of Nezahualcoyotl."

"This gigantic dyke started from Atzacualco on the North and followed a straight line to the South as far as Iztapalapa at the foot of the hill called la Estrella. This great work, which was sixteen kilometres² in length, was constructed of stone and clay

¹ "Codex Telleriano Remeusio."

² Ten miles.

and crowned with a strong wall of rubble masonry, and was protected on both sides by a strong stockade which broke the force of the waves.

"The dyke divided the lake into two parts, the larger to the East was known as the Lake of Texcoco, from the city situated on its shores, the lesser to the West was called the Lake of Mexico because the capital was surrounded by its waters on all sides. From this arrangement Mexico derived an aggregate of inestimable benefits. The great lake, like all lakes having no outlet for their waters, was salt, notwithstanding the volume of all the rivers which flowed into it, or in fact it owed its saltiness to this very flow which carried in its current the soluble salts which the falling rain has robbed from the land. The salt water saturating the soil has little by little rendered it sterile, and in addition, the carbonate of soda and the thousand other impurities with which it is charged are hostile to animal life to such an extent that fishes could not live in it, neither to-day nor at the time of the Conquest, as was stated by the writers at that epoch, although the water was then less salt than it is at the present. As the lakes of fresh water to the south poured their surplus water into the lake of Mexico through the narrows of Culhuacan and Mexicaltzingo, those waters spread through the western lake, the Lake of Mexico, and completely filled it, separated as it was from the salt lake by the dyke of Netzahualcoyotl. In this way the basin of fresh water was converted into a fish pond and a home for all sorts of aquatic fowl. Chinampas covered its surface, separated by limpid spaces which were furrowed by swift canoes, and all the suburbs of this enchanting capital became flowery orchards."¹

It will be noticed in the Upsala map that within the dyke men are depicted catching fish, while no fishermen are shown in the Lake of Texcoco, which was, however, then, as it is now, the home of numberless wild fowl. The great dyke was provided with numerous openings for the passage of canoes, but these openings were furnished with sluice gates which could be closed during the rainy season when the water of Texcoco rose and threatened to flood the City, and could be opened again to let out the fresh water from Mexico when the rapid evaporation during the summer months had lowered the level of Texcoco.

The fluctuations of level in the lakes of Chalco and Xochimilco were probably always less than in Lake Texcoco owing to the great number of copious springs of beautifully clear water which well up around their margins, especially on the west side, as well as in the lake of Xochimilco itself.

¹ Francisco de Garay, *El valle de Mexico, apuntes historicos sobre su hidrographia*, pp. 13 & 14.



Photo by A. P. Maudslay.

NATIVE HOUSES ON THE OUTSKIRTS OF THE CITY OF MEXICO.

Such springs were also to be seen in and around the Lake of Mexico, but not in such considerable numbers, and there must also have been one or more on the site of the City which supplied its earliest inhabitants with drinking water, although in later Indian times the supply was brought in an aqueduct from a fine spring near Chapultepec.

"The population of Tenochtitlan (the City of Mexico) at the time of the conquest is variously stated. No contemporary writer estimates it at less than sixty thousand houses, which by the ordinary rules of reckoning would give three hundred thousand souls. If a dwelling often contained, as it asserted, several families, it would swell the amount considerably higher."¹

The supply of food for such a population must have been a matter of no little difficulty, for the soil on the hill-sides is scanty, many of the slopes are composed of *tepetatle*, a mixture of volcanic ash and scoria fit only for growing maguey,² and considerable surfaces are covered with lava and carry no loam at all. The scarcity of good soil must have led to an intensive cultivation, and this is also shown by the care with which manure was collected,³ as is the case in China and Japan to-day.

Food must have been brought from very considerable distances, and the want of a sufficient supply from the near neighbourhood must have had much to do with the predatory nature of the Aztec dominion.

NOTE ON THE DRAINAGE.

From the time of the Spanish settlement the security of the city from floods and the drainage of the valley became the preoccupation of the Spanish Viceroys. After a severe inundation in 1555, Don Luis de Velasco replaced the Albarradon of Netzahualcoyotl, which had fallen into decay, by a similar and shorter dyke somewhat nearer the city. At the beginning of the seventeenth century a French engineer, Henri Martin, known in Mexico as Enrico Martínez, planned a system of drainage and a cutting (known as the *tajo de Nochistongo*) through the mountain rim to the north-east of the valley, but this work was only partly carried out during the following years and was not completed until the end of the eighteenth century.

The flood of 1865 again brought the question of drainage into prominence, and new works, including a large canal and a large tunnel, were commenced and brought to a satisfactory conclusion in the year 1900.

The lakes of Zaltocan and Zumpango are now almost dry during the summer months. The Lake of Chalco has been drained dry,

¹ Prescott, *Conquest of Mexico*.

² The American aloe, *Agave americana*, from which pulque is made.

³ Text page 72.

excepting the southern edge round Mixcuic, and is now one vast maize field.

Zochimilco is reduced to a swamp traversed by many water-ways and the water from its springs is being utilized for the supply of drinking water to the City. Texcoco alone remains, in a shrunken condition, and no further drainage of its waters is contemplated, as the evaporation from its surface is one of the main factors contributing to the equable climate of the valley.

THE CITY OF MEXICO.

The two towns of Tenochtitlan and Tlaltelolco appear to have risen side by side, each retaining control of its own local affairs, until the time of Axayacatl, the sixth ruler of Tenochtitlan (1473), when, after a fierce battle in the streets of the City, Tlaltelolco was conquered, its chiefs killed, and it became a part of the City of Tenochtitlan. It is, however, this growth of the City in two distinct parts that accounts for the existence of the two centres of religious worship, the great teocalli of Tenochtitlan with its surrounding courts and temples (where the Cathedral of Mexico now stands), and the still larger and more important teocalli of Tlaltelolco and the adjacent temples, courts, and priests' houses, etc., which are so fully described by Bernal Díaz in the text.

The following quotation is from the writings of the "Anonymous Conqueror," who himself beheld Mexico in the days of Montezuma:—"The great city of Temistan (Tenochtitlan), Mexico, has and had many wide and handsome streets; of these two or three are the principal streets, and all the others are formed half of hard earth like a brick pavement, and the other half of water, so that they can go out along the land or by water in their boats and canoes which are made of hollowed wood, and some are large enough to hold five persons. The inhabitants go abroad some by water in these boats and others by land, and they can talk to one another as they go. There are other principal streets in addition, entirely of water which can only be traversed by boats and canoes, as is their wont, as I have already said, for without these boats they could neither go in nor out of their houses.

"And this is the fashion of all the other towns which I have said are situated on the fresh water part of this lake. There were, and still are, in this City very handsome and fine houses belonging to the chieftains, so large and with such offices (*Estancias*), dwelling rooms, and gardens both above and below that they are wonderful to behold. I entered the house of a principal lord more than four times on purpose to see it, and I always walked about until I was tired, and I never managed to see the whole of it. It was the custom to have near the entrance of all the Lords' houses very large halls and offices around

a large patio, but in this house there was a hall so vast that it would easily hold more than three thousand persons, and it was so large that on the floor above (*i.e.* the roof) there was a terrace where thirty horsemen could have run a tilt as in a plaza."

Cortés in his second letter to the Emperor says :—

"There are many very large and fine houses in this City, and the reason of there being so many important houses is that all the Lords of the land who are vassals of the said Montezuma have houses in this City and reside therein for a certain time of the year, and in addition to this there are many rich Citizens who also possess very fine houses. All these houses in addition to having very fine and large dwelling rooms, have very exquisite flower gardens both on the upper apartments as well as down below."¹

"The principal houses were of two stories, but the greater number of houses were of one storey only. The materials, according to the importance of the buildings, were tezontli² and lime, adobes³ formed the walls plastered with lime, and in the suburbs and shores of the island (the houses were constructed) of reeds and straw, appropriate for the fishermen and the lower classes."⁴

I am strongly of opinion that the very simple style of construction of the houses of ancient Mexico still survives, and can be seen to-day in any of the villages in the neighbourhood, and a photograph of such houses is given facing page 48. There is, however, this difference, that nowadays the adobe walls of the houses are frequently left bare, while in ancient Mexico the walls were almost invariably covered with a highly burnished white plaster.

Of the external ornament or decoration of the more important houses or palaces we know nothing, as the destruction of the City was complete. If the ornamentation was elaborate we hear nothing about it from the conquerors, and it must in any case have been of plaster or some perishable material, otherwise some fragments of it would have survived. It seems therefore probable that the architectural decoration of the houses was of a very simple character, and that the more elaborate stone work was reserved for the teocallis and temples of their gods.

Notwithstanding the above qualifications, the ancient City of Tenochtitlan must have been a place of much beauty and even of considerable magnificence, and it could not have failed to make a vivid impression on the Spaniards, who, it must be remembered, until they set foot in Yucatan, two years earlier, had seen nothing better during the twenty-five years of exploration of America than the houses

¹ Cortés' second letter.

² Tezontli, a volcanic stone, easily worked, of a beautiful dull red colour.

³ Adobes, sun-dried bricks.

⁴ Orozco y Berra, *Hist. de Mexico*, vol. iv., p. 281.

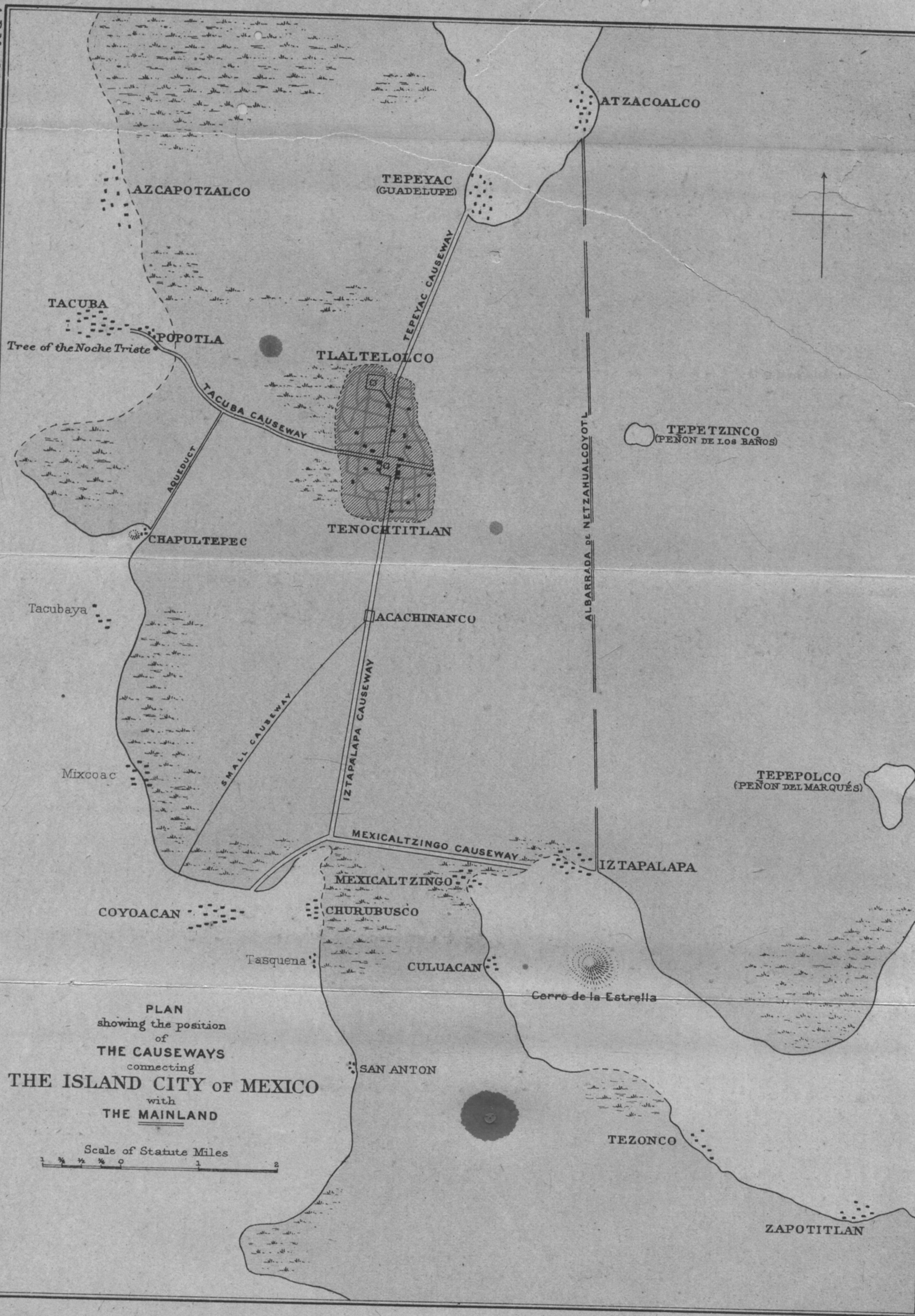
of poles and thatch of Indian tribes, none of whom had risen above a state of barbarism. Much no doubt was due to the natural surroundings; the white City with its numerous *teocallis* was embowered in trees and surrounded by the blue waters of the lake sparkling under a tropical sun, a lake that was alive with a multitude of canoes passing and repassing to the other white cities on its shores, and in every direction the horizon was closed with a splendid panorama of forest-covered hills, while to the south-east the eye always rested with delight on the beautiful slopes and snow-covered peaks of the two great volcanoes. It is an enchanting scene to-day, in spite of the shrinkage of the lakes, the smoke from factory chimneys, and the somewhat squalid surroundings of a modern city, and but little effort of imagination is needed to appreciate the charm that it must have exercised in the days of Montezuma.

The Viga Canal still survives as a water-way by which produce is brought into Mexico from the market gardens or *chinampas* of Lake Xochimilco, and it was only at the end of the eighteenth century that the canal which ran from the Viga Canal along the south side of the great square past the convent of San Francisco was finally filled in. For many years the roadway beside it was known as the "Calle de Canoas," and the names Puente de la Leña (Fire wood bridge), Portal de las Flores, etc., still mark the localities where the different commodities were sold on the banks of the Canal. Indeed, the course of many an old water-way can still be traced in the modern City by the names which have clung to the localities since the days of the conquest and are now attached to the streets.

The Upsala map seems to show that there was an embankment or pallisade along the east side of the City, necessary as a protection against the wash of the waves from the lake, but on the other sides the entrance of the numerous canals was probably through tree-lined *chinampas* and orchards, similar to the approach to Xochimilco at the present day. Gardens and groves were evidently numerous in the City itself; the Mexicans were distinguished for their love of flowers, and there is no climate where gardening is more remunerative than in these tropical highlands when water is plentiful. The flowering plants cultivated on the roofs of the houses must have added greatly to the picturesque aspect of the streets and canals.

Bernal Díaz tells us how clean the surroundings of the great temple were kept, where not a straw or a spot of dust could be seen (filth seems to have been confined to the temples themselves where the horrid rites of their religion were performed), and this cleanliness probably extended to the City itself, for it will be observed by any traveller in Mexico or Central America that the purely Indian villages of considerable size are almost always kept swept and tidy, while this is not the case in the towns and villages inhabited by the mixed race.

A. P. Maudslayi del.





BOOK VI.

THE STAY IN MEXICO.

CHAPTER LXXXIX.

How the Great Montezuma came to our quarters with many Caciques accompanying him, and the conversation that he had with our Captain.



WHEN the Great Montezuma had dined and he knew that some time had passed since our Captain and all of us had done the same, he came in the greatest state to our quarters with a numerous company of chieftains, all of them his kinsmen. When Cortés was told that he was approaching he came out to the middle of the Hall to receive him, and Montezuma took him by the hand, and they brought some seats made according to their usage and very richly decorated and embroidered with gold in many designs, and Montezuma asked our Captain to be seated, and both of them sat down each on his chair. Then Montezuma began a very good speech, saying that he was greatly rejoiced to have in his house and his kingdom such valiant gentlemen as were Cortés and all of us. That two years ago he had received news of another Captain who came to

Chanpoton, and likewise last year they had brought him news of another Captain who came with four ships, and that each time he had wished to see them, and now that he had us with him he was at our service, and would give us of all that he possessed; that it must indeed be true that we were those of whom his ancestors in years long past had spoken, saying that men would come from where the sun rose to rule over these lands, and that we must be those men, as we had fought so valiantly in the affairs at Potonchan and Tabasco and against the Tlaxcalans; for they had brought him pictures of the battles true to life.

Cortés answered him through our interpreters who always accompanied him, especially Doña Marina, and said to him that he and all of us did not know how to repay him the great favours we received from him every day. It was true that we came from where the sun rose, and were the vassals and servants of a great Prince called the Emperor Don Carlos, who held beneath his sway many and great princes, and that the Emperor having heard of him and what a great prince he was, had sent us to these parts to see him, and to beg them to become Christians, the same as our Emperor and all of us, so that his soul and those of all his vassals might be saved. Later on he would further explain how and in what manner this should be done, and how we worship one only true God, and who He is, and many other good things which he should listen to, such as he had already told to his ambassadors Tendile, and Pitalpitoque and Quintalbor when we were on the sand dunes. When this conference was over, the Great Montezuma had already at hand some very rich golden jewels, of many patterns, which he gave to our Captain, and in the same manner to each one of our Captains he gave trifles of gold, and three loads of mantles of rich feather work, and to the soldiers also he gave to each one

two loads of mantles, and he did it cheerfully and in every way he seemed to be a great Prince. When these things had been distributed, he asked Cortés if we were all brethren and vassals of our great Emperor, and Cortés replied yes, we were brothers in affection and friendship, and persons of great distinction, and servants of our great King and Prince. Further polite speeches passed between Montezuma and Cortés, and as this was the first time he had come to visit us, and so as not to be wearisome, they ceased talking. Montezuma had ordered his stewards that, according to our own use and customs in all things, we should be provided with maize and [grinding] stones, and women to make bread, and fowls and fruit, and much fodder for the horses. Then Montezuma took leave of our Captain and all of us with the greatest courtesy, and we went out with him as far as the street. Cortés ordered us not to go far from our quarters for the present, until we knew better what was expedient. I will stop here and go on to tell what happened later.

CHAPTER XC.

How on the following day our Captain Cortés went to see the Great Montezuma, and about a certain conversation that took place.

THE next day Cortés decided to go to Montezuma's palace, and he first sent to find out what he intended doing and to let him know that we were coming. He took with him four captains, namely Pedro de Alvarado Juan Velásquez de Leon, Diego de Ordás, and Gonzalo de Sandoval, and five of us soldiers also went with him.

When Montezuma knew of our coming he advanced to the middle of the hall to receive us, accompanied by many of his nephews, for no other chiefs were permitted to

enter or hold communication with Montezuma where he then was, unless it were on important business. Cortés and he paid the greatest reverence to each other and then they took one another by the hand and Montezuma made him sit down on his couch¹ on his right hand, and he also bade all of us to be seated on seats which he ordered to be brought.

Then Cortés began to make an explanation through our interpreters Doña Marina and Aguilar, and said that he and all of us were rested, and that in coming to see and converse with such a great Prince as he was, we had completed the journey and fulfilled the command which our great King and Prince had laid on us. But what he chiefly came to say on behalf of our Lord God had already been brought to his [Montezuma's] knowledge through his ambassadors, Tendile, Pitalpitoque and Quintalbor, at the time when he did us the favour to send the golden sun and moon to the sand dunes; for we told them then that we were Christians and worshipped one true and only God, named Jesus Christ, who suffered death and passion to save us, and we told them that a cross (when they asked us why we worshipped it) was a sign of the other Cross on which our Lord God was crucified for our salvation, and that the death and passion which He suffered was for the salvation of the whole human race, which was lost, and that this our God rose on the third day and is now in heaven, and it is He who made the heavens and the earth, the sea and the sands, and created all the things there are in the world, and He sends the rain and the dew, and nothing happens in the world without His holy will. That we believe in Him and worship Him, but that those whom they look upon as gods are not so, but are devils, which are evil things, and if their looks are bad their deeds are worse, and they could

see that they were evil and of little worth, for where we had set up crosses such as those his ambassadors had seen, they dared not appear before them, through fear of them, and that as time went on they would notice this.

The favour he now begged of him was his attention to the words that he now wished to tell him; then he explained to him very clearly about the creation of the world, and how we are all brothers, sons of one father and one mother who were called Adam and Eve, and how such a brother as our great Emperor, grieving for the perdition of so many souls, such as those which their idols were leading to Hell, where they burn in living flames, had sent us, so that after what he [Montezuma] had now heard he would put a stop to it and they would no longer adore these Idols or sacrifice Indian men and women to them, for we were all brethren, nor should they commit sodomy or thefts. He also told them that, in course of time, our Lord and King would send some men who among us lead very holy lives, much better than we do, who will explain to them all about it, for at present we merely came to give them due warning, and so he prayed him to do what he was asked and carry it into effect.

As Montezuma appeared to wish to reply, Cortés broke off his argument, and to all of us who were with him he said: "with this we have done our duty considering it is the first attempt."

Montezuma replied—"Señor Malinche, I have understood your words and arguments very well before now, from what you said to my servants at the sand dunes, this about three Gods and the Cross, and all those things that you have preached in the towns through which you have come. We have not made any answer to it because here throughout all time we have worshipped our own gods, and thought they were good, as no doubt yours are, so do not trouble to speak to us any more about them at present. Regarding the creation of the world, we have held the same

belief for ages past, and for this reason we take it for certain that you are those whom our ancestors predicted would come from the direction of the sunrise. As for your great King, I feel that I am indebted to him, and I will give him of what I possess, for as I have already said, two years ago I heard of the Captains who came in ships from the direction in which you came, and they said that they were the servants of this your great King, and I wish to know if you are all one and the same.

Cortés replied, Yes, that we were all brethren and servants of our Emperor, and that those men came to examine the way and the seas and the ports so as to know them well in order that we might follow as we had done. Montezuma was referring to the expeditions of Francisco Hernández de Córdova and of Grijalva, when we first came on voyages of discovery, and he said that ever since that time he had wished to capture some of those men who had come so as to keep them in his kingdoms and cities and to do them honour, and his gods had now fulfilled his desires, for now that we were in his home, which we might call our own, we should rejoice and take our rest for there we should be well treated. And if he had on other occasions sent to say that we should not enter his city, it was not of his free will, but because his vassals were afraid, for they said that we shot out flashes of lightning, and killed many Indians with our horses, and that we were angry Teules, and other childish stories, and now that he had seen our persons and knew we were of flesh and bone, and had sound sense, and that we were very valiant, for these reasons he held us in much higher regard than he did from their reports, and he would share his possessions with us. Then Cortés and all of us answered that we thanked him sincerely for such signal good will, and Montezuma said, laughing, for he was very merry in his princely way of speaking: "Malinche, I know very

well that these people of Tlaxcala with whom you are such good friends have told you that I am a sort of God or Teul, and that everything in my houses is made of gold and silver and precious stones, I know well enough that you are wise and did not believe it but took it as a joke. Behold now, Señor Malinche, my body is of flesh and bone like yours, my houses and palaces of stone and wood and lime ; that I am a great king and inherit the riches of my ancestors is true, but not all the nonsense and lies that they have told you about me, although of course you treated it as a joke, as I did your thunder and lightning."

Cortés answered him, also laughing, and said that opponents and enemies always say evil things, without truth in them, of those whom they hate, and that he well knew that he could not hope to find another Prince more magnificent in these countries, and that not without reason had he been so vaunted to our Emperor.

While this conversation was going on, Montezuma secretly sent a great Cacique, one of his nephews who was in his company, to order his stewards to bring certain pieces of gold, which it seems must have been put apart to give to Cortés, and ten loads of fine cloth, which he apportioned, the gold and mantles between Cortés and the four captains, and to each of us soldiers he gave two golden necklaces, each necklace being worth ten pesos, and two loads of mantles. The gold that he then gave us was worth in all more than a thousand pesos and he gave it all cheerfully and with the air of a great and valiant prince. As it was now past midday, so as not to appear importunate, Cortés said to him : "Señor Montezuma, you always have the habit of heaping load upon load in every day conferring favours on us, and it is already your dinner time." Montezuma replied that he thanked us for coming to see him, and then we took our leave with the greatest courtesy and we went to our lodgings.

And as we went along we spoke of the good manners and breeding which he showed in everything, and that we should show him in all ways the greatest respect, doffing our quilted caps when we passed before him, and this we always did, but let us leave this subject here, and pass on.

CHAPTER XCI.

Of the manner and appearance of the Great Montezuma and what a great Prince he was.

THE Great Montezuma was about forty years old, of good height and well proportioned, slender, and spare of flesh, not very swarthy, but of the natural colour and shade of an Indian. He did not wear his hair long, but so as just to cover his ears, his scanty black beard was well shaped and thin. His face was somewhat long, but cheerful, and he had good eyes and showed in his appearance and manner both tenderness and, when necessary, gravity. He was very neat and clean and bathed once every day in the afternoon.¹ He had many women as mistresses, daughters of Chieftains, and he had two great Cacicas as his legitimate wives, and when he had intercourse with them it was so secretly that no one knew anything about it, except some of his servants. He was free from unnatural offences. The clothes that he wore one day, he did not put on again until four days later. He had over two hundred chieftains in his guard, in other rooms close to his own, not that all were meant to converse with him, but only one or another, and when they went to speak to him they were obliged to take off their rich mantles and put on others of little worth, but they had

¹ Blotted out in the original: "about the hour of (Ave Maria) evening prayer."—G. G.

to be clean, and they had to enter barefoot with their eyes lowered to the ground, and not to look up in his face. And they made him three obeisances, and said: "Lord, my Lord, my Great Lord," before they came up to him, and then they made their report and with a few words he dismissed them, and on taking leave they did not turn their backs, but kept their faces toward him with their eyes to the ground, and they did not turn their backs until they left the room. I noticed another thing, that when other great chiefs came from distant lands about disputes or business, when they reached the apartments of the Great Montezuma, they had to come barefoot and with poor mantles, and they might not enter directly into the Palace, but had to loiter about a little on one side of the Palace door, for to enter hurriedly was considered to be disrespectful.

For each meal, over thirty different dishes were prepared by his cooks according to their ways and usage, and they placed small pottery brasiers beneath the dishes so that they should not get cold. They prepared more than three hundred plates of the food that Montezuma was going to eat, and more than a thousand for the guard. When he was going to eat, Montezuma would sometimes go out with his chiefs and stewards, and they would point out to him which dish was best, and of what birds and other things it was composed, and as they advised him, so he would eat, but it was not often that he would go out to see the food, and then merely as a pastime.

I have heard it said that they were wont to cook for him the flesh of young boys, but as he had such a variety of dishes, made of so many things, we could not succeed in seeing if they were of human flesh or of other things, for they daily cooked fowls, turkeys, pheasants, native partridges, quail, tame and wild ducks, venison, wild boar, reed birds,

other things which are bred in this country, and they are so numerous that I cannot finish naming them in a hurry ; so we had no insight into it, but I know for certain that after our Captain censured the sacrifice of human beings, and the eating of their flesh, he ordered that such food should not be prepared for him thenceforth.

Let us cease speaking of this and return to the way things were served to him at meal times. It was in this way : if it was cold they made up a large fire of live coals of a firewood made from the bark of trees which did not give off any smoke, and the scent of the bark from which the fire was made was very fragrant, and so that it should not give off more heat than he required, they placed in front of it a sort of screen adorned with figures of idols worked in gold. He was seated on a low stool, soft and richly worked, and the table, which was also low, was made in the same style as the seats, and on it they placed the table cloths of white cloth and some rather long napkins of the same material. Four very beautiful cleanly women brought water for his hands in a sort of deep basin which they call "xicales,"¹ and they held others like plates below to catch the water, and they brought him towels. And two other women brought him tortilla bread, and as soon as he began to eat they placed before him a sort of wooden screen painted over with gold, so that no one should watch him eating. Then the four women stood aside, and four great chieftains who were old men came and stood beside them, and with these Montezuma now and then conversed, and asked them questions, and as a great favour he would give to each of these elders a dish of what to him tasted best. They say that these elders were his near relations, and were his counsellors and judges of law suits, and the

¹ Gourds,

dishes and food which Montezuma gave them they ate standing up with much reverence and without looking at his face. He was served on Cholula earthenware either red or black. While he was at his meal the men of his guard who were in the rooms near to that of Montezuma, never dreamed of making any noise or speaking aloud. They brought him fruit of all the different kinds that the land produced, but he ate very little of it. From time to time they brought him, in cup-shaped vessels of pure gold, a certain drink made from cacao which they said he took when he was going to visit his wives, and at the time he took no heed of it, but what I did see was that they brought over fifty great jugs of good cacao frothed up, and he drank of that, and the women served this drink to him with great reverence.

Sometimes at meal-times there were present some very ugly humpbacks, very small of stature and their bodies almost broken in half, who are their jesters, and other Indians, who must have been buffoons, who told him witty sayings, and others who sang and danced, for Montezuma was fond of pleasure and song, and to these he ordered to be given what was left of the food and the jugs of cacao. Then the same four women removed the table cloths, and with much ceremony they brought water for his hands. And Montezuma talked with those four old chieftains about things that interested him, and they took leave of him with the great reverence in which they held him, and he remained to repose.

As soon as the Great Montezuma had dined, all the men of the Guard had their meal and as many more of the other house servants, and it seems to me that they brought out over a thousand dishes of the food of which I have spoken, and then over two thousand jugs of cacao all frothed up, as they make it in Mexico, and a limitless quantity of fruit, so that with his women and female

servants and bread makers and cacao makers his expenses must have been very great.

Let us cease talking about the expenses and the food for his household and let us speak of the Stewards and the Treasurers and the stores and pantries and of those who had charge of the houses where the maize was stored. I say that there would be so much to write about, each thing by itself, that I should not know where to begin, but we stood astonished at the excellent arrangements and the great abundance of provisions that he had in all, but I must add what I had forgotten, for it is as well to go back and relate it, and that is, that while Montezuma was at table eating as I have described, there were waiting on him two other graceful women to bring him tortillas, kneaded with eggs and other sustaining ingredients, and these tortillas were very white, and they were brought on plates covered with clean napkins, and they also brought him another kind of bread, like long balls kneaded with other kinds of sustaining food, and "pan pachol" for so they call it in this country, which is a sort of wafer. There were also placed on the table three tubes much painted and gilded, which held *liquidambar* mixed with certain herbs which they call *tabaco*, and when he had finished eating, after they had danced before him and sung and the table was removed, he inhaled the smoke from one of those tubes, but he took very little of it and with that he fell asleep.

Let us cease speaking about the service of his table and go back to our story. I remember that at that time his steward was a great Cacique to whom we gave the name of Tápia, and he kept the accounts of all the revenue that was brought to Montezuma, in his books which were made of paper which they call *Amal*, and he had a great house full of these books. Now we must leave the books and the accounts for it is outside our story, and say how Monte-

zuma had two houses full of every sort of arms, many of them richly adorned with gold and precious stones. There were shields great and small, and a sort of broad-swords, and others like two-handed swords set with stone knives which cut much better than our swords, and lances longer than ours are, with a fathom of blade with many knives set in it, which even when they are driven into a buckler or shield do not come out, in fact they cut like razors so that they can shave their heads with them. There were very good bows and arrows and double-pointed lances and others with one point, as well as their throwing sticks, and many slings and round stones shaped by hand, and some sort of artful shields which are so made that they can be rolled up, so as not to be in the way when they are not fighting, and when they are needed for fighting they let them fall down, and they cover the body from top to toe. There was also much quilted cotton armour, richly ornamented on the outside with many coloured feathers, used as devices and distinguishing marks, and there were casques or helmets made of wood and bone, also highly decorated with feathers on the outside, and there were other arms of other makes which, so as to avoid prolixity, I will not describe, and there were artizans who were skilled in such things and worked at them, and stewards who had charge of the arms.

Let us leave this and proceed to the Aviary, and I am forced to abstain from enumerating every kind of bird that was there and its peculiarity, for there was everything from the Royal Eagle and other smaller eagles, and many other birds of great size, down to tiny birds of many-coloured plumage, also the birds from which they take the rich plumage which they use in their green feather work. The birds which have these feathers are about the size of the magpies in Spain, they are called in this country

Quezales, and there are other birds which have feathers of five colours—green, red, white, yellow and blue; I don't remember what they are called; then there were parrots of many different colours, and there are so many of them that I forget their names, not to mention the beautifully marked ducks and other larger ones like them. From all these birds they plucked the feathers when the time was right to do so, and the feathers grew again. All the birds that I have spoken about breed in these houses, and in the setting season certain Indian men and women who look after the birds, place the eggs under them and clean the nests and feed them, so that each kind of bird has its proper food. In this house that I have spoken of there is a great tank of fresh water and in it there are other sorts of birds with long stilted legs, with body, wings and tail all red; I don't know their names, but in the Island of Cuba they are called *Ypiris*, and there are others something like them, and there are also in that tank many other kinds of birds which always live in the water.

Let us leave this and go on to another great house, where they keep many Idols, and they say that they are their fierce gods, and with them many kinds of carnivorous beasts of prey, tigers and two kinds of lions, and animals something like wolves which in this country they call jackals and foxes, and other smaller carnivorous animals, and all these carnivores they feed with flesh, and the greater number of them breed in the house. They give them as food deer and fowls, dogs and other things which they are used to hunt, and I have heard it said that they feed them on the bodies of the Indians who have been sacrificed. It is in this way: you have already heard me say that when they sacrifice a wretched Indian they saw open the chest with stone knives and hasten to tear out the palpitating heart and blood, and offer it to their Idols in whose name the sacrifice is made. Then they cut off

the thighs, arms and head and eat the former at feasts and banquets, and the head they hang up on some beams, and the body of the man sacrificed is not eaten but given to these fierce animals. They also have in that cursed house many vipers and poisonous snakes which carry on their tails things that sound like bells. These are the worst vipers of all, and they keep them in jars and great pottery vessels with many feathers, and there they lay their eggs and rear their young, and they give them to eat the bodies of the Indians who have been sacrificed, and the flesh of dogs which they are in the habit of breeding. We even knew for certain that when they drove us out of Mexico and killed over eight hundred of our soldiers that they fed those fierce animals and snakes for many days on their bodies, as I will relate at the proper time and season. And those snakes and wild beasts were dedicated to those savage Idols, so that they might keep them company.

Let me speak now of the infernal noise when the lions and tigers roared and the jackals and the foxes howled and the serpents hissed, it was horrible to listen to and it seemed like a hell. Let us go on and speak of the skilled workmen he [Montezuma] employed in every craft that was practised among them. We will begin with lapidaries and workers in gold and silver and all the hollow work, which even the great goldsmiths in Spain were forced to admire, and of these there were a great number of the best in a town named Atzcapotzalco,¹ a league from Mexico. Then for working precious stones and chalchihuites, which are like emeralds, there were other great artists. Let us go on to the great craftsmen in feather work, and painters and sculptors who were most refined; from what we see of their work to-day we can form a

¹ Escapuçalco in the text.

judgment of what they did then, for there are three Indians to-day in the City of Mexico named Marcos de Aquino, Juan de la Cruz and El Crespillo, so skilful in their work as sculptors and painters, that had they lived in the days of the ancient and famous Apelles, or of Michael Angelo Buonarotti, in our times, they would be placed in the same company. Let us go on to the Indian women who did the weaving and the washing, who made such an immense quantity of fine fabrics with wonderful feather work designs; the greater part of it was brought daily from some towns of the province on the north coast near Vera Cruz called Cotaxtla, close by San Juan de Ulua, where we disembarked when we came with Cortés.

In the house of the Great Montezuma himself, all the daughters of chieftains whom he had as mistresses always wore beautiful things, and there were many daughters of Mexican citizens who lived in retirement and wished to appear to be like nuns, who also did weaving but it was wholly of feather work. These nuns had their houses near the great Cue of Huichilobos and out of devotion to it, or to another idol, that of a woman who was said to be their mediatrix in the matter of marriage, their fathers placed them in that religious retirement until they married, and they were [only] taken out thence to be married.

Let us go on and tell about the great number of dancers kept by the Great Montezuma for his amusement, and others who used stilts on their feet, and others who flew when they danced up in the air, and others like Merry-Andrews, and I may say that there was a district full of these people who had no other occupation. Let us go on and speak of the workmen that he had as stone cutters, masons and carpenters, all of whom attended to the work of his houses, I say that he had as many as he wished for. We must not forget the gardens of flowers and sweet-scented trees, and the many kinds that there

were of them, and the arrangement of them and the walks, and the ponds and tanks of fresh water where the water entered at one end and flowed out at the other; and the baths which he had there, and the variety of small birds that nested in the branches, and the medicinal and useful herbs that were in the gardens. It was a wonder to see, and to take care of it there were many gardeners. Everything was made in masonry and well cemented, baths and walks and closets, and apartments like summer houses where they danced and sang. There was as much to be seen in these gardens as there was everywhere else, and we could not tire of witnessing his great power. Thus as a consequence of so many crafts being practised among them, a large number of skilled Indians were employed.

As I am almost tired of writing about this subject and my interested readers will be even more so, I will stop talking about it and tell how our Cortés in company with many of our captains and soldiers went to see Tlaltelolco,¹ which is the great market place of Mexico, and how we ascended the great Cue where stand the Idols Tezcatepuca and Huichilobos. This was the first time that our Captain went out to see the City, and I will relate what else happened.

CHAPTER XCII.

How our Captain went out to see the City of Mexico and Tlaltelolco, which is the great market place and the great Cue of Huichilobos, and what else happened.

As we had already been four days in Mexico and neither the Captain nor any of us had left our lodgings except to go to the houses and gardens, Cortés said to us that it would be well to go to the great Plaza and see the great

¹ Tutelulco in the text.

Temple of Huichilobos, and that he wished to consult the Great Montezuma and have his approval. For this purpose he sent Jerónimo de Aguilar and the Doña Marina as messengers, and with them went our Captain's small page named Orteguilla, who already understood something of the language. When Montezuma knew his wishes he sent to say that we were welcome to go; on the other hand, as he was afraid that we might do some dishonour to his Idols, he determined to go with us himself with many of his chieftains. He came out from his Palace in his rich litter, but when half the distance had been traversed and he was near some oratories, he stepped out of the litter, for he thought it a great affront to his idols to go to their house and temple in that manner. Some of the great chieftains supported him with their arms, and the tribal lords went in front of him carrying two staves like sceptres held on high, which was the sign that the Great Montezuma was coming. (When he went in his litter he carried a wand half of gold and half of wood, which was held up like a wand of justice). So he went on and ascended the great Cue accompanied by many priests, and he began to burn incense and perform other ceremonies to Huichilobos.

Let us leave Montezuma, who had gone ahead as I have said, and return to Cortés and our captains and soldiers, who according to our custom both night and day were armed, and as Montezuma was used to see us so armed when we went to visit him, he did not look upon it as anything new. I say this because our Captain and all those who had horses went to Tlaltelolco on horseback, and nearly all of us soldiers were fully equipped, and many Caciques whom Montezuma had sent for that purpose went in our company. When we arrived at the great market place, called Tlaltelolco, we were astounded at the number of people and the quantity of merchandise

that it contained, and at the good order and control that was maintained, for we had never seen such a thing before. The chieftains who accompanied us acted as guides. Each kind of merchandise was kept by itself and had its fixed place marked out. Let us begin with the dealers in gold, silver, and precious stones, feathers, mantles, and embroidered goods. Then there were other wares consisting of Indian slaves both men and women; and I say that they bring as many of them to that great market for sale as the Portuguese bring negroes from Guinea; and they brought them along tied to long poles, with collars round their necks so that they could not escape, and others they left free. Next there were other traders who sold great pieces of cloth and cotton, and articles of twisted thread, and there were *cacahuateros* who sold cacao. In this way one could see every sort of merchandise that is to be found in the whole of New Spain, placed in arrangement in the same manner as they do in my own country, which is Medina del Campo, where they hold the fairs, where each line of booths has its particular kind of merchandise, and so it is in this great market. There were those who sold cloths of henequen and ropes and the *cotaras*¹ with which they are shod, which are made from the same plant, and sweet cooked roots, and other tubers which they get from this plant, all were kept in one part of the market in the place assigned to them. In another part there were skins of tigers and lions, of otters and jackals, deer and other animals and badgers and mountain cats, some tanned and others untanned, and other classes of merchandise.

Let us go on and speak of those who sold beans and sage and other vegetables and herbs in another part, and to those who sold fowls, cocks with wattles, rabbits, hares,

¹ Sandals.

deer, mallards, young dogs and other things of that sort in their part of the market, and let us also mention the fruiterers, and the women who sold cooked food, dough and tripe in their own part of the market; then every sort of pottery made in a thousand different forms from great water jars to little jugs, these also had a place to themselves; then those who sold honey and honey paste and other dainties like nut paste, and those who sold lumber, boards, cradles, beams, blocks and benches, each article by itself, and the vendors of *ocote*¹ firewood, and other things of a similar nature. I must furthermore mention, asking your pardon, that they also sold many canoes full of human excrement, and these were kept in the creeks near the market, and this they use to make salt or for tanning skins, for without it they say that they cannot be well prepared. I know well that some gentlemen laugh at this, but I say that it is so, and I may add that on all the roads it is a usual thing to have places made of reeds or straw or grass, so that they may be screened from the passers by, into these they retire when they wish to purge their bowels so that even that filth should not be lost. But why do I waste so many words in recounting what they sell in that great market, for I shall never finish if I tell it all in detail. Paper, which in this country is called *Amal*, and reeds scented with *liquidambar*, and full of tobacco, and yellow ointments and things of that sort are sold by themselves, and much cochineal is sold under the arcades which are in that great market place, and there are many vendors of herbs and other sorts of trades. There are also buildings where three magistrates sit in judgment, and there are executive officers like *Alguacils* who inspect the merchandise. I am forgetting those who sell salt, and those who make the stone knives, and how they split them

¹ Pitch-pine for torches

off the stone itself ; and the fisherwomen and others who sell some small cakes made from a sort of ooze which they get out of the great lake, which curdles, and from this they make a bread having a flavour something like cheese. There are for sale axes of brass and copper and tin, and gourds and gaily painted jars made of wood. I could wish that I had finished telling of all the things which are sold there, but they are so numerous and of such different quality and the great market place with its surrounding arcades was so crowded with people, that one would not have been able to see and inquire about it all in two days.

Then we went to the great Cue, and when we were already approaching its great courts, before leaving the market place itself, there were many more merchants, who, as I was told, brought gold for sale in grains, just as it is taken from the mines. The gold is placed in thin quills of the geese of the country, white quills, so that the gold can be seen through, and according to the length and thickness of the quills they arrange their accounts with one another, how much so many mantles or so many gourds full of cacao were worth, or how many slaves, or whatever other thing they were exchanging.

Now let us leave the great market place, and not look at it again, and arrive at the great courts and walls where the great Cue stands. Before reaching the great Cue there is a great enclosure of courts, it seems to me larger than the plaza of Salamanca, with two walls of masonry surrounding it and the court itself all paved with very smooth great white flagstones. And where there were not these stones it was cemented and burnished and all very clean, so that one could not find any dust or a straw in the whole place.

When we arrived near the great Cue and before we had ascended a single step of it, the Great Montezuma sent

down from above, where he was making his sacrifices, six priests and two chieftains to accompany our Captain. On ascending the steps, which are one hundred and fourteen in number, they attempted to take him by the arms so as to help him to ascend, (thinking that he would get tired,) as they were accustomed to assist their lord Montezuma, but Cortés would not allow them to come near him. When we got to the top of the great Cue, on a small plaza which has been made on the top where there was a space like a platform with some large stones placed on it, on which they put the poor Indians for sacrifice, there was a bulky image like a dragon and other evil figures and much blood shed that very day.

When we arrived there Montezuma came out of an oratory where his cursed idols were, at the summit of the great Cue, and two priests came with him, and after paying great reverence to Cortés and to all of us he said: "You must be tired, Señor Malinche, from ascending this our great Cue," and Cortés replied through our interpreters who were with us that he and his companions were never tired by anything. Then Montezuma took him by the hand and told him to look at his great city and all the other cities that were standing in the water, and the many other towns on the land round the lake, and that if he had not seen the great market place well, that from where they were they could see it better.

So we stood looking about us, for that huge and cursed temple stood so high that from it one could see over everything very well, and we saw the three causeways which led into Mexico, that is the causeway of Iztapalapa by which we had entered four days before, and that of Tacuba, along which later on we fled on the night of our great defeat, when Cuitlahuac¹ the new prince drove us

¹ Cuedlabaca in the text.

out of the city, as I shall tell later on, and that of Tepeaquilla,¹ and we saw the fresh water that comes from Chapultepec which supplies the city, and we saw the bridges on the three causeways which were built at certain distances apart through which the water of the lake flowed in and out from one side to the other, and we beheld on that great lake a great multitude of canoes, some coming with supplies of food and others returning loaded with cargoes of merchandise; and we saw that from every house of that great city and of all the other cities that were built in the water it was impossible to pass from house to house, except by drawbridges which were made of wood or in canoes; and we saw in those cities Cues and oratories like towers and fortresses and all gleaming white, and it was a wonderful thing to behold; then the houses with flat roofs, and on the causeways other small towers and oratories which were like fortresses.

After having examined and considered all that we had seen we turned to look at the great market place and the crowds of people that were in it, some buying and others selling, so that the murmur and hum of their voices and words that they used could be heard more than a league off. Some of the soldiers among us who had been in many parts of the world, in Constantinople, and all over Italy, and in Rome, said that so large a market place and so full of people, and so well regulated and arranged, they had never beheld before.

• Let us leave this, and return to our Captain, who said to Fray Bartolomé de Olmedo, who has often been mentioned by me, and who happened to be near by him: "It seems to me, Señor Padre, that it would be a good thing to throw out a feeler to Montezuma, as to whether he would allow us to build our church here"; and the Padre replied that

¹ Guadalupe.

it would be a good thing if it were successful, but it seemed to him that it was not quite a suitable time to speak about it, for Montezuma did not appear to be inclined to do such a thing.

Then our Cortés said to Montezuma through the interpreter Doña Marina: "Your Highness is indeed a very great prince and worthy of even greater things. We are rejoiced to see your cities, and as we are here in your temple, what I now beg as a favour is that you will show us your gods and Teules. Montezuma replied that he must first speak with his high priests, and when he had spoken to them he said that we might enter into a small tower and apartment, a sort of hall, where there were two altars, with very richly carved boardings on the top of the roof. On each altar were two figures, like giants with very tall bodies and very fat, and the first which stood on the right hand they said was the figure of Huichilobos their god of War; it had a very broad face and monstrous and terrible eyes, and the whole of his body was covered with precious stones, and gold and pearls, and with seed pearls stuck on with a paste that they make in this country out of a sort of root, and all the body and head was covered with it, and the body was girdled by great snakes made of gold and precious stones, and in one hand he held a bow and in the other some arrows. And another small idol that stood by him, they said was his page, and he held a short lance and a shield richly decorated with gold and stones. Huichilobos had round his neck some Indians' faces and other things like hearts of Indians, the former made of gold and the latter of silver, with many precious blue stones.

There were some braziers with incense which they call copal, and in them they were burning the hearts of the three Indians whom they had sacrificed that day, and they had made the sacrifice with smoke and copal. All the walls

of the oratory were so splashed and encrusted with blood that they were black, the floor was the same and the whole place stank vilely. Then we saw on the other side on the left hand there stood the other great image the same height as Huichilobos, and it had a face like a bear and eyes that shone, made of their mirrors which they call *Tezcat*, and the body plastered with precious stones like that of Huichilobos, for they say that the two are brothers; and this Tezcatepuca was the god of Hell and had charge of the souls of the Mexicans, and his body was girt with figures like little devils with snakes' tails. The walls were so clotted with blood and the soil so bathed with it that in the slaughter houses in Spain there is not such another stench.

They had offered to this Idol five hearts from that day's sacrifices. In the highest part of the Cue there was a recess of which the woodwork was very richly worked, and in it was another image half man and half lizard, with precious stones all over it, and half the body was covered with a mantle. They say that the body of this figure is full of all the seeds that there are in the world, and they say that it is the god of seed time and harvest, but I do not remember its name, and everything was covered with blood, both walls and altar, and the stench was such that we could hardly wait the moment to get out of it.

They had an exceedingly large drum there, and when they beat it the sound of it was so dismal and like, so to say, an instrument of the infernal regions, that one could hear it a distance of two leagues, and they said that the skins it was covered with were those of great snakes. In that small place there were many diabolical things to be seen, bugles and trumpets and knives, and many hearts of Indians that they had burned in fumigating their idols, and everything was so clotted with blood, and there was

so much of it, that I curse the whole of it, and as it stank like a slaughter house we hastened to clear out of such a bad stench and worse sight. Our Captain said to Montezuma through our interpreter, half laughing: "Señor Montezuma, I do not understand how such a great Prince and wise man as you are has not come to the conclusion, in your mind, that these idols of yours are not gods, but evil things that are called devils, and so that you may know it and all your priests may see it clearly, do me the favour to approve of my placing a cross here on the top of this tower, and that in one part of these oratories where your Huichilobos and Tezcatepuca stand we may divide off a space where we can set up an image of Our Lady (an image which Montezuma had already seen) and you will see by the fear in which these Idols hold it that they are deceiving you."

Montezuma replied half angrily, (and the two priests who were with him showed great annoyance,) and said: "Señor Malinche, if I had known that you would have said such defamatory things I would not have shown you my gods, we consider them to be very good, for they give us health and rains and good seed times and seasons and as many victories as we desire, and we are obliged to worship them and make sacrifices, and I pray you not to say another word to their dishonour."

When our Captain heard that and noted the angry looks he did not refer again to the subject, but said with a cheerful manner: "It is time for your Excellency and for us to return," and Montezuma replied that it was well, but that he had to pray and offer certain sacrifices on account of the great *tatacul*, that is to say sin, which he had committed in allowing us to ascend his great Cue, and being the cause of our being permitted to see his gods, and of our dishonouring them by speaking evil of them, so that before he left he must pray and worship.

Then Cortés said "I ask your pardon if it be so," and then we went down the steps, and as they numbered one hundred and fourteen; and as some of our soldiers were suffering from tumours and abscesses, their legs were tired by the descent.

I will leave off talking about the oratory, and I will give my impresions of its surroundings, and if I do not describe it as accurately as I should do, do not wonder at it, for at that time I had other things to think about, regarding what we had on hand, that is to say my soldier's duties and what my Captain ordered me to do, and not about telling stories. To go back to the facts, it seems to me that the circuit of the great Cue was equal to [that of] six large sites,¹ such as they measure in this country, and from below up to where a small tower stood, where they kept their idols, it narrowed, and in the middle of the lofty Cue up to its highest point, there were five hollows like barbicans, but open, without screens, and as there are many Cues painted on the banners of the conquerors, and on one which I possess, any one who has seen them can infer what they looked like from outside, better that I myself saw and understood it. There was a report that at the time they began to build that great Cue, all the inhabitants of that mighty city had placed as offerings in the foundations, gold and silver and pearls and precious stones, and had bathed them with the blood of the many Indian prisoners of war who were sacrificed, and had placed there every sort and kind of seed that the land produces, so that their Idols should give them victories and riches, and large crops. Some of my inquisitive readers will ask, how could we come to know that into the foundations of that great Cue they cast gold and silver and precious chalchihuites and seeds, and watered them with the human

¹ Solares. Solar is a town lot for house building.

blood of the Indians whom they sacrificed, when it was more than a thousand years ago that they built and made it? The answer I give to this is that after we took that great and strong city, and the sites were apportioned, it was then proposed that in [the place of] that great *Cue* we should build a church to our patron and guide Señor Santiago, and a great part of the site of the great temple of Huichilobos was occupied by the site of the holy church, and when they opened the foundations in order to strengthen them, they found much gold and silver and chalchihuites and pearls and seed pearls and other stones. And a settler in Mexico who occupied another part of the same site found the same things, and the officers of His Majesty's treasury demanded them saying that they belonged by right to His Majesty, and there was a lawsuit about it. I do not remember what happened except that they sought information from the Caciques and Chieftains of Mexico, and from Guatémoc, who was then alive, and they said that it was true that all the inhabitants of Mexico at that time cast into the foundations those jewels and all the rest of the things, and that so it was noted in their books and pictures of ancient things, and from this cause those riches were preserved for the building of the holy church of Santiago.

Let us leave this and speak of the great and splendid Courts which were in front of the [temple of] Huichilobos, where now stands [the church of] Señor Santiago, which was called Tlaltelolco, for so they were accustomed to call it.

I have already said that there were two walls of masonry [which had to be passed] before entering, and that the court was paved with white stones, like flagstones, carefully whitewashed and burnished and clean, and it was as large and as broad as the plaza of Salamanca. A little way

apart from the great Cue there was another small tower which was also an Idol house, or a true hell, for it had at the opening of one gate a most terrible mouth such as they depict, saying that such there are in hell. The mouth was open with great fangs to devour souls, and here too were some groups of devils and bodies of serpents close to the door, and a little way off was a place of sacrifice all blood-stained and black with smoke, and encrusted with blood, and there were many great ollas and cántaros and tinajas¹ of water inside the house, for it was here that they cooked the flesh of the unfortunate Indians who were sacrificed, which was eaten by the priests. There were also near the place of sacrifice many large knives and chopping blocks, such as those on which they cut up meat in the slaughter houses. Then behind that cursed house, some distance away from it, were some great piles of firewood, and not far from them a large tank of water which rises and falls, the water coming through a tube from the covered channel which enters the city from Chapultepec. I always called that house "the Infernal Regions."

Let us go on beyond the court to another Cue where the great Mexican princes were buried, where also there were many Idols, and all was full of blood and smoke, and it had other doorways with hellish figures, and then near that Cue was another full of skulls and large bones arranged in perfect order, which one could look at but could not count, for there were too many of them. The skulls were by themselves and the bones in separate piles. In that place there were other Idols, and in every house or Cue or oratory that I have mentioned there were priests with long robes of black cloth and long hoods like those of the Dominicans, and slightly resembling those of the Canons. The hair

¹ Names of various large pottery vessels for holding water and cooking.

of these priests was very long and so matted that it could not be separated or disentangled, and most of them had their ears scarified, and their hair was clotted with blood. Let us go on ; there were other Cues, a little way from where the skulls were, which contained other Idols and places of sacrifice [decorated] with other evil paintings. And they said that those idols were intercessors in the marriages of men. I do not want to delay any longer telling about idols, but will only add that all round that great court there were many houses, not lofty, used and occupied by the priests and other Indians who had charge of the Idols. On one side of the great Cue there was another much larger pond or tank of very clear water dedicated solely to the service of Huichilobos and Tezcatepuca, and the water entered that pond through covered pipes which came from Chapultepec. Near to this were other large buildings such as a sort of nunnery where many of the daughters of the inhabitants of Mexico were sheltered like nuns up to the time they were married, and there stood two Idols with the figures of women, which were the intercessors in the marriages of women, and women made sacrifices to them and held festivals so that they should give them good husbands.

I have spent a long time talking about this great Cue of Tlaltelolco and its Courts, but I say that it was the greatest temple in the whole of Mexico although there were many others, very splendid. Four or five parishes or districts possessed, between them, an oratory with its Idols, and as they were very numerous I have not kept count of them all. I will go on and say that the great oratory that they had in Cholula was higher than that of Mexico, for it had one hundred and twenty steps, and according to what they say they held the Idol of Cholula to be good, and they went to it on pilgrimages from all parts of New Spain to obtain absolution, and for this reason they built for it such

a splendid Cue; but it is of another form from that of Mexico although the courts are the same, very large with a double wall. I may add that the Cue in the City of Texcoco was very lofty, having one hundred and seventeen steps, and the Courts were broad and fine, shaped in a different form from the others. It is a laughable matter that every province had its Idols and those of one province or city were of no use to the others, thus they had an infinite number of Idols and they made sacrifices to them all.

After our Captain and all of us were tired of walking about and seeing such a diversity of Idols and their sacrifices, we returned to our quarters, all the time accompanied by many Caciques and chieftains whom Montezuma sent with us. I will stop here and go on to say what more we did.

CHAPTER XCIII.

How we made our Church and altar in our quarters and placed a Cross outside the chamber, and what else happened, and how we found the hall and treasure chamber of Montezuma's father, and how we decided to seize Montezuma.

WHEN our Captain and the Friar of the Order of Mercy saw that Montezuma was not willing that we should set up a cross on the Temple of Huichilobos nor build a church there, and because, ever since we entered this city of Mexico, when Mass was said, we had to place an altar on tables and then to dismantle it again, it was decided that we should ask Montezuma's stewards for masons so that we could make a church in our quarters.

The stewards said that they would tell Montezuma of our wishes, and our Captain also sent to tell him so by Doña Marina and Aguilar and his page Orteguilla, who

already understood something of the language, and Montezuma gave his permission and ordered us to be supplied with all the material we needed. In two days we had our church finished and the holy cross set up in front of our apartments, and Mass was said there every day until the wine gave out. As Cortés and some of the other Captains and the Friar had been ill during the war in Tlaxcala, they made the wine that we had for Mass go too fast, but after it was all finished we [still] went to the church daily and prayed on our knees before the altar and images, for one reason, because we were obliged to do so as Christians and it was a good habit, and for another reason, in order that Montezuma and all his Captains should observe it, and should witness our adoration and see us on our knees before the Cross, especially when we intoned the Ave Maria, so that it might incline them towards it.

When we were all assembled in those chambers, as it was our habit to inquire into and want to know everything, while we were looking for the best and most convenient site to place the altar, two of our soldiers, one of whom was a carpenter, named Alonzo Yañes, noticed on one of the walls marks showing that there had been a door there, and that it had been closed up and carefully plastered over and burnished. Now as there was a rumour and we had heard the story that Montezuma kept the treasure of his father Axayaca in that building, it was suspected that it might be in this chamber which had been closed up and cemented only a few days before. Yañes spoke about it to Juan Velásquez de Leon and Francisco de Lugo, who were Captains and relations of mine, and Alonzo Yañes had attached himself to their company as a servant, and those Captains told the story to Cortés, and the door was secretly opened. When it was open Cortés and some of his Captains went in first, and they saw such a

number of jewels and slabs and plates of gold and chalchihuites and other great riches, that they were quite carried away and did not know what to say about such wealth. The news soon spread among all the other Captains and soldiers, and very secretly we went in to see it. When I saw it I marvelled, and as at that time I was a youth and had never seen such riches as those in my life before, I took it for certain that there could not be another such store of wealth in the whole world. It was decided by all our captains and soldiers, that we should not dream of touching a particle of it, but that the stones should immediately be put back in the doorway and it should be sealed up and cemented just as we found it, and that it should not be spoken about, lest it should reach Montezuma's ears, until times should alter.

Let us leave this about the riches, and say that as we had such valiant captains and soldiers of good counsel and judgment, (and first of all we all believed for certain that our Lord Jesus Christ held His Divine hand over all our affairs,) four of our captains took Cortés aside in the church, with a dozen soldiers in whom he trusted and confided, and I was one of them, and we asked him to look at the net and trap in which we found ourselves, and to consider the great strength of that city, and observe the causeways and bridges, and to think over the words of warning that we had been given in all the towns we had passed through, that Montezuma had been advised by his Huichilobos to allow us to enter into the city, and when we were there, to kill us. That he [Cortés] should remember that the hearts of the men are very changeable, especially those of Indians, and he should not repose trust in the good will and affection that Montezuma was showing us, for at some time or other, when the wish occurred to him, he would order us to be attacked, and by the stoppage of our supplies of food or of water, or by the raising of

any of the bridges, we should be rendered helpless. Then, considering the great multitude of Indian warriors that Montezuma had as his guard, what should we be able to do either in offence or defence? and as all the houses were built in the water, how could our friends the Tlaxcalans enter and come to our aid? He should think over all this that we had said, and if we wished to safeguard our lives, that we should at once, without further delay, seize Montezuma and should not wait until next day to do it. He should also remember that all the gold that Montezuma had given us and all that we had seen in the treasury of his father Axayaca, and all the food which we ate, all would be turned to arsenic poison in our bodies, for we could neither sleep by night nor day nor rest ourselves while these thoughts were in our minds, and that if any of our soldiers should give him other advice short of this, they would be senseless beasts who were dazed by the gold, incapable of looking death in the face.

When Cortés heard this he replied: "Don't you imagine, gentlemen, that I am asleep, or that I am free from the same anxiety, you must have felt that it is so with me; but what possibility is there of our doing a deed of such great daring as to seize such a great prince in his own palace, surrounded as he is by his own guards and warriors, by what scheme or artifice can we carry it out, so that he should not call on his warriors to attack us at once?" Our Captains replied, (that is Juan Velásquez de Leon and Diego de Ordás, Gonzalo de Sandoval and Pedro de Alvarado,) that with smooth speeches he should be got out of his halls and brought to our quarters, and should be told that he must remain a prisoner, and if he made a disturbance or cried out, that he would pay for it with his life; that if Cortés did not want to do this at once, he should give them permission to do it, as they were ready

for the work, for, between the two great dangers in which we found ourselves, it was better and more to the purpose to seize Montezuma than to wait until he attacked us ; for if he began the attack, what chance should we have ? Some of us soldiers also told Cortés that it seemed to us that Montezuma's stewards, who were employed in providing us with food, were insolent and did not bring it courteously as during the first days. Also two of our Allies the Tlaxcalan Indians said secretly to Jerónimo de Aguilar, our interpreter, that the Mexicans had not appeared to be well disposed towards us during the last two days. So we stayed a good hour discussing the question whether or not we should take Montezuma prisoner, and how it was to be done, and to our Captain this last advice seemed opportune, that in any case we should take him prisoner, and we left it until the next day. All that night we were praying to God that our plan might tend to His Holy service.

The next morning after these consultations, there arrived, very secretly, two Tlaxcalan Indians with letters from Villa Rica and what they contained was the news that Juan de Escalante, who had remained there as Chief Alguacil, and six of our soldiers had been killed in a battle against the Mexicans, that his horse had also been slain, and many Totonacs who were in his company. Moreover, all the towns of the Sierra and Cempoala and its subject towns were in revolt, and refused to bring food or serve in the fort. They [the Spaniards] did not know what to do, for as formerly they had been taken to be Teules, that now after this disaster, both the Totonacs and Mexicans were like wild animals, and they could hold them to nothing, and did not know what steps to take.

When we heard this news, God knows what sorrow affected us all, for this was the first disaster we had

seen since we came to New Spain. The interested reader may see

how evil fortune came rolling on us. No one who had seen us enter into that city with such a solemn and triumphant reception, and had seen us in possession of riches which Montezuma gave every day both to our Captain and to us, and had seen the house that I have described full of gold, and how the people took us for Teules, that is for Idols, and that we were conquerors in all our battles, would have thought that now such a great disaster could have befallen us, namely that they no longer attributed to us our former repute, but looked upon us as men liable to be conquered, and that we should have to feel their growing insolence towards us.

As the upshot of much argument it was agreed that, by one means or another, we should seize Montezuma that very day, or we would all die in the attempt.

So that my readers may see how Juan de Escalante fought this battle and was killed in it, he and six soldiers and a horse and the Totonac allies whom he took with him, I wish here to describe it before coming to the seizure of Montezuma, so as not to leave anything behind, for it is necessary that it should be clearly understood.

CHAPTER XCIV.

How the Mexican Captains fought a battle against Juan de Escalante, and killed him and a horse and six soldiers and many of our Totonac allies.

IT was in this way ; you may remember my having said in the chapter that treats of the subject, that when we were camped at a town called Quiahuitztlan, that there came together many allied towns which were friendly with the people of Cempoala, and our Captain persuaded them to agree not to pay any more tribute to Montezuma, and there were more than thirty towns which rebelled against

him. It was then that we captured Montezuma's tax gatherers, as I have already related in the chapter that treats of that subject. When we left Cempoala to come to Mexico there remained in Villa Rica, as Captain and Chief Alguacil of New Spain, one Juan de Escalante, who was a man of high standing, and a friend of Cortés, who ordered him to render to these friendly towns all the assistance they might need.

It appears that the great Montezuma kept many garrisons and companies of warriors in all the frontier provinces, there was one at Soconusco to guard the frontier of Guatemala and Chiapas, another at Coatzacoalcos, and another on the frontier of Michoacán,¹ and another on the frontier of Panuco, between Tuxpan and the town which we called Almeria, on the north coast. And it appears that this garrison near to Tuxpan, demanded tribute of Indian men and women, and supplies of provisions for their people from certain towns in the neighbourhood, which towns were allied to Cempoala and did service to Juan de Escalante and to the settlers who were stationed at Villa Rica and were engaged in building the fort. When the Mexicans demanded tribute and service from these towns they replied that they would not give it, for Malinche had ordered them not to do so, and the great Montezuma had approved. Then the Mexican Captains replied that if they did not pay tribute that they would come and destroy their towns and carry them off captive, and that their Lord Montezuma had recently given them those orders.

When our Totonac allies heard those threats they came to Juan de Escalante and complained loudly that the Mexicans were coming to rob them and devastate their country. On hearing this, Escalante sent messengers to

¹ Mechuacan in the text.

the Mexicans telling them not to annoy or rob those towns, for their Lord Montezuma approved of our all being great friends, and that if they did so he would come against them and attack them. The Mexicans took no notice of that reply or of the threat, but said that we should find them in the field. Juan de Escalante who was a very competent man and prompt in his actions, summoned all our allies from the towns in the Sierra to come with their arms, that is bows, arrows, lances and shields, and he also called together the most active and healthy of his soldiers, (for I have already said that nearly all the settlers who had remained in Villa Rica were invalids and sailors,) and with two cannon and a little powder, three crossbows, two muskets, and forty soldiers and over two thousand Totonac Indians, he went in search of the Mexican garrison, who were already out robbing a town of our allies. They met in the fields at dawn of day, and as the Mexicans doubled in number our Totonac allies, and as the latter were always in terror of them on account of their former wars, at the first attack of the Mexicans with arrows, darts, stones and war cries, they took to their heels and left Juan de Escalante to fight the Mexicans alone, in such a manner that he and his poor soldiers barely reached a town called Almeria, which they set on fire and burned the houses. There he rested a little for he was badly wounded.

In those skirmishes and attacks, the Mexicans carried off alive a soldier named Argüello, a native of Leon, a man with a very large head and black curly beard, and he was very sturdy in appearance and a man of great strength. Juan de Escalante and six of his soldiers were very badly wounded and one horse was killed. They returned to Villa Rica and within three days Escalante and the six soldiers were dead.

It was in this way that what we call "the affair at Almeria"

happened, and not as the historian Gomara has written it, for he says in his history that Pedro de Ircio went to settle at Panuco with certain soldiers. I do not know how, owing to a misunderstanding, so eloquent an historian could make such a statement. All the soldiers that Cortés had with him in Mexico did not number four hundred, and most of them had been wounded in the battles at Tlaxcala and Tabasco and we had not sufficient men to keep a good watch, much less for sending to settle at Panuco. Moreover he says that Pedro de Ircio went as their captain, when he was not a captain and not even an officer at that time, and they did not employ him nor take any notice of him, and he remained with us in Mexico. The same historian also says many other things about the imprisonment of Montezuma. I do not understand his writing, and stare at it when he writes such things in his history, for there must be conquistadores alive who were there at the time, who when they read it will tell him, that this did not take place in such a manner. In this other matter he says what he likes, so let us leave him there and return to our story.

The Mexican Captains after the battle with Escalante that I have spoken about, sent the news of it to Montezuma, and even sent and presented to him the head of Argüello, who it seems died of his wounds on the road, for they had carried him off alive. We heard that when they showed the head, which was large and strong looking and had a large curly beard, to Montezuma, he was terrified and feared to look at it, and ordered that it should not be taken as an offering to any temple in Mexico, but to some other Idol in another town. Montezuma asked his Captains how it was that having such thousands of warriors with them, they had not conquered such a small number of Teules, and they replied that their darts and arrows and hard fighting

to flight because a great *Teleçiguata*¹ of Castile marched before them, and this Lady frightened the Mexicans and said words to encourage the Teules. Then Montezuma thought that great Lady must be Saint Mary who we had told him was our protector, and whose image, with her precious Son in her arms, we had given to him some time before. However, I did not see this myself, for I was in Mexico, but certain conquistadores who were present say so, and pray God that it was so, and certainly all the soldiers who were with Cortés believed it and so it is true, and the divine pity of Our Lady the Virgin Mary was ever with us, for which I give her many thanks. I will leave off here and go on to narrate what happened about the seizure of the Great Montezuma.

CHAPTER XCV.

Of the Seizure of Montezuma and what was done about it.

AS we had determined the day before to seize Montezuma, we were praying to God all that night that it would turn out in a manner redounding to His Holy service, and the next morning the way it should be done was settled.

Cortés took with him five captains who were Pedro de Alvarado, Gonzalo de Sandoval, Juan Velásquez de Leon, Francisco de Lugo and Alonzo de Ávila, and he took me and our interpreters Doña Marina and Aguilar, and he told us all to keep on the alert, and the horsemen to have their horses saddled and bridled. As for our arms I need not call them to mind, for by day or night we always went armed and with our sandals on our

¹ Tequeçihuata in the text.

feet, for at that time such was our footgear, and Montezuma had always seen us armed in that way when we went to speak to him. I mention this because although Cortés and those who went with him to seize Montezuma were all armed, Montezuma did not take it as anything new, nor was he disturbed at all.

When we were all ready, our Captain sent to tell Montezuma that we were coming to his Palace, for this had always been our custom, and so that he should not be alarmed by our arriving suddenly.

Montezuma understood more or less that Cortés was coming because he was annoyed about the Almeria affair, and he was afraid of him, but sent word for him to come and that he would be welcome.

When Cortés entered, after having made his usual salutations, he said to him through our interpreters "Señor Montezuma, I am very much astonished that you, who are such a valiant Prince, after having declared that you are our friend, should order your Captains, whom you have stationed on the coast near to Tuxpan, to take arms against my Spaniards, and that they should dare to rob the towns which are in the keeping and under the protection of our King and master and to demand of them Indian men and women for sacrifice, and should kill a Spaniard, one of my brothers, and a horse." (He did not wish to speak of the Captain nor of the six soldiers who died as soon as they arrived at Villa Rica, for Montezuma did not know about it, nor did the Indian Captains who had attacked them), and Cortés went on to say "being such a friend of yours I ordered my Captains to do all that was possible to help and serve you, and you have done exactly the contrary to us. Also in the affair at Cholula your Captains and a large force of warriors had received your own commands to kill us. I forgave it at the time out of my great regard

for you, and now again your vassals and Captains have become insolent, and hold secret consultations stating that you wish us to be killed. I do not wish to begin a war on this account nor to destroy this city, I am willing to forgive it all, if silently and without raising any disturbance you will come with us to our quarters, where you will be as well served and attended to as though you were in your own house, but if you cry out or make any disturbance you will immediately be killed by these my Captains, whom I brought solely for this purpose." When Montezuma heard this he was terrified and dumfounded, and replied that he had never ordered his people to take arms against us, and that he would at once send to summon his Captains so that the truth should be known, and he would chastise them, and at that very moment he took from his arm and wrist the sign and seal of Huichilobos, which was only done when he gave an important and weighty command which was to be carried out at once. With regard to being taken prisoner and leaving his Palace against his will, he said that he was not the person to whom such an order could be given, and that it was not his wish to go. Cortés replied to him with very good arguments and Montezuma answered him with even better, showing that he ought not to leave his house. In this way more than half an hour was spent over talk, and when Juan Velásquez de Leon and the other Captains saw that they were wasting time over it and could not longer await the moment when they should remove him from his house and hold him a prisoner, they spoke to Cortés somewhat angrily and said, "what is the good of your making so many words, let us either take him prisoner, or stab him, tell him once more that if he cries out or makes an uproar we will kill him, for it is better at once to save our lives or to lose them," and as Juan Velásquez said this

with a loud and rather terrifying voice, for such was his way of speaking, Montezuma, who saw that our Captains were angered, asked Doña Marina what they were saying in such loud tones. As Doña Marina was very clever, she said, "Señor Montezuma, what I counsel you, is to go at once to their quarters without any disturbance at all, for I know that they will pay you much honour as a great Prince such as you are, otherwise you will remain here a dead man, but in their quarters you will learn the truth." Then Montezuma said to Cortés "Señor Malinche, if this is what you desire, I have a son and two legitimate daughters, take them as hostages, and do not put this affront on me, what will my chieftains say if they see me taken off as a prisoner?" Cortés replied to him that he must come with them himself, and there was no alternative. At the end of much more discussion that took place, Montezuma said that he would go willingly, and then Cortés and our Captains bestowed many caresses on him and told him that they begged him not to be annoyed, and to tell his captains and the men of his guard that he was going of his own free will, because he had spoken to his Idol Huichilobos and the priests who attended him, and that it was beneficial for his health and the safety of his life that he should be with us. His rich litter, in which he was used to go out with all the Captains who accompanied him was promptly brought, and he went to our quarters where we placed guards and watchmen over him.

All the attentions and amusements which it was possible for him to have, both Cortés and all of us did our best to afford him, and he was not put under any personal restraint, and soon all the principal Mexican Chieftains, and his nephews came to talk with him, and to learn the reason of his seizure, and whether he wished them to attack us. Montezuma answered them, that he was

delighted to be here some days with us of his own free will and not by force, and that when he wished for anything he would tell them so, and that they must not excite themselves nor the City, nor were they to take it to heart, for what had happened about his being there was agreeable to his Huichilobos, and certain priests who knew had told him so, for they had spoken to the Idol about it. In this way which I have now related the capture of the Great Montezuma was effected.

There, where he remained, he had his service and his women and his baths in which he bathed himself, and twenty great chiefs always stayed in his company holding their ancient offices, as well as his councillors and captains, and he stayed there a prisoner without showing any anger at it, and Ambassadors from distant lands came there with their suites, and brought him his tribute, and he carried on his important business. I call to mind that when Great Caciques from distant lands came before him about boundaries or towns, or other business of that sort, however great a chief he might be, he took off his rich mantle and put on one of hennequen of little worth, and he had to come barefoot, and when he came to the apartments he did not pass straight in, but on one side, and when he came before the Great Montezuma he cast his eyes down to the ground, and before approaching him he made three bows and said "Lord, my Lord, my great Lord," and then he brought the suit or other difficulty about which he desired to consult him, drawn and painted on hennequen cloths, and with some very thin and delicate sticks he pointed out the origin of the suit. Two old men who were Great Caciques stood near Montezuma, and when they thoroughly understood the pleas, those judges told Montezuma the rights of the case, and with a few words he settled it, and gave judgment as to whom the lands or towns should belong. The litigants retired without making any reply

and without turning their backs and with three obeisances they retired to the hall, and as soon as they left the presence of Montezuma they put on their rich garments and took walks through Mexico.

I will not say anything more at present about this imprisonment, and will relate how the messengers whom Montezuma sent with his sign and seal to summon the Captains who had killed our soldiers, brought them before him as prisoners, and what he said to them I do not know, but he sent them on to Cortés, so that he might do justice to them, and their confession was taken when Montezuma was not present and they confessed that what I have already stated was true, that their Prince had ordered them to wage war and to extract tribute, and that if any Teules should appear in defence of the towns, they too should be attacked or killed. When Cortés heard this confession he sent to inform Montezuma how it implicated him in the affair, and Montezuma made all the excuses he could, and our captain sent him word that he believed it [the confession] himself, but that although he [Montezuma] deserved punishment in conformity with the ordinances of our King, to the effect that any person causing others, whether guilty or innocent, to be killed, shall die for it, yet he was so fond of him and wished him so well, that even if that crime lay at his door, he, Cortés, would pay the penalty with his own life sooner than allow Montezuma's to pass away. With all this that he [Cortés] sent to tell him, he [Montezuma] felt anxious, and without any further discussion Cortés sentenced those captains to death and to be burned in front of Montezuma's palace. This sentence was promptly carried out, and, so that there could be no obstruction while they were being burned, Cortés ordered shackles to be put on Montezuma himself, and when this was done Montezuma roared [with rage], and if before this he was scared, he was then much more

so. After the burning was over our Cortés with five of our captains went to Montezuma's apartment and Cortés himself took off the fetters, and he spoke such loving words to him that his anger soon passed off, for our Cortés told him that he not only regarded him as a brother, but much more, and that, as he was already Lord and King of so many towns and provinces, if it were possible he would make him Lord of many more countries as time went on, such as he had not been able to subdue, and which did not now obey him, and he told him that if he now wished to go to his Palace, that he would give him leave to go. Cortés told him this through our interpreters and while Cortés was saying it the tears apparently sprang to Montezuma's eyes. He answered with great courtesy, that he thanked him for it, (but he well knew that Cortés's speech was mere words,) and that now at present it was better for him to stay there a prisoner, for there was danger, as his chieftains were numerous, and his nephews and relations came every day to him to say that it would be a good thing to attack us and free him from prison, that as soon as they saw him outside they might drive him to it [to attack us]. He did not wish to see revolutions in his city, but if he did not comply with their wishes possibly they would want to set up another Prince in his place, and so he was putting those thoughts out of their heads by saying that Huichilobos had sent him word that he should remain a prisoner. (From what we understood, and there is no doubt about it, Cortés had told Aguilar to tell Montezuma secretly, that although Malinche wished to release him from his imprisonment, that the rest of our captains and soldiers would not agree to it.) When he heard this reply, Cortés threw his arms round him and embraced him and said, "It is not in vain Señor Montezuma that I care for you as I care for myself." Then Montezuma asked Cortés that a Spanish page named Ortegulla who already knew

something of his language might attend on him, and this was very advantageous both for Montezuma and for us, for through this page Montezuma asked and learned many things about Spain, and we learned what his captains said to him, and in truth this page was so serviceable that Montezuma got to like him very much.

Let us cease talking about how Montezuma became fairly contented with the great flattery and attention he received and the conversation that he had with us, and whenever we passed before him, even if it was Cortés himself, we doffed our mailed caps or helmets, for we always went armed, and he treated us all with politeness and distinction. Now I will give the names of those of Montezuma's captains who were punished by being burned, the principal one was Quetzalpopoca,¹ and the others were named, one of them Coate, and the other Quiavit, and I forget the name of the third, and it is not much use remembering their names. I may say that when the news of this punishment spread about throughout the provinces of New Spain, they were terrified, and the towns of the Coast, where they had killed our soldiers, returned again and rendered good service to the settlers who remained in Villa Rica. My interested readers who peruse these pages must have some respect for the great deeds we did in those days, first of all in destroying our ships, then in daring to enter so strong a city after receiving so many warnings that they would kill us when once they had us inside, then to have such great temerity as to seize Montezuma who was the King of the country in his own city and within his own palace, where he had such a numerous guard of warriors, then to dare to burn his captains in front of his palaces, and to place Montezuma himself in irons while the punishment was being carried out.

¹ Quauhpopoca (Orozco y Berra).

Now that I am old, I often pause to think over the heroic deeds we did in those days and I think I see them passing again before my eyes, and I say that our deeds were not done of ourselves, but were all guided by God, for what men have there been in the world who, numbering four hundred soldiers, (we did not even reach that number) would have dared to enter into such a strong city as Mexico, which is larger than Venice, and is distant from our own Castile more than fifteen hundred leagues, and take prisoner so great a Prince, and punish his Captains before his eyes! There is indeed much to ponder over but not in the dry-as-dust way in which I tell it.

I will go on and relate how Cortés at once despatched another captain to be stationed at Villa Rica in place of Juan de Escalante who was killed.

CHAPTER XCVI.

How our Cortés sent a gentleman named Alonzo de Grado as his lieutenant and captain to Villa Rica, in place of the Chief Alguacil Juan de Escalante, and how he gave the office of Chief Alguacil to Gonzalo de Sandoval, who from this time on was Alguacil Mayor, and what happened about it I will go on to tell.

AFTER justice had been done on Quetzalpopoca and his captains and the Great Montezuma had been tamed, our Captain decided to send to Villa Rica, as his lieutenant, a soldier named Alonzo de Grado, for he was a very prudent man of good address and presence, and a musician and a great writer.

This Alonzo de Grado was one of those who were always in opposition to our Cortés about going to Mexico, and wished us to go back to Villa Rica. And when at the time of the Tlaxcala affair there were certain meetings of

the discontented, as I have already stated in the Chapter which treats of the subject, it was always Alonzo de Grado who agitated. Had he been as good a man of war as he was a man of good manners, it would have been to his advantage. I say this because when Cortés gave him this appointment, as he was not a bold man, he was facetious in his remarks, and said to him, "Here, Señor Alonzo de Grado, you have your wish fulfilled for you are going now to Villa Rica as you have wished, and you will take charge of the fortress, and take care that you don't go out on any expeditions and get killed as Juan de Escalante did." And when he was saying this to him Cortés winked his eye, so that we soldiers who were standing round might see it, and we knew why he said this, for it was well known of Alonzo de Grado that he would not go on such an expedition even if he were ordered to do so with threats. When his orders and instructions as to what he was to do had been given him, Alonzo de Grado begged Cortés to do him the favour to give him the wand of Alguacil Mayor, as Juan de Escalante who had been killed by the Indians had held it. Cortés replied that he had already given it to Gonzalo de Sandoval, but that for him, in time to come there would not be wanting some other office even more honourable, and he bade him God speed, and charged him to look well after the settlers and to do them honour, and to see that he should cause no annoyance to our Indian Allies, and should take nothing from them by force and that he should at once send him two thick chains which he had ordered the two blacksmiths who remained in the town to make from the ironwork and anchors of the vessels that had been destroyed, and he told him to get on quickly with the fortress and finish putting in the woodwork and tiling the roof.

When Alonzo de Grado arrived at the town he gave himself great importance towards the settlers, and wished

to make them do him service as a great Lord, and to the allied towns which numbered more than thirty, he sent to demand jewels of gold and pretty Indian women and he paid no attention at all to the fortress. How he spent his time was in feeding well and in gambling, and what was worse than all this, he secretly called together his friends, and even some who were not his friends and suggested that if Diego Velásquez or any of his captains should come from Cuba to that country, that they should join him and give up the land to him. All this news was at once sent in haste by letter to Cortés in Mexico, and when he heard of it he was angry with himself for having sent Alonzo de Grado, knowing as he did his evil disposition and pceevish temper, and as he always had it in his thoughts that Diego Velásquez, the Governor of Cuba, by some means or other, would get to know that we had sent our attorneys to His Majesty, we should in no case turn to him for assistance, for there was danger that he might send a fleet and some captains against us. So it seemed to Cortés advisable to send some man whom he could trust to the port and town, and he sent Gonzalo de Sandoval who had been Chief Alguacil since the death of Juan de Escalante, and he took in his company Pedro de Ircio, who according to the Historian Gomara had gone to form a settlement at Panuco. So Pedro de Ircio went to the town and Gonzalo de Sandoval took a great liking to him, for Pedro de Ircio had been a servant in the house of the Conde de Ureña and of Don Pedro Giron and he was always telling stories about what happened to them. As Gonzalo de Sandoval was always kindly and had no guile in him, and Pedro de Ircio told those stories to please him, he took such a liking to him, that he promoted him until he became a Captain, and if now at the present time Pedro de Ircio, instead of thanks, has spoken words that should have remained unsaid, for which Gonzalo de Sandoval would have re-

proved him severely, the Holy Office should punish him for it.

Let us stop talking about outsiders, and return to Gonzalo de Sandoval, who when he arrived at Villa Rica sent Alonzo de Grado as a prisoner to Mexico under a guard of Indians, for so Cortés had told him to do. All the settlers became much attached to Gonzalo de Sandoval, for to those who remained there as invalids, he provided all the comforts that were possible, and showed them much kindness, and to the allied towns he dealt out even justice and assisted them in every way that he was able, and he began to set up the woodwork in the fort and to roof it and do everything else that it falls to the duty of a good Captain to accomplish, and it was very fortunate for Cortés and all of us that he did so, as will be seen later on at the proper time and occasion.

Let us leave Sandoval at the Villa Rica and return to Alonzo de Grado who arrived a prisoner in Mexico, and wished to go and speak to Cortés, but he [Cortés] would not allow him to be brought before him but ordered him to be imprisoned in some wooden stocks which had just been newly made. (I remember that the wood of those stocks had a scent of onions or garlic), and he remained a prisoner for two days.

As Alonzo de Grado was very plausible and a man of many expedients, he made many promises to Cortés that he would be his humble servant and loyal to him in all things, and gave so many indications of his desire to serve him that at length he convinced him, and he gained his release. From that time on I noticed that he was always favoured by Cortés, not that he gave him any command in war, but such things as suited him, and as time went on he gave him the office of auditor, which Alonzo de Ávila had held, for at that time he sent Alonzo as procurator to the Island of Santo Domingo, as I shall

tell later on, in its proper place. I must not forget to say that when Cortés sent Gonzalo de Sandoval to Villa Rica as his lieutenant, and Captain and Alguacil Mayor, he had ordered him, as soon as he arrived, to send two blacksmiths, with all their apparatus of bellows and tools and much iron from the ships which we had destroyed, and the two great iron chains which were already made, and he told him to send also sails and tackle, and pitch and tow and a mariner's compass, and everything else that was needed to build two sloops to sail on the lake of Mexico. These things Sandoval sent at once following in every particular the orders he had received.

CHAPTER XCVII.

How, when the great Montezuma was a prisoner, Cortés and all of us soldiers always entertained him and cheered him up, and even gave him permission to go hunting, and this was given in order to find out what his intentions were.

As our captain was careful in all things, and seeing that Montezuma was a prisoner, and fearing that he might become depressed at being shut in and confined, he endeavoured every day, after prayers (for we then had no wine for Mass) to go and pay court to him, and he went accompanied by four Captains, usually by Pedro de Alvarado, Juan Velásquez de Leon and Diego de Ordás, and with much reverence they asked Montezuma how he was, and that he should issue his orders and they would all be carried out, so that he should not be weary of his confinement. He answered that on the contrary, being a prisoner rested him, and this was because our gods gave us power to confine him or his Huichilobos permitted it, and in one conversation after another they gave him to

understand more fully the things about our holy faith, and the great power of the Emperor our Lord.

Then sometimes Montezuma and Cortés would play at Totoloque, which is the name they give to a game played with some very smooth small pellets made of gold for this game, and they toss these pellets to some distance as well as some little slabs which were also made of gold, and in five strokes [tries] they gained or lost certain pieces of gold or rich jewels that they staked. I remember that Pedro de Alvarado was keeping the score for Cortés, and one of his nephews, a great cacique, was marking for Montezuma, and Pedro de Alvarado always marked one point more than Cortés gained, and when Montezuma saw it he said courteously and laughingly that he did not like Tonatio (for so they called Pedro de Alvarado) to keep the score for Cortés, because he made so much *yxoxol* in what he marked, which in their language means to say that he cheated, in that he always marked one point too many. Cortés and all of us soldiers who were on guard at the time, could not restrain our laughter at what the great Montezuma said. It may now be asked why we laughed at that expression, and it was because Pedro de Alvarado, although he was so handsome and well mannered, had a *mānia* for excessive talking, and as we knew his temperament, we all laughed so much. To return to the game, if Cortés won, he gave the jewels to those nephews and favourites of Montezuma who attended on him, and if Montezuma won he divided them among us soldiers on guard, and in addition to what he gave us from the game, he never omitted giving us every day presents of gold and cloth, both to us and to the captain of the Guard who, at that time, was Juan Velásquez de Leon, who showed himself in every way to be the friend and servant of Montezuma.

I also remember that at one time there was on guard

a soldier named somebody de Trujillo, a very tall man, in good health and very strong, and he was a seaman, and when it was his turn for the night's watch, he was so inconsiderate that—speaking with all respect for the gentlemen who read this—he acted indecently, and Montezuma heard him, and as he was the valiant King of this country, he considered it a proof of bad manners and disrespect that such a thing should be done in a place where he could hear it regardless of his presence. And he asked his page, Orteguilla, who that ill-conditioned and dirty person was, and the page replied that he was a man who was accustomed to travel on the sea and who knew nothing of courtesy and good breeding, and he also gave him information about the quality of all of us soldiers who were there, which was a gentleman and which not, and in continuation told him many things that Montezuma wished to know. To return to the soldier, Trujillo; as soon as it was day Montezuma sent to summon him, and asked him why he was so behaved that he had no consideration for his presence, and did not pay him that respect that was due to him, that he begged him never to do such a thing again, then he ordered him to be given a jewel of gold weighing five pesos. Trujillo paid no attention to what was said to him and the next night did the same again purposely, thinking that Montezuma might give him something else, but Montezuma had Juan Velásquez, Captain of the Guard, informed of it, and the Captain immediately removed Trujillo so that he should not again stand guard and they reprimanded him with rough words. It also happened that another soldier named Pedro López, a great crossbowman, a man in good health but who was not easily understood, was placed as sentinel over Montezuma, and on the question whether it was time to change the watch during the night, he had words with an officer and said, “Oh! curse this dog, I am sick to death of keeping

constant guard over him." Montezuma heard the expression, and weighed it in his mind, and when Cortés came to pay his court to him, he heard of it, and was so angry about it, that he had Pedro López, good soldier as he was, flogged in our quarters, and from that time on all the soldiers who came on guard, went through their watch in silence and good manners. However it was not necessary to give orders to many of us who stood guard over him about the civility that we ought to show to this great cacique; he knew each one of us and even knew our names and our characters and he was so kind that to all of us he gave jewels and to some mantles, and handsome Indian women. As I was a young man in those days, whenever I was on guard, or passed in front of him, I doffed my headpiece with the greatest respect, and the page Orteguilla had told him that I had been on two expeditions to discover New Spain before the time of Cortés, so I asked Orteguilla to beg Montezuma to do me the favour of giving me a very pretty Indian woman, and when Montezuma heard this he told them to call me, and he said to me: "Bernal Díaz del Castillo, they tell me that you have quantities of cloth and gold, and I will order them to give you to-day a pretty maid. Treat her very well for she is the daughter of a chieftain, and they will also give you gold and mantles," and I answered him with much reverence, that I kissed his hands for his great favour, and might God our Lord prosper him, and it seems that he asked the page what I had replied to him, and he told him; and Montezuma said to him, "Bernal Díaz seems to me to be a gentleman," for as I have said, he knew all our names, and he told them to give me three small slabs of gold and two loads of mantles.

Let us stop talking of this and tell how of a morning after saying his prayers and making sacrifices to his idols, he took his breakfast, which was a small matter, for he ate

no meat, only chili peppers,¹ then he was occupied for an hour in hearing suits from many parts brought by Caciques who came to him from distant lands. I have already stated in the chapter that tells about it, the manner in which they came in to do their business and the reverence that they showed to Montezuma, and that at such times he always had in his company twenty elderly men who were his judges to decide cases, and as this has been already noted I will not repeat it. It was then that we found out that from among the many women whom he had as his mistresses, he gave wives to his Captains and to very favourite chieftains, and he even gave some of them to our soldiers, and the one he gave to me was a lady from among them, and her bearing clearly showed it, and she was called Doña Francisca. So Montezuma passed his life, sometimes laughing and sometimes thinking about his imprisonment.

I wish to state here, although it has nothing to do with our story, as some inquisitive persons have asked me just why the soldier mentioned by me, who called Montezuma a dog, and even that not in his presence, was flogged by order of Cortés, (there being so few of us soldiers), so that the Indians should hear about it. I say so [again], that at that time all of us and even Cortés himself, when we appeared before the great Montezuma, paid respect to him by always doffing our headpieces and besides being King of New Spain, his person and his rank entitled him to it, and he was so kind and well mannered that he did honour to us all. In addition to all this, one may well remember that our lives were at stake, and at a word to his vassals, they would have removed him from his prison and made war on us. Observing his bearing and royal generosity, and seeing that he always had with him

¹ Ají.

many chieftains in his company, and the many other chieftains who came from distant lands, who paid great court to him, and the great number of persons to whom he daily gave food and drink, neither more nor less than when he was not in confinement, taking all this into consideration, Cortés was [naturally] very angry when he heard that such a word had been used about him ; and being irritated at it, he at once ordered the punishment as I have said, and it was well deserved.

Let us go on and tell how at that moment there arrived from Villa Rica Indians carrying the thick chains which Cortés had ordered the blacksmiths to make, and they also brought all the things necessary for the sloops that I have spoken about, and when they had all arrived, Montezuma was told of it, and I will leave off here and go on to relate what happened about it.

CHAPTER XCVIII.

How Cortés ordered two sloops to be built, of considerable burden and fast sailers, for use on the lake, and how the great Montezuma asked Cortés to give him permission to go and pray at his temples, and what Cortés answered, and how he gave him permission.

As all the materials for building the two sloops had arrived, Cortés at once went to tell the great Montezuma that he wished to build two small ships so as to take pleasure trips on the lake and asked him to send his carpenters to cut the wood, together with our experts in boat-building, who were named Martin López and Andrés Nuñez. As the oak timber was distant about four leagues, it was soon brought and shaped, and as there were many Indian carpenters, the boats were soon built and caulked and tarred, and their rigging was set up and their sails cut to the right size and measurement, and an awning provided

for each one, and they turned out to be as good and fast as though they had taken a month to set up the models, for Martin López was a past master of the art, and it was he who afterwards built the thirteen sloops to aid in capturing Mexico, as I shall relate further on ; he was also a good soldier in war time.

Let us leave this and say that Montezuma told Cortés that he wished to go to his temples and make sacrifices, and pay the devotion to his gods that it was his duty to do, so that his Captains and chieftains might observe it, especially certain nephews of his, who came every day to tell him that they wished to free him and to attack us, and he answered them, that it pleased him to be with us, so they should think it was as he had told them, that his God Huichilobos had commanded him to stay with us, as he had made them believe before. Cortés replied that as to this permission he asked for, he should beware not to do anything for which he might lose his life, and so as to prevent any disorders, or commands to his Captains or priests either to release him, or attack us, he would send Captains and soldiers [with him] who would immediately stab him to death, should any change be noticed in his bearing. He might go and welcome, but must not sacrifice any human beings, for that was a great offence against the true God, that was to the God we were preaching to him about, and there stood our altars and the image of Our Lady, before whom he could pray. Montezuma said that he would not sacrifice a single human being, and he set off in his rich litter in great state with many great Caciques in his company as was his custom, and they carried his insignia in front of him in the form of a sort of staff or rod, which was the sign that his royal person was going that way (just as they do [now] to the Viceroy of New Spain). There went with him as a guard four of our Captains, namely, Juan Velásquez de Leon, Pedro de

Alvarado, Alonzo de Ávila and Francisco de Lugo and one hundred and fifty soldiers, and the Padre de la Merced also went with us to stop the sacrifice if he should offer human beings. So we went to the Cue of Huichilobos and when we came near to that cursed temple, he [Montezuma] ordered them to take him from his litter and he was carried on the shoulders of his nephews and of other Caciques until he arrived at the temple ; as I have already stated, as he went through the streets all the chieftains cast down their eyes and never looked at his face. When we arrived at the foot of the steps leading to the oratory there were many priests waiting to help him with their arms in the ascent.

There had already been sacrificed the night before four Indians, and in spite of what our Captain said and the dissuasions of the Padre de la Merced, he paid no heed but persisted in killing men and boys to accomplish his sacrifice, and we could do nothing at that time only pretend not to notice it, for Mexico and the other great cities were very ready to rebel under the nephews of Montezuma, as I shall explain further on. When he [Montezuma] had completed his sacrifices, and he did not tarry much in making them, we returned with him to our quarters, and he was very cheerful, and gave presents of golden jewels to us soldiers who had accompanied him.

Let us leave this here, and I will relate what next happened.

CHAPTER XCIX.

How we launched the two sloops, and how the Great Montezuma said that he wished to go hunting, and went in the sloops to a rocky Island¹ where there were many deer and much other game, for no one went hunting there under pain of very severe punishment.

WHEN the two sloops were finished building and had been launched, and the masts and rigging had been set up and adorned with the Royal and Imperial banners, and the sailors had been got ready to navigate them, they went out in them both rowing and sailing, and they sailed very well. When Montezuma heard of it, he said to Cortés that he wished to go hunting on a rocky Island standing in the lake which was preserved so that no one dared to hunt there, however great a chief he might be, under pain of death. Cortés replied that he was very welcome to go, but he must remember what he had told him on the former occasion when he went to visit his Idols, that to raise any disturbances was more than his life was worth; [moreover] he could go in the sloops, as it was better sailing in them than in the canoes and pirogues however large they might be. Montezuma said that he would be delighted to sail in the sloop that was the swiftest, and he took with him many lords and chieftains, and advised his huntsmen to follow in canoes and pirogues. A son of Montezuma and many Caciques went in the other sloop. Then Cortés ordered Velásquez de Leon who was captain of the Guard and Pedro de Alvarado and Cristóbal de Olid, Alonzo de Ávila with two hundred soldiers, to accompany Montezuma, and to remember the great responsibility he was placing on them in looking after him, and as all those Captains whom I have named were very alert, they took on board all the soldiers I have spoken about, and four

¹ The *Peñon de Tepepolco* or *del Marques*.

bronze cannon and all the powder that we possessed, and our gunners, named Mesa and Arvenga, and they put up a highly decorated awning as a protection from the weather, and Montezuma and his chieftains went under it. As at that time there was a strong breeze blowing, and the sailors were delighted to please and content Montezuma, they worked the sails so well that they went flying along, and the canoes which held his huntsmen and chieftains were left far behind in spite of the large number of rowers they carried. Montezuma was charmed, and said that it was a great art this of combining sails and oars together. So he arrived at the Peñol, which was not very far off, and he [Montezuma] killed all the game he wanted, deer and hares and rabbits, and returned very contented to the city. When we arrived near Mexico, Pedro de Alvarado and Juan Velásquez de Leon and the other Captains ordered the cannon to be discharged, and this delighted Montezuma, and as we saw him so frank and kind, we treated him with the respect in which the Kings of these countries are held, and he behaved in the same manner to us. If I were to relate the traits and qualities that he showed as a great Prince, and the reverence and service that all the Lords of New Spain paid to him, I should never come to an end. There was not a thing that he ordered to be brought that was not immediately there, even if it were flying. I say this because one day three of our Captains and some of us soldiers were in Montezuma's presence, when by chance a hawk swooped down through the halls which were like corridors, after a quail, for near the houses and palaces where Montezuma was confined, there were some tame pigeons and quails kept for breeding purposes by the Indian steward (whose duty it was to keep the rooms swept) so as to give himself importance.

When our Captains saw the hawk swoop and carry off

its quarry, one of them, named Francisco de Sauzedo, the elegant, who had been house steward to the Admiral of Castile, called out, "Oh! what a beautiful hawk! and how well he struck and how well he flew," and most of the soldiers answered that it was capital and that there were hereabouts many good birds for hawking, and Montezuma was watching what we said, and he asked his page Orteguilla about our conversation, and he replied that those Captains were saying that the hawk which came in hunting was a very good one, and that if we had some like it we would show him how it would come to hand, and that in the open, when it was flown at any bird, although it might be rather a large one, it would kill it. Then Montezuma said: "Then I will send now to have that same hawk caught, and we will see if you can tame it and hunt with it." All of us who were present doffed our head-pieces and thanked him for his kindness, and he at once sent to summon his fowlers, and told them to bring him that same hawk, and they were so skilful in its capture, that by the time of Ave Maria they brought that very hawk and gave it to Francisco de Sauzedo, and he showed it the lure, but as other things soon happened to us more important than the chase, I will stop talking about it now, but I have told the story because he was such a great Prince, that not only did he take tribute from nearly all parts of New Spain, and lord it over so many lands, and make himself fully obeyed, but even when he was a prisoner his vassals trembled before him, and they even captured for him the birds that fly in the air. Let us waive this and say how by degrees adverse fortune turned its wheel.

At that time it had been agreed between the nephews and relations of the great Montezuma and other Caciques and throughout all the country that we should be attacked

and Montezuma released, and that some of them should proclaim themselves as Kings of Mexico, as I will go on to relate.

CHAPTER C.

How the nephews of the great Montezuma went about assembling the other Lords and persuading them to come to Mexico and free the great Montezuma from his imprisonment and drive us out of the City and kill us.

As Cacamatzin, lord of the City of Texcoco, which after Mexico is the largest and most important city that there is in New Spain, knew that his uncle, Montezuma, had been imprisoned for many days, and that we were taking the upper hand in every way that was possible, and also got to know that we had opened the chamber where the great treasure of his grandfather Axayaca was kept, but had not taken anything from it, he determined, before we could take possession of the treasure, to call together all the Lords of Texcoco, who were his vassals, and the lord of Coyoacan, who was his cousin and Montezuma's nephew, and the lord of Tacuba, and the lord of Iztapalapa, and another great Cacique who was lord of Matalcingo, who was very nearly related to Montezuma and of whom it was even said that he was the rightful heir to the kingdom and lordship of Mexico, and who was a chieftain known among the Indians for his personal bravery. While he [Cacamatzin] continued to negotiate with these and other Mexican chieftains that on a given day they should come with all their forces and attack us, it seems that the Cacique whom I have said was known for his personal bravery (whose name I do not know), said that if he [Cacamatzin] would assure to him the Kingship of Mexico, to which he was the rightful heir, that he and all his relations, and the people of the province called Matalcingo,

would be the first to take up arms and turn us out of Mexico, or not leave any one of us alive. It appears that Cacamatzin replied that the Chieftainship of Mexico belonged to him and that he himself must be King, for he was the nephew of Montezuma; and that if he [the Lord of Matalcingo] did not wish to come, that they would make war on us without his help or that of his people, for it seems that Cacamatzin had got ready all the Lords and towns already named by me, and had already arranged the day on which they were to fall on Mexico, and that the chieftains of his faction who were then in the city would facilitate their entry.

While these negotiations were going on, Montezuma knew all about them from his powerful relation [the lord of Matalcingo] who would not come to an agreement with Cacamatzin, and to be more sure of it, Montezuma sent to summon all the Caciques and chieftains of that City [Texcoco], and they told him how Cacamatzin was going about persuading them all with words and gifts to join him in an attack on us, and to free his uncle. As Montezuma was prudent and did not wish to see his city rise up in arms or riots, he told Cortés what was happening. Our Captain and all of us soldiers knew a good deal about this disturbance, but not so fully as Montezuma now detailed it. The advice that Cortés now gave him was that he should give us his Mexican followers and we would fall on Texcoco and capture or destroy that city and its neighbourhood. As that advice did not suit Montezuma, Cortés sent to tell Cacamatzin that he should cease his preparations for war, which would be the means of his destruction, for he wished to have him as a friend, and that all that he could do for him personally he would do, and many other compliments. Now Cacamatzin was a young man who found many others, who shared his opinions, ready to support him in the war, so he sent to tell Cortés,

that he understood his flatteries and did not want to hear any more of them, but that when he saw him coming then he would say to him whatever he liked. Cortés again sent to tell him that he should beware not to do an ill turn to our King and Lord, for he would pay for it with his person, and lose his life for it. He replied that he knew no King and wished he had never known Cortés, who, for all his fair words, had imprisoned his uncle.

When he [Cacamatzin] sent this answer, our Captain implored Montezuma, as he was such a great Prince, and had among his Captains in Texcoco both great Caciques and kinsmen who were not friendly with Cacamatzin, who was very haughty and much disliked, and as Montezuma had with him there in Mexico a brother of this same Cacamatzin, a youth of a good disposition, who had fled from his own brother to escape being killed by him, (for after Cacamatzin he was the heir to the kingdom of Texcoco,) [our captain implored Montezuma] to concert measures with his people in Texcoco to seize Cacamatzin, or to send secretly to summon him to come [to Mexico,] and if he did come, to lay hands on him and keep him in his power until he had quieted down. Moreover as this (other) nephew was in his house and was subject to him, he should presently promote him to be the Lord and should take the chieftainship from Cacamatzin, who was doing him an injury and going about stirring up all the cities and Caciques of the land to make him Lord over his [Montezuma's] city and kingdom.

Montezuma said that he would at once send to summon him, but he did not think he would come, and that if he did not come he would make arrangements with his Captains and relations to seize him.

Cortés thanked him heartily for this, and even said: "Señor Montezuma, you may indeed believe me that if you wish to go to your Palace, you are free to do so,

for since I understand that you are well disposed towards me, I am so devoted to you, that were I not in such a [difficult] position, I would not even insist upon accompanying you when you proceed to your palace with all your nobility. If I have failed to carry out such a plan, it is on account of my Captains who went to seize you, for they are not willing that I should set you free, and also because you say that you prefer to stay in confinement so as to avoid the disturbances through which your nephews would attempt to obtain power over this City of yours, and deprive you of your rule."

Montezuma answered that he thanked him, and as he began to understand Cortés' flattering speeches and saw that he made them, not with any intention of setting him free, but only to test his good will, and also because his page Orteguilla had told him that it was our captains who had advised Cortés to take him prisoner, and he must not believe that Cortés would set him free without their consent, Montezuma added that it was as well for him to remain a prisoner until he could see whither the treachery of his nephews would lead. Moreover he would immediately send messengers to Cacamatzin, begging him to appear before him, as he wished to speak to him about friendship between him and us, and would send to tell him, that as for his imprisonment he need not trouble himself about it, that had he desired to free himself many opportunities for doing so had offered, and that Malinche had twice told him to return to his palace, but he did not wish to do so, but to fulfil the commands of his Gods that he should remain a prisoner. Indeed if he did not so remain, he would soon be a dead man, and the priests who ministered to the Idols had known this for many days, and for this reason it would be advisable to be on good terms with Malinche and his brothers. Montezuma sent the same message to the Captains of Texcoco, telling

them that he was sending to summon his nephew to make friends, adding that they should beware how that youth turned their brains so that they would take up arms against us.

Let us leave this talk, which Cacamatzin thoroughly understood, for he took counsel with his chiefs as to what should be done. Cacamatzin then began to bluster and say that he would kill us all within four days, and that his uncle was a chicken not to attack us when he advised him to do so, when we were coming down the mountain towards Chalco, where he had the troops all posted and everything ready, that [instead of doing so] he personally received us in his city as though he knew that we had come to confer some benefit on him, and had given us all the gold that had been brought to him as tribute. Moreover we had broken into and opened the house where the treasure of his grandfather Axayaca was stored, and added to all this we had taken Montezuma prisoner, and were already telling him that he must get rid of the Idols of the great Huichilobos, as we wished to set up our own in their places. So that things should not come to a worse pass, and so as to punish such deeds and affronts, he [Cacamatzin] prayed his chieftains to give him their help, for all that he had told them they had seen with their own eyes, even how we had burnt Montezuma's own Captains, and nothing more could be endured, and they ought all to unite as one man and make war on us.

Cacamatzin promised them there and then, that if the Lordship of Mexico should fall to him, he would make them great chieftains, and he also gave them many golden jewels, and told them that he had already made arrangements with his cousins, the lords of Coyoacan and Iztapalapa and Tacuba and other relations, to help him, and there were other chieftains in Mexico itself who would assist him and let him into the city at whatever hour he might

choose. He said that some of them might go along the causeway and all the rest could go across the lake in their pirogues and small canoes, and they would enter the city without meeting opponents to defend it, for his uncle was a prisoner, and they need have no fear of us, for they knew that only a few days ago, in the affair of Almeria, his uncle's Captains had killed many Teules and a horse, and they had seen the head of the Teul and the body of the horse; that they could kill us all in an hour and could have feasts and stuff themselves with our bodies.

When this speech was finished, they say that the Captains looked at one another, waiting for those who usually spoke first in councils of war, and that four or five of these Captains replied to him, how was it possible for them to go without the permission of their great prince Montezuma, and wage war in his very house and city? that they should first send to let him know about it, and if he consented, they would accompany Cacamatzin with the greatest good will; but otherwise they did not wish to turn traitors. It seems that Cacamatzin was angered with the Captains and ordered three of those who gave that reply to be imprisoned. As there were present at that meeting and council others, who were his relations, who were longing for a riot, they said that they would aid him to the death. So he decided to send to his uncle the great Montezuma to say that he ought to be ashamed of sending him word to come and make friends with those who had done him such harm and dishonour in holding him a prisoner, that such a thing was only possible because we were wizards and had stolen away all his great strength and bravery with our witchcraft, and that our gods and this great lady from Castile, whom we said was our Counsellor, had given us the great power to do what we had done. And in this which he said last he was not in error, for it was certainly the great mercy of God and his

blessed Mother that helped us. To return to our story, the gist of his message was, that he would come in spite of us and of his uncle to speak to us and to kill us.

When the great Montezuma heard that insolent reply, he was greatly angered, and at once sent to summon six of his most trusted captains. And he gave them his seal, and he also gave them some golden jewels, and ordered them to go to Texcoco, and secretly to show that seal to certain Captains and relations of his, who were on bad terms with Cacamatzin on account of his haughtiness, and so to manage that they should make prisoners of Cacamatzin and those who were in his confidence, and bring them before him at once. When those Captains had departed, and it was understood in Texcoco what it was that Montezuma had ordered, as Cacamatzin was greatly disliked, he was taken prisoner in his own palace while he was discussing the subject of the war with his confederates, and they brought five of them as prisoners in his company.

As that city stands close to the lake, they got ready a great pirogue with awnings, and they placed Cacamatzin and the other prisoners in it and with a great crew of rowers they brought them to Mexico. When they had disembarked, they placed Cacamatzin in a richly adorned litter fit for a king such as he was, and with the greatest show of respect they brought him before Montezuma.

It seems that in his interview with Montezuma, he was even more insolent than he had been before, and Montezuma knew of the plots he had made to raise himself to the lordship of Mexico, about which he learnt further complete details from the other prisoners who had been brought to him. If Montezuma was angry with his nephew before, he was now doubly so, and he promptly sent him to our Captain to be held as a prisoner, and the other prisoners he ordered to be set free.

Cortés went at once to the palace to Montezuma's

chamber to thank him for so great a favour and the order was given that the youth¹ who was in Montezuma's company, who was also his nephew and the brother of Cacamatzin, should be raised to the Kingship of Texcoco.

I have already said that he had come here to seek the protection of his uncle when his brother wished to kill him, and that he was the next heir to the kingdom of Texcoco. So as to make the appointment with all solemnity and with the consent of all the city, Montezuma summoned before him the principal chieftains of the whole province and after fully discussing the matter, they elected him as King and Lord of that great city, and he was named Don Carlos.

After all this was over, when the Caciques and Kinglets, nephews of the great Montezuma, namely the Lord of Coyoacan, and the Lord of Iztapalapa, and he of Tacuba saw and heard of the imprisonment of Cacamatzin, and learnt that the great Montezuma knew that they had joined in the conspiracy to deprive him of his kingdom and give it to Cacamatzin, they were frightened and did not come to pay their court to Montezuma as they were used to do. So with the consent of Cortés, who clamoured and persuaded him to order them to be seized, within eight days they were all in prison and attached to the great chain, and our Captain and all of us felt not a little relieved.

The reader who is interested may see what lives we were leading, for every day they were planning to kill us and eat our flesh, if the great mercy of God which always followed us had not come to our rescue, and but for that good Montezuma who always gave a favourable turn to our affairs. Just think what a great Prince he was who, although imprisoned, was so faithfully obeyed, that all was once more made peaceful, and those chieftains were prisoners.

¹ Cuicuitzcatzin.

Our Cortés and the other Captains and the Friar of the Order of Mercy were always paying court to him, and giving him pleasure in every way that was possible, and they joked with him, not in any way disrespectfully, and I may add that neither Cortés nor any of our Captains ever seated themselves until Montezuma sent for his rich chairs and told them to sit down, and in such things he was so considerate that we all had a great affection for him, for he was truly a great Prince in everything that we saw him do.

To go back to our story; sometimes they explained to him the matters touching our holy faith, especially the Friar, through the page Orteguilla, and apparently some of the good words entered his heart, for he listened to them with more attention than before. They also made him understand about the great power of our Lord the Emperor, and how many great princes from distant lands became his vassals and obeyed his commands, and they told him many other things that he was interested to hear. At other times, as I have said before, Cortés played Totoloque with him. And in such ways we were always paying him court, and he, as he was in no way niggardly, gave us every day jewels of gold and mantles.

I will now stop talking of this, and will go on with my story.

CHAPTER CI.

How the great Montezuma and many Caciques and chieftains of the territory gave their fealty to His Majesty, and what else happened about it.

WHEN Captain Cortés saw that those kinglets named by me were prisoners, and that all the cities were at peace, he said to Montezuma that, before we had entered Mexico, he [Montezuma] had twice sent to say that he wished to pay

tribute to His Majesty, and that as he now understood about the great power of our Lord and King, to whom many lands pay tribute and taxes and many great kings are subject, it would be well for him and all his vassals to give him their fealty, for such is the custom, first to give fealty and then to give tribute and taxes. Montezuma replied that he would gather his vassals together, and talk to them about it. And within ten days nearly all the Caciques of that territory assembled together, but that Cacique who was most nearly related to Montezuma did not come. I have already said that he was reported to be very valiant, and in his bearing and body and limbs and in his face he clearly showed it. He was somewhat blustering, and at that time he was staying at one of his towns named Tula.

It was rumoured that the kingdom of Mexico would come to this Cacique on the death of Montezuma, and when they sent to summon him he replied that he did not wish to come, nor to pay taxes, for he was not able to keep himself with the income from his provinces. Montezuma was very angry at this reply, and at once sent some Captains to take him prisoner, but as he was a great Lord, and had many relations, he was warned of this and withdrew to his province where they were not then able to catch him.

I must leave him now and state how, in the discussion that Montezuma held with the Caciques of all the territory whom he had called together, after he had made a speech without Cortés or any of us, excepting Orteguilla the page, being present, it was reported that he had told them to consider how for many years past they had known for certain; through the traditions of their ancestors which they had noted down in their books of records, that men would come from the direction of the sunrise to rule these lands, and that then the lordship and kingdom of the

Mexicans would come to an end. Now he believed, from what his Gods had told him, that we were these men, and the priests had consulted Huichilobos about it and offered up sacrifices, but their Gods would no longer answer them as they had been accustomed to do.

All that Huichilobos would give them to understand was, that what he had told them before he now again gave as his reply, and they were not to ask him again, so that they took it to mean that they should give their fealty to the King of Spain whose vassals these Teules say that they are :—

“As for the present it does not imply anything, and as in time to come we shall see whether we receive another and better reply from our Gods, so we will act according to the time. For the present, what I order and beg you all to do with good will is to give and contribute some sign of vassalage, and I will soon tell you what is most suitable, and as just now I am importuned about it by Malinche, I beg that no one will refuse it. During the eighteen years that I have been your Prince, you have always been very loyal to me, and I have enriched you and have broadened your lands, and have given you power and wealth, and if at this present time our Gods permit me to be held captive here, it would not have happened, unless, as I have told you many times, my great Huichilobos had commanded it.”

When they heard these arguments, all of them gave as an answer that they would do as he had ordered them, and they said it with many tears and sighs, and Montezuma more tearful than any of them. Then he sent a chieftain to say that on the following day they would give their fealty and vassalage to His Majesty. This was on the ¹ day of the ¹ month, in the year 1519.

¹ Blank spaces left in the original,

Montezuma returned after this to talk about the matter with his Caciques, and in the presence of Cortés and our Captains and many of our soldiers, and of Pedro Hernández, Cortés's secretary, they gave their fealty to His Majesty, and they showed much emotion in doing so, and Montezuma could not keep back his tears. He was so dear to us and we were so much affected at seeing him weep, that our own eyes were softened and one soldier wept as much as Montezuma, such was the affection we had for him. I will leave off here, and say that Cortés and the Fraile de la Merced, who was very wise, were constantly in Montezuma's palace, trying to amuse him and to persuade him to give up his Idols.

Now I will go on.

NOTE ON CHAPTERS CII. AND CIII.

The description given by Bernal Díaz in Chapters CII. and CIII. of the expeditions sent in search of mines differs considerably from that given by Cortés in his second letter to the Emperor.

Cortés says that there were several expeditions. Bernal Díaz mentions only two—one under Gonzalo de Umbria, the other under Pizarro, neither of whom Cortés mentions by name.

Bernal Díaz quotes Montezuma as saying that gold was brought from a province named Zacatula, which is on the south coast ten or twelve days' journey from the city, and that the gold was collected in gourds in which the earth was washed, and Bernal Díaz himself gives Zacatula as the name of the town visited by Gonzalo de Umbria. The only Zacatula shown on the maps is situated on the Rio de las Balsas in the State of Guerrero. Placer gold-mining is still carried on in this neighbourhood, and Montezuma may have mentioned the place as a source of gold supply. However, there is no proof that Gonzalo de Umbria visited the Rio de las Balsas, for Cortés says nothing about an expedition in that direction, and mentions only expeditions to Cuzula (Sosola?), Tamazulapa, Malinaltepec, Tenis (Tanetze), and Tuxtepec, all places in the north-western part of the present State of Oaxaca, and he confirms this later on in the same

Tertia Ferdinādi Co-

tesii Sac. Laesar. et Cath. Praiesta.

IN NOVA MARIS OCEANI HYSANIA GENE-
ralis praefecti p̄clara Narratio, In qua Celebris Ciuitatis Temix-
titan expugnatio, aliarūq; Prouintiarū, quę defecerant recupe-
ratio continetur, In quarū expugnatione, recuperationeq; Praefe-
ctus, una cum Hyspanis Victorias æterna memoria dignas con-
sequutus est, præterea In ea Mare del Sur Cortesium detexisse re-
cēse, quod nos Australe Indicū Pelagus putam⁹, & alias innume-
ras Prouintias Aurifodinis, Vnionibus, Variisq; Gemmarum
generibus refertas, Et postremo illis innotuisse in eis quoq; Aro-
mata contineri, Per Doctore Petrum Sauorgnanū Foroiuliensem
Reuen. in Christophatri dñi Io. de Reuelles Episcopi Viēensis
Secretarium Ex Hyspano ydiomate In Latinum Versa,

CHARLES V.

(From Praeclara Ferdinādi Cortesii Noua
Maris Oceani Hyspania Narratio. MDXXIIII.)

letter when he mentions Coastoaca (Coixtlahuaca) and Tamazula (either Tamazola or Tamazulapa), which are in the same neighbourhood, as places visited during these expeditions.

The only slight corroboration of an expedition to Zacatula is the casual mention by Bernal Díaz of Matalzingo, which is near Toluca, and would be on the way to Zacatula, but the frequent repetition of the same names in different localities prevents much reliance being placed on it.

No definite information is given as to the routes by which the expeditions travelled.

The expedition under Pizarro probably travelled by way of Tehuacan or Orizaba to Malinaltepec on the upper waters of the Papaloapan River, where they would be within a short distance both of Tuxtepec and the land of the Chinantecs, and although Cortés is not very clear on the matter, there is no reason to suppose that all three places were not visited by members of the same expedition.

With regard to the expedition under Diego de Ordás in search of a good harbour, Cortés gives the additional information that the party went first to Vera Cruz and then marched all along the coast to Coatzacoalcos, examining in canoes the bays and the mouths of the rivers that were crossed.

CHAPTER CII.

How our Cortés endeavoured to find out about the Gold Mines, what was their value, and in what rivers they were found, and what harbours there were for ships between Panuco and Tabasco, especially about the great river at Coatzacoalcos, and what happened about it.

WHEN Cortés and the other Captains were with Montezuma paying him court, among other things that he said through our interpreters Doña Marina and Jerónimo de Aguilar and Orteguilla, he asked Montezuma where the mines were, and in which rivers, and how and by what means they collected the gold which they brought him in grains, for he wished to send two of our soldiers who were expert miners to see it. Montezuma replied that there were three

places, but they usually brought most of the gold from a province named Zacatula, which is on the south coast ten or twelve days' journey from that city (Mexico). The gold was collected in xicales¹ by washing away the earth, so that after the earth was washed away some grains of gold remained. At the present time they also brought it to him from another province called Tustepec near where we disembarked on the north coast where it was gathered from two rivers. Near that province there were other good mines in a land that was not subject to him, named the land of the Chinantecs and Zapotecs, who did not obey his rule. If Cortés wished to send his soldiers he would give them Chieftains to go with them. Cortés thanked him for it, and at once despatched a pilot named Gonzalo de Umbria, with two other soldiers who were miners to the mines of Zacatula. This Gonzalo de Umbria was the man whose feet Cortés had ordered to be cut off when he hanged Pedro Escudero and Juan Cermeño² and flogged the Peñates for their attempt to carry off a ship at San Juan de Ulua, as I have written down more at length in the chapter which deals with the incident.

Let us stop talking about the past and say how they set out with Umbria, a limit of forty days being allowed them in which to go and return.

To examine the mines on the north coast Cortés sent a captain named Pizarro, a young man about twenty years old, whom he treated as a relation. At that time there was no mention of Peru, nor were the Pizarros talked about in these lands. Pizarro set out with four soldiers, and he also was given forty days in which to go and return, for the distance was about eighty leagues from Mexico, and four Mexican chieftains accompanied him.

¹ gourds

² See note on page 207, vol. i,

After, as I have said, they had set off to inspect the mines, let me go back to say how the great Montezuma gave our Captain a hennequen cloth, on which were painted and marked very true to nature, all the rivers and bays on the Northern coast from Panuco to Tabasco, that is for a matter of one hundred and forty leagues, and the river of Coatzacoalcos was marked on it. As we already knew all the harbours and bays marked on the cloth which Montezuma gave to Cortés, from the time we came on the voyage of discovery with Grijalva, except the river of Coatzacoalcos, which they said was very strong and deep, Cortés determined to send and see what it was like, and to take soundings of the harbour and the entrance. One of our captains named Diego de Ordás, a very prudent and valiant man, who has often been mentioned by me, said to our Captain that he would like to go and see that river, and what sort of country there was there, and what the people were like, and asked for Indian Chieftains to go with him, and Cortés had refused, because he was a man of good counsel and he wished to keep him in his company. However, so as not to displease him, he [now] granted him leave to go. Montezuma told Ordás that his authority did not extend over Coatzacoalcos, that the people there were very bold, and that he should take care what he was about, and if anything happened to him, they must not blame him [Montezuma] for it; that before arriving at that province he would come on the garrison of warriors he kept on the border, and that if he [Ordás] had need of them he might take them with him, and he [Montezuma] paid him many compliments besides. Cortés and Diego de Ordás gave him their thanks, and Ordás set out with two soldiers and some chieftains whom Montezuma sent with him.

This is where the historian Francisco Lopez Gomara says that Juan Velásquez with one hundred soldiers went to form a settlement at Coatzacoalcos, and that Pedro de

Ircio went to settle at Panuco. As I am already tired of noting the things in which this historian goes outside of what really happened, I will stop speaking of it, and will relate what each of the Captains sent by Cortés, accomplished, and will report how each returned with samples of gold.

CHAPTER CIII.

How the Captains returned whom our Cortés had sent to examine the mines, and take soundings of the harbour and river of Coatzacoalcos.

THE first to return to the City of Mexico and to give an account of what Cortés had sent him to do was Gonzalo de Umbria and his companions, who brought a matter of three hundred pesos in grains which the Indians of a town named Zacatula had extracted before their eyes. According to Umbria's description, the Caciques of that province took many Indians to the rivers, and in vessels like small troughs they washed the earth and collected the gold. The gold came from two rivers, and they said that if good miners went and washed the earth as they did in the Island of Santo Domingo or the Island of Cuba, that these would prove to be rich mines. Umbria also brought with him two chieftains sent by the province, and they brought a present of gold made into jewels worth about two hundred pesos, and gave and offered themselves as servants of His Majesty, and Cortés was as pleased with this gold as though it were thirty thousand pesos, for he now knew for certain that there were good mines, and he showed much affection to the chieftains who brought the present and ordered them to be given some green beads from Castile, and after friendly speeches they returned to their country well contented.

Umbria said that not far from Mexico there were large towns occupied by cultured people, and it seems that they must have been the towns belonging to that relation of Montezuma, and there was another province named Matalzingo. From what we saw and inferred, Umbria and his companions came back enriched with plenty of gold and well provided for, and it was for this purpose that Cortés had sent him, so as to make a friend of him, on account of what had happened in the past, which I have already spoken about.

Let us leave this man who came back with a good profit, and turn to Captain Diego de Ordás who went to see the river of Coatzacoalcos, which is one hundred and twenty leagues distant from Mexico. He said that he passed through very large towns which he named, where all the people paid respect to him, and that on the road near to Coatzacoalcos he came on Montezuma's garrisons on the frontier, and all the neighbourhood complained of them, on account of the robberies they committed, and because they carried off their women and demanded other tribute. Ordás and the Mexican Chieftains who were with him reprimanded Montezuma's Captains who had charge of these troops and threatened that if they committed any more robberies that they would tell their Lord Montezuma, and he would send for them and punish them as he had punished Quetsalpopoca and his companions for robbing the towns of our friends, and at these speeches they were frightened. Then Ordás continued his journey to Coatzacoalcos, and he took only one Mexican chieftain with him. As soon as the Cacique of that province who was named Tochel knew that he was coming, he sent his chieftains to receive him and showed him much good will, for all the people of that province had heard stories and reports of us and knew about us from the time when we came on the voyage of discovery with Juan de Grijalva, as I have written at length in a former

chapter which treats of the subject. Let us go on to say that as soon as the Caciques of Coatzacoalcos understood what the object of Ordás was, they supplied him with many large canoes, and the Cacique Tochel himself and many other chieftains took soundings at the mouth of the river, and they found the depth to be three full fathoms in the shallowest place without counting the ebb.¹ A little further up the river there is room for large ships to navigate, and the higher up they went the deeper it became, and near a town which at that time was inhabited by Indians, there was room for carracks. When Ordás had taken the soundings, he went with the Caciques to the town, and they gave him some jewels of gold and a very beautiful Indian woman, and they offered themselves as servants of His Majesty, and they complained of Montezuma and of his garrison of warriors, and said that a short time before they had fought a battle with them near a small town, and that the people of that province had killed many of the Mexicans, and for that reason they now call the place where that battle was fought, Cuylonemiquis, which in their language means "where they killed the Mexican profligates."²

Ordás thanked them heartily for the honour he had received, and gave them some Spanish beads which he had brought for that purpose. Then he returned to Mexico and was joyfully received by Cortés and all of us, and he said there was good land for cattle and farming, and the port was convenient for the islands of Cuba and Santo Domingo, and Jamaica, but it was far from Mexico, and there were great swamps there. For this reason we never had much confidence in this harbour for landing goods and trading with Mexico.

Let us leave Ordás and speak of Captain Pizarro and

¹ Sin la de Cayda, i.e., at low water.

² "Putoş."

his companions who went in the direction of Tustepec to look for gold and examine the mines. Pizarro returned to make his report to Cortés accompanied by one soldier only, and he brought with him over one thousand pesos in grains of gold taken from the mines, and said that in the province of Tustepec and Malinaltepec and other neighbouring districts, he went to the rivers accompanied by many people who were sent with him, and they gathered a third part of the gold that he had brought, and they went high up in the hills to another province, that of the Chinantecs, and that when they reached their land, many Indians came out to meet them with arms, which were lances, much better than those we had, and bows and arrows and shields, and they said that not a single Mexican should enter their country, for they would kill them, but that the Teules should pass in and be welcome; so they went on, and the Mexicans were left behind and did not go any further. As soon as the Caciques of Chinanta understood what they had come for, they got together a large number of their people to wash for gold, and they took them to some rivers where they collected the rest of the gold which he had brought in twisted grains, and the miners said those were the most lasting mines as the gold was formed there. Captain Pizarro also brought two Caciques from that country who came to offer themselves as vassals to His Majesty, and to secure our friendship they even brought a present of gold. One and all of those chieftains said many evil things of the Mexicans, who were so greatly hated in those provinces for the robberies they committed that they [the Chinantecs] could not bear the sight of them or the mention of their names.

Cortés received Pizarro and the chieftains whom he brought with cordiality, and he accepted the present which they gave him, (as it was so many years ago I cannot

remember its value,) and with agreeable speeches he promised to be a friend to the Chinantecas and to assist them. Then he told them to go back to their country, and, so that they should not be molested by the Mexicans on the road, he ordered two Mexican Chieftains to conduct them back to their country and not to leave them until they had seen them in safety; so they went away well contented.

To return to our story; Cortés, asked about the other soldiers whom Pizarro had taken in his company, namely, Barrientos and Heredia the elder and Escalona the younger, and Cervantes the Jester, and Pizarro replied that as that seemed to be a very good country and rich in mines, and the towns through which he passed were very peaceful, he ordered them to make a large farm of cacao and maize, and other farms besides for cotton, and told them to collect there many of the birds of the country, and that from that place they should go and examine all the rivers and see what mines there were. Although Cortés said nothing at the time, he was not pleased at his relation for having exceeded his instructions, and we heard that privately he scolded him well about it, and said that he was a poor character to wish to be employed about such things as breeding birds and planting cacao,¹ and he at once sent another soldier named Alonzo Luis to summon the rest whom Pizarro had left behind. Alonzo Luis carried a peremptory order for them to return at once, and what those soldiers did I will relate further on in its proper time and place.

¹ Cortés does not fail to take great credit to himself in regard to the formation of these plantations when writing his second letter to the Emperor.

CHAPTER CIV.

How Cortés told the great Montezuma that he should order all his Caciques throughout the land to pay tribute to His Majesty, for it was generally known that they possessed gold, and what was done about it.

As Captain Diego de Ordás and the other soldiers already named by me, arrived with samples of gold and the report that all the land was rich, Cortés, by the advice of Ordás and the other Captains and soldiers, decided to speak to, and demand of Montezuma, that all the Caciques and towns of the land should pay tribute to His Majesty, and that he himself as the greatest Chieftain, should also contribute from his treasure. Montezuma replied that he would send to all his towns to ask for gold, but that many of them did not possess any, only some jewels of little worth which had come to them from their ancestors. He at once despatched chieftains to the places where there were mines and ordered each town to give so many ingots of fine gold, of the same size and thickness as others that they were used to pay as tribute, and the messengers carried with them as samples two small ingots. From other parts they only brought small jewels of little worth.

He also sent to the province whose Cacique and Lord was that near kinsman of his who did not wish to obey him, who has already been mentioned by me. This province was distant from Mexico about twelve leagues, and the reply the messengers brought back was to the effect that he neither wished to give any gold nor to obey Montezuma, that he also was Lord of Mexico and that the dominion belonged to him as much as to Montezuma himself, who was sending to ask him to pay tribute.

When Montezuma heard this he was so enraged that he immediately sent his seal and sign by some faithful

captains with orders to bring him as a prisoner. When this kinsman was brought into Montezuma's presence he spoke to him very disrespectfully and without any fear, and very valiantly, and they say that he had intervals of madness, for he was as though thunderstruck. Cortés came to know all about this, and he sent to beg Montezuma as a favour, to give this man to him as he wished to place a guard over him, for he had been told that Montezuma had ordered him to be killed. When the Cacique was brought before him Cortés spoke to him in a most amiable manner and told him not to act like a madman against his prince, and wished to set him free. However, when Montezuma heard this he said that he should not be set free but should be attached to the great chain like the other Kinglets already named by me.

Let us go back to say that within twenty days all the chieftains whom Montezuma had sent to collect the tribute of gold, as I have already mentioned, came back again. And as they arrived Montezuma sent to summon Cortés and our captains and certain soldiers whom he knew, who belonged to his guard, and said these formal words, or others of like meaning :—

“I wish you to know, Señor Malinche and Señores Captains and soldiers, that I am indebted to your great King, and I bear him good will both for being such a great Prince and for having sent to such distant lands to make inquiries about me ; and the thought that most impresses me is that he must be the one who is to rule over us, as our ancestors have told us, and as even our gods have given us to understand in the answers we have received from them. Take this gold which has been collected ; on account of haste no more has been brought. That which I have got ready for the Emperor is the whole of the Treasure which I have received from my father, which is in your possession and in your apartments.

"I know well enough that as soon as you came here you opened the chamber and beheld it all, and that you sealed it up again as it was before. When you send it to him, tell him in your papers and letters, 'This is sent to you by your true vassal Montezuma.' I will also give you some very valuable stones which you will send to him in my name ; they are Chalchihuites, and are not to be given to any one else but only to him, your Great Prince. Each stone is worth two loads of gold. I also wish to send him three blow guns with their bags and pellet moulds for they have such good jewelwork on them that he will be pleased to see them, and I also wish to give him of what I possess although it is but little, for all the rest of the gold and jewels that I possessed I have given you from time to time."

When Cortés and all of us heard this we stood amazed at the great goodness and liberality of the Great Montezuma, and with much reverence we all doffed our helmets, and returned him our thanks, and with words of the greatest affection Cortés promised him that he would write to His Majesty of the magnificence and liberality of this gift of gold which he gave us in his own royal name. After some more polite conversation Montezuma at once sent his Mayordomos to hand over all the treasure and gold and wealth that was in that plastered chamber, and in looking it over and taking off all the embroidery with which it was set, we were occupied for three days, and to assist us in undoing it and taking it to pieces, there came Montezuma's goldsmiths from the town named Azcapotzalco,¹ and I say that there was so much, that after it was taken to pieces there were three heaps of gold, and they weighed more than six hundred thousand pesos, as I shall tell further on, without the silver and many other rich

¹ Escapuçalco in the text.

things, and not counting in this the ingots and slabs of gold, and the gold in grains from the mines. We began to melt it down with the help of the Indian goldsmiths, who were, as I have said, natives of Azcapotzalco and they made broad bars of it, each bar measuring three fingers of the hand across. When it was already melted and made into bars, they brought another present separately which the Grand Montezuma had said that he would give, and it was a wonderful thing to behold the wealth of gold and the richness of the other jewels that were brought, for some of the Chalchihuites were so fine that among these Caciques they were worth a vast quantity of gold. The three blow guns with their pellet moulds, and their coverings of jewels and pearls, and pictures in feathers of little birds covered with pearlshell and other birds, all were of great value. I will not speak of the plumes and feathers and other rich things for I shall never finish calling them to mind.

Let me say that all the gold I have spoken about was marked with an iron stamp, which had been made by order of Cortés and the King's Officers, who had been appointed by Cortés with the consent of all of us and in the name of His Majesty until he should give other instructions. At that time these were Gonzalo Mejía, who was treasurer, and Alonzo Dávila who was accountant, and the stamp was the royal arms like those on a real¹ and the size of a testoon.² The mark was not put on the rich jewels which it did not seem to us should be taken to pieces.

For weighing all these bars of gold and silver, and the jewels which were not taken to pieces, we had neither marked weights nor scales, and it seemed to Cortés and to

¹ Real, a small silver coin.

² "Toston de a quatro," a half peso = four reals.

these same officers of His Majesty's treasury that it would be as well to make some iron weights, some as much as an arroba,¹ others of half an arroba, two pounds, one pound and half a pound, and of four ounces, and so many ounces, and this not that it would turn out very exact, but within half an ounce more or less in each lot that was weighed.

After the weight was taken the officers of the King said that there was of gold, both that which was cast in bars as well as grains from the mines, and in ingots and jewels, more than six hundred thousand pesos, and this was without counting the silver and many other jewels which were not yet valued.

Some soldiers said that there was more. As there was now nothing more to do than to take out the royal fifth, and to give to each captain and soldier his share, and to set aside the shares of those who remained at the port of Villa Rica, it seems that Cortés endeavoured not to have it divided up so soon, but to wait until there was more gold, and there were good weights, and proper accounts of how it turned out. But most of us captains and soldiers said that it should be divided up at once, for we had seen that at the time when the pieces were given out of the Treasury of Montezuma, there was much more gold in the heaps, and that a third part of it was missing, which they had taken and hidden both on behalf of Cortés, as well as of the Captains and the Fraile de la Merced, and it went on diminishing. In consequence of much argument what was left was weighed out, and they found over 600,000 pesos without the jewels and slabs, and next day they were to distribute the shares, and I will tell how it was divided, and the greater part remained with Captain Cortés and other persons, and what was done about it I will go on to relate.

¹ An arroba = 25 lbs.

CHAPTER CV.

How the gold which we had obtained was divided, both that which was given by the Great Montezuma, as well as that which had been collected from the towns, and what happened to a soldier about it.

FIRST of all the royal fifth was taken out, then Cortés said that they should take out for him another fifth, the same as for His Majesty, for we had promised it to him at the sand dunes when we elected him Captain General and Chief Justice, as I have already related in the chapter that treats of that matter. After that, he said that he had been put to certain expenses in the Island of Cuba and that what he had spent on the expedition should be taken from the heap, and in addition to this that there should be taken from the same heap the expenses incurred by Diego Velásquez in the ships which we had destroyed, and we all agreed to it, and beside this the expenses of the procurators who were sent to Spain. Then there were the shares of those who remained in Villa Rica, and there were seventy of them, and for his horse that had died, and for the mare which had belonged to Juan Sedeño which the Tlaxcalans had killed with a sword cut; then for the Fraile de la Merced, and the priest Juan Díaz and the Captains and for those who had brought horses, double shares, and for musketeers and crossbowmen the same, and other trickeries, so that very little was left to each as a share, and it was so little that many of the soldiers did not want to take it, and Cortés was left with it all. At that time we could do nothing but hold our tongues, for to ask for justice in the matter was useless. There were other soldiers who took their shares at the rate of one hundred pesos and clamoured for the rest, and to content them Cortés secretly gave to one and

the other, apparently bestowing favours so as to satisfy them, and with the smooth speeches that he made to them they put up with it. Let us turn to the shares which remained for those who were in Villa Rica which he ordered to be sent to Tlaxcala to be taken care of there, and as it was badly divided, so it ended [badly], as I shall relate at the proper time.

At that time many of our Captains ordered very large golden chains to be made by the Great Montezuma's goldsmiths, who I have already said had a large town of their own called Azcapotzalco, half a league from Mexico. Cortés, too, ordered many jewels made, and a great service of plate. Some of our soldiers had their hands so full, that many ingots of gold, marked and unmarked, and jewels of a great diversity of patterns were openly in circulation. Heavy gaming was always going on with some playing cards which were made from drum skins by Pedro Valenciano and were as well made and painted as the originals. So this was the condition we were in, but let us stop talking of the gold and of the bad way it was divided, and worse way in which it was spent, and say what happened to a soldier named something de Cárdenas. It seems that this soldier had been a pilot and seaman, and was a native of Triana or of that county, and the poor fellow had a wife and family at home, and as happens to many of us he was destined to remain poor, so he came to seek for a livelihood with the intention of returning to his wife and children. As he had seen so much wealth of gold in slabs and in grains from the mines, and in ingots and bars, and when it was divided up he found that they only gave him a hundred pesos, he fell ill at the thought of it through sadness. When one of his friends saw him day by day so depressed and ill, he went to see him and asked him why he was like that and sighed so much from time to time. The Pilot Cárdenas, that is the man who

was ill, answered him: "Curse it all, have I no right to be ill, seeing that Cortés has carried off all the gold, and like a king takes a fifth, and has charged for his horse that died, and for the ships of Diego Velásquez, and for many other underhand claims, and that my wife and children die of hunger. I might have helped them when the procurators went with our letters, but we gave them all the gold and silver which we had acquired up to that time." Then his friend said to him, "How much gold had you got to send them?" and Cárdenas replied, "If Cortés would give me my share of what is due to me, my wife and children could live on it and even have to spare, but see what tricks he played us, making us sign that we would be doing a service to His Majesty by giving up our shares, and then taking out of the gold over six thousand pesos for his father Martin Cortés, besides what he hid away, while I and other poor men have been fighting by night and by day, as you have seen in the late wars in Tabasco and Tlaxcala, and in those at Cingapacinga and Cholula, and we are now in the greatest danger, looking death in the face every day should there be a rebellion in this city, in order that Cortés may carry off all the gold and take his fifth like a King."

And he said other things about it, and that we ought not to allow him to take that fifth, nor did we want so many kings, we only wanted His Majesty. His companion replied and said to him: "This anxiety is killing you, and now you can see that everything that is brought in by Montezuma and the Caciques is absorbed, by this one under his chin, by that in his pocket, and by another under his arm, and that all goes whither Cortés and his captains choose, they carry off everything even to the food. Get rid of such thoughts as these and pray God that we do not lose our lives in this city." Then the conversation ended, but it reached the ears of Cortés, and as they told him that

many of the soldiers were discontented over their share of the gold and the way the heaps had been robbed, he determined to make a speech to them all with honeyed words, and he said that all he owned was for us, and he did not want the fifth but only the share that came to him as Captain General, and that if any one had need of anything he would give it to him, and that the gold we had collected was but a breath of air, that we should observe what great cities there were there and rich mines, and that we should be lords of them all and very prosperous and rich, and he used other arguments very well expressed which he knew well how to employ. In addition to this he secretly gave to some of the soldiers jewels of gold and to others he made great promises, and he ordered that the food brought by Montezuma's stewards should be divided among all the soldiers so that he and all of them should share alike. In addition to this he called Cárdenas apart and flattered him with words and promised to send him back to Spain to his wife and children in the first ship that should sail, and he gave him three hundred dollars, and this contented him. I will stop here and will relate in its proper place what happened to Cárdenas when he went to Spain, and how he was very hostile to Cortés in the affairs that were brought before His Majesty.

CHAPTER CVI.

How Juan Velásquez de Leon and the Treasurer, Gonzalo Mejía, had words about the gold that was missing from the heaps before it was melted down, and what Cortés did about it.

AS all men in general covet gold, and the more they have the more they want, it happened that as many known pieces of gold were missing from the heaps already mentioned by me, and at the same time Juan Velásquez de

Leon employed Indians of Azcapotzalco, (who were all of them goldsmiths to the Great Montezuma,) to make him large gold chains and pieces of plate for his table service, Gonzalo Mejía, who was treasurer, told him privately to deliver them to him as they had not paid the fifth and were known to belong to the treasure that Montezuma had presented. Juan Velásquez de Leon who was a great favourite with Cortés replied that he was not going to give up anything, and that he had not taken anything from what had been collected, nor from any one else, only what Cortés had given him before the bars were cast. Gonzalo Mejía answered him that what Cortés had hidden and taken from his companions was more than enough, and that, as treasurer, he demanded much gold which had not paid the royal fifth. From words to words they lost control of themselves and drew their swords, and if we had not quickly separated them, both of them would there have ended their lives, for they were men of much merit and brave fighters, and they came out of it wounded, each with two wounds. When Cortés heard of it, he ordered them to be put in prison, and each one to be attached to a heavy chain, and it appears from what many soldiers reported that Cortés said privately to Juan Velásques de Leon that, as he was a great friend of his, he should remain a prisoner for two days tied to this same chain, and that he would release Gonzalo Mejía as he was treasurer. Cortés did this to prove to all the captains and soldiers that he would do justice and that although Juan Velásquez was hand and glove with him, he would keep him prisoner. Many other things happened with regard to Gonzalo Mejía, who told Cortés that he had taken on the sly much of the gold that was missing, and that all the soldiers were complaining of it to him as the treasurer, and they wanted to know why he did not demand restitution from the Captain; but because it is all a very long story I will omit it, and I will go on

now to tell how Juan Velásquez de Leon was imprisoned in a hall near to Montezuma's chamber, and attached to a heavy chain. Juan Velásquez was a man of great stature and very strong, and when he moved about the hall he dragged the chain after him and it made a great noise, and Montezuma heard it and asked of his page Orteguilla who it was that Cortés held a prisoner in chains; the page replied that it was Juan Velásquez who had formerly been the guard over his person, (for at that time he was no longer Captain of the Guard but Cristóbal de Olid), and Montezuma asked what was the reason of his imprisonment, and the page told him that it was on account of some gold that was missing.

That same day Cortés went to pay his court to Montezuma, and after the usual civilities and some conversation had passed, Montezuma asked Cortés, why he made a prisoner of Juan Velásquez, seeing that he was such a good and valiant captain; for, as I have said before, Montezuma knew us all and even our characters. Cortés answered half laughingly, that Juan Velásquez was touched, which means mad, because they had not given him much gold, and he wished to go to Montezuma's towns and cities and demand it from the Caciques, and so as to prevent him killing any one he had put him in prison.

Montezuma replied that he begged Cortés to release him and send him to look for more gold, and said that he would give him some of his own. Cortés pretended that it went against the grain with him to release him, but at last he said that to please Montezuma it should be done, and he sentenced him to be banished from the camp and to go to a town named Cholula with some of Montezuma's messengers to seek for gold. First of all Juan Velásquez and Gonzalo de Mejía were reconciled. I noticed that he [Juan Velásquez] returned from his banishment within six days, and brought more gold with him, and that from that

time on Gonzalo Mejía and Cortés were not very good friends. I have called all this to mind although it is outside my story, so that one may see that Cortés, under colour of doing justice, so that we should fear him, was full of craftiness, and I will leave off here.

CHAPTER CVII.

How the Great Montezuma told Cortés that he wished to give him one of his daughters in marriage, and what Cortés answered. Nevertheless he took her and they served and honoured her as was becoming to the daughter of such a Prince.

I HAVE many times said that Cortés and all of us always endeavoured to please and serve Montezuma and to pay him court. One day Montezuma said, "Look here, Malinche, I love you so much that I want to give you one of my daughters, who is very beautiful, so that you can marry her and treat her as your legitimate wife"; Cortés doffed his cap in thanks, and said that it was a great favour that Montezuma was conferring on him, but that he was already married and had a wife, and that among us we were not permitted to have more than one wife, he would however keep her [Montezuma's daughter] in the rank to which the daughter of so great a prince was entitled, but that first of all he desired her to become a Christian, as other ladies, the daughters of Chieftains, already were; and to this Montezuma consented.

The Great Montezuma always showed his accustomed good will to us, but from one day to the other he never ceased his sacrifices at which human beings were killed, and Cortés tried to dissuade him from this but met with no success. So Cortés took counsel with his captains as to what should be done in the matter, for he did not dare to put an end to it for fear of a rising in the City and of the

priests who were in charge of Huichilobos. The advice that the captains and soldiers gave about this was, that he should pretend that he wished to go and throw down the Idols from the lofty temples of Huichilobos, and that if we saw that they intended to defend them, and were going to rise in revolt, that we should then demand permission to set up an altar inside the Great Cue, and place a Crucifix there and an image of Our Lady. When this was settled Cortés went to the Palace where Montezuma was imprisoned and took seven captains and soldiers with him, and said to Montezuma: "Señor, I have often asked you not to sacrifice any more human beings to your gods who are deceiving you, and you will not cease doing it, I wish you to know that all my companions and these captains who are with me have come to beg you to give them leave to remove the gods from your temple and put our Lady Santa Maria and a Cross in their place, and, if you will not give them leave now, they will go and remove them, and I would not like them to kill any priests."

When Montezuma heard those words and saw that the Captains were rather angry, he said, "Oh! Malinche, how can you wish to destroy the city entirely! for our gods are very angry with us, and I do not know that they will stop even at your lives, what I pray you to do for the present is to be patient, and I will send to summon all the priests and I will see their reply." When Cortés heard this he made a sign that he wished to speak quite privately to Montezuma without the presence of the captains whom he had brought in his company, so he ordered them to go out and leave him alone. When they had left the hall he said to Montezuma, that in order to prevent this affair from becoming known and causing a disturbance and becoming an offence to the priests on account of their Idols being overturned, that he would arrange with these Captains to the effect that they should do nothing of the sort, provided

they were given an apartment in the Great Cue where they might make an altar on which to place the Image of Our Lady and set up a Cross, and that as time went on it would be made plain how good and advantageous it was for their souls, and for giving them health and good harvests and prosperity. Then Montezuma, with sighs and a very sorrowful countenance, said that he would confer with his priests. After much discussion had taken place about it, on the ¹ day of the month of ¹ in the year fifteen hundred and nineteen, this was done and our altars and an image of Our Lady and a Cross were set up, apart from their curséd Idols, with great reverence and with thanks to God from all of us, and the Padre de la Merced chanted Mass, assisted by the priest Juan Díaz and many of our soldiers. Our captain ordered an old soldier to be stationed there as guardian, and begged Montezuma to order the priests not to touch the altar, but only to keep it swept and to burn incense and keep wax candles burning there by day and night, and to decorate it with branches and flowers.

I will leave off here and say what it led to.

CHAPTER CVIII.

How the great Montezuma told our Captain Cortés to leave Mexico with all his soldiers, for all the Caciques and priests wanted to rise and wage war on us until they killed us, for so it had been decreed and advised by their Idols, and what Cortés did about it.

THERE was never a time when we were not subject to surprises of such a kind, that had our Lord God not assisted us, they would have cost us our lives. Thus as

¹ Blank spaces in the original.

soon as we had placed the image of Our Lady and the Cross on the Altar which we had made on the Great Cue and the Holy Gospel had been preached and Mass said, it seems that Huichilobos and Tezcatepuca spoke to the priests, and told them that they wished to leave their country as they were so badly treated by the Teules, and they did not wish to stay where those figures and the Cross had been placed, nor would they remain there unless we were killed, and this was their answer and they need not expect any other, and they should inform Montezuma and all his Captains, so that they might at once go to war and kill us. The Idols further told them that they could see how all the gold that used to be kept for their honour, had been broken up by us and made into ingots, and let them beware how we were making ourselves lords over the country, and were holding five great Caciques prisoners, and they told them of other misdeeds so as to induce them to attack us. In order that Cortés and all of us should know about this, the Great Montezuma sent word to tell Cortés that he wished to speak to him on very important matters, and the page Orteguilla came and said to him that Montezuma was very sad and much disturbed, and that during the previous night and part of the day many priests and leading Captains had been with him and had said things to him privately that he [the page] could not understand.

When Cortés heard this he went in haste to the palace where Montezuma was staying and took with him Cristóval de Olid, who was Captain of the Guard, and four other Captains and Doña Marina and Jerónimo de Aguilar, and, after they had paid much respect to him, Montezuma said: "Oh! Señor Malinche and Captains, how distressed I am at the reply and command which our Teules have given to our priests and to me and all my Captains, which is that we should make war on you and

kill you, and drive you back across the sea. I have thought it over, and what seems to me best is that you should at once leave this city before you are attacked, and that not one of you should remain here. This, Señor Malinche, I say that you should not fail to do, for it is to your interest, if not you will be killed, remember it is a question of your lives." Cortés and our Captains felt grief at what he said and were even a good deal disquieted, and it was not to be wondered at, the affair coming so suddenly and with such insistence that our lives were at once placed in the greatest danger by it, for the warning was given us with the greatest urgency. Cortés replied that he thanked Montezuma sincerely for the warning, and that at the present time there were two things that troubled him, one was that he had no vessels in which to sail, for he had ordered those in which he had come to be broken up, and the other was that Montezuma would be forced to come with us so that our Great Emperor might see him, and that he begged as a favour that he would place restraint on his priests and captains while three ships were being built at the sand dunes, as it would be more advantageous to them, for if they began the war they would all of them be killed.

He also asked, so that Montezuma might see that he wished to carry out what he had said without delay, that carpenters might be sent with two of our soldiers who were great experts in shipbuilding, to cut wood near to the sand dunes.

Montezuma was even more sorrowful than before because Cortés told him that he would have to come with us before the Emperor; he said that he would send the carpenters, and that they should hurry and not waste time in talk, but work, and that meanwhile he would command the priests and captains not to ferment disturbances in the city and he would order Huichilobos to

be appeased with sacrifices, but not of human lives. After this exciting conversation Cortés and his captains took leave of Montezuma, and we were all in the greatest anxiety wondering when they would begin the attack.

Then Cortés ordered Martin López, the ship carpenter, to be summoned and Andrés Nuñez, and the Indian carpenters whom the Great Montezuma had given him and after some discussion as to the size of the three vessels to be built he ordered him at once to set about the work and to get them ready, for in Villa Rica there was everything necessary in the way of iron and blacksmiths, tackle, tow, and calkers and pitch. So they set out and cut the wood on the coast near Villa Rica, and in haste began to build the ships.

What were the instructions given by Cortés to Martin López I do not know, and I say this because the historian Gomara in his history says that he ordered him to make a show, as though it were all a farce of building them, merely so that Montezuma should hear of it. I will defer to what those say who, thank God, are still alive to this day; moreover, Martin Lopez told me in secret that he really worked at them with all speed and left three ships in the dockyard.

Let us leave him building the ships and say how we all went about in that city very much depressed, fearing that at any moment they might attack us; and our friends from Tlaxcala and Doña Marina also told the captain that an attack was probable, and Orteguilla, Montezuma's page, was always in tears. We all kept on the alert and placed a strong Guard over Montezuma, I say that we were on the alert, but there is no necessity to repeat it so often, for neither by day or night did we ever take off our arms or our gorgets or leggings, and we slept in them. May be some will ask when we slept and what our beds were like,—they were nothing but a little straw and a mat, and

if one had a curtain, he placed it beneath him, and we slept shod and armed and with all our weapons to hand. The horses stood saddled and bridled all day long, and everything so fully prepared that on a call to arms we stood as though we had already been posted and were waiting for it. Sentinels were posted every night, and there was not a soldier who did not keep watch. There is another thing I must say, but not with the intention of boasting about it, that I grew so accustomed to go about armed, and to sleep in the way I have said, that after the conquest of New Spain I kept to the habit of sleeping in my clothes and without a bed, and I slept thus better than on a mattress.

Now when I go to the towns of my *encomienda* I do not take a bed, and if sometimes I do take one with me, it is not that I want it, but because some gentlemen may happen to go with me, and I do not wish them to think that I have not brought a bed because I do not possess a good one, but in truth I always lie on it dressed. There is another thing I must say. I am only able to sleep for a short time of a night, and have to get up and look at the heavens and the stars, and have to walk about for a time in the dew, and this I do without putting a cap or handkerchief on my head, and I am so used to it that thank God it does me no harm. I have said all this that it may be known how we the true conquistadores lived, and how accustomed we became to our arms and to keeping watch.

Let us stop speaking of this, for I am wandering from my story, and say how our Lord Jesus Christ always showed us many favours and how, in the Island of Cuba, Diego Velásquez was hastening on his armada as I shall go on to relate, and how at this very time a Captain named Pánfilo de Narvaez was setting out for New Spain.





BOOK VII.

THE EXPEDITION UNDER PÁNFILO DE NARVAEZ.

CHAPTER CIX.

How Diego Velásquez the Governor of Cuba hastened to send his Armada against us with Pánfilo de Narvaez as Captain General, and how there came in his company the Licentiate Lucas Vázquez de Ayllon, Oidor of the Royal Audiencia of Santo Domingo, and what was done about it.



WE must now go a little way back in our story so that what I am about to relate may be clearly understood. I have already said, in the chapter that treats of that subject, how Diego Velásquez, the Governor of Cuba, knew that we had sent our Proctors to His Majesty, with all the gold that we had obtained, and the sun and moon and a great variety of jewels and gold in grains brought from the mines, and many other things of great value, and that we were not asking assistance of him [Velásquez] about anything. He also knew that Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca, Bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosano (for so he was called), who at that time was President of the Indies, had everything absolutely under his authority, because His Majesty was in Flanders, and that the Bishop had treated our Proctors very badly.

They say that this same Bishop sent from Castile at that time much help to Diego Velásquez, and advice and orders that he should send and have us captured, and that he, from Spain, would afford him full support for so doing. With this strong support Diego Velásquez got together a fleet of nineteen ships and fourteen hundred soldiers, and they brought with them over twenty cannon and much powder and all sorts of stores of stones and balls, and two gunners¹ (the Captain of the artillery was named Rodrigo Martin) and they brought eighty horsemen and ninety crossbowmen and seventy musketeers. Diego Velásquez, although he was very fat and heavy, himself went about from village to village, and from town to town, provisioning the fleet and inviting the settlers who had Indians, as well as his relations and friends, to go with Pánfilo Narvaez to capture Cortés and us his Captains and soldiers, or at least not to leave any of us alive, and he went about so incensed and angry and with such energy, that he got as far as Guaniguanico which is seventy leagues beyond Havana. When he was going about like this before his armada sailed, it seems that the Royal Audiencia of Santo Domingo and the Geronimite friars, who were the Governors, got to hear of it, for the Licentiate Zuazo sent them the news of it from Cuba, to which island he had come to take the "residencia"² of this same Diego Velásquez. When the Royal Audiencia heard of it—knowing as they did of the many and great and loyal services which we had accomplished for God and His Majesty, and how we had sent our Proctors with great presents to our Lord the King, and knowing that Diego Velásquez had no right nor authority to take vengeance on us by force of arms, but that he should ask for it according to law, and that if

¹ Astilleros in the text, probably in error for Artilleros.

² Residencia = an inquiry into official acts.

he came with his fleet it would greatly interfere with our conquest,—they decided to send a Licentiate named Lucas Vázquez de Ayllon, who was Oidor of this same Royal Audiencia, to stop this fleet of Diego Velásquez and not to let it sail, under pain of heavy penalties. The Oidor came to Cuba and took the needful steps and made protest according to the command of the Royal Audiencia in order that Velásquez should not carry out his project, but all the injunctions and penalties that he proclaimed were of no avail, for as Diego Velásquez had the backing of the Bishop of Burgos, and had spent all he possessed in raising that army against us, he did not care a snap of the fingers for all the injunctions issued against him, on the contrary he became very blustering, and when the Oidor saw this he himself accompanied Narvaez so as to keep the peace and to promote agreement between Cortés and Narvaez. There are other soldiers who say that he came with the intention of giving us assistance, and, if he could not do so, that he meant to take the country himself as Oidor in the name of His Majesty. In this way he came to the port of San Juan de Ulúa, and there I will leave him and go on to say what was done about it.

CHAPTER CX.

How Pánfilo de Narvaez arrived at the port of San Juan de Ulúa, which is called Vera Cruz, with all his fleet, and what happened to him.

As Pánfilo de Narvaez came across the sea with all his fleet of nineteen ships, it appears that on nearing the Sierra of San Martin, for so it is called, he was struck by a north wind, which is a head wind on that coast, and during the night he lost one ship of small burden which foundered; her Captain was a gentleman named Cristóbal de

Morante, a native of Medina del Campo, and a number of other persons were drowned. All the rest of the fleet arrived at San Juan de Ulúa.

When the arrival of this great fleet was known, (for it must be called great as having been equipped in the Island of Cuba,) it came to the ears of those soldiers whom Cortés had sent to look for mines, and these three men, namely Cervantes the jester, and Escalona, and the third called Alonzo Hernández Carretero, came to the ships of Narvaez. When they found themselves safe on board ship and in Narvaez' Company, it is said that they raised their hands to God who had delivered them from the power of Cortés and got them out of the great City of Mexico where every day they expected to be killed. When they had eaten with Narvaez and drunk wine, and were satiated with too much drink, they kept saying to one another before the General himself, "See here, is it not better to be here drinking wine than to be unhappy in the power of Cortés who made such slaves of us night and day that we hardly dared to speak, expecting from day to day to meet death staring us in the face." And Cervantes, who was a buffoon, even said by way of pleasantry, "Oh, Narvaez, Narvaez, how fortunate you are to have come at this time, for this traitor of a Cortés has got together more than seven hundred thousand dollars of gold, and all the soldiers are very discontented with him because he has taken a great part of their share of the gold, and they do not want to accept what he is giving them." So those soldiers who had deserted from us as they were mean and worthless, told Narvaez much more that he wanted to know. They also informed him that eight leagues distant from where he was, a town had been founded named Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz and that Gonzalo de Sandoval was in command of it with seventy soldiers, all of them old and invalid, and that if he should send some fighting men there at once,

they would surrender to him, and they told him many other things.

Let us leave all these discussions and relate how the great Montezuma soon got to know that there were ships anchored in the port with many captains and soldiers on board, and he secretly sent some of his chiefs, without Cortés knowing anything about it, and ordered them [the Spaniards in the ships] to be given food, gold and cloth, and the neighbouring villages were told to furnish them with supplies of food. Narvaez sent to tell Montezuma many abusive and many uncivil things about Cortés and all of us, [such as] that we were bad men and thieves who had fled from Castile without the permission of our Lord and King, and that when our Lord the King had heard that we were in this country, and knew about the evil deeds and robberies we had committed and that we had taken Montezuma prisoner, he had ordered Narvaez to set out at once with all these ships and soldiers and horses, to put an end to such evils and to free him [Montezuma] from his prison, and either to kill Cortés and all of us evil-doers, or to capture us and send us back to Spain in these same ships, and that when we arrived there we should be condemned to death; and he sent to tell him much more nonsense. The interpreters who explained all this to the Indians were the three soldiers who already understood the language. In addition to these messages, Narvaez also sent some gifts of things from Spain.

When Montezuma heard all this he was very well satisfied with the news, for as they said that there were so many ships and horses and cannon and musketeers and crossbowmen, and that there were thirteen hundred or more soldiers, he believed that they would take us prisoners. In addition to this when his chieftains saw our three soldiers with Narvaez and perceived that they said much evil of Cortés, they accepted as the truth all

that Narvaez had told them to say. They brought with them a picture of the fleet painted quite correctly on some cloths. Then Montezuma sent Narvaez much more gold and cloths and ordered all the towns in his neighbourhood to take them plenty to eat, and for three days Montezuma was in possession of this news and Cortés knew nothing at all.

One day when our Captain went to see Montezuma and to pay him court, after the usual civilities had passed between them, it seemed to Captain Cortés that Montezuma was looking very cheerful and happy, and he asked him how he felt, and Montezuma replied that he was better. When Montezuma saw that he came to visit him twice in one day, he was afraid that Cortés knew about the ships, and so as to get ahead of him and to avoid suspicion, he said to him, "Señor. Malinche, only just now messengers have come to tell me that at the port where you landed there have arrived eighteen more ships and many people and horses, and they have brought it all to me painted on some cloths, and as you came twice to visit me to-day I thought that you must have come to bring me this news ; now you will have no need to build ships. Because you did not tell me about it, on the one hand I was annoyed with you for keeping me in ignorance, and on the other hand I was delighted at the arrival of your brothers, for now you can all return to Spain and there need be no further excuse."

When Cortés heard about the ships, and saw the picture on the cloth, he rejoiced greatly and said, "Thank God ! who at the right moment provides for us," and we soldiers were so delighted that we could not keep quiet, and the horsemen rode skirmishing round about and we fired off shots. But Cortés was very thoughtful, for he well understood that that fleet was sent by Diego Velásquez the Governor of Cuba against him and against all of us, and,

wise man as he was, he said what he felt about it to all of us captains and soldiers, and by great gifts of gold to us, and promises to make us rich, he induced us all to stand by him. He did not know who had come in command (of the fleet) but we were greatly rejoiced at the news, and at the gold that Cortés had given us by the way of gratuity, as if he had taken it from his own property and not from that which should have been our share. It was indeed great help and assistance that Our Lord Jesus Christ was sending to us. I will stop here and say what took place in the camp of Narvaez.

CHAPTER CXI.

How Pánfilo de Narvaez sent five persons from his fleet to demand of Gonzalo de Sandoval, who was in command at Villa Rica, that he should surrender himself and all the settlers, and what happened about it.

As those three scoundrelly soldiers of ours, already mentioned, had gone over to Narvaez, and had given him news of all the things that Cortés and all of us had done since we entered New Spain, and had told him that Captain Gonzalo de Sandoval was about eight leagues distant at a town which had been founded and called the Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz, and that he had with him seventy settlers, nearly all of them old or invalids, Narvaez determined to send to the town a priest named Guevara, who had good address, and another man of considerable importance named Amaya, a relation of Diego Velásquez of Cuba, and a notary named Vergara, and three witnesses whose names I do not remember. He sent them to give notice to Sandoval to surrender at once to Narvaez, and for this purpose they said that they brought copies of the decrees. It is said that Gonzalo de Sandoval had already

received news from some Indians about the ships and the great number of persons that had come in them, and as he was very much of a man, he always had everything in readiness and his soldiers armed, and as he suspected that that fleet came from Diego Velásquez, and that some of the crew would be sent to that town to take possession of it, and so as not to be hampered by his old and invalid soldiers, he sent them off at once to an Indian town named Papalote, and kept with himself the healthy ones.

Sandoval always set a good watch on the roads to Cempoala, which is the road by which the town is approached, and he called his soldiers together and impressed on them that if Diego Velásquez or any one else should come, they must not surrender the town to him, and all the soldiers answered that they would do as he wished; he furthermore ordered a gallows to be set up on a hill. The spies whom he had posted on the road hurried in to give him notice that six Spaniards and some Cuban Indians were approaching the town, and Sandoval awaited them in his house, for he would not go out to receive them, and he had already ordered that none of his soldiers should leave their houses or speak to them. When the priest and those whom he had brought in his company met with no Spanish settlers to speak to but only Indians who were working at the fort and did not understand them, they entered the town, and went to the church to say their prayers, and then went to the house of Sandoval as it seemed to them to be the largest in the place. After giving Sandoval a friendly salutation to which he replied, they say that the priest commenced a speech saying that Diego Velásquez, the Governor of Cuba, had spent much money on the fleet, and that Cortés and all the others whom he had brought in his company had been traitors to him, and that they had come to give notice that they must go at once and give their obedience to Señor Pánfilo de Narvaez

who came as Captain General on behalf of Diego Velásquez. When Sandoval heard these words and the rudeness with which the Padre Guevara spoke, he was biting his lips with annoyance at what he heard, and said: "Señor Padre, you are speaking very maliciously, in using these words about traitors,—we are here all better servants of His Majesty than Diego Velásquez,—but that you are a priest I would chastise you as you deserve for your bad manners. Be off with you and go to Mexico, where you will find Cortés who is Captain General and Chief Justice of this New Spain, and he will give you your answer, here you need say no more."

Then the priest in a blustering way told the notary named Vergara whom he had brought with him, to take out at once the decrees that he carried in his bosom and to notify Sandoval and the settlers who were with him, but Sandoval told the notary that he should not read a single paper, that he did not care whether they were decrees or any other documents. While they were disputing, the notary began to take out from his bosom the documents he had brought, and Sandoval said to him, "Look here, Vergara, I have already told you not to read any papers here, but to go to Mexico, and I promise you that if you do read them I will have you given a hundred lashes, for we do not know whether you are a king's notary or not; show us your title, and if you have got that, read it; nor do we know if these decrees are the originals or copies or other documents." The priest who was a very haughty man, exclaimed, "How are you dealing with these traitors? Bring out the decrees and notify them," and he said this with much anger. When Sandoval heard that expression he told him that he lied like a vile priest, and at once ordered his soldiers to take them all prisoners to Mexico. He had hardly uttered the words when a number of the Indians who were at work at the fort, snatched them

up in net hammocks like sinful souls, and carried them off on their backs, and in four days arrived with them close to Mexico, for they travelled day and night with relays of Indians. They were indeed frightened when they saw so many cities and large towns, and food was brought to them, and one party dropped them and another carried them on their way, and it is said that they were wondering whether it was all witchcraft or a dream. Sandoval sent an alguacil with them as far as Mexico named Pedro de Solis, the son-in-law of Orduña, whom they now call Solis-behind-the-door.

When he sent these men as prisoners, Sandoval wrote in haste to Cortés to tell him who was Captain of the fleet, and all that had happened. As soon as Cortés knew that they were coming as prisoners and were close to Mexico, he sent out horses for the three principal persons and ordered them at once to be released from their confinement and wrote to them that he regretted that Sandoval should have treated them so disrespectfully, as he would have wished him to do them much honour, and when they arrived at Mexico he went out to meet them, and brought them very honourably into the city. When the priest and his companions saw how great a city was Mexico, and the wealth of gold that we possessed, and the many other cities in the waters of the lake, and all us captains and soldiers, and the frank open-heartedness of Cortés, they were amazed, and by the end of the two days they stayed with us, Cortés had talked to them in such a way with promises and flattery and even by greasing their palms with little ingots and jewels of gold, that when he sent them back to their Narvaez with food for the road, although they had set out as fierce as lions, they returned thoroughly tamed, and offered themselves to him [Cortés] as his servants. So when they returned to Cempoala to report to their Captain, they began to persuade all the camp of Nar-

vaez to come over to our side. I will leave off here and relate how Cortés wrote to Narvaez and what came of it.

CHAPTER CXII.

How Cortés, after he had been fully informed who was in command, and who and how many had come in the Fleet, and what munitions of war they had brought, and about our three false soldiers who had gone over to Narvaez, wrote to the Captain and to his other friends, especially to Andrés de Duero, the Secretary of Diego Velásquez. He also learnt how Montezuma had sent gold and cloth to Narvaez, and what reply Narvaez had sent back to Montezuma, and how the Licentiate Lucas Vázquez de Ayllon, Oidor of the Royal Audiencia of Santa Domingo, had come with the Fleet, and the instructions that he brought.

As Cortés always exercised great care and forethought and no matter escaped him that he did not try and put right, and as I have often said before, he had trustworthy and good captains and soldiers, who, besides being very valiant, gave him good advice,—it was agreed to by all of us that he should at once write and send the letters by Indians post haste to Narvaez, before the priest Guevara could arrive, and should tell Narvaez with friendly expressions and promises which we one and all made him, that we would do what his honour should command, but that we begged him as a favour not to create a disturbance in the land, or to allow the Indians to see any division among us. This promise was made because we who formed the party of Cortés were only a few soldiers in comparison with those whom Narvaez had brought, and in order to gain his good will, and to see how he would act. So we offered ourselves as his servants, while at the same time, beneath all these good words, we did not neglect any chances to look for friends among the Captains of Narvaez, for the Padre Guevara and the Notary Vergara had told

Cortés that Narvaez was not much liked by his captains, and advised us to send them some slabs and chains of gold, for "gifts break rocks." Cortés wrote to them that he and all his companions were rejoiced at their arrival at the port, and, as they were old friends, he begged Narvaez to do nothing towards the release of Montezuma who was a prisoner, or to cause a rising in the city, for it would involve the destruction of himself and his men as well as all our lives on account of the great power that Montezuma wielded ; that he stated this because Montezuma was very much excited and all the city was in revolt on account of the messages that had been sent to him. That he (Cortés) thought and felt certain that things expressed in such a way and at such a time could never have come from the mouth of such a wise and valiant man as Narvaez, but were such things as Cervantes the jester and the soldiers he had with him might say. Beside other words that were written in this letter, he placed his person and his property at the disposal of Narvaez, and said that he would do whatever Narvaez might command.

Cortés also wrote to the Secretary, Andrés de Duero, and to the Oidor, Lucas Vásquez de Ayllon, and with the letters he sent certain jewels of gold to his friends. As soon as he had sent the letter, he secretly ordered the Oidor to be given ingots and chains of gold, and begged the Padre de la Merced to follow the letters to the camp of Narvaez without delay, and he gave him more golden chains and ingots and some very valuable jewels to give to his friends there. So the first letter which Cortés wrote and sent by the Indians arrived before the Padre Guevara, who was the priest whom Narvaez had sent to us [to Villa Rica], and Narvaez went about showing it to his Captains and jeering at it and even at us. It is said that one of the Captains whom Narvaez had brought with him, named Salvatierra, who had come as Veedor, raised a clamour

when he heard it, reproving Narvaez for reading such a letter from a traitor like Cortés, and saying that he ought to proceed against us at once, and not leave one of us alive, and he swore that he would roast Cortés' ears and eat one of them, and other such ribaldry. So Narvaez would not answer the letter, nor consider us worth a snap of the fingers.

Just at that time the priest Guevara and his companions arrived [in camp], and told Narvaez that Cortés was a very excellent gentleman and a faithful servant of the King, and he told him of the great power of Mexico and of the many cities he had seen on the way, and that they understood that Cortés wished to serve him and do all that he ordered, and it would be a good thing, if, peaceably and without disturbance, an agreement should be come to between them; [he added] that Señor Narvaez should consider that all New Spain lay before him and he could take the people he had brought with him wherever he chose, and leave the other provinces to Cortés, for there were territories and to spare where one might settle. When Narvaez heard this, they say that he was so angry with Padre Guevara and Amaya that he would not see or listen to them again. When the people in the camp saw the Padre Guevara and the Notary Vergara and the others so greatly enriched, and the followers of Narvaez heard from them secretly so much good of Cortés and of all of us, and how they had seen such quantities of gold staked at play in our camp, many of them wished that they were already there. Just about this time our Padre de la Merced arrived at Narvaez's camp, with the ingots of gold which Cortés had given him and the private letters, and he went to kiss hands to Narvaez, and to tell him how Cortés wished for peace and friendship and was ready to obey his orders. But Narvaez who was very obstinate, and felt very aggressive, would not listen to him, and chose to say

before the Padre himself that Cortés and all of us were traitors, and because the Friar replied that on the contrary we were very loyal subjects of the King, Narvaez used abusive language to him.

Then the Friar very secretly distributed the ingots and chains of gold to those whom Cortés had named, and he got together and won over the chief persons in Narvaez's camp.

I will leave off here, and relate what took place between Narvaez and the Oidor, Lucas Vásquez de Ayllon, and what happened about it.

CHAPTER CXIII.

How the Captain Pánfilo de Narvaez had words with the Oidor Lucas Vásquez de Ayllon, and how Narvaez ordered him to be seized and sent as a prisoner to Cuba or Spain, and what happened about it.

IT appears that the Oidor Lucas Vásquez de Ayllon came to favour the cause of Cortés and all of us, according to his instruction from the Royal Audiencia of Santo Domingo, for the Geronimite Friars, who were the Governors, were aware of the many good and loyal services which we had done, first of all to God, and then to our Lord the King, and of the great present that we had sent to Spain with our Proctors. In addition to what the Royal Audiencia had ordered him to do in his official capacity, the Oidor had [now] seen the letters from Cortés, and with them the blocks of gold; and whereas he had said previously that the despatch of the fleet was contrary to all right and justice, and that it was an evil thing to proceed against such good subjects of the King as we were, from this time forward he spoke so much more clearly and openly, and said so much good of Cortés and of all of those who were with him, that in the camp of Narvaez nothing else was talked about.

In addition to this it was seen and understood, that in Narvaez there was nothing but the utmost stinginess, for he took for himself all the gold and cloths which Montezuma had sent them and did not give a scrap of it either to a captain or a soldier, on the contrary he said very loudly to his steward, with a haughty voice, "See to it that not a mantle be missing, for they have all been noted down."

As they knew him to be so mean, and heard what I have already said about Cortés, and how we who were with him were very generous, his entire camp was more than half mutinous. Narvaez thought that the Oidor was at the bottom of it, and was sowing discord. Beside this, when Montezuma sent them food which the caterer or steward of Narvaez distributed, he did it without paying the attention to the Oidor or his servants that he should have done, and there was some irritation and uproar about it in the camp. Then owing to the advice given him by Salvatierra, who, as I have said, came as Veedor, and of a certain Juan Bono de Cuexo, a Biscayan, and above all [trusting in] the great support that he had received from Castille, from Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca, Bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosano, Narvaez had the daring to seize the King's Oidor and some of his servants and his clerk, and put them on board ship and send them as prisoners to Spain, or to the Island of Cuba. Also, because a gentleman, named something de Oblanca, a learned man, said that Cortés was a very good servant of the King, and all of us who were with him were worthy of much favour, and it seemed to him wrong to call us traitors, and that it was an evil deed to seize an Oidor of His Majesty, for all this that he said, Narvaez ordered him to be imprisoned. As Gonzalo de Oblanca was a very high-bred nobleman, he fretted himself to death within four days. Narvaez also made prisoners of two other soldiers whom he had brought in his ship who knew and spoke well of Cortés, one of

them was Sancho Barahona who was afterwards a settler in Guatemala.

I will go on to relate about the Oidor whom they were carrying as a prisoner to Castille; he spoke kindly to the Captain and pilot and master who had charge of him on board the ship, but at the same time he frightened them by saying that when they arrived in Spain, that instead of paying them for what they had done, His Majesty would order them to be hanged. When they heard these words they told him that if he would pay them for their trouble they would take him to Santo Domingo, and so they changed their course from what Narvaez had ordered and arrived and disembarked at the Island of Santo Domingo. When the Royal Audiencia, which was stationed there, and the Geronimite Friars, who were the Governors, heard the story of the Licentiate Lucas Vázquez de Ayllon, and took into consideration the great disrespect and effrontery [that had been shown] they felt it deeply, and were so much annoyed that they at once wrote to Castile to His Majesty's Royal Council. And as at that time the Bishop of Burgos was President of the Council and managed everything, and His Majesty had not returned from Flanders, no justice was done in our favour, on the contrary they say that Don Rodríguez de Fonseca was greatly rejoiced thinking that Narvaez had already defeated us. When His Majesty who was in Flanders heard our Proctors, and knew what Diego Velásquez and Narvaez had done in sending a fleet without the Royal licence, and imprisoning an Oidor, it did them a great deal of damage in the law suits and claims which, after Cortés had been accused, they preferred against him and all of us, notwithstanding all that they said about having a licence from the Bishop of Burgos who was President of the Council to equip the fleet they sent against us, as I will relate further on.

Then as certain soldiers, friends and relations of the Oidor Lucas Vásquez de Ayllon, saw that Narvaez had committed that great disrespect and irregularity against an Oidor of His Majesty and had carried him off as a prisoner; and as they were already in fear of Narvaez who had his eye on them and was on bad terms with them, they agreed to flee from the sand dunes to the town where Captain Sandoval was stationed. He [Sandoval] treated them with much honour, and learnt from them all that I have here related, and how Narvaez wished to send soldiers to that town to capture it. And what else happened I will go on to tell.

CHAPTER CXIV.

How Narvaez, after he had made prisoners of the Oidor Lucas Vásquez Ayllon and his clerk, went with all his forces to a town named Cempoala which at that time was a large town, and what he effected there, and what our Captain Cortés did and all of us who were in Mexico, and how we decided to march against Narvaez.

AS soon as Narvaez had sent away the Oidor of the Royal Audiencia of Santo Domingo as a prisoner, he at once proceeded with all his baggage and supplies and munitions of war to form a camp in the town of Cempoala which at that time had a large population, and the first thing that he did was to take by force from the fat Cacique, for so we called him, all the mantles and cloths and gold which Cortés had given into his charge before we left for Tlaxcala, and he also took the Indian women whom the Caciques of that town had given us, who had been left in the houses of their parents because they were daughters of chieftains, and too delicate to go to the war. When he did this the fat Cacique said many times to Narvaez that he must not

touch any of the things that Cortés had left in his charge for if Cortés knew that anything had been taken he would kill him for it. He also complained to Narvaez himself of the many evil deeds and robberies that his people committed in the town, and told him that when Malinche was there, (for so they called Cortés,) with his people, they had not taken a single thing from them, and that he was very good and just, both he himself and the Teules whom he brought with him, and that Narvaez should at once give him back his Indian women, and gold and mantles, for if he did not, he would send and complain to Malinche. When they heard that, they made fun of what he said, and the Veedor, Salvatierra, who has been mentioned by me before, who was the one who boasted most, said to his friends and to Narvaez himself, "Don't you hear what a fright all these Caciques are in of this nonentity of a Cortés." Now just see what it is worth to speak evil of what is good, for I am telling the truth when I say that when we made the attack on Narvaez, this Salvatierra turned out to be one of the biggest cowards of them all, (not that he did not possess a robust body and strength,) but the defect did not apply to his tongue. They say that he was a native of a town near Burgos.

Let us stop talking about him, and say how Narvaez sent to notify some decrees to our Captain and all of us which were said to be copies of the originals which he had brought from the Governor, Diego Velásquez, appointing him Captain, and he sent them by a notary, named somebody de Mata, in order that he should formally state them to us, and this notary was afterwards a crossbowman and as time went on he became a settler at Puebla. Narvaez sent with him four soldiers, all persons of quality, to act as witnesses. Let us leave them there, both Narvaez and the notary whom he was sending, and let us return to Cortés who received every day letters and warnings both

from the camp of Narvaez and from that of Gonzalo de Sandoval who remained at Villa Rica, and who told Cortés that he had there with him five soldiers, persons of considerable importance, who were friends and relations of the licentiate, Lucas Vásquez de Ayllon, whom Narvaez had sent away as a prisoner. These soldiers came to him from the camp of Narvaez, and gave as a reason for their coming, that as Narvaez had no respect for the Oidor of the King, he would have still less respect for them who were his relations. From these soldiers Sandoval heard in full all that was taking place in the camp of Narvaez, who had stated that he was going in search of us to Mexico to take us prisoners.

Let us go on and say that Cortés promptly took counsel with our Captains, and all of us whom he knew to be his faithful followers, and whom he was accustomed to call in council in such important affairs as this. And it was decided by us all, that at once, without waiting for any more letters or other information, we should fall upon Narvaez, and that Pedro de Alvarado should remain in Mexico to take charge of Montezuma with all the soldiers who were not inclined to go on that expedition, so that all those persons whom we suspected of being friends of Diego Velásquez could be left behind.

About that time, before the arrival of Narvaez, Cortés had sent to Tlaxcala for a large supply of maize, for there had been a bad seed time in the Mexican territory from want of rain, and we were in want of maize, for as we had with us many of our Tlaxcalan friends, there was great need of it. So they brought the maize and fowls and other food and we left it with Pedro de Alvarado, and we even made some barricades and fortifications for him and mounted some bronze cannon, and we left with him all the powder we possessed and fourteen musketeers, eight cross-bowmen and five horses, and we left with him in all eighty soldiers.

Montezuma saw that we meant to go against Narvaez, and although Cortés went to see him every day and paid him court, he never let Montezuma know that he was aware that he was assisting Narvaez and was sending him gold and cloth, and had ordered him to be supplied with food. In the course of conversation Montezuma asked Cortés where he was going, and why he had prepared those armaments and defences, and why we were all in such a state of excitement? How Cortés answered him and what turn the conversation took, I will go on to relate.

CHAPTER CXV.

How the great Montezuma asked Cortés why he wished to go against Narvaez, seeing that Narvaez had brought many men with him and that Cortés had but a few, and that he should regret it if any evil happened to us.

WHEN as usual Cortés and the great Montezuma were conversing, Montezuma said to Cortés, "Señor Malinche, I notice that all your captains and soldiers are agitated, and I have also observed that you only come to see me now and then, and Orteguilla the page tells me that you intend to go against those, your brothers, who have come in the ships, and to leave Tonatío here to guard me; do me the favour to tell me if there is anything I can do to assist you, for I will do it with the greatest good will. Moreover, Señor Malinche, I do not wish any calamity to befall you, for you have very few Teules with you, and those who have now come are five times as numerous, and they say that they are Christians like yourselves, and vassals and subjects of your Emperor, and they possess images and set up crosses and say Mass and say and announce that you are persons who have fled from your King, and that they have come to capture and kill you. I

do not understand it at all, so take care what you are doing."

Cortés answered with a pretence of lightheartedness, and said through Doña Marina, who was always with him during all these conversations, as well as Gerónimo de Aguilar, as interpreters, that they should inform him that if he had not come to tell him all about it, it was because he loved him very much and did not wish to grieve him by our departure, and this was why he had postponed telling him, for he felt certain that Montezuma was well disposed towards him. That regarding what he said as to all of us being vassals of our great Emperor, it was true, also that they were Christians as we were, but as to what they said about our fleeing from our Lord the King, that it was not so, for our King had sent us to see him and tell him all that had been said and done in his royal name. As for what he said about their bringing many soldiers and ninety horses and many cannon and powder, and our being few in number, and that they had come to kill us and take us prisoners, that Our Lord Jesus Christ in whom we believe, and our Lady Santa Maria, his blessed Mother, would give more strength to us than to them, for they were bad people and had come with a bad purpose. As our Emperor ruled over many kingdoms and principalities, there were great differences of race among them, some very valiant, and others even much more so. We came from Castile itself, which is called Old Castile, and we called ourselves Castilians, and the Captain who was now at Cempoala and the people he had brought with him came from another province, named Biscaya, and called themselves Biscayans, and spoke like the Otomis of this land of Mexico, and he would see how we would bring them as prisoners. He need have no anxiety about our departure, for we would soon return victorious, and what he now begged of him was to stay quietly with

his brother Tonatio, (for so they called Don Pedro de Alvarado,) and eighty soldiers. And, so that there should be no disturbance after we left the city, he must not countenance his captains and priests in doing anything for which, as soon as we returned, the rebellious ones would have to pay with their lives, and he begged him to provide our people with anything they might need in the way of food. Then Cortés embraced Montezuma twice, and Montezuma also embraced Cortés, and Doña Marina, who was very sagacious, said to him artfully that he was pretending sadness at our departure. Then Montezuma offered to do all that Cortés had asked him, and even promised that he would send five thousand warriors to our assistance. Cortés thanked him for it, but he well knew that he would not send them, and said that he needed no more than first of all the help of God, and then that of his companions. Cortés also asked Montezuma to see that the image of Our Lady and the Cross should always be decked with garlands, and that wax candles should always be kept burning there by day and by night, and that he should not allow any of his priests to do otherwise, for that would be a proof of his sincere friendship. After turning to embrace him again, he [Cortés] said that he must pardon him for not staying longer with him, for he had to attend to our departure.

Then Cortés spoke to Alvarado and all the soldiers who were remaining with him, and he charged them to take the greatest care that the great Montezuma did not escape, and to obey Pedro de Alvarado, and he promised with the help of our Lord God, to make them all rich men. The Priest, Juan Díaz, also remained behind with them and did not come with us, as did also other suspected persons. Then we embraced one another and without taking any Indian women or any servants with

us, and marching in light order, we set out on our journey for Cholula.

While on the road Cortés sent to Tlaxcala to beg our friends Xicotenga and Mase Escasi, to send us at once five thousand warriors, and they sent to say in reply that if it were against Indians like themselves they would do so, and even much more, but against Teules like us, and against lombards, and crossbows, they had no wish to fight. However they sent us twenty loads of fowls. Cortés also wrote to Sandoval that he should join us with all his soldiers as quickly as possible and that we were going to some towns about twelve leagues from Cempoala named Tanpaniguita and Mitlanguita, which are now in the encomienda of Pedro Moreno Medrano, who lives in Puebla; that Sandoval should take great care not to be captured by Narvaez, and neither fall into his hands nor into those of any of his soldiers.

We kept on our way in the manner I have described, all on the alert to fight should we fall in with Narvaez or any of his soldiers, with our scouts on the look out, and with two of us soldiers, strong men and very trustworthy, always keeping a day's journey ahead. These men did not keep along the direct road, but by tracks where horses could not travel, so as to inquire and find out from the Indians about the troops of Narvaez.

Then as our scouts were marching on the look out, they saw Alonzo de Mata approaching, who said that he was a Notary, and was coming to serve the papers or copies of the decrees, (which I have already spoken about in the chapter that treats of it,) and four Spaniards who came with him as witnesses. Two of our horsemen at once came to give notice, while the other two scouts entered into conversation with Alonza de Mata and his four witnesses. We hurried up and quickened our steps, and when they came near to us, they made deep bows to Cortés and to all of us, and

Cortés dismounted from his horse, and as he knew why they came and that Alonso de Mata wished to serve the decrees that he had brought, Cortés asked him if he was a King's Notary, and he replied yes; then he ordered him at once to exhibit his title, and if he had brought it that he should read the messages, and he [Cortés] would do what he should consider would be to the service of God and of His Majesty. That if he had not brought it [his title] he should not read those documents, also that he [Cortés] must see the originals of the documents signed by His Majesty. So Mata, who was somewhat confused and timid, for he was not a King's Notary, and those who had come with him, did not know what to say. Cortés ordered them to be given food, for we were making a halt there, and he told them that we were going to some towns named Tanpaniguita near to the camp of Señor Narvaez, and that there he would be able to proclaim what his Captain might direct. Cortés was so tolerant that he never said a hard word about Narvaez, and he spoke privately with them and took their hands and gave them some gold, and soon afterwards they went back to their Narvaez, speaking well of Cortés and of all of us. As many of our soldiers at that time, out of ostentation, had jewels of gold on their arms and golden chains and collars round their necks, and these men who came to serve the decrees saw them, they told wonderful stories of us in Cempoala, and there were many of the principal people in the camp of Narvaez who wanted to come and make peace, and negotiate with Cortés, because they saw that we were all rich. So we arrived at Tanpaniguita, and the next day Captain Sandoval came with his soldiers numbering about sixty, for he had left behind all the old men and the invalids in a town named Papalote belonging to our Indian allies, so that they could be provided with food. There also came with him the five soldiers who were friends and relations

of the Licentiate, Lucas Vásquez de Ayllon, who had fled from the camp of Narvaez and came to kiss hands to Cortés, by whom they were all very well and gladly received.

Sandoval related to Cortés all that had happened about the infuriated priest Guevara and Vergara and the rest of them, and how he had sent them prisoners to Mexico, as I have already related in a former chapter. He also told him that he had sent two soldiers disguised as Indians with Indians clothes, to the camp of Narvaez, and Sandoval said that as they were dark-complexioned men they did not look like Spaniards, but like real Indians, and each one carried a load of plums on his back, for this was the plum season (this happened when Narvaez was still at the sand dunes and before they had moved to the town of Cempoala), and they went to the hut of the fierce Salvatierra, who gave them a string of yellow beads for the plums, and when they had sold the plums, Salvatierra, believing them to be Indians, sent them to bring grass for his horse from the banks of a stream that ran near by the ranches. So they went and brought several loads of grass, and, as it was about the hour of Ave Maria when they returned with the grass, they squatted down on their heels like Indians in the hut until night fell, and they kept their eyes and ears open to what some of the soldiers of Narvaez were saying who had come to pay their respects to and keep company with Salvatierra. They reported that Salvatierra said to them, "Ah! at what a lucky moment we have come, for this traitor Cortés has collected more than seven hundred thousand dollars of gold, so we shall all be rich, and his Captains and soldiers whom he has with him can hardly be less rich for they possess much gold!" and they went on with their conversation. When it was quite dark our two soldiers who were disguised like Indians silently crept out of the hut to where Salvatierra kept his horse,

and as the bridle and saddle were close by, they saddled and bridled the animal and jumped on its back and rode off towards the town, and on the way they came upon another horse hobbled near the stream, and they took that also.

Cortés asked Sandoval where these horses were, and he replied that he had left them at the town of Papalote where he had placed the invalids, for the road by which he and his companions had come was impassable by horses, for it was very rough and crossed high mountains, and he had come that way so as not to fall in with any of the soldiers of Narvaez. When Cortés heard of the capture of Salvatierra's horse he was perfectly delighted, and said, "Now he will brag all the more since he finds it missing."

Let us go back to Salvatierra who when he woke up to find that the two Indians who had brought the plums for sale were missing, and could not find his horse or his saddle or his bridle, (we were told this afterwards by many of the soldiers of Narvaez,) said things that raised a laugh at his expense, for he soon found out that they were some of Cortés's Spaniards who had carried off his horse; and from that time on they kept watch.

Let us go back to our story. Cortés and all of us soldiers and Captains were discussing how and in what way we should fall on the camp of Narvaez. What was agreed to before we made the attack, I will go on to relate.

CHAPTER CXVI.

How Cortés agreed with all of us soldiers that the Fraile de la Merced should be again sent to the camp of Narvaez, for he was very sagacious and a good mediator, and that he should protest himself a good servant of Narvaez, and show himself more in favour of his party than that of Cortés, and that he should secretly summon the artilleryman named Rodrigo Martin and the other artilleryman named Usagre, and that he should speak to Andrés de Duero and get him to come and see Cortés, and he should give into the hands of Narvaez another letter that we had written to him. That he should be ready to take advantage of anything that might happen, and on this account he took with him a large number of ingots and chains of gold for distribution.

AS we had now all got together in that town, we agreed that another letter should be written to Narvaez to be carried by the Padre de la Merced, which, after an expression of respect and the utmost politeness, was more or less to the following effect: That we had rejoiced at his arrival and had believed that with his magnanimous character we should do great service to our Lord God and to his Majesty, but that he had replied to us nothing whatever; on the other hand he had called us who were loyal servants of His Majesty, traitors! and had stirred up trouble throughout the land by the messages he had sent to Montezuma; that Cortés had sent to beg him to choose whatever province he might prefer wherein to settle with his people, or that he should advance, and we would go to other territory and would undertake what it was the duty of faithful servants of His Majesty to accomplish; we had also begged as a favour that if he had brought any decrees from His Majesty that he would send the originals to us, so that we might examine them to see whether they had the royal signature and what orders they contained, so that with our breasts bowing before them on the ground, we might at once obey them. However, he would do neither

one thing nor the other, but merely used abusive language to us and stirred up the country against us; that we begged and entreated him on behalf of our God and of our Lord the King to send within three days and proclaim through His Majesty's Notary the Decrees he had brought, and we would obey, as the orders of our Lord and King, all that he should command in his Royal Decrees; that it was for this reason we had come to this town of Tanpaniguita so as to be nearer to his camp; that if he had not brought the Decrees and wished to return to Cuba, he had better return and not disturb the country any more with threats, for if he made any more trouble, we would come against him and arrest him, and send him a prisoner to our Lord the King, because without the royal permission he had come to make war on us and disturb all the cities, and all the evils and deaths and burnings and losses that might thereon happen would be on his responsibility and not on ours; that he [Cortés] wrote and sent this letter now by hand, for no King's Notary dared to go to Narvaez to proclaim it for fear of being treated with as great disrespect as that with which Narvaez had treated the Oidor of His Majesty; where was there ever seen such audacity as to send him away a prisoner? In addition to what he had already said, he [Cortés] felt bound in duty to the honour and justice of our King to punish that great disrespect and crime, and as Captain General and Chief Justice of New Spain which offices he held, he summoned and cited him on this charge and accused him, as in justice bound, for the crime in which he was involved was that of "laesio Majestatis," and that he called God to witness what he now said. Cortés also sent to tell Narvaez that he must at once return to the fat Cacique the mantles and cloth and jewels of gold which he had taken from him by force, and also the daughters of the chieftains who had been given to us by their parents, and that he must order

his soldiers not to rob the Indians of that town nor of any other. After the usual expressions of courtesy, Cortés placed his signature, as did our Captains and some of the soldiers and I added mine. There accompanied the Friar a soldier named Bartolomé de Usagre, because he was a brother of the artilleryman Usagre who had charge of the artillery of Narvaez.

I will go on to tell what is said to have taken place when our Friar and Usagre arrived at Cempoala where Narvaez was encamped.

CHAPTER CXVII.

How the Fraile de la Merced went to Cempoala where Narvaez and all his captains were stationed and what happened when he gave them the letter.

I WILL not waste further words on repeating how the Fraile de la Merced reached the Camp of Narvaez, for he did what Cortés ordered, which was to call together certain gentlemen followers of Narvaez, and the gunner Rodrigo Martin, for so he was called, and Usagre, who also had charge of the cannon. So as to be sure of attracting Usagre, his brother carried some gold ingots which he secretly gave to him. In the same manner the Friar distributed the gold as Cortés had commanded him, and told Andrés de Duero to come to our camp soon to meet Cortés. In addition to this the Friar went to see Narvaez and speak to him and pretend to be his most humble servant. While this was going on they [the partisans of Narvaez] were very suspicious of what our Friar was about and advised Narvaez to seize him at once, and this he was willing to do. When Andrés de Duero heard of it (he was the Secretary of Diego Velásquez and a native of Tudela de Duero, and

Narvaez and he considered themselves as relations for Narvaez also came from the neighbourhood of Valladolid, or from Valladolid itself) he, Andrés de Duero, who was a person of importance and highly respected throughout the Armada, went to Narvaez and said to him that he had been told that he wished to arrest the Fraile de la Merced who was the messenger and Ambassador from Cortés, and although some suspicions might be entertained that the Friar was saying things in favour of Cortés, it would not be wise to arrest him, for it had been clearly shown what great honours and gifts Cortés bestowed on all the adherents of Narvaez who went to [visit] him; that the Friar had spoken to him [Andrés de Duero] as soon as he had arrived and given him to understand his desire that he himself and other gentlemen from Cortés's camp should come to give him [Narvaez] a reception, and that they should all be friends. Let him observe how good are the words Cortés speaks to the messengers who are sent to him and how neither he [Cortés] nor any of those with him ever mention [him] Narvaez otherwise than as El Señor Capitan, and [moreover] that it would be mean to arrest a cleric. It were better that Usagre the gunner whose brother had come to visit him should invite the Friar to dinner and find out from him what it was that all the followers of Cortés desired. With those and other palatable speeches Andrés de Duero calmed Narvaez, and when this had come to pass he took leave of him and secretly told the priest what had taken place.

Narvaez sent at once to summon the Friar, and when he came he showed him great respect, and the Friar half laughing, for he was very sly and sagacious, begged him to come aside with him in privacy, and Narvaez went strolling with him in a courtyard, and

the Friar said to him "I know well that your Honour wished to have me arrested but I wish you to know, Sir, that you have no better or more devoted servant in the camp than I am, and you may feel sure that many gentlemen and captains among the followers of Cortés would be glad to see him already in your hands, and I think that we shall all see him there; and so as more [surely] to bring about his undoing they have made him write a nonsensical letter which was signed by the soldiers and was given to me to present to your Honour. I have not wished to show it until now, when we can chat together, and I longed to throw it in a river on account of the foolishness that it contains, and the soldiers and Captains of Cortés have done this so as to ensure his undoing." Narvaez said that the letter should be given to him, and the Friar replied that he had left it at his lodging and that he would go for it, and so he took his leave and went for the letter. Meanwhile the blustering Salvatierra came to the quarters of Narvaez.

The Friar quickly called Duero to go at once to the house of Narvaez for the presentation of the letter, for Duero and others among the captains who had shown themselves favourable to Cortés, knew all about it, as the Friar carried it about with him, but he desired that many persons from that camp should be assembled to hear it [read].

When the Friar arrived with the letter he at once gave it to Narvaez himself and said "Do not be astonished at it, Sir, for Cortés talks as though out of his mind, but I know for certain that if your Honour will speak to him with affection he will promptly yield himself up with all his followers."

Let us leave the arguments of the Friar which were very good, and say that the Captains and soldiers told Narvaez

to read the letter. When they heard it, Narvaez and Salvatierra roared with anger, the others laughed as though making fun of it, and then Andrés de Duero said "Now I do not see how this can be, and I do not understand it, for this Cleric has told me that Cortés and all [the rest] would yield to your Honour, and now he writes these ravings." Then one Augustin Bermudez, who was Captain and chief constable of the Camp of Narvaez, ably helped Duero and said, "I certainly learnt from this Friar of the Order of Mercy, in strict privacy, that if we were to send good mediators that Cortés himself would come to visit your Honour in order to give himself up with his soldiers, and it will be a good thing to send to his camp, which is not far off, the Señor Veedor Salvatierra and the Señor Andrés de Duero, and I will go with them," this he said purposely to see what Salvatierra would say. Narvaez at once said that Andrés de Duero and Salvatierra should go, but Salvatierra answered that he was indisposed, and that he would not go to see a traitor. The Friar said to him, "Señor Veedor, it is good to have moderation, for it is certain that you will have him a prisoner before many days."

As soon as the departure of Andrés de Duero was agreed upon, it seems that, in strict secrecy, Narvaez planned with Duero himself and three other Captains, that he should arrange with Cortés for an interview at some farms and Indian houses, which stood between the camp of Narvaez and ours, and that there an arrangement would be come to as to where we should go with Cortés to settle, and where boundaries should be drawn, and that during the interviews he [Narvaez] would arrest him [Cortés] and to this effect Narvaez had already bespoken twenty soldiers who were his friends.

The Friar knew about this at once, and so did Andrés de Duero, and they informed Cortés of everything.

Let us leave the Friar in the camp of Narvaez where he had already made himself a great friend and kinsman of Salvatierra (for both the Fraile de Olmedo and Salvatierra were from Burgos), and he had his meals with him. Let us say about Andrés de Duero that he was getting ready to go to our Camp and take with him our soldier Bartolomé de Usagre so that Narvaez should not be able to learn from him what was going on, and I will relate what we did in our Camp.

CHAPTER CXVIII.

How in our Camp we held a Muster of the soldiers who were present, and how they brought two hundred and fifty very long pikes with two copper spikes each, which Cortés had ordered to be made in some towns which they call [the towns of] the Chinantecs and how we taught ourselves to handle them so as to defeat the horsemen of Narvaez, and other things that happened in camp.

LET us go back to say something about what else happened before that which I have already related. As soon as Cortés heard news of the fleet that Narvaez was bringing he at once despatched a soldier who had served in Italy and was very skilful with all arms and especially at making play with a pike, and sent him to a province called the [End of the] Chinantecs, near to where our soldiers had stayed when they went to search for mines, for the people of that province were very hostile to the Mexicans and they had accepted our friendship a few days before. They used as arms very long lances, longer than ours from Castile, with two fathoms of flint and [stone] knives,¹ so

¹ Dos brazas de pedernal y navajas; literally, two fathoms of flint and knives. In Chapter CXXIII they are described as having one fathom of flint knives (une braza de cuchilla de pedernales). They were probably double-pointed spears with two cutting edges of flint knives extending from the points for some distance along each side of the shaft.

he sent to beg them to bring him promptly, wherever he might be, three hundred of them, and to remove the knives, and, as they possessed much copper, to make for each one two metal points. The soldier took with him the model which the points should resemble, and they promptly searched for the lances and made the points, for throughout the province at that time there were four or five towns, not to count many farms, [where] they collected them and fashioned the points far more perfectly than those we sent to order from them. He also commanded our soldier, who was called Tovilla, to demand of them two thousand warriors, and by the day of the feast of Espiritu Santo to come with them to the town of Tanpaniguita, for so it is called, or to ask where we were, and that the two thousand men should bring lances; and the soldier asked for them accordingly. The Caciques said that they would come with the warriors, and the soldier soon came with a matter of two hundred Indians who carried the lances, and another of our soldiers named Barrientos remained [behind] to accompany the other warriors. This Barrientos was at the farm and mines which they were exploring, already mentioned by me, and there it was arranged that he was to come to our camp in the manner stated, for it was a journey of ten or twelve leagues from one place to the other.

When our soldier Tovilla came with the lances they proved to be extremely good, and the order was then given, and the soldier trained us and taught us how to handle them, and how we were to cope with the horsemen. When we had made our muster and the list and record of all the soldiers and captains of our army, we found that there were two hundred and sixty-six including the drummer and fifer, and not counting the Friar. There were five horsemen and two small cannon, a few cross-bowmen and fewer musketeers; what we relied on for

fighting with Narvaez was the lances, and they were very good as will be seen further on. Let us leave the arms at the muster and the lances, and I will relate how Andrés de Duero, whom Narvaez had sent, arrived at our camp and brought with him our soldier Usagre and two Indian servants from Cuba, and what Cortés and Duero said and arranged, as we came to understand later on.

CHAPTER CXIX.

How there came to our camp Andrés de Duero and the soldier Usagre and two Cuban Indians, servants of Duero, and who Duero was, and what he came for, and what we accepted as certain, and what was arranged.

I MUST now go far back to relate what happened in time past. I have already stated in a much earlier chapter, that when we were in Santiago de Cuba, Cortés settled with Andrés de Duero and with a King's accountant named Amador de Lares, who were great friends of Diego Velásquez (Duero was his Secretary), that they should use their influence with Diego Velásquez to have [him] Cortés appointed Captain General to go with that fleet, and that he would divide with them all the gold, silver and jewels that might fall to his lot. As Andrés de Duero saw that his partner Cortés was at that moment so rich and powerful, under pretext of making peace and acting in favour of Narvaez, he concealed his real intention, which was to claim his share in the partnership, for his other partner Amador de Lares was already dead. As Cortés was far-sighted and crafty he not only promised to give him [Andrés de Duero] great wealth, but also to give him a command over the whole force neither more nor less than he himself [held], and after New Spain was conquered to give him as many other towns as he himself possessed provided that he

would induce Augustin Bermudez, who was Chief Constable in the camp of Narvaez, and other gentlemen (whom I will not name here), to endeavour at all events to lead Narvaez astray, so that he should not escape with life or honour and should be defeated ; for when Narvaez was dead, or a prisoner, and his expedition wrecked, then they would be left masters, and would divide the gold and the towns of New Spain [between themselves].

The better to lure and bind him [Duero] to what has been said he [Cortés] loaded his two Cuban Indians with gold, and it seems that Duero gave a promise to him, and Augustin had already made the [same] promise by signature and letters. Cortés also sent many ingots and jewels of gold to Bermudez and to a priest named Joan de Leon and the priest Guevara, who was the man Narvaez sent first [of all], and to other friends of his, and he wrote to them what seemed advisable so that they might help him in every way.

Andrés de Duero stayed in our camp from the day of his arrival until after dinner the following day which was the day of the feast of Espíritu Santo. He dined with Cortés and conversed a while with him in private. When dinner was over, Duero took leave of all of us both Captains and soldiers and then, already on horseback, he once more approached Cortés and said : "What are your orders, your honour ; I wish to depart." He [Cortés] answered him, "God be with you, and look to it, Señor Andrés de Duero, that what we have been talking about be well arranged, if not, by my conscience, (for it was thus Cortés swore,) before three days are passed I shall be there in your camp, and, if I find anything contrary to what we have agreed upon, your honour will be the first to be pierced by my lance."

Duero laughed and said, "I shall fail in nothing which concerns my service to your honour," and he set off at

once, and when he arrived at his camp it is said that he told Narvaez that Cortés and all of us who were with him were very willing to go over to Narvaez himself.

Let us stop talking about this Duero affair and I will relate how Cortés promptly sent to summon one of our Captains named Juan Velásquez de Leon, a person of great importance, and a friend of Cortés, and a near relation of Diego Velásquez the Governor of Cuba, whom to the best of our belief Cortés had bound to himself and conciliated by great gifts and promises that he would give him command in New Spain and make him his equal, for Juan Velásquez always showed himself to be his very trusty follower and true friend as will be seen further on. When he had come before Cortés and made his salute he said "what are your orders, sir," and as Cortés at times spoke honeyed words with a smile on his lips, he said half laughingly "what made me summon the Señor Juan Velásquez is what Andrés de Duero has reported [which is] that Narvaez says, and such is the report throughout his camp, that if your honour should go there that I would be at once undone and defeated, for they believe that you would join with Narvaez, and for this reason I have resolved that, for the life of me, if you really love me, you shall go on your good grey mare, and take all your gold and the *fanfarrona*, (which was a very heavy golden chain,) and other trifles that I will give you, in order to give them in my name to whomsoever I may direct. Your heavy *fanfarrona* you shall carry over one shoulder, and another chain which weighs even more than it, you shall wear wound twice round, then you will see how Narvaez loves you. Try to come away again soon, for then the Señor Diego de Ordás may go there, whom they wish to see in his (Narvaez's) camp as he has been a Mayor-domo of Diego Velásquez."

Juan Velásquez answered that he would do what His

Excellency commanded him, but that he would not take his own gold and his chains with him, only such as might be given him with orders to hand over to certain persons, but, wherever he might be, he would be at all times ready to render His Excellency such service as no amount of gold or diamonds could procure. "That was my belief," said Cortés, "and with this confidence in you, sir, I send you, but unless you take all your gold and jewels as I command, I do not wish you to go." Juan Velásquez replied "whatever your honour commands shall be done," but he did not wish to take his jewels. Cortés spoke to him then in private and he at once set out and took with him one of Cortés's orderlies named Juan del Rio to attend on him. Let us leave this departure of Juan Velásquez, for it was rumoured that Cortés sent him to put Narvaez off his guard, and turn to relate what happened in our camp. Within two hours of the departure of Juan Velásquez, Cortés ordered Canillas (for so our drummer was called) to beat the drum and Benito de Beger our fifer to sound his tambourine, and he ordered Gonzalo de Sandoval who was Captain and Chief Constable to summon all the soldiers, and we at once began our march in quick time along the road to Cempoala. While we were on the march two native swine were killed which have the navel¹ on the back, and many of the soldiers said that it was a sign of victory, and we slept on a bank near a small stream, with our scouts on ahead and spies and patrols.

When dawn broke we went straight along and marched until midday when we had a rest by a river where the town of Villa Rica de Vera Cruz now stands,² (where the merchant ships that come from Castile unload,) for at

¹ A scent gland.

² The third site of the city, on the Rio Antigua.

that time there was a settlement by the river, consisting of some Indian houses and groves, and as the sun is very powerful in that country we rested, for, as I have said, we were carrying our arms and pikes. Let us now interrupt our march and I will relate what took place between Juan Velásquez and Narvaez, and one of his captains who was also named Diego Velásquez, and was a nephew of Velásquez the Governor of Cuba, for there he [Juan Velásquez] ran against him.

CHAPTER CXX.

How Juan Velásquez de Leon and Cortés's orderly named Juan del Rio arrived at the Camp of Narvaez, and what happened there.

I HAVE already said how Cortés sent Juan Velásquez de Leon with an orderly to accompany him to Cempoala, to see what Narvaez, who was so anxious to have him in his company, wanted of him. Therefore, hardly had they left our camp when Juan Velásquez made such speed on the road, that he reached Cempoala by dawn and dismounted at the house of the fat Cacique, (but Juan del Rio had no horse,) and thence they went afoot to the quarters of Narvaez. The Indians recognized him [Juan Velásquez] and they were delighted to see and speak to him and said aloud to some of the soldiers of Narvaez, who were quartered in the house of the fat Cacique, that this was Juan Velásquez de Leon one of Malinche's Captains. As soon as the soldiers heard this they went running to Narvaez to demand rewards for bringing the good news that Juan Velásquez de Leon had come.

When Narvaez heard of his arrival, before Juan Velásquez could reach his quarters, he went out to receive him in the street accompanied by some soldiers. Juan Velásquez and Narvaez on meeting they made a great show

of reverence to one another, and Narvaez embraced Juan Velásquez and pressed him to be seated on a chair, for they at once brought chairs and seats near to him, and he asked him why he did not dismount at his quarters, and he ordered his servants to go at once for the horse and baggage, if he had brought any, so that all might be placed in his house and stables and quarters. Juan Velásquez replied that he wished to return at once, and that he had only come to kiss his hands and those of all the gentlemen of his camp, and to see if his Excellency and Cortés could agree to keep peace and friendship. Then it is said that Narvaez promptly repelled Juan Velásquez, greatly annoyed that such words should be spoken to him. "What! to make friends and peace with a traitor who had rebelled with the fleet against his cousin Diego Velásquez?" and Juan Velásquez replied that Cortés was no traitor but a faithful servant of His Majesty, and that to appeal to our Lord and King as he had done should not be imputed to him as treason, and he begged him [Narvaez] to use no such word in his presence. Then Narvaez began to bribe him [Juan Velásquez] with great promises to [persuade him to] remain with him and to arrange with the followers of Cortés to give him [Cortés] up and to come at once and place themselves under his command, promising him [Velásquez de Leon] with oaths that he should be the foremost captain in all the camp and be the second in command. Juan Velásquez answered that it would be a greater treason to desert the Captain to whom he had sworn [obedience] during war, and to abandon him knowing [as he did] that all that he had done in New Spain was in the service of God our Lord and His Majesty, and that Cortés could not avoid appealing, in the way he had appealed, to our King and Master, and he begged him [Narvaez] to say no more about it.

By that time all the most important Captains from the

Camp of Narvaez had come to see Juan Velásquez and they embraced him with the greatest courtesy for Juan Velásquez was much of a courtier, well made, robust, of good presence and features and with a becoming beard, and he wore a great golden chain thrown over his shoulder giving it two turns under his arm, and it suited him well in the part of the gallant and brave captain. Let us leave the good looks of Juan Velásquez and how all the captains of Narvaez were admiring him, and even our Padre de la Merced also came to see him and speak to him in private, and there also came Andrés de Duero and the chief constable, Bermudez.

It seems that at that time certain captains of Narvaez, named Gamarra, and one Juan Fuste, and one Juan Bono de Quexo, a Biscayan, and Salvatierra the swaggerer, advised Narvaez to arrest Juan Velásquez at once, for it seemed to them that he was speaking very freely in favour of Cortés. When Narvaez had already secretly ordered his Captains and Constables to take him prisoner, Augustin Bermudez and Andrés de Duero and our Padre de la Merced and a priest named Juan de Leon, and other persons from among those who had professed themselves friends of Cortés, heard about it, and they said to Narvaez that they were astonished at his ordering Juan Velásquez de Leon to be arrested, for what could Cortés do against him [Narvaez] even if he had another hundred Juan Velásquezes in his Company?—that he should consider the honour and respect that Cortés paid to all those who had gone to his camp, and how he goes out to receive them all, and gives them gold and jewels, and other things such as cloths and fly whisks, and how they came back laden like bees to their hives; that he [Cortés] might easily have arrested Andrés de Duero and the priest Guevara and Amaya and Vergara the notary and Alonzo de Mata and others who had gone to his camp, and he did not do so; on

the contrary, as they have stated, he paid them great honour; and it would be better once again to speak to Juan Velásquez with much courtesy and to invite him to dinner. This seemed to Narvaez to be good advice, and he promptly spoke again to him [Juan Velásquez] in very affectionate terms so that he should be the mediator through whom Cortés might give himself up with all of us; and he invited him to dinner. Juan Velásquez replied that in that case he would do what he could, although he held Cortés to be very obstinate and stubborn in the matter, and that it would be better to divide the provinces, and his honour [Narvaez] should choose the land that pleased him best. This Juan Velásquez said in order to pacify him.

While these conversations were going on the Padre de la Merced whispered to Narvaez, as his confidant and adviser which he had already become, "Order them to muster all your artillery and cavalry and musketeers and crossbowmen and soldiers so that Juan Velásquez de Leon and the orderly Juan del Rio may see them, and so that Cortés may fear your force and your people and may surrender to your Excellency however unwillingly." This the Friar said to him as though he were his faithful servant and friend and to make him exercise all the horsemen and soldiers that were in the camp. So on the advice of our Friar he [Narvaez] held a review before Juan Velásquez de Leon and Juan del Rio, and in the presence of our cleric. When it was finished Juan Velásquez said to Narvaez, "You have brought a great force with you, may God increase it." Then Narvaez replied, "Ah, you can see that had I wished to go against Cortés I should have taken him prisoner and all of you that are with him." Then Juan Velásquez answered and said, "Look on him as taken

and us soldiers too, but we shall know well how to defend ourselves," and so the conversation ended.

The next day Juan Velásquez was invited to dinner, and there was dining with Narvaez a nephew of Diego Velásquez the Governor of Cuba, who was also one of his captains, and while they were eating at table he began to talk of how Cortés had failed to surrender to Narvaez and of the letter and summons that he sent him. And from one speech to another, the nephew of Diego Velásquez (who was also called Diego Velásquez like his uncle) exceeded all bounds and said that Cortés and all of us who were with him were traitors, because they did not come to submit themselves to Narvaez. When Juan Velásquez heard this he rose from the chair on which he was seated and with great ceremony said, "Señor Captain Narvaez, I have already told you that I cannot acquiesce in such words being spoken against Cortés or against any of those who are with him, as those that have been uttered, for it is truly malicious to speak evil of us who have served His Majesty so loyally."

Diego Velásquez replied that his words were well said and that he [Juan Velásquez] was upholding a traitor, and that traitors were as worthless as he was, and that he was not a good Velásquez. Juan Velásquez grasped his sword and said that he lied and that he was a better gentleman than he was, and a good Velásquez, better than him or his uncle, and that he would let him know it, if the Señor Captain Narvaez would give him leave. As there were many captains present, followers of Narvaez as well as some friends of Cortés, they placed themselves between them (for Juan Velásquez was actually going to give him a sword thrust) and they advised Narvaez that he should promptly order him [Juan Velásquez] to leave the camp, both him and the Friar and Juan del Rio for they felt sure that they were doing no good there. At once without

further delay they were ordered to leave, and they, who could hardly await the hour of getting back to our camp, complied.

It is said that Juan Velásquez mounted on his good mare in his coat of mail, which he always wore, and helmet and great golden chain, went to take leave of Narvaez, and Diego Velásquez, the youth who had quarrelled, was there with Narvaez, and he [Juan Velásquez] said to Narvaez, "What are your Honour's orders for our camp?" Narvaez replied in a great rage that he should get him gone and that it would have been better had he never come, and the youth Diego Velásquez uttered threats and offensive words to Juan Velásquez, who answered that he was very audacious and deserved chastisement for the words he had spoken, and placing his hand on his beard [he cried] by this [my beard I swear] that I will see before many days whether your courage is as good as your words. As six or seven from the camp of Narvaez who had already been won over to the side of Cortés had come with Juan Velásquez to take leave of him, it is reported that they disputed with him as though they were angry, and told him to be off and not trouble himself to talk any more. So they parted, and keeping their horses at a good pace they set off for our camp, for Juan Velásquez was promptly warned that Narvaez wished to arrest them and many horsemen were got in readiness to follow after them. Keeping on their way they met us at the river I have spoken of which is now near Vera Cruz.

We were halted on this river which I have mentioned, taking a rest (for in that country the heat is very great, and as we marched with all our arms on our backs, each one carrying a pike, we were tired), when at that moment one of our scouts came to give word to Cortés that, a good way off, two or three persons were approaching on horseback, and we at once assumed that it would be

our ambassador Juan Velásquez de Leon and the Friar and Juan del Rio. When they arrived where we were, what delight and happiness we all experienced, and how many caresses and what praise did Cortés bestow on Juan Velásquez, and on our Friar, and he had good cause, for they were his faithful servants.

Then Juan Velásquez related, step by step, all that I have already stated had happened to them with Narvaez, and how he sent secretly to give the chains and ingots and jewels of gold to the persons whom Cortés had indicated. Then you should have heard our Friar! Being of a merry disposition, he well knew how to mimic his own behaviour as Narvaez's faithful servant, and [to tell] how, in sheer mockery, he advised him to hold the review and call out his artillery, and with what astuteness and cunning he gave him the letter. Then he next related what happened to him with Salvatierra, with whom he claimed close relationship (the Friar being a native of Olmedo and Salvatierra from beyond Burgos), and [told us] what fierce threats Salvatierra uttered as to what he would do and what would happen when he captured Cortés and all of us, and that he even complained to him about the soldiers who had stolen his horse and that of the other captain, and we were all as delighted at hearing about it as though we were going to a wedding or a merry-making, [although] we knew that the next day we should be going into battle and must conquer or die in it, we being but two hundred and sixty six soldiers and those of Narvaez being five times as numerous as we were. Let us go back to our story, which is that we all marched at once towards Cempoala, and we went to sleep near a small stream about a league from Cempoala where there was a bridge at that time, and where now there is a cattle ranch. Let us leave off there, and I will relate what was done in the camp of Narvaez after the departure of Juan Velásquez and the

Friar and Juan del Rio and then I will at once return to relate what we did in our camp. As two or three events took place simultaneously I am obliged to leave some of them so as to relate what is most pertinent to this story.

CHAPTER CXXI.

What was done in the camp of Narvaez after our ambassadors had left it.

IT seems that when Juan Velásquez and the Friar and Juan del Rio went back, Narvaez was told by his captains that a belief had arisen in the camp that Cortés had sent many jewels of gold, and had gained friends to his side in the camp itself, and that it would be well to be much on the alert, and to warn the soldiers to have their arms and horses ready. In addition to this the fat Cacique, already mentioned by me, was in great fear of Cortés because he had allowed Narvaez to take the cloths and gold and to seize the Indian women, moreover he always had spies out [to see] where we slept and by what road we were coming, for so Narvaez had compelled him to do by force. When he knew that we were already arriving near to Cempoala the fat Cacique said to Narvaez: "What are you about? you are behaving very carelessly; do you think that Malinche and the Teules that he brings with him are the same as you are? Well, I tell you that when you least expect it he will be here and will kill you." Although they made fun of those words that the fat Cacique said to them, they did not fail to get ready, and the first thing they did was to declare war against us with fire and sword and free loot. This we heard from a soldier called El Galleguillo,¹ who came fleeing from the camp of Narvaez,

¹ El Galleguillo--the little Galician.

(or Andrés de Duero sent him,) and he informed Cortés about the proclamation and about other things that it was as well to know.

Let us return to Narvaez, who ordered all the artillery, horsemen, musketeers and crossbowmen to be taken out to a plain about a quarter of a league from Cempoala to await us there, and not to let one of us escape either death or capture. As it rained hard that day the followers of Narvaez had already had enough of waiting for us in the wet, and as they were accustomed neither to rain nor hardships and did not think we were of any account, his captains gave him notice that they would return to their quarters, as it was an outrage to be kept there waiting for two or three [men], as they said we were. [They further advised] that he should place his artillery, which numbered eighteen large cannon, in front of their quarters and that forty horsemen should remain all night waiting on the road by which we had to come to Cempoala; furthermore that he should station his spies by the ford of the river which we would have to cross, selecting good riders and lithe runners to carry messages, and that twenty horsemen should patrol throughout the night in the courtyards of the quarters of Narvaez. This plan which they communicated to him was to induce him to return to his quarters. Moreover, his captains said to him, "What, Señor? do you take Cortés to be so valiant as to dare with the three cats which he commands to come to this camp merely because this fat Indian says so? Don't you believe it, your Honour, he has only made this fuss and pretence of coming so that your Honour may grant good terms." It was in this way, as I have said, that Narvaez returned to his camp, and after his return he publicly promised to give two thousand pesos to whoever should kill Cortés or Gonzalo de Sandoval. He at once placed as spies at the river one Gonzalo Carrasco, who lives in Puebla, and

another man named something Hurtado, and the cry and countersign that he gave when they should fight against us in the camp was "Santa Maria, Santa Maria."

In addition to making these arrangements, Narvaez ordered many of the soldiers to sleep in his quarters, both musketeers and crossbowmen and others with halberds and he ordered as many more to be posted in the quarters of the Inspector Salvatierra and of Gamarra and of Juan Bono. Now that I have told about the arrangements Narvaez had made in his camp, I will turn to relate the orders that were given in ours.

CHAPTER CXXII.

About the plan and commands that were issued in our camp for the march against Narvaez, and the speech which Cortés made to us, and what we replied.

WHEN we arrived at the stream which I have already noticed and spoken about, which was about a league from Cempoala, where there were some good meadows, after having sent out our Scouts who were trustworthy men, our Captain Cortés (who was on horseback) sent to summon us, both Captains and soldiers, and when he saw us assembled, he said to us that he begged the favour of silence. Then he began a speech in such charming style, with sentences so neatly turned, that I assuredly am unable to write the like, so delightful was it and so full of promises, in which he at once reminded us of all that had happened to us since we set out from the Island of Cuba until then, and he said to us, "You well know that Diego Velásquez, the Governor of Cuba, chose me as Captain General, not that there were not many gentlemen among you worthy of the post, and you knew and believed that we were coming to settle, for thus it was published and

proclaimed; however, as you have seen, he was [merely] sending to trade. You are already aware of what happened about my wishing to return to the Island of Cuba to render an account to Diego Velásquez of the task that he entrusted to me, in accordance with his instructions; but Your Honours ordered and obliged me to form a settlement in this country in His Majesty's name, and thanks to our Lord the settlement has been made and it was a very wise decision. In addition to this you made me your Captain General and the Chief Justice of the settlement until His Majesty may be pleased to order otherwise. As I have already mentioned there was certain talk of returning to Cuba among some of you, but I do not wish to dwell further on that; it is, so to say, a bygone and our staying was a blessed and good thing, for it is clear that we have done great service to God and His Majesty. You already know what we promised in our letters to His Majesty after having given the report and story of all our doings omitting nothing, [stating] that this land is, so far as we have seen and known, four times larger than Castile and has great cities and is very rich in gold and mines and that other [rich] provinces lie near it; and how we sent to beg His Majesty not to give it away to be governed or [held] in any other manner by any one whosoever, for we believe and know for certain that the Bishop of Burgos, Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca, (who was at that time President of the Indies, and had great authority) would ask it from His Majesty for Diego Velásquez, or for some relation or friend of the Bishop's own. This land is so good that it would be proper to bestow it on an *Infante* or great Prince, and we are determined not to give it up to any one until His Majesty shall have heard our Proctors, and we behold his royal signature and approval, so that in all humility [we may do] what he may be pleased to order.

His Majesty's service all the gold and silver and jewels and everything that we possessed or had acquired, moreover you will well remember, gentlemen, how often we have been at the point of death in the wars and battles we have passed through; let me also remind you how inured we are to hardship, rains, winds and sometimes hunger, always having to carry our arms on our backs and to sleep on the ground whether it is snowing or raining, and if we examine it closely our skin is already tanned from suffering. I do not wish to refer to over fifty of our comrades who have died in the wars, nor to all of you who are bandaged in rags, and maimed from wounds which are not even yet healed. I should like to remind you of the troubles we had at sea and in the battles of Tabasco, and, those who were present at them, of the affairs of Almería or Cingapancinga, and how often in the mountains and on the roads attempts were made to take our lives. In what straits they placed us in the battles of Tlaxcala and how they handled us; then in the affair of Cholula, they had even prepared the earthen pots [in which] to cook our bodies; at the ascent of the passes you will not have forgotten the forces that Montezuma had gathered to exterminate us and you saw all the roads blocked with felled trees. Then during the dangers of the entry into and stay in the great City of Mexico, how many times did we look death in the face? who is able to count them?"

"Then look at those among you who have come here twice before I did, first with Francisco Hernández de Córdova and the other time with Juan de Grijalva; [consider] the hardships you underwent in discovering these countries, the hunger and thirst of the wounded and loss by death of so many soldiers and all the property of your own that you expended in those two voyages, and I say that I do not want to relate many other things that I ought to speak of in detail, for there would not be time to

finish talking about them," (because it was already late and the night was falling,) and he continued: "Let us add now, gentlemen, that as Pánfilo de Narvaez marches against us with great fury and desire to get us in his power, calling us traitors and malefactors even before he had landed, and sends messages to the great Montezuma, not in the words of a wise Captain, but of a mischief-maker, and as in addition to this he had the audacity to arrest one of His Majesty's Judges, for this great crime alone he deserves condign punishment. You have already heard how in his camp he has proclaimed war against us, and outlawed us as though we were Moors." Soon after saying this Cortés began to extol our appearance and courage in the late wars and battles [saying] that then we were fighting to save our lives, and that now we had to fight with all our strength [both] for life and honour, for they were coming to capture us and drive us from our houses and rob us of our property, "moreover," [he added] "we do not [even] know if he brings authority from our King and Lord or only support from our opponent the Bishop of Burgos, and if by ill luck we should fall into the hands of Narvaez, which God prevent, all the services that we have done both to God and His Majesty will turn to disservice, they will bring law suits against us, saying that we killed and robbed and destroyed the land, where [in truth] they are the ones to rob, brawl and disserve our Lord and King [but] they will claim that they have served him"; then [he said] that all that he had related we had seen with our own eyes, and that as true gentlemen we were bound to stand up for His Majesty's honour and our own homes and properties; he left Mexico on that understanding with confidence in God and in us, that first he trusted everything in the hands of God and next in our hands, and let us consider what we thought of it.

Then one and all we answered him, jointly with Juan

Velásquez de Leon and Francisco de Lugo and other captains, that he might feel sure that, God helping us, we would conquer or die over it, and he should look to it that they did not persuade him to terms, for if he should do anything underhand that we would stab him.

Then when he saw our determination he rejoiced greatly and said that it was because he had confidence in us that he had come, and he there made us many offers and promises that we should all of us be very wealthy and powerful. When this was over he turned to beg us as a favour to keep silence, for in wars and battles we had greater need of prudence and knowledge (so as to conquer the enemy thoroughly) than of daring, and because he had experience of our great bravery, and that each one of us would want to push forward among the first to get at the enemy and so to gain honour, therefore we should be arranged in order and in companies. As the first thing to be done was to seize their artillery, which numbered eighteen cannon, and was posted in front of the quarters of Narvaez, he appointed a relation of his own to go as Captain, whose name was Pizarro (I have already said before, that at that time neither Pizarros nor Peru were known to fame, for Peru had not been discovered). This Pizarro was an active youth, and he assigned to him sixty young soldiers, and he named me among them, and ordered that after the artillery was taken, we should all run to the quarters of Narvaez which were on a very lofty Cue. For the capture of Narvaez he named as Captain Gonzalo de Sandoval with sixty companions, and as he was Chief Constable he gave him an order which read thus :—Gonzalo de Sandoval Chief Constable of this New Spain, in His Majesty's name I command you to seize the person of Pánfilo Narvaez, and should he resist, to kill him, for the benefit of the service of God and the King, insomuch as he has committed many acts to the disservice of God and of

His Majesty, and arrested an Oidor. Given in this camp and signed Hernando Cortés, countersigned by his Secretary Pedro Hernández.

After issuing the order, he promised to give three thousand pesos to the soldier who first laid hand on him [Narvaez], and to the second two thousand, and one thousand to the third, and he said that what he was promising was as a reward, so that we could easily see the riches that were within our reach. Then he chose Juan Velásquez de Leon to arrest the youth Diego Velásquez with whom he had had the quarrel, and gave him another sixty soldiers, and he likewise named Diego de Ordás to arrest Salvatierra and gave him another sixty soldiers, and [there was] Cortés himself ready for an emergency with another twenty soldiers, to hasten to where he was most needed, and where he intended to be present was at the capture of Narvaez and Salvatierra.

As soon as the lists were given to the Captains, as I have related, he [Cortés] said, "I well know that the followers of Narvaez are in all four times as numerous as we are, but they are not used to arms, and as the greater part of them are hostile to their captain, and many of them are ill, and we shall take them by surprise, I have an idea that God will give us the victory, and that they will not persist much in their defence, for we shall procure them more wealth than their Narvaez can. So, gentlemen, our lives and honour depend, after God, on your courage and your strong arms, I have no other favour to ask of you or to remind you of but that this is the touchstone of our honour and our glory for ever and ever, and it is better to die worthily than to live dishonoured." And as at that time it was raining and was late he said no more. There is one thing I have thought about since, he never told us "I have such and such an arrangement in the camp made with so and so, which is in our favour" nor anything of

that kind, but merely that we were to fight like brave men ; and this omitting to tell us that he had friends in the camp of Narvaez, was the action of a very astute Captain, so that we should not fail to fight as very valiant men, and should place no hope in them, but only, after God, in our [own] great courage.

Let us leave this and relate how each of the Captains I have named was busy with the soldiers told off to him, [instructing them] how and in what way we were to fight, and encouraging one another. Then my captain Pizarro with whom we were to capture the artillery, (which was an affair of great danger, as we were to be the first to break through to the guns,) also explained with much spirit how we must force our way in and charge with our pikes until we had overpowered the artillery, and, as soon as we had captured it, our gunners (who were named Mesa, the Sicilian, Usagre and Arvega) with these same cannon and with the cannon balls which were ready to be discharged, should attack the enemy in the quarters of Salvatierra. I also wish to mention how greatly we stood in need of arms; thus for a breastplate, helmet or headpiece, or iron chin guard we would have given on that night whatever might be asked for it, and all that we had [already] gained.

Later on they secretly gave us the password that we were to use while fighting, which was "Espíritu Santo, Espíritu Santo," this is usually kept a secret in war time so that they may recognise and call each other by the password and the opposing side may not learn it. The followers of Narvaez had as their password and battle cry "Santa Maria, Santa Maria."

When all this was finished, as I was a great friend and servant of Captain Sandoval, he begged me as a favour to keep by him that night and follow him if I were still alive after capturing the artillery, and I promised him that I would do so, as will be seen later on.

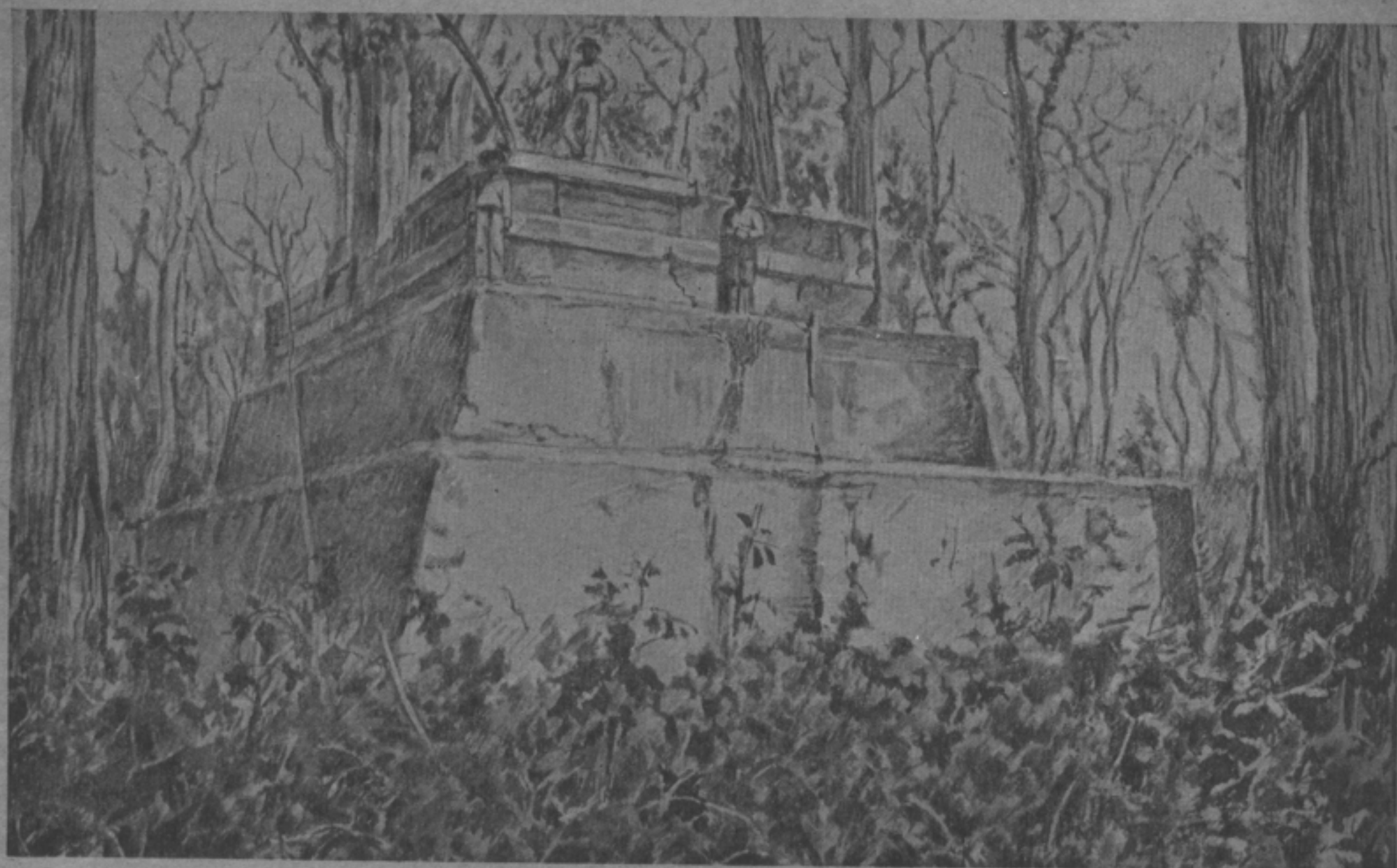
Let me say now that we spent part of the night in preparations and in thinking about what we had before us, for we had nothing at all on which to sup, and our scouts set off promptly and spies and sentinels were stationed. I myself and one other soldier were posted as sentinels, and before long a scout came to ask me if I had perceived anything, and I said "No." Then came an officer and said that the Galleguillo who came from the camp of Narvaez had disappeared and that he was a spy sent by Narvaez, and that Cortés ordered us to march at once on the road to Cempoala, and we heard our fife and the beating of the drum and the Captains getting their soldiers ready, and we began to march. The Galleguillo was found asleep under some cloths, for as it was raining and the poor fellow was not accustomed to be in the wet and cold he went there to sleep. Then going along at a good pace, with the Captains looking after their men, we began our march as has been said, and without any playing on the fife or drum, and with the scouts reconnoitring the road, we reached the river where the spies of Narvaez were posted. These, as I have already said, were named Gonzalo Carrasco and Hurtado, and they were so little on the look out that we had time to capture Carrasco, and the other fled shouting to the camp of Narvaez, crying "To arms! to arms! Cortés is coming."

I remember that when we passed through that river, as it was raining, it had become rather deep and the stones were slippery and we were much encumbered with our pikes and our arms, and I also remember that when Carrasco was captured he said to Cortés in a loud voice "Take care, Señor Cortés, don't you go [on] there, for I swear that Narvaez is waiting for you in camp with all his army." Cortés gave him in charge of his secretary Pedro Hernández, and as we saw that Hurtado went to give the alarm we did not delay at all, so that Hurtado's going and

shouting the order "To arms, to arms" and Narvaez calling to his captains, and our charging with our pikes and engaging the artillery, happened simultaneously, and the gunners had time only to fire four shots, and some of the balls passed overhead but one of them killed three of our comrades.

At that moment all our Captains came up with the fife and drum beating the charge, and as many of the followers of Narvaez were mounted, they were delayed for a few moments by them, but they promptly unhorsed six or seven of them. Then we who had seized the guns did not dare to leave them, for Narvaez was shooting at us with arrows and muskets from his quarters and wounded seven of us. At that moment Captain Sandoval arrived and made a rush to scale the steps, and, in spite of the strong resistance which Narvaez made with muskets, partisans and lances and flights of arrows, he and his soldiers still gained ground. Then as soon as we soldiers saw that the guns were ours and no one was left to dispute possession of them, we gave them over to our gunners already named by me, and Captain Pizarro and many of us went to the assistance of Sandoval, for the soldiers of Narvaez had driven them back down two of the steps. On our arrival he turned to ascend the steps [again] and we stood for some time fighting with our pikes which were very long, and when I was least expecting it we heard shouts from Narvaez who cried "Holy Mary protect me, they have killed me and destroyed my eye."

When we heard this we at once shouted "Victory, Victory for those of the password of Espíritu Santo, for Narvaez is dead; Victory! Victory! for Cortés, for Narvaez has fallen!" but for all this we were not able to force the entrance to the Cue where they were posted, until a certain Martin López, (he of the launches) who was very tall, set fire to the thatch of the lofty Cue and all the companions



RUINS OF TEMPLES AT CEMPOALA.

Where the fighting between Cortés and Narvaez took place.

After photos by Dr. J. W. Fewkes.

of Narvaez came tumbling down the steps. Then we seized Narvaez, and the first to lay hands on him was Pedro Sánchez Farfan, a good soldier, and I gave him to Sandoval and the other Captains who were with him, and we were still shouting and crying "Long live the King, long live the King, and in his Royal Name, Cortés, Cortés, Victory, Victory for Narvaez is dead!"

Let us leave this struggle and return to Cortés and the other Captains who were each one of them still fighting against the Captains of Narvaez who had not yet yielded, notwithstanding the shots that our gunners fired at them, and our shouts and the death of Narvaez, for they were posted in very lofty temples. As Cortés was very sagacious he promptly ordered it to be proclaimed that all the followers of Narvaez should come at once and yield themselves up under the banner of His Majesty, and to Cortés in his Royal name, under pain of death. Yet with all this the followers of the youth Diego Velásquez and those of Salvatierra did not give in, for they were in very lofty temples and could not be reached until Gonzalo de Sandoval went with half of us who were with him, with the cannon and the proclamation, and forced his way in and seized Salvatierra and those in his company as well as the youth Diego Velásquez. Then Sandoval came with all those who had gone to capture Narvaez to put him in a safer place. And after Cortés and Juan Velásquez and Ordás had made prisoners of Salvatierra and the youth Diego Velásquez and Gamarra, and Juan Yuste and Juan Bono the Biscayan and other persons of importance, Cortés came, without being recognised, in company with our Captains to where we held Narvaez. As the heat was great, and as Cortés was burdened with his arms, and had been going from place to place shouting to our soldiers and giving out proclamations, he arrived sweating and tired and panting for breath, and he spoke to Sandoval twice,

and did not succeed in saying it [what he wanted] on account of the trouble he was in ; and he said " What about Narvaez, what about Narvaez ? " and Sandoval said, " He is here ; he is here and well guarded." Then Cortés, still much out of breath, turned to say " Take care, my son Sandoval, that you do not leave him, and that you and your comrades do not let him break away while I go and attend to other matters, and see to it that these other captains who are prisoners with him are guarded in every way." Then he promptly went off to issue other proclamations to the effect that under pain of death all the followers of Narvaez should at once come to that place to surrender themselves under the banner of His Majesty and in his royal name to Hernando Cortés his Captain General and Chief Justice, and that no one should carry arms, but that all should give them up and hand them over to our Constables.

All this was done in the night, for it was not yet dawn and it still rained from time to time ; then the moon came out, but when we had arrived there it was very dark and was raining. However, the darkness was a help, for as it was so dark there were many Cucuyos,¹ for so they are called in Cuba, which give light by night, and the soldiers of Narvaez believed that they were the match [fires] of muskets.

Let us leave this and go on [to say] that as Narvaez was very badly wounded and had lost an eye, he asked leave of Sandoval for his surgeon named Maestre Juan, whom he had brought in his fleet, to attend to his eye and to the other captains who were wounded, and permission was given. While they were being doctored, Cortés came near by, on the sly, so that they should not recognise him, to see him [Narvaez]. Some one whispered to Narvaez that

¹ Fire-flies.

Cortés was there, hardly was this said to him than Narvaez exclaimed, "Señor Captain Cortés, you must consider this a great feat, this victory which you have won over me and the capture of my person"; and Cortés answered him that he gave many thanks to God for giving it [the victory] to him and to the gallant gentlemen and comrades who had a share in it, but that to capture and defeat him [Narvaez] who had seen fit to dare to arrest one of His Majesty's Judges, was one of the least important things he had done in New Spain. As soon as he had said this he went away and said no more, but ordered Sandoval to place a strong guard over him [Narvaez] and to stay with him himself and not leave him in charge of others. We had already placed two pairs of fetters on him, and we carried him to an apartment and stationed soldiers to guard him, and Sandoval designated me as one of them, and privately he ordered me not to allow any of the followers of Narvaez to speak to him until it was daytime and Cortés could place him in greater security.

Let us leave this, and relate how Narvaez had sent forty horsemen to wait for us on the road, when we were on our way to his camp, as I have said in the chapter that treats of the subject, and we were aware that they were still wandering in the country and were fearful lest they should come and attack us, and rescue their captains and Narvaez himself whom we held prisoners. So we kept much on the alert, and Cortés determined to send and beg them as a favour to come into camp, and made great offers and promises to them all.

He despatched Cristóbal de Olid, who was our quartermaster, and Diego de Ordás, to bring them in, and they went on horses that we had captured from the followers of Narvaez (for our horsemen brought no horses with them but left them picketed in a small wood near Cempoala; we brought no horses, only pikes, swords, shields and

daggers) and they went out into the country with one of the soldiers of Narvaez who showed them the track by which they had gone, and they came upon them, and gave expression to so many offers and promises on behalf of Cortés that they won them over, but some gentlemen among them bore him [Cortés] ill will.

Before they reached our camp it was broad daylight, and the drummers brought by Narvaez, without word from Cortés or any of us, began to beat their kettledrums and play on their fifes and tambourines and cry "Viva, Viva the gala of the Romans! who few as they are have conquered Narvaez and his soldiers"; and a negro named Guidela whom Narvaez had brought with him, who was a very witty jester cried out and said "Behold! The Romans never accomplished such a feat"; and although we told them to keep quiet and not to beat their drums, they would not do so until Cortés sent to arrest the drummer, who was named Tápia and was half crazy. At this moment came Cristóbal de Olid and Diego de Ordás and brought in the horsemen whom I have mentioned, and among them came Andrés de Duero and Agustin Bermúdez and many of our Captains' friends, who as soon as they came went to kiss hands to Cortés who with us around him was seated on an armchair, wearing a long orange-coloured robe with his armour beneath it. Then to see the graciousness with which he addressed and embraced them, and the flattering words that he said to them were matters worthy of note, and how cheerful he was, and he had good cause in seeing himself at that moment such a lord and so powerful, and so after kissing his hands each one passed to his quarters.

Let us speak now of those who were killed and wounded on that night. The standard-bearer of Narvaez named something de Fuentes, a gentleman from Seville, died. Another of Narvaez' captains named Rojas, a native of Old Castile also died, and two of the other followers of

Narvaez died. There also died one of the three soldiers who had belonged to us and had gone over to him [Narvaez], whom we called Alonzo García the Carter. Many of the followers of Narvaez were wounded, and four of our men died and more were wounded, and the fat Cacique also was wounded, for when he knew that we were nearing Cempoala he took refuge in the quarters of Narvaez and there he was wounded, and Cortés at once ordered him to be well attended to and placed him in his house so that he should not be molested. Then the mad Cervantes and Escalonilla, who were those who had been of our party and had gone over to Narvaez, fared badly, for Escalona was severely wounded and Cervantes well beaten, and I have already mentioned that the Carter was dead.

Let us go to those in the quarters of Salvatierra the fierce, of whom his soldiers say that never in all their lives did they see a more worthless man, or one so much alarmed at death when he heard us beat to arms. It is reported that when we cried out "Victory, Victory for Narvaez is dead," he promptly said that he was very sick at the stomach and was no good for anything. This I have related because of his threats and bravado; some of the men of his company were wounded.

Let us speak of the quarters of Diego Velásquez and the other captains who were with him, who were some of them wounded. Our Captain Juan Velásquez de Leon captured Diego Velásquez, him with whom he had the strife when he dined with Narvaez, and he took him to his quarters and ordered him to be cared for and treated with all honour.

Now I have given an account of all that happened in our battle, let us now relate what else was done.

CHAPTER CXXIII.

How after the defeat of Narvaez in the way I have related, there arrived the Indians of Chinantla¹ whom Cortés had sent to summon, and about other things that happened.

I HAVE already said in the chapter that treats of the subject that Cortés had sent to advise the towns of Chinantla (whence they had brought the lances and pikes) that two thousand of their Indians with their lances (which are much longer than ours) should come to aid us, and they came late in the afternoon of this very day after Narvaez had been made prisoner. They came under the command of the Caciques of their own towns and of one of our soldiers named Barrientos who had remained in Chinantla for that purpose. They entered Cempoala in good array, two by two, and they carried their very long lances of great thickness, which have on them a fathom of stone knives which cut like [steel] knives, as I have already said, and each Indian carried a shield like a *pavesina*, and with their banners extended and many plumes of feathers and drums and trumpets, and between every two lances an archer and shouting and whistling and crying "Long live the King, long live the King our Lord and Hernando Cortés in his Royal Name" they made their entrance so gallantly that it was an affair worthy of note. They were fifteen hundred in number and, from the manner and good order with which they came in, it looked as though there were three thousand of them. When the followers of Narvaez beheld them they were astonished, and it is reported that they said to one another, if those people had caught them in the rear or had come in with us, what could have stopped them? Cortés spoke to the Indian

¹ Chinanta in the text.

Captains very affectionately, thanking them for coming, and he gave them beads from Castile and ordered them to return at once to their towns, and not to injure other towns on the road, and he sent back this same Barrientos with them. I will stop here and will relate what else Cortés did.

CHAPTER CXXIV.

How Cortés sent Captain Francisco de Lugo to the port, accompanied by two soldiers who had been masters of ships [with orders] to bring at once to Cempoala all the Masters and mates from the ships of the fleet of Narvaez, and to remove the sails, rudders and compasses, so that they could not go to Diego Velásquez in the Island of Cuba to report what had taken place; and how he appointed an Admiral of the Sea, and other things that happened.

AFTER Pánfilo de Narvaez had been defeated, and he and his Captains made prisoners, and all the rest of his followers disarmed, Cortés directed Captain Francisco de Lugo to proceed to the port where the fleet of Narvaez, which numbered eighteen ships, was lying, and to order all the mates and masters of the ships to come up to Cempoala, and to remove the sails, rudders and compasses, so that they should not carry the news to Diego Velásquez in Cuba, and that if they refused to obey him, he was to make them prisoners. Francisco de Lugo took with him two of our soldiers, who had been sailors, to assist him. Cortés also ordered one Sancho de Barahona, whom Narvaez held as a prisoner with two other soldiers, to be sent to him at once. This Barahona was [afterwards] a settler in Guatemala and a rich man, and I remember that he was very ill and thin when he came before Cortés who ordered him to be treated with honour.

Let us go back to the Masters and mates who promptly

came to kiss hands to Captain Cortés, and he made them take an oath that they would not leave his command, and would obey whatever orders he gave them.

Then he appointed as Admiral and Captain of the Sea one Pedro Cavallero who had been master of one of the ships of Narvaez, a person whom Cortés thoroughly trusted and to whom it is said he first gave some good ingots of gold, and him he ordered not to allow any ship to depart from that port in any direction whatever; and he ordered all the other masters, mates and sailors to obey him, and [added] should Diego Velásquez send more ships from Cuba, (for he had news that there were two ships ready to come) that he must have the means and discernment to make a prisoner of the captain who would come in either of them, and should remove the rudder, sails and compasses, until [he] Cortés should decide otherwise. Pedro Cavallero accomplished all this as I shall relate further on.

Let us now leave the ships and the safe harbour and speak of what was planned between our camp and the followers of Narvaez. To begin with, orders were given that Juan Velásquez de Leon should proceed to conquer and form a settlement in the region of Panuco, and for this Cortés allotted him one hundred and twenty soldiers, one hundred were to be followers of Narvaez with twenty of our men mixed with them as they had more experience in war. They were also to take two ships, so that they might explore the coast beyond the river Panuco.

He also gave another command to Diego de Ordás of another hundred and twenty soldiers to go and settle in the region of Coatzacoalcos, again one hundred were to be followers of Narvaez and twenty of our own men, in the same way as with Juan Velásquez de Leon. He also was to take two ships to despatch from the Rio de Coatzacoalcos to the Island of Jamaica for brood mares, calves

and swine, sheep, and chickens of Spanish breed, and goats to multiply in the country, for the province of Coatzacoalcos was well suited for it.

In order that those Captains and their soldiers could set out fully armed, Cortés had them equipped, and ordered all the prisoners who were captains under Narvaez to be set free, except Narvaez [himself] and Salvatierra who said that he was ill of the stomach. Now as to furnishing them with all their arms, as some of our soldiers had already taken some of their horses, swords and other things, Cortés ordered them all to be given back to them, and over our refusal to give them up there occurred certain angry discussions, for we soldiers said that we held them very rightfully and that we refused to give them back to them, for in the Camp of Narvaez war had been proclaimed against us with free loot, and they came to capture us with that intention and to seize what we possessed, calling us, who were such faithful servants of His Majesty, traitors, and we would not give the things back to them. Cortés still contended that we must give them up, and as he was Captain General we had to do what he ordered. I gave them a horse which I had hidden away saddled and bridled, and two swords and three poignards and a dagger. Many others of our soldiers also gave up horses and arms. Alonzo de Ávila was a captain and a person who dared to speak his mind to Cortés, and he and the Padre de la Merced together spoke privately to Cortés, and told him that apparently he desired to imitate Alexander of Macedon, who after he had accomplished with his soldiers some great exploit, was more solicitous to honour and show greater favour to those whom he had conquered than to his captains and soldiers who had gained the victory. This they said on account of what they observed during those days that we remained there after Narvaez was made prisoner, (namely) that all the golden jewels

that the Indians had presented to Cortés and all the food he gave to the Captains of Narvaez, forgetting us as though he had never known us, and it was not well done, but a very great ingratitude after we had placed him in his present position.

To this Cortés replied that all that he possessed both his person and his property was ours, but for the present he could do no more than propitiate the followers of Narvaez with gifts, good words and promises, for they were many [in number] and we were few, lest they should rise against him and us and kill him.

To this Alonzo de Ávila replied and made use of somewhat haughty expressions, so much so that Cortés told him that no one was obliged to follow him against his will, for the women in Castile have borne and still bear soldiers. Alonzo de Ávila answered in very insulting and disrespectful words that it was true enough, "soldiers and captains and governors [as well] and we deserved that he should say so."

As matters stood at that time Cortés could do nothing but keep silence and win him over to his side by gifts and promises, for he knew him to be a man of great daring and, as Cortés was always in fear that possibly some day or other he might do him some harm, he let the matter pass. From that time onward he always employed him (Alonzo de Ávila) on negotiations of importance, thus he sent him to the Island of Santo Domingo, and later on to Spain when we sent the personal property and treasure of the great Montezuma, which that great French Corsair, Joan Florin, stole, as I will relate at the proper time and place.

Let us return now to Narvaez and a black man whom he brought covered with smallpox, and a very black affair it was for New Spain, for it was owing to him that the whole country was stricken and filled with it, from which there was great mortality, for according to what the

Indians said they had never had such a disease, and, as they did not understand it, they bathed very often, and on that account a great number of them died ; so that dark as was the lot of Narvaez, still blacker was the death of so many persons who were not Christians.

Let us leave all that now and relate how the inhabitants of Villa Rica who had remained as settlers, and did not go to Mexico, demanded of Cortés the share of the gold they were entitled to, and told Cortés, that although he had ordered them to remain there at that port and town, they also were serving God and the King, as well as we who went to Mexico, for their task was to guard the country and build the fortress, and some of them had been present at the affair of Almeria and were not yet well of their wounds, and all the others were present at the capture of Narvaez, and he must give them their shares.

Cortés, seeing that what they said was very just, replied that two of the leading settlers of that town, having authority from all of them, should go [for their share,] which he had put aside and would deliver to them ; and it seems to me that he told them that it was stored at Tlaxcala, but this I do not remember clearly. So they at once despatched two settlers of that town for the gold and the shares, the leading man was called Joan de Alcántara the elder.

Let us cease speaking of this, and later on we will relate what happened to Alcántara and the gold.

Let me say how ill luck suddenly turns the wheel, and after great good fortune and pleasure follows sadness : it so happened that at this moment came the news that Mexico was in revolt, and that Pedro de Alvarado was besieged in his fortress and quarters, and that they had set fire to this same fortress in two places and had killed seven of his soldiers and wounded many others, and he sent to demand assistance with great urgency and haste.

This news was brought by two Tlaxcalans without any letter, but a letter soon arrived by two other Tlaxcalans sent by Pedro de Alvarado in which he told the same story. When we heard this bad news, God knows how greatly it depressed us.

By forced marches we began our journey to Mexico. Narvaez and Salvatierra remained as prisoners in Villa Rica, and it seems to me that Rodrigo Rangel was left as lieutenant and captain charged with the duty of guarding Narvaez and protecting many of the followers of Narvaez who were convalescent.

Just at this moment, as we were ready to start, there arrived four great chieftains sent to Cortés by the great Montezuma to complain to him of Pedro de Alvarado, and what they said, with tears streaming from their eyes, was that Pedro de Alvarado sallied out from his quarters with all the soldiers that Cortés had left with him, and, for no reason at all, fell on their chieftains and Caciques who were dancing and celebrating a festival in honour of their Idols Huichilobos and Tezcatepuca, Pedro de Alvarado having given them leave to do so. He killed and wounded many of them and in defending themselves they had killed six of his soldiers. Thus they made many complaints against Pedro de Alvarado, and Cortés, somewhat disgusted, replied to the messengers that he would go to Mexico and put it all to rights. So they went off with that reply to their great Montezuma, who it is said, resented it as a very bad one and was enraged at it.

Cortés also promptly despatched letters to Pedro de Alvarado in which he advised him to look out that Montezuma did not escape, and that we were coming by forced marches, and he informed him about the victory we had gained over Narvaez, which Montezuma knew about already, and I will leave off here and tell what happened later on.



BOOK VIII.

THE FLIGHT FROM MEXICO.

CHAPTER CXXV.

How we went by forced marches, Cortés as well as all his captains and all the followers of Narvaez, except Pánfilo de Narvaez himself and Salvatierra who remained prisoners.



WHEN the news came which I have recorded that Pedro de Alvarado was besieged and Mexico in revolt, the commands that had been given to Juan Velásquez de Leon and Diego de Ordás for the purpose of going to form settlements at Panuco and Coatzacoalcos were rescinded and neither of them went, for all joined with us. Cortés spoke to the followers of Narvaez, for he felt that they would not accompany us willingly, and to induce them to give that assistance, he begged them to leave behind them their resentment over the affair of Narvaez, and he promised to make them rich and give them office, and as they came to seek a livelihood, and were in a country where they could do service to God and His Majesty and enrich themselves, now was their chance; and so many speeches did he make to them that one and all offered themselves to him to go with us, and if they had known the power of Mexico, it is certain that not one of them would have gone.

We were soon on our way by forced marches until we reached Tlaxcala, where we learnt that up to the time that Montezuma and his captains heard that we had defeated Narvaez they did not cease to attack, and had already killed seven of his [Alvarado's] soldiers and burnt his quarters, but as soon as they heard of our victory they ceased attacking him; but they added that they [Alvarado's company] were much exhausted through want of water and food, for Montezuma had failed to order food to be given to them.

Some Tlaxcalan Indians brought this news at the very moment we arrived, and Cortés at once ordered a muster to be made of the men he had brought with him and found over thirteen hundred soldiers counting both our people and the followers of Narvaez, and over ninety-six horses and eighty crossbowmen, and as many musketeers, and with these it seemed to Cortés that he had force enough to enter Mexico in safety. In addition to this the Caciques of Tlaxcala gave us two thousand Indian warriors, and we at once set out by forced marches to Texcoco which is a great city, and they paid no honour to us there and not a single chieftain made his appearance, for all were hidden away and ill disposed.

We arrived at Mexico on the day of Señor San Juan de Junio¹ 1520, and no Caciques or Captains or Indians whom we knew appeared in the streets, and all the houses were empty when we reached the quarters where we used to lodge. The great Montezuma came out to the courtyard to embrace and speak to Cortés and bid him welcome, and congratulate him on his victory over Narvaez, and as Cortés was arriving victorious he refused to listen to him, and Montezuma returned to his quarters very sad and depressed.

¹ Midsummer day.

When each one of us was lodged in the quarters he had occupied before we set out from Mexico to go to this affair of Narvaez, and the followers of Narvaez [were lodged] in other quarters, we then saw and talked with Pedro de Alvarado and the soldiers who had stayed with him; they gave us an account of the attacks the Mexicans had made on them, and the straits in which they [the Mexicans] had placed them, and we told them the story of our victory over Narvaez.

I will leave all this and relate how Cortés tried to find out what was the cause of the revolt in Mexico, for we clearly understood that it made Montezuma unhappy if [we should think] it had been his desire or had been done by his advice. Many of the soldiers who had remained with Pedro de Alvarado through that critical time said, that if Montezuma had had a hand in it, all of them would have been killed, but Montezuma calmed his people until they ceased to attack.

What Pedro de Alvarado told Cortés about the matter was that it was done by the Mexicans in order to liberate Montezuma, and because their Huichilobos ordered it, on account of our having placed the image of our Lady the Virgin Santa Maria and the Cross in his house. Moreover he said that many Indians had come to remove the holy image from the altar where we placed it, and were not able [to move it], and that the Indians looked upon it as a great miracle and had said so to Montezuma, who had told them to leave it in the place and altar in which it stood, and not to attempt to do otherwise, and so it was left.

Pedro de Alvarado further stated that because Narvaez' message to Montezuma, that he was coming to release him from prison and to capture us, had not turned out to be true, and because Cortés had told Montezuma that as soon as we possessed ships we should go and embark and leave the country entirely, and we were not going, and it

was nothing but empty words, and because it was evident that many more Teules were arriving, it seemed well [to the Mexicans], before the followers of Narvaez or our own men re-entered Mexico to kill Pedro de Alvarado and his soldiers and release the great Montezuma, and afterwards not to leave one of us or of the followers of Narvaez alive, all the more because they had taken it for granted that Narvaez and his soldiers would conquer us.

This discourse and account Pedro de Alvarado rendered to Cortés, and Cortés turned and asked him what was the reason that he attacked them when they were dancing and holding a festival, and he replied that he knew for certain that as soon as they had finished the festivals and dances and the sacrifices that they were offering to their Huichilobos and Tezcatepuca, they would at once come and make an attack according to the agreement they had made between themselves, and this and all the rest he learned from a priest and from two chieftains and from other Mexicans.

Cortés said to him, "but they have told me that they asked your permission to hold festivals [areyto] and dances," he replied that it was true, and it was in order to take them unprepared, and to scare them, so that they should not come to attack him, that he hastened to fall on them.

When Cortés heard this he said to him, very angrily, that it was very ill done and a great mistake¹ and that he wished to God that Montezuma had escaped and not heard such an account from his Idols. So he left him and spoke no more to him about it.

Pedro de Alvarado himself also said² that when he

¹ Scratched out in the original: "and not very true."—G.G.

² Scratched out in the original: "I wish to state that Pedro de Alvarado said that when the Mexican Indians fought against him, many of them said that a great *Teclecigata*, that is a great lady, such another as she who was placed in the great Cue, threw earth in their eyes and blinded them, and that a *gucy Teule* (a great God) who rode

advanced against them in that conflict, he ordered a cannon, that was loaded with one ball and many small shot, to be fired, for as many squadrons of Indians were approaching to set fire to his quarters he sallied forth to fight them, and he ordered the cannon to be fired but it did not go off, and after he had made a charge against the squadrons which were attacking him, and many Indians were bearing down on him, while he was retreating to the fortress and quarters, then, without fire being applied to the cannon, the ball and the small shot was discharged and killed many Indians; and had it not so happened the enemy would have killed them all, and they did on that occasion carry off two of his soldiers alive.

Another thing Pedro de Alvarado stated, and this was the only thing that was [also] reported by the other soldiers, for the rest of the stories were told by Alvarado alone, and it is that they had no water to drink, and they dug in the courtyard, and made a well and took out fresh water, all [around] being salt; in all it amounted to many gifts that our Lord God bestowed on us.

Concerning this about the water I will add that in Mexico there was a spring where very often and at most times water¹ welled up. These things and others I heard

on a white horse did them great damage, and that had it not been for them they would have killed them all. And it is stated that his chieftains told this to the great Montezuma, and if this were so, they were great miracles and we must always give thanks to God and to the Virgin Santa Maria Our Lady, His Blessed Mother, that he helped us in all things, and to the fortunate Señor Santiago.—G. G.

¹ Blotted out in the original: "somewhat sweeter than the rest. Some persons say that it was through greed to gain the great quantity of gold and jewels of great value which the Indians wore while dancing that Pedro de Alvarado went to attack them. I do not believe it, and never heard such a thing, nor is it credible that he would do such a thing, although the Bishop Fray Bartolomé de las Casas says so. This and other things never happened, for in truth he fell on them to terrify them and so that with the damage he did to them they should have sufficient to recover from and weep over, and would not come to attack him, and as they say "Who attacks conquers." It was appa-

related by persons of good faith and reliability, who were with Pedro de Alvarado when this happened, so I will leave off here and tell of the great attack that they promptly made on us, which was in the following manner.

CHAPTER CXXVI.

How they made war on us in Mexico, and the attacks they made on us and other things that happened.

WHEN Cortés saw that they had given us no sort of a reception in Texcoco, and had not even given us food, except bad food and with bad grace, and that we found no chieftains with whom to parley, and he saw that all were scared away and ill disposed, and observed the same condition on coming to Mexico, how no market was held and the whole place was in revolt, and he heard from Pedro de Alvarado about the disorderly manner in which he made his attack, and as it appears that on the march Cortés had spoken to the Captains of Narvaez glorifying himself on the great veneration and command that he enjoyed, and how on the road they [the Indians] would turn out to receive him and celebrate the occasion and give him gold, and that in Mexico he ruled as absolutely over the great Montezuma as over all his Captains, and that they would give him presents of gold, as they were used to do, and when everything turned out contrary to his expectations and they did not even give us food to eat, he was greatly irritated, and haughty towards the numerous

rently much worse, for we were also credibly informed that Montezuma never ordered such an attack to be made, and, while they were fighting with Pedro de Alvarado, Montezuma ordered his people to stop. His followers replied that it was unbearable to have him kept a prisoner, or for them [the Spaniards] to come and kill them, as they had done, while they were dancing. They felt bound to release him and to kill all the Teules who were guarding him.—G. G.

Spaniards that he was bringing with him, and very sad and fretful. At this moment the great Montezuma sent two of his chieftains to beg our Cortés to go and see him, for he wished to speak to him, and the answer that he [Cortés] gave them was "go to, for a dog, who will not even keep open a market, and does not order food to be given us." Then when our Captains, that is Juan Velásquez de Leon, Cristóbal de Olid, Alonzo de Ávila, and Francisco de Lugo, heard Cortés say this, they exclaimed, "Señor, moderate your anger and reflect how much good and honour this king of these countries has done us, who is so good that had it not been for him we should all of us already be dead, and they would have eaten us, and remember that he has even given you his daughters."

When Cortés heard this he was more angry than ever at the words they said to him, as they seemed to be a reproof, and he said, "Why should I be civil to a dog who was treating secretly with Narvaez, and now you can see that he does not even give us food to eat." Our Captains replied, "That is to our minds what he ought to do and it is good advice." As Cortés had so many Spaniards there with him in Mexico, both of our own party and of the followers of Narvaez he did not trouble himself a whit about anything, and he spoke angrily and rudely again, addressing the chieftains and telling them to say to their Lord Montezuma that he should at once order the markets and sales to be held, if not he would see what would happen.

The chieftains well understood the offensive remarks that Cortés made about their Lord and even the reproof that our Captains gave to Cortés about it, for they knew them well as having been those who used to be on guard over their Lord, and they knew that they were good friends of their Montezuma, and according to the way they understood the matter they repeated it to Montezuma.

Either from anger [at this treatment] or because it had already been agreed on that we were to be attacked, it was not a quarter of an hour later that a soldier arrived in great haste and badly wounded. He came from a town close by Mexico named Tacuba and was escorting some Indian women who belonged to Cortés, one of them a daughter of Montezuma, for it appears that he [Cortés] had left them there in charge of the Lord of Tacuba, for they were relations of this same Lord, when we went off on the expedition against Narvaez. This soldier said that all the city and road by which he had come was full of warriors fully armed, and that they had taken from him the Indian women he was bringing and had given him two wounds and that if he had not let them [the women] go, they [the Mexicans] would already have captured him, and would have put him in a canoe and carried him off to be sacrificed, and that they had broken down a bridge.

When Cortés and some of us heard this it certainly depressed us greatly, for we, who were used to Indian fighting, understood thoroughly well what great numbers of them were wont to assemble, and that however well we fought, and notwithstanding the greater number of soldiers we had now brought with us, we should have to undergo great risk of our lives, hunger and hardship, especially as we were in such a powerful city. Let me go on and say that Cortés promptly ordered a Captain named Diego de Ordás to go with four hundred soldiers, and among them most of the crossbowmen and musketeers and some horsemen, and examine into what the soldier had reported who had arrived wounded and had brought the news, and that if he found that he could calm [the Indians] without fighting and disturbance that he should do so.

Diego de Ordás set out in the way that he was ordered with his four hundred soldiers, but he had hardly reached

the middle of the street along which he was to march, when so many squadrons of Mexican warriors fell on him and so many more were on the roofs [of the houses], and they made such fierce attacks that on the first assault they killed eight soldiers and wounded all the rest, and Diego de Ordás himself was wounded in three places, and in this manner he could not advance one step further but had to return little by little to his quarters. During the retreat they killed another good soldier named Lyscano who, with a broadsword, had done the work of a very valiant man.

At that moment, while many squadrons came out against Ordás, many more approached our quarters and shot off so many javelins, and stones from slings, and arrows, that they wounded on that occasion alone over forty-six of our men, and twelve of them died of their wounds; and such a number of warriors fell upon us that Diego de Ordás, who was coming in retreat, could not reach our quarters on account of the fierce assaults they made on him, some from the rear and others in front and others from the roofs.

Little availed our cannon, or our muskets, crossbows and lances, or the thrusts we gave them, or our good fighting, for although we killed and wounded many of them, yet they managed to reach us by pushing forward over the points of our swords and lances and closing up their squadrons never desisted from their brave attack, nor could we push them away from us.

At last, what with cannon and muskets and the damage we did them with our sword-thrusts, Ordás found an opportunity to enter our quarters, and not until then, much as he desired it, could he force a passage with his badly wounded soldiers, fourteen fewer in number. Still many of the squadrons never ceased from attacking us, and telling us that we were like women, and they called us

rogues and other abusive names. But the damage they had done us up to this time was as nothing to what they did afterwards, for such was their daring that, some attacking on one side and some on the other, they penetrated into our quarters and set fire to them, and we could not endure the smoke and the fire until it was remedied by flinging much earth over it, and cutting off other rooms whence the fire came. In truth, they believed that they would burn us alive in there. These conflicts lasted all day long, and even during the night so many squadrons of them fell on us, and hurled javelins, stones and arrows in masses, and random stones so that what with those [that fell] during the day and those that then [fell] in all the courts and on the ground, it looked like chaff on a thrashing floor.

We passed the night in dressing wounds and in mending the breaches in the walls that they [the enemy] had made, and in getting ready for the next day. Then, as soon as it was dawn, our Captain decided that all of us and Narvaez' men should sally out to fight with them and that we should take the cannon and muskets and crossbows and endeavour to defeat them, or at least to make them feel our strength and valour better than the day before. I may state that when we came to this decision, the Mexicans were arranging the very same thing. We fought very well, but they were so strong, and had so many squadrons which relieved each other from time to time, that even if ten thousand Trojan Hectors and as many more Roldans had been there, they would not have been able to break through them.

So that it may now be understood, I will relate how it happened. We noted [their] tenacity in fighting, but I declare that I do not know how to describe it, for neither cannon nor muskets nor crossbows availed, nor hand-to-

time we charged, for they still fought on in as close ranks and with more energy than in the beginning. Sometimes when we were gaining a little ground or a part of the street, they pretended to retreat, but it was [merely] to induce us to follow them and cut us off from our fortress and quarters, so as to fall on us in greater safety to themselves, believing that we could not return to our quarters alive, for they did us much damage when we were retreating.

Then, as to going out to burn their houses, I have already said in the chapter that treats of the subject, that between one house and another, they have wooden draw-bridges, and these they raised so that we could only pass through deep water. Then we could not endure the rocks and stones [hurled] from the roofs, in such a way that they damaged and wounded many of our men. I do not know why I write thus, so lukewarmly, for some three or four soldiers who were there with us and who had served in Italy, swore to God many times that they had never seen such fierce fights, not even when they had taken part in such between Christians, and against the artillery of the King of France, or of the Great Turk, nor had they seen men like those Indians with such courage in closing up their ranks.

However, as they said many other things and gave explanations of them, as will be seen further on, I will leave the matter here, and will relate how, with great difficulty we withdrew to our quarters, many squadrons of warriors still pressing on us with loud yells and whistles, and trumpets and drums, calling us villains and cowards who did not dare to meet them all day in battle, but turned in flight.

On that day they killed ten or twelve more soldiers and we all returned badly wounded. What took place during the night was the arrangement that in two days' time all

the soldiers in camp, as many as were able, should sally out with four engines like towers built of strong timber, in such a manner that five and twenty men could find shelter under each of them, and they were provided with apertures and loopholes through which to shoot, and musketeers and crossbowmen accompanied them, and close by them were to march the other soldiers, musketeers and crossbowmen and the guns, and all the rest, and the horsemen were to make charges.

When this plan was settled, as we spent all that day in carrying out the work and in strengthening many breaches that they had made in the walls, we did not go out to fight.

I do not know how to tell of the great squadrons of warriors who came to attack us in our quarters, not only in ten or twelve places, but in more than twenty, for we were distributed over them all and in many other places, and while we built up and fortified [ourselves], as I have related, many other squadrons openly endeavoured to penetrate into our quarters, and neither with guns, crossbows nor muskets, nor with many charges and sword-thrusts could we force them back, for they said that not one of us should remain [alive] that day and they would sacrifice our hearts and blood to their gods, and would have enough to glut [their appetites] and hold feasts on our arms and legs, and would throw our bodies to the tigers, lions, vipers and snakes, which they kept caged, so that they might gorge on them, and for that reason they had ordered them not to be given food for the past two days. As for the gold we possessed, we would get little satisfaction from it or from all the cloths; and as for the Tlaxcalans who were with us, they said that they would place them in cages to fatten, and little by little they would offer their bodies in sacrifice; and, very tenderly, they said that we should give up to them their great Lord Montezuma, and they said other

things. Night by night, in like manner, there were always many yells and whistles and showers of darts, stones and arrows.

As soon as dawn came, after commending ourselves to God, we sallied out from our quarters with our towers (and it seems to me that in other countries where I have been¹, in wars where such things were necessary, they were called "Buros" and "Mantas") with the cannon, muskets and crossbows in advance, and the horsemen making charges, but, as I have stated, although we killed many of them it availed nothing towards making them turn their backs, indeed if they had fought bravely on the two previous days, they proved themselves far more vigorous and displayed much greater forces and squadrons on this day. Nevertheless, we determined, although it should cost the lives of all of us, to push on with our towers and engines as far as the great Cue of Huichilobos.

I will not relate at length, the fights we had with them in a fortified house, nor will I tell how they wounded the horses, nor were they [the horses] of any use to us, because although they charged the squadrons to break through them, so many arrows, darts and stones were hurled at them, that they, well protected by armour though they were, could not prevail against them [the enemy], and if they pursued and overtook them, the Mexicans promptly dropped for safety into the canals and lagoons where they had raised other walls against the horsemen, and many other Indians were stationed with very long lances to finish killing them. Thus it benefited us nothing to turn aside to burn or demolish a house, it was quite useless, for, as I have said, they all stood in the water, and between house and house there was a movable bridge, and to cross

¹ The text says "donde me he hallado en guerra," but Bernal Díaz had not been in any wars except wars in America.

by swimming was very dangerous, for on the roofs they had such store of rocks and stones and such defences, that it was certain destruction to risk it. In addition to this, where we did set fire to some houses, a single house took a whole day to burn, and the houses did not catch fire one from the other, as, for one reason, they stood apart with the water between; and, for the other, were provided with flat roofs (azoteas); thus it was useless toil to risk our persons in the attempt, so we went towards the great Cue of their Idols. Then, all of a sudden, more than four thousand Mexicans ascended it, not counting other Companies that were posted on it with long lances and stones and darts, and placed themselves on the defensive, and resisted our ascent for a good while, and neither the towers nor the cannon or crossbows, nor the muskets were of any avail, nor the horsemen, for, although they wished to charge [with] their horses, the whole of the courtyard was paved with very large flagstones, so that the horses lost their foothold, and they [the stones] were so slippery that they [the horses] fell. While from the steps of the lofty Cue they forbade our advance, we had so many enemies both on one side and the other that although our cannon [shots] carried off ten or fifteen of them and we slew many others by sword-thrusts and charges, so many men attacked us that we were not able to ascend the lofty Cue. However with great unanimity we persisted in the attack, and without taking the towers (for they were already destroyed) we made our way to the summit.

Here Cortés showed himself very much of a man, as he always was. Oh! what a fight and what a fierce battle it was that took place; it was a memorable thing to see us all streaming with blood, and covered with wounds and others slain. It pleased our Lord that we reached the place where we used to keep the image of Our Lady, and we did not find it, and it appears, as we came to know,

that the great Montezuma paid devotion to Her, and ordered it [the image] to be preserved in safety.

We set fire to their Idols and a good part of the chamber with the Idols Huichilobos and Tezcatepuca was burned. On that occasion the Tlaxcalans helped us very greatly. After this was accomplished, while some of us were fighting and others kindling the fire, as I have related, oh! to see the priests who were stationed on this great Cue, and the three or four thousand Indians, all men of importance. While we descended, oh! how they made us tumble down six or even ten steps at a time! And so much more there is to tell of the other squadrons posted on the battlements and recesses of the great Cue discharging so many darts and arrows that we could face neither one group of squadrons nor the other. We resolved to return, with much toil and risk to ourselves, to our quarters, our castles being destroyed, all of us wounded and sixteen slain, with the Indians constantly pressing on us and other squadrons on our flanks.

However clearly I may tell all this, I can never [fully] explain it to any one who did not see us. So far, I have not spoken of what the Mexican squadrons did who kept on attacking our quarters while we were marching outside, and the great obstinacy and tenacity they displayed in forcing their way in.

In this battle, we captured two of the chief priests, whom Cortés ordered us to convey with great care.

Many times I have seen among the Mexicans and Tlaxcalans, paintings of this battle, and the ascent that we made of the great Cue, as they look upon it as a very heroic deed. And although in the pictures that they have made of it, they depict all of us as badly wounded and streaming with blood and many of us dead they considered it a great feat, this setting fire to the Cue, when so many warriors were guarding it both on the battle-

ments and recesses, and many more Indians were below on the ground and the Courts were full of them and there were many more on the sides; and with our towers destroyed, how was it possible to scale it?

Let us stop talking about it and I will relate how with great labour we returned to our quarters and if many men were then following us, as many more were in our quarters, for they had already demolished some walls so as to gain an entry, but on our arrival they desisted. Nevertheless, during all the rest of the day they never ceased to discharge darts, stones and arrows, and during the night yells and stones and darts.

Let us leave the great obstinacy and persistency they were always without cessation displaying against our quarters, as I have related, and let me say how that night was passed in dressing wounds and in burying the dead, in preparations for going out to fight the following day, in strengthening and adding parapets to the walls they had pulled down, and to other breaches they had made, and in consulting how and in what way we could fight without suffering such great damage and death, and throughout the discussion we found no remedy at all.

Then I also wish to speak of the maledictions that the followers of Narvaez hurled at Cortés, and the words that they used, cursing him and the country and even Diego Velásquez who had sent them there when they were peacefully settled in their homes in the Island of Cuba, and they were crazy and out of their minds.

Let us go back to our story. It was decided to sue for peace so that we could leave Mexico, and as soon as it was dawn many more squadrons of Mexicans arrived and very effectually surrounded our quarters on all sides, and if they had discharged many stones and arrows before, they came much thicker and with louder howls and whistles on this day, and other squadrons endeavoured to force an entrance

in other parts, and cannon and muskets availed nothing, although we did them damage enough.

When Cortés saw all this, he decided that the great Montezuma should speak to them from the roof and tell them that the war must cease, and that we wished to leave his city. When they went to give this message from Cortés to the great Montezuma, it is reported that he said with great grief, "What more does Malinche want from me? I neither wish to live nor to listen to him, to such a pass has my fate brought me because of him." And he did not wish to come, and it is even reported that he said he neither wished to see nor hear him, nor listen to his false words, promises or lies. Then the Padre de la Merced and Cristóbal de Olid went and spoke to him with much reverence and in very affectionate terms, and Montezuma said, "I believe that I shall not obtain any result towards ending this war, for they have already raised up another Lord and have made up their minds not to let you leave this place alive, therefore I believe that all of you will have to die."

Let us return to the great attacks they made on us; Montezuma was placed by a battlement of the roof with many of us soldiers guarding him, and he began to speak to them [his people], with very affectionate expressions [telling them] to desist from the war, and that we would leave Mexico. Many of the Mexican Chieftains and Captains knew him well and at once ordered their people to be silent and not to discharge darts, stones or arrows, and four of them reached a spot where Montezuma could speak to them, and they to him, and with tears they said to him: "Oh! Señor, and our great Lord, how all your misfortune and injury and that of your children and relations afflicts us, we make known to you that we have already raised one of your kinsmen to be our Lord," and

there he stated his name, that he was called Cuitlahuac,¹ the Lord of Ixtapalapa, (for it was not Guatemoc, he who was Lord soon after,) and moreover they said that the war must be carried through, and that they had vowed to their Idols not to relax it until we were all dead, and that they prayed every day to their Huichilobos and Texcatepuca to guard him free and safe from our power, and that should it end as they desired, they would not fail to hold him in higher regard as their Lord than they did before, and they begged him to forgive them. They had hardly finished this speech when suddenly such a shower of stones and darts was discharged that (our men who were shielding him having neglected their duty [to shield him] for a moment, because they saw how the attack ceased while he spoke to them) he was hit by three stones, one on the head, another on the arm and another on the leg, and although they begged him to have the wounds dressed and to take food, and spoke kind words to him about it, he would not. Indeed, when we least expected it, they came to say that he was dead. Cortés wept for him, and all of us Captains and soldiers, and there was no man among us who knew him and was intimate with him, who did not bemoan him as though he were our father, and it is not to be wondered at, considering how good he was. It was stated that he had reigned for seventeen years and that he was the best king there had ever been in Mexico, and that he had conquered in person, in three wars which he had carried on in the countries he had subjugated. Let us continue.

¹ Coadlabaca in the text.

CHAPTER CXXVII.

When Montezuma was dead Cortés decided to tell the news to his Captains and chieftains who were making war on us, and what else took place about it.

I HAVE already told about the sorrow that we all of us felt about it when we saw that Montezuma was dead. We even thought badly of the Fraile de la Merced because he had not persuaded him to become a Christian, and he gave as an excuse that he did not think that he would die of those wounds, but that he ought to have ordered them to give him something to stupefy him. At the end of much discussion Cortés ordered a priest and a chief from among the prisoners to go and tell the Cacique whom they had chosen for Lord, who was named Cuitlahuac¹, and his Captains, that the great Montezuma was dead, and they had seen him die, and about the manner of his death and the wounds his own people had inflicted on him, and they should say how grieved we all were about it, and that they should bury him as the great king that he was, and they should raise the cousin of Montezuma who was with us, to be king, for the inheritance was his, or one of his (Montezuma's) other sons, and that he whom they had raised to be king was not so by right, and they should negotiate a peace so that we could leave Mexico; and if they did not do so, now that Montezuma was dead, whom we held in respect and for that reason had not destroyed their city, we should sally out to make war on them and burn all their houses and do them much damage. So as to convince them that Montezuma was dead, he ordered six Mexicans who were high chieftains, and the priests whom we held as prisoners, to carry him out

¹ Coadlabaca in the text.

on their shoulders and to hand him [the body] over to the Mexican Captains, and to tell them what Montezuma had commanded at the time of his death, for those who carried him out on their backs were present at his death; and they told Cuiclahuac the whole truth, how his own people killed him with blows from three stones.

* When they beheld him thus dead, we saw that they were in floods of tears and we clearly heard the shrieks and cries of distress that they gave for him, but for all this, the fierce assault they made on us with darts, stones and arrows never ceased, and then they came on us again with greater force and fury, and said to us: "Now for certain you will pay for the death of our King and Lord, and the dishonour to our Idols; and as for the peace you sent to beg for, come out here and we will settle how and in what way it is to be made," and they said many things about this and other matters that I cannot now remember and I will leave them unreported, and [they said] that they had already chosen a good king, and he would not be so faint-hearted as to be deceived with false speeches like their good Montezuma, and as for the burial, we need not trouble about that, but about our own lives, for in two days there would not be one of us left;—so much for the messages we had sent them. With these words [they fell on us] with loud yells and whistles and showers of stones, darts and arrows, while other squadrons were still attempting to set fire to our quarters in many places.

When Cortés and all of us observed this, we agreed that next day we would all of us sally out from our camp and attack in another direction, where there were many houses on dry land, and we would do all the damage we were able and go towards the causeway, and that all the horsemen should break through the squadrons and spear them with their lances or drive them into the water, even though they [the enemy] should kill the horses. This was decided

on in order to find out if by chance, with the damage and slaughter that we should inflict on them, they would abandon their attack and arrange some sort of peace, so that we could go free without more deaths and damage. Although the next day we all bore ourselves very manfully and killed many of the enemy and burned a matter of twenty houses and almost reached dry land, it was all of no use, because of the great damage and deaths and wounds they inflicted on us, and we could not hold a single bridge, for they were all of them half broken down. Many Mexicans charged down on us, and they had set up walls and barricades in places which they thought could be reached by the horses, so that if we had met with many difficulties up to this time, we found much greater ones ahead of us.

Let us leave it here, and go back to say that we determined to get out of Mexico.

It was on a Thursday that we made this expedition and sally with the horsemen, and I remember that Sandoval was there, and Lares the good horseman and Gonzalo Domínguez, Juan Velásquez de Leon and Francisco de Morla and other good horsemen from among our company, and from the company of Narvaez other good horsemen went, but they were frightened and timid as they had never been in wars against the Indians.

CHAPTER CXXVIII.

How we determined to flee from Mexico and what was done about it.

NOW we saw our forces diminishing every day and those of the Mexicans increasing, and many of our men were dead and all the rest wounded, and although we fought like brave men we could not drive back nor even get free

from the many squadrons which attacked us both by day and night, and the powder was giving out, and the same was happening with the food and water, and the great Montezuma being dead, they were unwilling to grant the peace and truce which we had sent to demand of them. In fact we were staring death in the face, and the bridges had been raised. It was [therefore] decided by Cortés and all of us captains and soldiers that we should set out during the night, when we could see that the squadrons of warriors were most off their guard. In order to put them all the more off their guard, that very afternoon we sent to tell them, through one of their priests whom we held prisoner and who was a man of great importance among them and through some other prisoners, that they should let us go in peace within eight days and we would give up to them all the gold; and this [was done] to put them off their guard so that we might get out that night.

In addition to this, there was with us a soldier named Botello, apparently an honest man and a Latin scholar, who had been in Rome, and it was said that he was a magician; others said that he had a familiar spirit, and some called him an Astrologer. This Botello had said four days before, that he found out by his casting of lots or Astrology, that if on that following night we did not leave Mexico, and if we waited there any longer, not one of us would get out alive; and he had even said on other occasions that Cortés would have to suffer many hardships and would be deprived of his position and honour, and would afterwards become a great and magnificent Lord, with great property, and he said many other things. Let us leave Botello, whom I will speak about again later on, and I will relate how the order was given to make a bridge of very strong beams and planks, so that we could carry it with us and place it where the bridges were broken. Four hundred Tlaxcalan Indians and one hundred and fifty

soldiers were told off to carry this bridge and place it in position and guard the passage until the army and all the baggage had crossed. Two hundred Tlaxcalan Indians and fifty soldiers were told off to carry the cannon, and Gonzalo de Sandoval, Diego de Ordás, Francisco de Sauzedo, Francisco de Lugo and a company of one hundred young and active soldiers were selected to go in the van to do the fighting. It was agreed that Cortés himself, Alonzo de Ávila, Cristóbal de Olid, and other Captains should go in the middle and support the party that most needed help in fighting. Pedro de Alvarado and Juan Velásquez de Leon were with the rearguard, and placed in the middle between them [and the preceding section] were two captains and the soldiers of Narvaez, and three hundred Tlaxcalans, and thirty soldiers were told off to take charge of the prisoners and of Doña Marina and Doña Luisa ; by the time this arrangement was made, it was already night.

In order to bring out the gold and divide it up and carry it, Cortés ordered his steward named Cristóbal de Guzman and other soldiers who were his servants to bring out all the gold and jewels and silver, and he gave them many Tlaxcalan Indians for the purpose, and they placed it in the Hall. Then Cortés told the King's officers named Alonzo Dávila and Gonzalo Mejía to take charge of the gold belonging to His Majesty, and he gave them seven wounded and lame horses and one mare, and many friendly Tlaxcalans, more than eighty in number, and they loaded them with parcels of it, as much as they could carry, for it was put up into very broad ingots, as I have already said in the chapter that treats of it, and much gold still remained in the Hall piled up in heaps. Then Cortés called his secretary and the others who were King's Notaries, and said : " Bear witness for me that I can do no more with this gold. We have here in this apartment and Hall over seven hundred thousand pesos in gold, and, as

you have seen, it cannot be weighed nor placed in safety. I now give it up to any of the soldiers who care to take it, otherwise it will be lost among these dogs [of Mexicans].”

When they heard this, many of the soldiers of Narvaez and some of our people loaded themselves with it. I declare that I had no other desire but the desire to save my life, but I did not fail to carry off from some small boxes that were there, four chalchihuites, which are stones very highly prized among the Indians, and I quickly placed them in my bosom under my armour, and, later on, the price of them served me well in healing my wounds and getting me food.

After we had learnt the plans that Cortés had made about the way in which we were to escape that night and get to the bridges, as it was somewhat dark and cloudy and rainy, we began before midnight to bring along the bridge and the baggage, and the horses and mare began their march, and the Tlaxcalans who were laden with the gold. Then the bridge was quickly put in place, and Cortés and the others whom he took with him in the first [detachment], and many of the horsemen, crossed over it. While this was happening, the voices, trumpets, cries and whistles of the Mexicans began to sound and they called out in their language to the people of Tlaltelolco, “Come out at once with your canoes for the Teules are leaving; cut them off so that not one of them may be left alive.” When I least expected it, we saw so many squadrons of warriors bearing down on us, and the lake so crowded with canoes that we could not defend ourselves. Many of our soldiers had already crossed [the bridge] and while we were in this position, a great multitude of Mexicans charged down on us [with the intention of] removing the bridge and wounding and killing our men who were unable to assist each other; and as misfortune is perverse at such times,

one mischance followed another, and as it was raining, two of the horses slipped and fell into the lake. When I and others of Cortés' Company saw that, we got safely to the other side of the bridge, and so many warriors charged on us, that despite all our good fighting, no further use could be made of the bridge, so that the passage or water opening was soon filled up with dead horses, Indian men and women, servants, baggage and boxes.

Fearing that they would not fail to kill us, we thrust ourselves ahead along the causeway, and we met many squadrons armed with long lances waiting for us, and they used abusive words to us, and among them they cried "Oh! villains, are you still alive?" and with the cuts and thrusts we gave them, we got through, although they then wounded six of those who were going along [with me]. Then if there was some sort of plan such as we had agreed upon it was an accursed one; for Cortés and the captains and soldiers who passed first on horseback, so as to save themselves and reach dry land and make sure of their lives, spurred on along the causeway, and they did not fail to attain their object, and the horses with the gold and the Tlaxcalans also got out in safety. I assert that if we had waited, (the horsemen and the soldiers, one for the other,) at the bridges, we should all have been put an end to, and not one of us would have been left alive; the reason was this, that as we went along the causeway, charging the Mexican squadrons, on one side of us was water and on the other azoteas,¹ and the lake was full of canoes so that we could do nothing. Moreover the muskets and crossbows were all left behind at the bridge, and as it was night time, what could we do beyond what we accomplished? which was to charge and give some sword-thrusts to those who tried to lay

¹ The flat roofs of the houses.

hands on us, and to march and get on ahead so as to get off the causeway.

Had it been in the day-time, it would have been far worse, and we who escaped did so only by the Grace of God. To one who saw the hosts of warriors who fell on us that night and the canoes [full] of them coming along to carry off our soldiers, it was terrifying. So we went ahead along the causeway in order to get to the town of Tacuba where Cortés was already stationed with all the Captains. Gonzalo de Sandoval, Cristóbal de Olid and others of those horsemen who had gone on ahead were crying out: "Señor Capitan, let us halt, for they say that we are fleeing and leaving them to die at the bridges; let us go back and help them, if any of them survive"; but not one of them came out or escaped. Cortés' reply was that it was a miracle that any of us escaped. However, he promptly went back with the horsemen and the soldiers who were unwounded, but they did not march far, for Pedro de Alvarado soon met them, badly wounded, holding a spear in his hand, and on foot, for they [the enemy] had already killed his sorrel mare, and he brought with him four soldiers as badly wounded as he was himself, and eight Tlaxcalans, all of them with blood flowing from many wounds.

While Cortés was on the causeway with the rest of the captains, we repaired to the courtyard in Tacuba. Many squadrons had already arrived from Mexico, shouting out orders to Tacuba and to the other town named Azcapotzalco, and they began to hurl darts, stones and arrows [and attack] with their long lances. We made some charges and both attacked [them] and defended ourselves.

Let us go back to Pedro de Alvarado. When Cortés and the other Captains met him in that way, and saw that no more soldiers were coming [along the causeway,] tears sprang to his eyes. Pedro de Alvarado said that Juan Velásquez de Leon lay dead with many other gentlemen



THE TREE OF THE NOCHE TRISTE AT POPOTLA.

Photo by A. P. Maudslay

Tradition says that Cortes rested under this tree and watched the remnant of his followers pass by after their escape from the causeway

both of our own company and that of Narvaez, and that more than eighty of them were at the bridge; that he and the four soldiers whom he brought with him, after their horses had been killed, crossed the bridge in great peril, over the dead bodies, horses and boxes with which that passage at the bridge was [choked]. Moreover he said that all the bridges and causeways were crowded with warriors. At the bridge of sorrow, which they afterwards called "Alvarados' leap," I assert that at the time not a single soldier stopped to see if he leaped much or little, for we could hardly save our own lives, as we were in great danger of death on account of the multitude of Mexicans charging down on us. All that Gomara says on this matter is nonsense, for as to his wishing to leap and hold himself up with his lance, the water was very deep and he could not have touched the ground with it, and, in addition to this, the bridge and the opening was very wide and high. He would not have been able to save himself had he been ever so much more active, neither on his lance nor in any other way (and one can clearly see that now), for the water was so deep at that time, and the walls were so high where the beams of the bridge were [placed] and the opening was so wide. I never heard of this leap of Alvarado until after Mexico was captured, and it was in some satirical verses¹ made by a certain Gonzalo de Ocampo, which, as they were somewhat nasty, I will not fully quote here, except that he says, "Thou shouldst remember the leap that thou tookest from the bridge"; but I will not dwell on this subject.

Let us go on and I will relate how, when we were waiting in Tabuca, many Mexican warriors came together from all those towns and they killed three of our soldiers, so we agreed to get out of that town as quickly as we

¹ Nibelos in the text, probably for *libelos*.

could, and five Tlaxcalan Indians, who found out a way towards Tlaxcala without following the [main] road, guided us with great precaution until we reached some small houses placed on a hill, and near to them a Cue or Oratory [built] like a fort, where we halted.

I wish to go back to state that as we marched along we were followed by the Mexicans who hurled arrows and darts at us and stones from their slings, and the way in which they surrounded us and continually attacked us, was terrifying, as I have already said many times and am tired of repeating it, but my readers must not consider me prolix, because every time or at every short interval that they pressed on us and wounded us and attacked us fiercely, I feel bound to turn aside and speak of the squadrons which followed us and killed many of us.

Let us give up calling so much to mind, and relate how we defended ourselves in that Cue and fortress, where we lodged and attended to the wounded and made many fires, but as for anything to eat, there was no thought of it. At that Cue or Oratory, after the great city of Mexico was captured, we built a church, which is called "Nuestra Señora de los Remedios," and is very much visited, and many of the inhabitants and ladies from Mexico now go there on pilgrimages and to hold *novenas*.¹

Let us leave this and say that it was pitiable to see our wounds being dressed and bound up with cotton cloths, and as they were chilled and swollen they were [very] painful. However what was more to be wept over was [the loss of] the gentlemen and brave soldiers who were missing, namely, Juan Velásquez de Leon, Francisco de Sauzedo, Francisco de Morla, Lares the good horseman and many others of us followers of Cortés. I name these few only because it would be a long

¹ *Novenas*: religious exercises extending over nine days.



THE CHURCH OF NUESTRA SEÑORA DE LOS REMEDIOS,
Built on the site of the Teocalli where the Spaniards halted after the Noche Trieste.

Photo by C. E. Waite.

business to write the names of the great number of our companions who were missing. Of the followers of Narvaez, the greater number were left at the bridges weighed down with gold.

I will speak now of Botello the Astrologer: his astrology availed him nothing, for he too died there with his horse, and I will go on to say that after we got into safety, there were found in the box of this Botello some papers like a book, with symbols, lines, remarks and signs, and it was said in them: "Am I to die here in this sad war in the power of these dogs of Indians?" and it said among other lines and symbols further on, "Thou wilt not die"; and it went on to say in other symbols, lines, and remarks, "Shall I die?" and the other line replied, "Thou shalt not die." It said in another place, "Will they also kill my horse?" and it said further on, "Yes, they will kill it." In a similar manner these papers, which were like a small book, contained further ciphered [notes] like fortune telling, one sentence answering the other. There was also found in the box a thing like the genitals of a man, half a span long, made of leather, in appearance neither more nor less than a man's genitals, and it had inside some flock wool from a shearer.

Let us go on to say how there were left dead at the bridges the sons and daughters of Montezuma as well the prisoners we were bringing with us, also Cacamatzin the Lord of Texcoco and other kings of provinces. Let us stop relating all these hardships and say how we were thinking of what we had in front of us, for we were all wounded, and only twenty-three horses escaped; then of the cannon and artillery and powder, we saved nothing; the crossbows were few in number and we promptly mended their cords and made arrows, but the worst of all was that we did not know what we should find the disposition of our friends the Tlaxcalans would be towards

us. In addition to this, always surrounded by Mexicans who fell on us with yells, darts and arrows and slings, we determined to get out of that place at midnight with the Tlaxcalans in front as guides, taking every precaution. We marched with the wounded in the middle and the lame [supported] with staffs, and some, who were very bad and could not walk, on the croups of the horses that were lame and were not fit for fighting. Those horsemen who were not wounded went in front or were divided some on one side, some on the other, and [marching] in this manner all of us who were most free from wounds kept our faces towards the enemy. The wounded Tlaxcalans went in the body of our squadron and the rest of them who were [sufficiently] sound faced [the enemy] in company with us. The Mexicans were always harassing us with loud cries, yells and whistles, shouting out, "You are going where not one of you will be left alive," and we did not understand why they said so, but it will be seen later on. But I have forgotten to write down how happy we were to see Doña Marina still alive, and Doña Luisa the daughter of Xicotenga, whose escape at the bridges was due to some Tlaxcalans, and also a woman named Maria de Estrada, who was the only Spanish woman in Mexico. Those who escaped and got away first from the bridges were some sons of Xicotenga, the brothers of Doña Luisa. Most of our servants who had been given to us in Tlaxcala and in the city of Mexico itself were left behind dead.

Let me go on to say how on that day we reached some farms and huts belonging to a large town named Cuautitlan,¹ a town that after the capture of Mexico belonged to Alonso de Ávila, and although they yelled and shouted at us and hurled stones, darts and arrows, we bore up against it all. Thence we went through some farms and hamlets with the Mexicans always in pursuit of us, and as many of them

¹ Gualtitan in the text.

had got together, they endeavoured to kill us and began to surround us, and hurled many stones with their slings and javelins and arrows, and with their broadswords they killed two of our soldiers in a bad pass, and they also killed a horse and wounded many of our men, and we also with cut and thrust killed some of them, and the horsemen did the same. We slept in those houses and we ate the horse they had killed, and the next day very early in the morning we began our march, with the same and even greater precautions than we observed before, half of the horsemen always going ahead. On a plain a little more than a league further on, (when we began to think that we could march in safety,) our scouts, who were on the look out, returned to say that the fields were full of Mexican warriors waiting for us. When we heard this we were indeed alarmed but not so as to be faint-hearted or to fail to meet them and fight to the death. There we halted for a short time and orders were given how the horsemen were to charge and return at a hand gallop, and were not to stop to spear [the enemy] but to keep their lances aimed at their faces until they broke up their squadrons; and that all the soldiers, in the thrusts they gave, should pass [their swords] through the bodies [of their opponents], and that we should act in such a way as to avenge thoroughly the deaths and wounds of our companions, so that if God willed it we should escape with our lives.

After commending ourselves to God and the Holy Mary, full of courage, and calling on the name of Señor Santiago, as soon as we saw that the enemy began to surround us, and that the horsemen, keeping in parties of five, broke through their ranks, we all of us [charged] at the same time.

Oh! what a sight it was to see this fearful and destructive battle, how we moved all mixed up with them foot to foot, and the cuts and thrusts we gave them, and with what fury the dogs fought, and what wounds and

deaths they inflicted on us with their lances and macanas and two-handed swords. Then, as the ground was level [to see] how the horsemen speared them as they chose, charging and returning, and although both they and their horses were wounded, they never stopped fighting like very brave men. As for all of us who had no horses, it seemed as if we all put on double strength, for although we were wounded and again received other wounds, we did not trouble to bind them up so as not to halt to do so, for there was not time, but with great spirit we closed with the enemy so as to give them sword thrusts. I wish to tell about Cortés and Cristóbal de Olid, Gonzalo de Sandoval, Gonzalo Domínguez and a Juan de Salamanca who although badly wounded rode on one side and the other, breaking through the squadrons ; and about the words that Cortés said to those who were in the thick of the enemy, that the cuts and thrusts that we gave should be [aimed at] distinguished chieftains, for they all of them bore great golden plumes and rich arms and devices. Then to see how the valiant and spirited Sandoval encouraged us and cried : " Now, gentlemen, this is the day when we are bound to be victorious ; have trust in God and we shall come out of this alive for some good purpose." I must diverge to say that they killed and wounded a great number of our soldiers, but let us leave that and return to Cortés and Cristóbal de Olid and Sandoval and Gonzalo Domínguez and the other horsemen whom I do not name here, and Juan de Salamanca. All of us soldiers greatly inspired Cortés to fight, and our Lord Jesus Christ and Our Lady the Virgin Santa Maria encouraged us, and the Señor Santiago certainly aided us. It pleased God that Cortés and the Captains whom I have already named who went in his Company reached the place where the Captain General of the Mexicans was marching with his banner displayed, and with rich golden

armour and great gold and silver plumes. When Cortés saw him with many other Mexican Chieftains all wearing great plumes, he said to Gonzalo de Sandoval and Cristóbal de Olid and Gonzalo Domínguez and the other Captains : " Now, Señores, let us break through them and leave none of them unwounded "; and commending themselves to God, Cortés, Cristóbal de Olid, Sandoval, Alonzo de Ávila, and the other horsemen charged, and Cortés struck his horse against the Mexican Captain, which made him drop his banner, and the rest of our Captains succeeded in breaking through the squadron which consisted of many Indians following the Captain who carried the banner, who nevertheless had not fallen at the shock that Cortés had given him, and it was Juan de Salamanca, who rode with Cortés on a good piebald mare, who gave him a lance thrust and took from him the rich plume that he wore, and afterwards gave it to Cortés, saying, that as it was he who first met him and made him lower his banner and deprived his followers of the courage to fight, that the plume belonged to him (Cortés). However, three years afterwards, the King gave it to Salamanca as his coat of arms, and his descendants bear it on their tabards.

Let us go back to the battle. It pleased Our Lord that when that Captain who carried the Mexican banner was dead, (and many others were killed there,) their attack slackened, and all the horsemen followed them and we felt neither hunger nor thirst, and it seemed as though we had neither suffered nor passed through any evil or hardship, as we followed up our victory killing and wounding. Then our friends the Tlaxcalans were very lions, and with their swords and broadswords which they there captured [from the enemy] behaved very well and valiantly.¹ When the horsemen returned from following up the victory we all

¹ Blotted out in the original : " Maravillas " (did wonders).—G.G.

gave many thanks to God for having escaped from such a great multitude of people, for there had never been seen or found throughout the Indies such a great number of warriors together in any battle that was fought, for there was present there the flower of Mexico and Texcoco and all the towns around the lake, and others in the neighbourhood, and the people of Otumba and Tepetexcoco and Saltocan, who all came in the belief that this time not a trace of us would be left. Then what rich armour they wore, with so much gold and plumes and devices, and nearly all of them were captains and chieftains. Near the spot where this hard-fought and celebrated battle took place, and where one can say God spared our lives, there stands a town named Otumba. The Mexicans and Tlaxcalans have this battle very well painted and portrayed in carvings, as well as the many other battles that we fought with the Mexicans up to the time when we captured Mexico.

Interested readers who read this will notice that I wish here to call to mind, that when we went to the assistance of Pedro de Alvarado in Mexico, we numbered in all more than thirteen hundred soldiers, counting the horsemen who numbered ninety-seven, and eighty crossbowmen and as many more musketeers, and there were more than two thousand Tlaxcalans, and we brought in with us many cannon, and our entry into Mexico was on the day of Señor San Juan de Junio¹ in the year fifteen hundred and twenty, and our escape was on the tenth of the month of July of the same year, and this celebrated battle of Otumba on the fourteenth of the month of July.

Let me say, now that we have already escaped from our perils which I have already described, that I wish to give another account of how many of us they killed both in

¹ Midsummer Day, 24th June.

Mexico as well as on the bridges and causeways, and all the encounters including this one at Otumba, and those who were killed on the road. I assert that within a matter of five days over eight hundred and sixty soldiers were killed and sacrificed, as well as seventy-two who were killed in a town named Tustepec, together with five Spanish women (those who were killed at Tustepec belonged to the company of Narvaez), and over a thousand¹ Tlaxcalans were slain. I also wish to state how at that time they killed Juan de Alcántara the elder, with three other settlers from Villa Rica who had come [to Tlaxcala] for the share of the gold which fell to their lot, about which I have made a statement in the chapter that treats of the subject, so they lost the gold as well as their lives; and if we come to consider it, we all of us usually had bad luck about the share of gold that was given to us. If many more of the followers of Narvaez than those of Cortés died at the bridges, it was because they went forth laden with gold, and owing to its weight they could neither escape nor swim.

Let us stop talking about these matters and how we already went along very cheerfully, eating some gourds that they call *Ayotes*, and we marched along, eating as we went, towards Tlaxcala. The Mexican squadrons did not dare to assemble and sally out from the small towns, although they still shouted at us in places where we could not master them, and hurled many stones at us from slings and javelins and arrows, until we went to some other farms and a small town where there was a good Cue and strong house where we defended ourselves that night and dressed our wounds and got some rest. Although squadrons of Mexicans still followed us they did not dare to come up to us, and those who did come were as though they said "There you go out of our country."

¹ Blotted out in the original: "and five hundred."—G. G.

From that small town and house where we slept, the hills over against Tlaxcala could be seen, and when we saw them we were as delighted as though they had been our own homes. But how could we know for certain that they were loyal to us or what their disposition was, or what had happened to those who were settled at Villa Rica, whether they were alive or dead? Cortés said to us, that although we were few in number, and there were only four hundred and forty of us left with twenty horses and twelve cross-bowmen and seven musketeers, and we had no powder and were all wounded, lame and maimed, we could see very clearly how our Lord Jesus Christ had been pleased to spare our lives, and for that we should always give Him great thanks and honour. Moreover, we had come again to be reduced to the number and strength of the soldiers who accompanied him the first time we entered Mexico, [namely] four hundred soldiers. He begged us not to give annoyance to the people in Tlaxcala, and not to take anything from them, and this he explained to the followers of Narvaez, for they were not used to obey their Captains in the wars as we were. Moreover, he said he trusted in God that we should find them [the Tlaxcalans] true and very loyal, and that if it were otherwise, which God forbend, we must turn aside the blows [of fate?] with stout hearts and strong arms, and for this we must be well prepared.

With our scouts ahead of us, we reached a spring on the hillside where there were some walls and defences [made in] past times, and our friends the Tlaxcalans said that this was the boundary between them and the Mexicans, and, in welcome tranquillity after the misery we had gone through, we halted to wash and to eat. Then we soon resumed our march and went to a Tlaxcalan town named Hueyotlipan¹ where they received us and gave us to eat,

¹ Guaolipar in the text.

but not much, unless we paid them with some small pieces of gold and chalchihuites which some of us carried with us; they gave us nothing without payment. There we remained one day resting and curing our wounds and we also attended to the horses. Then as soon as they heard the news at the Capital of Tlaxcala, Mase Escasi and Xicotenga the elder, and Chichimecatecle and many other Caciques and Chieftains and nearly all the inhabitants of Huexotzingo promptly came to us. When they reached the town where we were [camped] they came to embrace Cortés and all of us captains and soldiers, some of them weeping, especially Mase Escasi, Xicotenga, and Chichimecatecle, and Tapaneca, and they said to Cortés: "Oh! Malinche, Malinche! How grieved we are at your misfortunes and those of all your brothers, and at the number of our own people who have been killed with yours. We have told you so many times not to put trust in the Mexican people, for one day or the other they were sure to attack you, but you would not believe us. Now it has come to pass, and no more can be done at present than to tend you and give you to eat; rest yourselves for you are at home, and we will soon go to our town where we will find you quarters. Do not think, Malinche, that it is a small thing you have done to escape with your lives from that impregnable city and its bridges, and I tell you that if we formerly looked upon you as very brave, we now think you much more valiant; and although many Indian women in our towns will bewail the deaths of their sons, husbands, brothers and kinsmen, do not trouble yourself about that. Much do you owe to your Gods who have brought you here and delivered you from such a multitude of warriors who were awaiting you at Otumba. For four days I had known that they were waiting for you to slay you. I wanted to go in search of you with thirty thousand of our own warriors, but I could not start

because they were not assembled and men were out collecting them."

Cortés and all our Captains and soldiers embraced them and told them that we thanked them, and Cortés gave to all the chieftains golden jewels and [precious] stones, and as every soldier had escaped with as much as he could [carry] some of us gave [presents] to our acquaintances from what we possessed. Then what rejoicing and happiness they showed when they saw that Doña Luisa and Doña Marina were saved, and what weeping and sorrow for the other Indians who did not come but were left behind dead. Especially did Mase Escasi weep for his daughter Doña Elvira and the death of Juan Velásquez de Leon to whom he had given her.

In this way we went to the Capital of Tlaxcala with all the Caciques, and Cortés lodged in the houses of Mase Escasi, and Xicotenga gave his quarters to Pedro de Alvarado, and there we tended our wounds and began to recover our strength, but, nevertheless, four soldiers died of their wounds and some other soldiers failed to recover.

I will leave off here, and relate what else happened to us.

CHAPTER CXXIX.

How we went to the Capital and largest town in Tlaxcala, and what happened to us there.

WE stayed one day in the small town of Hueyotlipan and the Caciques of Tlaxcala whom I have named made us those overtures which are worthy of remembrance and of reward as they were made at such a critical time; and after we had gone to the Capital town of Tlaxcala, and they had assigned us quarters as I have said, it seems that Cortés asked for the gold which had been sent there,

which amounted to forty thousand dollars, which gold was the share of the settlers who remained in Villa Rica. Mase Escasi and Xicotenga the elder and one of our soldiers who had remained ill in Tlaxcala and had not been in the affair at Mexico when we were defeated, said that Juan de Alcántara and two other settlers had come from Villa Rica and had carried off all the gold, for they brought letters from Cortés to say that it was to be given to them, and this letter the soldier had produced and left in the possession of Mase Escasi when the gold was given to him. When they were asked how and at what time the gold was taken, and when it was understood from a count of days that it was at the time when the Mexicans were fighting us, we at once realised that they must have killed the Spaniards on the road and have seized their gold. And Cortés was very much troubled about it.¹ We were also uneasy at not knowing about the people at Villa Rica, lest some disaster had happened to them, so Cortés at once wrote to them and sent the letter by three Tlaxcalans, and told them about the great dangers to which we had been exposed in Mexico, and how and in what way we had escaped with our lives, but he did not tell them how many of us were missing, and he admonished them always to be on the alert and to keep a good look out, and [said] that if there were any soldiers among them sound in health, they should be sent to him, and that they should keep a good guard over Narvaez, and [he asked them] whether they had any powder or crossbows, because he wished to return and scour the neighbourhood of Mexico. He also wrote to the officer named Caballero whom he had left there as Captain of the Sea, that he should keep watch that neither Narvaez nor any of the ships should leave for

¹ Blotted out in the original: "because he intended to send to the Island of Jamaica for horses and powder and crossbows."—G. G.

Cuba, and if he considered the two ships belonging to Narvaez which were in the harbour to be unfit for sea that he should destroy them and send their crews to him with all the arms they possessed.

The messengers went and returned post haste, and brought letters to say that there had been no warfare, and that as neither Juan Alcántara nor the other two settlers whom they had sent for the gold had returned, they must have been killed on the road, that they knew all about the war the Mexicans had made on us, for the fat Cacique of Cempoala had told them about it. The Admiral of the sea named Caballero also wrote and said he would do what Cortés ordered him, that one of the ships was in good condition and he would destroy the other, and would send the men, but there were very few sailors, for they had sickened and died; that he was writing his reply to the letter at once, and would soon despatch the succour they were sending from Villa Rica, numbering seven in all, including four sailors who came from the town. Their Captain was a soldier named Lencero (who owned the Inn which is now called Lencero's), and when they arrived at Tlaxcala, as they arrived thin and ill, we often for our own diversion and to make fun of them spoke of "Lencero's Help," for of the seven that came five had liver complaint and were covered with boils and the other two were swelled out with great bellies.

Let us leave the jokes and I will tell what happened to us there in Tlaxcala with Xicotenga the younger and his ill will,—he who had been Captain of all Tlaxcala when they were fighting us, often mentioned by me in the chapter that treats of that subject. The truth is that when it became known in that City that we were fleeing from Mexico, and that the Mexicans had killed a great number of soldiers, both our own men and the Tlaxcalan Indians who had left Tlaxcala in our company, and that we were

coming for aid and shelter to that province, Xicotenga the younger went about appealing to all his friends and relations and to others who he thought were on his side, and said to them that on the night or day when they might be best prepared for it they should kill us and make friends with the Lord of Mexico, who by that time had been elected King, who was named Cuiclahuac,¹ and that in addition to this they should rob us of the cloaks and cloth which we had left in Tlaxcala to be taken care of, and the gold that we were now bringing from Mexico, and they would all become rich with the spoil.

This came to the ears of the elder Xicotenga, his father, who quarrelled with him and told him that no such thought should have entered his head, that it was disgraceful, and that if Mase Escasi and Chichimecatecle and the other lords of Tlaxcala should come to hear of it they would possibly slay him and those who were in league with him ; but much as his father rebuked him he paid no heed nor did it stop him from talking about and working at his evil purpose. This reached the ears of Chichimecatecle, who was the mortal enemy of Xicotenga the younger, and he told it to Mase Escasi and they determined to enter into consultation and agreement about it, and they called together Xicotenga the elder and the chiefs of Huexotzingo, and ordered Xicotenga the younger to be brought prisoner before them. Then Mase Escasi made a speech to them all and asked if they could remember or had heard it said that during the last hundred years there had ever been throughout Tlaxcala such prosperity and riches as there had been since the Teules had arrived in their country, or if in any of their provinces they had ever been so well provided for. For they possessed much cotton cloth and gold and they ate salt, and that wherever the

Coadlavaca in the text.

Tlaxcalans went with the Teules, honour was paid to them out of respect to the Teules, and although many of them had now been killed in Mexico, they should bear in mind what their ancestors had said to them many years ago, that from where the sun rises there would come men who would rule over them. Why then was Xicotenga now going about with these treasons and infamies, scheming to make war on us and kill us? It was evilly done, and there was no excuse to be made for the knavery and mischief which he always had hidden in his breast, and now at the very moment when he saw us coming back defeated, when he ought to help us to recover ourselves, so as to turn again upon his enemies the towns of Mexico, he wished to carry out this treachery.

To these words that Mase Escasi and his father Xicotenga the elder said to him, Xicotenga the younger replied, that what he had said about making peace with the Mexicans was a very wise decision, and he said other things that they could not tolerate. Then Mase Escasi and Chichimecatecle and the old man, his father, blind as he was, arose and took Xicotenga the younger by the collar and by his mantle and tore it and roughly pushing him and with reproachful words they cast him down the steps, with his mantle all torn, and had it not been for his father they would have slain him. The others who had been in his confidence were made prisoners. As we were all taking refuge there, and it was not the time to punish him, Cortés said nothing more about it.

I have called this to mind so that it may be seen how loyal and good were these people of Tlaxcala, and how much we are indebted to them, and especially to the good Xicotenga the elder, who is said to have ordered his son to be killed when he knew of his plots and treason.

Let us leave this, and I will relate how we remained twenty-two days in that town curing our wounds and

recovering. Then Cortés determined that we should go to the province of Tepeaca which was near by, for there and in another town close to Tepeaca named Cachula they had slain many of our soldiers and those of Narvaez who had come to Mexico. When Cortés told this to our Captains, and they were preparing the soldiers of Narvaez to go to the war, for these men were not accustomed to fighting, and having escaped from the defeat at Mexico and at the bridges, and from the battle of Otumba, could hardly await the time for returning to the Island of Cuba, to their Indians, and their gold mines, they cursed Cortés and his conquests. Especially was this the case with Andrés de Duero, the partner of Cortés, for interested readers will have already understood, as I have twice described it in former chapters, how and in what way the partnership was formed. They cursed the gold which he [Cortés] had given to Duero and to the other Captains, all of which had been lost at the bridges, and as they had seen the fierce attacks the enemy made on us, they were very well content to have escaped with their lives. So they agreed to tell Cortés that they did not want to go to Tepeaca nor to any fighting, but wished to go back to their homes, and that they had already lost enough by leaving Cuba. Cortés talked the matter over with them very quietly and kindly, thinking to persuade them to go with us on the expedition to Tepeaca, but for all his speeches and reproaches they would not go. When they saw that words had no effect on Cortés, they drew up a formal requisition before a King's Notary demanding that he should go at once to Villa Rica and abandon the war, giving as a reason that we had neither horses nor muskets, crossbows nor powder, nor thread with which to make [crossbow] strings, nor stores, that we were all wounded, and out of all our company and the soldiers of Narvaez there only survived four hundred and forty, and that the Mexicans would hold

the strongholds, sierras and passes against us, and that if we delayed any longer the ships would be eaten by worms¹, and many other things were stated in this petition.

When they had presented the requisition and read it to Cortés he replied to the many words it contained with far more numerous contradictions, besides most of us who had come over with Cortés, told him not to give permission to any of the followers of Narvaez nor to any one else to return to Cuba, but that we should all endeavour to serve God and the King, for that was the right thing to do and not to return to Cuba.

After Cortés had given his answer to the requisition, the men who were pressing their demands upon him saw that many of us, who stood firmly by Cortés, would put a stop to the importunity with which they expressed their demands merely by insisting that it would be neither to the service of God nor His Majesty to desert their captain during war time. At the end of much discussion they gave their obedience so far as to go with us on any expeditions that might be undertaken, but it was on condition that Cortés promised that when an opportunity should occur he would allow them to return to the Island of Cuba, but not even with this did they leave off murmuring against him and his conquest, which had cost them so dearly in leaving their homes and their ease, and coming to intrude where even their lives were not safe. Moreover they said that if we entered on another war with the forces of Mexico, which sooner or later would be unavoidable, they believed and considered it certain that we could not hold our own against them in battle, as they had seen in the affair of Mexico and the bridges, and in the famous battle of Otumba. Moreover they said that

¹ Worms : In the text the word is "broma," which is the shipworm, *Teredo navalis*.

our Cortés only aimed to keep the command and always be a lord, and we bore with him, and were his servants, because we had nothing to lose but our lives, and they said many other tactless things, but we none of us took any notice considering the circumstances in which they spoke. But not many months passed before Cortés refused them leave to return to their homes and the Island of Cuba which I will relate at the proper time and place.

Let us omit repetitions and speak of what the historian Gomara says, although I am very tired of pointing out the nonsense which he says was given him as information, for things did not happen as he writes. So as not to be detained at every chapter by going over it all again and calling to mind how and in what way it happened, I have avoided writing about (his errors), but in this matter of the requisition which he says was presented to Cortés, he does not say who those were who made it, whether they were our people or the followers of Narvaez, and it seems to me that he does this to exalt Cortés and to debase us, who stood by him. Let it be known that the true "conquistadores" when we saw this written, knew for certain that gold and other gifts must have been given to Gomara in order that he should write in this way, for in all the battles and encounters it was we who supported Cortés, and now this chronicler humbles us by what he says. Gomara also states that Cortés, in his reply to this same requisition said, so as to encourage and animate us, that he would send to summon Juan Velásquez de Leon and Diego de Ordás, one of whom he said was settling at Panuco with three hundred soldiers, and the other was making a settlement at Coatzacoalcos with as many more soldiers. There is no truth in what he says, for as soon as we set out for Mexico to the assistance of Alvarado, the arrangements which had been made for Juan Velásquez to go to Panuco, and for Diego de Ordás to Coatzacoalcos were cancelled, as I have

extensively explained in a former chapter where I have told all about it. Those two Captains went to Mexico with us to succour Pedro de Alvarado, and in the rout Juan Velásquez de Leon was left dead at the bridge, and Diego de Ordás came out of it with three severe wounds that were given him in Mexico, and I have already related how and when it happened. If therefore the Chronicler Gomara's success in telling the truth about what happened were as excellent as the style in which he writes, it would be a very good thing. Moreover I notice that he says concerning the battle of Otumba, that if it had not been for Cortés himself we should all have been defeated, and that he alone won the battle by making (as he did) the charge against the Chieftain who carried the standard and emblem of Mexico. I have already said and will repeat it again that Cortés deserves all honour as a valiant Captain, but above all we must give thanks to God who in His great Mercy always helped us and supported Cortés by giving him such brave and valiant Captains and brave soldiers as he had with him ; for we gave him his mettle and broke up the squadrons and supported him, so that with our help and that of our Captains he might fight in the way that we fought, as I have already related in the chapters which treat of the subject.

For all the Captains whom I have named always kept in company with Cortés, and I will here name them again, they were Cristóbal de Olid, Gonzalo de Sandoval, Francisco de Morla, Luis Marin, Francisco de Lugo, Gonzalo Domínguez and other good and valiant soldiers who did not own horses, for originally sixteen horses and mares were all that came from the Island of Cuba with Cortés, and they no longer existed.

And as to what Gomara says in his history, that it was Cortés himself alone who won the battle of Otumba, why did he not relate the heroic deeds that we his captains and

valiant soldiers performed in that battle? For these reasons we have obtained the certainty that, so as to induce him to praise Cortés alone, they must have greased his palms, for he makes no mention of us; if not, let inquiry be made about that very valiant soldier named Cristóbal de Olea, how many times he came to the assistance of Cortés and saved his life up to the time of our return to Mexico, when he and many other soldiers lost their lives at the bridge in order to save that of Cortés. I had forgotten the other occasion when he saved Cortés' life in the affair at Zochimilco and he himself was badly wounded, and that my statement may be clearly understood, I will add that there was both a Cristóbal de Olea and a Cristóbal de Olid.

Then as to what the historian says about the blow that Cortés gave the Mexican captain with his horse, which made him drop the banner; it is true enough, but I have already said it was Juan de Salamanca, a native of the town of Ontiveros (who, after Mexico was conquered, became chief Alcalde of Coatzacoalcos), who gave him the lance thrust that slew him, and took from him the rich plumes and the standard that he was carrying, and presented it to Cortés, and some time afterwards His Majesty granted it to Salamanca as his coat of arms.

I have called this to mind here, not to avoid praising our Captain Hernando Cortés and holding him in the highest esteem, for he deserves all honour and glory for all the battles and conquests until we gained this New Spain, such as we are used to bestow on the most famous Captains in Spain, and such triumphs as the Romans accorded to Pompey and Julius Cæsar and the Scipios, and our Cortés is more worthy of praise than these Romans. This same historian Gomara also says that Cortés secretly ordered Xicotenga the younger to be killed in Tlaxcala for the treachery that he was plotting in order to kill us, as I

have already related, but it did not happen as he says it did, for when he ordered him to be hanged it was in a town near to Texcoco as I shall relate further on. This historian also says that so many thousands of Indians opposed us in our expeditions; there is neither calculation nor sense in the great numbers that he gives; he also speaks of the cities and towns and villages where there were so many thousands of houses, when there was not the fifth part of them; and if one were to add up all that he puts in his history it would come to more millions of men than the universe contains; he does not mind whether he says eight thousand or eighty thousand, and he then brags, thinking that his history will be very pleasing to those who hear it, and does not relate what really took place. Let the interested reader observe the distance between the truth in this tale of mine and the falsehood¹ by comparing events word by word, and let him ignore eloquence and ornate language which is evidently pleasanter than my coarse [manner], but the truth as it is written can support even my bad wording and [lack of] polished eloquence.

Let us leave this recounting and remembering of evident mistakes, and enough of the stories he has written, although they have given occasion for Dr. Illescas and Pablo Jovio to follow his words, for I am more bound to tell the truth about all that happened than to flatter. Let us go back to our story, and I will relate how we decided to go to Tepeaca, and what happened on the expedition.

¹ Blotted out in the original: "of his history."





BOOK IX.

THE HALT AT TEPEACA.

CHAPTER CXXX.

How we went to the province of Tepeaca, and what we did there, and other things that happened.



S Cortés had asked the Caciques of Tlaxcala (whose names have already been given) for five thousand warriors, in order to overrun and chastise the towns where Spaniards had been killed, namely Tepeaca and Quecholac¹ and Tecamachalco, distant from Tlax-

cala six or seven leagues, they got ready four thousand Indians, with the greatest willingness; for if we had a great desire to go to those towns, Mase Escasi and Xicotenga the elder had a still stronger desire to supply them [the Indian auxiliaries], because they [the people of Tepeaca, etc.] had come to rob some of their farms, and they were willing to send men against them. The explanation was as follows :—When the Mexicans turned us out of Mexico (in the way I have described in former chapters which give an account of it), and knew that we had taken shelter

¹ Cachula in the text.

in Tlaxcala, they took it for certain, that as soon as we were well, we would come with all the forces of Tlaxcala to overrun the lands of the towns which lay nearest the Tlaxcalan boundary, and for this reason they sent to all the provinces where they thought we might go, many squadrons of Mexicans to keep guard and establish garrisons, and the largest garrison of all was posted in Tepeaca. Mase Escasi and Xicotenga were aware of this, and even stood in fear of them. Then as we were all ready, we began our march. On that expedition we took neither artillery nor muskets, for all had been lost at the bridges, and for the few that were saved, we had no powder. We had with us seventeen horses and six crossbows, and four hundred and twenty soldiers, most of them armed with sword and shield, and about two¹ thousand friends from Tlaxcala and food for one day, for the country through which we were marching was thickly peopled and well supplied with maize and fowls and the dogs of the country. As was usual with us, we kept our scouts well in advance, and marching in good order, we camped that night about three leagues from Tepeaca. They had already carried off all that was movable from the farms and hamlets through which we passed, for they had heard the news that we were coming to their town. So that nothing should be done without justification, and everything in good order, Cortés sent a message by six Indians of the town of Tepeaca and four of their women, whom we captured for that very purpose in those farms, to say that we were coming to their town to inquire and find out who, and how many, were concerned in the death of more than sixteen Spaniards slain without cause when they were on their way to Mexico; and that we had also come to find out why they had again many squadrons of

¹ Blotted out in the original : "six four."—G. G.


Mexicans with them, in whose company they had been attacking and robbing some farms of the Tlaxcalans who were our allies, and he begged them at once to come in peaceably to where we were camped so as to make friends with us, and to turn the Mexicans out of their town, for if they did not do so we would come against them as rebels and murderers and highway robbers, and punish them by blood and fire, and give them into slavery. So those six Indians and four women from this same town set out, and the threatening messages we sent by them were replied to by much fiercer ones that were brought back to us by the same six Indians and two Mexicans who accompanied them, for they knew well enough that we would do no harm to any messengers who were sent to us, on the contrary we would give them beads so as to attract them. With these [replies] sent by the people of Tepeaca, came the boastful words uttered by the Mexican Captains, because they had been victorious in the battle of the bridges in Mexico. Cortés ordered each messenger to be given a mantle, and he again requested the people to come and see him and to have no fear, for the Spaniards whom they had already killed, could not be brought to life again ; moreover, let them come to him peaceably, and he would forgive them for the deaths that they had caused. He also wrote them a letter on the subject, although he knew that they could not understand it, but when they saw paper from Castile, they knew for certain that it contained some orders. Cortés also begged the two Mexicans who came with the messengers from Tepeaca to go back and bring him a reply. So they went back and the reply they brought was that we should advance no further, but should return whence we had come, otherwise they meant to have a grand gorging on our bodies the next day, better than they had had in Mexico at the Bridges and at Otumba. When Cortés heard this, he repeated it to our captains and

soldiers, and it was agreed that a statement should be drawn up before a Notary which would certify all that had happened, and would give into slavery all the allies of Mexico who had killed Spaniards, because, after they had given their fealty to His Majesty, they had revolted and killed over eight hundred and seventy of our people and sixty horses, and the [people from the] other towns, and because they were highway robbers and murderers of men. When this decree had been drawn up, Cortés sent to let them know about it, threatening them, and demanding peace. They replied that if we did not at once go back, they would come out and kill us, and they got ready to do so, and we did the same.

The next day we had a fine battle with the Mexicans and Tepeacans, on a plain, and as the field of battle was among maize and maguey plantations, although the Mexicans fought fiercely, they were soon routed by those on horseback, and those who had no horses were not behindhand. Then to see with what spirit our Tlaxcalan allies attacked them and followed them up and overtook them! and many of the Mexicans and Tepeacans were slain, but of our Tlaxcalan allies only three were killed, and two horses were wounded, and one of them died, and two of our soldiers were wounded, but not in a manner to cause them any danger.

As soon as the victory was gained, many Indian women and boys joined us and were collected from the fields and the houses; we did not trouble about the men who were carried off as slaves by the Tlaxcalans.

When the people of Tepeaca saw that notwithstanding their arrogance the Mexicans who garrisoned their town were defeated, and they themselves with them, they determined without saying anything to the Mexicans, to come to where we were, and we received them in peace and they gave their fealty to His Majesty, and turned the

Mexicans out of their houses. Then we went to the town of Tepeaca and founded a town there, which was named La Villa de Segura de la Frontera, because it was on the road to Villa Rica, and it stood in a good neighbourhood of excellent towns subject to Mexico, and there was plenty of maize, and we had our allies the Tlaxcalans to guard the frontier. There, Alcaldes and Regidores were chosen, and orders were given that the neighbourhood subject to Mexico was to be raided, especially the towns where Spaniards had been killed. An iron was made with which to brand those whom we took for slaves, it was shaped thus , which means *Guerra* [war]. From the Villa Segura de la Frontera we scoured the neighbourhood which included Quecholac and Tecamachalco, and the town of the Guayavas, and other towns of which I do not remember the names. It was in Quecholac that they had killed fifteen Spaniards in their quarters, and here we made many slaves, so that within forty days we had all these towns punished and thoroughly pacified.

At that time, in Mexico, they had raised up [to the throne] another Prince, because the Prince who had driven us out of Mexico had died of Smallpox. He whom they now made Lord over them was a nephew or very near relation of Montezuma, named Guatemoc, a young man of about twenty-five years, very much of a gentleman for an Indian, and very valiant, and he made himself so feared that all his people trembled before him, and he was married to a daughter of Montezuma, a very handsome woman for an Indian. When this Guatemoc, Prince of Mexico, learned that we had defeated the Mexican squadrons stationed in Tepeaca, and that they [the people of Tepeaca] had given their fealty to His Majesty, and served us and gave us food, and that we had settled there, he feared that we should overrun Oaxaca and other provinces and bring them all into our alliance; so he sent messengers through

all the towns and told them to be on the alert with all their arms, and he gave golden jewels to some Caciques, and to others he remitted their tribute, and above all he despatched great companies and garrisons of warriors to see that we did not enter his territory, and charged them to fight very fiercely against us, so that it should not happen again, as it did at Tepeaca and Quecholac and Tecamachalco, where we had made slaves of all. Where he sent the greatest number of warriors was to Guacachula and Izucar,¹ which were distant from Tepeaca, where we had established our town, about twelve leagues. So that one may distinguish these names clearly, one town is named Cachula [Quecholac] and the other is named Guacachula. I will postpone relating what was done in Guacachula until the proper time and place, and will tell how at that time, messengers came from Villa Rica, to say that a ship had come from Cuba with some soldiers on board.

CHAPTER CXXXI.

How a ship came from Cuba, sent by Diego Velásquez with Pedro Barba as her captain ; and the method which the admiral, whom our Cortés had appointed as guardian of the sea, adopted in order to capture them, and it was in this way.

WHILE we marched about that province of Tepeaca punishing those who were concerned in the death of our companions (that is, those who killed them in these towns) and bringing them to peace, and all were giving their fealty to His Majesty, letters came from Villa Rica to say that a ship had arrived in port, and that her Captain was a gentleman named Pedro Barba, a great friend of Cortés. This Pedro Barba had been a lieutenant of Diego Velás-

¹ Oçucar in the text.

quez in the Havana, and he brought with him only thirteen soldiers, a horse and a mare, for the vessel that he came in was very small. He also brought letters for Pánfilo de Narvaez, the Captain whom Diego Velásquez had sent against us, in the belief that New Spain was now his, and in these letters Velásquez sent to tell him that if he had not already killed Cortés that he should at once send him a prisoner to Cuba, so that he could be sent to Castile, for so it had been ordered by Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca, Bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosano, President of the Indies, that he should be made prisoner at once with our other Captains. Diego Velásquez took it for certain that we were defeated, or at least that Narvaez was Lord over New Spain.

As soon as Pedro Barba arrived in port with his ship, and let go his anchor, the Admiral of the sea whom Cortés had appointed, named Pedro Caballero or Juan Caballero (already mentioned by me as being placed there by Cortés) went off to visit and welcome him, in a boat well manned by sailors with their arms hidden. He reached Pedro Barba's ship, and after the usual polite speeches, asking how his Honour had fared, and taking off of hats and embracing one another as is the fashion, they asked Pedro Barba¹ about Diego Velásquez, the Governor of Cuba, and how they had left him. Pedro Barba answered that he was very well. Then Pedro Barba and the others whom he had brought with him, asked after the Señor Capitan Pánfilo de Narvaez and how he got on with Cortés. They replied very well, but that Cortés was in revolt and had taken flight with twenty of his companions, and that Narvaez was very prosperous and rich; and that it was a very fine country. In the course

¹ The text says, "Preguntan al Pedro Escudero," instead of "Pedro Barba"; this is evidently merely a slip of the pen.

of conversation they told Pedro Barba that he could disembark as there was a town close by where they could go to sleep and take up their quarters, and food and all they needed would be brought to them, for the town had been assigned for that very purpose. They told them so many yarns that they induced them to go ashore in the boat and in others that soon put off from the other ships at anchor. When they had got them clear of their ship, they had arranged to have a large body of sailors round the Admiral, Pedro Caballero, and he said to Pedro Barba, "Surrender, in the name of the Señor Capitan Hernando Cortés, my commander." Thus they were captured, and they were thunderstruck. Then they removed from the ship its sails, rudder and compass, and sent them [Pedro Barba and his companions] to where we were stationed with Cortés in Tepeaca, and we were delighted to receive them for the help that it brought us in the very nick of time, for those expeditions which I have said that we were making were not so safe but that many of our soldiers were wounded, and others fell ill from the hardships and from the blood and dust that curdled in their bowels, and we passed nothing else from the mouth. We always wore our armour on our backs, and never rested day or night, so that five of our soldiers had already died of pleurisy within fifteen days. I also wish to say that with this Pedro Barba came Francisco López, who was afterwards a settler and Regidor of Guatemala.

Cortés paid much honour to Pedro Barba, and made him Captain of the crossbowmen. Pedro Barba brought the news that there was another small vessel in Cuba which Diego Velásquez intended to send with cassava bread and provisions, and this vessel arrived within eight days, and a gentleman named Rodrigo Morejon de Leizaola, a native of Medina del Campo, came in her as Captain,

and brought with him eight soldiers and six crossbows and much twine for making bowstrings, and one mare. In exactly the same way that they had taken Pedro Barba, so did they take this Rodrigo Morejon, and they were sent at once to Segura de la Frontera, and we rejoiced to see all of them, and Cortés paid them much honour and gave them employment, and thank God we went on strengthening ourselves with soldiers and crossbows and two or three more horses, and I will leave off here and go back to say what the Mexican armies which were posted on the frontier did at Guacachula, and how the Caciques of that town came secretly to ask help from Cortés to turn them out.

CHAPTER CXXXII.

How the Indians of Guacachula came to beg help from Cortés, because the Mexican armies were ill-treating them and robbing them, and what was done about it.

I HAVE already said that Guatemoc, the chieftain who had recently been raised to be King of Mexico, was sending garrisons to his frontiers, and in particular he sent one very powerful and numerous body of warriors to Guacachula and another to Izucar, distant two or three leagues from Guacachula, for he feared greatly that we should raid the lands and towns subject to Mexico in that direction. It seems that as he sent such a host of warriors, and as they were under a new master, that they committed many robberies and acts of violence against the inhabitants of those towns where they were quartered; so much so, that the inhabitants of that province would not put up with them, for they said that they robbed them of their mantles and their maize and fowls, and jewels of gold and, above all, of all their daughters and wives if they were handsome, and they violated them in the presence of their husbands

and fathers and relations. So when they heard it said that the people of the town of Cholula had enjoyed peace and tranquillity since the day the Mexicans had ceased to come there, and that now it was the same at Tepeaca and Tecamachalco, and Quecholac, for this reason four chieftains of this town I have named came very secretly to Cortés and asked him to send Teules and horses to put a stop to these robberies and injuries which the Mexicans were committing, and said that all the people of that town and others in the neighbourhood would aid us in slaying the Mexican squadrons.

When Cortés heard this he proposed that Cristóbal de Olid should go as Captain with nearly all the horsemen and crossbowmen and a large force of Tlaxcalans, for the spoil the Tlaxcalans had carried off from Tepeaca had induced many more Tlaxcalans to come to our camp and town. Cortés [also] told off certain captains from among those who had come with Narvaez, to accompany Captain Cristóbal de Olid, so he took with him over three hundred soldiers and all the best horses that we had.

As he went on his way to that province with all his companions, it seems that some Indians told the followers of Narvaez that all the fields and houses were full of Mexican warriors, many more than there were at Otumba, and that Guatemoc the Prince of Mexico was there with them. It is said that they told so many stories that they frightened the followers of Narvaez, and as these had no liking for going on expeditions or to see fighting, but wanted to get back to their Island of Cuba, and as they had escaped from the affair in Mexico, and the causeways and the bridges, and that of Otumba, they did not want to find themselves in the same straits again.

Then these followers of Narvaez said many things to Cristóbal de Olid to the effect that they should not go on any further, but should turn back, and that he could see

that this war was going to be worse than the last, where so many lives were lost, and they raised many objections and gave him to understand that if he, Cristóbal de Olid, desired to go on, he might go and good luck to him, but as for themselves many of them did not wish to proceed any further. Thus, although they had a brave Captain as leader, and notwithstanding that he told them how it was not a question of going back, but of advancing with many good horses and men, and how if they turned back but a single step the Indians would make short work of them, and as the land was level he would not turn back but press on, (in which many of Cortés' soldiers backed him up and said there must be no turning back, that they had been present in other perilous expeditions and wars, and thanks to God they had always been victorious,) yet nothing that was said to them had any effect, but by means of their entreaties that they should go back and should write to Cortés from Quecholac explaining matters, they managed to confuse the mind of Cristóbal de Olid, and he turned back. When Cortés heard of it he was very angry and sent Cristóbal de Olid two more crossbowmen, and wrote to him that he marvelled that a man of his strength and courage, on account of nobodies, should fail to proceed with a thing he was ordered to do, like that. When Cristóbal de Olid saw the letter, he shouted with anger, and said to those who had advised him, that on their account he had fallen into error, and without more discussion he ordered them to accompany him, and said that any one who did not want to go, might go back to the camp as a coward, and Cortés would punish him. So like a fierce lion in his anger he set out with his people on the road to Guacachula.

About a league from the town, the Caciques of the town came out to tell them how and where the men of Culua were posted, and how they should be attacked, and in

what way the Spaniards could be assisted. When this was understood, the horsemen, crossbowmen and soldiers were told the position they were to occupy in the attack, and they fell on the troops of Culua, and although the latter fought well for a good while and wounded some of our soldiers and killed two horses and wounded eight more at some barricades and ditches that were in the town, within an hour all the Mexicans were put to flight. They say that our Tlaxcalans fought very bravely and that they killed and captured many of the enemy, and, as all the people of the town and province helped them, they made great havoc among the Mexicans who hastened in full retreat to fortify themselves in another large town called Izucar, where there was another great garrison of Mexicans who were posted in a great fortress, and they had broken down a bridge so that Cristóbal de Olid and the horses could not pass. As Olid was as angry as a tiger, he did not tarry long in that town but went on at once to Izucar, and with those who could follow him and with our allies from Guacachula he crossed the river and fell on the Mexican squadrons and quickly defeated them. There they killed two horses and gave Olid two wounds, one of them in the thigh, and his horse was badly wounded. He stayed in Izucar two days, and as the Mexicans were defeated, the Caciques and chieftains of that and of other neighbouring towns soon asked for peace and gave themselves as vassals of our Lord the King. When all was calmed down he returned with all his soldiers to our town of Frontera. Because I did not go on this expedition I state in this narrative "they say" that what I have related took place.

Cortés and all of us went out to receive them, and it gave us much pleasure, and we laughed about their having persuaded Cristóbal de Olid to turn back, and he also laughed at it himself, and said that some people thought

more about their mines in Cuba than of their arms, and he vowed to God, that if he should go on another expedition he would take with him only the poor soldiers who had followed Cortés and not the rich ones who had come with Narvaez, who wished to do more of the commanding than he did.

I will not talk any more about this, but will quote what the Historian Gomara says in his History, that Cristóbal de Olid turned back on the road to Guacachula because he did not understand the Nahuatatos and interpreters, and believed that there was some double dealing against us. It did not happen as Gomara says it did, but because the principal Captains from among the followers of Narvaez were told by some other Indians that great forces of Mexicans were assembled, even more than there had been in Mexico or Otumba, and that the Lord of Mexico named Guatemoc who had just been raised to be their king was with them. As they "*habian escapado de la de Mazagatos*" (had just got out of one difficulty) as the proverb has it, they greatly feared having to fight again, and it was for that reason that they called on Cristóbal de Olid to turn back, although he contended that they should advance, and this is the truth and no lie. Gomara also says that Cortés went to that war after Cristóbal de Olid returned, and it was not so; this same Cristóbal de Olid, Maestre de Campo, is he who went, as I have stated. He also says twice that those who told the followers of Narvaez that there were so many thousands of Indians assembled, were the people of Huexotzingo, when they passed through that town. He also says many other things that are misleading.¹

¹ It is quite possible that Gomara is here more accurate than Bernal Díaz; Cortés in his second letter to the Emperor gives an account of the expedition; he says nothing about Cristóbal de Olid, but states that when the army turned back he himself took command and marched to Guacachula by way of Cholula and the (or a) town of Huexotzingo.

It is clear that in going from Tepeaca to Guacachula one has not to turn back to Huexotzingo. It would be as though being in Medina del Campo and wishing to go to Salamanca we should take the road to Valladolid! One would be no worse than the other, so the historian goes on his crazy way, and if all his writings in other Spanish chronicles are like this, I condemn them as a matter of lies and fables, however good his style may be.

Let us leave this subject and say what else happened at that time, which was that a ship came to the harbour of the rock of the ugly name, called what's-his-name Bernal, which was near Villa Rica, and it came from the Panuco expedition which had been sent out by Garay, and the name of the Captain who came in her was Camargo, and what happened I will go on to tell.

CHAPTER CXXXIII.

How there arrived at the rock and port which is near Villa Rica, a ship, one of those that Francisco de Garay¹ had sent to form a settlement at the Rio Panuco, and what else happened about it.

WHILE we were stationed at Segura de la Frontera, as I have already related, letters reached Cortés to say that one of the ships which Francisco de Garay had sent to form a settlement at Panuco, had come into port, and that her Captain was named somebody Camargo, and that she brought over sixty soldiers, all of them ill, and very yellow and with swollen bellies. They brought the news that the other Captain whom Garay had sent to settle at Panuco, whose name was something Álvarez

¹ Governor of Jamaica.

Pinedo, and all the soldiers and horses that had been sent to that province, had been killed by the Indians, and their ships burned. This Camargo, seeing how badly things had turned out, re-embarked his soldiers and came for help to that port, for they knew well that we had settled there. It was because they had to endure the constant attacks of the Indians of Panuco¹ that they had nothing to eat and arrived so thin and yellow and swollen. Moreover, they said that the Captain Camargo had been a Dominican Friar and had taken vows. These soldiers and their captain came on very slowly (for they could not walk, owing to their weakness) to the town of Frontera where we were stationed. When Cortés saw them so swollen and yellow he knew that they were no good as fighting men and that we should hardly be able to cure them, and he treated them with much consideration. I fancy that Camargo died very soon, but I do not well remember what became of him, and many others of them died, and then for a joke we gave the others a nickname, and called them the "verdigris bellies"² for they were the colour of death and their bellies were so swollen.

So as not to delay my story by telling about each incident at the time and place that it happened, I will say that all the ships that came to Villa Rica about that time were sent by Garay, although they may have come one a month in advance of the other; let us note anyhow that all of them arrived no matter whether earlier or later. I say this for one Miguel Díaz de Auz arrived soon after, an Aragonese who had been sent as one of Francisco de Garay's captains to succour Captain something Álvarez Pinedo, for he thought that Pinedo was at Panuco. When Miguel Díaz

¹ The text says, "Indios de Xamayca" (Jamaica); but this must be a slip of the pen.

² Pançiverdetes.

de Auz arrived at the port of Panuco and found no vestige, neither hide nor hair, of the Armada of Garay he understood at once from what he saw, that they were all dead. The Indians of that province attacked Miguel Díaz as soon as he arrived with his ship, and for that reason he came on to our port and disembarked his soldiers, who numbered more than fifty with (thirty)¹ seven horses, and he soon arrived where we were stationed with Cortés, and this help was most welcome just at the time when we needed it most.

So that it may be clearly understood who this Miguel Díaz de Auz was, I will state that he served His Majesty well on all occasions in the wars and conquest of New Spain; and it was he who after New Spain was settled brought a suit against a brother-in-law of Cortés, named Andrés de Barrios, a native of Seville whom they called the Dancer, and they gave him that name because he danced so often. The lawsuit was about the half of Mestitan.

It was this Miguel Díaz de Auz who, before the Royal Council of the Indies, in the year 1541, stated that he [Cortés] bestowed favours and Indians on some because they danced well, and from others he took their property because they had served His Majesty well by fighting. It was also he who said that Cortés gave Indians to Andrés de Barrios because he was his brother-in-law, although he did not deserve them, as he was with . . . in Seville . . . , and that he failed to give them to those to whom His Majesty had ordered that they should be given. It

¹ "Sus soldados que eran mas de cinquenta y *treinta* y siete caballos." The "*treinta*" (30) is clearly an error; it may have been written in mistake for "*tres*," thus:—"More than 53 soldiers and 7 horses."

In the following chapter it is stated that the three ships sent by Garay brought one hundred and twenty soldiers and seventeen horses and mares.

was he also who said most distinctly other things about the failure of justice towards those whom His Majesty had recommended, and moreover, he said other things, such as that they wanted to follow in the footsteps of the Villain of Cuba, so that the gentlemen who directed the Royal Council of the Indies were angered, of whom the President was the Reverend Fray García de Loysa, at one time Archbishop of Seville, and the Oidores were the Bishop of Lugo and his Licentiate Gutierrez Velásquez, and the Doctor Bernal Díaz de Luco and Doctor Beltran.

Let us go back to our story; then Miguel Díaz de Auz, after stating all he had a mind to, spread his cloak on the ground, and placing his dagger to his breast, laid himself down on the cloak and said: "If what I have spoken is not true, may your highnesses order my throat to be cut with this dagger, and if it is true, do severe justice." Thereupon, the President ordered him to rise and said that they were not there to kill any one, but to do justice, and that he was ill-advised in what he had said, he must go away and not say any more rude things, for otherwise he would punish him. What they decreed about the Mestitan suit was that he should be given a share of what the town produced, amounting to more than two thousand five hundred pesos, on condition that he should not enter the town for two years, for what they accused him of, was that he had killed certain Indians in that town and in others that he had owned.

Let us leave off relating this, for it is wandering from my story; and say that a few days after Miguel Díaz de Auz had come to that port in the way I have said, another ship arrived in port which Garay had also sent to help and succour his expedition, believing that they were all safe and well in the Rio de Panuco. The Captain who came in her was an old man named Ramírez, and he was far advanced in years and for this reason we called him

"the elder"¹ (for there were in our camp two Ramírezes) and he brought over forty soldiers and ten horses and mares, and crossbows and other arms. Thus, Francisco de Garay shot off one shaft after another to the assistance of his Armada, and each one went to assist the good fortune of Cortés and of us. It was of the greatest help to us, and all these men from Garay, as I have already said, came to Tepeaca where we were stationed. Because the soldiers brought by Miguel Díaz de Auz arrived very hearty and fat, we called them "the strong backs,"² and those who came with the elder Ramírez, who wore cotton armour so thick that no arrow could penetrate it, and it was very heavy, we called "the pack saddles."³ When the captains and soldiers whom I have mentioned, presented themselves before Cortés, he paid them much honour. Let us stop telling about the succour that came to us from Garay, which was most acceptable, and tell how Cortés despatched Gonzalo de Sandoval on an expedition to the towns named Xalazingo and Zacatami.

CHAPTER CXXXIV.

How Cortés sent Gonzalo de Sandoval to bring to peace the towns of Xalazingo and Zacatami,⁴ and to find out what Spaniards had been killed in them and what arms they had captured, and what the country was like, and to demand of the people the gold that they had stolen; for this purpose he took with him two hundred soldiers and twenty horsemen and twelve crossbowmen.

CORTÉS had now an abundance of soldiers and horses and crossbows, as he had been strengthened by the two small

¹ In Chapter CXXXVI, Ramírez the elder is mentioned as a lame old carpenter.

² Los de los lomos rezios.

³ Las albardillas.

⁴ In this chapter (in which the place-names are printed exactly as they appear in the original text) the author gives an account of two

vessels sent by Diego Velásquez in which Pedro Barba and Rodrigo de Morejon de Lobera came as captains, bringing over twenty-five soldiers and two horses and a mare. Then came the three ships sent by Garay; in the first came Camargo as Captain, in the second Miguel Díaz de Auz, and in the last Ramírez the elder, and these captains between them brought over one hundred and twenty soldiers and seventeen horses and mares, and the mares were both for sport and for chargers.

Cortés had received the news that in some towns named Çacatami [Zocotla] and Xalaçingo [Xalatcinco] and in others in the neighbourhood, many of the soldiers of Narvaez had been killed when on their way from Mexico, and also that it was in those towns that they had killed, and stolen the gold from Juan de Alcántara and the other two settlers from the town of Villa Rica. This was the gold that had fallen to the share of all the settlers who had remained in Villa Rica, as I have fully described in the chapter that treats of that subject.

Cortés sent Gonzalo de Sandoval, the chief Alguacil, as the captain of that expedition, a valiant man of good counsel, and he took with him two hundred soldiers, nearly all of them from us, the followers of Cortés, and twenty horsemen and twelve crossbowmen and a large force of

expeditions under Sandoval, the first to Çacatami and Xalaçingo and the second to Coçotlan. Reference to Chapter LXI will show the confusion that there originated over these names. There can be little doubt that Çacatami, Coçotlan, and Castil Blanco are one and the same place, that is, Zocotla (the Zautla of the modern maps), and that this chapter contains two accounts of the same expedition. Cortés in his second letter mentions only one expedition to Çacatami. Bernal Díaz is particular to state in Chapter CXXXII that he did not go on the expedition to Guacachula and Izucar, and illness at this time would easily account for lack of distinct memory of the events when he came to write them down so many years afterwards. In Chapter LXI Bernal Díaz mentions stopping at a small town belonging to Xalaçingo, a day's march from Castil Blanco: this may be the town visited by Sandoval, and not the site of the present town of Jalacingo, situated about forty miles to the north-east of Castil Blanco.

Tlaxcalans. Before he reached those towns he learned that they were all up in arms and had with them garrisons of Mexicans, and that they had fortified themselves strongly with breastworks and materials for defence, for they well knew that it was on account of the deaths of the Spaniards they had slain that we had come against them to punish them, as we had done to those of Tepecaca, Cachula [Quecholac] and Tecamachalco.

Sandoval arranged his troops and crossbowmen in good order, and told the horsemen how and in what manner they were to charge and break through the enemy. Before they entered the enemy's country he despatched messengers to tell them to come peaceably and give up the gold and arms they had stolen, and he would pardon them the death of the Spaniards. This sending of messengers to treat for peace was repeated three or four times, and the reply that the enemy sent was, that as they had killed and eaten the Teules who were asked about, so would they do to the Captain and all those he had brought with him. So the messages did no good, and he sent again to say that he would make slaves of them as traitors and highway robbers, and that they should get ready to defend themselves.

Then Sandoval and his companions set out, and he made the attack from two sides, and although the Mexicans and the natives of those towns fought very well, without relating anything more that happened in those battles, I may say that the enemy were defeated and the Mexicans and the Caciques of those towns were put to flight, and the pursuit was kept up and many of the common people were captured, but they did not care to keep the Indian men so as not to have to guard them.

They found in the Cues of that town clothes and armour and horses' bridles and two saddles, and other things belonging to horsemen, which had been offered to the Idols.

Sandoval determined to stay there three days ; and the Caciques from those towns came to ask pardon and give their fealty to His Majesty, and Sandoval told them that they must give up the gold that they had stolen from the Spaniards they had killed, and then he would pardon them. They replied that the Mexicans had taken it, and had sent it to the Lord of Mexico who had been chosen as King, and that they had none of it. So Sandoval told them that they must go to Malinche, that is Cortés, about the pardon, and that he [Cortés] would speak to them and pardon them. Sandoval returned with a great spoil of women and boys who were branded as slaves, and Cortés was delighted when he saw him arrive strong and well, although eight soldiers had been badly wounded, and three horses killed, and Sandoval himself had one arrow wound.

I did not go on that expedition as I was very ill with fever and was vomiting blood, and thank God I got well for they bled me.

As Gonzalo de Sandoval had told the Caciques of Xalazingo [Xalatcinco] and Çacatami [Zocotla]¹ to go to Cortés to sue for peace, not only did the Chieftains of those towns come, but those of many other towns in the neighbourhood, and all gave their fealty to His Majesty and brought food to the town where we were stationed. This expedition of Sandoval had the best results and brought the country to peace, and from now on Cortés had such renown throughout the towns of New Spain, on the one hand for being fair in all that he did, and on the other hand for being such a brave man, that he struck terror into them all, and most of all into Guatemoc the Prince and King lately raised to be ruler in Mexico. So great was the authority and position and command to which Cortés had attained, that they brought before him the disputes

¹ See note at beginning of chapter.

between Indians from distant lands, especially questions of chieftainship and overlordship. At that time smallpox had spread so widely in New Spain that many Caciques died, and they came to Cortés concerning questions as to whom the chieftaincy belonged, and who should be lord and should apportion lands or vassals or other property, as though he [Cortés] were the absolute master of the land, so that with his hand and authority he should raise the right claimant to be chieftain.

At that time people came from the towns of Izucar and Guacachula, already mentioned by me, because in Izucar the Lord of that town was married to a near relation of Montezuma, and they had a son who they said was a Cacique and a nephew of Montezuma and it seems that he inherited the Lordship, and others said that it belonged to another Chieftain, and they had disputes about it, and they came to Cortés and he decided that it should go to the relation of Montezuma, and they carried out his orders. In a similar manner they came from many other towns in the neighbourhood about disputes, and in each case he gave the land and vassals to the Chieftain to whom he thought it by right belonged.

About the same time Cortés also received the news that in a town six leagues away named Coçotlan [Zocotla]¹, which we called Castil Blanco, nine Spaniards had been killed, and he sent the same Gonzalo de Sandoval to chastise the inhabitants and to bring them to peace. Sandoval went there with thirty horsemen and one hundred soldiers, eight crossbowmen and five musketeers, and many Tlaxcalans, and after he had made his threats and requests to induce them to come in peacefully [saying that] he would pardon them for the death of the Spaniards whom they

¹ Here apparently begins the repetition of the story that has just been told.

had killed, and after he had said many civil things to them through five Chieftains from Tepeaca, [he added] that if they did not so come he would wage war on them and make them slaves.

It seems that there were Mexican troops in the town guarding and protecting it, and they answered that they already had a Lord over them whose name was Guatemoc, and that they had no need to go or come at the word of another Chieftain, and that if the Spaniards should come there they would find them on the field [of battle], and that their forces were no weaker now than they had been in Mexico and at the bridges and causeways, and they already knew what our valour amounted to. As soon as Sandoval heard this, he formed up his men and the horsemen, crossbowmen and musketeers in order of battle, and told the Tlaxcalans not to throw themselves on the enemy at the beginning of the battle, so as not to get in the way of the horsemen or run the chance of being wounded by the crossbows and muskets, or being trampled on by the horses, but that when the squadrons had been broken up and defeated they should take the Mexicans prisoners and keep up the pursuit. Then he began his march towards the town, and two good squadrons of warriors sallied forth on the road to oppose him near some strongholds and barrancas, and there they stood firm for a time, but the crossbows and muskets did them much damage so that Sandoval was able to pass by the stronghold and stone walls with his horsemen, however they wounded nine of his horses and one of them died, and they also wounded four soldiers. When he saw that he was clear of that bad pass, and had room to gallop his horses (although the ground was not very good, for it was full of stones), he charged on the rear of the squadrons, breaking them up and driving them back on the town itself, where there was a great Court; there the enemy had another


force posted, and some Cues whither they retired to fortify themselves. Although they fought very bravely yet he conquered them, and killed seven Indians, for they were in bad passes. There was no need to order the Tlaxcalans to follow up the pursuit, for as they were warriors they undertook the task with zeal, especially because their country was not far from that town. There they captured many women and people of no consequence. Gonzalo de Sandoval stayed there two days, and he sent to summon the Caciques of that town by means of some Tepeaca Chieftains who were in his company, and they came and asked for pardon for the death of the Spaniards, and Sandoval told them that if they would give up the clothes and property that they had stolen from those they had killed, he would pardon them, and they replied that they had burned them all and had nothing left, that they had eaten most of those they had killed, but they had sent five of the Teules alive to Guatemoc their Lord, and that they had paid the penalty for this through those who had now been killed on the field of battle and in the town, and they begged him to pardon them, for they would bring them plenty to eat, and would provide the town where Malinche was stationed with food.

When Gonzalo de Sandoval saw that there was nothing more to be done, he pardoned them, and they promised to obey all commands. With this message he returned to the town, and was well received by Cortés and all those in Camp, where I will leave off talking about him and will relate how they branded all the slaves that had been taken in those towns and provinces, and what happened about it.

CHAPTER CXXXV.

How all the men and women slaves in our camp, whom we had captured in the affairs of Tepeaca, Quecholac, Tecamachalco and Castil Blanco and their territories, were collected together to be branded in the name of His Majesty, with the iron which had been made, and what happened about it.

WHEN Gonzalo de Sandoval arrived at the town of Segura de la Frontera after having made the expeditions I have spoken of, we had all the people of that province pacified, and had for the moment no other expeditions planned, for all the towns in the neighbourhood had given their allegiance to His Majesty. So Cortés decided, with the officials of the King, that all the slaves that had been taken should be branded so that his fifth might be set aside after the fifth had been taken for His Majesty, and to this effect he had a proclamation made in the town and camp, that all the soldiers should bring to a house chosen for the purpose all the women whom we were sheltering, to be branded, and the time allowed for doing this was the day of the proclamation and one more.

We all came with all the Indian women and girls and boys whom we had captured, but the grown-up men we did not trouble about as they were difficult to watch and we had no need of their services, as we had our friends the Tlaxcalans. When they had all been brought together and had been marked with the iron which was like this , which stands for *guerra* [war], when we were not expecting it they set aside the Royal fifth, and then took another fifth for Cortés, and, in addition to this, the night before, after we had placed the women in that house as I have stated, they took away and hid the best looking Indian women, and there was not a good-looking one left, and when it came to dividing them, they allotted us the old and ugly women, and there was a great deal of

grumbling about it against Cortés and those who ordered the good-looking Indian women to be stolen and hidden so much so that some of the soldiers of Narvaez said to Cortés himself, that they took God to witness that such a thing had never happened as to have two Kings in the country belonging to our Lord the King, and to deduct two-fifths. One of the soldiers who said this to him was Juan Bono de Quejo, and moreover he said that they would not remain in such a country, and that he would inform His Majesty in Spain about it, and the Royal Council of the Indies. Another soldier told Cortés very clearly that it did not suffice to divide the gold which had been secured in Mexico in the way in which he had done it, for when he was dividing it he said that it was three hundred thousand pesos that had been collected, and when we were fleeing from Mexico, he had ordered witness to be taken that there remained more than seven hundred thousand; and that now the poor soldier who had done all the hard work and was covered with wounds could not even have a good-looking Indian woman; besides they [the soldiers] had given them [the Indian women] skirts and chemises, and all those women had been taken and hidden away. Moreover when the proclamation had been issued that they were to be brought and branded, it was thought that each soldier would have his women returned to him, and they would be appraised according to the value of each in pesos, and that when they had been valued a fifth would be paid to His Majesty and there would not be any fifth for Cortés; and other complaints were made worse than these.

When Cortés saw this, he said with smooth words that he swore on his conscience (for that was his usual oath) that from that time forward he would not act in that way, but that good or bad, all the Indian women, should be put up to auction, and that the good-looking ones should be

sold for so much, and those that were not [good looking], for a lower price, so that there should be no cause of quarrel with him. However, here in Tepeaca no more slaves were made, but afterwards in Texcoco it was done nearly in this manner, as I will relate further on.

I will stop talking about this and will refer to another matter almost worse than this of the slaves, which was, as I have already said in Chapter CXXVIII, that when on that night of sorrow¹ we were fleeing from Mexico, there remained in the hall where Cortés was lodged many bars of gold which were lost, because no more could be carried than what was packed on the horses and mare, and on a number of Tlaxcalans, and what our allies went away with and other soldiers carried off. As the rest would have been lost and left in the hands of the Mexicans, Cortés declared before a King's Notary that whoever should wish to take gold from what was left there, might carry it off and welcome, for their own, as otherwise it would be lost. Many of the soldiers who were followers of Narvaez loaded themselves with it, and so too did some of our men, and it cost many of them their lives, and those who escaped with the booty they carried, had been in great risk of being killed, and emerged covered with wounds. As in our camp and town of Segura de la Frontera (for so it was named), Cortés got to know that there were many bars of gold, and that they were changing hands at play, and as the proverb has it: "*El oro y amores eran malos de encubrir*" (gold and love affairs are difficult to hide), he ordered a proclamation to be made, that under heavy penalty they should bring and declare the gold that they had taken, and that a third part of it should be returned to them, and that if they did not bring it, all would be seized. Many of the soldiers who possessed gold did not

¹ The "noche triste."

wish to give it up, and some of it Cortés took as a loan, but more by force than by consent, and as nearly all the Captains possessed gold and even the officials of the King, the proclamation was all the more ignored and no more spoken of; however, this order of Cortés' seemed to be very wrong. Let us not say anything more about it now, and I will tell how most of the Captains and principal persons who had come with Narvaez asked leave of Cortés to return to Cuba, and Cortés granted it, and what else happened about it.

CHAPTER CXXXVI.

How the Captains and principal persons who had come in the Company of Narvaez asked leave of Cortés to return to the Island of Cuba, and Cortés granted it, and they set out; and how Cortés despatched ambassadors to Castile and Santo Domingo, and Jamaica, and what happened in each case.

WHEN the Captains of Narvaez observed that now we had reinforcements both through those who had come from Cuba, and those whom Francisco de Garay had sent to join his expedition from Jamaica, as I have explained in the chapter that treats of the subject, and they saw that the towns of the province of Tepeaca were all at peace, after much discussion with Cortés, and many promises and entreaties, they begged him to give them leave to return to the Island of Cuba, as he had promised. Cortés promptly granted their request, and even promised them that if he regained New Spain and the city of Mexico that he would give his partner Andrés de Duero much more gold than he had given him before, and he made similar promises to the other Captains, especially to Augustin Bermúdez, and he ordered them to be given supplies such as could be procured at that time, maize, and salted dogs,

and a few fowls, and one of the best ships. Cortés wrote to his wife, who was named Doña Catalina Juarez, la Marcaida, and to Juan Juarez his brother-in-law, who at that time lived in the Island of Cuba, and sent them some bars and jewels of gold, and told them about all the disasters and hardships that had happened to us, and how we had been driven out of Mexico.

Let us leave this and state who were the persons who asked leave to go to Cuba. Those who went away rich were Andrés de Duero, Augustin Bermúdez, Juan Bono de Quexo, Bernaldino de Quesada, Francisco Valásquez the humpback (a relation of Diego Velásquez, Governor of Cuba), Gonzalo Carrasco, who after he returned to New Spain lived in Puebla, Melchior de Velasco, who was afterwards a settler in Guatemala, and one Jiménez, who lived afterwards in Oaxaca, who went to fetch his sons, and the Comendador Leon de Cervantes, who went for his daughters whom after the capture of Mexico he married off very honourably. There also went a man named Maldonado, a native of Medellin, who was ill, I do not mean Maldonado the husband of Doña Maria del Rincon, nor Maldonado the broad, nor another Maldonado called Álvaro Maldonado the fierce, who was married to a lady named Maria Riás; and there was also one Vargas, a settler of Trinidad, whom they called in Cuba, Vargas the handsome, I do not mean that Vargas who was father-in-law of Cristóbal Lobo and became a settler in Guatemala; there also went one of Cortés' soldiers named Cárdenas, a pilot, this was the Cárdenas who said to his companions, "How can we soldiers get any rest while there are two kings in New Spain?" It was he to whom Cortés gave three hundred dollars so that he could return to his wife and children. To avoid prolixity in calling them all to mind, [I will say that] many others went whose names I do not remember.

When Cortés gave them leave to go, we asked him why he gave it, as we who remained behind were so few, and he replied that it was to avoid brawls and importunities, and that we could see for ourselves that some of those who were returning were not fit for warfare, and that it was better to remain alone than in useless company. Cortés sent Pedro de Alvarado to despatch them from the port, and told him that after they were embarked he was to return at once to the town.

I will now say that he also sent Diego de Ordás and Alonzo de Mendoza, a native of Medellin de Cáceres, to Castile, with certain messages from himself, and I do not know if he sent any from us, for he did not tell us a thing about the business that he was negotiating with His Majesty, nor did I find out what took place in Spain, except that the Bishop of Burgos said loudly before Diego de Ordás that both Cortés and all his soldiers were bad men and traitors, and that Ordás answered very well for all of us. Then Ordás was made Comendador of the Order of Santiago, and for armorial bearings was given the Volcano which stands between Huexotzingo and near Cholula¹; and what negotiations he carried out I will relate further on when we came to know of them by letter.

Let us leave this now and I will tell how Cortés sent Alonzo de Ávila, who was a captain and Accountant of New Spain, and with him another gentleman named Francisco Álvarez "the little,"² who was a man well versed in business, and ordered them to go in another ship to the Island of Santo Domingo, to give an account of all that had happened to the Royal Audiencia which was stationed there, and to the Geronimite Friars who were Governors of all the Islands, and induce them to think well of all we had done in our conquests and in the defeat of Narvaez. [They

¹ Entre Guaxoçingo y cerca de Cholula.

² Francisco Alvarez Chico.

were also to inform them] that slaves had been made in the towns where Spaniards had been killed and the inhabitants had renounced the allegiance that they had given to our Lord the King, and that it was intended to do so in all the other towns that belonged to the alliance and name of the Mexicans. Cortés prayed them to send a report of it [our actions] to Castile to our Great Emperor and to bring to his mind the great services we were always performing for him, and that by the intercession of the Royal Audiencia of the Geronimite Friars we might be favoured with Justice in spite of the ill will and antagonism that the Bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosano entertained against us.

Cortés also sent another vessel to the Island of Jamaica for horses and mares, and the captain who went in her was called something de Solís, who after the capture of Mexico was called "Solís of the orchard," son-in-law of a man called the Bachelor of Arts Ortega.

I well know that some inquiring readers will ask how without money could Diego de Ordás be sent on business to Castile, for it is clear that in Castile and elsewhere money is a necessity, and in the same way [how could] Alonzo de Ávila and Francisco Álvarez el Chico be sentⁿ on business to Santo Domingo, and to the Island of Jamaica for horses and mares? I may answer this, that when we were fleeing from Mexico on the night so often mentioned by me, as there remained in the hall many bars of gold abandoned in a heap, most of the soldiers snatched some off, especially the horsemen, and much more the followers of Narvaez, and the officers of His Majesty who had charge of the gold carried off the prepared bundles, and in addition to this, by Cortés' orders more than eighty Tlaxcalan Indians were laden with gold and they were amongst the first who got clear of the bridges, so that it is clear that many loads of it were

saved, and it was not all lost on the causeway. As we poor soldiers who had no command but only lived to be commanded were at that time trying to save our lives, and later on to heal our wounds, we did not pay much attention to the gold, whether many loads of it were saved at the bridges or not, nor did we bother much about it, but Cortés and some of our Captains managed to get it from the Tlaxcalans who had carried it out, and we suspected them of getting away with the forty thousand pesos also, the share of the settlers of Villa Rica, and of spreading the report that they had been stolen.

With this gold Cortés was able to send to Castile on his personal business, and to buy horses, and to send to the Island of Santo Domingo to the Royal Audiencia, for at that time all held their tongues about the bars of gold that they possessed, although more proclamations had been issued.

Let us leave this subject, and I will say that now as all the towns in the neighbourhood of Tepeaca were at peace, Cortés settled that one Francisco de Orozco should stay in our town of Segura de la Frontera as captain, with a batch of twenty soldiers who were wounded or ill, and that all the rest of the army should go to Tlaxcala. He also gave orders that timber should be cut for the building of thirteen sloops so that we could return to Mexico again, for we knew for certain that we could never master the lake without sloops, nor carry on war, nor enter that great city another time by the causeways, without great risk to our lives.

He who was the expert to cut the wood and make the model and the measurement, and [give] instructions how they were to be fast sailers and of light draught for their special purpose, and the one who built them, was Martin López, who certainly, besides being a good soldier in all the wars, served His Majesty very well in this matter of

the sloops, and worked at them like a strong man. It seems to me, that if some ill luck had prevented his being one of the first to come in our company, we might have wasted much time in sending to Castile for a master carpenter, and then perhaps none might have come, on account of the great difficulty that the Bishop of Burgos always put in our way.

I must come back to my story and say that when we arrived at Tlaxcala our great friend Mase Escasi, that very loyal vassal of His Majesty, had died of smallpox. We all grieved over his death very much and Cortés said he felt it as though it were the death of his own father, and he put on mourning of black cloth,¹ and so did many of our Captains and soldiers. Cortés and all of us paid much honour to the children and relations of Mase Escasi. As there were disputes in Tlaxcala about the Caciqueship and command, Cortés ordered and decreed that it should go to a legitimate son of Mase Escasi, for so his father had ordered before he died, and he had also said to his sons and relations, that they should take care always to obey the commands of Malinche and his brethren, for we were certainly those who were destined to govern the country, and he gave them other good advice.

I must leave off talking about Mase Escasi, for he is dead, and will say of Xicotenga the elder and Chichimecatecle and nearly all the other caciques of Tlaxcala, that they offered their services to Cortés, both in the matter of cutting wood for the sloops and anything else he might order for the war against Mexico. Cortés embraced them with much affection and thanked them for it, especially Xicotenga the elder and Chichimecatecle, and soon persuaded them to become Christians and the good old

¹ Blotted out in the original: "Such as was obtainable at that time."—G. G.

Xicotenga with much willingness said that he wished to be a Christian, and he was baptized by the Padre de la Merced with the greatest ceremony that at that time it was possible to arrange in Tlaxcala, and was given the name of Don Lorenzo Vargas.

Let us go back to speak of the sloops. Martin López made such speed in cutting the wood with the great assistance rendered him by the Indians, that he had the whole of it cut within a few days, and each beam marked for the position for which it was intended to occupy, after the manner that the master carpenters and boat builders have of marking it. He was also assisted by another good soldier named Ándrez Nuñez, and an old carpenter who was lame from a wound, called Ramírez the elder.

Then Cortés sent to Villa Rica for much of the iron and the bolts out of the ships which we had destroyed, and for anchors, sails and rigging and for cables and tow and all the other material for building ships, and he ordered all the blacksmiths to come, and one Hernando de Aguilar who was half a blacksmith and helped in the forging. As at that time there were three men of the name of Aguilar in our camp, we called this Hernando de Aguilar *Maxahierro* (the iron forger). Cortés sent a certain Santa Cruz, a native of Burgos, who was afterwards Regidor of Mexico, a very hard-working man and a good soldier, as Captain to Villa Rica with orders to bring all the material I have mentioned. He brought everything, even to the cauldrons for melting the pitch, and all the things that they had taken out of the ships, and transported them with the help of more than a thousand Indians, for all the towns of those provinces were enemies of the Mexicans, and at once gave men to carry the loads. Then as we had no pitch with which to caulk [the sloops], and the Indians did not know how to extract it, Cortés ordered four sailors who under-

stood the work to go and make pitch in some fine pine woods near Huexotzingo.¹

Let us go on, and though it does not much concern the subject I have been speaking about, certain inquisitive gentlemen, who knew Alonzo de Ávila very well, have asked me, how it was that being a Captain and a very brave one, and being Accountant of New Spain, and a warlike man, and his inclination being more towards warfare than to looking after business with the Geronimite Friars who were the governors of all the Islands, how was it that Cortés sent him when he had other men who were better versed in business, such as Alonzo de Grado, or Juan de Cáceres, the rich, or others that they mentioned to me? I contend that Cortés sent Alonzo de Ávila because he knew him to be a bold man, who would dare to answer for us in what he considered just. He also sent him because Alonzo de Ávila had had disputes with other Captains, and had the great temerity to say to Cortés anything he considered proper to tell him, and so as to avoid brawls and in order to give the command that he held to Andrés de Tápia and the Accountantship to Alonzo de Grado, which he at once did, it was for these reasons that he sent him.

Let us go back to our story. As soon as Cortés saw that the timber for the sloops was cut, and the persons named by me had started for Cuba, (that is the followers of Narvaez and those whom we considered encumbrances, especially as they were always saying to us that we had not force enough to resist the great power of the Mexicans

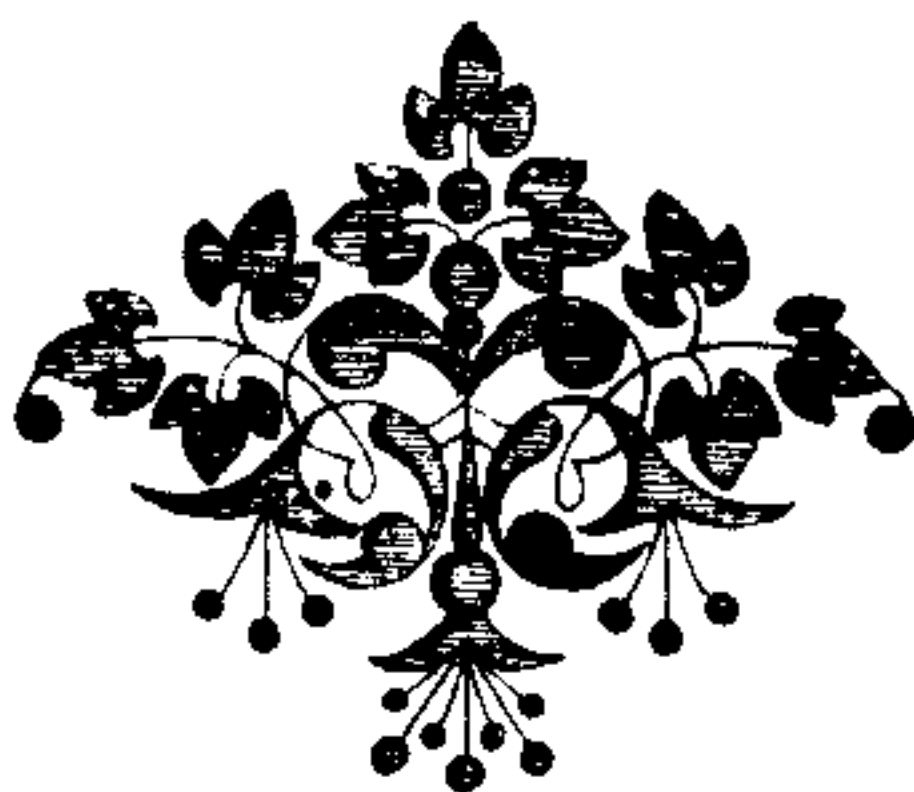
¹ Blotted out in the original: "I remember that the man who had charge of the work and went as captain was Juan Rodríguez Cabrillo, who was a good soldier in the Mexican War, and was afterwards a settler in Guatemala, a very honourable person who, later on, went as captain and admiral of thirteen vessels with Pedro de Alvarado and was a good servant of His Majesty in every capacity and died in his service."—G. G.

when they heard it said that we were going to besiege Mexico) freed from these anxieties, [he] Cortés settled that we should go with all our soldiers to the city of Texcoco. Over this there were many and great discussions, for some of the soldiers said that there was a better position, and better canals and ditches in which to build the sloops at Ayotzingo near Chalco than in the ditch and lake [at Texcoco], and others contended that Texcoco was the better, as it was nearer to many other towns, and that when we held that city in our power, we could make expeditions to the country in the vicinity of Mexico, and that once stationed in that city we could form a better opinion as to how things were going on.

When it was settled in the way I have said, the news reached us through letters brought by some soldiers, that a large ship had arrived from Spain and the Canary Islands, laden with a great variety of merchandise, muskets, powder, crossbows and crossbow cords, and three horses, and other arms, and there came as owner of the merchandise and of the ship Juan de Burgos, and as sailing master Francisco de Amedel, and there were thirteen soldiers in her. At that news we were greatly delighted and, if before the news of the ship reached us we were in haste to start for Texcoco, we were all the more in haste now, because Cortés sent at once to buy all the arms and powder and everything else that she carried, and even Juan de Burgos himself and Amedel and all the passengers on board soon came to our camp, and we were very well satisfied at receiving such timely assistance. I call to mind that a certain Juan de Espinar, a very rich man who was afterwards a settler in Guatemala, joined at that time, also a Biscayan named Monjaraz, said to be an uncle of Ándrez de Monjaraz, and Gregorio de Monjaraz, who were soldiers of ours, and father of a woman who afterwards came to Mexico called "La Monjaraza," a very beautiful woman,

also a Sagredo, uncle of a woman called "La Sagreda" who lived in Cuba, they were natives of the town of Medellin. I recall this to mind now on account of what I shall go on to say, which is that Monjaraz never went fighting or on any expedition with us, because he was ill at that time, and when he had quite recovered he gave himself the airs of a brave man, and when we were besieging Mexico, Monjaraz said that he wished to go and see how we fought with the Mexicans, for he did not believe that the Mexicans were brave; and he went and ascended a lofty Cue like a tower, and we never found out how and in what manner the Indians killed him that same day. Many persons who had known him in the Island of Santo Domingo said that it was the Divine Will that he should die that death, for he had killed his wife, a good and honourable person, for no fault whatever, and had sought false witnesses who swore that she had bewitched him.

I must leave off telling old stories and say how we went to the city of Texcoco and what happened there.



MEXICO.

CITY OF MEXICO
CATHEDRAL

GUADALUPE

PEÑON DE TEPIC

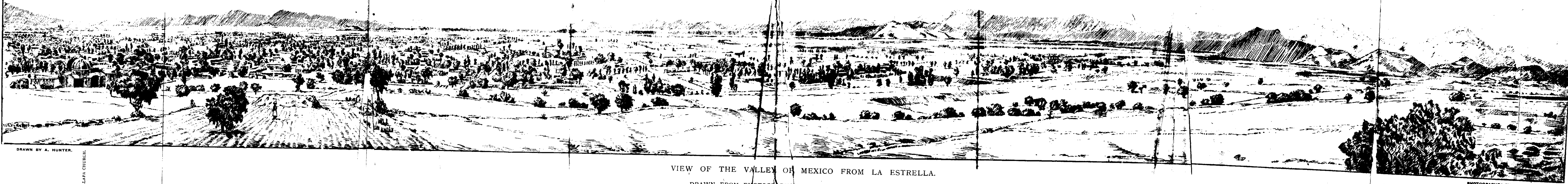
TEXCOCO

PEÑON DEL TEPE

INTACCHUATL, VO

POPOCATEPETL, Vol.

To face page 40.



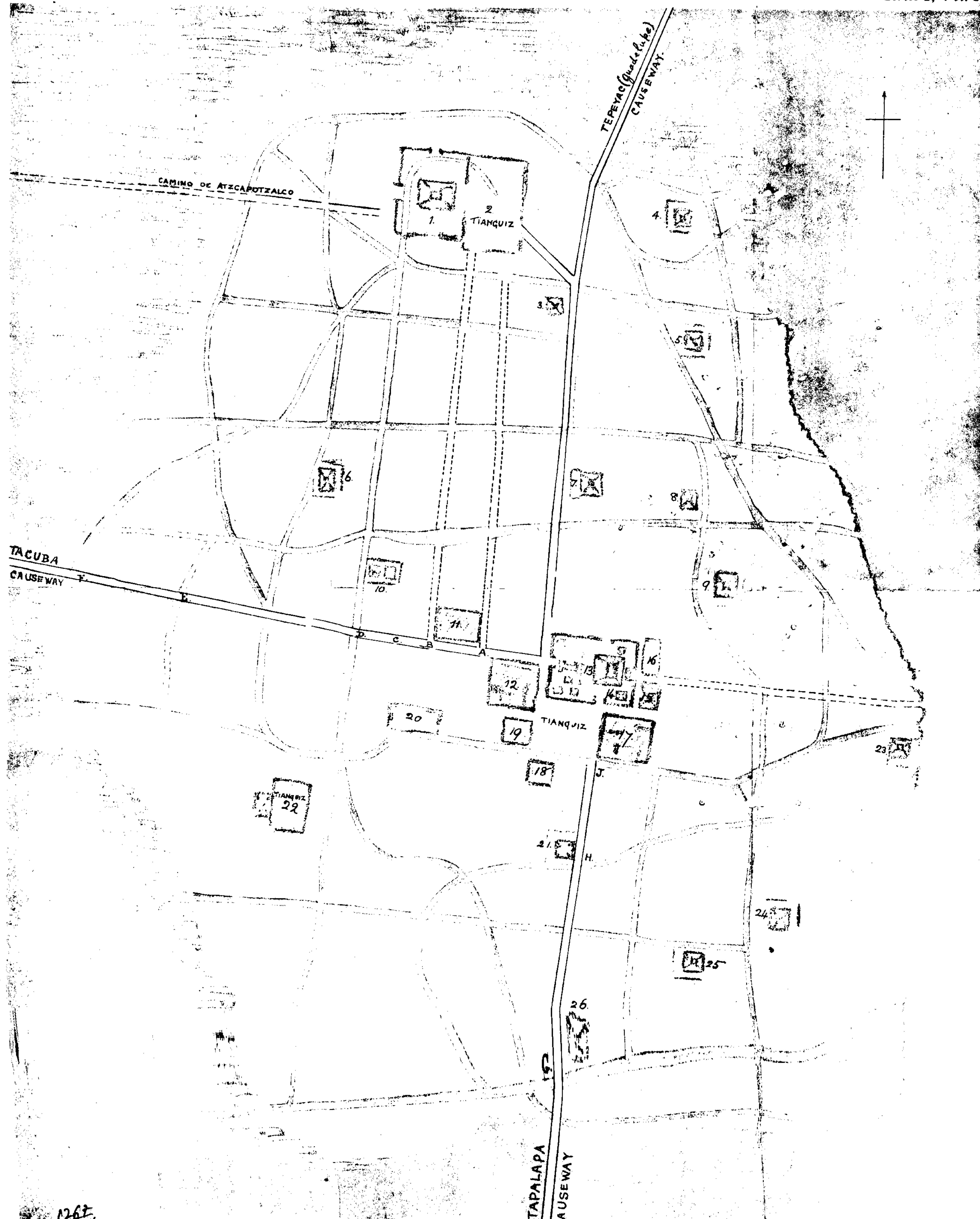
DRAWN BY A. HUNTER.

PALAPA CHURCH.

VIEW OF THE VALLEY OF MEXICO FROM LA ESTRELLA.

DRAWN FROM PHOTOGRAPHS AND CORRECTED ON THE SPOT.

PHOTOGRAPHED BY A. P. MAUDSLAY.



**A Rough Sketch Map of the City of Mexico.
Showing the direction of the Principal Causeways and Canals
&
the Sites of some of the principal buildings and Teocallis
at the time of the Conquest.**

This Map is compiled from various well-known sources, with some slight alterations.

As some of the locations are still in dispute it does not pretend to accuracy.

No attempt is made to show the numerous Smaller Canals
although the position of some of them can still be traced.

1 inch = 1000 feet.

1. GREAT TEOCALLI OF TLATELOLCO.
2. TIANGUIZ (Market-place).
3. XACACULCO — STA. ANA.
4. TENANTITCO — CONCEPCION TEQUIZPECA.
5. XOCOTILLAN — SAN ANTONIO TEPITO.
6. CUEPOPAN — SANTA MARIA LA REDONDA.
7. TEZONTLALMACOYAN — STA. CATERINA MARTYR.
8. EL CARMEN.
9. ATZACALCO — SAN SEBASTIAN.
10. CONVENTO DE LA CONCEPCION
11. PALACE OF GUATEMOC.
12. OLD PALACE OF MONTEZUMA.
13. GREAT TEOCALLI OF TENOCHTITLAN.
14. TEOCALLI OF TEZCATLIPOCA.
15. AVIARY. (Casa de Aves).
16. PALACE OF AXAYACATL.
17. NEW PALACE OF MONTEZUMA.
18. PALACE OF TILANCALQUI.
19. CUICACALLI, DANCE HOUSE (Casa de Danzas).
20. HOUSE OF THE WILD ANIMALS (Casa de Fieras).
21. HUITZILAN — HOSPITAL DE JESUS NAZARENO.
22. TEOCALLI & TIANGUIZ DE MOYOTLAN, — SAN JUAN DE LA PENITENCIA.
23. SAN LAZARO.
24. AYAHCALCO — ST. TOMÁS APÓSTOL.
25. HUITZNAHUAC AYAHCULTITAN, — SAN PABLO.
26. XOLUCO, — SAN ANTONIO ABAD.
- A. 1st CORTADURA.
- B. 2nd CORTADURA.
- C. 3rd CORTADURA.
- D. TEPANTZINGO, — PUENTE DE LA MARISCALA.
- E. TOLTEACALLI, — SAN HIPOLITO.
- F. TOLTECAACAIAPAN, — PUENTE DE ALVARADO.
- G. XOLUCO, — PUENTE DE SAN ANTONIO ABAD.
- H. HUITZILAN.
- J. PUENTE DE PALACIO.



BOOK X.

THE RETURN TO THE VALLEY.

CHAPTER CXXXVII.

How we marched with all our Army on the way to the City of Texcoco, and what happened to us on the road, and other things that took place.



WHEN Cortés saw that he possessed such a goodly store of muskets and powder and crossbows and realised the strong desire of all of us, both Captains and soldiers, again to attack the great City of Mexico, he decided to ask the Caciques of Tlaxcala to give him ten thousand Indian warriors to join us on an expedition to Texcoco; which after Mexico is one of the largest cities in the whole of New Spain. He made them a good speech about it, and in reply to the requisition, Xicotenga the elder (who by that time had become a Christian and was called Don Lorenzo de Vargas as I have already stated), promptly said that he would give him with the utmost willingness not only ten thousand men but many more if he chose to take them, and that another valiant Cacique, our great friend Chichimecatecle would go as their captain. Cortés thanked him for this.

and after we had made our muster, (I do not well remember what was the strength of our force both of soldiers and the others,) on the day after the feast of the Nativity in the year 1520 we began our march in excellent order, as was ever our custom, and slept at a pueblo subject to Tlaxcala,¹ and the people of the town gave us what we needed. From there onward it was Mexican territory, and we went more cautiously, our artillery musketeers and crossbowmen arranged in careful order, and with four mounted scouts always [in advance], and four very active soldiers with swords and shields accompanying those horsemen, to look out for the bad places and see if they were practicable for horses, because on the road we had been warned that a dangerous pass on the Sierra had that day been blocked up by felling trees, for it was well known in Mexico and Texcoco that we were marching towards their city. That day we met no obstacles whatever and camped at the foot of the Sierra, a march of about three leagues. The night was very cold, but we got through it [safely] thanks to our patrols, sentinels, watchmen and scouts. When the dawn came we began to ascend a small pass and in some difficult places like barrancas the hillside had been cut away so that we could not pass, and many pine trees and other timber had been placed across the track, but having so many friendly Tlaxcalans with us, a clearing was soon made, and sending a company of musketeers and crossbowmen in advance we marched on with the utmost caution, our allies cutting and pushing aside trees to enable the horsemen to pass, until we got to the top

¹ Cortés (3rd letter) gives the name of this town as Tescmoluca (San Martín Tescmelucan) and the name of the village on the west side of the range, where the army slept the night before entering Texcoco, as Coatepeque, which shows that the range was probably crossed by way of Río Frio and near the volcano of Telapón.

of the Sierra. Then we descended a little and caught sight of the lake of Mexico and its great cities standing in the water, and when we saw it we gave great thanks to God for allowing us to see it again.

Then we remembered our late defeat, when we were driven out of Mexico, and we vowed, God willing, to adopt a different method of fighting until we could blockade the city. We descended the mountain to where we saw great smoke signals, which were being made by the people of Texcoco, as well as by their subject pueblos, and marching onward we came upon a large squadron of Mexican and Texcocan warriors who were waiting for us at a bad pass through a rocky thicket where there was an apparently broken down wooden bridge, and a deep gulch and waterfall below it. However, we soon defeated the squadron and passed in perfect safety. Then to hear the shouts that they gave from the farms and from the barrancas! however they did nothing else, and that only from places where the horsemen could not reach them. Our friends the Tlaxcalans carried off fowls and whatever else they could steal, and they did not abstain from this although Cortés had ordered them not to make war on the people if they were not attacked. The Tlaxcalans answered that if the people were well disposed and peaceable they would not come out on the road and attack us as they did at the passage of the barranca and bridge, where they tried to stop our advance.

Let me go back to my story and say how we went to sleep that night at a deserted pueblo subject to Texcoco¹ and we posted our watchmen, sentinels and scouts and sent out patrols, and took every precaution lest we should be attacked that night by the numerous squadrons of warriors who were waiting for us at another bad

¹ Coatepec.

pass, which we had heard about from five Mexicans whom we had captured at the first bridge of which I have spoken, who told us what the squadrons were doing. From what we afterwards learned they did not dare to attack us, nor even to await our coming, for it seems that there were disputes and factions between the Mexicans and Texcocans, who were not yet fully recovered from the small pox, which sickness had attacked them and spread throughout the land. Moreover as they knew that in the affairs of Guacachula and Izucar, and at Tepeaca Jalacingo and Castilblanco we had defeated all the Mexican garrisons, and by this had gained great renown, and as they believed that we were bringing all the forces of Tlaxcala and Huexotzingo with us they decided not to await our coming, and in all this the Lord Jesus Christ guided us.

As soon as dawn came we ranged ourselves in good order, the artillery as well as muskets and crossbows, and with our scouts ahead on the lookout, we began our march towards Texcoco, which was about two leagues distant from where we slept. However, we had not marched half a league when we saw our scouts returning at a breakneck pace and looking very cheerful, and they told Cortés that ten Indians were approaching unarmed and carrying golden devices and banners, and that yells and shouts no longer came from all the huts and farms they had passed on the road as had happened the day before.

To all appearance everything was peaceful and Cortés and all of us captains and soldiers rejoiced at it. Then Cortés ordered a halt until seven Indian Chieftains, natives of Texcoco, came up to us. They carried a golden banner, and a long lance, and before reaching us they lowered the banner and knelt down (which is a sign of peace), and when they came before Cortés

who had our interpreters Doña Marina and Jerónimo de Aguilar standing by him, they said, "Malinche, our Lord and Chieftain of Texcoco, Coanacotzin,¹ sends to beg you to receive him into your friendship, and he is awaiting you peaceably in the City of Texcoco, and in proof thereof accept this banner of gold, and he begs as a favour that you will order your Tlaxcalans and your brethren not to do any harm to his land, and that you will come and lodge in the city where he will provide you with all that you need." Moreover they said that the troops which had been stationed in the ravines and bad passes did not belong to Texcoco, but were Mexicans sent by Guatemoc.

When Cortés heard these words of peace he rejoiced greatly and so did we all, and he embraced the messengers especially three of them who were relations of the good Montezuma and were known to all of us as having been his captains. When the message had been considered Cortés at once sent for the Tlaxcalan Captains and ordered them, in the most friendly way, not to do any damage nor to take anything whatever in this country because peace had been made, and they did as he told them, but he did not forbid their taking food if it were only maize and beans, or even fowls and dogs, of which there was an abundance, all the houses being full of them.

Then Cortés took counsel with his Captains and it seemed to them all that this begging for peace (in the way it was done), was a trick, for if it had been true it would not have been done so suddenly, and they would have brought food. Nevertheless, Cortés accepted the banner, which was worth about eighty pesos, and thanked the messengers and said to them, that he was not in the

habit of doing evil or damage to any vassals of His Majesty, on the contrary he would favour and protect them, and if they kept the peace which they had announced he would protect them against the Mexicans; that as they might have seen, he had already ordered the Tlaxcalans not to do any damage in their country, and they would avoid doing so for the future, that they well knew how in that city over forty Spaniards our brethren, and two hundred Tlaxcalans had been killed at the time when we were leaving Mexico, and many loads of gold and other spoil which belonged to them had been stolen, and that he must beg their chieftain Coanacotzin¹ and the other chiefs and captains of Texcoco to restore to us the gold and the cloths, but as to the death of the Spaniards, there was no remedy for it, he would therefore not ask them for any.

The messengers replied that they would report to their Lord as he ordered them to do, but that he who had ordered the Spaniards to be killed and who took all the spoil was a chieftain named Cuilahuac² who had been chosen King of Mexico after Montezuma's death, and that they took to him in Mexico nearly all the Teules and they had been promptly sacrificed to Huichilobos.

When Cortés heard that reply, he made no answer, lest he should lose his temper or threaten them, but he bade them Godspeed. One of the ambassadors remained in our company, and we went on to a suburb of Texcoco called Guatinchan or Guaxuntan,³ I have forgotten the name, and there they gave us plenty to eat and all that we had need of, and we cast down some Idols that were in the houses where we lodged, and early the next day we went to the city of Texcoco. In none of the streets

¹ Cuacayutzin in the text.

² Coadlabaca in the text.

³ Coatlinchan.

nor houses did we see any women, boys or children, only terrified looking men, more like men who were at war. We took up our quarters in some great rooms and halls, and Cortés at once summoned the captains and most of us soldiers and told us not to leave the precincts of the great courts, and to keep well on the alert until we could see how things were going, for it did not seem to him that the city was peaceful. He ordered Pedro de Alvarado and Cristóbal de Olid and some other soldiers, and me among them, to ascend the great Cue which was very lofty and to take twenty musketeers with us as a guard, and to look from the lofty Cue over the City and the lake, for it could all be seen from there, and we saw that all the inhabitants of those towns were moving off with their goods and chattels, and women and children, some to the hills and others to the reed thickets in the lake, and that all the lake was thronged with canoes great and small.

As soon as Cortés knew this he wanted to capture the Lord of Texcoco who had sent him the golden banner, and when certain priests whom Cortés sent as messengers went to summon him, he had already placed himself in safety, for he was the very first to flee to Mexico with many other chieftains. We passed that night with great precautions in the matter of watchmen, patrols and scouts, and very early the next day Cortés ordered all the Indian chieftains who had remained in Texcoco to be summoned before him, for as it was a very large city there were many other chieftains of the parties opposing the Cacique who had fled, with whom there had been discussions and disputes about the command and Kingship of that city. When they came before Cortés he learned from them how and since when Coanacotzin had ruled over the city. They told him that Coanacotzin in his desire to seize the power

had infamously killed his elder brother Cuicuitzacatzin¹ with the assistance given him for that purpose by the Prince of Mexico, who as I have often said was called Cuitlahuac, the one that made war on us when we were fleeing after the death of Montezuma. Furthermore, there were among them other Lords who had a better right to the kingdom of Texcoco than he who now held it, and that it should go to a youth who at that time became a Christian with much religious pomp, and was named Don Hernando Cortés, for our Captain was his Godfather.² They said that this youth was the legitimate son of the Lord and King of Texcoco and that his father was named Nezahualpilli,³ and presently without any further delay, and with the greatest festive celebration and rejoicing throughout Texcoco, they appointed him their natural Lord and King, with all the ceremonies which they were accustomed to render to their so-called Kings; and in perfect peace and with the love of all his vassals, and of the neighbouring towns, he governed absolutely and was obeyed. For his better instruction in the matters of our faith and to improve his manners, and so that he should learn our language, Cortés ordered that he should have as his tutors Antonio de Villa Real, who was the husband of a very beautiful lady named Ysabel de Ojeda, and a Bachelor of Arts named Escobar; and he appointed as Captain of Texcoco, (with instructions to see that Don Hernando had no dealings with

¹ Cuxcuxca in the text. This was the youth who had been made Cacique of Texcoco on the recommendation of Cortés when Cacamatzin had been taken prisoner, see page 122, vol. ii.

² According to the Historian Ixtlixochitl, on the flight of Coanacotzin, Cortés nominated Tecocoltzin, a son of Nezahualpilli, as ruler of Texcoco, but this Cacique lived only a few weeks, and on the nomination of Cortés he was succeeded by a youthful son of Nezahualpilli named Ahuaxpitzactzin, who received in baptism the name of Hernando Cortés.

³ Neçabalpinçintle in the text.

any of the Mexicans) a good soldier named Pedro Sánchez Farfan, who was the husband of that good and honourable woman Maria Destrada.

Let us leave off talking about the great services of this Cacique and say how greatly loved and how well obeyed he was by his people, and let me relate how Cortés asked for a large force of Indian labourers to broaden and deepen the canals and ditches through which we were to draw the launches to the lake, when they were finished and ready to sail. He also explained to Don Hernando himself and the other chieftains what was the reason and purpose in having the launches built, and how we were going to blockade Mexico. Don Hernando offered all the assistance within his power and that of his vassals, and not only in that which he was ordered to do, but he promised to send messengers to all the neighbouring pueblos and tell them to become vassals of His Majesty, and accept our friendship and authority against Mexico. All this was arranged, and we were all well lodged, each captain by himself, and the posts and positions were settled where we were to rally in case of a sudden attack by the Mexicans, for we were to guard the margin of their lake, because from time to time Guatemoc sent great pirogues and canoes full of warriors who came to see if they could catch us off our guard.

About that time certain pueblos subject to Texcoco came to ask for peace, and for pardon if they had erred in the late wars and been concerned in the death of any Spaniards. These pueblos were called Coatlinchan¹ and . . . Cortes spoke to them all very kindly and pardoned them.

¹ Coatlinchan in the text. A blank space is left in the original; the names omitted were probably Huexotla and Atenco (cf. Cortés's Third Letter).

I wish to say that not a day passed that there were not seven or eight thousand Indians at work on the ditch and canal and they opened and broadened it so well that ships of great size could have floated in it. As at that time we had over seven thousand Tlaxcalans in our company and they were anxious to gain honour and fight against the Mexicans, Cortés determined, that as we had such faithful comrades, we would make an expedition and have a look at a fine town named Iztapalapa, through which we had passed when we first came to Mexico. It was the Lord of Iztapalapa who had been raised to be King of Mexico on the death of the Great Montezuma, and I have often said that his name was Cuitlahuac.¹ We knew that this town was doing us all the harm that was possible because it was very hostile to Chalco and Tlamanalco, and Amecameca and Chimaloacan which pueblos wanted to make friends with us, and the people of Iztapalapa prevented them. As we had already been twelve days in Texcoco without doing anything to record, beyond what I have already related, we made this expedition to Iztapalapa, and what happened there I will now relate.

CHAPTER CXXXVIII.

How we went to Iztapalapa with Cortés who took Cristóbal de Olid and Pedro de Alvarado in his company and left Gonzalo de Sandoval to guard Texcoco, and what happened to us in the capture of the town, and other things that were done there.

AFTER spending twelve days in Texcoco the Tlaxcalans, whom I have repeatedly mentioned, had exhausted their provisions, and they were so numerous that the people of Texcoco were unable to furnish them with sufficient quan-

¹ Coadlabaca in the text.

tities of food. As we were unwilling that they should become a burden to them [the people of Texcoco] and as the Tlaxcalans themselves were most desirous of fighting the Mexicans and avenging the death of the many Tlaxcalans who had been killed and offered as sacrifices during the past defeats that I have described, Cortés determined that we should set out on our march to Iztapalapa (which is distant about four leagues¹ from Texcoco,) with himself as Commander in Chief, and with Andrés de Tápia, Cristóbal de Olid, and thirteen horsemen, twenty crossbowmen, six musketeers and two hundred and twenty soldiers, and our Tlaxcalan allies, besides twenty chieftains from Texcoco given us by Don Hernando, (and we knew that these latter were the cousins and relations of this same Cacique and enemies of Guatemoc who had already been raised to be King in Mexico). I have already said before in the Chapter² [LXXXVII] which speaks of it, that more than half the houses [in Iztapalapa] were built in the water and the other half on dry land. We kept on our way in good order, as was our custom, and as the Mexicans always held watchmen and garrisons and warriors ready to oppose us and to reinforce any of their towns when they knew that we were going to attack them, they warned the people of Iztapalapa to be prepared, and sent over eight thousand Mexicans to help them. Like good warriors they awaited our coming on dry land, both the people of Iztapalapa and the Mexicans who had come to their assistance, and for a good while they fought very bravely against us. Then the horsemen broke through their ranks, followed by the crossbows and muskets, and all our Tlaxcalan allies who charged on them like mad dogs, and the enemy quickly abandoned the open ground and took refuge in

¹ Really about 30 miles.

² There is a blank space in the original.

the town. However, this was an arranged thing and a stratagem that they had planned, and it would have caused us damage enough if we had not quickly got out of the town into which they had retired. This was the way they did it: they fled and got into their canoes which were in the water, and into the houses which stood in the lake, others retired among the reeds, and as it was a dark night, they gave us a chance, (without making a noise or showing signs of hostility) to take up quarters on dry land,¹ well contented with the spoil we had taken and still more with the victory we had gained. While we were in this situation, with watchmen posted, and spies, patrols and even scouts sent out, when we least expected it such a flood of water rushed through the whole town, that if the chieftains whom we had brought from Texcoco had not cried out, and warned us to get out of the houses to dry land as quickly as we could, we should all have been drowned, for the enemy had burst open the canals of fresh and salt water and torn down a causeway, so that the water rose up all of a sudden. As our allies the Tlaxcalans were not accustomed to water and did not know how to swim, two of them were drowned, and we, at great risk to our lives, all thoroughly drenched and with our powder spoilt, managed to get out without our belongings, and in that condition, very cold, and without any supper, we passed a bad night. Worst of all were the jeers and the shouts and whistles which the people of Iztapalapa and the Mexicans uttered from their houses and canoes. However, there was still a worse thing to happen to us, for as they knew in Mexico about the plan that had been made to drown us by breaking

¹ This is rather confusing; the Spaniards must have occupied houses built on land only a few inches above the level of the lake, and the term "dry land" must have been used to distinguish them from houses built on piles in the lake.

down the causeway and canals, we found waiting for us on land and in the lake many batalions of warriors, and, as soon as day dawned, they made such an attack on us that we could hardly bear up against it; but they did not defeat us, although they killed two soldiers and one horse, and wounded many both of us and the Tlaxcalans. Little by little the attack slackened and we returned to Texcoco, half ashamed at the trick and stratagem to throw us into the water, and also because we gained very little credit in the battle they fought against us afterwards, as our powder was exhausted. Nevertheless, it frightened them, and they had enough to do in burying and burning their dead, and curing their wounds and rebuilding their houses. There I will leave them, and relate how other pueblos came to Texcoco to make peace, and what else happened.

CHAPTER CXXXIX.

How three pueblos in the neighbourhood of Texcoco sent to ask for peace and pardon for the wars that were passed, and for the death of Spaniards, and the excuses that they made about it, and how Gonzalo de Sandoval went to Chalco and Tlamanalco¹ to help them against the Mexicans, and what else happened.

WHEN we had been two days in Texcoco after our return from the expedition to Iztapalapa, three pueblos came peaceably to Cortés to beg pardon for the past wars and the deaths of Spaniards whom they had killed. The excuses they gave were that it was by the order of the Prince of Mexico, called Cuiclahuac² (who was chosen after the death of Montezuma) that they went out to fight

¹ By an unfortunate oversight Tlamanalco is not marked in the Map of the Valley of Mexico; it is marked on the Map in Vol. I.

² Coatlavaca in the text.

in company with his other vassals, and that if they killed some Teules and captured and robbed others it was this same Prince who [had ordered it and] had commanded them to carry the Teules to Mexico, and they had done so, and taken the Teules to Mexico to be offered as sacrifices, and they had also taken there the gold and the horses and the cloths, and now they begged pardon for it, for the reason that no blame could attach to them, because they had been ordered and compelled by force to do it. These pueblos that came at this time were called Tepecucoc¹ and Otumba. The name of the other pueblo I do not remember, but I do remember that this town of Otumba was where they fought the celebrated battle against us when we were fleeing from Mexico, where we were opposed to the greatest armies of warriors that ever came against us in all New Spain, and where they thought that we could never escape alive, as I have related more fully in former chapters which treat of that subject. As those pueblos knew that they were guilty, and were aware that we had made an expedition against Iztapalapa, and that its inhabitants had been the worse for our coming (although they did try to drown us in the water and [aided by] many squadrons of Mexicans had borne the brunt of two pitched battles) in short, so as not to find themselves in similar troubles as those that had already happened, they came to sue for peace before we could go to their pueblos to punish them. As Cortés saw that there was nothing else to be done at the time, he pardoned them, but he gave them a severe reprimand, and they bound themselves by many promises always to be hostile to the Mexicans and to be the vassals of His Majesty, and to serve us, and so they did.

Let us stop talking about these pueblos, and say how

¹ Tepetexcoco?

about the same time the inhabitants of the pueblo named Mixquic,¹ which is also called Venezuela, which stands in the lake, came to beg for peace and friendship. These people had apparently never been on good terms with the Mexicans, and in their hearts they detested them. Cortés and all of us were greatly pleased at these people coming to seek our friendship, because their pueblo was in the lake, and through them we hoped to get at their neighbours who were likewise established on the water, so Cortés thanked them greatly and dismissed them with promises and gentle speeches. While this was taking place they came to tell Cortés that great squadrons of Mexicans were advancing on the four pueblos which had been the first to seek our friendship,² named Guatinchan or Guaxultán³ and two other pueblos whose names I forget,⁴ and they told Cortés that they did not dare to stay in their houses and that they wished to flee to the mountains or to come to Texcoco where we were, and they said so many things to Cortés to induce him to help them, that he promptly got ready twenty horsemen and two hundred soldiers, thirteen crossbowmen and ten musketeers and took with him Pedro de Alvarado and Cristóbal de Olid who was Maestre de Campo, and went to the pueblos which, as I have said, had sent to Cortés to make so many complaints, a distance from Texcoco of about two leagues. It appeared to be true that the Mexicans had sent to threaten them and warn them that they would be destroyed for accepting our friendship, but the point of dispute over which they uttered the worst threats concerned some large maize

¹ Mezquique in the text.

² See Chapter CXXXVII.

³ Coatlinchan.

⁴ These towns were probably Huexotla, to the south of Texcoco, and Atengo to the N.W.

plantations lying near the lake which were ready for the harvest, whence the people of Texcoco were providing our camp. The Mexicans wanted to take the maize, for they said that it was theirs, for it had been the custom for those four pueblos to sow and harvest the maize plantations on that plain for the priests of the Mexican Idols. Over this question of the maize field many Indians had been killed, both on one side and the other. When Cortés understood about it, after telling the people not to have any fear, but to remain in their homes, he promised them that when the time came for them to go and gather maize, either for their own needs or to supply our camp, he would send a Captain and many horsemen and soldiers to protect those who went to fetch the maize. They were well pleased with what Cortés had said to them, and we returned to Texcoco. From that time forward, whenever we had need of maize in our camp, we mustered the Indian warriors from all those towns and with our Tlaxcalan allies and ten horsemen and a hundred soldiers with some musketeers and crossbowmen, we went after the maize. I say this because I went twice for it myself and on one occasion we had a capital skirmish with some powerful Mexican Squadrons which had come in more than a thousand canoes, and awaited us in the maize fields, and as we had our allies with us, although the Mexicans fought like brave men, we made them take to their canoes, but they killed one of our soldiers and wounded twelve, and they also wounded some Tlaxcalans, but the enemy had not much to brag about for fifteen or twenty of them were lying dead, and we carried off five of them as prisoners.

Let us leave this and say how next day we heard the news that the people of Chalco and Tlamanalco and their dependencies wished to make peace, but on

account of the Mexican garrisons stationed in their towns, they had no opportunity to do so, and that these Mexicans did much damage in their country and took their women, especially if they were handsome, and violated them before their fathers and mothers or husbands.

We had also heard that the timber for building the launches had been cut and prepared at Tlaxcala, and as the time was passing, and none of the timber had yet been brought to Texcoco, most of the soldiers were a good deal worried about it. Then, in addition to this, the people came from the pueblo of Venezuela which they call Mixquic¹ and from other friendly pueblos to tell Cortés that the Mexicans were coming to attack them because they had accepted our friendship. Moreover some of our friends the Tlaxcalans, who had already grabbed clothing and salt and gold and other spoil, wished to return home, but they did not dare to do so because the road was not safe. When Cortés found that to succour some of those towns that clamoured for help and to give assistance to the people of Chalco as well, which would enable them to come and accept our friendship, would make it impossible to give security to either one or the other (for in Texcoco itself we had to be keeping constant watch and to be very much on the alert) he decided to put aside all other matters and first of all to go to Chalco and Tlamanalco. For that purpose he sent Gonzalo de Sandoval and Francisco de Lugo with fifteen horsemen and two hundred soldiers and musketeers and crossbowmen and our Tlaxcalan allies, with orders by all means to break up and disperse the Mexican garrisons and to drive them out of Chalco and Tlamanalco, and leave the road to Tlaxcala

¹ Mezquique in the text.

quite clear, so that one could come and go to Villa Rica without any molestation from the Mexican warriors. As soon as this was arranged he sent some Texcocan Indians very secretly to Chalco to advise the people about it, so that they might be fully prepared to fall on the Mexican garrison either by day or night. As they wished for nothing better, the people of Chalco kept thoroughly prepared.

When Gonzalo de Sandoval marched with his army he considered it advisable to leave a rearguard of five horsemen and as many crossbowmen with [to protect] the large number of the Tlaxcalans, who were laden with the spoil that they had seized. As the Mexicans always had watchmen and spies on the lookout, they knew that our people were marching on Chalco, and in addition to the garrison posted in Chalco, they had recently got together many squadrons of warriors, who fell on the rearguard where the Tlaxcalans were marching with their spoil, and punished them severely, and our five horsemen and the crossbowmen could not hold out against them, for two of the crossbowmen were killed and the others were wounded, and although Gonzalo de Sandoval promptly turned round on the enemy and defeated them, and killed ten Mexicans, the lake was so near by that the enemy managed to take refuge in the canoes in which they had come. All that country is thickly peopled with subjects of Mexico.

When the enemy had been put to flight and Sandoval saw that the five horsemen, whom he had left in the rearguard with the musketeers and crossbowmen, were wounded both they and their horses, and that two crossbowmen were dead and the others wounded, although [I repeat] he saw all this, he did not fail to say to the others whom he had left to defend the rear, that they were not worth much for not having been able to resist the enemy and defend

themselves and our allies, and that he was very angry with them; they were from among those who had lately come from Spain, and he told them that it was very clear that they did not know what fighting was like. Then he placed in safety all the Tlaxcalan Indians with their spoil, and he also despatched some letters which Cortés was sending to Villa Rica, in which Cortés told the Captain, who had remained in command there, all that had happened about our conquests, and about his intention to blockade Mexico, and that he [the Captain] should always take care to keep a good lookout, and if there were any soldiers who were disposed to take part in the fighting, that he should send them to Tlaxcala, but that they should not go beyond that town until the roads were safer, for they would run great risk.

When the messengers had been despatched and the Tlaxcalans sent off to their homes, Sandoval returned towards Chalco which was near by, marching with the utmost caution with his scouts out ahead, for he knew well that from any of the pueblos and hamlets by which he passed he might be suddenly attacked by the Mexicans. As he marched on towards Chalco he saw many squadrons of Mexicans coming against him, and on a level plain, where there were large plantations of maize and magueys (the plant from which they extract the wine that they drink), they attacked him fiercely with darts, arrows, and stones from slings, and with long lances with which to kill the horses. When Sandoval saw such a host of warriors opposed to him, he cheered on his men and twice broke through the ranks of the enemy, and with the aid of the muskets and crossbows, and the few allies who had stayed with him, he defeated them, although they wounded five soldiers and six horses, and many of our allies. However, he had fallen on them so quickly and with such fury that he made them pay well for the

damage they had first done. When the people of Chalco knew that Sandoval was near, they went out to receive him on the road with much honour and rejoicing. In that defeat eight Mexicans were taken prisoners, three of them chieftains of importance.

When all this had been done, Sandoval said that on the following day he wished to return to Texcoco, and the people of Chalco said they wanted to go with him to see and speak to Malinche and take with them the two sons of the Lord of that province who had died of small-pox a few days before, and before dying had charged all his chieftains and elders to take his sons to see the Captain, so that by his hand they might be installed Lords of Chalco, and that all should endeavour to become subjects of the Great King of the Teules, for it was quite true that his ancestors had told him that men with beards who came from the direction of the sunrise would govern these lands, and from what he had seen, we were those men.

Sandoval soon returned with all his army to Texcoco and took in his company the sons of the Lord of Chalco and the other chieftains, and the eight Mexican prisoners.

When Cortés knew of his arrival he was overjoyed, and when Sandoval had given an account of his journey, and how the Lords of Chalco had come with him, he went to his quarters. The Caciques presented themselves at once before Cortés, and, after having paid him every sign of respect, they told him of the willingness with which they would become vassals of His Majesty, as the father of these two youths had commanded them to do, [and begged] that they might receive the chieftainship from his hands. When they had made their speeches, they presented Cortés with rich jewels worth about two hundred pesos de oro. When Cortés thoroughly understood through our interpreters Doña Marina and Jerónimo de

Aguilar what they had said, he showed them much kindness and embraced them, and under his hand gave the Lordship of Chalco to the elder brother with more than the half of the subject pueblos, and those of Tlamanalco and Chimal he gave to the younger brother together with Ayotzingo and other subject pueblos. After Cortés had given much advice to the principal elders and to the newly appointed Caciques, they told him that they desired to return to their country, and that in everything they would serve His Majesty and us in his Royal name against the Mexicans, such having always been their wish, but owing to the Mexican garrisons which had been stationed in their province, they could not come earlier to render their fealty. They also gave Cortés news of two Spaniards who had been sent to that province for maize, before we had been driven out of Mexico, whom (so that the Culhuans should not kill them) they had one night placed in safety among our friends at Huexotzingo, so that their lives were saved. We already knew about this some time before, for one of these men was he who went to Tlaxcala.

Cortés thanked them very sincerely for this, and begged them to wait in Texcoco for two days, as he was about to send a Captain to Tlaxcala, for the timber and planking, who would take them in his company, and conduct them to their country, so that the Mexicans should not attack them on the road; for this they thanked him greatly and went away well contented.

Let us stop talking about this and say how Cortés decided to send to Mexico the eight prisoners, whom Sandoval had captured in the rout at Chalco, to tell the Prince named Guatemoc, whom the Mexicans had then chosen as king, how greatly he desired to avoid being the cause of his ruin and that of so great a city; they should therefore sue for peace, and he would pardon

them for the losses and deaths we had suffered from them in the city, and would ask nothing from them, and he [Guatemoc] should remember that it is easy to remedy a war in the beginning but very difficult towards the middle and at the end, and that finally they would be destroyed; that he [Cortés] knew all about the ditches and the warlike preparations, and the store of darts and arrows, lances, broadswords, round stones and slings and all other warlike material which they were continually making and preparing, but it was a mere waste of time and useless for them to do it, and how could he [Guatemoc] desire all his people to be slain and his city destroyed? He [Guatemoc] should bear in mind the great power of our Lord God in whom we believe and whom we worship, and who always helps us, and he should always remember that all the pueblos in the neighbourhood were now on our side, that the Tlaxcalans had no wish but for war, in order to avenge treachery to, and the deaths of their compatriots. Let them lay down their arms and make peace, and he [Cortés] would promise the Mexicans that he would always treat them with great honour. Doña Marina and Aguilar made use of many other sound arguments and gave them good advice on the subject. Those eight Indians went before Guatemoc, but he refused to send any answer whatever, and went on making dykes and gathering stores, and sending to all the provinces an order that if any of us could be captured straying, we should be brought to Mexico to be sacrificed, and that when he sent to summon them, they should come at once with their arms, and he sent to remit and free them from much of their tribute, and even made them great promises.

Let us cease talking about the preparations for war that they were making in Mexico, and say how again many Indians came from the pueblos of Guantimoch

or Guaxuntlan¹ who had been wounded by the Mexicans because they had accepted our friendship, and on account of the disputes over the maize fields, which they had been accustomed to sow for the Mexican priests during the time when they were their dependents, as I have already explained in the Chapter that treats of it. As they were situated close to the Lake of Mexico, every week the Mexicans came and attacked them and even carried off some of them prisoners to the city. When Cortés heard this, he determined to go again himself with a hundred soldiers and twenty horsemen and twenty musketeers and crossbowmen, and he had good spies on the lookout to see when the Mexican troops were coming, so that he might be promptly informed. As the distance from Texcoco was only one or two leagues, on one Wednesday morning he arrived at dawn where the Mexican squadrons were posted, and he fought them in such a manner that they were soon broken up and took refuge in their canoes on the lake. Four Mexicans were killed there and three others were taken prisoners, and Cortés returned with his people to Texcoco. From that time forward the Culuans did not attack those pueblos any more. Let us leave this subject and say how Cortés sent Gonzalo de Sandoval to Tlaxcala for the timber and planking for the launches, and what happened to him on the road.

¹ Coatlinchan.

CHAPTER CXL.

How Gonzalo de Sandoval went to Tlaxcala to fetch the timber for the launches, and what else he did on the road at a pueblo which we named the town of the Moors (*el Pueblo Morisco*).

As we were always longing to get the launches finished, and to begin the blockade of Mexico our Captain Cortés, so as not to waste time to no purpose, ordered Gonzalo de Sandoval to go for the timber, and to take with him two hundred soldiers, twenty musketeers and crossbowmen, fifteen horsemen and a large company of Tlaxcalans as well as twenty chieftains from Texcoco; also to take in his company the youths and the elders from Chalco and to place them in safety in their towns.

Before they set out Cortés established a friendship between the Tlaxcalans and the people of Chalco. Formerly the people of Chalco used to belong to the party and the confederation of the Mexicans, and when the Mexicans went to war against Tlaxcala they took people from Chalco to aid them, as they lived in that neighbourhood, and from that time the Tlaxcalans bore them ill will and treated them as enemies; but, as I have said, here in Texcoco Cortés made them friends again, so that a great friendship continued between them, and from that time on they helped one another.

Cortés also ordered Gonzalo de Sandoval as soon as he had taken the people of Chalco to their homes, to go to a pueblo subject to Texcoco which was near by the road, to which we had given the name in our language of "*El Pueblo Morisco*" [the town of the Moors], because more than forty soldiers of the followers of Narvaez and some of our own men and many Tlaxcalans had been killed in that pueblo, and the people had also stolen three loads of gold, when we were turned out of Mexico.

The soldiers whom they had killed were those who were on the way from Vera Cruz to Mexico when we were going to the assistance of Pedro de Alvarado. Cortés charged Sandoval not to leave that pueblo without punishing it well, although it was the people of Texcoco who really deserved the punishment for they were the aggressors, and it was their captains who did the damage, for at that time they were brothers in arms of the people of the great city of Mexico, but as nothing else could then be done, no punishment was meted out to Texcoco.

Let us go back to our story, which is that Gonzalo de Sandoval did what his Captain ordered him, both in going to the Province of Chalco which was not much out of the way, and leaving there the two youths who were its Lords, and in going to the Pueblo Morisco.

Before our soldiers arrived at this pueblo the people already knew through their spies that they were coming down on them and they abandoned the pueblo and fled to the hills, and Sandoval followed them and killed [only] three or four of them, for he felt pity for them, but they took some women and girls and captured four chieftains. Sandoval coaxed those four whom he had captured, and asked them how they came to kill so many Spaniards, and they replied that the people of Texcoco and Mexico killed them in an ambush which they had arranged on a hill where the road was so narrow that they could only pass one by one; that there a great company of Mexicans and Texcocans fell on them and killed them or took them prisoners, and the people of Texcoco carried them off to their city where they divided them with the Mexicans; that they had been ordered to do this and could not do otherwise than as they did, for it was in revenge for the Prince of Texcoco named Cacamatzin whom Cortés had taken prisoner and

who had been killed at the affair of the bridges. Much blood of the Spaniards who had been killed was found on the walls of the Temple in that pueblo, for they had sprinkled their Idols with it, and he also found two faces which had been flayed, and the skin tanned like skin for gloves, the beards were left on, and they had been placed as offerings upon one of the altars. There were also found four tanned skins of horses very well prepared, with the hair on and the horse shoes, and they were hung up before the Idols in the great Cue. There were also found many garments of the Spaniards who had been killed hung up as offerings to these same Idols, and on the pillar of a house where they had been imprisoned, there was found written with charcoal "Here was imprisoned the unfortunate Juan Yuste and many others whom I brought in my company." This Juan Yuste was a gentleman, and one of the horsemen whom they killed here, and was one of the persons of quality whom Narvaez had brought with him. Sandoval and all his soldiers were moved to pity by all this and it grieved them greatly, but, how could the matter now be remedied except by being merciful to the people of the pueblo, however they had fled and would not wait, and had taken their women and children with them. A few women who were captured wept for their husbands and fathers, and when Sandoval saw this, he liberated four chieftains whom he had captured and all the women and sent them to summon the inhabitants of the pueblo, who came and begged for pardon and gave their fealty to His Majesty, and promised always to oppose the Mexicans and to serve us well with all possible affection and good will. When they were asked about the gold they had stolen from the Tlaxcalans who passed that way, they replied that they had taken three loads of it from them, but the Mexicans and the lords of Texcoco had carried it off.

for they said that the gold had belonged to Montezuma, who when he was a prisoner had taken it from their temples and given it to Malinche.

Let us stop talking about this and relate how Sandoval went on his way towards Tlaxcala, and when near the capital where the Caciques reside, he met eight thousand men carrying on their backs all the timber and boards for the launches, and as many more men with their arms and plumes acting as a guard, and two thousand others who brought food and relieved the carriers. There came as commanders of the whole force of Tlaxcalans, Chichimecatecle, whom I have already mentioned in former chapters, where he was spoken of as a very valiant Indian Chieftain, and two other chieftains named Teuctepil and Ayotecat¹ and other Caciques and chieftains, and all came in the charge of Martin López who was the Master carpenter who cut the timber and gave the model and dimensions for the boards, and other Spaniards came with him whose names I forget. When Sandoval saw them approaching in this way he was delighted that they had relieved him from his task, for he expected to be detained some days in Tlaxcala waiting for them to get off with all the timber and planking. In the same order in which they came up to us, we continued our march for two days until we entered Mexican territory. The Mexicans whistled and shouted from their farms and from the barrancas and from other places where we could do them no harm either with our horsemen or our muskets.

Then Martin López, who had all in his charge, said that it would be as well to change the order in which they had hitherto marched, for the Tlaxcalans had told him they feared that the powerful forces of Mexico might make a sudden attack in that part of the road, and might

¹ Terlipile and Tytical in the text.

great them, as they were so heavily laden and hampered by the timber and food they were carrying. So Sandoval at once divided the horsemen and musketeers and cross-bowmen, so that some should go in advance and others on the flanks, and he ordered Chichimecatecle to take charge of the Tlaxcalans who were to march behind as a rearguard with Gonzalo de Sandoval himself. The Cacique was offended at this, thinking that they did not consider him a brave man, but they said so much to him on that point, that he became reconciled, seeing that Sandoval himself was to remain with him, and that he was given to understand that the Mexicans always made their attacks on the baggage which was kept towards the rear. When he clearly understood this he embraced Sandoval and said that he felt honoured by what had been done.

Let us stop talking about this and say that another two days' march brought them to Texcoco, and before entering the city they put on very fine cloaks and plumes, and marched in good order to the sound of drums and trumpets, and in an unbroken line they were half a day marching into the City, shouting, whistling and crying out "Viva, Viva for the Emperor our Lord and Castille! Castille and Tlaxcala! Tlaxcala!"

When they arrived at Texcoco, Cortés and some of his Captains went out to meet them, and Cortés made great promises to Chichimecatecle and all his Captains who were with him. All the timbers and planking and all the other things belonging to the launches were placed near the canals and creeks where the launches were to be built.

From that time forward the greatest despatch was used in building the thirteen launches. Martin López, was the Master builder, aided by other Spaniards named Andrés Nuñez, and an old man called Ramírez, who was lame from a wound, and Diego Hernández, a sawyer, and

certain Indian carpenters and two blacksmiths with their forges, and Hernando de Aguilar who helped with the hammer; and all worked with the greatest speed until the launches were put together, and they only needed to be caulked, and their masts, rigging and sails to be set up. When this was done, I want to say how great were the precautions that we took in our camp, in the matter of spies and scouts and guards for the launches, for they lay near the Lake, and three times the Mexicans tried to set them on fire, and we even captured fifteen of the Indians who had come to set fire to them, and from these men Cortés learned fully what was being done in Mexico and what Guatemoc was planning, and it was that they would never make peace but would either all die fighting, or kill every one of us.

I wish now to mention the summonses and messengers that the Mexicans sent to all their subject pueblos, and how they remitted their tribute, and the work that they carried on both by day and night, of digging ditches and deepening the passages beneath the bridges, and making strong entrenchments and preparing their darts and dart throwers and making very long lances with which to kill the horses, to which were attached the swords that they had captured from us on the night of our defeat, and getting in order their darts and dart throwers and round stones and slings, and two-handed swords and other weapons larger than swords like broad-swords, and every sort of warlike material.

Let us leave this subject and go back to speak of the canal and trench by which the launches were to go out into the great Lake, and it was already very broad and deep so that ships of considerable size were able to float in it, for, as I have already said, there were eight thousand Indians always employed on the work. Enough of this, and let me say how Cortés made an expedition to Saltocan.



BOOK XI.

PRELIMINARY EXPEDITIONS.

CHAPTER CXLI.

Now our Captain Cortés went on an expedition to the place called Saltoacan which stands in a lake about six leagues distant from the City of Mexico, and how he went from there to other pueblos, and what happened on the road I will go on to say.



SO over fifteen thousand Tlaxcalans had come to Texcoco with the timber for the launches, and had already been five days in the city without doing anything worth mentioning, and, as they had not brought supplies with them, food was getting scarce, and the Captain of the Tlaxcalans being a very valiant and proud man (I have already said his name was Chichimecatecle), said to Cortés that he wished to go and render some service to our great Emperor by fighting against the Mexicans, both to show his strength and the goodwill he bore us, as well as to avenge the deaths and robberies that the Mexicans had brought upon his brethren and his vassals, in Mexico itself and in his own country, and he begged as a favour from Cortés that he would command and instruct him in what direction he should go and encounter our enemies.

Cortés replied to him that he thought very highly of his good-will, and said that he wished to go himself, the next day, to a pueblo named Saltocan, five or six leagues distant from the City of Texcoco, where, although the houses were built in the waters of a lake, there was an entrance from the land. He had sent three times to summon the people of that pueblo to make peace and they refused to do so, and he had again sent messengers from the people of Tepetescuco¹ and Otumba who were their neighbours, and instead of making peace they ill-treated the messengers and wounded two of them, and the answer that they sent was, that if we came there we would find forces and a fortress as strong as Mexico, and come when we might, we would find them on the field of battle, for they had received word from their Idols that they would kill us there, and their Idols had advised them to send this reply.

It was for this reason that Cortés got ready to go in person on this expedition, and ordered two hundred and fifty soldiers to go in his company with thirty horsemen, and he took with him, Pedro de Alvarado and Cristóbal de Olid and many musketeers and crossbowmen, and all the Tlaxcalans, and a company of warriors from Texcoco, nearly all of them chieftains. He left Gonzalo de Sandoval on guard at Texcoco, and told him to keep a good look out both on the Texcocans, and the launches and the camp, and see that no attack was made on it by night for, as I have already said, we had always to keep on the alert, on the one hand to guard against the Mexicans themselves and on the other, because we were in such a great city, as was Texcoco, where all the inhabitants of the city were relations and friends of the Mexicans. He also ordered Sandoval

¹ Tepetexcoco.

and Martin López, the master carpenter of the launches, to have the vessels ready to be launched and to sail within fifteen days.

Then after hearing Mass, Cortés left Texcoco and set out on that expedition with his army; and as he marched along, not far from Saltocan, he met great squadrons of Mexicans who were awaiting him in a place where they believed that they could get the better of our Spaniards and kill the horses. Cortés ordered the horsemen (and he himself kept with them) as soon as the muskets and crossbows had been discharged, to break in upon the enemy; however, they killed only a few Mexicans, who at once took refuge in the bush, and in places where the horsemen could not follow them, but our friends the Tlaxcalans captured and killed about thirty of them.

That night Cortés went to sleep at some huts, and kept a good look-out with scouts, watchmen, patrols and spies, for they were in a thickly peopled country, and he knew that Guatemoc the Prince of Mexico had sent many squadrons of warriors to Saltocan as reinforcements, and these troops had come in canoes along some deep creeks. Early the next morning the Mexicans and the people of Saltocan began to attack our troops when they were close to the pueblo, and they shot many darts and arrows at them and slung stones from their slings, from the canals where they were posted, and they wounded ten of our soldiers and many of our Tlaxcalan allies, and our horsemen could do them no hurt, for they could not gallop nor cross the creeks which were all full of water. The causeway and road by which they were used to enter the town from the land had been destroyed and broken down by hand only a few days before, and they had so flooded it that it was as full of water as the ditches. Owing to this,

our soldiers found no way by which they could enter the town, or do any damage to its defenders, although the musketeers and crossbowmen kept up a fire against those who went about in canoes, but the canoes were protected by bulwarks of wood, and besides the bulwarks they took good care not to expose themselves. Our soldiers seeing that they could gain no advantage whatever, and that they could not hit on the road and causeway which was there before, because it was all covered with water, cursed the town and our profitless expedition, and were half ashamed because the Mexicans and townspeople shouted at them and called them women, and said that Malinche was a woman too, and that his only bravery was in deceiving them with stories and lies. Just at this moment, two of the Indians, who had come there with our people, who belonged to the pueblo Tepetecucuo and were very hostile to the people of Saltocan, said to one of our soldiers, that three days before they had seen the people of Saltocan breaking open the causeway and they made a ditch [across] it and turned the water of another canal into it, and that not very far ahead the road began again and led to the town. When our soldiers thoroughly understood this the musketeers and crossbowmen were ranged in good order, some loading while the others fired, and thus little by little and not altogether, sometimes skipping along and at other times wading waist deep, all our soldiers crossed over, with many of our allies following them. Cortés and the horsemen, turning their backs on our soldiers, kept guard on the land, for they feared that the Mexican squadrons might again fall on our rear. When our men had passed the rapids, as I have described, the enemy fell on them with fury, and wounded many of them, but as they had made up their minds to gain the causeway which was close by, they still

forged ahead until they could attack the enemy on land, clear of the water, and then they got to the town. Without further waste of words they fell on the enemy so fiercely that they killed many of them and repaid them well for the trick they had played. Much cotton cloth and gold and other spoil was taken, but, as the town was built in the lake, the Mexicans and the inhabitants soon got into their canoes with all the property they were able to carry, and went off to Mexico.

When our people saw the town deserted, they burned some of the houses, and as they did not dare to sleep there because the town stood in the water, they returned to where Captain Cortés was awaiting them. In that town they captured some very good-looking Indian women, and the Tlaxcalans came out of it rich with cloaks and salt and gold and other spoil. Then they all went to sleep at some huts near some limekilns, about a league distant from Saltocan, and there they dressed their wounds. One soldier died within a few days of an arrow wound in the throat. Sentinels were at once posted, and scouts sent out and every precaution was taken, for all that country was thickly peopled by Culhuans.

The next day they marched to the great pueblo named Guautitlan, and as they went on their way, the Indians from the neighbouring villages, and many Mexicans who had joined them, yelled and whistled and shouted insults at our men, but they kept to the canals and the places where the horsemen could not gallop and no harm could be done to them. In this way, our troops arrived at the town which had been abandoned that same day and all property carried off. That night they slept there, well guarded by sentinels and patrols, and the following day marched on to the great pueblo called Tenayuca; this is the place that on our first entrance to Mexico we

called El Pueblo de las Sierpes, because in the principal temple we found the images of two great hideous-looking serpents which were the Idols they worshipped. Let us leave this and go back to this matter of the march. They found this pueblo deserted like the last, and all the Indian inhabitants had assembled together in another town further on called Tacuba. From Tenayuca they marched to Atzacapotzalco,¹ about half a league distant one from the other, and this too was deserted. This town of Atzacapotzalco was where they used to work the gold and silver for the great Montezuma, and we used to call it El pueblo de los Plateros. From there they marched to another town, which I have said was called Tacuba, a distance of half a league one from the other, and this is the place where we halted on that sad night when we came out from Mexico routed, and here they killed some of our soldiers, as I have already said in a former chapter that deals with this subject.

Let us go back to our story: Before our army could reach the town it was met in the open by a large number of troops which were lying in wait for Cortés, gathered from all the pueblos through which the army had passed, as well as those from Tacuba and Mexico, for Mexico was close by. All of them together began an attack on our people in such a manner that our Captain and the horsemen had all they could do to break through their ranks, so close did they keep together. However, our soldiers with good sword play forced them to retreat; then, as it was night-time, they went to sleep in the town after posting sentinels and watchmen.

If there had been many Mexicans gathered together that day, there were many more on the next morning, and in excellent order they advanced to attack our

¹ Escapuzalco in the text.

people with such energy that they killed and wounded some of our soldiers. Nevertheless, our men forced them to retreat to their houses and fortress, so that they found time to enter Tacuba and burn and sack many of the houses. When this was known in Mexico, many more squadrons were ordered to go forth from the city to fight against Cortés, and it was arranged that when they fought with him, they should pretend to turn in flight towards Mexico, and little by little they should draw our army on to the causeway until they had them well on to it, and that they should behave as though they were retreating out of fear.

As it was arranged, so they carried it out, and Cortés believing that he was gaining a victory, ordered the enemy to be followed as far as a bridge. When the Mexicans thought that they had already got Cortés in their trap, and the bridge had been crossed, a huge multitude of Indians turned on him, some in canoes and others by land, and others on the azoteas, and they placed him in such straits and matters looked so serious that he believed himself to be defeated, for at the bridge that he had reached, they fell on him with such force that he could effect little or nothing. A standard bearer who carried a banner, in resisting the charge of the enemy, was badly wounded and fell with his banner from the bridge into the water, and was in danger of being drowned, and the Mexicans had even seized him to drag him into a canoe, but he was so strong, that he escaped with his banner. In that fight they killed four or five of our soldiers and wounded many of them, and Cortés recognising the great audacity and want of forethought that he had shown in going on to the causeway in the way I have related, and feeling that the Mexicans had caught him in a trap, ordered all his followers to retire in the best order possible without turning their backs, but with

their faces towards the enemy and hand to hand as though resisting an onset. Of the musketeers and crossbowmen some loaded, while the others fired, and the horsemen made some charges, but they were very few, for the horses were soon wounded. In this way, Cortés escaped that time from the power of the Mexicans, and when he got on dry land he gave great thanks to God.

It was at that causeway and bridge that Pedro de Ircio (often mentioned by me before) said to the standard bearer named Juan Volante, who fell into the lake with his banner, to insult him (for he was not on good terms with him on account of a love affair with a woman who had come at the time of the Narvaez expedition), "that he had drowned the son and now he wished to drown the mother," for the banner that Volante was carrying bore the picture of Our Lady the Virgin Santa Maria. He had no reason for making that remark, for the standard bearer was a gentleman and a very valiant man, as he showed himself to be then and at many other times, and it did not go well with Pedro de Ircio for the ill-will he bore towards Juan Volante.

Let us leave Pedro de Ircio, and say that during the five days that Cortés stayed in Tacuba, he had encounters and battles with the Mexicans, and he then returned to Texcoco along the road by which he had come. On the road, the Mexicans raised shouts, believing that he was turning in flight, and they only suspected what was true; and they laid in wait for him in places where they thought to gain honour by attacking him and killing the horses; and they prepared ambushes, and when Cortés saw that, he too set an ambuscade and wounded many of the enemy, but they managed to kill two horses, and after that they did not follow him any further.

By long marches, Cortés arrived at a pueblo subject to Texcoco, named Acolman, about two leagues and a half

distant from Texcoco, and as soon as we knew that he had arrived there we went out with Gonzalo de Sandoval to see him and receive him, accompanied by many horsemen and soldiers and the Caciques of Texcoco, especially by Don Hernando, the principal Cacique of that City. We were greatly delighted at the sight of Cortés, for we had known nothing of what had happened to him for fifteen days. After welcoming him, and having some necessary conversation on military matters, we returned to Texcoco that afternoon, for we did not dare to leave the camp without a sufficient guard. Our Cortés stayed in that pueblo until the following day, when he came to Texcoco, and we gave him another reception. The Tlaxcalans, as they were now rich and came laden with spoil, asked leave to return to their homes, and Cortés granted it, and they went by a road where the Mexicans could not spy on them and saved their property.

At the end of four days, during which our Captain was resting, and hurrying on the building of the launches, the people from some pueblos on the North Coast came to ask for peace and offer themselves as vassals to His Majesty and these pueblos were named Tuxpan and Matalcingo and Nautla¹ and other small pueblos in the neighbourhood, and they brought a present of gold and of cotton cloth. They came before Cortés with the greatest reverence and when they had offered their present, they begged him to graciously admit them to his friendship, as they wished to become vassals of the King of Castile. They said that when the Mexicans had killed six Teules in the affair at Almeria, the Mexican Captain was Quetzalpopoca whom we had already burned in punishment, and that all the pueblos which had now come to him went to the help of

¹ Tuxapan y MasCalzingo y Navtlan in the text. Matalcingo is not shown on the modern map, but on an old map is marked near C. de Palmas in the neighbourhood of Tuxpan.

the Teules. When Cortés heard this, although he knew that they had been concerned with the Mexicans in the death of Juan de Escalante and the six soldiers who were slain in the affair at Almeria (as I have already related in the Chapter that treats of the matter) he showed them much good-will and accepted the present, and received them as vassals of our Lord the Emperor, and he did not demand an explanation of what had happened, nor call it to mind, for it was not a convenient time to take other steps, and with kind words and promises he dismissed them. At this same time, there came to Cortés other pueblos from among those who had become our friends, asking for help against the Mexicans, and they said that we must come and help them because great squadrons of Mexicans were coming against them and had entered their territory and were carrying off many of their Indians as prisoners, and had wounded others. There also came at the same time, people from Chalco and Tlamanalco who said that if we did not come to their assistance they would all be lost; for many garrisons of their enemies had attacked them, and they told a most pitiful tale, and brought a piece of hennequen cloth, painted with an exact representation of the squadrons of Mexicans which had come against them. Cortés did not know what to say, nor how to answer them or help them, either one way or the other, for he had seen that many of our soldiers were wounded and ill, and eight had died of pains in the back, and from throwing up clotted blood mixed with mud from the mouth and nose, and it was from the fatigue of always wearing armour on our backs, and from the everlasting going on expeditions and from the dust that we swallowed. In addition to this, he saw that three or four horses had died of their wounds, and that we never stopped going on expeditions, some coming and others going. So the answer he gave to the first pueblos

was to flatter them, and to say that he would soon come to help them, but that while he was on the way, they should get help from other pueblos, their neighbours, and should wait for the Mexicans in the open, and all of them together should attack the enemy, and that if the Mexicans should see that they showed a bold front and matched their strength against them, they would be afraid, for the Mexicans had no longer the forces with which to attack them that they used to have, as they had so many enemies to oppose. He said so much to them, through our interpreters, that he encouraged and put heart into them, and they at once asked for letters for two pueblos in their neighbourhood, which were allies of ours, ordering them to come to their assistance. They did not understand the letters at the time, but they knew well that among us it was a sure thing that when letters were sent they contained commands or signs that we were ordering something of importance. With these letters they went off well contented and showed them to their friends and summoned them to their assistance. As Cortés had ordered them, they awaited the Mexicans in the open and fought a battle with them, and with the help of our allies, their neighbours to whom they had delivered the letters, they did not do badly.

Let us return to the people of Chalco ; as our Cortés saw how important it was for us that this province and the road through it should be freed from Mexicans, (for as I have already said, it was the way we had to come and go to Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz and to Tlaxcala, and we had to supply our camp from that province, for it was a land that produced much Maize), he at once ordered Gonzalo de Sandoval the Chief Alguazil to get ready to start the next morning for Chalco, and he ordered him to take twenty horsemen and two hundred soldiers, twelve crossbowmen and ten musketeers and the Tlaxcalans who

were in camp, who were very few, (for as I have already said in this Chapter, the greater number of them had gone to their homes laden with spoil) and Sandoval, also took with him a company of Texcocans, and Captain Luis Marin who was his intimate friend. Cortés and Pedro de Alvarado and Cristóbal de Olid remained behind to guard the city and the launches.

Before Gonzalo de Sandoval goes to Chalco, as had been arranged, I wish to say here, that while I was writing this story about all that had happened to Cortés in his expedition to Saltocan, there happened to be present two gentlemen who were much interested, as they had read Gomara's History, and they said to me, that there were three things that I had forgotten to write down, which the historian Gomara had written about this same expedition of Cortés; the one was that Cortés visited Mexico with thirteen launches and fought a good battle with the great forces of Guatemoc in their great canoes and pirogues on the lake; the other was that when Cortés entered on the causeway to Mexico, that he held conversations with the Mexican Lords and Caciques, and told them that he would cut off their food supply and they would die of hunger; and the other was that Cortés did not wish to tell the people of Texcoco that he was going to Saltocan lest they should give warning to the people of that town. I answered these same gentlemen that at that time the launches were not finished building, and how could they carry launches overland, or horses or so many people across the lake? It is laughable to write about such a thing. When Cortés advanced along the causeway, as I have related, he had quite enough to do to make his escape with his army, and at that time we had not blockaded Mexico so as to deprive them of food, and they were not suffering from hunger, and they were lords of all their vassals, and what happened many days later when we had

them in our grip, Gomara places here. In what he says, that Cortés went away by another road to go to Saltocan so that the people of Texcoco should not know, I say that they were obliged to go through the pueblos and lands of Texcoco, for the road lay in that direction and in no other, and what he writes is mere nonsense. As I understand it the fault is not his, but that of the man who gave him the information and who told him the story which he has written down, possibly giving him money in order to heighten the praise and glorify him and exaggerate his exploits. He was told these stories so that he should not publish our heroic deeds and that is the truth.

When these two gentlemen who had told me about it saw clearly that what I said was true, they swore that they would tear up the book and history of Gomara which they had in their possession, for so many things he describes as happening in a certain way, are not true.

Let us leave this matter and turn to Captain Gonzalo de Sandoval who left Texcoco after hearing Mass, and arrived near Chalco early in the morning, and what happened I will go on to tell.

INTRODUCTORY NOTE TO CHAPTERS CXLII TO CXLV.

DURING the expeditions described in the four following Chapters, the Spaniards passed out of the Valley of Mexico through the gap between the Serrania of Ajusco and the slopes of Popocatepetl, and descended into the plains of Morelos and Cuernavaca. The towns of Yecapixtla, Oaxtepec, Yautepec, and Cuernavaca all stand at somewhat the same altitude, about 5000 ft. above the level of the sea and a little more than 2000 ft. below the level of the Valley of Mexico. The Serrania of Ajusco, with its innumerable extinct craters and somewhat recent lava fields, and the mass of Popocatepetl, form a lofty barrier to the north of these towns, which is edged near Tepostlan and towards the East by a fringe of broken

and abrupt conglomerate rock, forming hills and cliffs, with spur's running southward into the plains of Morelos and Cuernavaca. Just to the south of this rampart, several isolated hills of a few hundred feet in height arise somewhat abruptly from the plain, and it was on one of these hills that the Indians took refuge.

Ixtlilxochitl¹ says that Tlayacapan, which lies halfway between Yecapixtla and Teposlan, is the hill or Peñol which was so successfully defended against the attack of the Spaniards, and there is no doubt that the Peñol must have been in that neighbourhood.

Neither Bernal Díaz nor Cortés appear to have visited Yecapixtla, and their descriptions of its position are somewhat misleading. The town is not situated on a lofty eminence, but, like Cuernavaca, although on slightly rising ground, it hardly stands out from the surrounding plain. These plains slope gradually to the south, and are deeply scored by the numerous small streams which, flowing from the mountains to the north, have cut their way deep down through soil and rock, forming ravines or barrancas, which, in chosen spots, render fortifications almost unnecessary. Both Yecapixtla and Cuernavaca are nearly surrounded by such ravines.

Bernal Díaz falls into an error, with regard to Yautepec, when describing the route followed by the army; this error is corrected in a foot-note on page 67. Cortés, in his third letter, says that after leaving Yautepec they went to Gilutepeque. No such name is now known, and we can safely follow Bernal Díaz, who says that the town was Tepostlan (although Orozco y Berra says that Bernal Díaz "confounds" the name with that of Tepostlan). From the nature of the ground, the pursuit by the horsemen after leaving Yautepec must have been in the direction of Tepostlan, and that position also fits in with the march two days later to Cuernavaca.

The return march from Cuernavaca across the Serrania de Ajusco was a most laborious undertaking, as a height of at least 10,000 ft. above sea level had to be reached before descending to the valley in the direction of Xochimilco.

By an unfortunate error, Tlamanalco is not marked in the map of the Valley of Mexico, issued in Vol. III. Its position between Chalco and Amecameca is given in the map showing the route of the Spaniards from Vera Cruz to the City of Mexico, issued with Vol. I.

¹ "Historia Chichimeca," Cap. 93. MS., see Orozco y Berra, *Hist. Antigua*, vol. iv, p. 541.

CHAPTER CXLII.

How Captain Gonzalo de Sandoval went to Chalco and Tlamanalco with the whole of his army; and I will go on to tell what happened on the march.

I HAVE already said in the last Chapter that the pueblo of Chalco and Tlamanalco came to ask Cortés to send them help, because there were great companies and squadrons of Mexicans in their neighbourhood who had come to attack them. They told such a tale of woe that he ordered Gonzalo de Sandoval to go to their aid with two hundred soldiers, twenty horsemen, ten or twelve cross bowmen and some musketeers, and our Tlaxcalan friends and a company of Indians from Texcoco. Sandoval took Captain Luis Marin with him as a companion, for they were great friends.

After hearing Mass, he set out on the 12th March in the year 1521, and they slept at some farms belonging to Chalco, and on the next morning arrived at Tlamanalco where the Caciques and Captains gave him a good reception and provided food, and advised him to go at once in the direction of a great pueblo called Oaxtepec,¹ for he would find the whole of the Mexican forces either assembled at Oaxtepec or on the road thither; and they said that all the warriors from the province of Chalco would accompany him.

Sandoval thought it advisable to set out at once, so the order was given, and they went on to sleep at another pueblo subject to Chalco called Chimaluacan, for the spies, sent by the people of Chalco to watch the Culuas, came to report that the enemy's forces were lying in wait for them in some rocky defiles in the neighbourhood of that town.

¹ Guaxtepeque in the text.

As Sandoval was very crafty and well advised, he sent the musketeers and crossbowmen in advance, and ordered the horsemen to keep together in parties of three, and, when the crossbowmen and musketeers had fired their shots, to charge the enemy at a hand gallop with their lances held short, so as to strike the faces of their enemies and put them to flight, and always to keep together in parties of three. He ordered the foot soldiers always to keep their close formation and not to charge the enemy until he gave the order, for it was reported that the enemy were very numerous, and this proved to be true. As the enemy was posted in broken ground and it was not known if they had dug pits or raised barricades, Sandoval wished to keep his soldiers well in hand so as to avoid any disaster.

As he continued his march he saw the Mexican squadrons approaching him in three divisions, shouting and whistling and sounding trumpets and drums. The Indians were armed with all their usual weapons and they came on to the attack like fierce lions. When Sandoval saw how bold they were, he did not keep to the orders he had given, but told the horsemen to charge them at once before they could reach our men. Cheering on his troops by shouting "Santiago and at them," Sandoval led the charge himself, and by that movement, he nearly routed some of the Mexican squadrons, but not all of them, so that they soon turned and showed a firm front, for they were helped by the bad track and broken ground, and the horsemen owing to the rough ground were not able to gallop and could not get in rear of them. For this reason, Sandoval turned, and ordered the musketeers and crossbowmen to go ahead in good formation and told the shield bearers to keep on their flanks, and when they could see that they were wounding and damaging the enemy and should hear a shot fired from this other side of the barranca, that it would be a signal for all the horsemen to charge together and hurl

the enemy from that position, for he thought that they could be driven on to the level ground near by. He also warned his [Indian] allies to be ready to support the Spaniards. Sandoval's orders were carried out, and in that movement many of our men were wounded, for the enemies who attacked them were very numerous. To finish my story, the Mexicans were forced into retreat but their flight was towards other bad passes. Sandoval and the horsemen went in pursuit, but overtook only three or four of the enemy. During that pursuit, owing to the badness of the road, the horse of a cavalryman, named Gonzalo Domínguez, fell with his rider beneath him, and the man died from his injuries within a few days. I call this to mind because Gonzalo Domínguez was one of the best horsemen and one of the most valiant men that Cortés had brought in his Company, and we held him in as much esteem for his valour, as we did Cristóbal de Olid and Gonzalo de Sandoval, so that we all felt the loss greatly.

To go back to Sandoval and his army; they followed the enemy to the neighbourhood of a pueblo already mentioned by me which is called Oaxtepec, but before reaching the town, over fifteen thousand Mexicans emerged from it and began to surround our soldiers and wounded many of them and five horses, but as the ground was level in some places, our horsemen, making a united effort, broke up two of their squadrons, and the rest turned tail and fled towards the town in order to guard some barricades which they had raised, but our soldiers and the allies followed so close that they had no time to defend them, and the horsemen kept up the pursuit in other directions until they had shut the enemy up in a part of the town where they could not be reached. Thinking that the enemy would not again renew the attack on that day, Sandoval ordered his men to rest and tend their wounds, and they began to take their

food, and much spoil was taken in that town. While they were eating, two horsemen and two soldiers who had been told off before the men began to eat, the horsemen as scouts and the soldiers as sentinels, ran in crying "To arms, to arms; the Mexicans are coming in great force." As they were always accustomed to have their arms in readiness, the horsemen were soon mounted and they came out into a great plaza. At that moment the enemy were upon them, and there they fought another good battle. After the enemy had been for some time showing us a good front from some barricades and wounding some of our men, Sandoval fell on them so suddenly with his horsemen, that with the help of the muskets and crossbows and the sword-play of the soldiers, he drove them from the town into some neighbouring barrancas, and they did not come back again that day.

When Captain Sandoval found himself free from that struggle, he gave thanks to God and went to rest and sleep in an orchard within the town, which was so beautiful and contained such fine buildings that it was the best worth beholding of anything we had seen in New Spain.¹ There were so many things in it to look at that it was really wonderful and was certainly the orchard of a great prince, and they could not go all through it then, for it was more than a quarter of a league in length.

Let us stop talking about the orchard and say that I

¹ Blotted out in the original: "both on account of the arrangement and diversity of the many kinds of fruit trees and of the roses and other sweet-scented plants, and for the arrangement made for the supply of water from a river which was led into the garden, and the rich chambers and the decoration of them, and the sweet-scented cedar wood and the excellent furniture, and the benches, and the numerous houses, all coated with plaster and adorned with a thousand pictures, and the avenues and the weaving together of the branches, and in other parts the medicinal herbs and the vegetables, many of them very good to eat."

did not go myself on this expedition, nor did I then walk about this orchard, but I went there about twenty days later when, in company with Cortés, we made the round of the great towns of the lakes, as I shall tell later on. The reason why I did not go this first time was because I had been badly wounded by a spear-thrust in the throat, and was in danger of dying from it, and I still bear the scar. The wound was given me during the Iztapalapa affair, when they tried to drown us. As I was not in this expedition, for this reason, I say in telling the story, "they went" and "they did" so and so, and such a thing "happened to them," and I do not say, "we did" it or "I did" it, nor saw it, nor "I was there." Nevertheless, all that I have written about it, happened as I have stated, for one soon learns in camp what happens on an expedition, and one is not able to leave out or exaggerate anything that happened.

Let us stop talking of this and return to Captain Gonzalo de Sandoval, who on the following day, when he noticed that there was no sound of movement on the part of the Mexican warriors, sent to summon the Caciques of the town, despatching as messengers, five Indians, natives of the place, whom he had captured in battle, two of whom were chieftains. He ordered them to tell the Caciques to have no fear, and to come and make peace and he would pardon them for all that had happened, and used other good arguments. The messengers who were sent, treated for peace, but the Caciques did not dare to come in for fear of the Mexicans.

The same day, Sandoval sent to another large pueblo called Yecapixtla,¹ about two leagues distant from Oaxtepec, to tell the people to consider what a good thing it was to be at peace and not desire war and that they

¹ Acapixtla in the text.

should bear in mind and take warning from what had happened to the squadrons of Culuas stationed in the pueblo of Oaxtepec, how they had all been defeated, and he told them that they had better make peace and expel the Mexican garrisons who were guarding their country, and that if they did not do so he would come and make war on them and chastise them. The answer returned was that they [the Spaniards] might come when they liked, for they were looking forward to feast on their flesh and provide sacrifices for their Idols.

When this reply was given, the Caciques from Chalco, who were with Sandoval, knew that there must be a large force of Mexicans in garrison at Yecapixtla ready to make war on Chalco as soon as Sandoval should retire; and for this reason they begged him to go to Yecapixtla and drive the Mexicans out of the place. However, Sandoval was not willing to go, one reason being that many of his soldiers and horses were wounded, and the other that he had already fought three battles and he did not wish to exceed the instructions that Cortés had given him. Moreover, some of the gentlemen whom he had brought in his company, men from the army of Narvaez, advised him to return to Texcoco and not go to Yecapixtla, which was strongly fortified, lest some disaster should befall him. However, the Captain, Luis Marin, counselled him not to fail to go to that fortress and do what he could, for the Caciques from Chalco said that if he turned back without defeating the force which was assembled in that fortress, that as soon as they saw or heard that he had returned to Texcoco, the enemy would at once attack Chalco.

As it was only two leagues from Oaxtepec to Yecapixtla, Sandoval decided to go there and gave orders to his soldiers and they set out. As soon as he came in sight of the town, before reaching it, a host of warriors came out and began to shoot darts and arrows and cast stones

from their slings, so that they fell like hail, and three horses and many soldiers were wounded without our men being able to do any harm to the enemy. Then the enemy climbed up among their crags and strongholds and from thence shouted, yelled and whistled and sounded their trumpets and drums. When Sandoval heard this, he ordered some of his horsemen to dismount, and the rest to remain in the fields where it was open ground and to keep on the alert to see that no reinforcement of Mexicans should reach Yecapixtla whilst he was attacking the town. When he observed that the Caciques from Chalco and their Captains and many of the Indian warriors were manœuvring round about without daring to attack the enemy, on purpose to try them and to see what they would answer, Sandoval said to them, "What are you doing: why don't you begin to fight and get into the town and fortress, for we are here and will defend you." They replied that they did not dare to do it, that the enemy were in a stronghold, and it was for this very purpose that Sandoval and his brother Teules had come with them and that the people of Chalco had come under his protection relying on his help to drive the enemy out.

So Sandoval and all his soldiers and musketeers and crossbowmen began the attack and ascent and many were wounded as they clambered up and Sandoval himself was again wounded in the head, and many of our allies were wounded, for they too entered the town and did much damage to it, and it was the Indians from Chalco and our allies from Tlaxcala who did most damage to the enemy, for our soldiers after breaking up their ranks and putting them to flight, would not give a sword-thrust at the enemy, for it seemed to them mere cruelty, and they were chiefly occupied in looking out for pretty Indian women or seeking for plunder, and they frequently quarrelled with our allies on account of their cruelty, and took the Indian

men and women away from them to prevent their being killed.

Let us stop talking about this and say that the Indian warriors in order to defend themselves, took refuge among the crags down below, which were near the town, and as many of those who went to hide themselves in the gorge of the river were wounded and bleeding, the water became somewhat turbid with blood but the discolouration did not last long, not half an Ave Maria, but it is here that the historian Gomara says in his history that our soldiers were parched with thirst because the river ran red with blood. I say that there are so many springs and so much clear water below there, that there was no need of more water.¹

I must go on to say that when this was over, Sandoval and all his army returned to Texcoco with much spoil, especially of good looking Indian women.

When the lord of Mexico, who was called Guatemoc, heard of the defeat of his armies it is said that he showed much resentment at it, and still more at the thought that the people of Chalco, who were his subjects and vassals, should dare to take up arms three times against his forces.

He was so angry that he resolved that as soon as Sandoval should return to his camp at Texcoco he would send out a great force of warriors, which he at once assembled in the city of Mexico, and another force which was got together from the lake, equipped with every sort

¹ Bernal Díaz need not have fallen foul of Gomara over this incident, although it was probably a gross exaggeration, for Cortés himself in his 3rd letter to the Emperor says "and as our Indian allies pursued them, and the enemy saw that they were conquered, so great was the slaughter at the hands of our people, and of those hrown down from above, that all who were there present affirm that a mall river which almost surrounds the town was tinged with blood or more than an hour and prevented them from drinking, and as it was very hot, they were in great need of water."

of arms, and would despatch this force, numbering over twenty thousand Mexicans, in two thousand large canoes to make a sudden descent on Chalco, to do all the damage that it was possible to do.

This was all accomplished with such skill and rapidity that Sandoval had hardly arrived at Texcoco and spoken to Cortés, when again messengers came in canoes across the lake begging help from Cortés, telling him that more than two thousand canoes carrying over twenty thousand Mexicans had come to Chalco, and they begged him to come at once to their assistance.

At the very moment that Cortés heard this news Sandoval came to speak to him and to give him an account of what he had done during the expedition from which he had just then returned, but Cortés was so angry with him he would not listen to him, believing that it was through some fault or carelessness on his part that our friends at Chalco were experiencing this trouble, and without any delay, and without listening to him, Cortés ordered Sandoval to leave all his wounded men in camp and to go back again in all haste with those who were sound.

Sandoval was much distressed at the words Cortés used to him, and at his refusal to listen to him, but he set out at once for Chalco where his men arrived tired out with the weight of their arms and their long march. It appears that the people of Chalco, learning through their spies that the Mexicans were coming so suddenly upon them, and that Guatemoc had determined that they should be attacked, as I have already said, before any help could reach them from us, had sent to summon aid from the people of the province of Huexotzingo which was near by, and the men from Huexotzingo arrived that same night, all equipped with their arms, and joined with those from Chalco, so that in all there were more than twenty thousand of them. As they had already lost their fear

of the Mexicans they quietly awaited their arrival in camp and fought like brave men, and although the Mexicans killed many of them and took many prisoners, the people of Chalco killed many more of the Mexicans and took as prisoners fifteen captains and chieftains and many other warriors of lesser rank. The Mexicans looked upon this battle as a much greater disgrace, seeing that the people of Chalco had defeated them, than if they had been defeated by us.

When Sandoval arrived at Chalco and found that there was nothing for him to do, and nothing more to be feared as the Mexicans would not return again to Chalco, he marched back again to Texcoco and took the Mexican prisoners with him.

Whereat Cortés was delighted but Sandoval showed great resentment towards our captain for what had happened, and did not go to see or speak to him, until Cortés sent to tell him that he had misunderstood the affair, thinking that it was through some carelessness on the part of Sandoval that things had gone wrong, and that although he had set out with a large force of soldiers and horsemen he had returned without defeating the Mexicans.

I will cease speaking about this matter, for Cortés and Sandoval soon became fast friends again and there was nothing Cortés would not do to please Sandoval.

I will stop here and tell how we resolved that all the men and women slaves should be branded, for they were becoming very numerous, and how at that time a ship arrived from Spain, and what else happened.

CHAPTER CXLIII.

How the slaves were branded in Texcoco, and how the news came that a ship had arrived at the Port of Villa Rica, and what passengers had come in her and other things that happened, which I will go on to relate.

As Gonzalo de Sandoval had arrived in Texcoco with a great booty of slaves and there were many others which had been captured in the late expeditions, it was decided that they should at once be branded. When proclamation was made that they were to be taken to a certain house to be branded, most of us soldiers took those slaves that we possessed to be marked with the brand of His Majesty, which was a G. which was meant to signify Guerra (war), in the way that we had already arranged with Cortés, as I have already related in the Chapter that treats of that subject. We thought that they [our slaves] would be returned to us after the Royal fifth had been paid, and that a price would be put on the women slaves in accordance with the value of each one of them. However it was not so done, and if the affair was badly managed at Tepeaca, it was managed much worse here at Texcoco; for after the Royal fifth had been deducted, another fifth was deducted for Cortés, and another fraction for his captains, and during the night when the slaves had been collected together, the best looking Indian women disappeared. Cortés had stated and promised us that the best looking women should be sold by auction for what they were worth, and those that were not so attractive for a lower price, but he made no such arrangement, and the Royal officials did just as they pleased, so that if wrong was done the first time, this time it was much worse. From this time on many of us soldiers when we captured good looking Indian women, so that they should not be taken

from us, as had been done in the past, hid them away and did not take them to be branded, but gave out that they had escaped; or if we were favourites of Cortés we took them secretly by night to be branded, and they were valued at their worth, the Royal fifth paid and they were marked with the iron. Many others remained in our lodgings and we said that they were free servants from the pueblos that had made peace, or from Tlaxcala.

I also wish to say that as some of these women slaves had already been in our company for two or three months, it was well known throughout the camp which of the soldiers was kind and which brutal, and who treated his Indian women and servants well and who treated them badly, and who had the reputation of being a gentleman and who was otherwise. It often happened that when they were sold by auction and were bought by soldiers whom the Indian men and women were not content to serve, or by men who had treated them badly, the slaves at once disappeared and were not seen again. As for asking for them one might as well seek for Mahomet in Granada, or write to "my son the batchelor of Arts in Salamanca." In the end it all figured as debt in the books of the King, both the accounts of the auction and the fifths, and as for paying assessment on the gold, it came to the point that not one or very few soldiers brought their share of gold [to be assessed] for they already owed it all and much more than what the King's officials would leave to them.

Let us leave this, and I will relate how at that time a ship arrived from Spain in which came Julian de Alderate, a native of Tordesillas, as his Majesty's Treasurer, and a certain Orduña, the elder, also a native of Tordesillas who after Mexico was conquered became a settler at Puebla and brought out some daughters who made very honourable marriages. There also came a friar of San Francis named Fray Pedro Melgarejo de Ureña, a native of Seville who

brought some Bulls of Señor San Pedro¹ so that we might put ourselves right if we had fallen somewhat in his debt during the wars which we were waging. Thus in a few months the friar returned to Spain rich and contented and left others discontented behind him ; then he sent as his deputy to take charge of the Bulls Gerónimo López who was afterwards secretary in Mexico. There also arrived one Antonio de Carvajal who, now a very old man, lives in Mexico, he was captain of a launch, and Gerónimo Ruíz de la Mota, a native of Burgos, who after the capture of Mexico became son-in-law of Orduña, he also was captain of a launch, and a certain Briones a native of Salamanca. This Briones was hanged in this province of Guatemala as a mutineer in the army, four years after he returned from the expedition to Honduras. Many others also arrived whose names I forget, also a certain Alonzo Díaz de la Reguera who became a settler in Guatemala and now lives in Valladolid.

A great store of arms and powder was brought in this ship, in fact as was to be expected in a ship coming from Spain it came well laden, and we rejoiced at its arrival and at the news from Spain that it brought. I don't remember very well, but I think that they told us that the Bishop of Burgos had already lost [his position] and did not stand well with his Majesty since he had come to know of our many good and memorable services. As the Bishop was in the habit of writing to his Majesty in Flanders the opposite to what really took place, and in favour of Diego Velásquez, when his Majesty found out for certain that all our procurators had told him on our behalf was quite true, he would not listen to anything more that the Bishop had to say.

Let us leave this and say that Cortés now saw that

¹ *i.e.* of the Pope as successor to St. Peter.

the building of the launches was finished, and noted the eagerness of all of us soldiers to commence the siege of Mexico. At that time the people of Chalco sent again to say that the Mexicans were attacking them, and begged for help, and Cortés sent to tell them that he intended to go himself to their pueblos and territories and not to return until the enemy was finally driven from their neighbourhood. He ordered three hundred soldiers and thirty horsemen and nearly all the musketeers and crossbowmen and the men of Texcoco to be in readiness, and Pedro de Alvarado, and Andrés de Tápia and Cristóbal de Olid went in his company as well as the Treasurer Julian de Alderete and the Friar Fray Pedro Melgarejo who by that time had arrived in our camp. I too went with Cortés for he ordered me to do so, and what happened during that expedition I will go on to relate.

CHAPTER CXLIV.

How our Captain Cortés went on an expedition and made a circuit of the lake and of all the cities and large pueblos that were to be found in its neighbourhood, and what else happened on that expedition.

As Cortés had told the people of Chalco that he was coming to help them so that the Mexicans should no longer come and attack them, (for we had been going there and back every week to assist them) he ordered all the force of soldiers already mentioned to be prepared, and they were three hundred soldiers, thirty horsemen, twenty crossbowmen and fifteen musketeers, and the Treasurer Julian Alderete, Pedro de Alvarado, Andrés de Tápia, Cristóbal de Olid, and the Friar Pedro Melgarejo went also, and Cortés ordered me to go with him, and there were many Tlaxcalans and allies from Texcoco in

his company. He left Gonzalo de Sandoval behind with a good company of soldiers and horsemen to guard Texcoco and the launches.

On the morning of Friday the 5th April 1521 after hearing Mass we set out for Tlamanalco, where we were well received, and we slept there. The next day we went to Chalco, for the one town is quite close to the other, and there Cortés ordered all the Caciques of the province to be called together, and he made them a speech through our interpreters Doña Marina and Gerónimo de Aguilar, in which he gave them to understand that we were now going to try whether we could bring to peace some of the towns in the neighbourhood of the lake, and also to view the land and position before blockading Mexico, and that we were going to place thirteen launches on the lake, and we begged them to be ready to accompany us on the next day with all their warriors. When they understood this all with one voice promised that they would willingly do what we asked.

The next day we went to sleep at another pueblo, subject to Chalco, called Chimaluacan, and there we met more than twenty thousand allies from Chalco, Texcoco, and Huexotzingo and from Tlaxcala and other towns, and in all the expeditions in which I have been engaged in New Spain, never have I known so many of our allied warriors to accompany us as joined us now.

As I have already said before, many of them came in hope of gathering spoil, and it is also true that they came to gorge on human flesh, if there should be any fighting, for they knew for certain that we should have to fight battles. It was the same, so to say, as when in Italy an army marches from one place to another it is followed by crows and kites and other birds of prey which live on the dead bodies that are left in the field after a bloody battle, so I believe it was for the same reason that we were followed by so many thousand Indians.

Let us leave this subject and return to our story. About that time we received news, that in a plain near by, there were many companies and squadrons of Mexicans and all their allies from the country round about waiting to attack us. So Cortés held us in readiness and after hearing Mass we set out early in the morning from the pueblo of Chimaluacan where we had slept, and keeping in good formation and much on the alert, we marched among some high rocks between two hills where there were fortifications and barricades, where many Indians both men and women were safely sheltered, and from these strongholds they yelled and shouted at us, but we did not care to attack them, but kept quietly on our way towards a large pueblo called Yautepec, which we found deserted, and passed by without stopping,¹ and arrived at a plain where there were some springs with very little water, and on one side was a high rocky hill² with a fortress very difficult to subdue, as the attempt soon proved, and when we arrived in the neighbourhood of this hill we saw that it was crowded with warriors, and from the summit they shouted at us and threw stones and shot darts and arrows, and wounded three of our soldiers. Then Cortés ordered us to halt there, and said "it seems that all these Mexicans who shut themselves up in fortresses make mock of us as long as we do not attack them," and he said this thinking of those whom we had left behind among the foot hills, and he ordered some horsemen and crossbowmen to go round to the other side of the hill and see if there was any other place where we could ascend and find a more convenient

¹ This is misleading; they were on their way to Yautepec, but it was not until two days later that they passed by that town without stopping. The two penoles where the fighting took place must have been situated between Chimal and Oaxtepec (cf. Cortés Third Letter).

² Probably Tlayacapan (see Orozco y Berra, Vol. IV, p. 541, and Hlilxochitl, *Historia Chichimeca* Cap. 93).

opening whence to attack them. They returned to say that the best approach was where we then were, for there was no other place where it was possible to climb up, for it was all steep rock. Then Cortés ordered us to make an attack. The standard bearer Cristóbal del Corral led the way with other ensigns and all of us followed him while Cortés and the horsemen kept guard on the plain, so that no other troops of Mexicans should fall on the baggage or on us during our attack on the stronghold. As we began to climb up the hill, the Indians who were posted above rolled down so many huge stones and rocks that it was terrifying to see them hurtling and bounding down, and it was a miracle that we were not all of us killed. One soldier fell dead at my feet, he was one Martínez, a Valencian who had been Maestrasala to a Señor de Salva, in Castile; he had a helmet on his head but he gave no cry and never spoke another word. Still we kept on, but as the great *Galgas*, as we call these big rocks in this country, came rolling and tearing and bounding down and breaking in pieces, they soon killed two more good soldiers, Gaspar Sánchez, nephew of the Treasurer of Cuba, and a man named Bravo, but still we kept on. Then another valiant soldier named Alonzo Rodríguez was killed, and two others were wounded in the head, and nearly all the rest was wounded in the legs, and still we persevered and pushed on ahead.

As I was active in those days, I kept on following the Standard bearer Corral, and we got beneath some hollows and cavities which there were in the hillside so as to avoid a chance rock hitting me and I clambered up from hollow to hollow to escape being killed. The standard bearer Cristóbal del Corral was sheltering himself behind some thick trees covered with thorns which grow in these hollows, his face was streaming with blood

and his banner was broken, and he called out, "Oh Señor Bernal Díaz del Castillo, it is impossible to go on any further, keep in the shelter of the hollow and take care that none of those galgas or boulders strike you, for one can hardly hold on with one's hands and feet, much less climb any higher." Just then I saw that Pedro Barba, a captain of the crossbowmen, and two other soldiers were coming up in the same way that Corral and I had done, climbing from hollow to hollow. I called out from above, "Señor Capitan, don't come up any further, for you can't hold on with hands and feet, but will roll down again." When I said this to him he replied as though he were very valiant, or some great lord and could make no other reply, "Go ahead." I took that reply as a personal insult, and answered him, "let us see you come to where I am," and I went up still higher. At that very moment such a lot of great stones came rolling down on us from above where they had stored them for the purpose, that Pedro Barba was wounded and one soldier killed, and they could not climb a single step higher.

Then the Standard bearer Corral cried out that they should pass the word to Cortés, from mouth to mouth, that we could not get any higher, and that to retreat was equally dangerous.

When Cortés heard this he understood what was happening, for there below where he stood on the level ground two or three soldiers had been killed and seven of them wounded by the great impetus of the boulders which they hurled down on them, and Cortés thought for certain that nearly all of us who had made the ascent must have been killed or badly wounded, for from where he stood he could not see the folds in the hill. So by signs and shouts and by the shots that they fired, we up above knew that they were meant as signals for us to

retreat, and in good order we descended from hollow to hollow, our bodies bruised and streaming with blood, the banners rent, and eight men dead. When Cortés saw us he gave thanks to God and they related to him what had happened between Pedro Barba and me. Pedro Barba himself and the Standard Bearer Corral were telling him about the great strength of the hill and that it was a marvel that the boulders did not carry us away as they flew down, and the story was soon known throughout the camp.

Let us leave these empty tales and say how there were many companies of Mexicans lying in wait in places where we could neither see nor observe them, hoping to bring help and succour to those posted on the hill, for they well knew that we should not be able to force our way into the stronghold, and they had arranged that while we were fighting, the warriors on the hill on one side, and they on the other, would make an attack on us, and as it had been arranged so they came to the assistance of those on the hill. When Cortés knew that they were approaching, he ordered the horsemen and all of us to go and attack them, and this we did, for the ground was level in places as there were fields lying between the small hills, and we pursued the enemy until they reached another very strong hill.

We killed very few Indians during the pursuit for they took refuge in places where we could not reach them. So we returned to the stronghold which we had attempted to scale, and seeing that there was no water there, and that neither we nor the horses had had anything to drink that day, for the springs which I have spoken about as being there contained nothing but mud, because the many allies whom we had brought with us crowded into them and would not let them flow. For this reason orders were given to shift our camp, and we went down

through some fields to another hill which was distant from the first about a league and a half, thinking that we should find water there, but we found very little of it. Near this hill were some native mulberry trees and there we camped, and there were some twelve or thirteen houses at the foot of the stronghold. As soon as we arrived the Indians began to shout and shoot darts and arrows and roll down boulders from above.

There were many more people in this fortress than there were in the first hill, and it was much stronger, as we afterwards found out.

Our musketeers and crossbowmen fired up at them but they were so high up and protected by so many barricades that we could not do them any harm, besides there was no possibility of climbing up and forcing our way in. Although we made two attempts, from the houses that stood there, over some steps by which we could mount up for two stages, beyond that, as I have already said, it was worse than the first hill, so that we did not increase our reputation at this stronghold any more than at the first, and the victory lay with the Mexicans and their allies.

That night we slept in the mulberry grove and were half dead with thirst. It was arranged that on the next day all the musketeers and crossbowmen should go to another hill which was close by the large one, and should climb up it, for there was a way up although it was not an easy one, to see if from that hill their muskets and crossbows would carry as far as the stronghold on the other, so that they could attack it. Cortés ordered Francisco Verdugo and the Treasurer Juan de Alderete who boasted that they were good crossbowmen, and Pedro Barba who was a Captain, to go as leaders, and all the rest of the soldiers to attack from the steps and tracks of [above] the houses which I have already spoken of, and to climb up as best we could. So we began the ascent, but they

hurled down so many stones both great and small that many of the soldiers were wounded, and in addition to this it was quite useless to attempt the ascent, for even using both our hands and feet we could climb no further. While we were making these attempts the musketeers and crossbowmen from the other hill of which I have spoken, managed to reach the enemy with their muskets and crossbows but they could only just do it, however they killed some and wounded others. In this way we went on attacking them for about half an hour when it pleased our Lord God that they agreed to make peace. The reason why they did so was that they had not got a drop of water, and there was a great number of people on the level ground on the hill top and the people from all the neighbourhood round had taken refuge there both men, women and children and slaves. So that we down below should understand that they wished for peace, the women on the hill waved their shawls and clapped the palms of their hands together as a sign that they would make bread or tortillas for us and the warriors ceased shooting arrows and darts and hurling down stones.

When Cortés observed this he ordered that no more harm should be done to them, and by signs he made them understand that five of their chiefs should come down to treat for peace. When they came down with much reverence they asked Cortés to pardon them for having protected and defended themselves by taking refuge in that stronghold. Cortés replied somewhat angrily through our interpreters Doña Marina and Aguilar that they deserved death for having begun the war, but as they had come to make peace, they must go at once to the other hill and summon the Caciques and chiefs who were stationed there and bring in the dead bodies, and that if they came in peace he would pardon what had happened, if not, that we should attack them and besiege them until

they died of thirst, for we knew well that there [too] they had no water, for there is very little in all that part of the country. So they went off at once to summon the Caciques as they were told to do.

I will stop talking about this until they come back with the reply and will relate that Cortés was standing talking to the Friar Melgarejo and the Treasurer Alderete about the wars that we had already waged before they came, which were just as bad as the attack on the hill, and of the great power of the Mexicans and about the great cities that we had seen since leaving Spain, and was saying that if our Lord the Emperor was told the truth, (instead of the Bishop of Burgos writing to him the reverse) that he would send and give us great rewards, for no other king in the world had had such services done for him as we had performed in winning so many cities for him without his knowing anything whatever about it.

Let us leave out much more conversation that took place and relate how Cortés sent the Standard bearer Corral, and two other captains namely Juan Jaramillo and Pedro de Ircio and me, who happened to be there with them, to ascend the hill and see what the stronghold was like, whether there were many Indians wounded or killed by the arrows and muskets and how many people were gathered there.

When he gave us these orders he said, "Look to it, Sirs, that you do not take from them a single grain of maize, and as I understood it he meant that we should help ourselves, and it was for that reason that he sent us and told me to go with the others. We ascended the hill by a track, and I must say that it was stronger than the first hill for it was sheer rock, and when we reached the top the entrance into the stronghold was no wider than the two mouths of a silo or an oven. At

the very top it was level ground and there was a great breadth of meadow land all crowded with people, both warriors and many women and children, and we found twenty dead men and many wounded, and they had not a drop of water to drink. All their clothes and other property was done up in bundles and there were many bales of cloaks which were the tribute they paid to Guatemoc, and when I saw so many loads of cloths and knew that it was intended for tribute I began to load four Tlaxcalans, my free servants whom I had brought with me, and I also put four other bales on the backs of four other Indians who were guarding the tribute, one bale on each man's back. When Pedro de Ircio saw this he said that [the bales] should not be taken, and I contended that they should, but as he was a Captain, I did as he ordered, for he threatened to tell Cortés about it. Pedro de Ircio said to me that I had heard what Cortés had said, that we should not take a single grain of maize, and I replied that was true, and that it was on account of those very words I wished to carry off these robes. However, he would not let me carry off anything at all, and we went down to tell Cortés what we had seen concerning the things on which he had sent us to report. Then Pedro de Ircio told Cortés about the contention that I had had with him which pleased Cortés greatly, after giving an account of what there was there, Pedro de Ircio said, "I took nothing from them although Bernal Díaz del Castillo had already laden eight Indians with cloth and would have brought them away loaded had I not stopped him." Then Cortés replied, half angrily "Why did he not bring them, you ought to have stayed there with the cloth and the Indians" and he added "See how they understand me, I sent them to help themselves, and from Bernal Díaz who did understand me, they took away the spoil which he was taking from those dogs who

will sit there laughing at us in the company of those whom we have killed and wounded."

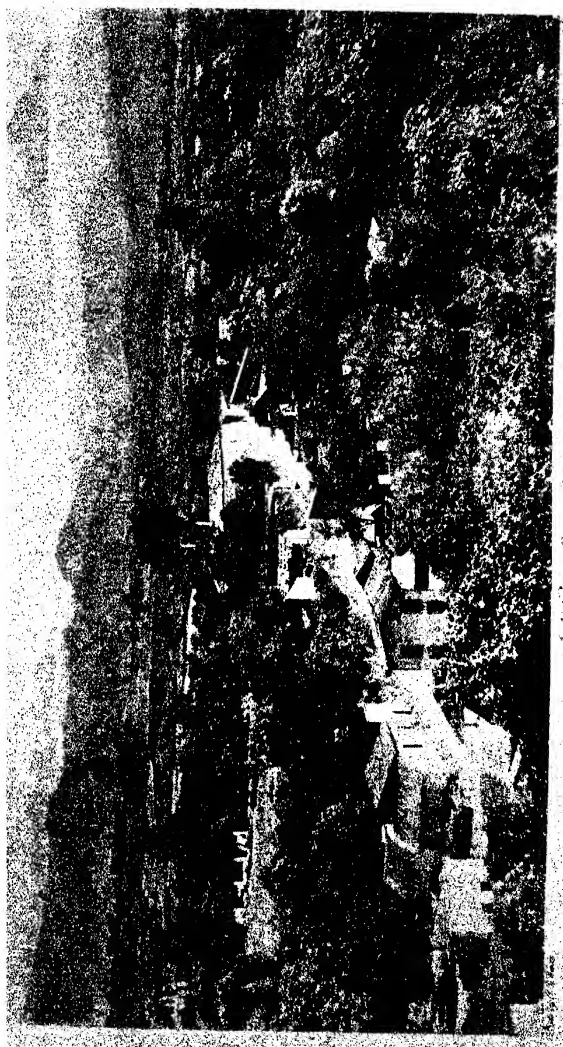
When Pedro de Ircio heard this he wished to go up to the stronghold again, but he was told that there was no reason for his going, and that on no account should he return there.

Let us leave this talk and say that the people from the other hill came in, and, after much discussion about their being pardoned for their past deeds, all gave their fealty to His Majesty. As there was no water in that place we went at once to a fine pueblo already mentioned by me in the last chapter called Oaxtepec, where is the garden which I have said is the best that I have ever seen in all my life, and so said the Treasurer Alderete and the monk Fray Pedro Melgarejo and our Cortés. When they saw it and walked about in it they admired it greatly and said that they had never seen a better garden in Spain. I must add that we all found quarters in the garden that night. The Caciques of the town came to speak and offer their services to Cortés, for Gonzalo de Sandoval had already brought them to peace when he entered the town, as I have written fully in the chapter which treats of that event. That night we slept there and the next morning very early we left for Cuernavaca¹ and we met some squadrons of Mexicans who had come out from that town and the horsemen pursued them more than a league and a half until they took refuge in another large pueblo called Tepostlan where the inhabitants were so completely off their guard that we fell upon them before their spies whom they had sent to watch us could reach them.

Here we found some very good-looking Indian women and much spoil, but none of the Mexicans nor any of the

¹ Coadlabaca in the text (Mex. Cuauhnahuac). In this instance the name is given in mistake for Yautepec. (Cf. Cortés's Third Letter.)

inhabitants waited for us in the town, so Cortés sent three or four times to summon the Caciques to come and make peace, and said that if they did not come he would burn the town and go in search of them. They replied that they did not mean to come, therefore, so as to strike fear into the other pueblos, Cortés ordered half the houses round about to be set on fire. At that very moment the Caciques from the pueblo that we had passed that day which I have said is called Yautepec came and gave their fealty to His Majesty. The next day we took the road for a much better and larger town named Coadlabaca (at the present time we usually alter the spelling and call it Cuernavaca), and it was garrisoned by many warriors both Mexican and Native, and was very strong on account of the Barrancas more than eight fathoms deep, with running water at the bottom, but the volume of water is small. However, they made the place into a stronghold and there was no way of entering for horses except by two bridges which had already been broken down. This protection was sufficient to prevent our forcing an entrance so we fought with them from across the stream and ravine, and they shot many arrows and lances at us and hurled stones from their slings, so that they fell thicker than hail. While this was happening Cortés was informed that about half a league further on there was a place where horses could pass, and he at once set off with all the horsemen while all of us remained looking for some way to get across, and we saw that by means of some trees which stood near the edge one could get over to the other side of that deep ravine, and although three soldiers fell from the trees into the water below, and one of them broke his leg, nevertheless we did cross over although the danger was great. As for me I will say truly that when I was crossing and saw how bad and dangerous the passage was, I turned quite giddy, still I got across, I and others of our soldiers and



*A View from Cuernavaca
Looking N.E.*

many Tlaxcalans, and we fell on the rear of the Mexicans who were shooting stones and darts and arrows at our people, and when they saw us they could not believe it, and thought that we were more numerous than we were. At that moment Cristóbal de Olid and Andrés de Tápia and other horsemen who at great risk had crossed by a broken bridge, arrived on the scene and we fell on the enemy so that they turned their backs and fled into the thickets about the deep ravine where we could not reach them. Soon afterwards Cortés himself arrived with the rest of the horsemen.

In this town we took great spoil both of large bales of cloth as well as good-looking women. Cortés ordered us to remain there that day and we all found quarters in the beautiful garden of the chief of the town.

Although I feel bound to speak many times in the course of this story about the great precautions of sentinels, spies and scouts which were taken wherever we were, whether encamped or on the march, it would be tedious to repeat it too often, and for this reason I will go on and say that our scouts came to tell Cortés that twenty Indians were approaching, and that from their movements and appearance they seemed to be Caciques and chieftains who were bringing messages or coming to seek for peace. They proved to be the Caciques of the town, and when they arrived where Cortés was standing they paid him great respect and presented him with some gold jewels and asked him to pardon them for not meeting him peacefully, but they said the Lord of Mexico commanded them to stay in their stronghold and thence to make war on us, and had sent a large force of Mexicans to aid them, but from what they had now seen, there was no place, however strong it might be, that we would not attack and dominate, and they begged him [Cortés] to have mercy and make peace with them. Cortés received

them graciously, and told them that we were the vassals of a great Prince, the Emperor Don Carlos, who was good to all those who wished to serve him and that in his Royal Name he would receive them in peace, and they then gave their fealty to His Majesty. I remember that those Caciques said that our gods had warned their gods that their persons and property and towns would be chastized. We must leave them there and relate how very early on the next day we set out for another great town named Xochimilco and what happened on the road and in the city, and the attacks that were made on us I will go on to tell about, up to our return to Texcoco.

CHAPTER CXLV.

About the great thirst that we endured on the march and the great danger that we were in at Xochimilco from the many battles and skirmishes which we fought against the Mexicans and the natives of that city, and the many other warlike encounters which we went through before returning to Texcoco.

So we set out towards Xochimilco, which is a great city where nearly all the houses are built in a fresh water lake, distant about two and a half leagues from Mexico. We marched with great circumspection and in close order as it was always our custom to do, and we passed through some pine forests, but there was no water whatever along the road. As we carried our arms on our backs and it was already late and the sun was very hot we suffered much from thirst, but we did not know if there was any water ahead of us, for we had marched two or three leagues and we were still uncertain how far off was the pool which we had been told was on the road. When Cortés saw that the whole of the army was tired out and our allies the Tlaxcalans were dispirited, and one of them

had died of thirst, and I believe one of our soldiers who was old and ailing also died of thirst, he ordered a halt to be made in the shade of some pine trees and sent six horsemen ahead on the road to Xochimilco to see how far off the nearest village, or farm, or pool of water might be, so that we might know if it were near and might go and sleep there.

When the horsemen (who were Cristóbal de Olid and a certain Valdenebro, and Pedro González de Trujillo and some other energetic men) set out, I made up my mind to step aside so that neither Cortés nor the horsemen should see me, and with my three strong and active Tlaxcalan servants I followed behind the horsemen until they observed me coming behind them, and stopped in order to turn me back for fear that there should be some unexpected attack by Mexican warriors from which I could not defend myself. Nevertheless I preferred to go on with them, and Cristóbal de Olid, as he was a friend of mine, said that I might go but should keep my hands ready to fight and my feet ready to place myself in safety if there was any fear of warriors, however, my thirst was so great that I would have risked my life to satisfy it. About half a league ahead there were a number of farms and cottages on the hillsides belonging to the people of Xochimilco. The horsemen left me and went to search for pools of water and they found some and satisfied their thirst, and one of my Tlaxcalans brought out of a house a large pitcher of very cold water (for they have very large pitchers in that country) from which I quenched my thirst, and so did they.

Then I determined to return to where Cortés was resting, for the dwellers in the farms were already giving the call to arms and shouting and whistling at us. With the help of the Tlaxcalans I carried along the pitcher full of water and I found Cortés who was beginning to

march again with his army. I told him that there was water at the farms near by and that I had already had a drink and was bringing water in a pitcher which the Tlaxcalans were bringing very carefully hidden, so that it should not be taken from me, for thirst has no laws, and Cortés and some of the other gentlemen drank from it, and he was well satisfied and all were rejoiced and hastened on their march so that we arrived at the farms before the sun had set.

Water was found in the houses, but not very much of it, and owing to the hunger and thirst that they suffered some of the soldiers ate some plants like thistles which hurt their tongues and mouths.

Just then the horsemen returned and reported that the pool of water was a long way off, and that all the country was being called to arms, and that it would be advisable to sleep where we were. So sentinels and watchmen and scouts were at once posted and I was one of the watchmen, and I remember that it rained a little that night and there was a very high wind.

The next day very early in the morning we began our march again and about eight o'clock we arrived at Xochimilco. I cannot estimate the great number of the warriors who were waiting for us, some on the land and others in a passage by a broken bridge, and the great number of breast works and barricades which had been thrown up, and the lances which they carried made from the swords captured from us during the great slaughter on the causeways at Mexico. Many of the Indian captains carried shining swords, taken from us, fixed on the end of long lances, and there were archers and those who used double-pointed javelins and slings with stones and two handed swords like broadswords edged with stone knives. I say that all the mainland was covered with them, and at the passage of that bridge we were fighting

them for more than half an hour and could not get through, neither muskets nor crossbows nor the many great charges that we made were of any avail, and the worst of all was that many other squadrons of them were already coming to attack us on our flanks. When we saw that, we dashed through the water and bridge, some half swimming and others jumping, and here some of our soldiers, much against their will, had perforce to drink so much of the water beneath the bridge that their bellies were swollen up from it.

To go back to the battle, at the passage of the bridge many of our soldiers were wounded, but we soon brought the enemy to the sword's point² along some streets where there was solid ground ahead of us. Cortés and the horsemen turned in another direction on the mainland where they came on more than ten thousand Indians, all Mexicans, who had come as reinforcements to help the people in the city, and they fought in such a way with our troops that, with their lances in rest, they awaited the attack of the horsemen and wounded four of them. Cortés was in the middle of the press and the horse he was riding, which was a very good one, a dark chestnut called "el Romo"¹ either because he was too fat, or was tired, (for he was a pampered horse,) broke down, and the Mexican warriors who were around in great numbers laid hold of Cortés and dragged him from the horse; others say that by sheer strength they threw the horse down. Whichever way it may have happened, Cortés and the horse fell to the ground, and at that very moment many more Mexican warriors pressed up to see if they could carry him off alive. When some Tlaxcalans and also a very valiant soldier named Cristóbal de Olea (a native of

Old Castille in the neighbourhood of Medina del Campo) saw what had happened, they at once came up and with good cuts and thrusts they cleared a space so that Cortés could mount again although he was badly wounded in the head. Olea was also very badly wounded with three sword cuts. By that time all of us soldiers who were anywhere near came to their help. At that time, as every street in the City was crowded with squadrons of warriors and as we were obliged to follow their banners, we were not able all to keep together, but some of us to attack in some places and some of us in others as Cortés commanded us. However we all knew from the shouts and cries, yells and whistles that we heard, that where Cortés and the horsemen were engaged the fight was hottest, and, without further explanation, although there were swarms of warriors round us, we went at great risk to ourselves to join Cortés. Fifteen horsemen had already joined him and were fighting near some canals where the enemy had thrown up breastworks and barricades. When we came up we put the Mexicans to flight, but not all of them turned their backs on us, and because the soldier Olea who had helped our Cortés was very badly wounded with three sword cuts and was bleeding, and because the streets of the city were crowded with warriors, we advised Cortés to turn back to some barricades, so that he and Olea and the horse might be attended to.

So we turned back, but not without anxiety on account of the stones, arrows and javelins which they fired at us from the barricades, for the Mexicans thought that we were turning to retreat and they followed us with great fury. At this moment Andrés de Tápia and Cristóbal de Olid came up, and all the rest of the horsemen who had gone off with them in other directions. Blood was streaming down Olid's face, and from his

horse and from all the rest of them, for everyone was wounded, and they said that they had been fighting against such a host of Mexicans in the open fields that they could make no headway against them, for when we had passed the bridge which I have mentioned it seems that Cortés had divided the horsemen so that half went in one direction and half in the other, one half following one set of squadrons and the other half another set of squadrons.

While we were treating the wounds by searing them with oil, there was a great noise of yells, trumpets, shells and drums from some of the streets on the mainland, and along them came a host of Mexicans into the court where we were tending the wounded, and they let fly such a number of javelins and stones that they at once wounded many of our soldiers. However, the enemy did not come very well out of that incursion for we at once charged on them and with good cuts and thrusts we left most of them stretched out on the ground.

The horsemen too were not slow in riding out to the attack and killed many of them, but two of the horses were wounded. We drove them out of that place or court, and when Cortés saw that there were no more of the enemy we went to rest in another great court where stood the great oratories of the city.

Many of our soldiers ascended the highest temple where the Idols were kept, and from thence looked over the Great City of Mexico and the lakes, for one had a commanding view of it all, and they could see approaching more than two thousand canoes full of warriors who were coming straight towards us from Mexico. Later on we learnt that the Prince of Mexico named Guatemoc had sent them to attack us that night or next day, and at the same time he sent another ten thousand warriors by land so that by attacking us both on one side and the other,

not one of us should go out of that city alive. He had also got ready another ten thousand men as a reinforcement when the attack was made. All this we found out on the following day from five Mexican captains who were captured during the battle.

However, our Lord ordained that it should be otherwise, for when that great fleet of canoes was observed and it was known that they were coming to attack us, we agreed to keep a very good watch throughout the camp, especially at the landing places and canals where they had to disembark. The horsemen were waiting very much on the alert all night through, with the horses saddled and bridled on the causeway and on the mainland, and Cortés and all his captains were keeping watch and going the rounds all night long. I and two other soldiers were posted as sentinels on some masonry walls, and we had [got together] many stones where we were posted, and the soldiers of our company were provided with cross-bows and muskets and long lances, so that if the enemy should reach the landing place on the canals we could resist them and make them turn back; other soldiers were posted as guards on other canals.

While my companions and I were watching we heard a sound of many canoes being paddled, although they approached with muffled paddles, to disembark at the landing place where we were posted, and with a good shower of stones and with the lances we opposed them so that they did not dare to disembark. We sent one of our companions to give warning to Cortés, and while this was happening there again approached many more canoes laden with warriors, and they began to shoot many darts and stones and arrows at us, and as we again opposed them, two of our soldiers were wounded in the head, but as it was night time and very dark the canoes went to join the captains of the whole fleet of canoes and

they all went off together to disembark at another landing place where the canals were deeper. As they were not used to fight during the night, they all went to join the squadrons that Guatemoc had sent by land which already numbered more than fifteen thousand Indians.

I also wish to relate, but not for the purpose of boasting about it, that when our companion went to report to Cortés that many canoes full of warriors had reached the landing place where we were watching, Cortés himself accompanied by ten horsemen came at once to speak to us, and as he came close to us without speaking we cried out, I and Gonzalo Sánchez, a Portuguese from Algarve, and we shouted "who comes there, are not you able to speak, what do you want?" and we threw three or four stones at him. When Cortés recognised my voice and that of my companion he said to the Treasurer Julian de Alderete and to Fray Pedro Melgarejo and the Maestre de Campo, Cristóbal de Olid, who were accompanying him on his rounds "We need no further security here than the two men who are here stationed as watchmen, they are men who have been with me from the earliest times and we can fully trust them to keep a good look out even in a case of still greater danger" and then they spoke to us and explained the danger that was threatening us.

In the same way without saying more to us they went on to examine the other outposts and when I was least expecting it, we heard how they flogged two soldiers who were lounging through their watch, these were some of Narvaez's men.

There is another matter which I call to mind, which is that our musketeers had no more powder, and the crossbowmen no arrows, for on the day before they had fired so quickly that all had been used up. That same night Cortés ordered the crossbowmen to get ready all [the arrows] they possessed and to feather them and

fix on the arrow heads, for on these expeditions we always carried many loads of materials for arrows and over five loads of arrow heads made of copper, so that we could always make arrows when they were needed. So all that night every crossbowman was occupied feathering and putting heads on the arrows, and Pedro Barba, who was their Captain never ceased from overseeing the work and from time to time Cortés assisted him.

Let us leave this and relate that as soon as there was daylight we saw all the Mexican squadrons closing in on the court where we were encamped, and, as they never caught us napping, the horsemen in one direction where there was firm ground, and we and our Tlaxcalan allies in another, charged through them and killed and wounded three of their captains who died the next day, and our allies made a good capture and took as prisoners five chieftains, from whom we learnt what orders had been given by Guatemoc, as I have already related.

Many of our soldiers were wounded in that battle, but this encounter was not the end of the fighting, for our horsemen following on the heels of the enemy, came on the ten thousand warriors whom Guatemoc had sent as reinforcements to help and support those whom he had sent in advance. The Mexican Captains who came with this force carried swords captured from us, and made many demonstrations of the valour with which they would use them saying that they would slay us with our own arms. When our horsemen who were few in number found themselves close to the enemy and saw the great number of squadrons, they feared to attack them, and they moved aside so as not to meet them until Cortés and all of us could come to their aid. When we heard of this, without a moment's delay, all the horsemen who were left in mounted their horses although both men and horses were wounded, and all the soldiers and crossbowmen and our

Tlaxcalan allies marched out and we charged in such a way that we broke the ranks of the enemy and got at them hand to hand and with good sword play made them abandon their unlucky enterprise and leave us the field of battle.

Let us leave this and go on to say that we captured some other chieftains there and heard from them that Guatemoc had ordered another great flotilla of Canoes to be despatched and was sending many more warriors by land, and had said to his warriors that when we were weary from our recent encounters and had many dead and wounded, we would become careless, thinking that no more squadrons would be sent against us, and that with the large force he was then sending they would be able to defeat us. When this was known, if we had been on the alert before we were much more so now, and it was agreed that the next day we should leave the city and not wait for more attacks. That day we spent in attending to the wounded, and in cleaning our arms and making arrows.

It appears that, in this city there were many rich men who had very large houses full of mantles and cloth and Indian cotton shirts, and they possessed gold and feather work and much other property. It so happened that while we were occupied as I have described, the Tlaxcalans and some of our soldiers chanced to find out in what part of the town these houses were situated, and some of the Xochimilco prisoners went with them to point them out. These houses stood in the fresh water lake and one could reach them by a causeway, but there were two or three small bridges in the causeway where it crossed some deep canals, and as our soldiers went to the houses and found them full of cloth and no one was guarding them, they loaded themselves and many of the Tlaxcalans with the cloth and the gold ornaments and came with it to the camp. Some of the other soldiers when they saw this,

also set out for the houses, and while they were inside taking the cloth out of some huge wooden boxes, at that very moment a great flotilla of canoes arrived full of Indians from Mexico who fell upon them and wounded many of the soldiers, and carried off four of them alive and took them to Mexico, but the rest escaped.

One of those who was carried off was Juan de Lara and another Alonzo Hernández, but I forget the names of the others. When these four soldiers were taken to Guatemoc he learnt how few of us we were who had come with Cortés and that many of us were wounded, and all that he wished to know about our journey. When he had thoroughly informed himself about all this, he ordered the arms, feet and heads of our unfortunate companions to be cut off and sent them to the towns of our allies, to those that had already made peace with us, and he sent to tell them that he did not think there would be one of us left alive to return to Texcoco. The hearts and blood were offered to the Idols.

Let us leave this and say how he at once sent many fleets of canoes full of warriors, and other companions by land, and told them to see to it that we did not leave Xochimilco alive. As I am tired of writing about the many battles and encounters which we fought against the Mexicans in those days, and yet cannot omit to mention them, I will say that as soon as dawn broke there came such a host of Culhuans, that is Mexicans, by the waterways and others by the causeways and by the mainland that we could hardly break them up. So we then went out from the city to a great Plaza which stood at a little distance from the town, where they were used to hold their markets, and halted there with all our baggage ready for the march. Cortés then began to make us a speech about the danger in which we were placed, for we knew for certain that in the bad passes on the roads, at the creeks and on the

canals the whole power of Mexico and its allies would be lying in wait for us, and he told us that it would be a good thing, and it was his command, that we should march unencumbered and should leave the baggage and the cloths so that it should not impede us when it came to fighting. When we heard this with one voice we answered that, please God we were men enough to defend our property and persons and his also, and that it would show great cowardice to do such a thing. When Cortés knew our wishes and heard our reply he said that he prayed God to help us, and then knowing the strength and power of the enemy, we arranged the order of march, the baggage and the wounded in the middle, the horsemen divided so that half of them marched ahead and half as a rearguard. The crossbowmen and our native allies we also placed near the middle as a security, for the Mexicans were accustomed to attack the baggage. Of the musketeers we did not take much count for they had no powder left.

In this order we began our march, and when the squadrons of Mexicans whom Guatemoc had sent out that day saw us retreating from Xochimilco they thought that it was from fear and that we did not dare to meet them, which was true, and so great a host of them started off at once and came directly against us that they wounded eight soldiers of whom two died within eight days, and they thought to defeat us and break into the baggage, but as we marched in the order I have described they were not able to do it. However, all along the road until we reached a large town called Coyoacan, about two leagues distant from Xochimilco, the warriors never ceased to make sudden attacks on us from positions where we could not well get at them, but whence they could assail us with javelins and stones and arrows, and then take refuge in the neighbouring creeks and ditches.

When we arrived at Coyoacan about ten o'clock in the morning we found it deserted.

I wish now to say that there are many cities standing about two leagues apart from one another, near the Great City of Mexico, such as Xochimilco, Coyoacan, Churubusco, Iztapalapa, Cuitlahuac and Mexquic¹ and two or three other pueblos, (the greater part of them built in the water,) which stand a league and a half or two leagues one from the other, and from all of them many Indian warriors had assembled in Xochimilco to fight against us. I will go on to say that when we arrived at this large town and found it deserted, as it stands on level ground, we determined to rest there that day and the next so as to attend to the wounded and to make arrows, for we understood very well that we should have to fight more battles before returning to our camp at Texcoco.

Next day early in the morning we began our march in the same formation that we were accustomed to keep, following the road to Tacuba, which stands about two leagues from our starting place. At one place on the road many squadrons of warriors divided into three parties came out to attack us, but we resisted all three attacks, and the horsemen followed the enemy over the level ground until they took refuge in the creeks and canals.

As we kept on our way in the manner I have described, Cortés left us with ten horsemen to prepare an ambush for the Mexicans who came out from the creeks and made attacks on us. He took with him four pages and the Mexicans pretended that they were running away and Cortés with the horsemen and servants followed them. Then Cortés saw that there was a large force of the enemy placed in ambush who fell upon him and his horsemen

¹ Suchimilco, Cuyacan, Huichilubusco, Yztalapa, Cuedlavaca and Mezquique in the text.

and wounded some horses and if they had not retreated at once they would all have been killed or taken prisoners. As it was, the Mexicans carried off alive two out of the four soldiers who were pages to Cortés, and they carried them to Guatemoc who had them sacrificed.

Let us stop talking about this disaster and say that we arrived at Tacuba with our banners flying and with all the army and the baggage. The rest of the horsemen had come in with Pedro de Alvarado and Cristóbal de Olid, but Cortés and the ten horsemen who were with him did not appear, and we had an uncomfortable suspicion that some disaster might have overtaken him. Then Pedro de Alvarado and Cristóbal de Olid and other horsemen went in search of him, in the direction of the creeks where we had seen him turn off. At that moment the other two pages who had gone with Cortés and who had escaped with their lives came into camp, (one who was named Monroy and the other Tomás de Rijoles,) and they told us all that I have already related, and said that they had escaped because they were fleet of foot, and that Cortés and the others were following slowly because their horses were wounded. While we were talking Cortés appeared, at which we all rejoiced, although he had arrived very sad and almost tearful. The two pages who were carried off to Mexico to be sacrificed were called one of them Francisco Martín Bendaval (and this name of Bendaval was given to him because he was a little mad) and the other was called Pedro Gallego.

When we arrived at Tacuba it rained heavily and we took shelter for nearly two hours in some large courts, and Cortés with some other captains and the treasurer Alderete, who was unwell, and the Friar Melgarejo and many of us soldiers ascended the lofty temple of that town whence one had a good view of the city of Mexico which is quite near, and of the lake and the other cities

that I have spoken of, which are built in the water. When the Friar and the treasurer Alderete saw so many and such great cities all standing in the water, they were astonished, and when they looked at the Great City of Mexico and the lake and the great multitude of canoes, some going laden with food, others out fishing and others empty, much more did they marvel, and said that our coming to this New Spain, was not an act of human beings but that it was the great Mercy of God who had ordained that we should hold the country and protect it, and that they had already said that they never remembered to have read in any writing of any vassals who had done such great services for their King as we had done, and that now they said it the more positively and that they would send an account of it to His Majesty.

I will omit the rest of the conversation that took place there, and how the Friar consoled Cortés for the loss of his pages, for he was deeply grieved about them, and will say how Cortés and all of us stood there viewing from Tacuba the great Temple of Huichilobos and Tlatelolco and the buildings where we had been used to lodge, and we could see all the city and the bridges and the causeway along which we had fled. At that moment Cortés heaved a sigh of great sadness, very much greater than he had felt before, thinking of his men who had been killed before he descended that lofty temple. From this originated the song or romance:—

En Tacuba esta Cortés
Con su esquadron esforzado
Triste estaba y muy penoso
Triste y con gran cuydado
Una mano en la mexilla
Y la otra en el costado, etc.

Cortés stood in Tacuba
With his valiant company
Sad he was, and very anxious
Sad and weighed down with care
One hand was to his face
The other to his side, etc.

I remember that then a soldier called the Bachelor Alonzo Pérez, who after New Spain was conquered was

the fiscal and a settler in Mexico, said to him, "Señor, do not feel so sad—such things must happen in war, and it will not be said of your honour :

Mira Nero de Tarpeya.
A Roma como se ardia

Nero from the Tarpean rock
Watched Rome as it was burning"

Cortés answered him, "you have seen how many times I have sent to Mexico praying them to make peace, for I am not grieving over one matter only, but at the thought of the great hardships through which we must pass before we gain the mastery, and that with the help of God we will soon set to the work."

Enough of these dialogues and romances, for it was not the right time for them; let me say that there was a suggestion made among our soldiers and captains to go and take a look at the causeway, as it ran so close to where we were in Tacuba. However as we had no powder, and very few arrows, and nearly all the soldiers in the army were wounded, and remembering that it was little more than a month since Cortés had been there and had tried to pass along the causeway with a large number of soldiers, and had been in such great danger that there was fear of his being defeated, (as I have related in the chapter which treats of that matter), it was agreed that we should keep on our march, for fear lest some day or night we should become involved in a contest with the Mexicans, for Tacuba is very close to the great city of Mexico and Guatemoc might exert his great powers so as to carry off some of our soldiers alive.

So we began our march, and passed by Atzacapotzalco¹ which we found to be deserted, and went on to Tenayuca which is the large town we were accustomed to call El pueblo de las Serpes, for I have already said in the

chapter that treats of it, that there were three serpents in the chief oratory in which they worshipped and they had them for their Idols. This town was also deserted. From thence we went to Guatitlan, and throughout the day it never ceased raining with heavy rainstorms, and as we marched with our arms shouldered and never took off [our harness] by day or night, what with the weight and the soaking we got, we were quite broken down. We arrived at that large town when night was falling but it also was deserted. It never ceased raining all night long and the mud was very deep. The natives of the place and some squadrons of Mexicans yelled at us all night from the canals and other places where we could do them no harm. As it was raining and very dark no sentinels could be posted or rounds made, and no order was kept, nor could we find those who were posted, and this I can myself assert for they stationed me as a watchman for the first watch, and neither officer nor patrol visited me, and so it was throughout the camp.

Let us leave this carelessness and say that the next day we continued our march to another large pueblo¹ of which I do not remember the name; the mud was very deep in it, and we found it deserted. The following day we passed by other deserted pueblos and the day after we reached a pueblo called Aculman, subject to Texcoco. When they knew in Texcoco that we were coming, they came out to receive Cortés, and there were many Spaniards who had lately come from Spain. Captain Gonzalo de Sandoval with many soldiers also came out to receive us and with him came the Lord of Texcoco, who as I have already said was called Don Fernando.

Cortés had a good reception both from our own people

¹ Gilotepeque (Cortés Third Letter), *i.e.*, Citlaltepec.

and from those recently come from Spain, and a still more cordial reception from the natives of the neighbouring towns who at once brought us food.

That night Sandoval returned to Texcoco with all his soldiers to protect his camp, and the next morning Cortés and all of us continued our march to Texcoco. So we marched on weary and wounded, and having left many of our soldier companions behind us dead, or in the power of the Mexicans to be sacrificed, and instead of resting and curing our wounds we had to meet a conspiracy organized by certain persons of quality who were partisans of Narvaez, for the purpose of killing Cortés and Gonzalo de Sandoval, Pedro de Alvarado and Andrés de Tápia.

What else happened I will go on to relate.

CHAPTER CXLVI.

How when we arrived at Texcoco with Cortés and all our army from the expedition after making a circuit of the towns of the lake, it had been settled among certain of those persons who came with Narvaez to kill Cortés and all who should go to his defence. And he who was the principal author of this farce was one who had been a servant of Diego Velásquez the Governor of Cuba, and Cortés ordered this soldier to be hanged; and how the slaves were branded, and all the camp and the friendly towns were got ready, and a review was held, and orders given and other things that happened.

AS I have already said we returned broken up and wounded from the expedition that I have recorded. It appears that a great friend of the Governor of Cuba named Antonio de Villafañá, a native of Zamora or Toro, planned with other soldiers of the party of Narvaez, (I will not mention their names for their honour's sake), that when Cortés should thus return from that expedition

they would kill him with dagger thrusts. As a Spanish ship had arrived at that time it was to happen in this way: when Cortés should be seated at table dining with his Captains, one of the persons who had made the plot should bring him a letter firmly closed up and sealed as though it came from Castile, and should say that it came from his father Martin Cortés, and while he was reading it they should stab him with daggers, both Cortés and all the Captains and soldiers who should happen to be near Cortés and would defend him.

When all that I have spoken about had already been talked over and prepared, it pleased Our Lord that those who had arranged it should give a share in the affair to two important persons (I wish also to avoid mentioning their names) who had gone on the expeditions with us, and in the plan that had been made they had named one of these persons to be captain general when they had killed Cortés, and other soldiers of the party of Narvaez they appointed chief alguazil and ensign, and alcaldes, magistrates, treasurer and inspector and other officers of that sort; and they had even divided among themselves our property and horses, and this plot was kept secret until two days after our arrival at Texcoco.

It pleased our Lord God that such a thing should not come to pass, for New Spain would have been lost and all of us, for parties and follies would have sprung up at once.

It seems that a soldier divulged it [the plot] to Cortés, who at once put a stop to it before more fuel could be added to the fire, for that good soldier asserted that many persons of quality were concerned in it. When Cortés knew of it, after making great promises and gifts, which he gave to the man who disclosed it to him, he at once secretly informed all our Captains, namely, Pedro de Alvarado, Francisco de Lugo, Cristóbal de Olid,

Andrés de Tápia, Gonzalo de Sandoval and me, and the two alcaldes who were on duty that year, namely, Luis Marin and Pedro de Írcio and all of us who were adherents of Cortés.

As soon as we knew about it we got ready, and without further delay went with Cortés to the lodging of Antonio Villafaña, and there were present with him many of those who were in the conspiracy, and with the aid of four alguaciles whom Cortés had brought with him we promptly laid hands on Villafaña, and the Captains and soldiers who were with him at once began to flee and Cortés ordered them to be seized and detained. As soon as we held Villafaña prisoner Cortés drew from his [Villafaña's] breast the memorandum which he possessed with the signatures of all who were in the conspiracy, and after he had read it and had seen that there were many persons of quality in it, so as not to dishonour them, he spread the report that Villafaña had swallowed the memorandum and that he [Cortés] had neither seen nor read it, and he at once brought him to trial. When his [Villafaña's] statement was taken he spoke the truth and with the many witnesses of good faith and credibility whose evidence they took on the case, the regular Alcaldes jointly with Cortés and the Quarter Master Cristóbal de Olid gave sentence, and after he had confessed with the priest Juan Díaz, they hanged him from the window of a room where he had lodged.

Cortés did not wish that anyone else should be dishonoured in that affair, although at that time many were made prisoners in order to frighten them, and to make a show that he wished to punish others, but as the time was not suitable he overlooked it.

Cortés at once agreed to have a guard for his person, and the Captain of it was a gentleman named Antonio

de Quiñones a native of Zamora, with six soldiers, good and valiant men who guarded him [Cortés] day and night. And he begged us, whom he knew belonged to his party, to look after his person. Although from that time forth he showed great kindness to those who were in the conspiracy, he distrusted them.

Let us leave this subject and say that he at once ordered it to be proclaimed that, within two days, all the Indian men and women that we had captured on those expeditions should be brought to be branded, and a house was designated for the purpose.

So as not to waste more words in this story about the way that they were sold at the auction, (beyond what I have said at other times on the two other occasions when they were branded,) if it were done badly before, it was done much worse this time, for, after taking out the royal fifth, Cortés took his fifth and further thefts for Captains, and if those we sent to be branded were handsome and good Indian women they stole them by night from the crowd, so that they should not reappear from then till doomsday and on this account many women were left out, who we afterwards kept as free servants.

Let us leave this subject and say what orders were afterwards given in our camp.





BOOK XII.

THE SIEGE AND FALL OF MEXICO.

CHAPTER CXLVII.

How Cortés ordered all the pueblos which were friendly to us in the neighbourhood of Texcoco to make a store of arrows and copper arrow heads, and what other orders he gave in our camp.



AFTER Antonio de Villafañá had been punished, and those had quieted down who jointly with him had conspired to kill Cortés and Pedro de Alvarado and Sandoval and such of us as should try to defend them, as I have already more fully written in the last Chapter, and when Cortés saw that the sloops were already built and their rigging, sails and oars were in place, and that there were spare oars for each sloop, and that the canal by which they were to pass out to the lake was very broad and deep, he sent to advise all the friendly pueblos near Texcoco to make eight thousand arrow heads of copper in each pueblo, and they were to be good ones like some others from Castile which they were given as patterns. And he also ordered them to make and trim for him in each pueblo eight thousand arrows of a very good kind of wood, and for these they also carried away a sample, and

he gave them a limit of eight days in which to bring both the arrows and arrow heads to our camp. They brought them within the time allotted, and there were more than fifty thousand arrow heads and as many thousand arrows, and the arrow heads were better than those from Castile. Then Cortés immediately commanded Pedro Barba, who was at that time captain of the crossbowmen, to divide both arrows and arrow heads among all the crossbowmen, and to order them to polish and oil them, and to put feathers on them with a paste, (which sticks better than that from Castile) which is made from some roots called Zacotle. He also gave an order to Pedro Barba that each crossbowman should have two clean and well plaited cords for his crossbow, and as many spare nuts,¹ so that if a cord should break or a nut fly off, they could at once put another in its place, and that they should always shoot at a mark, and see to what distance the crossbow would carry, and for this purpose he gave them a quantity of Valencia thread for the cords, for in the ship belonging to Juan de Burgos, which I have said arrived from Spain a few days before, much thread was brought and a large quantity of powder and crossbows and many other arms and horseshoes and muskets. Cortés also ordered the horsemen to have their horses shod, and to get their lances ready and to parade every day on horseback and gallop and train their horses to turn swiftly, and to skirmish.

When this was done he sent messengers and letters to our friend Xicotenga the elder, who, I have said at other times, had already become a Christian and was called Don Lorenzo de Vargas, and to his son Xicotenga the younger and to his brothers, and to Chichimecatecle, informing them that when the day of Corpus Christi was passed, we were going to leave this city to proceed against Mexico

¹ Nuez = the catch made of bone into which the cord was hooked.

and to invest it. He told them to send him twenty thousand warriors from their own people at Tlaxcala, and from those of Huexotzingo and Cholula, for all were now friends and brothers in arms, and they all knew the time of meeting and the plan, as he had informed them by their own Indians who were continually leaving our camp laden with the spoils from the expeditions we had made.

He also gave warning to the people of Chalco and Tlamanalco and their vassals, to be prepared when we should send to summon them, and he gave them to understand that we were about to invest Mexico, and the time when we should set out, and he said the same to Don Fernando the Lord of Texcoco and to his chieftains and to all his vassals, and to all the other towns friendly to us. One and all replied that they would do exactly what Cortés sent to order them, and that they would come. The people from Tlaxcala came when the feast of Espíritu Santo was over. When this was done he determined to hold a review on one of the feast days. I will go on to tell the arrangement that he made.

CHAPTER CXLVIII.

How a review was held in the City of Texcoco, in the great courts of that city, and what horsemen and crossbowmen and musketeers and soldiers were present, and the orders that were proclaimed and other things that were done.

AFTER the orders were given, in the manner I have already stated, and messengers and letters had been sent to our friends the people of Tlaxcala and of Chalco, and warning given to the other towns, Cortés decided with our Captains and soldiers that on the second day of the feast of Espíritu Santo (this was the year one thousand five hundred and

twenty one) a review should be held. This review was held in the great Courts of Texcoco and there were present eighty-four horsemen, six hundred and fifty soldiers with swords and shields and many with lances, and one hundred and ninety four crossbowmen and musketeers. From these there were chosen to man the thirteen launches those that I will now mention :—for each launch, twelve crossbowmen and musketeers ; these men were not to row, for in addition to them there were also set apart another twelve men, six on each side as rowers for each launch. These are the dozen I spoke about, and besides these there was a Captain for each launch, so that with the Captain, every launch carried twenty-five soldiers. Thirteen launches each with twenty-five soldiers comes to two hundred and eighty-eight soldiers, and with the artillerymen, which were given them in addition to the twenty-five soldiers, there were in all the launches, three hundred soldiers, according to the account which I have given.¹

He [Cortés] also divided among them all the boat guns and falconets we possessed and the powder he thought they would need. When this was done, he ordered the [following] rules, which we all had to observe, to be proclaimed.

First, no man should dare to blaspheme our Lord Jesus Christ, nor Our Lady, His Blessed Mother, nor the Sainted Apostles, nor any other saints under heavy penalty.

Second, no soldier should illtreat our allies, since they went to help us, or should take anything away from them even if they should be spoils gained by

¹ The arithmetic is confusing, as is also that of Cortés, who says—(Second Letter) "For the thirteen sloops, I left three hundred men, nearly all of them skilful sailors, so that in each sloop there were twenty-five Spaniards, and each vessel carried a Captain, a Veedor, and six Crossbowmen and Musketeers."

war, whether Indian men or women or gold or silver or Chalchihuites.

Another was, no soldier should dare to depart either by day or night from our camp to go to any pueblo of our allies, or anywhere else, either to fetch food or for any other matter, under heavy penalties.

Another, all the soldiers should wear very good armour, well quilted, a neck guard, head piece, leggings, and shield, for we knew about the great number of javelins and stones and arrows and lances, and for all of them it was necessary to wear the armour which the proclamation mentioned.

Another, no one should gamble for a horse or arms on any account, under heavy penalty.

Another, no soldier, horseman, crossbowman, or musketeer should go to sleep unless he were fully armed and shod with his sandals, unless it were under the stress of wounds or because he was suffering from illness, so that we might be fully prepared whatsoever time the Mexicans might come to attack us.

In addition to these, the laws were proclaimed which were ordered to be observed in soldiering; that is, that anyone who sleeps when on guard or leaves his post should be punished with death, and it was proclaimed that no soldier should go from one camp to another without leave from his Captain under pain of death.

Another, that any soldier deserting his Captain in war or battle, should suffer death.

This proclamation being issued, I will relate what else was settled.

CHAPTER CXLIX.

How Cortés sought the rowers who were needed to row the launches, and appointed the Captains who were to go in them, and other things that were done.

AFTER the review (which I have already spoken of several times) had taken place, Cortés saw that not enough men who knew how to row could be found to row the launches, although those who had been brought in the ships which we destroyed when we came with Cortés were thoroughly experienced and the sailors from the ships of Narvaez and those from Jamaica also knew how to row, and all of them were placed on the list, and had been warned that they would have to row. Yet counting all of them, there was not a supply for all the thirteen launches. As many of the men refused, and even said that they would not row, Cortés made enquiries to find out who were seamen, or had been seen to go out fishing, and if they came from Palos or Moguer or from Triana or 'El Puerto', or from any other port or place where there were sailors, he ordered them under pain of heavy penalties to go on board the launches. However high born they might say they were, he made them go and row, and in this way he got together one hundred and fifty men as rowers, and they were much freer from hardships than we were who were stationed on the causeways fighting, and they became rich from plunder as I will relate further on.

After Cortés had decided who should go in the launches, he divided the crossbowmen and musketeers and the powder, cannon and arrows and everything else that was necessary among them and ordered them to place in each launch the royal banners and other banners with the name that was given to each launch, besides other things which were needed, and he named as Captains

for each one of them those whom I will now mention here:—Garci Holguin, Pedro Barba, Juan de Linpias Carvajal the deaf, Juan Jaramillo, Jerónimo Ruiz de la Mota, his companion Caravajal, who is now very old and lives in the street of San Francisco, and one Portillo who had just come from Castile, a good soldier who had a handsome wife, and a Zamora who was a ship's mate and now lives in Oaxaca, a Colmenero who was a seaman and a good soldier, a Lema, a Jines Nortes, a Briones a native of Salamanca, another Captain whose name I do not remember, and Miguel Díaz de Auz.

After he had named them, and ordered all the cross-bowmen and musketeers, and the other soldiers who had to row to obey the Captains whom he was placing over them, and not to leave their commands under heavy penalties, he gave instructions to each Captain what he was to do, and to what part of the causeways he was to go, and with which one of the Captains who were on land [he was to co-operate]. When he had finished arranging all that I have mentioned, they came to tell Cortés that the Captains from Tlaxcala with a great number of warriors were approaching, and that Xicotenga, the younger, was coming as their commander in chief, the same who was commander during the wars in Tlaxcala, and it was he who plotted the treachery in Tlaxcala when we came out in flight from Mexico, as I have many other times recounted, and that he was bringing in his Company his two brothers, sons of the good old man Don Lorenzo de Vargas. He [Xicotenga] was also bringing a great force of Tlaxcalans under the command of Chichimecatecle and men from Huexotzingo, and another regiment of Cholulans, although they were few in number, because, from what I always observed after we had punished the people of Cholula (already spoken about by me in the Chapter treating of it), they never afterwards sided with

Mexicans nor yet with us, but were keeping on the look out,¹ and even when we were expelled from Mexico they were not found in opposition to us.

Let us leave this, and go back to our story. When Cortés knew that Xicotenga and his brothers and other Captains were approaching, (and they were coming one day before the time he had told them to come,) Cortés went out a quarter of a league from Texcoco to receive them with Pedro de Alvarado and others of our Captains, and as soon as he met Xicotenga and his brothers, Cortés paid them great respect and embraced them and all the other Captains. They approached in fine order, all very brilliant with great devices, each regiment by itself with its banners unfurled, and the white bird, like an eagle with its wings outstretched, which is their badge. The ensigns waved their banners and standards, and all carried bows and arrows, two handed swords, javelins and spear throwers; some carried macanas and great lances and others small lances. Adorned with their feather head-dresses, and moving in good order and uttering shouts, cries, and whistles, calling out, "Long live the Emperor our Master", and "Castile, Castile, Tlaxcala, Tlaxcala", they took more than three hours entering Texcoco.

Cortés ordered them to be lodged in good quarters, and to be supplied with everything we had in our camp. After many embraces and promises to enrich them, he took leave of them and told them that next day he would give them orders what they were to do, and that now they were tired and should rest.

At the very moment that these chiefs from Tlaxcala, of whom I have spoken, arrived, letters reached our camp sent by a soldier named Hernando de Barrientos, from a town named Chinantla, distant about ninety leagues

¹ A la mira, *i.e.*, on the look out to see which side to take.

from Mexico, and what was said in them was, that at the time when we were expelled from Mexico, the Mexicans had killed his three companions who were at the farm and mines where the Captain Pizarro (for so he was called) had left them to search and explore all the neighbourhood for rich gold mines, as I have related in the Chapter that treats of that subject, and that Barrientos had taken refuge in the town of Chinantla where he remained, for they [the people of Chinantla] were enemies of the Mexicans. This [Chinantla] was the town whence they brought the pikes when we went against Narvaez ; and because other particulars which were given in the letter, do not concern our story, they will be omitted. Cortés wrote to him [Barrientos] in reply, giving an account of how we were marching to invest Mexico, and telling him to give his compliments to all the chieftains of those provinces, and to take care not to leave that country until he should learn by letter from him what he was to do, lest the Mexicans should kill him on the road. Let us leave this and say how Cortés gave orders as to the way we should go to invest Mexico and who were to be the Captains.

CHAPTER CL.

How Cortés ordered three divisions [each composed] of cavalry crossbowmen and musketeers to go and invest the great city of Mexico, and the Captains that he named for each division, and the soldiers, horsemen, crossbowmen, and musketeers that he divided between them, and the positions and cities where we were to establish our camps.

HE [Cortés] appointed Pedro de Alvarado Captain of one hundred and fifty sword and shield soldiers (and many of them carried lances) and thirty horsemen and eighteen musketeers and crossbowmen, and he named his brother

Jorge de Alvarado, and Gutiérrez de Badajoz and Andrés de Monjaraz to go together with him, and these he appointed to be Captains of fifty soldiers and to divide among the three of them the musketeers and crossbowmen, as many in one Company as in the other. Pedro de Alvarado was to be Captain of the horsemen and General of the three companies, and he gave him eight thousand Tlaxcalans and their Captains, and he selected me and ordered me to go with Pedro de Alvarado, and told us to go and take up our position in the City of Tacuba. He ordered that the armour we took with us should be very good headpieces, neck coverings and leggings, for the Mexicans fought against us with arrows, lances and macanas and other arms such as two handed swords, and the darts and stones were as numerous as hail-stones, and our defence was to go well armoured. Notwithstanding all this, every day that we were fighting there were deaths and wounds, as I will relate further on.

Let us go on to the next division. He gave to Cristóbal de Olid, who was quartermaster, other thirty horsemen and one hundred and seventy-five soldiers and twenty musketeers and crossbowmen all provided with armour, in the same way as the soldiers he gave to Pedro de Alvarado, and he appointed three other Captains who were Andrés de Tápia, Francisco Verdugo, and Francisco de Lugo, and between all three Captains were divided all the soldiers and crossbowmen and musketeers. Cristóbal de Olid was Captain General of the three Captains and of the horsemen, and he gave him another eight thousand Tlaxcalans, and ordered him to go and establish his camp in the city of Coyoacan, which is two leagues from Tacuba.

Cortés made Gonzalo de Sandoval, the chief Alguacil, Captain of the other division of soldiers, and gave him twenty-four horsemen, fourteen musketeers and cross-

bowmen, one hundred and fifty sword, shield and lance soldiers, and more than eight thousand Indian warriors from the people of Chalco and Huexotzingo and of some other friendly pueblos through which Sandoval had to pass, and he gave him as companions and captains, Luis Marin and Pedro de Ircio who were Sandoval's friends, and ordered the soldiers, crossbowmen and musketeers to be divided between the two captains, and that Sandoval should have the horsemen under his command and be the General, and that he should place his camp near to Iztapalapa, and attack it and do it all the damage he could, until Cortés should send him other orders. Sandoval did not leave Texcoco until Cortés, who was Commander in chief of the regiments and of the launches, was quite ready to set out for the lake with the thirteen launches in which he carried three hundred soldiers with crossbowmen and musketeers.

The plan of operation having been thus arranged, directing Pedro de Alvarado and Cristóbal de Olid to march in one direction and Sandoval in the other, I will now explain, in order that those who do not know these cities and the lake may understand it, that although one party went to the right and the other followed a different route, this was because they came round so as nearly to meet again.

Let us stop speaking further about this and say that to each Captain, he [Cortés] gave instructions about what his orders were, and how we were to set out next day in the morning, and so as to avoid confusion on the road, we sent on ahead all the regiments of Tlaxcalans, until they should reach Mexican Territory.

As the Tlaxcalans with their Captain, Chichimecatecle and other Captains with their men, marched carelessly, they did not notice whether Xicotenga, the younger, who was their Captain General, accompanied them and when

Chichimecatecle asked and enquired what had become of him, and where he had stopped, they found out that he had that night returned secretly to Tlaxcala, and was going to seize forcibly the caciqueship and vassals and lands of Chichimecatecle himself. The Tlaxcalans said that the reasons for his so doing were that when Xicotenga, the younger, saw the Captains of Tlaxcala, especially Chichimecatecle, going to the war, [he knew that] there would be nobody to oppose him, for he did not fear his father Xicotenga, the blind, who, being his father would aid him, and our friend Mase Escaci was already dead, and the [only] man he feared was Chichimecatecle. They also said that they always knew that Xicotenga had no wish to go to the war against Mexico, for they heard him say many times that all of us and of them would be killed. As soon as the Cacique Chichimecatecle, to whom the lands and vassals belonged that he [Xicotenga] was going to seize, heard and understood this, he turned back from the march more than swiftly and came to inform Cortés about it.

As soon as Cortés knew of it he at once ordered five Texcocan chieftains and two from Tlaxcala, friends of Xicotenga, to go and force him to return, and to tell him that Cortés begged him to come back at once and go against his enemies the Mexicans, and to reflect that if his father Don Lorenzo de Vargas were not so old and blind he would come against Mexico himself and as all Tlaxcalans were and are very loyal servants of His Majesty, that it did not become him to dishonour them as he was now doing. And he sent to make him many offers and promises that he would give him gold and cloths if he would return. The reply he [Xicotenga] sent was that if the old man his father, and Mase Escaci would have believed him, that he [Cortés] would not have so lorded it over them and made them do all that he wished, and

not to waste more words, he said that he did not intend to return. When Cortés heard that answer he at once gave an order for an Alguacil and four horsemen and five Indian chieftains from Texcoco to go in all haste and wherever they should overtake him to hang him, and he said, "There is never any improvement in this Cacique, but he must always be a traitor and ill-disposed towards us and of bad council", and that there was no time to put up with him any longer, or to ignore what had passed. When Pedro de Alvarado knew of it he petitioned strongly on his [Xicotenga's] behalf, and Cortés gave him a favourable answer, and secretly he ordered the Alguacil and the horsemen not to leave him [Xicotenga] alive. And so it was done and in a town subject to Texcoco they hanged him, and thus his treason was put an end to. There was some Tlaxcalans who said that Don Lorenzo de Vargas, the father of Xicotenga, sent to tell Cortés that this son of his was a bad man and he would not vouch for him, and that he begged Cortés to kill him.

Let us leave this story as it is, and say that for this reason we remained that day without setting out from Texcoco, and the next day the 13th May 1521¹ we set out, both divisions together, for Cristóbal de Olid and Pedro de Alvarado had both to take the same road. We went to sleep at a pueblo subject to Texcoco named Acolman,² often mentioned by me before, and it happened that Cristóbal de Olid sent on ahead to that pueblo to secure quarters, and had green branches placed above the roof of each house as a sign. When we arrived with Pedro de Alvarado we found no place where we could lodge, and over this [matter] the men of our

¹ This date is probably wrong, see appendix "A Diary of the Siege."

² Acuyima in the text.

Company had already put hands to their weapons against those of Cristóbal de Olid and even the Captains were defying one another, but there were not wanting on both sides gentlemen who got between us and somewhat appeased the clamour, yet not so much but that we still all remained dissatisfied, and from that place they sent to inform Cortés, and he at once despatched Fray Pedro de Melgarejo, and the Captain Luis Marin in all haste, and wrote to the Captains and all of us reproving us on the subject, and when they arrived we made friends, but from that time on, the Captains, Pedro de Alvarado and Cristóbal de Olid were not on good terms.

The next day¹ the two Divisions continued their March together and we went to sleep at a large town² which was deserted, for we were already in Mexican territory. The day following³ we went to sleep in another large town named Cuautitlan,⁴ which I have already mentioned at other times, and it also was without inhabitants, and the next day⁵ we passed through two other towns named Tenayuca and Atzacapotzalco,⁶ which were also deserted, and at the hour of vespers we arrived at Tacuba and at once took up our quarters in some large houses and rooms, for this town also was deserted, and there, too, all our friends the Tlaxcalans found quarters, and that very afternoon they went through the farms belonging to those towns and brought in food to eat. We slept there that night [after stationing] good watchmen, sentinels and scouts, for as I have already said at other times, Mexico was close by Tacuba, and when night fell we

¹ Thursday, 23rd May.

² Zitlaltepec, north of the Lake of Zumpango.

³ Friday, 24th May.

⁴ Cuautitlan in the text.

⁵ Saturday, 25th May.

⁶ Escapuçalco in the text.

heard great shouts which they [the Mexicans] raised at us from the lake, crying out much abuse, that we were not men enough to come out and fight them. They had many of their canoes full of warriors and the causeways also were crowded with fighting men, and these words that they said were with the idea of provoking us so that we would come out that night and fight; but as we had gained experience from the affair of the causeways and bridges often mentioned by me, we did not wish to go out until the next day, which was Sunday.¹

After hearing Mass, which was said by Father Juan Díaz, and commending ourselves to God, we agreed that with the two Divisions together, we should go and cut off the water of Chapultepec by which the city was supplied, which was about half a league distant from Tacuba.

As we were marching to break the pipes, we came on many warriors who were waiting for us on the road, for they fully understood that would be the first thing by which we could do them damage, and so when they met us near some bad ground, they began to shoot arrows at us and hurl javelins and stones from slings, and they wounded three of our soldiers, but we quickly made them turn their backs and our friends the Tlaxcalans followed them so that they killed twenty and we captured eighteen of them.

As soon as these squadrons had been put to flight we broke the conduits through which the water flowed to the city, and from that time onwards it never flowed into Mexico so long as the war lasted. When we had accomplished this, our Captains agreed that we should go at once to reconnoitre and advance along the causeway from Tacuba, and do what was possible towards gaining possession of a bridge. When we had marched and reached

¹ Sunday, 26th May.

the causeway, there were so many canoes on the lake full of warriors, and the causeways also were so crowded with them, that we were astounded at it; and they shot so many arrows and javelins and stones from slings that at the first encounter they wounded over thirty soldiers. Still we went on marching along the causeway towards the bridge, and from what I understand they gave way for us to reach it, so as to get us on the other side of the bridge. When they had got us there, I declare that such a host of warriors charged down on us, that we could not hold out against them; for on the causeway, which was eight paces wide, what could we do against such a great force as was stationed on one side and the other of the causeway, and struck at us as at a mark, for although our musketeers and crossbowmen never ceased loading and firing at the canoes, they did them but very little damage for they brought them [the canoes] very well protected with bulwarks of wood. Then when we attacked the squadrons that fought on the causeway itself, they promptly threw themselves into the water, and there were so many of them that we could not prevail against them. Those on horseback did not make any progress whatever for they [the Indians] wounded their horses from one side and from the other, and as soon as they charged after the squadrons they [the Indians] threw themselves in the water. They [the enemy] had raised breastworks where other warriors were stationed in waiting, with long lances which they had made like scythes from the weapons which had been captured from us when they drove us fleeing out of Mexico.

In this manner we stood fighting with them about an hour, and so many stones were showered on us that we could not bear up against them, and we even saw that there was approaching us in another direction a great fleet of canoes to cut off our passage, so as to turn our

flanks, and knowing this, and because we saw that our friends the Tlaxcalans whom we had brought with us were greatly obstructing the causeway, and, if they went off it, it was clear enough that they could not fight in the water, our Captains and all of us soldiers agreed to retreat in good order and not to go further ahead.

When the Mexicans saw us retreating and the Tlaxcalans escaping beyond the causeway what shouts and howls and whistles they gave us, and how they came on to join us foot to foot. I declare that I do not know how to describe it, for all the causeway was heaped up with javelins, arrows, and stones that had been hurled at us, and many more of them must have fallen in the water. When we found ourselves on dry land we gave thanks to God for having freed us from that battle, for by that time eight of our soldiers had fallen dead, and more than fifty were wounded. Through all this, they yelled out at us and shouted abuse from the canoes, and our friends the Tlaxcalans told them to come on land and even if they were double the number they would fight them. These were the first things that we did to cut off the water and reconnoitre the lake, although we gained no honour by them. That night we stayed in our camp while the wounded were attended to, and one horse died, and we posted a good force of sentinels and scouts.

The next morning¹ Captain Cristóbal de Olid said that he wished to go to his station at Coyoacan, a league and a half away, and notwithstanding that Pedro de Alvarado and other gentlemen begged him not to separate the two divisions, but to keep them together, he would not do so; for as Cristóbal de Olid was very courageous, and in the reconnoissance which we made of the lake, the day before, we had not done well, Cristóbal de Olid said

that it was Pedro de Alvarado's fault that we had advanced so rashly, so that he never wished to stay and went off to Coyoacan where Cortés had sent him. We remained in our camp, for it was not right to separate one division from the other at that time, and if the Mexicans had known how few soldiers we were during the four or five days that we were there apart before the launches could come, and had fallen on us and on the division of Cristóbal de Olid, we should have incurred great hardship and they would have done [us] great damage. So we stayed in Tacuba and Cristóbal de Olid in his camp, without daring to reconnoitre any further nor to advance along the causeways, and every day we had skirmishes with many squadrons of Mexicans who came on land to fight with us, and even challenged us so as to place us in situations where they could master us and we could do them no damage.

I will leave them there and I will tell how Gonzalo de Sandoval set out from Texcoco four days after the feast of Corpus Christi and came to Iztapalapa;¹ almost all the march was among friends, subjects of Texcoco, and when he reached the town of Iztapalapa he at once began to make war and to burn many of the houses that stood on dry land, for all the rest of the houses stood in the lake. However, many hours did not pass before great squadrons of Mexicans came promptly to the aid of that city and Sandoval had a good battle with them and great encounters when they fought on land; and when they had taken refuge in their canoes they shot many javelins, arrows and stones at him and wounded his soldiers. While they were thus fighting they saw that on a small hill² that was close to Iztapalapa on dry land, great smoke

¹ Friday, 31st May. Cortés gives the date as Friday the day after the Feast of Corpus Christi.

² Cerro de la Estrella.

signals were being made, and they were answered by other smoke signals from other towns standing in the lake, and it was a sign to assemble all the canoes from Mexico and all the towns around the lake, for they saw that Cortés had already set out from Texcoco with the thirteen launches. As soon as Sandoval left Texcoco Cortés did not stay there any longer and the first thing he did on entering the lake was to attack a rocky hill which was on an island¹ near Mexico, where many Mexicans were collected both natives of the city as well as countrymen who had gone there to make fortifications. There came out into the lake against Cortés every canoe that was in the whole of Mexico and from all the towns that had been founded on the coast or near it, which are Xochimilco, Coyoacan, Iztapalapa, Churubusco, Mexicaltzingo and other towns which, so as to avoid delay, I will not name, and all went together against Cortés. For this reason those who were attacking Sandoval at Iztapalapa slackened somewhat, and as nearly all the houses of that city at that time stood in the water he could not do them any damage, but at the beginning he killed many of the enemy, and as he had brought with him a great force of allies, with their aid he captured and made prisoners of many of the people of these towns.

Let us leave Sandoval who remained isolated at Iztapalapa and could go with his people to Coyoacan only by the causeway which passes across the middle of the lake, and if he had advanced along it the enemy would have defeated him because they could attack him on both sides from the water, and he would not have been able to defend himself, and for this reason he remained where he was. Let us leave Sandoval and say that as Cortés observed so many fleets of canoes coming together against his thirteen

¹ Tepepolco, the Peñon del Marques.

launches, he was greatly in fear of them, and it was enough to frighten him for there were more than a thousand canoes. So he abandoned the fight at the Peñol¹ and stationed himself out in the lake so that if he should find himself hard pressed he would be able to sail with his launches at large, and run to whatever part he chose. He ordered the Captains who came in them [the launches] not to trouble about besetting or bearing down on the canoes until the breeze from the land freshened, for at that moment it began to blow. When the canoes saw that the launches were halting, they thought that it was for fear of them that they were doing it, and then the Mexican Captains gave speed to them [their canoes] and ordered all the people to go at once and surround our launches. At that moment a very strong and favourable breeze sprung up, and what with the great haste that our rowers made, and the time being suitable, Cortés ordered them to engage the fleet of canoes, and they overturned many of them and killed and captured many Indians, and the rest of the canoes went to take refuge among the houses that stood in the lake, and in places where our launches could not reach them.

So this was the first combat that took place on the lake and Cortés gained the victory. Thank God for it all, Amen!

After that was done, Cortés came with his launches towards Coyoacan, where the Camp of Cristóbal de Olid was stationed,² and he fought with many Mexican

¹ Cortés writing about the fight on the Peñol says: "We attacked them in such a way that not one of them escaped except the women and children; in this fight they wounded twenty-five Spaniards, but it was a very beautiful victory."

² This statement is misleading, Cortés himself states (Third Letter): "My intention was to go and attack that part of the city of Iztapalapa which stood in the water." However he turned aside to capture the island known as the "Peñol del Marques" then after the battle on the lake he chased the canoes across the lake until they took refuge

Squadrons who waited for him in dangerous places, thinking to capture the sloops, and as they attacked him fiercely from the canoes on the lake and from some Idol houses he ordered four cannon to be taken out of the sloops, and with them he attacked and killed and wounded many Indians, and the gunners were in such a hurry that through carelessness they set fire to the powder and some of them even had their hands and faces scorched. Cortés promptly despatched a very fast sloop to Iztapalapa to Sandoval's camp to bring all the powder they possessed, and he wrote to them not to move from the place where they were stationed.

Let us leave Cortés who had constant skirmishes with the Mexicans until he joined the camp of Cristóbal de Olid¹ and during the two days he stayed there many of the enemy were always attacking him.

As at that time I was at Tacuba with Pedro de Alvarado, I will relate what we did in our camp, for, as we knew that Cortés was going about the lake, we advanced along our causeway with great caution, and not like the first time, and we reached the first bridge, the crossbowmen and musketeers acting in concert some firing while others loaded. Pedro de Alvarado ordered the horsemen not to advance with us but to remain on dry land to guard our rear, fearing lest the pueblos I have mentioned through which we had passed, should attack us on the causeway. In this way we stood sometimes attacking, at others on the defensive so as to prevent them [the Mexicans]

in the outskirts of Tenochtitlan where he could not follow them. He then made for the Iztapalapa Causeway, and landed on it from the east side at a place named Acachinanco, half a league from the city, where there were two cues, and where the Iztapalapa Causeway was joined by another small causeway from the direction of Coyoacan. Here Cortés established his camp (see Appendix A, vol. ii, *The Iztapalapa Causeway*).

¹ This is an error, it should doubtless be "until he was joined at his camp [on the causeway] by Cristóbal de Olid."

reaching land from the causeway, for every day we had encounters and in them they killed three soldiers, and we were also engaged in filling up the bad places.

Let us leave this and say how Gonzalo de Sandoval who was in Iztapalapa seeing that he could do the people of Iztapalapa no harm, (for they were in the water,) although they were able to wound his soldiers, determined to make for a small town¹ and some houses which stood in the lake. He was able to get among the houses and began an attack, and while they were fighting, Guatemoc the great Lord of Mexico, sent many warriors to aid them [the inhabitants], and to destroy and break open the causeway by which Sandoval [and his troops] had entered, so as to shut them in and leave no way of escape, and he [also] sent many warriors to the other side. As Cortés who was with Cristóbal de Olid saw the great fleet of canoes going towards Iztapalapa, he decided to go with the launches and with all Cristóbal de Olid's company to Iztapalapa in search of Sandoval. Cortés went on the lake with the launches, while Cristóbal de Olid kept along the causeway, and they saw a great number of Mexicans [at work] breaking down the causeway and they took it for certain that Sandoval was there in those houses [cut off from the land]. So Cortés went [ahead] with the launches and found Sandoval fighting with the squadron of warriors that Guatemoc had sent. Then the fighting slackened and Cortés at once ordered Gonzalo de Sandoval to abandon the [camp] at Iztapalapa and go² by land and invest the other causeway which went from Mexico to a town called Tepeaquilla, which they now call Our Lady of Guadalupe, where she works, and has worked, many holy miracles. Let us now relate how Cortés divided the launches and what more was done.

¹ Mexicaltzingo.

² Sunday, 2nd June.

NOTE TO CHAPTER CL.

THE following passage from the Third Letter of Cortés to the Emperor Charles V does much to clear up topographical details; after describing the battle on the lake between his sloops and the Mexican canoes, he says :—

"As the garrison of Coyoacan saw us following the canoes they set out on their march (most of the horsemen and foot soldiers that were there) for the City of Tenochtitlan, and they fought very stoutly with the Indians who were on the Causeway and captured the barricades that these had made and took and passed on foot and on horseback many of the bridges which they (the Indians) had removed, and with the help of the launches which kept along near the causeway¹ our friends the Tlaxcalan Indians and the Spaniards pursued the enemy and slew some of them and threw others into the water on the other side of the causeway from that on which the launches were sailing. So they went along victoriously for more than a big league² along the causeway until they arrived where I had halted with the launches as I shall relate below."³

Cortés then returns to the description of his own proceedings after the battle on the lake :—

"We went a good three leagues giving chase to the canoes, those that escaped us reaching the houses of the City, and as it was after the time of Vespers, I ordered the launches to assemble, and we arrived with them at the Causeway, and there I determined to land with thirty men to capture two small Idol towers which were surrounded by a low wall of masonry, and as we jumped ashore the enemy fought very fiercely to defend them from us, but at last after much danger and labour we captured them; and I at once ordered three heavy iron cannon which I had brought with me to be taken on shore, because all the rest of the Causeway from there to the City, which was half a league, was all full of the enemy and the water on one side and the other of the Causeway was all full of canoes with warriors. I placed one of the cannon in position and fired ahead along the Causeway and did much damage to the enemy. Owing to the carelessness of the gunner at that same moment that he fired he ignited the powder which we had there, although it was not much, and at once that night I got a launch ready to go to Ixtapalapa

¹ Old must have already passed the junction of the causeways or he could not have been in touch with the launches.

² This would have brought them within half a league of the City.

³ That is at Acachinanco.

about two leagues distant where the chief Alguacil was stationed, to fetch all the powder he possessed.

"Although at first it was my intention, as soon as I could enter¹ with the launches, to go to Coyoacan and provision it so that an advance could be made with much caution, doing all the damage that was possible, when I landed that day on the Causeway and captured those two towers, I determined to establish my headquarters there and to keep the sloops there near the towers,² and [to order] half the men from Coyoacan and fifty foot soldiers from the chief Alguacil to come there next day. When that was arranged, we remained there that night with every precaution for we were in the greatest danger, and all the people from the city came there along the Causeway and by the water, and at midnight a great host of people arrived in canoes and along the Causeway to fall on our camp, and certainly they greatly surprised and terrified us, the more so because it was night, and [to attack] at such a time was not a thing they were accustomed to do, and they had never been known to fight by night without assurance of victory. As we were fully prepared we began to fight with them from the launches, for each launch carried a small field gun, and they began to fire them off and the crossbowmen and musketeers to do the same, so they [the enemy] did not dare to approach any nearer, nor did they come where we could do them any damage, so they left us what remained of the night without attacking us.

"The next day at dawn there arrived at the camp where I was stationed, fifteen crossbowmen and musketeers and fifty sword and shield men, and seven or eight horsemen from the garrison at Coyoacan, and by the time they arrived the people from the City, in canoes and on the Causeway, were already fighting with us, and so great was the multitude that both on land and on water we could see nothing but people, and they raised such yells and shouts that it seemed as though the world were being destroyed.

"We began to fight with them along the Causeway ahead of us, and we gained one bridge which they had removed, and a barricade that they had made at the entrance, and with the cannon and with the horsemen we did them so much damage that we almost shut them in among the first houses of the City. As the launches could not pass to the other side of the Causeway, and many canoes were moving about [there] and they did us damage with arrows and javelins which they shot at us on the Causeway, I had a part of it broken down near our camp, and enabled four launches to pass to the other side, and these when they got through shut up all the canoes among the houses

¹ *I.e.*, pass through the Causeway.

² That is, at Acachinanco.

of the city, so that they did not dare to come out freely in any direction.

"On the other side of the causeway the other eight launches fought with the canoes and shut them up among the houses, and (themselves) went among the houses although up to that time they had not dared to do so, for there were many shoals and stakes to impede them, and when they found canals where they could enter safely, they fought with the men in the canoes and captured some of them, and they burned many houses in the suburbs, and we passed all that day fighting in the manner already described.

"The following day the Chief Alguacil with the people he had in Iztapalapa, both the Spaniards and our allies, set out for Coyoacan, and from thence to the dry land runs a causeway which extends about a league and a half. As the Chief Alguacil began his march, at about a quarter of a league distance he reached a small city,¹ which also stood in the water, but one could ride on horseback through the greater part of it, and the natives of the place began to fight with him, and he defeated them and killed many, and he destroyed and burnt all the city.

"As I knew that the Indians had broken down much of the causeway and the people could not easily pass, I sent two launches so that they could help them to pass, and with these they made a bridge so that the soldiers could cross over. When they had passed they went into quarters at Coyoacan,² and the Chief Alguacil with ten horsemen took the road along the causeway to where we were encamped, and when he arrived he found us fighting, and he and those who had come with him dismounted and began to fight with the men on the causeway with whom we were engaged. When the Chief Alguacil began to fight, the enemy pierced his foot with a javelin and although they wounded him and some others of us that day, we did much damage to them, with the heavy cannon and the crossbows and muskets, so that neither those in the canoes nor those on the causeway dared to come so near to us and showed more fear and less pride than was usual. In this way we remained six days,³ and every day we had a fight with them, and the launches went about burning all the houses they could in the neighbourhood of the city and they found a canal by which they could enter the environs and suburbs of the city and reach

¹ This must have been Mexicaltzingo. Cortés uses the word "ciudad," but Mexicaltzingo was a small town or village.

² They must have marched along the Mexicaltzingo Causeway to Coyoacan while Sandoval and ten horsemen parted from the main body at the junction of the causeway and rode to Acachinanco to join Cortés.

³ Until Thursday, 6th June.

the main body of it, which was a very great advantage and stopped the coming of the canoes, so that now not one of them dared to show themselves within a quarter of a league of our camp."

CHAPTER CLI.

How Cortés ordered the twelve launches to be stationed and ordered the men to be taken out of the smallest one which was called "Busca ruido" (the riot seeker) and what else happened.

As Cortés and all our captains and soldiers understood that without the launches we could not advance along the causeways to fight [our way] to Mexico, he sent four of them to Pedro de Alvarado,¹ and he left six at his own camp (which was that of Cristóbal de Olid)² and he sent two launches to Gonzalo de Sandoval at the Tepeaquilla Causeway, and he ordered the smallest one not to be sent any more on the lake lest the canoes should upset it, for it was of small burden, and he ordered the people and sailors that were in it to be distributed among the other twelve, for there were already twenty men badly wounded among those who manned them.

When we saw ourselves reinforced with these launches in our camp at Tacuba Pedro de Alvarado ordered two of them to go on one side of the causeway and two on the other side, and we began to fight very successfully, for the launches vanquished the canoes which were wont to attack us from the water, and so we had an opportunity to capture several bridges and barricades, and while we were fighting, so numerous were the stones from the slings and the javelins and arrows that they shot at us that although all the soldiers were well protected by

¹ Cortés had broken a way through the Iztapalapa Causeway so that the launches could pass to the west side.

² This is misleading, Cristóbal de Olid's camp was at Coyoacan, but Olid himself and some of his men had joined Cortés at Acachinanco, on the causeway where the six launches were now stationed.

armour they were injured and wounded, and not until night parted us did we cease contending and fighting.¹

I wish to say that from time to time the Mexicans changed about and relieved their squadrons [as we could tell] by the devices and distinguishing marks on their armour. Then, as to the launches, they were checked by the darts arrows and stones with which they were attacked from the Azoteas which fell thicker than hail, and I do not know how to describe it here nor would anyone be able to understand it except those who were present, for they were more numerous than hail stones, and quickly covered the causeway. Then, whenever we left a bridge or barricade unguarded after having captured it with much labour, they would retake and deepen it that same night, and construct stronger defences and even make hidden pits in the water, so that the next day when we were fighting, and it was time for us to retire, we should get entangled [among the defences] and fall into the pits and they would be able to vanquish us from their canoes, for they had also got ready many canoes for the purpose, stationed in places where our launches could not see them, so that when we were in distress in the pits some [were prepared] to fall upon us by land, and others by water. To prevent the launches from coming to our assistance, they had fixed many stakes hidden in the water so that they should get impaled on them. In this way we fought every day,² I have already said before that the cavalry were of little use

¹ On June 9th a general assault was ordered from all three causeways, but Bernal Diaz does not especially allude to it. On that day Cortés reached the great Plaza of Mexico, but retired to his camp on the Iztapalapa Causeway at night.

² Cortés ordered a general assault on June 16th, which was carried out, although Bernal Diaz makes no especial mention of it. On this day Cortés destroyed the palaces round the Plaza in Mexico and then retired to his camp.

on the causeways for if they charged or gave chase to the squadrons that fought with us the Mexicans at once threw themselves into the water, and other squadrons were posted behind breastworks, which they had raised on the causeway, waiting [for the horsemen] with long lances or scythes made very long with the arms captured at the time of the great defeat which they inflicted on us in Mexico. With these lances and great showers of arrows and javelins shot from the lake they wounded and killed the horses before the horsemen could do damage to the enemy. In addition to this those who owned horses did not want to risk them, for at that time a horse cost eight hundred pesos and some even cost more than a thousand, and they could accomplish nothing to speak of, as they could overtake very few of the enemy on the causeway.

Let us leave this subject. When we drew off in the night we treated our wounds by searing them with oil, and a soldier named Juan Catalan blessed them for us and made charms, and truly we found that our Lord Jesus Christ was pleased to give us strength in addition to the many mercies he vouchsafed us every day, for they healed rapidly.

Wounded and tied up in rags [as we were] we had to fight from morning until night, for if the wounded had remained in camp without coming out to fight, there would not have been twenty men in each company well enough to go out.

When our friends the Tlaxcalans saw that the man I have mentioned cured us by making the sign of the cross over us, all the wounded and injured went to him, and they were so numerous that he could hardly cure them all in the day.

Then I wish to speak of our captains and ensign and our standard bearers, who were covered with wounds and

their banners ragged, and I declare that we had need of a [fresh] standard bearer every day for we [all] came out in such a condition that they were not able to advance fighting and carry the banners a second time.

Then with all this did we perchance have enough to eat? I do not speak of want of maize cakes, for we had enough of them, but of some refreshing food for the wounded. The cursed stuff that kept life in us was some Quillites,¹ these are herbs that the Indians eat, and the cherries of the country while they lasted, and afterwards tunas² which came into season at that time.

Much the same as we did in our camp they did in the camp where Cortés was stationed and in that of Sandoval. There was never a day passed that large companies of Mexicans did not come to attack them, as I have already said at other times, from dawn until night. It was for this purpose that Guatemoc had told off Captains and Squadrons as reinforcements for each causeway, and Tlatelolco and the towns on the Lake often mentioned by me had been warned that on seeing a signal on the great Cue of Tlatelolco they should hasten to assist, some in canoes and others by land; and the Mexican captains had been fully prepared and advised how and when and to what points they were to bring assistance.

Let us leave this and say how we changed our order and manner of fighting, I will explain it thus:—When we saw that however many water openings we captured by day the Mexicans returned and closed them up again, and while capturing them they killed our soldiers and most of us were wounded, we agreed that we should all go and station ourselves on the causeway³ in a small plaza

¹ Quilitl, a generic term for vegetables.

² Fruit of the Nopal cactus, prickly pears.

³ About Thursday, 20th June.

where there were some idol towers which we had already taken, and where there was space to erect our "ranchos," although they were very poor ones and when it rained we all got wet, and they were fit for nothing but to cover us from the dew.¹

We left the Indian women who made bread for us in Tacuba, and all the horsemen and our friends the Tlaxcalans were left to guard them, and to watch and guard the passes so that they [the enemy] should not come from the neighbouring pueblos and attack our rearguard on the causeway while we were fighting.

So when once we had set up our ranchos where I have stated, thenceforward we endeavoured quickly to destroy the houses and blocks of buildings and to fill up the water openings that we captured. We levelled the houses to the ground, for if we set fire to them they took too long to burn, and one house would not catch fire from another, for, as I have already said at other times, each house stood in the water, and one could not pass from one to the other without crossing bridges or going in canoes. If we wanted to cross the water by swimming they did us much damage from the azoteas, so that we were more secure when the houses were demolished. As soon as we had captured some barrier or bridge or bad pass where they offered much resistance, we endeavoured to guard it by day and by night. This was the way in which all our companies kept guard together during the night, and the following arrangement was made about it:—The first company, which numbered more than forty soldiers, kept watch from night fall until midnight, and from midnight until two hours before dawn another company, also of forty men, kept watch, and the first company did not

¹ This "plaza where there were some idol towers" was probably situated on the causeway C-D of the Maguey Plan. See vol. iii, pp. 12-14.

leave their post but we slept there on the ground ; this [second] watch is called the *modorra*,¹ and soon another forty soldiers came and kept the *alba* [dawn] watch, which is the two hours until daylight, but those who watched the *modorra* could not leave, but had to stay there, so that when dawn came there were over one hundred and twenty soldiers all on watch together. Moreover on some nights, when we judged that there was special danger we kept watch together, from nightfall until dawn, awaiting a great sally of the Mexicans in fear lest they should break through, for we had warning through some of the Mexican Captains whom we had captured in battle, that Guatemoc had formed the idea, and had talked it over with his captains, of breaking through us on our causeway either by night or day, and that when he had defeated us on our side, he could promptly defeat and rout those on the other two causeways where Cortés was stationed, and where Gonzalo de Sandoval was posted. He also had it arranged that the nine pueblos on the lake and Tacuba itself and Atzacapotzalco and Tenayuca should unite, and choose a day to break through and fall upon us, attacking us on our flanks on the causeway, and that some night they would suddenly carry off the Indian women in Tacuba who made bread for us and our stores. When we got to know this we prepared for it and the horsemen who were in Tacuba and our friends the Tlaxcalans were on watch all night through and kept on the alert.

As Guatemoc had planned it, so he carried it out, and on several nights great squadrons came to attack us and break through at midnight, and others during the *modorra* and others during the dawn watch, and they came sometimes without commotion and at others with loud yells and whistles, and when they arrived where we were

¹ *Modorra*—the drowsy time, before dawn.

keeping night watch, what javelins and stones and arrows they let fly, and there were many others with lances, and although they wounded some of us, yet we resisted them, and sent back many of them wounded. Many other warriors who came to fall on our baggage were defeated by our horsemen and the Tlaxcalans, for as it was night time they did not make much of a stand. And in the way I have described we kept watch in spite of the rain and wind and cold, and even though we were wounded and posted in the midst of mud sloughs, there we had to stay, with this miserable supply of tortillas, herbs, or tunas on which to feed on the top of the work of fighting, which the officers said was a matter of course. Then, notwithstanding all the precautions we took, they would turn on us and open some bridge or causeway which we had captured, and we could not defend it from them in the night so as to prevent them doing it, and the next day it was our turn again to capture it and stop it up, and then they would come again to open it and strengthen it with walls, until the Mexicans changed their method of fighting which I will tell about in its proper time.

Let us cease talking about the many battles we fought every day, and as many more in the camp of Cortés and that of Sandoval, and say that it proved advantageous to have prevented food and water getting to them (the enemy) by way of the three causeways, but our launches were not very useful stationed at our camp and were only serviceable when we were fighting, protecting our flanks from the warriors in the canoes, and from those who fought from the azoteas. The Mexicans brought in much food and water from the nine towns built on the lake, which supplied them with provisions [carried] in canoes by night, and from other friendly pueblos they were supplied with maize and poultry and all that they needed. To prevent these supplies being brought to them, it was arranged

between all the three camps that two launches should cruize in the lake by night and should capture all the canoes they were able, and destroy or bring them to our camps. When this arrangement was made it was a good one, although we had to do without the two launches for fighting and to guard us during the night, but they were of great use in preventing the entrance of food and water. But even with all this, many laden canoes did not fail to get in, and as the Mexicans went about in their canoes carrying supplies without any precautions, there was never a day when the launches that went in search of them did not bring in a prize of canoes and many Indians hanging from the yards.

Let us leave this and tell of the stratagem which the Mexicans employed to capture our launches and kill those that went in them, it was in this way:—As I have said, every night and in the early morning they [the Spaniards] went looking after canoes on the lake, and overturned them with the launches and captured many of them; so they [the Mexicans,] agreed to arm thirty *piraguas*, which are very large canoes, with specially good rowers and warriors, and by night they posted all thirty amongst some reed beds in a place where the launches could not see them; then they sent out before nightfall, with good rowers, two or three canoes covered over with branches as though they were carrying provisions or bringing in water. In the track which, in the opinion of the Mexicans, the launches would follow when they were fighting with them, they had driven numerous strong timbers made pointed like stakes so that they should get impaled on them. Then as the canoes were going over the lake showing signs of being afraid and drew near to the reed beds, two of our launches set out after them, and the two canoes made as though they were retreating to the land, to the place where the thirty *piraguas* were posted

in ambush, and the launches followed them and as soon as they reached the ambush all the piraguas together sallied out and made for the launches and quickly wounded all the soldiers, rowers, and captains, and they [the launches] could go neither in one direction or another on account of the stakes that had been fixed. In this way they [the Mexicans] killed a captain named somebody de Portilla, an excellent soldier who had been in Italy, and they wounded Pedro Barba who was another very good captain, and they captured his launch, and within three days he died of his wounds. These two launches belonged to the camp of Cortés, and he was greatly distressed about it, moreover within a few days they were very successful with other ambushes they planned about which I will speak at the proper time. Let us cease talking about these things now and relate how in Cortés's camp and in that of Gonzalo de Sandoval they were constantly engaged in heavy fighting, the more so in that of Cortés, because he ordered houses to be demolished and burnt and bridges to be filled up, and all that he gained each day he filled up. He sent an order to Pedro de Alvarado not to pass beyond any bridge or opening in the causeway without first filling it up, and that not a house should be left without being pulled down and set on fire, and with the adobes and timbers of the houses that we demolished we should fill up the passes and openings of the bridges, and our friends from Tlaxcala aided us in all this warfare very manfully.

Let us leave this and say that when the Mexicans saw that we were levelling all the houses to the ground and were filling up the bridges and openings they decided on another way of fighting, and that was, to open a bridge and a very wide and deep channel which we had to pass wading through the water, and it was sometimes out of our depth, and they had dug many pits which we could not see under the water and had made walls and barricades

both on the one side and the other of the opening, and had driven in many pointed stakes of heavy timber in places where our launches would run on to them if they should come to our assistance when we were fighting to capture this fort, for they well knew that the first thing we must do was to destroy the barricade and [pass through] that open space of water so as to reach the City. At the same time they had prepared in hidden places many canoes well manned with warriors and good rowers. One Sunday morning¹ great squadrons of warriors began to approach from three directions and attacked us in such a way that it was all we could do to hold our own and prevent them from defeating us.

At that time Pedro de Alvarado had ordered half the horsemen who used to stay in Tacuba to sleep on the causeway, for there was not so much risk as at the beginning, as there were no longer any azoteas for nearly all the houses had been demolished, and they could move quickly along some parts of the causeway without [fear] that the enemy would be able to wound their horses from the canoes and azoteas. To go back to my story, those three squadrons came on very fearlessly, the one from the direction of the great open space of water, the other by way of some houses that we had pulled down, and the other squadron had taken us in the rear from the direction of Tacuba, and we were surrounded. The horsemen with our Tlaxcalan, friends broke through the squadron that had taken us in the rear and we all of us fought very valiantly with the other two squadrons until we forced them to retreat. However, that seeming flight that they made was a pretence, but we captured the first barricade where they made a stand, nevertheless they abandoned it and we, thinking that we were victorious, crossed that water at a run, for where we

Sunday, 23rd June

passed there were no pits and we followed up our advance among some great houses and temple towers. The enemy acted as though they were still retreating but they did not cease to shoot javelins and stones from slings and many arrows and when we were least expecting it a great multitude of warriors who were hidden in a place we were not able to see, and many others from the azoteas and houses joined the combat, and those who at first acted as though they were retreating, turned round on us all at once and dealt us such treatment that we could not withstand them. We then decided to retreat with great caution, but at the water opening which we had captured [that is to say] at the place where we had crossed the first time, where there were no pits, they had stationed such a fleet of canoes that we were not able to cross at that ford, and they forced us to go across in another direction, where, as I have said, the water was very deep, and they had dug many pits. As such a multitude of warriors were coming against us, and we were in retreat, we crossed the water by swimming and wading, and nearly all the soldiers fell in the pits; then the canoes came down upon us and there the Mexicans carried off five of our companions and took them alive to Guatemoc and they wounded nearly all of us. Moreover the launches which were guarding us could not come to our assistance because they were impaled on the stakes which had been fixed there, and from the canoes and azoteas the Mexicans attacked them so fiercely with javelins and arrows, that they killed three soldiers and rowers and wounded many of us. To go back to the pits and the opening, I declare it was a wonder that we were not all killed in them. Concerning myself I may say that many Indians had already laid hold of me, but I managed to get my arm free, and our Lord Jesus Christ gave me strength so that by some good sword thrusts that I gave them I saved myself, but I was badly wounded in one arm, and when I found myself

out of that water in safety, I became insensible and without power to stand on my feet and altogether breathless, and this was caused by the great strain that I exerted in getting away from that rabble and from the quantity of blood I had lost. I declare that when they had me in their clutches, that in my thoughts I was commending myself to our Lord God and to our Lady His Blessed Mother and He gave me the strength I have spoken of by which I saved myself; thank God for the mercy that He vouchsafed me.

There is another thing I wish to mention, that Pedro de Alvarado and the horsemen, when they had thoroughly routed the squadrons that came on our rear from Tacuba, did not any of them pass that water or the barricades, with the exception of one horseman who had come only a short time before from Spain, and there they killed him, both him and his horse. The horsemen were already advancing to our assistance when they saw us coming back in retreat and if they had crossed there, we should have been forced to turn back against the Indians and if [after crossing] they should have again retreated, there would not have been one of them, nor of the horses, nor of us left alive, for the affair was so cunningly [arranged] that they would have fallen in the pits, and there were ever so many warriors who would have killed the horses with lances they had prepared for the purpose, and [by attacking them] from the many azoteas that there were [around], for all this took place in the heart of the City. Flushed with the victory they had gained, the Mexicans continued during that whole day, which as I have said was a Sunday, to send so vast a host of warriors against our camp, that we could not prevail against them, and they expected for certain to rout us, but we held our own against them by [the help of] some bronze cannon and hard fighting, and by all the companies together keeping guard every night.

Let us leave this and say that when Cortés heard of it he was very angry, and he wrote at once to Pedro de Alvarado and [sent the letter] in a launch¹ [to say] that he should take care that neither for good nor evil should he leave a single opening unclosed, and that all the horsemen should sleep on the causeway and keep [their horses] saddled and bridled all night long, and that we should not attempt to go a single step forward until we had filled up that great opening with adobes and timber and that every precaution should be taken in the camp. Then when we saw that it was our fault that great disaster had happened, we began then and there to fill in that opening, and although it meant great labour and many wounds which the enemy inflicted while we were at work, and the death of six soldiers, in four days we had it filled in,² and at night we kept watch on the place itself, all three companies in the order I have already mentioned.

I want to say that at this time the Mexicans were quite close to us as we kept watch, and they too had their sentinels and changed them in watches, and it was in this way; they lighted great fires that burned all night through, but those who were on guard stood away from the fires and from afar we were not able to distinguish them, and although on account of the brightness of the wood that was always burning we could not see the Indians who were watching, yet we could always tell when they were changing guard, for then they came to feed the fire. On many nights, as it rained heavily at that season it happened that their fire was put out, and they rekindled it without making any noise nor a word spoken among them, for they understood one another by means of whistles.

¹ Cortés states (Third Letter) that he visited Alvarado's camp himself, and was astonished to find how much he had done and how far he had penetrated into the City.

² By Friday, 28th June

I wish to say that very often our musketeers and cross-bowmen when we knew that they [the enemy] were going to change guard threw stones and shot arrows at a venture at groups of them, but they did them no harm, because they were in a place which even if we had wished to get at them in the night we should not have been able to reach them on account of another great and very deep opening of the canal, which they had made by hand and of the barricades and walls they had raised, and they also shot at us volleys of stones, javelins and arrows.

Let us stop speaking about keeping watch and say how each day we advanced along the causeway fighting in the most regular order and we captured the opening, which I have spoken of, where they kept guard ; but such was the multitude of the enemy who came against us every day, and the javelins, arrows and stones they shot, that they wounded us all, although we proceeded with the greatest caution and were well armoured.

Then after having passed all the day fighting, when it was growing late and there was no opportunity for a further advance, only of turning back in retreat, that would be the [very] time they held many squadrons in readiness, believing that with the great energy of their attacks as we retired, they would be able to rout us, for they came on as fierce as tigers and fought us hand to hand. As soon as we found out this plan of theirs, we made the following arrangement for retreating ; the first thing we did was to get our friends the Tlaxcalans off the causeway, for as they were very numerous, they longed with our support to get to blows with the Mexicans, and as the Mexicans were cunning, they wished nothing better than to see us entangled with our friends, thus they made fierce attacks on us from two or three directions, so as to enclose us in the middle and intercept some of us, and, with the many Tlaxcalans who embarrassed us, prevent us from fighting

on all sides and this was the reason that we got them [the Tlaxcalans] off the causeway to where we could place them in safety. As soon as we found ourselves no longer hampered by them, we retreated to our camp without turning our backs, but always facing the enemy, some of the crossbowmen and musketeers shooting and others loading, and with our four launches in the lake, two on each side of the causeway, protecting us against the fleets of canoes and the many stones from the azoteas and houses which were destined to be pulled down. Yet with all this caution every one of us ran great personal risk until we reached our ranchos. There we at once treated our wounds with oil and bandaged them with native cloth, and supped on the tortillas they had brought us from Tacuba, and on herbs, and such as had them, on Tunas. Then we at once mounted guard at the water-opening which I have mentioned, and the next morning we promptly returned to fight, for we could do nothing else, for however early in the morning it might be, battalions of the enemy were there ready to attack us, and they even reached our camp and shouted abuse at us, and in such manner we underwent our hardships.

Let us stop talking for a time about our camp which is that of Pedro de Alvarado and turn to that of Cortés which the enemy constantly attacked by day and by night and killed and wounded many of his soldiers in the same way as they did to us in the camp at Tacuba. Two launches were always employed every night to give chase to the canoes that entered Mexico with food and water, and it appears that one launch captured two chieftains who came in one of the many canoes that brought food, and from them Cortés found out that forty piraguas and other canoes were lying in ambush in a thicket in order to capture one of our launches, as they did the other time. Cortés flattered these two chieftains who had been captured

and gave them beads, and made them many promises that when Mexico was taken he would give them territory, and through our interpreters Doña Marina and Aguilar, he asked them where the piraguas were stationed, for it would not be in the same place as before, and they pointed out the place where they were stationed and even gave warning that many heavy timber stakes had been driven in at certain places so that should the launches turn to flight before the piraguas they would get impaled upon the stakes, and their crews would be carried off and killed. When Cortés had received this warning, he got six launches ready to go that night and place themselves in some reed beds about a quarter of a league from where the piraguas were in ambush, and [ordered them] to be covered over with branches; so they set out with muffled oars and stayed all the night watching. Very early in the morning Cortés ordered a launch to set out as though it were going in chase of the canoes that went in with the food, and he ordered the two Indian chieftains who had been captured to go in the launch to point out where the piraguas were stationed, so that the launch should go in that direction. At the same time our enemies the Mexicans arranged, as they did the other time, to send out two decoy canoes in the direction of the ambush, pretending to carry supplies, in order to lure the launch to go after them. Thus they had one idea and our people another which was just the same as theirs, and when the launch which the cunning Cortés had sent out saw the canoes which the Indians had sent out as a bait, it went after them and the two canoes behaved as though they were fleeing to land to their ambush and piraguas. Our launch at once pretended that it did not dare to approach the land and turned in retreat, and when the piraguas and many other canoes saw that it had turned round, they came out after it with great fury and rowed as hard as they could and went in pursuit of it, and the

launch went as if in flight to where the other six launches were stationed in ambush, the piraguas still in pursuit. At that moment a gun was fired off which was the signal for our launches to come out; and when they heard the signal they came out with a great spurt and attacked the piraguas and canoes and overturned them and killed and captured many warriors, and the launch that we sent out as a decoy, which had already got some distance off, also returned to assist its companions so that a good prize of prisoners and canoes was carried off, and from that time onward the Mexicans did not dare to lay any more ambuscades nor did they dare to bring in supplies or water so openly as they had been used to do, and in this way the warfare of the launches on the lakes and our battles on the causeways were carried on.

Let me now say that the towns situated in the lake (which I have already named on other occasions) when they saw how day by day we were victorious both on water and on land, and that the people of Chalco, Tlaxcala, Texcoco and other pueblos had made friends with us whilst we continued making war against all of them and doing them much harm and damage, and capturing many of their men and women, apparently all united and decided to sue Cortés for peace and with great humility they asked pardon if in any way they had offended us, and said that they had been under orders and could not do otherwise.¹ Cortés rejoiced greatly to see them come in that way, and when we heard the news in our camp, that of Pedro de Alvarado, and in that of Sandoval, all of us soldiers rejoiced; but to return to my story, Cortés with a pleased countenance and much flattery pardoned them [although he] told them that they deserved to be severely punished

¹ From Cortés's account the submission of these towns appears to have taken place about 18th June.

for having helped the Mexicans. The towns that came in were Iztapalapa, Churubusco, Culucan, and Mixquic and all those of the fresh water lake, and Cortés told them that we should not move the camp until the Mexicans sued for peace or he had destroyed them by war. He ordered them to aid us with all the canoes that they possessed to fight against Mexico, and to come and build ranchos for Cortés and to bring him food, and they replied that they would do so, and they built the ranchos but brought no food or very little and that with ill will. Our ranchos where Pedro de Alvarado was stationed were never rebuilt so we remained in the rain, for those who have been in this country know that through the months of June, July and August it rains every day in these parts.

Let us leave this and return to our causeway and the attacks that we made on the Mexicans every day and how we succeeded in capturing many idol towers, houses, canals, and other openings and bridges which they had constructed from house to house, and we filled them all up with adobes and the timbers from the houses that we pulled down and destroyed and we kept guard over them, but notwithstanding all this trouble that we took, they [the enemy] came back and deepened them and widened the openings and erected more barricades. And because our three companies considered it a dishonour that some should be fighting and facing the Mexican squadrons and others should be filling up passes and openings and bridges, Pedro de Alvarado, so as to avoid quarrels as to who should be fighting or filling up openings, ordered that one company should have charge of the filling in and look after that work one day, while the other two companies should fight and face the enemy, and that this should be done in rotation one day one company, and another day another company, until each company should have had its turn, and owing to this arrangement there was nothing captured

that was not razed to the ground, and our friends the Tlaxcalans helped us. So we went on penetrating into the City, but at the hour for retiring all three companies had to fight in union, for that was the time when we ran the greatest risk, and, as I have already related, first of all we sent all the Tlaxcalans off the causeway, for it was clear that they were a considerable embarrassment when we were fighting.

Let us cease speaking of our camp and return to that of Cortés and that of Sandoval which continuously both by day and night had many of the enemy upon them both by land and in fleets of canoes from the lake, and they were always being attacked and could not get rid of their enemies. In the camp of Cortés [the Spaniards endeavoured] to capture a bridge and deep opening which was difficult to take, for the Mexicans had placed many breastworks and barricades there, so that the only way to cross was by swimming, and whenever an attempt was made to cross it, many warriors were ready waiting with arrows and stones from slings and javelins, macanas, two handed swords, and lances made like scythes set with swords that they had taken from us, and the lake was full of war canoes, and from the neighbouring barricades and azotecas they showered down stones and the launches could give no help on account of the stakes that had been placed [there]. In capturing this fort, bridge and opening the troops of Cortés endured great hardships and four soldiers were killed in the fighting, and more than thirty soldiers were wounded, and as it was already late when they effected the capture, they had no time to close up the opening, and they retreated again with great difficulty and danger and with more than thirty soldiers wounded, besides many more Tlaxcalans injured.

Let us leave this and tell of another way in which Guatemoc ordered his companies to fight and for which he

ordered all his forces to be prepared. It happened that as the next day¹ was the feast of the Señor San Juan de Junio, and exactly one year was completed since we entered Mexico (when we came to the relief of Pedro de Alvarado, and they defeated us as I have related in the chapter that treats of it), it seems that they had kept count of it, and Guatemoc ordered us to be attacked at all three camps, by all his troops and with all the energy that was possible both on land and by water with canoes, and he ordered them to go by night during the modorra watch; and so that the launches should not be able to assist us, stakes had been placed in most parts of the water of the lake so that the launches might get impaled on them. They came on with so furious an impetus that had it not been for those who were on the watch, who were over one hundred and twenty soldiers well used to fighting, they would have penetrated into our camp, and we ran a great risk as it was, but by fighting in good order we withstood them, and they wounded fifteen of our men and two of them died of their wounds within eight days.

Also in the camp of Cortés they placed our troops in the greatest straits and difficulties and many were killed and wounded, and in the camp of Sandoval the same thing happened, and in this way they came on two successive nights and many Mexicans also were killed in these encounters and many more wounded. When Guatemoc and his captains and priests saw that the attack that they made on those two nights profited them nothing, they decided to come with all their combined forces at the dawn watch and attack our camp, which was called the Tacuba camp, and they came on so fearlessly that they surrounded us on two sides, and had even half

¹ 24th June. The events must be here misplaced; the 23rd was the day on which Alvarado was defeated as already related.

defeated us and cut us off, when it pleased our Lord Jesus Christ to give us strength to turn and close our ranks, and we sheltered ourselves to a certain degree with the launches, and with good cut and thrust, and advancing shoulder to shoulder, we drove them off from us somewhat, and the horsemen were not idle, and the musketeers and crossbowmen did what they could, and were even able to break up other squadrons which had already attacked us on the flanks. In that battle they killed eight and wounded many of our soldiers and they even injured Pedro de Alvarado. If the Tlaxcalans had slept on the causeway that night we should have run great risk from the embarrassment they would have caused us on account of their numbers, but the experience of what had happened before made us promptly get them off the causeway and send them to Tacuba, and we remained free from care. To go back to our battle, we killed many Mexicans and took prisoners four persons of importance. I well understand that interested readers will be surfeited with seeing so many fights every day, but one cannot do less, for during the ninety and three days that we besieged this strong and great City we had war and combats every day and every night as well. For this reason we must recount many times how, when, and in what way they happened; I have not made a chapter of what we accomplished each day, as it seems to me that it would be greatly spinning it out and a matter that could never be brought to an end, like the books of Amadis or of chivalry, and as henceforth I do not wish to waste time in recording so many battles and encounters as we went through, every day, I will relate them as briefly as I can. For when it seemed to us that we were victorious, great disasters were really coming upon us, and we were in the greatest danger of perishing in all three camps, as will be seen later on.

CHAPTER CLII.

About the battles and encounters that we went through and about the defeat that Cortés suffered at his camp, and about many other things that happened in our camp at Tacuba, and how they carried off sixty six soldiers whom they sacrificed.

AS Cortés saw that it was impossible to fill in all the openings, bridges, and canals of water that we captured day by day, which the Mexicans reopened during the night and made stronger than they had been before with barricades, and that it was very hard work fighting and filling in bridges and keeping watch all of us together (all the more as we were most of us wounded and twenty had died), he decided to consult his captains and soldiers who were in his camp, that is Cristóbal de Olid, Francisco Verdugo, Andrés de Tápia, the ensign Corral and Francisco de Lugo, and he also wrote to us in the camp of Pedro de Alvarado and to the camp of Sandoval to take the opinion of all us captains and soldiers. The question he asked was, whether it seemed good to us to make an advance into the City with a rush, so as to reach Tlatelolco, which is the great market of Mexico and is much broader and larger than that of Salamanca, and that if we could reach it, whether it would be well to station all our three camps there, as from thence we should be able to fight through the streets of Mexico without having such difficulty in retreating and should not have so much to fill in, or have to guard the bridges. As was likely to happen in such discussions and consultations, some of us said that it was not good advice or a good idea to intrude ourselves so entirely into the heart of the City, but that we should remain as we were, fighting and pulling down and levelling the houses. We who held the latter opinion gave as the most obvious reason for it that if we stationed ourselves in

Tlatelolco and left the causeways and bridges unguarded and deserted the Mexicans—having so many warriors and canoes—would reopen the bridges and causeways and we would no longer be masters of these. They would attack us with their powerful forces by night and day, and as they always had many impediments made with stakes ready prepared our launches would not be able to help us, thus by the plan that Cortés was proposing we would be the besieged and they [the enemy] would have possession of the land, the country and the lake, and we wrote to him about his proposal so that "it should not happen to us as it had happened before" (as the saying of the Mazegatos runs), when we went fleeing out of Mexico.

After Cortés had heard our opinions and the good reasons we gave for them the only result of all the discussion was that on the following day we were to advance with all the energy we could from all three camps, horsemen as well as crossbowmen, musketeers and soldiers and to push forward until [we reached] the great market place at Tlatelolco many times mentioned by me. When all was ready in all the three camps and our friends the Tlaxcalans [had been warned] as well as the people of Texcoco and those from the towns of the lake who had again given their fealty to His Majesty, who were to come with their canoes to help the launches, one Sunday¹ morning, after having heard mass, we set out from our camp with Pedro de Alvarado, and Cortés set out for his camp, and Sandoval with his companies, and in full force each company advanced capturing bridges and barricades, and the enemy fought like brave warriors and Cortés on his side gained many victories, so too did Gonzalo de Sandoval on his side. Then we on our side had already captured another barricade and a bridge, which was done

¹ Sunday, 30th June.

with much difficulty because Guatemoc had great forces guarding them, and we came out of the fight with many of our soldiers wounded, and one soon died of his wounds. and more than a thousand of our Tlaxcalan friends alone came out of it injured, but still we followed up our victory very cheerfully. Let us return to Cortés and all his army and mention that they captured a rather deep water-opening with a small and very narrow causeway across it which the Mexicans had constructed cleverly and cunningly, for they had foreseen the very thing that now happened to Cortés, and that was, that as he and his captains and soldiers were victorious, and the causeway was crowded with allies, they would go on in pursuit of the enemy who, although they pretended to be fleeing, never ceased shooting javelins, arrows and stones and made some slight stands as though they would resist Cortés until they lured him on to follow them. When they saw that he was indeed following up his victory, they pretended to flee before him. Then, as bad fortune turns the wheel and many sorrows follow on the greatest prosperity, while Cortés was going victoriously in the pursuit of the enemy, either through great carelessness on his part (or because Our Lord Jesus Christ allowed it) he and his captains and soldiers omitted to fill in the water-opening¹ which they had captured. This little causeway by which they had passed had, with cunning, been made [by the Mexicans] very narrow, and the water even penetrated through it in places, and there was much mud and mire. When the Mexicans saw him cross that passage without filling it in they wished for nothing better, and for that very event they had got ready great squadrons of warriors with very valiant captains and many canoes on

¹ In a street between the Calle de Tacuba and the Market of Tlatelolco.

the lake in places where our launches could do them no damage whatever on account of the great stakes which they had fixed there on which they would get impaled. Then there turned upon Cortés and all his soldiers such a furious rush of Mexican squadrons with such cries yells and whistles that our people were not able to withstand the great impetus and force with which they came to fight against Cortés, and all the soldiers and captains and ensigns decided to retreat in very good order, but the enemy came against them with fury until they had driven them to that bad passage, and the allies whom they [the Spaniards] had brought with them, who were very numerous, were so confused that they turned their backs and took to flight without making any resistance. When Cortés saw them thus turning away defeated he encouraged them and cried "Stop, stop Gentlemen, stand firm, what is this that you are doing turning your backs", but he could not check them. Then in that passage which they had neglected to fill up, and on the little causeway which was narrow and unsound, aided by the canoes they [the enemy] defeated Cortés and wounded him in the leg, and they carried off alive sixty six soldiers and killed eight horses. Six or seven Mexican Captains had already seized hold of Cortés, but it pleased Our Lord God to help him and to give him strength to defend himself although he was wounded in one leg, for in the nick of time there promptly came [to his rescue] a very valiant soldier named Cristobal de Olea, a native of Old Castile, and as soon as he saw Cortés assailed by so many Indians, this soldier Olea fought so bravely that he quickly killed with sword thrusts four of the captains who had hold of him, and another brave soldier named Lerma also helped. They did so much by their personal bravery that they [the Indian Captains] let go of Cortés, but in defending him Olea lost his life there, and even Lerma was at the point

of death. Many soldiers soon ran to assist and although they were badly wounded they laid hands on Cortés and helped him out of that danger and the mire in which he was then standing, and the quarter master Cristóbal de Olid also came in great haste and they took him [Cortés] by the arms and helped him to get out of the water and the mud and brought him a horse on which he escaped from death. At that moment his mayor-domo named Cristóbal de Guzman also arrived and brought him another horse. Meanwhile the Mexican warriors kept on fighting very fearlessly and successfully from the azoteas greatly to our damage, and they captured Cristóbal de Guzman and carried him alive to Guatemoc. The Mexicans kept following in pursuit of Cortés and all his soldiers until they reached their camp. Even after that disaster had happened and they had reached camp, the Mexican squadrons did not cease following them and hunting them down yelling and calling out much abuse and calling them cowards.

Let us cease speaking about Cortés and his defeat and return to our army, which is that of Pedro de Alvarado, in the City of Tacuba, and [say] how we advanced victoriously, and, when we least expected it, we saw advancing against us with loud yells very many squadrons of Mexicans with very handsome ensigns and plumes, and they cast in front of us five heads streaming with blood which they had just cut off the men whom they had captured from Cortés, and they cried:—"Thus will we kill you as we have killed Malinche and Sandoval, and all whom they had brought with them, and these are their heads and by them you may know them well", and saying these words they closed in on us until they laid hands on us and neither cut nor thrust nor crossbows nor muskets availed to stop them, all they did was to rush at us as at a mark. Even so we lost nothing of our order in retreating, for we at once

commanded our friends the Tlaxcalans to clear off quickly from the causeways and bad passages, and this time they did it with a will, for when they saw the five heads of our companions dripping with blood and heard the Mexicans say that they had killed Malinche and Sandoval and all the Teules whom they had brought with them, and that so they would do to us also and to the Tlaxcalans, they were thoroughly frightened, thinking it was true, and for this reason, I say, they cleared off the causeway very completely.

Let us go back to say that as we were retreating we heard the sound of trumpets from the great Cue, (where stand the idols Huichilobos and Tezcatepuca) which from its height dominates the whole City, and also a drum, a most dismal sound indeed it was, like an instrument of demons, as it resounded so that one could hear it two leagues off, and with it many small tambourines and shell trumpets, horns and whistles. At that moment, as we afterwards learnt, they were offering the hearts of ten of our comrades and much blood to the idols that I have mentioned.

Let us leave the sacrifice and return to our retreat and the great attack they made on us both from the causeway and from the azoteas and the canoes on the lake. Simultaneously there came against us many squadrons which Guatemoc had newly sent out, and he ordered his horn to be sounded. When this horn was sounded it was a signal that his captains and warriors must fight so as to capture their enemies or die in the attempt, and the sound that it made echoed in their ears, and when his captains and squadrons heard it, the fury and courage with which they threw themselves on us, in order to lay hold of us, was terrifying, and I do not know how to describe it here; even now when I stop to remember, it is as though I could see it [all] at this minute, and were

present [again], in that fight and battle. But I reassert that our Lord Jesus Christ saved us, for if he had not given us strength, seeing that we were all wounded, we should never otherwise have been able to reach our ranchos, and I give thanks and praise to God for it, that I escaped that time and many others from the power of the Mexicans.

To go back to our story, the horsemen made charges, and with two heavy cannon that we placed near our ranchos with some loading while others fired we held our own, for the causeway was crowded to the utmost with the enemy and they came after us up to the houses, as though we were already conquered and shot javelins and stones at us, and as I have said, with those cannon we killed many of them. The man who was most helpful that day was a gentleman named Pedro Moreno Medrano, who lives now in Puebla, for he acted as gunner because the artillerymen we used to have with us were some of them dead and the others wounded, and Pedro Moreno besides always being a brave soldier was on that day a great help to us. Being as we were in that condition, thoroughly miserable and wounded, we knew nothing of either Cortés or Sandoval nor of their armies, whether they had been killed or routed, as the Mexicans told us they were when they cast [before us] the five heads which they brought tied together by the hair and the beards, saying that Malinche and all the Teules were already dead, and that thus they were going to kill all of us that very day. We were not able to get news from them because we were fighting half a league apart one from the other, and where they had defeated Cortés was furthest off, and for this very reason we were much distressed, but by all of us both wounded and sound keeping together in a body we held out against the shock of the fury of the Mexicans who came against us and who did not believe

that there would be a trace of us left after the attack that they made upon us.

Then they had already captured one of our launches and killed three soldiers and wounded the captain and most of the soldiers who were in it, and it was rescued by another launch of which Juan Xaramillo was captain. Yet another launch was impaled in a place from which it could not move, and its captain was Juan de Linpias Caravajal, who went deaf at that time, and now lives in Puebla. He himself fought most valiantly and so encouraged his soldiers, who were rowing the launch that day, that they broke the stakes [on which they were impaled] and got away, all badly wounded, and saved their launch. This Linpias was the first to break the stakes and it was a great thing for all of us.

Let us return to Cortés ; when he and his people were nearly all killed or wounded the Mexican squadrons went towards his camp to attack it, and they even cast before the Soldiers, who were resisting the attack of the Mexicans, four other heads dripping with blood [which were those] of soldiers who had been carried off from Cortés himself, and they said that these were [the heads of] Tonatio, that is of Pedro de Alvarado, and of Sandoval and of Bernal Díaz and other Teules, and that they had already killed all of us who were at Tacuba. Then Cortés was much more depressed than he had been before and tears started from his eyes (and the eyes of all who were with him,) but not to such an extent as to permit them to notice depression or weakness in him. He at once ordered Cristóbal de Olid, who was quarter-master, and his captains to take care that the many Mexicans who were pressing on them did not break into the camp, and to keep both wounded and sound all close together in one body. He sent Andrés de Tápia with three horsemen post-haste by land, at the risk of their lives, to Tacuba which was our

camp, to find out if we were alive, and, if we were not routed, [to tell us] to keep a good look out in our camp and to form up in one body and to keep watch all together both by day and by night, and what he now sent to order us to do we had already made our custom. The Captain Andrés de Tápia and the three horsemen who came with him made great haste, although Tápia and two of those who came with him were wounded, and they were called Guillen de la Loa and Baldenebro and a Juan de Cuellar, all valiant men. When they reached our camp and found us fighting with the Mexican force which was still close to us, they rejoiced in their hearts and related to us what had happened about the defeat of Cortés and what he had sent to tell us, but they did not care to state that so many were dead, and said that about twenty five [had been killed] and that all the rest were well.

Let us stop talking of this and turn to Sandoval and his captains and soldiers, who marched on victoriously in the part and streets they had captured, and when the Mexicans had defeated Cortés they turned on Sandoval and his army and captains so effectively that he could make no headway, and they killed six soldiers and wounded all whom he had brought with him, and gave him [Sandoval himself] three wounds one in the thigh, another in the head and another in the left arm. While Sandoval was battling with the enemy they placed before him six heads of Cortés's men whom they had killed, and said they were the heads of Malinche and of Tonatio and other Captains, and that they meant so to do with Sandoval and those who were with him, and they attacked him fiercely. When Sandoval saw this he ordered all his captains and soldiers to show a brave spirit and not be dismayed, and to take care that in retreating there should not be any confusion on the causeway which was narrow, and first of all he ordered his allies, who were numerous, to clear off the

causeway so as not to embarrass him, and with [the help of] his two launches and of his musketeers and crossbowmen, with great difficulty he retired to his quarters, with all his men badly wounded and even discouraged and six of them dead. When he found himself clear of the causeway, although he was surrounded by Mexicans, he encouraged his people and their captains and charged them all to be sure to keep together in a body by day and by night so as to guard the camp and avoid defeat. Then when he learned from the captain Luis Marin, that they were well able to do it, wounded and bound up in rags as he was, he took two other horsemen with him and rode post haste to the camp of Cortés. When Sandoval saw Cortés he said "Oh Sir Captain, what is this? Are these the counsels and stratagems of warfare that you have always impressed on us, how has this disaster happened?" Cortés replied with tears springing to his eyes, "Oh my son Sandoval, for my sins this has been permitted, however I do not deserve as much blame in the matter as all my captains and soldiers impute, but the Treasurer Julian de Alderete to whom I gave the order to fill in that passage where they defeated us, and he did not do it, for he is not used to war nor to receive orders from Captains. Then the treasurer himself answered, for he was there by Cortés and had come to see and speak with Sandoval and to find out if his army was dead or defeated, and he said that Cortés himself was to blame and not he, and the reason he gave was that as Cortés was advancing victoriously and in order to follow up his advantage he cried out "Forward gentlemen" and never ordered them to fill in the bridge or bad passage, and that if he had ordered him to do so, his Captain and the allies would have done it. He also blamed Cortés for not ordering the many allies that he had with him to clear off the causeway in good time, and there were many other discussions and replies from Cortés to the

Treasurer which were spoken in anger, they will be left untold, and I will state how at that moment there arrived two launches which Cortés kept in the lake and by the causeway, and they had not come in nor had anything been known about them since the defeat. It seems that they had been detained and impaled on some stakes, and, according to what the captains reported, they had been kept there surrounded by canoes which attacked them, and they all came in wounded, and said that God in the first place aided them with a wind, and thanks to the great energy with which they rowed they broke the stakes; at this Cortés was well pleased, for up to that time, although he did not publish it so as not to dishearten the soldiers, he knew nothing about the launches and had held them as lost.

Let us leave this and return to Cortés who next strongly advised Sandoval to proceed at once post haste to our camp of Pedro de Alvarado, which was called Tacuba, and see whether we were routed, or how we stood, and if we were alive he should help us to keep up the defence so that they should not break into our camp, and he told Francisco de Lugo who accompanied him (Sandoval) (for he well knew that there were Mexican squadrons on the road), that he had already sent Andrés de Tápia with three horsemen to get news of us, and he feared that they had been killed on the road. After saying this to him and taking leave of him he went to embrace Sandoval, and said, "Look here, my son, as I am not able to go everywhere, for you can see that I am wounded, I commit this work to your care so that you may inspire confidence in all three camps. I know well that Pedro de Alvarado and all his captains and brothers and soldiers have fought valiantly and acted like gentlemen, but I fear the great forces of these dogs may have defeated him, and as for me and my army, you observe in what condition I am."

Sandoval and Francisco de Lugo came post haste to where we were and when he arrived it was a little after dusk (*visperas*) and it seems that the defeat of Cortés took place before noon (*misa mayor*). When Sandoval arrived he found us fighting with the Mexicans who wanted to get into our camp by way of some houses which we had pulled down, and others by the causeway, and many canoes by the lake, and they had already got one launch stranded on the land, and of the soldiers who were in it two were dead and most of them wounded. Sandoval saw me and six other soldiers standing more than waist high in the water helping the launch to get off into deep water, and many Indians attacking us with swords which they had captured from us when Cortés was defeated, and others with broadswords [edged] with [flint] knives and were giving us sword cuts (and they gave me an arrow wound and a sword cut in the leg) so as to prevent us helping the launch, which, judging from the energy they were displaying, they intended to carry off with their canoes. They had attached many ropes to it with which to tow it off and place it inside the City. When Sandoval saw us in that position he said to us "Oh! Brothers put your strength into it and prevent them carrying off the launch" and we exerted so much strength that we soon hauled it out in safety, although as I have said, all of the sailors came out wounded and two dead.

At that time many companies of Mexicans came to the causeway and wounded the horsemen as well as all of us, and they gave Sandoval a good blow with a stone in the face. Then Pedro de Alvarado and other horsemen went to his assistance. As so many squadrons approached I and twenty other soldiers faced them, and Sandoval ordered us to retreat little by little so that they should not kill the horses, and because we did not retreat as quickly as he wished he said to us with fury "Do you wish that

through your selfishness they should kill me and all these horsemen? For the love of me, dear brothers, do fall back", at that moment the enemy again wounded him and his horse. Just then we cleared our allies off the causeway, and [we retreated] little by little keeping our faces [to the enemy] and not turning our backs, as though to form a dam. Some of the crossbowmen and musketeers were shooting and others loading their guns for they did not fire them off all together, and the horsemen made charges, and Pedro Moreno Medrano, already mentioned by me, loaded and fired his cannon, yet, notwithstanding the number of Mexicans that the balls were sweeping away, we could not fend them off, on the contrary they kept on following us thinking that this very night they would carry us off to be sacrificed.

When we had retreated near to our quarters and had already crossed a great opening where there was much water, the arrows, javelins and stones could no longer reach us. Sandoval, Francisco de Lugo and Andrés de Tápia were standing with Pedro de Alvarado each one relating what had happened to him and what Cortés had ordered, when again there was sounded the dismal drum of Huichilobos and many other shells and horns and things like trumpets and the sound of them all was terrifying, and we all looked towards the lofty Cue where they were being sounded, and saw that our comrades whom they had captured when they defeated Cortés were being carried by force up the steps, and they were taking them to be sacrificed. When they got them up to a small square in [front of] the oratory, where their accursed idols are kept, we saw them place plumes on the heads of many of them and with things like rans [in their hands?] they forced them to dance before Huichilobos, and after they had danced they immediately placed them on their backs on some rather narrow stones which had

been prepared as [places for] sacrifice, and with stone knives they sawed open their chests and drew out their palpitating hearts and offered them to the idols that were there, and they kicked the bodies down the steps, and Indian butchers who were waiting below cut off the arms and feet and flayed [the skin off] the faces, and prepared it afterwards like glove leather with the beards on, and kept those for the festivals when they celebrated drunken orgies, and the flesh they ate in *chilmole*. In the same way they sacrificed all the others and ate the legs and arms and offered the hearts and blood to their idols, as I have said, and the bodies, that is their entrails and feet, they threw to the tigers and lions which they kept in the house of the carnivores which I have spoken about in an earlier chapter.

When we saw those cruelties all of us in our camp and Pedro de Alvarado and Gonzalo de Sandoval and all the other captains (let the interested readers who peruse this, note what ills we suffered from them [the Mexicans]) said the one to the other "thank God that they are not carrying me off to day to be sacrificed."

It should also be noted that we were not far away from them, yet we could render them no help, and could only pray God to guard us from such a death.

Then, at the moment that they were making the sacrifices, great squadrons of Mexicans fell on us suddenly and gave us plenty to do on all sides and neither in one way or the other could we prevail against them.

And they cried :—"Look, that is the way in which you will all have to die, for our gods have promised it to us many times." Then the words and threats which they said to our friends the Tlaxcalans were so injurious and evil that they disheartened them, and they threw them roasted legs of Indians and the arms of our soldiers and cried to them :—"Eat of the flesh of these Teules and

of your brothers for we are already glutted with it, and you can stuff yourselves with this which is over, and observe that as for the houses which you have destroyed, we shall have to bring you to rebuild them much better with white stone and well worked masonry, so go on helping the Teules, for you will see them all sacrificed."

There was another thing that Guatemoc ordered to be done when he won that victory, he sent to all the towns of our allies and friends and to their relations, the hands and feet of our soldiers and the flayed faces with the beards, and the heads of the horses that they had killed, and he sent word that more than half of us were dead and he would soon finish us off, and he told them to give up their friendship [with us] and come to Mexico and if they did not give it up promptly, he would come and destroy them, and he sent to tell them many other things to induce them to leave our camp and desert us, and then we should be killed by his hands.

As they still went on attacking us both by day and by night, all of us in our camp kept watch together, Gonzalo de Sandoval and Pedro de Alvarado and the other captains keeping us company during our watch, and although during the night great companies of warriors came [against us] we withstood them. Both by day and night half the horsemen remained in Tacuba and the other half were on the causeway.

There was another greater evil that they did us; no matter how carefully we had filled in [the water spaces] since we advanced along the causeway, they returned and opened them all and constructed barricades stronger than before. Then our friends of the cities of the lake who had again accepted our friendship and had come to aid us with their canoes believed that they "came to gather wool and went back shorn" for many of them lost their lives and many more returned wounded, and they lost more than

half of the canoes they had brought with them, but, even with all this, thenceforward they did not help the Mexicans, for they were hostile to them, but they carefully watched events as they happened.

Let us cease talking about misfortunes and once again tell about the caution, and the manner of it, that from now on we exercised, and how Gonzalo de Sandoval and Francisco de Lugo and Andrés de Tápia and Julio de Cuellar and Baldenebro and the other soldiers who had come to our camp thought it would be well to return to their posts and to give a report to Cortés as to how and in what position we stood. So they went post haste and told Cortés that Pedro de Alvarado and all his soldiers were using great caution both in fighting as well as in keeping watch, and moreover Sandoval, as he considered me a friend, said to Cortés that he had found me and the soldiers fighting more than waist high in water defending a stranded launch, and that if it had not been for us they [the enemy] would surely have killed the captain and soldiers who were on board, and because he said other things in my praise about when he ordered me to retreat, I am not going to repeat them here for other persons told of it, and it was known throughout the camp of Cortés and in our own, but I do not wish to recite it here. When Cortés clearly understood the great caution that we observed in our camp it greatly eased his heart, and from that time onwards he ordered all three camps not to fight with the Mexicans either too much or too little, meaning that we were not to trouble about capturing any bridge or barricade, and, except in defence of our camps, we were not to go out to fight with the enemy.

Nevertheless the day had hardly dawned when they were attacking our camp discharging many stones from slings, and javelins and arrows and shouting out hideous abuse, and as we had near the camp a very broad and

deep opening of water we remained for four days in succession without crossing it. Cortés remained as long in his camp and Sandoval in his. This determination, not to go out and fight and endeavour to capture the barricades which they [the Mexicans] had returned to open and fortify, was because we were all badly wounded and worn out with hardships, both from keeping watch and bearing arms without anything sustaining to eat; and because we had lost the day before over sixty and odd soldiers from all the camps, and eight horses and so that we might obtain some rest, and take mature counsel as to what should be done. From that time onwards Cortés ordered us to remain quiet, as I have said, so I will leave off here and tell how and in what way we fought and everything else that happened in our camp.

CHAPTER CLIII.

About the way in which we fought, and the many attacks that the Mexicans made on us, and the parleys we had with them, and how our allies left us and went to their towns, and many other things that happened.

OUR method of fighting in all three camps was as follows:—All the soldiers kept watch on the causeways together with our launches on either side, half the horsemen went the rounds in Tacuba, where the bread was made for us and where we kept our baggage, and the other half guarded the bridges and the causeway. Early in the morning we prepared our arms to fight with the enemy, who tried to penetrate into our camp and endeavoured to defeat us, and they acted in the same way at the camp of Cortés and of Sandoval. This lasted only during five days for then we adopted another plan which I will speak about later on. Let me tell now how

the Mexicans offered great sacrifice and celebrated festivals every night at their great Cue at Tlatelolco and sounded their cursed drum, trumpets, kettle drums and shells, and uttered yells and howls, and kept many bonfires of burning wood going all night long. Then they sacrificed our comrades to their accursed Huichilobos and Tescatepuca whom they consulted, and inasmuch as they are evil, they replied so as to delude them and prevent their making peace, inducing them to believe that on the morning following that very night they were sure to kill all of us and the Tlaxcalans and all others who might come to our assistance. When our allies heard this they believed it to be true because they had seen us defeated and saw that we were not fighting as we used to do.

Let us leave these sayings that came from their accursed idols and relate that in the morning many regiments came to surround us and attack us, and they relieved one another from time to time, some with one kind of device and plumes and distinguishing marks and then others with a different uniform. Then when we were fighting with them they shouted many insults calling us cowards, and good-for-nothings, neither for making houses nor plantations of maize; and that we only came to plunder their city and were evil men fleeing from our own country and king and master. This they said on account of what Narvaez had sent to tell them, that we had come without the permission of our King, as I have stated in the chapter that deals with that matter. They further said that within eight days not one of us would remain alive, for so, last night, their Gods had promised them, and they said many other bad words to us, and last of all they exclaimed "Look what rogues and villains you are, even your flesh is bad to eat, it is as bitter as gall and we cannot swallow it so bitter is it." It seems that they had satiated themselves during those days on the flesh of our soldiers and comrades

and possibly our Lord had willed their flesh to turn bitter. If they used abusive language to us they treated our friends the Tlaxcalans much worse and threatened to keep them as slaves for sacrifice and for planting their crops and rebuilding the houses they had destroyed, and that they would have to make them of well laid masonry for this their Huichilobos had promised them. After they had said this, how fearlessly they fought and approaching by way of some houses that had been pulled down, and in the many canoes that they possessed, they took us in the rear and sometimes they had us even cut off on the causeway, but our Lord supported us every day, for our own strength alone was insufficient. Still we sent back many of them wounded and others fell dead. Let us cease speaking of these great attacks which they made on us and say how our friends, the people of Tlaxcala and Cholula and Huexotzingo and even those of Texcoco and Chalco and Tlamanalco, decided to return to their own Countries, and nearly all of them went off without Cortés or Pedro de Alvarado or Sandoval knowing about it. There only remained in Cortés camp Ixlilxochitl,¹ who was afterwards baptized and named Don Carlos (he was the brother of Don Fernando the Lord of Texcoco and was a very valiant man) and about forty of his relations and friends. In Sandoval's camp there remained another cacique from Huexotzingo with about fifty men, and in our camp there remained two sons of Lorenzo de Vargas and the brave Chichimecatecle with about eighty Tlaxcalans, his relations and vassals. When we found ourselves alone² with so few allies we were distressed, and Cortés and Sandoval each of

¹ Este Suchel in the text.

² Bernal Díaz must have been misinformed as to the number of the allies in the three camps; had they been as few as he states Cortés could not have ventured to despatch the expedition under Andrés de Tapia only a few days later.

them asked the allies that remained in his camp, why the others had gone off in that way, and they replied that they had observed Mexicans speaking with their Idols during the night who promised them that they should kill us, and they believed it to be true; so it was through fear that they left, and what made it more credible was seeing us all wounded and many of us dead, and of their own people more than twelve hundred were missing, and they feared that we should all be killed. Moreover Xicotenga the younger, whom Cortés had ordered to be hanged on the confines of Texcoco, had always told them that he knew by his magic that they [the Mexicans] would kill all of us and not leave one of them alive. These were the reasons why they went off and although Cortés in private showed how it weighed upon him, yet he told them with a cheerful countenance to have no fear, for what the Mexicans had told them was a lie to make them lose heart, and he made so many promises to them in affectionate terms that he gave them courage to stay with him, and we said the like to Chichimecatecle and to the two youthful Xicotengas. In those conversations which Cortés had with Ixlilxochitl, who as I have already said was called Don Carlos, for he was Lord over his people and a brave man, he replied to Cortés "Señor Malinche, do not be distressed because you cannot fight every day with the Mexicans, get your foot well, and take my advice, and that is to stay some days in your camp, and tell Tonatio (Pedro de Alvarado for so they called him) to do the same and stay in his camp and Sandoval in Tepeaquilla, and keep the launches on the move night and day to prevent supplies of provisions or water from getting to them, [the enemy] for there are within this great City so many thousand *xiquipeles*¹ of warriors that they must of necessity eat up the food that

¹ A division numbering 8,000 men.

they possess, and the water they are now drinking is from some springs they have made, and it is half salt, and as it rains every day and sometimes at night they catch the water and live on that, but what can they do if you stop their food and water? They will suffer more from hunger and thirst than from war." When Cortés understood this advice he threw his arms round him and thanked him for it and made him promises that he would give him pueblos. This advice many of us soldiers had already discussed, but, such is our nature, that we did not wish to wait so long a time, but to advance into the city. When Cortés had well considered what the cacique had said (although we had already sent to say the same thing on our own account, and the captains and soldiers had said it on theirs) he ordered two launches to go to our camp and to that of Sandoval to tell us that he ordered us to remain another three days without advancing into the city. As at that time the Mexicans were victorious he did not dare to send out one launch alone and this was the reason why he sent two, and there was one thing that helped us much, which was that our launches now ventured to break the stakes that the Mexicans had placed in the lake to impale them, and they did it in this way, they rowed with all their strength, and so that the rowing should carry greater impetus they set about it from some distance back and got wind into their sails and rowed their best, so they were masters of the lake and even of a good many houses that stood apart from the city, and when the Mexicans saw this they lost some of their courage.

Let us leave this and return to our battles; now, as we had no allies, we ourselves began to fill in and stop up the great opening that, I have said before, was near our camp, and the first company on the rota worked hard at carrying adobes and timber to fill it in, while the other two companies did the fighting. (I have said

before we had arranged that it should go in rotation) and in the four days that all of us worked at it we had it filled in and levelled. Cortés did the same in his camp where the same arrangement prevailed, and even he himself was at work carrying adobes and timber, until the bridges and causeways and openings were secure so that a retreat could be effected in safety; and Sandoval did neither more nor less in his camp. With our launches close by us, and free from any fear of stakes we advanced in this manner little by little.

Let us return to the great squadrons which continually attacked us, and very bravely and victoriously came to fight us hand to hand. From time to time some squadrons retired and others came on. Then to tell of the yells and shouts that they uttered, and at that moment the horn of Guatemoc would resound and then they pressed on us so hotly that the sword cuts and thrusts which we gave them availed us nothing, and they tried to lay hands on us. As, after God, we had to rely on our own good fighting we held out very stoutly against them, and with the muskets and crossbows and charges by the horsemen, half of whom were continually with us, and with [the help of] the launches which no longer feared the stakes, we held them at bay, and little by little we went on advancing, and in this way we went on fighting until near night time, which was the time to retreat. Then, when we were retreating, it had to be done, as I have said before, with great caution, for that was the time when they endeavoured to cut us off on the causeway and the bad passages, and if they had sometimes attempted it before, in these days after their late victory they set about it much more energetically, and I declare that in three places they had broken through us, but it pleased our Lord God that, although they wounded many of us, we closed our ranks and we killed and captured many of the enemy. We had no allies to be

sent off from the causeway, and the horsemen helped us valiantly, although in that skirmish and combat two of their horses were wounded, [nevertheless] we returned badly wounded to our camp where we treated our hurts with oil and bound them up with cloths and ate our tortillas with red peppers and herbs and tunas, and then all went on watch.

Let me say now what the Mexicans did during the night on their great and lofty Cues, and that was to sound the cursed drum, which I again declare had the most accursed sound and the most dismal that it was possible to invent, and the sound carried far over of the country, and they sounded other worse instruments and diabolical things, and they made great fires and uttered the loudest yells and whistles, for at that moment they were sacrificing our comrades whom they had captured from Cortés and we knew that it took them ten days in succession to complete the sacrificing of all our soldiers, and they left to the last Cristóbal de Guzman whom they kept alive for twelve or thirteen days, according to the report of the three Mexican captains whom we captured. Whenever they sacrificed them then their Huichilobos spoke to them and promised them victory, and that we should die by their hands within eight days and told them to make vigorous attacks on us although many should die in them and in this way he kept them deluded.

Let us leave their sacrifice, and say once more that as soon as another day dawned all the greatest forces that Guatemoc could collect were already down upon us, and as we had filled up the opening and causeway and bridge they could pass it dryshod. My faith! They had the daring to come up to our ranchos and hurl javelins and stones and arrows, but with the cannon we could always make them draw off, for Pedro Moreno who had charge of the cannon did much damage to the enemy.

I wish to say that they shot our own arrows at us from crossbows, for while they held five crossbowmen alive and Cristóbal de Guzman with them, they made them load the crossbows and show them how they were to be discharged, and either they or the Mexicans discharged those shots deliberately, but they did no harm with them.

In the same way as they fought with us, and even more vigorously, they fought with Cortés and with Sandoval, and shot darts at them, but did them no harm, and we knew about this because the launches knew it, which went from our camp to that of Cortés and from Cortés's camp to ours and to that of Sandoval, and he [Cortés] was always writing to us about how we were to fight and all that we were to do, and impressing watchfulness on us, and that half the horsemen should always remain in Tacuba guarding our baggage and the Indian women who made our bread, and that we should take care that they did not break in on us in the night, for some prisoners who had been captured in Cortés's camp reported that Guatemoc was often saying that they would attack by night as we had no Tlaxcalans to help us, for they well knew that all our allies had already left us; and, I have already often said that we were most diligent in keeping watch.

Let us leave this and say that every day we had very hard fights but we did not cease to advance capturing barricades bridges and water openings, and as our launches dared to go where ever they chose in the lake, and did not fear the stakes, they helped us very much. Let me say that as usual the launches that Cortés had at his camp cruised about giving chase to the canoes that were bringing in supplies and water and collecting in the lake a sort of ooze which when it was dried had the flavour of cheese, and these launches brought in many Indian prisoners. Let us turn to the camp of Cortés and to that of Gonzalo de Sandoval, where every day they were conquering and

capturing barricades and causeways and bridges, and in these perils and battles twelve or thirteen days had gone by since the defeat of Cortés. As soon as Ixilxochitl, the brother of Don Fernando the Lord of Texcoco, observed that we had thoroughly recovered ourselves, and what the Mexicans said that they were sure to kill us within ten days was not true (which was what their Huichilobos and Tezcatepuca had promised them,) he sent to advise his brother Don Fernando to send to Cortés, at once, the whole force of warriors that he could muster in Texcoco, and within two days of the time of his sending to tell him, more than two thousand warriors arrived. I remember Pedro Sánchez Farfan and Antonio de Villa Real, who was the husband of Isabel de Ojeda, came with them, for Cortés had left those two soldiers in that City. Pedro Sánchez Farfan was a captain and Villa Real was the tutor to Don Fernando, and when Cortés saw such a good reinforcement he was greatly delighted and said flattering words to them. At that time many Tlaxcalans with their captains also returned and a cacique from Topeyanco named Tepaneca came as their general. Many Indians also came from Huexotzingo and a very few from Cholula. When Cortés knew that they had returned he ordered that all of them, as they arrived, should come to his camp so that he could speak to them. Before they arrived he ordered guards of our soldiers to be placed on the roads to protect them, in case the Mexicans should come out to attack them. When they came before Cortés he made them a speech through Doña Marina and Gerónimo de Aguilar and told them that they had fully understood and knew for certain about the good will with which he had always regarded them and still bore them, both because they had served his Majesty, as well as for the good offices that we had received at their hands, and if he had, after reaching this city, commanded them to join

us in destroying the Mexicans, he intended them to profit by it, and return to their land rich men, and to revenge themselves on their enemies, and not that we should capture that great City solely for his benefit, and although he had always found them useful and they had helped us in everything, they must have seen clearly that we ordered them off the causeways every day, because we were less hampered when we fought without them, and that he who gave us victory and aided us in everything was Our Lord Jesus Christ, in whom we believe and whom we worship as he had already often told them and warned them at other times. Because they went away at the most critical time of the war they were deserving of death, for deserting their captains when they were fighting and for forsaking them, but as they did not understand our laws and ordinances he pardoned them, and in order to understand it [the situation] better they should observe that without their help we still continued destroying houses and capturing barricades. From that time forward he ordered them not to kill any Mexicans, for he wished to conquer them by kindness. When he had made this speech to them he embraced Chichimecatecle and the two youthful Xicotengas, and Ixtilxochitl, the brother of Don Fernando, and promised to give them territory and vassals in addition to what they now held. He esteemed highly those who had remained in our camp and he also spoke very kindly to Tecapaneca the Lord of Topeyanco and to the Caciques of Huexotzingo and Cholula who were usually stationed in the camp of Sandoval. After the conversation with them as I have related he ordered them to depart, and each one went to his camp.

Let us return to our great warfare that was always going on and the attacks they made on us, and as every day and night we did nothing but fight, and retreat in the afternoon, they wounded many of our soldiers. I will omit

relating in full all that happened, and wish to say that during those days it rained in the afternoon, and we were delighted when the rain storms came early for as the enemy got wet they did not fight so fiercely, and allowed us to retreat in safety and in this way we got some rest. Because I am tired of writing about battles (and I was even more tired and wounded when I was present at them) it will appear to my readers prolix to tell about them so many times, but as I have already said, I could do no less, for during ninety-three days¹ we were fighting all the time, but from now on, if it may be excused, I will not call them so often to my mind in this story.

Let us then return to our story, as from all three camps we were advancing into the City, Cortés on his side, Sandoval on his and Pedro de Alvarado on our side, we reached the spot where the spring was, that I have already spoken about, where they drank the brackish water, and we broke it up and destroyed it so that they might not make use of it. Some Mexicans were guarding it and we had a good skirmish with javelins, stones, and arrows and many long lances with which they were waiting for the horses, but we could already move freely through all parts of the streets we had captured, for they were already levelled and free from water and openings and the horses could move very easily.

Let us cease talking of this and relate how Cortés sent messengers to Guatemóc begging him to make peace, and it was in the way I will go on to relate.

¹ This count cannot be correct.

CHAPTER CLIV.

How Cortés sent three Mexican chieftains, who had been taken prisoners in the recent battles, to beg Guatemoc to make peace with us, and what Guatemoc replied, and what else happened.

AS soon as Cortés saw that we were capturing many bridges, causeways and barricades in the City and were destroying the houses, he ordered three Mexican captains, persons of importance whom he held as prisoners, to go and speak to Guatemoc and induce him to make peace with us. These chieftains replied that they did not dare to go with such a message for their Lord Guatemoc would order them to be killed. However after further conversation Cortés begged them so [earnestly] that what with the promises that he made them, and the cloths he gave them they decided to set out. What he ordered them to tell Guatemoc was, that he had a great regard for him as so near a relation of his friend the great Montezuma, and being married to his daughter, and moreover it was a pity that so great a city should be totally destroyed, and in order to avoid the great slaughter that took place every day among its inhabitants and their neighbours, he begged him to make peace, and, in the name of His Majesty, he [Cortés] would pardon all the deaths and damage they had inflicted on us and would do them many favours. Let them remember that he had already sent this message four times, and that he [Guatemoc] owing to his youth, and through his counsellors, and principally on account of his accursed idols and priests who gave him evil advice, had not wished to agree to make peace but [preferred] to make war on us; but he had already seen how many deaths had resulted from the battles they had fought against us, and that we had on our side all the cities and pueblos throughout the district, and that every day new ones were rising

against him, and he condoled with him on such loss of vassals and cities. He also sent to say that we knew they had exhausted their provisions, and had no more water, and [he sent] many other messages well expressed. The three chieftains understood it all very clearly through our interpreters, and asked Cortés for a letter, not because the letter would be understood, but because they already knew clearly that when we sent a message or some thing that we were commanding them [to do] it was [through] a paper, (the same as they call *Amales*), as a sign that it was a command.

When the three messengers appeared before their Lord Guatemoc, with tears and great sobs they told him what Cortés had ordered them, and Guatemoc when he heard it in the presence of the Captains that were with him, as we afterwards learned, was in a rage with them for daring to come with those messages. Now Guatemoc was a youth, and a very excellent man for an Indian, of a good disposition and a cheerful countenance, and of a colour that inclined more to white than to the tint of an Indian, he was twenty five or twenty six years old and was married to a very handsome woman the daughter of his uncle the great Montezuma, and as we afterwards got to know he was inclined to make peace. In order to discuss the matter, he ordered all his chieftains and captains and the priests of the idols to assemble, and he told them that he had no wish to fight against Malinche and all of us. The discourse that he made about it to them was, that he had already tried everything that he could do in the war and had changed his manner of fighting many times, but we were of such a nature that when they thought that they held us conquered we turned the more vigorously against them, and he knew about the great host of allies who had lately joined us and that all the cities were against them, and that the launches had already broken through the stakes

and the horsemen were galloping through all the streets of his City. He placed before them many other disadvantages that they experienced both about food and water, and he begged or ordered each one of them to give his opinion, and the priests also were to give theirs and to state what they had heard the Gods Huichilobos and Tezcatepuca say and promise. No one was to have any fear of speaking the truth about what he felt. It appears that they replied "Señor and our great Lord, we already have thee for our king and the government is well exercised by thee, then in everything thou hast shown thyself manful, and the kingdom comes to thee by right; the peace that thou speakest of as good is imaginary, now just reflect how ever since these Teules entered this land and this city we have gone from bad to worse, think of the benefits and presents thy uncle the great Montezuma bestowed upon them, of the end thy cousin Cacamatzin came to, and consequently of what became of thy relations the lords of Iztapalapa, Coyoacan, Tacuba and Talatzingo, and of the sons of our great Montezuma, they are all dead, all the gold and riches of this City have been wasted and thou seest already that they have made slaves and branded the faces of all thy subjects and vassals at Chalco and Tepeaca and even at Texcoco and of all thy cities and pueblos. Consider first what thy Gods have promised thee and take good advice about it, and place no trust in Malinche and his words; it is better that we should all die in this city than see ourselves in the power of those who would make slaves of us and torture us for gold."

At that moment the priests also announced that three nights in succession, when they sacrificed to their idols, they had promised them victory. Then Guatemoc said rather angrily, "If you will have it so, take good care of the maize and supplies that we possess, and we will all die fighting, and from now on let no one be rash enough to

ask for peace for I will order him to be killed." Then and there all promised to fight day and night or die in defence of the City.

When this was settled they made arrangements with the people of Xochimileo and other towns to bring water in canoes by night, and they opened other springs in places where there was water although it was somewhat brackish.

Let us stop talking about their plans and say that Cortés and all of us remained two days without advancing into their city while we waited for a reply, and, when we least expected it great squadrons of Indian warriors came against all three camps and made fierce war upon us, and they fell on us like brave lions thinking to carry us off vanquished. What I here relate took place on our side, that of Pedro de Alvarado, and on those of Cortés and Sandoval they also say that they [the enemy] came to their camps [in a way] that they could not resist in spite of the number of them that they killed and wounded, and whilst they [the enemy] were fighting the horn of Guatemoc was sounded and then we had to close up so that they should not rout us, for as I have said before, they impaled themselves on the points of our swords and lances so as to lay hands on us. As we already were used to these encounters, for every day they killed and wounded some of us, we held our own against them hand to hand, and in this manner they fought for six or seven days in succession, and we killed and wounded many of them and for all that, they cared nothing about death.

I remember that they said to us "Why does Malinche go about every day asking us to make peace, as for us, our idols have already promised us victory and we have plenty of food and water and we are not going to leave any of you alive, so do not talk any more about peace, such talk is for women and arms are for men." And after saying this they came upon us one and all like

mad dogs, and we fought until night separated us and then, as I have said, we retreated with great caution for great companies of them came following after us. We got our allies off the causeway, for many more of them had come than there were before, and we retired to our huts and at once went on guard all of us together, and we supped while keeping watch, as I have often related before, and by early dawn we were fighting again, for they did not give us much rest.

In this way we held out for many days, and while it went on another bad change took place, and it was that an army got together from the three provinces called Matalzingo and Malinalco and some other towns called (I cannot now remember the name of them, but they were eight or ten leagues distant from Mexico) ready to fall upon us while we were fighting with the Mexicans and attack us in the rear and in our camps so that when the Mexican forces could sally out, and with one force on one side and the other force on the other, they thought that they would rout us. As other discussions took place, I will go on to say what happened about it.

CHAPTER CLV.

How Guatemoc had arranged with the provinces of Matalzingo and Tulapa and Malinalco and other pueblos to come to his assistance and make an attack on our camp, which is that of Tacuba, and on that of Cortés, and how the whole force of Mexico would sally out while they were fighting with us and would attack us on the flank, and what was done about it.

So that this may be clearly understood it is necessary to go back and speak of the time following the defeat of Cortés, when they carried off sixty and odd soldiers to be sacrificed, and I may as well say sixty eight for they

amounted to that number when they were carefully counted. I have also said that Guatemoc sent the heads of the horses and the faces which they had flayed and the hands and feet of our soldiers whom they had sacrificed, to many pueblos and to Mataltzingo and Malinalco and Tulapa, and he sent them word that more than half of our people were already dead, and he begged them, in order that they might kill every one of us, to come and help him and to attack our camps by day or night so that we should be forced to fight and defend ourselves, and while we were fighting they would come out from Mexico and attack us on the other side, so they would conquer us and capture many of us for sacrifice to their idols and [be able] to satiate themselves on our bodies. He sent to say this in such a manner that they believed it and took it to be true. Moreover Guatemoc had many relations on his mother's side in Mataltzingo and in Tulapa, and when they saw the faces and heads of our soldiers that I have spoken about, and heard what he sent to tell them, they promptly set to work to get together all the forces they could raise to come in aid of Mexico and their relation Guatemoc. They actually were already on their way against us, and on the road they passed three pueblos of our allies, and they began to attack them and to rob their farms and maize fields and to kill children for sacrifice. These pueblos sent post haste to let Cortés know about it, so that he might send them help and assistance, and he at once sent Andrés de Tápiá with twenty horsemen and one hundred soldiers and many Tlaxcalan allies to succour them effectively, and they made them (the enemy) retire to their pueblos and then came back to camp, at which Cortés was much pleased.

In the same manner and at the same moment there came other messengers from the town of Cuernavaca to claim assistance, for these same people of Mataltzingo

and Malinalco and Tulapa and other provinces were coming down upon them, and [they begged Cortés] to send help. For this purpose he sent Gonzalo de Sandoval with twenty horsemen and eighty soldiers, the soundest that were in all three camps, and many of our allies. God knows that those left behind ran great personal risk in all three camps, for nearly all were wounded and they had no comforts whatever with which to refresh themselves.

A great deal might be said about what Sandoval did and how he defeated the enemy, but I must omit saying more than that he returned very quickly to the relief of his camp (that of Sandoval), and that we brought with us two chieftains of Mataltzingo, and left them (the pueblos) more peaceful than before. That expedition was of great advantage, on the one hand in preventing our friends from receiving more damage than they had already received, on the other in preventing them [the enemy] from coming to our camps to attack us as they had set out to do, and, furthermore, in showing Guatemoc and his captains that they could no longer look for help or favour from those provinces, or say (when they were fighting with us,) that they were going to kill us with the help of Mataltzingo and the other provinces as their idols had promised them.

Let us cease talking of this expedition and the assistance that Sandoval rendered and turn to relate how Cortés sent to Guatemoc to beg him to make peace and he would pardon all that had passed, and to tell him that the king our Master had lately sent to order him not to complete the destruction of the city, and for this reason during the past five days he had not attacked nor entered it fighting. Let him (Guatemoc) observe that he no longer had any supplies of food nor water and that more than two thirds of the City were levelled with the ground, and, as to the help that he expected from Mataltzingo, let

him enquire from those two chieftains whom he [Cortés] now sent to him and what had happened to them on their expedition. He also sent to tell him other things [in the nature] of many promises. There went with these two messengers the two Indians from Matalzingo and six Mexican chieftains who had been taken prisoners in the late battles. When Guatemoc saw the prisoners from Matalzingo and learned from them what had happened he would give them no answer beyond telling them to return to their pueblo and leave Mexico at once.

Let us leave the messengers : The Mexicans promptly sallied out on three sides with the greatest fury that we had seen up to this time, and fell upon us in all three camps and made a fierce war upon us, and as we wounded and killed a great many of them it seemed to me as if they wished to die fighting. Then when they were pressing on us most fiercely, fighting hand to hand (they killed ten of our soldiers whose heads they cut off) that they had and said to us " Quitlenquitoa rrey castilla quitlenquitoa " which means to say in their language, which is the same as they speak to-day, " The King of Castille " and with these words they began to shoot javelins and stones and arrows which covered the ground and causeway. Let us leave this, for we were already advancing and capturing a large part of the City, and we noticed that although the enemy were fighting very manfully fewer squadrons than usual came in relief, and they no longer opened canals or [broke down] causeways ; but another thing they most certainly did, which is that at the time when we retired they followed us until they could lay hands on us. I also wish to say that we had already finished our powder in all three camps, and just then a ship had arrived at Villa Rica belonging to the fleet of a licenciado Lucas Vázquez de Ayllon, which was lost or destroyed in the island of Florida, and this ship made that

port and some soldiers and powder and crossbows came in it. The lieutenant who was in Villa Rica, named Rodrigo Rangel, who was in charge of Narvaez, promptly sent the powder, crossbows and soldiers to Cortés.

Let us get back to our conquest, so as to be concise ; Cortés settled with all the other captains and soldiers that we should push forward into the City as far as we were able until we reached Tlatelolco, which is the great market place where there were seven lofty Cues and Oratories, and Cortés on his side, and Gonzalo de Sandoval from his, and we from ours advanced capturing bridges and barricades. Cortés advanced to a little plaza where there were some oratories and small towers,¹ and in one of the houses there were some beams set upright and on them many of the heads of our Spaniards whom they had killed and sacrificed during the recent battles, and their hair and beards had grown much longer than when they were alive, and I would not have believed it if I had not seen it. I recognized three soldiers as my comrades, and when we saw them in that condition it saddened our hearts. At that time we left them where they were, but twelve days later they were removed, and we took those and other heads that had been offered to the idols and we buried them in a church that we made, which is now called The Martyrs near the bridge named El Salto de Alvarado (Alvarado's leap.)

Let us stop speaking about this and say that the ten Companies of Pedro de Alvarado advanced fighting and reached Tlatelolco, and there were so many Mexicans guarding their Idols and lofty cues, and they had raised so many barricades that we were fully two hours before we were able to capture them and get inside. Now that the horses had space to gallop, although most of them were

¹ Zacaculco, now the church of Sta. Ana, 26th July.

wounded, they helped us very much, and the horsemen speared many Mexicans. As the enemy were so numerous the ten¹ companies were divided into three parts to fight against them, and Pedro de Alvarado ordered the company commanded by a captain named Gutierre de Badajoz to ascend the lofty Cue of Huichilobos which has one hundred and fourteen steps, and he fought very well against the enemy and against the many priests who were in the houses of the oratories, but the enemy attacked Gutierre Badajoz and his company in such a way that they sent him rolling down ten or twelve steps, and we promptly went to his assistance.

Let us leave the combat in which we were engaged with many of the enemy ; as we advanced the squadrons with which we were fighting followed us, and we ran great risk of our lives, but nevertheless we ascended the steps which as I have said before were one hundred and fourteen in number. It is as well to mention here the great danger we were in, both one [company] and the other, in capturing those fortresses which I have already said many times were very lofty, and in those battles they once more wounded us all very badly, nevertheless we set them [the oratories] on fire and burned the idols, and we planted our banners and were fighting on the level after we had set fire [to the oratories] until night time, but we could do nothing against so many warriors.

Let us stop speaking about it and say that Cortés and his captains saw the next day, (from where they were fighting on their side, in other districts and streets far from the lofty cue,) by the sudden blaze of flame, that the great Cue was burning, for it had not been extinguished, and on seeing our banners on the top he was greatly rejoiced, and

¹ In the text "dos capitánias" evidently a mistake for "diez capitánias" as above.

he wished that he also was there, and they even say that he was envious, but he could not have done it, for it was a quarter of a league from one place to the other, and there were many bridges and water openings to be captured, and wherever he turned they made fierce attacks on him, and he could not advance as quickly as he wished into the heart of the City, as we of Alvarado's (company) had done. However, within four days both Cortés and Sandoval joined us, and we could go from one camp to the other along the streets over the houses that had been pulled down and the bridges, barricades, and water openings, now all filled in.

At this time Guatemoc and all his warriors were retreating to a part of the City within the lake for the houses and palaces in which he had lived were already levelled to the ground, but with all this they never ceased to turn out every day to attack us, and when it was time for us to retire they followed us up closer than ever. When Cortés saw this, and that many days passed and they did not sue for peace, and had no thought of doing so, he agreed with all our captains that we should form some ambuscades, and this was the way of it. From all three camps we got together about thirty horsemen and one hundred soldiers, the most active and warlike that Cortés could find, and he sent to summon from all three camps one thousand Tlaxcalans, then we placed ourselves in some large houses which had belonged to a Mexican Lord. This was done early in the morning and Cortés made his advance along the streets and causeways with the rest of the horse that were with him, and his soldiers, crossbowmen and musketeers fighting in the usual way and pretending that he was filling in the water openings and bridges. The Mexican squadrons that were ready for the task were already engaged with him, and also many others whom Guatemoc had sent to guard the bridge. When

Cortés saw that the enemy were in great numbers, he pretended to retreat and ordered the allies to be got off the causeway, so that they [the enemy] should believe that he was retreating, and they came in pursuit of him, at first slowly but when they saw that he really acted as though he were fleeing, all the troops that were on the causeway rushed after him and attacked him. When Cortés saw that they had passed a little beyond the houses where the ambush was placed, he ordered two shots to be fired close together, which was the signal that we were to sally out of the ambush. The horsemen came out first and then all of us soldiers, and we fell on the enemy as we chose. Then Cortés quickly turned round with his men, and our friends the Tlaxcalans did great damage to the enemy so that many were killed and wounded, and from that time forward they did not follow us when it was time for us to retire. Another ambush was laid for them in the Camp of Pedro de Alvarado, but it came to nothing. On that day I was not present in the Camp of Pedro de Alvarado as Cortés had sent me orders to go to his camp for the ambush.

Let us leave this and say that as we were all of us in Tlatelolco, Cortés ordered all the companies to take up their quarters, and keep watch there, because from our camp we had to come more than half a league from where we were now fighting. So we stayed there three days without doing anything worth mentioning, because Cortés ordered us not to advance any further into the City nor to destroy more houses, for he wished to stop and demand peace. During those days that we were waiting in Tlatelolco Cortés sent to Guatemoc begging him to surrender, and not to have any fear, and with many promises he undertook that his (Guatemoc's) person should be much respected and honoured by him, and that he should govern Mexico and all his territory and cities as

he was used to do, and he sent him food and presents such as tortillas, poultry, tunas and cacao, for he had nothing else to send. Guatemoc took counsel with his captains and what they advised him to reply was that he desired peace but that he would wait three days before giving an answer, and that at the end of three days Guatemoc and Cortés should meet and make arrangements about the peace, and that during those three days they would have time to know more fully the wishes and reply of their Huichilobos, and [he might have added] to mend bridges and to make openings in the causeway and prepare arrows, javelins, and stones and make barricades.

Guatemoc sent four Mexican chieftains with that reply, and we believed that the [promise of] peace was true, and Cortés ordered the messengers to be given plenty to eat and drink and then sent them back to Guatemoc, and with them he sent more refreshments the same as before. Then Guatemoc sent other messengers, and by them two rich mantles, and they said that Guatemoc would come when everything was ready. Not to waste more words about the matter he never intended to come, (for they had counselled him not to believe Cortés and had reminded him of the end of his uncle the great Montezuma, and of his relations, and the destruction of all the noble families of Mexico; [and had advised him] to say that he was ill) but intended that all should sally out to fight and that it would please their Gods to give them the victory they had so often promised them. As we were waiting for Guatemoc and he did not come, we understood their deceit and at that very moment so many battallions of Mexicans with their distinguishing marks sallied out and made an attack on Cortés that he could not withstand it, and as many more went in the direction of our camp and in that of Sandoval's. They came on in such a way that it seemed as though they had just then

begun the fighting all over again, and as we were posted rather carelessly, believing that they had already made peace, they wounded many of our soldiers, three of them very severely, and two horses, but they did not get off with much to brag of, for we paid them out well. When Cortés saw this he ordered us again to make war on them and to advance into the City in the part where they had taken refuge. When they saw that we were advancing and capturing the whole City, Guatemoc sent two chiefs to tell Cortés that he desired to speak with him across a canal, Cortés to stand on one bank and Guatemoc on the other and they fixed the time for the morning of the following day, Cortés went, but Guatemoc would not keep the appointment but sent chieftains who said that their Lord did not dare to come out for fear lest, while they were talking, guns and crossbows should be discharged at him and should kill him. Then Cortés promised him on his oath that he should not be molested in any way that he did not approve of, but it was no use, they did not believe him and said "lest what happened to Montezuma should happen to him." At that time two of the chieftains who were talking to Cortés drew out from a bag which they carried some tortillas and the leg of a fowl and cherries, and seated themselves in a very leisurely manner and began to eat so that Cortés might observe it and believe that they were not hungry. When Cortés observed it he sent to tell them that as they did not wish to make peace, he would soon enter into all their houses to see if they had any maize and how much more poultry.

We went on in this way for another four or five days without attacking them, and about this time many poor Indians who had nothing to eat, would come out every night, and they came to our camp worn out by hunger. As soon as Cortés saw this he ordered us not to attack them for perhaps they would change their minds about

making peace, but they would not make peace although we sent to entreat them.

In Cortés's camp there was a soldier who said that he had been in Italy in the Company of the Great Captain¹ and was in the skirmish of Garallano and in other great battles, and he talked much about engines of war and that he could make a catapult in Tlatelolco by which, if they only bombarded the houses and part of the city where Guatemoc had sought refuge, for two days, they would make them surrender peacefully. So many things did he say to Cortés about this, for he was a very faithful soldier that he [Cortés] promptly set to work to make the catapult and they brought lime and stone in the way the soldier required, and carpenters and nails and all that was necessary for making the catapult, and they made two slings of strong bags and cords, and brought him great stones, larger than an arroba jar.² When the catapult was made and set up in the way that the soldier ordered, and he said it was ready to be discharged, they placed a suitable stone in the sling which had been made and all this stone did was to rise no higher than the catapult and fall back upon it where it had been set up. When Cortés saw this he was angry with the soldier who gave the order for making it, and with himself for believing him, and he said that he knew well that in war one ought not to speak much about a thing that vexes one, and that the man had only been talking for talking's sake, as had been found out in the way that I have said. This soldier was called, according to his own account, something de Sotello, a native of Seville. Cortés at once ordered the catapult to be taken to pieces. Let us leave this and say

¹ Gonzalvo de Córdoba.

² Arroba—a weight of twenty-five pounds, here, a sort of demi john.

that, when he saw that the catapult was a thing to be laughed at, he decided that Gonzalo de Sandoval should go in command of all the twelve launches and invade that part of the City whither Guatemoc had retreated, which was in a part where we could not reach the houses and palaces by land, but only by water. Sandoval at once summoned all the Captains of the launches and what he did I will go on to relate.

CHAPTER CLVI.

How Gonzalo de Sandoval with twelve launches entered into the part of the City where Guatemoc was [had taken refuge] and took him prisoner, and what happened about it.

As I have said Cortés not only saw that the Catapult was useless but was angry with the soldier who advised him to have it made, and in consequence of Guatemoc and his Captains not wishing for peace of any sort, he ordered Gonzalo de Sandoval to invade that part of the City where Guatemoc had taken refuge with all the flower of his Captains and the most distinguished persons that were in Mexico, and he ordered him not to kill or wound any Indians unless they should attack him, and even if they did attack him, he was only to defend himself and not do them any other harm, but he should destroy their houses and the many defences they had erected in the lake. Cortés ascended the great Cue of Tlatelolco to see how Sandoval advanced with the launches, and at that time Pedro de Alvarado, Francisco Verdugo, Luis Marin and other soldiers were there with Cortés.

Sandoval advanced with great ardour upon the place where the Houses of Guatemoc stood, and when Guatemoc saw himself surrounded, he was afraid that they would

capture him or kill him, and he had got ready fifty great piraguas with good rowers so that when he saw himself hard pressed he could save himself by going to hide in some reed beds and get from thence to land and hide himself in another town, and those were the instructions he had given his captains and the persons of most importance who were with him in that fortified part of the city, so that they should do the same.

When they saw that the launches were getting among the houses they embarked in the fifty canoes, and they had already placed [on board] the property and gold and jewels of Guatemoc and all his family and women, and he had embarked himself and shot out into the lake ahead, accompanied by many Captains. As many other canoes set out at the same time, the lake was full of them, and Sandoval quickly received the news that Guatemoc was fleeing, and ordered all the launches to stop destroying the houses and fortifications and follow the flight of the canoes, and to have a care that they kept track of where Guatemoc was going, and not to molest him or do him any injury but try to capture him without using violence. As a certain García Holguin a friend of Sandoval, was captain of a launch which was very fast and a good sailor and was manned by good rowers Sandoval ordered him to follow in the direction in which they told him that Guatemoc was fleeing with his great piraguas, and instructed him not to do him [Guatemoc] any injury whatever beyond capturing him in case he should overtake him, and Sandoval went in another direction with other launches which kept him company. It pleased our Lord God that García Holguin should overtake the canoes and piraguas in which Guatemoc was travelling, and from the style and the awnings and the seat he was using he knew that it was Guatemoc the great Lord of Mexico, and he made signals for them to stop, but they would not stop, so he made as

though he were going to discharge muskets and crossbows. When Guatemoc saw that, he was afraid and said "Do not shoot, I am the king of this City and they call me Guatemoc, and what I ask of you is not to disturb my things that I am taking with me nor my wife nor my relations, but carry me at once to Malinche." When Holguin heard him he was greatly delighted, and with much respect he embraced him and placed him in the launch, him and his wife and about thirty chieftains and seated him in the poop on some mats and cloths, and gave him to eat of the food that he had brought with him, and he touched nothing whatever in the canoes that carried his [Guatemoc's] property but brought it along with the launch. By this time Gonzalo de Sandoval had ordered all the launches to assemble together, and he knew that Holguin had captured Guatemoc and was carrying him to Cortés, and when he heard it he told the rowers on board his launch to make all the speed possible and he overtook Holguin and claimed the prisoner, and Holguin would not give him up and said that he had captured him and not Sandoval, and Sandoval replied that that was true, but that he was the Captain General of the launches, and that García Holguin sailed under his command and banner, and it was because he was his friend and his launch the fastest that he had ordered him to follow after Guatemoc, to capture him, and that to him as his General he must give up his prisoner. Still Holguin contended that he did not wish to do so, and at that moment another launch went in great haste to Cortés (who was very close by in Tlatelolco, watching from the top of the Cue how Sandoval was advancing) to demand a reward for the good news, and they told Cortés of the dispute which Sandoval was having with Holguin over the capture of the prisoner. When Cortés knew of it he at once dispatched Captain Luis Marín and Francisco de Verdugo to summon Sandoval and Holguin to come as

they were in their launches without further discussion, and to bring Guatemoc and his wife and family with all [signs of] respect, and that he would settle whose was the prisoner and to whom was due the honour of it [the capture].

While they were bringing him, Cortés ordered a guest chamber to be prepared as well as could be done at the time, with mats and cloths and seats, and a good supply of the food which Cortés had reserved for himself. Sandoval and Holguin soon arrived with Guatemoc, and the two captains between them led him up to Cortés, and when he came in front of him he paid him great respect, and Cortés embraced Guatemoc with delight, and was very affectionate to him and his captains. Then Guatemoc said to Cortés "Señor Malinche, I have surely done my duty in defence of my City, and I can do no more and I come by force and a prisoner into your presence and into your power, take that dagger that you have in your belt and kill me at once with it"¹ and when he said this he wept tears and sobbed and other great Lords whom he had brought with him also wept. Cortés answered him through Doña Marina and Aguilar our interpreters, very affectionately, that he esteemed him all the more for having been so brave as to defend the City, and he was deserving of no blame, on the contrary [this circumstance] must be more in his favour than otherwise.

What he wished was that he [Guatemoc] had made peace of his own free will before the city had been so far destroyed, and so many of his Mexicans had died, but now, that both had happened there was no help for it and it could not be mended, let his spirit and the spirit of his Captains take rest, and he should rule in Mexico and over his provinces as he did before. Then Guatemoc and his

¹ Blotted out in the original "and Guatemoc himself was going to lay hold of it."

Captains said that they accepted his favour, and Cortés asked after his wife and other great ladies, the wives of other Captains who, he had been told, had come with Guatemoc. Guatemoc himself answered and said that he had begged Gonzalo de Sandoval and García Holguín that they might remain in the canoes while he came to see what orders Malinche gave them. Cortés at once sent for them and ordered them all to be given of the best that at that time there was in the camp to eat, and as it was late and was beginning to rain, Cortés arranged for them to go to Coyoacan,¹ and took Guatemoc and all his family and household and many chieftains with him and he ordered Pedro de Alvarado, Gonzalo de Sandoval and the other captains each to go to his own quarters and camp, and we went to Tacuba, Sandoval to Tepeaquilla and Cortés to Coyoacan. Guatemoc and his captains were captured on the thirteenth day of August at the time of vespers on the day of Señor San Hipólito in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-one, thanks to our Lord Jesus Christ and our Lady the Virgin Santa Maria, His Blessed Mother, Amen.

It rained and thundered and lightning flashed that afternoon and up to midnight heavier rain fell than usual. After Guatemoc had been captured all the soldiers turned as deaf as if some one had stood shouting from the top of a belfry with many bells clanging and in the midst of their ringing all of a sudden they had ceased to sound. I say this purposely, for during all the ninety-three days that we were besieging this city, both by night and day, some of the Mexican Captains kept on uttering so many shouts and yells, whilst they were mustering the squadrons and warriors who were to fight on the causeway, and others

¹ Betancurt, *Teatro Mexicano, Sucesos Militares*, chap. x, says Cortés sent them to Acachinapco.

were calling out to those in the canoes who were to fight with the launches, and with us on the bridges, again others to those driving in piles and opening and deepening the water openings and bridges and making breastworks, or those who were making javelins and arrows, or to the women preparing rounded stones to hurl from the slings, while from the oratories and towers of the Idols, the accursed drums, trumpets and mournful kettle-drums never ceased sounding, and in this way both by night and by day, there was such a great din that we could not hear one another. On the capture of Guatemoc, the shouts and all the clamour ceased, and it is for this reason I have said that up to then we seemed to be standing in a belfry.

Let us leave this and say that Guatemoc was of a very graceful make both in figure and features. His face was rather long, but cheerful, and when his eyes looked at you, they appeared rather grave than gentle, and there was no waver in them; he was twenty-one years of age,¹ and his colour inclined rather more to white than the colour of the brown Indians, and they say that he was a nephew of Montezuma, the son of one of his sisters, and he was married to a daughter of this same uncle Montezuma, who was a young and beautiful woman.

Before we go any further, let me relate how the dispute between Sandoval and García Holguin came to an end. It was in this way; Cortés told them a story about the Romans having just such another dispute between Marius and Cornelius Sylla. It took place when Sylla brought Jugurtha a prisoner to Rome with his father-in-law, the King Bocos. When they entered Rome glorying over the deeds and exploits they had accomplished, it seems that Sylla placed Jugurtha in his triumphal procession with an iron chain round his neck, and Marius said that he

¹ Blotted out in the original, "twenty-three or twenty-four years."

and not Sylla should have done this, and that before Sylla had thus placed him he must explain that Marius gave him the right to do so, and had sent him in his stead so that he might take Jugurtha prisoner in Marius's name, and that the King Bocos gave himself up to the name of Marius. Then as Marius was Captain General and he (Sylla) was fighting under his command and banner, and as Sylla was one of the Roman patricians and was held in high favour, and as Marius came from a town near Rome named Arpino and therefore a foreigner, although he had been several times Consul, he was not in as high favour as Sylla, and about this matter there were Civil Wars between Marius and Sylla, and it was never settled to whom should be given the honour of capturing Jugurtha.

Let me take up the thread of my story, which is that Cortés said that he would refer the matter to His Majesty as to which of the two he would favour by making it [the subject of] a grant of arms, and that the decision about it would be brought from Spain, and in two years time there came a command from His Majesty that Cortés should have in the ornaments of his Coat of Arms, seven kings, who were Montezuma, the great Lord of Mexico, Cacamatzin, the Lord of Texcoco, and the Lords of Iztapalapa, Coyoacan, Tacuba and another great Lord who was a nephew of Montezuma, to whom they said would come the Caciqueship and Lordship of Mexico, (he was the Lord of Mataltzingo and of other provinces,) and this Guatemoc about whom the dispute arose.

Let us leave this and let us speak of the dead bodies and heads that were in the houses where Guatemoc had taken refuge. I say on my oath, Amen, that all the houses and the palisades in the lake were full of heads and corpses and I do not know how to describe it for in the streets and courts of Tlatelolco there was no difference, and we could not walk except among corpses and heads of dead Indians.

I have read about the destruction of Jerusalem but I know not for certain if there was greater mortality than this, for of the great number of the warriors from all the provinces and towns subject to Mexico who had crowded in [to the city] most of them died, and as I have already said, thus the land and the lake and the palisades were all full of dead bodies, and stank so much that no one could endure it, and for this reason, as soon as Guatemoc was captured, each one of the Captains went to his own camp, as I have already said, and even Cortés was ill from the stench which assailed his nostrils, and from headache, during the days we were in Tlatelolco.

Let us leave this and go on ahead and say that the soldiers who went about in the launches were the best off, and gained much spoil because they were able to go to the houses in certain quarters in the lake where they knew that there was cloth and gold and other riches, and they also went to search in the reed beds whither the Mexicans had carried it [their property] so as to hide it when we gained possession of some houses or quarter [of the city]. Also because under pretext of giving chase to canoes which carried food or water, when they came on those in which some of the chieftains were fleeing to the mainland to get among the pueblos of the Otomies who were their neighbours, they robbed them of all they carried with them. I wish to say that we, the soldiers who were fighting on the causeways and on land gained no profit except arrow and lance wounds, and wounds from darts and stones, because when we captured any houses, the inhabitants had already carried off whatever property they possessed; and we were not able to go through the water without first of all closing up the openings and bridges and, for this reason, I have said, in the chapter which tells of [the time] when Cortés was looking for sailors to go in the launches, that they were the

best off, and not we who fought on land. This seems clear, for the Mexican Captains and even Guatemoc, when Cortés demanded from them the treasure of Montezuma, told him that the crews of the launches had stolen the greater part of it.

Let us stop speaking of this until later on, and say that as there was so great a stench in the city, Guatemoc asked permission of Cortés for all the Mexican forces left in the city to go out to the neighbouring pueblos, and they were promptly told to do so. I assert that during three days and nights they never ceased streaming out and all three causeways were crowded with men, women and children, so thin, yellow, dirty and stinking, that it was pitiful to see them. When the city was free of them, Cortés went to examine it and we found the houses full of corpses and there were some poor Mexicans, who could not move out, still among them, and what they excreted from their bodies was a filth such as thin swine pass which have been fed upon nothing but grass, and all the city was as though it had been ploughed up and the roots of the herbs dug out and they had eaten them and even cooked the bark of some of the trees, and there was no fresh water to be found, only salt water. I also wish to state that they did not eat the flesh of their own Mexicans, only that of our people and our Tlaxcalan allies whom they had captured, and there had been no births for a long time, as they had suffered so much from hunger and thirst and continual fighting.

Let us continue. Cortés ordered all the launches to assemble where some dockyards were built later on. To go back to my story, when this great and populous city so famed throughout the whole world had been captured, after giving many thanks to God our Lord and Our Lady His Blessed Mother, and having made certain offerings to Our Lord God, Cortés ordered a banquet to be held at

Coyoacan in celebration of the capture of the city, and had already procured plenty of wine for the purpose out of a ship which had come from Spain to the port of Villa Rica, and he had pigs which they had brought him from Cuba and in order to make a festival of the occasion he ordered all the captains and soldiers whom he thought worth consideration from all three camps to be invited, and when we went to the banquet there were neither seats nor tables placed sufficient for a third part of the captains and soldiers who came, and there was much disorder, and it would have been better not to have given that banquet on account of many things which happened at it which were not creditable¹; and they gambled, and this also it would have been better not to have done, and all the gold should have been used for holy purposes and given with

¹ Blotted out in the original, "such as to get rid of all this supper and the kinds of dances and the and other things that were not suitable and also because this plant of Noah's made some people behave crazily, and men walked on the top of the tables after they had eaten and could not find the way out to the patio. Others said that they must buy horses with golden saddles and there were crossbowmen who said that all the darts and guides that they would have in their quivers must be made of gold from the share which would be given them, and others went rolling down the steps. Then when they had cleared away the tables, such ladies as were present, went out to dance with the gallants who were weighted with their (quilted) cotton armour and it seemed to me to be a thing to be laughed at. They were ladies whom I will not here describe for there were no others in camp nor in the whole of New Spain. First of all, the elderly Maria Destrada who afterwards married Pero Sanchez Farfan, and Francisca de Ordás who married a gentleman, Juan Gonzalo de Leon; la Bermuda, who married Olmos de Portillo, him of Mexico; another lady, the wife of Captain Portillo who died in (one of) the launches, but as she was a widow they did not bring her to the feast; and a somebody Gómez, who was the wife of Benito de Vargas; and another beautiful lady called la Bermuda—I don't remember her Christian name—who married one Hernan Martin and went to live in Oaxaca; and another elderly woman named Ysabel Rodríguez, who at that time, was the wife of a somebody Guadalupe, and another somewhat elderly woman who was called Mari Hernández who was the wife of the rich Juan de Cáceres. I cannot call to mind any others who were then in New Spain. Let us leave the banquet and capering and dances, for the next day that dawned, the tables"

thanks to God for the many benefits and favours He had already shown us and continued to show us.

Let us cease to speak of this, for I wish to tell of other things that happened which I was forgetting, and which do not belong here, but should have been reported somewhat earlier, and it is that our friends Chichimecatecle and the two jouthful Xicotengas, the sons of Don Lorenzo de Vargas, who used to be called Xicotenga the old and blind, fought very valiantly against the great forces of Mexico, and helped us very much, and so too did a brother of Don Fernando, the Lord of Texcoco, many times mentioned by me, who was called Ixtlilxochitl,¹ who was afterwards named Don Carlos; he did the deeds of a very daring and valiant man. There was another Indian Captain whose name I do not remember, a native of a pueblo on the lake, who performed wonders, and many other captains from the pueblos which assisted us. All fought very mightily, and Cortés gave them many thanks and much praise for having helped us, and made them many promises that he would make them rulers, and he would give them in time to come lands and vassals, and he bid them farewell, and as they were all rich and weighed down with the gold and spoil they had taken they went back to their lands and even carried with them the dried flesh of the Mexicans and divided it among their relations and friends as pertaining to their enemies, and they ate it at festivals.

Now that I am [far] away from the conflicts and arduous battles which we fought against the Mexicans by night and day, for which I give many thanks to God who delivered me from them, I wish to relate a thing that happened to me after seeing the sixty-two soldiers of Cortés, who were carried off alive, sacrificed, and their

¹ Este suchel in the text.

chests cut open and their hearts offered to the Idols. What I shall say now will appear to some persons to be due to my want of any great inclination for fighting, but on the other hand, if it is well thought out, it arose out of the reckless daring and great courage with which in those days, I was obliged to expose myself in the thickest of the fights, for at that time it was expected of a good soldier and was necessary in order to maintain that reputation, that one should do whatever the boldest soldier was obliged to do. As each day I beheld my companions carried off to be sacrificed, and had seen how they sawed open their chests and tore out their still beating hearts and cut off their feet and arms and ate them, to the number of sixty-two, as I have already said, besides ten of our company whom they had captured before that, I feared that one day or another they would do the same to me, for they had already seized me twice to carry me off to be sacrificed, but it pleased God that I should escape from their power. When I called to mind those hideous deaths, and as the proverb says, "The little pitcher which goes many times to the fountain, &c.," for this reason, from that time I always feared death more than ever. I say this because, before going into battle there was a horror and sadness in my heart, and I fasted once or twice, commending myself to God and His Blessed Mother, but on going into battle it was always the same, the fear promptly left me.

I also wish to say what a very new sensation it seemed to me to feel that unaccustomed fear, for I had been present in many battles and many very dangerous warlike encounters, and my heart as well as my courage and spirit must have been well hardened and now at the very end it ought to have been more so than ever. For I can easily recount and remember how from the time I came as discoverer with Francisco Hernández de Córdova and

Grijalva, and again with Cortés, I was present at the affairs of Punta de Catoche, and in that of Lazaro, which is also called Campeche, and at Potonchan, and in Florida, as I have written about more fully when I came exploring with Francisco Hernández de Córdova. Let us leave this and go on to speak of the expedition under Grijalva and in that same the affair at Potonchan and now with Cortés in the affair at Tabasco and that of Cingapacinga and in all the battles and encounters in Tlaxcala and that of Cholula, and how when we defeated Narvacz they picked me out and I was among those who went to capture the artillery, which numbered eighteen guns, all loaded with stones and balls, and we captured them and it was a critical moment of great danger ; and I was present in the first defeat when the Mexicans drove us out of Mexico, when they killed within about eight days over eight hundred and fifty of our soldiers, and I was present during the expeditions to Tepeaca and Quechula and their neighbourhood, and in other encounters we had with the Mexicans, when we were in Texcoco, about seizing the maize-fields, and I was present at the affair of Iztapalapa when they wanted to drown us, and I was present when we climbed the Peñoles, as they now call the forts or fortresses which Cortés captured, and at the affair of Xochimilco in four battles and many other skirmishes, and I was among the first to go with Pedro de Alvarado to invest Mexico, when we cut off the water of Chapultepec, and was in the first expedition along the causeway with Alvarado himself and afterwards when they defeated our Company on the same causeway and carried off eight soldiers, and they seized me and carried me off to be sacrificed, and in all the battles already recorded by me which took place every day, up to the time that I saw, as I have stated, the cruel deaths which they inflicted on our companions before my eyes, [I repeat as] I have already

said, that although I had passed through all these battles and risks of death, I had never felt fear so greatly as I felt it now at the last. Let those gentlemen who understand soldiering and have been at critical moments in peril of death, say to what cause they attribute my dread, whether to faint-heartedness or to excessive valour ; for, as I have said, I felt in my mind that having to thrust myself when fighting into such dangerous positions, I must of necessity fear death then more than at other times, and that was the reason why my heart trembled, for it feared death. All these battles at which I was present and of which I have here spoken, they will see in this my story. And when and how and where and in what way I took part in many other expeditions and encounters from now onwards, which I do not record until their proper time and place, they will see further on in the story. I may add that I was not always in very good health for I was often badly wounded, and for this reason was not able to go on all the expeditions. Still, the hardships and risks of death that I have personally encountered are not insignificant, for after we had captured this great and strong city of Mexico, I went through other conflicts in company with captains who understood soldiering, as will be seen later on when the opportunity occurs.

Let us leave this now and I will state and declare why in all these Mexican wars, when they killed our comrades, I have said, "they carried them off," and not "they killed them," and the reason was this, because the warriors who fought with us although they were able to kill those of our soldiers whom they carried off alive, did not kill them at once, but gave them dangerous wounds so that they could not defend themselves, and carried them off alive to sacrifice to their Idols, and they even first made them dance before Huichilobos, who was their Idol of War ; and this is the reason why I have said, "they carried

them off." Let us leave this subject and I will relate what Cortés did after the capture of Mexico.

CHAPTER CLVII.

What Cortés ordered to be done and certain commands that he gave after the Very Great City of Mexico had been captured and Guatemoc and his captains had been made prisoners.

THE first order that Cortés gave to Guatemoc was, that they [the Mexicans] should repair the water pipes from Chapultepec in the way they used to be, so that the water should at once come through the pipes and enter the City of Mexico; next, that all the streets should be cleared of the bodies and heads of the dead, and that they should be buried so that the city could be kept clean and free from any stench; that all the bridges and causeways should be thoroughly restored to their former condition, and that they should rebuild the palaces and houses, and within two months they should return to live in them, and he (Cortés) marked out where they were to settle and what part they were to leave clear so that we could settle there.

Let us leave these orders and others which I no longer remember and relate what Guatemoc and his captains told Cortés, that many of the captains and soldiers who went as crews of the launches as well as those who had marched along the causeways fighting, had carried off many of the daughters and wives of the chieftains, and they begged him as a favour that they should be given back to them and Cortés answered that it would be difficult to take the women from those who held them, but they might seek them out and bring them before him and he would see if they had become Christians or preferred to return to their homes to their fathers and husbands, [in the latter case] he

would at once order them to be given up, and he gave them, [the Mexicans] permission to go and look for them in all three camps, and an order that any soldier who might have any of them should at once give them up, if the Indian women of their free will wished to go back. Many chieftains went in search of the women from house to house and they were so persistent in their search that they found them, but there were many women who did not wish to go either with their fathers or mothers or husbands but to remain with the soldiers with whom they were, and others hid themselves and others said that they did not wish to return to Idolators, and some of them were already pregnant, and so they did not bring more than three of them whom Cortés especially ordered to be given up.

Let us leave this and tell how he [Cortés] at once ordered docks and a fort to be made where the launches could be stationed, and it seems to me that he appointed Pedro de Alvarado to be Alcaide to take charge of it, until Salazar de la Pedrada, who was appointed by his Majesty, came from Castile.

Let me speak of another matter: all were agreed that all the gold and silver and jewels that there were in Mexico should be collected together, and apparently it amounted to very little, for there was a report that Guatemoc had thrown all the rest into the lake four days before he was captured, and in addition to this the Tlaxcalans and the people of Texcoco, Huexotzingo, Cholula and all the rest of our friends who were present at the war, and the Teules who went about in the launches had stolen their share of it, so that the officers of the Royal Treasury of the King our Lord alleged and proclaimed that Guatemoc had hidden it [the treasure] and that Cortés was delighted that he would not give it up so that he might take it all for himself, and for this reason the Officers

of the Royal Treasury determined to torture Guatemoc and the Lord of Tacuba who was his cousin and his great favourite, and certainly Cortés was much distressed that they should torture a Prince like Guatemoc for greed of gold, for they had already made many inquiries about it [the treasure] and all the Mayor-domos of Guatemoc said that there was no more than the Kings officers already had in their possession, which amounted to three hundred and eighty thousand gold pesos, which had already been melted and cast in bars, and from that was taken the Royal fifth, and another fifth for Cortés. When the conquistadores who bore Cortés ill will saw how little Gold there was, they told the treasurer Julian de Alderete (for so he was called) that they suspected Cortés did not want Guatemoc or his captains to be captured or tortured, in order to keep the gold for himself, so, to avoid their imputing anything to Cortés about this matter and as he could not prevent it, they tortured (Guatemoc) by burning his feet with oil, and they did the same thing to the Lord of Tacuba, and what they confessed was that, four days before, they had thrown into the lake both the gold as well as the cannon and muskets which they had captured from us when they drove us out of Mexico, and when this last time, they defeated Cortés. They went to the place which Guatemoc pointed out as the spot where he had thrown it [the treasure], and good swimmers went in, but they found nothing at all.

What I myself saw was that we went with Guatemoc to the houses in which he used to live where there was a sort of reservoir of water, and from that tank we took out a golden sun, like the one Montezuma gave us and many jewels and pieces of little value which belonged to Guatemoc himself.

The Lord of Tacuba said that he had in some of his houses in Tacuba, about four leagues distant, certain

objects of gold, and if we would take him there he would tell us where they were buried and would give them to us; so Pedro de Alvarado and six soldiers went and I went in his company. When we arrived the cacique said that it was so as to be killed on the road that he had told that story, and we were to kill him, for he possessed neither gold nor jewels, so we returned without them. Matters remained in this state, and we obtained no more gold to melt down. The truth is that the treasure of Montezuma which Guatemoc took possession of and held after his death, did not contain many jewels or ornaments of gold, for all [the best] had been especially selected to form the offering we made to His Majesty, and because it comprised many jewels of various shapes and different workmanship, all so excellent, if I should stop to describe each piece and its workmanship by itself it would be very tedious and I will omit the account from this story, but I assert that it was worth twice as much as the fifth which was taken out for His Majesty, and for Cortés, all of this we sent to our Lord the Emperor by Alonzo de Avila, who at that time came from the Island of Santo Domingo, and Antonio de Quiñones went in company with him to Castile, and further on I will relate how and in what way and when [this took place].

Let us stop talking about this and again state that in the lake where they said that Guatemoc had thrown the gold, I and other soldiers by diving were always able to fetch out small pieces of little value, which Cortés and the Treasurer Julian de Alderete promptly demanded of us as gold belonging to His Majesty, and they themselves went with us where we had taken it out, and took with them good swimmers and succeeded in getting out a matter of eighty or ninety pesos in small strings [of beads] and ducks and little dogs and pendants and small necklaces and other things of no value, for so one can express

it considering the earlier report of what they had thrown into the lake.

Let us stop talking about it and relate how all of us captains and soldiers were somewhat thoughtful when we saw how little gold there was and how poor and unjust were our shares, and the Fraile de la Merced, Pedro de Alvarado, Cristóbal de Olid and other captains said to Cortés that as there was so little gold the [entire] share belonging to all of us should be given to and divided among those who were maimed and lame, blind, one eyed or deaf, and others who were crippled and had pains in their stomachs, and others who had been burned by the powder, and all those who were ill from pains in their sides, that to them all the gold should be given for to such like it would be right to give it, and all the rest of us who were fairly sound would look upon it as a good thing. This they said to Cortés after due consideration, believing that he would give us more than the [our] shares for there was a strong suspicion that he had it [gold] hidden away. What Cortés answered was that he would take care that we came out right, and would find means to attain that end. As all of us captains and soldiers wished to see what would fall to our share, we were in a hurry for the account to be issued, and a declaration made how many pesos would result for each of us, and after they had apportioned it they said that there fell to the horsemen eighty pesos and to a cross-bowman, musketeer and shield-bearer sixty or fifty pesos, I do not remember well which, and when those shares were made known to us not a single soldier wanted to accept them. Then we grumbled against Cortés, and they said that he had seized and hidden it, and the Treasurer Alderete in order to exculpate himself from our accusations, answered that he could do no more, for Cortés had taken another fifth (equal to that of His Majesty) from

the heap for himself, and in repayment of the great cost of the horses that had died, moreover many pieces of gold which we ought to have sent to His Majesty had not been placed on the heap, and we had better take Cortés to task and not him. As in all three camps and in the launches there were soldiers who had been friends and comrades of Diego Velásquez the Governor of Cuba, [especially] among those who had come with Narvaez, who bore no good will towards Cortés but hated him, when they saw in the division of the gold that he did not give them the shares they desired, they would not take what he gave them, and said, "How came all the gold to be in the possession of him who held it?" and they were impertinent enough to say that Cortés had hidden it.

While Cortés was in Coyoacan lodging in some palaces which had their walls plastered and white-washed where it was easy to write on them with charcoal and other inks, numerous rather malicious sentences appeared [on them] every morning, some written in prose and others in verse, in the way lampoons are arranged. In some they said that the sun, moon and stars, the sea and land follow their [prescribed] courses, and if at any time they deviate beyond their limits from the plane for which they were created, they revert to their [original] elements, and thus it would be with the ambition of Cortés for power, and he would have to go back to his first condition. Others said he had given us a worse defeat than what we gave to Mexico, and that we were not to call ourselves conquerors of New Spain but the conquered of Hernando Cortés. Others said that a general's share had not satisfied him, but a king's share, not counting other profits, and others said how sad is my spirit until Cortés gives back all the gold that he has taken and hidden; and others said that Diego Velásquez spent his fortune and discovered all the North Coast as far as Panuco, and Cortés came to have the

benefit of it and rose in revolt with the land and the gold and other things of a similar nature and even used expressions that cannot be put into this story. When Cortés came out of his quarters of a morning and read them, as they were both in verse and in prose and in very elegant style and rhyme, each sentence and couplet with pointed meaning, and at last got in its reproof, and not as simply as I have here stated, and as Cortés was something of a poet [himself] and took a pride in giving answers tending to the praise of his great and noteworthy deeds and belittling those of Diego Velásquez, Grijalva and Francisco Hernández de Córdova, and as he had taken Narvaez prisoner, he also answered by good rhymes much to the point. In all this writing the couplets and mottoes that they scored up became each day more impudent until Cortés wrote up "a blank wall is the paper of fools" and there appeared written further on "even of wise men and of Truths and His Majesty would soon know it." Cortés knew well that those who had written it were a certain Tirado, a friend of Diego Velásquez, who was [afterwards] son-in-law of Ramírez the Elder and lived in Puebla, and one Villalobos who went to Castile, and another named Manzilla and several more who willingly aided in order that Cortés should feel to the full that they were thwarting him.

Cortés was enraged and said publicly that they should not write up malicious things, and that he would punish the shameless villains.

Let us leave this affair [and say] how there were many debts among us, some of us owed for crossbows fifty or sixty pesos, and others fifty for a sword, and in like manner all the things we had bought were dear; then there was a surgeon named Maestre Juan who tended some bad wounds and charged excessive prices for his cures, also a half quack named Murcia who was an apothecary and barber

who also doctored us, and thirty other traps and cheatings for which payment was demanded out of the shares that we were given.

The remedy that Cortés provided was the appointment of two trustworthy persons who understood business and what each article that we had taken on credit was worth, so that they might be valued, and these valuers were named Santa Clara, a very honourable man, and another called something de Llerena also an honourable man ; and it was ordered that the value they placed on the things that had been sold to us and the cures the surgeons had made should be accepted, and that if we did not possess the money they should wait for it for two years.

Another thing was also done ; to all the gold that was melted down they added three carats more than its standard weight¹ so as to help in the payments, and also because at that time ships and traders had come to Villa Rica, and they believed that in putting in the three carats they were helping us, [that is] the land and the conquistadores, but it did not help us in any way, on the contrary it was to our prejudice, for with the object of making a profit corresponding to the three carats, the merchants charged 5 carats more on the merchandise and articles they had for sale, and in this way the gold of the three carats was current for five or six years more, and for this reason the gold of the three carats was called Tepusque which means in the language of the Indians, copper, and we still have a way of saying when we mention any persons who are distinguished or meritorious. "Senor Don so and so of such a name, Juan, Martin or Alonso, but of other persons who are not of the same quality when we mention their names, so as to make a difference between the one and the other we say 'So and so of such a name Tepusque.'"

¹ That is, they debased the gold one-eighth.

To go back to my story, considering that it was not just that the gold should be current in this way, information was sent to His Majesty in order to have the additional three carats removed and barred from currency in New Spain, and His Majesty was pleased to order that it should no longer be current and whatever had to be paid in export or import duties or fines to the Treasury should be paid in that base gold until it was used up and was no longer remembered, and in this way it was all taken to Castile and was there melted down and restored to the proper standard.

I wish to relate that at the time when this happened they hanged two Silversmiths who forged the royal carat marks and had put in much more pure copper. I have loitered on the way to tell these old stories, and have turned aside from my story, let us get back to it, and [I will relate] how when Cortés saw that many of the soldiers were insolent in demanding larger shares, saying that he had taken all for himself and had stolen it, and begged him to lend them money, he determined to free himself from this hold [that they had] over him and to send out and make settlements in all the provinces which he thought it would be advisable to settle. He ordered Gonzalo de Sandoval to go and settle at Tustepec and to chastise some Mexican garrisons which at the time we were driven out of Mexico had killed seventy eight men and six Spanish women belonging to the followers of Narvaez, who had remained there to settle in a small town which they had called Medellin, and then to go on to Coatzacoalcos and form a settlement at that port. He also ordered a certain Pineda and Vicente Lopez to go and conquer the province of Panuco; and he ordered Rodrigo Rangel to stay in Villa Rica, as I have already stated, and Pedro de Ircio in his company, and [sent] Juan Álvarez the younger to Colima and a

certain Villafuerte to Zacatula and Cristóbal de Olid to Michoacan. By this time Cristóbal de Olid was already married to a Portuguese lady named Doña Felipa de Arauz or Zarauz, who had come He also sent Francisco de Orozco to settle in Oaxaca, for at the time when we had captured Mexico, as it became known in all those provinces that I have mentioned that Mexico was destroyed, their caciques and Lords could not believe it, and as they were far off they sent chieftains to congratulate Cortés on his victories, and yield themselves as vassals to His Majesty, and to see if it were true that a place that was as dreaded among them as was Mexico had been levelled to the ground. They all brought great presents of gold which they gave to Cortés, and they even brought their small children with them and showed them Mexico and explained it to them much as we might say "Here stood Troy."

Let us leave this and make some remarks about what is well should be made clear; many interested readers have asked me what is the reason that the true conquistadores who won New Spain and the great and strong City of Mexico, did not remain to settle in it, but went to other provinces. I say that they have every reason and justification to ask it, I wish to state the cause of it, and it is this which I [now] relate; In the tribute books of Montezuma we saw whence they brought him tribute of gold and where there were mines and cacao, and garments of [cotton] cloth, and we wished to go to those places whence, we saw from the books and the accounts contained in them, they brought these things to Montezuma, all the more when we saw a captain so eminent and such a friend of Cortés as Sandoval start out from Mexico, and also because we observed that in the towns of the neighbourhood of Mexico they had neither gold, nor mines, nor cotton, only much maize and maguey plantations from which they obtained their wine. On this account we considered it to be poor

land and went off to settle in other provinces, and we were all thoroughly deceived.

I remember that when I went to ask Cortés to give me leave to go with Sandoval he said to me "On my conscience Señor Bernal Díaz del Castillo you are making a mistake, I would prefer your staying here with me, but if it is your wish to go with your friend Sandoval, go and good luck to you. I shall always consider your wishes but I know well that you will repent of having left me."

Let me turn back to the division of the gold and say that [finally] it all fell to the share of the king's officials on account of the slaves that had been sold by auction.

I do not wish to call to mind here the number of horsemen, musketeers, crossbowmen, and soldiers, nor on what day of what month Cortés despatched the captains mentioned by me, who went to settle in the provinces named by me above, for it would be a long story, except to state it took place a few days after the taking of Mexico and the Capture of Guatemoc, and two months later on Cortés sent other captains to other provinces.

Let us now cease to speak of Cortés and say that at the same time there arrived at the port of Villa Rica, with two ships, the Veedor of the smelting works which had been established in the Island of Santo Domingo, others said that he was Alcayde of the fortress in that Island, and he brought writs, and letters patent from Don Juan Rodrigo de Fonseca, Bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosano, sent in His Majesty's name, to the effect that Cristóbal de Tápia should be governor of New Spain, and what happened about it I will go on to relate.





BOOK XIII.

THE SETTLEMENT.

CHAPTER CLVIII.

How letters reached Cortés [to say] that a certain Cristóbal de Tápia had arrived at the Port of Vera Cruz with two ships and was bringing commissions from His Majesty appointing him to rule New Spain, and what was decided and done about it.



AS soon as Cortés had despatched the Captains and soldiers, already named by me, to pacify and settle in the provinces, at that [very] time Cristóbal de Tápia the Veedor of the Island of Santo Domingo came with commissions from His Majesty, by advice and direction of Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca Bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosano (for so he was called), to take over the Government of New Spain.

Besides these commissions he brought many letters from the Bishop himself for Cortés and for many others of the conquistadores and of the captains who had come with Narvaez inducing them to support Cristóbal de Tápia. In addition to the letters which came closed and sealed by the Archbishop he brought many left blank, so that Tápia could write in them all that he wished, and could name such

soldiers and captains as might appear to suit his purpose. All these letters conveyed many promises from the Bishop to the effect that he would grant us great favour if we gave the Government to Tápia and in case we did not deliver it up to him, many threats, saying that His Majesty would send to chastise us.

Let us leave this ; Tápia exhibited his decrees before Gonzalo de Alvarado, the brother of Don Pedro de Alvarado, who at that time was Cortés's representative, for Rodrigo Rangel who used to be Alcalde Mayor had committed I know not what excesses and injustices, and Cortés had deprived him of his office. When the commissions were exhibited to Gonzalo de Alvarado he submitted to them and placed them on his head as the commissions and orders of our Lord and King, and as to complying with them, he said that he would assemble the Alcaldes and Regidores of the town and that they would talk it over and see how and in what way the decrees were obtained, and that they would obey them jointly, for he alone counted but as one person, and they would also see whether His Majesty was aware that such commissions had been sent. This reply did not suit Tápia very well and some persons, who were not on good terms with Cortés, advised him to go at once to Mexico where Cortés was stationed with most of the Captains and soldiers and that there they would yield obedience to the commissions.

In addition to presenting the commissions as I have stated, Tápia wrote to Cortés to the effect that he was coming as Governor. Cortés was too clever not to see through the graciousness of Tápia's letters, and not to observe on the one hand the offers and promises of the Bishop of Burgos, and on the other hand his threats, so that for all the many agreeable expressions he had received, Cortés sent him [Tápia] even pleasanter, more flattering and complimentary replies. Cortés promptly requested

and ordered certain of our Captains to go and see Tápia, and they went, namely Pedro de Alvarado, Gonzalo de Sandoval, Diego de Soto, he of Toro, and a Baldenebro and Andrés de Tápia, and Cortés sent post haste calling on them to suspend for the time the settlement of the provinces in which they were located and proceed to Villa Rica where Tápia was; and moreover he ordered a friar named Fray Pedro Megarejo de Urrea who was a good speaker, to go with them.

Tápia was already on his way to Mexico to see Cortés when he met the Captains and the Friar whom I have already named, and on account of the speeches and promises they made him he turned off the road to a town called Cempoala, and there they demanded of him that he should again exhibit his commissions so that they could see how and in what manner His Majesty had given the orders, for if his Royal Signature was attached to them, or he was cognizant of them, they would all of them with their breasts on the ground obey them in the name of Hernando Cortés and all New Spain for they were empowered to do so. Tápia again displayed the commissions and the Captains one and all kissed them and placed them on their heads as decrees of their Lord and King, but as to their being carried out, they [said they] would appeal to the Emperor our Lord [himself] who they said was not cognizant of them, nor of any events and that Tápia had not sufficient ability to be governor, and that the Bishop of Burgos was hostile to all of us conquistadores who were his Majesty's servants, and went on giving these orders without making a true report to His Majesty, and in order to favour Diego Velásquez and Tápia so as to marry him to a Fonseca, a niece or daughter of this same Bishop. When Tápia saw that neither words nor letters nor promises nor compliments were of any avail he fell ill from vexation, and those captains whom I have named

wrote to Cortés all that had taken place and advised him to send ingots and bars of gold so that by that means the fury of Tápia might be assuaged. These he sent post haste and they bought [from Tápia] some negros and three horses and one of the ships, and he embarked in the other ship for the Island of Santo Domingo whence he had set out. When he arrived there, the resident Royal Audiencia and the Geronomite Friars who were the Governors took careful note of his return and of the selfish means he had employed to enrich himself, and they were angry with him because, before he left Santo Domingo to go to New Spain, they had ordered him plainly not to think of going at that time, for it was sure to bring trouble and would break the thread of the conquest of Mexico ; but he would not obey on account of the support of the Bishop de Fonseca, and the Judges and Friars did not dare to act otherwise than according to the Bishop's orders, because he was the President of the [Council of the] Indies, and His Majesty was at that time in Flanders and had not come to Castile.

Let us leave this matter of Tápia and say how Cortés soon sent Pedro de Alvarado to make a settlement at Tututepeque which was a country rich in gold, and so that those who did not know the names of these towns may understand clearly, one is Tustepeque to which Sandoval went, and the other is Tututepeque where Pedro de Alvarado was now going. This I state so that I should not be accused of saying that two Captains went to settle in one and the same province. Cortés also sent to establish a settlement on the Rio de Panuco, because he had received news that Don Francisco de Garay was preparing a great fleet to come and settle it, for it appears that His Majesty had given Garay the Government [of that province] as I have more fully stated in former chapters which treat of the ships which he sent ahead, which were destroyed by

the Indians of this same province of Panuco. Cortés did this so that if Garay should arrive he would find the country already settled by Cortés himself.

Let us pass on and state how Cortés sent Rodrigo Rangel for a second time to be his representative at Villa Rica, and removed Gonzalo de Alvarado and ordered him at once to send the Captain Pánfilo de Narvaez, whom he held prisoner, to Coyoacan, where latterly Cortés had settled. For at that time Cortés resided at Coyoacan, and had not yet gone to settle in Mexico and was waiting until the houses and palaces in which he was going to live had been built. Cortés sent for Narvaez because, according to what has been reported of him, when the Veedor Cristóbal de Tápia arrived at Villa Rica with the decrees that I have mentioned, Narvaez spoke to Tápia and in a few words said to him, "Señor Cristóbal de Tápia, it seems to me that you ought to bring and you are bringing the same authority that I did, and observe what an end it has led me to, although I brought such a fine fleet; look out for your own safety, and do not lose any more time, Cortés has not come to the end of his luck, he knows why they are giving you gold. Go back to Castile and present yourself before His Majesty, especially enjoying as you do the support of the Bishop of Burgos you will not want for protection and helpers, and then report what is going on here, and this is the best [thing to do]."

Let us change this conversation, and I will relate that Narvaez set out at once for Mexico and beheld the great populations and cities, and arriving at Texcoco he was struck with wonder, also when he saw Coyoacan and he wondered all the more when he beheld the lake and the cities which are peopled in it, and last of all the great City of Mexico. When Cortés knew that he was coming he ordered great honour to be paid him and sent [a party] out to meet him, and when Narvaez came before him he

fell on his knees and tried to kiss his hands, but Cortés would not permit it, and raised him up and embraced him, and showed him much affection and ordered him to take a seat near him. Then Narvaez said "Señor Capitan, now I can say truly that the least of the things that you and your valiant soldiers have accomplished in New Spain was defeating me and taking me prisoner even if I had brought a greater force with me than I did bring, for I have seen so many great cities and lands that you have conquered and subjected to the service of God and of our Emperor, and you may congratulate yourself and hold yourself in as high estimation as I do, so say I, and so will say all the most renowned captains who are alive to-day, that one can place you ahead of the most famous and illustrious men who have lived in all the world, and that there is no other greater or stronger city than this of Mexico, and your Excellency and your soldiers deserve to receive the greatest favours of the hands of His Majesty" and he uttered many other flatteries which need not be repeated.

Cortés answered him that no power of ours could have done what we had accomplished but only the great mercy of God which always aided us, and the good fortune of our Caesar.

Let us leave this conversation and the promises which Narvaez made to Cortés, and I will relate how at that time Cortés went to settle the great City of Mexico, and he allotted the sites for the churches and monasteries and royal houses and plazas, and to all the settlers he gave lots, and let us not waste more time on the description of the way in which it is now built up, and according to the reports of many people who have been in many parts of Christendom, there had never been in the world another more populous or greater city of better houses inhabited by gentlemen, considering its character and the time at

which it was settled (let it be understood) by the poor conquistadores. While Cortés, as I have stated, was occupied in the laying out of the city, and was somewhat recovered from his fatigue, they brought him letters from Panuco [to say] that the whole province had risen in revolt, and they were very belligerent warriors for they had killed many of the soldiers whom he had sent to make settlements, and he must without delay send all the assistance he could. Cortés promptly decided to go in person, for although he might have wished to send some of our other captains, there were none of them in Mexico, for, as I have stated, we had all of us gone to other provinces. He took all the soldiers he was able to collect, and horsemen, crossbowmen and musketeers, for there had already arrived in Mexico many men from among those whom the Veedor Tápia had brought with him, and others were there who had accompanied Vásquez de Ayllon to Florida, and others who by that time had come from the Islands.

Leaving a good garrison in Mexico with Diego de Soto a native of Toro as captain, Cortés set out from Mexico. At that time there were no horseshoes, or only a very few for the many horses he was taking with him, for there were over one hundred and thirty persons on horseback, and two hundred and fifty soldiers in all including musketeers and crossbowmen and the horsemen. He also took with him ten thousand Mexicans. At that time Cristóbal de Olid had already returned from Michoacan for he had established peace there, and he brought with him many Caciques and the son of Caçonçi, for so he was called, who was the Lord in chief of all those provinces, and he brought much low grade gold, which was mixed with copper and silver.¹

¹ Blotted out in the original : and Cortés decided that from the low grade silver horseshoes and nails should be made.—G. G.

Cortés disbursed on that expedition to Panuco, a great quantity of pesos de oro and he afterwards demanded that His Majesty should repay him that expense, and the officials of His Majesty's treasury did not wish to receive the account nor to pay any of it, for they said that if he made that expedition and [incurred] that expense it was because he wished to gain possession of that province so that Don Francisco de Garay who was coming to conquer it should not have it, for the news had already been received that they were coming from the Island of Jamaica with a great fleet.

To go back to my story, I will relate how Cortés arrived with all his army at the province of Panuco and found the people at war, and he sent many times to summon them to peace and they would not come. He had many warlike encounters with them and in two battles in which they stood up to him, they killed three soldiers and wounded more than thirty and killed four horses, and many others were wounded, and more than two hundred of the Mexicans died, without counting another three hundred that were wounded. The Huastecs,¹ for so they call the Indians of these provinces, numbered over fifty thousand men when they gave battle to Cortés, but by the will of God they were defeated, and all the field where this battle took place, was closely strewn with dead and many wounded from among the natives of that province, so that they never rallied on that occasion to attack again.

Cortés remained for eight days in a town where those conflicts took place called² in order to cure the wounded and bury the dead, and supplies were plentiful.

In order to send once more and call the people to peace he despatched two Caciques, persons of importance from

¹ Guastecas in the text.

² Here the author has left a blank space.—G. G.

among those who had been taken prisoners in the battles, and through Doña Marina and Gerónimo de Aguilar whom Cortés always took with him, he made them a speech and asked them, how could all the people of those provinces hope to avoid submitting themselves as vassals of His Majesty, when they had seen and had heard the news, how with all the power of Mexico and its strength in warriors, the city had been destroyed and razed to the ground, and [he told them] to make peace promptly, and to have no fear, for he pardoned them for the deaths that had taken place, and he spoke these words to them with kindness, but he also used threats. As [the Indians] were cowed and many had been killed in the last battle, and they saw their towns laid waste by fire, they made peace, and all brought jewels of gold, although they were of little value, and presented them to Cortés who received them in peace with affection and caresses.

From this place Cortés went with half his army to a river called Chila¹ about five leagues from the sea, and he again sent messengers to all the towns on the other side of the river to summon them to make peace and they would not come, for, made fierce by the blood of the numerous soldiers killed two years earlier, (who came under the captains whom Garay had sent to settle on that river, as I have already stated in the chapter which treats of that subject,) they thought they could do the same with our army. As they were posted by three great lagoons and rivers and swamps which served them as a strong fortress, the reply they made was to slay two of the messengers whom Cortés had sent to treat for peace, and to make prisoners of the others. Cortés waited some days to see if they would change from their evil purpose, and as they did

¹ Chila is to the N. of the Rio Panuco, about 19 miles W. of Tampico.

not come, he sent for all the canoes that could be found in the river, and with them and some barges, made from the timbers of the old ships which had belonged to the captain whom Garay had sent and [the Indians] had killed, he sent one hundred and fifty soldiers, most of them musketeers and crossbowmen, across to the other side of the river by night, and fifty cavalry in canoes tied together two by two, so that they crossed over in a matter of . . . and as the natives of those provinces keep watch over the passes and rivers, when they saw them, they allowed them to pass with the intention of killing them, and they were waiting for them on the other side.

If many Huastec Indians, for so they are called, had come together in the first battles that they had fought against Cortés, far greater numbers had been massed on this occasion, and they came on like rabid lions to fall on our men, and on the first encounter they killed two soldiers and wounded over thirty, and they also killed three horses and wounded fifteen others and many of the Mexicans, but our men fell on them so quickly that they could not hold the field and they were soon put to flight leaving behind a great number of dead and wounded. When this battle was over our men went to sleep at a pueblo from which the inhabitants had fled, and they camped there after posting sentinels, watchmen, patrols and spies, and food for supper was not wanting. As soon as the dawn came, when walking through the pueblo [our men] saw hanging up in a Cue and oratory of the Idols, many clothes and faces that had been flayed off and cured like glove leather, with the beards and hair [still adhering], which had belonged to the soldiers of the captains sent by Garay to make a settlement on the Río Panuco who had been killed, and many of them were recognised by our soldiers who said that they were their friends, and the hearts of all were broken with grief at seeing them in this state, and they

took them down from where they were and carried them off for burial.

From that pueblo they went on to another place, and, as they knew how very warlike the people of that province were, they always marched with great caution and in fighting array so that they should not be taken unawares. It was reported by the scouts that some great squadrons of Indians were lying in ambush so that as soon as our men should dismount and go into the houses they might fall on the horses and on the men. As they had been found out, the Indians could not do as they intended, but all the same they sallied out very boldly and fought against our men like brave warriors and for more than half an hour the horsemen, musketeers, crossbowmen and the Mexican Indians, could not force them to retreat or drive them off. They killed two horses and wounded seven others and they also wounded fifteen soldiers of whom three died of their wounds.

There was one thing remarkable about these Indians, that even when they were beaten, they turned and rallied to fight three times, a thing one has seldom seen among these people. When they saw that our people were wounding and killing them they fled for refuge to a rapid and flowing river, and the horsemen and light infantry went in pursuit and wounded many of them, while others decided to scour the country and go to other pueblos which were deserted, and in them they found many large jars of the wine of the country stored underground in places like cellars. They spent five days among these villages scouring the country, and as all of these were deserted and abandoned by their inhabitants, they returned to the river Achile.¹ Cortés again sent to summon all the pueblos on the other side of the river which were

¹ Chila?

still at war to make peace, and, as our troops had already killed many of them, the Indians feared our falling on them again, and for this reason they sent to say that they would come within four days, that they were seeking jewels of gold to present to him. Cortés waited the four days when they said that they would come, and as they did not come then, he promptly ordered [an attack to be made] on a very large pueblo situated near a lagoon, which was very strong on account of its swamps and rivers, they were to cross the lagoon on a dark and drizzling night in numerous canoes which he had promptly ordered to be collected and tied together two by two and in other single ones, and on well-made rafts [steering] towards a part of the pueblo where they could neither be seen nor heard from the town itself, and many of our Mexican allies crossed without being seen and fell on the pueblo and destroyed it, and looted it and gained much spoil, and our allies carried off all the property that the natives possessed. When the Indians saw this, within five days nearly all the pueblos in the neighbourhood made peace, except some pueblos which were so far out of the way that our people were not able to go to them at that time.

Not to waste more words on this story I will omit telling of many things that happened and will only say that Cortés then founded a town with one hundred and twenty settlers, and among these he left twenty seven horsemen and thirty six musketeers and crossbowmen so that they numbered one hundred and twenty in all. This town was named Santistevan del Puerto and stands about a league from Chila. To the settlers who peopled that town he apportioned and gave in encomienda all the pueblos which had made peace, and he left as Captain of them and his representative one Pedro Vallejo.

While Cortés was in that town ready to start for Mexico

he learnt for certain that three pueblos which were at the head of the rebellion of that province and had been concerned in the death of many Spaniards, were on the move again, although they had given their fealty to His Majesty and made peace, and they were persuading and luring the other pueblos in the neighbourhood and saying that after Cortés had returned to Mexico with the horsemen and soldiers, some day or night they would fall upon the settlers who remained behind and would have a good feast off them. When Cortés knew the whole truth, he ordered their houses to be completely destroyed by fire, but they soon made a new settlement.

Let me say that, before we had set out from Mexico on this expedition, Cortés had ordered them to send him from Vera Cruz a vessel laden with wine and provisions, preserves, biscuits, and horseshoes, for at that time there was no wheat in Mexico with which to make bread. While the barge was going on its course in the direction of Panuco, laden with all that Cortés had ordered, it seems that there arose severe northerly gales and struck the vessel so that she was lost, and only three persons were saved, who, supported on some boards, reached the shore of an Island three or four leagues from the main land where there were some great sandy beaches frequented by many seals which came out by night to sleep on the beaches, and they killed the seals, and with fire which they made from sticks of wood, in the way that throughout the Indies people make it, who know how to do so, they were able to roast the flesh of the seals, and they dug in the middle of the island and made a sort of well and took out water that was somewhat brackish ; and there was a fruit which looked like figs, so with the flesh of the seals and fruit and brackish water they kept themselves alive more than two months. As in the town of Santistévan they were awaiting the arrival of the fresh supplies and horse-

shoes, Cortés wrote to Mexico to his Mayordomos to know why they had not sent the relay of supplies, and as soon as they received this notice through Cortes's letter, they felt sure that the barge had been lost, and the Mayordomos of Cortés promptly sent a small vessel in search of the barge that was lost, and it pleased God that they touched on the island where the three surviving Spaniards were [stranded] who made smoke signals both by night and day, and as soon as they saw the vessel they were delighted, and they were taken on board and came to the town. One of these men was called something Ciciliano, a settler in Mexico.

Let us leave this and say that while Cortés was already on his way to Mexico, as he had news that many pueblos which stood among some very steep sierras had rebelled and were making war on other pueblos which were at peace with us, he decided to go there before entering Mexico.

As he went on his way, the people of that province heard of it, and lay in wait for him at a bad pass and fell on the rear of the baggage and killed some of the carriers and robbed them of their loads, and as it was a bad road on which to defend the baggage the horsemen went to their assistance and [the enemy] disemboweled two horses; when they arrived at some villages they paid them well out for it, for as many of our Mexican allies went with them, in order to avenge the robberies in the bad pass and road which I have mentioned, they killed and captured many Indians and even the Cacique and his captain, and these were hanged after they had given back the things that had been robbed.

When this was accomplished Cortés ordered the Mexicans to do no more damage, and sent to summon all the chieftains and priests of the village to make peace, and they came and gave their fealty to His Majesty, and

the office of Cacique he ordered to be held by a brother of the Cacique whom they had hanged, and he left them in their homes pacified and well chastised. Then he returned to Mexico.

Before going any further I wish to say that in all the provinces of New Spain there are no people fouler or more evil or with worse habits than these of the province of Panuco for "*todos eran someticos y se enbudavan por partes traseras*," an obscenity never heard of in the world, and they were sacrificers [of human beings] and excessively cruel as well as drunkards and filthy and evil and they were guilty of thirty other vices.

If we look into it, they were chastised with blood and fire two or three times, and other greater evils overtook them in having as Governor Nuño de Guzman who as soon as the Government was given to him made slaves of nearly all of them and sent them to be sold in the Islands, as I will relate more fully in its time and place. Let us go back to our story and I will tell what Cortés heard and did after his return to Mexico.

CHAPTER CLIX.

How Cortés and the King's officers decided to send to His Majesty all the gold that had accrued to the royal fifth from the spoils of Mexico, and how there was sent separately the personal property of gold and jewels which had belonged to Montezuma and Guatemoc, and what happened about it.

ABOUT the same time that Cortés returned to Mexico from his expedition to Panuco, and occupied himself with the peopling and rebuilding of the city, Alonzo de Ávila already often mentioned by me in former chapters, had returned from the island of Santo Domingo and reported on the subjects he had been sent to negotiate with the

Royal Audiencia and the Geronimite Friars who were the Governors of all the Islands, and the message he brought was that they gave us authority to conquer the whole of New Spain and to brand slaves according to the instructions that were sent, and to divide and make allotments of the Indians as was customary in the Islands of Española, Cuba and Jamaica.¹

This permission which they gave was to be valid up to the time that His Majesty was informed of it, or should be pleased to send other orders, and the Geronimite Friars themselves at once wrote him an account of this and sent a ship post haste to Castile, and at that time His Majesty who was still a youth, was in Flanders, and there he learnt what the Geronimite Friars were sending him.

They rendered no account of this to the Bishop of Burgos, for they were aware that he, in his position of President [of the Council] of the Indies, was very hostile to us, nor would they consult with him on many other matters of importance, for they were very ill pleased with his proceedings.

Let us leave this matter of the Bishop and repeat that as Cortés looked on Alonzo de Ávila as a very daring person, and was not on very good terms with him, he always wished to keep him at a distance, for truly if when Cristóbal de Tápia came with the commissions Alonzo de Ávila had been in Mexico (he was in the Island of Santo Domingo at the time) as he was a follower of the Bishop of Burgos and had been his servant, and Tápia had brought letters for him, he would have been a great opponent to Cortés and his affairs. For this reason Cortés always tried to keep him far from his person, and when he returned from this voyage he chose that occasion to allot Cuautitlan²

¹ Xamayca in the text.

² Gualtitlan in the text.

to him so as to content and please him, and gave him certain pesos de oro, and with the fair words and promises, as well as the allotment of the town already mentioned which was a very good one and very profitable, he made so firm a friend and follower of him that he sent him to Castile, and with him his captain of the Guard named Antonio de Quiñones, and these two went as proctors of New Spain and of Cortés, and they took two ships and carried with them fifty eight thousand Castellanos¹ in bars of gold. They also took with them what we called the private treasure of the great Montezuma which Guatemoc had in his keeping, and indeed it was a fine present for our great Caesar, for it contained many very rich jewels and some of the pearls were the size of filberts, and there were many chalchihuites which are fine stones like emeralds, and there was even one as broad as the palm of a hand, and many others so numerous that, so as to avoid delay, I will not stop to describe them or call them to mind. We also sent some pieces of the bones of giants which were found in a Cue or Oratory in Coyoacan, similar to those other great bones which were given to us in Tlaxcala which we had sent on the first occasion, and these were even larger. They also took three tigers² and other things that I cannot now call to mind.

The Municipality of Mexico wrote to His Majesty by these proctors, and so too did the greater number of us Conquistadores write jointly with Cortés and Fray Pedro Melgarejo and the treasurer Julian de Alderete and one and all spoke of the many and good and loyal services that Cortés and all of us Conquistadores had rendered him and would continue to render him, and related what had happened to us since we had started

¹ Castellano, an ancient Spanish coin.

² Jaguars.

to capture the city of Mexico, and how the South Sea had been discovered, and it was certainly considered to be a very valuable discovery. We also petitioned His Majesty to send us bishops and monks of the different orders who should be of a blameless life and doctrine so as to aid us more firmly to implant our holy Catholic faith in these parts, and we unanimously begged that he would be pleased to give the government of this New Spain to Cortés who was his good and loyal servant, and that he would grant the favour to us Conquistadores and our children, that all the royal offices such as treasurer, accountant, agents and notaries public, trustees and governors of forts, should not be given to other persons, but should be retained among us. We begged him not to send any lawyers, for they would turn the country upside down with their books and lawsuits and dissensions would ensue, and the affair of Cristóbal de Tápia who came directed by Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca the Bishop of Burgos, was brought to his knowledge, and how he was not a fit person for the government, and that New Spain would be lost if he remained as governor; and would he [His Majesty] be graciously pleased to ascertain beyond doubt what became of the letters and reports which we had written to him, giving an account of all the happenings in this New Spain, for we felt very sure that the Bishop himself had not sent them on to him, but would rather have written the very opposite of what had happened so as to favour his friend Diego Velásquez and Cristóbal de Tápia with the intention of marrying him to one of his relations named Doña Petronilla de Fonseca, and [we stated] how he [Tápia] presented certain decrees which came already signed and addressed by the Bishop of Burgos, and that we all bowed down to the ground to obey them and how they were obeyed. But seeing that this Tápia was no good for war

and had neither the spirit nor judgment to fit him for a governor, that [the Conquistadores] appealed against the decrees until they would acquaint his royal person with all that had taken place as we were now informing him and making him aware, as loyal vassals bound to our King and Lord, and that now, whatever move he might be pleased to command, here we were with our breasts to the ground ready to fulfil his royal orders.

We also begged him to be pleased to send an order to the Bishop of Burgos not to interfere in anything concerning Cortés or us, for it would entail breaking the thread of many matters relating to conquests and the pacification of provinces which he alone was able to carry out in this New Spain, for this same Bishop had given orders to the officials in the House of Trade in Seville named Pedro de Ysasaga and Juan López de Recalte not to permit any supply of arms or soldiers or any support to pass for Cortés or for the soldiers who were with him. We also reported how Cortés had gone to pacify the province of Panuco and had left it at peace, and the very fierce battles that he fought with the natives of that province, and that they were a very pugnacious and war-like people, and how the people of that province had killed the captains sent by Francisco de Garay and all their soldiers because they did not know how to conduct their wars skilfully; and that Cortés had expended on that expedition over sixty thousand pesos which he was claiming from the officials of the Royal Treasury and they did not want to pay them. We also informed him how Garay was now preparing a fleet in the Island of Jamaica and was coming to settle at the Rio Panuco, and, in order to prevent the same fate happening to him as to his captains who were killed, we begged His Majesty to send him an order not to leave the island until the province was entirely pacified, because we would conquer and hand it

over to him, for if he should come at that time, and the natives of that territory should see two captains in command, there would be risings and attempts to sow discord especially on the part of the Mexicans. Many other things were written, besides Cortés for his own part left no subject in the inkstand and gave so full an account of all that had happened [in his letter] that it covered twenty one pages, and inasmuch as I read and understood them all very well, I make it known here as I have stated it. In addition to this Cortés sent to beg his Majesty to give him permission to go to the Island of Cuba to capture its Governor named Diego Velásquez and to send him to Castile in order that His Majesty might have him punished there, so that he should no longer disturb and excite commotions in New Spain, for he had sent orders from the Island of Cuba to have Cortés killed.

Let us leave these letters and speak of the favourable voyage which our proctors accomplished after leaving the port of Vera Cruz on the twentieth day of the month of December in the year fifteen hundred and twenty two, and with good weather they got through the Bahama channel, and on the way two of the three tigers they were taking with them broke loose and wounded some of the sailors, and they determined to kill the one that was left for he was very fierce and they could not manage him. They proceeded on their voyage as far as the Island named Terceira,¹ and Antonio de Quiñones who was captain prided himself on being very valiant and amorous; it appears that he became entangled with a woman in that island about whom some quarrel arose, and they stabbed him so that he died and Alonzo de Ávila remained the sole captain.

As he was going on his way to Spain with the two ships, when not far from the Island, the French pirate Juan

¹ Tercera in the text.

Florin, fell on them and seized the gold and the ships and captured Alonzo de Ávila and carried him a prisoner to France. About the same time Juan Florin robbed another ship that came from the Island of Santo Domingo and took over twenty thousand pesos de oro and a great quantity of pearls and sugar and hides out of it and returned with it all to France a very rich man, and he made great presents to the king and to the Admiral of France of the objects and pieces of gold brought from New Spain, and all France was astonished at the riches we were sending to our great Emperor. Even the King of France himself became more covetous than before of taking a share in the Islands and in this New Spain.

It was then that he said that only with the gold sent to him from these Islands our Lord was able to make war on his France, and yet at that time Peru was not conquered, nor was there any knowledge of it, but only, as I have said, of New Spain and the Islands of Santo Domingo and San Juan and Cuba and Jamaica. It is reported that the King of France said or sent word to our Emperor that as he and the King of Portugal had partitioned the world without giving him a share, that they had better produce the Will of our father Adam as proof that he had left them as heirs and lords of these lands which they had seized between the two of them, without giving any of them to him ; and for this reason he [the King of France] was justified in robbing and taking all he could on the sea. He again promptly ordered Juan Florin to go back with another fleet and seek a livelihood on the sea.

On his return from that voyage as soon as he had taken a great booty of all sorts of cloth, he fell in between Spain and the Canary Islands with three or four powerful ships of the Biscayan fleet and some on one side and some on the other engaged Juan Florin and defeated and routed him and took him prisoner with many other Frenchmen

and they captured his ships and the cloth. They carried Juan Florin and the other captains as prisoners to the House of Trade at Seville, and they were sent captive to His Majesty at the Court, and as soon as he [the Emperor] heard of it, he ordered that justice should be meted out to them on the road, and at the port of Pico they were hanged, and this was the end of our gold and of the Captains who carried it and of Juan Florin who stole it.

Let us get back to our story; they took Alonzo de Ávila as a prisoner to France and placed him in a fortress, for as he was in charge of so much gold they thought to get a good ransom for him and therefore guarded him well.

Alonzo de Ávila managed to come to such an understanding with the French gentleman who had him in charge or who held him prisoner, that in order that they might know in Castile how he was kept a prisoner and might come to ransom him, he arranged that all the letters and powers which he was bringing from New Spain should be despatched post haste and delivered at the Court of His Majesty to the Licentiate Nuñez, a cousin of Cortés who was counsellor at law to the Royal Council, or to Martin Cortés the father of the said Cortés who lived at Medellín, or to Diego de Ordás who was at the Court, and they went with such complete safety that they reached their hands, and they promptly forwarded them to His Majesty in Flanders and told the Bishop of Burgos nothing at all about it. However, the Bishop found it out and said that he rejoiced [to hear] that all the gold had been stolen and was lost, and he is reported to have said that the affairs of this traitor Cortés were bound to come to such an end, and he made other ugly remarks.

Let us leave the Bishop and turn to His Majesty who as soon as he was informed of the matter is said to have understood it all, and felt some grief at the loss of the gold

on the other hand he was delighted to see that they were sending him such riches so that the King of France should feel that with such presents as we were sending him he would be able to carry on war. He promptly sent orders to the Bishop of Burgos to give support and assistance in all matters concerning Cortés and New Spain and [said] that he was coming to Castile shortly and would decide the justice of the contentions and disputes between Velásquez and Cortés.

Let us leave this and say that as soon as we knew in New Spain about the loss of the gold and the wealth of treasure¹ and of the capture of Alonzo de Ávila and all the other matters noted by me above, we felt great grief at it, and Cortés promptly and without delay endeavoured to collect all the gold that it was possible to get together and to levy a tax on the low grade gold and silver which had been brought from Michoacan, so as to send it to His Majesty, and the tax was called "the Phoenix."²

I also wish to state that Alonzo de Ávila still retained that town of Cuautitlan which Cortés had given him, for at that time his brother Gil Gonzáles de Benavides did not hold it, not until three years later on did Gil Gonzáles come from the Island of Cuba, when Alonzo de Ávila was already free from imprisonment in France and had come to Yucatan as Accountant, and it was then that he gave authority to his brother to make use of it, for he never wished to give him the property.

Let us stop telling stories that don't help on my narrative and report all that happened to Gonzalo de Sandoval and the other captains whom Cortés had sent to settle the provinces already named by me, while Cortés was perfecting his preparations for the tax and the col-

¹ De la recamara, that is the personal property of gold, jewels, etc., belonging to Montezuma.

² Fenix in the text.

lection of the gold to send to His Majesty. I know well that some interested readers will ask, why is it that when Cortés sent Pedro de Alvarado and Gonzalo de Sandoval and the other captains [to undertake] the conquests and pacifications which I have already mentioned, that I did not finish my story about what they had done and what happened to each of them on their expeditions, so I must state again that I must go back very far in my story, and the reason that I give for this is that while they were going on their way to their provinces and conquests, at that very moment Cristóbal de Tápia so often mentioned by me, arrived at the Port of Villa Rica to take over the Government of New Spain.

As Pedro de Alvarado and Gonzalo de Sandoval were his most distinguished Captains and wise advisers, Cortés sent post haste to summon them to deliberate on what could be done in the matter, and get their support and assistance, so they suspended their conquests and pacifications and, as I have said, they came to this affair of Tápia which was more important for His Majesty's Service, for it was looked on as certain that if Tápia should remain as governor that New Spain and Mexico would rise in revolt again. At that moment also Cristóbal de Olid arrived from Michoacan (for it was near Mexico) which he found peaceful, and they [the inhabitants] gave him much gold and silver, and as he was recently married and his wife was young and handsome he hastened his coming.

Then immediately after this affair of Tápia the rising at Pánuco took place, and Cortés went to pacify it, as I have related in a former chapter which tells about it. Then we had to write to His Majesty and send the gold and give authority to our proctors whom I have already mentioned, and on account of these distractions which came one after another I will now call the matter to mind:—and it happened in the manner I will now describe.

CHAPTER CLX.

How Gonzalo de Sandoval arrived with his army at a pueblo called Tuxtepec,¹ and what he did there and how he afterwards went on to Coatzacoalcos and all the rest that happened to him. Mind one place is called Tuxtepec and the other Tututepec.²

WHEN Gonzalo de Sandoval arrived at a pueblo named Tuxtepec all the province made peace except some Mexicans who were concerned in the deaths of sixty Spanish men and women from Castile who had remained behind ill in that pueblo when Narvaez came, and that was the time when we were defeated in Mexico, and then they [the Mexicans] slew them in this same pueblo. About two months after the people I have spoken about had been killed, I went [there] with Sandoval and I lodged in a small tower which had been a temple with Idols and which they [the Spaniards] had fortified when they were attacked, and there they were surrounded and perished of hunger and thirst and wounds. I mention that I lodged in that little tower because there were many mosquitos in that pueblo of Tustepeque in the day time, and as the tower was very lofty and exposed to the breeze there were not so many [mosquitos] there as there were down below, and moreover it was near Sandoval's quarters.

To go back to our story, Sandoval endeavoured to seize the Mexican Captains who had attacked and killed them [the Spaniards] and he captured the chief of them and placed him on trial and for sentence ordered him to be

¹ Tuxtepec, in the north of the State of Oaxaca on the River Papaloapan. Tustepeque in the text.

² Tututepec, in the south of the State of Oaxaca near the Pacific coast. Tutetepeque in the text.

burned, and there were many others who deserved the penalty of death as much as he did, but he let it pass and the one death paid for all.

When this was over he sent to summon to peace some pueblos of the Zapotecs, (another province about ten leagues distant from this town of Tuxtepec,) and they would not come, so he sent a Captain to bring them to peace. This was a man named Briones, often mentioned by me before, who was Captain of a sloop, and a good soldier in Italy according to his own account, and Sandoval gave him over one hundred soldiers, among them thirty musketeers and crossbowmen, and over a hundred allies from the pueblos which had made peace.

As Briones went on his way with his soldiers in good order, it seems that the Zapotecs were aware of his coming against their pueblos and they arranged an ambush on the road, which caused them [the Spaniards] to turn back in a hurry, rolling down some steep inclines, and more than a third of his soldiers were wounded and one of them died of his wounds. These hills where the Zapotecs live are so steep and difficult that horses cannot go among them, and the soldiers had to march on foot, one by one, in and out, along narrow paths, and there was always mist and dew and the paths were slippery. The Zapotecs were armed with very long lances, longer than ours are, with a fathom of cutting edge of stone knives which cut better than our swords, and with shields which cover the whole body, and many arrows, javelins and stones, and the natives were very daring and wonderfully lithe, and with a whistle or cry which they give among those hills the voice resounds and reverberates for a considerable time, as we should say like echoes.

So the Captain Briones returned with his men wounded and one of them dead, and he himself came back with an arrow wound.

The pueblo where he was defeated is called Tiltepec¹ and after it was brought to peace it was given in *encomienda* to a soldier named Ojeda the one eyed, who now lives in the town of Santo Alfonso. When Briones returned to make his report to Sandoval of what had happened, and told him what great warriors they [the Zapotecs] were, as Sandoval was in good spirits and Briones posed as being very valiant and was wont to tell how in Italy he had killed and wounded and cleft the heads and trunks of men, said Sandoval: "It seems to me Señor Capitan that these lands are different from those where you [formerly] went soldiering" and Briones, half angry, replied and said that he swore to the truth of his statements and that he would rather fight against cannon and great armies of enemies whether of Turks or Moors than against those Zapotecs, and he gave reasons for it, that appeared acceptable. Still Sandoval told him he wished he had not sent him, since he was thus defeated, for he believed that he would have shown more valour, as he boasted he had done in Italy.

Let us leave this expedition which did more harm than good, and say how this same Gonzalo de Sandoval sent to summon to peace another province, which was called Xaltepec.² These people were also Zapotecs and they border on other pueblos called those of the Mijes,³ a very active and warlike people who had disputes with the people of Xaltepec, the same who I say were now summoned. As many as twenty Caciques and chieftains made peace and brought a present of gold in the form of jewels of various workmanship and ten small tubes of gold in grains which they had just then extracted from the mines.

¹ San Miguel Tiltepec. Dist. of Ixtlan, Northern Oaxaca or Tiltepec. Dist. of Choapam, Northern Oaxaca. Teltepeque in the text.

² Xaltepec or Jaltepec in the District of Choapam. Xaltepeque in the text.

³ Minxes in the text.

The Chieftains came clothed in very long cotton clothes which reached to the feet worked with much embroidery and they were, so to say, like Moorish bornouses. When they came before Sandoval they offered it [their present] with great reverence and he received it with pleasure, and ordered them to be given beads of Castile, and paid them honour and made much of them. They asked Sandoval to give them some Teules, for so they call the Spaniards in their language, to go with them against the pueblos of their enemies the Mijes who made war on them. As Sandoval could spare no soldiers at that time, to give them the help they asked for, because those who had gone with Briones were all wounded and others were sick and four were dead, for the country was very hot and unhealthy, he told them in pleasant phrases that he would send to Mexico to tell Malinche (for so they called Cortés) to send plenty of Teules, and that they must restrain themselves until they arrived, and meanwhile that ten of his companions would accompany them to examine the passes and the country so that they could go and make war against their enemies the Mijes. Sandoval only said this in order that we could go and see the pueblos and the mines where they extracted the gold they had brought, and in this way he dismissed all but three of them whom he ordered to stay and go with us. Then he promptly sent a soldier named Alonzo de Castillo, the decided, to examine the pueblos and mines I have spoken about, and Sandoval ordered me and six other soldiers to go with him and examine the mines thoroughly and the nature of the pueblos. I wish to explain why that Captain who went with us as leader was called Castillo the decided, and it was for the reason that I will now state:—

In the Company which Sandoval commanded there were three soldiers with the surname of Castillo, one of

them was very elegant and took pride in it at that time, and for this reason they called him Castillo the elegant,¹ of the other two Castillos, one was of such a nature that he was always thoughtful, and when he was spoken to, he delayed long in thinking what he should say, and when he replied or spoke it was some foolishness or something that made us laugh, and on this account they called him Castillo the deliberate.² The other was Alonzo Castillo who now went with us who spoke his thoughts quickly and answered much to the point about anything they asked him, and they called him Castillo the decided.³

Let us cease talking about trifles and relate how we went to that province to see the mines, and took many Indians with us from those pueblos, and with some things in the shape of troughs they washed in three rivers before us, and from all three they extracted gold and they filled four small tubes with it, each tube the length of the middle finger of one's hand and they were a little thicker than the quill of a Spanish duck ; with this sample of the gold we returned to where Gonzalo de Sandoval was stationed and he was delighted thinking that the country was rich. He promptly set about making the division of those pueblos and that province among the settlers who were to remain there to people it, and he took for himself some pueblos called Huaspaltepec,⁴ which at that time was the best thing there was in the province, very near the mines, and they even promptly yielded him over fifteen thousand pesos in gold. Sandoval believed that he was taking a very good thing and he entrusted the province of Xaltepec, whence we brought the gold, to Captain Luis Marin and thought that he was giving him an earldom, but they

¹ El galan.

² De los pensamientos.

³ De lo pensado.

⁴ Guazpaltepeque in the text, near Playa Vicente on the Rio de Villa Alta.

all turned out very bad assignments, both that which Sandoval took as well as the one he gave to Luis Marin, and he even ordered me to stay in that province and gave me very good Indians with a good income, and would to God that I had taken them, they [the pueblos] were called Matlatan and Orizaba, where the Viceroys mills are now situated, and another pueblo called Ozotequipa,¹ but I did not want them, for it seemed to me, Sandoval being my friend, that if I did not go in his company I should not be acting up to my standard of personal honour, and Sandoval thoroughly understood my feelings, and so as to have me with him in the wars, if there should be any later on, acquiesced.

Let us leave this and relate that he named the town which he settled Medellin,² for so Cortés ordered him to do, because Cortés was born at Medellin in Estremadura.

At that time the port was at a river called Chalchocucca, which was the river to which we had given the name the 'Rio de Banderas' where we had gained sixteen thousand pesos by barter, and up that river proceeded the ships that came with merchandise from Spain, until the port was changed to Vera Cruz.

Let us leave this and go on our road to Coatzacoalcos which was distant a matter of seventy leagues from the town of Vera Cruz, which we had already settled. We entered into a province called Çitla³ which was the coolest and the most thickly peopled and the best supplied with food that we had yet seen. The people at once made peace, and this province which I have mentioned is twelve

¹ I cannot identify Matlatan, Orizaba and Ozotequipa, there is a Santiago Matatlan in the district of Tlacolula.

² This is going back; Sandoval settled Medellin, which is a little to the south of the modern Vera Cruz, sometime before arriving at Tuxtepec.

³ This name has disappeared from the maps.

leagues long and about the same in breadth and all thickly peopled ; and we arrived at the great river of Coatzacoalcos and sent to summon the Caciques of the pueblos which were the capitals of those provinces, and for three days they did not come nor did they send any reply, and on that account we thought that they intended war, and it is even said that they had made up their minds not to let us pass the river. They afterwards decided to come within five days, and they brought us food to eat and some jewels of very pure gold, and said that when we wanted to cross they would bring many large canoes. Sandoval thanked them greatly and took counsel with some of us as to whether we could dare to cross over all of us together at the same time in the canoes. What we thought best and advised was that four soldiers should cross over and observe the disposition of a village which was near the river, and should watch and endeavour to enquire and find out whether they were hostile, and that before crossing we should have in our power the principal Cacique who was named Tochel. So the four soldiers went over and found out all that we had sent them [to ascertain] and they returned to report to Sandoval that everything was peaceful and moreover the son of this same Cacique Tochel, for so he is called, came with them and brought another present of gold but it was not worth much. Then Sandoval caressed him and ordered him to bring a hundred canoes tied together two and two, and we passed the horses over the day after the feast of Espíritu Santo, and to cut the story short, we made a settlement in the pueblo which stood near the river, and it was a good place for sea traffic because the port lay four leagues down stream, and we called it the town of Espíritu Santo and we gave it that sublime name, on one account because on the feast of Espíritu Santo we defeated Narvaez, on another because that holy name was our

watchword when we defeated and captured him, and lastly because we crossed this river on this same day, and because all these towns came in peaceably without making war, and there we all of us settled, the flower of the gentlemen and soldiers who had come out from Mexico to settle with Sandoval. There was Sandoval himself and Luis Marin, Diego de Godoy, Captain Francisco de Medina, Francisco Marmolejo, Francisco de Lugo, Juan López de Aguirre, Hernando de Montesdoca, Juan de Salamanca, Diego Azamar, one Mansilla and another soldier named Mexia Rapapelo, Alonzo de Grado, the Licentiate Ledesma, Luis de Bustamante, Pedro Castellar, the Captain Briones, and I and many other gentlemen and persons of quality, and if I were to name them all here I could not finish quickly, but it may be taken for certain that we were wont to assemble in the Plaza for a rejoicing and review over eighty strong in horsemen, and eighty then was more than five hundred now-a-days, and the reason is that there were but very few horses there in New Spain and they were costly and only a few could afford to buy them.

Let us leave this and say how Sandoval apportioned those provinces and pueblos among us, after he had sent to visit them and form a judgment of the land, and examine the character of all the towns.

The provinces which he apportioned are those which I will now name:—

First of all Çitla, Coatzacoalcos and Huaspaltepec,¹ Tepeaca,² Chinantla³ and the pueblos of the Zapotecs and [as well as] other pueblos which are situated on the other side of the river, the province of Copilco, Cimatan and

¹ Guazpaltepeque in the text.

² Tepeaca, further on called Tepeca, not to be confounded with Tepeaca near Puebla.

³ Chinantla in the text.

Tabasco and the mountains of Quechula,¹ all the [land of] the Zoques towards Chiapas,² and Zinacantan and all the [land of] the Quilines and Papanaguasta. These pueblos that I have named were held in allotment by us settlers who had settled in that town [of Espíritu Santo] and it would have been better if I had not remained there, for, as it afterwards turned out, the land was poor and many lawsuits arose with three towns which were founded later on. One was with Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz, over Huaspaltepec and Chinantla and Tepeaca,³ another was with the town of Tabasco over Cimatan and Copilco and another with Chiapas over the Quilines and Zoques, another was with Santo Alifonso over the Zapotecs, for all those towns were established after we settled at Coatzacoalcos. Had they left us all the districts that we held we should have been rich. The reason why they established these towns that I have mentioned was that His Majesty sent an order that all the Indian pueblos bordering on or nearest to each town were decreed to be within the boundaries [of that town] so that they clipped our wings on every side and left us in the lurch. This was the reason why, as time went on, Coatzacoalcos was deserted, and from being the best township of honourable Conquistadores that existed in New Spain, it is now a village of a few inhabitants.

To return to our story:—while Sandoval was looking after the peopling of that town and bringing other provinces to peace he received letters saying that a ship had entered the Rio de Ayagualulco, which is a port, although not a very good one, about fifteen leagues distant; and that in it there had come from the Island of Cuba, the Señora Doña Catalina Juarez, surnamed la Marcaйда, the wife of Cortés, her brother Juan Juarez,

¹ Cachula in the text. ² Chiapa in the text. ³ Tepeca in the text.

who was later on a settler in Mexico, brought her and another lady who was her sister, and there came Villegas, he of Mexico, and his wife [called] the festive,¹ and his children and also the grandmother and many other married women. It also seems to me that Elvira López, [nicknamed] the tall,² arrived at that time, she was then the wife of Juan de Palma who came with us and died hanged, and afterwards she was the wife of a certain Argeta and Antonio Diosdado also came, he was afterwards a settler in Guatemala, and many others arrived whose names I do not remember.

As soon as Gonzalo de Sandoval heard about this, he in person and most of us Captains and soldiers went to fetch those ladies and the other persons they had brought in their company. I remember that at the time it rained so heavily we could not travel along the roads nor cross the rivers and streams for they came down so swollen that they overflowed their banks. As there had been heavy northerly gales, it was on account of the rough weather and to avoid being driven ashore that they had put into that port of Ayagualulco. The Señora Doña Catalina Juarez la Marçayda and all her company were delighted to see us, and we promptly brought all those ladies and their company to our town at Coatzacoalcos. Sandoval sent the news of their arrival to Cortés post haste, and at once took them on the road to Mexico, and Sandoval himself and Briones and Francisco de Lugo and other gentlemen accompanied them.

When Cortés knew of it, it was said that he was very sorry that she had come, but did not show it. He gave orders for their reception and much honour was shown them in all the towns until they arrived in Mexico, and in that City there were rejoicings and tilting with reeds, and

¹ La Zambrana

² La Larga

within about three months of her arrival we heard a report that one night they found her dead from Asthma and that there had been a banquet the evening before and a great festival. Because I know nothing more about this than I have said we will touch no more on this delicate subject, which other persons spoke about more clearly and openly in the lawsuit that arose out of it later on before the Royal Audiencia of Mexico.

Let us cease speaking of this affair that is past and gone and relate what happened to Villafuerte, who went to settle at Zacatula¹ and to Juan Álvarez the less² who went to Colima. On Villafuerte they made many attacks and killed some of his soldiers and the country was in revolt and wanted neither to obey nor to pay tribute, and neither more nor less happened with Juan Álvarez. When Cortés heard this he was sorry for it, and as Cristóbal de Olid had come from the affair at Michoacan, and was returning a rich man and had left the country at peace, it seemed to Cortés that he was the right man to go and secure and pacify those provinces of Zacatula and Colima. He [therefore] determined to send him as Captain and gave him fifteen horsemen and thirty musketeers and crossbowmen.

As he went on his way, when he had already arrived near Zacatula, the natives of that province awaited him very valiantly in a bad pass, and killed two soldiers and wounded fifteen, but nevertheless he conquered them and went on to the town where Villafuerte was stationed with the settlers who were established there. These did not care to go to the pueblos which had been apportioned to them lest they [the villagers] should prepare to kill them, as they had already killed four settlers in the pueblos assigned to them, for as a rule they began by appointing *encomenderos* to all the provinces and towns that were

¹ In the State of Guerrero.

² Juan Álvarez Chico.

settled, and as soon as these asked the natives for tribute they rose in revolt and killed all the Spaniards they could. When Cristóbal de Olid saw that he had quieted the province and the people had made peace, he went from Zacatula to Colima and found it at war, and he had some encounters with the natives and they wounded many of his soldiers, [however] he defeated them and left them peaceful. I do not know what became of Juan Álvarez Chico who went as Captain. I think he died at that town.

Then Cristóbal de Olid when he had quieted Colima and it appeared to him to be peaceful, returned to Mexico (for he was married to a beautiful Portuguese lady, whom I have already said was named Doña Felipa de Arauz or Zarauz) and he had hardly turned his back when the people of Colima and Zacatula rose again. At the same time Gonzalo de Sandoval had arrived at Mexico with the Señora Doña Catalina Juarez la Marçayda and Juan Juarez and all their company, as I have already related in the Chapter that tells about it. Cortés decided to send him [Sandoval] as captain to pacify those provinces, and with the small number of horsemen that he then gave him and a matter of fifteen crossbowmen and musketeers, all old Conquistadores, he proceeded to Colima and punished two Caciques and handled the affair with such dexterity that the whole country remained completely pacified and never revolted again. He did the same thing at Zacatula and quickly returned to Mexico.

Let us go back to Coatzacoalcos and state that as soon as Gonzalo de Sandoval left for Mexico with the Señora Doña Catalina Juarez nearly all the provinces which had been allotted rose against the settlers and we had the greatest trouble in pacifying them again. The first to revolt was Xaltepec of the Zapotecs, where the people lived among lofty and rugged mountains, and after this the people of Cimatan and Copilco, who live among great

rivers and swamps, rebelled, and other provinces rose in revolt, and even within twelve leagues of the town there were pueblos which killed their encomendero. We marched about quieting them with the greatest difficulty and while we were on an expedition with the Captain Luis Marin and an Alcalde ordinario and all the Regidores of the town, letters came to say that a ship had arrived in port in which had come Juan Bono de Quexo the Biscayan, and that he had come with the ship, which was a small one, up the river as far as the town, and said he had brought letters and decrees from His Majesty to notify us that we should promptly return to the town and desist from the [further] pacification of the province.

When we heard this news, as the Alcalde and the Regidores were [all] in the company of the Lieutenant Luis Marin, we went to see what it was that he [Juan Bono] wanted. After embracing us, and welcoming each other, for Juan Bono was very well known from the time when he came with Narvaez, he said that he begged us to be good enough to assemble in Cabildo as he wished to proclaim certain decrees of His Majesty and of Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca, the bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosano, and that he had brought many letters for all. It appears that Juan Bono had brought letters in blank with the signature of the Archbishop, and while they had gone to summon us from the pacification on which we were engaged, Juan Bono found out which of us were Regidores, and in the letter which he brought in blank he wrote the promises that the Bishop sent us if we should give up the country to Cristóbal de Tápia, whom Juan Bono refused to believe had returned to the Island of Santo Domingo, and the Bishop thought for certain that we would not receive him, and for that reason sent Juan Bono with that authority.

He brought to me as a Regidor a letter from the Bishop

himself written by Juan Bono. As soon as we had met in Cabildo and saw his despatches and decrees, (and he would never tell us what they were up to that moment) we quickly got rid of him by saying that Tápia had already returned to Castile, and that he had better go to Mexico where Cortés was, and there he might tell him what was suitable.

As soon as Juan Bono heard that Tápia was not in the country he desisted and was very sorrowful, and the next day he embarked and went to Villa Rica and thence to Mexico. I do not know what took place there, except that I have heard it said that Cortés helped him down to the coast and he returned to Castile.

Let us abstain from telling more stories, but it is right to add that all the time we stayed at that town there were never wanting hardships and conquests of the provinces that had revolted and let us go back and relate how Pedro de Alvarado fared in the expedition to Tututepec¹ and among its people.

CHAPTER CLXI.

How Pedro de Alvarado went to Tututepec to found a town and what happened to him in the pacification of that Province and the founding of the town.

WE must go back a little to recount the setting out of Pedro de Alvarado to found Tututepec, it was as follows:—As soon as the City of Mexico was captured and it was known in all the districts and provinces that such a strong city had been razed to the ground, they sent to congratulate Cortés on his victory and to offer themselves as Vassals of His Majesty, and among the many great pueblos that came at that time there was one called

Tututepecque in the text

Tehuantepec¹ of the Zapotecs, and they brought a present of gold to Cortés and told him that there were other pueblos in their province somewhat remote named Tututepec which were their inveterate enemies and had come to make war on them because the people of Tehuantepec had given their fealty to His Majesty ; that these towns were situated on the South Coast and that the people were very rich in gold in the form of jewels as well as in mines, and they begged Cortés with much importunity to give them horsemen, musketeers and crossbowmen to go against their enemies.

Cortés spoke to them very lovingly and told them that he wished to send Tonatio with them, for so they called Pedro de Alvarado, and he promptly gave him over one hundred and eighty soldiers, among them thirty five horsemen, and instructions to demand another twenty soldiers, chiefly crossbowmen, from Francisco de Orozco who was captain of the province of Oaxaca,² if that province were peaceable.

Carrying out his orders he [Alvarado] arranged his departure and set out from Mexico in the year [fifteen hundred and] twenty two, and Cortés directed him to go and inspect certain rocky hills on the way, which were called Ulamo, where [the people] were said to be in revolt, but he found them all peaceful and well disposed at that time.

He delayed more than forty days before reaching Tututepec, and the Lord of the pueblo and other chieftains when they knew that he was approaching near to their pueblo went out to receive him peaceably, and took him off to lodge in the most thickly peopled part of the pueblo where the Cacique had his Oratories and his large apart-

¹ Teguantepeque in the text.

² Guaxaca in the text.

ments, and the houses were very close one to the other, and they were made of straw, for in that province they have no azoteas as it is a very hot country.

Alvarado took the advice of his Captains and soldiers that it was not a good thing to lodge in those houses so near one to the other, for if they were set on fire they could not protect themselves, and they agreed to go to the end of the pueblo. As soon as they were lodged the Cacique brought him very great presents of gold, and plenty to eat, and every day they stayed there he brought him very rich presents of gold.

As Alvarado saw that they possessed so much gold he ordered them to make some stirrups of fine gold like others which he gave them as patterns and they made and brought them to him. A few days later, he took the Cacique prisoner, because the people of Tehuantepec told Pedro de Alvarado that all that province intended to make war on him, and that when they lodged him among those houses where the Idols and chambers stood that it was in order to set fire to them, so that all of them [the Spaniards] should perish; and for this reason he made him prisoner. Other Spaniards of good faith and worthy of credence said that it was in order to extort much gold [from him] without bringing him to trial that he died in prison, and this is now accepted as certain, that one way or the other, that Cacique gave to Pedro de Alvarado over thirty thousand pesos, and he died from anger and from his imprisonment, and the Caciqueship went to his son, and he [Alvarado] got from him more gold than from his father. Then he sent to visit the pueblos in the neighbourhood and distributed them among the settlers and founded a town to which was given the name of Segura, because most of the settlers who peopled it had been formerly inhabitants of Segura de la Frontera, which was Tepeaca.

When this was accomplished and he had collected to-

gether a good sum in pesos de oro he took it to Mexico to give to Cortés.

It is also said that Cortés himself wrote to him that he should bring with him all the gold he was able to collect, in order to send it to His Majesty, because the Frenchmen had stolen all that he had sent by Alonzo de Ávila and Quifiones, and that he should give no share of it to any one of the soldiers who were in his company.

When Alvarado was already prepared to start for Mexico certain soldiers most of them musketeers and crossbowmen, formed a conspiracy to kill Pedro de Alvarado and his brothers on the following day, because he was carrying off the gold without giving them their share, although they had begged for it many times, but he would not give it up, also because he did not give them good assignments of Indians. If a soldier named Trebejo who was in the conspiracy had not revealed the plot to him, they would have attacked them the following night. When Alvarado knew about it, (and they told him about the hour of vespers) he went out hunting on horseback near some huts, and some of those who were in the plot went on horseback in his company. Then to deceive them he said "Señores, I have got such a stitch in my side, let us go back to our quarters and call me a barber to bleed me."

As soon as he got back he sent to summon his brothers Jorge, Gonzalo and Gómez, all Alvarados, and the Alcaldes and Aguazils, and they seized those who were in the plot and according to verdict they hanged two of them, one named something de Salamanca a native of the county [of Salamanca], who had been a pilot, and the other named Bernaldino the Levantine, and with these two hangings he pacified the others, and he set off at once for Mexico with all the gold, and left the town settled. When the inhabitants who remained in the town saw that the allotments

that had been given them were no good and that the country was unhealthy and very hot, and many of them were ill, and the servants and slaves they had brought with them had died, and that there were many bats and mosquitos and even bed bugs, and above all that Alvarado had not divided the gold among them but had taken it with him, they decided to avoid wrangling and to abandon the settlement. Many of them went to Mexico, others to Oaxaca and they scattered over other parts.

When Cortés heard of this, he sent to make enquiry about it, and he found out that the abandonment was agreed upon by the Alcades and Magistrates in Cabildo, and those who were concerned in it were condemned to death, and they appealed, and the punishment was [reduced to] banishment. This is what happened in the matter of Tututepec which was never afterwards peopled because it was unhealthy although the land was rich. When the natives of that country saw that the place was abandoned and what Alvarado had done was without reason or justice, they rebelled again, and Pedro de Alvarado returned to them and summoned them to make peace and without need to attack them they became peaceful.

Let us leave this and say that when Cortés had got together over eighty thousand pesos de oro to send to His Majesty together with the Phoenix tax he had invented, news came at that time that Francisco de Garay had arrived at Panuco with a great fleet, and what was done about it I will go on to relate.

CHAPTER CLXII.

How Francisco de Garay came from Jamaica to Panuco with a great fleet, and what happened to him and many things that took place.

As I have already said in another Chapter which deals with Francisco de Garay, he was a rich man and the Governor of the Island of Jamaica. He had heard news of our discovery of very rich lands during the expeditions of Hernando de Córdova and Juan de Grijalva, and how we had carried off twenty thousand pesos de oro to the Island of Cuba, and Diego Velásquez who was Governor of that Island had got possession of them, and that at that very time Cortés was setting out with another fleet, and Garay had a covetous desire to go and conquer some lands [himself.] He had much better equipment than any of the others, and he obtained news and information from Anton de Alaminos (whom we had brought as chief pilot when we made our discoveries) to the effect that from the Rio Panuco onwards there were very rich and thickly populated countries, which he might petition His Majesty to grant him.

After Garay had been thoroughly informed by the Pilot Alaminos about the discovery, and by other pilots who were with Alaminos at the time of the discovery, he determined to send his Mayordomo, named Juan Torralva, with money and letters to the court to beg the gentlemen who at that time were president and judges for His Majesty to bestow upon him the Government of the Rio de Panuco and whatever further country he might discover and settle. As at that time His Majesty was in Flanders and Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca, Bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosano was president of the Council of the Indies and directed everything with the Licentiate

Zapata and the Licentiate Vargas and the Secretary Lope de Conchillas, they sent him [Francisco de Garay] a commission as Adelantado of the Rio San Pedro and San Pablo and all [the land] he could explore. On the strength of this commission he immediately despatched three ships with as many as two hundred and forty soldiers with many horses and musketeers and crossbowmen and sent as their captain a certain Alonzo de Álvarez Pineda or Pinedo often mentioned by me before.

When he sent that fleet, as I have already related, the Indians of Panuco defeated it and killed the Captain Pineda and all the horses and soldiers he had with him, except about seventy soldiers who came to the Port of Vera Cruz in a ship under the command of Camargo and joined our company.

When Garay received no news of those ships, he sent two other ships after them with many soldiers, horses, and supplies under the command of Miguel Díaz de Ausuz and a certain Ramíres, already mentioned by me many times. These also came to our port when they had ascertained that neither hair nor hide of those already sent by Garay was to be found at the Rio Panuco, except the two wrecked ships. All these things I have already told in my story, but it is necessary to go back to the beginning so that it may be clearly understood. Now to return to our business and story. When Francisco de Garay saw that he had already expended many pesos de oro, and he heard of the good fortune of Cortés, and of the great cities that he had discovered, and about the great amount of gold and jewels that there was in the country, he grew more envious and covetous than ever, and his desire increased to come in person and bring the largest fleet he could, and he hunted up eleven ships and two sloops which made a total of . . . sail and he got together one hundred and thirty six horses and eight hundred and forty soldiers, most of

them musketeers and crossbowmen, and he fitted them out well with all that was necessary, which was cassava bread and salt pork and sun-dried beef, for there was already a sufficiency of cattle, and as he was a rich man, and it all came from his own crops he did not feel the expense, and there was a superabundance of men and horses who flocked to the Island of Jamaica for the equipment of that fleet.

In the year fifteen hundred and twenty three he started from Jamaica with all his fleet on the day of San Juan de Junio¹ and reached the Island of Cuba at a port named Xagua, and there he learned that Cortés had already pacified the whole Province of Panuco and established a town and had spent in the pacification more than sixty thousand pesos de oro, and had sent to petition His Majesty to grant him the Government of that country as well as that of New Spain. When they told him of the heroic actions done by Cortés and his companions in New Spain, and when he heard the news that with two hundred and sixty six soldiers we had defeated Pánfilo de Narvaez who had brought with him over thirteen hundred soldiers including a hundred horsemen and as many more musketeers and crossbowmen and eighteen cannon, he felt afraid of Cortés's good fortune. During the time that Garay was at the port of Xagua many settlers in the Island of Cuba came to see him and eight or ten of the principal persons of that town joined his company, and the Licentiate Zuazo who, under orders from the Royal Audiencia of Santo Domingo, had come to that Island to take the *Residencia*² of Diego Velásquez also came to see him. When Garay was conversing with the Licentiate about Cortés's good fortune and [saying] that he feared he would have trouble with him about the Province of Panuco,

¹ Midsummer Day.

² *Residencia*. The examination and formal account demanded of a person holding Public Office.

[he] Garay begged him [the Licentiate] to go with him on that voyage to act as mediator between him and Cortés, and the Licentiate replied that he could not go at that time before he had taken the Residencia, but that he would be there soon.

Then Garay at once gave orders to set sail and steer in the direction of Panuco, and he had a stormy time on the way, and the pilots he had with him went higher up towards the Rio de Palmas and he dropped anchor in the river itself on Santiago's day, and at once sent to examine the country. The captains and soldiers whom he sent did not consider it a good country, or had no wish to stay there but to go on to the Rio de Panuco proper (because it was nearer to Mexico), and to the settlement and town that Cortés had established. When that news was brought to him Garay decided to exact an oath from all his soldiers that they would not desert their banners and would obey him as their Captain General. He appointed Alcaldes and Magistrates and all that was necessary for a town, and he said that the town was to be called Garayana. He ordered all the horses and soldiers to be disembarked and when the ships were empty he sent them along the coast under a captain named Grijalva, and he [Garay] and all his army went by land along the coast near to the sea, and he marched for two days through a bad uninhabited marshy country, and crossed a river which came from some mountains which they could see from the road, at a distance of about five leagues, and they crossed that great river on rafts and in some broken canoes which they found. As soon as they had crossed the river they came on a pueblo which had been deserted that very day, and found plenty to eat, maize, and even poultry, and there were plenty of very good guavas. Then in that pueblo Garay captured certain Indians who understood a little of the Mexican language. He flattered them and gave them shirts and

sent them as messengers to other pueblos which they told him were near by, in order that they should receive him peaceably. After going round a marsh, he went on to some pueblos, which were those spoken about, and they received him peaceably and gave him plenty to eat and many fowls of the country and other birds like geese which they captured in the lagoons. As many of the soldiers he took with him were wearied, and it seems that he did not give them the things the Indians had brought for them to eat, some of them mutinied, and went off to rob the Indians of the pueblos through which they had passed. They halted in this pueblo for three days, and on the following day they went on their way with guides and reached a great river which they were unable to cross without canoes which were supplied by the Indians of the peaceable pueblos where they had halted. They managed to take over all the horses by swimming, each canoe as it was rowed across leading a horse by a halter, and the horses were numerous and not very clever. On emerging from the river they got into some bad swamps and after suffering great hardship arrived at the land of Panuco.

When they arrived there they expected to find food, but all the towns were stripped of maize and other supplies, and were much disturbed, and this was on account of the wars Cortés had waged against them a short time before. If they possessed any food they had garnered it and placed it in safety, for when they saw so many Spaniards and horses they were afraid of them and deserted their pueblos, and where Garay looked for repose he found more hardship. In addition to this as the houses where they lodged had been deserted there were many bats and bugs and mosquitos, and everything went against them. Next another ill fortune befel them, the ships which were coming along the coast and bringing plentiful supplies had

not reached port nor had they been heard of. This they learned from a Spaniard who came to visit them or whom they found in a town which belonged to the settlers who were established at the town of Santistevan del Puerto. This man had fled from fear of punishment for a crime that he had committed, and he told them that there was a [Spanish] settlement very near by, and that in Mexico there was very good land and that the settlers who lived there were rich. When the soldiers whom Garay had brought with him heard from this Spaniard who conversed with them that the land in Mexico was good, and that of Panuco was not as good, many of them deserted and started for the pueblos to loot them, and went on to Mexico.

About that time, seeing that his soldiers were in revolt and he was not able to prevent it, Garay sent one of his Captains named Ocampo to the town of Santistevan to find out the intentions of Cortes's lieutenant, named Pedro de Vallejo, and he even wrote to him informing him that he brought commissions and authority from His Majesty constituting him Governor and Adelantado of those provinces and how he had made the Rio de Palmas in his ships, and about the bad road and the hardships that he had endured. Vallejo paid much honour to Ocampo and those who went with him, and gave them a pleasant reply, and told them that Cortés would be delighted to have such a good neighbour as Governor but that the conquest of that country had been a great expense to him and that His Majesty had been pleased to grant the government to him, but that he [Garay] could come when he pleased with his army and that he would do all he could to serve him, and he begged him to order his soldiers to do no injury to the Indians and not to rob them, for two pueblos had come to him to complain about it. After saying this Vallejo wrote post

haste to Cortés, and even sent him Garay's letter, and also made Gonzalo de Ocampo himself write another letter.

He sent to ask what Cortés's orders were and [to say] that he must either send many soldiers promptly or must come in person.

As soon as Cortés saw the letter he sent to summon Pedro de Alvarado, Gonzalo de Sandoval and Diego de Ocampo, a brother of the Gonzalo de Ocampo who had come with Garay, and he sent with them the authority that he held showing that His Majesty had commanded that all that he might conquer should be held by himself until the question of rights between him and Diego Velásquez should be cleared up and that this should be notified to Garay.

Let us stop talking about this and say that when Gonzalo de Ocampo returned with the answer of Vallejo to Francisco de Garay, it seemed to him a good answer and he came with all his army to occupy [a position] even nearer to the town of Santistevan del Puerto. Pedro de Vallejo, acting upon the information obtained from five of Garay's soldiers who had come to the town [of Santistevan], that the mutineers had halted in a fine and large town called Nachapalan and were very careless and never kept watch, had already made his arrangements with the settlers in the town [Santistevan], so Vallejo's men who knew the country well fell on Garay's people and captured over forty soldiers and carried them off to their town of Santistevan del Puerto. These men were glad of their imprisonment and the reason Vallejo gave for capturing them was that they went about looting the country without showing the commissions and authority that he [Garay] had brought.

When Garay saw this he was much distressed and again sent to Vallejo to say that he must release his soldiers, threatening him with punishment from our Lord and King.

Vallejo answered that as soon as he should see the Royal commissions he would obey them and place them on his head, and it would have been better for Ocampo to have brought and displayed them when he came, so that they might be carried out, and he begged him to order his soldiers to desist from robbing and looting His Majesty's pueblos. At that moment the captains arrived whom Cortés sent with his powers, and as Diego de Ocampo was at that time chief Alcalde for Cortés in Mexico, he began by issuing injunctions against Garay to prevent him entering the country, because His Majesty had commanded that Cortés was to hold it. Several days were taken up with demands and replies, and meanwhile each day many of Garay's soldiers deserted, they were present at dusk and absent at dawn, and Garay saw that Cortés's captains brought with them many horsemen and musketeers and that more arrived every day, and he learned that he had lost two of his ships which he had sent along the coast in a northerly gale which is a foul wind. The Lieutenant Vallejo sent to request the other ships, which were at the mouth of the harbour, to come at once into the river lest some disaster and storm like the last should overtake them, if not that he should treat them as pirates who go about and plunder. The captains of the ships replied that Vallejo had no business to give orders in the matter, and that they would come in when they chose. Just then Francisco de Garay was afraid of Cortés's good luck, and during this critical time the chief Alcalde Diego de Ocampo and Pedro de Alvarado and Gonzalo de Sandoval held secret conversations with the followers of Garay, and with the captains who were in the ships in port, and arranged with them to come into the harbour and go over to Cortés. Martín de San Juan a native of Lepusco and Castro Mocho, ship masters, surrendered themselves with their ships to the Lieutenant Vallejo for Cortés and

as he held the ship in the name of Cortés, Vallejo went in them to demand of the Captain Juan de Grijalva, who was [still] at the entrance of the port either to come inside and anchor, or go off to sea whenever he pleased. He [Grijalva] answered him by firing many shots at him. Then they sent a King's notary named Vicente López in a boat to ask him to come into the port, and he also carried letters to Grijalva from Pedro de Alvarado and Sandoval and from Diego de Ocampo with offers and promises that Cortés would grant him favours. When he saw the letters and that all the other ships had entered the river, Juan de Grijalva did so also with his flagship, and Vallejo told him that he was a prisoner in the name of the Captain Hernando Cortés; but he released him at once as well as the others who had been arrested.

When Garay saw how little authority he possessed and that his soldiers had deserted and mutinied, and his ships had gone ashore and the rest were taken for Cortés, if he was very sorrowful before they took them from him, he was still more so when he saw himself worsted, and he promptly demanded with many protests made to Cortes's captains, that they should give him back his ships and all his soldiers as he wished to return and settle at the Rio de Palmas, and he exhibited the commissions and authority that he had brought for that purpose, and in order to have neither contentions nor quarrels with Cortés he wished to go back. Those gentlemen answered that he might go and good luck attend him, and that they would order all the mutinous soldiers who were in the province and the pueblos to return at once to their captain and go in the ships, and they would order everything to be supplied to him that was necessary as well in the matter of food as of arms and cannon and powder, and that they would write to Cortés so that he might supply very fully everything of which there was need.

Garay was contented with this reply and offer, and a proclamation was promptly made in that town and in all the pueblos, and Alguaciles were despatched to seize the mutinous soldiers and bring them to Garay. Notwithstanding all the penalties that were threatened the proclamation was in vain, and profited nothing; some of those who were brought in as prisoners said that having arrived in the province of Panuco they were no longer bound to follow him [Garay], nor to keep the oath that he had exacted from them, and others were more outspoken and said that Garay was not a captain who knew how to command, nor a fighting man. When Garay saw that proclamations were of no avail, nor the kindly efforts which Cortés's captains seemed to him to be making to bring in his soldiers, he was in despair. Then, when he saw himself abandoned by all, the gentlemen who had come from Cortés advised him to write at once to Cortés himself and they would act as intercessors with him in order that he should return to the Rio de Palmas, [saying] that they believed Cortés to be so well disposed that he would help him in all that he was able, and that Pedro de Alvarado and Sandoval would be surety for it, and would see that he carried it out.

Garay promptly wrote to Cortés giving him a very full account of his voyage, misfortune and hardships, [and said that] if his excellency ordered it he would come to see him and communicate things helpful to the service of God and His Majesty, commending his honour and estate to him [Cortés] and begging him to carry it [the order] out in a way which would in no way diminish his [Garay's] honour. Pedro de Alvarado, Diego de Ocampo and Gonzalo de Sandoval also wrote entreating Cortés on Garay's behalf that he should be assisted in every way.

As they had been great friends in times gone by, when Cortés saw those letters he was moved to pity Garay and

answered him with much gentleness that he was sorry for all his hardships and that he should come to Mexico and he promised to help him in every way he could with the greatest good will, and he should trust to his power, and he ordered that wherever he should pass great honour be paid him and everything provided that he stood in need of, and he even sent refreshments for him along the road, and when he arrived at Texcoco he had a banquet prepared for him and on his arriving at Mexico Cortés and many gentlemen went out to meet him, and Garay was confounded at seeing so many cities and more so when he saw the great city of Mexico. Cortés at once took him off to his palaces which were then being newly built.

When Cortés and Garay found themselves together, Garay related to Cortés his misfortunes and hardships and charged him to amend matters. Cortés promised it to him very willingly and even Pedro de Alvarado and Gonzalo de Sandoval proved themselves friendly intercessors, and within three or four days of his arrival there was talk of marrying a daughter of Cortés named Doña Catalina Cortés or Pizarro, who was a child, to a son of Garay, who was his heir, (and Cortés promised him as a dowry with Doña Catalina Cortés a great number of pesos de oro,) and that Garay himself should go to settle at the Rio de Palmas, and Cortés would supply him with everything that was needful for the settlement and pacification of that province, and he even promised to give him some of his own captains and soldiers so that with their help he would be relieved from anxiety in the wars that might ensue, and with these promises and the good will that Garay met with from Cortés he was very cheerful, and I am convinced that Cortés would carry it out in the way he had agreed and arranged.

Let us leave all this about the marriage and the promises and I will relate how at that time Garay went to lodge in

the house of Alonzo de Villanueva, because Cortés was building his houses and palaces and they were of vast size and had as many courts as the Labyrinth of Crete and as it appears that Alonzo de Villanueva had been in Jamaica, when Cortés sent him to purchase horses, (but I cannot say for certain if this was then or afterwards) he was a very great friend of Garay, and on account of this acquaintance Garay himself begged Cortés that he might go to Villanueva's house, and he [Cortés] paid him all the honour he could and all the settlers in Mexico did the same.

I wish to say that Pánfilo de Narvaez, (he whom we had defeated, as I have already related before) was in Mexico at that time, and he came to visit and talk to Francisco de Garay, and they embraced one another and each one began to talk of his hardships and misfortunes, and Narvaez who spoke very freely in the course of conversation said, half laughing, Señor Adelantado Don Francisco de Garay I have been told by some of the soldiers who mutinied and deserted from you that you said to the gentlemen whom you brought in your fleet "Look to it that we behave like men and fight stoutly against these soldiers of Cortés, do not let them catch us unprepared as they caught Narvaez." Well! Señor Francisco de Garay, when they fought with me they destroyed this eye, and robbed from me and burned all I possessed and even killed my ensign and many soldiers and they captured my captains but they never caught me as unprepared as they have told you I was. I would have you know that there has never been in the world so lucky a man as Cortés, and he has such captains and soldiers that one can quote each one of them as fortunate in his undertakings as Octavius, in conquests as Julius Cæsar, and in overcoming difficulties and fighting battles as Hannibal. Garay replied, there was no necessity to tell him so, one could see what he had

stated in their deeds, for what [other] man in all the world would, with so few soldiers, have dared to run his ships ashore, and trust himself to make war among such strong towns and great cities.

Narvaez answered reciting other great deeds and praises of Cortés and one and the other kept up the talk about the conquest of this New Spain in the manner of a conference.

Let us leave these flatteries that took place between them and say how Garay begged Cortés to give Narvaez permission to return to the Island of Cuba to his wife named Maria de Valenzuela who was rich on account of the mines and the good Indians which Narvaez owned, and, in addition to Garay begging it of him with many entreaties, the wife of Narvaez herself had sent to beg Cortés in writing to let her husband go, for it appears they were known to one another when Cortés was living in Cuba, and they were compadres.¹ So Cortés gave him permission and assisted him with two thousand pesos de oro. As soon as Narvaez received this permission he humbled himself greatly before Cortés, and after first promising him that in all matters he would be his servant, he went off promptly to Cuba.

We will not talk any more about this, but state what was the end of Garay and his fleet, and it was this, that on going one Christmas night in the year fifteen hundred and twenty three, in company with Cortés to Matins, after returning from the church, they breakfasted with much merriment, and an hour later, Garay was caught in a sudden draught and not having been well before, was taken with pleurisy and high fever. Doctors were sent for to bleed and purge him and when they saw that the malady was increasing they told him that he had better confess and make his will, which he did at once and left Cortés as excutor, and after receiving the holy Sacra-

¹ The relationship between godfather and godmother.

ments, within four days of being taken ill he gave up his soul to our Lord Jesus Christ who created it. The land of Mexico has this peculiarity, that within three or four days they die of this malady of a pain in the side [pleurisy] as I have already stated before, as we had already learned by experience when we were at Texcoco and Coyoacan and so many of our soldiers died. So Garay was dead, may God pardon him. Amen. They paid high honour to him in his funeral and Cortés and other gentlemen put on mourning.

As there were some malicious persons who were on bad terms with Cortés, there were not wanting those who said that he had ordered arsenic to be given Garay in his breakfast and it was great wickedness on the part of those who thus slandered him, for he certainly died a natural death and the doctors Ojeda and the Licentiate Pedro López, who attended him, swore that it was so.

Garay died away from his own country, and in a strange house and far from his wife and children.

Let us cease talking about this and speak again of the province of Panuco. When Garay had come away to Mexico, as his captains and soldiers had no chief nor any one to command them, they wished to make captain one of the soldiers whom I will here name, whom Garay brought in his company, these were called Juan de Grijalva, Gonzalo de Figueroa, Alonzo de Mendoza, Lorenzo de Ulloa, Juan de Medina the squint-eyed, Juan Dávila, Antonio de la Cerda, and one Taborda, this Taborda was the most turbulent of all those in Garay's camp, and over all of them there was appointed as Captain a son of Garay whom Cortés wished to marry to his daughter, but they did not respect him or pay any attention to him, neither those whom I have named nor any others of his company, on the contrary, they got together in parties of fifteen or twenty and went about robbing the pueblos and seizing by

force the women and the cloths and poultry as though they were in the land of the Moors robbing whatsoever they could find.

When the Indians of that province observed this, they agreed one and all to kill them, and within a few days they sacrificed and ate more than five hundred Spaniards all belonging to Garay's party. In one pueblo it happened that they sacrificed more than one hundred Spaniards together; in most of the pueblos they only killed, sacrificed and ate the stray Spaniards who were wandering about, for these could neither offer resistance nor would they obey the settlers of the town of Santistevan which Cortés had established. When they [the settlers] sallied out to make war on them [the Indians,] the multitude of warriors was so great that they could avail nothing against them, and things came to such a pass, and the Indians grew so daring, that many of them attacked the town and fought so boldly by day and by night, that it ran great risk of being taken, and had it not been for seven or eight Conquistadores, old followers of Cortés, and for the Captain Vallejo, who posted sentinels and went the rounds and encouraged the rest, [the Indians] would certainly have entered the town. Those Conquistadores told the rest of the soldiers of Garay that they must always endeavour to keep close to them in the field, and that there in the open they were much better off and that they should not return to the town, and so it was done, and they fought with them [the Indians] three times and although the Captain Vallejo was killed and many others were wounded they defeated the Indians and killed many of them. All the Indians, natives of that province, (I cannot now remember the name of it) were so furious that on one night they burned to ashes forty Spaniards and killed fifteen horses, and many of the men were followers of Cortés and all the rest followers of Garay.

When Cortes came to know about the havoc they wrought in this province he was so angry that he wished to go against them in person, but as he was very ill with a broken arm he could not go, and he promptly ordered Gonzalo de Sandoval to go with a hundred soldiers, fifty horsemen, two cannon and fifteen musketeers and crossbowmen and he gave him eight thousand Tlaxcalans and Mexicans and he ordered him, not to return until he left them well punished so that they could not revolt again.

Sandoval was very valiant, and when he was entrusted with matters of importance neither slept at night nor delayed long on the road, and he gave orders to the horsemen with the greatest forethought how they were to charge in and out among the enemy. As he had received news that all the companies of warriors of those provinces were awaiting him at two bad passes, he determined to send one half of his army to one bad pass, and he halted with the other half of his company on the other pass, and he gave orders to all the musketeers and crossbowmen that only some of them should fire while the others loaded, and that they should attack the enemy and see if they could put them to flight. The enemy shot off many javelins, arrows and stones and wounded eight soldiers and many of our allies. When Sandoval saw that he could not get through them, he stayed at that pass until it was night and sent to order the others who were at the other pass to do the same. The enemy never deserted their posts, and the following morning when Sandoval saw that he was not gaining any advantage by staying there as he had ordered, he sent to summon the other companies, whom he had sent to the other bad pass, and made them strike camp and return on the road to Mexico as though they were frightened. When the natives of those provinces who were close by thought that they were retreating through fear, they came out into

the road and followed after them yelling and shouting out insults, and although more Indians were coming out in his rear, still Sandoval never turned on them, and this was to put them off their guard so that as they had already stood waiting there three days, he could return and get through the bad passes that night with all his army. This he did returning at midnight and, catching them somewhat off their guard, he got through with his horsemen, but it was not so free from danger, for they killed three of his horses and wounded many soldiers. As soon as he found himself and his armies in good country and clear of the bad pass, he on one side and the rest of his company on the other, fell on the great squadrons which had collected together that night as soon as they knew that he had turned back, and they were so numerous that Sandoval had some mis-giving lest they should break his ranks and rout him, and he ordered his soldiers to close upon him so that they might fight together, for he saw and understood that enemies of that sort would come like rabid tigers and throw themselves on the points of their swords. They had already captured six lances from the horsemen who were not men accustomed to warfare, and Sandoval was so angry at this that he said it would have been better to bring fewer soldiers [but men] whom he knew, instead of those he had brought.

He there gave instructions to the horsemen who had lately arrived how they were to fight, that is with their lances held rather short, and not to stop to give thrusts, except at the faces, and to press on ahead until the enemy were put to flight, and he told them that it was a well-known thing that if they stopped to give thrusts that the first thing the wounded Indian did was to catch hold of the lance; that as soon as they saw the enemy turn tail that then they should follow them at an easy pace the lance still held short, and if they [the Indians] should catch hold of the lance, (for even then they will grab at them,)

they should put spurs to their horse, and wrest it quickly out of their hands, holding the lance tightly with the hand and firmly grasped under the arm so as to gain more strength to drag it from the power of the enemy, and if he would not leave go to drag him along by the strength of the horse.

Then when he had already given them orders how they were to fight and had seen all his soldiers and horsemen closed up together, he camped that night on the banks of a river, and there he stationed good sentinels, and watchmen and patrols and ordered the horses to be kept saddled and bitted throughout the night, and the musketeers cross-bowmen and soldiers all to be on the alert. He ordered the Tlaxcalans and Mexicans to encamp their companies a little way apart from us, for he already had experience in the affairs at Mexico that if the enemy were to come during the night to attack the camps our allies would be no hindrance to them. Sandoval was afraid they would come because he had observed companies of the enemy gathering together very near his camps, and made sure they must come and attack us that night, and he heard many yells and trumpets and drums very near by. It was understood that our allies had told Sandoval what the enemy were saying, that as soon as dawn came they intended to kill Sandoval and all his company. The patrols came twice to give notice that troops were being called together from many parts and were assembling, and as soon as there was daylight Sandoval commanded all his companies to set out in grand array. He once more reminded the horsemen of what he had often told them before, and they advanced through the field towards some huts where they heard the drums and trumpets, and they had hardly gone a quarter of a league before three squadrons of warriors came out to meet him and began to surround them. When he saw that he ordered half of the

horsemen to attack them on one side and the other half on the other, and although they killed two of the soldiers who had lately come from Castile, and three horses, still he broke them up in such a way that from that time on he kept on killing and wounding them and they did not get together as before. Then our allies the Mexicans and Tlaxcalans did much damage in all those pueblos, and captured many persons and set fire to all the pueblos they found before them until Sandoval was able to reach the town of Santistevan del Puerto and found the settlers in such a state and so weakened that they kept inside, some of them badly wounded and others ill, and what was worse they had no corn to eat neither they nor the twenty eight horses, and this was because they were attacked both by day and by night and they had no opportunity to bring in maize or anything else, and up to the very day that Sandoval arrived they [the Indians] had not desisted from attacking them, but they then abandoned the attack.

After all the settlers of that town had gone to see and speak to Captain Sandoval and to give him thanks and praise for having come to them in time to rescue them, they told him about Garay and that had it not been for seven or eight old Conquistadores, followers of Cortés, who helped them greatly, they would have run great risk of losing their lives, for those eight [soldiers] went out every day into the open, and made the other soldiers go out also and held out so that the enemy could not get into the town, for they acted as leaders and everything was done according to their advice, and they ordered the sick and wounded to stay inside the town and all the rest to wait in the open, and in that way they held out against the enemy.

Sandoval embraced them all and ordered these same Conquistadores, whom he knew well and who were his friends, especially one Navarrete y Carracosa and one de

Alamilla and five others, all followers of Cortés, to divide among them the horsemen, musketeers, and cross-bowmen which [he] Sandoval had brought with him, and go in two directions and bring in maize and supplies and make war and capture all the people they were able, especially the Caciques. Sandoval gave these orders because he could not go himself as he was badly wounded in the thigh, and had been struck by a stone in the face. Many other soldiers in his company were wounded, and so that they should get cured he stayed in the town for three days and did not go out to make war, for as he had sent out the captains already mentioned, and knew that they would do well, and saw that they quickly sent in maize and supplies, on this account he remained in camp for three days.

They also sent him many Indian women and common people who had been captured and five chieftains who had been captains in the wars, and Sandoval ordered them to free all the common people except the chieftains, and sent them word that from that time onwards only those should be taken who were concerned in the death of Spaniards, and no women nor boys, and that with kindly words they should send to summon them, and they did so.

Certain soldiers from among those who had come with Garay who were persons of importance whom Sandoval found in that town, and who were those through whose doings those provinces had risen in revolt, (I have already named most of them in the last chapter) when they observed that nothing whatever was apportioned to them by the followers of Cortés, began to murmur among themselves and they even persuaded other soldiers to speak evil of Sandoval and his actions, and even began to talk of raising an insurrection in the country, under the pretence that the son of Francisco de Garay was there with them as Adelantado. When Sandoval got to know about it, he spoke very clearly to them and said "Gentlemen, instead

of thinking well of me, because thanks to God, I came to your assistance, I have been told that you say things that gentlemen such as you are should not say, I am not depriving you of your position and honour by sending those whom I found here as leaders and captains, if I had found your honours here as commanders how base would I have been, if I had deprived you of your commands. I should like to know one thing. Why were you not commanders before the siege was raised? What you have one and all told me, is that if it had not been for those seven old soldiers that you would have suffered greater hardships, and as they knew the country better than your honours for that reason I appointed them. Therefore gentlemen in all our conquests in Mexico we do not consider these points and matters, but only how to serve His Majesty well and loyally; and thus I beg that from now onwards you will do the same. I shall not stay in this province many days, unless they kill me here, as I am going to Mexico. The man who will be left here as lieutenant of Cortés will give you plenty of employment, as for me, grant me your pardon."

With this he finished with them, yet they did not give up their ill will towards him. After this had taken place Sandoval promptly set out the following day with those whom he had brought in his company from Mexico, and with the seven whom he had sent out, and he had such a method that he captured as many as twenty Caciques all of them concerned in the death of over six hundred Spaniards who had been killed, partly followers of Garay, and partly followers of Cortés who had remained as settlers in the town. He also sent to summon all the other towns to make peace, and many of them came, and with the others he forgave it although they did not come. When this was done he wrote post haste to Cortés giving him an account of all that had happened, and [asking] what his

orders were with regard to the prisoners, and as Vallejo (whom Cortés had appointed his lieutenant) was dead of an arrow wound, who should be put in his place? He also wrote to say that the soldiers, mentioned by me, had behaved like very brave men. When Cortés saw the letter he was delighted that the province was already at peace, and at the time the letter was given to Cortés there were in his company many gentlemen who were Conquistadores and others who had come from Spain, and Cortés said before them all "Oh! Gonzalo de Sandoval under what great obligation I am to you and of how many difficulties you relieve me." And all praised him highly, saying that he was a very perfect captain, and might be classed among the most famous.

Let us leave these praises and say that Cortés promptly wrote [to say] that, in order that with more justification he could legally punish those who were concerned in the death of so many Spaniards and robberies of goods and deaths of horses, he would send the chief Alcalde Diego de Ocampo to act as judge, and the punishment to which he would justly sentence them should be carried out, and he ordered him as far as he was able to appease the natives of that province, and not allow the followers of Garay nor any other persons whatever to rob or illtreat them.

When Sandoval saw the letter and that Diego de Ocampo was coming he was rejoiced at it, and within two days of the arrival of the chief Alcalde Ocampo, after Sandoval had given him an account of what he had done and what had happened, they commenced a suit against the captains and Caciques who were concerned in the deaths of the Spaniards, and on account of their confessions they pronounced sentence against them and some of them they hanged and burned, and others they pardoned and they gave the office of Cacique to their sons and brothers to whom it would descend by right.

When this had been done, it appears that Diego de Ocampo brought instructions and orders from Cortés for an enquiry as to who those were who invaded and robbed the country and busied themselves in factions and quarrels enticing other soldiers to mutiny, and he ordered that they should be made to embark in a ship and sent to the Island of Cuba, and he even sent two thousand pesos for Juan de Grijalva if he should wish to return to Cuba [and said] that if he wished to remain he would help him and give him full permission to come to Mexico and the end of many arguments was that all willingly wished to return to the Island of Cuba where they owned Indians, so he ordered them to be given plentiful supplies of maize and poultry and all the things that the country produced and they returned to their homes in the Island of Cuba.

As soon as this was done Sandoval and Diego de Ocampo returned to Mexico where they were well received by Cortés and all the City, and from that time onwards that province never revolted again. Let us cease to speak further about it and relate what happened to the Licentiate Zuazo in the voyage when he came from Cuba to New Spain.

CHAPTER CLXIII.

How the Licentiate Alonzo de Zuazo came in a Caravel to New Spain and ran on some Islands called Las Víboras (the Vipers) and what else happened to him.

AS I have already related in the last chapter, which speaks about the visit of the Licentiate Zuazo to Francisco de Garay at the Port of Xagua which is in the Island of Cuba, near to La Trinidad, and how Garay pressed him to come along in his fleet so as to act as mediator between him and Cortés, because he was well aware that disputes over the Government of Panuco were sure to arise, and Zuazo

promised to do so after he had rendered an account of the Residencia, for the responsibility rested with him of seeing justice done in that Island of Cuba where he was at present living. As soon as he [Zuazo] was through with his work he hastened to hand in his reports and to set sail and get to New Spain whither he had promised to go. He embarked in a small ship and whilst proceeding on his voyage, after passing the Point called San Anton, which is also called the land of the Guanataveys, who are savage Indians and do not serve Spaniards, sailing in his ship which was of small burden, either because his pilot mistook the course or because the course was varied by currents, he struck on some islands which are among the shoals known as Las Víboras. Not far distant from these shoals are others called Los Alacranes, and among these Islands large ships have often been lost, and what saved the life of Zuazo was that his ship was of small burden.

To return to our story; so as to get the ship to an Island which they saw near-by, which was not flooded by the sea, they threw overboard much salt pork and other things which they had brought as ship's stores so as to lighten the ship and be able to reach the island without touching ground. Then a great number of sharks fell on the pork, and were so greedy that they seized one of the sailors who had jumped into the water, which was up to their waists, and tore him to pieces and swallowed him, and if the rest of the sailors had not quickly returned to the Caravel all would have perished, as the sharks were inflamed with the blood of the sailor they had killed. Using their best efforts they reached the Island with the Caravel, and as they had already thrown into the sea the supplies and cassava bread, they had nothing to eat, nor any water to drink, nor fire, nor anything else with which to sustain themselves, save only some sun-dried beef which they had failed to throw into

the sea. By good luck they had brought in the Caravel two Cuban Indians who knew how to make fire with some small dry sticks which they found on the Island to which they were carried, and with these they made fire, and they dug in a sand beach and got out some brackish water. As the Island was small and had sand beaches, many turtles as broad and round and bigger than large shields, came to lay their eggs there, and as they came out [of the water] the Cuban Indians turned them over with their shells upwards, and each one of them was wont to lay over two hundred eggs about the size of ducks' eggs, so with these turtles and many eggs they had enough to sustain the thirteen persons who escaped to that Island. They also killed some seals which came out by night to the sand beach and were very good as food.

Finding themselves in this condition, as there happened to have come in the Caravel two ships carpenters and who had their tools with them, they determined to build a boat in which to sail, and with the boards, nails, tow, tackle and sails which they took from the ship that was wrecked they made a very good boat, like a jolly-boat, in which three sailors, one soldier and a Cuban Indian set out for New Spain. For supplies they carried turtle and the cooked [flesh of the] seals, and with some brackish water and a chart and ships compass, after commending themselves to God, they went on their voyage sometimes with fair weather and sometimes with foul, until they arrived at the port of Chalcocueca, which is the Rio de Banderas, where at that time the merchandize that came from Spain was discharged, and thence to Medellin where Simon de Cuenca was stationed as Lieutenant for Cortés. When the sailors who came in the boat told the Lieutenant the great danger in which the Licentiate Zuazo was placed, Simon de Cuenca promptly, without any delay, searched for sailors and a ship of small burden, and despatched

it with plentiful supplies to the Island where Zuazo was [stranded].

And Simon de Cuenca wrote to the Licentiate himself how delighted Cortés would be at his coming, and at the same time he let Cortés know all that had happened and how he had sent the ship well supplied. Cortés was pleased at the good provision that the Lieutenant had made and ordered that when he [Zuazo] arrived in port he should be given all that was needful, clothes and horses, and that he should be sent to Mexico.

Let me go back to say that the ship had a good voyage to the Island, at which Zuazo and his people were rejoiced, and they embarked in it and with good weather speedily arrived at Medellin, where much honour was paid him, and he went to Mexico, and Cortés gave orders that they should go out to receive him and carried him off to his palaces, rejoiced with him, and made him his chief Alcalde. So ended the voyage of the Licentiate Alonzo de Zuazo and let us cease talking about it. I declare that this account that I have given is taken from a letter that Cortés wrote us to the town of Coatzacoalcos to the municipality, in which what I have here said was stated, and within two months this very boat in which the sailors had come to give the news about Zuazo, arrived at the port of that town, and it was there used as a lighter for discharging cargo, and the same sailors told us the story in the way it is here written down. Let us leave this and I will relate how Cortés sent Pedro de Alvarado to pacify the provinces of Guatemala.

CHAPTER CLXIV.

How Cortés sent Pedro de Alvarado to the province of Guatemala to found a city and bring the people to peace, and what was done about it.

CORTÉS always had lofty thoughts and in his ambition to command and rule wished in everything to copy Alexander of Macedon, and as he always had excellent Captains and accomplished soldiers about him, after he had established the great cities of Mexico, Oaxaca, Zacatula, Colima, la Vera Cruz, Panuco and Coatzacoalcos, as he had received news that in the Province of Guatemala there were strong towns with large populations, and that there were mines there, he determined to send Pedro de Alvarado to conquer and settle it; for although Cortés himself had already sent to that province to beg the people to come in peaceably, they would not come. So he gave to Alvarado for that expedition over three hundred soldiers and among them one hundred and twenty musketeers and crossbowmen. Moreover, he gave him one hundred and thirty five horsemen and four cannon and much powder, and a gunner named something de Usagre and over two hundred Tlaxcalans and Cholulans, who went as auxiliaries. Then he gave him [Alvarado] his instructions, charging him to endeavour with the greatest care to bring the people to peace without making war on them, and to preach matters concerning our holy faith by means of certain interpreters and ecclesiastics whom he took with him, and not to permit sacrifices nor sodomy nor the robbing of one another; and that when he met with prisons and cages in which it was the custom to keep Indians confined in order to fatten them up for food, he should break them down, and liberate the captives from the prisons, and with kindness and good-will he should

bring the people to render obedience to His Majesty, and in all respects should treat them well.

Then after Pedro de Alvarado had said good-bye to Cortés and all the gentlemen who were his friends in Mexico, they took leave of one another and he set out from that city on the thirteenth day of the month of November in the year fifteen hundred and twenty three.

Cortés ordered him to go by certain rocky hills in the province of Tehuantepec, which were near his road, where the people were in revolt. He brought [the inhabitants of] these rocky hills to peace. The hill was known as the Peñol de Guelamo because it was then in the encomienda of a soldier named Guelamo.

From thence he went to Tehuantepec, a large pueblo of the Zapotecs, where they received him very well for they were at peace, and they had already gone from that town (as I have stated in a former chapter which tells about it) to Mexico and given their fealty to His Majesty and had seen Cortés and moreover had taken him a good present of gold.

From Tehuantepec he [Alvarado] went to the province of Soconusco, which at that time was thickly peopled by more than fifteen thousand inhabitants¹; they also received him peaceably and gave him a present of gold and surrendered themselves as vassals to His Majesty. From Soconusco he arrived near to another group of villages named Zapotitlan,² and on the road at a bridge over a river where there was a bad pass, he came across many squadrons of warriors who were waiting for him to prevent his passage, and he fought a battle with them in which they killed a horse and wounded many soldiers and two of them

¹ The word is *vecinos*, which here applied to natives probably means households, not individuals.

² Capotitan in the text. (Zapote in the District of Soconusco, State of Chiapas?)

died of their wounds. So numerous were the Indians who had joined together against Alvarado, not only from Zapotitlan but from other towns in the neighbourhood, that in spite of the number that they [the Spaniards] wounded they were not able to drive them off. Three times they attacked Alvarado and it pleased Our Lord that he conquered them and they made peace.

From Zapotitlan the road led to a strong pueblo named Quetzaltenango, and before reaching it he had other encounters with the natives of that pueblo and with others from a neighbouring pueblo called Utatlan¹ which was the capital of certain pueblos which in their turn are in the neighbourhood of Quetzaltenango, and they wounded some soldiers and killed three horses, although Pedro de Alvarado and his people killed and wounded many of the Indians. Then there was a bad ascent for more than a league and a half through a defile. With the musketeers and crossbowmen and all his soldiers in good order he began the ascent, and at the top of the pass he found a fat Indian woman who was a witch, and a dog (one of those they breed because they are good to eat and do not know how to bark) sacrificed. Further on he came upon a vast number of warriors who were laying in wait for him, and they began to surround him; as the track was bad and among mountains the horsemen were not able to gallop or turn swiftly nor to make use of their mounts, but the musketeers and crossbowmen and soldiers with sword and shield fought stoutly with them hand to hand, and they went on fighting from the hill and pass downwards until they reached some barrancas where they had another but not very severe skirmish with other squadrons of warriors which were waiting for them in those barrancas. This was owing to a stratagem which

¹ Utlatan in the text.

they had arranged among themselves in this manner: that as Pedro de Alvarado advanced fighting, they should pretend to retreat, and as he would go on pursuing them to where over six thousand warriors, men from Utatlan and other pueblos subject to them were laying in wait there they intended to kill them (the Spaniards). Pedro de Alvarado and all his soldiers fought with them with the highest courage, and the Indians wounded twenty-six or twenty seven soldiers and two horses; nevertheless he [Alvarado] put them to flight, but they had not gone far before they rallied with other squadrons and turned to fight again, thinking to defeat Pedro de Alvarado. It was near a spring that they awaited them so as again to come hand to hand, and many of the Indians would lay in wait by twos and threes near to a horse and try by force to pull it down, and others caught them by the tail. And here Pedro de Alvarado found himself in great straits, for the enemy were so numerous they were not able to bear up against the squadrons who attacked them from so many directions. Then he and all his men, as soon as they saw that they had either to conquer or die, fearing that they might not defeat the enemy, on account of the cramped position in which they found themselves, made a bold attack with the muskets and crossbows and with sturdy sword cuts, and obliged them to draw back somewhat. Then the horsemen were not slow in spearing the enemy and trampling them down and passing through them until they had them routed, so that they did not assemble again for three days. When he [Alvarado] saw that there was no longer any enemy with whom to fight, he remained in the open country foraging and seeking for food, without going to any settlement for two days. Then he went with all his army to the pueblo of Quetzaltenango, and there he learnt that in the past battles they had killed two Captains who were Lords of Utatlan. While he was resting and

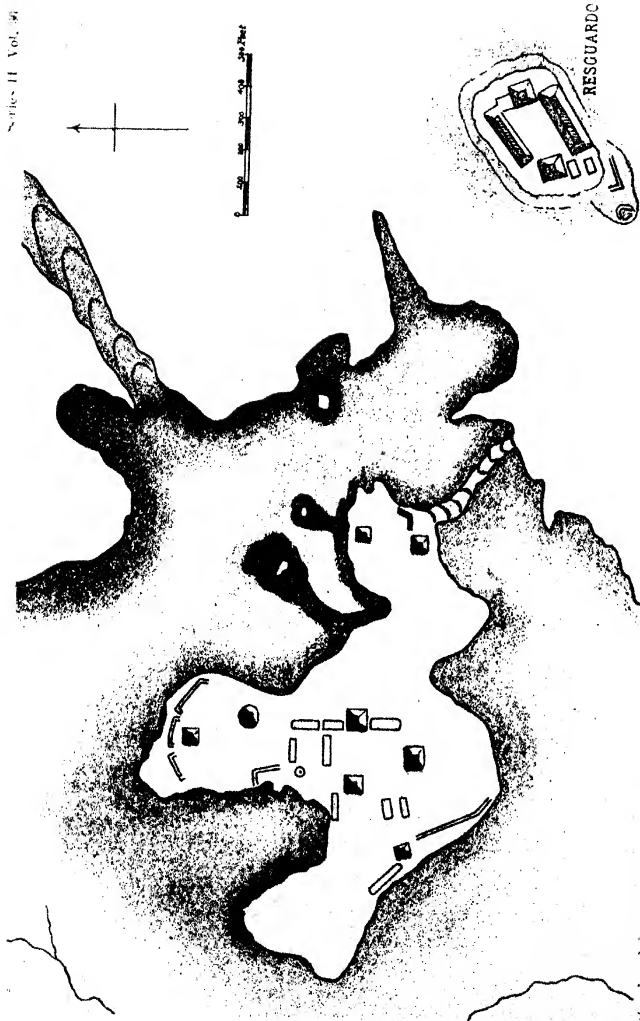
tending the wounded he received the news that all the forces of those neighbouring pueblos were again marching against him ; that a great number had assembled together,¹ and they were coming with the determination to die to the last man or to conquer.

When Pedro de Alvarado knew this he sallied out with his army to a plain, and as the enemy came on with such determination and began to surround the army and to shoot javelins, arrows and stones and [to attack] with lances, and as the ground was level, and the horses were able to gallop in all directions, he charged on the squadrons of the enemy in a way that soon made them turn their backs. Here many soldiers were wounded as well as a horse, and it seems that some Indian Chieftains from that pueblo itself were killed as well as from all that country, so that after the victory those pueblos had a great fear of Alvarado, and the whole of the district agreed to send to him and beg for peace, and they sent him a present of gold of little value to induce him to make peace.

It was fully agreed between all the Caciques of all the pueblos in the province that they should again collect a far greater number of warriors than before, and they ordered their warriors to assemble secretly among the barrancas of that town of Utatlan.

If they sent to ask for peace it was because Pedro de Alvarado and his army were in Quetzaltenango making expeditions and raids and continually bringing in Indian men and women as prisoners, and so as to induce him to go to another pueblo named Utatlan which was stronger and surrounded by barrancas, in order that when they had him inside, in a place where they thought they could get

¹ Blotted out in the original, "more than two Xiquipiles, that is sixteen thousand Indians, for each Xiquipil numbers eight thousand warriors.



Reproduced for the Hakluyt Society by Donald Macbeth

Plan of the Ruins of Utatlan

Surveyed by A. P. Maudslayi, Jan. 1887

the better of him and his soldiers, they might attack them with their warriors who were already prepared and hidden away for that purpose.

Let us go back to say that when the numerous chieftains came before Pedro de Alvarado with the present, after making obeisance according to their custom, they asked his pardon for the past wars and offered themselves as vassals of His Majesty, and said that as their pueblo was large and in a pleasanter position and was nearer to other townships where they could attend to him better, they begged him to go there with them.

Pedro de Alvarado received it [the present] with great [show of] affection, and did not understand the cunning they were employing, and after alluding again to the evil they had done in making war, he accepted their overture of peace. The next day early he accompanied them with his army to Utatlan¹ for so the pueblo was called.

When he had made his entry, he saw what a stronghold it was, for it had two gateways, and one of them had twenty-five steps before entering the town, and the other entrance was by a causeway that was very bad and broken in two places, and the houses were close together and the streets narrow, and there were neither women nor children in any part of the town, which was surrounded by barrancas, and no food had been provided except what was bad and [that came] late and the chieftains were very shiftily in their speeches. [Moreover] some Indians from Quetzaltenango warned Pedro de Alvarado that that very night it was intended to burn them all in the town if they remained there and that many squadrons of warriors had been stationed in the barrancas so that as soon as they saw the houses were burning they should join the people of Utatlan and attack them [the Spaniards] some from

¹ Vtlatan, in the text.

one side and some from the other and that with the fire and the smoke they would be helpless and would be burned alive.

When Pedro de Alvarado understood the grave danger in which they stood, he quickly ordered his Captains and all his army without delay to get out into the open, and he told them the danger they were in, and when they understood it there was no delay in getting out on to the level part close to some barrancas, for just then they had not time to get [right] out into the open plain from the midst of such dangerous passes.

Throughout this Pedro de Alvarado displayed good will towards the Caciques and chieftains of that town and of the other towns in the neighbourhood and told them that as the horses were accustomed to go about grazing in the fields for a part of the day, that was the cause of his having come out of the town, as the houses and streets were so crowded. The Caciques were very sorrowful at seeing them depart in this way, and Pedro de Alvarado could no longer tolerate the treason which they had planned in concert with the squadrons that they had assembled, so he ordered the Cacique of the town to be seized and as justly ordered him to be burned, and he gave the lordship to his son. Then he promptly got out on to the level land away from the barrancas and fought the squadrons which had been got ready for the purpose I have mentioned, and after having thus provoked his strength and ill will, they were defeated.

Let us cease talking about this and say how at that time news had reached a large pueblo called Guatemala¹ of the battles that Pedro de Alvarado had fought since he entered the Province, in all of which he had been victorious, and

¹ Guatemala in the text. This is Tecpan-Guatemala, or Iximché, about 23 miles N.E. of the Lake of Atitlan.



Reproduced for the Hakluyt Society by Donald Macbeth

Plan of the Ruins of Iximché (Guatemala)

Surveyed by A. P. Maudslay, 1887

To face page 278

that at present he was in the land of Utatlan whence he was making expeditions and attacking many pueblos. As the people of Utatlan and their dependent pueblos were enemies of the people of Guatemala,¹ the latter determined to send messengers with a present of gold to Pedro de Alvarado and offer themselves as Vassals to His Majesty and they sent word that if he had any need of their personal services for that war they would come.

Pedro de Alvarado received them with good will and gave them many thanks for their offer, and in order to see if what they had told him was true, and because he knew nothing of the country, he sent to ask for two thousand warriors to show him the way, and he did so on account of the many barrancas and bad passes that had been intentionally made in order to impede their passage, so that if it were necessary they [the native warriors] should put them in order, and they could carry the baggage. The people of Guatemala sent them (the warriors) to him with their captains.

Pedro de Alvarado remained in the province of Utatlan seven or eight days, making raids against the rebel pueblos which had given their fealty to His Majesty and after giving it had risen in revolt. They branded many slaves and Indian women, and after the royal fifth was paid the rest were divided among the soldiers. Then he went to the City of Guatemala and was received and entertained by the Caciques of that city, who told him that near by there were some pueblos on the borders of a lake who were their enemies and made war on them and they held possession of a very strong rocky hill, and that the people of that pueblo although they knew well that they [the Spaniards] were not far off, and that Pedro de Alvarado

¹ Utatlan was the Capital of the Quichés, Guatemala the Capital of the Cachiuels.

was with them, did not come to tender their fealty as the other pueblos had done, and they were bad people and of worse habits. The said pueblo was called Atitlan¹ and Pedro de Alvarado sent to summon them to come and make peace, and told them that he would treat them well and sent them other smooth messages.

The reply they made was to ill-treat his messengers. Seeing that this availed nothing, he sent other messengers to induce them to make peace, and because he sent three times to ask for peace, and each time they used abusive words [to his messengers], Pedro de Alvarado went in person to them, and he took with him over one hundred and forty soldiers and among them twenty musketeers and crossbowmen and forty horsemen and two thousand Guatemalans. When he arrived near the pueblo he again requested them to make peace, and they only replied to him with bows and arrows and began to shoot.

When he saw this and that not far off there was a rocky hill in the water crowded with warriors, he went to the margin of the lake and two fine squadrons of Indian warriors came out to meet him with great lances and good bows and arrows and many other arms and corselets, sounding their drums, and with ensigns and plumes, and he fought with them for a good while and many of the soldiers were wounded, but the enemy did not remain long on the field but went fleeing for protection to the rocky hill, with Pedro de Alvarado and his soldiers after them.

They soon gained possession of the Peñol and many [of the enemy] were killed and wounded, and there would have been more if they had not all thrown themselves into the water and crossed to an island.

Then they [the Spaniards] looted the houses which were near the lake and went to a plain where there were many

¹ Atitan in the text.



THE LAKE OF ATITLAN.
SMOKE and CLOUD.

Photo by A. P. Maudslayi.

maize fields and they slept there that night. The next day early in the morning, they went to the pueblo of Atitlan, for so I have already said it was called, and found it deserted. Then he ordered his men to scour the country and the orchards of Cacao trees¹ of which there were many, and they brought in two chieftains of that pueblo as prisoners.

Pedro de Alvarado promptly sent these two chieftains, together with those who had been captured the day before, to beg the other Caciques to make peace, saying that he would give up all the prisoners to them and would receive them and pay them honour, but if they did not come he would wage war on them as he had on the people of Quetzaltenango and Utatlan and would cut down the trees in their Cacao plantations and do all the damage he could.

At the end of more arguments with these promises and threats they soon came to make peace and brought a present of gold and offered themselves as vassals to His Majesty.

Then Pedro de Alvarado and his army returned to Guatemala and were there some days without doing anything worthy of record, but all the pueblos of the neighbourhood made peace as well as others on the south coast named the Pipiles. Many of these pueblos which came to make peace complained that on the road by which they came there was a town called Escuintepeque² where there were bad people who would not allow them to pass through their country, but came to rob their pueblos and

¹ Alvarado, in his letter to Cortés describing this expedition, says nothing about cacao plantations, certainly there are no cacao plantations at the level of the lake, 5000 ft. above the sea. The Spaniards must have gone over the pass and down the Pacific slope to find them.

² Escuintla or Mataquescuintla?

they made many other complaints against them, and they were not true, for persons whose words are worthy of credit say that they [the complaints] were made up, and he [Alvarado] went there to rob them of very beautiful Indian women and did not summon them to make peace.

Pedro de Alvarado determined to go to them with his entire force of horsemen, musketeers and crossbowmen and many allies from Guatemala, and he fell upon them one morning by surprise and did them great damage and made many captures, and it would have been better had he not done so, for, as in justice must be admitted it was an ill deed and not in accordance with His Majesty's commands.

Now we have told the story of the Conquest and pacification of Guatemala and its provinces, and it is told more completely in a history which has been compiled of it by a settler in Guatemala a relation of the Alvarados, named Gonzalo de Alvarado, where it can be seen more fully, in case I have here made any mistakes.

I say this because I was not present at these conquests [and did not enter this country] until the time that we passed through these provinces when they were all at war in the year 1524, and that was when we came from Higueras and Honduras with Captain Luis Marin, and we found ourselves there at the time that we were returning to Mexico, and moreover I state that we had at that time some warlike encounters with the natives of Guatemala and they had made many pits and impediments in bad passes among the mountains so that we should not pass on account of the great barrancas, and even between a town named Cuajiniquilapa¹ and Petapa in some deep ravines we were detained fighting with the natives of that land for two days for we could not cross a bad pass, and

¹ Juanagaçapa in the text.

then they wounded me with an arrow shot, but it was a small matter, and we got through with great difficulty although many warriors from Guatemala and other towns, were stationed in the pass.

As there is much to tell about this and I am obliged to recall to mind some things which should come in their proper time and place, (and all this happened at the time when there was a report that Cortés and all of us who had gone with him to Higuera were dead) I will leave it now and tell about the expedition that Cortés sent to Higuera and Honduras; I will also state that in this province of Guatemala the Indians were not fighters for they only lay in wait for us in the barrancas, and with their arrows they did nothing.

CHAPTER CLXV.

How Cortés sent a fleet to pacify and conquer the provinces of Higuera and Honduras, and sent Cristóbal de Olid as Captain, and what happened I will go on to relate.

NOW Cortés heard news that there were rich lands and good mines in the country of Higuera and Honduras, and some pilots who had been in those parts, or very near to them, gave him to understand that they had met with some Indians fishing in the sea, whose nets they had seized, and the sinkers attached to them for the fishing were made of a mixture of gold and copper, and they also told him that in those parts they believed that there was a strait by which one could pass from the north to the south coast. Moreover, as we understood that His Majesty had instructed and ordered Cortés during all his discoveries to be on the look-out, and use the greatest diligence and perseverance in searching for a strait, pass or passage to the Spice Islands, so at this time, whether it was on account of the

gold, or to search for the passage, Cortés decided to send Cristóbal de Olid, who had been Quartermaster during the affair of Mexico, as Captain of the expedition—on the one hand because he was a man of his own making, and was married to a Portuguese lady named Doña Felipa de Arauz, already mentioned by me on other occasions,—on the other hand because Cristóbal de Olid held a good assignment of Indians near to Mexico, and Cortés thought he would be faithful and do what he was told to do.

Because such a long journey by land involved great difficulty, hardship and expense, he decided to send him by sea as it would not be so troublesome and costly, and he gave him five ships and a sloop well supplied with guns and powder and provisions and sent in them one hundred crossbowmen and musketeers and twenty-two horses, and among the soldiers were five Conquistadores of our company who came with Cortés himself in the beginning, and had served His Majesty well throughout the conquest, and they already possessed homes and were taking their rest. I thus express it because it was no use saying to Cortés, "Señor, let me take a rest, for I have done work enough," for he made them go, whither he ordered, by force if they would not go willingly.

He (Cristóbal de Olid) took with him one Briones, a native of Salamanca who had been a Captain of a launch and a soldier in Italy, and this Briones was very turbulent and an enemy of Cortés, and he took many other soldiers who were not on good terms with Cortés because he had not given them good assignments of Indians nor shares of the gold. In the instructions which Cortés gave him (C. de Olid) it was stated that from the port of Villa Rica his course would be to the Havana, and that there in the Havana he would find one Alonzo de Contreras an old soldier of Cortés, a native of the town of Orgaz, who had taken with him six thousand pesos de oro, with which to

buy horses and cassava, hogs, bacon and other things necessary for the fleet. Cortés sent this soldier on ahead of Cristóbal de Olid, because if the settlers at the Havana saw the fleet approaching they would raise the price of horses and all the other provisions. He ordered Cristóbal de Olid, on arriving at the Havana to take over all the horses which had been bought, and from thence to shape his course for Higueiras, which was an easy passage and quite near by, and he ordered him, as soon as he had disembarked, in a friendly way, and without killing any Indians, to endeavour to found a town at some good harbour and to bring the natives of the province to peace, and to seek for gold and silver, and to make enquiries and endeavour to find out if there was a Strait, and what harbours there were on the South Coast, if he should reach it. He gave him two Clerics, and one of them understood the Mexican language, and he ordered him to preach diligently to the natives on the subject of our holy faith, and not to permit sodomy nor human sacrifices but quietly and in a friendly way to root them out. He also ordered him to break open all the wooden houses where they kept Indian men and women imprisoned, fattening them to be sacrificed and eaten, and to free the unhappy prisoners. He also ordered him to set up crosses all over the country, and he gave him many images of Our Lady the Virgin Santa Maria so that he could place them in the towns, and he said these words to him :

“Brother Cristóbal de Olid, in the manner which you have seen that we have acted in this New Spain, endeavour to act yourself.”

And after embraces and farewells with much affection and good will Cristóbal de Olid took leave of Cortés and all his household and went to Villa Rica where his fleet was stationed fully equipped, and on a certain day of the month and year he embarked with all his soldiers and with

good weather arrived at the Havana. There he found the horses that had been bought and all the rest of the supplies, and five soldiers, who were persons of quality, of the company that had been turned out of Panuco by the orders of Diego de Ocampo because they were such robbers and so turbulent. I have already given the names of some of those soldiers in a former Chapter dealing with the pacification of Panuco, and for that reason I will not name them now. These soldiers advised Cristóbal de Olid, as there was reported to be rich country where he was going, and as he had such a large and well equipped fleet and many horses and soldiers, to revolt at once against Cortés and not to acknowledge him any longer as his superior, or to support him in anything. Moreover, Briones, often mentioned by me before, who accompanied him in the flagship had often said the same thing to him in secret, and as soon as this plot was agreed upon he [Briones] promptly wrote on the subject to the Governor of the Island who as I have already said many times was named Diego Velásquez, the mortal enemy of Cortés.

Diego Velásquez came to where the fleet was stationed, and what was arranged was that he and Cristóbal de Olid should between them take the land of Higueras and Honduras for His Majesty, in his royal name, and that Diego Velásquez would provide what was necessary and would make it known to His Majesty in Castile so that the Government should be given to him [Velásquez]. In this way the partnership in the fleet was arranged.

I wish to state here the quality and demeanour of Cristóbal de Olid; had he been as wise and prudent as he was personally energetic and brave both on foot and on horseback he would have been a perfect man, but he was not fit to command but only to be commanded; he was about thirty-six years of age and a native from near Baeza or Linares and in appearance was tall, brawny, very

robust and broad across the shoulders, he had a good figure and was somewhat ruddy, and he had very good features and his lower lip was always wrinkled as though it were cleft. His speech was somewhat coarse and threatening, but he was a fluent talker and had the additional good trait of being generous.¹ In the beginning when he was in Mexico he was a faithful follower of Cortés, but his ambition to command and not be commanded, added to [the advice of] bad councillors, blinded him, moreover as he was brought up in the house of Diego Velásquez when a youth, and was interpreter in the Island of Cuba, he felt the obligation of the bread that he had eaten in his house, [although] he was more beholden to Cortés than he was to Diego Velásquez.

When this arrangement had been made with Diego Velásquez, many other settlers from the Island of Cuba joined Cristóbal de Olid, especially those who as I have stated, advised a revolt.

As there was nothing further to be done in that Island, for all the stores had been placed on board the ships, he ordered the whole fleet to hoist sail, and with favourable weather, went on to disembark in a sort of bay about fifteen leagues beyond Puerto Caballos. He arrived there on the 3rd May, and for this reason he named the town, which he promptly laid out, Triunfo de la Cruz, and he appointed as Alcaldes and Regidores those to whom (when he was in Mexico) Cortés had ordered him to give appointments and pay respect. He took possession of those lands for His Majesty and for Hernando Cortés in his Royal Name, and he issued other decrees which were necessary, and all this that he did was so that the friends of Cortés should not understand that he was in revolt, and so that if

¹ Blotted out in the original, "he never had anything of his own, for he gave it all away." G. G.

possible he might make good friends of them when the matter came to their knowledge.

Moreover, he did not know if the land would turn out to be rich and productive of mines as they told him. He shot at two marks, the one was, as I have said, that if there were good mines and the country was thickly peopled, to revolt with it, and the other, if it did not turn out so well, to return to Mexico to his wife and assignments and to excuse himself to Cortés by telling him that the partnership which he made with Diego Velásquez was in order that he should supply him with provisions and soldiers and not to support him [Velásquez] in any way, and this he could easily [see], for he took possession through Cortés; and these were his thoughts according to what many of his friends, who have been consulted on the subject have stated.

Let us leave him already settled at Triunfo de la Cruz, Cortés knew nothing about it for more than eight months. And because I shall be obliged to return again and speak about him I will drop the matter at present and relate what happened to us at Coatzacoalcos and how Cortés sent me with Captain Luis Marin to pacify the province of Chiapas.

NOTE TO CHAPTER CLXVI.

THE topography of the States of Tabasco and Chiapas presents great difficulties. The modern maps are very imperfect, and many of the original Indian names have disappeared. The topography of the State of Tabasco will be more fully dealt with in the next Volume (which deals with Cortés's march to Honduras), in which I hope to include the map of the State drawn by Melchior de Santa Cruz in 1579. It will here suffice to say that in the sixteenth century the main stream of the great river of Chiapas, after passing Huiman-guillo, appears to have flowed into the sea at the Barra de dos Bocas, by what is now marked on some maps as the Rio Seco, and what is

now the main stream between Huimanguillo and San Juan Bautista, called the Río Mescapalapa, was then merely a connecting link between the Río de Chiapas and the Río Grijalva.

Between Latitude 17° 50' N. and the sea, the rivers Chiapas, Grijalva and Usumacinta are all connected by a network of waterways.

CHAPTER CLXVI.

How those of us who had settled at Coatzacoalcos were constantly going about pacifying the provinces which revolted against us, and how Cortés ordered Captain Luis Marin to go and conquer and pacify the Province of Chiapas and ordered me to go with him and what happened during the pacification.

As many of us old Conquistadores and persons of quality were established in the town of Coatzacoalcos and had large tracts [of land] allotted to us consisting of this same province of Coatzacoalcos and Cintla,¹ Tabasco, Cimatan,² Chontalpa³ and in the mountains above Quechula⁴ and the [land of the] Zoques and Quilines towards Zinacantan⁵ and Chamula⁶ and the City of Chiapas of the Indians and Papanaguastla and Pinola⁷ and on the other side, toward the borders of Mexico, the province of Xaltepec⁸ and Huaspaltepec,⁹ Chinantla, Tepeca and many other pueblos, and as at the beginning most of the provinces of New Spain rose in revolt when we demanded tribute from

¹ Çitla in the text, Cintla near Tabasco, see vol. i, p. 108.

² Çimatan in the text is not marked on the modern maps. In the map of Melchior de Santa Cruz the cattle ranch of Don Francisco Cimatan is marked on the Río Mescapalapa and the three pueblos of Oscimatanes on the Río Acathapa (Acachapa).

³ Chontalpa, now Cardenas, a province of Western Tabasco.

⁴ Cachula in the text, 40 miles N.W. of Tuxtla Gutierrez.

⁵ Zinacantan, near San Cristóbal, State of Chiapas.

⁶ Chamula, near San Cristóbal, State of Chiapas.

⁷ Pinola, between San Cristóbal and Comitán.

⁸ Xaltepec, or Jaltepec, District of Choapam.

⁹ Gúaspaltepec in the text, near Playa Vicente, Dist. of Choapam

them, and even murdered their Encomenderos and killed¹ those Spaniards whom they could capture with safety, it came to pass that there was hardly a province left belonging to this town that was not in rebellion, and for this reason we were always going about from pueblo to pueblo with a company, bringing them to peace. As the people of Cimatan would neither come to the town nor obey the commands that were sent to them, Captain Luis Marin decided, (so as to avoid sending a company of many soldiers against them,) that four of the settlers should go and pacify them. I was one of them and the others were named Rodrigo de Nao a native of Ávila, and Francisco Martin a Semi-Biscayan, and the other was called Francisco Ximénes a native of Ynguejuela² in Estramadura. What our Captain ordered us to do was to summon them firmly and with kindly affection to be peaceable, and not to use language that might offend them. So we went on our way to their province where the pueblos stand amidst great swamps and rapid rivers, and when we arrived within two miles of their pueblo we sent messengers to say we were coming, and the answer they gave was that three squadrons of archers and lancemen came out against us, and in the first skirmish they killed two of our companions with their arrows, and they gave me my first arrow wound in the throat, and with the great loss of blood, (I could neither bind up the wound nor check the flow of blood immediately), my life was in great danger. Then my other companion Francisco Martin the Biscayan, who was wounded, although he and I always kept our faces to the enemy and wounded some of them, decided to cut and run and take refuge in some canoes which were near the great river called the Maçapa.⁸

¹ Acapillavan in the text. See note, vol. ii, p. 4.

² Herguijuela?

³ Mezcalapa?

As I was left alone and badly wounded, dazed and stupefied I thought of hiding among some high bushes so that they should not quite kill me, but coming to myself with a brave heart I said: "May our Lady avail me, if it is true that I must die here to-day in the hands of these dogs" and I was so emboldened that I sallied out of the thicket again and rushed upon the Indians and after some good cuts and thrusts they made way for me and I got out from among them and, although they wounded me again, I reached the canoes where I found my companion Francisco Martin the Biscayan already in one of them with four friendly Indians, who were those whom we had brought with us to carry our provisions, and those Indians, while we were fighting with the Cimategcs, had abandoned their burdens and taken refuge in the canoes on the river, and what saved my life and that of Francisco Martin was that the enemy stopped to plunder our clothes and boxes.

Let us cease talking any more about this and say that it pleased our Lord Jesus Christ that we should escape death there, and in the canoes we crossed that river, which is very large and deep and has many alligators in it, and so that the Cimategcs, (for so they are called) should not follow us we remained for eight days in the forest.

When a few days later this news was known in Coatza-coalcos, and the Indians who brought the news (who were some of those we had taken with us) reported that we were dead as well as all four Indians who, as I have said, remained in the canoes, but the very Indians who carried this news had fled as soon as they saw that we were wounded and left us to do the fighting. Within a few days they arrived in the town, and as we did not appear, and there was no news of us they thought that we were dead. As is the custom with regard to Indians, and was usual at that time, the Captain Luis Marin had already allotted our Indians to other Conquistadores and had sent

off messengers to Cortés to send the warrants of allotment and they had even sold our property. At the end of twenty days we arrived at the town, at which some of our friends rejoiced, but those to whom our Indians had been given were sorry

When Captain Luis Marin saw that we could not pacify those provinces I have named, but, on the contrary, they killed many of our Spaniards, he decided to go to Mexico to ask Cortés for more soldiers and assistance and military stores, and he ordered that while he was away none of the settlers should leave the town to go to pueblos far away but should only go to those within four or five leagues and then only to procure food. When he reached Mexico he reported to Cortés all that had happened and he (Cortés) ordered him to return to Coatzacoalcos and sent with him about thirty soldiers and among them Alonzo de Grado, whom I have often mentioned, and he gave orders for us to go with all the settlers in the town and the soldiers that he (Luis Marin) was bringing with him to the province of Chiapas which was hostile, to pacify it and establish a town.

When the Captain arrived with those despatches we all of us got ready, both those who were settled there as well as those he had just now brought, and we began to clear a road through some very bad forest and swamps, and we threw into them logs and branches so that the horses could pass, and after great difficulty we managed to come out at a pueblo named Tepuzuntlan,¹ for up to that time we were accustomed to go up the river in canoes, for there was no other road opened. From that pueblo we went to another pueblo up in the hills called Quechula,² and that it may be clearly understood, this Quechula is in the mountains in

¹ On the Rio Mescalapa or Grijalva.

² Quechula, Cachula in the text, on the right bank of the R. Mescalapa, or Grijalva, dist. of Tuxtla.

the province of Chiapas, and I say this because there is another town of the same name near Puebla de los Angeles. From Quechula we went to some other small towns subject to this same Quechula and we went on opening new roads up the river which comes from the town of Chiapas for there was no road whatever.

All the people in this neighbourhood stood in great fear of the Chiapanecs¹ for certainly at that time they were the greatest warriors that I had seen in all New Spain, although that includes Tlascalans, Mexicans, Zapotecs and Mijes,² and this I say because the Mexicans had never been able to master them. At that time the province was thickly peopled and the natives of it were extremely warlike and waged war on their neighbours the people of Zinacantan³ and all the pueblos of the Quilena language, also against those called the Zoques and continually robbed and took prisoners in other small pueblos where they were able to seize booty, and with those whom they killed they made sacrifices and glutted themselves.

In addition to this on the roads to Tehuantepec⁴ they had many warriors stationed at bad passes to rob the Indian merchants who traded between one province and the other, and because of the fear of them trade between one province and another was sometimes stopped. They had even brought other pueblos by force and made them settle and remain near to Chiapas, and held them as slaves and made them cultivate their fields.

Let us return to our road, we proceeded up the river towards their city, and it was during Lent in the year fifteen hundred and twenty-three, but this matter of the year I do not remember well, and before reaching the town

¹ Chiapanecs, the people of Chiapas (Chiapa in the text).

² Minxes in the text.

³ Zinacantan, near San Cristóbal.

⁴ Teguantepeque in the text.

of Chiapas a review was held of all the horsemen, musketeers, crossbowmen and soldiers who went on that expedition, and it could not be done before this time, because some of the settlers of our town and others from outside had not joined, for they were busy in the pueblos of the allotments of Quechula demanding the tribute that these were obliged to pay, for now that they came under the protection of a Captain and soldiers they dared to go among those who before had neither paid tribute nor cared a snap of the fingers for us.

Let us go back to our story, there proved to be twenty-seven horsemen fit for fighting and another five who were not fit, fifteen crossbowmen and eight musketeers and one cannon and plenty of powder and a soldier for gunner and this same soldier said that he had been in Italy, and I say this here because he was no good at all and a great coward, and we mustered seventy soldiers with sword and shield, and about eighty Mexicans and the Cacique of Quechula with some of his chieftains, and these people of Quechula that I have mentioned went trembling with fear, and by flattering them we got them along so that they might help us to clear the roads and carry the baggage.

As we went along in good order, and were already near to their townships, four of the most active soldiers, of whom I was one, always went ahead as spies and scouts. I left my horse for others to bring along, for it was not [the sort of] country where horses could gallop. We always kept half a league ahead of the Army, and as the Chiapanecs are hunters, they were then out hunting the deer. As soon as they perceived us they were all called together by great smoke signals, and as we arrived at their townships we observed they had very broad roads and large plantations of maize and other vegetables, and the first pueblo we came upon which is called Ixtapa¹, which is

¹ Estapa in the text, about 15 miles N.E. of Chiapas.

about four leagues distant from the Capital, had just then been deserted, and there was much maize and other supplies there and we had plenty to eat for our supper. While we were resting at this spot, and had stationed our sentinels, spies and scouts, two horsemen who had been acting as scouts came in to report, shouting: Alarm! Alarm! they are coming, all the fields and roads are crowded with Chiapanec warriors! We who were always fully on the alert went out to meet them before they reached the pueblo and fought a great battle with them, for they had many fire hardened javelins and their throwing-sticks and bows and arrows, and lances much longer than ours, and good cotton armour and plumes, and others had clubs like *macanas* and where the battle took place stones were plentiful and they did us much damage with their slings, and they began to surround us so cleverly that with the first shower of arrows they killed two of our soldiers and four horses, and wounded over thirteen soldiers and many of our allies, and they gave Captain Luis Marin two wounds. We were fighting that battle from the afternoon until after nightfall, and as it grew dark and they had felt the edge of our swords, and the muskets, crossbows and lance thrusts, they retreated at which we rejoiced. We found fifteen of them dead and many others wounded and unable to get away, and with two of those whom we captured there, who appeared to us to be chieftains, we held conversation and obtained news, and they said that the whole country was prepared to attack us on the following day. That night we buried the dead and looked after the wounded and the Captain who was ill with his wounds, for he had lost much blood because he would not leave the fighting to attend to them or bind them up and they had become chilled.

As soon as this was done we stationed good sentinels, spies and scouts and we kept the horses saddled and

bridled and all of us soldiers were on the alert, for we felt sure that they would attack us during the night, and as we had seen their tenacity in the past battle, and that neither with crossbows, lances nor muskets and not even with swordplay could we make them retreat or give way a single step, we took them to be very stout fighters and high spirited in battle.

That night orders were given as to how we horsemen were to attack in parties of five each, with the lances held short, and that we were not to stop to give lance thrusts until they were put to flight, but to hold the lances high, aimed at their faces, and to trample them down and go on ahead. This method I have already said before, Luis Marin and even some of us old Conquistadores, had given as advice to the new comers from Castile, and some of them did not trouble to obey the command, thinking that in giving a lance thrust to the enemy they were doing some good, but it turned out badly for four of them, for the Indians seized their lances and with these they wounded them and the horses. I wish to say that six or seven of the enemy got together and threw their arms round the horses thinking to capture them by hand and they even dragged one soldier off of his horse, and if we had not come to his rescue they would have carried him off to be sacrificed,—he died within two days.

To return to our story, the next morning we decided to continue our march to the city of Chiapas for truly one can call it a city and it was thickly peopled and the houses and streets well arranged, and there were more than four thousand citizens, not counting many other subject pueblos around it. We went on our way in good order, with the cannon loaded and the gunner wide awake to what he had to do, and we had not marched four leagues when we met all the forces of Chiapas, plains and hills were crowded with them, they came on with their great plumes and good

armour, long lances, arrows and javelin throwing-sticks, slings and stones, and with loud shouts, yells and whistles, it was appalling to see how they attacked us hand to hand and began to fight like raging lions. Our negro gunner whom we had brought with us—and well one may call him black—restrained by fear and trembling, neither knew how to aim nor to fire the cannon, and when at last through the shouts we hurled at him he did fire it, he wounded three of our own soldiers and did no good whatever.

When the Captain saw how things were going, all of us horsemen charged, formed in groups as we had arranged, and the musketeers, crossbowmen, and soldiers with sword and shield forming in a body helped us very much, but the enemy who fell upon us were so numerous that it was fortunate that we who were present in those battles were men who were innured to even greater dangers by which others would have been scared, and even we were astonished ourselves, and when Captain Luis Marin said to us "Señores, Santiago and at them, let us repeat our charge once more," with brave spirit we struck them such a blow that they soon turned their backs. Where this battle was fought there was some rocky ground very bad for galloping horses, so we were not able to pursue them. As we went along after them not very far from where the fight began, and we were going rather carelessly thinking that they would not get together again that day, there were other squadrons of warriors, larger than the last, all fully armed, behind some hills, and many of them carried ropes with which to cast lassos over the horses and tie them so as to pull them over, and on all sides they had stretched many nets such as they use for catching deer, for the horses and for us. All the squadrons that I have mentioned were coming to clash with our army and being very strong and vigorous warriors they gave us such a drubbing with

arrows, javelins, and stones that they wounded nearly all of us, and they captured four lances from the horsemen and killed two soldiers and five horses. Then they brought in the middle of their squadrons a rather aged and very fat Indian woman, and they were said to look on that woman as a goddess and prophetess, and she had told them that as soon as she arrived where we were fighting we should at once be vanquished, and she brought some incense in a brazier and some stone Idols, and all her body was painted and cotton was stuck on to the painting, and without the slightest fear she went among our Indian allies who came on in a body with their captains, and the cursed goddess was promptly cut to pieces.

To go back to our battle, as soon as Luis Marin and all of us saw such a multitude of warriors coming against us and fighting so boldly, we commended ourselves to God and charged upon them in the same order as before, and little by little we broke them up and put them to flight. They hid themselves among some great rocks and most of them threw themselves into the river which was close by and was deep, and went off swimming, for they are especially good swimmers.

As soon as we had defeated them we gave thanks to God, and we found many of them dead where the battle had been fought, and others wounded, and we decided to go to a village on the river (near to the ford [leading] to the city),¹ where there were very good cherries, for as it was Lent it was the time when they were ripe, and in that village they were very good.

There we halted all the rest of the day, burying the dead in places where the natives of the village could not get at them or find them and we attended to the wounded and ten [wounded] horses and there we decided to sleep

¹ The site of the city appears to have been on the left bank of the river.

with every precaution of sentinels and spies. A little after midnight ten Indians crossed over from two villages which were situated near the capital City of Chiapas, and they came in five canoes across the river which is here large and deep and they came rowing in silence, and the rowers were ten Indians, persons of importance, natives of the villages which were near the Rio de los Pueblos, and they disembarked near our camp, and as they jumped on shore they were promptly captured by our sentinels, and they were content to be captured and taken before the Captain and said "Sir, we are not Chiapanecs but belong to other provinces called Xaltepecque, and these evil Chiapanecs in the great wars they have made on us have killed many people and the greater part of our townspeople with their women and children they brought here to settle, and they have taken all the property we possessed and have already held us as slaves for more than twelve years and we work their plantations and maize fields, and they make us go fishing and do other service and they take our daughters and wives from us, and we come to give you notice that to-night we will bring you many canoes in which you may cross the river, and we will also show you a ford although it is not very shallow, and what we beg Señor Captain, if we do this good deed, is that when you have conquered and routed these Chiapanecs you will give us leave to get out of their power and return to our own lands. To incline you the more to believe our statements to be true we are bringing you in the canoes, which have now crossed over and been hidden away in the river with some of our companions and brothers, presents of three jewels shaped like diadems, and we also bring poultry and cherries." Then they asked leave to fetch them and said that it had to be done very silently so that the Chiapanecs who were watching and guarding the passes of the river should not perceive them.

When the Captain understood what these Indians told him and the great assistance they would be in crossing that strong and rapid river, he gave thanks to God, and showed good will to the messengers, and promised to do what they asked him and even to give them clothes and the spoil we might gain in that city. He learned from them that in the two last battles we had killed and wounded more than one hundred and twenty Chiapanecs, and that they had many other warriors ready for the next day and they had made the villages where these messengers lived come out to fight against us, but that we should have no fear of them, on the contrary they would assist us, and that they [the Chiapanecs] would be waiting for us when we crossed the river although they thought it impossible that we should have the daring to cross it, and that when we were crossing it they would there defeat us.

When they [the Xaltepecs] had given this information, two of these Indians stayed with us and the rest went to their pueblo to give orders that very early in the morning twenty canoes should be brought, and they kept their word very well.

After they had departed we rested a little during what remained of the night, but not without caution and patrols, sentinels and spies for we heard the great murmur of the warriors who were assembling on the bank of the river and the sound of their trumpets, drums and horns.

As soon as it was dawn we saw the canoes which were being openly brought, in spite of the Chiapas forces, for it seems that they [the latter] had already found out that the natives of those small pueblos had risen in revolt and had gained courage, and were on our side, and some of them had been captured, and the rest had entrenched themselves in a great Cue, and for this reason there were skirmishes and fights between the Chiapanecs and the small pueblos I have mentioned. They promptly went to show us the

ford, and these allies made us hurry on so as to cross the river quickly for fear lest their companions who had been captured that night should be sacrificed. Then when we came to the ford which they showed us, it was running very deep, all of us formed up in good order, both crossbowmen, musketeers and horsemen, and the friendly Indians from the two small pueblos with their canoes, and although the water reached nearly to our chests we all huddled together so as to resist the force and impetus of the water, and it pleased Our Lord that we crossed nearly to the other side of the river, but before we finished crossing many warriors came against us and poured on us a rain of javelins from throwing sticks, and arrows and stones, and others came with great lances and wounded almost all of us some with two or three wounds, and they killed two horses, and one horse soldier named something Guerrero or Guerra was drowned while crossing the river by falling with his horse into a strong rapid, he was a native of Toledo, and his horse got to land without his master.

To return to our fight, for some time they were attacking us as we crossed the river and we could neither make them retreat nor were we able to reach the land, but just then the people of the small pueblos who had grown valiant against the Chiapanecs came to our aid and fell on the rear of those who were fighting with us in the river, and they killed and wounded many of them, for they were very hostile to them for having kept them captive so many years. As soon as we saw this the horsemen quickly got to land and next the crossbowmen, musketeers, the sword and shield men and the friendly Mexicans, and we gave them a good drubbing and they went fleeing to their pueblo, and no Indian waited for another. Then without further delay we formed up in good array with our banners unfurled, and with many Indians from the two small

pueblos in our company, we entered the city and when we reached the densest part of it where their great Cues and Oratories stood, the houses were so close together that we did not dare to make our camp there but [went out] into the open and a site where even if they did set fire to it, they could do us no damage.

Our Captain at once sent to summon the Cacique and Captains of that town to make peace, and three Indians from the small friendly pueblos went as messengers, one of them was called Xaltepec, and six Chiapanec Captains whom we had taken prisoners in the late battles were sent with them. And he [Luis Marin] sent to tell them to come promptly to make peace and he would pardon them for what was past, but if they did not come, we would go and look for them and make worse war on them than before, and would burn their city. Owing to those hectoring words they came at once and even brought a present of gold and excused themselves for having made war and gave their fealty to His Majesty, and prayed Luis Marin not to allow our allies to burn any houses, for before entering Chiapa they had already burned many houses in a small pueblo situated a short distance before reaching the river, and Luis Marin gave them his promise and he kept it, and ordered our Mexican allies and those we had brought from Quechula not to do any harm or damage. I wish to say that this Quechula that I mentioned here is not the one that is near Mexico but a pueblo of the same name in the mountains on the road to Chiapas over which we passed. Let us leave this and say that in that city we found three prisons of wooden gratings, full of prisoners fastened by collars round their necks, and these were those whom they had captured on the roads, some of them were from Tehuantepec and others Zapotecs and others Quilines and others from Soconusco; these prisoners we took out of the prisons,

and each one went to his own home, and we broke up the gratings.

We also found in the Cues very evil figures of the Idols they worshipped, and many Indians and boys sacrificed two days ago, and many evil things of the sodomy they practise.

The Captain ordered them at once to go and summon the neighbouring towns to come in peaceably and give their fealty to His Majesty.

The first to come were from a township named Zinacantan and Copanahuastla¹ and Pinola, Gueyguistlan² and Chamula³ and other towns whose names I do not remember of the Quilines, and other pueblos of the Zoque tongue, and all gave their fealty to His Majesty, and they were still astounded that, few as we were, we had been able to defeat the Chiapanecs, and they certainly showed great satisfaction for they were ill disposed towards them.

We stayed in that city for five days, and just then one of the soldiers whom we had brought in our army strayed from our camp and went without leave from the Captain, to a pueblo which had made peace, which I have already mentioned, named Chamula, and he took with him eight of our Mexican Indians and he ordered the people of Chamula to give him gold, and said that the Captain commanded it. The people of that pueblo gave him golden jewels and because they did not give him more he took the Cacique prisoner, and when the people of the pueblo saw him commit that excess they wished to kill this daring and inconsiderate soldier and they at once revolted, and not only they, but their neighbours the

¹ Copanahuastla, not marked on the map.

² Gueyguistlan (modern Huistan near San Cristóbal?), spelt in the text Gueguistlan, Quiaguyztlan, Guequyztlan and Gueyguyztlan.

³ Chamula, near San Cristóbal.

people of another pueblo, named Gueyguistlan were also inclined to revolt.

When Captain Luis Marin heard of this, he seized the soldier and ordered him to be taken post haste to Mexico for Cortés to punish him. Luis Marin did this because this soldier thought himself a man of importance and for his honour's sake I will not mention his name, until occasion arises at a time when he did a thing that was worse, and because he was wicked and cruel to the Indians; about a year later he died in the affair of Xicalango in the hands of the Indians as I will tell later on.

When this was done the Captain sent to summon the pueblo of Chamula to come and make peace and sent to tell them that he had already punished and sent to Mexico the Spaniard who demanded gold and did them those injuries, and the reply they gave him was bad, and we thought it all the worse because of the neighbouring pueblos which had made peace, lest they should revolt. So it was decided to fall upon them at once and not to leave them until they were brought to peace. After this the Chiapanec Caciques were spoken to very gently and they were told through good interpreters things concerning our holy faith, and that they must abandon their Idols and sacrifices and sodomies and robberies, and crosses were set up and an image of Our Lady on an altar that we ordered them to make. They were made to understand that we were the Vassals of His Majesty and many other things that were fitting, and we still left more than half their city inhabited.

The two friendly pueblos that had brought us the canoes to cross the river and had helped us in the war were freed from their power, and with all their property and women and children went to settle lower down the river about ten leagues from Chiapas, where the town of Xaltepec is now established. The other small pueblo called

Ystatan¹ went to its own home for they belonged to Tehuantepec.

Let us return to our expedition to Chamula, we at once sent to summon the people of Zinacantan who were sensible people and many of them traders, and he [Luis Marin] told them to bring us two hundred Indians to carry our baggage and that we would go to their pueblo for it was on the road to Chamula. At the same time he demanded from the people of Chiapas another two hundred Indian warriors with their arms to go in his company, and they gave them at once and we set out from Chiapas one morning and went to sleep at some salt pits where they had made us very good ranchos, and the next day at mid-day we arrived at Zinacantan and there we kept the Holy feast of the Resurrection.² Then we again sent to summon the people of Chamula to make peace and they would not come, and we had to go to them and it was a matter of three leagues from where Zinacantan then stood, and the houses and town of Chamula were at that time situated in a fortification very difficult to capture with a very deep fosse on the side where we had to attack, and on other sides it was worse and stronger. Thus as we approached with our army they shot from above so many stones, javelins and arrows that they covered the ground. Then [they had] very long lances with more than two fathoms of flint cutting edge³ which, as I have said before, cut better than our swords, and shields made like *pavesinas* which cover the whole body when fighting, and when they are not needed they roll and double them up so that they are no inconvenience to them. They had slings and plenty of stones and they shot arrows and stones so

¹ Ishuatan (?), near the Laguna Inferior, in the district of Juchitan.

² 5th April, 1523.

³ Dos braças de cuchilla de pedernales in the text.

fast that they wounded five of our soldiers and two horsemen and with so many shouts and loud yells, whistles, howls, and trumpets, drums and shell trumpets it was enough to frighten anyone who did not know them.

When Luis Marin saw this and understood that the horses could be of no use there as it was mountainous, he ordered them to turn and descend to the plain, for where we stood was a steep hill and fortification. He ordered them to do this because we feared that the warriors from other pueblos that were in revolt called Gucyguistlan would come to attack us there, so that the horsemen might oppose them.

Then we began to shoot many arrows and fire muskets at the people in the fort, but we could do them no harm whatever on account of the great barricades they had [erected] but on the contrary they constantly wounded many of our men. We stood fighting in this way all that day and they did not give way at all to us, and if we attempted to get through them to where they had constructed their barricades and battlements, there were over a thousand lancers at their posts for the defence of those whom we were endeavouring to get through. If we should have wished to risk our persons by making a dash into the fortress, we should have jumped from such a height that we must have been smashed to pieces, and it was not worth while to take the risk.

After it was carefully decided how and in what way we were to make the attack, it was settled that we should bring wood and boards from a small deserted pueblo that was near by, and should make *burros* or *Mantas*¹ for so they are called and in each one of them there should be room for twenty persons, and with iron adzes and picks

¹ Burros or Mantas, movable shelters for battering purposes.

which we had brought with us, and with other wooden adzes of the country that were there, we should excavate and destroy their fortress and break down a small gate to enable us to enter, for in any other way it was useless [to try] because on two other sides they had the same defence and we examined it all for more than a league around. In the neighbourhood there was another very difficult entrance, even harder to capture than where we were, because there was a descent so steep and bad that one could say it was like going into the bottomless pit.¹

To go back to our barricades and mantas, while we were destroying their fortress with them they threw down from above quantities of burning pitch and rosin and blood and water all mixed together, very hot, and at other times fire and hot ashes and greatly impeded us, and then after that such a multitude of very large stones that they broke our engines and we had to retreat and mend them. We promptly returned to the attack, and as soon as and when they saw that we made larger breaches, four priests and other principal persons placed themselves on one of the battlements and came covered with their shields and other *talarbadones* of wood, and said: "If you wish for or desire gold come inside for here we have plenty," and they threw us from the ramparts seven diadems of fine gold and many moulded beads and other beads like shells and four ducks all of gold and after them many arrows, javelins and stones.

When we had already made two great breaches, and as it was night and it began to rain, at that moment we left the combat until the next day, and slept there that night with every precaution. The Captain ordered some of the horsemen who were on the level ground not to leave their posts and to keep their horses saddled and bridled.

¹ Abismo in the text.

Let us go back to the Chamultecs who were all the night sounding drums and trumpets and shouting and yelling and saying that next day they were going to kill us for so their Idol had promised them. As soon as it was dawn we returned with our engines and Mantas to make larger breaches, and the enemy defended their fortress with great spirit and even wounded five of our men that day, moreover they gave me a good thrust with a lance which pierced my armour and if it were not for the good quilting of thick cotton that it had, they would have killed me. Good as it was, it was pierced and a good wad of cotton pushed out and I received a small wound.

By that time it was past mid-day and a great shower fell and then a very dense mist, for as the mountains are high there are always mists and showers, and as it was raining our Captain withdrew from the fight, and as I was experienced in the late wars in Mexico I fully realised that while the mist was gathering the enemy were not yelling and shouting as much as before, and I noticed many lances close by the battlements ramparts and barbicans and as I could only see about two hundred of them moving about, I suspected what was happening, that they intended to go or were retreating. Then I and another, my companion, quickly entered through a breach, and there were a matter of . . . [two hundred] warriors who threw themselves upon us and gave us many thrusts with their lances, and had we not been promptly supported by some Indians from Zinacantan who shouted to our soldiers who at once entered after us into the fortress we should have there lost our lives. When those Chamultecs who were standing there facing us with their lances saw the supports they turned to flight, for the other warriors had already fled under cover of the mist, and our Captain with all the soldiers and allies entered within. They had already carried off their provisions and even the women

and children and they had gone by that very bad pass which I have said was very deep and had a bad ascent and worse descent, and we went in pursuit and captured many women, boys and children and over thirty men. No spoil was found in the pueblo save provisions.

When this was done we returned with our prisoners on the road to Zinacantan, and it was settled that we should place our camp near to the river where the Ciudad Real is now established, which for another name they call Chiapas of the Spaniards. From this place Captain Luis Marin set free six Indians with their wives from among the prisoners taken at Chamula, in order that they should go and summon the people of Chamula, and he told them to have no fear, and he would give them up all the prisoners, and the messengers set off and the next day they came in peaceably and brought all their people, none were left behind and after giving their fealty to His Majesty, Captain Luis Marin entrusted me with that town, for Cortés had written to him from Mexico that he should give me something good out of what he conquered, also because I was a great friend of Luis Marin, also because I was the first soldier who got into the fortress.

Cortés sent me a Warrant of Allotment, and up to this day I have the Warrant of Allotment well taken care of, and they paid me tribute for more than eight years, during which time the Ciudad Real was not settled for it was founded later and my pueblo was given towards the founding of it.

Let us leave this and return to our story :—As Chamula was already at peace and Gueyguistlan was in revolt and would not make peace although we sent to summon it, our Captain arranged that we should go and seek the people in their pueblos, and I say here pueblos for there were then three villages all standing within forts. We left our wounded and baggage in the place where our

ranchos were, and the most active and healthy soldiers went with the Captain, and the people of Zinacantan gave us over three hundred Indian warriors who went with us. From there to the pueblos of Gueyguistlan was a matter of four leagues, and as we marched towards their pueblos we found the roads blocked, full of timber and felled trees and so much obstructed that the horses could not pass, and we cleared them with the help of the allies we had brought with us and they removed the timber and we went to one of the three pueblos which I have already said was a fortress and found it full of warriors and they began to shout and yell at us and to shoot javelins and arrows and they had great lances and shields and two handed swords [edged] with stones that cut like knives, just like those at Chamula. While our Captain and all of us were ascending to the fortress, which was much stronger and more difficult to capture than that of Chamula, they made up their minds to take to flight and left the pueblo deserted without any food supplies in it. The Zinacantecs captured two of their Indians who were promptly brought before the Captain who ordered them to be released so they could summon all the rest of their neighbours to make peace. We waited there one day for them to come with the reply, and they all came peaceably and brought a present of gold of little value and plumes of Quetzals which are feathers which are greatly valued among them.

We returned to our ranchos, and as many other things happened which do not concern our story I will not recount them, and will relate how as soon as we returned to our ranchos we began to discuss if it would be well to found a town there where we were, in accordance with Cortés's orders that we should make settlements. And many of us soldiers who were there said that it would be a good thing and others who had good Indians at

Coatzacoalcos opposed it and advanced as a pretext that we had no shoes for the horses, and that we were few in number and most of us wounded, and that the land was very thickly peopled and most of the pueblos were fortified and among great mountains and that the horses were of no use or profit to us, and to the same effect they said other things, and the worst was that Captain Luis Marin and Diego de Godoy who was a King's Notary and a very meddling person did not wish to settle but to return to our town. It appeared that Alonzo de Grado, whom I have at other times mentioned in the last chapter, who was more of a bully than a fighting man, had secretly brought a Warrant of Allotment signed by Cortés which gave him the half of the pueblo of Chiapas as soon as it was pacified, and by virtue of that warrant he demanded of the Captain Luis Marin that he should give him the gold that was acquired in Chiapas by gift from the Indians, and the other [lot] which was captured in the Temples of the Idols in this same Chiapas, which amounted to one thousand five hundred pesos. Luis Marin said that was to help to pay for the horses that were killed in the war and on that journey, and over this and over other disputes they were very ill disposed one to the other, and they came to such words that Alonzo de Grado who was ill-conditioned went too far in what he said. The man who interfered and stirred up all the strife was the Notary Diego de Godoy, so that Luis Marin imprisoned both one and the other, and he kept them in fetters and chains for six or seven days, and he decided to send Alonzo de Grado to Mexico, and on account of offers and promises and through kind intercessors he set Godoy free, and that made matters worse, for El Grado and Godoy at once planned to write from there to Cortés post haste saying much evil of Luis Marin, and Alonzo

de Grado even begged me to write myself to Cortés and excuse Grado from blame in my letter, for Godoy told Grado that Cortés would give credit to my letter when he saw it, and that I should not speak well of Marin. I wrote what seemed to me to be the truth not giving blame to Captain Marin.

Alonzo de Grado was promptly sent a prisoner to Mexico and an oath was taken from him that he would present himself before Cortés within eighty days, for from Zinacantan to Mexico by the road we came was over one hundred and ninety leagues.

Let us cease talking of all these broils and embarrassments. When Alonzo de Grado had set off, we decided to go and punish the people of Cimatan who had killed the two soldiers already mentioned by me, at the time when Francisco Martin the Biscayan and I escaped out of their hands. So we went along towards some pueblos called Tapilula,¹ and before reaching them there were some mountains and defiles so difficult both of ascent and descent that we considered it a most arduous task to cross by that pass, and Luis Marin sent to beg the Caciques of those pueblos to clear the road so that we could go to them. This they did and with much labour we got the horses across, and then we went by other pueblos named Sulusuchiapa² and Coyumelapa and thence we went to this Istapangajoya³ and after arriving there went on to other towns named Tecomayacate and Teapa,⁴ which at that time was all one pueblo and stood together, house to house and was one of the largest in that province and was in my allotment, given me by Cortés and even this very

¹ Tapelola

² Silo Suchiapa

³ Panguaxoya

⁴ Ateapan in the text.

} In the text,— all towns on the road from San Cristóbal to Teapa.

day I possess the Warrants of Allotment signed by Cortés.

There were at that time many villages and other towns joined with them, which came out to attack us at the passage of a very deep river which flowed by the town, and they wounded six soldiers and killed three horses, and we were there a good while fighting with them. At last we crossed the river and they fled, and they themselves set fire to the houses and took to the forest. We remained six days attending to the wounded and making expeditions where we captured very good looking Indian women, and he [Marin] sent to summon them to make peace and said that he would give them up the people we had captured and would forgive them for the late war, and almost all the Indians came in and re-peopled their town and demanded their women and children as had been promised, and the Notary Diego de Godoy advised the Captain Luis Marin not to give them up but to brand them with the King's brand which was applied to those who having once given their fealty to His Majesty rose in revolt without any cause, and because those pueblos came out to attack us and shot at and killed three horses, they should pay for the horses with those Indian girls who were prisoners.

I replied that they ought not to be branded and it was not just, because they had come in peaceably. Over this Godoy and I had a great argument and dispute and even to sword thrusts so that both came out wounded when they separated us and made us friends. The Captain Luis Marin who was very good and not suspicious and saw that it was not just to act otherwise than as I asked him, as a favour ordered all the women and all the others who had been captured to be given up to the Caciques of the towns, and we left them in their houses fully pacified. Thence we crossed to the pueblo of Cimatan and to other

pueblos called Talatupan, and before the entrance to the pueblo they had made some loopholed walls and ramparts close to a hill and near some swamps and as we approached they suddenly let fly at us such a flight of arrows with such precision and spirit that they wounded over twenty soldiers and killed two horses, and if we had not promptly routed them and destroyed their palisades and loopholes they would have killed and wounded many more, and they soon sought refuge in the swamps. The Indians of these provinces are great archers and they can pierce with their bows and arrows double folds of well quilted cotton armour which is a great feat. We remained in their pueblo for two days and we sent to summon them and they would not come in peaceably, and as we were tired and there were many swamps which shake, where the horses were not able to go, and indeed no one can go into them without sticking in the mud or get out again unless he should crawl out on all fours, and they are so dangerous that it is a wonder if he gets out at all, and not to waste words about this, we all agreed to return to our town of Coatzacoalcos, and we returned through some pueblos of Chontalpa called Guimango and Nacajuca and Teotitan Copilco¹ and we passed other pueblos and Jalpa² and the river of Agualulco and that of Tonalá and finally reached the town of Coatzacoalcos.

The gold that was acquired in Chiapas and Chamula, rated at so much per pound, went to pay for the horses killed in the war.

Let us leave this and relate how Alonzo de Grado arrived in Mexico and came before Cortés, who when he knew how he had been acting, said to him very angrily: "How is it Señor Alonzo de Grado you cannot fit into

¹ In the text. Guymango Encaxuyxuyca E Teotitan Copileco.

² Ulapa in the text.

one place or another, I am troubled at it, and I beg you to change these bad manners, if not, in truth, I must send you to the Island of Cuba although I will arrange to give you three thousand pesos on which to live there, for I cannot put up with you any longer." Alonzo de Grado humbled himself in such a way that he again became on good terms with Cortés. Luis Marin wrote to Cortés about all that had taken place, and I will leave off here and relate what happened at Court about the Bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosano.

CHAPTER CLXVII.

How our Proctors who were in Spain challenged the jurisdiction of the Bishop of Burgos, and what else happened.

I HAVE already said in former chapters that Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca, Bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosano, for so he was called, was greatly interested in the affairs of Diego Velásquez but hostile to those of Cortés and all of us. It pleased Our Lord Jesus Christ that in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty one, our very holy father the Pope Adriano de Lobayna was chosen in Rome for the Chief Pontificate, and at that time he was in Castile as its Governor, and resided in the City of Vitoria, and our Proctors went to kiss his holy feet, and a great German Lord who belonged to His Majesty's cabinet named Mosiur de Lasao came to congratulate him on his pontificate on behalf of Our Lord the Emperor. His Holiness and Mosiur de Lasao already had news of the heroic deeds and great exploits which Cortés and all of us had accomplished in the conquest of this New Spain and the many great and distinguished services which we were always rendering to His Majesty, and of the conversion of so many thousands of Indians to our Holy Faith, and it

seems that this German nobleman begged the Holy Father Adriano to deign to decide very promptly the affairs pending between Cortés and the Bishop of Burgos. His Holiness was much concerned because beside the complaints that our Proctors placed before our Holy Father many other persons of quality had gone to him to complain of the Bishop himself, on account of the many injuries and injustices which they alleged he was committing, for as His Majesty was in Flanders and the Bishop was President of the [Council of the] Indies, he ordered everything, and he was hated, and from what we understood our Proctors found the courage to dare to challenge his jurisdiction. So Diego de Ordás, and the Licentiate Francisco Nuñez a cousin of Cortés and Martin Cortés father of the said Cortés united at the Court and with the support of other gentlemen and great Lords who favoured them, and the one of them who interposed most [actively] was the Duke de Bejar, and with this support with great boldness and daring they challenged the jurisdiction of the Bishop so often mentioned by me, and the reasons they advanced were very well proved:—the first was that Diego Velásquez had given the Bishop a very good town in the Island of Cuba, and with Indians from the said town extracted gold for him from the Mines and sent it to him to Castile, and that no town whatever had been given to His Majesty, although he was under more obligation to him than to the Bishop; the other was that when in the year one thousand five hundred and seventeen we got together one hundred and ten soldiers under the Captain named Francisco Hernández de Córdova, and at our expense bought ships and ships' stores and all the rest, and set out to discover New Spain, the Bishop of Burgos reported to His Majesty that Diego Velásquez discovered it, and it was not so; the next was that Diego Velásquez sent to the country we had discovered his

nephew named Juan de Grijalva and that they made further discoveries and acquired on that voyage over twenty thousand pesos de oro by barter, and that Diego Velásquez sent the most of it to the Bishop himself, and gave none of it to His Majesty; and that when Cortés came to conquer New Spain and sent a present to His Majesty, which was the Golden Moon and the Silver Sun, and much gold in grains got out of the Mines, and a great quantity of jewels and ingots and objects of gold of different kinds, and Cortés and all of us soldiers wrote to His Majesty giving a report and account of all that happened and sent it by Francisco de Montejo and another gentleman named Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero, a cousin of the Count of Medellin, he [the Bishop] would not listen to them and took away the entire present of gold which was going to His Majesty, and abused them calling them traitors [adding] that they came to petition in favour of another traitor; and that he suppressed the letters addressed to His Majesty and wrote others very different from them, saying that his friend Diego Velásquez was sending that present, and that he did not send all they brought, for the Bishop kept half or the greater part of it, and because Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero, who was one of the two Proctors whom Cortés sent, asked the Bishop to give him leave to go to Flanders where His Majesty was residing he ordered him to be thrown into prison and he died in jail. He [the Bishop] sent orders to the India House¹ at Seville to the accountant Pedro de Ysasaga and to Juan López de Recalte, who were there as His Majesty's officers, not to give any assistance to Cortés either with soldiers or arms nor anything else, and appointed to offices and employments, without consulting His Majesty, worthless men who neither deserved them

¹ Casa de Contratacion.

nor possessed the ability or knowledge for command, such as Cristóbal de Tápia, so as to marry his niece Doña Potronilla de Fonseca with Tápia, or Diego Velásquez [to whom] he promised the Government of New Spain, and approved as correct the false reports and legal documents which the Proctors of Diego Velásquez put forward, such as those of Andrés de Duero, Manuel Rojas and the Padre Benito Martin, and he sent them to His Majesty as reliable, and the reports of Cortés and all of us who were serving His Majesty, which were very truthful, he concealed and twisted and condemned as wrong.

They advanced many other charges all very well supported, and it was not possible to hide anything however much they alleged on his behalf.

After this was done and written out fair, it was taken to Zaragoza where His Holiness was then staying and the complaint was made. As soon as he [the Pope] obtained an insight into the records and legal documents quoted in the accusation, and [saw] that the statements of the partisans of Diego Velásquez were refuted notwithstanding their claims for expenses incurred by him for ships and maintenance, on account of his not having applied to our Lord the King, but only to his friend the Archbishop of Burgos, whilst Cortés had done what was his duty as a loyal servant, His Holiness in his capacity as Governor of Castile . . . as well as Pope, ordered the Bishop of Burgos at once to resign the office of judging in the affairs and suits of Cortés and to have no further intervention in the affairs of the Indies, and he appointed Hernando Cortés as Governor of this New Spain and [said] that if Diego Velásquez had expended anything that we should pay it back to him.

He even sent to New Spain Bulls with many indulgences for the Hospitals and Churches and wrote a letter charging Cortés and all of us Conquistadores who were in his com-

pany always to exercise much diligence in the holy conversion of the Natives, and that it should be done without killing and robbery, but peaceably and as well as it could be done, and that we should prohibit and do away with [human] sacrifices and sodomy and other wickedness and he said in his letter that, on account of the great service we were rendering our Lord God and His Majesty, His Holiness as our father and pastor would undertake to pray to God for our Souls on account of the great good that all Christendom had received at our hands. Moreover he sent us other Holy Bulls for our absolution.

When our Proctors saw what the Holy Father commanded both as Pontiff and Governor of Castile they at once sent messengers past haste to where His Majesty was staying, for he had already returned from Flanders and was in Castile. They moreover took letters from His Holiness for our Monarch, and after being well informed about what I have already spoken about, he [the Emperor] confirmed what the high Pontiff had ordered and declared Cortés to be Governor of New Spain, and that Diego Velásquez should be repaid what he had expended from his property on the fleet. Moreover he ordered the Government of the Island of Cuba to be taken from him inasmuch as he had sent the fleet with Pánfilo de Narvaez without permission of His Majesty, notwithstanding that the Royal Audiencia of the Geronimite Friars who resided in Santo Domingo as Governors had forbidden it, and in order to take it [the Armada] from him had even sent a Judge of the Royal Audiencia named Lucas Velásquez de Ayllon to stop the fleet from sailing, but instead of obeying him [the Judge] they made him prisoner and sent him in chains in a ship.

Let us cease speaking of this and say how when the Bishop of Burgos knew all that I have already stated and what His Holiness and His Majesty had commanded

should be notified to him, he was so angry that he became very ill and left the Court and went to Toro where he had his residence and houses, and for all that his brother Don Antonio de Fonseca Señor de Coca y Alexos made attempts to support him, he was not able to reinstate him in the authority which he formerly held.

Let us stop talking about this and say that after the great prosperity which ensued in favour of Cortés opposition soon followed and overtook Cortés in the antagonism of grave accusations brought against him by Pánfilo de Narvaez, Cristóbal de Tápia and by the Pilot Cárdenas, who, as I have said in the chapter that treats of it, fell ill from brooding because they had not given him a share of gold from the first that was sent to Castile. Gonzalo de Umbria also accused him,—he was the pilot whose feet Cortés ordered to be cut off, because he revolted with his ship, and with Cermeño and Pedro de Escudero whom he (Cortés) ordered to be hanged.

CHAPTER CLXVIII.

How Pánfilo de Narvaez and Cristóbal de Tápia and a pilot named Gonzalo de Umbria, and another soldier named Cárdenas appeared before His Majesty with the support of the Bishop of Burgos (although he had no authority to interfere in matters concerning the Indies, for they had already taken his authority from him;) these named by me were all staying in Toro, and they brought before His Majesty many complaints against Cortés, and what was done about it.

I HAVE already said in the last chapter how His Holiness saw and understood the great services that Cortés and all of us conquistadores who fought in his company had performed for Our Lord God and for His Majesty and all Christendom, and how he favoured Cortés by making

him Governor of New Spain, and had sent Bulls and indulgences for the Churches and Hospitals and holy absolutions for all of us. When His Majesty had seen all that the Holy Father ordered, after being well informed about all its truth, he confirmed it with other royal appointments. At that time the Bishop of Burgos was removed from his office of President of [the Council of] the Indies and went to live at the City of Toro. Just then Pánfilo de Narvaez who had been captain of the fleet which Diego Velásquez sent against us, arrived in Castile and Cristóbal de Tápia arrived at the same time, whom the Bishop himself had sent to take over the Government of New Spain, and they brought in their company Gonzalo de Umbria and another soldier named Cárdenas, and they all went together to Toro to demand support from the Bishop of Burgos, so that they could go and complain of Cortés before His Majesty, for His Majesty had already returned from Flanders.

The Bishop wished for nothing better than to lodge complaints against Cortés and against us, and he gave them support and promises to this end, and they assembled the proctors of Diego Velásquez who were at Court, namely Bernaldino Velásquez whom he had already sent from Cuba to represent him, and Benito Martin and Manuel de Rojas, and they all went together before our Lord the Emperor, and complained strongly of Cortés. The Charges they preferred against him were that Diego Velásquez sent to explore and settle New Spain three times, and expended a great sum of pesos de oro in ships and arms and ships' stores, and things that he gave to the soldiers, and that he sent Hernando Cortés in the fleet as its Captain, and that he (Cortés) revolted with the fleet and made him no return whatever. They also charged him that, notwithstanding all this, when Velásquez sent Pánfilo de Narvaez as Captain of more than fourteen hundred

soldiers in eighteen ships with many horses, musketeers and crossbowmen, and with letters and decrees of His Majesty signed by his President of the [Council of the] Indies, who was the Bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosano, [ordering him] to hand over the Government of New Spain, and he (Cortés) would not obey, on the contrary he attacked him [Narvaez], defeated him and killed his standard bearer and other Captains, and put out his eye, and burned all the property he possessed and seized Narvaez himself and other Captains who were in his company. That notwithstanding this defeat the said Bishop of Burgos decreed that Cristóbal de Tápia should go, and he went to take over the Government of those Countries in the name of His Majesty, and he [Cortés] would not obey him, and by force made him embark and return; and they accused him [Cortés] of having demanded much gold from all the cities of New Spain in the name of His Majesty and that he took it and hid it and has it in his possession.

They accused him that to the annoyance of all his soldiers he took a *fifth* like a king of all the country that had been annexed in Mexico; they accused him of having ordered the burning of Guatemoc's feet, and those of other Caciques, so that they should give him gold, and they also advanced the charge of the death of Catalina Juarez la Marcayda the wife of Cortés; they accused him of neither giving nor assisting his soldiers with shares of the gold, but keeping all of it for himself; they accused him of building palaces and fortified houses as big as a village and making all the cities in the neighbourhood of Mexico work at them, and bring great Cypress trees and stone from distant lands: they accused him of giving poison to Francisco de Garay so as to take over his men and fleet, and they advanced many other complaints and accusations so numerous, that His Majesty was angry at

hearing all this injustice that they alleged he had committed, believing it to be true.

In addition to this Narvaez speaking very loudly said these words which you will [now] hear.

"So that Your Majesty may know how things went on the night when they captured and defeated me, having some royal decrees in my bosom, when I drew them out quickly (and my eye was destroyed) so that they should not be burnt, for at that time the chamber in which I stood was on fire, they were forcibly taken from my bosom by one of Cortés's Captains named Alonzo de Ávila who is now a prisoner in France, and he would not return them to me, and stated publicly that they were not decrees but bills that I came to collect". Then they say the Emperor laughed. The reply he [the Emperor] gave was that he would order justice to be done, and would do it in the matter; and he promptly ordered certain gentlemen to assemble from his royal Councils and from the royal cabinet, persons in whom His Majesty had confidence that they would do strict justice, and they were named Mercurino Catirinario, Grand Chancellor and an Italian, Monsior de Lasao and the Doctor de la Rocha, Flemmings, Hernando de Vega, Lord of Graxales and Grand Commander of the Order of Castile, the Doctor Lorenzo Galíndez de Caravajal, and the Licenciado Vargas, Treasurer General of Castile.

When they told His Majesty that they were assembled he charged them to examine with full proofs the suits and disputes between Cortés and Diego Velásquez and those complainants and to do justice in all without respect of persons nor favour to any except to Justice.

As soon as those gentlemen had understood the Royal Order they decided to meet in some houses and palaces where the Grand Chancellor was lodged and commanded the appearance of Narvaez, Cristóbal de Tápia, the Pilot

Umbria, Cárdenas, and of Manuel de Rojas, Benito Martín and a Velásquez, these were Proctors for Diego Velásquez. There also appeared on behalf of Cortés, his father, Martín Cortés, the Licentiate Francisco Nuñez and Diego de Ordás, and they ordered the Proctors of Diego Velásquez to bring forward all their complaints, demands and charges against Cortés and they repeated the same complaints they had laid before His Majesty. To this Cortés's Proctors replied that as to what was said about Diego Velásquez being the first to send and discover New Spain having spent many pesos de oro, it was not as they stated, those who discovered it were Francisco Hernández de Córdova with one hundred and ten soldiers, at their own expense. On the contrary Diego Velásquez deserved heavy punishment because he ordered Francisco Hernández and his companions who made the discovery, to go to the Island of the Guanaxes to capture Indians by force to serve as slaves, and of this they showed proofs and on this point there was no contradiction. They also said that if Diego Velásquez next sent his relation Grijalva with another fleet, Diego Velásquez did not send him to form a settlement but to trade, and the greater part of what was expended on the fleet was found by the Captains who had charge of the ships and not by Diego Velásquez; that they gained twenty thousand pesos by barter, and that Diego Velásquez kept the greater part of it and sent it to the Bishop of Burgos to get his support, and that he did not give a share of it to His Majesty, only as much as he had a mind to. Moreover he gave Indians to the said Bishop in the Island of Cuba to extract gold for him, and to His Majesty he gave not one town, although he was under greater obligation to His Majesty than to the Bishop; of this there was good proof and it was not refuted. On this point they also declared that if he sent Hernando Cortés with another fleet it was by the grace

of God and in the interest of the Emperor himself, and it was certain that if he had sent another Captain he would have been defeated on account of the great multitude of warriors who assembled against him, and that when Diego Velásquez despatched him he did not send him to settle but to trade ; proofs of this were shown, that if he (Cortés) remained to form a settlement it was at the request of his companions, and seeing that it was to the service of God and of His Majesty he formed settlements, and that it was a very successful matter and a report of it had been sent to His Majesty, and he had sent him all the gold he was able to acquire, and he wrote two letters to him about it, informing him of what has been stated above, and that [he] Cortés and all his companions bowed to the ground in compliance with his royal commands. Then a report was made of all the things that the Bishop of Burgos did for Diego Velásquez, and that we sent our Proctors with the gold and letters, and the Bishop concealed our many services and did not forward our letters to His Majesty, but others such as suited him, and that he kept most of the gold that we sent for himself and distorted nearly everything that His Majesty ought to have known, and he did not tell the truth about anything, as he was bound to do, to our King and Lord, and because our Proctors wished to go to Flanders [to appear] before his royal person, he threw one of them named Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero, a cousin of the Count of Medellín, into prison and he died there. The said Bishop ordered the officials of the India House at Seville not to give any assistance to Cortés either in the matter of arms or of soldiers, but to thwart him in everything, and he loudly called us traitors. The Bishop did all this because he was arranging a marriage between Diego Velásquez or Tápia and his niece or daughter named Doña Petronilla de Fonseca, and had promised that he would make him

Governor of Mexico, and for all of this that I have stated they exhibited copies of the letters we had written to His Majesty, and other sufficient proofs; and on behalf of Diego Velásquez this was not refuted in any particular because they had nothing to oppose to it.

As to what was said about Pánfilo de Narvaez, that Diego Velásquez sent him with eighteen ships, fourteen hundred soldiers, one hundred horses, eighty musketeers and as many crossbowmen and had been put to great expense, they replied that Diego Velásquez deserved the punishment of death for having sent that expedition without His Majesty's permission, and because when he sent his Proctors to Castile he submitted nothing whatever to Our Lord the King as was his duty, but only to the Bishop of Burgos.

The Royal Audiencia of Santo Domingo and the Geronimite Friars, who were the Governors, sent to the Island of Cuba to order Diego Velásquez under pain of heavy punishment not to despatch that fleet until His Majesty should know about it and he had His Royal permission to do so, for to act otherwise was to do a great dis-service to God and His Majesty by raising discords in New Spain during the time that Cortés and his companions were conquering and converting such a great number of natives, who were converted to our Holy Catholic faith; and in order to detain the fleet they sent a Judge of the same Royal Audiencia named the Licentiate Lucas Vásquez de Ayllon, and instead of obeying him and the royal orders that he brought, they threw him in prison and without any [show of] respect, sent him away in a ship. As Narvaez who was present was the one who committed that irreverent offence touching on the crime of "*laesa Magistatis*", he (also) was deserving of death, and they begged those gentlemen mentioned by me who were serving as judges to order him to be

punished, and they (the judges) replied that they would see that justice was done.

Let us continue the relation of the refutations made by our Proctors, as to what had been said about Cortés not wishing to obey the royal decrees brought by Narvaez, and having made war on him and defeated him and destroyed his eye and captured him and all his Captains and set fire to his quarters. To this they replied as follows :—

When Narvaez arrived in New Spain and disembarked the first thing he did was to send word to the great Cacique Montezuma, whom Cortés held prisoner, that he had come to release him and to kill all of those who were with Cortés, and he disturbed the country to such an extent that where all had been peaceful it reverted again to warfare. As soon as Cortés heard that Narvaez had come to the Port of Vera Cruz he wrote to him very courteously that if he brought decrees from His Majesty, he wished to see and obey them with the respect he owed to his King and Lord, and he [Narvaez] would not answer his letters but in his camp was always calling him [Cortés] a traitor, which he was not, but a loyal servant of His Majesty, and when Narvaez ordered a proclamation of blood and fire and free loot to be made in his camp against Cortés and his companions, he [Cortés] begged him many times for peace and to be careful not to upset New Spain in a way that would result in all being lost. He offered to go away to such a part of the country as he might wish to conquer and Narvaez should go in any other direction which pleased him best, and that between them they would serve God and His Majesty and pacify those countries, but not even to this would he [Narvaez] give any reply. When Cortés saw that all those acts of courtesy were in vain, and he was not shown the royal decrees, and heard of the great irreverence

Narvaez had committed in seizing His Majesty's Judge, he decided, in order to punish him for that crime, to go and speak to him and see the royal decrees and learn for what reason he had seized the Judge. [Our Proctors also stated] that Narvaez had certainly arranged to capture Cortés and of this they produced proofs and sufficient attestations, and moreover as a witness [they called] Andrés de Duero who was there on the side of Narvaez when that happened, and it was this same Duero who gave notice of it to Cortés. To all this the party of Diego Velásquez could offer no refutation whatever. As to the accusations regarding the coming of Francisco Garay to Panuco with a great fleet and decrees from His Majesty by which he was made Governor of that province, and that Cortés had shown great cunning and assiduity in inducing Garay's soldiers to rise against him, and the Indians of the said province killed many of them, and his taking certain ships from them, and committing other excesses, until Garay saw that he was lost and deserted and without captains or soldiers and went to place himself within Cortés's doors and lodged in his house, and within eight days of breakfasting with him he died of poison that they had then given him,—they replied that it was not so. For there was no need for Cortés to make Garay's soldiers mutiny, because as Garay was not a man suited for warfare he had no skill with soldiers, and because they did not meet with good land when he disembarked, but with rivers and bad swamps and mosquitos and bats, and those whom he brought in his company heard news of the great prosperity of Mexico and the riches and the good report or the liberality of Cortés, there was reason enough for them to go to him to Mexico; and his [Garay's] soldiers wandered about through the pueblos of those provinces robbing the natives and taking their daughters and wives, and the natives rose against them

and killed the soldiers and he [Cortés] did not, as they say, seize the ships, but they were wrecked. If Cortés sent his Captains it was so that they might speak to Garay offering themselves to him on behalf of Cortés, and to examine the royal decrees, whether they were at variance with those which Cortés already possessed, and that Garay seeing himself deserted by his soldiers, and his ships run aground, came to get help in Mexico, and Cortés ordered much honour to be paid to him on the road, and [prepared] banquets in Texcoco, and when he entered Mexico he went out to receive him, and lodged him in his house, and had arranged a marriage between their children, and wished to give him support and assistance to settle at the Rio de Palmas, and that if he fell ill and God was pleased to take him from this world what fault had Cortés in the matter? Great honour was paid to him in his burial, and they put on mourning for him and the doctors who attended him swore that it was pleurisy and that was the truth and there was no refutation. As to what was said about his exacting a fifth like a King, they answered that when they made him Captain General and Chief Justice, until His Majesty might decide otherwise, the soldiers promised to give him a fifth from the shares after the royal fifth was taken out, and he took it because he afterwards spent all he possessed in His Majesty's service, for he went on the expedition to Panuco and paid over sixty thousand pesos de oro from his property, and sent in presents to His Majesty much of the gold that had come to him from his fifth, and they exhibited proofs of all they said and there was no refutation from the Proctors of Diego Velásquez.

As to what was alleged about Cortés having taken from the soldiers the shares of gold which fell to them, they said that they were given to them in accordance

with the account of the gold which was found on the Capture of Mexico, for very little was found, because the Indians of Tlaxcala and Texcoco and the other warriors who were present in the battles and wars had stolen it all; and there was no refutation to this. Concerning what was stated about the death of Doña Catalina Juarez la Marçayda the wife of Cortés, they denied it, for she was already ill with asthma and died the next morning. As to what was said about Cortés ordering the feet of Guatemoc and the other Caciques to be burnt with oil, so as to make them yield up the gold, to this they replied that His Majesty's officers did the burning against the wish of Cortés, to make them [the Caciques] betray the whereabouts of the treasure of Montezuma, and for this they furnished plenty of evidence.

Regarding the charge that he had built very great houses and held court in them¹ and had caused tree timber and cypresses and stone to be brought from distant lands, they replied that the houses were in truth most sumptuous for he had them built for His Majesty's service and in his Royal Name, but that the timber and cypresses grew close to the city and were brought by water, and as for stone, there was so much from the temples of the idols which they destroyed, that there was no necessity to bring it from outside, and in order to dress it, all that was needed was to order the great Cacique Guatemoc to have it dressed by Indian artizans of whom there are many, both builders and carpenters, and Guatemoc had summoned all his towns for the purpose, for it was the custom among the Indians to build the houses and palaces of their Lords in this manner.

As to the complaint of Narvaez, that Alonzo de Ávila

¹ Avia en ellas una villa.

snatched the royal decrees from his breast by force and would not give them back and gave out that they were bills which he had come to collect, and that he did it by Cortés's orders:—they answered that they saw no decrees but only three notes of hand for certain horses and mares which had been sold on credit, and these they gave back to Narvaez. Cortés never saw any such decrees nor ordered them to be taken from him.

As to the complaint of the Pilot Umbria that Cortés had ordered his feet to be cut off and ill treated for no reason whatever:—they answered that they were cut off, according to justice and judgment that was given on the matter, for he tried to revolt with his ship and to desert his Captain in wartime and go to Cuba with two other men whom Cortés justly ordered to be hanged. As to the plea of Cárdenas, that they had not given him his share of the first gold that was sent to His Majesty, they said that he signed [a declaration] with many others that he wanted no share in it, but that it should be sent to His Majesty, and in addition to this Cortés gave him three hundred pesos to take to his wife and children, and that Cárdenas not being a man fit for warfare and crack brained and of no use he was very well paid with the three hundred pesos. And finally they answered that if Cortés went against Narvaez and defeated him and destroyed his eye and took him and his captains prisoners and burnt his quarters, Narvaez himself was the cause of it, according to what they had [already] stated and alleged, and [it was done] as a punishment for the great irreverence he had committed in seizing one of His Majesty's Judges, and as right was on the side of Cortés and his companions in that battle which he fought with Narvaez Our Lord God was pleased to give the victory to Cortés who with two hundred and sixty-six soldiers, without horses or muskets or crossbows but with great

skill and presents of gold, defeated Narvaez and destroyed his eye and captured him and his Captains who brought against Cortés thirteen hundred soldiers and among them one hundred horsemen, and as many musketeers and cross-bowmen, and had Narvaez remained as Captain of New Spain, it would have been lost. As to what was said about Cristóbal de Tápia coming to take over the Government of New Spain with decrees from His Majesty and their refusing to obey him :—to this they answered that Cristóbal de Tápia, who was there present, had been content to sell some horses and negroes, and had he gone to Mexico where Cortés was stationed and shown him his authority, he [Cortés] would have obeyed it, but as all the gentlemen and the municipalities of all the cities and towns saw that it was desirable that Cortés should hold the Government at that time, because Tápia was not fit for it, they protested against the royal decrees to His Majesty, as appears in the deeds which were drawn up on the subject.

After they had finished stating their demands on behalf of Diego Velásquez and Narvaez, and those gentlemen [already] mentioned by me, as Judges had taken note of the replies, and all that was alleged on behalf of Cortés and proved, and had been occupied for five days in listening to one side and the other, they decided to submit the whole matter in a consultation to His Majesty, and after a unanimous decision had been reached, the judgment they delivered was as follows :—

Firstly, they considered Cortés a good and loyal servant of His Majesty, as well as everyone of us the true conquistadores who went with him, and they esteemed highly our great fidelity and they praised and extolled in the highest degree the great battles and the daring we showed against the Indians, and did not omit mentioning how few in number we were when we defeated Narvaez, and

promptly silenced Diego Velásquez as to his claim to the government of New Spain, and that if he had spent anything on the fleets that he might justly demand it from Cortés. They next gave judgment that Cortés should be governor of New Spain according to the orders of the high Pontiff and they approved in the name of His Majesty of the allotments Cortés had made, and gave him authority to grant lands from that time forward, and they approved of all he had done for it was clearly for the service of God and His Majesty.

In the affair of Garay, and in other matters touching the charges they brought against him [such as] the death of his wife Doña Catalina Juarez la Marçayda, they came to no decision with regard to it, it was reserved for a future time when they would send to take his Residencia. As to the charge Narvaez put forward, about their snatching the decrees from his breast, and that it was Alonzo de Ávila [who did it] who was at the time a prisoner in France, for Juan Florin, the great Pirate, had seized him when he stole Montezuma's jewels which we were sending; those gentlemen declared that he [Narvaez] had better go and ask him in France or that they should cite him to appear before His Majesty's Court, so as to hear what he would answer to it. As to the two pilots Umbria and Cárdenas, they ordered them to be given royal grants so that they should each be given Indians in New Spain who would produce an equivalent of a thousand pesos de oro. They ordered that all the conquistadores should receive a preference and that they should give us good allotments of Indians, and that we should be entitled to seats of honour, both within the holy churches as well as in other places.

When this judgment was given and delivered by those gentlemen whom His Majesty had appointed as Judges, they took it to Valladolid where His Majesty was re-

siding, to be signed, for at that time (having come from Flanders) he had ordered all his royal Court and Council to proceed there, and His Majesty signed it, and issued other royal decrees to turn out other renegades from New Spain; so that there should be no obstacle to the conversion of the Natives. He also ordered that no lawyers should go there for some years, for, wherever they are, they stir up lawsuits, arguments and discord. All these decisions were issued with His Majesty's signature and counter-signed by those gentlemen who acted as judges and by Don García de Padilla in this same city of Valladolid on the seventeenth of May in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty something, and they came legalized by the Secretary Don Francisco de los Cobos¹ who was afterwards Comendador Mayor of Leon.

Then His Majesty wrote to Cortés and all of us who had gone with him thanking us for the many good and distinguished services we had performed for him, and at that time also Don Hernando of Hungary, King of the Romans and father of the present Emperor,² wrote another letter in reply to one Cortés had written and sent to him with a present of many golden jewels, and what the King of Hungary said in the letter he wrote, was that he had already heard the news of the many and great services that he had performed first to God and to his Lord and brother the Emperor and to all Christendom and he (Cortés) should let him know of any wishes he might have so that he could intercede for them in favour of their fulfilment with his Lord and brother the Emperor, for his (Cortés') generous personality was entitled to more than that, and he should give his allotments to his valiant

¹ Francisco de los Cobos. Marqués de Camerasa.

² Ferdinand of Austria, brother of the Emperor Charles V., succeeded to the Empire on death of Charles V. in 1558.

soldiers who had assisted him. He added other complimentary expressions, and I remember that he signed himself "I, the King and Infante of Castile," and it was countersigned by his Secretary named somebody of Castillejo, and this letter I read two or three times in Mexico for Cortés showed it to me, so that I might see in what high esteem we the true conquistadores were held.

When our Proctors received those warrants they promptly despatched them post haste by Rodrigo de Paz, a cousin of Cortés and a relation of the Licentiate Francisco Nuñez, and there also went with them an hidalgo from Estremadura, also a relation of Cortés, named Francisco de Las Casas and they engaged a quick sailing ship and set their course for the Island of Cuba, and in Santiago de Cuba, where Diego Velásquez was Governor, they notified him of the decrees and sentences ordering him to abandon his suit against Cortés, and to demand of him the disbursements he had made. The notification was made by sound of trumpet, and Diego Velásquez fell ill from vexation and died within a few months poor and discontented.

So as not to have to turn back again to recite what Francisco de Montejo and Diego de Ordás negotiated in Castile, I will state it now ; to Francisco de Montejo His Majesty granted the Government of Yucatan and Cozumel and made him Adelantado which conveyed [the titles of] Don and Señoria ; to Diego de Ordás His Majesty confirmed the [grant of] Indians that he held in New Spain, and gave him a Commandery of [the order of] Señor Santiago, and the Volcano which is near Huexotzingo as a coat of Arms, and with this they went back to New Spain, and within two or three years Ordás himself returned to Castile, and petitioned for leave to conquer Marañon, where he lost his life and all his property.

Let us leave this and say that when the Bishop of Burgos who in due time heard of the great favours which His Majesty bestowed on Cortés and all of us Conquistadores, and how those gentlemen already mentioned by me as Judges had gained full knowledge of the agreements that existed between him and Diego Velásquez and how he took the gold that we sent to His Majesty and concealed and distorted our many services and approved as good those of his friend Diego Velásquez, if he had been very sad and reflective before, he now on this occasion fell seriously ill on account of this and other annoyances which he suffered through a gentleman who was his nephew named Don Alonzo de Azevedo Fonseca, who was Archbishop of Santiago, for Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca claimed that Archbishopric.

Let us stop talking of this and tell how Francisco de Las Casas and Rodrigo de Paz arrived in New Spain and entered Mexico with the royal decrees which they brought from His Majesty to the effect that Cortés was to be Governor, what happiness and rejoicing they caused and what messengers started through all the provinces of New Spain to claim rewards in the towns which had been settled, and what favours Cortés conferred on Las Casas and on Rodrigo de Paz and others who came in their company who were from his home at Medellin. He made Francisco de Las Casas a Captain and at once gave him a town named Aguitlan, and to Rodrigo de Paz he gave other very good towns and made him his chief steward and secretary, and he ended by managing Cortés himself. To all those who came from his home at Medellin he gave Indians, and to the Master of the ship which brought the news that Cortés was governor, he gave gold with which he returned to Castile a rich man.

Let us cease from reciting the rejoicings and rewards

that were given on account of the news I have mentioned, and let me answer what some inquisitive readers have asked me, and they are quite right to bring up the discussion:—how was it possible for me to know what had happened in Spain, both what His Holiness commanded as well as the complaints they made against Cortés and the replies that our Proctors offered for consideration, and the judgment that was given in the matter, and many other particulars which I have here spoken of and stated, and which as I was at the time conquering in New Spain and its provinces, I could neither see nor hear? I answer them that not only did I get to know it, but all the conquistadores [did so] who cared to see and read it in four or five letters and reports which explained in their chapters how and when and at what time all that I have related had taken place, and these letters and reports our Proctors wrote from Castile so that we should know that they were pressing our business with great fervour.

I often said at the time that it looked as though what they obtained was solely on account of Cortés's affairs and their own, and that as for us who had won and conquered it [the country] and placed Cortés in the position that he occupied, we were always left to face one difficulty after another, and as there is much to be said on this subject, let it stay in the inkpot, except to pray our Lord God to remedy it and to incline the heart of our Great Cæsar to order his honest justice which in all things is infallible to be carried out.

Let us pass on and speak of what Cortés was occupied about after he was invested with the Government.

CHAPTER CLXIX.

What Cortés was engaged upon after he was invested with the Government of New Spain, how and in what way he allotted the pueblos of Indians and other things that took place, and a sort of grumbling it led to among the recipients.

THE Government of New Spain had no sooner been conferred on Cortés than it occurred to me and others of the original Conquistadores of most mature and prudent judgment that it would have to be Cortés's duty to bear in mind all the hardships that ensued from the day that he set out from the Island of Cuba onwards, and remember who were the persons who supported him when we disembarked on the Sand-dunes, and when he was chosen Captain General and Chief Justice of New Spain. Who again were those who were always to be found at his side in all the wars, those of Tabasco and Cingapacinga and in the three battles of Tlaxcala, and in that of Cholula, when they had the pots all ready with Chili peppers to cook and eat us, and also who took his side when on account of six or seven soldiers who were not on good terms with him they bid him return to Villa Rica instead of going to Mexico, putting before him the great strength of warriors and the powerful fortification of the city, and who were those who entered Mexico with him and aided in the capture of the great Montezuma. Then when Pánfilo de Narvaez came with his fleet, who were the soldiers whom he took with him to aid him in the capture and defeat of Narvaez, and who were those who returned with him to Mexico to the relief of Pedro de Alvarado and were present at the bridges and the great attacks they made on us until we fled from Mexico, and out of the thirteen hundred soldiers eight hundred and fifty

were left dead, counting those who were killed in Tuxtepec and on the roads, and only four hundred and forty of us through God's Mercy escaped; and he should also be reminded who in that fearful battle of Otumba, after God, helped him to come out a conqueror from that extreme danger, and later on who were they and how many who helped him to conquer Tepeaca and Cachula and their neighbourhood, and Izucar and Guacachula, and how we took the round by way of Texcoco to Mexico, and the many other expeditions we made from Texcoco such as the affair of Iztapalapa when they tried to drown us, letting out (as they did) the water of the lake thinking to drown us in it; and in the same manner of the battles we fought with the natives of that pueblo and the Mexicans who helped them, and then of the expeditions to Zaltocan, and the Peñoles which they now call the Peñoles del Marqués, and many other expeditions; and the round of the great pueblos of the lake, and the many encounters and battles that took place during that journey such as those at Xochimilco and those at Tacuba; and on our return to Texcoco who were those who helped him against the conspiracy which was planned and settled to kill him, on which account he hanged one Villafañá. After this who were those who helped him to conquer Mexico and suffered many battles and wounds and hardships day and night for ninety-three days on end, until Guatemoc, who governed Mexico at that time, was captured. Who were those who helped him and backed him up when a certain Cristóbal de Tápia came to New Spain to take over the Government, and more than all this, who were the soldiers who wrote three times to His Majesty in praise of the many great, good and notable services that Cortés had done him, and [affirmed] that he was worthy of the highest rewards and should be made Governor of New Spain. I do not

wish now to call to mind other services which we were constantly performing for Cortés, we the manly and hardy soldiers who had gone through all this; but now when the Government had come to him, (and, after God, it was through our help that it was given to him) it would be seemly that he should take count of Dick, Tom and Harry¹ and others who deserved it, and the soldier and comrade who was perchance in Colima or Zacatula, or in Panuco or Coatzacoalcos, and those who fled away when Tututepec was abandoned, and who were poor because the luck of [possessing] good Indians had not fallen to their share, for there was property to dispose of, and [means of] removing them from unprofitable lands, as His Majesty had many times ordered and charged him to do in his Royal letters. Cortés gave nothing from his own property and he should have given what would have supported them and have given them preference in all things. When he wrote to the proctors who were in Castile he should have written in our name telling them to solicit on our behalf, and Cortés himself should have written to His Majesty very graciously begging him to give us for ourselves and our children all the appointments and royal offices that there were in New Spain, but I say other peoples troubles weighed lightly with him², and he solicited for himself alone the Government which they brought him not only before he was made a Marquis, but after he went to Castile and came back a Marquis.

Let us leave this and mention here another proceeding which would have been a very right and just way of apportioning the whole of the Pueblos of New Spain, according to the very learned Conquistadores of prudent

¹ Con Pero y Sancho y Min.

² Mal ageno de pelo cuelga.

and mature judgment who captured it. What should have been done was this, to divide New Spain into five parts, one fifth part of the best cities and capitals of all the population to be given to His Majesty as his royal fifth, leaving another part for allotment so that the rent should go to the churches, hospitals and monasteries, and to enable His Majesty to grant some favours to gentlemen who had done him service if he wished to do so, and there would have been enough for all; and the three parts that remained should have been divided between Cortés and all of us original Conquistadores according to the rank which he considered that each of us held, and it should have been granted in perpetuity, for at that time His Majesty would have approved of it, as he had expended nothing on these conquests and neither knew nor had heard of this country, (residing as he did at that time in Flanders) and seeing that as loyal subjects we had delivered over to him a considerable part of the lands of the New World he would have been graciously pleased to make us a grant of them, and with that we should have settled down and should not have wandered on as we wander now like a lame mule, dejected and going from bad to worse under Governors who do just as they choose, while many of us Conquistadores have not enough to live on, [nor do we know] what will become of the children we leave behind us.

I wish to state what Cortés did and to whom he gave the pueblos; first of all [he gave them] to Francisco de Las Casas, to Rodrigo de Paz, to the Factor, the Veedor and the Accountant who at that time came from Castile, and to a certain Avalos and Saavedra his relations, and to one Barrios to whom he married his sister-in-law, sister of his wife la Marcyda, so that they should not accuse him of the murder of his wife, and to Alonzo Lucas and to one Juan de la Torre and Luis de la Torre

and to a Villegas and to one Alonzo Valiente and a Ribera the squint-eyed. Why do I count these few when to as many as came from Medellin, and to any servants of great lords who told him stories that pleased him he gave the best of New Spain. I do not say that it was better to abstain from giving to all, for there was plenty, but that he should have first considered those whom His Majesty recommended and the soldiers who helped him to gain the position and power he possessed, and should have assisted them. Now that it is done I do not wish to repeat any more, but I remember that a saying was current among us when there was anything of much importance to be divided that they used it as a proverb when there were debates about it, and they were wont to say "Not to divide it like Cortés who took all the gold and the most and the best of New Spain for himself" while we remain poor in the towns where we settled in the misery which fell to our lot, but when it comes to going on expeditions which suit his purpose he remembers well enough where we are and sends to summon us for battles and warfare as I will relate later on.

I will stop reciting grievances and the oppression to which he subjected us for it cannot now be remedied, and I will not omit to relate what Cortés said after they took the Government from him (which was when Luis Ponce de Leon came, and when Luis Ponce died he left Marcos de Aguilar as his lieutenant as I will report further on) and that is when some of us gentlemen and captains, old companions who had helped him in the conquest, went to Cortés to tell him to give up some of the many Indians that he then possessed, for His Majesty ordered some of them to be taken from him, and they had to be given up and were promptly taken from him, and the answer he gave was that they must suffer as he was suffering, but if His Majesty should again grant him

the Government, by his conscience, (for that was his [customary] oath,) he would not make the mistakes he had done in the past, but would give good allotments to those whom His Majesty should designate, and would amend the great error which he committed in the past, and with such [promise of] allotments and smooth words he thought they were contented but they went about abusing him and even cursing him and his entire family and all that he possessed, and wishing him bad luck with it, him and his daughters.

Let us leave this now and relate that at that time or a few days earlier, the Officers of His Majesty's Treasury arrived from Castile namely Alonzo de Estrada the Treasurer a native of Ciudad Real and the Factor Gonzalo de Salazar who said that he was the eldest son of Cristiano who was born in Granada and they say his ancestors came from Burgos, and Rodrigo de Albornoz also arrived, for Julian de Alderete was dead, and this Albornoz was a native of Paldinas or of Ragama. The Veedor Pedro Almíndez Chirino came, a native of Ubeda or Basca and many other persons came who had official appointments.

Let us leave this, and I wish to state that at this time one Rodrigo Rangel whom I have often mentioned before (who had not been present at the capture of Mexico, nor at any of the battles which had been fought in New Spain) so that he might gain in some repute, begged Cortés to give him a company to go and conquer the Pueblos of the Zapotecs who were at war, and that he might take Pedro de Írcio in his company to act as adviser in what was to be done. As Cortés knew that Rodrigo Rangel was not the man to be entrusted with any task because he was always ailing with great pain from boils and was very feeble and his thighs and legs were very thin, and all his body and head covered with

running sores, he refused him that expedition, saying that the Zapotec Indians were a difficult people to conquer on account of the great and lofty mountains where they lived, so that it was impossible to take horses, and that there were always fogs and mists there, and the roads were narrow and slippery and one could not walk along them unless, so to speak, with the feet of those going ahead on a level with the heads of those who came behind (this is to be understood in the way I here state it, as it is true, because those who go above and those who come behind, go head to foot) and that it was not a suitable undertaking [for him] to go against them, and if they did go they would have to take soldiers who were very active and strong and experienced in warfare.

However, as Rangel was very obstinate and came from the same country as Cortés which is Medellín, he persuaded him to grant his request, and as we afterwards learned Cortés was in favour of sending him to a place where he might die, for he had a bad tongue and said evil things. So Cortés himself wrote to Coatzacoalcos to ten or a dozen of us whom he named in the letter begging us to go with Rangel and assist him; and among the soldiers ordered to go he named me, and all of us went, that is all those settlers to whom Cortés had written.

I have already said that there are great mountains in the land inhabited by the Zapotecs and that the natives are very active and lithe people and that with certain calls and whistles which they give all the valleys resound just like echoes.

As we had to take along Rangel we could not hurry and do what we ought to do, and when we reached a pueblo we found it deserted and as the houses were not close together but one on a hill and another in a valley and it was the rainy season and poor Rangel was crying

out with pain from his boils, and we all disliked marching in his company, and seeing that it was a waste of time we feared that some disaster might happen, if by chance the Zapotecs should wait for us and face us (for they are active and have long lances, much better than ours, and they are great archers and shoot stones from slings and we could only move along the roads in single file,) and as Rangel was worse than when he started he agreed to abandon the black conquest, for black one might call it and return each one to his home. Pedro de Írcio whom he brought as adviser was the first to give this advice and he left Rangel and went off to Villa Rica where he lived and Rangel said that he wished to go with us to Coatzacoalcos as it was a warm country, to be cured of his illness, and the bad luck fell to us residents of Coatzacoalcos who were then present to carry that laggard back with us.

When we arrived at Coatzacoalcos he at once said that he wished to go and pacify the provinces of Cimatan and Talatupan¹ which (as I have already said many times in the chapter that treats of the subject) did not want to make peace because of [the protection afforded them by] the great rivers and quaking bogs among which they lived, and in addition to this stronghold of swamps they were by nature great archers and used very large bows and were excellent shots. To go back to our story, Rangel displayed in that town decrees from Hernando Cortés [to the effect] that he sent him as Captain to conquer the provinces that were at war, especially that of Cimatan and Talatupan and he summoned nearly all the settlers of the town to accompany him, and Cortés was so greatly feared that although we regretted it, we did not dare to disobey when we beheld his decrees, and over one hundred

¹ Tacotalpa?

foot soldiers and horsemen and as many as twenty-six crossbowmen and musketeers set out with Rangel.

We went by [way of] Tonalá, Ayagualulco, Copilco, and Zacualco and we crossed many rivers in canoes and rafts and we passed by Teotitan Copilco and by all the towns we called La Chontalpa which were peaceable and arrived within five leagues of Cimatan, and in some swamps and bad places there were assembled nearly all the warriors of that province and they had erected fences and great barricades of logs and thick timbers, and from within some battlements and loopholes whence they could shoot promptly they gave us such a vigorous attack of arrows and fire hardened javelins from their spear throwers that they killed seven horses and wounded more than eight soldiers and they gave Rangel himself who was on horseback an arrow wound in the left arm, but it only entered a little way.

We old Conquistadores had told Rangel that active men should always go [in advance] on foot examining the road and looking out for ambushes, and had already said at other times that these Indians were used to fight very bravely and with cunning, but as he was a man who talked much he said, curse it all, if he had believed us that would not have happened to him, and from this time onwards that we should be the captains and should command him in the war. As soon as the soldiers were healed as well as certain horses which were wounded in addition to the seven which were killed, Rangel ordered me to go scouting ahead and to take a very fierce lurcher that belonged to him and also two soldiers and crossbowmen, and I told him to keep well back with the horsemen and that the soldiers and musketeers should go with me. On our way to the pueblo of Cimatan which was at that time well populated we met with other barricades and fortifications neither more nor less than those we had already passed;

and they let fly at us who were going ahead such [a number of] arrows and javelins that they promptly killed the lurcher and but for my thick armour I should have fallen there, for seven arrows were hanging from me checked [from piercing me] by the thick wadding of my armour, however, even so I came out wounded in one foot, and all my companions were wounded.

Then I cried out to some friendly Indians who were a little way behind [to tell] the musketeers, crossbowmen and foot soldiers to come at once to our assistance, but the horsemen to stay behind for they could not gallop there nor make any use of their horses and they would have been shot with arrows. And they soon came to my support as I had sent to tell them, for before I had gone on ahead it had all been so arranged that the horsemen should keep well back and that all the others should be on the alert for a signal or order. When the crossbowmen and musketeers came up we drove the enemy from the barricades and they took refuge in some great quaking swamps, and no one could enter them and get out again except on all fours or with much assistance.

At this time Rangel arrived with the horsemen and [as] there were many houses round about abandoned by their owners we rested [there] that day and treated the wounded. The next day we marched on the way to the pueblo of Cimatan and there were great level savannahs, and in the middle of the savannahs most horrible swamps, and in one of them the enemy waited for us, and it was with cunning that they agreed among themselves to await us in the open field of the savannahs, and they foresaw that, in their greediness to overtake them and spear them, the horsemen would come galloping after them full tilt, and would stick in the mud of the swamp, and it happened just as they had planned in spite of all we had told and advised Rangel that he should be on the

look out as there were many swamps, and that he should not gallop over the savannahs with loose reign, for the horses would stick in the mud and that these Indians were known to use these stratagems and make fortifications and places to shoot from near to the swamps, but he would not believe it. The first to get stuck in the swamp was Rangel himself, and his horse was killed [and they would have captured him] if he had not been promptly rescued, for many Indians had thrown themselves into those dangerous swamps in order to seize him and carry him off alive to be sacrificed. However he came out with the ulcers on his head scarified.

As all that province was thickly peopled we went to another small pueblo close by and the inhabitants fled from it, and there we doctored Rangel and the three soldiers who were wounded, and thence we went to some other houses, also without inhabitants for their owners at once deserted them, and we found another fortification well fenced with great baulks of timber and loopholes for arrows, and we had not rested more than a quarter of an hour when so great a number of Cimatec warriors came and surrounded us in the pueblo that they killed one soldier and two horses, and we barely succeeded in driving them off.

At that time our Rangel was suffering greatly from his head and there were many mosquitos so that he could sleep neither by night nor day and huge bats which bit him and sucked his blood. It was always raining, and as some of the soldiers newly arrived from Castile, whom Rangel had brought with him, saw that the Indians of that province had already made a stand against us in three places and had killed eleven horses and two soldiers and wounded many others, they advised Rangel to turn back for it was a very poor country and full of swamps, and Rangel was anxious to do so, but

in order that the retreat should not appear to be of his own free will and wish, but on account of the advice of the majority, he determined to call a council to consider it, [composed] of persons who were of his way of thinking so that the retreat should take place.

At that moment twenty of us soldiers had gone out to see whether we could capture some people in the neighbouring cacao groves and we brought back two Indian men and three women. Then Rangel called me aside and consulted me and spoke of his headache and how the other soldiers had advised him to turn back, and told me all that had happened. Then I censured him about the retreat and said to him "what will they say of your Honour being so near to the pueblo of Cimatan and wishing to turn back? Cortés will not be pleased at it, and evil disposed persons who wish you ill will throw it in your face that neither in the expedition against the Zapotecs nor in this one have you achieved a single good result although you were accompanied by such fine conquistadores, namely, the men of our town of Coatzacoalcos. In so far as our honour and that of Your Excellency is concerned I and other soldiers are of opinion that we should go forward, and I and my companions will go on ahead examining the swamps and forests and with the crossbowmen and musketeers we will go to the Capital of Cimatan, and your Honour can give my horse to some other gentleman who is expert with a lance and has the courage to manage him, for he is of no use to me in what I am doing, and he can come behind with the horsemen."

When Rodrigo Rangel heard this from me as he was a loud voiced man and a great talker he came out from the hut where [he had] been holding council and in a loud voice called together all the soldiers and said "the die is cast that we are to go ahead curse it all

(for this was always his way of swearing and talking) if Bernal Díaz del Castillo has told me the truth it is what suits all of you," and although some soldiers were sorry for it, others thought it right, and we at once began our march with the crossbowmen and musketeers in good order close by me, and the horsemen in the rear on account of the forest and swamps where horses could not gallop, until we reached another pueblo which the natives abandoned. Thence we went to the capital of Cimatán and went through another affray of arrows and javelins, but we soon put the enemy to flight and the native dwellers in that pueblo set fire to many of their houses, and there we captured fifteen men and women, and sent the women to bid the Cimatecs to make peace and we would pardon them for the warfare, and the relations and husbands of the women and common folk whom we held as prisoners came and we gave them up all the spoil, and they said that they would bring the whole pueblo to peace, but they never returned with an answer. Then Rangel said to me "Curse it all, but you have deceived me and you must make an expedition with other companions and find me as many Indian men and women as those you have made me release through your advice."

So fifty of us soldiers with myself as Captain promptly set out and we came on some ranchos placed among quaking bogs which we did not dare to enter, whence [the inhabitants] fled through some great thickets and thorn brakes which they call among themselves Xihuaquetlán, which are very dangerous and pierce one's feet, and in some cacao groves we captured six men and women with their little children and we returned to our Captain and with this we appeased him, and he again set the prisoners free so that they should summon the Cimatecs to make peace, and in

spite of persuasion they would not come, and we resolved to return to our town of Coatzacoalcos.

So ended the expeditions against the Zapotecs and against the people of Cimatan, and this is the report which should have been made of Rangel when he begged this conquest of Cortés.

I wish to relate some things which Rangel did on the march for they are laughable; when they were in the Zapotec mountains, it appears that one of the soldiers newly arrived from Castile made him angry, and Rangel said and swore "Curse it all, he must be tied to a whipping post", and he said, "is there no knave to lend a hand and help me to tie him"? There was a soldier there who now lives in Oaxaca named Hernando de Aguilar and as he was a simple-minded man he said "I want to get away from here, don't ask me to lend a hand," and Rangel laughed so much at this that he promptly pardoned the soldier who had angered him on account of what Aguilar said. Another time a horse broke away from a soldier named Salazar and he could not catch it and Rangel said, "let one of the greatest rogues and swindlers that have come with us help him to catch it," and there came a gentleman, a person of quality, who did not understand what Rangel said and captured the horse, and it sent Rangel into fits of laughter and we were all made to laugh at the things that he said. There was a dispute between two soldiers about a tribute of cacao given to one of them by a small pueblo which Cortés had assigned to them and which they held in partnership between them, and although the partners did not wish it, Rangel made them cast lots [to decide] who should have the pueblo. And he did and said other things which were subjects for laughter rather than for description.

Gonzalo de Ocampo said of this Rodrigo Rangel that

on account of the oaths and imprecations that he swore and things he said, that they examined them in Castile in the Holy Office. I did not wish to write a chapter by itself about this Captaincy which they gave to this Rodrigo Rangel for we did no good for lack of time, and above all, because the Captain was so ill and not able to keep his feet.

Two years afterwards or a little later we returned in earnest to the Zapotecs and the other provinces and conquered them and brought them to peace, which I will relate further on. Let us leave this and tell how Cortés sent to His Majesty in Castile over eighty thousand pesos de oro by the hands of Diego de Soto a native of Toro, and I think by one Ribero the one-eyed, who was his Secretary, and then he sent the very valuable gun made of low-grade gold and silver which they called the bird Phoenix, and he also sent to his father Martin Cortés many thousands of pesos de oro, and what happened about it I will go on to relate.

CHAPTER CLXX.

How Captain Hernando Cortés sent to Castile to His Majesty eighty thousand pesos in gold and silver and sent a cannon which was a culverin very richly adorned with many figures all over it and the greater part of it consisted of low-grade gold mixed with silver from Michoacan, and the name given to it was the Phoenix ; he also sent to his father Martin Cortés over five thousand pesos de oro, and what happened about it I will go on to relate.

As Cortés had collected and got together a matter of eighty thousand pesos de oro, and the forging of the culverin called the Phoenix was finished and resulted in a cannon of excellent quality for presentation to such an

exalted Emperor as our great Cæsar as an inscription engraved on the culverin itself stated :

Aquesta, ave, nació, sin par	This bird born without an equal,
Yo en serviros sin segundo y	I second to none in serving you,
Vos sin ygual en el mundo	Your Highness without equal in the world.

Cortés sent it all to His Majesty by a gentleman named Diego de Soto a native of Toro, and I cannot remember clearly if a certain Juan de Ribera, who had been secretary to Cortés and who was blind of one eye, which had a film over it, went at that time.

What I felt about Ribera was that he was a bad lot¹ for when he played at cards or dice it did not seem that he played fair, and in addition to this he had many bad qualities and I state this because when he arrived in Castile he went off with the pesos de oro which Cortés gave him for his father Martin Cortés. And because Martin Cortés demanded it [the money] of him Ribera being naturally of evil disposition instead of speaking well of his master [as he should have done] considering the favours that Cortés when a poor man had conferred on him, he said so many evil things and argued in such a way, that as he had great power of expression and had been the Secretary of Cortés himself, he gained credit especially with the Bishop of Burgos as well as with Narvaez, so often mentioned by me, and Cristóbal de Tápia and the Proctors of Diego Velásquez and others who assisted them. And as the death of Francisco de Garay had happened at that time, they all joined in making many complaints against Cortés before His Majesty, so numerous and in such a manner, that His Majesty believed that the judges he had appointed had shown partiality for Cortés on account of gifts he had

¹ Mala yerba.

sent them for that purpose, and the judgment was again reversed and Cortés in such disfavour that had it not been for the Duque de Bejar who took his part and guaranteed that if His Majesty would send and take his Residencia he would not find him guilty [all would have been lost.] The Duke acted thus because a marriage was already being arranged between Cortés and his niece, a lady named Doña Juana de Zuñiga, the daughter of Don Carlos de Arrellano, Conde de Aguilar, and sister of some noblemen and favorites of the Emperor. At that time the eighty thousand¹ pesos de oro arrived and the letter from Cortés giving many thanks to His Majesty, and containing many promises on account of the great favour he had shown to him in giving him the Government of Mexico, and in having been pleased to order that he should be treated with justice in the decision which he gave in his favour at the time of the commission which he ordered to be appointed from among gentlemen of His Royal Council and Cabinet, as has often been mentioned by me before. As the result of further consideration all that had been alleged against Cortés tended to change the intention of having his "Residencia" taken, and nothing more was then said about it.

Let us stop talking about these clouds which were already threatening to burst over Cortés and let us speak of the cannon. When its inscription, in which Cortés described himself as so exalted a servant, became known at court, certain Dukes, Marquises and Counts and men of great importance who looked upon themselves as fully as distinguished servants of His Majesty, and bore in mind that other gentlemen had served the Royal Crown quite as well as they had, began to grumble about the

¹ Blotted out in the original "fifty, sixty, seventy."

cannon and about Cortés because he had written such a motto. I also know that other great noblemen such as the Admiral of Castile and the Duque de Bejar and the Conde de Aguilar said to these same gentlemen who had begun the discussion that the inscription on the Culverin was very plucky and they were not surprised at Cortés putting that motto on the cannon, for what Captain could we see in our time who had [accomplished] such exploits and had gained so many lands without expense to or assistance from His Majesty, and had converted such great numbers of people to our Holy Faith? In addition to this not only he but his soldiers and companions who aided him to capture such a strong city with so many inhabitants and so extensive a territory were worthy the bestowal of many favours by His Majesty, "for if we reflect, it is from our ancestors who performed heroic deeds and served the Royal Crown and the Kings that reigned in their day, as Cortés and his companions have now done, that we inherit our coats of arms our lands and rents," and with these words the matter of the inscription was forgotten. In order that the culverin should not leave Seville, we heard the news that His Majesty presented it to Don Francisco de los Cobos Comendador Mayor de Leon and that they melted it down and refined the gold and smelted it in Seville, and they say that it was worth over twenty thousand ducats. At the time when Cortés sent this gold and the cannon, having sent on the first occasion the treasure including the Golden Moon and the Silver Sun and many other golden jewels by Francisco de Montejo and Alonzo Hernández Puerto Carrero, and also on the second occasion with Alonzo de Ávila and Quiñones the richest treasure ever found in New Spain, for it was the household furniture of Montezuma and Guatemoc and the Great Chieftains of Mexico, (and this was stolen by

Juan Florin), all this became known in Castile and Cortés won great fame both in Castile and in other part of Christendom, and was everywhere greatly praised.

Let us leave this and relate how the suit ended between Martin Cortés and Ribera over the many thousands of pesos which Cortés sent to his father, and it was thus,¹—while the suit was in progress Ribera was passing through the Town of the booths² and he lunched there and ate a rasher of bacon and while he was eating it he died suddenly and without confession. — God forgive him, Amen.

Let us leave the events in Castile and return to speak of New Spain, how Cortés was always engaged in endeavours to people the city with native Mexicans as it had been formerly peopled, and gave them freedom and liberty not to pay tribute to His Majesty until they had built their houses and repaired the causeways and bridges and all the buildings and pipes by which the water had formerly come from Chapultepec to enter Mexico, and in the Spanish quarter he had churches, hospitals and dockyards built and other things that were necessary.

At that time there arrived from Castile at the Port of Vera Cruz twelve Franciscan Friars with their Vicar General, a very good ecclesiastic named Fray Martin de Valencia a native of a town of Tierra de Campos called Valencia de Don Juan, and this very reverend ecclesiastic was nominated by the Holy Father as Vicar, and about his arrival and the reception given him I will speak further on.

¹ Blotted out in the original { "que el que con mal anda en peor .
acaba."
"he who begins badly ends worse."

² Villa del Cadahalso in the text.

CHAPTER CLXXI.

How there came to the Port of Vera Cruz twelve Franciscan Friars, men of very holy lives, and there came as their vicar and guardian Fray Martin de Valencia, a priest so pure that he had the reputation of working miracles. He was a native of a town of Tierra de Campos called Valencia de Don Juan, and about what Cortés did on their arrival.

I HAVE already stated in former chapters which treat of the subject how we had written to His Majesty asking him to send us Franciscan Friars of good and holy lives to help us in the conversion and in teaching the natives of this land the holy doctrines so as to make them Christians, and to preach our holy faith, as we had explained it to them ever since we entered New Spain. Cortés together with us conquistadores who had won New Spain had written about it to Don Fray Francisco de los Angeles, who was general of the Franciscan Order and was afterwards Cardinal, [begging him] to do us the favour to send us friars of holy life so that our holy faith might always be exalted and the natives of these lands might understand what we told them at the time when we were fighting against them, namely that His Majesty would send friars of much better mode of living than ours to teach them the arguments and sermons which we had told them were true; and the General Don Fray Francisco de los Angeles did us the favour promptly to send twelve friars as I have related. Among them came Fray Toribio Motolinia, and the Caciques and lords of Mexico gave him this name of Motolinia which, in their language, means "the poor friar" because whatever was given to him in the name of God he gave to the Indians, so that he sometimes went without food, and wore a ragged habit and walked barefoot, and

always preached to the Indians who loved him greatly for he was a holy man.

To go back to our story, when Cortés knew that they were at the Port of Vera Cruz he ordered all the Indian pueblos as well as the Spanish settlements that, whichever way they came, the roads should be swept, and wherever they halted, even in the open country, ranchos should be built for them, and that when they reached the towns or pueblos of the Indians they should go out to meet them and should ring the bells, (which at that time they had in each pueblo) and that all without exception after they had received them should pay them great reverence and that the natives should carry lighted wax candles and the crosses they possessed—and he ordered the Spaniards with all humility, to fall on their knees and kiss their hands and garments, (so that the Indians might observe it and follow their example) and moreover Cortés sent off plentiful supplies along the road and wrote to the Friars very affectionately. As they came on their way, when they arrived near to Mexico Cortés himself accompanied by us courageous and valiant soldiers went out to receive them, and together with us went Guatemoc the lord of Mexico with all the principal Mexicans there were, and many other Caciques from other cities. When Cortés knew that the Friars were approaching he dismounted from his horse, as did all of us, and when we met the reverend friars the first to fall on his knees before Fray Martin de Valencia and to kiss his hands was Cortés himself, and the Friar would not permit it, so he kissed his garments and those of all the other ecclesiastics and so did nearly all the captains and soldiers who were present and Guatemoc and the Mexican chieftains. When Guatemoc and the other caciques saw Cortés go down on his knees to kiss hands they were greatly astonished, and when they saw that the friars were bare-

foot and thin and their garments ragged, and that they had no horses but came on foot and were very jaundiced looking, and [then] turned to Cortés, whom they looked on as an Idol or one of their Gods, on his knees before the friars, all the Indians from that time forward followed his example, and now when friars arrive they give them a reception and pay them reverence in the way I have described; moreover I say that when Cortés conversed with those ecclesiastics he always doffed his cap and held it in his hand and in all ways paid them great respect, and certainly those good Franciscan Friars did much to the advantage of all New Spain. Three years and a half afterwards, or a little earlier, twelve Dominican Friars arrived, and there came as their Provincial or Prior a friar named Fray Tomas Ortiz who was a Biscayan, and they said he had been Prior or Provincial in a country called Las Puntas, and it pleased God that when they arrived they fell ill of sleeping sickness¹ and most of them died. I will relate later on, when and with whom they came and the rank which they say the Prior held and other things that happened and how many other good priests came here belonging to the same order of St. Dominic, men of holy life, who impressed by this grand example, are very holy and have successfully instructed the natives of this province of Guatemala in our holy faith and have been very helpful to all.

I wish to leave this holy matter of the friars and state that as Cortés was always in fear that in Castile the proctors of Diego Velásquez governor of Cuba, instigated by the Bishop of Burgos, would again come together and speak evil of him before our Lord the Emperor, and as he had trustworthy news by letters which his father Martin Cortés and Diego de Ordas sent to him, that they were

¹ Mal de Modorra.

arranging a marriage [for him] with the Señora Doña Juana de Zuñiga the niece of Don Alvaro de Zuñiga, Duque de Bejar, he endeavoured to send all the pesos [he could collect] from the whole country, on the one hand in order that the Duque de Bejar might know of his great riches as well as his heroic deeds and great exploits, but more especially in order that His Majesty might befriend him and grant him favours, so then he sent His Majesty thirty thousand pesos and wrote to him what I shall go on to state.

CHAPTER CLXXII.

How Cortés wrote to His Majesty and sent him thirty thousand pesos de oro and told him how he was devoting himself to the conversion of the Indians and the rebuilding of Mexico, and how he had sent a Captain named Cristóbal de Olid with a strong fleet to pacify the provinces of Honduras and that he (Olid) had risen in rebellion with it, and he reported other things which had happened in Mexico. In the ship which sailed with the letters the Accountant named Rodrigo de Albornoz sent other very secret letters and said in them many evil things of Cortés and all those who went out with him, and what His Majesty decreed about it.

CORTÉS being now established in the government of New Spain by the command of His Majesty, it seemed to him that it would be well to inform him how he was attending to the conversion of the natives and the rebuilding of the great city of Tenochtitlan¹ Mexico. He also reported how he had sent a Captain named Cristóbal de Olid to make a settlement in some provinces called Honduras and had given him five ships well provisioned and a strong force of soldiers and supplies and many horses, and cannon, and musketeers and crossbowmen and all sorts

¹ Tenustitlan in the text.

of arms, and that he had spent many thousands of pesos de oro in fitting out the fleet—and Cristóbal de Olid had revolted with all of it, and he who advised him to rise in rebellion was Diego Velásquez, the governor of Cuba, who had gone shares with him [Olid] in the fleet. If his Majesty approved, he was determined shortly to send another Captain to capture this same fleet and take him [Olid] prisoner, or to go himself, for if this act remained unpunished other captains would venture to rebel with other fleets which he was obliged to send to conquer and settle lands which were at war with him. For this reason he begged His Majesty that he would grant permission for it. He also sent to complain of Diego Velásquez not only on account of the affair of Captain Cristóbal de Olid but because of his plots and offences in letters sent from the Island of Cuba to the effect that they should kill Cortés. This was the reason why, when he set out from that city of Mexico to conquer certain strong pueblos which had risen in arms, and the partizans of Diego Velásquez made plots to kill him and seize the government, he had executed sentence on one of the most guilty. And it was the Bishop of Burgos President of the Indies, who did him this favour by being a friend of Diego Velásquez.

He also wrote to say how he was ordering to be paid [to His Majesty] thirty thousand pesos de oro and that but for the late sedition and plots that he would have collected much more gold, and that with God's help and some luck he would send all he was able in all the ships sailing from Mexico to His Royal Majesty. So also he wrote to his father Martin Cortés and to one of his relations called the Licentiate Francisco Nuñez who was a reporter of the Royal Council of His Majesty; he also wrote to Diego de Ordas and made clear to them all what I have already related. He also gave

information how one Rodrigo de Albornoz, an accountant, was going about secretly in Mexico grumbling against Cortés because he did not give him the Indians he wanted, and [refused him] the Cacica he asked for, the daughter of the Lord of Texcoco, whom he [Cortés] would not give him because at that time he gave her in marriage to a person of quality. Moreover he [Cortés] told them that he [Rodrigo de Albornoz] had been Secretary of State of Flanders and was a follower of Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca, Bishop of Burgos, and was a man who was accustomed to retail news even by means of ciphers, and that possibly he might write to the Bishop, as he was President of the Council of the Indies, things that were not true (for at that time we did not know that they had deprived the Bishop of his office) so that he should have notice of everything. He sent these letters in duplicate for he was always in fear that the Bishop of Burgos as President had given orders to Pedro de Ysasaga and Juan López de Recalte, officers of the custom house at Seville that all the letters and despatches from Cortés should be sent to him post haste so that he could know what was in them, (for at that time His Majesty had come from Flanders and was in Castile) in order to report to His Majesty and score first before our proctors could deliver Cortés's letters, for we did not yet know in New Spain that they had deprived the Bishop of his office of President.

Let us leave the letters and I will say that in the same ship in which the parcel of letters was sent, the Accountant Albornoz mentioned by me sent other letters to His Majesty and to the Bishop of Burgos and to the Royal Council of the Indies, and what he said to them by way of accusation was to reiterate all the suits and affairs which Cortés had been accused of before, when His Majesty ordered judges to be appointed from the

gentlemen of his Royal Council, already named by me in the Chapter which treats of the subject, when as a verdict on the case they pronounced us to be very loyal servants of His Majesty. In addition to those charges they now wrote this new one that Cortés demanded of all the Caciques of New Spain many ingots of gold and ordered them to get gold from the mines, and this Cortés said was to be sent to His Majesty, but he kept it and did not send it to His Majesty; and that he had built some strongly fortified houses, and had got together many daughters of Lords to marry them to Spaniards, for honest men to ask them of him as wives, and he refused to give them to them as mistresses. And he said that all the Caciques and notables held him in as great esteem as though he were King, and in this land they know of no other King or Lord than Cortés, and like a King he exacted his fifths, and he has a great number of golden ingots stored in his treasury, and he [Albornoz] has not made sure whether personally he is a rebel or loyal, and there was need that His Majesty should promptly order some nobleman with a great number of soldiers to come to these parts to deprive him [Cortés] of his command and lordship; and he wrote other things on this subject. However I will not go into further particulars about the contents of the letters but will state that they went into the hands of the Bishop of Burgos who resided in Toro. As Pánfilo de Narvaez was then at court as well as Cristóbal de Tápia already mentioned by me, and all the proctors of Diego Velásquez, they advised the Archbishop again to lay complaints against Cortés before His Majesty, including all that he had related previously, and they said that the Judges whom His Majesty appointed showed partiality for Cortés on account of the gifts he had made to them and that His Majesty should deign to see what

the Accountant, his own officer, had now newly written and as evidence of this they presented the letters.

When His Majesty took into consideration the letters, and the statements and complaints which Narvaez pronounced so haughtily, for that was his manner of speaking when he demanded justice, he believed them to be true and the Bishop seconded with other letters to support them. His Majesty then said "I wish to send and punish Cortés, as they speak so much evil of what he does, and although he should send more gold, there is greater riches in doing justice than in all the treasure he can send." And he decreed that the Admiral of Santo Domingo should be despatched at the expense of Cortés with two hundred soldiers and if he should find him [Cortés] to be guilty he should cut off his head and punish all those of us who defeated Narvaez. To induce the Admiral to go, they had promised him the post of Admiral of New Spain and at that time disputes arose at Court about it. After all the instructions had been completed, it appears that the Admiral tarried some days and did not dare to come because he had no money, and also because they advised him to beware of the good fortune of Cortés, for although Narvaez had brought such a large army Cortés had defeated him, and he would be risking his life and position, and he had better not carry out the order, especially as no fault could be found with Cortés nor in any of his companions but great loyalty. In addition to this it seems that they told His Majesty that it was too much to give the post of Admiral of New Spain for the small service which he would be able to do by the journey on which he was sending him. While the Admiral was getting ready to start, the Proctors of Cortés and his father Martin Cortés and a Friar named Fray Pedro Melgarejo de Urrea got to know about it, and as they had the letters which Cortés

had sent them in duplicate and understood from them that the Accountant Albornoz was playing double, they all went together to the Duque de Bejar and gave him an account of all I have related above and showed him the letter from Cortés. When the Duke knew that they were sending off the Admiral with many soldiers so suddenly he was greatly concerned at it, for it had already been arranged to marry Cortés to the Señora Doña Juana de Zuñiga the Duke's niece, and promptly without further delay he went into the presence of His Majesty accompanied by certain Counts his relations, and with them went the old Martin Cortés father of Cortés and Fray Pedro Melgarejo de Urrea, and when they arrived before our Lord the Emperor they humbled themselves and paid all the reverence which they ought to pay to our Lord and King. And the Duke himself spoke and begged His Majesty not to give ear to the letter of such a man as Albornoz who was very hostile to Cortés, until he had received other trustworthy and credible evidence, and not to despatch a fleet. Moreover he said that His Majesty being such a good Christian for doing rightful justice with great deliberation, [yet] he was sending to capture Cortés and his soldiers who had done good and loyal service such as no others in the world had done, nor could there be found in any histories accounts of vassals who had done so much for the Kings of past times, and that already he had once pledged his head for Cortés and his soldiers who were very loyal and would be so in the future, and that now he would again pledge himself and all his estate that they would always remain loyal as His Majesty would see later on, and in addition to this he showed him the letters Cortés had sent to his father in which he gave the reason why the Accountant was writing evil things against him, Cortés, which as I have already stated was because he had not

given him good Indians, such as he demanded as well as the daughter of a Cacique. Moreover the Duke told His Majesty that he should note the number of times Cortés had sent him a great quantity of gold, and he made many other excuses for Cortés, and His Majesty seeing that Cortés and all of us clearly had right on our side, decreed that a person who was a gentleman of position and knowledge and one who feared God should go to take his Residencia. At that time there was at the Court in Toledo as the assistant Corregidor of the Conde de Alcaudete a gentleman called the Licentiate Luis Ponce de Leon a cousin of the Count Don Martin de Córdova himself, for so he was called for at that time he was Corregidor of that City. His Majesty sent to summon this Licentiate Luis Ponce and ordered him to go at once to New Spain and take the Residencia of Cortés, and if he was guilty of any of the things of which they accused him to punish him with rigorous justice. The Licentiate replied that he would carry out the Royal Command, and began to get ready for his journey, but he did not come in great haste for he delayed his arrival in New Spain more than two years.

Let us leave them here, both the partisans of Diego Velásquez who brought charges against Cortés as well as the Licentiate Luis Ponce de Leon who was preparing for his voyage.

Although it is outside my story reaching far ahead, what I shall now say is that at the end of two years we came to know all that I have here related about the letters of Albornoz. Moreover interested readers should know how this same Albornoz was always in the habit of writing to His Majesty about things that never happened, as must be well known to persons who have been in New Spain and the City of Mexico at the time when Don Antonio de Mendoza was Viceroy of Mexico, who was an illustrious

man worthy of being well remembered (may he rest in glory) and who governed most fairly and with such impartial justice. Yet this Rodrigo de Albornoz wrote to His Majesty evil things about his government, and the very letters he sent to the Court, returned to New Spain to the hands of this same Viceroy, and as soon as he understood them he sent to summon Rodrigo de Albornoz and with very leisurely words, for that was his way of speaking, the Viceroy showed him the letters and said to him "As you are in the habit of writing to His Majesty, write the truth and get you gone" and the Contador was very much ashamed and confounded.¹

Let us stop talking of this matter and I will state how Cortés, not knowing at that time all that had happened at Court and how they had worked against him, sent a fleet to Honduras against Cristóbal de Olid and what happened I will go on to tell.

CHAPTER CLXXIII.

How when Cortés learnt that Cristóbal de Olid had rebelled with his fleet and had entered into partnership with Diego Velásquez, Governor of Cuba, he sent against him a Captain named Francisco de Las Casas, and what happened to him I will go on to relate.

I MUST go a long way back in my story so as to be clearly understood. I have already related in the Chapter that treats of the matter how Cortés sent Cristóbal de Olid

¹ Blotted out in the original :—

"A certain Gonzalo de Campo whom I have frequently mentioned before, the composer of defamatory libels as I have said on former occasions, who knew the disposition of Albornoz, stated in his libel 'Fray Zarzapelete': Beware of Fray Rodrigo de Albornoz, but not because he is a savage who never kept a secret; a good preacher had well informed me that he was a bad visitor and a very double dealing fox."

with a fleet to Honduras and how he rose in revolt. When Cortés realized that Cristóbal de Olid had rebelled with his fleet with the support of Velásquez, Governor of Cuba, he became very thoughtful, but as he was high spirited and did not permit such matters to get the better of him besides he had already reported to His Majesty, (as I have stated) in the letter he wrote, that he intended to go himself or send other Captains against Cristóbal de Olid. About that time a gentleman named Francisco de Las Casas had come from Castile to Mexico, a trustworthy person and a relative of Cortés, whom he decided to send against Cristóbal de Olid with five ships well armed with cannon and provisioned and one hundred soldiers, and among them some of the Conquistadores of Mexico, those whom Cortés had brought in his company from the Island of Cuba, namely one Pedro Moreno Medrano, and Juan Nuñez de Mercado, Juan Bello and others who died on the voyage whom I do not name here so as to avoid prolixity.

When Francisco de Las Casas had been despatched with ample authority and orders to capture Cristóbal de Olid, he set out from the port of Vera Cruz with his ships well found and swift sailing, and his banners bearing the royal Arms, and with good weather he reached a bay called El Triunfo de la Cruz, where Cristóbal de Olid kept his fleet, and near by had founded a town called Triunfo de la Cruz, as I have already stated in the Chapter that treats of it.

When Cristóbal de Olid saw those ships anchored in the port, although Francisco de Las Casas as soon as he arrived ordered flags of truce to be hoisted, Cristóbal de Olid did not feel certain about it, on the contrary he ordered two caravels well armed with cannon and many soldiers to be got ready and he guarded the port so that they could not land.

As soon as Las Casas saw that, as he was a spirited man, he ordered his boats to be got out and launched in the sea with many men well armed with some falconets, muskets and crossbows, and he went with them thinking one way or the other to get ashore, and Cristóbal de Olid in order to prevent it fought a good fight in the sea, and the boat of Las Casas sank one of the caravels of the enemy and killed four soldiers and wounded others. However Cristóbal de Olid reflected that he had not all of his soldiers there, for a few days before he had sent them in two companies to follow up a river called Pechin and to capture another Captain named Gil Gonzales de Ávila who was conquering that province, for the river Pechin was within the government of the Golfo Dulce, and he was hourly expecting his people to arrive. So Cristobal de Olid decided to ask the favour of peace of Francisco de Las Casas, for Cristóbal de Olid firmly believed that if he should come ashore they would come to blows, and as he had not got his soldiers near by he asked for peace. Las Casas decided to stay that night on board his ships at sea away from the land, either anchored or lying to, with the intention of going to another bay to disembark, for when they were skirmishing and fighting certain soldiers, partisans of Cortés, who were with Cristóbal de Olid secretly gave Las Casas a letter to say they would aid him, and that he must not fail to come by land to capture Cristóbal de Olid.

This agreement having been made, such was the luck of Cristóbal de Olid and the misfortune of Las Casas, that on that night a strong northerly gale arose and as it is a foul wind on that coast the ships of Francisco de Las Casas were driven ashore so that he lost all he had brought with him. Thirty soldiers were drowned and all

the others were taken prisoners, and they were two days without food and wet through with salt water, and at that time it rained heavily and they suffered hardship and cold. Cristóbal de Olid was joyful and triumphant at holding Francisco de Las Casas a prisoner and the other soldiers whom he had captured, and presently he made them swear that they would always be on his side and against Cortés if he should come to that land in person. As soon as they had taken the oath he freed them from prison and held only Francisco de Las Casas prisoner. After a few days his captains arrived whom he had sent to seize Gil Gonzales de Ávila. It appears that Gil Gonzales had come as Governor and Captain of the Golfo Dulce and had founded a town which they called San Gil de Buena Vista which was about a league from the port which they now call Golfo Dulce, for the river Pechin at that time was settled with good pueblos. Gil Gonzales had only a few soldiers with him for most of the rest had sickened and this same town of Buena Vista had been garrisoned with other soldiers. As soon as Cristóbal de Olid had news of it, he sent to have them taken, and as they would not allow themselves to be captured, eight soldiers followers of Gil Gonzales de Ávila, and his nephew named Gil de Ávila, were killed. When Cristóbal de Olid found himself with two prisoners who were Captains he was very cheerful and contented, and as he had a reputation for valor and certainly was personally brave, in order that it should be known throughout the Islands, he wrote to his friend Diego Velásquez, and then went from Triunfo de la Cruz inland to a good pueblo which at that time had a large population, (and there were many other pueblos in that neighbourhood) and this pueblo was called Naco which is now destroyed, as well as all the others, and this I state because I saw it and

- was myself in it and in San Gil de Buena Vista and on the river Pechin and the Rio de Baama, and I was there at the time when I went with Cortés as I will relate more fully in its proper time and place.

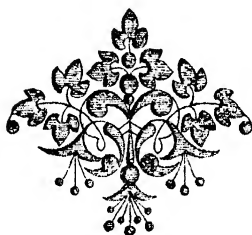
To go back to my story. Cristóbal de Olid was already stationed at Naco with his prisoners and a large company of soldiers and thence he despatched expeditions to other parts and sent as Captain one Briones, mentioned by me before, and this Briones was one of the first to counsel Cristóbal de Olid to revolt. He himself was a turbulent man, and had had the lower lobes of his ears cut off. Briones himself said that they had been cut off when he was a soldier in a fortress because he would not surrender, neither he nor other captains. This same Briones was afterwards hanged in Guatemala as a mutineer and inciter to rebellion in the army.

To go back to my story, when this Briones set off with a large company of soldiers, a rumour arose in the Camp of Cristóbal de Olid that Briones with all the soldiers that he had in his company had revolted and were going off to New Spain, and it turned out to be true. When they knew this, Francisco de Las Casas and Gil Gonzales de Ávila who were prisoners thought the time was ripe to kill Cristóbal de Olid, and as they went about free without fetters because he considered them of no importance (for Cristóbal de Olid thought himself to be very powerful), they arranged with the soldiers and friends of Cortés that when they cried, "Here for the King and for Cortés in the King's name against this tyrant" they should stab him. As soon as this plan was made Francisco de Las Casas laughing and joking said to Cristóbal de Olid "Señor Capitan, let me free to go to New Spain to speak to Cortés and tell him the reason of my defeat, and I will be a mediator so that

your honour may retain this government and its captaincy, for look you, it is your own doing, my imprisonment does you no good, on the other hand it checks you in your conquests." Cristóbal de Olid replied that it seemed to him all right as it was and that he was delighted to have the company of such a valiant man. When Francisco de Las Casas heard that, he said "Then look out well for yourself, for one day or another I must endeavour to kill you" and this he said to him half in joke and laughing, and Cristóbal de Olid made no reply to what he said, and took it as a joke. The plot I have mentioned had been made with the friends of Cortés, and when they were supping at a table, and the cloth had been removed and the attendants and pages had gone to their supper, and Juan Nuñez de Mercado and other soldiers who were partizans of Cortés and were in the plot stood around, Francisco de Las Casas and Gil Gonzales de Ávila (who had each concealed a scrivener's knife as sharp as a razor, for they were not allowed to carry arms,) as they stood talking to Cristóbal de Olid about the Conquest of Mexico and the good fortune of Cortés, (and Cristóbal de Olid was quite unsuspecting of what was coming to him,) Francisco de Las Casas seized his beard and struck him in the throat with the blade which he carried shaped like a clasp knife for that purpose, and together with Gil Gonzales de Ávila, and the soldiers of Cortés they quickly gave him so many wounds that he could not defend himself, but as he was very vigorous and impetuous and of great [personal] strength he slipped through their hands shouting "To me, my friends" but as they were all at supper, or his luck was so bad that they did not come quickly enough, he took to flight and hid himself in a thicket believing that his partisans would come to his assistance, and although many of them did come quickly to help him, Francisco de

Las Casas was shouting and crying "To me those for Cortés and the King against this Tyrant, for we can no longer endure his tyranny." Then when they heard the name of His Majesty and of Cortés none of those who came to support the cause of Cristóbal de Olid dared to defend him, on the contrary Las Casas promptly ordered them to be seized, and as soon as this was done proclamation was made that whoever might know where Cristóbal de Olid was hidden and did not disclose it would suffer death for it. It was soon known where he was hidden and they captured him, and a charge was brought against him and in accordance with the sentence pronounced by the two Captains he was beheaded in the Plaza at Naco. Thus he died because he rebelled, for he followed bad counsellors and although a very valiant man he did not remember that Cortés had made him his *Maestre de Campo* and had given him very good Indians; he was married to a Portuguese lady named Philipa de Arauz and had a daughter. Because in a former chapter I have already spoken of the height and the features of Cristóbal de Olid, and of the country he belonged to, and the rank he held, I will say no more here. But as soon as Francisco de Las Casas and Gil Gonzales de Ávila found themselves free from their dead enemy, they assembled their soldiers and as both were true captains, Las Casas formed a settlement at Trujillo, and called it by that name because he was a native of Trujillo in Estremadura, and Gil Gonzales sent messengers to San Gil de Buena Vista, which he had founded, to let the people know what had happened and to order his lieutenant named Armenta to preserve the settlement as he had left it and not to embark on any new enterprise because he [Gil Gonzales] was going to New Spain to beg for help and a reinforcement of soldiers from Cortés and he would soon return.

When all that I have stated was settled it was arranged between the two captains that they should go to Mexico to inform Cortés of all that had happened, and I will leave off here until the proper time and place and will relate what Cortés arranged [meanwhile], without knowing anything of what had happened in Naco as detailed above.





BOOK XIV.

THE EXPEDITION TO HONDURAS.

CHAPTER CLXXIV.

How Hernando Cortés set out from Mexico on the road to Las Higueras in search of Cristóbal de Olid and Francisco de Las Casas and the other Captains, soldiers, and gentlemen whom he had sent there; and what Captains he took from Mexico to accompany him, and about the material and retinue he took with him as far as the town of Coatzacoalcos, and other things that happened.



WHEN some months had passed since Captain Hernando Cortés sent Francisco de Las Casas against Cristóbal de Olid, as stated in the last chapter, it seemed to him, that perchance the armada he had dispatched had not been successful. Moreover he had been told that the land was rich in gold mines and for that reason he was as covetous about the mines as he was anxious about the contentions which might have arisen in the armada, taking into consideration the mischances that ill luck is wont to occasion on such journeys. As he was naturally of high courage he had repented

having sent Francisco de Las Casas instead of going himself. However, he had no doubt that the man he had sent was strong enough to repel any offence.

Being of this way of thinking, he decided to set out himself, and he left behind in Mexico a good supply of artillery in the fortress, as well as in the dockyards, and the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada, and the Accountant Alborno, as lieutenant governors in his place; and had he known about the letters which Alborno had written, speaking evil of him to His Majesty in Castile, he would not have left him such authority and I do not yet understand how he happened to do so. He left as his principal Alcalde the Licentiate Zuazo, already mentioned by me, and, as lieutenant to the principal Alguacil and as Mayor-domo of all his estate, his kinsman one Rodrigo de Paz. He left as large a garrison as he was able to do in Mexico.

He charged all these officers of the King's Treasury, on whom he left the burden of Government, to devote great care to the conversion of the natives, and he also impressed it on Fray Toribio Motolinia of the order of Señor San Francisco and other good ecclesiastics. With a view to preventing Mexico and the other provinces from revolting, and in order that they should remain peaceful and not be influenced by the more important Caciques, he carried with him the great Lord of Mexico named Guatemoc, often mentioned by me before, the same who made war on us when we captured Mexico, also the Lord of Tacuba and one Juan Velásquez, a Captain of the same Guatemoc, and many other chieftains—among them one Tapiezuelo, a chieftain of great importance; and he even brought other Caciques from Michuacan, and [he took with him] Doña Marina, the interpreter, for Gerónimo de Aguilar was already dead. He took in his company many gentlemen and Captains

who were settlers in Mexico, namely Gonzalo de Sandoval, who was chief Alguacil, and Luis Marin and Francisco Marmolejo, Gonzalo Rios de Ocampo and Pedro de Írcio, Avalos and Sayavedra who were brothers, and one Palacios Rubios and Pedro de Sauzedo the flat-nosed, Gerónimo Ruiz de la Mota, Alonzo de Grado, Santa Cruz Burgalés,¹ Pedro Solis Casquete, Juan Jaramillo, Alonzo Valiente, and one Navarrete, and one Serna, and Diego de Mazariegos, a cousin of the Treasurer, Gil Gonzáles de Benavides and Hernan López de Ávila and Gaspar de Garnica, and many others whose names I do not remember. He also took with him a priest and two Franciscan Friars, Flemings and great theologians, who preached during the journey. As Mayordomo he took one Carranza, and as Maestresala Juan de Xaso and one Rodrigo Mañuelo, and as Butler one Zervan Vejarano and as Chamberlain Fulano² de San Miguel, who was living in Oaxaca, and for Steward one Guinea, who was also a settler in Oaxaca. He took great services of gold and silver plate, and he who had charge of it was Tello de Medina. The chamberlain was a certain Salazar, a native of Madrid, and the doctor a Licentiate Pedro López, who was a settler in Mexico, and the Master Surgeon Diego de Pedraza, and many others as pages, one of them being Don Francisco de Montejo, who was in after time Captain in Yucatan (I am not speaking of the Adelantado his father); besides two lance pages, one of them named Puebla, and eight grooms and two falconers named Perales and Garci Caro and Alvaro Montañez. He also brought five players on the oboe, sackbut and dulcimer,

¹ Of Burgos?

² It has been thought best to retain the term "Fulano," as it is not easily translated. The term is Arabic in origin, and means "such a one," "so and so," and is used when the first name is not known, or not worth mentioning.

and an acrobat and another who did sleight of hand tricks and worked puppets, and as equerry Gonzalo Rodríguez de Ocampo; also some mules with three Spanish Muleteers, and a great herd of swine, which fed along the roadside. The Caciques whom I have named were accompanied by over three thousand armed Mexican Indians, and many others who were the servants of those Caciques.

When [the expedition] was on the point of setting out, the Factor Salazar and the Veedor Chirinos, who were to remain in Mexico, seeing that Cortés had assigned no office to them, nor treated them with as much consideration as they expected, decided to become very friendly with the Licentiate Zuazo and Rodrigo de Paz and all the old conquistadores who were friends of Cortés and remained behind in Mexico. All of them together made a petition to Cortés that he should not leave Mexico, but stay and govern the country, and they pointed out to him that the whole of New Spain might revolt, and over this arose long discussions and replies between Cortés and those who made the petition, and when they could not convince him that he should remain, the Factor and Veedor said that they wished to serve him and accompany him as far as Coatzacoalcos as his road passed through that town.

Having set out from Mexico in the way I have related, I wish to record that the great reception and fiestas which they gave Cortés in all the towns he passed through were wonderful, and moreover there joined him on the road fifty more soldiers and other stray persons newly arrived from Castile.

Cortés ordered the expedition to proceed by two separate roads as far as Coatzacoalcos, for had all gone together there would not have been enough food.

As they went their way, the Factor Gonzalo de Salazar

and the Veedor performed a thousand services for Cortés, especially the Factor, who, when Cortés spoke to him, doffed his cap to the ground, with many deep bows and suave speeches, evincing great friendship, and with lofty eloquence continually advised him to return to México and not to engage in such a long and laborious journey, placing before him the many obstacles [in the way] and even sometimes so as to humour him, he sang as he went along the road, saying in his songs :

• Ay tio volvamosnos	Let us go back Uncle
Ay tio volvamosnos	Let us go back Uncle
Questa mañana he visto	This morning I have seen
Una señal muy mala	A very bad omen
Ay tio volvamosnos	Let us go back Uncle.

and Cortés answered in song :

Adelante mi sobrino	Forward my nephew
Adelante mi sobrino	Forward my nephew
Y no creays en agueros	And do not believe in auguries
Que sea lo que Dios quisiere	It will be as God wills
Adelante mi sobrino	Forward my nephew.

Let us cease talking about the Factor and his courteous and suave speeches, and I will relate how, on the journey, at the pueblo of one Ojeda the squint-eyed, near another pueblo named Orizaba, Juan Jaramillo was married in presence of all to Doña Marina the interpreter. Let us go on and I will relate how they continued their march towards Coatzacoalcos and arrived at a large pueblo called Guaspaltepec in the encomienda of Sandoval. When we knew in Coatzacoalcos that Cortés was coming with so many gentlemen, we went out with the Chief Alcalde, the Captains, and all the municipality, a distance of thirty-three leagues to receive Cortés and give him welcome, as though we were about to receive favours from him. This I state here, so that interested

readers and others may see that Cortés was so greatly esteemed as well as feared, that now nothing was done except what he wished, were it good or bad.

From Guaspaltepec he marched to our town, and at a great river that he passed on the way he began to meet with misfortune, for in crossing it two canoes were overturned and he lost some plate and clothes, and Juan Jaramillo lost the half of his baggage, and nothing could be recovered because the river was full of great alligators. From there we went to a pueblo named Uluṭa, and we accompanied him thence to Coatzacoalcos through inhabited country all the way.

I wish to mention the large collection of canoes which we had ordered to be in readiness, tied together two and two, at the great river near to the town, for they numbered over three hundred; and the grand reception that we gave him, with triumphal arches and dances of Christians and Moors and other great rejoicings and cunning diversions, and we lodged him as well as we were able—both Cortés and all those he brought in his company—and he stayed there for six days.

All this time the Factor kept on saying to him that he ought to turn back from his journey, that he ought to bear in mind to whom it was that he had delegated his authority, that he [the Factor] held the Accountant to be very rebellious and double dealing and a friend of innovations, and that the Treasurer boasted that he was a son of the Catholic King and that he [the Factor] did not think well of certain doings and conversations, and had noticed that they were conversing in secret after Cortés had placed them in power and even before. In addition to this Cortés had already received, while on the journey, letters from Mexico speaking evil of the Government of those he had left in authority, and the friends of the Factor had informed him of this, and

speaking on this subject the Factor said to Cortés that he and the Veedor, who was there present, would know how to govern as well as those he (Cortés) had left behind in Mexico; they professed themselves his most obedient servants and they spoke such honied words, with such affectionate expression, that they induced him to confer on [them], the Factor and the Veedor Chirinos, power to act as Governors, under condition that, should they see that Estrada and Albornoz were not doing what they ought to do for the service of our Lord and His Majesty, they were to be the sole governors. These powers were the cause of many troubles and revolts which took place in Mexico, as I will relate further on after I have finished the next four chapters, and our very laborious journey. Until that journey is ended and we are stationed at a town called Trujillo I will not relate in my story anything that happened in Mexico.

I wish to mention that for this reason Gonzalo de Ocampo said in his defamatory libels: "Oh fat brother Salazar maker of quarrels, you deceived the Prior with your false show of reverence. A Friar of holy life told me to beware of a man who spoke such polished rhetoric."

Let us cease speaking about libels and I will state that when the Factor and Veedor took leave of Cortés on returning to Mexico, it was with many compliments and embraces, and the Factor had a way of sobbing which made it appear as though he must weep at saying good-bye; but he carried his commission in his breast in such a manner as to draw attention to it, and the Secretary named Alonzo Valiente, who was his friend, had drawn it up in the way that he wished it to be worded.

They returned to Mexico, and with them returned Hernán López de Ávila, who was ill with pain and crippled with boils.

Let them go on their journey, for I will not touch in this present story on the great tumults and discords which arose in Mexico, until their proper time and place. From the time when all these gentlemen I have mentioned, and many others, had joined Cortés and we set out from Coatzacoalcas, until we accomplished this laborious journey, we [continually] risked losing our lives as I will relate further on; but as two sets of events happened at the same time and I do not wish to break the thread of one in order to speak of the other I have decided to go on with our most laborious journey.

CHAPTER CLXXV.

What Cortés arranged after the Factor and Veedor returned to Mexico, and about the hardships we endured on our long journey, and about the great bridges we made and the hunger we suffered during the two years and three months that we spent on the journey.¹

AFTER despatching the Factor and Veedor to Mexico, the first thing Cortés decided was to write to Villa Rica, to his Mayordomo named Simon de Cuenca, to lade two yessels of small burden with maize biscuits (for at that time Mexico did not produce wheat) and six pipes of wine, oil and vinegar, and bacon, and horse shoes and other kinds of supplies, and ordered them to go coasting along towards the North, saying that he would write to him and inform him where to make port, and that Simon de Cuenca himself should go as Captain. Then he ordered all of us settlers of Coatzacoalcas to accompany himself and only the infirm to remain behind. I have already stated that this town was settled by the Conquistadores who had been longest in Mexico, and by all the best born among those who had taken part in

¹ For the route traversed see Appendix A.

the late victories in Mexico, and at the time when we should have been resting from our great labours, and endeavouring to acquire some wealth and estates, he ordered us to go a journey of more than five hundred leagues, with all the country through which we passed up in arms [against us], while all we possessed was given up as lost, and we were on that march more than two years and three months.

To go back to my story, we were all of us ready with our arms and horses, for we did not dare to say no (and when anyone did say so, he made him go by force,) and we numbered in all, those from Coatzacoalcas as well as those from Mexico, over two hundred and fifty soldiers—one hundred and thirty horsemen and the others musketeers and crossbowmen—without counting many other soldiers newly arrived from Castile.

He promptly ordered me to go as Captain of thirty Spaniards and three thousand Mexican Indians to some pueblos which were at war with us, named Cimatan,¹ and quartered the three thousand Mexican Indians on them; but, should the natives of that province be peaceable or come to render service to His Majesty, I was to do them no harm and put no pressure on them, beyond ordering them to feed these people. But if they did not wish to come [to peace], that I should summon them three times to make peace in a way they should fully understand, and in presence of a notary who accompanied me and witnesses. That if they would not then come in, I was to make war on them, and for this he gave me authority and instructions which I still possess to-day, signed with his name and that of his Secretary Alonzo Valiente.

¹ According to Melchior Alfaro Sta. Cruz, the Cimatanes were a Mexican people settled there by Montezuma, who held Cimatan and Xicalango as outposts of his empire (cf. *Relaciones de Yucatan*, vol. i, p. 352).

So I made that journey as he had ordered it, the pueblos keeping the peace, but a few months later, when they saw how few Spaniards remained in Coatzacoalcos and that we Conquistadores had gone with Cortés, they again rose in revolt.

I promptly set out with my Spanish soldiers and Mexican Indians for the pueblo whither Cortés had ordered me to go, which was named Iquinuapa. 3

Let us now return to Cortés and his journey. He set out from Coatzacoalcos and went to Tonalá, a distance of eight leagues, and at once crossed a river in canoes and went to another pueblo named Ayagualulco, and crossed another river in canoes, and from Ayagualulco at a distance of seven leagues he crossed an estuary flowing to the sea, and they made him a bridge half a quarter of a league in length. It was a marvellous thing how they made it in the estuary, but Cortés always sent ahead two Captains from among the settlers at Coatzacoalcos, one of these was named Francisco de Medina, a quick-witted man, who thoroughly understood how to manage the natives of this country.

Beyond that great bridge he went through some small pueblos before arriving at another great river called Maçapa, which is the river coming from Chiapas, called by the sailors the Rio de dos Bocas.¹ There he had many canoes, tied together two and two, and after crossing that river he went on to other pueblos whither I had set out with my company of soldiers, which as I have stated was called Iquinuapa.² After that he crossed another river on bridges, which we made of timber, and then an estuary, and arrived at another large town named Copilco ;

¹ The river with two mouths.

² Bernal Díaz was instructed to meet Cortés at Iquinuapa, but Cortés makes no mention of that Pueblo, and Bernal Díaz probably passed on to meet Cortés at Copilco.

from that point begins the province which they call La Chontalpa, which was all thickly peopled and full of orchards of Cacao and quite peaceful.

From Copilco¹ we passed through Nacajuca¹ and arrived at Zaguatan, and on the road crossed another river in canoes. There Cortés lost certain horse-shoes. When we arrived at this town we found it peaceful, and then during the night the inhabitants went fleeing from it and crossed to the other side of a great river, all among swamps. Cortés ordered us to go and search for them in the woods, and that which he ordered was very inconsiderate and profitless.

The soldiers who went on the search crossed the river with the greatest difficulty and brought back seven chieftains and some common people, but it profited us little, for they quickly took to flight again and we were left alone without guides.

At that time the Caciques from Tabasco arrived with fifty canoes laden with maize and provisions, and there also came some Indians from the puebls in the encomienda that I held at that time, named Teapa and Tecomajiaca,² bringing canoes laden with supplies. Then we went on our way to other puebls named Tepetitan and Istapa, and on the road there was a river of great volume called Chilapa, and we spent four days in making rafts. I told Cortés that I had heard say that up stream was a town called Chilapa, which is the same name as that of the river, and that it would be as well to send [to that town], in a broken canoe which we had found, five of the Indians whom we had brought with us as guides, and to send word [to the people of Chilapa] to bring canoes. Cortés gave orders accordingly, and a

¹ Nacaxuxuyca, in the original.

² Tecomajayaca.

soldier went with the five Indians, and as they went up the river they met two Caciques who were bringing six large canoes and supplies, and with those canoes and the rafts we got across, and we were occupied four days over the passage. Thence we went to Tepetitlan which we found deserted and the houses burnt down, and, as we then learnt, other pueblos had made war on it a few days before and had carried off many captives and burned the pueblo.

The whole of the road we traversed during the three days after crossing the river Chilapa was very boggy and the horses sank in the mud up to their girths, and there were some very large toads there. Thence we marched to another town named Istapa, and the Indians fled through fear of us and crossed to the other side of a very rapid river, and we went in search of them and we brought in the Caciques and many Indians with their wives and children, and Cortés spoke caressingly to them and ordered that four Indian women and three men whom we had captured in the forest should be given up to them, and in payment for this and quite willingly they brought and presented to Cortés some pieces of gold of small value.

We stayed in this pueblo for three days, for there was good forage there for the horses and plenty of maize, and Cortés said that it would be a good place to found a town, for we received information that there were good villages in the neighbourhood for the service of such a town.

In this pueblo of Istapa Cortés learned from the Caciques and native merchants all about the road we had to follow, and he even showed them a hennequen cloth which he brought from Coatzacoalcos, on which all the pueblos we should pass on the way were marked as far as Gueacalá, which in their language means the great

"Acalá, for there is another pueblo which they call Acalá the Less. There [in Istapa] they told us that all the rest of our journey led across many rivers and great estuaries, and that before reaching another pueblo named Tamastepec¹ we should meet three more rivers and a great estuary, and that we should be three days on the road. When Cortés knew this and learnt about the rivers he asked all the Caciques to go and build bridges and provide canoes, but they did not do it. So with toasted maize and other vegetables we made provision for three days, believing what they told us. However, it was [merely] to get us out of their houses that they said the journey would be no longer, for it took seven days, and we found the rivers unbridged and no canoes, and we had to build a bridge of very thick timbers to enable the horses to pass, and all of us soldiers and Captains went off to cut wood and haul it, and the Mexicans helped all they could. We were three days building it and had nothing to eat but herbs, and some roots of what in this country they call wild quequexque,² which burned our tongues and mouths.

When we had crossed that estuary we found no road and we had to open one with our swords in our hands, and we travelled for two days along this road we had opened, thinking that it would lead us straight to a pueblo, until one morning we turned back into this same road which we had opened, and when Cortés saw this he was like to burst with rage; moreover he heard the murmur of evil things which they said of him and of his journey, on account of the great hunger we endured, and that he only looked to [the satisfaction of] his own appetite without

¹ Cortés calls this pueblo Tatahuitalpan and says Tamastepec is another name for Tepititan.

² Quequexque = ichintal, the root of the huisquil. (Sechium Edule?)

sufficient forethought, and that it was far better for us to turn back than all to die of hunger.

There was, moreover, another consideration, the forest was so excessively high and thick we could seldom see the sky, and, when they attempted to climb some of the trees in order to survey the country, they could see nothing at all, so dense was the forest, and two of the guides we had brought with us fled, and the one who remained was so ill that he could explain nothing about the road or any other matter. As Cortés was always prompt and was not careless from wanting in anxiety, we had with us a compass and a pilot named Pero López, and, with the plan on the cloth he brought from Coatzacoalcos on which the pueblos were marked, he ordered us to follow the compass through the forest, and with our swords we opened a road towards the east, which was where the pueblo was marked on the cloth, and Cortés even said that if we did not reach an inhabited place next day, he did not know what we should do, and many of us soldiers and all the others wanted to return to New Spain. Still we followed our direction through the forest, and it pleased God that we should find some trees which had been felled long ago and then a small pathway, and I and the pilot Pero López, who were going in front opening the road with some other soldiers, returned to tell Cortés to cheer up, as there were some farms, at which all our army expressed great content, but before reaching the habitations there was a river, which we crossed with very great difficulty in all haste, and came on a pueblo which had been deserted that very day, and there we found plenty to eat, both maize and beans and other vegetables, and as we were almost dead with hunger we had a real gorge and even the horses recovered, and for all this we gave many thanks to God.

The Juggler we brought with us, whom I have already

mentioned, and three other Spaniards who had lately come from Spain, had died on the road, as well as some of the Mechuacan and Mexican Indians, and many others fell ill and remained on the road in despair.

As the pueblo was deserted and we had no interpreter nor anyone to act as guide, Cortés ordered two companies to go through the forest and the farms to search for the inhabitants, and other soldiers went in some canoes which they found on the great river which flowed near the pueblo, and came upon many of the inhabitants of the pueblo, and with soft speeches and flatteries induced more than thirty of them and nearly all the Caciques and priests to come in. When Cortés spoke to them amicably through Doña Marina, they brought much maize and poultry and pointed out the road we had to follow to another pueblo named Ciguatpecad, which was distant three days' march, about sixteen leagues. Before reaching it there was another small pueblo subject to this Temastepeque from whence we set out.

Before I go on any further I wish to say that on account of the great hunger we endured, both Spaniards and Mexicans, it appears that certain Mexican Caciques had seized two or three Indians in the pueblos which we had left behind us, and had brought them along concealed [from us], as they carried burdens and were clothed as they were.

Then, on account of the hunger they endured on the march, they killed them and baked them in ovens made for the purpose in the ground with stones, as they had been accustomed to do in their time in Mexico, and they ate them, and in the same way they had seized the two guides we had brought with us who had fled, and they ate them.

When Cortés came to hear of it, on the advice of Guatemoc he ordered the Mexican Caciques to be called

ore him and scolded them badly, and said that if it opened again he would punish them, and one of the anciscan Friars we had brought with us, already mentioned by me, preached many holy and good words to them, and when he had finished his sermon, Cortés ordered one Mexican Indian to be burnt as punishment for the death of the Indians they had eaten, although he knew that all were guilty of it, so that he should appear to be doing justice, as though he did not know the other culprits beside the one he burned.

I must refrain from telling in full all the many other hardships we endured, and how the players on the pipes, sacbuts and dulcimers, whom Cortés had brought with him, as I have already recorded, and who were accustomed to dainties in Castille, and knew nothing of hardships and had fallen ill through hunger, made no music, excepting one of them, and all the soldiers cursed the sound of it and we said it was like foxes and jackals howling and it would be better to have maize to eat than music.

To go back to my story, I must say that many persons have asked me how was it that enduring as much hunger

I have stated, we did not eat the herd of swine they brought for Cortés, for the necessity of hunger has laws, even had they been [reserved] for the king, and at when Cortés saw the hunger we were enduring he would on such an occasion order them to be divided among us all. To this I answer that one who had come as Steward and Mayordomo to Cortés, named Guinea, a shrewd dealer, had already spread a report and caused it to be believed that when crossing the rivers they had been eaten by the sharks and alligators, and in order that we should not see them they were always kept behind four days' journey in the rear. Moreover, for many soldiers as we were the whole of them would

not have sufficed for one day, and this is the reason we did not eat them, besides there was the fear of angering Cortés.

Let us leave this talk and I will relate that in all the pueblos and roads we passed we left crosses placed wherever there were good trees to cut them on, especially Ceibas,¹ on which the crosses remain [clearly] defined and are more permanent when cut on those trees than when made of timber, for the bark grows and the crosses remain perfect. Then we left notices in places where they could be read, and in these it was stated "Cortés passed by here at such a time" and this was done so that if others should come in search of us they might know that we had gone on ahead.

To return to our march to Ciguatpecad, we had with us over twenty Indians from that pueblo of Temastepque, and they helped us to cross the rivers on rafts and in canoes; moreover they went as messengers to tell the Caciques of the pueblo whither we were going not to have any fear, as we would do them no harm whatever, so many of them remained in their houses, and what happened there I will relate further on.

CHAPTER CLXXVI.

How we had arrived at the town of Ciguatpecad and how he [Cortés] sent Francisco de Medina to meet Simon de Cuenca and proceed with the two vessels already mentioned by me to Triunfo de la Cruz or to the Golfo Dulce, and what else happened.

WHEN we arrived at the town I have mentioned, Cortés cajoled the Caciques and chieftains and gave them good Chalchihuites from Mexico, and asked where the large

¹ Cottonwood. (Bombax Ceiba).

and rapid river flowed to which ran near the town, and they told him that it ended in some lagoons where stood a pueblo named Gueatasta and near to it was another large pueblo called Xicalango. It occurred to Cortés at once to send two Spaniards in canoes to the north coast to find out about Captain Simon de Cuenca and his two ships which he had ordered to be laden with provisions for the journey I have spoken about, and he wrote to him informing him about our hardships and telling him to go on ahead along the coast, and, after having clearly informed him how he could reach the townships I have mentioned by that river, he despatched the two Spaniards of whom the more important was Francisco de Medina, often named by me before. He gave him authority as Captain jointly with Simon de Cuenca, because Medina was very active and spoke the language of the country, and he was the soldier who caused the revolt of the pueblo of Chamula when we went with Luis Marin to the conquest of Chiapas, as I have related in the Chapter which speaks of it. It would have been better had Cortés never given him that authority, on account of what afterwards happened, which was that he went down the river to where Simon de Cuenca was stationed with his two ships at Xicalango, awaiting news of Cortés, and after delivering Cortés's letters, presented his commission as Captain; and over the right to command, disputes arose between the two Captains so that they came to blows, and owing to their siding with one or the other all the Spaniards in the ship lost their lives except six or seven.

When the Indians of Xicalango and Gueyatasta saw this strife they fell on these latter and killed them all and burned the ships. However, we knew nothing of this until two years and a half later, and I will stop talking about it and return to the town where we were stationed, named Ciguatpecad, and tell how the Indian

Chieftains told Cortés it was three days journey thence to Gueyacalá, and that there were two rivers to cross on the way and one of them was very deep and broad, and then there were some bad bogs and great swamps, and that unless he had canoes he could not get the horses across, nor even a single soldier of his army. Cortés promptly sent two soldiers, with three Indian Chieftains from the pueblo to show them the road, to examine the river and swamps and see how we could cross, and bring a full report. The two soldiers whom he sent were Martin García the Valencian, the Alguacil of our army, and Pedro de Ribera. Martin García, to whom Cortés gave the principal charge, saw the rivers and with some small canoes which they had in this same river he examined it and saw that by making bridges it would be possible to cross it; however, he did not take the trouble to examine the bad swamps a league beyond, but returned to Cortés and told him that by making bridges they would be able to cross, believing that the swamps were not as difficult as we afterwards found them to be.

Cortés promptly ordered me and one Gonzalo Mexia, whom we nicknamed Rapapelo¹ [the Barber], to go with some chieftains from Ciguatpecad to the towns of Acalá and coax the Caciques, and by pleasant speeches persuade them not to flee, because that settlement of Acalá was composed of more than twenty small pueblos on the main land and others on islands. We did all the journey in canoes by rivers and lagoons, and we took with us the three Indians from Ciguatpecad as guides, and the first night we slept on the road they ran away from us, for they did not dare go with us, for, as we afterwards learnt, they [the people of Acalá] were their enemies and

¹ Blotted out in the original: "because he was the grandson of a Captain who went robbing in company of a certain Zenteno in the time of King Don Juan."

they were at war with one another. So we had to go forward without guides, and crossing the swamps with difficulty reached the first pueblo of Acalá, and although the people were excited and inclined to be hostile, with friendly speeches and the gift of some beads we cajoled them and begged them to go to Ciguatpecad to see Malinche and take him food. It appears that at the time we arrived this pueblo had heard no news of the coming of Cortés with a large following of horsemen as well as of Mexicans, and next day, when they heard reports through Indian merchants of the great force which Cortés was bringing, the Caciques [then] showed greater willingness to send supplies than [they did] when we arrived, and said that when he should come the pueblos would serve him and do what they were able towards supplying food, but as for going to where he was stationed they did not wish to go because [the people there] were their enemies. While we were engaged in such conversation with the Caciques, two Spaniards arrived with the letters from Cortés, in which he ordered us to set out from thence with all the provisions we could collect, and march back for three days along the road, because all the people of the pueblo at which we had left him had abandoned it and gone away; and he informed me that he was already on his way to Acalá and had brought no maize and could not procure any, and that I should make every effort to prevent the Caciques from making off.

The Spaniards who brought the letter told me that Cortés had sent four Spaniards—three of them men newly arrived from Castile—up the river from Ciguatpecad to ask for supplies from the other pueblos which were said to be near at hand, and that they had not returned and it was believed that they had been killed, and this turned out to be true.

Let us return to Cortés, who began his march and in

two days reached the great river which I have already mentioned, and at once worked hard at building a bridge—and it was built with such toil, and with such huge and thick timbers, that after it was made the Indians of Acalá marvelled to see the timbers so placed. It took four days in the making. When Cortés started with all his soldiers from the pueblo already mentioned by me many times, they brought neither maize nor [other] provisions and during the four days that we remained in the pueblo while Cortés was building the bridge, there were deaths from hunger, although some of the old soldiers supported themselves by felling some lofty trees which appeared to be palm trees and had fruit which looked like very thick-shelled nuts, these they roasted and broke open and ate. Let us stop talking about the hunger and say that the very night on which they finished the bridge I and my three companions arrived with one hundred and thirty loads of maize and eighty fowls, and honey and beans, salt and eggs and fruits. Although I came at night time, and it was already dark, nearly all the soldiers were watching for the food, for they already knew that I had gone to fetch it, and Cortés had said to his Captains and soldiers that he had hope in God that they would soon all have something to eat as I had gone to Acalá to bring it, if the Indians had not killed me as they had killed the four other Spaniards he had sent out.

So as I arrived with the maize and provisions at the bridge when it was night time, the soldiers fell on it and seized it all and left nothing at all for Cortés and his Captains. There were shouts of "Leave this, for it is for the Captain Cortés," so too his Mayordomo Carranza (for so he was called) and the steward Guinea cried out, grasping the maize in their arms and saying that they must leave at least one load for them, but as it was night time the soldiers told him "You and Cortés have

been eating fat pigs" and they did not mind a bit what was said, but seized all of it. When Cortés heard how they had seized it and left nothing for him he cursed with impatience and stamped his foot, and was so furious that he said he would make enquiry who had taken it, and they told him what was said about the pigs, and when he saw and reflected that his anger was useless and merely "lifting up his voice in the wilderness" he ordered me to be called, and asked me very angrily why I had not guarded the provisions better. I replied that His Excellency should have endeavoured to send guards ahead to take charge of them, but that even had he himself been in charge of them they would have been seized, for God preserve him from hunger which respects no laws. When he saw that matters could not be mended, and he was in great need [of food], he flattered me with honeyed words in the presence of Captain Gonzalo de Sandoval and said :—"Oh Señor and brother Bernal Días del Castillo, for love of me, if you have left anything hidden on the road share it with me. I have great belief in your forethought, and that you have brought something for yourself and for your friend Sandoval." When I heard his words and noted the way in which he spoke them, I was sorry for him, and Sandoval also said to me, "I swear that I too have not a handful of maize with which to make Cazalote." Then I thought it over and said that it would be all right, and to-night towards dawn when the camp was asleep we would go for twelve loads of maize and twenty fowls and three jars of honey and beans and salt, and the two Indian women who had been given to me in those pueblos to make bread, but we must go by night lest the provisions be snatched from us on the road, and I would divide the food between His Excellency and Sandoval and myself and my people. Cortés was freed

from anxiety and he embraced me, and Sandoval said that he wished to go with me that night for the food; so we brought it and their hunger was appeased, and I also gave Sandoval one of the Indian women. All this I call to mind so that it may be understood what hardships Captains go through in new countries, and that even for Cortés, who was so greatly feared, they [his followers] left no maize to eat, and that the Captain Sandoval went with me himself to bring his share of the food, and would trust no one else, although he had many soldiers whom he could have sent.

Let us cease talking about the great labour in building the bridge, and of the hunger we went through, and I will tell how at the distance of a league we came on the very bad swamps already mentioned, and they were of such a nature that they could not attempt to place timber or branches or employ other devices to enable the horses to pass, and they sank in the mire of the great swamps until their whole bodies were submerged, and we thought that not one would escape, but all would be left there dead. Still we persisted in going forward, because about half a crossbow shot ahead there was firm ground and a good road, and we made a passage through this swamp of mud and water, which they got through without too much difficulty although at times they were half swimming in that swamp and water. As soon as we reached dry land we gave thanks to God for it, and Cortés promptly ordered me to return in haste to Acalá and impress strongly on the Caciques that they should keep the peace, and should at once send provisions along the road. This I did, and the very day that I arrived at Acalá I sent by night three Spaniards who accompanied me with over one hundred Indians laden with maize and other things. And when Cortés sent me for this purpose I said to

him that he should take care that His Excellency in person should take charge of the food, so that it should not be seized as on the last occasion; this he did, and went ahead together with Sandoval and Luis Marin and took possession of all of it and divided it up, and the next day about midday they reached Acalá, and the Caciques went to bid him welcome and carried food to him, and I will leave them there and will relate what else happened.

CHAPTER CLXXVII.

What Cortés attended to after reaching Acalá, and how, in another pueblo further ahead, subject to this same Acalá, he ordered Guatemoc the Great Cacique of Mexico, and another Cacique, the lord of Tacuba, to be hanged, and the reason why he did it, and other things that happened.

WHEN Cortés had arrived at Gueyacala—for so it is called—the Caciques of that pueblo approached him peaceably and he spoke to them through Doña Marina the interpreter in such a way that to all appearance they were satisfied, and Cortés gave them articles from Spain, and they brought maize and provisions, and then he ordered all the Caciques to be summoned and asked them for information about the road we had to take, and questioned them whether they knew of other men with beards like us and with horses, and whether they had seen ships sailing on the sea. They replied that eight days' journey from there were many men with beards, and women from Castile, and horses and three Acales, for in their language they call ships Acales. Cortés was delighted to hear this news, and, on asking about the pueblos and the road along which we must go, they brought it to him all drawn on some cloths, even to

the rivers and swamps and miry places, and he begged them to build bridges over the rivers and to bring canoes, for they had numerous followers and there were populous villages. The Caciques replied that because there were more than twenty pueblos, most of which would not obey them, especially certain pueblos situated between some rivers, it was necessary for Cortés at once to send some of his Teules (for so they called the soldiers) to make them bring maize and other things, and order them to obey them [the Caciques], for they were their subjects.

When Cortés understood this, he at once summoned a certain Diego de Mazariegos (a cousin of the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada who was left as governor in Mexico) and in order that he might see and understand that he (Cortés) held him in great esteem, he honoured him by sending him as Captain against those pueblos and others in the neighbourhood, and when he despatched him he told him secretly that as he did not well understand the ways of the country, being newly arrived from Castile, and had not so much experience in dealing with Indians, he should take me in his company and not swerve from what I advised. This he did, and I should not write this in my story so that I might appear to boast of it, and I would not write it down but that it was made known throughout the camp, and later on I have even seen it engrossed in certain letters and reports which Cortés wrote to His Majesty informing him of all that happened during this journey in the Indies, and for this reason I write it down.

To return to my story, we started with Mazariegos, a company of eighty soldiers in canoes which the Caciques gave us, and when we arrived at the villages, all with the utmost willingness gave us of what they possessed, and we brought back over one hundred canoes with maize

and supplies, and fowls, honey and salt, and ten Indian women whom they held as slaves, and the Caciques came to see Cortés. So the whole camp had plenty to eat, and within four days nearly all the Caciques took to flight and only three of the guides remained with whom we set out on the road.

We crossed two rivers, one on bridges which promptly broke down on our crossing them, and the other on rafts, and we went to another pueblo subject to Acalá, which was already abandoned, and there we searched for food which had been hidden away in the forest.

Let us cease talking about our hardships and journey and I will relate how Guatemoc the great Cacique of Mexico, and other Mexican chieftains who accompanied us, had been deliberating or had arranged to kill us all and return to Mexico, and when they had reached their city to unite all their great forces and attack those [Spaniards] who remained in Mexico.

Those who made this known to Cortés were two great Caciques named Tápia and Juan Velásquez: this Juan Velásquez was Guatemoc's Captain-General when they were fighting us in Mexico. When this came to the knowledge of Cortés he had the evidence taken down [in writing] not only of the two who revealed the plot, but of other Caciques who were involved in it. What they confessed was, that as they saw us travelling over the roads carelessly and discontentedly, and many soldiers suffering from illness, and that food was always wanting, and that the four players on the oboe, and the acrobat, and eleven or twelve soldiers, had already died of hunger; and three other soldiers had fled back on the way to Mexico and had taken their chance of a state of war along the road by which we had come, and preferred to die rather than continue the advance, it would be a favourable opportunity to attack us when

we were crossing some river or swamp, for the Mexicans numbered three thousand, bearing arms and lances, and some of them had swords. Guatemoc confessed that it was as the others had said, but the plot was not hatched by him, and he did not know if they were all privy to it or would bring it to pass, that he never thought to carry it out but only [joined in] the talk there was about it. The Cacique of Tacuba stated that he and Guatemoc had said that it were better to die once for all than die every day on the journey, considering how their followers and kinsmen were suffering famine.

Without awaiting further proofs Cortés ordered Guatemoc and his cousin the Lord of Tacuba to be hanged; and before they were hanged the Franciscan Friars aided them and commended them to God through the interpreter Doña Marina.

When they were about to hang him, Guatemoc said "Oh! Malinche I have long known that you meant to kill me and I have understood your false speeches for you kill me unjustly, and God will call you to account for it, for I did not do myself justice when you delivered yourself to me [into my hands] in my city of Mexico." The Lord of Tacuba said that death was welcome, dying as he did with his Lord Guatemoc. Before they were hanged the Franciscan Friars confessed them through the interpreter Doña Marina.

In truth I grieved keenly for Guatemoc and his cousin, having known them as such great lords, and they had even done me honour during the journey when occasion offered, especially in giving me Indians to bring forage for my horse, and this death which they suffered very unjustly was considered wrong by all those who were with us.

Let us turn to continue our march, which we did with the greatest caution from fear lest the Mexicans seeing

their chieftains hanged, should rise in revolt; however, they were bearing such sufferings through hunger and sickness that they could give no thought to it. After the chieftains had been hanged as I have related, we at once continued our march towards another small pueblo, and before entering it we passed a deep river on rafts and found the town uninhabited, for the people had fled that day. We searched for food among the farms and we found eight Indians who were priests of Idols, and they willingly returned to their pueblo with us. Cortés told them through Doña Marina to summon the inhabitants and to have no fear, but to bring us food. They replied to Cortés begging him to give orders that no one should go near some Idols, which were close to a house where Cortés was lodged, and they would bring food and do all they were able. Cortés told them he would do what they requested and nothing should happen to the Idols, but "why did they care for such Idols which were made of clay and old wood for they were evil things which deceived them?" and he preached such [convincing] things through the Friars and Doña Marina, that they replied favourably to what he said, and [declared] they would abandon them, and they brought twenty loads of maize and some fowls.

Cortés then asked them how many days journey from there were there men with beards like us, and they replied seven days journey, and that the pueblo where the men with horses lived was called Nito, and that they would go as guides as far as the next pueblo, but we should have to sleep one night in an uninhabited country before reaching it.

Cortés ordered them to make a cross on a very large tree called a Ceiba which stood near the houses where they had their Idols.

I also wish to say that Cortés was in a bad humour,

and even very regretful and discontented at the hardships of the journey we had undertaken, and because of having ordered Guatemoc and his cousin the Lord of Tacuba to be hanged, and at the daily hunger, and the sickness and death of so many Mexicans, and it appears that he did not rest at night through thinking about it, but got up from his bed where he slept to walk about in a room where the Idols stood, which was the principal apartment of that small pueblo where they kept other Idols, and he was careless and fell. It was a fall of more than twice the height of a man and he injured his head, but he kept quiet and said nothing about it only tended the wound and endured and suffered it all. The next day very early in the morning we began to march with our guides without anything happening worth recording, and slept by a lagoon near some forests, and the next day we continued our march and about the time of high mass arrived at a new pueblo, and its inhabitants had deserted it that same day and taken refuge in some swamps. The houses had been newly built only a few days before, and in the town were many barricades of thick beams and all surrounded by other beams of great strength, and there were deep ditches in front of the entrance, and inside two fences, one like a barbican with towers and loopholes, and in one part in place of a fence were some very lofty rocks full of stones fashioned by hand, with great breast-works, and on the other side was a great swamp which was [as good as] a fortress.

When we entered the houses we found so many turkeys and fowls cooked in the way the Indians eat them, with chili peppers and maize cakes—which among them are called 'tamales'—that on the one hand we wondered at so novel an event, and on the other we were delighted at the plentiful food. We also found a large house full of small lances and arrows, and we searched the neighbour-

hood of that town for maize plantations and people, but found none, not even a grain of maize.

While we were thus situated, fifteen Indians approached from the swamps and they were the chieftains of that town, and they placed their hands on the ground and kissed the earth and said, half weeping, to Cortés, that they begged as a favour that he would not allow anything in the pueblo to be burned, because they were but newly arrived there and had to fortify it on account of their enemies, (who it seems to me that they said were called Lacandones,) who had burnt and destroyed the two pueblos where they had lived, and had robbed them and killed many of their people. These pueblos we would see further along the road we must follow, which was [over] a very level country, and they then gave an account of how and in what manner they [the Lacandones] attacked them and why they were their enemies.

Cortés asked them how it happened that they had so many turkeys and fowls ready cooked, and they replied that they were hourly expecting their enemies to come and attack them, and, that if they were conquered, the enemy would be sure to seize their goods and their poultry and carry them off captive, and so that they should not do that or have the benefit of them, they wished to eat them first; [on the other hand] if they defeated their enemies they would go to their pueblos and seize their goods.

Cortés said that he was sorry for it and for their war, but as he must continue his march he could not mend matters.

This pueblo and other great settlements which we passed the next day are called the Mazatecas, which in their tongue means the pueblos or lands of deer, and they have good reason for giving that name as what I will relate later shows. Two of these Indians accom-

panied us and showed us their burnt townships and gave information to Cortés about the Spaniards who were on ahead of us. I will leave off here and relate how the next day we left that pueblo, and what else happened on the journey.

CHAPTER CLXXVIII.

How we went on our way, and what happened to us.

WHEN we left the "fenced pueblo" (for so we called it), we entered from there onwards on a good and flat road all through treeless savannahs with a sun so hot and strong that greater noontide heat we had never felt throughout our march. As we went along those flat plains we saw many deer and they hardly ran at all, so that we soon overtook them on horseback, however little we raced after them, and over twenty of them were killed.

On asking the guides we had with us why the deer ran so little, and why they were not frightened at the horses nor at anything else, they replied that in those pueblos, which I have already said they call the Mazatecas, they are considered to be gods, because gods have appeared in their shape, and their Idol has commanded them not to kill or frighten them, and they have not done so, and this is the reason why they do not run away.

During that chase the horse of a relation of Cortés, named Palacios Rubios, died, for the fat of his body melted from having galloped so much.

Let us leave this chase and I will say that we soon reached the settlements already mentioned by me, and it was sad to see them all destroyed and burnt. As we went on our way, as Cortés always sent scouts ahead on horseback and active men on foot, they overtook two

Indians, natives of another pueblo which was ahead of us on the road we had to take, who were returning from the chase laden with a great lion and many iguanas, which are of the form of small serpents, and in these parts they are called iguanas and are very good to eat. They asked these Indians if their pueblo was near by, and they answered 'yes,' and they would guide them to the pueblo which was in a narrow strait surrounded by fresh water, and we could not reach it from the side where we were except in canoes. So we went round a little more than half a league to where there was a ford, and the water came up to one's waist, and we found more than half the inhabitants in the pueblo, and the rest had hurried away to some cane brakes which were near their plantations, where many of our soldiers slept; for by staying in the maize fields they supped well and provisioned themselves for some days. We took guides for another pueblo, and were two days in reaching it, and found there a great lake of fresh water full of fish which were like very tasteless shad and full of bones. With some old cloaks and some rotten nets which we found in the pueblo, which was already deserted, we caught all the fish in the pool, which numbered over a thousand.

Then we searched for guides and captured them in some cultivated land, and after Cortés had told them through Doña Marina that they must show us the way to the pueblo where there were men with beards and horses, they were delighted to find we should do them no harm, and said they would willingly show us the road, for at first they thought we wished to kill them. Five of them went with us along a broad road, but the further we advanced the narrower it became on account of a great river and lagoon which was near to it, and it appears that they used to embark and disembark from canoes and go on to that pueblo.



Tavasul (Flores) Lake of Peten-Itzá.

named Tayasal, whither we were bound, which stood on an island surrounded by water, and it could not be reached by land, but only in canoes. The houses and oratories were whitewashed so that they could be seen for more than two leagues. It was the capital of other small pueblos which were near to it.

To go back to my story, when we saw that the broad road which we had hitherto followed changed to a very narrow pathway, we fully understood that the way was by the lagoon and the guides we brought with us told us that it was so. We decided to sleep near to some thick forest, and that night four companies of soldiers went along the paths which led to the lagoon to capture guides, and it pleased God that they captured two canoes laden with maize and salt, with ten Indians and two women, and they at once took them to Cortés, who coaxed them and spoke very affectionately to them through the interpreter Doña Marina. They stated that they were natives of the pueblo on the small island, and they explained by signs that it was distant about four leagues. Cortés promptly ordered that the larger canoe with four Indians and the two women should remain with us, and he sent the other canoe to the pueblo with six Indians and two Spaniards to ask the Cacique to bring canoes for the passage of the river, and [to say] that no annoyance would be given him, and he sent him some beads from Castile. We at once set out on our way by land towards the great river, and the one canoe went by the lagoon to reach the river, and the Cacique was already there with many other chieftains waiting with five canoes to pass us across, and they brought four chickens and maize.

Cortés showed them great goodwill, and after much persuasion by the Caciques he agreed to go with them to their pueblo in those canoes, and he took with him

thirty Crossbowmen, and when he arrived at the houses they gave him food to eat, and even brought gold, which was of poor quality and little value, and some cloths; and they told him that there were Spaniards the same as ourselves in two pueblos. One I have already said was called Nito, which is at San Gil de Buena Vista near the Golfo Dulce, and they then gave him the news that there were many other Spaniards at Naco, and that it was ten days' journey from one pueblo to the other, that Nito was on the North Coast and Naco inland.

Cortés said to us that perhaps Cristóbal de Olid had divided his people among two towns, for at that time we knew nothing of the people of Gil González de Ávila who settled at San Gil de Buena Vista.

To return to our journey we all crossed that great river in canoes and slept about three leagues beyond, and we marched no further because we were waiting for Cortés who was coming from the pueblo of Tayasal. As soon as he arrived, he ordered us to leave at that pueblo a black horse which was ill from the chase after deer, and the fat of its body had melted and it could not stand upright.¹

¹ The fate of this horse is interesting :—

In 1618 the Padres Bartolomé de Fuensalida and Juan de Orbita set out from Merida on a Missionary expedition to Peten by way of Tipu, then the Spanish outpost in Yucatan, situated on the Rio Hondo, near the present frontier of British Honduras, and within a few days' march of the Lake of Peten.

On reaching Tayasal the missionaries were well received by the Chief of the Itzáes, and on the day after their arrival were conducted round the town.

"The Padres estimated the number of houses at about two hundred; these stood along the shore of the lagoon at a little distance from one another, and in each of them dwelt parents and sons with their families. On the higher ground in the middle of the island stood the Cués or oratories, where they kept their idols. They (the padres) went to see them and found twelve or more temples equal in size and capacity to any of the churches in this province of Yucatan, and according to their account each one could hold more than a thousand persons. In the middle of one of these temples there

At this pueblo a negro and two Indian servants ran away, and three Spaniards remained behind, who were not missed until three days later; they preferred to stay among enemies than to go with us through such hardships. This day I was very ill with fever and from

was a great Idol in the form of a horse, made of stone and cement. It was seated on the floor of the temple on its haunches, with its hind legs bent under it, raising itself on its fore legs. It was worshipped as the God of Thunder and called Tzimin Chac, which means the horse of thunder or the thunderbolt. The reason why they possessed this Idol was that when Don Fernando Cortés passed through this land on his way to Honduras, he left behind him a horse which could travel no further. As the horse died the Indians, terrified at the thought of not being able to give it up alive should Cortés by chance return that way and ask them for it, had a statue made of the horse and began to hold it in veneration, so that it might be clear that they were not to blame for its death.

"Believing the horse to be an intelligent being, they gave it to eat chickens and other meat, and offered it garlands of flowers as they were wont to do to their own chieftains. All these honours, for such they were in their sight, helped to bring about the death of the poor horse, for he died of hunger. It was given its name (the God of the Thunderbolt) because they had seen some of the Spaniards discharging their arquebuses or guns when on horseback hunting the deer, and they believed that the horses were the cause of the noise, which appeared to them like thunder, and the flash from the muzzle of the gun and the smoke of the powder they mistook for lightning. Upon this the devil took advantage of the blindness of their superstition so to increase the veneration in which the statue was held that, by the time the missionaries arrived, this Idol had become the principal object of their adoration.

"As soon as the Padre Fray Juan de Orbita caught sight of the Idol (says the Padre Fuensalida) it seemed as if the Spirit of Our Lord had descended on him, for, carried away by a fervid and courageous zeal for the glory of God, he took a great stone in his hand, climbed to the top of the statue of the horse and battered it to pieces, scattering the fragments on the ground." (From *Cogolludo's History of Yucatan*, 1688.)

This act naturally roused the anger of the Indians, who, however, refrained from attacking the missionaries, but a few days later the Padres, finding that their preaching was of no effect, left the island and returned to Tipu.

I may add that the tradition still exists in the locality, for when crossing the lake my Indian canoemen told me that had the water been clear, I might have seen a white horse at the bottom of the lake. The description of the temples as holding a thousand persons, unless the courtyards of the temples were included, must have been a gross exaggeration.

A. P. M.

the heat of the sun, which had penetrated my head and all my body.

I have already said the sun was very fierce, and the reason became apparent, because presently it began to rain in floods and it never ceased raining for three days and nights, but we did not halt on the road because, although we might have wished to wait for better weather, we had no supply of maize, and for fear of it failing us we kept on our way.

To go back to my story: After two days we came to a range of hills which was not very lofty, and consisted of stones which cut like knives, and although our soldiers went more than a league on one side and the other in search of another road so as to avoid that Sierra de los Pedernales they could not find another road, and we had to follow on the way we were going; but those stones did much damage to the horses, for as it rained they slipped and fell and cut their hind and fore legs and even their bodies, and the further we went the worse were the stones and, when we reached the descent from these hills, two horses were left there dead, and most of those which escaped were hocked.

A soldier named Palacios Rubio, a kinsman of Cortés, broke his leg, and when we found ourselves free from that Sierra de los Pedernales, for so we called it thenceforward, we gave many thanks and much praise to God. When at last we approached a pueblo called Tayca, we even rejoiced, thinking to find food. Before reaching it there was a river which flowed from a range between great rocky cliffs and precipices, and as it had rained for three nights it came down so furiously and with such an uproar, one could hear it two leagues off falling among the rocks: in addition to this it ran very deep and it was impossible to ford it. We determined to make a bridge from one cliff to the other, and we put

such haste into getting it finished with very thick tree trunks that in three days we began the passage to the pueblo. As we had to delay there for three days making the bridge, the native Indians had time to hide their maize and all their provisions, and place themselves in safety, so that we could not find them anywhere round about. On account of the hunger that was already wearing us out we were all dazed with thinking of food. I say assuredly that never had I felt such grief in my heart as we all suffered then, seeing that neither had I myself anything to eat or [food] to give to my men, besides being ill with fever. We searched for food diligently throughout the neighbourhood within two leagues of the pueblo, and this was on the eve of the festival of the holy resurrection of our Saviour Jesus Christ. Let my readers think what sort of Easter we should pass with nothing to eat, and we should have been very contented with [only] maize.

When Cortés observed the state of things, he at once, on the first day of Easter, sent off his servants and grooms with the guides to search for maize through the woods and plantations, and they brought in a matter of a fanega.¹ And when Cortés saw the extreme necessity, he ordered certain soldiers to be summoned, nearly all of them settlers from Coatzacoalcos, and among them he named me, and he said to us that he prayed us earnestly to turn the country upside down in our search for food, for we could see in what a condition the whole camp found itself. At that time when Cortés was giving us our orders, there stood before Cortés one Pedro de Ircio who was a great talker, and he begged Cortés to send him as our Captain, and Cortés replied—"Go and good luck to you." When I understood this, knowing that

¹ About eight bushels.

Pedro de Ircio could not march on foot and would hinder rather than aid us, I said secretly to Cortés and to Captain Sandoval that Pedro de Ircio had better not go, because he was not able to march through the mud and swamps with us for he had a lame leg, and he was no good for that sort of thing, but only for talking a lot, and not fit to go on expeditions, and that he would stop or sit down on the road from time to time. So Cortés promptly ordered that he should remain behind, and we set out five soldiers and two guides through two rivers, both very deep, and after we had crossed the rivers we came on to some swamps and then into some farms where most of the people of the pueblo had collected, and there we found four houses full of maize and beans in quantity, and over thirty chickens and melons of the country which they call ayotes,¹ and we seized four Indians and three women, and we had a fine Easter. That night more than a thousand Mexicans, whom Cortés ordered to go after us and follow us so that they should get something to eat, arrived at the farms, and all of us, very jubilantly, loaded the Mexicans with all the maize they could carry for Cortés to apportion, and we also sent for him and Sandoval twenty fowls and the Indians and Indian women. We remained to guard two of the houses full of maize, lest the natives of the pueblo should burn them or carry it off during the night.

The next day we went on ahead with other guides and came on other farms where there was maize and poultry and different sorts of vegetables, and I at once wrote² to Cortés to send me many Indians for I had found other farms, and how I had sent him the Indian

¹ Pumpkins.

² Blotted out in the original: "I made ink [and wrote] on the skin of a drum."

men and women already mentioned, and all the camp heard about it.

The next day more than thirty soldiers and five hundred Indians arrived, and all carried away provisions, and in this way, thanks to God, the camp was supplied.

In that pueblo, which I have already said was called Tayca, we stayed five days.

Let us leave this, for I wish to mention how we made this bridge, and all along the journey we had made great bridges as I have already stated. Later on when those lands and provinces were pacified, the Spaniards who passed along those roads found, and still find at the present time, some of the bridges undestroyed after so many years have passed, and wonder at the great tree trunks which we placed in them, and now they are in the habit of saying "Here are the bridges of Cortés," as though they were saying "Here are the Pillars of Hercules."

Let us leave these reminiscences, for they do not belong to our story, and I will relate how we went on our way to another pueblo called Tania, and we were two days reaching it and found it deserted, and we searched for food and found maize and other vegetables but not very plentiful, and we went about the neighbourhood looking for roads and found nothing but rivers and brooks, and the guides, whom we had brought from the pueblo we had left behind, ran away one night from certain soldiers who guarded them, who were newcomers from Castile and who apparently had fallen asleep. As soon as Cortés knew of it he wished to punish the soldiers for it, but owing to entreaties he let it alone. Then he sent to search for guides and a road. It was useless to look for them by dry land, for the pueblo was altogether surrounded by rivers and streams and we were unable to capture any Indian men or women, and in addition

to this it rained continuously, and we could not make a stand against so much wet. Cortés and all of us were horrified and distressed at not knowing or finding a road by which we could travel, and then Cortés said very angrily to Pedro de Ircio and other Captains who were of the Mexican company "I wish now that there was somebody to say that he would like to go and search for guides and a road, and not leave everything to the settlers from Coatzacoalcas." When Pedro de Ircio heard those words he got ready with six soldiers, his companions and friends, and went off in one direction, and Francisco Marmolejo, who was a person of quality, with other six soldiers went in another, and a certain Santa Cruz Burgalés, who was regidor of Mexico, went in another direction with other soldiers, and they all walked the whole of three days and found neither guides nor a road—nothing but streams and rivers. When they had returned without any supplies, Cortés nearly burst with rage and asked Sandoval to tell me the great straits we were in, and to beg me on his behalf to go and look for guides and a road, and he said this with affectionate expressions like entreaties, because he knew for certain that I was ill.¹ They had already named me before Sandoval spoke to me, to go with Francisco Marmolejo who was my friend, and I said I could not go because I was ill and tired, and that they always put all the work on me and they could send someone else. Then Sandoval came again to my ranch and implored me to go with two companions whom I might choose myself, for Cortés said that after God he had faith in me to bring provisions, and although I was ill I could not permit myself to be shamed, and asked that a certain Hernando

¹ Blotted out in the original: "as I have already said I still had fever and was feeling ill."

de Aguilar and one Ynojosa should go with me, as I knew they were men who could endure hardships. So we all three set out and followed down some streams, and away from the streams in the bush there were some signs of cut branches, and we followed that trail more than a league, and at last we left the stream and came on some small ranchos which had been deserted that day, and following the trail we saw on a hill in the distance some maize plantations and a house, and we observed people in it. As the sun had already set, we stayed in the wood until the night was well advanced, and it seemed to us the inhabitants of those maize plantations should be asleep, so keeping very quiet we came very suddenly on the house and captured three Indians and two women, young and good-looking for Indians, and one old woman. They owned two fowls and a little maize, and we carried off the maize and fowls and the Indian men and women, and very cheerfully returned to camp. When Sandoval knew it, and he was the first found waiting for us on the road at the close of the day, we went before Cortés, who valued it more than if we had given him a much greater thing. Then Sandoval said to Pedro de Ircio, who had come with him, before many of the gentlemen—"It seems to us Señor Pedro de Ircio that Bernal Díaz was right the other day when he went to search for maize, that he only wished to go with men, and not with one who would go all the way very slowly, relating what happened to the Conde Durueña and Don Pedro Giron his son (for these were stories Pedro de Ircio told many times), and you have no reason to complain saying that he stirs up trouble with the Señor Captain and with me." They all laughed at this, and Sandoval said it because Pedro de Ircio was unfriendly to me.

Then Cortés thanked me for it and said it ever happened that I had to bring in provisions, and "I pledge

you this (meaning his beard) that I will remember your honour."

I must leave these flatteries, for they are hollow and bring no profit, but others repeated them in Mexico when they told the story of this toilsome journey. I must go back to say that Cortés sought information from the guides and the two women, and all agreed that we must go down stream to a pueblo which was distant two days' march, and the name of the pueblo was said to be Oculizte, which contained more than two hundred houses and had been deserted a few days before.

As we went on our way down stream we came on some large ranchos which were used by Indian traders when they are travelling. There we slept and the next day we followed the same river and water-course, and after following it for about half a league we came upon a good road, and that day arrived at the pueblo of Oculizte, where there was plenty of maize and vegetables. In a house which was a shrine of their Idols was found an old red cap and a hempen shoe as an offering to the Idols. Some soldiers who went through the farms brought to Cortés two old Indians and four women whom they had captured in the maize fields belonging to the pueblo, and Cortés questioned them through the interpreter Doña Marina about the road, and how far off the Spaniards were, and they replied "two days," and that there was no inhabited land until we arrived there, and that they [the Spaniards] have their houses near the sea coast.

Then Cortés instantly ordered Sandoval to proceed on foot with six other soldiers and find his way to the sea, and by some means or other to enquire and to find out whether there were many Spaniards who were settled there with Cristóbal de Olid, for at that time we did not believe there could be any other Captain in that country.

Cortés wanted to know this so that we might fall on Cristóbal de Olid in the night if he were there, and might capture him and his soldiers.

Gonzalo de Sandoval set out with the six soldiers and three Indians as guides whom he took for that purpose from the pueblo of Oculizte, and as he went along the north coast he saw a canoe rowing and sailing swiftly over the sea, and he hid himself during the day in the forest, for they saw that the canoe which was coming over the sea belonged to Indian traders, and it was coasting along and bringing salt and maize as merchandize and was about to enter into the great river of the Golfo Dulce, and during the night they [the Spaniards] took possession of it in a bay which was a canoe harbour, and Sandoval got into the canoe with two of his companions and the Indian rowers who had brought the canoe and his three guides, and set off along the coast, the rest of the soldiers going by land, for they knew that the great river was near by. When they were close to the great river, as chance would have it, four settlers and a Cuban Indian from the town which had been settled by the followers of Gil Gonzáles de Ávila had come that morning in a canoe, and crossed to that side of the river in search of a fruit which they call zapotes, to be eaten when roasted, for in the town whence they came they were enduring great hunger because most of them were ill, and [they] did not dare to go out in search of food among the pueblos because the Indians in the neighbourhood had made war on them and killed six soldiers since Gil Gonzáles de Ávila had left them there.

While these followers of Gil Gonzáles de Ávila were pulling down zapotes from the tree, and two of the men were up the tree, when they saw a canoe coming along the sea in which were Sandoval and his two companions, they were startled and marvelled at such a novel sight,

and did not know whether to stay or flee. When Sandoval approached them he told them to have no fear as they were men of peace, so they stood quiet but very much terrified. After Sandoval and his companions had been fully informed by the two Spaniards, how and in what way the followers of Gil Gonzáles de Ávila had been settled there, and of the ill fate of the Armada of Las Casas, which was lost; and how Cristóbal de Olid had made prisoners of Las Casas and Gil Gonzáles de Ávila; and how they had beheaded Cristóbal de Olid at Nacq in execution of the sentence then pronounced against him; and how they had already set off for Mexico; they learned who and how many were in the town and the great hunger they were enduring, and how a few days earlier they had hanged in that town the Lieutenant and leader, a man named Armenta, whom Gil Gonzáles de Ávila had left there; and the reason why they hanged him, which was because he would not let them go to Cuba. Sandoval determined to carry those men at once to Cortés, and not to attract attention or go to the town without him, in order that he [Cortés] should receive the information from these men in person. Then a soldier named Alonzo Ortiz, who was afterwards a settler at a town called San Pedro, begged Sandoval to do him the favour of permitting him to go on one hour ahead to take the news to Cortés and all of us who were with him, so that he might get a reward. This he did and Cortés and all the camp were delighted at the news, believing that there would come an end to all the hardships we were suffering, but they were to increase twofold as I shall tell later on. To Alonzo Ortiz who carried the news Cortés gave a very good chestnut horse called Cabeza de Moro,¹ and we all gave him something from what we still possessed. Then Captain

¹ The Moor's Head.

Sandoval arrived with the soldiers and the Cuban Indian, and they gave a report to Cortés of all I have stated, and many other things which they were asked about. As they owned at that town a ship, which was being caulked in a harbour about half a league distant, which had room enough in it for all of them to embark and go to Cuba, and because the lieutenant Armenta had not let them embark, they had hanged him, also because he had ordered a cleric who revolutionized the town to be flogged; and they chose for lieutenant one Antonio Nieto in place of Armenta whom they had hanged.

Let us stop talking about the news brought by the two Spaniards, and I will speak of the lamentations they raised in that town when they knew that the two settlers and the Cuban Indian who had gone to search for zapote fruit (for so they call it) had not returned, and they believed they had been killed by Indians or by lions or tigers. One of the settlers was married and his wife wept much for him, and the priest named the Bachelor Fulano Valásquez and all the settlers assembled in the Church and prayed God to help them and deliver them from further misfortune, and the woman was all the time praying God for the soul of her husband.

To go back to my story. Cortés promptly ordered the whole army to go along the road by the sea, a distance of six leagues. There was yet on the road a very swollen lagoon which rose and fell with the tide, and we waited half a day for the water to fall and crossed it jumping and swimming and reached the great river of the Golfo Dulce.

The first to go to the town, which was two leagues distant, was Cortés himself with six soldiers and two pages. He set out in two canoes tied together, the one in which the two soldiers of Gil Gonzáles had come to search for zapotes, and the other which Sandoval had taken from the Indians on the coast, and as it was necessary to

conceal it they had stuck it in the ground and hidden it in the bush. They went to launch it in the water and tied the two one to the other so that they were well secured, and in them Cortés and his servants crossed over, and then with the same canoes he ordered two horses to be sent over, and it was done in this manner: the canoes were paddled, and the horses, tied by their halters, swam near the canoes, and care had to be taken not to give too much rope to the horse lest it should upset the canoe. Cortés sent to say that, until we received an order or a letter from him, none of us were to cross in these same canoes on account of the great risk of the passage, for he had repented of going in them himself as the river came down with such great fury. I will leave off here and then go on to say what else happened.

CHAPTER CLXXIX.

How Cortés entered the town where the followers of Gil Gonzáles de Ávila were settled, and about the great joy shown by all the inhabitants, and what Cortés decreed.

AFTER Cortés had crossed the great river of the Golfo Dulce in the way I have related, he went to the town where the Spaniards of Gil Gonzáles de Ávila were settled, about two leagues distant and close to the sea, and not to where they made their first settlement named San Gil de Buena Vista.¹

When these saw a man on horseback and six others on foot among their houses, they were greatly startled, and when they knew that it was Cortés who was so renowned throughout the Indies and in Castile they were beside themselves with delight. After all the caciques had come to kiss his hand and give him a welcome

¹ Nito, in the Fifth letter of Cortés.

Cortés addressed them very affectionately and instructed the Lieutenant, who was called Nieto, to go to where they careened the ship and bring the two boats they possessed, and if there were any canoes to bring them also, tied two and two, and he ordered them to collect all the cassava bread in the place and take it, to Captain Sandoval (for they had no maize bread), that it might be divided and eaten by all of us belonging to his army. The Lieutenant promptly searched but did not find so much as fifty pounds of it, for they lived only on roasted zapotes, vegetables, and some shell fish which they fished for, and even the cassava which they gave us they were preserving as stores for the voyage to Cuba when the ship should have been calked.

By the two boats and eight sailors who came promptly, Cortés at once wrote to Sandoval that he personally and Captain Luis Marin should be the last to cross that great river, and that they should see to it that only those whom he ordered to do so should embark, and that the boats should not be overladen on account of the great current of the river which was coming down greatly swollen and very rapid, and that two horses [should be carried] by each boat, but that no horse should be brought in the canoes, lest it should be lost and the canoes overturned by the raging stream.

About the question of precedence in crossing over, a man named Sayavedra, and his brother Avalos, relations of Cortés, claimed to cross over first, notwithstanding Sandoval's decision that the Franciscan friars (because they were entitled to consideration in the first place) should cross in the first boatload; but as Sayavedra was a relative of Cortés, and inspired by Lucifer with a desire to command, he did not like Sandoval's raising objections, and wished him to hold his tongue and [therefore] answered him less respectfully than was proper. Sandoval

would not put up with it, and they had words, so much so, that Sayavedra plucked out his dagger, and as Sandoval was standing in the river knee deep in water preventing the boats from being overladen, he seized Sayavedra just as he stood, and caught hold of his hand which held the dagger and flung him into the water, and if we had not promptly thrown ourselves between them and parted them, certainly Sayavedra would have come out of it badly, for nearly all of us soldiers were openly on the side of Sandoval.

Let us leave this dispute and I will state that we were four days in crossing that river, and as for food it was useless to think about it, were it not for some "pacayas" which grow on certain small palms, and other things like nuts which we roasted and broke open, and ate the kernels of them.

One soldier with his horse was drowned in that river; the soldier's name was Tarifa, and he crossed over in a canoe and never appeared again, neither he nor his horse. Two horses were also drowned, one belonging to a soldier called Solis Casquete, who growled about it and cursed Cortés and his journey.

I wish to speak about the great hunger we endured at the passage of the river, and the grumbling against Cortés and his expedition, and even against all of us who were his followers; for when we arrived at the pueblo there was not a mouthful of cassava to eat, and even the people in the neighbourhood had none, and they did not know the roads except to two pueblos which used to be close by, but were already deserted.

Cortés next ordered Captain Luis Marin to set out with the settlers from Coatzacoalcos and search for maize, which I will go on to tell about.

CHAPTER CLXXX.

How the day after arriving at that town, which I know by no other name than that of San Gil de Buena Vista, we set out with Captain Luis Marin and nearly eighty soldiers, all on foot, to search for maize and explore the country, and what happened I will go on to relate.

I HAVE already said that when we reached the town which Gil Gonzáles de Ávila founded, there was nothing to eat, and there were nearly forty men and four Castilian women and two Mulatto women, and all were ill and very yellow in colour. And as neither we nor they had anything to eat, we could barely await the hour to go and look for it.

Cortés ordered Captain Luis Marin to set out and search for maize, and more than eighty of us foot soldiers went with him to find out if there were roads fit for horses, and we took with us a Cuban Indian who guided us to some farms and pueblos eight leagues distant, where we found much maize and very numerous cacao plantations, and frijoles and other vegetables, where we had plenty to eat and we even sent to say that he [Cortés] should send all the Mexican Indians to carry maize, and we relieved him immediately with ten fanegas of it by means of other Indians, and we sent for our horses.

As soon as Cortés knew that we were in a good country, and learned from Indian merchants, whom they had just then captured in the River of the Golfo Dulce, that the place where we were was on the direct way to Naco, where they beheaded Cristóbal de Olid, he sent Sandoval with the greater part of his army to follow us, and ordered us all to stay in that camp until we received his orders. When Sandoval arrived where we were and saw that there was abundance of food, he was delighted, and promptly sent to

Cortés over thirty fanegas of maize by some Mexican Indians, and he divided it among the settlers who remained in the town, and, as they were ravenous and accustomed to eat only roasted zapotes and cassava, they gorged themselves on tortillas made from the maize we sent them, until their bellies swelled, and, as they were [already] enfeebled, seven of them died. When they were in the condition I have described, it pleased God that a ship arrived in port which came from the Island of Cuba laden with seven horses, forty hogs and eight casks of salt meat and cassava bread, and about fifteen passengers came in her, and eight sailors, and the owner of most of the cargo of that ship was called Anton de Carmona the buskin maker. Cortés bought on credit all the supplies that came in it, and he divided part of them among the settlers and, as they had been formerly in such necessity and were run down, they gorged themselves on the salt meat and it gave many of them diarrhoea and fourteen of them died.

As that ship had arrived with men and sailors, it seemed to Cortés that it would be a good thing to go and explore and survey that mighty river, [and see] if there were towns up stream and what kind of land there was, so he promptly ordered a good launch belonging to the followers of Gil Gonzáles de Ávila, which had gone ashore, to be calked, and a boat to be repaired to serve as a lighter, and with four canoes tied one to the other, and thirty soldiers and the eight seamen from those lately arrived in the ship, and twenty Mexican Indians and Cortés himself as Captain, he went up the river. When he had proceeded a matter of ten leagues up stream, a broad lake was discovered six leagues in length and in width, and there were no villages at all around it, for it was all swampy, and going on up the river the stream became swifter than before, and there were some rapids which the launch, boats, and canoes could not ascend, so he decided to leave them there where the

o

stream was sluggish, with six Spaniards to guard them, and to go by land along a narrow track. He reached some small deserted villages and then came on some maize fields, and from there took three Indians as guides, and they led him to some small pueblos where there was much maize and many fowls and they even kept pheasants, which in this country they call "Sacachules," and partridges of the country and pigeons. This way of keeping partridges I saw and noticed [myself] among the pueblos in the neighbourhood of this Golfo Dulce, when I went in search of Cortés, as I shall relate further on.

To go back to my story: there Cortés captured guides and passed on and went to some other small pueblos which are called Çinacantençintle,¹ where they had great cocoa groves and maize fields and cotton, and before reaching them they heard the sound of drums and trumpets, for they were holding feasts and drunken orgies. So as not to be observed, Cortés and his soldiers remained hidden in the wood, and, as soon as he saw it was time to start, they fell upon them altogether and captured about ten Indians and fifteen women, but most of the Indians of the pueblo made off quickly to seize their arms, and returned with bows and arrows and lances, and began to shoot at our people. Cortés and his followers went against them and put to the sword eight Indians who were chieftains, and as soon as they saw how ill the fight was going, and that their women were captives, they sent four elders—and two of them were priests of Idols—and they approached very meekly to pray Cortés to give up the prisoners to them, and they brought some golden jewels of small value. Cortés spoke to them through Doña Marina who came there with her husband Juan Jaramillo, because Cortés could not understand the Indians without her,

¹ This is the pueblo called Chacujal by Cortés.

and he told them to take the maize, poultry, and salt, and all the provisions he indicated, to the place to which he explained they had come in the canoes and launches, and that then he would give up the prisoners to them. They replied that they would do so, and that near by there was a sort of creek which opened into the river, and they promptly made rafts, and, wading, they conveyed them to where they came to deep water, where they were able to float quite well. Then, although Cortés had agreed to give up all the prisoners, it appears that he ordered three of the Indian women with their husbands to stay with them, and make bread and wait on the Mexican Indians, and he would not give them up, and over this matter all the Indians of that pueblo got together and from the high banks of the river sent a great shower of darts, stones, and arrows, at Cortés and his soldiers, so that they wounded Cortés himself in the face, and a dozen of the soldiers. One boat came to grief there, and half its freight was lost and one Mexican was drowned. In that river there are so many mosquitos that they are beyond bearing, and Cortés endured it all and returned to his town (I don't know what it was named), and provisioned it much better than it had been before.

I have already stated that the pueblo which Cortés reached was named Sinacatençintla,¹ which is seventy leagues distant from Guatemala. Cortés was delayed on this journey, and he returned to the town in twenty-six days when he saw that as there were no Indian pueblos it would be no use to form a settlement there. As he was well provisioned both from what had already been collected before, and also from what he was now bringing, he decided to write to Gonzalo de Sandoval

¹ Çinacantençintle on the previous page.

to proceed at once to Naco,¹ and he told him all about his voyage on the Golfo Dulce, just as I have related it here, and how he was going to settle at the Puerto de Caballos, and that Sandoval must send him ten soldiers who were Coatzacoalcos men, for, without them he was not content when on expeditions.

CHAPTER CLXXXI.

How Cortés embarked with all the soldiers, both those which he had brought in his company and those who had remained at San Gil de Buena Vista, and went to settle the place now called Puerto de Caballos, which he named La Natividad, and what he did there.

AFTER Cortés had seen that the place he found settled by the followers of Gil Gonzáles de Ávila was of no use, he decided to embark in the two ships and the launch, with all those who were in the town, leaving none behind, and after voyaging for eight days he disembarked at what is now called Puerto de Caballos, and, when he beheld that it was a fine bay for a port and learnt that there were Indian villages near by, he decided to found a town, which he named "Natividad," and placed one Diego de Godoy in command. From this place he made two expeditions inland to some neighbouring pueblos, which are now deserted, and he learned from them that there were other pueblos near by, and

¹ Naco was situated in an inland valley, probably between the rivers Chamelicon and Santiago, the latter a branch of the Rio Ulua, and was sixty to seventy miles distant from Puerto Caballo.

"De ay (Puerto Caballo) a la villa de San Pedro . . . ay Catorze ó quinze leguas . . . estan cerca de alli 4 leguas las Minas de Zula . . . y quasi otras 4 el Valle de Naco . . . este Valle de Naco es muy llano y fertil corcado todo de Sierras." (*Relacion de la Provincia de Honduras y Higueras por el Obispo D. Cristóbal de Pedraza*, 1544; *Relaciones de Yucatan*, vol. i, p. 398.)

he supplied the town [Natividad] with maize, also learned that the pueblo of Naco, where they beheaded Cristóbal de Olid, was near that town; so he wrote to Gonzalo de Sandoval—believing that he had already arrived and was settled at Naco—telling him to send him ten soldiers who were Coatzacoalcos men, and he said in the letter that without them he was not confident when making expeditions. He also wrote to him that he wished to go from there [Puerto de Caballos] to the Port of Honduras where the town of Trujillo had been settled, and that Sandoval and his soldiers should pacify those lands and found a town. This letter came into Sandoval's possession when we were stationed in the camp already mentioned by me, and we had not reached Naco.

Let us cease speaking of Cortés and his expeditions which he made from the Puerto de Caballos, and about the many mosquitos which bit them on the journeys both by day and night, and, from what I afterwards heard him say, gave him such bad nights that his head was stupid from want of sleep.

When Gonzalo de Sandoval saw the letters, he promptly left the camp I have mentioned for some small pueblos named Cuyuacan, seven leagues distant. He was not able to go at once to Naco as Cortés had ordered him, if he were to avoid leaving behind on the road many soldiers who had gone off to other farms, to find food for themselves and their horses; and on account of the passage of a very deep river¹ which could not be forded on the road from the farms, and in order to leave provision of a canoe by which the Spanish stragglers, and a number of Mexican Indians who were out of health, could pass; (and it was also done for fear of some pueblos near

¹ Rio Motagua.

by the farms on the borders of the river and Golfo Dulce, for many Indians from these pueblos came every day to attack us). So that there should be no ill deeds and deaths of Spaniards and Mexican Indians, Sandoval ordered eight soldiers to remain at that crossing (and left me in command of them), and we were always to have a canoe drawn up on shore ready to make the passage, and to be on the alert so that, when passengers who had been left behind at the farms should raise shouts, we could promptly bring them over.

One night many Indian warriors from the neighbouring pueblos and farms, thinking that we were not keeping watch and hoping to take the canoe from us, fell suddenly on the ranchos in which we lived and set them on fire, but they did not come so secretly that we had not already heard them, and all of us, eight soldiers and four Mexican Indians who were in good health, attacked the warriors and with sword thrusts made them return whence they had come; however they wounded two soldiers and one Indian with their arrows, but the wounds were not serious. When we saw this, three of us companions went to the farms a league distant, where we believed some sick Indians and Spaniards had been left, and brought away one Diego de Mazariegos, often mentioned by me before, and some other Spaniards who were in his company, and some Mexican Indians who were ill, and we crossed the river at once and went to where Sandoval was stationed. As we went on our way one of the Spaniards whom we had picked up at the farms became very ill; he was one of those newly come from Castile and part native of the Canary Islands and the son of a Genoese, and as he grew worse, and we had nothing to give him to eat but tortillas and pinole,¹ when

¹ Pinole = a drink made of parched maize ground and mixed with sugar and water.

we were within half a league of where Sandoval was stationed he died on the road, and I had no men [able] to carry the dead body to the camp. When we arrived where Sandoval was stationed I told him about our journey, and about the man who was left dead, and he was angry with me because between all of us we had not brought him in on our shoulders or on a horse, and I answered him that we were bringing two sick men on each horse and came ourselves on foot, and for this reason we could not bring him. Then a soldier named Villanueva, who was my companion, answered Sandoval very arrogantly that it was as much as we could do to bring ourselves along without carrying dead men on our backs, and that he cursed the hardship and loss that Cortés had caused us. Sandoval at once ordered me and Villanueva to go without delay and bury the body, and we took two Indians with us and a hoc, and dug a grave and buried him and set up a cross. We found in the headpiece of the dead man a small bag with many dice, and a paper with a written record of where he was born and whose son he was, and what property he possessed in Tenerife, and later on that record was sent to Tenerife ; may God have mercy on him, Amen.

Let us stop telling stories, for I wish to say that Sandoval then decided that we should go to some other pueblos, which are now near to some mines which were discovered three years later, and thence we went to another pueblo named Quimiztlan, and the next day at the hour of Mass we went to Naco. At that time it was a good pueblo, but we found it had been deserted that very day, and we took up our quarters in some large courts where they had beheaded Cristóbal de Olid. The pueblo was well provisioned with maize and beans and Chili peppers, and we also found a little salt which was the thing we needed most, and there we settled ourselves

with our baggage as though we were going to stay there for ever. In this pueblo is the best water we have found in New Spain, and a tree which in the noonday heat, be the sun ever so fierce, appears to refresh the heart with its shade, and there falls from it a sort of very fine dew which comforts the head. At that time this pueblo was thickly peopled and in a good situation, and there was fruit of the zapotes, both of the red and small kind, and it was in the neighbourhood of other pueblos. I will leave off here and relate what happened to us there.

CHAPTER CLXXXII.

How the Captain Gonzalo de Sandoval began the pacification of that Province of Naco, and what else he did.

WHEN we arrived at the Pueblo of Naco and had collected maize, beans and peppers, we captured three chieftains in the maizefields and Sandoval coaxed them and gave them beads from Castile, and begged them to go and summon the other caciques and we would do them no harm whatever.

They set off as they were ordered to do, and two caciques came in, but Sandoval could not induce them to repeople the pueblo, only to bring a little food from time to time: they did us neither good nor harm, nor were they to them, and thus we continued for the first [few] days. Cortés had written to Sandoval, as I have stated, to send ten soldiers, men of Coatzacoalcos, to the Puerto de Caballos. All ten were mentioned by name and I was one of them. At that time I was rather ill, and I told Sandoval that he must excuse me for I was disinclined, and, as it met his wishes, I remained and he sent eight soldiers, all good men to face any

difficulty, but yet they went with such ill-will that they cursed Cortés and his journey, and they had good reason to do so, for they did not know whether the country they had to go through was at peace. Sandoval decided to ask the caciques of Naco for five Indian chieftains to accompany them to Puerto de Caballos, and threatened them that if any of the soldiers came to any harm he would burn their town, and would go in search of them and make war on them. He also ordered them to supply the soldiers plentifully with food at each pueblo they might pass through.

The soldiers went on their march to Puerto de Caballos, where they found Cortés who was wishing to embark and go to Trujillo. He was pleased to hear that we were well, and he took the soldiers with him in the ships, and then embarked, leaving behind in that town of Puerto de Caballos one Diego de Godoy as Captain and about forty settlers, who were most of them those who had been with Gil Gonzáles de Ávila and those who had recently come from the Islands.

As soon as Cortés had embarked, his Lieutenant Godoy, who remained in the town, made expeditions with the soldiers who were least infirm to the neighbouring pueblos, and he made peace with two of them; but when the Indians saw that almost all the soldiers who were left there were invalids, and were dying every day, they took no count of them, and for this reason they did not support them with food, nor were they [the settlers] in a condition to go and seek for it, and they suffered great hardship from hunger and even within a few days half of them died. Three soldiers abandoned the town and came fleeing to where we were camped with Sandoval, and I will leave them here in this condition and return to Naco.

When Sandoval saw that the neighbouring Indians

and natives of Naco did not want to come and settle in the pueblo, although he had sent to summon them many times, and that the people of the neighbouring pueblos did not come or take any notice of us, he decided to go himself and manage to make them come. We went at once to some pueblos called Girimonga and Açula, and to three other pueblos near to Naco, and all of them came to give fealty to His Majesty. Then we went to Quismistan¹ and to other pueblos of the Sierra, and they too came in, so that all the Indians of that district submitted, and as nothing was demanded of them beyond what they were inclined to give, their submission did not weigh on them, and in this manner all was pacified as far as up to where Cortés founded the town which is now called Puerto de Caballos.

Let us leave this matter, for I am obliged to go back and speak of Cortés, who disembarked at the Port of Trujillo, because at one and the same time two or three things happened, as I have said repeatedly in former chapters. I must contract my writing into a limited space as to where and how we conquered and settled [the country], and although for the present the story of Sandoval and what happened to him at Naco is put aside, I wish to relate what Cortés did in Trujillo.

CHAPTER CLXXXIII.

How Cortés disembarked at the Port of Trujillo, and how all the settlers at that town came out to receive him, and how content they were with him, and what he did there.

CORTÉS embarked at Puerto de Caballos, and took in his company many soldiers, both those whom he had brought from Mexico and those Gonzalo de Sandoval

¹ Quimistlan in preceding chapter. Quimistan on map.

sent him, and with fair weather he arrived at the Port of Trujillo in six days. As soon as the inhabitants who lived there, who had been left as settlers by Francisco de las Casas, knew that it was Cortés, they all went down to the beach, which was near by, to receive him and kiss his hands, for many of them were outlaws who had been turned out of Panuco and had advised Cristóbal de Olid to rebel; they had been banished from Panuco, as I have related in the chapter that tells about it. As they knew themselves guilty they implored Cortés to pardon them, and Cortés with many blandishments and promises embraced them all and pardoned them. Then they went to the church and after evening prayers they lodged him as well as they were able, and gave him an account of all that had happened to Francisco de las Casas and Gil Gonzáles de Ávila, and for what reason they had beheaded Cristóbal de Olid, and how they had started in the direction of Mexico, and how they had brought to peace some pueblos of that Province. After Cortés had thoroughly understood, he honoured them all by addressing each, and confirming them in their offices as they then held them, except that he made his cousin Sayavedra, for so he was called, Captain General of those provinces, which met with their approval. Cortés then sent to summon the people of all the neighbouring pueblos, and when they heard the news that it was the Captain Malinche, for so they called him, and they knew that he had conquered Mexico, they came promptly at his summons and brought presents of food. As soon as the caciques of the four most important pueblos were assembled, Cortés spoke to them through Doña Marina and told them things touching our holy faith, and that we were all vassals of a great Emperor named Don Carlos of Austria, who had many great lords as his vassals and had sent us to these parts to do away with sodomy.

and robberies and idolatry, and to prohibit the eating of human flesh and sacrifices, and they should not rob or make war on one another, but be brothers and treat each other as such.* We also came in order that they should give their fealty to so great a King and Lord as he had told them we possessed, and pay tribute by service and from what they might possess, as all of us vassals did, and he told them many other things which Doña Marina knew well how to express, and that those who would not come and submit themselves to the rule of His Majesty he would punish. The two Franciscan friars whom Cortés had brought with him preached very good and holy things to them, which were explained to them by two Mexican Indians who knew the Spanish language, and other interpreters of that language. Moreover Cortés told them that in all matters he would take care that justice was done to them, for that was the order of our Lord and King. Because he used many other arguments and the Caciques understood them very clearly, they replied that they gave themselves as vassals to His Majesty and would do what Cortés ordered them. He at once told them to bring provisions to that town, and he also ordered many Indians to come and bring their axes and fell a wood which stood in the town, so that one could see the sea and harbour from that point. He also ordered them to go in canoes and summon three or four pueblos built upon some islands called the Guanages, which at that time were inhabited, and to bring fish which was plentiful there, and this they did, and within five days the people from the pueblos on the islands arrived, and all brought presents of fish and fowls, and Cortés ordered them to be given some sows and a boar which were found at Trujillo, and some of those which were brought from Mexico so as to raise a breed of them, for a Spaniard told him that it was a good

country for them to increase in, if they were let loose on the island without the necessity of guarding them. It turned out as he said, and within two years there were many pigs and they went out hunting them.

Let us leave this, for it does not touch our story, and I must not grow long-winded telling old tales, and I will relate that so many Indians came to fell the wood in the town as Cortés ordered them, that in two days one got a clear view of the sea, and they built fifteen houses and one very good one for Cortés. When this was done, Cortés enquired which pueblos and lands were rebellious and refused to make peace, and certain Caciques of a pueblo called Papayeca, which was the capital of other pueblos and at that time a large town (although it has now very few or hardly any inhabitants), gave Cortés a memorandum of many pueblos which would not make peace; they were situated on great mountain ranges and had their defences ready. Cortés promptly sent to summon Captain Sayavedra and the soldiers that it seemed to him necessary for him to take, and, with the eight men of Coatzacoalcos, Sayavedra set out on his march and arrived at the pueblos which usually were warlike, but most of them now met them peaceably except three pueblos which refused to come in. Cortés was so greatly feared by the natives and so celebrated that as far as the pueblos of Olancho, where the mines are which were afterwards discovered, he was feared and revered, and they called him throughout those provinces 'El Capitan hue hue de Marina,' and what they meant to say was 'the old Captain who brought Doña Marina.'

Let us leave Sayavedra who remained near the pueblos which declined to give in—I think they were called the Acaltecas—and return to Cortés who was at Trujillo. The Franciscan friars had already fallen ill, as well as his cousin named Avalos, and the licentiate Pero López and the

mayordomo Carranza and the steward Guinea, and one Juan Flamenco and many other soldiers, whom Cortés had brought with him as well as some of those he found in Trujillo, and even Anton de Carmona who brought the ship with the supplies ; so he decided to send them to the Island of Cuba, to Havana or Santo Domingo, if the weather at sea should appear good enough. For this purpose he gave them a ship well repaired and calked, and the best crew he could find, and he wrote to the Royal Audiencia of Santo Domingo and to the Geronimite Friars and to Havana, giving an account of how he had set out from Mexico in search of Cristóbal de Olid, and how he left his authority to His Majesty's officials, and about the laborious march he had undertaken ; and how Cristóbal de Olid had imprisoned a certain Captain named Francisco de las Casas, whom Cortés had sent to seize the fleet of the same Cristóbal de Olid, who had also taken prisoner one Gil Gonzáles de Ávila who was governor of the Golfo Dulce ; and that when Cristóbal de Olid held them prisoners the two Captains stabbed Cristóbal de Olid, and after they had taken him prisoner they passed judgment on him and beheaded him. That at the present time he [Cortés] was settling the country and the pueblos subject to that town of Trujillo, which was a country rich in mines, and that they should send him the soldiers who had no means of subsistence in the Island of Santa Domingo. In order to give credence [to what he had stated] about there being gold, he sent many jewels and pieces from what he brought from Mexico amongst his equipage and table service, and even from his sideboard. He sent his cousin named Avalos as Captain of that ship, and ordered him on his way to capture twenty-five soldiers who had been left by a Captain who, as he was informed, went about attacking Indians on the small Islands and the neighbourhood of Cozumel.

•

After leaving the Port of Honduras, for so it is sometimes called, they passed, sometimes with fair wind and sometimes with foul, beyond the Cape of San Anton, which is near the range called the Sierra of Guaniguanico, sixty or seventy leagues distant from Havana, and then in a tempest the ship went ashore and the friars were drowned, but the Captain Avalos and many of the soldiers saved themselves in a boat and on boards, and with great hardship reached the Havana. From there the report spread flying all over the Island of Cuba that Cortés and all of us were alive, and a few days later the news reached Santo Domingo, for the licentiate Pedro López the doctor, who was on his way there and had escaped on a board, wrote to the Royal Audiencia of Santo Domingo, in the name of Cortés, all that had happened and how he [Cortés] was settled at Trujillo, and had need of supplies and wine and horses, and that to purchase these he was bringing much gold, but it had been lost in the sea, in the way I have already related.

When that news was known everyone rejoiced, for already there was a widespread report, and they thought it was true, that Cortés and all of us his companions were dead, as they had heard that news from a vessel which had come from New Spain.

When it was known in Santo Domingo that Cortés was stationary, settling the provinces as I have stated, the judges [of the Audiencia] and the merchants began to lade two old ships with horses and foals, shirts, caps and ordinary metal ware, and they brought no provisions except one pipe of wine, and no fruit, only horses, and the rest rubbish.

While they were preparing the ships to sail, and before they arrived at the port, I wish to say that, while Cortés was at Trujillo, certain Indians came to him from the Islands of the Guanages, eight leagues distant, to make

complaint, and they said that a ship was anchored near their pueblo, and that a boat-load of Spaniards from the ship armed with muskets and crossbows wanted to capture their mazeguales (for so they call their vassals) by force. From what they understood they were robbers, and in this manner they had captured many Indians in past years, and had carried them off as prisoners in another ship like the ship which was now at anchor, and they [begged him] to send and give them protection against it.

As soon as Cortés knew it he promptly ordered a launch to be armed with the best cannon they possessed, and [manned] by twenty soldiers under a good Captain, and he commanded them to capture the ship the Indians spoke of without fail, and bring it captive with all the Spaniards who were in it, for they were robbers of the vassals of His Majesty. He ordered the Indians to arm their canoes with darts and arrows and go in company with the launch, and help it to seize those men, and for this he gave authority to the Captain, who sailed along with the armed launch and many canoes belonging to the natives of the Islands. No sooner did the people in the ship, which was at anchor, see them sailing along, than they did not waste time in waiting, but made sail and went fleeing, for they knew quite well that they were coming to attack them, and the launch could not overtake them. It was afterwards found out that it was a Bachelor Moreno, whom the Royal Audiencia of Santo Domingo had sent on a certain commission to Nombre de Dios, and it seems that he swerved from his course, or came with the definite purpose of stealing Indians from the Guanages.¹

Let us return to Cortés, who remained in that province bringing it to peace, and turn back to relate what happened to Sandoval in Naco.

¹ Blotted out in the original: "and as I do not know it very well I will omit it."

CHAPTER CLXXXIV.

How Captain Gonzalo de Sandoval, who was at Naco, captured forty Spanish soldiers and their Captain, who had come from the province of Nicaragua, and did much damage and robbed the Indians of the pueblos through which they passed.

WHILE Sandoval was at the pueblo of Naco pacifying nearly all the pueblos of that neighbourhood, there came before him four Caciques of the pueblos named Quespan and Talchinalchapa, who said that in their pueblos there were many Spaniards of the same kind as those who were with him, with arms and horses, and that they seized their property and their daughters and wives and put them in iron chains. At this Sandoval was very indignant and asked how far off they were, and they replied that we could arrive there early in one day. Sandoval promptly ordered us who were to go with him to get ready as well as we could with our arms and horses, our crossbows and muskets, and we were seventy men who went with him. When we arrived at the pueblos where they were, we found them very tranquil, without a suspicion that we were about to capture them, and as soon as they saw us coming in that manner they were aroused and grasped their arms, but we quickly seized the Captain and many of the others before blood was shed on one side or the other. Sandoval asked them in rather bitter words whether they thought it right to go about robbing the vassals of His Majesty, and if that was a proper sort of conquest and pacification, bringing Indian men and women in chains and collars? Then he had them [the chains] taken off and gave the women to the Cacique of that pueblo and ordered the others to go back to their own country which was near by.

When that was done he ordered the Captain who had come there, who was named Pedro de Garro, and his soldiers, to be arrested and to accompany us at once to the pueblo of Naco, whither we marched them, and they brought many Indian women from Nicaragua, some of them handsome, and Indian women's servants whom they kept to wait on them, and most of them had horses with them. As we were so battered and ragged from the past journeys and had no Indian women to make bread for us, or only very few, they looked like counts in comparison with our poverty.

When we arrived with them at Naco, Sandoval gave them lodgings in a convenient place, for there were among them some hidalgos and persons of quality. When they had rested a day, their Captain Garro, seeing that we belonged to the company of Cortés who was so celebrated, became great friends with Sandoval and all of us, and they took pleasure in our company.

I wish to state how and in what manner and for what reason that Captain and those soldiers had come; it was in the way I will relate :—

It seems that Pedrarias de Ávila, who was Governor of Tierra Firme at that time, sent a Captain named Francisco Hernández, a man of great importance among them, to conquer and pacify the country of Nicaragua, and to explore other lands, and he gave him a company of soldiers, both horsemen and crossbowmen, and he [Francisco Hernández] arrived at the provinces of Nicaragua and Leon, for so they were called, and pacified and settled them; thus he was prosperous, had command of many soldiers, and was out of reach of Pedrarias de Ávila.

Then he consulted certain advisers, among them, as I understand, a certain Bachelor Moreno, of whom I have already spoken as having been sent by the Royal

Audiencia of Santo Domingo and the Geronimite Friars, who govern the islands, to Tierra Firme because of a certain lawsuit which, if my memory serves me, was about the death of Balboa the son-in-law of Pedro Arias, who beheaded him after he had married him to his daughter Doña Ysabel Arias de Peñalosa, for so she was called. This Bachelor Moreno said to Captain Francisco Hernández that as soon as he conquered any country he should appeal to our King and Lord to make him Governor of it, as that would not be treason, for it was contrary to justice for Pedrarias to behead his son-in-law Balboa, because Balboa had first sent his proctor to His Majesty asking to be made Adelantado.

Under the influence of these speeches of the Bachelor Moreno, Francisco Hernández sent his Captain Pedro de Garro to search for a port on the North coast, so that he could inform His Majesty about the provinces which he had pacified and settled, in order that he should grant him the favour of being the governor of them, as they were widely separated from the Government of Pedro Arias.

Pedro de Garro was captured while employed on that mission, as I have already stated, and when Sandoval understood the object of his coming he conversed very secretly with Garro, and orders were given that we should inform Cortés, who was at Trujillo, about it, for Sandoval felt certain that Cortés would help him so that Francisco Hernández should remain as Governor of Nicaragua.

When this had been arranged, Sandoval and Garro sent ten men, five of ours and the other five soldiers of Garro's company, to go along the coast to Trujillo with the letters, for, as I have stated in the chapter that treats of it, Cortés was at that time stationed there. They also took with them more than twenty Nicaraguan Indians, whom Garro had brought, to help them to cross the rivers.

When they went on their way they were not able to cross the Rio Pichin or another called the Rio de Balahama, for they were in flood, and at the end of fifteen days the soldiers returned to Naco without having accomplished anything they were ordered to do, at which Sandoval was so much incensed that he reviled the commander who went in charge of them. Then without delay he ordered Captain Luis Marin to go overland with ten soldiers, five of them Garro's men and the others our own, and I was one of them.

We all went on foot and passed through many hostile pueblos, and if I were to describe at length the great hardships and the fights with warlike Indians that we went through and the rivers and bays we crossed swimming or on rafts, or the hunger we some days endured, I should not quickly finish. Other notable things I have to speak of, such as how on one day we crossed three rapid rivers on rafts and by swimming, and when we reached the coast there were many creeks where there were alligators, and we were two days in crossing on rafts a river called Xagua which is ten leagues from Triunfo de la Cruz, because it was running so swiftly, and there we found skulls and bones of seven horses which had died of the poison grass they had grazed on, and they had belonged to the followers of Cristóbal de Olid.

Thence we went to Triunfo de la Cruz and found some wrecked ships on their beam ends. Thence we marched in four days to a pueblo named Quemera, and many hostile Indians came out against us with long and heavy lances and shields, and they use them [the lances] with the right hand over the left arm and make play with them in the way we fight with pikes, and they came on to fight hand to hand. Owing to the crossbows we carried and our sword thrusts, they gave way to us,

and we went on ahead, but they wounded two of our soldiers there.

These Indians who, as I have related, came out to attack us, did not believe that we belonged to the party of Cortés, but to other Captains who went about robbing the Indians.

Let us stop talking about past hardships and I will state that after two more days on the road we reached Trujillo. Before entering the town, about the hour of Vespers, we observed five horsemen, who were Cortés and other gentlemen on horseback who had gone for a ride along the shore, and when they saw us from afar off, they did not know what new thing it could be. When Cortés recognised us he dismounted from his horse and with tears in his eyes came to embrace us and we him, and he said to us, "Oh! my brothers and comrades, how I longed to see you and know how you were." He was thin and we were grieved to see it, for, as we knew, he had been at the point of death from fever and the melancholy which held him, for still at that time he knew neither good or bad news from Mexico. Other persons said that he was still so near death that they had already prepared for him a cowl of [the order of] Señor San Francisco for him to be buried in. Then he went with us all on foot to the town and found us lodgings and we supped with him, and he was so badly off that there was not even enough cassava for us to eat our fill. When we had made our report of why we had come, and he had read the letters about the affair of Francisco Hernández, begging for help, he said that he would do all he was able for him. At the time we arrived at Trujillo, three days had passed since the arrival of the two small vessels with the merchandise which I have before mentioned was sent from Santo Domingo, which consisted of horses and foals and mules and old

arms, and some shirts and red caps and things of little value, and they only brought one pipe of wine and nothing more that was useful, yet those vessels had no sooner come than we all of us got into debt buying gew-gaws and foals.

While we were with Cortés telling him about the hardships of our journey, they saw a sailing ship coming from the high seas, and it arrived in port having come from the Havana sent by the Licentiate Zuazo, the same licentiate whom Cortés had left in Mexico as Chief Alcalde; he sent a few provisions for Cortés and a letter which now follows, and if I do not repeat the exact terms which it contained at least I give the substance of it.

CHAPTER CLXXXV.

How the Licentiate Zuazo sent a letter to Cortés from the Havana, and what was contained in it I will now relate.

WHEN the ship I have mentioned had come into port, and the gentleman who was her Captain had come ashore, he went to Cortés to kiss hands, and gave him a letter from the Licentiate Zuazo whom he had left in Mexico as Chief Alcalde.

As soon as Cortés had read the letter he became so miserable that he shut himself in his chamber and began to sob, and he did not come out again until the next morning, which was Saturday, and he ordered Mass of Our Lady to be said early in the morning. After Mass had been said, he begged us to listen to him and we should hear news from New Spain, how a report had been spread that we were all dead, and how they had seized our property and sold it at auction, and taken away our Indians and divided them among other

Spaniards who did not deserve them. Then he read the letter from the beginning, and the first item in it was the news which came from Castile from his father Martin Cortés and from Ordas, [stating] how the Accountant Albornoz had gone against him [Cortés] in the letters he wrote to His Majesty and to the Bishop of Burgos and to the Royal Audiencia, and what His Majesty had ordered to be done about it, [namely] to send the Admiral¹ with . . . men, as I have stated in the chapter that treats of it; and how the Duke de Bejar had become surety and pledged his fortune and head for Cortés and for us, that we were very loyal servants of His Majesty, and other things which I have already mentioned in the chapter which tells about it; and how they had allotted the conquest of the Rio de Palmas to the Captain Narvaez, and had given to one Nuño de Guzman the Government of Panuco, and that the Bishop of Burgos was dead.

About affairs in New Spain he said that as Cortés, when at Coatzacoalcos, had given authority and decrees to the Factor Gonzalo de Salazar and to Pedro Almírez Chirinos to be governors of Mexico, if they should see that the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada and the Accountant Albornoz were not governing well, as soon as they, the Factor and Veedor, arrived in Mexico with their powers, they set about making themselves great friends of the said Licentiate Zuazo, who was chief Alcalde, and of Rodrigo de Paz, who was chief Alguacil, and of Andrés de Tápia and Jorge de Alvarado and most of the Conquerors of Mexico. Then, as soon as the Factor saw that he had so many friends in his party, he said that the Factor and Veedor must be governors and not the Treasurer and Accountant, and about this there were many dis-

¹ Admiral of Santo Domingo, see vol. iv, p. 364. e

turbances and deaths of men, some because they favoured the Factor and Veedor, and others because they were friends of the Treasurer and Accountant. However it ended in the office of Governors remaining with the Factor and Veedor, who imprisoned their opponents the Treasurer and Accountant and many of their supporters. Every day there were woundings and revolts, and the Indians who were unemployed they gave to their friends although they did not deserve them. And they did not allow the Licentiate Zuazo himself to administer justice, and had imprisoned Rodrigo de Paz because he had taken his part, and this same Licentiate Zuazo conciliated and reconciled both the Factor and the Treasurer and Accountant as well as Rodrigo de Paz, and they remained in harmony for eight days.

At this time there rose in revolt [the people of] certain provinces named the Zapotecs and Mijes, and a pueblo and stronghold where there was a great rock which was called Coatlan, and they sent to it many soldiers who had lately come from Castile, and others who were not Conquistadores, and sent as their Captain the Veedor Chirinos, and expended many golden pesos from His Majesty's property and from what was in his royal Treasury, and they took such great supplies to the camp where they were stationed that all was riot and card playing, and the Indians from the rock sallied forth in the night and fell upon the camp of the Veedor and killed some of his soldiers and wounded many others. For this reason the Factor despatched on the same service a Captain who was one of the followers of Cortés, named Andrés de Monjaraz, to be in company with the Veedor, for this Monjaraz had become great friends with the Factor, but at that time Monjaraz was crippled with boils, and was not fit to do any good whatever, and the Indians were very victorious and Mexico was ready for revolt any day.

The Factor endeavoured by every means to send gold to Castile to His Majesty, and to the chief Knight Commander of Leon, Don Francisco de los Cobos, for at that time he gave out that Cortés and all of us had been killed at the hands of the Indians at a pueblo named Xicalango.

At that time one Diego de Ordas, often named by me, had returned from Castile, he was the man whom Cortés had sent as Solicitor from New Spain, and what he solicited was for himself a commandery [of the order] of Señor Santiago, which he brought by decree from His Majesty, besides Indians and a coat of arms representing the volcano which is near Huexotzingo. When he arrived in Mexico, Diego de Ordas wished to go and search for Cortés, and this was because he saw the revolts and discords, and because he became a great friend of the Factor. He went by sea in a large ship and a launch to find out whether Cortés were alive or dead, and coasted along until he reached a port called Xicalango, where Simon de Cuenca and Captain Francisco de Medina and the Spaniards who were with him had been killed, as I have related at length in the chapter which treats of it. When Ordas heard this news he returned to New Spain without disembarking, and on landing he wrote to the Factor by some passengers, that he was certain that Cortés was dead. As soon as Ordas had published this news, he promptly crossed over to the Island of Cuba to purchase calves and mares, in the same vessel in which he had gone in search of Cortés.

As soon as the Factor saw the letter from Ordas, he went about showing it to people in Mexico, and the next day he put on mourning and had a tomb and monument placed in the principal church of Mexico, and paid honour to Cortés. Then he had himself proclaimed with trumpets and drums as Governor and Captain General of

New Spain, and ordered all the women whose husbands had died [in the company of Cortés] to pray for their souls and to marry again. He even sent this message to Coatzacoalcos and to other towns, and because the wife of one Alonzo Valiente, named Juana de Mansilla, did not wish to marry and said that her husband and Cortés and all of us were alive; and that we old Conquistadores were not of such poor courage as those who were at the Rock of Coatlan with the Veedor Chirinos, where the Indians attacked them, and not they the Indians; and that she had trust in God that she would soon see her husband Alonzo Valiente and Cortés and all the rest of the Conquistadores returning to Mexico; and that she did not want to marry; because she spoke these words the Factor ordered her to be whipped through the public streets of Mexico as a witch.

There are always traitors and flatterers in this world, and it was one of these (one whom we held to be an honourable man, and out of respect for his honour I will not name him here) who said to the Factor, in presence of many other persons, that he had been badly scared, for as he was walking one night lately near Tlatelolco, which is the place where the great Idol called Huichilobos used to stand, and where now stands the church of Señor Santiago, he saw in the courtyard the souls of Cortés and Doña Marina and that of Captain Sandoval burning in live flames, and that he was very ill through the fright from it. There also came another man whom I will not name, who was also held in good repute, and told the Factor that some evil things were moving about in the courtyards at Texcoco, and that the Indians said they were the spirits of Doña Marina and Cortés, and these were either all lies and falsehoods only reported to ingratiate themselves with the Factor, or the Factor ordered them to be told.

At that time Francisco de las Casas and Gil Gonzále de Ávila, the Captains so often mentioned by me, who beheaded Cristóbal de Olid, arrived in Mexico. When Las Casas observed those revolutions, and that the Factor was having himself proclaimed as Governor, he said publicly, that it was wrong and such a thing could not be allowed, for Cortés was alive and he certainly believed so, but, that if God should decree otherwise, Pedro de Alvarado was more the man and had better claim to be Governor than the Factor, and that Pedro de Alvarado should be summoned; and his brother Jorge de Alvarado and even the Treasurer and other Mexican settlers wrote to him [Pedro de Alvarado] to come in any case to Mexico with all the soldiers he had, and they would endeavour to give him the Government until they knew whether Cortés was alive, and they could send and inform His Majesty [and hear] if he were pleased to give other commands.

When Pedro de Alvarado was already on his way to Mexico on account of these letters, he grew frightened of the Factor, on account of the threats which he received from the Factor while he was on his journey [to the effect] that he would kill him, for he knew that they had hanged Rodrigo de Pas and imprisoned the Licentiate Zuazo. At that time the Factor had collected all the gold he could procure, to make it a pretext for a message to His Majesty, and to send a friend of his named Peña with it and his secret despatches. Francisco de las Casas and the Licentiate Zuazo and Rodrigo de Paz objected to this and so did the Treasurer and Accountant, until it should be known for certain whether Cortés were alive, and that he should not spread the report that he was dead, as they were not sure of it, and that if he wished to send gold to His Majesty from his Royal Fifths that was all right, but that it should be done jointly with the

countenance and consent of the Treasurer and Accountant, and not solely in his own name. Because he had already placed it on board the ships and they were ready to sail with it, Las Casas went with orders from the Chief Alcalde Zuazo (and with the approval of Rodrigo de Paz and the other officials of His Majesty's Treasury and the Conquistadores) to detain the ship until others should write to our King and Lord about the condition of New Spain, for it appeared that the Factor did not allow of other persons writing, but that only his own letters [should be sent].

When the Factor saw that Las Casas and the Licentiate Zuazo were no friends of his but were restraining him, he promptly ordered them to be arrested, and brought a suit against Francisco de las Casas and against Gil Gonzáles de Ávila for the death of Cristóbal de Olid, and sentenced them to be beheaded, and wished to carry out the sentence at once, although they appealed to His Majesty, but at their earnest entreaty he allowed the appeal and sent them as prisoners to Castile with the suits that he brought against them.

No sooner was this done than he turned against Zuazo himself, unjustly and faithlessly captured him, carried him on a cargo mule to the Port of Vera Cruz, and embarked him for the Island of Cuba, alleging as reason that he must make his report of the time he was Judge in the Island. He cast Rodrigo de Paz into prison and demanded from him the gold and silver which belonged to Cortés, because as his mayor-domo he knew where it was kept, saying that he had hidden it, because he [the Factor] wished to send it to His Majesty, for it was property which Cortés had wrongfully seized from His Majesty. Because he [Rodrigo de Paz] would not give it up, (indeed it was clear that he had not got it) for this reason he tortured him and burned his feet and

even part of his legs with oil and fire, and he was so thin and ill from imprisonment that he was nearly dying. Not content with torturing him, the Factor, knowing that if he left him alive he would go and complain about him to His Majesty, ordered him to be hanged as a rebel and a robber, and he ordered nearly all the soldiers and settlers in Mexico who were partizans of Cortés to be arrested. Jorge de Alvarado and Andrés de Tápia and most of the partizans of Cortés took refuge in the Monastery of Señor San Francisco, but many others of the Conquistadores went over to the Factor because he gave them good Indians, and they elected to shout with the winning side.

The Factor removed everything from the storehouse of ammunition and arms and ordered it to be placed in his palaces, and he ordered the cannon which were in the fortress and arsenal to be placed in front of his houses, and appointed as Captain of Artillery a certain Don Luis de Guzman, a relative of the Duke of Medina Sidonia, and appointed as Captain of his Guard one Archiaga or Artiaga (I cannot now remember his name), and Gínes Nórtes and one Pedro Gonzáles Sabiote and other soldiers were to guard his person.

Moreover in the letter which Zuazo wrote he said that he commanded Cortés to return at once and give security to Mexico, for in addition to all these evils and scandals there were other greater ones, [namely] that the Factor had written to His Majesty that they had found in the equipage of Cortés, hidden away, a false die with which he marked the gold that the Indians brought him secretly, and that he did not pay the "fifth" of it. Zuazo also stated, so that one could see how things were going in Mexico, that a settler from Coatzacoalcos, who came to that city to ask for some Indians (who at that time were unclaimed owing to the

death of another settler from among those who peopled that town,) most secretly asked a woman with whom he lodged, why she had married again, for her husband and all those who went with Cortés were certainly alive, and gave reasons and arguments in support of it. When the Factor knew of it, (and they at once went to him with the gossip) he sent four alguacils for the man who had said it, and carried him manacled to the prison, and he wished to order him to be hanged as a rebel, until the poor settler who was named Gonzalo Hernández gave in, and said that when he saw the woman weeping for her husband, so as to console her, he had said that her husband was not dead, but it was [now] certain we were all dead. Then he [the Factor] promptly gave him the Indians he asked for, and ordered him not to remain any longer in Mexico, and not to say anything else or he would order him to be hanged. Moreover Zuazo said at the end of his letter "this which I here write to your Excellency happened as I have stated, and I left them there and they put me on board ship and brought me in fetters here where I now am."

When Cortés had read this, we were so sorrowful and enraged, both with Cortés who had brought on us so many hardships, as well as with the Factor, that we uttered two thousand curses against one as well as the other, and our hearts beat with rage. Cortés could not keep back his tears, and with this same letter he went at once to shut himself up in his quarters, and did not want us to see him until past midday.

We one and all addressed him and begged him to embark at once in the three ships which were there for us to go to New Spain. He replied very affectionately—"Oh my sons and comrades, I see on one side that bad man the Factor who is very powerful, and I fear that as

soon as he knows that we are at the Port he will inflict other outrages and affronts on us more than he has done already, or he will kill me or hang me or imprison both me and you. I will embark at once, with God's help, with only four or five of your honours, and I must go very secretly and disembark at a port, so that they know nothing about it in Mexico until we enter unobserved into the city. Besides this, Sandoval is in Naco with very few soldiers and has to go through a hostile country, especially in Guatemala which is not peaceful, and it is desirable that you, Señor Luis Marin, with all your companions who came here in search of me should return and join Sandoval and take the road for Mexico."

Let us leave this, for I wish to state that Cortés wrote at once to Captain Francisco Hernández, who was in Nicaragua, who had sent Pedro de Garro, already mentioned by me, to look for a harbour, and he offered to do all that he could for him, and he sent him two mules laden with horse-shoes because he knew that he was in need of them. He also sent him iron mining tools, and rich clothes for him to wear, and four cups and jars of silver from his table service, and some jewels of gold, all of which he entrusted to a gentleman named Fulano de Cabrera, who was one of the five soldiers who went with us in search of Cortés, and this Captain was later on Captain of Benałcazar—a very valiant Captain and a cheerful man personally, a native of Old Castile. He was Quarter-master to Vasco Nuñez de Balboa, and died in the same battle in which the Viceroy died. I must leave old stories, for I wish to state that when I saw that Cortés had to go to New Spain by sea, I went to beg him as a favour in any case to take me in his company, and to remember that throughout all his hardships and wars he had always found me at his side, and I had helped him, and that now the time had come when I

should know whether he had consideration for the services and friendship I had rendered him and for my present supplication. Then he embraced me and said—"If I take you with me, who will go with Sandoval? I pray you, my son, to go with your friend Sandoval, and I pledge my beard I will grant you many favours which I certainly owe you from time back."

In short I profited nothing, for he would not let me go with him. I also wish to state that while we were staying at that town of Trujillo, a gentleman named Rodrigo Mañueco, the steward of Cortés, a courtier, to please and amuse Cortés, who was very mournful and had good reason to be so, made a bet with some other gentlemen that fully armed he would climb up to some houses which the Indians of the province had lately built for Cortés (as I have stated in the chapter which treats of the subject). These houses stood on a rather high hill, and while he was climbing up fully armed he burst [a blood vessel] while ascending the cliff and died from it.

Also when certain gentlemen, among those whom Cortés found in that town, saw that he did not give them offices as they desired, they began to form factions, and Cortés quieted them by saying that he would take them with him to Mexico, and that there he would give them honourable appointments.

Let us leave this now, and I will relate what more Cortés did, which was that he ordered Diego de Godoy, whom he had appointed Captain at Puerto de Caballos, and certain settlers who were ill and could not endure the fleas and mosquitos, and had nothing with which to support themselves and had all these reasons for misery, to go to Naco where there was good land. He ordered us to go with Captain Luis Marin on the road to Mexico, and that, if there were opportunity, we were to go to see the province of Nicaragua, so as to claim its government

from His Majesty, for even of that Cortés was covetous, to take the government in time to come if he should reach port in Mexico.

After Cortés had embraced us and we him, we left him on board, and he set sail for Mexico and we set out for Naco, very cheerful at the thought that we were marching on the road to Mexico, and, with great hardship from want of food, we arrived at Naco, and Sandoval was as pleased as we were when we arrived.

Pedro de Gallo and all his soldiers had already taken leave of Sandoval and gone off very cheerfully to Nicaragua to make his report to Captain Francisco Hernández of what he had arranged with Sandoval. Then the next day after our arrival at Naco we left it and set out on the road for Mexico, and the soldiers of the company of Garro, who had gone with us to Trujillo, went on their way to Nicaragua with the presents and letters which Cortés was sending to Francisco Hernández.

I will stop talking about our march, and will relate what happened about that present to Francisco Hernández with the governor Pedro Arias de Ávila.

CHAPTER CLXXXVI.

How certain friends of Pedrarias de Ávila went post haste from Nicaragua to inform him that Francisco Hernández, whom he had sent as Captain to Nicaragua, was in correspondence by letter with Cortés, and had revolted with the provinces, and what Pedrarias did about it.

As a soldier named Fulano Garavito and a comrade, and another called Zamorano, who were intimate friends of Pedrarias de Ávila, the Governor of Tierra Firme, observed that Cortés had sent presents to Francisco

Hernández and understood that Pedro de Garro and other soldiers conversed in secret with Francisco Hernández, they began to suspect that he wished to give those provinces and lands to Cortés. Moreover Garavito was an enemy of Cortés, for, when they were youths in the Island of Santo Domingo, Cortés had stabbed him over a love affair with some woman. When Pedrarias de Ávila got to know this by letters and messengers, he came in a hurry with a great company of soldiers both horse and foot, and seized Francisco Hernández. Pedro de Garro, when he got to know that Pedrarias was coming in a great rage against him, promptly took to flight and came with us. If Francisco Hernández had desired to come he could have done so, but he did not wish [to come], believing that Pedrarias would treat him differently, as they had been great friends. After Pedrarias had brought Francisco Hernández to trial and found that he had rebelled, he sentenced and beheaded him in the same town which he had settled, and so ended the coming of Garro and the presents of Cortés, and we will leave them there and I will relate how Cortés returned to the port of Trujillo in a storm.

CHAPTER CLXXXVII.

How Cortés, going by sea in the direction of Mexico, met with a hurricane, and twice turned back to the port of Trujillo, and what happened to him there.

As I have stated in the last chapter, Cortés embarked at Trujillo and it seems that he encountered tempests at sea, foul winds on some occasions, and on another the foremast was carried away, and he gave orders to run to Trujillo for shelter. As he was enfeebled, out of health, and worn out by the sea, and very uneasy about

going to New Spain for fear lest the Factor should seize him, it seemed to him that it was not wise to go to Mexico at that season, so he disembarked at Trujillo and ordered masses to be said to the Holy Ghost, and processions and prayers offered to our Lord God and to our Lady the Virgin Mary to guide him as to what might most tend towards their holy service, and it appears that the Holy Spirit enlightened him not to undertake that journey then, but to conquer and settle those lands. Then without any delay and at breakneck speed he sent three messengers after us with his letters as we were on our march, imploring us not to proceed further ahead, but to conquer and settle the country, for his good guardian Angel had inspired it and enlightened his mind, and he thought of acting accordingly.

When we saw the letter and that his orders were definite, we could not stand it, and we hurled a thousand curses at him, wishing him ill luck in anything he put his hand to, and that he might be ruined as he had ruined us. In addition to this we said, one and all, to Captain Sandoval, that if Cortés wanted to settle, he might keep those he wished, for he had brought us defeat and loss enough, and we vowed not to wait for him any longer but to go to the lands in Mexico which we had gained. Sandoval also was of our opinion, and what he settled with us was that we should write to Cortés post haste by the same messengers as brought the letters, informing him of our determination.

A few days later he received our letters signed by all of us, and the answer he made us was, to make grand promises to those who might wish to stay and settle in that country, and the end of the letter contained a short threat that if we refused to obey his orders there were [plenty of] soldiers in Castile and elsewhere. When we all saw that reply we wished to continue our march to

Mexico and cause him to give up his fears. As soon as Sandoval observed this he implored us, very affectionately and with great entreaty, to wait some days while he personally went to make Cortés embark. In answer to his letter we wrote to Cortés that he must have compassion, and more consideration than he had shown in having brought us to this pass, and it was his fault that they had robbed us and sold our estates and taken our Indians, and those who were with us who were married said that they had no news of wife and children, and we prayed him to embark promptly and proceed on his way to Mexico. As for what he said about there being soldiers in Castile and everywhere else, he knew also that there were Governors and Captains stationed in Mexico, and wherever we arrived they would give us Indians.

Then Sandoval set out and took in his company one Pedro Saucedo, the flat-nosed, and a farrier named Francisco Donayre, and he took with him his good horse called Motilla, and he swore that he would make Cortés embark and go to Mexico. I have here called to mind this matter of the horse Motilla; he was a fine galloper and easily turned, a rather dark chestnut and the best looking all round that could be found in New Spain. He was so good that His Majesty had heard of him, and Sandoval even wished to send him as a present. Let us cease talking about the horse Motilla and go on to say that Sandoval wished to send it to His Majesty, and begged my horse of me, which was a very good one both for sport and racing as well as a good roadster, and this horse I had bought for six hundred pesos. It used to belong to one Avalos the brother of Sayavedra. The other horse that I brought, which had cost me at that time over six hundred pesos, was killed on an expedition to a pueblo named Zulaco. Sandoval gave me one of his in exchange for the one I gave him, and this one

that he gave me did not last two months, and it was killed in another war, and there remained to me only a very miserable colt which I had bought from the merchants who came to Trujillo, as I have related before in the chapter that treats of it. Let us go back to my story and stop talking of damage done to horses and of my bad luck. Before Sandoval left us he addressed us all with much affection, and left Luis Marin as Captain, and we went at once to some pueblos called Maniani and thence to another pueblo named Acalteca, where at that time there were many houses, where we were to await the reply from Cortés. Sandoval reached Trujillo in a few days, and Cortés was delighted to see him, and when he saw what we had written to him, he did not know whom he could ask for advice, for he had already ordered his cousin Sayavedra who was a Captain to go with all the soldiers to pacify the pueblos that were at war, and notwithstanding all the speeches and solicitations that Sandoval addressed to Cortés, as well as those of Pedro Saucedo the flat-nosed, to induce him to go to New Spain, he never would embark; and what happened I will go on to relate.

CHAPTER CLXXXVIII.

How Cortés sent a Ship to New Spain, with a follower of his named Martin de Orantes as Captain, with letters and decrees appointing Francisco de las Casas and Pedro de Alvarado as Governors if they were there, and if not then Alonzo de Estrada and Albornoz.

NOW as Gonzalo de Sandoval could not induce Cortés to embark, for he was still intent on conquering and settling that country, which at this time was thickly peopled and said to contain gold mines, it was settled that without further delay he should send by ship to

Mexico one of his followers named Martin Dorantes,¹ an active man whom he could trust in any business of importance, and he went as Captain of the ship and took with him decrees appointing Pedro de Alvarado and Francisco de las Casas (if they had returned to Mexico) Governors of New Spain, until Cortés [himself] arrived, and if they were not in Mexico, the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada and the Accountant Albornoç should be Governors, in the same way as he had given them authority before, and he revoked the powers given to the Factor and the Veedor. He wrote very amiably to the Treasurer and also to Albornoç, although he knew of the hostile letters he [the latter] had written to His Majesty against Cortés. He also wrote to all his friends the Conquistadores, and to the monasteries of San Francisco and the Friars. He ordered Martin Dorantes to go and disembark at a bay between Panuco and Vera Cruz, and he also impressed this on the pilot and sailors, and moreover he paid them well not to put anyone ashore except Martin Dorantes, and as soon as they had put him ashore to up anchor, make sail, and go to Panuco. He had given them the best of the three vessels which there were, and had provisioned it, and after having heard Mass they set sail, and it pleased our Lord to give them such good weather that in a few days they reached New Spain and went directly to the bay near Panuco which Martin Dorantes knew very well.

As soon as he had landed and given many thanks to God for it, Martin Dorantes disguised himself so that he should not be known, taking off his clothes and donning others like those of a farmer, for so Cortés had instructed him, and he had even carried these clothes ready with him from Trujillo. With all the letters and

¹ Written both Dorantes and de Orantes.

decrees well hidden and secured to his body so that they should not appear bulky, he set out swiftly on his journey afoot, for he was an active pedestrian. When he reached Indian pueblos where there were Spaniards, he kept among the Indians so as not to hold converse, nor to be asked questions, and when he was obliged to treat with Spaniards, they could not recognise him, for it was two years and three months since we left Mexico and his beard had grown. When someone asked him his name, or where he was going or whence he had come, in case he could not avoid answering them, he said he was called Juan de Flechilla. So four days after leaving the Ship he entered Mexico by night and went to the Monastery of Señor San Francisco, where he found many refugees, and among them Jorge de Alvarado, Andrés de Tápia, Juan Nuñez de Mercado, Pedro Moreno Medrano and many other Conquistadores and friends of Cortés. When they beheld Orantes and learned that Cortés was alive and saw his letters, one and all they could not contain their delight, but danced and jumped. Then the Franciscan Friars, and among them Fray Toribio Motolinia and Fray Diego de Altamirano, all jumped for joy and gave thanks to God for it. Then without further delay they closed all the gates of the Monastery so that no traitor, and there were many of them, should get out to take a message or talk about it [the news], and at midnight they informed the Treasurer and the Accountant and other friends of Cortés, and as soon as they heard the news they came to San Francisco, without making any noise, and examined the powers which Cortés had sent them, and decided before anything else to go and seize the Factor. They spent all the night going about warning friends and preparing arms so as to seize him [the Factor] on the following morning, for at that time the Veedor was on the hill of Coatlan.

As soon as it was dawn the Treasurer and all the partizans of Cortés set out, and Martin de Orantés went with them, so that he might be recognized, and they went to the houses of the Factor crying in the streets, "Long live the King our Lord and Hernando Cortés in his royal name, for he is alive and is now coming to the city, I am his servant Orantes." When the settlers heard that noise so early in the morning, and heard cries of "Viva el Rey," all ran to arms as they were bound to do, thinking that there was something afoot in which they could support the cause of His Majesty, and when they heard that Cortés was alive and beheld Orantes they were delighted. Many of the settlers in Mexico joined the Treasurer in order to assist him, for, as it appears, the Accountant was not very enthusiastic, and behaved trickishly until Alonzo de Estrada reproved him, and over this some very angry words passed between them, because they did not please the Accountant. Going on to the Factor's houses they found him very well prepared for them, for he soon knew all about it as the Accountant himself had given him warning how they were coming to arrest him, so he ordered his cannon to be primed in front of his house, and the Captain of the artillery was Don Luis de Guzman, a cousin of the Duke of Medina Sidonia, and he had his Captains ready with many soldiers (and these Captains were named Archilaga and Gínes Nórtes and Pedro González Sobiote). When the Treasurer and Jorge de Alvarado and Andrés de Tápia and all the other Conquistadores arrived with the Accountant (although he came slowly and with an ill will) and all his people shouting for the King and Hernando Cortés in his royal name, they began to find their way in, some over the flat roofs, others by the doors of the chambers and by two other entrances. All those who were on

the side of the Factor lost heart because the Captain of the Artillery, Don Luis de Guzman, leaned towards one side and the Gunners to the other, and [the latter] abandoned the cannon. Then the Captain Archilaga made haste to hide himself, and Gínes Nórtes slipped away and went out by some corridors down below, and only Pedro Gonzáles and four of his servants remained with the Factor.

When he saw himself thus deserted the Factor himself seized a brand with which to fire the cannon, but they fell upon him so quickly that he could do no more, and there they arrested him and placed guards over him until they made a prison cage of stout beams and placed him within it, and there they fed him, and thus ended the affair of his Government. Then they promptly sent messengers to all the towns of New Spain reporting all that had happened.

This being the state of affairs some persons were pleased at it, and those to whom the Factor had given Indians and offices were sorry for it. The news reached the hill of Coatlan and Oaxaca where the Veedor was stationed. When the Veedor and his friends heard it, his sorrow and concern was so great that he fell ill and transferred the office of Captain to Andrés de Monjaraz, often mentioned by me, who was ill from boils, and came post haste to the city of Texcoco and took refuge in the Monastery of Señor San Francisco. When the Treasurer and Accountant, who were now the Governors, knew about it, they sent to arrest him in the Monastery, for already they had sent Alguacils and soldiers with orders to arrest him wherever he might be found, and also to deprive him of his office as Captain. When they knew that he was in Texcoco they removed him from the Monastery and brought him to Mexico and placed him in another cage near the Factor. Then they sent mes-

sengers to Guatemala post haste to inform Pedro de Alvarado of the imprisonment of the Factor and Veedor, and, as Cortés was in Trujillo, not far away from his [Alvarado's] conquests, he was to go quickly in search of him and make him come to Mexico, and they gave him letters and reports of all that I have stated and noted above, exactly in the way that it happened.

In addition to this the first thing the Treasurer did was to order honour to be paid to Juana de Manzilla, the wife of Alonzo Valiente, whom the Factor had ordered to be flogged as a witch. It was done in this way: he ordered all the Caballeros in Mexico to parade on horseback, and he, the Treasurer, himself carried her on the croup of his horse through the streets of Mexico, and they said that like a Roman Matron she did what she had done, and the insult which the Factor had put on her turned to her honour, and with much rejoicing they called her from thenceforward La Señora Doña Juana de Manzilla, and said that she was worthy of much praise. Moreover the Factor had not been able to compel her to marry or to say otherwise than what she had first said, that her husband and Cortés and all of us were alive. And for that honor of "Don" which they gave her, Gonzalo de Ocampo, who made the foul-mouthed lampoons, said that she extracted "Don" from her back like a nose [the length] of an arm.¹

Let us leave off here, and I will relate what more happened.

¹ This is a play on the word "Don" = a title, and don = a gift. Narices de brazo (a nose the length of an arm) = something very great, i.e., she gained something very great, her title of Doña, as compensation for her thrashing.

CHAPTER CLXXXIX.

How the Treasurer and many other gentlemen prayed the Franciscan Friars to send one Fray Diego Altamirano, a relation of Cortés, in a ship to Trujillo to make him [Cortés] return, and what happened about it.

THE Treasurer and other gentlemen who were partisans of Cortés saw that it was advisable for Cortés to return at once to New Spain, for factions and parties were already springing up, and the Accountant was not content that the Factor and Veedor should remain prisoners, and above all the Accountant stood in great fear of Cortés, when he should hear of what he [the Accountant] had written about him to His Majesty, as I have already stated in parts of former Chapters which tell about it. So they decided to go and beg the Franciscan Friars to grant leave for Fray Diego Altamirano to go to Trujillo in a ship, which they had ready for him well provisioned and with a good crew, and make Cortés come back, for that Friar was his kinsman and before he had become a Friar had been a soldier, a man of war who understood negotiation, and the Friars approved of it and Fray Diego Altamirano was quite willing to go.

We need not dwell on the voyage of the Friar, who was making his preparations, and I will relate that while the Factor and Veedor were prisoners, the Accountant, as I have repeatedly mentioned, apparently behaved very trickily and with ill will when he saw that the affairs of Cortés were on the mend. As the Factor used to have as friends many men who were brigands and always on the look-out for disputes and revolutions, and were well disposed towards the Factor and Chirinos because they gave them golden pesos and Indians, a number of them agreed to unite, and certain persons of quality and of all

sorts besides decided to release the Factor and Veedor and to kill the Treasurer and the jailors, and it is said that the Accountant knew about it and was delighted at it. In order to carry out their plans they spoke very secretly to a locksmith named Guzman, who was a maker of crossbows, a low fellow who made scurrilous jokes, and told him secretly to make them keys to open the gates of the prison and of the cages where the Factor was [confined] and they would pay him very well, and they gave him a piece of gold as a retainer for the making of the keys, and they warned him and charged him to be very secret. The locksmith replied with very flattering and cheerful expressions that he was glad to do it, and that they should be more careful of the secret than they were, for this affair upon which so much depended they had revealed to him knowing who he was, but they must not disclose it to others; and he was delighted that the Factor and Veedor should come out of prison, and he asked them who and how many were in the plot, and where they were to meet when they went to do that good deed, and what day and at what hour, and they told him everything clearly about the way they arranged it. The locksmith began to forge some keys in the shape of the pattern they brought him for the keys to be made from, but not with the intention of perfecting them or making them of any use for unlocking, and he did this on purpose, and mischievously made the keys so that they could not unlock, in order to induce them to come and go to his shop on the matter of the keys being made to fit properly, and meanwhile to get at the root of the conspiracy that had been made. The longer he delayed the making of the keys, the more thoroughly he gained this knowledge, and when the day came for him to deliver the keys which he had perfected, and all were ready posted with their arms, the

locksmith went quickly to the house of the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada and reported the affair to him. When the Treasurer knew about it, he sent secretly without delay to collect all the partizans of Cortés, and without letting the Accountant know of it they went to the house where those were assembled who were about to release the Factor, and they quickly arrested as many as twenty of them who were all armed, and the others fled and could not be captured. When enquiry had been made for what purpose they had assembled there, it was found to have been in order to release those I have named, and to kill the Treasurer. Then it was also found out that the Accountant had approved of it. As there were among them three or four men very seditious and bandits, who had been concerned in all the revolts and discords that had taken place in Mexico at that time, and even during one of them had violated a Castilian woman, after a suit had been brought against them (this was done by a Bachelor named Ortega, who was acting as Chief Alcalde and came from the same district as Cortés), Ortega sentenced three of them to be hanged and others to be flogged, and the names of those who were hanged were Pastrana, the second Balverde and the third Escobar, and I do not remember the names of those who were flogged. The locksmith hid himself for many days, for he feared the partizans of the Factor would kill him for having revealed what they had told him under such great secrecy.

Let us stop talking of this, for the men are already dead, and although it is taking a great jump which I seem to make outside of my story, yet what I shall relate now falls into its place. It is that, when the Factor had sent a ship with all the gold he could obtain to His Majesty, as I have stated in former Chapters, and had written to His Majesty that Cortés was dead,

and how they had paid him funeral honours, and had informed him about other things which suited him, and was sending to beg His Majesty to grant him the favour of the Governorship, there went, it appears, in the same ship in which he sent his despatches, other letters well concealed, so that the Factor knew nothing about them, and these letters were for His Majesty so that he should know all that was happening in New Spain, and of the atrocities and injustice which the Factor and Veedor had committed.

In addition to this, His Majesty already had a report through the Royal Audiencia of Santo Domingo and the Geronimite Friars, who were Governors of the Indies, that Cortés was alive and was serving his royal crown by conquering and settling the province of Honduras. When the Royal Council of the Indies and the Chief Commander of Leon knew this they informed His Majesty of it. Then it is reported that the Emperor our Lord said "All that has been done in New Spain has been badly done in that they have rebelled against Cortés, and they have done me much disservice. However he is alive, and I have this opinion of him, that they will be punished in retribution for their evil deeds when he arrives in Mexico."

To go back to my story, the Friar Altamirano embarked at the port of Vera Cruz as it was arranged, and meeting with good weather arrived in a few days at the port of Trujillo where Cortés was residing.

As soon as the townspeople and Cortés observed a powerful ship sailing towards the port they at once guessed the truth that it was coming from New Spain to carry him to Mexico. As soon as it made the port and the Friar had landed, accompanied by all those whom he had brought with him, and Cortés knew some of them whom he had seen in Mexico, they all went to kiss his

hands, and the Friar embraced him, and with holy and good words all went to the Church to say their prayers, and thence to their quarters, where the Padre Fray Diego Altamirano told him that he was his cousin, and related all that had happened in Mexico, as I have already fully written it down, and what Francisco de las Casas had done for Cortés and how he had gone to Castile.

All that the Friar told him Cortés already knew through the letter of the Licentiate Zuazo, as I have related in the chapter that treats of it, and he showed great concern at [hearing] it and said that it pleased our Lord that it had so happened, and he gave great thanks to Him for it and for Mexico being already at peace, and that he wished to go there at once by land, as he did not dare to go by sea, for, as was already known by Zuazo's letter, he had already embarked twice, and he could not lay his course because the sea was beset by strong and adverse currents and it was always laborious sailing, moreover he was sickly. When the pilots told him that as it was the month of April there were no currents and the weather was fair at sea, he agreed to embark. He could not set sail at once, not until Captain Gonzalo Sandoval should arrive, whom he had sent to some pueblos called Olancho, which were distant fifty-five leagues, and he had only just started to eject from that district one of Pedrarias' Captains named Rojas, whom Pedrarias had sent from Nicaragua to explore the country and seek for mines, after he had beheaded Francisco Hernández as I have related. It appears that the Indians of that province of Olancho came to complain to Cortés that certain soldiers from Nicaragua were seizing their wives and daughters and stealing their poultry and all else they possessed. Sandoval promptly set out and took sixty men with him, and wished to capture Rojas, but through certain gentlemen, who

mediated between one party and the other, they were made friends, and Rojas even gave Sandoval [a present of] an Indian page to wait upon him. Just at that time Cortés' letter arrived [ordering him] to come back without delay with all his soldiers, and telling him of the coming of the Friar and all that had happened in Mexico. When Sandoval heard this he was very pleased and could hardly await the hour to turn back, but came post haste after having ejected Rojas from there [the district].

Cortés was delighted at Sandoval's return, and gave instructions to Captain Sayavedra, who remained behind as his lieutenant in that province, as to what he was to do. He then wrote to Captain Luis Marin, and to all of us, at once to take the road to Guatemala, and he told us about all that had happened in Mexico, in the way it is mentioned here, and of the coming of the Friar and about the imprisonment of the Factor and Veedor. He also ordered Captain Godoy, who was stationed at Puerto de Caballos [engaged in] forming a settlement, to go to Naco with all his people. These letters he gave to Sayavedra with orders to send them to us with all speed, and Sayavedra, out of spite, did not want to forward them and neglected his duty, and we learnt that in fact he would not deliver them, and we never knew about them.

To go back to my story, Cortés embarked with all his friends, and with favourable weather laid his course for Havana, for the wind was more favourable for that course than for New Spain. There he disembarked, and all the settlers at Havana who were his acquaintances rejoiced at it, and they took refreshment and heard the news (brought by a ship which had come to Havana from New Spain a few days before) that Mexico was pacified, and that the Indians who had fortified the hill of Coatlan and were waging war against the Spaniards, as soon as they knew that Cortés and we Conquistadores were alive, had made peace with the Treasurer on certain conditions. I will now go on with my story.

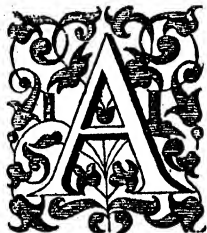


BOOK XV.

THE RETURN TO MEXICO.

CHAPTER CXC.

How Cortés embarked at Havana to go to New Spain and with favourable weather arrived at Vera Cruz, and the delight shown by all at his coming.



AFTER Cortés had rested five days in Havana he could hardly await the hour when he would be in Mexico; and he promptly ordered all his people to embark and set sail, and with good weather he arrived in two days near to the Port of Medellin, opposite to the Island of Sacrificios. There he ordered the ships to be anchored (for the wind was not favourable for going any further), and so as not to sleep that night at sea, Cortés, with twenty soldiers who were friends of his, went ashore and marched on foot about half a league, and, as luck would have it, came out a drove of horses which had come to the port with certain passengers who were about to embark for Castile, and they went to Vera Cruz, a matter of five leagues, on the horses and mules of this drove. He ordered that no one should go and give notice that he was coming by land, and about two

hours before dawn he reached the town and went straight-way to the church, the door of which was open, and entered it with all his company.

It was very early in the morning when the Sacristan, who was a man newly come from Castile, arrived and saw the church full of men, and, as he did not know Cortés nor those who were with him, he ran out to the street shouting and calling to the Alguacils that the church was full of strange men, so that they should order them out. On hearing the cries of the Sacristan, the chief Alcalde, with other subordinate Alcaldes and three Alguacils and many other settlers, came out armed, thinking that something worse had happened, and entered in haste and began to order us with angry words to leave the church. As Cortés was gaunt from his journeys they did not recognise him until they heard him speak, and when they saw that it was Cortés they all went to kiss his hands and bid him welcome.

Then Cortés embraced the Conquistadores who lived in the town and called them by their names, asked them how they were and spoke kindly words to them, and then Mass was said, and they took him to lodge in the best houses which belonged to Pedro Moreno Medrano, and he stayed there eight days and they entertained him with many feasts and rejoicings. They sent messengers post haste to Mexico to say that he had arrived, and Cortés wrote to the Treasurer and to the Accountant, although he was unfriendly, and to all his friends and to the Monastery of San Francisco, and all were delighted at the news.

As soon as the Indians in the neighbourhood knew about it, they all brought him presents of gold and cloths and cacao, poultry and fruits. Then he set out from Medellin and went on his journey over roads which they had cleared for him, and his lodgings were all

garlanded¹ and plentifully supplied with food for Cortés and all who went in his company. Then I could tell what the Mexicans did in the way of rejoicings, how all the pueblos round the lake combined to send him during his journey a great present of gold and cloth and poultry and all sorts of fruits of the country that were ripe in that season, and sent to ask his pardon for not sending more owing to his sudden arrival, but when he should go to his city they would do their duty and render service to him as the Captain who had conquered them and dealt with them justly ; and other pueblos came to do the same thing.

Nothing was forgotten in the province of Tlaxcala, for all the chieftains came out to receive him with dances and routs and rejoicings and plenty of food. When he arrived within three leagues of the City of Texcoco, which is a City with its subject pueblos nearly the size of Mexico, the Accountant Albornoze sallied forth [to meet him], for he had come for the purpose of receiving Cortés so as to stand well with him, for he feared him greatly.

He collected many Spaniards from all the pueblos in the neighbourhood, and together with those who were in his company and the Caciques of that City they went to receive Cortés more than two leagues [out from the city] with great preparations of games and dances. Cortés was pleased at this.² Then when he reached Texcoco they gave him another great reception, and he slept there that night and the next morning continued his journey.

Then the Municipality of Mexico, and the Treasurer,

¹ Blotted out in the original : "with flowers and roses and sweet scent."

² Blotted out in the original : "showing much affection towards Albornoze because he knew that in him he had a friend."

and all the gentlemen and Conquistadores and friends of Cortés, wrote to him begging him to tarry in some pueblos two leagues distant from Tenochtitlan Mexico, although he could well have entered that day, but that he should delay it until the next morning early, so that all might enjoy the great reception they would give him. Then the Treasurer sallied forth with all the gentlemen and Conquistadores, and the municipality of the City, and all the officials in their robes, wearing the richest garments and hose and doublets they possessed, with all kinds of musical instruments, and the Caciques for their part with many sorts of devices and liveries as was their wont, and the lake full of canoes with Indian warriors in them, just as they were used to fight with us in the time of Guatemoc, and others who came along the causeway. There were so many games and such rejoicings that one could say they went on all day long, and in the streets of Mexico all was routs and dances, and as soon as it was night much illumination in the doorways. The best of all remains to be told, for the day after Cortés arrived the Franciscan Friars formed processions giving many thanks to God for the mercy He had shown in the return of Cortés.

Then (to go back to his entry into Mexico), he went at once to the Monastery of Señor San Francisco, where he had Mass said and gave thanks to God for delivering him from the past hardships in Honduras, and bringing him back to the city.

Then he went to his houses which were well built like rich palaces, and there he was served and treated by all like a prince. And the Indians from all the provinces came to see him and brought him presents of gold, and even the Caciques from the Hill of Coatlan, who had been in rebellion, came to bid him welcome and brought him presents.

Cortés made his entry into Mexico in the month of June 1524 or 1525, and as soon as he had rested he promptly ordered the bandits to be seized, and began to make investigation into the dealings of the Factor and Veedor, and he also seized Gonzalo de Ocampo or Diego de Ocampo (I do not remember clearly his Christian name), for it was on him that they found the papers with the defamatory libels.¹ He also arrested one Ocaña, a notary who was a very old man, whom they called the body and soul of the Factor. When they were prisoners Cortés had the intention, seeing that he had justice on his side, of taking proceedings against the Factor and Veedor and as a penalty to take their lives, and, if he had done so at once, there would have been no one in Castile who would have said it was ill done, and His Majesty would have approved of it. I heard it stated before the members of the Royal Council of the Indies in the presence of the Bishop Fray Bartolomé de las Casas in the year 1540, when I went there about my lawsuits, that Cortés was very careless in the matter, and they charged him with weakness and carelessness.

CHAPTER CXCI.

How the Licentiate Luis Ponce de Leon, who came to take the 'Residencia' of Cortés, arrived at this very moment at the port of Vera Cruz with three ships, and what happened about it.

IT is necessary to go back a little, so that what I say now may be clearly understood.

I have already told in former chapters about the many complaints which were made against Cortés before His

¹ Blotted out in the original: "which was that he was making a Monastery with certain Friars, and attributing to each one of them things without truth."

Majesty when the Court was at Toledo, and how those who laid the complaints were the partizans of Diego Velásquez and all the others I have often mentioned, and the letters of Albornoz gave support to them. As His Majesty thought they [the complaints] were true, he had ordered the Admiral of Santo Domingo to come with a great company of soldiers and arrest Cortés, and all of us who went with him when he defeated Narvaez. I have also related how when the Duque de Béjar, Don Alvaro de Zuñiga, heard of it, he went to beg His Majesty not to believe the letters of a man who was very hostile to Cortés until he could ascertain the truth. As the Admiral did not come, nor the evidence in support of the suit, His Majesty ordered a nobleman who was at that time in Toledo, named the Licentiate Ponce de Leon (a cousin of the Count of Alcandete), to come and take his Residencia [of Cortés], and, if he should find him incriminated by the accusations which were brought against him, to punish him in such a way that the sentence which he should deliver should resound throughout the land. In order to obtain information regarding all the accusations that were brought against Cortés, he [Ponce de Leon] took along with him the records of all the matters they were talking of and alleging, as well as instructions as to where he was to take the Residencia. He promptly started on his journey and voyage with three ships (I do not remember exactly whether there were three or four), and, with the good weather he experienced, reached the port of San Juan de Ulua and at once disembarked and came to the town of Medellin. As soon as it was known who he was, and that he had come as judge to take the Residencia of Cortés, a Mayordomo of Cortés named Gregorio de Villalobos sent post haste to inform Cortés, and within four days he knew it in Mexico. And Cortés marvelled to hear of the sudden arrival, for he would have wished to

know it as early as possible so that he could go and give him the greatest honour and reception that he was able.

At the time when the letters reached him he was in the Monastery of San Francisco, and about to receive the body of our Lord Jesus Christ, and with much humility he prayed God to aid him in all things. When he heard that the news was quite true, he at once despatched messengers to find out who those were who were coming, and whether they brought letters from His Majesty. Two days after the messengers had arrived with the first news there came three messengers sent by the Licentiate Luis Ponce with letters for Cortés, and one was from His Majesty, from which he learned that His Majesty had ordered his Residencia to be taken.

When he saw the Royal Letters he kissed them with great reverence and humility, and placed them on his head and said that he was receiving a great favour, in that His Majesty was sending someone who would listen to him with fairness, and he immediately sent messengers with a reply to Luis Ponce himself, with pleasant words and assurances much better expressed than I know how to write them. He asked him to give him notice by which of the two roads he wished to come to Mexico, for there was one road in one direction and another by a short cut, so that he might have prepared all that was suitable for a servant of such a mighty King and Lord.

When the Licentiate saw the nature of his reply, he answered that he was very tired from his voyage and that he wished to rest for a few days, and gave him many thanks and acknowledgments for the great goodwill that he showed.

Now some settlers in that town who were enemies of Cortés, and some others whom Cortés had brought with him from the expedition to Honduras, who were not on good terms with him (they were amongst those whom

he had deported from Panuco), wrote letters from Mexico to Luis Ponce, and other opponents of Cortés told him that Cortés wished to have the Factor and Veedor executed before the Licentiate could go to Mexico. Moreover they told him that he should look well to his personal safety, for, if Cortés wrote to him with so many assurances and [tried] to find out by which of the two roads he wished to come, it was in order to kill him, and that he should place no faith in his words and assurances. They told him many other iniquities which they said Cortés had perpetrated as well on Narvaez as on Garay, and about the soldiers whom he had left abandoned in Honduras, and the three thousand Mexicans who had died on the journey, and about a Captain named Diego de Godoy whom he left settled there with thirty soldiers, all of them invalids, and it was believed that they were dead, (it turned out to be true what they said about Godoy). They begged him at once to go post haste to Mexico, and not to worry about doing anything else, and implored him to take warning from the affair of Captain Narvaez and that of the Adelantado Garay, and that of Cristóbal de Tápia who refused to obey him, whom he made to embark and return whence he had come; and they told him many other hurtful things and nonsense against Cortés in order to create prejudice, and they even made him believe that Cortés would not obey him. When the Licentiate Luis Ponce heard all this, he had in his company other gentlemen, namely the Chief Alguacil Proaño, a native of Córdoba, and his brother, and one Salazar de la Pedrada who came as Alcaide of the fortress and soon died of pleurisy, and a Licentiate or Bachelor named Marcos de Aguilar, and one Bocanegra of Córdoba, and certain Dominican friars and their Provincial, one Fray Tomas Ortiz, who they say had been for some years Prior in some country

of which I do not remember the name; and about this monk who was their Prior, all who came in his company said that he was more diligent in looking after business than after the office he held. To go back to my story—Luis Ponce took counsel with these gentlemen whether he should go to Mexico at once or no, and all advised him not to tarry by day or night, believing that the rumours were true about the iniquities of Cortés, so that when messengers from Cortés arrived with more letters in reply to those which the Licentiate had written, and brought many fresh supplies for him, the Licentiate was already close to Iztapalapa, where he was given a great reception on account of the great happiness and contentment that Cortés felt at his coming. He ordered a very sumptuous banquet for him, and after being well served at the dinner with many and excellent viands Andrés de Tápia (for so he was called), who acted as steward at that feast, suggested as an appetizing and novel matter, and at that time a new thing in those countries, that His Excellency might like to be served with cream and curds. All the gentlemen who dined there with the Licentiate were delighted that they should be brought, and ate of them, and the cream and curds were very good, and some of them ate so much of them that their greed turned and overflowed. This I state as true, that when I eat them my stomach turns because they are cold, but others had no sensation of their having done any harm in the stomach. Then that Friar named Fray Tomas Ortiz, who came as Provincial Prior, said that the creams and curds had been mixed with realgar¹ and that he did not wish to eat them for fear of it, and others who ate there said that they saw the Friar eat of them to repletion, and he had said that they were very good,

¹ Realgar = red sulphide of arsenic.

and because Andrés de Tápia served as steward they suspected him of a thing that never entered his head. To go back to our story—Cortés was not present at this reception at Iztapalapa and remained in Mexico.¹ Then, as Iztapalapa is two leagues from Mexico, he had men posted to advise him at what hour they were coming to Mexico, and Cortés went out to receive him with all the horsemen that Mexico could turn out. With Cortés himself went Gonzalo de Sandoval, and the Treasurer Alonso de Estrada, and the Accountant and all the Municipality and the Conquistadores, and Jorge de Alvarado and Gomez de Alvarado (for Pedro de Alvarado was not in Mexico but in Guatemala whither he had gone in search of Cortés), and many other gentlemen came out who had recently arrived from Castile. When they met on the Causeway great respect was shown between the Licentiate and Cortés, and the Licentiate in every way appeared² very reserved,³ giving himself airs in the matter of Cortés shaking hands with him, not wishing to take his hand, and they paid each other compliments until he took it. When they entered the City the Licentiate expressed admiration at the great fortress which was in it, and at the many cities and towns which he had seen on the lake, and said that he felt sure that there had never been a Captain in the world who, with so few soldiers, had won so many countries and captured such a strong city. As they went along talking of this they proceeded straight to the Monastery of Señor San Francisco where Mass was at once said. When Mass was

¹ Blotted out in the original: "there was a report that on his behalf he sent very secretly to Luis Ponce a good present of blocks and bars of gold, and they say he would not accept it."

² Blotted out in the original: "a true gentleman."

³ Blotted out in the original: "a very courteous and upright judge."

over Cortés asked the Licentiate Luis Ponce to exhibit the Royal Decrees and decide to carry out what His Majesty had ordered him to do, because he [Cortés] was obliged to seek justice against the Factor and the Veedor, and he [Luis Ponce] replied that it should stand over till next day.

Cortés then, accompanied by all the horsemen who had come out for the reception, took him to lodge in his palaces, which were all hung with tapestry, and to a very stately dinner served with so much gold and silver plate and so well arranged that Luis Ponce himself said secretly to the Chief Alguacil Proaño, and to one Bocanegra, that from all his arrangements and speeches and deeds Cortés certainly appeared to have been a great lord for many years past.

I will cease speaking of these praises and say that the next day they went to the principal church, and after Mass had been said, he [Luis Ponce] ordered the Municipality of the City to be present, and the officers of the Royal Exchequer, and the Captains and Conquistadores of Mexico, and when he saw them all together in the presence of the two notaries (one on behalf of the Municipality and the other whom Luis Ponce brought with him), he presented his Royal Decrees. Cortés with great respect kissed them and placed them on his head, and said that he obeyed them as commands and edicts of his Lord and King, and would fulfil them with his breast to the ground, and so did all the gentlemen and Conquistadores and the Municipality and His Majesty's officials. After this had been done the Licentiate took the wands of justice from the Chief Alcalde and the subordinate Alcaldes, and from the Hermandad¹ and Alguacils, and after he had them in his possession he

¹ An association forming a minor Court of Justice.

gave them back to all of them, and said to Cortés: "Señor Capitan, this Government of your Excellency His Majesty has commanded me to take over for myself, not because you cease to be worthy of many other and greater offices, but we are obliged to do what our Lord and King commands us." Cortés with great respect gave him thanks for this, and said that he was ready to do what he was ordered to do in the service of His Majesty, which his Excellency would quickly perceive, and, through the evidence and the investigation to which he would subject him, would learn how loyally he had served our Lord the King, and would understand the malignity of certain persons who had already gained a hearing from him with advice and letters full of malice. The Licentiate replied "Wherever there are honest men there are also others who are not, for such is the way of the world, and those who have received benefits from a man will speak well of him and those who have suffered wrongs will do the contrary."

Thus that day passed, and the next day after hearing Mass, which was said in the palaces where the Licentiate was lodging, he [Luis Ponce] sent a gentleman with much respect to summon Cortés, and in the presence of Fray Tomas Ortiz who had come as Prior—no other persons being present, only those three in secret—the Licentiate Luis Ponce de Leon said to him [Cortés], with much respect: "Señor Capitan, Your Excellency should know that His Majesty commanded and charged me that to all the Conquistadores who left the Island of Cuba and were present at the capture of these lands and cities, and to most of the Conquistadores who arrived later, I should give assignments of good Indians, and should give precedence and should favour the former somewhat more, and this I say because I am informed that many of the Conquistadores who came with Your Excellency hold poor assignments, and you have given

the better ones to persons who have now lately come from Castile, who do not deserve them. If this is so, His Majesty did not give you the Government for this purpose but to carry out his royal commands."

Cortés replied that he had given Indians to all, and that the luck of each one was that good Indians fell to the share of some, and to others not such good ones, but that he [Luis Ponce] could correct this, as he had come for that purpose, and the Conquistadores were worthy of it. He [Luis Ponce] also asked him what had become of all the Conquistadores whom he had taken with him to Honduras, and how it was that he left them there abandoned and dying of hunger. They had especially told him about one Diego de Godoy, whom he left as leader of a company of thirty or forty men at Puerto de Caballos, and that the Indians had probably killed him, for all [his companions] were very ill (and what they told him turned out to be true as I shall relate further on), and that it would have been well if, after capturing that great city and New Spain, they should have remained to enjoy the reward and rest, and that he should have taken those who had lately arrived to labour and form settlements there; and he asked after Captain Luis Marin and many of the soldiers and about me. Cortés replied that in matters of assault and wars he did not dare to go to distant lands unless he took trustworthy soldiers, and that they would soon reach the city, for they ought already to be on the road, and that His Excellency [Luis Ponce] should assist them in every way and give them good assignments of Indians.

The Licentiate Luis Ponce also asked him with pleasant words how was it that he had gone on such a long and distant journey against Cristóbal de Olid without having His Majesty's permission, leaving Mexico

in danger of being lost. To this Cortés replied that, as His Majesty's Governor and Captain General, it seemed to him to be advisable in His Majesty's interest, in order that other Captains should not revolt, and that he reported it first to His Majesty. In addition to this [the Licentiate] asked him about the capture and defeat of Narvaez, and how the fleet and soldiers of Francisco de Garay were lost, and what he died of, and why he forced Cristóbal de Tápia to embark; and he asked him about many other things which I do not record here, all in the presence of Fray Tomas Ortiz.

And Cortés replied to them all, giving very good reasons, so that Luis Ponce appeared to be partially satisfied. All these questions that he asked him he brought in a memorandum from Castile, and many others were about things they had told him on the road and had communicated to him in Mexico. As Fray Tomas Ortiz was present at these questionings, when they had finished talking and Cortés had gone to his quarters, the Friar secretly took aside three Conquistadores, who were friends of Cortés, and told them that Luis Ponce intended to cut off Cortés' head, for such were the orders he had brought from His Majesty, and to that end he had asked him what I have recorded. Early in the morning of the following day this same Friar very secretly addressed Cortés in these words: "Señor Capitan, on account of my great regard for you, and as my duty and religion [impel me] to offer advice in such cases, I give you to know, Señor, that Luis Ponce brings decrees from His Majesty to have you beheaded."

When Cortés heard this, after they had carried on the conversations reported by me, he became very distressed and thoughtful. On the other hand they had told him that the Friar was ill-conditioned and seditious, and that he had better not believe much of what he said, and it

seemed as though he had addressed these remarks to Cortés to ensure his taking him as intercessor and petitioner, so that the decree should not be carried out against him, and in order that Cortés should give him some bars of gold for it. Other persons reported that Luis Ponce told it to Cortés in order to frighten him, so that he should implore not to be beheaded. When Cortés perceived this, he replied to the Friar with much courtesy and with great promises that he would give him the wherewithal to return to Castile, and Cortés told him that he had confidence that His Majesty, as a most Christian King would send to confer favours [on him] for his many and great services which he had always rendered him, and would not find that he had done him any disservice whatever; this confidence which he held he likewise placed in Señor Luis Ponce de Leon as a person who would not go beyond what His Majesty had commanded him. When the Friar heard this, and found that Cortés did not beg him to become his intercessor with Luis Ponce he became disconcerted, and I will relate what more happened, for Cortés never gave him any of the money he had promised him.

CHAPTER CXCI.

How the Licentiate Luis Ponce, after he had exhibited the Royal Decrees and met with obedience, ordered the Residencia of Cortés and those who had held judicial office to be proclaimed and how he fell ill of sleeping sickness and died of it, and what else happened.

AFTER he [the Licentiate] had exhibited the Royal Decrees, and they had been obeyed with much reverence by Cortés, by the Municipality, and by the rest of the Conquistadores, he ordered a Residencia General to be proclaimed against Cortés and against those who had

held judicial office, and had been Captains. Since many persons were ill-disposed towards Cortés, and others were in the right in what they petitioned, what haste they made to lodge complaints of Cortés and to present witnesses, so that the city was seething with lawsuits and claims made against him! Some said that he did not give them the share of gold they were entitled to, others brought action because he did not give them Indians in accordance with His Majesty's commands, but gave them to servants of his father, Martin Cortés, and to other unworthy persons, servants of noblemen of Castile; others claimed for horses killed in the wars, for although there had been much gold with which he could have paid them, he had not satisfied them, in order to keep the gold himself. Others lodged complaints on account of personal insults that they suffered by order of Cortés, and one Juan Juarez, his brother-in-law, brought a wicked claim against him on account of Cortés's wife Doña Catalina Juarez la Marçayda. At that time a Fulano de Barrios had arrived from Castile, and Cortés married him to a sister of Juan Juarez and sister-in-law of his [own], and that claim which Juan Juarez had brought was settled for the time.

This Barrios is the man with whom one Miguel Díaz had a lawsuit about half the pueblo of Mestitan, as I have stated in the chapter that speaks about it.

To return to our Residencia—As soon as the Residencia was begun it pleased our Lord Jesus Christ on account of our sins and misfortune that the Licentiate Luis Ponce fell ill of sleeping sickness, and it happened in this way: coming from the Monastery of Señor San Francisco, after hearing Mass, he got a very severe fever and took to his bed and remained four days unconscious and out of his right mind, and most of the day and night he was asleep. When this was observed by

the doctors who attended him, namely the Licentiate Pero López and Doctor Ojeda, and another physician whom he [Luis Ponce] had brought from Castile, they unanimously agreed that it would be advisable for him to confess himself and receive the Holy Sacraments, and the Licentiate himself desired it most willingly.¹ After receiving them with humility and with great penitence he made his will, and appointed as his Lieutenant Governor the Licentiate Marcos de Aguilar, whom he had brought with him from the Island of Hispaniola. Others say that this Marcos de Aguilar was a Bachelor and not a Licentiate, and that he had not the qualities for command. He [Ponce] left the power to him with this condition, that all the matters of lawsuits and contentions and Residencias, and the Edicts concerning the Factor and Veedor, should remain in the condition he left them until His Majesty had been informed of what had happened, and that they should at once send a messenger in a ship to His Majesty. When his will was made and his soul composed, on the ninth day after he had fallen ill he gave up his soul to Our Lord Jesus Christ. As soon as he was dead, the mourning and grief which the Conquistadores, one and all, felt was very great, and they wept for him as though he had been the father of them all, for he certainly came to assist those whom he should find to have served His Majesty faithfully, and he made this public before he died, and it was found in the decrees and instructions which he brought from His Majesty, that he was to give the best assignments of Indians to the Conquistadores, so that they should experience improvement in everything.

Cortés and most of the gentlemen of that City put on

¹ Blotted out in the original: "for he was a very good Christian of very many virtues."

mourning, and they carried him [the body] to bury it with great pomp at [the monastery of] Señor San Francisco, and with all the wax [candles] that could then be obtained. His burial was most solemn considering those times.

I have heard it said, by certain gentlemen who were present when he fell ill, that, as Luis Ponce was a musician and a man of naturally cheerful disposition, in order to cheer him up they went to play a guitar to him and give him a serenade, and he ordered them to play him a dance, and as he lay in bed he beat time with his fingers and feet and moved them about until the dance was finished, and at the very moment the dance ended he lost power of speech.

When he was dead and buried as I have related, one could hear the muttering there was in Mexico among persons who were hostile to Cortés and Sandoval, for they said and declared that they had given him [Luis Ponce] poison from which he died, and that he had done the same to Francisco de Garay, and he who insisted on it most was Fray Tomas Ortiz, already mentioned by me before, who came as Prior of certain Friars whom he [Luis Ponce] brought in his company, who also died of sleeping sickness within two months, as well as some of the other Friars. I also wish to state that it appears that the pestilence was caught in the ships in which Luis Ponce came, for more than one hundred persons who came in them caught sleeping sickness and disease of which they died at sea, and, after disembarking, many others died in the town of Medellin. Even of the Friars, very few survived, and among those who died was the Provincial or Prior who died within a few months; and there was a report that sleeping sickness spread in Mexico.

CHAPTER CXCIH.

How, after the death of the Licentiate Luis Ponce de Leon, the Licentiate Marcos de Aguilar began to govern, and the disputes that arose about it, and how Captain Luis Marin and all those of us who were in his company chanced to meet Pedro de Alvarado who was marching in search of Cortés, and how both parties rejoiced, because the country was hostile and could not be traversed without great danger.

WHEN Marcos de Aguilar undertook the Government of New Spain in accordance with the will of Luis Ponce de Leon, many persons who were on bad terms with Cortés and all their friends and the majority of the Conquistadores wished the Residencia to be proceeded with as the Licentiate Luis Ponce de Leon had begun it, but Cortés objected that he [Aguilar] could not deal with it under the authority of Luis Ponce de Leon's last will, however, if Marcos de Aguilar desired to go on with it, that he was welcome to do so.

Another objection was raised by the Municipality of Mexico urging that Luis Ponce had no power to dispose in his will that the Licentiate Aguilar should govern alone, firstly because he was very old, in his dotage, and crippled with tumours, and had little authority and showed this in his appearance, and he knew nothing about the affairs of the country nor had he informed himself about them, nor about the persons who were worthy. Moreover, they would neither respect him nor dread him. It might [therefore] be best for him to take Cortés as his colleague in the government, until His Majesty should order otherwise, in order that all should fear [him] and the justice of His Majesty be greatly revered.

Marcos de Aguilar replied that he would depart neither much nor little from what Luis Ponce ordered in his will, and that he must govern alone, and that if they intended

to install another Governor by force they would not be doing what His Majesty commanded. Added to what Marcos de Aguilar said, Cortés was afraid of further steps being taken, notwithstanding the speeches which the proctors of the cities and towns of New Spain made to him that he should endeavour to become Governor, and that they would persuade Marcos de Aguilar to [agree to] it by sound arguments, for it was clear that he was very infirm, and it would be to the service of God and of His Majesty. However, for all they said to Cortés, he would never touch on that point again but [preferred] that the aged Aguilar should be sole governor, although he was so infirm and consumptive that he was provided with a Castilian woman to suckle him, and some she-goats that he might drink their milk as well. At that time a son whom he had brought with him died of sleeping sickness in the same way that Luis Ponce died.

I will leave this to its proper time, as I wish to turn far back in my story and relate what was done by Captain Luis Marin, who stayed behind with all the people at Naco, awaiting a reply from Sandoval in order to know whether or not Cortés had embarked, and we received no reply whatever. I have already told how Sandoval left us to go and force Cortés to embark and go to New Spain, and promised to write to us what happened, so that we could go with Luis Marin on the road to Mexico; and, although Sandoval and Cortés wrote on two separate occasions, we never received a reply, and Sayavedra never cared to write to us. So it was decided by Luis Marin, and all of us who had come with him, that ten mounted soldiers should go quickly to Trujillo to find out about Cortés, and Francisco de Marmolejo went as our Captain, and I was one of the ten. We went inland through a hostile country until we reached Olancho, which is now called Guayape, where the rich gold mines were, and there

we heard the news from two invalid Spaniards and from a Negro how Cortés had embarked a few days before with all the gentlemen and conquistadores who were with him, because the City of Mexico had sent to summon him as all the settlers in Mexico were willing to obey him, and that a Franciscan Friar had come for him; and that Sayavedra, Cortés's cousin, remained behind as Captain in some hostile towns near by.

We were delighted at the news and at once wrote to Captain Sayavedra, by some Indians of that pueblo of Olancho which was at peace, and in four days a reply came which told us of certain things which have already been stated, and we gave many thanks to God for it, and with forced marches we returned to where Luis Marin was stationed. I remember that we hurled stones at the country we were leaving behind, crying "Stay where you are evil land, for with God's help we will march to Mexico," and continuing our journey we found Luis Marin in a pueblo called Acalteca, and when we arrived with our news he was greatly cheered. Presently we struck the road to a pueblo named Maniani and found there six soldiers belonging to the company of Pedro de Alvarado who were searching for us, and one of them was Diego López de Villa Nueva who is now a settler in Guatemala, and when we recognised each other we embraced, and on asking after their Captain Pedro de Alvarado they replied that he was close by with many gentlemen who had come in search of Cortés, and they told us all that had happened in Mexico, which I have already related, and how they had sent to summon Pedro de Alvarado to become governor, and the reason why he did not go, which I have stated in the chapter that treats of the subject. Continuing our march, within two days we met Pedro de Alvarado and his soldiers near a town called Choluteca Malalaca.

One can hardly describe his delight when he knew that Cortés had gone to Mexico, for it released him from the laborious journey which he was to take in search of him, and was a relief to them all.

While we were there in this pueblo of Chuluteca, there arrived at the same time certain Captains of Pedrarias de Ávila named Garavito and Canpañon, and others whose names I forget, and, according to what they said, they came to explore the country and to settle boundaries with Pedro de Alvarado. After we arrived at that pueblo with Captain Luis Marin we all stayed together there for three days—the people of Pedro Arias de Ávila and Pedro de Alvarado and ourselves.

From this place Pedro de Alvarado sent Gaspar Arias de Ávila, who was [afterwards] a settler in Guatemala, to discuss certain matters of business with the Governor Pedro Arias de Ávila, and I have heard say that it was about marriages, for Gaspar Arias de Ávila paid great court to Pedro de Alvarado.

To go on with our journey—the people of Pedro Arias stayed in that pueblo and we continued our march towards Guatemala. Before reaching the province of Cuscatlan¹ it rained heavily, and a river called Lempa came down in flood and we had no means whatever of crossing it, so we decided to fell a tree called a Ceiba, and it was large enough to make into a canoe, larger than any that had ever been seen in these parts. With great labour we crossed the river in five days, and there was a great scarcity of maize. After the passage of the river we came on some pueblos which we called “los Chaparristiques,” for such is their name, where the Indians, natives of those pueblos, killed a soldier named Nicuesa and wounded three of our men who had gone to search

¹ A province of Salvador.

for food. We went to rescue them, and they [the Indians] were already routed, but in order to avoid delay they were left unpunished, and this happened in the province where now the town of San Miguel is settled.

From there we entered the province of Cuscatlan, which was hostile, and we found plenty to eat, and from there we came to some pueblos near to Petapa. The Guatemaltecos had some hills intrenched on the road and some very deep gullies where they awaited us, and we were three days in capturing and passing them. There they wounded me with an arrow, but the wound was of no importance.

Then we came to Petapa, and the next day came upon this valley, which they called the [valley of the] cross-eyed, where now this city of Guatemala¹ is settled. At that time it was altogether hostile and we found many barricades and pits, and we fought with the natives to force a passage; and I remember that as we were descending a slope the earth began to tremble so that many soldiers fell to the ground, for the earthquake continued a long time.

Then we went to the site of the old city of Guatemala,² where the Caciques named Zinacan and Sacachul used to reside. Before entering the city there was a very deep gully where the squadrons of Guatemaltecos were waiting to prevent our entry, and we made them flee, unfortunately for them, and went on to sleep in the city, and the lodgings and houses were good and the buildings very fine, in fact befitting Caciques who ruled all the neighbouring provinces. From there we went out to the plain and built ranchos and huts, and stayed in them for ten days, for Pedro de Alvarado sent twice to summon the people of Guatemala and other pueblos in the neigh-

¹ Now Antigua.

² Iximché.

bourhood to make peace, and we waited the time I have mentioned to learn their reply. As none of them would come in, we went on by long days' marches without halting to where Pedro de Alvarado had left his army settled, for it was a hostile country and he had left his brother named Gonzalo de Alvarado there as Captain.

The village where we found them was called Olintepec, and we rested there several days and then we went to Soconusco and thence to Tehuantepec. At this time two Spaniards, settlers in Mexico, who had come with us on that toilsome march, died, as well as a Mexican Cacique named Juan Velásquez, one of Guatemoc's Captains, already mentioned by me. Then we went post haste to Oaxaca, for by that time we had got to know about the death of Luis Ponce and other things already related by me, and they said much good of him, and that he came to carry out what His Majesty had ordered, and we could hardly await the hour of our arrival in Mexico.

Then, as we were [a company] of over eighty soldiers with Pedro de Alvarado among them, when we arrived at a pueblo named Chalco we sent messengers thence to inform Cortés that we would enter Mexico on the following day, so that they might have quarters prepared for us, for we were arriving very much worn out, as it was more than two years and three months since we set out from that city. When it was known in Mexico that we had reached Iztapalapa, Cortés and many gentlemen came out on the causeway to receive us, and when we arrived, before going anywhere else, we went to the principal church to give thanks to our Lord Jesus Christ who had brought us back to that City. From the Church Cortés took us to his Palace, where they had prepared a grand feast for us very well served. Alvarado's quarters were already prepared, as the fortress was then his home,

for at that time he was appointed Alcayde of the fortress and the arsenal. Sandoval took Captain Luis Marin to lodge in his house, and Andrés de Tápia took me and another friend named Captain Miguel Sánchez to lodge in his house, and he paid us great honour. Sandoval sent me clothes in which to array myself, and gold and cacao to spend, and so did Cortés and other settlers in the city to soldiers and friends among those who had come there.

The following day, after commending ourselves to God, I and my companion Captain Luis Sánchez set out through the city, and we took with us as intercessors Captain Sandoval and Andrés de Tápia, and we went to see and speak to the Licentiate Marcos de Aguilar, who, as I have said, was governor through the authority that Luis Ponce had left to that effect. The mediators who went with us, whom I have already said were Captain Sandoval and Andrés de Tápia, made a statement to Marcos de Aguilar concerning our persons and services, in order to beg him to give us Indians in Mexico, as those in Coatzacoalcos were of no use to us. After many speeches and promises which he made to us on the subject, he said that he had no authority either to give or take away any Indians whatever, for so Luis Ponce de Leon left in his will when he died, that all the affairs and lawsuits and unemployed Indians in New Spain should remain in the condition in which they stood until His Majesty should send to order otherwise; that if he were sent authority for [assigning] Indians he would give us the best he could find in the country. We then took our leave of him.

At this time a certain Diego de Ordás, very often mentioned by me, arrived from the Island of Cuba,¹ and as it

¹ Blotted out in the original: "who had gone to purchase mares and calves, as I have originally stated."

was he who had written the letter to the Factor stating that all of us who had gone out from Mexico with Cortés were dead, Sandqvál and other gentlemen asked him with very bitter words why he had written this, when he neither knew nor possessed any evidence of it, and [added] that those letters which he sent to the Factor were so mischievous that New Spain might have been lost through them. Diego de Ordás replied with solemn oaths that he never wrote such a thing, but only that he had received news from a pueblo named Xicalango that the pilots and sailors of two ships had quarrelled and killed each other, and that the Indians had ended by killing certain sailors who were left in the ships, and that if the letters themselves should be produced they would see if it were not true; and that if the Factor altered them or substituted others he [Diego de Ordás] was not to blame, and if Cortés wished to find out the truth,—the Factor and Veedor were [still] prisoners in the cages. However, Cortés did not dare to bring them to justice on account of the orders left by Luis Ponce de Leon, and as he had many other contentions [on hand] he decided to keep quiet in this case of the Factor until orders came from His Majesty, and he was afraid lest further ill consequences should follow; also because at that time he made claim that they should return a great quantity of his property which they had sold, and spent for funeral honours and to say Masses for his soul, although those funeral honours and Masses were celebrated with malice and to instil belief throughout the city, and they conferred benedictions and paid funeral honours to Cortés and ourselves so that it should be believed to be true that we were all dead. Concerned in these lawsuits a settler in Mexico, called Juan Cáceres the rich, purchased the benedictions and Masses which had been celebrated for the soul of Cortés, to be applied to that of Cáceres.

I must stop telling old stories and will relate how Diego de Ordás, who was a man of good counsel, seeing that they no longer respected Cortés and took no account of him after the coming of Luis Ponce de Leon, and that the Government had been taken from him and many persons were insolent to him and held him of no account, advised him to claim treatment as a nobleman, and style himself "My Lord," and to assume a title and not be called simply Cortés but Don Hernando Cortés. Ordás also told him that he should remember that the Factor was a servant of the Commendador Mayor, Don Francisco de los Cobos, the man who ruled all Castile, and that some day he might need the help of Don Francisco de los Cobos, and that Cortés himself was in no great favour with His Majesty nor with the members of his Royal Council of the Indies, and that he had better beware of killing the Factor until he was sentenced by the Courts, for there were strong suspicions in Mexico that he [Cortés] wished to despatch and kill him in the cage itself.

As we now come to the point, I wish to state before going on with my story, why I am so concise in all that I write, and, when it comes to conversations, in mentioning Cortés I have not called him and will not call him Don Hernando Cortés, nor by other titles of Marquis or Captain, but only plainly Cortés. The reason of this is because he himself preferred to be called simply Cortés, and at that time he was not a Marquis, for this name of Cortés was as highly considered and esteemed throughout Castile¹ as that of Julius Cæsar or Pompey was in the time of the Romans, or in our times we hold that of Gonzalo Hernández surnamed "The Great Captain," or among the Carthaginians that of Hannibal, or of that

¹ Blotted out in the original: "and in many parts of the Christian world."

valiant and never vanquished gentleman Diego García de Paredes.

Let us stop talking of these past glories and I will relate how at that time the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada married his two daughters, one to, Jorge de Alvarado, brother of Don Pedro de Alvarado, and the other to a gentleman named Don Luis de Guzman, son of Don Juan de Sayavedra Count of Castellar, and then it was arranged that Don Pedro de Alvarado should go to Castile to beg His Majesty to grant him the Government of Guatemala, and while he was away he sent Jorge de Alvarado as his Captain for the pacification of Guatemala. When Jorge de Alvarado went, he took with him on the road more than two hundred Indians from Tlaxcala, Cholula, Mexico and Guacachula and other provinces, and they aided him in the wars. At that time also Marcos de Aguilar sent to settle the province of Chiapa, and a gentleman named Don Juan de Enríquez de Guzman, a near relation of the Duke of Medina Sidonia, went [with this expedition]. He also sent to settle the province of Tabasco, which is on the river called Grijalva, and a gentleman named Baltazar Osorio, a native of Seville, went as Captain. He also sent to pacify the pueblos of the Zapotecs, which stand among very high sierras, and there went as Captain one Alonzo de Herrera, a native of Jérez, and this Captain was one of Cortés' soldiers. Not to enumerate at present what each of these Captains did in his conquests, I will leave the account of them until the proper time and season shall arrive, and I wish to relate how at this time Marcos de Aguilar died, and what happened about the will he made that the Treasurer should become Governor.

CHAPTER CXCIV.

How Marcos de Aguilar died, and by his will appointed the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada as Governor (but he was not to give judgment in the suits of the Factor or Veedor, nor to grant or take away Indians, until His Majesty should ordain what was most to his advantage), in the same way as Luis Ponce had delegated his authority to him.

WHILE Marcos de Aguilar held the government, as I have stated, he was very consumptive and suffering from boils, and the doctors ordered him to be suckled by a woman of Castile, [by which means] and the milk of goats he supported himself for about eight months, then from those diseases and fevers which he caught he died.

In the will which he executed he enacted that the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada should be sole Governor, with neither more nor less powers than he himself had received from Luis Ponce de Leon.

The Cabildo of Mexico and the procurators of certain cities, who at the time happened to be in Mexico, realised that Alonzo de Estrada would not be able to govern as well as the circumstances required, for the [following] reason: Nuño de Guzman, who two years previously had come from Castile to govern the province of Panuco, occupied the border-lands of Mexico, claiming that they belonged to his province. He came full of fury and regardless of the orders His Majesty had given in the decrees relating to the matter, which he had brought [with him]. Then because a settler from Mexico named Pedro Gonzáles de Trujillo, a man of high birth, had said that he did not wish to stay under his rule but under that of Mexico (because the Indians of his "encomienda" were not natives of Panuco), and on account of other words that passed; without giving him [Pedro Gonzáles] a chance to defend himself, he ordered him to be

hanged. In addition to this, he committed other follies, and hanged another Spaniard in order to make himself feared, and he had no respect for, and took no notice of, the Treasurer, Alonzo de Estrada, although he was Governor, nor did he hold him in such reverence as he was in duty bound to do. When they observed these follies of Nuño de Guzman, the Cabildo of Mexico and other gentlemen residents, in order to inspire Nuño de Guzman with fear, and make him obey His Majesty's commands, entreated the Treasurer to associate Cortés with himself in the government, as it would be to the advantage and to the service of God our Lord and of His Majesty. However, the Treasurer would not do so. Other persons said that Cortés did not wish to accept, in order that no malicious [persons] should [be able to] say that he wanted to assume the government by force, also because there were murmurs that suspicion attached to the death of Márcos de Aguilar, and that Cortés had caused it, and given him the dose from which he died. It was arranged that Gonzalo de Sandoval, who was Chief Alguacil, and a person held in very high esteem, should govern conjointly with the Treasurer, and the Treasurer thought well of it, but other persons alleged that if he agreed, it was in order to marry his daughter to Sandoval, for if the marriage took place he would be far more highly esteemed, and perchance would obtain the Government, for at that time this New Spain was not thought so much of as it is to-day.

During the Government of the Treasurer and Gonzalo de Sandoval, it seems that there were such crazy people in the world that one Fulano Proaño, who, it was said at that time, had gone to Jalisco fleeing from Mexico, and who afterwards became a very rich man, got into a dispute with the Governor Alonzo de Estrada, and made use of discourtesy of such a nature that I will not repeat

it here. Sandoval, who as governor should have arrested Proaño and tried the case, did not do so. Rufinour said that he rather encouraged him to commit the atrocious crime and take to flight, whither he could not be got at, in spite of all the great efforts the Treasurer made to arrest him. [Moreover] a few days after this insult had taken place, another most evil crime was committed, in that they placed on the doors of the Treasurer's house some foul and very evil libels, and although it was well known who placed them there, seeing that justice could not be obtained, he [Sandoval] let it pass, and from that time onward the Treasurer was very ill disposed towards Cortés and Sandoval, and he detested them as very evil things.

Let us leave this and I will relate that at that time when the plan was afoot which I have already mentioned for associating Cortés in the Government with the Treasurer—and they gave him Sandoval as a colleague, as I have related—Alonzo de Estrada was advised to go post haste in a ship to Castile and to give an account of it to His Majesty, and they even persuaded him to say that it was by force that they gave him Sandoval as an associate, as I have already related, because he did not wish and would not consent to Cortés governing with him. In addition to this, certain persons who were not on good terms with Cortés wrote other letters on their own account, and in them stated that Cortés had ordered poison to be administered to Luis Ponce de Leon and to Marcos de Aguilar and also to the Adelantado Garay¹; for it was believed that in some curds which they gave him at a pueblo named Iztapalapa, there was realgar, and on that account a friar of the order of Santo Domingo would

¹ Blotted out in the original: and they even made the ecclesiastic named Fray Tomas Ortiz write this, he who was Provincial of Santo Domingo and had come from Castile with Luis Ponce de Leon.

not eat them¹; and all this that they wrote was abomination and treachery which they stirred up against him.

They also wrote that Cortés wished to kill the Factor and Veedor.

At that time there also went to Castile the accountant Alborno, who was never on good terms with Cortés. When His Majesty and the members of the Royal Council of the Indies saw the letters I have mentioned speaking evil of Cortés, and made enquiries of the accountant Alborno regarding the affair of Luis Ponce and that of Marcos de Aguilar, it told very heavily against Cortés. Besides, they had heard about the defeat of Narvaez and about Garay and Tápia and the story of Catalina Juarez la Marceyda, his first wife, and they were misinformed about other matters and believed what they [the enemies of Cortés] had now written to be true. His Majesty promptly ordered by decree that Alonzo de Estrada should be the sole governor, and approved whatever he had done and the assignment of Indians he had made. He also ordered the Factor and Veedor to be released from their prisons and cages and their property to be returned to them. A ship came post haste with the decrees, and, in order to punish Cortés for the crimes of which he was accused, he [the Emperor] ordered a gentleman named Don Pedro de la Cueva, Grand Commander of the order of Alcántara, to proceed at once and to take with him three hundred soldiers at the expense of Cortés, and if he found him guilty to cut off his head, and [the heads] of those

¹ Blotted out in the original: and in addition to this they sent with the letters some copies of defamatory libels against Cortés which they found on one Gonzalo de Campo, in which it was said: "Oh! Fray Hernando Provincial, more complaints go about your person before His Majesty than those of the Duque de Arxona before his general," and I omit quoting five other documents which they wrote against him, for they are not fit to be advanced against a brave man such as Cortés.

who, together with him, had done any wrong to His Majesty, and to give the pueblos taken from Cortés to us, the true Conquistadores. He also ordered a Royal Audiencia to be ready to come, thinking that by this means true justice would be done. While the Comendador Don Pedro de la Cueva was preparing to set out for New Spain, either owing to certain discussions which took place later on at court, or because they did not give him as many thousand ducats as he demanded for the voyage, or because they believed that justice could be done through the Royal Audiencia [alone], or [may be] because the Duque de Bejar went surety for us as he had done on other occasions, his voyage was put off.

I must return to the Treasurer, who, when he saw himself thus favoured by His Majesty, and, having been so many times governor, that now again His Majesty had ordered him to be sole governor—and they had even made the Treasurer believe that our Lord the Emperor had been told that he was a son of the Rey Católico—became puffed up with pride and had reason for it. The first thing he did was to send a cousin of his, named Diego de Mazariegos, as Captain to Chiapa, with instructions to take the Residencia of Don Juan Enríquez de Guzman, who had been sent as Captain by Marcos de Aguilar, and it was found that he had committed more robberies and quarrels than he had bestowed benefits on that province. He also sent to conquer and bring to peace the pueblos of the Zapotecs and Mijes, and they were to go in two divisions so that they [the pueblos] might more easily be brought to peace. [In command of] the division [marching] from the north he sent a Fulano de Barrios, reported to have been a Captain in Italy and very valiant, who had recently come to Mexico from Castile (I do not mean the Barrios of Seville who was Cortés's brother-in-law), and he gave him over one hundred soldiers and among them

many musketeers and crossbowmen. When this Captain reached the pueblos of the Zapotecs, which are called the Tiltepeques, the native Indians of those pueblos sallied out one night and fell on the Captain and his soldiers, and so sudden was the attack that they killed Captain Barrios and seven other soldiers and wounded most of the others, and, if they had not all quickly taken to their heels¹ and found refuge in some friendly pueblos, all would have fallen. Here one can see the superiority of old Conquistadores over those recently come from Castile, who know nothing about warfare with Indians nor of their cunning. This put an end to that conquest.

I must tell now about the other Captain who went by way of Oaxaca. He was named Figueroa, a native of Cáceres, and was also reported to have been a very valiant Captain in Castile, and a great friend of the Treasurer, Alonzo de Estrada. He also took with him one hundred soldiers newly arrived in Mexico from Castile, many of them musketeers and crossbowmen, and ten of them even cavalrymen. When they reached the province of the Zapotecs he sent to summon one Alonzo de Herrera, who was stationed in those pueblos as Captain of thirty soldiers by order of Marcos de Aguilar while he was governor, as I have related in the chapter which treats of the subject. Alonzo de Herrera, having obeyed the summons (for it seems that Figueroa brought authority to place him [Herrera] under his orders), on certain disputes taking place and because he would not remain in his [Figueroa's] company, they came to drawing swords, and Herrera wounded Figueroa and three of his soldiers who came to his assistance.

When Figueroa saw that he was wounded and one of his arms maimed, he did not dare to penetrate into

¹ "Tomaran Calzas de Villadiego" (adage).

the mountains of the Mijes, which were very lofty and difficult to take; moreover, the soldiers he had brought with him knew nothing about conquering such countries. He determined to undertake the excavation of the graves in the burial places of the Caciques of those provinces, for he found in them a quantity of golden jewels which it was the custom in olden days to bury with the chieftains of those pueblos, and he attained such dexterity that he took out from them over five thousand pesos de oro, in addition to other jewels obtained from the pueblos. So he determined to abandon the conquest, and he left some of the pueblos in which he stayed more hostile than he found them, and he went to Mexico and thence to Castile, and the soldiers went each his own way.

When Figueroa had embarked at Vera Cruz, and was already on his way to Castile with his gold, such was his luck that the ship in which he sailed met with a furious head gale near Vera Cruz, and he and his gold were lost, and fifteen passengers were drowned, and everything was lost. Thus ended the expeditions which the Treasurer sent to make conquests, and those pueblos were never pacified until we settlers from Coatzacoalcos conquered them.

As the mountains are so lofty that horses cannot be used, I racked my body on the three occasions that I was present at those conquests, for although we might bring them to peace in the summer, as soon as the rains began they again rebelled, and killed such Spaniards as they were able to catch straying. However, as we always followed them up, they were brought into subjection and a town was founded [there] named San Alifonso.

Let us get on, and stop calling to mind disasters of Captains who did not know how to conquer, and I will relate that when the Treasurer knew that they had wounded his friend Captain Figueroa, he sent promptly

to arrest Alonzo de Herrera, but was not able to capture him because he fled to the mountains, and the Alguacils whom he sent after him brought back as prisoner a soldier, one of those whom Herrera used to have with him, and when he arrived in Mexico, without granting him a hearing, the Treasurer ordered his right hand to be cut off. The soldier was named Cortejo and he was a gentleman by birth.

In addition to this, at that time a page of Gonzalo de Sandoval had some dispute with one of the Treasurer's servants, and stabbed him, at which the Treasurer was very wroth and ordered his hand to be cut off; and this happened at a time when neither Cortés or Sandoval were in Mexico, for they had gone to a great pueblo named Cuernavaca, and they went there so as to remove themselves from Mexico from tumults and gossip, and also to settle certain questions which had arisen between the Caciques of that pueblo.

Then, as soon as Cortés and Sandoval learned by letter that Cortejo and the page were prisoners, and that they intended to cut off their hands, they at once came to Mexico, and when they had spoken and found that there was no help for it, they felt this affront which the Treasurer had put both on Cortés and Sandoval deeply. It is said that Cortés addressed such words to the Treasurer in his presence that he would not listen to them, and was even afraid that they intended to kill him, and on account of this fear the Treasurer summoned soldiers and friends to protect him, and he released the factor and Veedor from the cages, so that as officials of His Majesty they might help one another against Cortés.

After they had been released about eight days, the treasurer was advised by the Factor and other persons who were not on good terms with Cortés that in any

case he should at once banish Cortés from Mexico, for as long as he [Cortés] remained in the city he could never govern properly or secure peace, for there would always be bands of robbers and factions. As soon as this banishment was signed by the Treasurer they went to notify Cortés, who said that he would comply with it very readily, and that he thanked God that, in being banished from the land and city which he and his companions had discovered and gained, through the shedding of much blood and the deaths of so many soldiers, he was thus repaid by persons who were in no way worthy of the offices which they held from His Majesty, and that he would go to Castile to report it to His Majesty and demand justice against them, and that it was gross ingratitude on the part of the Treasurer who was forgetful of the favour [he] Cortés had shown him. He left Mexico at once and went to one of his towns named Coyoacan, and thence to Texcoco, and a few days later to Tlaxcala.

At that time the wife of the Treasurer named Doña Marina Gutiérrez de la Cavalleria, certainly worthy of good remembrance for her many virtues, when she learned what her husband had done in releasing the Factor and Veedor from the cages and in banishing Cortés, on account of the great anxiety she felt, said to her husband, the Treasurer: "Pray God that the things you have done will not turn out badly," and she reminded him of the benefits and favours which Cortés had conferred on them, and the Indian pueblos which he had given them, and [said] that he should endeavour to make friends with him again so that he could return to the City of Mexico, and that he should take great care that they did not kill him; and she said so many things to him that, according to what many persons report, the Treasurer repented of the banishment and even of having released those named by me from the cages, for

in every matter they restrained him and were very hostile to Cortés.

At that time there came from Castile Don Fray Julian Garçes, who was the first Bishop of Tlaxcala and a native of Aragon, and, in honour of the most Christian Emperor our Lord, called himself Carolense; he was a great preacher, and as soon as he came to his Bishopric of Tlaxcala and knew what the Treasurer had done in banishing Cortés, it appeared to him very wrong, and so as to make peace between them he came to a city often mentioned by me, named Texcoco, and, as it is close to the lake, he set out with two large canoes in company with two priests and a friar and his baggage, and came to the City of Mexico. Even before his arrival they had heard in Mexico of his coming, and they went out to receive him with great pomp, and with all the Crosses, and Clergy and religious orders, and the Cabildo and Conquistadores and gentlemen and soldiers, who could be found in Mexico.

After the Bishop had rested for two days, the Treasurer put him forward as mediator to go to the place where Cortés was residing at that time and make them friends again, as he was repealing the decree of banishment so that he [Cortés] could return to Mexico.

The Bishop went off and discussed this [proposed] friendship, but he could effect nothing with Cortés; on the contrary, as I have said, he went on to Texcoco and Tlaxcala accompanied by many gentlemen and other persons.

What Cortés was engaged on was the collection of all the gold and silver he could gather together in order to go to Castile, and in addition to what they gave him as tribute from his pueños, he pledged other rents and those of his friends and Indians who were willing to assist him. Captain Gonzalo de Sandoval and Andrés de Tápiá made

the same preparations and gathered together and collected all the gold and silver they were able from their pueblos, for these two Captains went in company with Cortés to Castile.

While Cortés was at Tlaxcala, many of the settlers from Mexico and other cities went to see him, also soldiers who had no assignment of Indians, and the Caciques from Mexico went to offer their services, and, as there are always turbulent men ready for strife and novelty, these went to advise him that, if he wished to raise himself to be King of New Spain, now was his opportunity, and that they would help him to do so. Cortés made prisoners two of the men who came with this suggestion, and treated them severely, calling them traitors, and was about to hang them. There was also brought to him a letter from other bandits which was sent to him from Mexico, in which they told him the same thing, and, according to rumour, this was done to tempt Cortés so as to catch him in some expressions which might fall from his lips concerning this evil opportunity. As, however, Cortés was always faithful to His Majesty, he uttered threats against those who came to him with these proposals, that they should not come before him again with these suggestions of treason or he would order them to be hanged, and he promptly wrote to the Bishop that he should tell the Treasurer, who, as Governor, should order the traitors who came with these proposals to be punished, [to see to it], otherwise he would himself order them to be hanged.

Let us leave Cortés in Tlaxcala getting ready to go to Castile, and return to the Treasurer and the Factor and Veedor, for just as men who were bandits and longed for disturbances and to mix in tumults came to Cortés, so they went to the Treasurer and Factor and said that Cortés was collecting men to come and kill them, although

he spread the report that he was going to Castile, and it was for that reason that all the Caciques of Mexico and Texcoco and nearly all the pueblos around the lake were in his company, waiting to see when he should order them to begin the attack.

Then the Factor and Veedor were in great fear, believing that he [Cortés] was going to kill them, and in order to enquire and find out if it were true they again importuned the same Bishop to go and see what was the matter, and they wrote with great concern to Cortés asking pardon. The Bishop thought that going to visit Tlaxcala with the intention of creating friendship was a worthy act, and as soon as he arrived where Cortés was staying (after the whole province had come out to receive him), and observed the great loyalty of Cortés and what he had done in arresting the bandits, and the words he had written on that subject, he promptly sent a messenger to the Treasurer and said that Cortés was a very loyal gentleman and faithful servant of His Majesty, and that one might place him in the list of the most famous servants of the Royal Crown of our times, and as for his present occupation it was to provide for his journey and go before his Majesty, and they might drop all suspicion of what had been in their minds. He also wrote that he thought it ill-advised to have banished him [Cortés] and that he [the Treasurer] did not hit the mark on that occasion. It is reported that he said in the letter he wrote: "Oh, Señor Tesorero Alonzo de Estrada, how you have spoiled and muddled this affair."

Let us leave this affair of the letter, for I do not remember whether Cortés returned to Mexico to leave instructions with the persons to whom he gave authority to look after his estate and house, and demand tribute from the pueblos of his encomienda, except that he left a general power of attorney to the Licentiate Juan

Altamirano, a person of great repute, and to Diego de Campo, Alonzo Valiente, and Santa Cruz Burgales, but above all the others to Altamirano. He had already collected many birds differing from those found in Castile, which was a thing well worth seeing, and two tigers and many kegs of coagulated liquid amber and balsam, and another of oil; and four Indians skilful in juggling with a stick with their feet, which in Castile and in all other places would be a thing worth seeing, and other Indians, distinguished dancers, who were accustomed to use some sort of contrivance, so that to all appearance they seem to fly in the air while dancing; and he took three Indian humpbacks who were monstrosities, for their bodies appeared broken and they were very dwarfish. He also took Indian men and women who were very white, and owing to their great whiteness they did not see well. Then the Caciques of Tlaxcala begged him to take in his company three sons of the principal chieftains of that province, and among them was a son of the old blind Xicotenga, who was afterwards called Don Lorenzo de Vargas, and he took other Mexican Caciques.

When his departure was arranged, he received news from Vera Cruz of the arrival of two good and swift ships which brought him letters from Castile, and I will go on to relate their contents.

CHAPTER CXCV.

How letters came to Cortés from Spain from Don Garcia de Loaysa, Cardinal of Sigüenza, who was President of the [Council of] the Indies and soon afterwards Archbishop of Seville, and from other gentlemen, [advising him] in any case to come at once to Castile, and they brought the news that his father Martin Cortés was dead, and what he did about it.

I HAVE already related in the last chapter what took place between Cortés, the Treasurer, the Factor, and the Veedor, and the reason of his banishment from Mexico, and how the Bishop of Tlaxcala came on two occasions to attempt a reconciliation, and how Cortés, who would not [allow himself to] be influenced in the least by letters or in any other way, got ready to go to Castile. At that very moment letters came to him from the President of the Indies, Don Garcia de Loaysa, and from the Duque de Bejar and other gentlemen, in which they told him that, during his absence, complaints against him had been laid before His Majesty, and the complaints contained reports of many ill deeds and deaths which he had caused to be inflicted on those who had been sent out by His Majesty, and that in all events he should return to defend his honour. They also brought him news that his father Martin Cortés had died, and when he saw those letters he was greatly grieved both on account of the death of his father and also for what they falsely said that he had done; and he put on mourning, although he already wore it for the death of his wife Doña Catalina Juarez la Mar-cayda. He showed great grief about his father and paid him as great funeral honours as he was able, and if hitherto he had been eager to go to Castile, from this time forward he made the greater haste about it, for he at once ordered his Mayordomo, named Pedro Ruiz de Esquivel, a native of Seville, to go to Vera Cruz and buy the

two ships which had arrived there and had the reputation of being new and swift, and he was preparing biscuit and salt beef and bacon and all that was necessary for ships' stores very completely, as was befitting a great and rich lord such as Cortés, [including] all such things as could be found in New Spain that were of use on a voyage, and preserves which had come from Spain, and they were so abundant and of such variety that what was left over [when they arrived] in Castile would have sufficed for two ships for another couple of years, even if they had carried many more men.

As the Mayordomo was crossing the Lake of Mexico in a large canoe on his way to a pueblo named Ayotzingo, which is where they disembark from the canoes, and, in order to do more quickly what Cortés had ordered, passed by that place and took with him six Mexican Indian rowers and a negro and certain bars of gold, [somebody] whoever it may have been, laid in wait for him on this same lake and killed him. It was never known who [did the deed] nor were the canoe or the Indians who rowed it or even the negro ever seen again, only about four days later Esquivel was found on an island in the lake, his body half eaten by birds of prey.

Over the death of this Mayordomo there was much conjecture, for some said that he was the sort of man who boasted of things that he himself said happened with mistresses and other ladies, and they spoke of other evil things which they said he did, and on this account he was hated, and there were suspicions about many other things which I will not mention here. His death was never made clear, nor was it much enquired into, nor [did the question] who killed him rouse any deep interest.

Cortés promptly sent other Mayordomos to get the ships ready for him and put in all the provisions and pipes of wine, and ordered proclamation to be made that

whoever wished to go to Castile, he would give them food and a passage free of charge, provided they went with the permission of the Governor. Then Cortés, accompanied by Gonzalo de Sandoval and Andrés de Tápia and other gentlemen, went to Vera Cruz, and after they had confessed and received Communion they embarked. It pleased our Lord God to give him such a passage that in forty-two days he arrived in Castile, without stopping at Havana or at any other island, and he disembarked near the town of Palos near to Our Lady of Rabida, and as soon as they were safely on shore, they fell on their knees on the ground and raised their hands to heaven, giving many thanks to God for the mercies he had always shown them.

They arrived in Castile in the month of December, in the year fifteen hundred and twenty seven. It appears that Gonzalo de Sandoval was very unwell, and sorrow followed on their great joy, for it pleased God within a few days to take him from this life at the town of Palos. The house where he lay belonged to a ropemaker who made ship's tackle, cables and hempen rope, and before he [Sandoval] died he [the rope-maker] stole from him thirteen bars of gold. Sandoval saw him with his own eyes take them from a box, for the rope-maker waited until no one remained in Sandoval's company or he was cunning enough to send Sandoval's servants post haste to La Rabida to summon Cortés. Although Sandoval saw this [done] he did not dare to cry out for, as he was very feeble, languid and ill, he feared the rope-maker (who looked to him to be a ruffian,) would clap a pillow or bolster over his mouth and suffocate him. This host at once fled to Portugal with the bars of gold and nothing was recovered.

Let us return to Cortés, who, as soon as he knew that Sandoval was very ill, came in all haste to where he was,

and Sandoval told him of the crime that his host had committed, and how he had robbed him of the bars of gold and had fled, and, although they made the greatest efforts to recover them, as he had taken refuge in Portugal, he kept possession of them.

Sandoval grew worse of his malady day by day, and the doctors who were attending him advised him to confess at once and receive the holy sacraments and make his will. This he did with great piety and ordered many legacies for the poor as well as to monasteries and he named Cortés as his executor and a sister of his Maria (or sisters), as heiress, who later on married a bastard son of the Conde de Medellin, and after he had prepared his soul and made his will he gave up his spirit to our Lord God who created him.

Great grief was felt at his death, and they buried him in the Monastery of Our Lady of La Rabida with all the pomp that was possible, and Cortés and all the gentlemen in his company put on mourning. May God pardon him, Amen.

Cortés then sent a messenger to His Majesty, and to the Cardinal de Siguenza, to the Duque de Bejar, the Conde de Aguilar and other gentlemen, to announce his arrival at that port, and that Gonzalo de Sandoval had died, and he made a report on the quality of his person and the great services which he had rendered to His Majesty, and that he was a Captain of high reputation, esteemed both as a commander of armies, and for his personal valour. When these letters reached His Majesty, he was delighted at the arrival of Cortés, but he was grieved at the death of Sandoval, for he had already great reports of his magnanimous personality, so too was the Cardinal Don Garcia de Loaysa and the Royal Council of the Indies. Moreover, the Duque de Bejar, the Conde de Aguilar, and other gentlemen

rejoiced greatly, although all regretted the death of Sandoval.

The Duque de Bejar together with the Conde de Aguilar proceeded forthwith to give His Majesty further particulars, for he [Bejar] had already received Cortés' letter, and stated that he was well assured of the loyalty of the men whose sponsor he had become, and that a gentleman who had rendered him [the Emperor] such eminent services would in all other matters prove his loyalty, and that he was grateful to his King and Lord, as was now clearly shown by his acts. This was said by the Duke because at the time they were making accusations and alleging many evil things against Cortés to His Majesty, and he had pledged his head and his fortune three times as surety for Cortés and all of us soldiers who were in his company, that we were very loyal and faithful servants of His Majesty and worthy of great favours, for at that time Peru had not been discovered, nor had it the glamour that it afterwards possessed. His Majesty then sent orders to all the cities and towns, through which Cortés should pass, to show him every honour, and the Duque de Medina Sidonia gave him a great reception in Seville, and presented him with some very fine horses. After he had rested there two days, he went by long stages to Nuestra Señora de Guadalupe to hold novenas,¹ and such was his good fortune that at the same time the Señora Doña Maria de Mendoza, wife of the Comendador Mayor² de Leon, Don Francisco de los Cobos, arrived, who had brought in her company many ladies of high rank, and among them a young lady her sister. When Cortés learned this it gave him much pleasure and as soon as he arrived

¹ Nine day devotions.

² Head of the Military order.

and had worshipped at the shrine of Our Lady and given alms to the poor and ordered masses to be said (for he was in mourning for his father and his wife and for Gonzalo de Sandoval), he went well attended by the gentlemen he had brought from New Spain, and others who had joined his service, to pay his respects to the Lady Doña Maria de Mendoza and the maiden lady her sister, who was very beautiful, and to all the other ladies who had come with them.

Cortés was very courteous and cheerful in every way, and the fame of his great deeds rang throughout Castile and [the gift of] conversation and graceful expression did not fail him, and above all he showed himself very open-handed, and, as he had riches to give away, he began making valuable presents of many golden jewels of many different shapes to all those ladies, and besides the jewels he gave them plumes of green feathers full of gold and silver work and of pearls, and in all that he gave he showed preference for the Lady Doña Maria de Mendoza and her sister. After he had made those rich presents he gave to the young lady, for herself alone, certain slabs of very fine gold, so that she might make jewels of them. After this he ordered much liquid amber and balsam to be given them so that they might perfume themselves and he ordered the dexterous Indian jugglers to perform with the stick with their feet so as to give entertainment to those ladies, and they [the jugglers] passed the stick from one foot to the other, a thing which pleased them and caused them wonder to behold. In addition to all this Cortés found out that one of the mules of the litter in which the young lady had come had gone lame, and secretly he ordered two good ones to be bought and given to the Mayordomos who had charge of her service. He remained in that town of Guadalupe until they set out for the Court, which at that time was at Toledo, and accom-

panied them, paying them attentions and giving banquets and fêtes, and proved himself to be the perfect courtier who well knew how to represent and act the part, so that the Señora Doña Maria de Mendoza proposed to him marriage, with her lady sister. If Cortés had not been betrothed to the Señora Doña Juana de Zuñiga, a niece of the Duque de Bejar, he certainly would have received great favour from the Comendador Mayor de Leon and from the Señora Maria de Mendoza his wife, and His Majesty would have given him the government of New Spain.

Let us stop talking about this marriage, for all things are guided and directed by the hand of God, and I will relate how the Señora Doña Maria de Mendoza wrote in haste to her husband the Comendador Mayor de Leon, greatly extolling the affairs of Cortés, [saying] that 'the fame that he had acquired by his heroic deeds was nothing in comparison to what she had seen and known of his personality and conversation and openhandedness, and she related to him other excellencies she had noticed in Cortés, and the services he had rendered her, and [added] that she might consider him her devoted courtier, and that he should inform His Majesty of it all and beg him to grant him favours. As soon as the Comendador Mayor saw the letter of his wife he was very pleased with it, and as he was the most intimate friend of our Lord the Emperor that there was, or had been in our times, he took the letter itself to His Majesty of Glorious Memory, and on his own behalf entreated him to favour him [Cortés] in all things, and this His Majesty did, as I shall relate further on.

Some time after Cortés had arrived at the Court, the Duque de Bejar and the Admiral told Cortés himself in sport, that they had heard His Majesty say, when he knew that he [Cortés] had come to Castile, that he was

desirous to see and know personally one who had rendered him so many great services, and of whom they had related so many iniquities that he had perpetrated with craft and cunning.

After Cortés's arrival at Court, His Majesty had quarters allotted to him, while the Duque de Bejar on his own part and that of the Conde de Aguilar and other great Lords his relations, sallied forth to receive him, showing him much honour. Next day by His Majesty's permission he went to kiss his royal feet, taking in his company as mediators, so as to dignify him the more, the Admiral of Castile, the Duque de Bejar and the Comendador Mayor de Leon.

After Cortés had asked leave to speak, he knelt on the ground and His Majesty bade him rise, then he set forth his many services and all that had happened in the conquests, and the journey to Honduras, and the plots hatched in Mexico by the Factor and Veedor, and related all that he could call to mind, and as it was a very long story, so as not to weary him with other matters, he said: "Your Majesty must be tired with listening to me, and for so great an Emperor and monarch of all the world as is your Majesty, it is no fitting that a vassal such as I should be so daring, and as my tongue is not accustomed to converse with your Majesty, it may be that my meaning is not expressed with that proper respect that I ought to show. I have here a memorandum in which your Majesty can note, if so inclined, all the events in detail as they happened. Then he fell on his knees to kiss his feet for the favour he had deigned to show him in having listened. Then our Lord the Emperor bade him rise, and the Admiral and the Duque de Bejar said to His Majesty that he was worthy of great favour, and he [the Emperor] created him Marques del Valle and caused certain pueblos to be

bestowed upon him, and further ordered him to be invested with the insignia of Santiago, and as they did not assign revenues with them he kept silent at the time; I do not well know in what manner [it was arranged]. He also appointed him Captain General of New Spain and the South Sea. Then Cortés again bowed down to kiss his royal feet, and His Majesty once more bade him rise.

A few days after he had received these great favours Cortés fell ill and was so exhausted that they thought he would die, and the Duque de Bejar and the Comendador Mayor, Don Francisco de los Cobos, entreated His Majesty that, as Cortés had rendered him such distinguished services, he would go to visit him at his lodging before he died, and His Majesty went attended by Dukes, Marquesses and Counts, and by Don Francisco de los Cobos, and visited him, and it was a very great favour and as such it was looked on by the Court.

Later on when Cortés was recovered, one Sunday when His Majesty was already in the Cathedral attended by Dukes, Marquesses and Counts, and they were seated in their places according to the style and rank by which among them they were accustomed to take their seats, Cortés arrived rather late at Mass, on purpose, and, as he was considered such an intimate of His Majesty, and the Conde de Nasao and the Duque de Bajar and the Admiral held him in favour, he passed in front of some of those illustrious noblemen with his mourning train held up, and went to seat himself near the Conde de Nasao who had his seat nearest to the Emperor. And when he was seen to pass in front of those great and illustrious noblemen without apology, they murmured at his great presumption and daring and considered it disrespectful, and they could not credit him with the good manners he was reputed to possess. Among these Dukes

and Marquesses was the Duque de Bejar and the Admiral of Castile and the Conde de Aguilar, and they answered that this was not to be attributed to want of consideration on the part of Cortés, because His Majesty, in order to honour him, had commanded him to sit near the Conde de Nasao, and moreover, His Majesty ordered them to mark and take note that Cortés and his companions had conquered so many countries that all Christendom was beholden to him, while they had inherited the position they held for services which had been performed by their ancestors, and because Cortés was betrothed to his [the Duque de Bejar's] niece, His Majesty directed him to be honoured.

To return to Cortés, I must state that finding himself so exalted by his intimacy with our Lord the Emperor and with the Duque de Bejar, the Conde Nasao and even the Admiral, and that he already had the title of Marquis, he began to hold himself in such high esteem that he was not as attentive as he should have been to those who had favoured him and helped him towards His Majesty's conferring the Marquisate on him, neither to the Cardinal Fray Garcia de Loaysa, nor to Cobos nor to the Señora Doña Maria de Mendoza, nor to the Members of the Royal Council of the Indies, for all were neglected. All his attentions were for the Duque de Bejar, the Conde de Nasao and the Admiral, thinking that the game was well started by his being intimate with such great noblemen, and he began to beg His Majesty, with much persistence, to bestow the Government of New Spain on him, and on this account he again recited his services and [said] that if he were governor he would undertake the discovery of very rich islands and countries in the South Sea, and he placed himself at his service with many ceremonious expressions. He even employed again as mediators the Conde de Nasao and the Duque de Bejar,

and the Admiral, and His Majesty answered that he should be content with having been given the Marquisate with the highest revenue, that he must also reward those who had helped him to acquire the country, for, as they had conquered it, they were worthy of enjoying it. From this time on the intimacy he enjoyed [with His Majesty] began to wane, for, according to what many say, the Cardinal, who was President of the Royal Council of the Indies, and most of the other noblemen who were consulted by His Majesty about the affairs and rewards of Cortés, were of opinion that he should not be made Governor; others say that the Comendador Mayor and the Señora Doña Maria de Mendoza were somewhat opposed to him, because he paid little attention to them. Anyhow, for one reason or the other, our Lord the Emperor would not listen to him any more however much he was importuned about the Government.

Presently His Majesty went to Barcelona to embark for Flanders, and many Dukes, Marquises, Counts, and great noblemen accompanied him, and Cortés himself went as far as Barcelona, already bearing his title of Marquis, and he was constantly urging those Dukes and Marquises to intercede with His Majesty to bestow the Government on him, and His Majesty in reply bade the Conde de Nasao not to speak to him again on that subject, for he had given him [Cortés] a Marquisate with greater revenue than he the Conde de Nasao possessed with all his rank.

Let us leave His Majesty embarked on a prosperous voyage, and return to Cortés and some of the grand festivals arranged for his nuptial ceremony, and the rich jewels which he gave to the Señora Doña Juana de Zuñiga his wife, which were of such quality, according to what some say who had seen them and their preciousness, that more valuable ones had never existed in Castile. Our

Lady the most serene Empress Doña Ysabel wished to possess some of them on account of what the lapidaries told her, and it is said regarding certain pieces which Cortés had presented to her, that he had made a mistake, or he did not intend giving her some of the most precious, such as those he gave to his wife Doña Juana de Zuñiga.

I must stop calling to mind other things that happened to Cortés in Castile during the time he remained at Court, where he made ostentation with much festivity, and according to what persons say who came from there and had been in his company, there were rumours that Our Lady the most Serene Empress Doña Ysabel was not so well disposed regarding the affairs of Cortés as when first he arrived at Court, as she had found out that he had been ungrateful to the Cardinal and the Royal Council of the Indies, and even to the Comendador Mayor de Leon and to the Señora Doña Maria de Mendoza, and she got to know he possessed other very rich [precious] stones, better than those he had given to her; notwithstanding all this that was reported to her she ordered the members of the Royal Council of the Indies to assist him in every way. Then Cortés agreed to send, for a given number of years, at his own expense, two ships of war to the South Sea, well found and with sixty soldiers and captains with all kinds of arms, to discover Islands and other countries, and that for whatever he might discover he should be granted certain favour; these contracts I will pass over, for I do not now remember them.

At that time Don Pedro de la Cueva, Comendador of Alcántara, brother of the Duque de Albuquerque, was at Court, and this gentleman was he whom His Majesty had sent to New Spain with a great escort of soldiers to cut off Cortés's head if he should find him guilty, and the heads of any other persons who had done any disservice to His Majesty, and when he saw Cortés

and knew that His Majesty had created him a Marquis and that he was about to be married to the Señora Doña Juana de Zuñiga, he was greatly rejoiced at it, and daily meetings took place between Don Pedro de la Cueva and the Marquis Don Hernando Cortés, and he told Cortés that, if by chance he should have gone to New Spain and taken the soldiers His Majesty commanded him, however loyal and justified he had found him to be, he [Cortés] would have had to pay the cost of the soldiers and even of his own journey, a matter of more than three hundred thousand pesos, so that he [Cortés] did better by presenting himself before His Majesty. They held many other conversations which I will not relate here, about which persons who were present at them wrote to us from Castile, as well as all the other matters mentioned by me in the chapter that treats of it. Besides, our proctors wrote whole chapters on the subject, and even the Marquis himself mentioned the great rewards he obtained from His Majesty, but he did not give the reason why he was not given the Government.

Let us leave this and I will relate how a few days after he was made a Marquis he sent to Rome to kiss the sanctified feet of our Holy Father Pope Clement, for Adrian, who protected us, had been dead three or four years. He despatched a gentleman named Juan de Herrada as his ambassador, and with him he sent a rich present of precious stones and jewels of gold and two Indians dextrous at juggling the stick with the feet, and he reported to him his arrival in Castile, and [mentioned] the countries he had conquered and the services he had rendered to God in the first place and to our great Emperor, and he gave him a full account in a Memorial of those countries, how very extensive they were, and what was their nature, and how all the Indians were idolators and had become Christians, and many

other things which it was proper to mention to our Holy Father. As I did not get to know in detail how this matter ended, I will stop writing about it here, and even this, which I here relate, we came to know later on from Juan de Herrada himself, when he returned from Rome to New Spain, and we learned that he was sent to beg our most Holy Father to remit part of the tithes. In order that curious readers may fully understand—this Juan de Herrada was a good soldier who had gone in our company on the expedition to Honduras when Cortés went, and after his return from Rome he went to Peru, and Don Diego de Almagro appointed him as tutor to his son, the youth Don Diego, and he was most intimate with Don Diego Almagro, who was chief of those who killed Don Francisco Pizarro the elder, and was afterwards Maestre de Campo¹ to Almagro the younger, and was present when he gave battle to Vaca de Castro, when Don Diego Almagro the younger was defeated. To return to what happened to Juan de Herrada in Rome—after he had been to kiss the sainted feet of His Holiness, he presented the gifts which Cortés sent to him,² and the Indians who juggled the stick with their feet, and His Holiness greatly appreciated them, and said that he thanked God that such great countries had been discovered in his days, and such numbers of people had embraced our holy faith, and he ordered processions to be made and all to give thanks and praise to God for it, and he said that Cortés and all of us his soldiers had rendered great service, first of all to God, and then to our Lord the Emperor Don Carlos and to all Christendom, and that we were worthy of great reward.

¹ Quarter-master.

² This may have been the occasion on which the Masks mentioned in the Appendix to Vol. I. were presented to Pope Clement VII.

Then he sent us a Bull to absolve us from the blame and punishment of all our sins, and other indulgencies for the Hospitals and Churches, and general pardons, and he approved of all Cortés had accomplished in New Spain in accordance and conformity with what his predecessor Pope Adriano had done, and he wrote to Cortés in answer to his letter, but what was contained in it [his reply] I do not know, for as I have already said it was from this Juan de Herrada and from a soldier named Campo, when they returned from Rome, that I learned what I here write down. According to what they say, after he had been in Rome ten days and had taken the Indians, who were master jugglers with the stick on their feet, before His Holiness and the consecrated Cardinals, who were delighted at the show, His Holiness did Juan de Herrada the honour to make him Conde Palatino, and ordered him a certain number of ducats for his return journey, together with a letter of recommendation to our Lord the Emperor that he should appoint him his Captain, and give him good Indians in assignment. As Cortés no longer held command in New Spain and did not give him any of the things which the Holy Father commanded, he [Herrada] went to Peru, where he became a Captain.





BOOK XVI.

THE RULE OF THE AUDIENCIA.

CHAPTER CXCVI.

How during the time Cortés was in Castile with the title of Marquis, the Royal Audiencia came to Mexico, and with what it was busied.



WHILE Cortés was in Castile bearing the title of Marquis, at that time the Royal Audiencia arrived in Mexico according to His Majesty's orders, as I have already stated in the former chapter which deals with the subject. There came as President Nuño de Guzman, who used to be Governor in Panuco, and four Licentiates as Oidores,¹ whose names were Matienzo, said to be a native of Biscay or the neighbourhood of Navarre, and Delgadillo of Granada and one Maldonado of Salamanca (this was not the Licentiate Alonzo Maldonado the Good who was governor of Guatemala), and there came the Licentiate Parada who used to be formerly in the Island of Cuba.

When these four Oidores arrived at Mexico, after they

¹ Oidor = Judge or Assessor of the Audiencia.

had been given a great reception on their entry into the City, within fifteen or twenty days of their coming they showed themselves to be thoroughly capable of executing justice, and they brought greater powers than were ever afterwards given to Presidents or Viceroy's of New Spain, and this was in order to carry out the perpetual assignment [of Indians], giving preference to the Conquistadores and conferring great rewards on them, for so His Majesty had commanded.

They at once gave notice of their arrival to all the cities and towns which at that time were settled in New Spain, so that they could send Proctors with records and tithe accounts of the pueblos of Indians in each province, so as to make the assignment perpetual. Within a few days there gathered together in Mexico the Proctors from all the cities and towns and even from Guatemala, besides many other Conquistadores.

At that time I was [present] in the City of Mexico as Proctor and Syndic of the town of Coatzacoalcos, where I was then a settler, and when I saw what the President and Oidores required I went post haste to our town for the election of those who should come as Proctors to see to the perpetual assignment. When I arrived, there was a good deal of difficulty about choosing who should go, for some settlers wished their friends to go, and others would not permit it, and as the result of the voting Captain Luis Marin and I were chosen.

When we reached Mexico, nearly all the Proctors of most of the towns and cities who were gathered together demanded the perpetual assignment according to His Majesty's commands.

However, by that time Nuño de Guzman, Matienzo and Delgadillo had already changed their minds, and the other two Oidores Maldonado and Parada had died of pleurisy soon after arriving in the City (and if Cortés

had been there, as there are always evil-minded persons about, they would have denounced him and would have said that he had killed them). To go back to my story, many persons who were very well informed say that it was the Factor Salazar who was the cause of their changing their minds and not making the assignment as His Majesty had ordered, for he became such an intimate friend of Nuño de Guzman and of Delgadillo that they did nothing but what he ordered, and whatever he advised they conceded, so that all came to a standstill. What they [the Oidores] advised was that he [Nuño de Guzman] should on no account grant a perpetual assignment, for if he did so they [the Audiencia] would lose their authority, and the Conquistadores and settlers would not hold them in such high esteem if it were said that he [Nuño de Guzman] could neither deprive them of Indians or grant more than those he should then allot them; but [acting] otherwise he would always have them under his thumb, and could give or take away [Indians] from whomsoever he pleased, and they [the Audiencia] would become very rich and powerful.

It was also arranged between the Factor and Nuño de Guzman and Delgadillo that the Factor himself should go to Castile to obtain the Government of New Spain for Nuño de Guzman, for they already knew that Cortés was not so much in favour with His Majesty as when he first went to Castile, and it [the Government] had not been granted to him, notwithstanding all the intercessors whom he induced to plead with His Majesty to give it to him.

When the Factor embarked in a ship named "La Sornosa," it went ashore in a great storm on the coast of Coatzacoalcos, and he was saved in a boat and returned to Mexico, and his journey to Castile never took place.

Let us leave this and I will relate that what Nuño de Guzman and Matienzo and Delgadillo were engaged

on, as soon as they arrived in Mexico, was in taking the Residencia of the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada, which he rendered very well. If he [Estrada] had proved himself as much a man as we believed him to be, he might have assumed the Governorship, for His Majesty had not dismissed him from the Government, on the contrary (as I have stated in the last chapter), an order had come from His Majesty a few months earlier that the Treasurer should be sole Governor, and not jointly with Gonzalo de Sandoval (who has often been mentioned by me before), and he [His Majesty] had approved of the Assignments which he [the Treasurer] had previously given; and he [His Majesty] did not name Nuño de Guzman in the Decrees otherwise than as President and Assessor in conjunction with the Oidores, and in addition to this, if he [the Treasurer] had taken charge of the Government himself, all the settlers in Mexico, and we Conquistadores who at that time were in the City, would have been in his favour, for we knew that His Majesty had not deprived him of the office he held, and besides we saw that during the time he governed he did justice and had a great good will and much zeal to comply with what His Majesty ordered. Within a few days he died of vexation at it [missing his opportunity].

I must cease speaking of this and relate that what the Royal Audiencia next set about doing was to act in antagonism to the affairs of the Marquis, and they sent to Guatemala to take the Residencia of Jorge de Alvarado, and there went [to do it] one Orduña the elder, a native of Tordesillas, but what happened at the Residencia I do not know.

Then they presented many claims against Cortés through the public prosecutor, and the Factor Salazar on his own account made other claims against him, and the depositions which they brought into Court were

drawn up with very great disrespect and very mischievously worded, and in these depositions they stated that Cortés was a tyrant and traitor who had done many injuries to His Majesty, and many other evil things so malicious that the Licentiate Juan Altamirano (already mentioned by me, who was the person with whom Cortés had left his power of Attorney when he went to Castile) rose to his feet in the Court itself and, doffing his cap, said, with much respect to the President and Oidores, that he prayed his Excellency to order the Factor Salazar to say in the depositions what was respectful, and not permit him to say of the Marquis, who was an upright gentleman and a faithful servant of His Excellency, such malicious and evil words, and that he demanded proper justice. What the Licentiate Altamirano entreated them there in the Court was of no avail, for the Factor had prepared for the following day other most disgraceful depositions, and matters came to such a pass that over these depositions the Licentiate Altamirano and the Factor, there in the presence of the President and Oidores, quarrelled, using evil and offensive terms to one another, and Altamirano drew a dagger and was going to stab the Factor had not Nuño de Guzman and Matienzo and Delgadillo prevented him.

The whole city was at once in a state of disturbance because they had taken the Licentiate Altamirano as a prisoner to the Arsenal, and the Factor to his lodgings, and we Conquistadores went to the President to intercede for Altamirano, and within three days they released him from the prison and we made him and the Factor friends.

Let us leave this disturbance, which was already quieted and friendship restored, and go on ahead, for another greater storm soon broke. This was that there had now arrived here in Mexico a relation of Captain

Pánfilo de Narvaez called Zaballos, whom the wife of Narvaez, named Maria de Valenzuela, had despatched from Cuba in search of her husband Narvaez, who had gone as Governor to the Rio de Palmas, for she had already heard a report that he was lost or dead. He [Zaballos] brought power of Attorney to take possession of his [Narvaez's] properties wherever they might be found, believing that they had been brought to New Spain.

When this Zaballos arrived in Mexico (according to what Zaballos said, and what was rumoured), Nuño de Guzman and Matienzo and Delgadillo persuaded him secretly to lodge a claim and complaint against all the Conquistadores who had joined with Cortés to defeat Narvaez when he lost his eye and when his property was burned. He also demanded [compensation for] the deaths of those who there died.

When Zaballos had made his complaint as they had instructed him, with long declarations about it, they arrested nearly all the Conquistadores who happened to be in the city and were proved to have participated, who numbered more than three hundred and fifty. They also arrested me, and they sentenced us [to a fine of] so many pesos de oro of Tepusque, and they banished us five leagues from Mexico, but they soon repealed the banishment, and even from many of us they never collected the money of the judgment, for it was a small sum. Following this disturbance the persons who hated Cortés made another claim on him, which was that he had carried off much gold and silver and jewels of great value which were acquired in the capture of Mexico, and even the personal treasure of Guatemoc, and gave no share of it to the Conquistadores except eighty pesos, and had sent it in his own name to Castile saying that he thereby served His Majesty, and that he kept the

greater part of it and did not send it all, and what he sent was stolen at sea by Juan Florin a Frenchman or pirate who was hanged at the port of El Pico, as I have related in former chapters, and that Cortés was bound to repay all that Juan Florin stole as well as what he had hidden. They also advanced other claims and all were [decided against him], and they sentenced him to make payment with his possessions, and they sold them. Moreover they found a way and contrived that a certain Juan Juarez, a brother-in-law of Cortés, already often mentioned by me, should publicly enter an action in the Courts about the death of his sister Doña Catalina Juarez la Marçayda, which he brought forward in the Court as he had been ordered to do, and he called witnesses who said how and in what way her death took place. On top of this another complication ensued, which was that when they brought the claim against Cortés, which I have mentioned, for the personal treasure of Guatemoc and the gold and silver which was captured in Mexico, many of us who were friends of Cortés came together, with the permission of an Alcalde, in the house of one Garcia Holguin, and signed [a statement] that we declined to share in those claims for the gold or the personal treasure, nor as far as we were concerned should Cortés be compelled to pay anything on account of it, and we said that we knew certainly and clearly that he sent it to His Majesty, and we approved of his doing that service to our Lord and King. When the President and the Oidores saw that we were presenting petitions about this they ordered us all to be arrested, saying that without their permission we should not have met together or signed anything, but when they saw the permission [given] by the Alcalde, although they banished us five leagues from Mexico, they soon repealed the banishment, for all that we looked on it as a great hardship and grievance.

Soon after this, a proclamation was issued ordering all descendants within the fourth generation from parents or ancestors who were Jews, Moors, or such persons as had been burned or executed by the Holy Inquisition, to leave New Spain within six months, on pain of the loss of half their property.

It was interesting to watch the accusations made at that time, for each one informed against the other and impeached the other's statements. However, two only left New Spain, one a shop-keeper of Vera Cruz, and the other a Notary of Mexico, and within a year the Notary brought a license to remain in New Spain and married off a daughter whom he had brought from Castile, for he alleged that he had rendered service to His Majesty.

In spite of all these things which the President and Oidores did so perversely, they were not such strict rulers that they carried out [their decisions] with rigour, nor gave sentence except for a few pesos of low grade gold, called Tepuzque, which they even neglected to collect from those who did not [voluntarily] pay it. To the Conquistadores they were very kind, and fulfilled His Majesty's commands in so far as to give Indians to the true Conquistadores, and to none of them did they fail to give Indians, even when [such grants] were suspended, and they conferred many favours on them. What was their undoing was the excessive license they granted for branding slaves,¹ for they granted licenses to deceased persons, and the servants of Nuño de Guzman and of Delgadillo and Matienzo sold these. Then in the case of Panuco they branded so many that they went near to depopulating the province. Furthermore they did not reside in their offices, nor take their seats in Court every

¹ Blotted out in the original: "for had they long remained in office New Spain would have been ruined."

day as they were bound to do, [but] went about to banquets, and indulged in love-making and gambling, and some of them were embarrassed by it.¹ Nuño de Guzman, who was generous and of noble rank, sent as a Christmas present a warrant for a pueblo called Guazpaltepeque to the accountant Alborno, who had arrived a few days before from Castile and came married to a lady named Doña Catalina de Loayza. Rodrigo de Alborno also brought a license from His Majesty to set up a factory for making sugar at a pueblo called Cempoala, which town was a few years later destroyed.

To go back to our story, Nuño de Guzman bestowed these franchises and branded many Indians as slaves, and gave many annoyances to Cortés, and it was said of the Licentiate Delgadillo that he caused Indians to be given to persons who contributed certain amounts and became his partners, also that he appointed his brother, named Berrio, Chief Alcalde of the town of Oaxaca, and his brother was detected in taking bribes and caused many injuries to the settlers. It was also found out that he had appointed to the townships of the Zapotecs another deputy named Delgadillo like himself, who was also found to accept bribes and perpetrate injustice.

As for the Licentiate Matienzo, he was an old man, and they asserted of him that his vice was drinking too much wine, and that he went too often to the orchards to hold banquets, taking with him three or four convivial men who were hard drinkers, and, when they were all seated and comfortable, that one of them took a wine bag of wine and from afar off with this same wine bag made a cry such as they [use to] call the hawks to the lure, and the old man went as though his wings were clipped to the

¹ Blotted out in the original: "many days at it."

wine bag, and pricked it and drank from it. They also made a charge against him that they spent a whole week and several feast days in dicing, and that Nuño de Guzman and Delgadillo and Matienzo were the umpires at it, and greatly preferred dicing to sitting in Court, and they even suspected that many of the [winning] numbers fell to those whom they wished to favour.

There were so many complaints lodged against them, with proofs and even letters from Bishops and ecclesiastics, that when His Majesty and the Lords of the royal Council of the Indies saw the reports and letters which were brought against them, he [His Majesty] promptly ordered that the whole Royal Audiencia should be completely removed without delay, and that they should be punished, and another President and Oidores be appointed who were to be learned and honourable, and fair in doing justice. He also ordered that they should at once go to the province of Panuco to enquire how many thousand slaves had been branded. Matienzo himself went by His Majesty's orders, for this elderly Oidor had fewer charges against him and was a better judge than the others. Furthermore, the licenses which had been issued for branding slaves were declared invalid, and all the irons used for branding were ordered to be destroyed, and from this time onwards no more slaves were to be made, and it was even ordered that a list should be compiled of all those [slaves] which there were in New Spain, so that they should not be sold nor moved from one province to another.

In addition to this he [His Majesty] decreed that all the allotments and assignments of Indians which Nuño de Guzman and the other Oidores had given to relations or hangers on, or to their friends or other persons, were worthless, and immediately, without further argument,

should be taken from them and given to the persons whom His Majesty had ordered to have them.

I should like to call to mind here what lawsuits and arguments arose over this annulment of the Encomiendas of Indians which Nuño de Guzman together with the Oidores had granted. Some protested that they were Conquistadores who were not, others that they were settlers of so many years standing, and that, if they visited or were accustomed to enter the house of the President and Oidores, it was in order to do them service and honour, and to be with them and do what they were ordered by them in matters which were necessary for His Majesty's service, and that they did not enter their houses as servants or hangers on. Each one defended and alleged what was most to his profit, and affairs so turned out that very few of those to whom they had given Indians were deprived of them, except those that I will now mention:—the pueblos of Guazpaltepeque [were taken] from the accountant Rodrigo de Albornoz, to whom Nuño de Guzman had given them as a Christmas present; they also deprived Villaroel, the husband of Ysabel de Ojeda, of another pueblo of Cuernavaca, and they also took away those of a Mayordomo of Nuño de Guzman named Villegas, and of other relations and servants of these same Oidores; some [however] kept them.

When this news which came from Castile was known in Mexico, that the whole of the Royal Audiencia was entirely dismissed, what Nuño de Guzman and Delgadillo and Matienzo set about doing was at once to send Proctors to Castile to defend their affairs with evidence of witnesses, whom they intended to select as they pleased, in order that they might say that they were very good Judges and carried out His Majesty's commands, and [give] other assurances to which it would be useful to give utterance, so that in Castile they might be considered good Judges.

Then, in order to choose the persons who should go with authority to represent them, and to discuss matters which were of importance to that city and to New Spain and its Government, they ordered all of us Proctors who held authority from the cities and towns, who happened to be in Mexico at the time, together with certain Conquistadores, persons of quality, to assemble together in the cathedral church, and they expected that we should by our votes choose the Factor Salazar to go as Proctor to Spain. As I have already said before, although Nuño de Guzman, Matienzo and Delgadillo committed some irregularities mentioned by me previously, on the other hand they had been very good to all the Conquistadores and settlers in the matter of giving us Indians who were unemployed, and, relying on this, they thought that we should vote for the Factor, who was the person they wished to send in their name.

When we were assembled in the principal Church of the City, as we were ordered, so great were the cries, confusion and disorder made by a number of persons who had not been summoned on that business, but who entered by force into the church, that although we ordered them to get out of it they would not do so nor even be silent, and finally they shouted as it were in concert. When we saw this we cleared out of the Church and went to tell the President and Oidores that we would postpone it [the election] until next day, and that in the house of the President himself, where the Royal Audiencia meets, we would choose whom we thought advisable. Later on, as it seemed to us they wished us to name only persons who were friends of Nuño de Guzman and Delgadillo and Matienzo, we agreed that one person should be chosen on behalf of the Oidores themselves and the other on behalf of Cortés, and Bernaldino Vázquez de Tápia was named on behalf of Cortés, and on behalf

of the Oidores, one Antonio Caravajal, who was a Captain of the launches. However it occurred to me at the time that both Bernaldino Vásquez de Tápia and Caravajal were much more favourable to the affairs of Nuño de Guzman than to those of Cortés, and they had cause for it, because they [the Audiencia] treated us better and carried out part of His Majesty's orders about giving us Indians, which Cortés never did, although he had been able to give them more easily than anyone during the time he held the Government. Yet as we Spaniards are very loyal, and Cortés had been our Captain, we had more affection for him than he had inclination to do us a good turn, notwithstanding His Majesty's orders to do so, when as Governor he was well able.

When those named by me had already been chosen, other disputes arose about the instructions they were to take with them, for [some] said to the President that it was due to the service of God and of His Majesty and met with the approval of all the Proctors that Cortés should not return to New Spain, for if he were in the country there would always be factions and revolts and no good governors, and perchance he might rise in rebellion. Most of us Proctors contradicted this and [maintained] that he was a very loyal and faithful servant of His Majesty.

At that time Don Pedro de Alvarado, who had come from Castile, arrived in Mexico, and brought with him [the appointment as] Governor of Guatemala and Adelantado, and Comendador of [the order of] Santiago, and he was married to a Lady named Doña Francisca de la Cueva, but that lady died as soon as she arrived at Vera Cruz. Then, as I have said, he reached Mexico, he and all his servants in deep mourning. As soon as he understood the accusations which they were sending on behalf of the President and Oidores, he took steps

that he, the Adelantado, and the other Proctors and some of the Conquistadores should write to His Majesty about all that the Royal Audiencia were attempting to do. When the Proctors already named by me went to Castile with the instructions and charges as to what they were to ask, the Royal Council of the Indies understood that all was aimed against Cortés through passion, and they did not care to do anything agreeable to Nuño de Guzman or the other Oidores, for it had been decreed by His Majesty that they should at once be deprived of their offices.

Moreover, at this time when all was going against him, Cortés was in Castile and stood up for his honour and his position, and he got ready to come to New Spain with the Señora Marquesa his wife and household, and, while he is on the way, I will relate how Nuño de Guzman proceeded to settle the province of Jalisco and succeeded in doing it much better than Cortés, as regards the discoveries he sent to make, as will be seen later on.

CHAPTER CXCVII.

How Nuño de Guzman, [when he] learned from letters which came to him from Castile that His Majesty had ordered him to be deprived of the Presidency, and the Oidores [to be dismissed], and that others would come in their places, decided to go and bring to peace and conquer the province of Jalisco which is now called New Galicia.

WHEN Nuño de Guzman knew through certain letters that he was to be deprived of the office of President, and the Oidores [of theirs], and that other Oidores were coming, and as Nuño de Guzman was still President at that time, he collected all the soldiers he was able, both horsemen and musketeers and crossbowmen, to accom-

pany him to a province called Jalisco, and those who did not go willingly he bribed to go or [sent them] by force, or they had to pay money to other soldiers to go as substitutes, and if they possessed horses he seized them, and at most he paid them half what they were worth. The rich settlers in Mexico assisted as far as they were able,¹ and he took many Mexican Indians with him to help him, some as carriers, others as warriors, and he caused great annoyance in the pueblos through which they passed with his equipage, and they reached the province of Mechuacan as that was on their road.

The natives of that province in times past possessed much gold, and, although it was of low grade (because it was mixed with silver), they gave him a quantity of it. Then because Cazonzin, for so he was called, who was the principal Cacique of the province, did not give him as much gold as he demanded, he tortured him and burnt his feet. Moreover he demanded Indian men and women for his service, and, on account of other petty contentions which they brought against the poor Cacique, he hanged him, which was the wickedest and most brutal thing a President or any other person could do; all those who were in his company considered it ill done and cruel of him.

He took from that province many Indians with loads to where he founded the city now called Santiago de Compostela, at great expense to the Treasury of His Majesty and the settlers from Mexico whom he had brought by force.

I will leave it here, because I was not present on that march.² However I know for certain that Cortés and Nuño de Guzman were never on good terms, and

¹ Blotted out in the original: "by force or willingly."

² Blotted out in the original: "nor knew what else happened."

I also know that Nuño de Guzman stayed without interruption in that province until His Majesty ordered them to send to Jalisco for him and to bring him as prisoner, at his own expense, to Mexico, to give an account of the claims and judgments given against him on the petition of Matienzo and Delgadillo before the Royal Audiencia, which had newly come at that time. I will leave him here in this situation and will relate how the Royal Audiencia arrived in Mexico and what it did.

CHAPTER CXCVIII.

How the Royal Audiencia arrived at Mexico, and what it very justly accomplished.

I HAVE already related in the last chapter how His Majesty ordered the dismissal of all the entire Royal Audiencia of Mexico, and annulled the assignments of Indians which the President and Oidores, who composed it, had granted, because they bestowed them on their relations and hangers-on, and other persons who did not deserve them; and His Majesty ordered them to be taken away and given to the Conquistadores who held poor assignments.

Moreover, when it became known that they were not executing justice, nor carrying out his Royal Commands, he appointed other Oidores to come, who were men of learning and integrity, and charged them to do justice in all things.

There came as President Don Sebastian Ramfres of Villa Escusa, who at that time was Bishop of Santo Domingo, with four Licentiates as Oidores, namely, the Licentiate Alonzo Maldonado of Salamanca, the Licentiate Zaynos of Toro or of Zamora, the Licentiate

Vasco de Quirova of Madrigal (who was afterwards Bishop of Mechucan) and the Licentiate Salmeron of Madrid.

The Oidores arrived in Mexico before the Bishop of Santo Domingo, and two great receptions were given to the Oidores who came first, and also to the President who came a few days later. They at once ordered proclamation to be made of a General Residencia, and many settlers and proctors came from all the cities and towns, and even Caciques and chieftains, and they made so many complaints of the late President and Oidores, and of oppressions, briberies, and acts of injustice they had committed, that the President and Oidores who took their declarations were amazed. Moreover the agents of Cortés put in so many claims on account of the effects and property which had been forcibly sold at auction, as I have previously stated, that, if all that they claimed had been approved, it would have amounted to over two hundred thousand pesos de oro.

As Nuño de Guzman was in Jalisco and had no intention of coming to New Spain to render his accounts, Delgadillo and Matienzo, when their Residencia was taken, pleaded that all those claims which were advanced against them were chargeable against Nuño de Guzman, who as President had in fact given the orders, and they were not responsible for them, and that they should send for him to come to Mexico to answer the charges brought against him.

Although the Royal Audiencia had already sent a writ to Jalisco ordering him to appear personally in Mexico, he would not come, and the President and Oidores, so as not to throw New Spain into confusion, ignored it, but reported it to His Majesty and the Royal Council of the Indies, who on this account promptly sent a Licentiate named Fulano de la Torre, a native of Badajos, to take his Residencia in the province of Jalisco, and bring

him to Mexico and imprison him in the common goal. He was also commissioned to compel Nuño de Guzman to repay to us all the fines he had imposed on us Conquistadores over the affair of Narvaez and the matter of the signatures, when they made us prisoners, as I have related in the last chapter which speaks of it.

I will leave the Licentiate de la Torre getting ready to come to New Spain, and relate in what the Residencia resulted, and it was that they sold the property of Delgadillo and Matienzo to pay the fines which were imposed on them, and, for what they owed in excess and were not able to pay with their possessions, they were imprisoned in the public gaol.

A brother of Delgadillo, named Berrio, who was principal Alcalde in Oaxaca, they found guilty of having committed such injustice and bribery that they sold his property to repay those whom he had robbed, and imprisoned him on account of the claims he could not meet, and he died in prison. Much the same sentence was given against the other relation of Delgadillo, who was Alcalde Mayor of the Zapotecs, who was also named Delgadillo like his relation, and he died in the prison. Truly the newcomers were good and upright Judges in doing justice, who gave no decisions except only as God and His Majesty commanded, and in letting the Indians understand that they would be protected and well taught in our holy doctrine.

In addition to this they at once stopped the branding of slaves and did other good deeds. As the Licentiate Salmeron and the Licentiate Zaynos were old men, they agreed to send and beg permission of His Majesty to return to Castile, and because they had already stayed four years in Mexico, and were rich and had served in the offices to which they had been appointed, His Majesty sent them permission [to leave] after they had rendered their accounts, which they did very well.

The President Don Sebastian Ramírez, who at that time was Bishop of Santo Domingo, also went to Castile, for His Majesty sent to summon him to inform him about affairs in New Spain, and to appoint him President of the Royal Chancery of Granada ; and after a certain time he was sent to Valladolid, and, when he arrived there, was given the Bishopric of Tuy. Within a few days that of Leon became vacant and that also was conferred on him, and he was President, as I have said, of the Chancery of Valladolid. Then at that moment the Bishopric of Cuenca became vacant and that was given him ; thus one commission followed close upon the other, and because he was a just Judge he rose to the rank I have mentioned. At that time death called him, and it seems to me, according to our Holy Faith, that he is now in Glory with the blessed, for, from what I knew of him and the communication I had with him when he was President in Mexico, he was very just and upright in all things, and he had been the same before he was Bishop of Santo Domingo and Inquisitor in Seville.

I must return to my story, and relate of the Licentiate Alonzo Maldonado that His Majesty ordered him to go to the Provinces of Guatemala, Honduras, and Nicaragua as President and Governor, and in all respects he was a good and upright Judge and a faithful servant of His Majesty, and he even obtained the title of Adelantado of Yucatan by an agreement made with his father-in-law Don Francisco de Montejo. As for the Licentiate Quirova, he was so good and virtuous that they gave him the Bishopric of Mechuacan.

Let us stop talking about these who were prosperous on account of their virtues, and I will go on to say of Delgadillo and Matienzo that they went to their homes in Castile very poor men, and not with the best of reputations, and within two or three years they are said to have died.

By this time His Majesty had already commanded that most illustrious and excellent gentleman of praiseworthy memory, Don Antonio de Mendoza, brother of the Marques de Mondejar, to proceed to New Spain as Viceroy; and Doctor Quesada, a native of Ledesma, and the Licentiate Tejada of Logroño accompanied him as Oidores. The Licentiate Maldonado was then still Oidor, for he had not yet left to be President of Guatemala. There also came as Oidor an elderly Licentiate named the Licentiate Loaysa, a native of Ciudad Real, and as he was an old man he stayed three or four years in Mexico and saved up pesos de oro to get back to Castile, and he returned to his home.

A short time after followed a licentiate from Seville, called the Licentiate Santillana, who was afterwards a doctor, and all were very good judges. After they had been given a great reception on their entry to that great city, a Residencia general was proclaimed against the late President and Oidores, and they were all adjudged to be very upright and honourable, and to have acted in conformity with justice.

To go back to my story about Nuño de Guzman, who remained in Jalisco—as the Viceroy Don Antonio de Mendosa came to know that His Majesty had ordered the Licentiate de la Torre to go and take his [Guzman's] Residencia in Jalisco and to imprison him in the common gaol, and make him pay the Marques de Valle what he was found to owe him, and also repay us Conquistadores the amount of the fines he had imposed on us over the Narvaez affair; intending to do him a kindness, and so as to avoid his being molested or insulted, he invited him to come to Mexico at once on parole, and assigned his [own] palace as a lodging for him. Nuño de Guzman did as he was told and came at once, and the Viceroy treated him with great distinction, and showed him favour and ate

with him. Just then the Licentiate de la Torre, whose name I have already mentioned, arrived in Mexico, bringing orders from His Majesty to arrest Nuño de Guzman at once and to do justice in all things. Although he announced it first of all to the Viceroy, who apparently showed less good will in the matter than he desired, he decided to remove him [Guzman] from his lodging with the Viceroy where he was staying, and declared loudly: "His Majesty has given his orders, thus this has to be done, and not otherwise," and he carried him off to the public gaol of the City. He was kept a prisoner for some days, until the Viceroy himself interceded for him and they let him out of prison.

While it was acknowledged that de la Torre had sufficiently strong courage not to fail in the execution of justice, and in very honestly taking the Residencia of Nuño de Guzman, as human perversity misses no opportunity to defame when it can do so, and it appears that the Licentiate de la Torre was rather addicted to play, especially to cards, (although he only played at "Triunfo" and "Primavera" for pastime), someone or other went on behalf of Nuño de Guzman and (as at that period it was customary to wear coats with big sleeves and lawyers in particular wore them) placed a pack of small cards in one of the sleeves of the Licentiate de la Torre's coat, and tied the sleeve so that it could not drop out. At the very moment when the Licentiate was walking through the Plaza of Mexico, accompanied by persons of quality, whoever it was who placed the cards in the sleeve found a way to loosen it, and the cards dribbled out a few at a time, and a trail of them was left on the ground of the Plaza where he was walking, and the persons accompanying him, when they saw the cards falling out in that way,¹ told him to look and see what

¹ Blotted out in the original: "went along laughing at it."

he was carrying in the sleeve of his coat. When the Licentiate discovered the great trick he said in great anger, "It is easy to see that they do not wish that I should do justice honestly, but if I do not die I will do it so that His Majesty may hear of this disrespect that has been paid me," and within a few days he fell ill of fever, brooding over this and other things that had happened. He died, and the Royal Audiencia, together with the Viceroy, then promptly transferred the powers held by de la Torre to a gentleman named Francisco Vásquez Coronado, a native of Salamanca, who was a very intimate friend of the Viceroy, and everything was done as Nuño de Guzman wished in the Residencia which they held on him. This Francisco Vásquez Coronado some time later was made Captain for the conquest of Cibola, which at that time they called "The Seven Cities," and he left in his place as Governor of Jalisco one Cristóbal de Onate, a person of quality. Francisco Vásquez had been lately married to a lady who was a daughter of the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada, and, in addition to being talented, was very beautiful; and as he went to those cities of Cibola he had a great desire to return to New Spain to his wife. Some of the soldiers who were in his company said that he wished to copy the Greek Captain Ulysses, who when he was before Troy was crazy to go and enjoy his wife Penelope, so did Francisco Vásquez Coronado, who left the Conquest he had undertaken. He was attacked by incipient madness and returned to Mexico to his wife, and as they reproached him for having returned in that way, he died within a few days.

CHAPTER CXIX.

How Don Hernando Cortés, Marques del Valle, came from Spain, married to the Señora Doña Juana de Zuñiga, and with the title of Marques del Valle and Captain General of New Spain and of the South Sea, and about the reception given to him.

As Cortés had been a long time in Castile, and was already married, as I have said, and had the title of Marquis and Captain General of New Spain and the South Sea, he had a great desire to return to New Spain to his home and estate and Marquisate, and to take possession of his Marquisate; and, as he knew that Mexican affairs were in the condition that I have related, he hastened and embarked with all his household in certain ships, and meeting with good weather at sea he arrived at the port of Vera Cruz, where a great reception was given to him, and he at once went by way of some towns of his Marquisate, and on reaching Mexico he was given another reception, but not so great as he was accustomed to.

What he intended to do was to present his writ as Marquis and have himself proclaimed Captain General of New Spain and of the South Sea, and to demand of the Viceroy and Royal Audiencia the enumeration of his vassals. This seems to me to have been ordered by His Majesty, that he should count them, for, from what I understand when he was given the Marquisate, he petitioned His Majesty to grant him certain towns and pueblos with so many thousand tributary inhabitants; but because I do not know for certain about this I leave it to the gentlemen and other persons who are better informed about the lawsuits which have been brought over this matter; for, when the Marquis asked that grant of vassals from His Majesty, he was under the

impression that they would count each house of an inhabitant or Cacique or chieftain of those towns as one tributary, as though we should now say that grown up sons who were already married should not count, nor sons-in-law, nor the many other Indians who resided in every house for the service of the owner, but that only each householder [should count] as a tributary, whether or no he had many sons and sons-in-law, dependants or servants.

The Royal Audiencia of Mexico [appointed] an Oidor of the Royal Audiencia itself, named the Doctor Quesada, to go and make the count, and he began to count in this way :—the owner of each house as one tributary, and if he had grown up sons, each son as one tributary, and if he had sons-in-law, each son-in-law as one tributary ; the Indians that he held in his service, even although they were slaves, counted each one as a tributary so that in many of the houses, ten, twelve or fifteen or more tributaries were counted. Cortés held, and so represented to, and demanded of, the Royal Audiencia, that each house was equivalent to one householder and should be counted as one tributary only. If, when the Marquis begged from His Majesty the grant of the Marquisate, he had explained that he should give him a town, such town with the householders and inhabitants it contained, His Majesty would have granted them, and the Marquis believed and felt sure that in demanding the vassals he had secured that object ; however it turned out otherwise, so that there was never any lack of lawsuits, and on this account he was very dissatisfied with the doings of Doctor Quesada who went to make the enumeration, and friction was not wanting even with the Viceroy and the Royal Audiencia, and a report was made to His Majesty by the Royal Audiencia in order to ascertain the way in which the count was to be made.

The counting of the vassals was held in suspense for some years, and the Marquis always exacted his tributes from them without it.

To go back to my story. A few days after this had happened, he went from Mexico to a town of his Marquisate named Cuernavaca ; he took the Marchioness with him and made his home there, and never again took her to the City of Mexico. In addition to this, as he had made a contract with the Serene Empress Doña Ysabel, our lady of glorious memory, and with the Royal Council of the Indies, that he would send fleets to the South Sea to discover new lands further on, all at his own cost, he began to build ships at the port of a town, which at that time belonged to his Marquisate, named Tehuantepec, and in the other ports of Zacatula and Acapulco ; and the fleets which he sent I will tell about later on, for he had no luck in anything he put his hand to, for all turned to thorns, and Nuño de Guzman succeeded much better, as I will relate later on.

CHAPTER CC.

Of the expenditure which the Marquis Don Hernando Cortés incurred for the fleets which he sent on voyages of discovery, and how he had no good luck at all.

IT is necessary to go far back in my story so that what I shall now say may be quite clear. At the time when Marcos de Aguilar was governing New Spain by virtue of the authority which the Licentiate Luis Ponce de Leon had left him when he died, as I have already stated many times, before Cortés went to Castile, [he], the Marquis del Valle, himself despatched four ships which he had built in a province named Zacatula, well supplied with provisions and artillery, with good sailors and fifty

soldiers and much merchandise and trifles from Castile for barter, and everything that was necessary for victuals, and biscuits for more than a year. And he sent with them as commander-in-chief a gentleman of birth named Álvaro de Sayavedra Zeron, with orders to lay his course for the Moluccas or Spice Islands or China, and this was by the command of His Majesty, which he had written to Cortés from the City of Granada on the twenty-second of June fifteen hundred and twenty-six, and because Cortés showed the letter itself to me and other Conquistadores, who were in his company, I say it and assert it here, and His Majesty even commanded Cortés to order the Captains whom he should send to go and search for a fleet which had sailed from Castile to China, with a certain Don Fray Garcia de Loayza, Knight Commander of the order of St. John of Rhodes, as Captain.

At the time when Sayavedra was getting ready for the voyage, a tender came into port on the coast of Tehuantepec which was one of those which had sailed from Castile with the fleet of this same Comendador whom I have mentioned; and one Ortuño de Lango, a native of Portugelate, came as Captain of this same tender. From this Captain and the pilots who came in the tender Álvaro de Sayavedra Zeron learned all that he wished to know, and he even carried off in his company a pilot and two sailors and paid them very well so that they might return again with him, and he took notes of the whole voyage they had made and of the courses which must be followed.

After he had issued the instructions and notices, which Captains and Pilots going on voyages of discovery are accustomed to give to their fleets, and had heard Mass and commended himself to God, they set sail from the port of Ciguatanejo, which is in the province of Colima or Zacatula.—I do not clearly know which—and it was in

the month of December in the year fifteen hundred and twenty-seven or twenty-eight,¹ and it pleased our Lord Jesus Christ to guide them so that they went to the Moluccas and other Islands. The hardships and dangers they passed through, and even the many of them who died on that voyage, I know nothing about, but I saw in Mexico, three years later, one of the sailors who had gone with Sayavedra, and he related things about those Islands and Cities where they went that astonished me. These were the Islands whither they now go from Mexico with a fleet to make discoveries and to trade. I have even heard it said that the Portuguese reside as Captains in them [the Islands] and arrested Sayavedra or his people and took them to Castile, or that His Majesty heard news of it; but it is many years ago, and I was not concerned in it beyond, as I have said, having seen the letter which His Majesty wrote to Cortés, so I will say no more about it.

I must now relate that in the month of May in the year fifteen hundred and thirty-two, after Cortés came from Castile, he despatched from the port of Acapulco another Armada of two ships, well found with all sorts of provisions, and with a full complement of sailors and artillery and goods for barter, and with eighty soldiers both musketeers and crossbowmen, and he sent one Diego Hurtado de Mendoza in command. These two ships he sent to explore the South coast and search for Islands and new lands, and the reason of it was that, as I have already said in the Chapter which treats of it, he had made a contract [to that effect] with the Royal Council of the Indies when His Majesty went to Flanders.

To return to the account of the voyage of the two ships,

¹ Blotted out in the original: "I do not remember clearly which year it was."

it turned out that Captain Hurtado intended neither to search for Islands nor to go far out to sea, nor to do anything worth telling. More than half the soldiers he took with him mutinied, and went off with one ship, and it is even said that an arrangement was come to between the Captain and the mutineers to give them the ship, in which they could return to New Spain. This however can never be believed, that the Captain would give them permission, but [it is more likely] that they took it.

When they turned back they met with foul weather which drove them ashore, and they sprang a leak and with much difficulty got to Jalisco ; they spread the news of it in Jalisco and thence the news flew to Mexico at which Cortés was much grieved.

Diego Hurtado always hugged the coast and nothing more was heard of him or his ship and he never appeared again. I must stop speaking about this Armada, for it was lost, and I will relate how Cortés promptly despatched two other ships which were already built in the port of Tehuantepec, provisioning them very fully both with bread and meat and all the necessaries which at this time could be obtained, and with much artillery and good sailors and seventy soldiers and certain things for barter ; and [he appointed] as commander of them a gentleman of birth named Diego Beserra de Mendoza of the Beserras of Badajoz or Merida, and in the other ship one Hernando de Grijalva went as Captain, and this Grijalva was under the orders of Beserra. As chief pilot there went a Biscayan named Ortuño Ximénez, a great cosmographer.

Cortés ordered Beserra to go to sea in search of Diego Hurtado, and, if he could not find him, to go out as far as he could on the high seas and look for islands and new countries, for there was a report of rich islands and pearls, and the Pilot Ortuño Ximénez, when he was talking

to other pilots about things of the sea before they started on that voyage, said and promised to lead them to lands favoured by fortune with riches—[the Fortunate Islands], for so they called them—and said so much about how they would all become rich, that some persons believed it.

On the first night after they sailed from the port of Tehuantepec, a head wind arose which drove the two ships apart, and they never saw one another again. They could easily have come together again, for good weather at once set in, but that Hernando de Grijalva, so as not to be under the orders of Beserra, went at once out to sea and departed with his ship, for Beserra was very haughty and illconditioned, and that was the end of it, as I shall relate further on. Hernando de Grijalva also withdrew because he wished to gain honour for himself if he should discover some fine Island, and he went out to sea more than two hundred leagues and discovered an Island which he named San Tome, but it was uninhabited.

Let us leave Grijalva and his course, and I will relate what happened to Diego Beserra with the Pilot Ortuño Ximénez, which is that they quarrelled on the voyage, and, as Beserra was disliked by most of the soldiers who went in the ship, Ortuño conspired with other Biscayan sailors, and with the soldiers with whom Beserra had had words, to fall on him in the night and kill him; this they did when he was asleep, and they despatched Beserra and some other soldiers, and had it not been for two Franciscan Friars, who went with that Armada, who separated them, worse evils would have happened. The Pilot Ximénez and his companions rose in rebellion with the ship and at the prayers of the Friars they were put ashore at Jalisco—both the Friars as well as some others who were wounded—and Ortuño Ximénez set sail and went to an Island which he named Santa Cruz,

where it was said that there were pearls, and it was inhabited by Indians who were like savages. When he went ashore the natives of that bay or Island were hostile and killed them, so that none escaped except the sailors who remained on the ship. When they saw that all had been killed, they returned to the port of Jalisco with the ship and told the news of what had happened, and certified that the land was good and well peopled and rich in pearls.¹

This news soon reached Mexico, and when Cortés knew about it he was much grieved at what had happened,² and as he was a courageous man, and did not sit still under such results, he determined not to send more Captains but to go himself, and at that time he had already launched from the dockyard and into the harbour of Tehuantepec three ships of a good size. As they had brought the news to him that there were pearls where Ortuño Ximénez was killed, and because he always had it in his mind to discover great townships by the south sea, he wished to go and form a settlement, for so he had contracted with the most Serene Empress Doña Ysabel of glorious memory, as I have already related, and with the Royal Council of the Indies, when His Majesty went to Flanders.

When it was known in New Spain that the Marquis was

¹ Blotted out in the original: "at which Nuño de Guzman was envious, and to find out if it were true that there were pearls, he thoroughly equipped this same ship that had brought the news, both with soldiers and Captain and supplies, and sent it to the same land to find out what it was like, and the Captain and soldiers whom he sent [soon] wished to return, for they found no pearls and nothing which the sailors had described, and they got back to Jalisco to stay in pueblos of his Encomienda and brought no news to Nuño de Guzman, and because at that time good gold mines were found in that land, for one reason and another they did nothing which was profitable."

² Blotted out in the original: "How that Nuño de Guzman should take the ship."

going in person, they thought that it was an affair of certainty and riches, and so many soldiers came to serve him, both horsemen, musketeers, and crossbowmen (and among them thirty or forty married men), that there joined him in all over three hundred and twenty persons including the married women. After thoroughly supplying the three ships with much biscuit, meat, and oil and even wine, and vinegar and other things necessary for food, he took a quantity of goods for barter, and three blacksmiths with their forges and two ships' carpenters with their tools, and many other things which I will not enumerate here so as to avoid delay, and engaged good and expert pilots and sailors. He ordered those who wished to go and embark at the port of Tehuantepec, where the three ships were lying, to start, and this [he did] so as not to carry so many impedimenta by land. He himself went from Mexico with Captain Andrés de Tápia and other Captains and soldiers, and took with him priests and monks who said Mass, and he took doctors and surgeons and pharmacy stores. When he reached the port whence they were to sail, the three ships which had come from Tehuantepec were already there, and, as soon as all the soldiers were united with their officers and ready to start, Cortés embarked with those who, it seemed to him, should go in the first passage to the Island or Bay which they had named Santa Cruz, where they said the pearls were, and after a prosperous voyage Cortés arrived at the Island; this was in the month of May in the year fifteen hundred and thirty-six or thirty-seven. He promptly sent off the ships so that they should return with the other soldiers and married women and horses which were left waiting with Captain Andrés de Tápia. These were at once embarked and sail set, and as they were going on their course a storm struck them, which drove them near to a great river which they named San Pedro and San Pablo. Then as the

weather moderated they continued their voyage, when another Tempest struck them and separated all three of the vessels. One of them reached the port of Santa Cruz where Cortés was stationed ; another ran aground and was wrecked on the coast of Jalisco, and of the soldiers on board, who were very discontented with the voyage and the many hardships, some returned to New Spain and others stayed in Jalisco.

The other ship made port in the bay which they called Guayabal, and they gave it this name because there was much fruit there called Guayava, and, as she had grounded beam on, they were so long delayed that they could not get to where Cortés was stationed, and they were hourly expected, for they [the first arrivals] had run out of provisions, and the meat and biscuit and nearly all the food was in the ship which went ashore on the coast of Jalisco, and on this account Cortés as well as all the soldiers was very greatly distressed, for they had nothing to eat and the natives of that country do not grow maize, but are wild savages and uncivilised, and all they eat are fruits which grow there and fish and shell fish. Twenty-three of the soldiers who were with Cortés died of hunger and disease, and many more of them were ill, and they cursed Cortés and his Island, his Bay, and his discovery. When he saw this he decided to proceed in person with the ship which was there in harbour, with fifty soldiers and two blacksmiths and carpenters and three calkers, in search of the other two ships ; for, from the [state of the] weather and the winds that had blown, he inferred that they must have been driven ashore, and in the course of his search of them he found one stranded, as I have stated, on the coast of Jalisco with no soldiers in her, and the other was near some reefs, and with great labour in repairing and calking them he returned to the Island of Santa Cruz with his three ships and the supplies.

The soldiers who were awaiting him, already weakened from not having eaten anything sustaining for many days past, ate so much meat that it gave them diarrhoea and so much sickness that the half of those who had remained behind died.

So as not to keep such horrors before his eyes Cortés went on to explore other lands and then came upon California, which is a bay. As Cortés was so weary he was wishing to get back to New Spain, however through obstinacy, so that they should not charge him with having expended great numbers of pesos de oro without finding any new lands of value, and having no luck in matters to which he put his hand, and on account of the soldiers,¹ he did not go.

At that very same time, as the Marquesa Doña Juana de Zuñiga, his wife, had received no news of him, and more than that one ship had gone ashore on the coast of Jalisco, she felt very anxious, thinking that he might be dead or lost, and she promptly sent two ships in search of him; one of these was the ship in which Grijalva, who had sailed with Beserra, had returned to New Spain, the other a new ship which they had just finished building in Tehuantepec, and these ships were laden with all the provisions which could be obtained at that time.

She sent as Captain of one of them a certain Fulano [Francisco] De Ulloa, and wrote most affectionately to the Marquis, her husband, praying him to return at once to Mexico to his estate and Marquisate, and to remember the sons and daughters he possessed, and cease to contend any more with fortune, but be content with the heroic deeds and the fame of his person which had spread everywhere. Thus too the most illustrious Viceroy Don

¹ Blotted out in the original: "and Conquistadores of New Spain."

Antonio Mendoza wrote to him most charmingly and affectionately, begging him to return to New Spain.

After a favourable passage these two ships arrived where Cortés was stationed, and, as soon as he saw the letters of the Viceroy and the entreaties of his wife the Marchioness and his children, he left Francisco de Ulloa as Captain with the people he had there, and all the provisions they had brought for him, and at once embarked and came to the port of Acapulco, and going ashore after a favourable journey he reached Cuernavaca where the Marchioness was living, which caused great rejoicing.

All the settlers in Mexico and the Conquistadores were delighted at his arrival, and even the Viceroy and Royal Audiencia, for there was report of a rumour current in Mexico that all the Caciques of New Spain, knowing that Cortés was not in the country, intended to revolt. Furthermore, all the soldiers came back whom he had left in those Islands or Bay called California, and I do not know how this return was effected or in fact why they returned, or whether the Viceroy and Royal Audiencia gave them permission to do so.

Within a few months, when Cortés was already somewhat rested, he despatched two other ships well supplied both with bread and meat, as well as other sailors and sixty soldiers and good pilots; and Francisco de Ulloa, mentioned by me before, went with them as Captain.

The reason why he sent these ships was because the Royal Audiencia expressly ordered him to send them in fulfilment of the contract with Her Majesty, as I have mentioned in former Chapters which treat of it.

To return to my story, which is, that they sailed from the Port of Natividad in the month of June in the year fifteen hundred and thirty odd, (this matter of the years I do not remember), and Cortés ordered the Captain to follow along the coast and finish the

circumnavigation of California, and endeavour to search for Captain Diego Hurtado, who never appeared again.

Ulloa occupied seven months on the voyage in going and coming, and I know he did nothing worth recording. He then returned to the port of Jalisco and, within a few days of his coming on shore to rest himself, one of the soldiers whom he had taken in his company lay in wait for him and dealt him sword thrusts and killed him.

The voyages and explorations made by the Marquis came to an end with what I have now related, and I have heard him say, even many times, that he had expended over three hundred thousand pesos de oro on fleets. In order that His Majesty should repay him something on account of it, and of the enumeration of his vassals, he decided to go to Castile, also to demand from Nuño de Guzman a certain sum of pesos de oro which the Royal Audiencia had decreed that he should pay¹ because he had ordered his [Cortés's] effects to be sold, for by this time Nuño de Guzman had gone to Castile as a prisoner.

If we think of it, in nothing at all did he [Cortés] have any luck after we had conquered New Spain.

CHAPTER CCI.

How great festivities and banquets were celebrated in Mexico and what rejoicing [took place] at the peace [made] between the Most Christian Emperor our Lord of Glorious Memory, and Don Francisco the King of France, when they met at Aguas Muertas.

IN the year thirty-eight [1538] news^c reached Mexico that the most Christian Emperor, our Lord of Glorious Memory,

¹ Blotted out in the original : "To Cortés."

went to France, and Don Francisco, the King of France, gave him a great reception at a port called Aguas Muertas, where peace was made, and the Kings embraced one another with great affection in the presence of Madam Leonor, the Queen of France, wife of this same king Don Francisco and sister of the Emperor, our Lord of Glorious Memory, and great solemnization and festivals took place on account of that peace.

In its honour, and by way of rejoicing over it, the Viceroy Don Antonio de Mendoza and the Marques del Valle and the Royal Audiencia and certain gentlemen of the Conquistadores held great festivals, and at that time the Marques del Valle and the Viceroy Don Antonio de Mendoza had become friends, for they had been somewhat embittered over the counting of the vassals of the Marquisate, and because the Viceroy greatly favoured Nuño de Guzman in his refusal to pay the number of pesos de oro which he owed to Cortés from the time when Nuño de Guzman was President in Mexico. They decided to hold great festivals and rejoicings, and they were such that it seems to me I have not seen others of the same quality [even] in Castile, both as regards jousts and reed games, and bull fights, and the encounters of one party of horsemen with others, and other great representations which were [provided]. All this that I have mentioned is as nothing compared to the many other devices of other displays which were customary in Rome when the Consuls and Captains who had won battles entered in triumph, and the competitions and challenges connected with every event. The inventor who prepared these things was a Roman gentleman named Luis de Leon, a man said to be of the lineage of the Patricians who were natives of Rome. To return to our festival, it began with a wood made in the great Plaza of Mexico with a great variety of trees as natural as though they had grown there, and in

the middle some trees as though they had fallen down from old age and decay, and others covered with mould and little plants which seemed to grow out of them while from others hung a sort of down¹, again others in various ways so perfectly arranged that they were worth observing. Inside the wood were many deer, rabbits and hares, foxes and jackals, and many sorts of small animals native to the country, and two young lions and four small tigers, and they were confined within fences made within the wood itself, so that they could not escape until it was time to drive them out for the chase, for the native Mexican Indians are so ingenious in arranging these things that in the whole universe, according to what many say who have travelled all over the world, there have not been seen their like. On the trees there was a great diversity of small birds of all sorts, native to New Spain, which are so numerous and of so many breeds that it would make a long story had I to count them. There were other very dense groves somewhat apart from the wood, and in each of them a party of savages with their knotted and twisted cudgels, and other savages with bows and arrows, and they set off for the chase, for at that moment [the animals] were let out of the enclosures, and they ran after them through the wood and came out on to the great Plaza, and the killing of them led to a violent row between one lot of savages and the other, and it was worth seeing how they fought on foot with one another, and after they had fought for a short time they returned to their grove. Let us leave this, which was as nothing in comparison with the display made by cavaliers and negroes and negresses with their king and queen all on horseback, more than fifty² in number, and with the great riches which they carried on their persons

¹ Either Barbas di Viejo = a lichen, or a Bromelia.

² Blotted out in the original: "one hundred and fifty."

of gold and precious stones, small pearls and silverwork, and they promptly attacked the savages and there was another dispute about the hunting.

It was wonderful to see the diversity of faces in the masks which they wore, and how the negresses suckled their negro children, and how they paid court to the queen.

After this, on the following morning, half this same Plaza had been turned into the City of Rhodes with its towers and battlements, loopholes and turrets, all fenced round, as natural as Rhodes itself, and one hundred knights commanders with their rich embroidered insignia of gold and pearls, many of them on horseback with short stirrups and lances and shields, and others with long stirrups, in order to break lances and pierce shields, and others on foot with their arquebuses, and the Marquis Cortés was their commander and the Grand Master of Rhodes. They brought in four ships with their main and foremasts and mizzens and sails so natural that many persons were astonished at seeing them go under sail across the Plaza and make three circuits of it, and let off so many cannon which they fired from the ships; and there were some Indians on board dressed to look like Dominican Friars when they came from Castile, some engaged in plucking chickens and others fishing.

Let us leave the Friars with their guns and trumpets, and I will go on to relate how two companies of Turks were placed in an ambushade, most Turklike with rich silk robes all purple and scarlet and gold, and splendid hoods such as they wear in their country. All of them were on horseback, and they were in ambush ready to make a dash and carry off some shepherds and their flocks which were grazing near a fountain, and one of the shepherds who were guarding them took to flight and warned the Grand Master of Rhodes that the Turks

were carrying off the flocks and their shepherds. Then the Knights sallied forth and a battle was fought between them and the Turks, and they recaptured the flocks.

Then other squadrons of Turks came in from other directions and fell upon the Rhodians and fought other battles with the Knights, and many of the Turks were taken prisoners, and then a lot of fierce bulls were let loose so as to separate them.

Now I wish to tell about the many ladies, wives of the Conquistadores and other settlers in Mexico, who were at the windows of the Great Plaza, and the riches they wore of crimson and silk and damask and gold and silver and jewels, which was a splendid sight, and in other corridors were more ladies very richly adorned, whom gentlemen served with a splendid repast, which was provided for all those ladies both those at the windows and those in the corridors; and they served them marzipan, sweetmeats of citron, almonds and comfits, and others of marzipan with the arms of the Marquis, and others with the arms of the Viceroy, all gilded and silvered, and among them some containing a lot of gold without any other kind of sweets were distributed. About the fruits of the country I will not write here, for it is too lengthy a matter to relate. Besides all this there were the best wines obtainable, aloza,¹ chuca,² and cacao all frothed up, and suplicaciones,³ all served on a rich table service of gold and silver. This repast commenced an hour after vespers and continued for two hours, when everyone went home.

Let us stop telling these stories about entertainments and past festivals, and I will tell about the other banquets

¹ Aloja, a beverage made of water, honey and spice (mead).

² Chuca = Chicha, a beverage made from fermented fruits.

³ Suplicaciones, a kind of thin light pastry.

which were given. One was arranged by the Marquis in his palace, and the other by the Viceroy in his palace and royal house, and these were suppers. The first was given by the Marquis, and the Viceroy and all the gentlemen and Conquistadores who could be counted upon supplied him with all the ladies, who were the wives of the gentlemen and Conquistadores, and other ladies, and it was a most ceremonious affair, and I will not try to remember all the courses for it would be a long story, sufficient to say that they were very abundant. The other supper was given by the Viceroy,¹ and this feast took place in the corridors of the Royal Palace, which were transformed into bowers and gardens, interwoven overhead with many trees with their fruits which appeared to grow on them, and above the trees as many [kinds of] birds as can be found in the country; and they had copied the spring at Chapultepec, just like the original, with some tiny springs of water which burst forth from some parts of this same fountain, and there close to it was a great tiger tied with chains, and on the other side of the fountain was the figure of a man of great bulk dressed like a muleteer, with two skins of wine on his back, who had gone to sleep through weariness; and there were figures of four Indians who had untied one of the skins and had got drunk, and it appeared as though they were drinking and were making grimaces, and it was all done so true to life that many persons of all classes with their wives came to see it.

When the tables were set they were very long and each one had its seat of honour, in one was the Marquis and in the other the Viceroy, and for each seat of honour there were stewards and pages and a full and well arranged service.

¹ Blotted out in the original: "the entertainment was greatly varied."

I should like to recite what was served, although it is not all written down here. I will state what I remember, for I was one of those who supped at these great feasts:—

To begin with there were salads made in two or three ways, and then kids and cured hog hams dressed à la ginovisca, after this pies of quails and pigeons, and then turkeys and stuffed fowls, then manjar blanco,¹ after this a fricassée, then torta-real, then chickens, partridges of the country and pickled quails, and then after this they took off the table cloths twice and there were clean ones beneath with napkins. Then pasties of every sort of birds and wild fowl, these were not eaten and many things of the earlier courses were not eaten.

Then they served other pasties of fish, none of this too was eaten, then they brought baked mutton and beef and pork, turnips, cabbage and garbanzos,² but none of these were eaten, and in between these courses they placed on the table various fruits to incite the appetite, and then they brought the fowls of the country baked whole with their beaks and feet silvered, and after that mallards and geese whole, with gilded beaks, and then heads of pigs, deer and calves whole, by way of pretentiousness. Together with this much music of singers at each seat of honour, and trumpetry and all sorts of instruments, harps, guitars, violas, flutes, dulcimers and oboes, especially when the stewards served the cups which they brought to the ladies who were supping there, who were more numerous than they were at the supper of the Marquis, and many gilt goblets, some with aloja,³ others with wine, others with water, others with cacao, others with

¹ Manjar blanco = a dish made of the breast of fowl mixed with sugar, milk and rice flour.

² Garbanzos = chick peas.

³ A beverage made with honey and spice.

mulled wine. After this they served, to the ladies of greater distinction, some very large pasties, and in some of them were two live rabbits and in others small live rabbits, and others were full of quails and doves and other small birds all alive, and when they placed them on the tables it was at one and the same time, and as soon as they took off the top crusts the rabbits went fleeing over the tables and the quails and birds flew off.

I have not yet told about the service of olives and radishes and cheese and artichokes,¹ and fruits of the country—no more can be said than that all the tables were full of such courses.

Among other things were jesters and versifiers who in praise of Cortés and the Viceroy recited things that were very laughable.² I have not yet spoken of the fountains of white wine, Indian sherry and red wine,³ and other store of bottles, or of another service there was in the courtyards, for the people and equerries and servants of all the gentlemen who were supping above at that banquet, more than three hundred of them with over two hundred ladies. I have forgotten the young oxen roasted whole, stuffed with chickens and fowls, quails and pigeons and bacon, these were in the courtyards below among the equerries and mulattos and Indians. I must state that this banquet lasted from nightfall until two hours after midnight, when the ladies cried out that they could stay no longer at table, and others were indisposed, and the tablecloths were changed by

¹ Blotted out in the original: "and then marzipan and almonds and comfits and citron and other sorts of sugar plums."

² Blotted out in the original: "and some of them were drunk and spoke on their own account and indecently, until they were taken by force and carried out, so as to silence them."

³ Blotted out in the original: "and there were many drunkards."

force because other things had [still] to be served, and everything was served on gold and silver and great and rich table service.

One thing I saw was that each room was full of Spaniards who were not invited guests, who came to see the supper and banquet, and they were so numerous that the corridors would not hold them. Not a single piece of plate belonging to the Viceroy was missing throughout the supper, but at that of the Marquis more than one hundred marks of silver were missing; the reason why nothing was missing belonging to the Viceroy was because the chief Mayordomo, who was named Augustin Guerrero, ordered the Mexican Caciques to place an Indian on guard over each piece, and although many plates and porringers with manjar blanco and pastry and pasties and other things of the sort were sent to every house in Mexico, an Indian went with each piece of plate and brought it back; what was missing was some silver salt cellars, [a good] many tablecloths and napkins and knives, and this was told me by Augustin Guerrero himself the next day. The Marques took it [as a sign of] grandeur that he lost over a hundred marks of silver plate.

Let us leave the suppers and banquets and I will relate how the next day there were bull [fights] and reed games, and the Marquis received a blow from a reed on the instep from which he suffered and went lame. The next day there were horse races from the plaza called Tlatelolco to the great Plaza, and certain yards of velvet and satin were given [as prizes] for the horse which galloped best and arrived first at the plaza. Then too some women raced from under the colonnade of the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada to the royal palace, and some golden jewels were given to her who arrived first at the post.

Then many farces were acted, and they were so many

that I cannot now call them to mind, and by night they had masks and ballads and jokes. There were two chroniclers of these, great festivals, who recorded them just as they happened, and [noted] who were the Captains and the Grand Master of Rhodes, and they [the descriptions] were even sent to Castile that they might be seen by the Royal Council of the Indies (for His Majesty was then in Flanders).

I want to add an amusing story concerning a settler in Mexico called the Master of Rhodes, already an old man, who had a great wen on his neck. He had the name of Master of Rhodes because they called him purposely Master of Rhodes, and it was he for whom the Marquis had sent to Castile to heal his right arm, which he had broken in a fall from a horse after his return from Honduras, and he paid him very well for coming to cure his arm and gave him some pueblos of Indians.

When the Festivals, which I have mentioned, were over, as this Master of Rhodes was one of those chroniclers and was a good talker, he went to Castile at that time and became so well acquainted with the Señora Doña Maria de Mendoza, the wife of the Comendador Mayor, one Don Francisco de los Cobos, that he bewitched her and promised to give her drugs so that she should bear a child, and he said this in such a way that she believed him, and the Señora Doña Maria promised him that if she bore a child she would give him two thousand ducats, and would support him before the royal Council of the Indies in obtaining further pueblos of Indians. This same Master of Rhodes also promised Cardinal de Ciguenza, who was President of the [Council of the] Indies, that he would cure him of the gout, and the President believed him and they allotted him, on the order of the Cardinal and through the support of the Señora Doña Maria de Mendoza, very good Indians,

better than those he owned. What he did in the matter of cures was to heal neither the Marquis' arm, (if anything he left him more crippled, although he paid him very well and gave him the Indians I have mentioned), nor did the Señora Doña Maria de Mendoza ever bear a child, for all the hot sweetmeats of sarsaparilla which he ordered her to take, nor did he cure the Cardinal of the gout, but he kept the bars of gold which Cortés gave him and the Indians which the Royal Council of the Indies bestowed upon him in New Spain. He left behind him in Castile among the traders who had gone to law¹ a joke [to the effect] that a little sarsaparilla which the Master of Rhodes had brought with him was worth more than all the services the true Conquistadores had rendered His Majesty, for owing to this name which had been given him of Master of Rhodes, and through being a good talker, he had deceived both the President and the Señora Doña Maria de Mendoza, while other Conquistadores, however much they had served His Majesty, got no benefit at all.

Let us stop relating the lives of strangers, for I know well there will be reason to say why do I meddle with these matters, and interrupt my narrative in order to tell an old yarn that happens to come to mind. Let us get back to it, and it is that, after the festivals were over, the Marquis ordered ships and stores to be prepared to go to Castile, in order to petition His Majesty to cause him to be repaid some of the many pesos de oro which had been expended on the fleets which he had despatched on voyages of discovery, and because he had lawsuits with Nuño de Guzman; for at that time the Royal Audiencia had sent Nuño de Guzman as a prisoner to Castile. Cortés also had lawsuits about the counting of the vassals. Then

¹ Blotted out in the original: "about Indians."

Cortés begged me to go with him, as I could urge my claim to my pueblos better at court before the Lords of the Royal Council of the Indies than before the Royal Audiencia in Mexico. So I promptly embarked and went to Castile, but the Marquis did not start until two months later, for he said that he had not collected as much gold as he wished to take with him, also because he was ill from the blow from the reed which he had received on his instep. This was in the year five hundred and forty [1540], for in the previous year five hundred and thirty nine Her Most Serene Empress our Lady Doña Ysabel of Glorious memory had died, who departed this life in Toledo on the first day of May, and her body was carried for burial to the City of Granada. Her death caused great grief in New Spain, and nearly all the Conquistadores put on full mourning, and I, as the Regidor of the town of Coatzacoalcos and the oldest Conquistador, went into deep mourning, and in it went to Castile, and when I arrived at the Court I put it on again as I was obliged to do on account of the death of our Queen and Lady.

At that time there also arrived at Court Hernando Pizarro, who came from Peru, and was bowed down with mourning, with his more than forty men whom he brought with him in his Company. Cortés also arrived at this time at Court in mourning, he and his servants. As soon as the Lords of the Royal Council of the Indies knew that Cortés was approaching Madrid, they gave orders to go out and receive him, and assigned him as quarters the houses of the Commendador Don Juan de Castilla, and, on the occasion of his going to the Royal Council of the Indies, an Oidor came to the door where the meeting of the Royal Council was held and led him to the dais where sat the President Don Fray Garcia de Loyasa, Cardinal of Ciguenza, who was afterwards Archbishop of Seville, with the Oidores the Licentiate Gutiere Velásquez and the

Bishop of Lugo and Doctor Juan Bernal Díaz de Lugo and Doctor Beltran; and close to the seats of those gentlemen they placed another seat for Cortés, and listened to him. From that time onwards he never returned again to New Spain, for then they took his Residencia, and His Majesty would not give him leave to return to New Spain, although he had for advocates the Admiral of Castile and the Duque de Bejar and the Commendador Mayor de Leon, and also had as a mediatrix the Señora Doña Maria de Mendoza, but His Majesty would never give him leave. On the contrary he ordered him to be detained until his Residencia was concluded, but they never intended to finish it, and the answer they gave him in the Royal Council of the Indies was that until [His Majesty] returned from Flanders, after chastising Ghent, they could not give him permission.

At this same time they also ordered Nuño de Guzman to be banished from his country and always to remain at Court, and they sentenced him [to pay] a certain number of pesos de oro, but they did not take from him the Indians of his Encomienda in Jalisco, and he and his servants also went about in deepest mourning. When they saw us at Court, both the Marquis Cortés as well as Pizarro and Nuño de Guzman and most of us who had come from New Spain on business, and the other persons from Peru, they considered it a joke to call us 'the mourning Indians and Peruvians.'¹

To go back to my story, at that time they also ordered Hernando Pizarro to be made prisoner in the Mota de Medina.

Then I came back to New Spain, and learned that a few months earlier [the inhabitants of] some rocky hills called Nochistlan, in the province of Jalisco, had risen in

¹ Los Indianos Peruleros enlutados.

revolt, and that the Viceroy Don Antonio de Mendoza had sent some Captains and a certain Onate to pacify them, and the insurgent Indians made fierce attacks on the Spaniards and soldiers sent from Mexico, who seeing themselves surrounded by Indians began to beg assistance from the Adelantado Don Pedro de Alvarado, who at that time was on board a ship of a great fleet, then in the port of La Purificacion, which he had prepared to go to China. He went to assist the Spaniards who were on the rocky hills I have mentioned, and took with him a great company of soldiers, and within a few days he died from a horse falling on him and crushing his body, as I shall relate further on. I want to leave this story and call to mind the two fleets which set out from New Spain, one fitted out by the Viceroy Don Antonio de Mendoza and the other prepared by Don Pedro de Alvarado, as I have already stated.

CHAPTER CCII.

How the Viceroy Don Antonio de Mendoza sent three ships to explore the South Coast in search of Francisco Vásquez Coronado and sent him provisions and soldiers, supposing that he was engaged in the conquest of Cibola,

I HAVE already stated in a former Chapter which treats of it that the Viceroy Don Antonio de Mendoza and the Royal Audiencia of Mexico sent [an expedition] to discover the seven cities otherwise called Cibola, and that a nobleman named Francisco Vásquez Coronado, a native of Salamanca, went as Captain General, who at that time had married a lady, who in addition to being very virtuous was the beautiful daughter of the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada.

Francisco Vásquez was then Governor of Jalisco, for Nuño de Guzman who used to be Governor had already been removed. He set out over land with many horse soldiers and musketeers and crossbowmen, and left as his Lieutenant in Jalisco a nobleman named Fulano de Onate, and when after some months he arrived at the seven cities he found that a certain friar named Fray Marcos de Niza had gone previously to explore these lands, or went on the expedition with Francisco Vásquez Coronado himself (this I am not sure about), and when they reached the country of Cibola they beheld the fields quite level and full of cows and bulls unlike ours in Castile, and the pueblos and houses with granaries, and they ascended to them by ladders. The Friar thought that it would be as well to return to New Spain, and, as soon as he arrived, to make a report to the Viceroy Don Antonio de Mendoza [to induce him] to send ships along the south coast with iron tools, cannon and powder, and crossbows and arms of all kinds, and wine, oil, and biscuit; for he reported that the lands of Cibola were in the district of the South Coast and that the provisions and tools would be a help to Francisco Vásquez and his companions who were already settling in that Country. This was the reason why he [the Viceroy] sent the three ships I have mentioned, and one Hernando de Alarcon, who was head Steward of the said Viceroy, went as Captain General, and there went as Captain of the other ship a gentleman named¹ Marcos Ruiz de Rojas, a native of Madrid; other people say that one Fulano Maldonado sailed as Captain of the other ship, but because I did not go with that fleet, I state it in this way from hearsay. After all the instructions had

¹ Blotted out in the original: "Alonzo Gasca de Herrera who is now a settler in Guatemala."

been given to the pilots and Captains about what they had to do and how they were to manage and navigate, they set sail on their voyage.¹

¹ The original here leaves a large blank space and then comes this note: "this which is blotted out is not to be read, nor this other part up to the Chapter two hundred and fifty three" [sic]. What is blotted out in one and the other part is as follows and is short of one page, which was perhaps destroyed by the author himself.—E.G.

CHAPTER CCLII. [CCIII.] About a great fleet which the Adelantado Don Pedro de Alvarado fitted out in the year five hundred and thirty-seven.

It is right to call to mind, so that it should not be forgotten, a fine fleet which the Adelantado Don Pedro de Alvarado fitted out in the year fifteen hundred and thirty-seven in the province of Guatemala, where he was governor, at a port named Acajutla on the south coast, and it was to fulfil a certain contract that he made before His Majesty the second time that he returned to Castile and came back married to a lady named Doña Beatriz de la Cueva. The contract made with His Majesty was that the Adelantado should find certain ships, pilots, sailors and soldiers, provisions and all that was necessary at his own expense, to be sent to explore the western route to China or the Moluccas, or any other of the spice islands, and on account of what he should discover His Majesty promised to grant him certain concessions in these same lands and would give him revenue from them; and because I have not seen the contract I leave it there, and for this reason do not put it in this narrative. To return to our subject, the Adelantado, who was always a faithful servant of His Majesty as he showed himself to be in the conquest of New

very noble and loyal city of Guatemala [prepared] two tombs near the altar of the principal church, in order to bring the bones of the Adelantado Don Pedro de Alvarado, which were buried in the pueblo Chiribitio, and inter them in one of the tombs; and the other tomb, in order to inter in it, when Our Lord God is pleased to remove them from this present life, Don Francisco de la Cueva and Doña Leonor de Alvarado, his wife, and daughter of the said Adelantado; for at her own expense she brought the bones of her father and ordered the tomb to be made in the holy church as I have stated.

Let us leave this subject and say what happened to the fleet of the Adelantado, which is that (after he died as I have related) within a year, a little more or less, the Viceroy Don Antonio de Mendoza ordered certain ships to be selected, the best and newest of the thirteen which the Adelantado had despatched from the West Coast to discover China, and he sent as Captain of these ships a relation of his own, named Fulano de Villalobos, and ordered him to proceed by the same course which it had been agreed upon to follow and explore.

What this voyage ended in I do not well know, and for this reason

CHAPTER CCIII.

About a fleet which the Adelantado Don Pedro de Alvarado fitted out from a port called Acajutla in the province of Guatemala.

IT is right to call to mind, so that it should not be forgotten, another fleet which the Adelantado Don Pedro de Alvarado fitted out in the year fifteen hundred and thirty-seven in the province of Guatemala, where he was Governor, at a port called Acajutla on the South Coast, and it was done to fulfil certain contracts made with His Majesty during the second time that he returned to Castile and returned married to the lady named Doña Beatriz de la Cueva, the sister of a certain Doña Francisca de la Cueva, who was extremely beautiful (and had been the first wife of Don Pedro de Alvarado), who died at Vera Cruz in New Spain. The contract arranged with His Majesty was that Don Pedro de Alvarado should provide certain ships, pilots, sailors and soldiers, provisions and all that was needed for that fleet at his own cost, and it was proposed that he was to send and explore the western route to China and the Moluccas, or any other of the Spice Islands, and according to what he should discover His Majesty promised to grant him certain favours in these same lands. However, as I have not seen the contract I omit it, and for that reason I do not include it in this narrative. To go back to my story he cleared for sea twelve ships of considerable size, well provisioned with bread and meat, barrels of water, and everything that could be provided at that time, well armed with cannon and with good pilots and sailors.

say no more about it, however I have heard it said that the heirs of the Adelantado never recovered anything either on account of the ships or of the provisions, but lost it all.

Let us leave this subject—I was not engaged in it and do not know much about it; other gentlemen will report it more fully.

It was indeed a powerful fleet, although the port of Vera Cruz was so far off, a matter of one hundred and fifty leagues from where the ships were built, for at that time the iron for the nails, and anchors and casks and other things necessary for the fleet, were brought from Vera Cruz; for as yet there was no question of Puerto de Caballos.

He expended on them [the ships] many thousands of pesos de oro, with which in Seville they would have been able to build more than eighty ships; yet all the riches he brought from Peru, and the gold which they extracted from the mines in the province of Guatemala, and the tributes from his pueblos, and what he borrowed from friends and relations, and what he got on credit from merchants, did not suffice him [to cover expenses]. What he spent on horses and Captains, soldiers, arquebuses, crossbows, and all kinds of arms, was a great sum in pesos de oro. When his ships were ready to sail, each one with its royal standard [hoisted] and pilots and Captains appointed, and instructions given about what they had to do both by night and day, and the courses they were to follow, and the signals of the lamps if a storm should rise during night time; after hearing Mass of the Holy Spirit, and after their banners had been blessed by the Bishop of that Province, with the Adelantado himself as Captain General of the fleet, they set sail in the year fifteen hundred and thirty-seven or thirty-eight (I do not clearly remember [which year]) and went sailing on their course to the port called la Purificacion, which is in the province of Jalisco. At that port they had to take in water and provisions and more soldiers, although they already carried over five hundred and fifty soldiers in the ships. When the Viceroy Antonio de Mendoza heard about this powerful fleet, for in these parts it might be called a very great one,

and about the great number of soldiers and horses and cannon that it carried, he regarded it as a matter of great importance—and he had reason so to consider the collection and arming of thirteen ships on the south coast, and that so great a number of soldiers should have joined him so far from the port of Vera Cruz and from Mexico; for, as I have already noted, ships with merchandise from Castile did not come to the Puerto de Caballos as they do now, and it is a matter for reflection for persons who have a knowledge of these countries and know about the expenses that are incurred.

When the Viceroy Don Antonio was informed that it [the expedition] was for the discovery of China, and understood from pilots and cosmographers that it [China] might certainly be discovered towards the west, and one of his relations named Villalobos, who knew much about latitudes and the art of navigation, assured him of it; and moreover he learned that the valorous Hernando Cortés, before he went to Castile and became a Marquis, had sent three ships to discover these same Islands; he determined to write from Mexico to Don Pedro de Alvarado with offers and favourable promises to induce him to give orders that he should become a partner with him in the fleet. So as to bring this about, Don Luis de Castilla and a Mayordomo of the Viceroy named Augustin Guerrero went to settle the bargain.

As soon as the Adelantado beheld the messages they were bringing on this account, and had fully discussed the business, it was agreed that the Viceroy and the Adelantado should have an interview at a pueblo named Chiribitio, which is in the province of Mechuacan and was in the Encomienda of one Juan de Alvarado, a relation of Don Pedro de Alvarado himself; and in this pueblo it was settled that both together should go and inspect the fleet.

After they had inspected it, differences arose as to who should go as Captain General, for Don Pedro wished it to be a nephew of his named Juan de Alvarado (I do not speak of him of Chiribitio but another who bore the same name), and the Viceroy Don Antonio de Mendoza wished his nephew who was a great cosmographer named Villalobos to go. Finally it was arranged that Alvarado and Villalobos should go as Captains.

Then Don Pedro de Alvarado went to the port of Natividad, for so it was called, where at that time all his ships and soldiers were then assembled, so that he himself should despatch them. When they were already prepared to set sail, a letter reached him sent by one Cristóbal de Onate, who was Captain of the soldiers on some rocky hills called Nochistlan, and what he sent to say was that, being a matter of His Majesty's service, he [Pedro Alvarado] must come and help them in person and bring soldiers, for they were surrounded in a place where if help did not reach them they could not defend themselves from the many squadrons of excessively valiant Indian warriors who were posted in strong fortified positions and rocky hills, and had killed many of the Spaniards who were in his company, and he feared greatly that they would finally defeat him. He made known in the letter many other misfortunes and [said] that should the Indians emerge victorious from those rocky hills New Spain would be in great danger. When Don Pedro de Alvarado saw the letter and the words recorded by me, and other Spaniards told him of the danger they were in, promptly without any delay he ordered some soldiers whom he had brought in [his company] to get ready, horsemen as well as musketeers and crossbowmen, and he went post haste to render that assistance.

When he reached the camp, those hedged in were so

exhausted that had it not been for his coming they would have been much more so; however, on his arrival, the Indian warriors slackened somewhat in their attack—not that they ceased to wage fierce war as they did before. While a company of soldiers were posted on some rocky hills to prevent the warriors entering that way, and were defending that pass, it seems that a horse of one of the soldiers came rolling down the hill with great impetus, and by bounds, to where Don Pedro de Alvarado was standing, and he was not able nor did he have time to move away at all, and the horse struck against him in such a way that it injured him and crushed his body, for it fell upon him. He at once felt very sick, and, so as to aid and cure him, thinking that his injury was not so serious, they carried him on a litter to be treated at the town nearest to the camp, called la Purificacion; but on the road he fainted, and when he reached the town he was at once confessed and received the Holy Sacraments, but he made no will, and he died and was buried there with as great pomp as was possible. Let us cease speaking of his death, may God pardon him, Amen.

I will go back to say that Cristóbal de Onate found himself in the greatest exigency on those rocky hills and was on the point of being defeated, had not the Viceroy sent in all haste the Licentiate Maldonado, the Oidor of the Royal Audiencia of Mexico, with many soldiers [to his assistance].

Let us leave this subject and relate what was done and in what the fleet ended, and it is this, that when they of the fleet saw that their Captain was dead, each one went off on his own account. A year later the Viceroy Don Antonio de Mendoza ordered three of the best ships to be taken (the newest of the thirteen which the Adelantado sent on the voyage of discovery), and appointed his relation, already mentioned by me, named Fulano de

Villalobos, in command of them, to follow the same course by which they had [before] agreed to send and explore; what happened on that voyage I do not well know, except that I have heard rumours, and it is believed to be true, that he went to some Islands where there were Captains of the King of Portugal who traded there, and they took him prisoner and he went to Castile. The same thing happened when the valiant Don Hernando Cortés sent a Captain named Alvaro de Sayavedra Ceron in command of three other ships; thus all that the Adelantado spent was lost and his heirs never recovered anything at all.

CHAPTER CCIV.

What the Marquis did when he was in Castile.

WHEN His Majesty returned to Castile after punishing Ghent, he prepared a great fleet to go against Algiers, and the Marquis del Valle went to serve in it and took with him his firstborn son, who was heir to his estate; and he also took Don Martin Cortés, his son by Doña Marina, and many esquires and servants, and horses and a great company and attendance, and embarked in a fine galley in company with Don Enrique' Enríquez. It pleased God to cause such a fierce storm to arise that a great part of the Royal fleet was lost and the galley in which Cortés and his sons sailed was wrecked, and they and most of the other gentlemen who were in her escaped with great risk of their lives. At the same time, when there was not such [calm] reflection as there ought to have been, especially when death stares one in the face, the servants of Cortés alleged that they saw him tie in a handkerchief twisted round his arm certain jewels of

very precious stones which he carried¹ as a great Lord, and in the confusion of escaping in safety from the galley, among the great crowd of persons who were present, all the jewels and precious stones which he carried, and which were reported to be worth many² pesos de oro, were lost.

I will go on to tell about the great storm and loss of knights and soldiers who perished. The quarter-masters and Captains who belonged to the Royal Council of war advised His Majesty at once and without delay to remove the head quarters [of the expedition] against Algiers, and to go by land along the coast, for they saw it was God's will to send them that foul tempest and nothing could be done more than had been done. To that meeting and council Cortés was not summoned to give his opinion, and, when he knew about it, he said that if it pleased His Majesty he would undertake by the help of God and the luck of our Cæsar, with the soldiers then in camp, to take Algiers. Immediately after saying these words he also expressed much praise of his Captains and comrades who were present with him in the capture and conquest of Mexico, saying that they went there to suffer hunger and hardships and wherever he should call them he could perform heroic deeds with them, and that when wounded and enveloped in rags they never ceased fighting and capturing every city or fortress, although they might chance to lose their lives in the act. As many gentlemen overheard those arrogant words, they said to His Majesty that it would have been well to call him to the Council of War, and it was looked upon as a great discourtesy that he had not been summoned. Other gentlemen said that his not being summoned was because they felt sure that the Marquis would be of

¹ Scratched out in the original: "so to say from no necessity."

² Blotted out in the original: "thousands of."



House at Castilleja de la Cueva

contrary opinion; that during such tempestuous weather there was no need for many councillors, but that His Majesty and the rest of the Royal fleet had to be placed in safety, for they were in great danger, and that at some future time with God's help they would return to besiege Algiers, and so they went along the coast.

Let me leave this subject and I will relate how they returned to Castile from that arduous journey, and how the Marquis was already tired of being in Castile at court, on account of having returned coastwise, weary and worn out from the journey already described by me, and desired greatly to return to New Spain, if they would give him leave. As he had sent to Mexico for his eldest daughter, named Doña Maria Cortés, whom he had arranged to marry to Don Álvaro Pérez Osorio, son of the Marquis de Astorga and heir to the Marquisate, and had promised over a hundred thousand ducats of gold as a marriage portion, and many other matters of clothes and jewels, he went to meet her at Seville. This marriage was broken off, many gentlemen say through the fault of Don Álvaro Pérez Osorio, at which the Marquis was so angry that with fever and dysentery he was very at the end, and, his illness continuing and always getting worse, he decided to leave Seville so as to be free of the many persons who came to visit him and bother him with business, and he went to Castilleja de la Cuesta, there to attend to his soul and arrange his will. After he had settled it as was fitting and had received the Holy Sacraments, Our Lord Jesus Christ was pleased to take him from this toilsome life, and he died on the second day of December in the year fifteen hundred and forty-seven. They carried his body to bury it with great pomp and concourse of clergy, with the great grief of many gentlemen of Seville and he was interred in the chapel of the Dukes of Medina

Sidonia; and later on his bones were carried to New Spain and placed in a tomb at Coyoacan or in Texcoco (I am not sure about this) for so he ordered by his will.¹

I wish to speak of his age, from what I remember, and I will state on this point that in the year when we went with Cortés from Cuba to New Spain—which was in fifteen hundred and nineteen—he then used to say, when he stood talking to all of us comrades who went with him, that he was thirty-four [years old]; and, with the twenty-eight [years] that passed before he died, this would make sixty-two. The legitimate sons and daughters he left were Don Martin Cortés who is now the Marquis, and Doña Maria Cortés (she who I have stated was engaged to be married to Don Álvaro Pérez Osorio, heir to the Marquisate of Astorga: this Doña Maria afterwards married the Conde de Luna de Leon), and Doña Juana who married Don Hernando Enríquez, who was to inherit the Marquisate of Tarifa, and Doña Catalina de Arellano who died in Seville while a girl. I know that the Marchioness Doña Juana de Zuñiga took them with her to Castile when a Friar² named Fray Antonio de Zuñiga came to fetch them, and this Friar was a brother of the Marchioness herself. Another daughter, a spinster named Doña Leonor Cortés, who was in Mexico, married one Juanes de Toloza, a Basque and a very rich man, who possessed over one hundred thousand pesos and some mines;³ at which marriage the Marquis was very angry when he came to New Spain. He left two sons who were bastards named Don Martin Cortés, Comendador of Santiago (this gentleman was born of Doña Marina the Interpreter), and Don Luis Cortés, also a Comendador of Santiago, who was born of another

¹ See Appendix B.

² Blotted out in the original: "of Santo Domingo."

³ Blotted out in the original: "of silver."

lady named Doña Fulano de Hermosilla, and he had three other daughters, one by an Indian woman of Cuba named Doña Fulana' Pizarro, and another by another Indian woman, a Mexican, and another, who was born deformed, by another Mexican woman. I know that these young ladies were well dowered, for from childhood he had given them good Indians in some pueblos named Chinantla. What he provided in his will and instructions I am not sure about, but I feel that as a wise man and having plenty of time for it, and because he was old, that he would do it with much deliberation. So as to ease his conscience, he ordered a Hospital and a College to be built in Mexico, and he also provided that in his town, named Coyoacan, which is a matter of two leagues from Mexico, a convent for Nuns should be built; also that his bones should be brought to New Spain. He assigned good revenues to carry out his will and legacies, and they were many and good and [the deeds] of a good Christian. To avoid prolixity I will not state them, and as I do not remember them all I will not quote them.

The motto and blazon which he bore on his coat of arms and banners was that of a very valiant man and appropriate to his heroic deeds, and it [the motto] was in Latin, and as I do not know Latin I do not record it. He had on it seven heads of Kings, who were captives on a chain, and it seems to me, as far as I can see and understand it, these were the Kings whom I now name: Montezuma Great Lord of Mexico, Cacamatzin the nephew of Montezuma who was also Great Lord of Texcoco, and Coadlabaca Lord of Iztapalapa and another pueblo, the Lord of Tacuba, the Lord of Coyoacan, and another great Cacique Lord of two provinces named Tulapa near to Matalzingo; this one as I have stated was said to be the son of a sister of Montezuma, and the nearest heir to Mexico after Montezuma. The last King was

Guatemoc, he who fought us and defended the City when we captured the Great City of Mexico and its provinces.

These seven great Caciques are those whom the Marquis bore on his banners and coat of arms as emblems, for I remember no other Kings who could have been captives and [also] Kings, as I have stated in the chapter that treats of it.

I will go on and speak of the appearance and disposition of Cortés. He was of good stature and figure well proportioned and robust, the colour of his face inclined to be greyish and not very bright, and if his face had been longer he would have been better looking; in his eyes and expression there was something kindly, [but] on the other hand grave. His beard was rather dark, scant and thin, and the hair which at that time he possessed was of the same sort as the beard. He had a deep chest and well shaped shoulders, and was lean and with little belly, and slightly bow-legged, with the legs and thighs well set on. He was a good horseman and skilful with all arms both on foot and on horseback, and knew well how to manage them. Above all [he possessed] courage and spirit which is what matters most of all.

I have heard it said that when he was a youth in the Island of Hispaniola he was somewhat dissolute about women, and that he fought with knives several times with strong and dextèrous men, and always came off victorious. He had a scar from a knife wound near his under-lip, and if one looked hard at it, he was inclined to cover it up more with his beard. This scar was given him when he indulged in those quarrels. In all of which he showed both by his appearance and in his speech and conversation, and in eating and in his dress, signs of being a great Lord.

The clothes he wore were in accordance with the time and fashion, and he thought nothing about wearing many

silks and damasks or satins, but [dressed] simply and very neatly, nor did he wear grand gold chains, except a small chain of gold of finest workmanship and a small pendant with the image of Our Lady the Virgin Santa Maria with her precious son in her arms, and with a motto in Latin on one side with Our Lady, and on the other side of the jewel St. John the Baptist with another motto. He wore besides on his finger a very rich ring with a diamond, and on the cap, which then was [usually] made of velvet, he wore a medal. I do not remember what design was on it, but on the medal were written his initials. Later on in the course of time he always wore a cloth cap without a medal. He was luxuriously attended as a great Lord by two stewards and mayordomos and many pages, and all the service of his house was very complete, with great table services of silver and gold. He dined well and drank a good cup of wine and water which held a pint, and he also took supper, but was not dainty, nor did he care to eat of delicate or costly dishes except when he saw that expenditure was necessary or he was obliged to give them¹.

He was very affably disposed to all his Captains and comrades, especially with those of us who went [with him] from the Island of Cuba on the first occasion. He was a Latin scholar, and I have heard it said that he was a bachelor of laws, and when he spoke with educated men or Latin scholars he replied to what they said in Latin. He was something of a poet and composed couplets both in rhyme and prose, and in what he talked about he spoke with moderation and with very good expression. He recited prayers every morning out of a Book of Hours, and heard Mass with devoutness. He took as his especial patron saint Our Lady the Virgin Mary, whom

¹ Blotted out in the original : "to visitors or invited guests !"

all we faithful Christians should take as our intercessor and advocate, and he also held by Señor San Pedro, and Santiago, and Señor Saint John the Baptist. He was charitable with alms, and when he used an oath he said "on my conscience," and when he was angered with one of us soldiers who were his friends he would say "Oh evil take you;" and when he was very angry a vein on his throat swelled up and another on his forehead, and sometimes when very angry he raised a cry to heaven, but he never said a foul or injurious word to any Captain or soldier.

He was very long-suffering, for there were very inconsiderate soldiers who said insolent things to him, and he did not answer them with anything haughty or unpleasant, although there may have been reason to do so; the most that he said to them was "Be quiet!" or "God go with you and for the future be more careful what you say or it will cost you dear." He was very obstinate, especially about warlike matters, however much advice and persuasion we might offer to him about imprudent attacks and expeditions which he ordered us to undertake—[such as] when we marched round the great pueblos of the Lakes, or on the rocky hills which they now call the "Peñoles del Marques," when we told him that we could not climb up to the fortifications and rocky heights, but that we would keep them beleaguered, because of the many boulders which came bounding down hurled at us from the top of the fortress, for it was impossible to protect ourselves from the shock and impetus with which they came, and it was risking all our lives, for valour and counsel and prudence were of no avail; yet still he contended against all of us, and we had to begin to ascend again and we were in extreme danger, and eight soldiers were killed, and all the rest of us injured in the head and wounded, without accomplishing anything worth mentioning until

we changed to other plans. Furthermore when we went on our march to the Hibueras on the affair of Cristóbal de Olid, when he revolted with the fleet, I told him many times that we ought to go by the Sierras, but he contended that it was better along the coast and he was wrong again, for if we went the way I said it led all through a populous country, and, so that it may be well understood [by persons] who have never marched across it, [I state] that from Coatzacoalcos to Chiapa is a straight road, and from Chiapa to Guatemala, and from Guatemala to Naco, where at that time Cristóbal de Olid was stationed.

Let us leave this talk and I will say that when we came with the fleet to Villa Rica and presently began to build a fort, the first to do his share and dig out earth for the foundations was Cortés. In battles, I always saw him enter them in close company with us, and I will begin with the battles of Tabasco where he was in command of the horsemen, and he fought very well. Let us go on to Villa Rica: I have already spoken about the fortress, [then he did well] in scuttling as we did eleven ships on the advice of our valiant Captains and brave soldiers (and not as Gomara represents it). Then in the wars in Tlaxcala in three battles he proved himself very valiant, and in the entry into Mexico with four hundred soldiers, which is a thing to wonder at, and moreover in having the daring to seize Montezuma within his own palace—[Montezuma] who possessed such a vast number of warriors (and I also state that we seized him on the advice of the Captains and nearly all the soldiers); and another thing which must not be forgotten, the burning in front of his palace Montezuma's Captains who were concerned in the death of our Captain named Juan de Escalante and of seven other soldiers; these Indian Captains were called Quetzalpopoca (I do not remember the name of the other, but it does not matter,

as it is not to the point). Then, too, what daring and boldness it showed to attack with gifts of gold and stratagems of war Panfilo de Narvaez the Captain of Diego Velásquez, who brought over thirteen hundred soldiers and ninety horsemen and as many more cross-bowmen and eighty espingarderos [Gunnners], for so we called them, and we with two hundred and sixty-five comrades, without horses or muskets or crossbows, with only pikes and swords, daggers and shields, defeated them and captured Narvaez and other Captains. Let us go on ahead, for I want to state how when we entered Mexico a second time in aid of Pedro de Alvarado and before we left it fleeing, when we ascended the great Cue of Huichilobos I saw that he showed himself to be very brave, although his valour and ours availed us nothing. Then in the rout and very celebrated battle of Otumba, when we were expecting all the flower of the valiant Mexican warriors and all their subjects to kill us, there too he proved himself very courageous when he attacked the Captain and standard-bearer of Guatemoc, and made him lower his standard and loose the great vigour of the intrepid attack of all his squadrons which fought against us so bravely. After God our valiant captains who helped him were Gonzalo de Sandoval, Cristóbal de Olid, Diego de Ordás, Gonzalo Domínguez, and one Lares, and other brave soldiers whom I do not name here, who had no horses, and of the followers of Narvaez there were gallant men who helped very much. He who killed the Captain of the standard was one Juan de Salamanca, a native of Ontiveras, and he took from him a rich plume and gave it to Cortés. Let us go on and I will state that Cortés found himself engaged in a very dangerous battle during the affair of Iztapalapa, and bore himself as a good Captain; and in the affair of Xochimilco, when the Mexican squadrons dragged him

off the flat-nosed horse, and some of our friends the Tlaxcalans came to his assistance, and above all our brave soldier named Cristóbal de Olea, a native of Old Castile. (It should be noted that I say one was Cristóbal de Olid, who was quartermaster, and the other Cristóbal de Olea of Old Castile, and this I state here so that it should not be questioned, and they cannot say that I am making a mistake).

Our Cortés also proved himself very valiant while we were in Mexico, and the Mexicans defeated him on a small causeway and carried off for sacrifice sixty two soldiers, and they had seized Cortés himself and were grappling with him to carry him off for sacrifice, and they had wounded him in the leg. It pleased God that through his own valour, and because there came to his aid the same most gallant soldier Cristóbal de Olea (he who on the other occasion in Xochimilco freed him from the Mexicans), who helped him to mount his horse, that the life of Cortés was saved, and the gallant Olea was left there dead with the others, as I have already stated. As I am writing now I have before my mind the manner and resolution of the personality of Cristóbal de Olea and his very great valour, and it still makes me sad, for he came from my house, and was the relation of my kindred.

I do not wish to speak of many other deeds of prowess and valour which I saw done by our Marquis Don Hernando Cortés, for they are so numerous and of such a nature, that I could not relate them quickly enough.

I will still say of his disposition that he was very fond of games of cards and dice, and when he played he was very sociable in playing, and would use certain witty expressions which those who play at dice are wont to repeat; and he was addicted to women in excess, and

jealous in guarding his own¹. He was most careful during all the conquests that we made, even by night, and on many nights he went the rounds and challenged the sentinels and entered into the Ranchos and shelters of our soldiers, and, if he found one without his arms and with his shoes off, he admonished him and said to him that "to a worthless sheep the wool seems heavy," and upbraided him with bitter words.

When we went to the Hibueras I noticed that he took liquor before breakfast, a thing he was not used to do in the earlier wars, and when he had dined if he did not take a nap his stomach was upset and it made him feel ill, and in order to avoid this indisposition when we were on the march they placed a rug or a cloak, which was carried handy for that purpose, under a tree or other shade, and however powerful the sun might be he did not fail to sleep a little and then at once to go on marching. I also noticed that during the wars of New Spain he was lean and with little belly, but after our return from the Hibueras he was much more corpulent with a great belly, and I also noticed that the beard which was black before had become whitened. I also wish to say that he used to be very open-handed when he was in New Spain, and the first time he went to Castile; but when he returned the second time in the year fifteen hundred and forty they thought him niggardly, and one of his servants named Ulloa, brother of the other Ulloa whom they killed, brought a law-suit against him for not paying him his wages; and, if one considers and looks into it well, after we had conquered New Spain he was always in difficulties and spent many pesos de oro on the fleets which he sent to California, nor in the journey to the Hibueras did he have any luck. (No more has apparently his son

¹ Blotted out in the original: "his Indian women."

Don Martin Cortés either, who, being the Lord of such a great revenue, has met with such a great disaster as they relate of him and his brothers.) May our Lord Jesus Christ remedy it and may He pardon the Marquis Don Hernando Cortés his sins.

I well believe that I may have forgotten to write down other things about the habits of his valiant person; what I remember and saw, that I have written down.

Concerning the other young lady, his daughter, I do not know whether they made her a nun or married her off. I have heard it said that she went to Valladolid and a gentleman married her, but I am not sure. His other daughter, who was deformed on one side, I have been told became a nun in Seville, or in San Lucar. I do not know their names, and so do not give them, nor can I say what was done with so many thousand pesos de oro which they had for their dowries¹.

¹ Blotted out in the original: "there was much talk and suspicion about her marriage. I don't know about it nor do I touch more on this point, so help me God, and pardon me my sins, Amen. I knew that the friar the brother of the Marchioness was very avaricious and had an evil face and worse squinting eyes."





BOOK XVII.

THE RECORD OF THE CONQUISTADORES.

CHAPTER CCV.

A record of the gallant Captains and stout and valiant soldiers who left the Island of Cuba with the daring and courageous Captain Don Hernando Cortés, who after conquering Mexico became Marquis del Valle and had other titles.



FIRST of all the Marquis Don Hernando Cortés, who died near Seville in a town or place called Castilleja de la Cuesta.

Then Don Pedro de Alvarado, who, after the conquest of Mexico was Comendador de Santiago and Adelantado and Governor of Guatemala;¹ he died in the affair of Jalisco, when he was on his way to relieve an army which was camped on the rocky hills of Nochistlan.

Gonzalo de Sandoval, who was a prominent Captain and chief Alguazil during the affair at Mexico, and for some time was Governor in New Spain in association with the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada. His Majesty received the highest reports of him, and he died in Castile

¹ Blotted out in the original: "and Honduras and Chiapa."

in the town of Palos when he went with Don Hernando Cortés to kiss the feet of His Majesty.

Cristóbal de Olid, who was a valiant Captain and quarter-master in the wars in Mexico, and who came to his end in the affair at Naco, beheaded as a punishment because he rose in revolt with the fleet which Cortés had given him.

These three Captains I have mentioned were highly praised before His Majesty when Cortés went to Court, and remarked to His Majesty, our Lord, that he had in his army when he conquered Mexico three Captains who might be counted among the most famous in the world. The first was Don Pedro Alvarado, who, besides being very valiant, was elegant both in person and appearance, and [distinguished] for his capacity in training soldiers¹. He said of Cristóbal de Olid that he was a Hector in valour in single combat, and had he been as judicious as he was brave he would have been much more highly esteemed, but he needed to be under orders. Of Gonzalo de Sandoval he stated that he was of such value, as much on account of his bravery as for his counsels, that he was fit to command armies and was competent in all that he dared to say or do.

Cortés also gave praise to the very good and daring soldiers whom he had commanded; and as to this Bernal Díaz del Castillo, the author of this narrative, remarks, that it would have been as well if Cortés had written thus on the first occasion that he told the story of the events in New Spain, but what he wrote at that time gave all the honour and glory of our conquests to himself alone, and made no mention of us.

To return to my story: Another good and valiant

¹ Blotted out in the original: "and for inciting them to go anywhere however dangerous it might be."

Captain named Juan Velásquez de Leon died at the bridges.¹

Francisco de Montejo, who after Mexico was captured became Adelantado and Governor of Yucatan, and held other titles, died in Castile.

Luis Marin, who was a Captain in the affairs of Mexico, a distinguished person and very valiant, died a natural death.

A certain Pedro de Ircio, who died, was cunning in disposition, of middle height, and talked much of what he would accomplish and what would happen through his doing, but he was no good at all, and we called him another Agrages [sour grapes] without works, on account of his loquacity; he was a Captain in the Camp of Sandoval.

Another good Captain was named Andrés de Tapia; he was very valiant, he died in Mexico.

One Juan de Escalante, who was Captain at Villa Rica while we went to Mexico, died in the hands of the Indians in what we call the affair of Almeria, which is the name of some pueblos situated between Taxpan and Cempoala; there died in his company seven soldiers whose names I cannot now remember, and they killed his horse; this was the first disaster we suffered in New Spain.

One Alonzo de Ávila was a Captain, and the first accountant appointed in New Spain, a very brave man but somewhat given to turbulence, and Don Hernando Cortés knowing his disposition, in order to avoid discords, managed to send him as Proctor to Hispanola where the Royal Audiencia and the Geronimite Friars resided, and when he despatched him he gave him good bars and jewels of gold so as to content him.²

¹ During the "Noche triste."

² Blotted out in the original: "and the affairs he was charged with concerned the way in which we were to manage our conquests."

A certain Francisco de Lugo, who was in command of expeditions, a very valiant man died a natural death; he was the bastard son of a gentleman named Álvaro

and the branding as slaves of the Indians, who, having first rendered obedience to His Majesty, after so doing should have again revolted, and in time of peace have treacherously killed Christians. After Alonzo de Ávila had returned from this mission in Hispanola, and it was seen that he had obtained favourable results, he [Cortés] then sent him to Castile, for we had meanwhile conquered Mexico. While we were subduing New Spain and capturing Mexico, Alonzo de Ávila took no part in any of the expeditions, except the expedition when we first went to Mexico and when afterwards we fled from it, for, as I have said, he was in Hispanola. Then, so as further to content him and to get him away from himself, [Cortés] gave him a good pueblo named Cuautitlan, and some bars of gold, so that he should conduct the negotiations satisfactorily and should report much that was good of the personality of Cortés to His Majesty. Then Don Hernando Cortés also sent, in company with Alonzo de Ávila, Fulano de Quiñones a native of Zamora, who was Captain of the Guard of Don Hernando Cortés, and he gave them power of attorney to advocate the affairs of New Spain. By them he despatched the great wealth of gold and silver jewels and many other things which we seized on the capture of Mexico, and the equipage of gold which Montezuma and Guatemoc, the great Caciques of Mexico, used to own.

As luck would have it they stabbed Quiñones in the Island of Tercera, over a love affair with a woman, and he died of those wounds. As Alonzo de Ávila continued his voyage, a French fleet met him near Castile, of which Juan Florin was the Captain, and robbed him of the gold and silver and the ship, and carried him off prisoner to France, and he was a prisoner for some time; but at the end of two years the Frenchman who held him let him go free and he came to Castile.

At that time Don Francisco de Montejo, Adelantado of Yucatan, was at Court, and he [Alonzo de Ávila] accompanied him on his being appointed Accountant of Yucatan. About the same time or a little earlier one Gil Gonzáles de Benavides, a brother of Alonzo de Ávila, who used to reside in the Island of Cuba, came to Mexico, and as Alonzo de Ávila was in Yucatan and Gil Gonzáles in Mexico, he [Alonzo] sent authority to his brother Gil Gonzáles de Benavides to hold the pueblo of Cuautitlan for himself and to make use of it. Gil Gonzáles went with us at that time to the Hibueras (for he was never a conquistador of New Spain), and years went by during which he utilized that pueblo and collected the tributes from it, apparently without any title to it beyond the authority which his brother sent him. When Alonzo de Ávila died, it seems that the Attorney General of His Majesty entered a claim for the pueblo to be restored to his Majesty, as Alonzo de Ávila was dead. Over this lawsuit arose the riots and rebellions and deaths which took place in Mexico, and the exiles which resulted and the evil reputations of others. If all this is thoroughly taken into account the

de Lugo the elder, the lord of some towns situated near Medina del Campo which are called Fuenencastin.

Andrés de Monjaraz, who was a Captain in the affair of Mexico, died; he was a great sufferer from boils and his ailment did not aid him much in warfare.

Diego de Ordas was a Captain during the first time we attacked Mexico, and after Mexico was captured was created a Comendador de Santiago; he died in the Marañon.

The four brothers of Don Pedro de Alvarado were named:—

Jorge de Alvarado, who was a Captain in the affair of Mexico and in that of Guatemala, who died in Madrid in the year fifteen hundred and forty.

Another brother named Gonzalo de Alvarado who died a natural death in Oaxaca.

Gómez de Alvarado, who died in Peru.

Juan de Alvarado, who was a bastard, died at sea on his way to the Island of Cuba.

Juan Jaramillo, who was Captain of a launch when we were attacking Mexico, and was a distinguished man, died a natural death.

Cristóbal Flores, who was a worthy man, died in the Affair of Jalisco, when he accompanied Nuño de Guzman.

end was a bad one—Quiñones, who went to Castile, ended worse, and died stabbed at Terciera, the gold and silver was robbed by the fleet of the Frenchman Juan Florin, Alonzo de Ávila was a prisoner in France, and Juan Florin himself, who committed the robbery, was taken prisoner at sea by Basques and hanged at the port of Pico.

The pueblo of Cuautitlan was taken from the sons of Gil Gonzáles de Benavides, and over this they were beheaded, for it was found out they did not show the loyalty that they should to the service of His Majesty; other persons were condemned and banished, and others were left with damaged reputations.

I wish to include this in my narrative so that it may be seen what caused the restlessness in Mexico, although I believe there was no necessity for it, for they [the readers] will be tired of hearing these matters. Let us go on and speak of my [proper] subject."

Cristóbal Martín de Gamboa, who was Master of the Horse to Cortés, died a natural death.

A certain Çayzedo, who was a rich man, died a natural death.

Francisco de Sauzedo was a native of Medina de Rio Seco, and because he was very neat we called him "el galan," and they say that he was chief steward to the Admiral of Castile; he met his death at the bridges by the hands of the Indians.

Gonzalo Domínguez, a very valiant man and a fine horseman, died in the hands of the Indians.

Fulano Moron, a very brave man and a good horseman, a native of Gínes, died in the hands of the Indians.

Francisco de Morla, a very valiant soldier and good horseman, a native of Jerez, perished at the bridges.

Another good soldier named Morla, a native of Ciudad Rodrigo, died on the rocky hills in the province of Guatemala.

Francisco Corral, a man of great merit, died in Vera Cruz.

Fulano de Lares, a very brave man and a good horseman, was killed by the Indians.

Another Lares, a crossbowman, died in the hands of the Indians.

Simon de Cuenca, who was Mayordomo to Cortés, died in the affair of Xicalango in the hands of the Indians, and there also died in company with him ten other soldiers whose names I do not remember.

So also Francisco de Medina, a native of Aracena and a Captain on one expedition, fell in the affair of Xicalango and with him other soldiers.

Maldonado "the broad," a native of Salamanca, and a distinguished person who had been in command of expeditions, died a natural death.

Two brothers called Francisco Álvarez Chico and Juan

Alvarez Chico, natives of Fregenal; the former, a business man, was ailing and died in the Island of Santo Domingo, Juan Álvarez fell in the affair of Colima by the hands of the Indians.

Francisco de Terrazas, a man of distinction who had been mayordomo to Cortés, died a natural death.

Cristóbal del Corral, the first standard bearer we had in the battle of Mexico and a very valiant man, returned to Castile and there died.

A certain Antonio de Villareal, the husband of Ysabel de Ojeda, who afterwards changed his name and said he was called Antonio Serrano de Cardona, died a natural death.

Francisco Rodríguez Margariño, a distinguished man, died a natural death.

Francisco Flores of Oaxaca, a nobleman, died a natural death.

Alonso de Grado, who married a daughter of Montezuma named Doña Ysabel, died a natural death.

Four soldiers whose surname was Solis. One, who was an old man, died in the hands of the Indians; another, called Solis Casquete, because he had rather a passion for asking questions, died a natural death in Guatemala. Another, called Pedro de Solis, "behind the door," because he was always in his house behind the door watching those who passed in the street while he could not be seen, was son-in-law to one Orduña the elder of Puebla, and died a natural death. The other Solis, who was called "he of the orchard," because he had a very good orchard and got a good income from it—and they also called him "silk jacket" because he boasted of the silk he brought—died a natural death.

A brave soldier named Benítez died in the hands of the Indians.

Another brave soldier named Juan Ruano died at the bridges at the hands of the Indians.

One Bernaldino Vásquez de Tápia, a very distinguished and rich man, died a natural death.

A very valiant soldier named Cristóbal de Olea was a native of the land of Medina del Campo, and one can well say that, after God, it was Cristóbal de Olea who saved the life of Don Hernando Cortés the first time in the affair of Xochimilco, when Cortés was seen to be in great danger, for the Mexican squadrons of war had pulled him down from his horse called "el Romo" and this Olea arrived among the first to rescue him, and personally accomplished so much that Don Hernando Cortés had a chance to mount his horse again; and some of us gentlemen and other soldiers who came up at that time promptly assisted him, but Olea was very badly wounded.

The last time this same Cristóbal de Olea rescued him was when the Mexicans defeated Cortés himself on the little causeway in Mexico, and killed sixty-two soldiers; and a squadron of Mexicans already had Don Fernando himself seized and grappled, ready to carry him off for sacrifice, and they had given him a cut on the leg, and that brave Olea with his valiant spirit fought so courageously that he freed Cortés from their hands, and there this gallant man lost his life; and now while I am writing about it my heart is moved to pity, for it seems as though I could see it now and his person and gallant spirit are present with me.

Cortés wrote about that defeat¹ to His Majesty, that not more than twenty-eight died, but as I state they were sixty-two.

There also came with us a brave soldier who had lost one hand which had been cut off in Castile as a punishment; he died in the hands of the Indians.

Another good soldier named Tobilla, who had been

¹ Blotted out in the original: "bloody."

severely injured in one leg, which he said had happened in the affair of Garellano with the Great Captain, died in the hands of the Indians.

Two brothers named Gonzalo López de Gimena and Juan López de Gimena. Gonzalo López died in the hands of the Indians, and Juan López became chief Alcalde of Vera Cruz and died a natural death.

One Juan de Cuellar, a good horseman, first married a daughter of the lord of Texcoco, and his wife was called Doña Ana and was the sister of that Suchel the lord of this same Texcoco; he died a natural death.

One Fulano de Cuellar, said to be a relation of Francisco Verdugo a settler in Mexico, died a natural death.

Santos Hernández, an old man, a native of Soria, (for nickname we called him "the good old Trooper") died a natural death.

One Pedro Moreno Medrano, who was a settler in Vera Cruz and was repeatedly [chosen as] Alcalde Ordinario of that place, was upright in doing justice; later on he went to live in Puebla; he was a faithful servant of His Majesty both as a soldier and as a judge, and died a natural death.

One Juan de Limpias Caravajal, a good soldier who was Captain of a launch, and grew deaf during the war, died a natural death.

One Melchior de Alavez, a settler in Oaxaca, died a natural death.

A certain Roman López, who after Mexico was captured lost an eye, and was a distinguished man, died in Oaxaca.

One Villandrano, who was said to be a relation of the Conde de Rivadéo, and was a distinguished man, died a natural death.

One Osorio, a native of Old Castile, a good soldier and a person of much importance, died in Vera Cruz.

Rodrigo de Castañeda, who was an interpreter and a good soldier, died in Castile.

One Fulano de Pilar, who was a good linguist, died in the affair of Coyoacan¹ when he went with Nuño de Guzman².

Another brave and good soldier named Fulano Granado, still lives in Mexico.

Martin López, a good soldier who was the shipwright who built the thirteen launches which were such a great help in capturing Mexico, and served His Majesty very well as a soldier, still lives in Mexico.

Juan de Najara, a good soldier and crossbowman, served well in the war.

One Ojeda was a settler among the Zapotecs; his eye was destroyed during the affair of Mexico.

One Fulano de la Serna, who owned some silver mines, had a sword cut on the face which was given him in the war. I do not remember what became of him.

Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero, a cousin of the Conde de Medellin, a distinguished gentleman, went to Castile the first time we sent gifts to His Majesty, and Don Francisco de Montejo went in his company, before he was appointed Adelantado. They took with them much gold in grains [as they were] taken from the mines, as well as jewels of different patterns, and the golden sun and the silver moon. It appeared the Bishop of Burgos, named Don Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca, archbishop of Rosano, ordered Alonzo Hernández Puertocassero to be seized, because he told this same Bishop that he wished to go to Flanders with the gift for His Majesty, and because he advocated the affairs of Cortés,

¹ Is this a mistake and should it be Colima?

² Scratched out in the original: "A good soldier named Francisco de Olmos is a rich man and lives in Mexico."

and the Bishop advanced as a pretext for seizing him that he was accused of having taken a married woman to the Island of Cuba; he died in Castile. Although he was one of the principal comrades who left Cuba with us I had forgotten to place him in this list¹ until fortunately I remembered him².

Another good soldier died, named Louis de Zaragoza.

Let us get on:—Fulano de Villalobos, a native of Sta. Eulalia, returned to Castile a rich man and died there.

Tirado de la Puebla, a man of business, died a natural death.

Juan del Rio, returned to Castile.

Juan Rico de Alanis, a good soldier, died in the hands of the Indians.

Gonzalo Hernández de Alanis, a very brave soldier, died a natural death.

Juan Ruiz de Alanis, died a natural death.

Fulano de Navarrete, who was a settler at Panuco, died a natural death.

As for Francisco Martin Vendabal, the Indians carried him off alive to be sacrificed, as well as a companion of his named Pedro Gallego, and we laid much blame for this on Cortés, because he intended to arrange an ambush for some Mexican squadrons, and the Mexicans deceived him and planned one against Cortés himself, seized from him the two soldiers mentioned by me, and carried them off to be sacrificed before his eyes, and they could not help themselves.

There were three soldiers surnamed Trujillo, one was a native of Trujillo and was very brave; he died at the hands of the Indians. Another was a native of Huelva or Moguer; he also was high spirited, and died at the

¹ Blotted out in the original: "among the first."

² Blotted out in the original: "may he pardon me."

hands of the Indians, as did also the third who was a native of Leon.

A soldier named Juan Flamenco died a natural death.

Francisco del Barco, a native of Barco de Ávila, who was a Captain in the affair of Cholula, died a natural death.

Juan Pérez, who had killed his wife, and they called the woman "the daughter of the cowherd," died a natural death.

Another good soldier named Rodrigo de Jarra, the hunchback, a most sensitive man when his person was concerned, died in Colima or Zacatula, as did another hunchback, a good soldier named Madrid.

Another soldier, named Juan de Ynis, was a crossbowman; he died a natural death.

Fulano de Alamilla, who was a settler at Panuco, and a good crossbowman, died a natural death.

Fulano Moron, a great musician, a settler at Colima or Zacatula, died a natural death.

Fulano de Varela, a good soldier, a settler at Colima or Zacatula, died a natural death.

Fulano de Valladolid, a settler at Colima or Zacatula, died at the hands of the Indians.

Fulano de Villafuerte, a person of consequence who married a relation of the first wife of Don Hernando Cortés, and was a settler at Zacatula or Colima, died a natural death.

Juan Ruiz de la Parra, who was a settler at Colima or Zacatula, died a natural death.

Fulano Gutiérrez, a settler at Colima or Zacatula, died a natural death.

Another good soldier named Valladolid, the stout, died at the hands of the Indians.

One Pacheco, who was a settler in Mexico, a man of distinction, died a natural death.

Hernando de Lerma or de Lema, an old man who was a Captain, died a natural death.

Fulano Juarez the elder, who killed his wife with a stone for grinding maize, died a natural death.

Fulano de Ángulo, and one Francisco Gutiérrez, and another youth named Santa Clara, who were settlers from Havana, all of them died at the hands of the Indians.

One Garci-Caro, a settler in Mexico, died a natural death.

A youth named Larios, who was a settler in Mexico, who had lawsuits about his Indians, died a natural death.

Juan Gómez, who was a settler in Guatemala, returned to Castile a rich man.

Two brothers named Jimenes, who were natives of Lingujuela in Estramadura; one died at the hands of the Indians, and the elder a natural death.

Two brothers called the Florianes, died at the hands of the Indians.

Francisco Gonzáles de Najera, and his son whose name was Pedro Gonzáles de Najera, and two nephews of Francisco Gonzáles, called Ramires; Francisco Gonzáles died in the rocky hills which are in the province of Guatemala, and the two nephews at the bridges of Mexico.

Another good soldier named Amaya, who was a settler in Oaxaca, died a natural death.

Two brothers named Carmonas, natives of Jéres, died natural deaths.

Two other brothers named Bargas, natives of Seville; one died in the hands of the Indians, and the other a natural death.

A very good soldier named de Polanco, a native of Ávila, who was a settler in Guatemala, died a natural death.

Hernán López de Ávila, who was the custodian of the property of deceased persons, returned to Castile a rich man.

Juan de Aragon and Andrés de Rodas, settlers in Guatemala, died natural deaths.

A certain Fulano de Cieza, who hurled the bar very well, died at the hands of the Indians.

One Santistevan the elder, of Chiapa, died a natural death.

Bartolomé Pardo died at the hands of the Indians.

Bernaldino de Sória, who was a settler in Chiapa, the father of a man called Centeno, also died a natural death.

As for Pedro Escudero, and Juan Cermeño, and another the brother of this latter, also surnamed Cermeño, [both] good soldiers — Don Hernando Cortés ordered Pedro Escudero and Juan Cermeño to be hanged, because they mutinied in a ship, intending to go to the Island of Cuba and give information to Diego Velásquez, the governor of it, about when and how we were sending Proctors and gold and silver to His Majesty, so that they might sally forth and seize it at Havana. The man who betrayed it [the plot] was Bernaldino de Sória, who was a settler in Chiapa, and as I have stated they died hanged.¹

Cortés also ordered the toes of Gonzala de Umbria, a very good soldier, to be cut off his feet because he had joined the others [mutineers], and he went to Castile to lay a complaint before His Majesty and was very inimical to Cortés; His Majesty ordered him to be given a royal decree that he should be awarded one thousand pesos of revenue in New Spain, but he never left Castile, and died there.

Rodrigo Rangel, who was a distinguished man, was

¹ See note, vol. i, p. 207.

much crippled by bubos ; he never took part in the wars in a way that is worth mentioning, and he died of his pains.

Francisco de Orozco, was likewise afflicted with bubos ; he had been a soldier in Italy. For some days he was in command during the affair of Tepeaca, while we were warring against Mexico, I do not know what became of him or where he died.

A soldier named Mesa, who had been a gunner and soldier in Italy and was the same in New Spain, died drowned in a river after the conquest of Mexico.

Another very valiant soldier named Fulano Arbolanche, a native of Old Castile, died at the hands of the Indians.

Another good soldier named Luis Velásquez, a native of Arévalo, died in the affair of Higuera [Honduras] when we went with Cortés.

Martin García of Valencia, a good soldier, also died in the affair of Higuera.

Another good soldier, named Alonzo de Barrientos, went from Tuxtepec to take refuge among the people of Chinantla when Mexico rose in revolt, and in that affair of Tuxtepec seventy-six soldiers and five Castilian women belonging to the followers of Narvaez, as well as our own people, died, killed by the Mexicans who were in garrison in that province.

Another good soldier named Alonzo Luis, or Juan Luis, who was very tall of stature (and we gave him as a nickname "el niño") died at the hands of the Indians.

Another good soldier named Hernando Burgueno, a native of Aranda de Duero, died a natural death.

Another good soldier named Alonzo de Monroy, because of a rumour that he was the son of a Comendador of Santistevan, called himself "el manco" (the one handed), so as to avoid being recognised ; he died at the hands of the Indians.

Concerning Almodóvar the elder, and a son of his called Álvaro de Almodóvar, and two nephews that bore the same surname of Almodóvar—one nephew died at the hands of the Indians, and the old man and Álvaro and the other nephew died natural deaths.

Two brothers called the Martínes, natives of Fronegal, good looking men, died at the hands of the Indians.

A good soldier named Juan del Puerto died crippled by bubos.

Another good soldier named Lagos died at the hands of the Indians.

A Friar of Our Lady of Mercy, named Fray Bartolomé de Olmedo, who was a theologian and a great chanter, died a natural death.

A presbyter named Juan Díaz, a native of Seville, died a natural death.

Another soldier named¹ , a native of Garrovillas. This man, according to report, took five thousand pesos de oro to Castile from the Island of Santo Domingo; this he had extracted from some rich mines, and when he reached Castile he spent it and gambled it away, and he came with us, and the Indians killed him.

Alonzo Hernández Paulo, already an old man, and two nephews; one was called Alonzo Hernández, a good musketeer, I do not remember the name of the other nephew. Alonzo Hernández died at the hands of the Indians, and the old man and the other nephew died natural deaths.

Another good soldier named Alonzo de Almeira, a native of Seville or Alxarabe,² died at the hands of the Indians.

¹ Here there is a blank space. Remon fills it in in his edition with the name "Sancho de Ayila," Fol. 242 Vto.—G. G.

² Algarve?

Another good soldier named Rabanal Montañez died at the hands of the Indians.

A handsome man named Pedro de Guzman, who married a Valenciana named Doña Francisca de Valterra, went to Peru and gained reputation, and he and his wife were frozen to death.

A good crossbowman named Cristóbal Díaz, a native of Colmenar de Arenas, died a natural death.

Another soldier named Retamales died at the hands of the Indians in the affair of Tabasco.

Another valiant soldier who came was called Gínes Nórtes; he died in the affair at Yucatan, at the hands of the Indians.

A very skilful and valiant soldier named Luis Alonzo, who could cut very well with a sword, died at the hands of the Indians.

Alonzo Catalan, a good soldier, died at the hands of the Indians.

Another soldier named Juan Ciciliano, who was a settler in Mexico, died a natural death.

A good soldier named Fulano de Canillas, who was a drummer in Italy and was the same in New Spain, died at the hands of the Indians.

Pedro Hernández, who was secretary to Cortés, was a native of Seville, and died at the hands of the Indians.

Juan Díaz, who had a great cloud in his eye, and was a native of Burgos, was in charge of the things for barter and the provisions which Cortés took with him; he died at the hands of the Indians.

Diego de Soria, who was a settler in Mexico, died a natural death.

Another soldier, a youth named Juan Nuñez de Mercado, was reported to be a native of Cuellar, others said that he was a native of Madrigal; this soldier, who lost his eyesight, is now a settler at Puebla.

Another good soldier, and the richest of all those who came with Cortés, named Juan Sedeño, a native of Arevalo, brought his own ship and a mare and a negro, and bacon and much cassava bread; he was a distinguished man and died a natural death.

Fulano de Baena, who was a settler at Trinidad, died at the hands of the Indians.

One Zaragoza, already an old man, who was the father of Zaragoza the notary of Mexico, died a natural death.

A good soldier named Diego Martin de Ayomonte died a natural death.

Another soldier named Cárdenas (he himself said that he was grandson of the Comendador Mayor, Don Fulano Cárdenas) died at the hands of the Indians.

A soldier also named Cárdenas was a seaman and pilot, a native of Triana. This was he who said that he never had seen a country where there were two kings as there were in New Spain, for Cortés took his fifth like a king after the royal fifth was taken out; reflecting on this caused him to fall ill, and he went to Castile and made a report of it to His Majesty, and of other injuries which they had done him; he was very hostile to the affairs of Cortés, and His Majesty ordered him to be given a royal decree that he should be given Indians and a revenue of one thousand pesos, but, as soon as he returned with it to Mexico, he died.

Another very good soldier named Arguello, a native of Leon, died at the hands of the Indians.

A soldier named Diego Hernández, a native of Saelyzes de los Gallegos, who helped to saw the wood for the launches, went blind, and died a natural death.

A soldier of great strength and spirit named Fulano Vásquez, died in the hands of the Indians.

Another good soldier, a crossbowman named Arroyuelo, reported to be a native of Olmedo, died at the hands of the Indians.

Fulano Pizarro went on expeditions as a Captain, Cortés said he was his relation; at that time the Pizarros were not known by name, nor was Peru discovered. He died at the hands of the Indians.

Alvar López, a settler in Puebla, died a natural death.

Another good soldier named Alonzo Yañes, a native of Cordova; this soldier went with us to the Hibueras, and, while he was away, his wife married another husband, and when we returned from that journey, he would not take back his wife. He died a natural death.

A good soldier and very active man, named Magalanes, a Portuguese, died at the hands of the Indians.

Another Portuguese, a silversmith, died at the hands of the Indians.

Another Portuguese, already an old man, named Alonzo Martin de Alpedrino, died a natural death.

Another Portuguese, named Juan Álvarez Rubaco, died a natural death.

Another very valiant Portuguese, named Gonzalo Sánchez, died a natural death.

Another Portuguese, who became a settler at Puebla, named Gregorio Rios, a distinguished man, died a natural death.

Two other Portuguese, tall men, named Villanueva, became settlers at Puebla. I do not know what became of them or where they died.

Of three soldiers, with the names of Fulano de Ávila, one who was called Gaspar de Ávila, son-in-law of Ortigosa the notary, died a natural death; the other Ávila joined the Captain Andrés de Tápio, he died at the hands of the Indians. I do not remember where the other Ávila settled.

Two brothers, already old men, named Bandadas, natives of the land of Ávila, died at the hands of the Indians.

Three soldiers, all three of them named Espinosa: one was a Basque, he died in the hands of the Indians; the other was called Espinosa of the Blessing, for he always brought it into his conversation, and his talk was very pleasant, thanks to the good blessing; he died a natural death. The third Espinosa was a native of Espinosa de los Menteros; he died at the hands of the Indians.

Pedro Peron of Toledo, died a natural death.

A good soldier named Villa Sinda, a native of Portillo, died a natural death.

Two good soldiers who were nicknamed the "San Juanes:" one we called San Juan the haughty, because he was very pretentious, he died at the hands of the Indians; the other whom we called San Juan de Uchila, a Gallician, died a natural death.

Another good soldier named Martin Ysquierdo, a native of Castromocho, was a settler in the town of San Miguel, subject to Guatemala, and died a natural death.

One Aparicio, who married a woman named La Medina, a native of Maria de Rio Seco, settled at San Miguel, and died a natural death.

A good soldier named Cáceres, a native of Trujillo, died at the hands of the Indians.

A good soldier named Alonzo de Herrera, a native of Jéres, who was a Captain against the Zapotecs, stabbed another Captain named Figueroa over certain disputes about the command, and from fear that the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada, who at that time was Governor, should capture him, joined the expedition to Marañon, and there he died at the hands of the Indians. Figueroa was drowned in the sea on his way to Castile.

A youth named Maldonado, a native of Medellin, fell very ill with buñós, and I do not know if he died a natural death, nor can I assert it of the Maldonado

of Vera Cruz who was the husband of Doña Maria del Rincon.

Another soldier passed away named Morales, already an old man, who was lame of one leg, and was said to have been a soldier of the Comendador Solís; he was Alcalde in ordinary of Villa Rica and carried out true justice.

A soldier named Escalona the youth, died at the hands of the Indians.

Three other soldiers, settlers at Villa Rica, never went to the wars nor on any expedition in New Spain. One was named Arévalo, the other Juan Leon, and the third Madrigal; they died natural deaths.

Another soldier called by the nickname of "Lencero" [the linen draper], who owned the inn now called "de Lencero," which is between Vera Cruz and Puebla, was a good soldier and died a natural death.

Pedro Gallego, a pleasant man and a poet, who also owned an inn on the direct road from Vera Cruz to Mexico, died a natural death.

Alonzo Duran, who was somewhat cross-eyed and did not see well, and acted as Sacristan, died a natural death.

A soldier named Navarro, who was throughout attached to [the company of] Captain Sandoval, and afterwards married in Vera Cruz, died a natural death.

Another good soldier named Alonzo de Talavera, who was attached to the household of the Captain Sandoval, died at the hands of the Indians.

Two soldiers, one of them named Juan de Manzanilla, and the other Pedro de Manzanilla; the latter died at the hands of the Indians, and Juan de Manzanilla, who was a settler in Puebla, died a natural death.

A soldier named Benito de Bejel, who was drummer and tambourine player to the armies in Italy, as he also was in New Spain, died a natural death.

Alonzo Romero, who was a settler at Vera Cruz, a rich and distinguished man, died a natural death.

Niño Pinto, brother-in-law of Alonzo Romera, was a prominent and rich man in Vera Cruz ; he died a natural death.

A good soldier named Sindos de Portillo, a native of Portillo, who possessed very good Indians and was rich, left his Indians, sold his property and divided it among the poor, and became a Franciscan Friar. This Friar lived a holy life and was appreciated in Mexico, and it was generally known that he died a Saint and performed miracles, and he was almost a Saint.

Another good soldier named Francisco de Medina, a native of Medina del Campo, became a Franciscan Friar and was a good monk.

Another good soldier named Quintero, a native of Moguer, who owned good Indians and was rich, gave all up for God, and became a Franciscan Friar and was a good monk.

Yet another good soldier named Alonzo de Aguilar, who owned the inn, now called "de Aguilar," between Vera Cruz and Puebla, who was rich and held a good assignment of Indians, sold it all and gave it to God, and became a Dominican Friar and was a good monk. This Friar Aguilar was highly respected and was a very good Dominican Friar.

Another good soldier named Fulaño Berguillos held good Indians and was rich, but gave it all up, and became a Franciscan Friar. This Burguillos later on left the Order and was not as good a monk as he ought to have been.

Another good soldier named Escalante, who was very courtly, and a good horseman, became a Franciscan Friar ; he afterwards left the Monastery, but in about a month returned and took the cowl, and became a very good monk.

Another good soldier named Lyntorno, a native of Guadalajara, became a Franciscan Friar and was a good monk; he had held assignments of Indians and been a man of business.

Another good soldier named Gaspar Díaz, a native of Old Castile, who was rich through his Indians as well as from business, gave up everything to God and went to the pine forests of Guaxalcingo¹, in a very solitary part, and made a hermitage and stayed there as a hermit; he led such a good life and so fasted and chastised himself that he became very thin and weak, and it was said that he slept on the ground on some straw. As soon as the² good Bishop, Don Fray Juan de Zumárraga, knew about this he sent to summon him, and commanded him not lead such a severe life. The hermit Gaspar Díaz had such a good repute that two other hermits joined company with him, and all led good lives, and, at the end of the four years that they remained there, God was pleased to take him to his holy glory.

Another good soldier named Alonzo Bellido died at the hands of the Indians.

Fulano Paynado, who was crippled with the disease of boils after the conquest of Mexico, died in Vera Cruz.

A good soldier named Rivadeo Gallego died at the hands of the Indians, in the affair of Almeria.

Another soldier named Galleguillo, for he was small in stature, died at the hands of the Indians.

A brave and daring soldier named Lerma, who was annoyed because Cortés ordered him to be reprimanded for no fault whatever, went away among the Indians, and nothing [further] was heard of him dead or alive.

¹ Huexotzinco.

² Blotted out in the original: "very reverent."

Another good soldier named Pineda or Pinedo, who had been a servant of Diego Velásquez, Governor of Cuba, when Narvaez came left Mexico to join him, and was killed on the road by the Indians. It was suspected that Cortés ordered him to be killed.

Another good soldier and good crossbowman named Pedro López died a natural death.

Another Pedro López, a crossbowman, went with Alonzo de Ávila to the Island of Hispaniola and remained there.

There were three blacksmiths, one named Juan Garcia, the other Hernan Martyn, who married La Bermuda, and I do not remember the name of the third. One died at the hands of the Indians and the other two natural deaths.

A soldier named Álvaro Gallego, who became a settler in Mexico and was brother-in-law to some Zamoras, died a natural death.

Another soldier, who was already an old man, named Paredes (father of one Paredes who is now in the province of Yucatan), died at the hands of the Indians.

Another soldier named Guillermo Mexia Rapalpelo [the plunderer] (because he himself said that he was the descendant of a Mexia who went about robbing in the time of the King Don Juan), in company with one Zenteno, died at the hands of the Indians.

Pedro de Tápia died paralysed after the capture of Mexico.

Certain pilots, namely Anton de Alamínos and his son, who also bore the same name as his father, natives of Palos, and one Comacho of Triana, and one Juan Álvarez 'el Mariquillo' of Huelva, and one Sopuesta del Condado, already an old man, and one Cárdenas (this was he who was affected in his mind when they took out two fifths from the gold, one of them for Cortés), and one

Gonzalo de Umbria; and there was another pilot named Galdin, and there were also other pilots whose names I do not remember, except that of one whom I saw remaining as a settler in Mexico, which was Sopuesta. All the rest went to Cuba and Jamaica and other islands and to Castile to get engagements as pilots, through fear of the Marquis Cortés who was not on good terms with them, because they gave advice to Francisco de Garay about the country which he begged His Majesty to grant to him. There were even four of these pilots who made complaints against Cortés before His Majesty, these were the two Alamínos and Cárdenas and Gonzalo de Umbria, and he [His Majesty] ordered them to be given royal decrees that to each of them there should be given in New Spain a thousand pesos of revenue. Cárdenas came back and the others never returned.

A soldier named Lucas Genovés, who was a pilot, died at the hands of the Indians.

Another soldier named Juan Genovés died at the hands of the Indians.

A third Genovés, who was a settler in Oaxaca, the husband of an old Portuguese woman, died a natural death.

A soldier named Enríquez, a native of the country of Palencia, was choked by fatigue and the weight of his arms and the heat they caused him.

A soldier named Cristóbal de Jaen, who was a carpenter, died at the hands of the Indians.

One Ochoa, a Basque, a rich and notable man who became a settler in Oaxaca, died a natural death.

A very valiant soldier, named Zamudio, went to Castile because he had stabbed someone in Mexico, and in Castile he became Captain of a company of men at arms, and died in the battle of Castyl Novo with many other Spanish gentlemen.

Another soldier, named Cervantes the crazy, was a buffoon and a knave, and died at the hands of the Indians.

One Plazuela died at the hands of the Indians.

A good soldier named Alonzo Pererelmayte, who came married to a very beautiful Indian from Bayamo, died at the hands of the Indians.

Martin Vásquez, a native of Olmedo, a rich and distinguished man who became a settler in Mexico, died a natural death.

Sebastian Rodríguez, who was a crossbowman and after Mexico was captured became trumpeter, died a natural death.

Another crossbowman named Peñalosa, a companion of Sebastian Rodríguez, died a natural death.

A soldier who called himself Álvarez, a seaman and native of Palos, who was said to have had thirty sons and daughters by Indian women within a matter of three years, died among the Indians in the Higueras.

A soldier named Perez Malinche, whom I afterwards heard called Artiaga, a settler at Puebla and a rich man, died a natural death.

A good soldier named Pedro Gonzáles Sabiote died a natural death.

A good soldier named Gerónimo de Aguilar, whom I include in this list because it was he whom we found at the Punta de Catoche in the hands of the Indians, became our interpreter, and died of bubos.

Another soldier named Pedro Valenciano, who was a settler in Mexico, died a natural death.

Of two soldiers who bore the surname of Tarifa, one became a settler in Oaxaca and husband of La Muñiz, and died a natural death; the other, who was called Tarifa of the White Hands, was a native of Seville, and that name was given him because he was not fit for warfare or hard-

ship, only to talk of past events ; he died drowned in the River of the Golfo Dulce, he and his horse, and they never appeared again.

Another good soldier named Pedro Sánchez Farfan, a man of worth who was Captain in Texcoco while we were attacking Mexico, died a natural death.

A good soldier named Alonzo Escobar, the page, who personally was held in great esteem, died at the hands of the Indians.

Another soldier named the Bachelor Escobar was an Apothecary and effected cures ; he died a natural death.

Another soldier, also named Escobar, was very brave, but of such [a disposition] and so quarrelsome and ill mannered that he died hanged, because he violated a woman and was mutinous.

A soldier named Fulano de Santiago, a native of Huelva, returned to Castile a rich man. Another man, his companion, named Ponce, from Santiago, died at the hands of the Indians.

One Fulano Méndez, already an old man, died at the hands of the Indians.

Three other soldiers died in the wars which we fought in Tabasco. One was named Saldaña, and I do not remember the names of the other two.

Another good soldier and crossbowman, an old man much given to card playing, died at the hands of the Indians.

Another soldier, also an old man, brought his son named Ortequilla, who was page to the great Montezuma ; both the old man and his son died at the hands of the Indians.

A soldier named Fulano de Gaona, a native of Medina del Rio Seco, died at the hands of the Indians.

A soldier named Juan de Cáceres, who after the capture

of Mexico was a rich man and a settler in Mexico, died a natural death.

A soldier named Gonzalo Hurones, a native of las Garrovillas, died a natural death.

A soldier, already an old man, called Ramíres the elder, who limped with one leg and was a settler in Mexico, died a natural death.

Another very valiant soldier named Luis Farfan died at the hands of the Indians.

A soldier named Morillas died at the hands of the Indians.

A soldier named Fulano de Rojas afterwards went to Peru and there died.

A certain Astorga, an old man who became a settler at Oaxaca, died a natural death.

Of Pedro Tostado and his son who bore the same name, one Tostado died at the hands of the Indians, and the other died a natural death.

A good soldier named Baldovinos died at the hands of the Indians.

I also wish to place here Guillen de la Loa, and Andrés Núñez, and Maestre Pedro the harpist, and three other soldiers. This Guillen de la Loa was a notable man and was one of those whom Francisco de Garay had sent to explore Panuco; he came to take possession of the country for Garay, and we took him prisoner, him and those in his company, and for this reason I place them in this account among those [the companions] of Cortés. Guillen de la Loa died of a cane thrust which he was given in a game with reed spears. The Maestre Pedro the harpist, who was a Valencian, died a natural death. Andrés Núñez also died a natural death, the others died at the hands of the Indians.

One Porras, very rubicund and a great singer, died at the hands of the Indians.

One Ortiz was a fine performer on the viola, and teacher of dancing; another who came with him as companion, named Bartolomé García, was a miner in the Island of Cuba, and this Ortiz and Bartolomé García owned the best horse that there was in our Company, the one which Cortés took from them and paid them for it; both companions died at the hands of the Indians.

A good soldier named Serrano, a crossbowman, died at the hands of the Indians.

An old man passed away named Pedro de Valencia, a native of a place belonging to Placencia.

A good soldier named Quintero, who was a shipmaster, died at the hands of the Indians.

Alonso Rodríguez, who left good mines in the Island of Cuba and was a rich man, died at the hands of the Indians at the rocky hills which they now call the Peñoles which the Marquis captured.

There also died at that place another good soldier named Gaspar Sánchez, a nephew of the Treasurer of Cuba, with other soldiers who were followers of Narvaez.

One Pedro de Palma, who was the first husband of Elvira López la Larga, died hanged, together with another soldier of Cortés' company named Trebejo, a native of Fuente Ginaldo. Gil Gonzáles de Ávila or Francisco de las Casas ordered them to be hanged, and they hanged a presbyter together with them, as revolters and instigators of mutinies, when they were on their way to New Spain from Naco, after they had beheaded Cristóbal de Olid.

These soldiers and the presbyter belonged to the party of Cristóbal de Olid, and, when I came from the Hibueras in the company of Captain Luis Marin, I was shown the tree, a ceiba, where they were hanged.

Once more to take up my first list: Andrés de Mol, a Levantine, died at the hands of the Indians.

Another good soldier named Alberca, a native of Villa Nueva de la Serena, died at the hands of the Indians.

Concerning other very good soldiers who used to be in Cuba, who were sailors, pilots, masters and mates of the artificers of the ships which we destroyed, many of them were very active soldiers in the wars and battles, but as I do not remember them all I do not place their names here.

There were also other soldiers who were seamen named los Peñates, and the Pinzons, the former natives of Gibraltar and the others of Palos; some of them died at the hands of the Indians and others natural deaths.

I also wish to mention myself here in this report, at the end of all, because I came on a voyage of discovery twice before Don Hernando Cortés undertook his voyage, (as I have already stated in the chapter that speaks about it), and the third time with Cortés himself. My name is Bernal Díaz del Castillo and I am a settler and Regidor of the City of Santiago de Guatemala, and a native of the very noble and famous and most celebrated town of Medino del Campo, the son of Francisco Díaz del Castillo, who was Regidor of it, and for another name was called "el Galan," may he rest in holy glory. I give many thanks and much praise to Our Lord Jesus Christ and our Lady the Holy Virgin Mary, His blessed mother, who have protected me so that I have not been offered in sacrifice, as in those times they sacrificed the majority of my companions whom I have named. So now one can understand and see clearly our heroic deeds, and who were the valiant Captains and brave soldiers who conquered this part of the New World, and the honour of us all shall not be attributed to one Captain alone.

CHAPTER CCVI.

About the stature and shape of certain of the Captains and brave soldiers and the age they had attained when we came to conquer New Spain.

I HAVE already spoken, in the chapter that treats of it, of the age and the personal appearance of the Marquis Don Hernando Cortés at the time when he died at Castilleja de la Cuesta, and of the rank he held, and other things which will be found written in this narrative.

I have also said, in the chapter that tells about it, how old Captain Cristóbal de Olid was when he went with the fleet to the Hibueras, and about his disposition and personal appearance, and there [the description] can be seen.

I wish now to record the age and appearance of Don Pedro de Alvarado, who was Comendador of Santiago and Adelantado and Governor of Guatemala, Honduras, and Chiapa. He was about thirty-four¹ years old when he came here, of good size, and well proportioned, with a very cheerful countenance and a winning smile,² and because he was so handsome the Mexican Indians gave him the name of "Tonatio," which means "the Sun." He was very active and a good horseman,³ and above all was very frank-hearted and a good talker, and he was very neat in his attire but with rich and costly clothes. He wore a small gold chain round his neck with a jewel, and a ring with a good diamond. As I have already stated where he died and other things about him, I will say no more here.

¹ Blotted out in the original : "six."

² Blotted out in the original : "but grave when necessary."

³ Blotted out in the original : "and very valiant."

The Adelantado Don Francisco de Montejo was of medium height and cheerful countenance ; he liked merri-ment, and was a man of business and a good horseman, and was about thirty-five years old when he came. He was open-handed and spent more than his income ; he was Adelantado and Governor of Yucatan and had other titles ; he died in Castile.

Captain Gonzalo de Sandoval was a very valiant Captain, and was about twenty-four¹ years of age when he came here ; he was Chief Alguacil of New Spain and for a matter of ten months was Governor of New Spain together with the Treasurer, Alonzo de Estrada. He was not very tall but was very well made and robust, with a broad and deep chest, as were his shoulders. He was somewhat bow-legged, and was a very good horseman. His countenance tended towards the coarse, and his chestnut hair and beard were rather curly. His voice was not very clear, but slightly hesitating and lisping, more or less so. He was not a man of letters but of good average knowledge, nor was he covetous of anything but to be of good repute and act like a good and valiant Captain. In the wars which we waged in New Spain he always showed consideration for the soldiers who appeared to him to be behaving like men, and he protected and helped them. He was not a man to wear rich apparel but was always plainly clad. He owned the best horse, the best galloper and most easily turned to one side or the other, and they said that its like had never been seen in Castile or elsewhere. It was a chestnut with a star on its forehead and a white stocking on its near hind leg. It was named Motilla, and now when men dispute about good horses it is the custom to say in proof of excellence, "It is as good as was Motilla." I must stop talking about horses

¹ Blotted out in the original : "eight or thirty."

and say about this valiant Captain that he died in the town of Palos, when he went with Don Hernando Cortés to kiss the feet of His Majesty. It was about Gonzalo de Sandoval that the Marquis Cortés said to His Majesty, that besides the brave soldiers whom he had in his company, who were so valiant that one might name them amongst the most notable that the world had known, there was above them all Sandoval, who was already [fitted to be] the commander of many armies both in council and in action. He was a native of Medellin and a gentleman by birth, and his father was Alcalde of a fortress.

Let us go on to speak of another good Captain named Juan Velásquez de Leon, a native of Old Castile; he was about thirty-six years old when he came here. He was of good size and robust with good shoulders and chest, all well proportioned and upstanding. His countenance was a strong one and his beard was somewhat curly and well kept, his voice was harsh and coarse and he stuttered a little; he was very spirited and a good talker, and when at that time he had any possessions he shared them with his comrades. It is said that in the Island of Hispaniola he killed a gentleman of importance, a rich man named Rivas Altas or Altas Rivas, in personal combat, and when he had killed him neither the Magistrates of that Islánd nor the Royal Audiencia were ever able to catch him to execute justice in the case, but although they went to arrest him he defended himself against the Alguacils, and he came to the Island of Cuba, and from Cuba to New Spain. He was a very good horseman and both on foot and on horseback was a very thorough man. He died at the bridges when we went fleeing from Mexico.

Diego de Ordás was a native of Campos de Valverde or Castro Verde; he was probably forty years old when

he came here, and was Captain of sword and shield soldiers, for he was no horseman; he was brave and judicious. He was of good height and sturdy and had a very strong face with a thin blackish beard. In his speech he pronounced certain words imperfectly and with something of a stammer. He was frank and a good talker, a Comendador of [the order of] Santiago, and died in the affair of Marañon when he was Captain or Governor, but I do not know very well about that.

Captain Luis Marin was of fair size, robust and vigorous; he was bow-legged and his beard was reddish and his face long and pleasing, except that he had scars as though he had had smallpox. He was about thirty years old when he came here. He was a native of San Lucar, lisped a little like a Sevillano, was a good horseman, and a good talker¹; he died in the affairs of Michuacan.

Captain Pedro de Ircio was of middle height and limped, he had a cheerful face and talked to excess, and so it would come about that he was always telling stories about Don Pedro Giron and the Conde de Hurueña; he was cunning and so we called him "Sour grapes" without works, and without having done anything worth recording he died in Mexico.

Alonzo de Avila was a Captain for a certain time in the affair of Mexico, and was the first Accountant that Cortés chose until our Lord the King should choose otherwise. He had a good figure and pleasing face, and in talking he expressed himself very clearly and with good judgment. He was very daring and valiant, and about thirty-three years old when he came here. There was another [good] point, that he was very frank with his comrades, but he was so arrogant and fond of commanding and not being commanded, and somewhat jealous, besides being proud

¹ Blotted out in the original: "he did not know how to read."

and quarrelsome, that Cortés could not endure him, and this was the reason why he sent him to Castile as Proctor, together with one Antonio de Quiñones, a native of Zamora. With them he sent the personal effects and riches of Montezuma and Guatemoc, and the Frenchmen stole them, and they captured Alonzo de Ávila (for Quiñones was already dead in Terceira). Two years later Alonzo de Ávila returned to New Spain and died either in Yucatan or Mexico. This Alonzo de Ávila was uncle to the gentlemen who were beheaded in Mexico, who were the sons of Gil Gonzáles de Benavides, which event I have already spoken about and reported in my history.

Andrés de Monjaras was a Captain during the war in Mexico; he was of fair height and pleasing countenance with a black beard, he was good company, but because he was very ill with boils he did not do anything worth recording, but I place his name in this report so that it may be known that he was a Captain. He was about thirty years old when he came here, he died from the pain of his boils.

Let us go on to a very valiant soldier named Cristóbal de Olea, a native of the land of Medina del Campo; he was about twenty six years old when he came here, was well made and robust, neither tall nor short, and had a good chest and shoulders; he had rather a coarse face, but was amiable, his beard and hair were inclined to be curly, and his voice was clear. This soldier was so valiant in all that we saw him do, and so quick with his arms that we held him in great good will and honoured him. It was he who saved Don Hernando Cortés from death in the affair at Xochimilco, when the Mexican squadrons had dragged him from his horse "El Romo" and had seized him to carry him off to be sacrificed. He also rescued Cortés another time on the small causeway, when a

number of Mexicans had grappled with him to carry him off for sacrifice. They had already wounded Cortés himself in one leg and had carried off sixty-two soldiers, when this brave soldier performed wonders in personal combat, and, although he was very badly wounded, killed and slashed and stabbed all the Indians who were carrying Cortés off and made them release him, and this saved his life, but Cristóbal de Olea gave up his life there through saving him.

I wish to speak of two soldiers named Gonzalo Domínguez and a certain Lares. I assert that they were so valiant and daring that we esteemed them equally with Cristóbal de Olid. They were big men and sturdy, with pleasant faces, good speakers and very well conducted, and, so as not to waste more words in their praise, they may be numbered amongst the most valiant soldiers that Castile has produced; they died in the battle of Otumba—I speak of Lares—Domínguez [died] in the battle of Huastepaque, from a horse rolling on top of him.

Let us go on to another good Captain and valiant soldier named Andrés de Tápia. He was about twenty-four years old when he came here, his face was rather ash-coloured and not very pleasing, he was well made and had a thin and scanty beard, and was a good Captain both on foot and on horseback; he died a natural death.

If it were necessary to describe all the features and forms of our Captains, and brave soldiers, who came with Cortés it would be a long story, for as all were valiant and of great repute, we were worthy to be recorded in letters of gold. I do not include here other¹ Captains who belonged to the Company of Narvaez, for my intention since I began to tell my story was to record only the doings and adventures of us who came with Cortés, and I only wish to place

¹ Blotted out in the original: "many valiant."

here [the name of] Captain Panfilo de Narvaez, him who came against us from the Island of Cuba with thirteen hundred soldiers, and with all these¹ [at his back] we defeated him with two hundred and sixty-six soldiers, and how and when and in what way that deed was done, may be seen in my narrative.

To go back to my story, Narvaez was by appearance about forty years old, tall and strong limbed, his face long, with a red beard, and an agreeable presence. His speech and voice was deep as though it came from a cavern. He was a good horseman, said to be brave, a native of Valladolid or of Tudela de Duero, and was married to a lady named Maria de Valenzuela. He was a Captain in the Island of Cuba and a rich man, but said to be very parsimonious. When we defeated him he lost an eye; he made use of good arguments in what he said. He went to Castile to complain to His Majesty of Cortés and of us, and His Majesty granted him the government of certain lands in Florida and there he spent and lost whatever he possessed.

Two interested gentlemen have seen and read the foregoing record of all the Captains and soldiers who came over to New Spain from the Island of Cuba with the daring and valiant Don Hernando Cortés, which I have written down with the qualities both of their bodies and faces, their ages and the rank they held, and where they died and what country they belonged to, and they [the two gentlemen] have told me that they marvel at me, how after so many years I have not forgotten and [still] recollect them. To this I answer that it is no great matter that I now remember their names, although we were five hundred and fifty comrades, for we always

¹ Blotted out in the original: "not counting among them the sailors."

discussed matters together, on expeditions as well as when keeping watch and in the battles and encounters of the wars, and [noted] those of us who were killed in the battles, and how they were carried off to be sacrificed. In this way we told [these things] to one another, especially when we came out wounded from some very bloody and indecisive battles and missed those who remained there dead, and for this reason I include them in this narrative. It is not to be wondered at, for in past times there were great Kings and valiant Captains who, when going to war, knew the names of their soldiers and recognised them and called them by name, and even knew of what provinces or countries or regions they were native. In those days each one of the armies they led often numbered more than thirty thousand men, and the historians who have written about it say that Mithridates, the King of Pontus, was one of those who knew [the men of] his armies, another was the King of Egypt, and another the King of Epirus, otherwise called Alexander. They also say that Hannibal, the great Captain of Carthage, knew all his soldiers, and in our time the valiant and great Captain Don Gonzalo Hernández de Córdova, and many other brave commanders have done so. Moreover I say that if I knew how to paint and carve as did that famous Apelles or those of our own times Berruguete and Michael Angelo, and the famous man of Burgos whom they say is a second Apelles, I have in my mind and sense and memory their bodies and forms and heights and manners and faces and features [so fixed] that I could draw all those I have mentioned true to nature, and even how each one entered on a battle and the great spirit they displayed. Thanks to God and our Lord Jesus Christ that I escaped being sacrificed to the Idols, and was freed from many perils and snares, so that I can now write this memorial or narrative.

CHAPTER CCVII.

About the matters dealt with herein, concerning the merits which we the true conquistadores possess, which will be pleasant to hear.

I HAVE already enumerated the soldiers who came with Cortés and where they died, and if one wishes to know about us, we were most of us gentlemen, although all could not be of such illustrious lineage, for it is evident that in this world men are not born equal either in rank or in virtue. Leaving this talk aside, in addition to our ancient nobility we performed heroic deeds and great exploits in the wars, fighting by day and night serving our Lord and King, discovering these lands until we conquered New Spain and the Great City of Mexico and many other provinces at our own cost,¹ when we were far away from Castile and had no other help save that of Our Lord Jesus Christ, which is the true help and support that inspires us more than ever. If we read the ancient scriptures which speak of it, and if it is as they say, many gentlemen were in past times exalted and placed in high position, both in Spain as well as in other countries, serving, as at that time they served, in the wars, and for other duties which were acceptable to the Kings who then reigned. I also have noted that some of those gentlemen, who then rose until they held titles of estates and honours, did not go to such wars, nor did they join in the battles, without first being paid wages and salaries. Besides their being paid they were given towns and castles and great lands in perpetuity, and privileges with exemptions which their descendants hold. In addition to this, when the King Don Jaime de Aragon conquered and captured a great part of their kingdom from the Moors, he

¹ Blotted out in the original : "and reputation."

divided it among the gentlemen and soldiers who were present at its conquest, and since those times they own their coats of arms and they are powerful. The same when Granada was captured, and Naples at the time of the Great Captain. The Prince of Orange in the affair of Naples also gave lands and lordships to those who assisted them in the wars and battles. I have called this to mind so that there can be seen our many good and notable services which we rendered our Lord the King and all Christendom; let them be placed in the balance and everything measured in proportion, and it will be found that we are worthy and deserving to be placed and rewarded like the gentlemen just mentioned by me. Although to the valiant soldiers whom in these latter pages I have called to mind many other brave and vigorous comrades could be added, all gave me the reputation of being a good soldier.

To go back to my story, let interested readers observe my narrative with attention and they will see in how many battles and encounters and wars I have been present since I came to explore,¹ and how I have been twice seized and grabbed by many Mexican Indians, with whom at the time I was fighting, who intended to carry me off to be sacrificed, and at the same moment they carried off many others of my companions, to say nothing of other great perils and hardships, both from hunger and thirst and infinite toil, which are sure to happen to those who undertake similar explorations in new countries, which will be found described point by point in this my story. I do not wish to dip my pen further into this but will record the benefits which have followed on our illustrious conquests.

¹ Blotted out in the original: "and how full of wounds I have been."

CHAPTER CCVIII.

How the Indians throughout New Spain practised many sacrifices and vices, and [how] we did away with these and instructed them in the holy matters of good doctrine.

I HAVE given an account of events which should be clearly told, such as the benefits which have accrued both to the service of God and of His Majesty through our glorious conquests, costly as they were in the lives of the majority of my comrades, for very few of us are still alive, and those who died were sacrificed, and their hearts and blood offered to the Mexican idols named Tezcatepuca and Huichilobos.

I wish to begin by speaking about the sacrifices which we found in the countries and provinces we conquered. These [provinces] were full of sacrifices and iniquities, for they slew every year in Mexico alone, and certain neighbouring pueblos on the Lake, over two thousand¹ persons big and little, as was found from the count which the Franciscan Monks made (and they were the first to come to New Spain, four and a half years before the Dominicans came), and these Franciscans were very good monks and [men] of holy principles.

In other provinces many more would be added to this count, and they practised other vices of sacrifice, and these were in so many ways I should never finish writing about them in detail, but those which I saw and took note of I will call to mind. They were accustomed to sacrifice the foreheads, ears, tongues, and lips, the breasts, arms, thighs and legs, and even the genital parts, and in some provinces they were circumcised and had flint knives with which to circumcise. The oratories,

¹ Blotted out in the original : "and five hundred."

which are Cues, for so they are called among them, were so numerous that I deliver them to execration. Much in the same way as we in Castile have in every city our holy churches and parish churches and hermitages and wayside chapels, so in this country of New Spain they have their Idol houses full of devils and diabolical figures. In addition to these Cues, every Indian man and woman has two altars, one near their sleeping place and the other at the door of the house, and in the houses many little chests and others which they call "petacas" full of Idols, some small and others large, and small stones and flints, and little books of a paper made from the bark of a tree which they call "Amate," and in them are marked the signs of dates and of past events. In addition to this nearly all of them were sodomites, especially those who live on the coast and hot country, to such an extent that boys go about clothed in the dress of women to gain [a livelihood] in that diabolical and abominable employment. Then they ate human flesh, just as we bring beef from the butchers, and they have in all the pueblos prisons of stout beams, made like houses, as cages, and in them they place and fatten many Indian men and women and boys, and when they are fat they sacrifice and eat them. In addition to this, in the wars which some provinces and pueblos wage against others, those who are captured and taken prisoners are sacrificed and eaten. Then sons have carnal connection with mothers, and brothers with sisters, and uncles with nieces; many are found who indulge in this iniquitous vice. About drunkards I do not know what to say, so many obscenities take place among them; I wish to note only one here which we found in the province of Panuco; they make an injection by the anus with some [hollow] canes and distend the intestines with wine, and this is done among them in the same way as among us an enema is applied

Then they have as many women as they wish, and they have many other vices and iniquities. From all these things which I have enumerated it pleased our Lord Jesus Christ that, with his holy aid, we, the true Conquistadores, who have escaped from the wars, battles, and dangers of death, already recorded by me, have freed them, and led them into cleanly ways and taught them holy doctrine.

It is true that when two years had already elapsed and we had nearly all the lands at peace, with the cleanliness and manner of life which I have mentioned, some very good Franciscan Friars arrived in New Spain who set a very good example and doctrine. Four years later other good monks came, of [the order of] Señor Santo Domingo, who have extirpated it [vice] from the very root, and have gained much fruit in the holy doctrine¹. However it should be carefully noted that, after God, it is to us the true Conquistadores who discovered and conquered it [the country], and from the first took away their Idols and taught them the holy doctrine, that the prize and reward for all of it is due, before all other persons, although they be priests; for when a good beginning is made and the middle is [satisfactory] and the end good, the whole is worthy of praise, which interested readers can see in the good order, Christianity, and justice which we show them in New Spain.

I will leave this subject and will relate the other advantages which, after God, because of us, have come to the natives of New Spain.

¹ Blotted out in the original: "and Christianity of the natives."

CHAPTER CCIX.

How we impressed very good and holy doctrines on the Indians of New Spain, and about their conversion, and how they were

- baptised, and turned to our holy faith, and how we taught them the Offices in use in Castile, and to comprehend and secure justice.

AFTER getting rid of the idolatries and all the evil vices they practised, it pleased our Lord God that with his holy aid and with the good fortunes and the holy Christianity of our most Christian Emperor Don Carlos of Glorious Memory, and of our King and Lord the felicitous and invincible King of Spain, our Lord Don Felipe, his much loved and cherished son (May God grant him many years to live with an increase of more kingdoms, so that he may enjoy them in this his holy and happy [life-]time), there were baptised, after we conquered the country, all, both men and women, and children who have since been born, whose souls formerly went, lost, to the Infernal regions. Now there are many and good monks of [the order of] Señor San Francisco and of Santo Domingo and of other Orders, who go among the pueblos preaching, and, when a child is of the age our holy Mother Church of Rome ordains, they baptise it. Furthermore, through the holy sermons preached, the Holy Gospel is firmly planted in their hearts, and they go to Confession every year, and some of them, who have most knowledge of our holy faith, receive the Sacrament. In addition to this they have their Churches richly adorned with altars and all pertaining to the holy divine worship, with crosses and candlesticks and wax tapers and chalice and patens and silver plates, some large and some small, and censers all worked in silver. Then, in rich pueblos, they have copes, chasubles, and frontals, and often in moderate [sized] pueblos they are of velvet, damask and

satin, and of taffeta of various colours and workmanship, and the arms of the crosses are elaborately embroidered with gold and silk¹, and the crosses of the dead are of black satin, and figured on them is a death's head with its ugly likeness and the bones, and the pall of the bier itself is sometimes good and at other times not so good. Then the necessary bells [vary] with the rank of each pueblo. There is no lack of choir singers with well harmonised voices such as tenors, trebles, contraltos, and basses, and in some pueblos there are organs, and nearly all of them have flutes, oboes, sackbuts and lutes. As for trumpets, shrill and deafening, there are not as many in my country, which is Old Castile, as there are in this province of Guatemala. It is a thing to be grateful for to God, and for profound consideration, to see how the natives assist in celebrating a holy Mass, especially when it is chanted by the Franciscans and Dominicans who have charge of the curacy of the pueblo where it is celebrated. There is another good thing they do [namely] that both men women and children, who are of the age to learn them, know all the holy prayers in their own languages and are obliged to know them. They have other good customs about their holy Christianity, that when they pass near a sacred altar or Cross they bow their heads with humility, bend their knees, and say the prayer "Our Father," which we Conquistadores have taught them, and they place lighted wax candles before the holy altars and crosses, for formerly they did not know how to use wax in making candles. In addition to what I have said, we taught them to show great reverence and obedience to all the monks and priests, and, when these went to their pueblos, to sally forth to receive them with

¹ Blotted out in the original: "and even in some places with pearls."

lighted wax candles and to ring the bells, and to feed them very well. This they do with the monks, and they paid the same attentions to the priests, but after they had seen and known some of these and the covetousness of the rest, and that they committed irregularities in the pueblos, they took no [further] notice of them and did not want them as Curas in their pueblos, but Franciscans and Dominicans. It does not mend matters that the poor Indians say to a prelate that they do not hear him or . . . but what more there is to be said about this subject had better remain in the inkpot, and I will return to my story. Besides the good customs reported by me they have others both holy and good, for when the day of Corpus Christi comes, or that of Our Lady, or other solemn festivals when among us we form processions, most of the pueblos in the neighbourhood of this city of Guatemala come out in procession with their crosses and lighted wax tapers, and carry on their shoulders, on a litter, the image of the saint who is the patron of the pueblo, as richly [adorned] as they are able, and they come chanting litanies and other prayers and playing on their flutes and trumpets. The same thing they do in their own pueblos when the day comes for these solemn festivals. They have the custom of making offerings, on Sundays and at Easter¹ and especially on All Saints Day, and about this custom of making offerings the secular priests hurry them up in their parishes by such means that the Indians cannot possibly forget, for two or three days before the festival takes place they order them to prepare for the offering. The Monks also [seek] offerings, but not with so great solicitude.

Let us get on, and state how most of the Indian

¹ Domingos y Pascuas—Pascua is not only Easter, but any festival lasting three days.

natives of these lands have successfully learned all the trades that there are among us in Castile, and have their shops of the trades, and artisans, and gain a living by it. There are gold and silver smiths, both of chased and of hollow work, and they are very excellent craftsman, also lapidaries and painters. Carvers also do most beautiful work with their delicate burins of iron, especially in carving jades¹, and in them depict all the phases of the holy passion of our Lord Redeemer and Saviour Jesus Christ, such that, if one had not seen them, one would never believe that Indians had done. It seems in my judgment that the most renowned painter, such as was Apelles in ancient times, or in our times a certain Berruguete and Michael Angelo or the other modern now lately become famous, who is a native of Burgos,² who has as great a reputation as Apelles, could not emulate with their most skilful pencils the works of art in jade, nor the reliquaries, which are executed by three Mexican Indian craftsmen of that trade, named Andrés de Aquino, Juan de la Cruz, and El Crespillo. In addition to this nearly all the sons of Chieftains are usually grammarians, and would have become expert, if the holy synod had not commanded them to abandon that which the very reverend Archbishop of Mexico had ordered to be done.

Many sons of Chieftains know how to read and write, and to compose books of plain chant, and there are craftsmen in weaving satin and taffeta and making woollen cloth, from *veintecuatrenos*³ to sackcloth, and cotton cloths and rugs. They are carders, woolcombers, and weavers in the same manner as there are in Segovia and in Cuenca, and others are hat makers and soap

¹ Esmeriles = half precious stones, such as jade, agate, etc.

² In the original there appears blotted out: "who is called" and then follows a blank space.

³ A technical term for a narrow band of twenty-four threads.

makers. "There are only two crafts they have not been able to undertake, although they have tried : these are to make glass, and to become druggists, but I believe them to be so intelligent that they will acquire them very well. Some of them are surgeons and herbalists. They understand conjuring and working puppets and make very good guitars, indeed they were craftsmen by nature before we came to New Spain. Now they breed cattle of all sorts, and break in oxen, and plough the land, and sow wheat, and thresh harvest, and sell it, and make bread and biscuit, and they have planted their lands and hereditaments with all the trees and fruits which we have brought from Spain, and sell the fruit which they produce. They have planted so many trees that, because the peaches are not good for the health, and the banana plantations give them too much shade, they have cut and are cutting down many of them and putting in quinces and apples and pears, which they hold in higher esteem.

Let us go on, and I will speak of the laws which we have shown them how to guard and execute, and how every year they are to choose the Alcaldes ordinarios and Regidores, Notaries, Alguacils, Fiscals, and Mayordomos, and have their municipal houses (Cabildos) where they meet two days in the week, and they place door-keepers in them, and give judgment and order debts to be paid which are owed by one to another. For some criminal acts they flog and chastise, and if it is for a death or something atrocious they remit it [the case] to the Governors, if there is no Royal Audiencia. According to what people, who know very well, have told me, in Tlaxcala, Texcoco, Cholula, Oaxaca and Tepeaca and in other great cities, when the Indians hold Court (Cabildo), Macebearers with gilt maces precede those who are Governors and Alcaldes (the same as the Viceroy of New Spain take with them), and justice is done with as much

propriety and authority as among ourselves, and they appreciate and desire to know much of the laws of the kingdom.

In addition to this, many of the Caciques are rich, and possess horses, and bring good saddles* with trappings, and ride abroad through the cities and towns and places where they are going for amusement, or of which they are natives, and bring Indians and pages to accompany them. In some pueblos, they even play at tilting with reeds and have bull fights, and they tilt at the ring, especially on Corpus Christi day or the day of San Juan or Señor Santiago, or of Our Lady of August, or at the removal¹ of the Saint of the pueblo from the Church. There are many who wait for the bulls although they are fierce, and many of them are horsemen, especially in a pueblo named Chiapa of the Indians, and, even those who are not Caciques, nearly all of them own horses, and some own herds of mares and mules, and use them to bring in firewood and maize and lime and other things of the kind which they sell in the Plazas, and many of them are carriers in the same way as we have in our Castile.

Not to waste more words, they carry on all trades very perfectly—and even know how to weave tapestry cloths.

I will stop talking further on this subject and will tell of many other grandeurs which, through us, there have been and still are in New Spain.

¹ Probably the round of visits paid by the image of the saint to the various Cofradías.

CHAPTER CCX.

About other matters and advantages which have followed from our renowned conquests and labours.

THERE will already have been understood from the past chapters all that has been reported by me about the benefits and advantages which have been conferred by our renowned and holy exploits and conquests. I will now speak of the gold and silver and precious stones and other riches, from cochineal to sarsaparilla and cowhides, which have gone from New Spain and are going every year to Castile to our King and Lord, both on account of his Royal Fifths, as well as through many other presents which we sent him as soon as we took possession of these lands for him, not counting the great quantity which merchants and passengers took. Since the wise King Solomon built and ordered to be constructed the Holy Temple of Jerusalem with the gold and silver which they brought him from the Islands of Tarsis, Ophir, and Saba, there has never been reported in any ancient writings more gold and silver and riches than what has gone daily to Castile from these lands. I assert this, although already from Peru, as is notorious, innumerable thousands of pesos of gold and silver have been sent. At the time we conquered New Spain the name of Peru was not known, nor was it discovered or subdued until ten years¹ later. Always from the very beginning we sent very rich presents to His Majesty, and for this reason and for others which I will state I place New Spain first, for we well know that in the events which have taken place in Peru the Captains, Governors, and soldiers joined in civil war, and all has been upset in blood and in the

¹ Blotted out in the original : "two three four."

deaths of many soldier bandits, because they have^d not had the respect and obedience which was due to our Lord and King, and there has been a great decrease [in numbers] of the natives. In this New Spain we all bow down, and will for ever bend our breasts to the ground, as we are bound to do, to our King and Lord, and place our lives and fortunes, whatever may happen, at the service of His Majesty. Besides, let the interested readers take note that the cities, towns, and villages which are peopled by Spaniards in these parts (and they are so numerous that I do not know their names) keep quiet and pay attention to the bishops, who number ten, not counting the Archbishop of the very distinguished City of Mexico. There are three Royal Audiencias, all of which I will speak about further on, and also of those who have governed us, and of the Archbishops and bishops that there have been. Let them observe the holy cathedral churches and the monasteries where there are Dominican Friars, as well as Franciscans, and those of the order of Mercy, and Augustinians, and let them observe the Hospitals and the great indulgence they receive, and the Holy Church of our Lady of Guadalupe which is at Tepeaquilla, where the camp of Gonzalo de Sandoval used to be stationed when we captured Mexico, and let them observe the holy miracles which she has performed and is still doing every day, and let us give many thanks and praise to God and to His Blessed Mother Our Lady, for granting us favour and help so that we could win these lands where there is [now] so much Christianity.

Moreover, let them take note that there is in Mexico a university where grammar and theology, rhetoric, logic and philosophy, with other arts and branches of science, are studied and learned. They have type and craftsmen to print books both in Latin and in the Spanish, and they graduate as licentiates and doctors.

There are many other grandeurs and riches which one might mention, thus the rich silver mines which have been discovered here and are continually being discovered, by which our Castile is made prosperous and favoured and respected. As enough has been said about the advantages which have followed over and over again out of our heroical conquests, I wish to add that wise and learned persons may read this my story from beginning to end and they will see that in no writings which have been written in the world, nor in the records of human exploits, have there been seen men who have conquered more kingdoms or principalities than we the true conquistadores have done for our Lord and King, and among the brave conquistadores, my comrades, (and there were very valiant ones among them) they included me¹ as being the oldest of them all.

I once more assert, and I repeat it so many times, that I am the oldest of them, and have served as a very good soldier of His Majesty, and I say it with sorrow in my heart, for I find myself poor and very old, with a marriageable daughter and my sons young men already grown up with beards, and others to be educated, and I am not able to go to Castile to His Majesty to put before him things which are necessary for his Royal Service, and also that he should grant me favours, for they owe me many debts.

I will leave this talk, for if I dip my pen in it deeper I shall become very odious to jealous persons. I want to ask one question in the way of a dialogue, and in view of the fair and illustrious Fame that resounds in the world regarding our manifold good and noble services which we have rendered to God, His Majesty, and all Christendom. It [Fame] loudly clamours, saying, that it would be just

¹ Blotted out in the original: "as having the reputation of a good soldier."

and reasonable that we should have good incomes and more advantages than other persons have who have not done service in these conquests nor in other parts for His Majesty. So it [Fame] inquires, "Where are our palaces and mansions, and what coats of arms are there on them distinguishing us from the others?" And, "Are our heroic deeds and arms carved on them and placed as a memorial in the manner that gentlemen have them in Spain?" (who I have said in a former chapter, in years past, served the Kings who reigned at that time, for our exploits are not inferior to those they accomplished, on the contrary they are of memorable fame, and may be counted among the most glorious the world has ever seen.) Illustrious Fame furthermore asks on behalf of the Conquistadores who have escaped from the battles, and for the dead, "Where are their tombs and what blazons are there on them?" These can be answered in all truth with, "Oh Excellent and very Illustrious Fame, longed for and revered by the good and virtuous, your illustrious name is neither desired to be seen or heard among the malicious and among persons who have endeavoured to hide our heroic deeds, so that you should not extol our persons as is deserved.—We would have you know, Señora, that of the five hundred and fifty soldiers of Cuba there are alive in all New Spain, out of all of them, in this year fifteen hundred and sixty-eight, when I am writing this my story, only five! Most of them died in the wars already described by me at the hands of the Indians, and were sacrificed to the Idols, and the rest died natural deaths. If you ask me the whereabouts of their tombs, I say they are the bellies of the Indians who ate their legs and thighs, arms and flesh, and feet and hands, and the rest found sepulchre in, and their entrails were thrown to, the tigers and serpents and falcons which at that time they kept for show in strong houses, and

those were their tombs and there are their blazons. It seems to me that their names should be written in letters of gold, for they died that cruel death in the service of God and of His Majesty, and to give light to those who were in darkness, and also to acquire riches, which all of us men usually came to seek."

After having given [this] report to Illustrious Fame, she asks me about those who came over with Narvaez and Garay. I reply that the followers of Narvaez were thirteen hundred, without counting among them the sailors, and not more than ten or eleven of them are alive; all the rest died in the wars and were sacrificed, and their bodies were eaten by Indians just the same as our [comrades] were. Of those who came over with Garay from the Island of Jamaica, according to my calculation, with the three companies which came to San Juan de Ulua before Garay came, and with those whom he brought last when he came himself, in all there would be another twelve hundred soldiers, and nearly all of them were sacrificed to the Idols in the province of Panuco and their bodies eaten by the natives of that province.

In addition to this, Revered Fame asks about those fifteen¹ soldiers who landed in New Spain, belonging to the Company of Lucas Vázquez de Ayllon, when he was defeated and died in Florida. As to what had become of them, to this I reply that I have not seen one of them, all are dead; "and I would have you know, Excellent Fame, that of all those whom I have counted over and over again [only] five of us companions of Cortés are now living, and we are very old and suffering from infirmities and, worst of all, are very poor and burdened with sons and marriageable daughters and grandchildren, and with very little income, and thus we pass our lives in hardship and

¹ Blotted out in the original: "or twenty."

privations. I have already given a reply to all you have asked me and regarding our palaces and blazons and tombs, and I beg you, Illustrious Fame, from now onwards to raise higher your excellent and most virtuous voice, so that throughout the world our great prowess may be clearly distinguished, so that ill-disposed men with their harsh disseminating and envious tongues may not obscure or undo it, and to so manage that the reward is due to those who gained these lands for His Majesty, and is not to be bestowed on those who do not deserve it, because His Majesty has no account with them, nor they with His Majesty, for services rendered."

To this [question] which I have put to the most Virtuous Fame, she answers and says that she will very willingly do it, and adds that she is astonished that we do not possess the best assignments of Indians in the land, for we have conquered it, and His Majesty orders them to be given in the same way as to the Marquis Cortés, (it is not to be understood that it would be to the same extent, but in moderation). Moreover, Reverend Fame says that the affairs of the brave and gallant Cortés are to be always highly esteemed and counted among the deeds of valiant Captains. Moreover Truthful Fame states that there is no mention of any of us in the books and histories which have been written by the Chronicler Francisco López de Gomara, nor in that of the Doctor Yllescas, who wrote the official report, nor in other recent writers. They say in their books that the Marquis Cortés alone discovered it [the land], and conquered it, and the Captains and Soldiers who gained it are left blank, without mention of our persons or conquests, and that now she is greatly rejoiced to know clearly that all that is written in my story is true, and that the writing itself expresses literally what happened, and not flatteries nor vicious words; nor in order to exalt one Captain alone

does it tend to belittle many Captains and brave soldiers, as Francisco López de Gomara has done, and the other recent chroniclers who follow history as presented by him, without adding to or deducting from anything he says. Good Fame promises me besides that, on her part, wherever she may be, she will proclaim it in a clear and ringing voice, and in addition to this, that she will explain so that, as soon as my history (if it is printed) is seen and heard, all will give it true belief and will cast doubt on the flatteries which the former [historians] have written. Apart from what I have stated in the form of a dialogue, a certain Doctor, Oidor of the Royal Audiencia of Guatemala, asked me how it was that Cortés, when he wrote to His Majesty, and when he went the first time to Castile, did not act as advocate for us, because through us, after God, he became Marquis and Governor. To this I answered then, and repeat it now, that as he took for himself in the beginning, when His Majesty granted him the government, all the best of New Spain, believing that he would always be absolute Lord and that by his hand [at will] he could give us Indians or take them away, for this reason it was supposed that he did not [then] do it, nor did he wish to write about it. Also because at that time His Majesty gave him the Marquisate which he holds, and as he was importuning him to give him back the government of New Spain as he had held it before, and he [His Majesty] answered that he had already given him the Marquisate, he did not seek to ask a single thing for us that might have benefited us, only for himself alone. Furthermore, the Factor and Veedor and other Gentlemen from Mexico had informed His Majesty that Cortés had taken for himself the best provinces and pueblos in New Spain, and had given other good pueblos to his friends and relations who had lately come from Castile, and that little was left as royal patrimony. Later on we got to

know that His Majesty ordered that from what he [Cortés] had in excess he should give to those who came with him, and at that time His Majesty embarked in Barcelona to go to Flanders. If Cortés at the time when we conquered New Spain (as I have said before in the Chapter which treats of it) had divided it into five parts, and had allotted the best and richest province and cities as a fifth part to our Lord the King for his Royal Fifth, he would have done well, and if he had taken for himself one part, and had left half a part for Churches and monasteries belonging to the cities, so that His Majesty should have two and a half parts over, for giving away and making grants and dividing among us. We might have kept these in perpetuity, Cortés his share and we ours, for as our Cæsar was a very good Christian and the conquests had cost him nothing at all, he might have granted us these favours. But as we, the true Conquistadores, at that time did not know what demanding justice meant, nor to whom to apply for it concerning our services, or other matters of grievances and violence that took place during the war, (except to Cortés himself as our Captain who should have settled it,) we were left positively denuded, with only the trifling amounts that had been deposited for us, until we saw that when Don Francisco de Montejo went to Castile into the presence of His Majesty, he appointed him Adelantado and Governor of Yucatan, and gave him the Indians he held in Mexico, and bestowed other favours on him; and to Diego de Ordás, who also went before His Majesty, he gave an Encomienda of Señor Santiago and the Indians he held in New Spain; and that Don Pedro de Alvarado, who also went to kiss the feet of His Majesty, was appointed Adelantado and Governor of Guatemala and Chiapa, and Comendador of Santiago, and was given further grants of the Indians; and at last when Cortés went he gave him the Marquisate

and [made him] Captain General of the South Sea. Then, as soon as we Conquistadores saw and understood that for those who did not appear before His Majesty there was no thought of making grants, we sent to beg that he would order any [Indians] who from that time onward should be unallotted, to be given to us in perpetuity. The justice of our claim was recognised when the first Royal Audiencia was sent to Mexico, with Nuño de Guzman as president, and the Licentiate Delgadillo a native of Granada, and Matienzo of Bicaya, as Oidores, and two other Oidores, who died as soon as they arrived in Mexico. For His Majesty then distinctly ordered Nuño de Guzman to treat all the Indians of New Spain as one body, to the end that all the persons who held large Assignments which Cortés had given them should no longer hold so large [a number] but that some should be taken from them, and that we the true Conquistadores should be given the best and most profitable pueblos, and that for the Royal patrimony there should be reserved the chief towns and best cities. His Majesty also ordered that the Vassals of Cortés should be counted and he should retain those which were within the terms of his Marquisate, and as to the remainder, I do not remember what Nuño de Guzman ordered about it, or the reason why he and the Oidores did not make the Assignment, [but] it was on account of evil advisers, and for their honours sake I will not name them here. For they told him that, should he divide up the land, as soon as the Conquistadores and settlers found themselves possessing Indians in perpetuity, they would not hold them [the Audiencia] in such great respect, nor would they [the Audiencia] be such Lords [have such authority] to give them orders, because they would not possess [the power] to give and to take away, nor would they [the settlers] come to them to beg for something to eat. By [following]

the other course they would have [power] to give of what was vacant [i.e., Indians who were unallotted] to whomsoever they wished, and they [themselves] would become rich and would have the greater authority, and to this end they stopped doing anything.

It is true that Nuño de Guzman [and the Oidores], when there were any Indians unallotted, promptly handed them over to Conquistadores and settlers, and were not so bad in what they did for the settlers and inhabitants, for they contented them all and gave them food, and if they [the Oidores] were dismissed from out of the Royal Audiencia it was on account of the disputes which they had with Cortés and on account of the branding of free Indians for slaves.

I want to leave this chapter and go on to another and will speak about the perpetual Assignment.

CHAPTER CCXI.

How in the year IVVI [1550] when the Court was at Valladolid there met together in the Royal Council of the Indies certain prelates and gentlemen who came from New Spain and Peru as Proctors, and other noblemen who were present, in order to give the order that the Assignment [of Indians or pueblos] should be in perpetuity, and what was said and done at the meeting is what I shall relate.

IN the year fifteen hundred and fifty the Licentiate de la Gasca came from Peru and went to the Court, which at that time was in Valladolid, and brought in his company a certain Dominican Friar named Don Fray Martin, the Superior, and at that time His Majesty ordered this same Superior to be appointed to the Bishopric of Las Charcas.¹

¹ There is a blank space in the original. The name of the first Bishop of Charcas was Don Fray Tomas de San Martin, of the order of Santo Domingo.—G. G.

Then there came together in [the Court Don] Fray Bartolomé de las Casas, bishop of Chiapa, and Don Vasco de [Quiroga, bishop of Michoacan], and other gentlemen who came [as Proctors from New Spain and from Peru], and certain noblemen who came with lawsuits [to bring] before His Majesty. At that time all these were present at Court, and together with them they sent to summon me from New Spain as the oldest Conquistador.

As de la Gasca and all the other Peruvians had brought many thousands of pesos de oro both for His Majesty and for themselves, they sent what they had brought for His Majesty from Seville to Augusta in Germany, where His Majesty was staying at that time, and in his royal Company was his beloved and cherished son our most felicitous and invincible Don Felipe, King of the Spains and our Lord, may God preserve him.

At that time certain gentlemen went in charge of the gold and as Proctors from Peru to beg His Majesty to be pleased to do us the favour of ordering an assignment [of pueblos] to be made in perpetuity.

It appears that this petition had been made at other times, before this, on behalf of New Spain, when one Gonzalo López went, and a certain Alonzo Villanueva went with other gentlemen as proctors from Mexico. On that occasion His Majesty conferred the Bishopric of Palencia on the Licentiate de la Gasca, who was Bishop and Conde de Pernia, for it was his luck that when he arrived in Castile it had become vacant, and it was the gossip of the Court that even in this he had the good fortune I have mentioned, besides what he had in leaving Peru at peace and in recovering the gold and silver which the Coutreras had robbed him of. To go back to my story of what His Majesty decreed about the Assignment in perpetuity of the Indians. He instructed the Marquis de Mondejar, who was President of the Royal Council of

the Indies, and the Licentiate Gutierrez Velásquez and the Licentiate Tello de Sandoval and Doctor Hernan Pérez de la Fuente and the Licentiate Gregorio López and Doctor Rivadeneyra and the Licentiate Birviesca, who were Oidores of this same Royal Council of the Indies, and other gentlemen of the Royal Councils, all to meet together and consider and discuss how and in what manner the Assignment might be made, in such a way that in every respect the service of God and the Royal Patrimony should be carefully considered and in no wise prejudiced. When all those Prelates and gentlemen were met together in the house of Pero González de Leon, where the Royal Council of the Indies was held, what was said and discussed in that most illustrious Meeting [was] that the Indians should be given in perpetuity in New Spain and in Peru (I do not remember clearly whether the New Kingdom of Granada and Bobotan was named, but it seems to me that it also was included with the rest) and the reasons propounded in that affair were holy and good. The first to be discussed was that, being [assigned] in perpetuity, they would be much better treated and instructed in our Holy Faith, and that if some should fall ill they would be attended to like sons and be excused from a part of their tribute, and that owners would persevere much more in bringing the land into cultivation and [planting] vineyards and sowing seeds and raising cattle, and lawsuits and disputes about Indians would cease, and there would be no need for visiting judges in the pueblos, and there would be peace and concord among the soldiers with the knowledge that Presidents and Governors no longer had power when Indians were unassigned to allot them through nepotism, nor in other ways in which they allotted them at that time.

Moreover, the granting them in perpetuity to those who have served His Majesty was a relief to his royal

conscience, and many other good reasons were expressed. Furthermore it was mentioned that it had become necessary in Peru to get rid of those robber men who were found to have disserved His Majesty.

* After what I have mentioned had been fully discussed by all those at this Illustrious Meeting, most of the proctors and the other gentlemen gave our opinions and votes that the assignments should be perpetual. But just then most contrary opinions were advanced. The first of these was by the Bishop of Chiapa, and he was supported by his companion Fray Rodrigo of the order of Santo Domingo, also by the Licentiate Gasca who was Bishop of Palencia, and Conde de Pernia, and Bishop Fray Don Martin¹ (for by that time they had given him the Bishopric of Las Charcas,) and by the Marquis de Mondejar, and two Oidores of the Royal Council of His Majesty. What those gentlemen named by me put forward in opposition (except the Marquis de Mondejar who did not wish to show partiality on one side or the other but to observe what they said and who had the most votes) was, how could they [bring themselves] to give Indians in perpetuity or in any other way, on the contrary they ought not to be given but to be taken from those who at that time held them, for there were people among them in Peru drawing a good rent from Indians who deserved to be chopped into pieces, and now as a climax they are to get them in perpetuity, how could they imagine in Peru that peace could be found and the country settled? There would be soldiers who when they saw that there was nothing [more] to be given them would revolt, and there would be even greater discords. Then Don Vasco de Quirova Bishop of Michoacan, who was on our side,

¹ Here again the author leaves a blank space; it must refer, as we point out in a former note, to the Dominican Don Fray Tomás de San Martín.—G. G.

replied and asked the Licentiate de la Gasca why he did not punish the bandits and traitors? for he knew them, and their offences were notorious, yet he himself had given them Indians.

To this de la Gasca answered, and he paused to laugh, and said, will the Señores believe that I performed no small feat in emerging in peace and in safety from among them—some of them I quartered and I executed justice.

Other opinions on the same subject were exchanged and then we and many of the gentlemen who were there present with us said, that they should be given in perpetuity in New Spain to the true Conquistadores who went over with Cortés, and to the followers of Panfilo de Narvaez and those of Garay, for very few of us remained; all the rest had died in the battles fighting in the service of His Majesty, and we had served him very faithfully, and that with the others there could be other arrangements. When we made these statements on our part and took the course which I have mentioned, there were not wanting prelates and lords of His Majesty's Council who said that all should be postponed until Our Lords the Emperor and the Prince, who were daily expected, should come to Castile, so that in a matter of such weight and importance they should be present.

Nevertheless, by the Bishop of Michoacan and certain gentlemen who were from New Spain, and I with them, answer was repeatedly made that, as the votes were already given to that effect, [the Assignments] should be given in perpetuity in New Spain, and that the Proctors from Peru should solicit on their own account, for His Most Christian Majesty had sent a command, and in his royal command showed inclination towards giving them in perpetuity in New Spain. About that matter there was much discussion and argument, and we said that

even if they should not be given in Peru, they should consider the many and great services which we had rendered to His Majesty and all Christendom. However we availed nothing with the Lords of the Royal Council of the Indies, and the Bishop Fray Bartolomé de las Casas and Fray Rodrigo his companion, and with the Bishop of Las Charcas, Don Fray Martin¹ and they said that as soon as His Majesty came from Augusta it would be adjusted in such a way that the Conquistadores would be very contented, and thus it remained pending.

I will leave this discussion and [say] that we wrote post haste by a ship [going] to New Spain, and when the matters related above, which took place at Court, were known in the City of Mexico, the Conquistadores arranged to send Proctors to His Majesty on their own account alone. Captain Andrés de Tápia and one Pedro Moreno Medrano even wrote to me from Mexico to this city of Guatemala, and Juan de Linpias Carvajal, the deaf, from Puebla—for at that time I had already returned from the court—and what they wrote to me was to give an account and report of the Conquistadores whom they were sending with their power of attorney. In the memorial they included me as one of the oldest of them. I showed the letters in the City of Guatemala to other Conquistadores so that they could help with money to send the Proctors, for it appears their despatch could not be managed for want of pesos de oro. What they next arranged in Mexico was that the Conquistadores together with the whole community should send Proctors to Castile, but such an excellent thing was never effected, and in this manner we proceed, like a lame mule, from bad to worse, and from one Viceroy to another and from Governor to Governor. After this our invincible Lord and King Don Felipe, may God

¹ There is a blank space in the original. See the former note.

guard him, and may he live many years with increase of more kingdoms, commanded, in his Royal Ordinances and Decrees which he has issued for that purpose, that as to the Conquistadores and their children, we are to experience improvement in every sense, and next [in order] that the old married settlers [were to benefit] as will be seen in his Royal Edicts.

CHAPTER CCXII.

About other discussions and stories which are here made known
and will be pleasant to hear.¹

WHEN I had finished the fair copy of this my story, two Licentiates begged me to lend it to them for two days so as to know more clearly what we went through during the conquest of Mexico and New Spain, and to see in what way it differed from what the Chroniclers Gomara and Doctor Yllescas had written about the heroic deeds and exploits we accomplished in company with the valiant Marquis Cortés. So I lent them a rough draft, for it seems to me that wise men always [try to] impress a bit of their wisdom on unlearned fools such as I am, and I told them not to alter a single thing,² for all that I write is quite true. When they had seen and read it, one of them who was very eloquent and had a very good opinion of himself, after extolling and praising the good memory I must have not to forget any item of all we went through from the time we came to New Spain in the year seventeen [1517] up to that of sixty-eight [1568], said that, as to the style, it followed the customary speech of Old Castile, and that in these times it is accounted the more agreeable because

¹ See note at end of Chapter.

² Blotted out in the original: "neither to add or to subtract."

there are no elaborate arguments nor gilded elegance such as some writers are wont [to display], but all is in plain simple language, and that all really good narration is comprised in this true statement. However, it seemed to him that I praised myself greatly in the accounts of battles and wars in which I was present and the services which I did to His Majesty, and that other persons should make those statements and not I ; also that in order to give greater credibility to what I write I should cite witnesses, as the chroniclers are accustomed to insert and quote proofs from other books dealing with past events, for I am not a witness for myself. To this one can answer, [as is done in] a chapter of my story, that in a letter which the Marques del Valle wrote to His Majesty in the year forty, giving him a report of my person and services, he informed him how I came to explore New Spain on two occasions before he did, and how on the third time I returned in his company ; and as an eye-witness he saw me fight in the wars like a very brave soldier, and come out of them very badly wounded, as well in the capture of Mexico as in many other conquests ; and after we had won New Spain and its provinces how I went in his company to Honduras and the Hibueras (for so it is called in this country), and other particulars which were contained in the letter which, as it is a long story, I will not repeat here. So also Don Antonio de Mendoza, the Viceroy of New Spain (of praiseworthy memory for his many virtues), wrote to His Majesty giving him a report of what had been told to him by the Captains in whose company I served as a soldier ; and it all tallied with what the Marquis had written. Moreover there were the very sufficient proofs which were presented on my behalf to the Royal Council of the Indies in the year forty, and I offer these letters as evidence—two of them were placed before His Majesty and the originals are preserved. If the Marquis and the Viceroy and the

Captains and my proofs are not good enough witnesses, I wish to call another witness, and there is no better one in the whole world, that is our very great Monarch the most Christian Emperor Don Carlos, our Lord of most renowned and glorious memory, who about this matter sent his letters with the [Royal] Seal, in which he ordered the Viceroy, presidents, and governors to give me preference and advantage in everything as one of his servants. Other recommendations were contained in the Royal Letters, and for this reason I intended to include them in this story, and I wish they were preserved in my own hands.

To return to the question which the Licentiate to whom I had lent my rough draft addressed to me, "Why did I praise myself so much for my conquests?" To this I reply that there are matters about which it is not well that men should brag, for their neighbours generally report the virtues and good qualities which individuals possess. Moreover I say of those who neither know nor see nor understand nor are present in them, especially in such affairs as wars and battles and the capture of cities, how can they praise or write about them unless they be Captains and soldiers who were present in such wars together with us. For this reason I am able to state so often, and even to boast of it, that, if I were to rob other valiant soldiers who were present in these same wars of their honour and rank and attribute them to myself, it would be an evil deed and there would be cause to blame me; but if I tell the truth (and His Majesty and his Viceroy, the Marquis, witnesses, and evidence attest it, and moreover the story gives evidence of it) why should I not say so? for it ought to be written in letters of gold. Would they wish the clouds or the birds which passed above at the time to report it? and did Gomara wish to state it, or Yllescas, or Cortés when he wrote to His Majesty? From what I have seen of these writings and of

their Chronicles, [they wrote] solely in praise of Cortés, and they were silent about and concealed our illustrious and famous exploits by which we raised the Captain himself to a Marquisate, and to the possession of a great revenue and the fame and renown which is his.

These writers are the same who were not present in New Spain and, not hearing a true account, how can they write it down without going wrong only from the flavour of their palates—unless it were through the conversations they held with the Marquis himself? This I assert that when in the beginning Cortés wrote to His Majesty, instead of ink, pearls and gold flowed from his pen, and all in his own praise and not about us valiant soldiers. Let those who wish to see it observe to whom their histories were dedicated, if not to his son and heir to the Marquisate. Although Don Hernando Cortés was in all things a very valiant and spirited Captain, and may be counted among the most famous the world has seen, the chroniclers of these times should have had the consideration to introduce us, and make a report in their histories about our brave soldiers and not leave us entirely ignored, as we should have remained if I had not taken a hand in recording and assigning to each one his [share of] honour and glory, and, if I had not stated exactly what happened, persons who saw what the Chroniclers Yllescas and Gomara had written would believe that their version was the truth.¹

In addition to what I have recorded it is right that I should again in this place make a statement to ensure noteworthy remembrance of my person, and of the many and distinguished services which I have rendered to God and His Majesty and to all Christendom, in the manner

¹ Blotted out in the original: "just as they wrote it, they being very eloquent."

of the writings and reports of the Dukes, Marquises, Counts and illustrious men who served in wars [in time past]; also in order that my children, grandchildren and descendants can dare to say with truth "my father came to discover and conquer these lands at his own expense and expended what property he possessed in doing it, and was one of the foremost in the conquest." Furthermore I wish here to advance another argument to prove that I do not praise myself as much as I ought, and it is that I was present in many more battles and warlike encounters than those in which the writers say Julius Cæsar was engaged, [that is] in fifty three battles, and to record his exploits he had consummate chroniclers, but he was not satisfied with what they wrote about him, so Julius Cæsar himself with his own hand made a record in his Commentaries of all the wars he was personally engaged in. Therefore it is not unreasonable that I should write down the heroic deeds of the brave Cortés and my own, and those of my comrades who were fighting in [our] company. Moreover I assert that of all those praised and extolled deeds which the Marquis himself accomplished, and of the seven heads of kings which he has on his coat of arms, and of the blazon and inscription which he placed on a cannon called the Phoenix, which was cast in Mexico to send to His Majesty, and was made of gold and silver and copper, and the words on it said

"Esta ave nació sin par
Yo en serviros sin segundo
Y Vos sin ygal en el mundo

This bird born without an equal,
I second to none in serving you,
Your Highness without equal in
the world."

I am entitled to a share of the seven kings' heads, and of what is written on the culverin "I second to none in serving you," for I assisted him in all the conquests and

in winning that honour and glory which is well exemplified in his very valiant person.

Returning to my statement—when I said that I was present in more battles than Julius Cæsar, I again assert it, and interested readers may find and note in this my narrative in the chapters that treat about it, how and in what manner they took place. So that nothing should be concealed which is not stated and made manifest there, and so that it should be more clearly seen, I wish to quote them here as a record, so that it shall not be said that I speak with reserve about myself, for if so many of the Conquistadores had not witnessed them, and if they had not obtained so much fame in this New Spain, malicious slanderers [who are never wanting] might possibly have referred to me in regard to them as an obscure person.

RECORD OF THE BATTLES AND ENCOUNTERS IN WHICH I WAS PRESENT.

At Cape Catoche when I came with Francisco Hernández de Córdoba the first discoverer—in one battle.

In another battle in the affair of Chanpoton, when they killed fifty-seven of our soldiers and we all came out wounded, in company with the said Francisco Hernández de Córdoba.

In another battle when we went to get water in Florida, in company with the said Francisco Hernández de Córdoba.

In another when I was with Juan de Grijalva on the same errand in Chanpoton.

When the very valiant and courageous Captain Hernando Cortés came, in two battles—in the affair of

Tabasco with the said Cortés, the other in the affair of Cingapacinga with the said Cortés.

Also in three battles which we fought in the affair of Tlaxcala, under the said Cortés.

In the affair of Cholula when they wanted to kill us and eat our bodies—I do not count this as a battle.

Another when Captain Pánfilo de Narvaez came from the Island of Cuba with fourteen hundred soldiers, horsemen as well as musketeers and crossbowmen, and much artillery. They came to seize us and take the country in the name of Diego Velásquez, and with two hundred and sixty-six soldiers we defeated him and captured Narvaez himself and his Captains. I am one of the sixty soldiers whom Cortés ordered to attack and capture the artillery, which was a deed of the greatest danger, which is described in the chapter that treats of it.

Also in three very perilous battles which they fought against us in Mexico as we marched along the bridges and causeways, when we went to the aid of Pedro de Alvarado, and took to flight; for of the thirteen hundred soldiers, including the men of Pánfilo de Narvaez, who went with Cortés to the rescue, as I have already said, the greater number died at these same bridges, and were sacrificed and eaten by the Indians.

Another very hazardous battle which is called that of Otumba, with the said Cortés.

Another when we attacked Tepeaca, with the said Cortés.

Another when we went to scour the neighbourhood of Cachula.

Another with the said Cortés, when we went to Texcoco and the Mexicans and Texcocans came out to attack us.

Another when we went with Cortés to Iztapalapa, and they tried to drown us.

Three other battles when we went with Cortés to make a circuit of all the great pueblos round about the lake, and I was present at Xochimilco in three very perilous battles which I have mentioned, when the Mexicans pulled Cortés off of his horse and wounded him, and he was much exhausted.

Also two other battles at the rocky hills which are named after Cortés, when nine soldiers were killed and all came out of them wounded owing to Cortés's want of forethought.

Another when Cortés sent me with many soldiers to defend the corn fields which the Mexicans were taking from the pueblos friendly to us.

Besides all of these, when we invested Mexico and during the ninety-three days we besieged it, I was present in more than eighty battles, for a great multitude of Mexicans attacked us every day; we estimate that they [the combats] numbered eighty.

After the conquest of Mexico in company with Captain Luis Marin, I was present at two battles in the province of Cimatan, which is in the land of Coatzacoalcas; I came out of one of them with three wounds.

In the Sierras of the Zapotecs and Mijes, with Captain Luis Marin, I was present in two battles.

In the affair of Chiapa in two battles against the Chiapanecs with Luis Marin.

Another with Luis Marin in the affair of Chamula.

Another when we went to the Hibueras with Cortés—a battle we fought in a pueblo named Zulaco where they killed my horse.

After returning to New Spain from the expedition to Honduras and Hibueras, (for so it is called) I went to assist in bringing to peace the province of the Zapotecs and Mijes and other lands. I do not count the battles and skirmishes which we had with them, although it

would be well to mention them, nor the skirmishes at which I was present in this province of Guatemala, for they certainly are not warriors but only shout and yell and make a noise and dig pits¹ in very deep ravines; but notwithstanding all this they gave me an arrow wound at a ravine between Petapa and Joanagasapa,² for there they waited for us. In all these battles in which I have recorded that I was present, there were also present the valiant Captain Cortés and all his Captains and brave soldiers, and most of them died there. Others died in the affair of Panuco, at which I was not present, and at Colima and Zacatula. I was not present in the affair of Michoacan, [when] all those provinces were made peaceable, nor in the affair of Tututepeque, nor in that of Jalisco, which they call New Galicia, which also became peaceable; nor was I present in all the south coast, for we had plenty to do in other parts, for New Spain is so large that we soldiers were not able to go all together to one part or the other, but Cortés sent to conquer the districts that were at war.

So that it may be clearly understood when the greater number of Spaniards were killed, I will state it step by step. In the battles and skirmishes³: at Cape Catoche and in the affair of Chanpoton, when I came with Francisco Hernández the first discoverer, they killed fifty-eight soldiers in two battles, which was more than half of those who came.

In another battle in Florida, when we went to get water, they carried off one soldier alive, and we were all wounded.

¹ Blotted out in the original: "hidden."

² Cuajiniquilapa?

³ Blotted out in the original: "when I was present."

In another when we went with Juan de Grijalva to this same Chanpoton, ten soldiers [were killed] and the Captain was badly wounded and his teeth were broken.

When we came with the very brave and spirited Captain Hernando Cortés, six or seven soldiers died in two battles in the affair of Tabasco.

In the three very hazardous and perilous battles we fought in Tlaxcala four soldiers died.

Again when Captain Narvaez came from the Island of Cuba with fourteen hundred soldiers, cavalry, musketeers, and crossbowmen, we defeated them and captured Narvaez and his Captains; with the artillery which Narvaez had posted against us, he killed four soldiers.

In three very hazardous battles which they fought against us in Mexico at the bridges and causeways, and in that of Otumba, when we went to rescue Pedro de Alvarado and we fled from Mexico, of the thirteen hundred soldiers, counting those of Narvaez who went with Cortés, after nine days fighting there remained alive only four hundred and sixty-eight, all the others died at the bridges and were sacrificed and eaten by the Indians, and nearly all the rest of us were wounded; may God have compassion [on us].

In another battle when we went with Cortés against Tepeaca they killed two soldiers.

In another, when we went to scour the neighbourhood of Cachula and Tecamachalco, two more Spaniards died.

In another, when we went with Cortés to Texcoco and the Mexicans and Texcocans sallied out to meet us, they killed one soldier.

In another, when we went with Cortés to Iztapalapa, and they tried to drown us, two or three died of their wounds, but I do not remember clearly how many they were.

In three other battles when we went with Cortés to

all the great pueblos round about the lake—and these battles were very dangerous, for the Mexicans pulled Cortés off of his horse and wounded him and he was very much exhausted (this was at Xochimilco)—eight Spaniards died.

In two other battles on the rocky hills named after Cortés, they killed nine soldiers and we all were wounded through the carelessness of Cortés.

In another, when Cortés sent me with many soldiers to defend the cornfields which the Mexicans were seizing, which [fields] belonged to our friends at Texcoco, one Spaniard died of his wounds within nine days.

Besides all this that I have recorded above when we invested Mexico during the ninety-three days of the siege, I was present in more than eighty battles, for every day from dawn until dusk we had against us a great host of Mexican warriors who attacked us, and of all the soldiers who were present in those battles there died sixty-three of the company of Cortés, nine in that of Pedro de Alvarado, six in that of Sandoval—we calculate that they fought eighty battles against us in ninety-three days.

After the Conquest of Mexico I was present in two battles in company with Captain Luis Marin in the province of Cimatan, which is in the land of Coatza-coalcos, in which "three soldiers were killed.

In two other battles, in company with Luis Marin in the Sierras of the Zapotecs and Mijes, which are very lofty, and where there are no roads, they killed two soldiers.

In the Province of Chiapa, when in company with Luis Marin, in two very perilous battles with the Chiapanecs two soldiers were killed.

In another battle, when in company with Luis Marin, in the affair of Chamula, one soldier died of his wounds.

Again when we went to Hibueras and Honduras with Cortés, in a battle with a pueblo named Zulaco they killed one soldier.

I have already recounted [the names of] those who died in the battles at which I was present. I do not include the battles at Panuco because I was not present, but there is trustworthy report that they killed more than three hundred soldiers of the company of Garay, and others who had lately come from Castile, [including those] whom Cortés took with him to pacify that province, and those taken by Sandoval when the province again rose in rebellion.

I was not present at what we call the affair of Almeria, but I know for certain that they killed the Captain Juan de Escalante and seven soldiers. I also state that in the affairs of Colima, Zacatula, Michoacan, Jalisco and Tututepeque certain soldiers were killed.

I have forgotten to mention sixty-six soldiers and three Castilian women, whom the Mexicans killed in a pueblo named Tustepeque¹; they stayed in that pueblo in the belief that they would be provided with food, for they belonged to the company of Narvaez and they were invalids. So that the names of the pueblos may be clearly understood one is Tustepeque . . . north, and the other is Tututepeque on the south coast; so that it may not be argued that I make a mistake and give one pueblo two names. It will also now be said that there is great prolixity in what I write about, placing in one section the battles at which I was present, and then again reporting [the names of] those who died in each battle, which I might have given at the same time. Interested readers will also ask, how was I able to know [the names of] those who died in the battles which took

¹ Tuxtepec.

place in each part [of the country]. To this I reply that it is very easily understood. Let us make a comparison. Let us say that a valiant Captain leaves Castile to make war on the Moors and Turks and fight battles against other enemies, and takes with him more than twenty thousand soldiers. When he has fixed his camp he sends off one Captain in one direction and another in another direction and goes with them as Commander, and after the battles and skirmishes he returns with his men to camp, then they render an account [to him] of those who were wounded or died in the battle or were taken prisoners. So we that accompanied the valiant Cortés into battle knew who had fallen and who had returned wounded, and in a like manner about the others who were sent to other provinces, and thus it is no great thing that I have a remembrance of all that I have stated, and write it so clearly. Let us leave this part.

Bernal Díaz del Castillo.

[rúbrica.]¹

This history was finished in Guatemala on the 14th November, 1605.²

NOTE TO CHAPTER CCXII.

The following rough draft of this Chapter is added to the original.—G. G.

CHAPTER CCXII.

About other discussions and stories which are here made known and will be pleasant to hear,

WHEN I had finished the fair copy of this my story, two Licentiates begged me to lend it to them, so as to know more completely what happened in the Conquest of Mexico and New Spain, and to see in

¹ Rúbrica = the flourish which is an essential part of a Spanish signature.

² One can read the same statement written in modern script a little lower down.

what [points] the writings of the Chroniclers Francisco López de Gomara and Doctor Yllescas on the heroic exploits achieved by the Marquis del Valle differs from what I write in this narrative. So I lent it to them, for it seems to me that some of the sense of wise men may adhere to unlearned fools such as I am. I told them not to touch, in way of emendation, anything about the conquests, nor to add or delete, for all that I write is quite true. When the two Licentiates to whom I lent it had seen and read it, one of them, who was very eloquent, and has a very good opinion of himself, after extolling and praising the good memory I must have not to forget a single item of all we went through from the time when we twice came to discover before Cortés came, and the last time when I came with Cortés himself. (The first time was in the year seventeen [1517] with Francisco Hernández de Córdoba, and in the year eighteen with one Juan de Grijalva already often mentioned by me, and in the year nineteen I came with the good Captain Hernando Cortés who afterwards as time went on became Marques del Valle.)

To return to my story, the Licentiates told me that, as to the style, it followed the customary speech of Old Castile which in these times is accounted the more agreeable because there were no flowery arguments nor ornamental phrases such as the Chroniclers who have written of wars and battles are wont to employ, but all is written in a straightforward way and by speaking truthfully the best arguments are included. Moreover they also told me that it appears to them that I praise myself a great deal [when speaking] of the battles and warlike skirmishes at which I was present, and about the great services I have rendered to his Majesty, and that other persons ought to say that and write about it first, and not I.

Also that in order to give more credit to what I have stated I should cite witnesses and quote the accounts of such Chroniclers as may have written about it, as those who write and prove by other books about past events are accustomed to insert and quote, and not to say so curtly as I do, "I did this," and "such a thing happened to me," for I am not a witness for myself. To this I answered and now repeat [what I said] in the first Chapter of my Narrative, that in a letter which the Marques del Valle wrote from the great city of Mexico to His Majesty in Castile in the year fifteen hundred and forty giving him an account of my person and my services, he told him how I came to explore New Spain twice before he did, and the third time returned in his company, and as an eye-witness he very often saw me fighting in the Mexican wars, and at the capture of other cities, like a brave soldier doing many notable deeds, and often coming out of the battles badly wounded, and how I went in his company to Honduras and Hibueras (for so they call it in this country),

and other things were contained in the letter which to avoid prolixity I will not quote here.

In the same way the Most Illustrious Viceroy Don Antonio de Mendoza wrote to His Majesty reporting to him what he had been told by the Captains in whose company I had at that time served as a soldier, and it agreed with all that the Marques del Valle had written. Moreover very sufficient proofs were presented on my behalf in the Royal Council of the Indies in the year five hundred and forty [1540]. So the Señores Licenciados can see whether the Marques del Valle and the Viceroy Don Antonio de Mendoza and my proofs are sufficient evidence. If this is not enough I wish to call another witness, and there is none better in the world, which is the Most Christian Emperor our Lord of Glorious Memory, Don Carlos the fifth, who by his Royal letter, closed and sealed with his Royal Seal, orders the Viceroys and Presidents to have respect for the many good and loyal services which it is clear to him that I have rendered, that I and my children should have preference and advantage ; which said Royal letter he sent to me, and I have all the originals of these letters preserved, and the copies remain at the Court in the archive of the Secretary Ochoa Luyando. I say this as an excuse and a witness of what the Licentiates represent to me.

To return to my argument, by chance the Chronicler Francisco de Gomara wished [so] to write it, [but neither he] nor the Doctor Yllescas in what they wrote about the heroic deeds of we should remain unmentioned if I had not told this true story. As to what they say that I praise myself too much and that others should do that, I answer there are occasions when certain neighbours are wont to praise the virtues and goodness of others and not their own, but for one who is not present in a war, and does not see it or understand it, how is he able to do it? Are the clouds to utter praise or the birds that flew over us when we were fighting our battles? Only the Captains and soldiers who were present [could do so.] If in my story I had taken the honour and glory from some of the valiant Captains and brave soldiers who were my companions and were present at the Conquest and given it to myself, it [the allegation] would be right, and would take away my standing ground, but I have not even praised myself as well as I ought.

The Marquis Cortés says, and an inscription which he placed on the Culverin of the bird Phoenix, which was a cannon cast in Mexico of gold, silver and copper, which we sent to His Majesty : the letters of the inscription said

Esta ave nació sin par
Y yo en serviros sin segundo
Y Vos sin igual en el Mundo.

This bird born without an equal,
I second to none in serving you,
Your Highness without equal in
the world.

I am clearly able to say that I am entitled to part in this praise and inscription, for I helped Cortés to accomplish those loyal services. In addition to this, when Cortés went the first time to Castile to kiss the royal feet of His Majesty, he reported to him that he had such valiant and brave Captains and comrades that he believed none more spirited had been heard of in past history than those with whom he conquered New Spain and the great City of Mexico. I am also entitled to a share of this praise. When he went to serve His Majesty in the affair of Algiers, and certain things happened about striking camp on account to the great tempests which occurred, it is said that he spoke many praises of his valiant companions. So I also claim a share of that.

It is for this reason I write and wish to place here a comparison, although it is a comparison between a very distinguished man and a soldier like myself. I assert that I was present in New Spain fighting in more battles than the great Emperor Julius Cæsar was present in, and his historians say of him that he was very ready with his arms and very valiant in giving battle—and when he had time he wrote down his heroic exploits, for although he had many and great chroniclers he was not satisfied with these, so himself wrote them with his own hand. It is not unreasonable that now in this story I mention the battles myself, for I was present at all the battles in which the Marquis Cortés took part, and many others, when he sent me with other Captains to conquer other provinces and cities, which will be found noted in this my chronicle and narrative, when and where, and in what provinces I was fighting, and at what times. Moreover I say that if [in addition to] all the praises and eulogy which Francisco de Gomara and Doctor Yllescas repeat in their books, they wish for further evidence, let them look at New Spain which is four times as large as our Castile! and let them observe the many cities and towns that are inhabited and

CHAPTER CCXIII.

Why many Indian men and women were branded as slaves in New Spain, and the story I tell about it.

CERTAIN monks have asked me to tell them and explain why so many Indian men and women were branded for slaves throughout New Spain, and whether we branded them without reporting it to His Majesty. To this I replied, and repeat it now, that His Majesty sent twice

to order it, and, that this may be clearly understood, interested readers should know that this was the way of it:—Diego Velásquez, Governor of the Island of Cuba, sent a fleet against us, and as Captain of it one Pánfilo de Narvaez, who brought with him thirteen hundred soldiers, among them ninety horsemen, and ninety small cannon (they were called Espingardas at that time), and eighty crossbowmen. He came to capture us and take the country for Diego Velásquez, as I have already stated in my narrative in the chapter that treats of it, and it is necessary that I should now refer to it again so that it may be clearly understood.

To go back to my subject: as soon as our Captain and all of us soldiers knew how Narvaez came in a fury, and about the insolent speeches he was uttering against us, we decided to set out from Mexico and meet him with two hundred and sixty soldiers, and endeavour to defeat him before he could capture us. And because at that time we held the great Montezuma, the Lord of Mexico, prisoner, we left him in charge of a Captain often mentioned by me before, named Pedro de Alvarado, and we left in his company eighty soldiers, for it seemed to us that some of them were suspected of not being willing to help us, as they had been friends of Diego Velásquez, and would be hostile to us.

While we were going against Narvaez the City of Mexico and its subjects rose in revolt, and I wish to recount the cause and reason given by the great Montezuma why they rebelled, and what he said was true. It appears the Mexicans were accustomed at that time to hold a great festival to [in honour of] their Idols called Huichilobos and Tezcatépuca, with rejoicings and dances, and to come out with their treasures of jewels and gold and plumes. The great Montezuma asked permission of Pedro de Alvarado, and he gave it with evidence of

goodwill, but as soon as he saw that nearly all the Caciques of that city were dancing, and other chieftains who had come from other parts to see the dances, Pedro de Alvarado came out suddenly from his quarters with all his eighty well-armed soldiers, and fell on the Caciques who were dancing in the principal court of the great Cue, and killed and wounded some of them [although] they had asked his permission to dance. As soon as the great Montezuma and his chieftains saw this, they were very greatly angered at such a breach of faith, and at once at that very moment¹ they attacked him [Pedro de Alvarado].

The first day they killed eight of his soldiers and wounded nearly all the rest, and burned their quarters, and surrounded him in such a way that he found himself in great straits. They certainly would have succeeded in killing them [all] if they had pressed the attack one day longer. At that moment the great Montezuma commanded his chieftains and Captains to cease the attack, because at that time Pedro de Alvarado threatened to kill Montezuma there where he was in prison, if the attack were continued. Moreover they stopped the attack because his [Montezuma's] spies and chieftains (whom he always sent after us, from the time we left Mexico to go against Narvaez, to ascertain how things turned out) came post haste to tell him how we had defeated him [Narvaez], which he and all his chieftains considered to be most important, for they looked upon it as certain that as we who were with Cortés were few in number, and the followers of Narvaez four times as numerous as we were, they would take us prisoners as scoundrels.

To return to my story: I will state that after we had

¹ Scratched out in the original: "they rose in rebellion in Mexico."

captured Narvaez we returned to Mexico to rescue Alvarado, and Cortés knew that the great Montezuma had asked permission of Pedro de Alvarado to hold that display¹ and festival; and as soon as he saw that . . . he reprimanded him very severely with very sharp words, and a Captain named Alonzo de Ávila often mentioned by me, who was on bad terms with Pedro de Alvarado, also told him that there would remain in New Spain an evil memory of having done such an unjust deed. To this Pedro de Alvarado made the excuse, taking his oath to it, that he knew for certain from three priests and Caciques,² and from other Caciques who were in the company of the great Montezuma, that the festival they were celebrating to their Huichilobos, who was the God of War, was in order that he might give them victory against him and his soldiers and free Montezuma from prison, and afterwards they would make war on those who were coming with Narvaez and those belonging to Cortés who might still be living, and as he [Alvarado] knew for certain that they were going to attack him the next day he got ahead by attacking them first, so that they should be cowed and have to attend to the wounds inflicted on them.

I want to get back to my story: when we came to know how they had him hemmed in and [reduced him to] such straits, we decided to go in haste and rescue him, and we made friendship between the followers of Cortés and those of Narvaez, and went to his [Alvarado's] rescue with more than thirteen hundred soldiers, ninety horsemen and more than a hundred gunners and ninety crossbowmen, and nearly all those I now mention were of the company of Narvaez, for we of Cortés's company did not number more than three hundred and fifty; and

¹ Areyte.

Blotted out in the original: "whom they captured when . . .

it must be remembered that the eighty with Pedro de Alvarado are included in the count. There were also with us two thousand friendly Tlaxcalans, and with this force we entered Mexico with Cortés, who was greatly elated with his victory over Narvaez.

The day after we arrived the Mexicans made so many attacks . . . on us and wars, that of the thirteen hundred soldiers who came in [with us], within eight days they had killed, sacrificed and eaten over eight hundred and sixty-two Spaniards, both those who had come with Cortés and those whom Narvaez brought, and they also sacrificed and ate over a thousand Tlaxcalans. This took place in the city and on the causeways and bridges and in a pitched battle which in this country we call [the battle of] Otumba.


From that rout [only] four hundred and forty soldiers and twenty-two horses escaped, and if we had not taken to flight in the middle of the night we should all have been left there [dead]. We who escaped were [all] badly wounded, but, with the help of God who favoured us, we went to [seek] aid at Tlaxcala, which received us like good and loyal friends.

Within five months we got certain reinforcement of soldiers, which came in three vessels with Captains sent by Don Francisco de Garay from the Island of Jamaica to the Rio Panuco, to assist his fleet. Three months later we received other reinforcement from two other ships which came from Cuba, and in them came twenty and odd horses which Diego Velásquez sent for the use of his Captain Pánfilo de Narvaez, he thinking that he had already defeated and taken us prisoners. When we possessed the reinforcements and ships already mentioned, and with the gold saved in the flight from Mexico, Cortés decided, with the consent of all of us Captains and soldiers, that we should send a report of

all our conquests to the Royal Audiencia and Geronimite Friars who were the Governors in the Island of Santo Domingo. For this purpose we sent two ambassadors, persons of quality, named Captain Alonzo de Ávila and one Francisco Álvarez Chico, who was a man of business. We sent them to beg consideration of the reports already mentioned, and of the attacks made on us, and that they should grant us permission to make slaves of the Mexican Indians and natives of the pueblos who had risen in revolt and killed Spaniards¹ (and who after we had summoned them three times to make peace, would not come in, but [continued to] make war,) and to brand them in the face [with a mark] like this ☩. What the Royal Audiencia and the Geronimite Friars decreed about this was to grant us permission (subject to a warrant with certain chapters of the order which were to be obeyed) to brand slaves; and according to the directions laid down in the warrant slaves were branded in New Spain. In addition to this which I have stated, the Royal Audiencia and Geronimite Friars informed His Majesty, who was in Flanders, what had been done, and he approved of it, and the members of his Royal Council of the Indies sent another decree on the subject.

I wish here also to call to mind how within about a year we sent our Ambassadors from Mexico to Castile, and report was made to His Majesty how before we came to New Spain with Cortés, and also at that very time, the Indians and Caciques commonly held a number of Indian men and women as slaves, and sold them and traded with them as one trades with any merchandise, and Indian merchants went from place to place and from market to market selling them and bartering them for gold and cloths and cacao, and brought batches of fifteen

¹ Blotted out in the original: "and made war."

to twenty or more for sale¹ tied together with collars and ropes [in a] much worse [way] than the Portuguese bring the Negroes from Guinea. Our Ambassadors took proofs of good faith and credit for all this, and took certain Mexican Indians as witnesses, and with these preparations we sent to beg His Majesty that he would do us the favour to grant us permission to pay them as tribute, and to buy them by barter in the same way as the Indians bought and sold them, and His Majesty was pleased to grant it, and ordered honest and competent persons to be appointed to take charge of the iron with which the branding was done. After the royal decree which His Majesty had ordered about this had been brought to New Spain or Mexico, it was arranged, so that there should be no misunderstanding² about the branding, that an Alcalde and the senior Regidor and a Priest should have charge of the branding iron in each city or town, and that they should be persons of good repute. The iron which they then used for branding the slaves which they received in barter was like this .

I also wish to write down here, that it would have been more profitable we should send to beg His Majesty to grant us favour, for if as was most Christian, or the Lords who at that time directed the Council of the Indies could know what afterwards happened about it, and as in all that they decreed they desired to do right, His Majesty would never have given such permission nor would it have been agreed to by the Royal Council of the Indies, for certainly great frauds were perpetrated over the branding of the Indians.

Men are not always very just, on the contrary there

¹ Blotted out in the original: "Some merchants more and others less."

² Scratched out in the original: "and that there should be exactitude."

are many of evil disposition, and at that time there came from Spain and from the Islands many poor Spaniards, greatly covetous and insatiable and ravenous to acquire riches and slaves, who took such measures that they branded the free.

So that this matter may be more clearly understood, at the time that Cortés was governing, before we went with him to the Hibueras, there was justice about the branding of slaves, for they were not branded without ascertaining quite clearly whether they were free [or not]. After we set out from Mexico and went with Cortés to Honduras (for so they call it in this country), and were delayed in going and returning to Mexico two years and three months while we were conquering those provinces and bringing them to peace, during the time we were absent there took place in New Spain so many injustices, and revolts, and scandals among those whom Cortés had left as his Lieutenant-Governors that they took no care whether Indians were branded with good or bad title, but only looked after their own parties and interests. The persons who then governed did not look to see whether those who at that time had charge of the branding were of evil repute and covetous, and they gave the office to their friends to make profit for themselves, and these branded many free Indians who were not slaves.

In addition to this there were other evils among the Caciques, who, in paying tribute to their encomenderos, took poor Indian boys and girls and orphans and gave them as slaves. So great was the disillusion that resulted from this that the first to break away from the branding for barter was the town of Coatzacoalcos, where at that time I was a settler, for when this happened more than a year had elapsed since we had returned to that town from the journey we had made with Cortés.¹

¹ Scratched out in the original : "to the Hibueras."

As the Senior Regidor and a person of trust, they had handed over the branding iron to me, and to a Curate of that town named Benito López, so that I should have charge of it. When we saw how the [natives of] the province were decreasing and the cunning which the Caciques and some encomenderos were practising to induce us to brand Indians as slaves (and they were not doing it very secretly), we broke the branding iron, without informing the Chief Alcalde or the Cabildo, and sent a messenger post haste to the President Don Sebastian Ramírez, then Bishop of Santo Domingo, who was a good President and an upright man of cleanly life, and informed him how we had broken the branding iron, and implored him, as a matter of sound counsel, at once to order distinctly that no more slaves should be branded in any part of New Spain. When he had seen our letters, he wrote to us to say that we had acted as very trustworthy servants of His Majesty and, sincerely thanking us, made offers to assist us.

In agreement with the Royal Audiencia he promptly ordered that no more Indians should be branded in any part of New Spain, nor in Jalisco, Tabasco, Yucatan or Guatemala, and this which he decreed was good and holy.

As there are men who do not possess that zeal which they ought to have for the service of God and of His Majesty, and who would not consider the wrong which was being done in branding free Indians as slaves, when they got to know in our town of Coatzacoalcas that I and my companion the Curate Benito López had broken the branding iron, they asked why we prevented them enjoying the favours which His Majesty had vouchsafed us, and they went on to say that we were bad citizens and did no benefits to the town¹ and that we ought to

¹ Blotted out in the original : "and commonwealth."

be stoned. We laughed at all they said and took no notice of it, and took pride in having done such a good deed. Then the same President, together with the Royal Audiencia, sent a commission to me and to the Curate already named by me, as Inspectors-General of two towns, namely Coatzacoalcos and Tabasco, and sent us instructions as to the manner of our inspections and how many pesos we were authorized to inflict [as fines] in the judgments we should give, which amounted to fifty thousand maravedis, and that we should refer crimes and murders and other atrocious acts to the said Royal Audiencia. They also sent us a commission to prepare a description of all the lands and pueblos of the two towns which we visited, as well as we were able, and to send them a copy of the judicial records and the description of the provinces and a report of all we had done. In reply he [the President?] stated that he was very well satisfied and that he would inform His Majesty of it [what we had done], so that he might grant us favours, and that if anything occurred to me he would report it, because he always had a strong desire to assist me. At that time His Majesty sent to summon him [the President, to Castile], and he went there.¹ When I was in Mexico as Proctor-Syndic of the town of Coatzacoalcos talking to him [the President] about the business of the conquest of New Spain, [going] from one subject to the other, he told me that before he became Bishop of Santo Domingo he had been Inquisitor in Seville.

¹ Blotted out in the original: "So when he arrived in Castile they gave him the bishopric of . . . Tuy, and he was President of the Royal Audiencia of Granada, and at that time the bishopric of Leor fell vacant and they promoted him, and then the bishopric of Cuencá was vacant, so that the mails met which brought him the Bulls of the bishoprics one with the other, and then they passed him on to the Royal Audiencia of Valladolid, and at that time and season our Lord Jesus Christ was pleased to take him to His holy Glory."

I wish to leave this subject which has been very long and prolix, but in it can be seen the permission we had from His Majesty and the Lords of his Royal Council to brand slaves.

Let us leave this and I will speak of the Governors who ruled New Spain.¹

CHAPTER CCXIV.

About the Governors who have been in New Spain up to the year fifteen hundred and sixty-eight.

THE first Captain and Governor was the valorous and good Captain Hernando Cortés, who as time went on became Marques del Valle and held other titles, and all three were well deserved. He governed very well and peaceably for more than three years, [and then he went to the] Hibueras and Cape of Honduras [and left behind as Governors] and lieutenants to carry on the Government the Treasurer Alonzo de [Estrada, a native] of Ciudad Real, in company with the Accountant Rodrigo de Albornoze or of Ramaga, and they ruled for a matter of three months. Then the Factor Gonzalo de Salazar, a native of Granada, in company with the Veedor Peralmirez Chirinos² of Ubeda, assumed the Government, and the way in which they ruled I have already described in the chapter which tells about it, and the scandals that arose in Mexico over the question whether or no they should govern; they remained Governors for more than a year and a half.

When Cortés came to know about the strife that had

¹ Immediately after this last line there is a note which says "this is not to be written below," it is the beginning of the following chapter.

² Scratched out in the original: "Native."

arisen in Mexico through their bad government, he sent from the province of Honduras to revoke the authority [he had given] them, and the Treasurer and Accountant returned to govern again, according to the authority which Cortés had left with them. Then these said Governors imprisoned the Factor and Veedor in some cages of stout beams, and within about a year and a half Cortés returned to Mexico from Honduras, and when he arrived he took over the Government himself.

Before fifteen days had passed, during which he was occupied over necessary matters¹ touching the past squabbles, at that moment there arrived from Castile as Governor, a certain Licentiate . . . named Luis Ponce de Leon, a native of Córdoba, who brought a commission to take the Residencia of Cortés and of the Captains and Magistrates who were in New Spain at the time. While he was taking the Residencia, he died of sleeping sickness, and left his powers, by will, to the Licentiate named Marcos de Aguilar, whom the said Luis Ponce had brought in his company when he came from the Island of Santo Domingo. Other persons whom Luis Ponce brought with him called him the Bachelor Aguilar, and the powers which he [Luis Ponce] left him by his will [stated] that he was to make no change whatever in the Government, and should not take away Indians from any Encomendero, nor should he release the Factor and Veedor from prison, but that they should remain prisoners in the way he had found them. Moreover he charged him at once to report the matter to His Majesty so that he could send and order what would be best for his service. In this way Marcos de Aguilar ruled more than ten months, and he died of consumption and from a boil

¹ Blotted out in the original: "for the service of God and of His Majesty."

disease, and left authority by his will for the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada to assume the government. So the Treasurer governed for the third time, and when he was given the government, he arranged with the Proctors of New Spain, in order that he should exercise more authority in the Government, that he should rule, jointly with Gonzalo de Sandoval, who was Chief Alguazil and had been a Captain—a very distinguished person. Some persons said the Treasurer did this because he wished to marry his daughter to him [Sandoval]. When the two had been governing jointly about ten months, an order came from His Majesty that the Treasurer should govern alone, and they removed Sandoval from the Government. A royal Cedula also came [to the effect] that the Factor and Veedor should be released from prison and their property which had been sequestrated should be returned to them.

Within a few days His Majesty appointed a Royal Audiencia, and as President of it came one Nuño de Guzman, a native of Guadalajara, who was at that time Governor of the Province of [Panuco]. There also came as Oidores four Licentiates, named [Delgadillo, a native] of Granada, and Matienzo, whom they say came from the neighbourhood of Biscay, and a Licentiate [Parada] to be in the Island of Cuba, and one Maldonado of Salamanca (I do not speak of the Licentiate Maldonado the Good, for so we called him, who was Governor of Guatemala and Adelantado of Yucatan). To return to my story: when the Licentiates whom I have mentioned, who came as Oidores, arrived in Mexico, Parada and Maldonado died, and the Royal Audiencia held session with the President, whom I have already mentioned, and the two Oidores, for more than two years. Because His Majesty was informed that they did not do their duty, he distinctly ordered them to resign, and there promptly

came as President Don Sebastian Ramírez of Villa Escusa, who at that time was Bishop of the Island of Santo Domingo, and four Oidores named the Licentiate Salmeron, from Madrid, Alonzo Maldonado of Salamanca, and the Licentiate Ceynos of Zamora, and the Licentiate Bernaldo de Quirova of Madrigal, and they were very good and upright judges. After some years His Majesty sent for the President Don Sebastian Ramírez to give him information about the affairs of New Spain, and as soon as he arrived they gave him the Bishopric of Tuy, and appointed him President of the Royal Audiencia of Granada, and at that time the Bishopric of Leon became vacant, and they promoted him and transferred him to the Chancery of Valladolid. Then the Bishopric of Cuenca became vacant, and it was given to him, and at that moment it pleased God to take him to His holy glory.

Let us speak now of the Licentiate Salmeron, who remained in New Spain, as Oidor, for more than four years, and became rich; he sent to ask leave to return to Castile, and after he had rendered his accounts with satisfaction, he departed and was appointed to the Royal Council of the Indies; and when he was old His Majesty ordered him to be pensioned. To the Licentiate Bernaldo de Quirova was given the Bishopric of Michoacan, and the Licentiate Maldonado because he was a very good and upright judge, came as President and Governor to this province of Guatemala and Honduras, and served His Majesty very efficiently in the offices he held.

I must go back to say that at this time,¹ His Majesty ordered Don Antonio de Mendoza, brother of the Marquis of Mondejar, to come as Viceroy and President of New

¹ Scratched out in the original: "when the President Don Sebastian Ramírez arrived in Castile."

Spain, and [sent] as Oidores four Licentiates, named Tejada of Logroño, and an elderly Licentiate Loayza of Ciudad Real, and the Licentiate Santillan, a native of Seville, who was afterwards a Doctor, and the Doctor Quêzada Lêdesma, and a few days later came the Licentiate Mexia, a native of San Martin de Valde Yglesias, who was afterwards a Doctor, and the Doctor Herrera, said to be native of the neighbourhood of Guadalajara. I do not remember how long they remained as Oidores, for some went to Castile and some came and others remained—as it makes little difference to my story, I do not record it.

At that time there came as Inspector of the whole of New Spain, and as Guardian of the Royal Decrees, the Licentiate Tello de Sandoval, a native of Seville, and he took the Residencia of the Viceroy Don Antonio de Mendoza, and of the Oidores, and found that they were upright judges, although he raised some punctilios and slight suspicions against the Viceroy. After he had finished the examination he returned to Castile to become an Oidor, and, a short time afterwards, President of the Royal Council of the Indies, and later on Bishop of Osuna or of¹

Then there came to Mexico as Judge [of the Residencia] of Nuño de Guzman, and to make certain investigations into the Jalisco, a Licentiate named De la Torre, a native of Badajos, Licentiate as he came with great desire to do justice in the matters which he had [to investigate]; this was he in the sleeves of whose gown they placed the playing cards, as I have related in the chapter that treats of it, of the annoyance from which he died.

There also came from Castile at that time a Licentiate

¹ A blank space is left here in the original.—G. G.

named Vena, who made the Viceroy and all the Royal Audiencia believe that His Majesty was sending him to take the Residencia of the Licentiate Tejada, and to remain as Inspector of New Spain. About this he practiced such frauds that the Viceroy and Royal Audiencia believed it, and one day they ordered him to take his seat together with them in the Law Court. When, however, they observed that he could show no commission, but only some fraudulent papers which he brought sealed up, which said on them and on their dockets "Titles and Decrees which His Majesty had given him as Inspector and to take the Residencia of Tejada," and they saw that all the enclosure was blank, and [thus] understood his frauds, they ordered him to be given two hundred lashes well laid on. In addition to this he had another way of cheating, in that certain persons who had lawsuits gave him money, and for all this they banished him from Mexico after he had been flogged.

At this time His Majesty ordered the Viceroy Don Antonio de Mendoza to go to Peru and pacify that kingdom, which was disturbed, and when he arrived there and began to do justice, it pleased God to take him to His holy glory. Great grief was felt at his death, and there was much reason for it, for from what we could see, when he was Viceroy of New Spain, he governed very well, and is worthy of very meritorious regard for his many virtues.

There promptly came in his place, as Viceroy, Don Luis de Velasco, a native of Palencia of Tierra de Campos.¹ I never communicated with him except by letters which I wrote to him, which he answered, about

¹ Scratched out in the original: "He had the reputation of being very just in all that he did."

a son of mine who lived in his house. It is said that he occupied the post of Viceroy and Governor for sixteen years, at the end of which he died.

A few months before God took him from this life, His Majesty had sent to Mexico a Licentiate or Doctor named¹ de Valderrama, a native of Talavera. It is said that he came as Inspector of New Spain, and, from what I have heard, after the death of the Viceroy Don Luis Velasco, he wished to be in supreme command, but the Señores Oidores of the Royal Audiencia would not consent to it, and reported it to His Majesty, who sent to order him back to Castile to be Oidor, as before, in the Royal Council of the Indies; and as soon as he arrived [in Castile] he died. Also about that time, or half a year earlier, the Licentiate Zaynos returned to Castile to be an Oidor [of the Royal Council] as he had been before of the Royal Audiencia of Mexico.

To return to my story: when it was known in Castile that Don Luis Velasco had died, His Majesty appointed as Viceroy and Governor a gentleman named Don Gaston de Peralta, Marques de Falces, Conde de Santistevan, and chief Mayordomo of His Majesty of the Kingdom of Navarre, who remained for a certain time in the City of Mexico. They say² he was amiable and had good manners, and during the time he remained in Mexico there did not occur so many disturbances³ about the affairs of the Marquis Don Martin Cortés, and of one Alonzo de Ávila, and his brother named Gil Gonzáles de Benavides who were sons of Gil Gonzáles de Benavides the elder, and nephew of a Captain named Alonzo de

¹ A blank space is left in the original. The Licentiate Valderrama was named Jerónimo, according to León Pinelo.—G. G.

² Blotted out in the original: "that he governed very well."

³ Blotted out in the original: "as after His Majesty had sent to summon him to come to Castile to report to him."

Ávila, already often mentioned by me, who came among the first with Cortés to New Spain. Returning to my subject: these two nephews of his [Alonso de Ávila] were those whom they beheaded, and much other justice was done over the disturbances and rebellions.

So that it should be more clearly understood who these were, it is as I now state:—The Captain Alonso de Ávila, uncle of the two nephews on whom justice was executed, held entrusted to him under the Law of Assignment a good pueblo of Indians near Mexico, named Guautitlan, which the Marquis Don Hernando Cortés had given him; and when Alonso de Ávila, to whom the pueblo first belonged, died, the Fiscal claimed it for His Majesty as being vacant and belonging to the Royal Crown, because Gil Gonzáles de Benavides, the brother of Alonso de Ávila, had neither title nor charter of assignment of the pueblo, but exploited it on the strength of a Power of Attorney which his brother the Captain Alonso de Ávila had given him. Moreover Gil Gonzáles de Ávila de Benavides, the father of those who were beheaded, was never a Conquistador of Mexico (when he came to Mexico New Spain was already conquered) except that he went in company with Cortés when we went to the Hibueras. However, as other persons know much more fully how to relate the dangers that arose in Mexico over this [than I do], it is better that I should not refer to what has been written on the subject. Moreover I live in the city of Santiago de Guatemala, where I am Regidor, and do not go to Mexico, nor have anything to do with Viceroy's there, nor the Royal Audiencia, so we will not touch on these points.

Let us turn now to the Province of Jalisco. The first Captain who was [sent] there was called Nuño de Guzman ... that province was subject to the Royal Audiencia of years, His Majesty ordered that there should be a

Royal Audiencia in it without things which were suitable, had supreme command Now they have told me at this time that it is independent and with provinces, I have no further news of them, of what I here state of Yucatan which is on the North Coast, that the first Captains named the Adelantado Don Francisco de Montejo, and his son Montejo, natives of Salamanca, and he was for some years and in the year fifteen hundred and fifty His Majesty ordered that it [was to be subject] to Guatemala, and after it had been in the way I have said for four or five years, His Majesty ordered that it should return to be subject to Mexico.

At that time the Licentiate named Quijada, a native of Seville, who was afterwards a doctor, went to Castile, he used to be a settler in Guatemala, and held pueblos of Indians in assignment who gave him a revenue of seven hundred pesos, and through desire of being a Governor he begged His Majesty to grant him the Government of Yucatan, with the result that he left his Indians and they reverted to the authority of His Majesty. He held the Government [of Yucatan] for some years, and when his Residencia was taken it appears that as he had not governed as he should have done they deprived him of the Government; so that in his anxiety to hold rule he lost the Indians which he held for certain, and was condemned in costs, and went to Castile on this account and died there.

There came in his place as Governor of Yucatan one Luis de Cespedes, a native of Ciudad Real, who held the Government for four years, and, as I understand, he did not govern well and they dismissed him, and they say that he fled to Castile.

Let us leave the affairs of Yucatan, which from the beginning had gone from bad to worse through bad government, and turn to the Government of Guatemala.

The first Governor who was appointed was named Pedro de Alvarado, a native of Badajos, and in the year twenty-six [1526] he went to Castile to beg His Majesty to grant him the Government of these Kingdoms, and while he was gone he left as his lieutenant his brother, named Jorge de Alvarado, who at that time had married a daughter of the Treasurer Alonzo de Estrada (and the Treasurer was at that time Governor of Mexico). Within about a year from the time he was governing Guatemala His Majesty sent the first Royal Audiencia that was appointed to Mexico (as I have noted and stated), and when they arrived in Mexico they sent to take [the Residencia] of Jorge de Alvarado, and he who came to take it was named Francisco Orduña, an old man, who was a native of Tordesillas. I do not know what took place in the Residencia except that they have told me that he ruled as a Governor [should rule]. Within three months of the time that Orduña was taking the Residencia, Don Pedro de Alvarado returned from Castile with the title of Governor, and he brought a Commandry of the order of Santiago. He came married to a lady named Doña Francisco de la Cueva, who died on arriving at Vera Cruz.

To return to my story: when the Adelantado arrived in Guatemala he at once in great haste fitted out a good fleet, with which he went to Peru, and while he was away he left his own brother Jorge de Alvarado as Lieutenant-Governor. After some years the Adelantado returned from Peru a very rich man; and about that time the Royal Audiencia of Mexico sent again to take a Residencia, and, as judge of complaints, sent the Licentiate Alonzo Maldonado, a native of Salamanca, who was an Oidor of the Royal Audiencia of Mexico. It appears that concerning the Residencia and the things of which the Adelantado had been accused he found it necessary

to return to Castile [and to appear] before His Majesty, and as our Lord and King was most Christian, and had received reports of the services which he [the Adelantado] had rendered, he acquitted him of the complaints and claims payable to His Majesty which they had brought against him in the affairs in question.

At that time he [the Adelantado] married another lady, the sister of his first wife, named Doña Beatriz de la Cueva, and as the Duque de Alburquerque, Don Pedro de la Cueva, the Comendador Mayor de Alcántara and Don Alonzo de la Cueva, his wife's relations, supported him, His Majesty granted him the Government [of Guatemala], as before, for some years. When he came to Guatemala he prepared a very large fleet to go to the West, to China and the Spice Islands, all of which I have reported in the [chapter that treats of it] fleets, and while he was away with the fleet he left as lieutenant Governor [Francisco de la Cue]ya who was a Licentiate and a cousin of his wife, and I have even been told that know something certain of the Government, if it was not with appearance and consent Don Francisco Marroquin, and the Adelantado having already set out with thirteen ships and over six hundred soldiers, arrived with all his fleet at the province of Jalisco.

Just as he was ready to set sail and follow on his course, they brought letters to him, sent by a Captain named Cristóbal Doñate, to beg him with great entreaty and prayers, in the name of His Majesty, to come to his rescue, as he and his army of Spaniards were on the point of disaster at some pueblos or fortresses named Nochiztlan, and that both by day and night they [the Indians] wounded and killed many Spaniards and he could not hold out, and that he was in the greatest exigency and need, for if the Indians of Nochiztlan were victorious the whole of New Spain would run a risk.

As soon as Don Pedro de Alvarado heard and understood the news, which was beyond all question, he ordered his Captains and soldiers with all despatch to go with him to the rescue, and in great haste he went to the rocky hills, and with his help the attack which the Indians of that province were making on the Spaniards slackened somewhat, but not so much that it stopped them attacking with great valour, like brave warriors, and in spite of the assistance [rendered] the Spaniards were in great danger, for many of their soldiers were killed. Then, from the time their ill-fortune began, one disaster followed on another, for, while Don Pedro de Alvarado was fighting against the squadrons of Indian Warriors, it seems that while a soldier was fighting, a horse stumbled with him, and came rolling down the hill with great impetus to where the Adelantado was standing, so that he was not able to move aside at all, and the horse carried him down so that his body was mangled in such a way that he felt very ill from it. So as to take care of him and cure him they carried him away in a litter to a town named La Purificacion, which was the nearest to those rocky hills. As they went on their way he began to faint, and when they reached the town, after he had confessed and received the sacrament, he gave up his soul to God who created him. Some persons say that he made a will.¹

When the Adelantado died the Royal Audiencia of Mexico sent as Governor the Licentiate Alonzo Maldonado, already mentioned by me, and about a year's time after this happened, His Majesty ordered a Royal Audiencia to come to this province of Guatemala, and the said Licentiate Alonzo Maldonado came as its President, and they settled in a town called

¹ Scratched out in the original: "May God pardon him, Amen. To return to my story."

Gracias a Dios. Three Oidores came named the Licentiate Rogel de Olmedo, and the Licentiate Pedro Ramírez de Quiñones, a native of Leon, and Doctor Herrera of Toledo, and some time later His Majesty ordered the same Audiencia to move to this City of Santiago de Guatemala.

Because the Licentiate Alonzo de Maldonado had been for many years Oidor in Mexico and President in these provinces he felt it necessary to go and plead with His Majesty to grant him [the office] of Adelantado of Yucatan, and the pueblos of Indians which had belonged to his father-in-law, the Adelantado Don Francisco de Montejo, who died at that time. He sent to beg His Majesty to give him leave to go to Castile, and leave was given him, on the condition that he should first undergo his Residencia, by which they established the fact that he was a very good Judge.

His Majesty sent as President in his place the Licentiate named Alonzo López Çerrato, a native of Estremadura, and as Oidores, the Licentiate Tomas López, a native of Tendilla, and the Licentiate Çorita of Granada, and as I have already stated the Licentiate Pedro Ramírez de Quiñones was already Oidor. When the President Çerrato had remained four years and was old, and a Churchman, he sent to beg : . . . was well instructed in the Royal Council another earnest prayer that he might on condition that he should undergo his Residencia, and to undertake it Quesada a native of Ledesma and being God was pleased to take him from this life and Doctor Quesada who was undertaking it, and there remained as President the Senior Oidor who was the Licentiate Pedro Ramírez.

A short time afterwards His Majesty ordered the Licentiate Juan Martinez de Landecho, a native of Biscay, to come as President. At that time or a few months

earlier the Licentiate Loaysa, a native of Talavera, came as Oidor, and at the same time the Doctor Antonio Mexia, a native of San Martin de Val de Yglesias, came as Oidor, who used to hold the same office in the Royal Audiencia of Mexico. Because Doctor Mexia and another Doctor named Herrera, who was also an Oidor of the Royal Audiencia of Mexico, had some differences of opinion or squabbles, in order to make peace between them, His Majesty ordered Doctor Mexia to come to this province as Oidor, and the Doctor [Herrera?] went to Castile. It appears that some time later His Majesty ordered Doctor Mexia's Residencia to be taken, and the President Landecho undertook it, and on account of certain charges which were brought against him he deprived him of the Royal office for some years. About this he [Mexia] went to Castile and was acquitted of the charges so clearly that they appointed him to another Royal office, as Corregidor of Talavera, and afterwards he was appointed President of the Royal Audiencia of Santo Domingo, when he died holding the office of President. In place of Doctor Mexia, Doctor Barros de Sanmillan, a native of Segovia, came as Oidor of this Royal Audiencia, and if he had had as much beard¹ as it was said he had learning it would have added dignity to his presence.

After the Licentiate Landecho had been President for a few years, His Majesty ordered the said Royal Audiencia which was established in this City of Santiago to move to Panama, because it is said information had been received that it would be more convenient there, and for other reasons which I could not clearly understand. In addition to this, His Majesty ordered the Residencia of the Licentiate Landecho to be taken, and of all the other Oidores who resided in it [the city], and

¹ An allusion to his youthful appearance.

if they were found to be culpable that they should be dismissed.

The Licentiate Francisco Briseño, a native of Corral de Almaguer, who had formerly been Oidor in the kingdom of New Granada, came by appointment to take the Residencia, and he brought a commission to take this Residencia and to transfer the Royal Seal to Panama, and to appoint the Oidor who should be least occupied, and whom he should consider best qualified, to take charge of it. He also brought a commission to examine the officers of the Royal Treasury, and of the property of defunct persons, and to bring to an end and conclude the lawsuits which had been begun by the late Royal Audiencia.

To go back to my story: He took the Residencia of the Licentiate Landecho, who was President, and of the Oidor the Licentiate Loayza, and of Doctor Barros, and after reviewing the charges and replies, he deprived the President Landecho and Loayza of Royal office for some years, and fined them a certain sum of money, but he acquitted Doctor Barros. On this account they had to go to Castile, and His Majesty ordered the Licentiate Landecho to go with the appointment of Oidor to Peru (I do not know about the other office he is said to have held), and when he reached Panama he died. The Licentiate Loayza came to this city as Oidor, and from here His Majesty sent him as Oidor to Chili. His Majesty appointed Doctor Barros to go with the Royal Seal to Panama, and to remain there as President of the Royal Audiencia, until he should order otherwise. The reason why he sent him with the Royal Seal was, because they found that he had the least official work to do.

After the Licentiate Briseño had sent off the Royal Seal (and he set out with the illustrious Cabildo of this

city and other gentlemen), he went to the town of Trinidad to decide certain boundaries and jurisdictions, and then he went to see some lands sown with wheat, which had been taken from certain pueblos, and he had them restored to their owners, and he visited the whole of his province, and this he did without taking payment from any place whatever. If one were to relate all the good he did during the time he was Governor it would be a long story, and I must be silent about it. Moreover, what to me . . . that he should have patience and with the merchants . . . he was a good Judge, but he obliterated it all with his . . . which appeared to him to be well said.

In the year fifteen hundred and sixty-six being . . . the month of May, between one and two o'clock in the day, the ground began to shake in such a way that it lifted the houses and walls and even the roofs so that many of them fell to the ground, and others remained roofless lying over on one side, and we thought the earth would open and swallow us up. Although we all went out into the open we were not safe nor did we dare to sleep in our houses, but we set up our ranchos in the fields, and in the courtyards, and the plaza of this city. Much could be said about these violent earthquakes which lasted nine days, and the whole city with the clergy and the monks and all the ladies [set out] in great processions, most of us doing penance and praying to God for pity, and they set about making peace and friendship and other holy and pious work. It was wonderful to see how when we went in these pious processions groaning and weeping, with blood running down our backs, we were not able to advance nor keep on our feet, for as it was midnight the houses with tiled roofs fell with the great noise which the earth made when it shook, and the walls fell upon us, although we walked in the middle of the streets, and we

thought that our last days had come. With prayers, contrite confessions, and penances, which we made throughout this time, it pleased God that [when] we cast lots to many saints, and among them to Señor San Sebastian, to beg our Lord God's pity for us, that the lot fell to our advocate the fortunate martyr Saint Sebastian, and from this time the extreme earthquake began to slacken, and we promised to go every year in procession to a church which we built in the field of San Sebastian, and to celebrate his festival on the eve and day. Much could be said about these severe earthquakes and how there came suddenly a great flood of water which came out from a watercourse and threatened to swamp the city, and after that time we made a very good bridge.

Let us leave this talk, and speak of the rebellion and revolts which took place in Mexico City, at this time, over the affair of the Marquis Don Martin Cortés, and the sons of Gil Gonzáles de Ávila, whom they beheaded. As in this city we are very good and loyal vassals and servants of His Majesty, the illustrious Cabildo, together with all the other gentlemen, offered all our property and persons, if necessary, to go against those in rebellion, and we placed guards and ambushes and a goodly company of soldiers on the roads, so that if any of the enemies of His Majesty should happen to come there we might seize them. In addition to this we held a Royal camp muster to see and ascertain what musketeers and horsemen with all their arms there were; and certainly it was a wonderful thing to see the rich arms with which they turned out, and moreover the willingness which we all showed to go to Mexico if it was necessary, in the service of His Majesty, and it seems to me that this city is so loyal through nurturing the sons of the Conquistadores, who have inscribed on their breasts and hearts the loyalty they ought to bear to our Lord the King.

When we were already fully prepared, as I have^e stated, trustworthy letters came from Mexico [to say] that the two brothers named Alonzo de Ávila and Benavides had been beheaded, and that the others concerned in the rebellion had been banished and punished, and that everything was more or less safe, but not very peaceable. When the illustrious Cabildo of this city knew of this, although as Christians we grieved point our hearts were at rest few days there came to us other letters advice persons of quality how much and for what reason found them guilty, should be acquitted very upright justified Oidores to do justice to the Judges who was Oidor in Castile and punished certain men declared on his honour that he had service which he owed to His Majesty and was bound to it always endeavoured to be did not remain with a good reputation, may God remedy it, both the one and the other. These lawsuits took place in Castile, and they will know more about it there, than what I write.

I have delayed greatly in calling to mind what happened during the five years that the Licentiate Briseño governed this province. Let us leave it here and I will go on to tell of the governors of the province of Honduras sent by the Geronimite Friars who were Governors of the Island of Santo Domingo—and pray God they will never send such men [again]—for they were very bad and never did any justice at all; for besides illtreating the Indians of that province, they branded many of them as slaves, and sent them to be sold to Hispaniola and Cuba, and to the Island of San Juan de Baraquen.

These evil governors were named :—the first Fulano de Arbitez, and the second Cereceda, a native of Seville, and the third Diego Días de Herrera, who was also from Seville, and these three commenced the ruin of that

province, and what I here state I know, for when I came with Cortés on the expedition to Honduras I was present in Trujillo, which was called by the Indian name of Guaimura, and I was at Naco and the Rio de Pichin, and that of Balama, and that of Ulua, and in nearly all the pueblos of that neighbourhood, and it was thickly peopled and at peace [and the people were living] in their houses with their wives and children ; but as soon as those bad governors came they destroyed them to such an extent, that in the year fifteen hundred and fifty-one, when I passed through there on my return from Castile, two Caciques who had known me in the old days told me with tears in their eyes of all their misfortunes and the treatment [they had received], and I was shocked to see the country in such a condition.

In the year fifteen hundred and fifty a gentleman named Juan Perez de Cabrera had been governor ; he died within two years, and he did neither good nor evil, and that province again became subject to Guatemala, and the Presidents and Governors of Guatemala did all they could to help and protect it. At that time there came as its governor a Licentiate named Alonzo Ortiz de Argueta, a native of Almendralejo, who governed for some years and left a good reputation at the Residencia which they took of him. Afterwards came another Governor, named Juan de Vargas Carvajal ; from what they say he did worse than his predecessors, and had he not died before they took his Residencia he would have come out of it very badly.

Let us turn to the province of Soconusco which lies between Guatemala and Oaxaca. I say that in the year twenty-five [1525] I was travelling through it for eight or ten days, and it used to be peopled by more than fifteen thousand inhabitants¹ and they had their houses

¹ Vecinos ; probably here meaning households.

and very good orchards of Cacao trees, and the whole province was a garden of Cacao trees, and was very pleasant, and now in the year [one thousand] five hundred and seventy-eight it is so desolate and abandoned that there are not more than twelve hundred inhabitants in it. They tell me that some died of a pestilence, and the others were allowed no rest by the principal Alcaldes, Corregidors, and Alguacils, and by the numerous clergy and Curas imposed on them by the prelates, and certainly there are too many, where the half would more than suffice.

Would that for my sins they were not as covetous as they are. On account of the trade in a kind of almond which is called Cacao, from which they make a sort of beverage which they drink and is very good, wholesome and strengthening, and as it is very good in that province, many traders go among the to buy it from them, and so the Curas, priests and alcaldes alguacils to this effect, nor do they give them any rest and it is so destroyed to the Lords who give orders in the Royal and as I was not present in the and every day they go from bad of the Governor Oñez de Villa Quixan a native punishment and stop the trade of the clergy and Alguacils did so said that it was he who wine and many other articles of merchandise at very high prices, and committed some atrocities and ill treatments which the Indians could not endure from them, because it was all the more demanded that he would secure justice for them. Thus when the Illustrious Marques de Falces etc. arrived in New Spain as Viceroy, he heard of what they said about that Pero Hernández who was the Governor, and he sent to take his Residencia, and while it was being taken he [Hernández] fled to where they could not quickly find him,

for he had committed many crimes which were fully proved, and I have been told that he took flight to Castile.

After this one Pedro de Pacheco, a native of Ciudad Real, came as Governor of the said province, and he had the reputation of being a good Governor. The Royal Audiencia of this city sent to take his Residencia on certain matters, and on account of traffic which they say he had with the Indians they ordered him to come as a prisoner to this city, and they say that he died of the dishonour and annoyance. In the way I have described things happened in this province and government.

Let us go on to the province of Nicaragua. The first to commence peopling it and conquering it was a Captain whom Pedrarias Davila sent there at the time he was Governor of Tierra firme. This Captain was named Francisco Hernández, a man of distinction. It must be understood that I am not speaking of the first discoverer of Yucatan, who was also named Francisco Hernández de Córdova, but of him sent by Pedrarias Davila, who ordered him to be beheaded in the year fifteen hundred and twenty-four, because he received trustworthy information that he was rising in rebellion with that province, on account of support promised him by Cortés, when we were on the Honduras expedition, as I have stated in the chapter that speaks of it. Thus Pedrarias Davila had already beheaded two Captains; the first was named Vasco Nuñez de Balboa who was married to his daughter, and the second was this Francisco Hernández of whom we have made mention, and after he had ordered him to be punished he sent to beg His Majesty the grant of that Government of Nicaragua for his son-in-law, named Rodrigo de Contreras, a native of Segovia, to whom a short time previously he had married his daughter named Doña Maria Arias de Peñalosa.

After Rodrigo de Contreras had ruled for some years, an order came from His Majesty depriving him of the Government, and it remained for some time subject to the Royal Audiencia of Guatemala. Some years later His Majesty granted the Government of it, and of the province of Costa Rica, which was not yet conquered, to a gentleman named Juan Vásquez Coronado, a native of Salamanca, and on his way by sea the ship in which he sailed was lost, and he was drowned—May God pardon him. Since then there have been other Governors whom I will not mention here, because as that province contained very few Indians and they decrease every day, it would have been better if it had not had so many Governors.¹ I will omit relating the many things that happened in that province, nor [will I speak] of its volcanoes, which emit great flames of fire, nor will I call to mind the expedition which Francisco Vasquez Coronado made from Mexico to the cities which they call Cibola, for as I did not go with him I have no right to speak of it. The soldiers who went on that journey will be better able to report it. However it is said that in that great city months before . . . and beautiful . . . carried to the province . . . with which he found to . . . persons they say that . . . fell ill of this in . . . there are not wanting those who say . . . the Trojan war and . . . on that expedition that . . . pesos de oro of . . . of the other fleet . . . deaths and hardships of hunger and other bad fortune . . . property of His Majesty and theirs, and they returned to Mexico lost. I have related the best that I am able of all the Governors that have been in this province of New Spain, and it will be well to speak in another chapter about the Archbishops and Bishops that have been here.

[*Here the manuscript ends.*]

¹ Blotted out in the original : "as came to it."

APPENDIX A.

THE MARCH OF HERNANDO CORTÉS FROM MEXICO TO HONDURAS.

THE march of Hernando Cortés from Mexico to Honduras was not the least important exploit of that great Captain, but it has received comparatively little attention at the hands of historians. Prescott devotes a few pages to it, but makes no attempt to follow it in detail; he states in a note:¹ "I have examined some of the most ancient maps of the country by Spanish, French, and Dutch cosmographers in order to determine the route of Cortés. . . . I can detect on them only four or five of the places indicated by the General."

Don Pascual de Gayangos, in an Introduction to his translation of the Carta Quinta, the Fifth Letter of Cortés to the Emperor Charles V, says that "few are the indications—and those very slight—of the route they (the Spaniards) followed," and he makes no attempt to define it. However, a careful comparison of the only two accounts of the march, that by Cortés himself in the Carta Quinta, and that given by Bernal Díaz, and some personal knowledge of the country traversed, makes it possible to trace the line of march for a considerable part of the way with some hope of accuracy.

Cortés left the City of Mexico on the 12th October, 1524. The Carta Quinta was written on his return to the City, and is dated 3rd September, 1526. Bernal Díaz wrote his account of the march about 1566, when he was

¹ Book VII, ch. iii, *Conquest of Mexico*.

an old man, and although he possessed a wonderfully retentive memory, it is safer to trust for all details to the account written by Cortés so soon after the events.

From Mexico City to Coatzacoalcos the journey was over country already well known, and the expedition may be considered as starting from the latter town.

The force numbered about 400 Spaniards, 130 of whom were horsemen, and some 3000 Mexican Indians.

The Indians of Coatzacoalcos provided Cortés with a map, painted on cloth, showing some of the pueblos he was likely to pass through on his journey.

The first part of the route lay across the innumerable interlacing waterways, lagoons and swamps forming the deltas of the great rivers flowing from the mountain ranges of Chiapas and Guatemala.

There were few paths or tracks which could be followed, as the Indians travelled by water in their canoes, and consequently they could give little or no information how to get from place to place by land.

The route followed from Coatzacoalcos to the pueblo of Copilco is fairly clear, and Bernal Díaz and the Spaniards from Coatzacoalcos had already traversed it several times. Many rivers and streams had to be crossed, some of them in canoes, and Cortés states that he made fifty bridges, one of them 934 paces in length.

Bernal Díaz, as we have seen, states that in after years Spaniards spoke of "the Bridges of Cortés" as they would speak of "the Pillars of Hercules."

In the map of Tabasco by Melchior de Alfaro Santa Cruz, which, with the memorandum accompanying it, dated 1575, was discovered some years ago among the Archives of the Indies at Seville by my friend the late Dr. Sebastian Marmion, there is written along the course of the Rio Guimango the following legend :—"In this river, which is the Rio Guimango, there is to-day beneath the water the

timber of a bridge built by the Marquis, which is preserved low down in the water."

Bernal Díaz, who had been sent on ahead to Cimatan, was to have returned to meet Cortés at Iquiuapa; however, Cortés makes no mention of that pueblo, and it seems more probable that they met at the neighbouring pueblo of Copilco.

From Copilco Cortés marched to Nacajuca and then went on, crossing many streams and swamps, until he struck the River Grijalva, which he calls the Quezalapa.¹ This river was crossed (probably near the site of the modern town of San Juan Bautista) in canoes sent up stream by the Indians of Tabasco, and the march was continued up the right bank of the river as far as the pueblos of Zaguatan.

Zaguatan is not marked on any modern map, but on the Santa Cruz map the "tres pueblos llamados Çaguanes" are shown in a position which makes it certain that they must have stood on the Rio Tacotalpa, a branch of the Rio Grijalva, ten or fifteen miles to the south of San Juan Bautista, and these pueblos are mentioned in the memorandum accompanying the map as Astapa, Xaguacapa and Xalapa, three pueblos which still exist. Here the expedition rested for twenty days. This was followed by a two days' march from Zaguatan to Chilapa and thence another two days' march to Tepititan or Tamastepeque, as Cortés calls it, near the foot-hills of the mountains of Chiapas.

It is quite impossible to reconcile the accounts of the journey from Zaguatan to Tepititan with the latest maps. Undoubtedly the Spaniards passed through Chilapa before reaching Tepititan, but this may not be the Chilapa

¹ Probably the same as Mezcalapa, the name now confined to an upper branch of the same river.

marked on the recent maps (Alfaro Santa Cruz mentions Chilapa as between Macuspana and Tepititan). Both accounts state that the river Chilapa was crossed after leaving the pueblo of that name, and that four days were occupied in its passage, and as no mention is made of crossing the river at Tepititan, that pueblo must have been on the right bank of the river and not on the left bank as now located.

Then followed three days' march through dense forests and swamps to Ystapa (or Istapa), a name that has altogether disappeared from modern maps.

If Cortés took an easterly course he would have struck the Rio Usumacinta somewhere near the Laguna de Cata-sajá, and we may safely locate Ystapa in that position. Ystapa is marked on the map of Santa Cruz (which, however, is in this part hopelessly out of drawing) as higher up stream than Jonuta, which is still an inhabited village.

A halt of eight days was made at Ystapa, followed by one day's (?) march to Tatahuitalpan on the Usumacinta, which I locate near the modern village of Monte Cristo.

Cortés then asked the way to Ciguatécpan, a name that is not to be found on any map, and he tells us that it is higher up stream than the pueblo of Usumacinta, which is still marked on the maps. He received the usual answer from the Indians, that they did not know the way by land as they always travelled by water. However, they undertook to do the best they could as guides, with the result that after crossing a deep creek, which I take to be the Rio Chacamas, the expedition became hopelessly lost in the dense forest,¹ and the men became exhausted and in danger of starvation, until on the third or fourth day, by

¹ Bernal Díaz records the long march during which they lost their way as between Ystapa and Tamastepec (Tatahuitalpan). Cortés records it as between Tatahuitalpan and Ciguatécpan, and the latter is probably correct.

following a compass bearing in a north-easterly direction, they again struck the Rio Usumacinta near the pueblo of Ciguatopan, which is not marked on any map, but must be somewhere near the modern Tenosique.

From Ciguatopan Cortés wished to get to Acalá. This name has completely disappeared. However, I feel fully confident that the province of Acalá was on the Rio San Pedro Martir, an affluent of the Rio Usumacinta, both from the subsequent course of the route followed, and from the fact that Cortés sent canoes down stream from Acalá to the Gulf of Mexico.

The only later mention of Acalá that I can find is in Villagutierre's *History of the Conquest of Itzá* (Lib. I, cap. vii), where it is stated that Acalá was subdued thirty years after the conquest of Mexico by an expedition under Captain Francisco Tamayo Pacheco, which started from Merida in Yucatan, and that Acalá was soon abandoned by the Spaniards owing to the near neighbourhood of the unconquerable Lacandones.

After crossing the Rio Usumacinta in canoes the expedition marched for three days through dense forest and was then stopped by a wide river, which must have been the Rio San Pedro in flood, for heavy rain had fallen.

It was certain destruction to turn back, so, having had the good luck to find three small canoes, Cortés set about constructing another of his wonderful bridges, and with the help of his 3000 Indian followers accomplished the work in four days, cutting and using, as he says, more than a thousand posts the smallest of them almost as thick as a man's body and nine or ten fathoms long.

Bernal Díaz tells us that some men died of hunger while the bridge was being built. Fortunately a small supply of food reached the expedition soon after the river was crossed, and two days later the expedition reached Tizatepelt, the first pueblo of Acalá.

After resting for six days, a march of five leagues brought the expedition to the pueblo of Teutiaca, and another day's march to Izancanac on the Rio San Pedro.

The execution of Guatemoc probably took place at Izancanac.

The expedition left Izancanac, the last of the Acalá pueblos, on 15th March, 1525, and crossing to the south side of the river marched for three days through the forest to a pueblo of the Mazatecas, standing between a lagoon and a stream.

A day's march took them to Tiac, a fortified pueblo on a plain, and another day's march to Yascumbil, the last pueblo of the province.

On leaving the land of the Mazatecas the expedition marched for three days through an uninhabited country of hills and forests, passing the "Puerto de Alabastro," as the Spaniards called it, "as all the rocks and stones consisted of fine alabaster." This would not be far from a small lake now marked on the map as the Laguna del Yeso (Gypsum).

This journey brought the expedition to the borders of the Lake of Peten Itzá at its western extremity, and while his followers marched along the southern shore, Cortés visited the Island pueblo of Tayasal.

Between Tepititan and the Lake of Peten not one place mentioned by Cortés or Bernal Díaz is to be found on a modern map.

The course of the Rio San Pedro Martir, as laid down on the maps, is probably taken from a canoe survey, and the land on either side of it is unsurveyed and unmapped; yet I feel confident that the route I have sketched out is not far from the true one.

From Tayasal a day's journey brought the Spaniards to a pueblo on a lake which Cortés calls Checan. I have no doubt this is the small lake on Macanché, where I have

passed a night myself after leaving Tayasal, or Flores as it is now called.

From this point the expedition must have turned to the south-east, through unmapped country, and after six days of actual marching, the very rough range of hills was met with, which the Spaniards named the Sierra de los Pedernales—that is, of stones as hard as flints. Cortés states that it took the expedition twelve days to cross the eight leagues of this Sierra, and seventy horses were lost in the passage. It is evidently a range of limestone formation, and although it rained hard all the time, the water sank through the rock and had to be collected in kettles and other vessels for use. After passing the Sierra a river was met with in high flood, and two days were occupied in crossing it, and the expedition then reached a farm called Tenciz on the 14th May.

The Sierra de los Pedernales must be the high land close to the boundary line, between Guatemala and British Honduras, and the flooded river would be the Santa Ysabal (or Rio Sepusilha), the upper water of the Rio de la Pasion.

The river was probably crossed about Lat. $16^{\circ} 30' N.$, where the river leaves British territory.

This latter part of the journey took place during the height of the rainy season, and the rain that year was evidently exceptionally heavy.

With regard to the difficulty experienced in crossing the range, I may say that when I was making almost a parallel journey, fifteen or twenty miles to the west of Cortés's route, during the dry season, we had to lead our horses and mules by hand for nearly a week, although we were following a known trail, and we frequently had to cut away interlacing roots of trees and lianes, and to use the backs of our axes to break off the sharp points and edges of the limestone rock to enable our animals to pass.

On the low ground, owing to some showers which came after we expected the rainy season to be over, I have been all day wading through the forest knee-deep in water, and we were only enabled to get our baggage across a stream by crawling with it across the trunks of tall trees, which the Indians ingeniously felled on each side of the river, so that the branches should interlace and form a bridge.

The remainder of the march, as far as the Rio Sarstoon, must have been through what is now British territory, but with the exception of the course of the rivers the map is a blank, and none of the names given by Cortés are now known.

A further march of about fifteen miles from the Rio Sarstoon brought the expedition to the mouth of the Rio Dulce.

Cortés found the Spaniards of whom he had come in search at San Jil de Buena Vista on the sea-coast about two leagues from the mouth of the Rio Dulce,¹ and he found them in a more starved condition, if that were possible, than his own followers. Many and toilsome exploring expeditions had to be made in search of food, but I will mention only one of these, which was led by Cortés in person.

¹ The following quotations from Bishop Pedraza's account of Honduras show that the original position of San Jil de Buena Vista (the Nito mentioned in Cortés's Fifth Letter) was on an island in what is now known as the Golfoete, between the Rio Dulce and the Golfo Dulce. This site was soon abandoned for a position about two leagues from the right bank of the Rio Dulce on the sea-coast. "Esta casi 30 leguas adelante del Puerto de Caballos costa a costa el Golfo Dulce, el qual esta adelante de un rio que se dice Lanlá, entre el qual rio y el golfo Dulce, casi encima del Golfo que es el dicho Golfo como un seno esta una ysleta que se dice S. Jil de Buena Vista donde fueron aportar los mismos cristianos que per aquellas partes fueron que fue ante que fuese el Marques por alli los qualès cristianos yban en compania de un capitan que se dezia Gil Gonzáles de Avila."—*Relacion de la Provincia de Honduras y Higueras escrita por el licenciado D. Cristobal de Pedraza Primer Obispo de Honduras, 1544*; *Relaciones de Yucatan*, vol. ii, p. 403.

Embarking in a launch and some canoes, he and his party went up the Rio Dulce, and crossed the Golfo Dulce or Lake of Ysabal to somewhere near the mouth of the Rio Polochic, where the party landed and travelled for three days along the northern side of the Sierra de las Minas, finally arriving at a town which Cortés calls Chacujal.

Wishing to identify this site, I made many enquiries and heard of some ruins on the south side of the Polochic which answered the requirements as to position; but I could learn nothing of the name Chacujal, until, to my repeated questions, one of my half-cast canoeemen on the Rio Polochic replied, "Chaki jal, that, Señor, is the name the Indians of these parts use for ripe maize." Cortés tells us that some Indians, whom he had captured in the forest, led him to the town of Chacujal; what they did was doubtless to lead him to a place where food could be found, for it could have needed no interpreter to see that the Spaniards were hungry.

Chacujal was indeed well stored with ripe maize, which Cortés loaded on rafts and conveyed down stream to his starving followers on the Rio Dulce.

I was able to make only a short visit to the ruins of Chacujal, which are completely overgrown with forest, but it was long enough to see that the buildings could have been of no great importance, although Cortés says that it was the most important town he had seen since leaving Acalá.

It is quite clear from the account given by Bernal Díaz, as well as that given by Cortés, that during their long march the Spaniards met with no evidence of the higher Maya civilization.

At Tepititan and at Catasajá they were within a short distance of Palenque; at Peten and Macanché they were at no great distance from Tikal and still nearer to Yaxhá

and to the group of ruins discovered by Mr. Maler. Just before crossing the Sierra de los Pedernales they must have been near Ixkun, and on the southern shore of the Golfo Dulce they were within twenty miles of Quirigua, all sites rich in the remains of stone buildings and sculptured ornament and inscriptions.

Had these been still living towns and cities, the Spaniards, when they were scouring the country in search of food, could not have failed to come across roads leading to them.

The whole journey from Coatzacoalcos to the Rio Dulce occupied about six months. The incidents and hardships of this remarkable march are well described in Cortés's Fifth Letter and in the vivid narrative of Bernal Díaz del Castillo.

APPENDIX B.

THE BURIAL OF CORTÉS.

CORTÉS left instructions in his will for his body to be buried in the church of the parish in which he died, and at the end of ten years for his bones to be carried to New Spain and interred in a Franciscan convent to be called La Concepcion, which he ordered to be founded at Coyoacan. However, his body was not buried in the parish church, but was placed in the tomb of the Dukes of Medina Sidonia in the Convent of San Isidro extra Muros at Seville. His bones were taken later to New Spain in accordance with his will, but as the convent which he had ordered to be founded at Coyoacan had not been built, they were placed in the Church of San Francisco at Texcoco. Thence they were removed and buried with great pomp in the Church of the Monastery of San Francisco in Mexico City on the 24th February, 1629.

In 1794 the remains of Cortés were removed to the Hospital de Jesus, which Cortés had himself founded and endowed, and were interred within a monumental tomb.

Here it might be supposed that his bones would have been allowed to remain in peace. However, during the heat of the revolution against the dominion of Spain, everything Spanish was abhorred, and it was even proposed in Congress that the bones of Cortés should be dug up and burnt. In the year 1823 this sacrilege would have been consummated but for the care of the authorities of the Hospital, who secretly exhumed the coffin and buried it in another part of the church and removed the

metal bust and ornaments from the tomb. These latter were afterwards sent to Palermo to the Duque de Terranova, the representative of the Cortés family, but whether the remains of the great Conquistador were also sent abroad is not clear—probably they still rest unmarked in the Church of the Hospital de Jesus.

These notes are abstracted from the account written by Don Lucas Alaman,¹ who was himself concerned in saving the remains from desecration.

¹ *Disertaciones sobre la historia de la Republica Mexicana*, vol. ii, pp. 48-62.



THE FIFTH LETTER
OF
HERNANDO CORTÉS
TO THE
EMPEROR CHARLES V.

HOLY CATHOLIC CÆSARÉAN MAJESTY—

On the 23rd day of the month of October of last year, 1523, I sent a ship to the Island of Hispaniola from the town of Trujillo, of the Port and Cape of Honduras, and by a servant of mine whom I sent in it, who had to remain in that kingdom [Spain], I wrote to your Majesty about certain events that had taken place in what is called the Gulf of Hibueras, between the Captains whom I had sent there and Captain Gil Gonzáles who went afterwards.

As I was unable, at the time I sent off that vessel and messenger, to give your Majesty a report of my journey and what happened to me on it, from the time I left this great City of Tenochtitlan until I came upon the people of those parts, and they are matters which it is right your Majesty should know, and so as not to fail in the custom which I have followed, which is not to leave anything unexplained to your Majesty, I will relate them shortly as well as I am able, for to detail them as they happened is more than I could do, nor for all that I could say would they be understood there [in Spain]. However, I will relate the most notable and important events that happened to me on the said journey, although it will be no more than a summary, for each event would afford material for a long letter.

When orders had already been given about the affair of Cristóbal de Olid, as your Majesty is aware, feeling that personally I had been idle for a long time and had done nothing new to your Majesty's advantage on account of the injury to my arm, it seemed to me that although I was not free from the hurt, I ought to undertake something. So I set out from this great City of Tenochtitlan on the twelfth day of the month of October of the year 1524, with some persons both mounted and on foot, but no more than those of my household and some of my friends and relations, and with them Gonzalo de Salazar and Pedro Almírez Chirino, your Majesty's Factor and Veedor. I also took with me all the Chieftains of the natives of this country.

I left the care of justice and government to your Highness's Treasurer and Accountant and to the Licentiate Alonzo de Zuazo. I left in the city a full supply of artillery, munitions, and the necessary [force of] men, as well as arsenals well provided with artillery and launches in them ready for action, also an Alcaide and everything fully prepared for the defence of the city, and even to attack anyone were that needful.

With this purpose and resolve I departed from this City of Tenochtitlan and arrived at the town of Espiritu Santo in the Province of Upper Oaxaca,¹ one hundred and ten leagues from this city, and while I was arranging affairs in that town I sent to the Provinces of Tabasco and Xicalango to inform the Chieftains of my coming to those parts, ordering them to come and speak to me or to send persons to whom I could tell what they had to do, [men who] could be trusted to transmit my instructions correctly; and this they did, for the messengers whom I sent to them were well received and they sent me in return seven or eight persons of distinction who were accustomed to act as envoys. I learnt from these men much that I wished to know about the country and they also told me that on the sea coast on the other side of the land called Yucatan, towards the bay which is called "La Asuncion," there were certain Spaniards who did them much injury, for, besides burning many villages and killing the people so that many places were laid waste and the people had fled to the forests, they had done

¹ Guazaco alto in the text.

even greater damage to the traders, and the whole trade of that district, which was very considerable, had been lost.

From personal knowledge they gave me an account of almost all the towns of that district as far as the place where your Majesty's Governor Pedrarias de Ávila was residing. They also made me a map of it all on a cloth, from which I gathered that I should be able to march through the greater part of the country, or at least as far as the spot pointed out to me as the abode of the Spaniards. Hearing such good news of the road which had to be followed in order to carry out my plans, and bring the natives of the land to a knowledge of our faith and to the service of your Majesty, and knowing that in such a long march many and divers provinces must be crossed, and that people with strange customs would be met with before one could ascertain whether those Spaniards were followers of the Captains whom I had sent out—namely, Diego or Cristobal de Olid, or Pedro de Alvarado or Francisco de las Casas—it seemed to me that in order to carry out the matter satisfactorily it would conduce to the service of your Majesty that I should go there in person, especially as so much unknown country was to be discovered and observed, and much of it might be brought peacefully under your rule, as has since been done. Having realised in my mind the advantages which would follow from my expedition, and regardless of all the labour and expense which it would involve, the consideration of which, as well as of the unforeseen difficulties which might occur, was pressed upon me by others, I determined to follow out this journey as I already had a mind to do when I set out from this city [Tenochtitlan].

At two or three places along the road before my arrival at this town of Espiritu Santo I had received letters from the city, both from those that I had left in charge there and from other persons—and your Majesty's officers who were in my company had received similar communications—to the effect that between the Treasurer and the Accountant there did not exist the agreement which was necessary for the proper discharge of their duties and the responsibility which in your Majesty's name I had placed upon them. I therefore took such steps as seemed to me necessary, writing to reprimand them severely for the error of their conduct and making them aware that if they did not mend their ways I should have to do what would little please them, and

even report them to your Majesty. While waiting in this town of Espiritu Santo arranging my plans, as already stated, I received letters from these same officers and other persons, in which they told me how the ill-feeling between them continued and increased until at a certain council they had even drawn swords on one another. This had caused such great scandal and tumult* that not only was one party arming against the other, but that even the natives were arming themselves, saying that the outcry would be turned against them.

Seeing that my reproofs and threats were of no avail, and as I could not return in person to put things right without abandoning my journey, it seemed to me the best course to send the Factor and Veedor, who were with me, back to the city, with powers equal to those which I had delegated before leaving, so that they might preserve peace and find out who was in the wrong. I also gave them authority secretly, so that, if they could not bring the offenders to reason, they might relieve them from the offices with which I had entrusted them, and should assume those offices themselves in conjunction with the licentiate Alonso de Zuazo and then inflict punishment on the offenders.

This being settled and the Factor and Veedor having departed, I felt quite sure that their mission would bear good fruit and would completely calm the passions which had been aroused; this confidence in them fully set my mind at rest.

As soon as the mission had left for the city I held a muster of those who were left to accompany me on my journey, and found that there were ninety-three horsemen besides crossbowmen and arquebusiers and over thirty on foot, making in all a total of two hundred and thirty men. A large caravel lying at anchor in the port, which had been sent to me laden with provisions from the town of Medellin, I filled up with the supplies that I had with me, and with four pieces of cannon, crossbows, guns, and other munitions, and sent it off to await my orders at the Tabasco river. I wrote to a servant of mine who lived in the town of Medellin, telling him to load with provisions and despatch at once two other caravels and a large barque which were there: I also wrote to Rodrigo de Paz, who had charge of my house and affairs in the City [of Tenochtitlan], telling him to set to work at once and send five or six thousand pesos de oro to pay for the provisions which were to be sent to me. I wrote at the same

time to the Treasurer, begging him to lend me that sum, as I had left no money behind me. This he did, and the laden caravels arrived at the River Tabasco soon afterwards according to my orders. However they were not of much use to me, as I was marching some distance inland and it was no easy matter to communicate with the coast, owing to the great swamps which lay between, and get at the provisions and other things needed.

After arranging what things were to be sent by sea, I began my journey along the coast to a province called Copilco, a distance of about thirty-five leagues from Espiritu Santo, and on our way, in addition to many swamps and small rivers over which we threw bridges, we crossed three large rivers, the first at the town of Tonala, nine leagues from Espiritu Santo, a second called the Agualulco, nine leagues further on—both of these were crossed in canoes, the horses swimming and being led by hand from the canoes. At the third river, as it was too wide for the horses to swim across, we were obliged to find some other means of passage, so a wooden bridge nine hundred and thirty-four paces in length was made half a league up from the sea, and across this both men and horses were able to pass; this bridge was really a marvellous thing to behold.

This Province of Copilco abounds in the fruit called the cacao and other useful products, fish also being plentiful. It has ten or a dozen good pueblos in it without counting villages, the land is low lying and full of swamps, so much so that in the winter [rainy] season one cannot travel on foot but must go about in a canoe; and, although I marched across it in the dry season, in the twenty leagues which we covered while travelling across the province we had to make over fifty bridges to enable us to get along. The people were fairly peaceful though somewhat shy as they had previously seen little of Spaniards; they have remained very peaceful since my arrival, giving willing obedience not only to me and those with me but also to the Spaniards whom I left in charge of them.

From this Province of Copilco, according to the map given to me by the people of Tabasco and Xicalango, I had to go to another province called Zaguatan, and as the people only travel by water they did not know of any road which I could march over, but they pointed out to me the direction which I should follow. I had to send ahead some Spaniards and Indians to find

a way in the direction indicated, and when they had found one to clear the path so that we could pass along it, as it was through a thick forest. It pleased God that the path should be found although it was a very toilsome one, for besides the forest there were many troublesome swamps, and we had to bridge them all or nearly all of them. We had to cross a river of great volume called the "Guezalapa,"¹ which is one of the branches of the Tabasco River, and I arranged to send ahead two Spaniards to the Chiefs of Tabasco and Cunoapa, requesting them to send up the river fifteen or twenty canoes so as to enable us to cross it. And I told them to send these canoes laden with provisions from the caravels, and later on the canoes conveyed the provisions to the principal town of Zaguatan, which I judged to be about twelve leagues higher up the stream than the place where we crossed it; all this was carried out successfully by those Chiefs according to my request.

As soon then as I had found a road to this River Guezalapa which had to be crossed, I departed from the last town of the Province of Copilco called Anaxuxaca,² and slept that night in the forest among the lagoons. We arrived at the river early next day but found no canoes in which to cross it, as those that I had begged from the Chiefs of Tabasco had not yet arrived. I found out that the pioneers who had gone ahead were opening a road up the stream on the other bank of the river, for as they had been told that the river passed through the largest town of the province of Zaguatan they followed up the river so as not to miss it, and one of them had gone up the river in a canoe so as to arrive more quickly at the town. When this man reached the town he found all the people in a state of tumult, so he spoke to them through an interpreter who was with them and quieted them somewhat; he then sent the canoe down stream again with some Indians, through whom he let me know what had happened, and he added that he himself was returning with some natives and was clearing a road along which I should be able to march, and that he hoped soon to join with those who were opening the road from this end.

I was greatly pleased both at learning that these people had been pacified and at knowing for certain that a road had been

¹ Rio Grijalva.

² Nacajuca.

found, for I was rather doubtful if one could be opened, and in any case thought that it would be a difficult matter. In that canoe and in rafts made of logs I began to send the baggage across the river which had a very swift current. While we were at work the Spaniards whom I had sent to Tabasco arrived with twenty canoes laden with provisions, which they had brought from the caravel which I had sent from Coatzacoalcos. I learnt from them that the two other caravels and the barque had not yet arrived in the river, as they had remained in Coatzacoalcos; they were however expected soon. About two hundred Indians of the Province of Tabasco and Cunoapa came in the canoes: we crossed the river in these same canoes without any other accident than the drowning of a negro slave and the loss of two loads of horse-shoes, of which we felt the want later on.

That night I slept with all my people on the other side of the river, and the next day followed after those who were clearing the road up stream with no other guide than the river bank. I marched about six leagues and slept that night in the forest in heavy rain. After dark the Spaniard who had been up the river to the pueblo of Zaguatan arrived from that place with about seventy Indians. He told me that he had cleared a road, but that in order to strike it I must turn back two leagues; I however told those who were opening the road along the river bank, who were already three leagues beyond the place where I slept, to go on with their work, and a league and a half ahead they came upon some farms belonging to the pueblo, so that we now had two roads open where there had been none before.

I followed the road opened by the Indians, and although we were impeded by some swamps and by the heavy rainfall we arrived that day at a suburb of the town, which although one of the smaller ones was of good size and contained more than two hundred houses. We could not go on to the other parts of the town on account of the rivers which ran between them, which could only be passed by swimming. The whole place was deserted, and as soon as we arrived even those Indians who had come with the Spaniard to see me took to flight, although I had spoken kindly to them and given them some small presents and had thanked them for the work they had done in opening the road for me, and had also told them that I had come to this country at your Majesty's command to let them know that they

should believe in and adore one God only, Creator and Doer of all things, and that they should hold your highness as lord and chief, and all such other matters as it was right to tell them.

I waited three or four days thinking that the people had fled through fear, and that they might return to speak to me, but not one of them appeared. In order to obtain a guide from them, and to leave them settled under your Majesty's rule, and also to learn from them about the direction of the road that I was to follow (for there are no roads at all in that country and not even a sign of anyone having travelled by land, everyone going by water on account of the great rivers and swamps that intersect the country) I sent out two companies of Spaniards, and a few of the natives of Tenochtitlan and its neighbourhood whom I had brought with me, to seek for the natives of this province and to bring them to me, so that I might carry out what I have just stated. In the canoes which had come up the river from Tabasco, and in others which we found at the pueblo, they explored many of these rivers and lagoons (for it was impossible to travel by land), but they found no more than two Indians and a few women from whom I endeavoured to find out whither the Chief and people of the land had fled, and they returned no other answer than that every one had fled into the forest through the swamps and by the rivers, each seeking his own safety. I also asked them about the road to the Province of Chilapa, as that was the route which I should take according to my map; but I could learn nothing from them as they said that they never travelled by land but in canoes by the rivers and lagoons—that travelling thus they could find the way but not over land. The best thing that they could do for me was to point out a Sierra which seemed to be about ten leagues distant, and to tell me that the chief town of Chilapa was near to it; and that a very large river ran by the town and joined lower down with the river of Zaguatan, and that the two flowed together into the Tabasco river. They also told me that up the stream there was another pueblo called Ocumba, but that they knew no road to it by land.

I stayed for twenty days in this pueblo and during all that time never ceased searching for a road which might lead somewhere, but I found none, either great or small, for in which

ever direction we set out from the pueblo we met with great and terrible swamps which it seemed impossible to pass.

Being now in great straits for want of provisions, we commended ourselves to God and made a bridge across a swamp three hundred paces in length which took many beams of from thirty five to forty feet long, and over these we laid others crosswise. We passed this bridge and journeyed on in the direction in which we were told the pueblo of Chilapa was to be found. I also sent a company of horsemen and some cross-bowmen in the other direction to look for the pueblo of Ocumba, and they came upon it that very day and crossed the river by swimming and in two canoes which they found there. The people of the pueblo took to flight at once. There they found a good supply of provisions, but they captured only two men and a few women and returned at once to join me. I camped out that night and thanked God that the country was more open and dry and that we did not meet with so many swamps. The Indians captured in the pueblo of Ocumba guided us towards Chilapa, where we arrived late the next day to find the whole pueblo burnt and the natives fled.

This pueblo of Chilapa is large and well placed; there are many plantations of fruit trees and many fields of maize, but the grain was not yet quite ripe, nevertheless it was a great help to us in our distress. I stayed two days in the pueblo collecting food and searching the neighbourhood for the natives so as to pacify them and also gain some information about the road to be followed; we found however no more than two Indians who had been captured when the pueblo was first entered. I learned something from them about the road to Tepititan, or Tamastepeque as others call it, and although there was no track, and they had to guess at the direction, they led us there in two days. We crossed on the way a very large river called the Chilapa, after which the pueblo was named. The passage of the river was very arduous on account of its breadth and swift current, and as there were no canoes we had to cross on rafts; another slave was drowned in this river, and the Spaniards lost much of their baggage. After crossing this river, which we did a league and a half from the pueblo of Chilapa, and throughout the six or seven leagues which we traversed before arriving at Tepititan we crossed many great swamps, and in all of them the horses

sank up to their knees and often to their ears. One swamp was especially dangerous and we made a bridge across it, as two or three Spaniards were nearly drowned in it. After two days of hard work we arrived at the pueblo which was burnt and deserted; this doubled our difficulties. We found some fruit in the pueblo and some unripe maize but it was more mature than what we had found at the last pueblo. We also found in some of the burnt houses stores of dry maize; they were however few in number, but were a great help to us in our dire need.

In this pueblo of Tepititan, which is close to a large range of hills, we stayed for six days searching the country round and hoping to communicate with the natives so as to leave them settled in their pueblo, and also to get information about the road which we should follow, but we captured only one man and a few women. From these people we learnt that the Chieftain and the natives of the pueblo had been induced to burn their houses by the people of Zaguatan and that they had fled to the forest.

The man told me that he did not know the road to Istapa, for there was none (this according to my map was the next pueblo which I should pass), but that he could guide me more or less correctly in the direction in which he knew it to lie. With this guide I sent ahead thirty horsemen and thirty men on foot, and told them to get to that pueblo and then to write me a report of the road, and that I would not start until I received their letter. It happened however that after waiting two days without receiving any news of them I was obliged to start on account of the want to which we were reduced, and to follow their trail as our only guide, but it was easy enough to follow their tracks through the swamps, for I can assure your Majesty that even on the tops of the hills the horses sank to their girths when riderless and led by hand. In this manner I marched two days without hearing anything of those who had gone on in front and in the greatest perplexity as to what I ought to do, for to return seemed impossible, and what lay ahead of us was very doubtful. Thank God who helps us in our worst distresses, for while we were camped in the forest, all very sad at the thought that we should surely perish, there arrived two Indians of Tenochtitlan with a letter from the Spaniards who had gone on ahead telling me that they had arrived at the pueblo of Istapa, and that when

they got there they found all the women and goods on the other side of the river which flowed past the pueblo, but that many of the men remained in the pueblo, thinking that they would be unable to cross the great lagoon which lay outside it. When however the natives saw that they were swimming their horses and holding on to the pommels of their saddles, they began to set fire to the pueblo, but did it so hurriedly that not all the houses caught fire and all the natives ran to the river and crossed it either in the numerous canoes that they had there or by swimming. In their haste many of them were drowned, but seven or eight of them were captured—amongst them one who appeared to be a Chief; all of them would be kept prisoners until my arrival.

I cannot tell your Majesty the joy of my people when this letter arrived, for, as I have already said, we had almost given up all hope of relief. Early next day I set out along the trail, guided by the Indians who had brought the letter, and arrived that evening at the pueblo. I found all the people who had gone on ahead very cheerful, for they had found many maize fields, though not very large ones, and also yucas and red peppers¹ which is what the natives of the Islands are accustomed to feed on. As soon as I arrived I had the natives who were captured in the pueblo brought before me, and asked them through an interpreter why they set fire to their houses and pueblos and took to flight, as I never did them any harm whatever; on the other hand to those who waited to receive me I gave presents which I had brought with me. They answered that the Chief of Zaguatan had come there in a canoe and had frightened them very much, making them burn their pueblo and desert it. I made them bring before the Chief all the men and women whom I had captured at Zaguatan, Chilapa and Tepititan, and told them that in order that they might see how that bad man had lied to them, they might learn from these Indians whether I had done them any harm or whether they had been well treated whilst in my company. As soon as they had informed themselves they cried out and said that they had been deceived, and showed their regret at what they had done. To reassure them further I gave

¹ Agoe in the text: either Aje = a tuber like a yam, Aji = red peppers or Ajo = garlic.

leave to all those men and women, that I had brought from the pueblos we had passed through, to return to their homes, and I gave them some trifling presents and letters, which I told them to keep in their pueblos to show to any Spaniards who should visit them, and that these letters should secure them from molestation. I ordered them to tell their Chiefs what a great error they had committed in burning and deserting their houses and pueblos, and that they should never do such a thing again, for they were quite safe, as no harm would be done to them. On hearing this the Indians of Istapa went away quite contented, and this helped to content the others. After this I spoke to the Indian who seemed to be the most important among them, and told him that he could see that I harmed no one, and that my coming to their country was not to offend them but to teach them what was good for them to know, both for the safety of their persons and property and for the salvation of their souls. I then asked him to send two or three men who were with him, in company with some natives of Tenochtitlan, to summon the Chief and to tell him that he need have no fear, but would certainly benefit greatly by coming to see me. He replied that he was quite willing to do this, so I sent them off at once with the Mexican Indians in company with them. The next morning the messengers returned with the Chief and forty men. The Chief told me that he had fled and ordered his pueblo to be burnt because the Chief of Zaguatan had advised him to set it on fire, and not to await my coming, as I would put everyone to death ; now however he had heard from those of his people whom I had sent to summon him that he had been deceived, and that the Chief of Zaguatan had not told him the truth. He said that he was sorry for what he had done and begged me to pardon him, promising that for the future he would do whatever I ordered. He begged me to give back to him certain women whom the Spaniards had captured on their first arrival, so twenty of them were collected at once and given back to him, at which he was greatly pleased.

It happened that a Spaniard caught one of the Indians, a native of Mexico, who was in his company, in the act of eating a piece of the flesh of an Indian who had been killed in the assault on the pueblo, and he came to tell me of it. I had the offender burnt to death while the Chief of the pueblo was present and I let him know that the cause of punishment was that he had killed and

eaten an Indian—a deed forbidden by your Majesty and which I, in your royal name, had given strict orders should never be permitted; so because this Indian had killed and eaten another he had been burnt to death. It was not my wish that anybody should be killed, for I came here at your Majesty's orders to protect and defend both their property and their persons, and to teach them to acknowledge and adore the one only God, who is in heaven, Creator and Doer of all things and by whose will all things live and are governed; also to teach them to put aside their idols and to abandon the rites which hitherto they had observed, for they were lies and snares of the devil, the enemy of the human race, which he put forth to deceive them and to bring them to everlasting damnation, in which they would suffer great and terrible torments, and to lead them away from the knowledge of God, so that they should be saved and thus enjoy the glory and happiness which God promised and had prepared for those who believed in Him, which happiness the devil himself had lost through his malice and iniquity. I had also come to tell them that your Majesty, whom the universe obeys and serves according to the Divine will, was now lord over the land, and that they had to subject themselves to the Imperial yoke and do that which we, who were here as your Majesty's ministers, should order them to do; that by so doing they would be treated with justice and well looked after, and their property and persons would be protected; but that should they not act thus they would be proceeded against and punished according to the law. I told them much more of the same nature, with which I will not weary your Majesty. The Chief was well satisfied with what he had heard, and immediately ordered some of those that were with him to fetch supplies of food; this they did. I gave the Chief a present of a few trifles from Spain, which he valued greatly, and he stayed contentedly in my company all the time that I remained there. This Chief also ordered a road to be opened to another pueblo called Tatahuitapan, five leagues higher up the river; and as there was a deep river to be crossed on the way he had a good bridge made over which we passed; he also had some very bad swamps prepared so that we could cross them. He also gave me three canoes in which I despatched three Spaniards down stream to the Tabasco river (for this is the largest of the streams which flow into that river) at which place the caravels

were awaiting my orders. By these Spaniards I sent instructions that the caravels should follow the coast until they doubled the point called the Point of Yucatan, and then should go on to the bay of La Asuncion, for there they would meet me or I would send instructions to them as to what they should do next.

I ordered the Spaniards, who went in the canoes, to load them, and any other canoes that they could find in Tabasco and Xicalango, with all the supplies that they could carry and to take them up a great river to the Province of Acalá, which is distant forty leagues from this town of Istapa, and said that I would meet them there. When these men had started and the road had been cleared I asked the Chief of Istapa to give me three or four canoes to send up the river with half a dozen Spaniards and some of his own people, one of whom should be a person of some importance, so that they might calm the fears of the people of the pueblos and stop them from burning their houses and taking to flight. This the Chief did with every sign of goodwill, and it bore good fruit, for the people of four or five pueblos up the river were pacified, as I shall presently tell your Majesty.

This pueblo of Istapa is a very large one and is situated on a beautiful river; it is a good site for a Spanish settlement, as there is good pasture along the river bank, excellent farm land, and a good deal of land under cultivation.

I stayed six or eight days in the pueblo of Istapa making the arrangements already recounted, and then continued my march, arriving the same day at Tatahuitapan, a small pueblo which we found burnt and abandoned. I got in before the canoes which had been sent up the river, as the swift current and the many bends in the stream delayed them. When they did arrive I sent some men across the river to search for the natives of the pueblo, in order that we might reassure them, as we had reassured those in the pueblo below. Half a league from the bank of the river they found about twenty men in a house containing highly decorated idols; these they brought to me, and on being questioned they told me that all of the inhabitants had run away through fear, but that they themselves did not wish to flee, preferring to stay and die beside their gods. As I stood talking to them some of my own Indians went by carrying things which they had torn from the idols. When the Indians of the pueblo

saw this they cried out that their gods were already dead ; on this I spoke to them, pointing out how vain and foolish was their belief that such gods could do them any good, when they were not able even to protect themselves and were so easily overcome. They replied that their fathers before them had held that creed, and that they themselves believed in it and would keep it until they knew a better. From want of time I could not tell them more than I had told to the people of Istapa, but two friars of the order of St. Francis, who were in my company, conversed with them at some length on the subject of religion. I asked some of them to go and call the Chief and people of the pueblo. To reassure them the Chief of Istapa also spoke to them, and told them of the good deeds that I had done in his pueblo ; they thereupon pointed out one of their number and said that he was their Chief, and he at once sent off two of his followers to summon the people ; they however never appeared. Seeing that the people did not come, I asked the man who was said to be the Chief to show me the road to Ciguatapan, as according to my map it was higher up the river and we should have to pass through it. He replied that they did not know the way by land, as everybody went by water, but that they would try to take me through the forest, although they could not be certain of success. I told them to point out the direction from the place where we stood, and I noted it as well as possible. I then ordered the Spaniards in the canoes and the Chief of Istapa to go up the river to the pueblo of Ciguatapan and try to pacify the people there, and also of another pueblo named Ozumazintlan¹ which they would pass on the way. I told them that if I arrived there first I would wait for them, but that if they got there before I did they were to wait for me.

When they had started I set out with my guides by land and as soon as I had left the town I came upon a great swamp more than half a league long. With the help of the friendly Indians, who placed branches of trees and brush in the path, we were able to cross it. Then we came to a deep creek where we had to make a bridge in order to carry over the saddles and baggage, the horses swimming ; and as soon as we were across we came upon another swampy place, more than a league long, where the

¹ Usumacinta.

horses sank to their knees and often to their girths, but as the ground underneath was hard we got across safely and entered the forest. In this forest I marched for two days, clearing a path in the direction pointed out by the guides, until they confessed that they had lost themselves and did not know where they were going.

The forest was so thick that, standing on the ground and looking up, one could not see the sky, and the trees were so tall and close together that even when one climbed up into them one could not see the distance of a cannon shot. When those who were ahead with the guides clearing the road sent to tell me that they were wandering about aimlessly and did not know where they were, I sent word to them to halt and went forward myself on foot. When I saw the muddle that they were in I told the people to go back to a small swamp which we had passed and where on account of the moisture there was a little pasture for their horses; for they had eaten nothing for two days. There we passed the night suffering much from hunger which we felt the more owing to the little hope we had of reaching a village. Some of the men were more dead than alive, and almost gave up all hope. I then told them to bring me my marine compass which I had brought with me, and which had often helped to guide me, but never yet in such extremity as we now found ourselves in. By the aid of this compass, and calculating the direction in which the Indians said the pueblo should lie, I found that, by travelling in a north easterly direction from where we stood, we ought to hit the pueblo or come close to it, so I ordered those who were ahead clearing the road to take the compass with them and to follow that same bearing, and on no account to depart from it. This was done, and it pleased God that our calculations should turn out so well that by the hour of vespers we came in sight of the idol houses which stood in the middle of the pueblo. All were so overjoyed that, almost out of their senses, they ran towards the pueblo without noticing a great swamp that was in the way. Many horses sank into it and some of them could not be got out until the next day, but thank God none of them were lost. We who came behind crossed the swamp in another part but not without difficulty. The pueblo of Ciguatapan we found burnt down, even to the mosques and idol houses, and completely

deserted, so that we could obtain no news of the canoes which had been sent up the river. We found a great deal of maize much riper than any that we had found before, also yuca and red peppers and good pasture for the horses, for there is good grass on the bank of this beautiful river. Thus refreshed we began to forget our past troubles, although I was still very anxious for news of the canoes which I had sent up the river. As I was walking about looking at the pueblo I found a crossbow bolt planted in the ground and by this I knew that the canoes must have arrived, for all those that went in them were crossbowmen, and I was much distressed at thinking that as they were not to be found they might have been attacked here and all been killed.

In some small canoes which we found I sent some men across the river where they saw much land under cultivation, and passing through it came to a great lagoon. Here they found all the people of the pueblo in canoes or on some small islands. At the sight of the Christians the Indians approached them with confidence, although they could not understand a word that was said to them.

Thirty or forty of these Indians were brought before me, and when questioned told me that they had burnt their pueblo at the advice of the Chief of Zaguatan and had fled to the lagoon on account of the fright that he had put them into; but that afterwards some Christians of my party had come there in canoes, accompanied by some natives of Istapa, from whom they learned how well I treated the Indians. This had reassured them, and they told me that the Christians had been waiting for me here during two days, and as I had not arrived they had gone on up stream to another pueblo called Petenecte, and that the brother of the Chief of their pueblo had gone with the Spaniards with four canoes in case the people of Petenecte should wish to harm them. They also told me that they had supplied the Spaniards with plenty of food and all else that they needed.

I was delighted at this news and believed it fully, as they had come to me of their own free will and shown such confidence in me. I asked them to send some men in a canoe at once to look for the Spaniards and to carry a letter from me ordering them to return without delay. This was promptly done and I gave them the letter for the Spaniards. The next day at the hour of vespers

the Spaniards returned with the people of this pueblo who had gone up with them, and four other canoes laden with men and provisions from the pueblo whence they had just come. They told me that after leaving me [at Istapa] they had gone up the stream as far as the pueblo called Usumacinta, which is below this one, and had found it burnt and deserted. The people of Istapa whom they had brought with them went in search of the inhabitants, and having gained their confidence returned with them. These had afterwards furnished provisions and done all that was asked of them, and had been left peacefully settled in their pueblo. They themselves then came on to Ciguatapan, which they had also found abandoned and the people fled to the other side of the river. When however the inhabitants had talked with the Indians from Istapa they all rejoiced and had given the Spaniards a good reception, doing all that they could for them. There they waited for me two days, and as I did not appear thought that I must have come out higher up the river. As they had waited so long they set out in company with some of the people of this pueblo and a brother of its Chief and went on to another pueblo called Petenecte, six leagues distant. This also they found deserted but not burnt down, the inhabitants having fled to the other side of the river.

However the people from this pueblo and from Istapa had made friends with them so that four canoe loads of the inhabitants had now come to see me, and brought me maize, honey, cacao and a little gold. Messengers had been sent to the inhabitants of three pueblos up the river called Zoazacoalco, Taltenango and Teutitan, who would probably come to see me during the next day. And so it turned out, for the next day there came down the river six or eight canoes with people from all these pueblos ; they brought provisions and a little gold. To one and all I spoke very fully, making them understand that they must believe in God and serve your Majesty. All of them offered themselves as subjects and vassals of your Highness and promised for ever to do what they were ordered to. The people of Ciguatapan soon afterwards brought some of their idols, and in my presence broke them to pieces and burnt them. The principal Chief of the pueblo who had not come to me before, now arrived and brought me a little gold, and I gave presents to all of them, on which they became well contented and satisfied.

When I asked these people which road I should take to get to Acalá they expressed different opinions, those of Ciguatécpan saying that my road lay through the pueblos higher up the river, and that before the other people had arrived they had already opened six leagues of the road overland, and had thrown a bridge over a river which we had to cross. When the other people arrived they said that that road would take me a long way round through a bad and uninhabited country, and that the nearest way for me to go to Acalá was by crossing the river at the town where we were, and that thence there was a path which the traders were accustomed to use, and by which they would guide me to Acalá. They finally settled among themselves that this would be the best road.

I had already despatched a canoe with a Spaniard and some natives of this pueblo of Ciguatécpan to the Province of Acalá by water, to warn the people of my coming and tell them that they had nothing to fear, and to find out whether the Spaniards who had been sent from the brigantine with provisions had already arrived. Later on I sent four Spaniards with guides, who said that they knew the road, with orders to report to me if there was any difficulty or impediment in the way, and I told them that I would stay at Ciguatécpan and await their report. After they had set out I found myself obliged to start before they had written to me, so that the provisions which had been collected for the journey should not be eaten up, for I was told that I must travel for five or six days through uninhabited country. I began the passage of the river with a great fleet of canoes, and it was toilsome work owing to the breadth of the stream and the strength of the current; one horse was drowned and some baggage of the Spaniards was lost. As soon as we had got across I sent a company of men on foot, with the guides, to clear the road, then with the rest of the people I followed behind.

For three days we marched through thick forest along a very narrow path, and then came to a large creek more than five hundred paces wide. I set to work to look for a ford both up and down stream, but none could be discovered, and the guides told me that it was useless to look for one unless I journeyed for twenty days towards the mountains. This lagoon or creek placed me in such a difficulty that I cannot find words to express it; to cross it seemed impossible on account of its width and the

want of canoes, and even if we had had canoes for the people and baggage the horses could not have crossed, for on both sides were great swamps with a network of tree roots. No other way could be thought of for getting the horses across. To turn back meant certain death on account of the bad roads which we had passed over and the amount of rain that had fallen, for we well knew that the flood in the rivers must have washed away all the bridges that we had made, yet to rebuild these seemed equally difficult when all the men were exhausted and the thought was pressing on our minds that we had consumed all the provisions prepared for the journey and should find nothing more to eat. The people and horses were both numerous, for in addition to the Spaniards there were more than three thousand Indians with me.

I have already told your Majesty what difficulties there were in the way of our advance, so that no human brain could have suggested a remedy if God, who is the true help and succour of the afflicted and needy, had not aided us. I happened to find a little canoe in which the Spaniards, whom I had sent ahead to examine the road, had crossed over and from this canoe I had soundings taken right across the lagoon and found it to be throughout four fathoms deep; I had some lances tied together so as to test the nature of the bottom, and it was found that besides the depth of the water there was another two fathoms of mud, so that in all it was six fathoms deep. As a last resource I determined to throw a bridge across and at once I ordered wood to be cut to measure, that is nine or ten fathoms long including that part which would remain above the water, and I gave the order for cutting and hauling the timber to the Chiefs of the Indians who were with me—to each one according to the number of his followers. The Spaniards and I with them, from rafts, from the small canoe, and from two other canoes which had since been found, began to drive in the posts. It seemed however to all of us a hopeless task, and they were even saying behind my back that it would be better to turn back before all the men were exhausted or hunger would prevent us returning at all, for the work we were engaged on 'could never be finished and we should have to turn back whether we wished to or not. There was so much grumbling among the people that they almost dared to tell me this to my face.

As I saw them so greatly discouraged—and in truth they had good reason to be so, both on account of the nature of the work that we were undertaking, and because they had nothing to eat except such roots and herbs as they could find—I told them that they should not be employed on the bridge for I would build it with the Indians alone. I sent at once for all the Chiefs and told them that they could see to what extremity we were reduced and that we must either go forward or perish and I entreated them to make their men complete the bridge, for, once across it, we should be in the great Province called Acalá where there was an abundant supply of food, and that there we should rest; moreover they knew that in addition to the food that the country would furnish I had ordered supplies to be sent to me, from the ships, which would be brought in canoes; they would therefore be abundantly supplied with all that they needed. In addition to this I promised them that when we got back to Tenochtitlan they would be handsomely rewarded by me in your Majesty's name.

They assured me that they would do the work and at once divided it up amongst themselves, and they displayed such energy and quickness that in four days the bridge was finished and all had crossed over it, both men and horses. I believe that this bridge will stand for ten years if not destroyed by the hand of man, and even then it would have to be burnt for it would not be easy to destroy it in any other way. It contained more than a thousand posts, the smallest of them almost as thick as a man's body and nine or ten fathoms long, without counting the smaller pieces of timber; I can assure your Majesty that I do not think anyone could explain, in a way that would be understood, the method by which that bridge was built. It was certainly the most wonderful thing that ever was seen. As soon as the men and horses had crossed the creek we came on a great morass, two crossbow shots in width, the most terrible thing that man ever saw, in which unmounted horses sank to their girths and the more they struggled to get out the deeper they sank, so that we lost all hope of saving a single one of them; nevertheless we set to work to place brushwood and large branches underneath them, in order to prevent their being engulfed, and this helped them somewhat. Owing to our tramping backwards and forwards a little canal of mud and water was opened down

the middle in which the horses were able to swim a little and by this means it pleased Our Lord that they all got through without hurt, although they emerged so tired and exhausted that they could hardly stand. We all gave thanks to Our Lord for the great mercy vouchsafed to us, and at that very moment the Spaniards whom I had sent to Acalá arrived, followed by about eighty Indians of that Province laden with supplies of maize and poultry. God knows how delighted this made us and we were overjoyed at hearing that the people of the country were undisturbed and peaceful, and showed no wish to run away. The Indians of Acalá were accompanied by two persons of distinction, who said they came on behalf of Apaspolon, the Chief of the Province, to tell me that he was delighted at my arrival, and that he had heard of me for some time past through the traders of Tabasco and Xicalango, and was delighted to know me, and he sent by them a little gold. I received it with all the appearances of pleasure that I knew how to show, thanking their Chief for the goodwill that he evinced in your Majesty's service. I gave them a few small presents and sent them back, well contented, in the company of the Spaniards with whom they had come. They marvelled greatly at the building of the bridge, and this went far to establish the security which we afterwards enjoyed among them, for as their country lies amid lagoons and creeks they could easily have hidden themselves in them, but after seeing that wonderful work they thought that nothing was impossible for us to accomplish.

About this time a messenger arrived from the town of San Estevan del Puerto, which is on the Panuco River, bringing me letters from the judges of the town, and with him came four or five Indian messengers who brought letters from the City of Tenochtitlan and from the towns of Medellin and Espiritu Santo and I was very glad to hear that all went well, but I did not hear from the Factor and Veedor, for they had not yet arrived at the city.

This day, after the Spaniards and Indians who went on ahead to Acalá had departed, I followed after them with all my people and slept that night in the forest. The next day, shortly after noon, we came to some farms and plantations of this Province of Acalá, but before arriving at the first of the pueblos, which is called Tizatepelt, [we had to cross a large morass which gave us

some trouble, although we succeeded in getting across at last by making a detour of nearly a league and leading the horses by their bridles. About the hour of vespers we arrived at the pueblo] and found all the natives living peacefully in their houses; we also found food enough both for men and horses to make us forget the want that we had suffered. Here we rested six days and there came to see me a youth, of pleasing appearance, with a goodly following. He said that he was the son of the chief and brought us some gold and poultry and placed his land and person at your Majesty's service. He told me that his father had died, and so I consoled with him on his loss although I could see that he was not speaking the truth. I gave him a necklace of Flemish beads which I was wearing round my neck, and which he valued most highly. I then bade him farewell, he however stayed with me of his own accord for two days.

One of the natives of the pueblo, who was said to be the Chief, told me that near by there was another pueblo, also under his rule, where we should find better accommodation and more food, as it was a larger place and had a more numerous population, and he invited me to go there as it would be more convenient for me. I told him that I was quite willing to go and at once ordered the road to be cleared and lodgings to be prepared, all of which was well done. We then went to this pueblo, which is five leagues distant from the first mentioned, and here also we found all the people living undisturbed in their houses and a part of the pueblo cleared for our accommodation. It is a very beautiful pueblo, called Teutiaca and has most beautiful mosques, especially the two in which we took up our quarters after having thrown out the Idols. At this the natives did not show much distress as I had already spoken to them and shown them the error in which they lived, for there was no other than the one God creator of all things, and all the rest that I could tell them at the time. Later on I spoke more fully on the subject of religion to both Chief and people. I learnt from the people that the more important of these two mosques or houses was dedicated to a goddess in whom they had much faith and hope, and to whom they sacrificed only the most beautiful maidens; and that if this were not done the goddess was highly incensed with them, so that they took the greatest care to find such maidens so as

to satisfy her, and that they brought up the best looking girls from childhood for this purpose. About this I also told them what I thought was right and they seemed pleased at what they heard.

The Chief of this pueblo showed great friendship towards me and held long conversations with me, giving me a full account of the Spaniards of whom I was in search, and of the journey which we should have to make. He also told me in the utmost confidence, praying me to let no one know that the information came from him, that Apaspolon, the Chief of the whole Province, was alive but had ordered him to say that he was dead; that it was true that the youth who had come to see me was his son, and he had given orders that I should be led astray from the direct road that we ought to take, so as to prevent us from seeing their country and pueblos; he added that he told me this because he was well disposed to me and had received good treatment at my hands. He implored me to keep this secret, for if it were known that he had told me, the Chief would have him killed and his land burned up. I thanked him heartily and gave him some small presents in return for his good will, promising to keep his secret, and that in time to come he should be substantially rewarded in your Majesty's name.

I sent at once to summon the son of the Chief, who had been to see me, and told him that I was much surprised at him and at his father for wishing to keep away from me, knowing as they did my good will towards them and my wish to see him and to do him honour, and also to give to him such presents as I had brought with me, because I had been well treated in his country and desired greatly to make him some return. I knew for certain that his father was alive, and should be pleased if he would go and speak to him and persuade him to come and see me, for I felt sure that it would be greatly to his advantage to do so. The son told me that it was quite true that his father was alive, but he had denied it because he was ordered to do so; that he would now go to him and try hard to persuade him to come and see me, and that he believed he would come, for he had a strong desire to see me, knowing, as he now did, that I did not come to do them any harm, on the contrary that I had given them presents of such things as I had brought with me, but that having once denied himself he was now somewhat ashamed to appear before me. I begged him to go and do all

that he could to bring his father, and in this he succeeded, for the next day both of them came to see me and I received them with much pleasure. The Chief gave as an excuse for having denied himself that he was afraid to come until he knew how I was disposed towards him, but as soon as he knew that he wished very much to come; he also confessed that it was true that he had ordered them to guide me away from the pueblos, but that now he begged me to come to the principal pueblo where he himself lived, as in that pueblo there were greater facilities for supplying us with everything that we needed. The Chief stayed with me and I gave orders for a broad road to be cleared to his pueblo; we set out together on the following day.

I mounted him on one of my horses and he was very happy riding it into his pueblo, which is called Izancanac; it is a fine town with many mosques, and it stands on the banks of a great river which flows through the country as far as the port called Terminos de Xicalango and that of Tabasco.

Some of the inhabitants of this pueblo were absent but others were in their houses, and we found a plentiful supply of provisions. The Chief stayed in the same house with me although he had a house of his own, with his own people in it, near by. During the time of my stay he gave me a long account of the Spaniards of whom I had come in search, and made me a map on a cloth of the route that I had to take. He gave me some women and some gold without my asking for them, for up to this time I had not demanded anything from the Chiefs of these countries against their wishes.

We had then to cross a river, and before arriving at it there was a great swamp over which he [the Chief Apaspolon] ordered a bridge to be made. For the passage of the river the Chief gave us all the canoes that we needed, and he supplied guides for our journey. He also gave us guides and a canoe to carry the Spaniard who had brought my letter from Santistéban del Puerto, and for the Mexican Indians who were returning to the Provinces of Xicalango and Tabasco. I sent letters by the Spaniard to the towns and to the officers whom I had left at Tenochtitlan, as well as to ships at Tabasco and to the Spaniards who were coming with provisions, telling them all what they should do. When the letters was despatched I gave presents to the Chief of certain things to which he had taken a liking; he

seemed well pleased and all the people of his Province were settled and at peace.

I gave the Chief a letter which he had asked for, so that if any Spaniards should arrive they might know that I had passed that way and looked upon him as my friend.

I set out from this Province on the first Sunday of Lent in the year [15]25; the first day we did nothing more than to cross the river, which was no easy matter.

Here in this Province a thing took place of which it is right that your Majesty should be informed. It is that a respectable citizen of Tenochtitlan, Mesicalcingo by name, now called Cristóbal, came very secretly to me one night and brought me a drawing on paper such as is used in his country, and wished to explain to me what it meant. He told me that Guatemocin, who was the Chief of the City of Tenochtitlan, whom I had held prisoner since the capture of the city as I believed him to be a turbulent person, and whom I had brought with me on this journey together with all the other chiefs whom I thought to be cause of all insecurity and revolt in this country, that is to say Guatemocin, [Guanacaxin] who was Chief of Texcoco, Tetepanquetzal Chief of Tacuba, and a certain Tacitecle who was living at Tlatelulco in the City of Mexico: that they had often spoken and told stories to this Mesicalcingo, saying how they were dispossessed of their lands and lordships, which had been given over to the Spaniards, and that it would be well to seek a remedy to this state of affairs so that they might again hold their lands and rule over them; and that, during their many talks on this subject during the present journey, it had seemed well to them to prepare a plan by which they might kill me and those with me, and to call on the people of those parts to kill Cristóbal de Olid and those with him; then to send messengers to Tenochtitlan to have all the Spaniards who had remained there killed. They thought that this could be easily done, as all those Spaniards who remained in the city were new comers and knew nothing about war. When this had been carried out they proposed to call on the people throughout the land, throughout all the towns and villages where Spaniards might be settled, to kill and destroy them all. This being accomplished they intended to put strong garrisons of men at all the sea ports, so that not a single ship which might arrive should escape, and no news could reach Castile. Thus they would

again become Chiefs as they were before, and, in anticipation, they had already divided up the land among themselves and had given Mesicalcingo the chieftainship of a certain province.

When I was told of this treason I gave many thanks to Our Lord that it had been thus revealed to me, and at dawn I had all the Chiefs taken prisoners and kept apart from each other. I then asked them how this matter came about, and to each one of them I said that the other had told me about it, for no one of them knew what the other had done, and thus all confessed that it was true that Guatemocin and Tetepanquetzal had set the matter on foot, and also that it was true that the rest had heard of it, but that they had never given their consent to the plan; these two therefore were hanged and I released the others, as they did not seem to have been guilty of more than listening, although that was sufficient for them to have deserved death: the proceedings against them were left open, so that if at any time they should relapse they might be punished. I believe however that they received such a fright (for they never found out through whom I got my information) that they never will relapse. They think that I found them out by some magic art, and that it is quite impossible to hide anything from me. They had seen how, in order to find the way, I had often consulted a map and compass, especially when the road neared the water, and they believed and told many of the Spaniards that it was by the compass that I had found out their plot. Sometimes, even when they were anxious to show their good will towards me, they would implore me to consult the looking-glass and the map so that I should know for certain their good intentions, as it was by those means that I found out everything. I let them believe that this was the truth.

The Province of Acalá is a most important one, for it has many pueblos with many inhabitants, and the Spaniards in my company visited many of them. Food and honey are abundant, and there are numerous traders and people who do business in other provinces. They are rich in slaves and also in other articles of commerce. Acalá is surrounded with watercourses, and all these waterways enter into the bay or port called "Terminos," and by them a great deal of traffic is carried on with Xicalango and Tabasco, and it is believed, although not known for certain, that they cross thence to the other sea, so that this land which they

call Yucatan is an island. I shall try to find out the truth about this matter and will send a trustworthy report of it to your Majesty.

As far as I know there is no other principal Chief than he who is the richest merchant and does the largest trade with his boats by sea, which is this Apaspolon whom I have already mentioned to your Majesty as the principal Chief, and it is because he is so rich and such a great trader that even in the town of Nito (of which I shall speak later on, for there I found certain Spaniards of the company of Gil Gonzales de Ávila) there is one quarter peopled by his agents, and with them a brother of Apaspolon who looks after his affairs. The chief articles of commerce in these parts are cacao, cotton, cloth, colours for use as dyes, another sort of colour with which they stain their bodies as a protection against heat and cold, candle wood for lighting purposes, pine resin for incensing their idols, slaves, and red shell beads which they use much for personal adornment on their festivals and holidays. They also trade a little in gold, but all of it is mixed with copper or some other substance.

To Apaspolon, and to many other worthy natives of this Province who came to see me, I repeated what I had already said to other natives during this journey about their idols and what they should do and believe in order to insure their own salvation, and also what their duties were towards your Majesty. It seemed that they were gratified at what I told them, for they burned many of their idols in my presence and said that from that time forward they would pay them no honour, and they promised to obey any commands that I should give in your Majesty's name. I then took leave of them and set out on my journey as I have already related.

Three days before setting out from the province of Acalá I sent four Spaniards with two guides, given me by the Chief, to examine the road which we were to take to the province of Mazatlan, which in their language is called Quiatleo [Quiacho?] and find out if there were any rivers and swamps to be crossed; for they had told me that there was much uninhabited country and that I should have to sleep four nights in the forest before arriving at the said Province. I ordered all the people to get six days' provisions ready so that we should not be reduced to the want that we had suffered before. This was easily arranged, for there was a plentiful supply of everything needful.

After marching five leagues beyond the crossing of the river, I came upon the Spaniards who were returning from the examination of the road, and the guides whom they had taken with them, and they told me that they had found a very good road although it was through dense forest, but that it was level and free from any rivers or swamps that might impede our march. They had, they said, arrived at some plantations in the said Province without being observed, and had there seen some natives, but had turned back before they were noticed by them. I was greatly delighted at this news, and I ordered that for the future six men on foot and some friendly Indians should go on a league ahead of those who were clearing the road, so that if they met with any wayfarer they should seize him in order that we might reach the province without being noticed, and so catch the people before they could burn their pueblos or take to flight as had so often happened before. That day, near a lagoon of water, we found two Indians, natives of Acalá, who had come from Mazatlan, as they told us, to barter salt for cloth, and this seemed to be the truth as they were laden with cloth. I told them that they would have to return with me, but that they should not suffer through this and would lose none of their merchandise; indeed that I would add to it, and that when we arrived at the Province they should return home, for I was a good friend to all people from Acalá as I had received good treatment both from the Chief and the people of that place. They were quite willing to do what I wanted and returned with me as guides, taking us by another road, and not by the road which the Spaniards whom I had sent ahead were clearing, as this latter led only to some plantations and the former to the pueblo itself.

That night we slept in the forest, and the next day the Spaniards who went ahead as scouts came on four natives of Mazatlan, armed with bows and arrows, who were placed, as it appeared, to act as scouts. As our men came on they discharged their arrows, and wounded one of our Indians, and as the forest was thick only one of them was taken prisoner; he was given in charge of three Indians of our company.

The Spaniards went on ahead, thinking that there were more Indians in front of them, but as soon as they had gone on the three Indians who had taken to flight, but who it seems had hidden themselves close by in the forest, threw themselves on

our friendly Indians who held their companion prisoner, and fought with them and released him; thereupon our Indians pursued them through the forest, and, overtaking them, began another fight in which one of the enemy was wounded in the arm by a severe cut, and was then taken prisoner; the other three fled into the forest as they heard more of our men coming up. From this Indian I learnt that his people did not know of my coming. When I asked him why they were stationed there as sentinels he replied that it was always their custom, for they were at war with many of their neighbours, and in order to insure the safety of the labourers working in the plantations their Chief always kept spies on the road, so that they should not be suddenly attacked.

I went on with my journey as fast as I could, for the Indian told me that we were near by, and as I did not wish his companions to arrive before me I told my men to go on, and that when they reached the first plantations they were to hide in the forest and wait until I came up. It was evening when I arrived, and I hurried on, hoping to get to the pueblo before night. As the baggage had become scattered I ordered a Captain to remain there in the plantation with twenty horsemen in order to collect the baggage, and to sleep there in charge of it and come after me as soon as it had all been collected. I marched on foot, along a narrow path through thick forest, leading my horse by hand, and all those who followed me did the same. We went along till near nightfall, when we came to a swamp which it was impossible to cross without preparation, so I passed the word from mouth to mouth to turn back, and we returned to a small hut a little way in the rear, and there we passed the night, without water either for ourselves or for our horses.

Early next day we made a path across the swamp with many branches of trees and led all the horses across by hand, but it was very toilsome work. About three leagues from the place where we had slept we caught sight of a pueblo on a rock, and thinking that we had not been observed we approached it with great precaution. It was so well fenced that at first we could not find an entrance, and when at last a way in was discovered we found the pueblo to be deserted, but very well supplied with stores of maize, poultry, honey, beans and all the produce of the

land in great quantities. As the inhabitants had been taken by surprise they were able to carry nothing away with them, and it was well stored also on account of its being on the frontier. The pueblo is built on a high rock with a lagoon on one side of it, and a deep stream which runs into the lagoon on the other side. There is therefore only one practicable entrance, and that is protected by a deep ditch and a wooden palisade breast high; behind the palisade is a fence of very thick wooden planks about ten feet high, with loopholes in it through which to shoot arrows. At intervals in the fence were watch towers which rose seven or eight feet above it, where piles of stones were kept ready to throw on their assailants below. The walls, parapets, and all the houses in the pueblo, were loopholed in the same way, and loopholed barricades were placed across the streets. So well planned were these that they could not have been improved upon, having regard to the sort of weapons with which they fight.

I sent some men to search the country for the inhabitants of the pueblo, and they caught two or three Indians; these I sent, in company with one of the traders from Acalá whom we had captured on the journey, to go and look for the Chief, and to tell him not to be afraid but to return to his pueblo, as I had not come there to trouble him; on the contrary I would help him in the wars that he was waging, and leave his country secure and at peace. Two days later these men returned bringing with them an uncle of the Chief, who governed the country, for the Chief was a child and they said that he was afraid to come. I spoke to the uncle and reassured him, and he went with me to another pueblo in the same Province, but which is seven leagues away and is called Tiac. There was war between these two pueblos.

This pueblo was also fenced in the same way as the former, and is much larger though not so strong, as it stands on a plain; its palisades, ditches, and watch towers are stronger and larger, and each of the three divisions of the pueblo is fenced separately, with another fence outside them all. I had sent on ahead to this pueblo two companies of horse soldiers and one of foot; they found the place deserted but with a quantity of food left in it. Near the pueblo they captured seven or eight men, some of whom were released so that they might go and speak to the Chiefs and reassure the people. This had been done, and with such

good effect that before my arrival messengers had come from the Chief bringing supplies and cloth, and after my arrival on two occasions others came to speak to us and bring us food, both on behalf of the Chief of this pueblo and on behalf of five or six other pueblos of this Province, each one of which is independent of the other. All offered themselves as vassals to your Majesty and professed friendship to us, although I could never get their Chiefs to come and see me.

As I had not time for much delay I sent to tell them that I accepted their submission in your Majesty's name, and requested them to give me guides for my journey, which they willingly did. One guide was given to me who knew the road very well as far as the pueblo where the Spaniards were residing, and had seen them there. I left this pueblo of Tiac, and went on to sleep at another called Yasuncabil, which is the last town of the Province and is fenced in the same way as the other towns. Here also the people had fled.

The Chief's house was a very beautiful one although built only of straw. In this town we got ready everything that we needed for the journey, for the guide told us that we had to travel five days through uninhabited country before reaching Itza, which lay in our route; this information proved to be correct. From this Province of Mazatlan or Quiache I sent back the traders whom we had captured on the road, and the guides whom I had brought from Acalá. I gave them some presents, both for themselves and to take back to their Chiefs, and they were well contented. I also sent back to his house the Chief of the first town who had come with us, and gave him also some of his women who had been captured in the forest, and some trifling presents with which he was completely satisfied.

Leaving the Province of Mazatlan I journeyed in the direction of Itza, and slept, at a place in the waste, four leagues along the way—indeed the whole journey lay through waste land and amid forests and hills. The path through the hills was very rough, and as all the rocks and stones consisted of very fine Alabaster we gave it the name of the "Puerto de Alabastro." On the fifth day the scouts who went ahead with the guide saw a great lagoon like an arm of the sea, and this I still believe it to be on account of its size and depth, although the water is fresh. On an island in the lagoon they saw a pueblo which the guide said

was the principal pueblo of Itza, and that to reach it we must go in canoes. The Spanish scouts halted and sent back one of their number to tell me their news. I ordered all the people to halt and went ahead myself on foot, to have a look at the lagoon. When I reached the scouts I found that they had taken prisoner an Indian from the pueblo who had come in a small canoe, carrying his arms with him, to examine the road and see if there were any people about, and although he came along without suspicion of what would happen to him, he would have escaped our men were it not for a dog they had with them, which caught him before he could get to the water.

I questioned the prisoner, who told me that nothing was known about my coming, and on asking him if there were any food in the pueblo he replied that there was none, but that near by, after crossing a small arm of the lagoon, there were some plantations and inhabited houses, and that there he believed we should find some canoes if we could get there without being noticed.

I sent to tell my people to follow me, and went on on foot with ten or twelve crossbowmen and the Indian for a guide. We passed through a long stretch of swamp with water to our waists and sometimes higher, and got to the plantations, but owing to the bad roads it was often impossible to keep hidden, so that we failed to escape detection and arrived just as the people had embarked in their canoes and put off into the lake. I hurried along the edge of the lake for two miles, often through plantations, but everywhere we were observed and the people were already in flight, and as it was getting late it was useless to follow them.

I rested in the plantation and collecting all my people together camped there, taking all the precautions possible as the guide from Mazatlan told me that the Indians were very numerous and very warlike, being feared in all the neighbouring provinces. He told me that he would like to embark in the little canoe in which the other Indian had come and go to the pueblo, which could be seen on the island about two leagues off, and speak to the Chief who was called Canec, whom he knew very well, and tell him of my plans and of the reason of my coming to these parts; for, as he had come with me and knew my wishes and had seen my doings, he believed that he would be able to reassure the

Chief, who would believe his report, for he knew him very well and had often stayed in his house.

I at once gave him the canoe and the Indian who had come in it, and thanked him for his offer, promising him that if he were successful I would reward him to his entire satisfaction. So he set out and at midnight returned with two men of importance from the pueblo, who said that they had been sent by their Chief to see me and to enquire into what this messenger of mine had told them, and to ask me what I wanted. I gave them a good reception and some small presents, and told them that I had come to these lands by your Majesty's orders to see them and to speak with the chiefs and people on some matters connected with your royal service and their own good; that they should tell their Chief that I requested him to put aside all fear and come to see me, and that for greater security I should like to give them a Spaniard to go back to them as a hostage while the Chief came to me. On this they set out in company with the guide and one Spaniard. The next morning the Chief himself arrived with about thirty of his men in five or six canoes, and with him came the Spaniard whom I had sent as a hostage. The Chief seemed pleased to come and I received him with cordiality, and as he happened to arrive at the hour of mass I ordered one to be chanted with much solemnity to the accompaniment of clarionets and sackbuts. They attended the service with me and paid much attention to the ceremonies. When mass was over, one of the friars who accompanied me preached a sermon through an interpreter, in a way that could be easily understood, about the matters of our faith, explaining to the Chief how there is but one God and pointing out the errors of their native beliefs. From what the Chief said and did he appeared to be convinced, for he said that he should like to destroy his idols at once and believe in that God about whom we told him, and that he would like much to know what should be done to serve and honour Him; and that if I would care to go to his pueblo I should see how he would burn his idols before me, and he desired that I should leave in his pueblo a cross such as he was told that I had left in all the other pueblos that I had passed through. After the sermon I addressed the Chief telling him of your Majesty's greatness and how all the rest of the world were your subjects and vassals and

were obliged to serve you, and that to those who served your Majesty thus were granted great favours and that I, in your Majesty's name, had done so in this country to all those who offered their services and placed themselves under your royal yoke, and that I made the same promise to him. He replied that until this moment he had acknowledged no one as his lord nor had he known that anyone had a right to be so; that it was true that five or six years ago some people of Tabasco, coming through his country, had told him how a Captain with some people of our nation had come amongst them and vanquished them three times in battle, and had told them that they had to be the vassals of a great Chief and all the rest that I had now told him, and he wished me to tell him if this was one and the same affair. I replied that I myself was the Captain whom the men of Tabasco spoke of as having come into their country and fought with them, and in order that he might assure himself of the truth he might question the interpreter who was speaking to him. This was Marina, she whom I always took with me, for it was in Tabasco that she had been given to me with twenty other women. Marina spoke to him and told him how it was true and how I had since conquered Mexico; she also named to him all the countries which I hold subject and have placed under your Imperial rule. The Chief showed contentment at this, and said that he wished to become a subject and vassal of your Majesty, and that he considered himself fortunate in becoming the vassal of so great a lord as I described your highness to be. He ordered his people to bring poultry, honey, a little gold, and some beads of red shell, which they value highly, and gave them to me. I gave him some of my things, at which he was greatly pleased. He dined with me with much pleasure, and after dinner I told him how I had come in search of those Spaniards who were on the sea coast and belonged to my company and had been sent there by me, and that it was a long time since I had heard from them and that was why I had come to search for them. I then asked him to tell me any news that he might have heard of them. He replied that he had heard much of them, for near to where they were staying were some vassals of his who worked in cacao plantations¹ for there was good land for them

¹ The word "Cacaguatales." Cacahual = a plantation of Cacao trees. Cacahuete = a pea-nut.

there ; that from these people and from many traders who came and went daily from his land thither he was continually hearing news of them. He said that he would give me a guide who would take me to where they were, but that he must warn me that the road was very rough, over high and rocky mountains, and that it would be an easier journey if I were to go by sea. I replied that he could see that there would not be boats enough to carry the number of people and horses and the amount of baggage that I had with me, so that I was compelled to travel by land. I asked him to arrange for the passage of the lake and he replied that by going on by land for about three leagues I should get to a place where the water had dried up, and that I could then follow the bank to the road which ran in front of his pueblo. He added that whilst my people were following that route he begged that I would go with him in the canoes to see his house and pueblo also to see him burn his idols and have a Cross made for him. In order to please him, although much against the wishes of my own people, I embarked in the canoes with about twenty men, most of them crossbowmen, and went with him to his pueblo, where I rested pleasantly all day. At nightfall I took leave of the Chief, who gave me a guide, and I got into the canoe and went over to the mainland to sleep. There I found many of my people who had gone round the end of the lake and there we passed the night.

At this pueblo, or rather at the plantations, I left a horse which had run a splinter of wood into its foot and could not travel. The Chief promised to look after and cure him, but I do not know what he will do with him.

The next day, after collecting my people, I started in the direction which the guides pointed out to me and about half a league from our camp came upon a small plain or savannah, and then passed through a wood for a distance of about a league and a half. We then came out on to some beautiful plains, and I sent some horsemen and some men on foot far ahead of the others, so that they might capture any natives whom they might meet, for our guides told us that we should arrive at a pueblo that evening.

On these plains we found many fallow deer, and we speared eighteen of them from horseback. Owing to the heat of the sun, and the many days that the horses had been without proper exercise (for there had been no suitable ground, only hills and forests) two of the horses died and many others were in great

danger. When the hunting was over we went on our way, and soon after I came up with some of the scouts, who had been sent on ahead, awaiting me. They had captured four Indian hunters who were carrying a dead lion and some iguanas, which are great lizards such as are found in the islands. I asked them if they knew of my coming at their pueblo; they said no and pointed out the pueblo which did not look to be more than a league away. I hastened on, thinking that there was nothing in the way to prevent my reaching it. When I thought that I was about to enter the pueblo and could see the people walking about, I came upon a large and deep creek and there was compelled to stop. I began to shout to the inhabitants, and two Indians came over in a canoe bringing about twelve fowls with them. They came close up to me as I was standing with the water up to the horse's girths, but there they stopped and would come no nearer. I stood talking to them for a long time, trying to give them confidence, but they would come no nearer to me, but began to return towards their pueblo in the canoe. Then one of the Spaniards who was on horseback near me spurred his horse into the water, and began to swim after them. In their fright they upset the canoe, and some of my men, hurrying up, swam after them and caught them. While this was going on all the people of the pueblo took to flight. I asked the two Indian prisoners where we could get across, and they showed me a road by which we could avoid the water by going round about a league. We slept that night in the pueblo which is eight long leagues from our starting place that day.

The town is called Thecon [Checan, Macanché] and the Chief is named Amohan. Here we stayed four days, preparing six days' food (for the guides said that we had six days uninhabited country before us) and in the hope that the Chief of the pueblo might come in, for I had sent the two Indians whom I had captured to summon and reassure him, but neither Chief nor Indians appeared. At the end of this time, having collected all the provisions that I could find, I set out and passed on the first day through a very good country, flat and cheerful, with only a few patches of wood, and after marching six leagues at the foot of a range of hills we came on a large house, and close by it two or three smaller houses in the neighbourhood of some plantations. The guides told me that the house belonged to Amohan, the Chief of Thecon, who kept it there as an inn for

the many traders who passed that way. I stayed there the day after my arrival, both because it was a feast day and also to give time to those who had gone ahead to open the road.

In that river we had grand fishing, we cornered in it a number of shad, and caught them all without losing one of those which were inside the fish fence.

Next day I set out, following a rough road all day over hills and through forests, and after seven leagues of this rough road we came out upon a beautiful plain, without any forest but only a few pine trees. This plain was two leagues long, and while crossing it we killed seven deer and we stopped to dine at a cool stream at the edge of the plain. After dinner we began to ascend a small pass which, although not very high, was so rough that we could hardly get the horses up it, leading them by hand. On descending the other side we came to another plain half a league long, and then by another ascent and descent. In this ascent and descent we must have covered two and a half leagues of ground, so rough and so bad that there was not a horse that did not lose a shoe. We slept that night by a stream at the foot of this pass. There we stayed the next day almost up to the hour of vespers, waiting whilst the horses were shod, and although we had two farriers at work, and more than ten men who were helping to drive the nails, they were unable to shoe all the horses on that day. I went on that same evening and slept at a place three leagues ahead, but many of the Spaniards stayed behind both to shoe the horses and to await the baggage, which had been delayed by the badness of the road and the heavy rain that had fallen. The next day I went on as the guides told me that near by was a farm called Asuncapin, belonging to the Chief of Itza, where we could arrive early and pass the night. After marching four or five leagues we arrived at the farm, but found no one there. There I stayed two days awaiting the arrival of all the baggage and collecting some supplies: I then set out and slept at another farm called Taxuytel, five leagues distant from the first, which belongs to Amohan, Chief of Thecon. Here there were many cacao plantations,¹ and some maize though small and green. The guide and the manager of the farm, who had been captured together with his wife and son, told me that we would

¹ See note on page 381.

have to cross some very lofty and rough mountains, altogether uninhabited, before we arrived at some other farms called Tenciz, belonging to Canec, the Chief of Itza. We did not stay here long, setting off the very next day, and after marching six leagues across the plain we began to ascend the pass, which was the most wonderful thing in the world to behold. To describe the craggy roughness of this pass and these mountains would be impossible, for could the narrator find adequate terms no listener could understand or believe such a description. It is enough to tell your Majesty that it took us twelve days to traverse the eight leagues of the pass, that is to say for the whole of the company to pass through. Sixty eight horses died from injuries or from falls from the rocks, and all the others came through so badly cut and bruised that we did not think that one of them would recover. So there died in that pass of overwork and wounds sixty eight horses, and those that survived took three months to recover. During the whole time that we were marching through the pass it never ceased raining day or night, but the nature of the rock is such that it holds no water to drink, and we suffered much from thirst, and many of the horses died of it. Had it not been that we collected water in kettles and other vessels from the ranchos and huts which we put up every night to shelter us, sufficient for ourselves and the horses, neither man nor beast would have escaped alive from those hills.

In this pass a nephew of mine broke his leg in three or four places, and to the damage that he suffered by the accident was added increased labour for us all, owing to the great difficulty we experienced in bringing him out of the mountains. To add further to our troubles, a league before arriving at Tenciz we came on a great river which was so swollen by the recent rains that we could not cross it, so the Spaniards who went ahead had gone upstream until they found a ford, the most wonderful that I have ever heard of or could imagine. The river at that place was flooded until it was two-thirds of a league wide as the course was blocked by some large rocks. In the narrows between these rocks the river rushed with terrifying swiftness, these narrows are numerous, for the water cannot escape otherwise than between the rocks, so here we felled huge trees by which to pass from one rock to another. Thus we passed over at the greatest risk, aided by some lianes which we tied across; the

least slip in crossing would have been fatal. There were over twenty of these narrows which had to be passed, and two days were occupied in the passage. The horses crossed by swimming lower down the stream where the current was not so swift, and many of them took three days getting to Tenciz, not more than a league distant; so much had they suffered in the mountains that it was almost necessary to carry them as they could not walk.

I arrived at these farms of Tenciz on Easter eve [1525] and many of the men did not come in for another three days, that is those who owned horses and had to look after them. The Spaniards who were sent ahead as pioneers had arrived two days before me and had found inhabitants in three or four of the houses, and had captured over twenty of them as they knew nothing of our approach. I asked these people if they had any supplies of food, and they said no, and that none would be found in the country. Thus we were in worse straits than when we arrived, as for the last ten days we had nothing to eat but the kernels of palms and palmitos, and even of these we had few as we had not the strength to cut down the trees.

The Chief of the hamlet told me that a day's journey up stream, going back by the way we had come, there were many people belonging to a Province called Tahuycal, where there was an abundance of maize, cacao and poultry, and that he would give me a guide to take me there. I at once arranged to send a Captain and thirty men on foot, and over a thousand Indians who were with me. There it pleased Our Lord that they should find an abundance of maize but the inhabitants had taken to flight; so we drew our supplies from that source, but as it was a long way off we provisioned ourselves with difficulty.

From these plantations I sent out some of the Spanish cross-bowmen with a native guide to examine the road which we had to take to a Province called Acuculin, and to go as far as a village of the same Province which was ten leagues from the place where we were camped and six leagues from the chief pueblo of the Province; this is called as I have said, Acuculin, and the Chief's name is Acahuilguin. They arrived without being noticed, and in one house captured seven men and a woman, then they returned and told me that the road as far as they had gone was very toilsome, but that it seemed to them excellent in comparison with those we had already travelled.

The Indians whom the Spaniards brought with them gave me news of the Christians of whom I was in search. Amongst these Indians was one who was a native of the Province of Acalá, who said that he was a trader and had had his storehouse for merchandise in the pueblo where the Spaniards whom I was seeking lived, the name of which is Nito, and that there is much trade with all parts. That the traders belonging to Acalá had a quarter of the pueblo to themselves, and had with them a brother of Apaspolon the Chief of Acalá. He also told me that the Christians had attacked the pueblo in the night and had captured it, seizing all the merchandise that was in it. This was a large amount as there were traders from all parts. That since that time all the traders had gone off to other Provinces, and that he himself and other traders of Acalá had asked permission of Acahuilguin, the Chief of Acuculin, to settle on his land, and that they had built in a certain place which he had assigned to them a small pueblo, where they lived and whence they traded. They said that trade had suffered greatly since the arrival of the Spaniards, for the trade route ran by their town and the natives dared not pass by there. This man said that he would guide me to the place where the Spaniards were living, but that it would be a ten days' journey over many bad ranges of hills, and that just before arriving we should have to cross a large arm of the sea.

I was greatly delighted to get such a good guide and did him much honour; the guides whom I had brought with me from Mazatlan and Itza talked to him, telling him how well they had been treated by me, and what a good friend I was to Apaspolon their Chief; this seemed to give him more confidence. Being sure that he was trustworthy, I ordered him to be set free and also those who had been brought with him. Feeling thus secure I allowed the other guides whom I had with me to return home, giving them some small presents for themselves and their Chiefs, and thanking them for the work that they had done. After this they set off very contented. I then sent four natives of Acuculin and two others from the hamlet of Tenciz to go and speak to the Chief of Acuculin, and reassure him so that he should not keep away. After these I sent the men who were clearing the road.

I set out myself from this place two days later, as provisions

were running short, although we had had little rest and it was very hard on the horses. However we started leading the greater number of the horses by hand and that very night before the dawn the guides and those natives who were with him took to flight. God knows how I felt at having dismissed the other guides. However I continued my journey and slept in the forest after a march of five leagues, passing on the way some very bad places, at one of which a horse which up to the present had escaped injury was hamstrung. Next day we marched six leagues and passed two rivers, one by means of a fallen tree which reached from bank to bank ; out of this we made a bridge so that the people could cross without falling. The horses swam across and two mares were drowned. The other river we crossed in canoes, the horses swimming, and that night we slept in a small hamlet of about fifteen houses, all of which were newly built. I knew this to be the place where the traders from Acalá had settled after leaving their town on the coming of the Christians. Here I stayed a day, getting the people and baggage together, and I sent ahead two companies of horsemen and one of foot to the pueblo of Acuculin, whence they wrote to tell me that they had found it deserted, and that in a large house which belonged to the Chief they found two men, who said they had remained there by the Chief's orders to await my arrival and advise him of it, for he knew of my coming by the messengers whom I had sent from Tenciz. He said that he would be delighted to see me and that he would come in as soon as he knew that I had arrived. One of the men went off to summon the Chief and bring some supplies, while the other remained where he was. They added that they had found cacao on the trees, and that there was fair pasture for the horses, but they had found no maize. As soon as I arrived at Acuculin I asked if the Chief had come in, or if the messenger had returned, and they replied no. I then spoke to the native who had remained behind, asking him why they had not come. He said that he did not know, and that he was also waiting for them, but it might be that the Chief was waiting to know that I had come in person, and by this time he would be assured of it. I waited two days and as the Chief did not come I spoke to the man again. He replied that he could not think why the Chief had not arrived, and he asked me to give him

some Spaniards to go with him, as he knew where the Chief was staying and would go and tell him to come. Ten Spaniards were sent with him, and he led them five leagues through the forest to some huts which they found empty, though according to the Spaniards they showed signs of recent occupation. That night the guide ran away and the Spaniards returned to me. We were now left guideless, which doubled our labours. I sent a company of my people with Spaniards and Indians all over the forest, and though they scoured it for eight days they saw no man and not even tracks of them. They captured only a few women, who were almost useless, as they neither knew the road nor could tell us anything about the chief or the people of the Province. One of the women said that she knew a pueblo two days' journey away called Chianteca, where there were people who could tell us about the Spaniards whom we were seeking ; there were many traders among them, and people who trafficked in all directions. I sent out some people with this woman as guide, and although it was a long two days' journey through a rough and unpeopled country the inhabitants of the pueblo had already been warned of my approach, and nobody could be captured to serve as a guide. When I had almost abandoned hope, as we had no guide and the compass was useless to us, hemmed in as we were with rough and intricate mountains such as we had never met with before, and not seeing a loophole of escape except over the road by which we had come, it pleased God that a boy of about fifteen years of age should be found in the forest who, on being questioned, said that he could guide us to some plantations of Taniha, which I remembered as the name of another Province that we had to pass through. The boy said that it was two days' journey to the plantations, and with him as guide we set out, and in two days arrived at the plantation, where the pioneers who went on in front captured an old Indian, and he guided us to the pueblos of Taniha, which are two days' journey farther on. In these pueblos four Indians were captured, and as soon as I questioned them they gave me very distinct news of the Spaniards whom I was seeking, saying that they themselves had seen them, and that they were distant two days' journey at that very pueblo, which was called Nito ; which is very much frequented by traders and one often hears mentioned in many places ; it was of it that they told me in the Province of

Acalá, as I have already informed your Majesty. Two women were brought to me, natives of this very pueblo of Nito where the Spaniards lived, and they confirmed the news, for they said that at the time that the Spaniards captured the pueblo they were living in it, and as the assault was made by night they had been taken prisoners with many others, and that they had been in the service of certain Christians whom they named. I cannot tell your Majesty the joy with which I and all those of my company heard the news which the natives of Taniha gave us, and at finding ourselves so near to the end of such a doubtful enterprise.

During those last four days' journey from Acuculin we had gone through innumerable labours and hardships, for we were among pathless rugged mountains and precipices, where some of the few horses left to us fell from the rocks. My cousin Juan de Avalos and his horse rolled together down the mountain side, he breaking his arm, and had it not been for the plates of his armour which he had on and which protected him from the rocks he would have been dashed to pieces; as it was it was a very difficult matter to haul him up again. There were many other hardships which we met with, and which would take too long to recount, especially that of hunger, for, although I had with me some of the pigs which I had brought from Mexico, when we arrived at Taniha we had had no bread to eat with our meat for eight days, only cooked palmitos and some palm kernels without salt, for that had been wanting for many a day. We found nothing to eat in these pueblos of Taniha, for owing to their being in the neighbourhood of the Spaniards they had been abandoned for some time past, as the natives thought that they would be attacked by them; however from this they were quite secure judging from the state which I found the Spaniards to be in.

At the news of finding ourselves so near we forgot all our past troubles and strengthened ourselves to endure the present, especially that of hunger which was the worst, for even of the palm cores without salt there were not enough, for they were cut with much difficulty from palms with tall stems, and it took two men the whole day to cut one of them, and they could eat the whole of it in half an hour.

These Indians who gave me the news of the Spaniards told me

that there was a two days' march over a bad track to get to them, and that near the town of Nito, where the Spaniards were living, there was a great river which could not be crossed without canoes, for it was so wide that it was impossible to swim across. I at once sent off fifteen men of my company on foot, with one of these men as guide, to inspect the road and the river. I told them to try and get some speech of these Spaniards, without saying who they were, so as to tell me what men they were, whether of those whom I had sent with Cristóbal de Olid or Francisco de las Casas, or of the party of Gil González de Ávila; so they set out and the Indian guided them to the river, where they took a canoe from some traders and then kept in hiding for two days. At the end of this time a canoe with four Spaniards, who were going fishing, put out from the pueblo of the Spaniards on the other side of the river; they were all captured and as none escaped no news of the capture reached the pueblo. These prisoners were brought to me, and I learned that the Spaniards who were there were of the party of Gil González de Ávila, and that they were all ill and almost dead of hunger. I despatched two of my servants, in the canoe in which the Spaniards had come over, with a letter to the pueblo, to give notice of my arrival and to say that I was about to cross the river, and begging them to send me all the boats and canoes that they could collect and so to help me across. I set out at once with all my followers to the river crossing, and was three days in reaching it; there I was met by one Diego Nieto, who said that he was there as a punishment. He brought me a boat and a canoe in which with ten or a dozen followers I passed over that night to the pueblo. Even yet I was not free from great difficulty, for a heavy squall struck us in the passage and, as the river is very broad close to its entrance to the sea where we crossed it, we were in great danger of being lost, but it pleased Our Lord that we should reach the port in safety. On the next day I had another boat got ready and found some more canoes, which I tied together two and two, and after these preparations we brought across all the people and horses in five or six days.

The Spaniards whom I found in this place numbered sixty men and twenty women, whom the Captain Gil González de Ávila had left there. I found them in such a condition that one was moved to compassion on seeing them and

observing the joy which they showed at my arrival, and in truth had I not arrived not one of them would have survived. Not only were they few in number, unarmed and without horses, but they were all very sickly and almost starved to death. All the supplies they had brought with them from the Islands and those that they found in the pueblo when they took it were exhausted, and they did not know where to look for more, for they were not in a condition to go out and search the country for them. The pueblo was so situated that there was no way out that they knew of or were able to find and only with much difficulty was one discovered afterwards. Seeing the great straits these people were in and the little chance that they had of getting out in any direction—for they had never gone further by land than half a league from where they were living—I determined to seek some way of supporting them until I could send them back to the Islands, where they could regain their health, for among them all there were not eight of them fit to settle in the land. I sent some of my own people in different directions by sea in two boats which were found, and in five or six canoes. The first expedition which they made was to the mouth of a river called Yasa [Lanlá], ten¹ leagues distant from the pueblo where I had found the Christians, and in the direction whence I had come; for I had information that pueblos and plentiful supplies were to be found there. The people set out and after arriving at the river ascended it six leagues, and there came on some very large plantations. The natives of the country had however had notice of their coming and had carried off all the food, which they had stored in some houses near the plantations, and with their women, children and belongings had hidden themselves in the forest. When the Spaniards arrived at the store houses a heavy rain began to fall, and they took shelter in the largest house which they found there, and being wet through they carelessly laid aside their arms, and many of them took off their clothes to dry them and warm themselves at the fires which they had lighted. While thus resting the natives fell upon them, and as they caught them unprepared they wounded many of them so badly that they were obliged to

¹ Two leagues, in another copy of the letter, which would be correct.

retreat to their boats, and came back to me with less food than they had started with. God knows what I felt both at seeing them wounded—some dangerously—and at the confidence which the natives would gain, as well as at the little that they had done towards helping us in our dire necessity.

I at once sent off another Captain and more men in the same boats and canoes, both Spaniards and Mexicans, and as they could not all go in the canoes I made some of them cross the great river which flows near to this pueblo, and ordered them to march along the coast. I also ordered the boats and canoes to keep close in shore so that those who were marching might be ferried across the bays and rivers, which are numerous. In this way they arrived at the mouth of the river where the first party of Spaniards had been wounded, but they came back without doing anything or bringing any supply of provisions; all they did was to capture four Indians who were travelling by sea in a canoe. When asked why they had thus returned they replied that, owing to the heavy rains, the river was coming down in such a heavy flood that they had never been able to ascend it more than a league, and that thinking that it would run down they waited near the mouth for eight days without either fire or food beyond the fruit of some wild trees. Some of the men came back in such a condition that it was almost impossible to restore them to health.

I found myself in such straits that had it not been for some few of the pigs which had been saved during the journey, and were now used with the greatest economy without either bread or salt, we should all have perished. Through an interpreter I asked the Indians who had been captured in the canoe if they knew of any place where we could go and look for provisions, promising to set them at liberty and to give them presents if they could show us where any were to be obtained. One of them, who said that he was a trader and that the others were his slaves, told me that he had been here many times trading in his canoes, and that he knew a waterway which went from here to a large river which all the traders made use of in the stormy season when they could not travel by sea, and that on that river there were many settlements of people who were well off and had large supplies of food. He said that he would guide us to some pueblos where we could obtain all the provisions that we needed, and he added, in order

that I might be sure that he was not lying, that I might take him bound to a chain so that he could not run away, and so that if he were not speaking the truth I might give him the punishment he deserved.

I at once ordered all the canoes and boats to be got ready, and put in them all the sound men who were left in my company, and sent them off with that guide. At the end of ten days they came back just as they had gone, saying that the guide had taken them into swamps where neither boats nor canoes could pass, and that they had done all they could to get through, but that they had never been able to accomplish it. On my asking the guide why he had deceived me he replied that he had not done so, and that those Spaniards with whom I had sent him did not wish to go on any further; that they were very near the sea whence the river led inland, and many of the Spaniards owned that they had heard the noise of the sea quite distinctly and that it could not have been far from the point they had reached.¹

I cannot express what I felt at finding myself so helpless and almost without hope, knowing as I did that not one of us would escape starvation. In the midst of this perplexity God our Lord, who always takes care to find a remedy for such distress, even in the case of such an unworthy person as myself—for he has many times helped and succoured me in my extremity, because He knows that I am working in the service of your Majesty,—sent there a ship which came from the islands without the slightest expectation of meeting me. This vessel carried thirty men besides the crew, thirteen horses, over seventy pigs, twelve casks of salt meat, and thirty loads of the bread used in the Islands. We gave thanks to our Lord who had succoured us in our distress and I bought all these supplies and the ship, which cost me in all four thousand dollars. I had already given orders to repair a caravel which the Spaniards of the place had allowed to go almost to pieces, and also to build a launch out of some others that were lying there half broken up. At the time of the arrival of the ship the caravel was already repaired, but we could never have

¹ The guide doubtless wished to take the expedition to the mouth of the R. Motagua by way of the natural Canal which divides the Island forming the east side of the Gulf of Amatique from the mainland.

completed the launch had the ship not come, for in her came a man who, although not a carpenter by trade, proved to be a very good hand at the work. After we had scoured the country in all directions, a small path was found across some very rough hills which at a distance of eighteen leagues came out at a village called Leguela, where a plentiful store of food was found; but as it was so far distant and over such a bad road we could not supply ourselves thence. From some Indians who were captured at Leguela we learnt that Naco was the pueblo where Francisco de las Casas, Cristóbal de Olid, and Gil Gonzalez de Ávila resided, and where the said Cristóbal de Olid died, as I have already reported to your Majesty and will repeat presently. I had already heard of this from the Spaniards whom I had found in that pueblo [Nito, otherwise San Gil de Buena Vista], so I hastened to open a road, and sent off a Captain with all the men and horses, keeping with me only the sick, my household servants, and some persons who preferred to stay with me and go by sea. I instructed that Captain to go to the pueblo of Naco and try to pacify the people of the Province, for it had been somewhat disturbed from the time that these other Captains had been stationed there, and I told him that as soon as he arrived he was to send ten or twelve horsemen and the same number of cross-bowmen to the bay of San Andrés, which is about twenty leagues from that pueblo, as I intended to go to San Andrés by sea in the ship with all the invalids and others who remained with me. I also told him that if I arrived there first I should await the men that he was sending, and that he should tell them that if they arrived first they should wait for me, so that I might tell them what to do.

When these men had set out and the launch was finished, I wished to embark on the ships and put to sea, but I found that although we had a supply of meat, there was no bread, so that it would be very risky to put to sea with so many sick people, for if we were detained by bad weather they would all die of hunger instead of recovering. While I was thinking over what should be done, the man who acted as Captain of those people (whom we had met at Nito) told me that when they had first arrived there they were about two hundred in number, and had come in a very good launch and four ships, which was the whole fleet that Gil Gonzalez de Ávila had brought with him. That in the launch

and the ships' boats they had gone up the great river and had found in it large gulfs of fresh water, and around them many pueblos and plenty of food. He said that they had gone to the end of the lakes, and that fourteen leagues up stream the river had begun to narrow and had such a strong current that during the six days that they were trying to go up it they were not able to ascend more than four leagues, and that there the water was still deep and they had not solved the secret of it. He thought that there was a plentiful supply of maize in that direction, but said that I had not men enough to go there, for when they went eighty of them landed at one village without being noticed, and, although they captured it shortly afterwards, when the natives had assembled they fought them and wounded them, so that they were compelled to take to their boats again.

However, considering the extreme difficulty in which we were placed, and thinking that it was more dangerous to go to sea without food than to go and search for it on land, I determined to ascend that river, for, apart from the search for food with which to feed the people, it might happen that God our Lord would be served by my finding some hidden knowledge which would be of service to your Majesty. I counted up the number of men who were fit to go with me and found that they numbered forty Spaniards; although not all of them were able bodied, they were strong enough to guard the ships when I landed, and with these men and about fifty Mexican Indians who had remained with me we went on board the launch, which was already finished, and two boats and four canoes. In the town I left a caterer with orders to give food to the sick who remained there. So I set out on my journey up the river, which was hard work on account of the swift current, and at the end of two nights and a day came out at the first of the two lakes, which was about three leagues from where I had started and which extends for about twelve leagues. Round this lake there is no population at all, as the country is subject to inundations. I was a whole day crossing this lake before arriving at the other place where the river narrows again; we passed through it and the next morning came to the other lake. It is the most beautiful thing in the world to see how, amidst the roughest and most forbidding mountains possible, there should be a sea so extensive that it measures more than thirty leagues. We coasted along until nightfall, when we

found the beginning of a road; two thirds of a league inland this led to a pueblo whence it seemed we had been observed, for it was altogether abandoned and had nothing in it. In the country round we found much green maize, which we fed on that night and next morning, but seeing that we could get no provisions here, of the kind that we were seeking, we took with us enough green maize to eat and returned to our boats without having met anyone, or even caught sight of the natives of the place. After embarking we crossed the lake, occupying some time in the passage, for it was very hard work and one canoe was lost, though the crew, with the exception of one Indian who was drowned, were rescued by the other boats. We reached the shore when it was already late and near nightfall, and were not able to land until next morning; then the boats and canoes ran up into a little rivulet which opens there and the launch remained outside.

I happened to come on a path and so landed there, with thirty men and all the Indians, and sent back the boats and canoes to the launch. After following the path for about a quarter of a league from the place where we had landed, I came to a pueblo which seemed to have been deserted for some time as the houses were full of weeds; there were however some very good orchards of cacao and other fruit trees. I walked about the pueblo searching for a road which might lead somewhere, and found one very much overgrown which appeared not to have been used for a long time, and as no other road was to be found I travelled along it for five leagues along mountains which we had to ascend on hands and feet, so overgrown was the trail. I then came on a maize plantation, which had a house in it in which we captured three women and a man, the owners of the plantation. They guided us to others where we captured two more women, and they led us by a path so as to take us to where there was another large plantation with forty small houses in the middle of it, all of which seemed to have been newly built; we must however have been observed before we arrived for all the inhabitants had fled to the forest, but as they were taken by surprise they were not able to collect all their possessions, but had left us something, such as poultry, pigeons, partridges and pheasants kept in cages, but we were unable to find either ripe corn or salt. I stayed there that night and we satisfied our hunger to some extent, for

we found some green corn with which to eat the birds. When we had been in that little village for about two hours two of its Indian inhabitants arrived, little expecting to find such guests in their houses. The sentries took them prisoners and on my asking if they knew of any pueblo in the neighbourhood they replied yes, and that they would take me there next day, but it would be almost night before we arrived. Next day we set out with these guides and they took us along a path worse than that which we had travelled the day before, for, besides being overgrown we had to cross a river at every crossbow shot, every one of them flowing towards the lake. At the great junction of waters running from these mountains are formed those lakes and swamps from which the river flows in great volume to the sea, as I have already told your Majesty. Keeping on our way we marched seven leagues without reaching habitation, during which time we crossed forty five rushing streams without counting small rivulets. On the road we captured three women who came from the pueblo whither the guides were taking us, and as they were carrying bundles of maize it was a proof to us that the guide had spoken the truth. Just as the sun was setting or had already set we heard a noise of people, and I asked these women what it was; they told me that a feast was being celebrated in the pueblo that day. I made all my people hide in the bush as well and as secretly as possible, and I placed my spies, some close to the pueblo, and others in the path, so that any Indians who passed might be captured. There I stayed all that night through the heaviest rain that I ever saw, and with the worst plague of mosquitoes that it was possible to imagine. The forest was so thick, the path so obscure and the night so stormy that on two or three occasions on which I thought of starting to attack the pueblo I could never hit on the road, although we were so near the pueblo that we could almost hear the people in it talking; we were therefore obliged to wait till morning, and we started early and caught all the people asleep. I had given orders that no one should enter a house or utter a sound, but that we should surround the principal houses, especially the Chief's house and the great arsenal, in which the guides told us that all the warriors slept. It so happened that the first house that we came upon was the one which held the warriors, and as it was growing light and one could observe everything one of my company, seeing so

many men and arms thought that it was good, seeing how few in number we were and how numerous the enemy appeared to him although they were asleep, to call for help and began in a loud voice to call Santiago, Santiago. At this the Indians awoke, and some seized their arms and others did not, but as the house had no walls at all only posts supporting the roof they ran out as they chose, for we were not able to surround the house altogether. I assure your Majesty that if that man had not cried out we might have captured them all without one escaping, which would have been the finest booty seen in these parts, and might have been the cause of leaving the whole country quieted by letting them all go free, and telling them the cause of my coming to the country, and reassuring them so that, seeing that we did no harm, on the contrary that we had released them after holding them prisoners, it might have borne much fruit, but now it was all the other way. We captured about fifteen men and twenty women and ten or twelve who would not let themselves be captured were killed; among them fell the Chief without being recognised, but his dead body was shown to me afterwards by one of the prisoners. Nevertheless we found nothing in this pueblo which served our purpose, for although we found green maize it was of no use for supplies such as we were seeking.

I stayed two days in this pueblo to rest my men, and I asked the Indians who had been made prisoners whether they knew of any pueblo where there was a supply of ripe maize. They said yes, that they knew of a pueblo called Chacujal, a very large and ancient pueblo, which was supplied with every sort of provisions. After two days I set out, guided by those Indians, for the pueblo which they told me about, and that day we marched six long leagues over bad paths and across many rivers and arrived at some very large plantations, which our guides said belonged to the pueblo which we were going to. We skirted these plantations for quite two leagues, marching in the forest so as not to be observed. We captured eight men—wood cutters, hunters and others who were wandering through the forest and came on us unexpectedly—and as I always had spies out in advance we captured them without one of them getting away. About sunset the guides told me to halt, as we were close to the pueblo, so I halted and we stayed in the forest until three hours after nightfall; then we continued our way and came upon a river, which ran

breast high and was very swift. It was very dangerous work crossing it, but by roping ourselves together we passed it without accident. When we were across the river the guides told me that the pueblo was quite near, so I halted the men and went ahead with two companies until we could see the houses and hear the people talking, and it seemed to me that they were unsuspecting and that we had not been observed. I returned to my followers and told them to rest themselves, and I posted six men on either side of the road in sight of the pueblo and then went myself to take some rest with the others.

I had hardly laid myself down on some straw when one of the spies whom I had posted came to tell me that a number of armed men were coming down the road, talking as they came and apparently unconscious of our arrival. I roused my people as quietly as I could, for as it was only a short distance to the pueblo the villagers soon came on my outposts, and when they observed them they discharged a flight of arrows and turned to warn the pueblo. They retreated, fighting as they went, and we entered the pueblo together, and as it was dark they were soon lost among the streets. I would not allow my people to separate as it was night, and as we must have been observed an ambush might have been laid for us, so with all my people well together I entered the great plaza where the natives have their mosques and oratories. When we saw the mosques and buildings around them, like those at Culua, we were more astonished than we had been hitherto, for nowhere since we had left Acalá had we seen anything of this sort. Many of my people expressed the opinion that we should turn round at once and escape from the pueblo, and recross the river that very night before the inhabitants of the pueblo could find out how few in number we were. In truth it was not bad advice, for there was every reason for fear after seeing as much as we had of the pueblo. We halted in that plaza for a considerable time, but heard no sound of the natives. To me it appeared that it would not be well to leave the town in the way suggested, for perhaps the Indians, seeing that we had stayed there, would fear us the more and if we should retreat it would show them our weakness and increase our danger, and so it pleased God that it should happen, for after waiting for a long time in the plaza I collected my men together in one of their large chambers, and set some of my people to walk through the pueblo

and see if they could find out anything. As they could not hear the slightest sound they entered some of the houses, for there was fire burning in all of them. They found copious supplies of provisions and came back to us well contented and happy. So there we stayed that night in the greatest possible safety.

As soon as it was day I examined the whole pueblo, and found it to be well laid out with good houses built close together; in them we found much cotton yarn and cotton ready for spinning, much good cloth of the sort that they use, an abundance of ripe corn, cacao, beans, red peppers, salt, poultry and pheasants in cages, partridges, and dogs of the kind that they breed for food (which are very good), and every sort of provisions. So much was there that if the ships had been here, so that we could put it on board, I should have been able to provision them for many days. However in order to profit by it we should have had to carry it twenty leagues on our backs, and we were in such a condition that unless we could rest here for some days it would be all that we could do to carry ourselves, without any other burdens, back to the ships.

That day I sent a native of the pueblo, one of those whom we had captured in the plantations, and who seemed to be something of a Chief judging from his dress when captured—for he was taken prisoner while out hunting with his bow and arrows and was very well equipped according to their ideas. I spoke to him through an interpreter, and told him to go and look for the Chief and the people of the pueblo, and to tell them from me that I did not come to do them any harm, on the contrary that I came to speak to them about things of great importance to them, and that either the Chief or some of the principal inhabitants should come to me to hear the reasons of my coming there; that it was quite certain that if they came it would be greatly to their advantage, but that a refusal to come would harm them very much. So I sent him off with a letter of mine—for they are much taken with letters in these parts—although it was against the wishes of some of my company who said that it was not good policy to send him, as he would report what a small company we were, and that the township being both strong and populous, as the number of houses in it proved, it might well follow that when they knew how few of us there were they might join with the people of other pueblos and attack us. I saw that there was some sense in this, but I was

very anxious to find some means of obtaining a supply of provisions, and I thought that if the people should come with peaceable intentions they might help me to carry some of the food, so I resolved to do all that I could to bring that about. In truth the danger of the Indians attacking us was not greater than that which we should experience from hunger if no provisions were procured, and on this account I determined to send off the Indian, arranging that he should return the next day as he knew where the chief and people were most likely to be found. The following day when he should have returned, as two Spaniards were making the round of the pueblo and examining the neighbourhood they found my letter fixed on a stick in the path and so we knew for certain that no answer to it would be received. And so it turned out, for neither that Indian nor any other ever came back although we stayed in the pueblo for eighteen days, resting ourselves and seeking some way of carrying off the provisions. While thinking the matter over it occurred to me that it would be wise to follow the river which flowed by the pueblo down stream, and to find out whether it ran into the large river which flows into the fresh water lakes where I had left the launch, boats, and canoes. I questioned the Indians whom we held prisoners, and they said yes, that it did, but we could not understand them well nor they us, for they spoke a different language from the Indians whom we had hitherto met; however by signs and by some words of the language that we could understand I asked two of them to go with ten Spaniards to show them the mouth of the river. They said that it was close by, and that they would go and return the same day. It pleased God that after walking for two leagues through beautiful orchards of cacao and other fruit trees they came to the big river, and the guides said that was the river which flowed into the lakes where I had left the launch, boats, and canoes, and they also called it by its name, which is Apolochic. Asking them how many days it took to go from the place where we were to the lake they replied five days. I at once despatched two Spaniards with a native guide who promised to conduct them by byways to the launch. I ordered them to bring the launch, boats, and canoes to the mouth of the large river, and to try with one boat and the canoe to ascend the large river to its junction with the other river. As soon as they had started I had four rafts made of wood and very large canes, each one of which

would carry forty fanegas of maize, ten men and many other things such as beans, red peppers and cacao, which each one of the Spaniards added to the store when the rafts were finished. It took us eight days to make the rafts, and by the time that the supplies were stored on board, the Spaniards who had been sent to the launch returned, and told me that it was six days since they began the journey up the river, and as the boat could not be brought so far up the river they had left it at a place five leagues distant with ten Spaniards to guard it; they added that being wearied with rowing they had not been able to come all the way in the canoe, so they had hidden it about a league off. As they had come up the river some Indians had fallen on them and fought with them, but they were few in number; it was probable however that they would have collected more men and be waiting for us on our return journey.

I at once sent some men to fetch the canoe and, placing it alongside the rafts, loaded it with all the food that we had collected, and I furnished the crew with long poles to protect us against the snags which made the navigation of the river very dangerous. I then appointed a Captain over the men who remained behind and ordered them to return by the road by which we had come, telling them that should they arrive first at the place at which we had disembarked they were to await me as I would go there to take them on board, and that if I arrived first I would await their coming.

I went on board the canoe and started with the rafts, accompanied by the only two crossbowmen we had with us. Although it was a dangerous journey owing both to the great strength and impetuosity of the current and to the certainty that the Indians would lie in wait for us on the way, I was anxious to go myself, as I could then keep better watch over the provisions. Commending myself to God I set off down stream, and so fast did we travel that in three hours we reached the place where the boat had been left. We wished to lighten the rafts by putting some of the cargo into the boat, but the current was so rapid that it was impossible to stop the rafts, so I got into the boat and ordered the canoe, which was well supplied with paddlers, to keep always ahead of the rafts and to look out for Indians in canoes, and also to warn us of our approach to any bad places.

I stayed in the boat behind taking care that the rafts should

keep ahead of me, for if any accident happened I could assist them by coming down stream to them better than I could by rowing up stream.

About sunset one of the rafts struck on a snag below the water and it was partly overturned, but the rush of water freed it again with the loss of about half its cargo. Keeping on our course about three hours after nightfall I heard ahead of us a great shouting of Indians, but so as not to leave the rafts behind me I did not go ahead to see what was the matter, however in a little while the noise ceased and was not heard again for a time. After a little while the noise was again heard and it seemed to be nearer and then it ceased; one could not find out what it meant as the canoe and three rafts had gone ahead while I stayed behind with the raft which did not travel so quickly. So going on our way a little less on the alert than before—for it was a long time since we had heard any shouts—I took off the helmet that I was wearing and rested my head on my arm, for I had a very bad attack of fever. As we were going on thus a sudden current seized us at a turn of the river, and with a force which we could not resist threw both the boat and the raft against the bank, and it was there it seemed to me that the shouts we had heard had come from, for the Indians knowing the river well, having been brought up on it, had kept a watch on us knowing that the current was bound to throw us there and were waiting for us in force at that place. As the canoe and the rafts which were ahead had struck where we afterwards struck, the Indians had shot arrows at them, and had wounded almost all the crews. Knowing that we were coming on behind they did not attack them as fiercely as they did us; the canoe had been unable to warn us of the danger as it was impossible for it to return against the stream. As we touched the bank the Indians raised a great shout and let fly such a shower of arrows and stones that we were all of us wounded: I myself was wounded in the head, the only part of me that was unprotected. It pleased God that the bank of the river was very steep, and it was owing to this that we were not captured, for those of the Indians who tried to jump down into the raft and boat did not jump straight, and as it was dark they fell into the river and I doubt if any of them were saved. The current carried us away from them so fast that in a short time we could hardly hear their cries; thus we travelled on

all night without more happening than a few shouts from canoes some distance off and an occasional cry from the banks of the river, for both banks are inhabited and there are beautiful orchards of cacao and other fruit trees.

At dawn we were five leagues from the mouth of the river where it opens into the lake where the launch was waiting for us, and we reached it that same day at midday, so that in one whole day and one night we travelled twenty long leagues down that river. When we began to unload the rafts, so as to store the provisions in the launch, we found that nearly all the provisions were damp, and, knowing that if they were not dried they would all be spoiled and all our labour lost, I had all that was dry picked out and stored on board the launch and placed what was damp in the two boats and two canoes and sent it as quickly as possible to the pueblo to have it dried there, for around the lake there was no place where it could have been dried owing to the inundations.

So the boats and canoes set off and I ordered them to be brought back as soon as possible to help me to carry my people, for the launch and the one canoc which was left were not able to hold them all. When the boats and canoes had departed I set sail, and went to the place where I was to meet those who were coming overland. On arrival there I waited three days, and at the end of that time they arrived all well with the exception of one Spaniard who, they said, had eaten certain herbs on the way and had died suddenly; they brought one Indian with them, who had been captured as he walked unsuspectingly into the pueblo where I had left them. As he differed from the people of that land both in speech and in dress, I questioned him partly by signs and partly through one of the Indian prisoners who understood him, and he said that he was a native of Teculutlan. When I heard the name of that pueblo it seemed to me that I had heard it before, and when I returned to the pueblo I looked up certain memoranda which I had with me and I found that it was true that I had heard the name mentioned, and it seems that from the place which I had reached to the South Sea, where I had stationed Pedro de Alvarado, there would not be more than seventy eight leagues to travel. According to these memoranda it would appear that a Spaniard from Pedro de Alvarado's company had been in that pueblo of Teculutlan, and this was confirmed by the Indian. I was delighted to know about that route.

When all the men had arrived, as the boats had not yet returned and we were eating up the small amount of food which had been kept dry, we all got on board the launch with much difficulty—for there was not room for all of us—with the idea of going across to the pueblo where we had first landed, for we had left the maize plants there with the grains well formed and as we had been away for twenty five days we expected to find much of it ready for use; and so it proved. As we were going along one morning in the middle of the lake we saw the boats coming, and so we went to the pueblo altogether. As soon as we touched land the whole of my party, Spaniards as well as friendly Indians and more than forty Indian prisoners, went together to the pueblo. There we found excellent maize plantations and much of the grain ripe, and no one there to defend it, so Christians and Indians every one of them made three journeys that day as the distance was short, and thus I loaded the launch and the boats and set off for the pueblo. I left behind me all my people to carry maize, and soon after sent back to them the two boats and one other which had been taken from a ship which had been lost on the coast while on its way to New Spain, and four canoes. All my people came back in them and brought much grain; this was such a great help to us that it repaid all the labour that it had cost, for had it not been for this maize we should without doubt all have died of hunger.

I had all the provisions put on board ship and at once embarked myself with all the people in the pueblo, that is those of Gil Gonzalez and those who had remained of my own company, and set sail on the — day of the month of —, and went to the port in the Bay of San Andrés.¹ First of all putting on shore on a point of land all the men who could walk, and two horses which I had brought with me in the ship, so that they could go by land by a road already known to us to the said port and bay, where we should find or await the people who were to come from Naco; it would have been impossible for these men and horses to have been taken in the ships without adding to the danger, for we were already too heavily laden. I sent a boat along the coast to ferry them across certain rivers which they would have to pass on the way. When I arrived at the port I found that the men

¹ Puerto Caballos.

from Naco had arrived there two days before me, and from them I learnt that all the others were well, and that they were fully supplied with maize, red peppers, and many fruits of the land, but that they had no meat or salt, and had not seen such things for two months.

I stayed at this port for twenty days, trying to arrange for the future of the people at Naco and looking for a site for a town, as this is the best port in all the known coast of Tierra-firme from the Gulf of Pearls to Florida, and it pleased God that I should find a good and suitable site. I had the streams examined, and though ill prepared for the task we found good samples of gold in a stream about two leagues from the site of the town. On account of this discovery, and because there was such a beautiful harbour and such a good and well peopled neighbourhood, it seemed to me that a settlement there would be of great service to your Majesty, so I sent to Naco where the people were, to know if any of them would like to settle at San Andrés, and as the land is good about fifty of them were willing, the majority being those who came in my company. So in your Majesty's name I founded here a town, and as the day on which we began to fell the trees was the feast of the nativity of Our Lady I gave that name to the town, and I also appointed Alcaldes and Regidores, and I left them clergy and church ornaments, and all that is necessary for the celebration of mass. I also left mechanics, such as a blacksmith with a very good forge, a carpenter, a shipwright, a barber and a tailor. There were amongst these settlers twenty horsemen and a few crossbowmen, and I left them some artillery and powder.

When first I arrived at this pueblo I heard from the Spaniards who had come from Naco that the natives of that pueblo and of the neighbouring pueblos were somewhat disturbed, and had left their houses for the hills and forests, and that although some of them had been reasoned with they refused to be pacified from fear of the treatment that they had received at the hands of the followers of Gil González and Cristóbal de Olid. I wrote to the Captain in charge there and told him to do all that he could to capture some of the natives by whatever means he could devise, and to send them to me so that I could speak to them and reassure them. This he did, and he sent me certain natives whom he had captured during an expedition

which he had undertaken, and I talked to them and gained their confidence, and let them talk with some of the native Chiefs from Mexico whom I had brought with me. These Chiefs told them who I was, what I had done in their country, and what good treatment they had received from me when once we were friends, and how they were protected and governed in justice—they and their property, their wives and children—and the punishment that those received who rebelled against the service of your Majesty, and many other things which they told them. After this they regained confidence, although they still told me that they had some fear that they were not being told the truth, for those Captains who had come in advance of me had told them the same things and more to the same effect, and that they had lied to them and had carried off their women whom they had sent to them to make bread, and that the men who accompanied them had been forced to carry loads, and they believed that I would do the same. Nevertheless, with the assurances which the Mexicans and the Interpreter whom I had with me gave them, and seeing those of my company happy and well treated, they were somewhat reassured. I sent them off to speak to the Chiefs and people of the pueblos, and in a few days the Captain at Naco wrote to me that some of the neighbouring pueblos had become peaceful, particularly the chief pueblos which are : Naco, where the Spaniards are residing, Quimiztlan, Sula, and Tholoma [Cheloma]—the smallest of these has more than two thousand houses—and other villages which were subject to them; and that the envoys said that the whole country would soon be at peace, for they had sent messengers to pacify the people, telling them of my arrival among them and all that I had said to them, and also what they had heard from the natives of Mexico; they added that they greatly desired that I would go to Naco, as my arrival there would give confidence to the people. This I would have done with good will, had it not been very necessary for me to continue my journey in order to arrange that which I shall explain to your Majesty in the following chapter.

When, Invincible Cæsar, I arrived at the pueblo of Nito, where I found the followers of Gil Gonzalez de Ávila abandoned and starving, I learnt from them that Francisco de las Casas, whom I had sent to find out about Cristóbal de Olid as I have already told your Majesty elsewhere, had left at a port which the pilots

call the Port of Honduras,¹ sixty leagues further down the coast, some Spaniards who had settled there, and soon after I arrived at this pueblo and bay of San Andrés, where there is founded in your Majesty's name the town of "La Natividad de Nuestra Señora," and whilst I was detained there, founding and settling the town, and arranging the affairs of the Captain and people who are settled at Naco, and deciding what should be done for the pacification and safety of the neighbourhood, I sent the ship, which I had purchased, to this Port of Honduras with orders to find out about the settlers there and to return with such information as could be obtained. I had already finished the arrangement of affairs when the vessel returned, and there came in her the Procurator of the town and one of the Regidores, and they begged me fervently to go to their assistance as they were in the greatest distress because the Captain whom Francisco de Las Casas had left with them, and an Alcalde also appointed by him, had gone off in a ship and taken with them fifty men out of the one hundred and ten settlers, and that from those left behind they had carried off all arms, tools, and almost everything that they possessed, so that they were in daily terror lest the Indians might massacre them or that they would be starved to death, as they had now no means of procuring food. They told me that a settler from the Island of Hispaniola called the Bachelor Pedro Moreno had brought a ship to them and they had prayed him to assist them, but this he would not do, as I learnt more fully when I went to their town. In order to put these matters right I embarked in the ships with the remainder of the sick, for some had already died, so as to get them out of the country, and later on I sent them to the Islands and to New Spain. I took with me some of my servants and I ordered twenty horsemen and ten crossbowmen to go by land, for I knew that the road was good, although there were some rivers which had to be crossed on the way. I was nine days making the passage, for we had some changes of weather, and on letting go the anchor in this Port of Honduras I got into a boat with two friars of the Order of Saint Francis, whom I have always taken with me, and ten of my servants, and went ashore. All the people of the pueblo were in the plaza waiting for me, and when I came near they all ran down into the water and

¹ Trujillo.

carried me ashore from the boat, showing in every way the greatest delight at my arrival. We then went together to the pueblo and to the church which they had built, and, after having returned thanks to God, the people asked me to be seated as they wished to give me an account of all that had happened, for they thought that I might be angry on account of some evil stories which had been told me, and they wished me to know the truth before I passed judgment upon them. I did as I was asked, and the priest whom they had chosen as spokesman made the following speech:—"Sir, you already know how all or the greater number of those present were sent from New Spain with your Captain Cristóbal de Olid to settle this country in the name of his Majesty, and to all of us you gave orders that we should obey this same Cristóbal de Olid as we would yourself in all matters which he should command us to do. So we set out with him for the Island of Cuba to procure some provisions and horses which we needed. On arriving at Havana, which is a port of that Island, letters were written to Diego Velásquez and the officials of his Majesty who reside in the Island, and who sent us some men.

"After taking in all the supplies needful, which were furnished us very plentifully by your servant Alonzo de Contreras, we set out and continued our journey. Passing over certain things, too long to relate, which happened on the way, we arrived on this coast 14 leagues below Puerto Caballos, and as soon as we landed the said Cristóbal de Olid took possession on behalf of your Excellency in the name of his Majesty, and founded a town with the Alcaldes and Regidores who came from New Spain, and did certain acts respecting the possession and peopling of the town, all in your Honour's name and as your Captain and Lieutenant. A few days later he joined himself with some servants of Diego Velásquez, who had come with him, and went through certain formalities which showed disobedience to your Honour, and although this seemed wrong to some or rather the majority of us we did not venture to oppose it, as we were threatened with the gallows. On the contrary we consented to all that he wished, and even some relations and servants of your Honour who lived with him did the same, for they did not dare to do otherwise than to comply. When this was done, as he knew that certain followers of Gil González de Ávila had to pass by the place we

were in (this he knew from six messengers whom he had captured) he stationed himself at a ford in the river where they had to pass so as to take them prisoners, and he stayed there several days waiting for them. As however they did not come he left a detachment there under a Maestro de Campo, and he himself returned to the town and began to get ready two caravels which he had there, and also to place on board them artillery and ammunition so as to make a descent on a Spanish town which Gil González de Ávila had founded further up the coast. While he was getting this expedition in readiness Francisco de las Casas arrived with two ships, and as soon as Cristóbal de Olid knew who it was, he ordered his two ships to fire at him, and although the said Francisco de las Casas dropped his anchor and hoisted his flags of peace and cried out saying that he came from your Honour, Cristóbal de Olid told them not to cease firing, and ten or twelve more shots were fired, one of which struck the side of Francisco's ship and went right through it. When Las Casas saw these evil intentions and knew that the suspicion that he had of Cristóbal de Olid was true, he got out and manned his boats and began to make play with his guns, and captured the two caravels with all their guns, and the crews fled to the shore. As soon as his vessels were taken Cristóbal de Olid began to propose terms of peace, not with any intention of carrying them out but to gain time for the arrival of the men whom he had left posted in the hope of capturing the followers of Gil González, and he thought by so doing to deceive Las Casas, who with good will did all that was asked of him. Thus he went on treating with Las Casas without anything being settled until a severe gale began to blow, and as there was no harbour and only a rough coast the ships of Las Casas went ashore and thirty men were drowned and all the cargo lost.

"Francisco de las Casas and all that remained of his followers escaped naked, and so buffeted by the sea that they could hardly stand. Cristóbal de Olid took them all prisoners, and before he would allow them to enter the pueblo, he made them all swear on the Evangelists that they would obey him, and acknowledge him as their Captain, and never rebel against him. Close on this came the news that his Maestro de Campo had captured fifty seven of Gil González's men under an Alcaide Mayor, and that later on he had released them, they going in one direction and he in

another. Olid was greatly angered at this and at once went inland to the town of Naco, which he had already visited, taking Francisco de las Casas along with him and also some of those who had been captured with him. The remainder he left behind in that town with a Lieutenant and an Alcaide. Many times Francisco de las Casas begged Olid in the presence of us all to allow him to go and join your Honour and to give an account of all that had happened, or, if he would not permit him to go, that he would take good care of him and not trust him not to escape; Olid would however never give him leave to go. Shortly afterwards Olid heard that Gil González de Ávila was at a port called Tholoma attended by only a few men, so he sent some men there who fell upon Gil González by night and captured him and all the men with him, and brought them in as prisoners. He held both these Captains prisoners for many days without releasing them, although they often begged to be released, and he made all the followers of Gil González swear to acknowledge him as their Captain in the same way that he had done with those of Francisco de las Casas. Many times after the said Gil González was captured, Francisco de las Casas in the presence of all of us would beg Olid to release them, and said that if he would not do so he should be on his guard against them, for they would certainly kill him; he would not however let them go.

"At last, when Olid's tyranny was felt by all, these three Captains being together one night in a room discussing certain matters, with many people about them, Francisco de las Casas seized Olid by the beard, and thrust at him with a pen knife which he had in his hand—for he had been walking up and down cutting his nails and he had no other weapon—crying out "One cannot suffer this tyranny any longer" then Gil González and other servants of your Honour also fell on him and seizing the arms of his guard they wounded him, and the Captain of the Guard, the Alferez, the Maestro de Campo, and others who ran to his assistance; and they finally captured them all and took away their arms without any one being killed. Cristóbal de Olid escaped in the tumult and ran away and hid himself.

"Within two hours the two Captains had all of Olid's principal followers in custody, and the rest of the people pacified. It was then announced by the voice of the crier that whoever knew where Cristóbal de Olid lay hid should come and tell it, under

pain of death. The Captains soon found out where he lay concealed and seized him and placed him under guard. The following morning they put him on his trial and the two Captains together condemned him to death, and the sentence was carried out by striking off his head.

"The people were well pleased to regain their liberty, and the Captains issued a proclamation to the effect that all those who wished to stay and settle in the land should say so, and that likewise those who wished to go and settle in other parts should make known their wishes. It was found that one hundred and ten men were willing to settle on the land, and that the remainder said they preferred to accompany Francisco de las Casas and Gil González, who were going to seek your Honour. Those who chose to remain are those who now live in this town, and among us there were twenty horsemen. Francisco de las Casas gave us everything in which we stood in need and appointed a Captain over us, and told us to come to this coast to form a settlement for your Honour in his Majesty's name. He also appointed Alcaldes and Regidores, a Notary, a Procurator of the Town Council, and an Alguacil. He told us to name the town Trujillo and he promised us, and gave us his word of honour as a gentleman, that he would see to it that your Honour before long should add other settlers to our number, and that you would supply us with arms, horses, stores, and all that was necessary for the pacification of the country. He left with us two interpreters, one an Indian woman and the other a Spaniard who knew the language well. So we parted from him to come and do what he had told us to do.

"Francisco de las Casas then despatched a brigantine to inform your Honour as quickly as possible of what had been done, for the news could be carried most rapidly by sea and therefore your Honour would succour us with less delay. When we arrived at the Port of San Andrés or Caballos we found a caravel which had come from the Islands, and as it did not seem to us that that port was a suitable place for a settlement, and as we had received information about the Port of Trujillo, we made arrangements with the caravel to carry our baggage, and we placed everything on board and the Captain and forty men embarked in her, and all the horsemen and others of our party remained on shore with only the clothes which we had on, so as to travel lightly and

freely in case anything should happen to us on the way. The Captain delegated his authority to one of the Alcaldes, the same who is now present, and told us to obey him during the time that we were separated, for the other Alcaide went with the Captain in the caravel. So we parted from each other with the intention of meeting at this port. On the road we had some encounters with the natives, who killed two of the Spaniards and some of the Indians in our service. When we arrived at this Port ourselves, worn out and with our horses unshod, but happy at the thought that we should find our Captain, arms, and the baggage which we had sent in the caravel, we found absolutely nothing. We were in despair at thus finding ourselves without clothes, arms, or horseshoes, for the Captain had taken them all in the caravel and we were in the most desperate position, not knowing what to do. Finally we agreed to wait for succour from your Honour, for we felt sure that it would come. So we founded our town and took possession of the land for your Honour in the name of his Majesty. The foundation of the town was made by an official act before the Notary of the Cabildo, as your Honour can verify.

“Five or six days later at the break of day we descried a caravel anchored off the port at a distance of about two leagues, and an Alguacil went off at once in a canoe to find out what caravel it was. He brought us back news that it was under the command of the Bachelor Pedro Moreno, a resident of Hispaniola who came to these parts under the orders of the judges who live in that Island, to enquire into certain matters between Cristóbal de Olid and Gil González de Ávila, and that he had brought arms and plentiful supplies in the caravel, all of which belonged to his Majesty. We were all delighted at this news and gave thanks to God, thinking that we were saved from our perils. The Alcaide, Regidores, and some of the settlers set out at once for the caravel, to tell of our necessities and to beg that we might be supplied with what was needful. As soon as they arrived the people of the caravel armed themselves and would not allow any one of us to go on board; the utmost that they would allow was that four or five of us should go on board without arms and it was thus that they went. Before anything else they announced that we were settled here by your Honour in the name of his Majesty, but as our Captain had gone off in a caravel with all

that we possessed we were in dire need of food, arms, and horse-shoes, as well as of clothes and other things, and that God seemed to have sent them here to our assistance as what they had on board belonged to his Majesty, and we begged and prayed them to succour us as that would be doing his Majesty a service, and besides we would undertake to pay for all that they gave to us.

“Pedro Moreno replied that he had not come here to succour us nor would he give us of what he possessed unless we paid him at once in gold, or gave natives of the land as slaves in exchange. Two merchants who had come in the ship with him, and a certain Gaspar Troche, an inhabitant of the Island of San Juan, told him that he ought to give us all that we asked for and that they would undertake to repay him at a fixed date what he might demand up to five ~~or~~ six hundred Castellanos; that he knew that they were good for the money and that they wished to do this as a service to his Majesty, and that they knew for certain that your Honour would repay them, and would be very grateful to them as well. Not even after this would Moreno let us have anything, on the contrary he dismissed us saying that he wanted to go on his way and turned us out of the caravel. He sent after us a certain Juan Ruano whom he had brought with him, a man who had been the chief factor in the treason of Cristóbal de Olid: this man spoke secretly to the Alcaide and Regidores and to some of us, and said to us that if we would do what he told us he would so manage that the Bachelor would give us all that we needed, and would so arrange with the Judges who reside in Hispaniola that we should pay nothing for what was given us; and that he would return to Hispaniola and arrange with the Judges to supply us with men, horses, arms, food, and everything that was needed, and that the said Bachelor would return with it all as soon as possible and with a commission, from the Judges, as our Captain. On our asking what it was that we were to do, he answered that the first thing of all was that we should refill the Royal offices which were held by the Alcaide, Regidores, Treasurer, Accountant, and Veedor, as they had been filled by men appointed by your Honour, and that we should ask the Bachelor to make him, Juan Ruano, our Captain, and that we should ask to be placed under the authority of the Judges and not under that of your Honour; that we should draw up a petition and should swear to obey him,

Juan Ruano, as our Captain; and that if any messengers (orders came from your Honour we would not obey them, and force were employed that we should use arms to resist it.

"We answered that we could not do these things as we had already sworn to do otherwise, and that we were here as his Majesty's subjects in the name of your Honour as his Majesty Captain and Governor, and that we could not do otherwise. The Juan Ruano told us that we must either do as he wished or be left to die, for if we did not comply with his wishes the Bachelor would not give us so much as a cup of water, and that we might be quite sure that when he knew that we would not comply with his wishes he would go away and leave us to perish, and on this account he advised us to give the matter our full consideration.

"So we again consulted together and, forced by our dire necessity, we agreed to do all that he asked so as to escape starvation or massacre by the Indians, being as we were unarmed. So we answered Juan Ruano that we were content to do all that he asked. On this he returned to the caravel and the Bachelor came ashore with many armed men, and the said Juan Ruano had the petition drawn up in which we begged him to be our Captain, and the majority of us signed it and took the oath, and the Alcaldes, Regidores, Treasurer, Accountant, and Veedor laid down their offices. The name was then taken from the town and it was renamed "Ascension," and certain acts were performed placing us under the judges instead of under your Honour, and then we were given all that we needed. Pedro Moreno then made an expedition and captured some Indians, whom he branded as slaves and carried them off with him, not even paying the Royal fifth due to his Majesty. He said that no Treasurer, Accountant, or Veedor need be appointed, to collect the Royal dues, except Juan Ruano, whom he left with us as our Captain, and who would receive them all himself without any necessity for book accounts or explanations. So Pedro Moreno departed leaving the said Juan Ruano as our Captain, and leaving us a certain form of injunction to be issued if any of your Honour's people should arrive, and promising us that he would speedily return with such a force that none would be able to resist him.

"After he had gone away we, seeing that what had been done was not to the advantage of his Majesty and would only lead to

fresh scandals, took the said Juan Ruano prisoner and sent him to the Islands, and the Alcaide and Regidores took up their offices as before and we have been and still are under the authority of your Honour in his Majesty's name, and we beg you, Sir, to pardon us our deeds in the time of Cristóbal de Olid,*for then as on this other occasion we were compelled by force."

I replied to them that I pardoned in your Majesty's name all past acts under Cristóbal de Olid, and that in what they had done since they were not to blame, for they had been forced to it by necessity; but that from this time on they must not be the authors of such like occurrences or scandals, as they were displeasing to your Majesty, and that in future they would be punished for them. In order that they might feel sure that I had forgotten and blotted out from my memory their past deeds, and so as to assure them that, if they behaved as loyal servants of your Majesty, I would help them as much as lay in my power, I would now in your Majesty's name confirm in their offices the Alcaide and municipal officers whom Francisco de las Casas as my lieutenant had appointed on my authority. At this they were well pleased, as it freed them from all fear of enquiry into their past faults.

As they assured me that the Bachelor Pedro Moreno with many men and with authority from the Judges of Hispaniola would soon arrive, I did not at this time wish to leave the Port to go into the interior of the country, but from information given me by the settlers I learnt that there were some native pueblos six or seven leagues distant from the Port, and that when the settlers had been hunting for food they had skirmished with the inhabitants of these pueblos. However it was thought that if an interpreter could be found, so that they could understand one another, these Indians would come to terms, for they showed signs of good will although the settlers had not behaved well to them; on the contrary they had captured some women and boys, whom the Bachelor Moreno had branded and carried off in his ship.

God knows how this weighed on me, for I knew the great harm that would follow from it, so by the ships which I despatched I wrote to those Judges and sent them full proof of all that the Bachelor had done in this town, and with it an official letter

requiring them in your Majesty's name to send me here the Bachelor as a prisoner well guarded, and with him all the natives of this land whom he had carried off as slaves ; for his acts were contrary to all law as they would see from the evidence that I was sending them. I do not know what they will do in this matter, but whatever their reply may be I will report it to your Majesty.

Two days after my arrival at this Port and town of Trujillo I sent a Spaniard who spoke the language, with three Indians of Culua, to those towns about which the settlers had spoken to me, and I impressed on the Spaniard and the Indians what to say to the Chief and people of those pueblos, and especially to make it known that it was I myself who had come to this country ; for owing to the considerable traffic which exists in many of these places they have heard of me and Mexican affairs through the traders. Among the first of the towns that they visited ~~was~~ one called Chapagua and another called Papayeca, seven leagues distant from Trujillo and two from the one to the other. They are towns of importance as has been proved since, for Papayeca has eighteen pueblos subject to it and Chapagua ten. It pleased our Lord who takes especial care to guide your Majesty's officers, as we learn by experience every day, that the natives listened to the embassy with much attention, and sent back with the messengers some of their own men to see for certain that what had been told them was true. When they came I gave them a good reception and a few trifling presents, and I spoke to them through the interpreter whom I had brought with me, for the language of Culua and that spoken here were almost the same, differing only in a few words and in pronunciation. I confirmed what had been said to them on my behalf, and told them other things which it seemed to me would give them confidence, and I begged them to ask their chiefs to come and see me ; they left me well contented.

Five days later there came to me on behalf of the people of Chapagua a person of importance named Montamal, Chief of one of the pueblos subject to Chapagua named Telica, and on behalf of the people of Papayeca came the chief of another subject pueblo named Cecoatl, and some of its inhabitants, and they brought supplies of maize, poultry, and fruit, and told me that they came on behalf of their Chief to learn what I wanted and the cause of my coming to their country ; and they added that the Chiefs would

not come to see me as they were in fear of being carried off in the ships—a thing which had happened to those who were captured by the first Christians who came here. I told them how much I regretted that act, and that they might feel sure from now on no harm should be done to them; on the contrary I would send and seek for those who had been carried away and would have them brought back. Pray God that those lawyers will not make me break my word, but I am in great fear that they will not send them back but will find some excuse for acquitting the said Bachelor Moreno, who carried them into slavery, of all blame; for I cannot believe that anything which he did here was done without instructions from them and not at their commands. In reply to what the messengers had asked me regarding the cause of my coming to this land, I told them that I believed they had already heard how eight years ago I had come to the Province of Culua, and how Montezuma, who was at that time Lord of the great City of Tenochtitlan and of all the country round, was informed by me that I had been sent by your Majesty, to whom all the world was subject, to visit and examine these countries in your Excellency's Royal name, and had at once given me a good reception and had recognised what was due to your Greatness, and that all the other chiefs in the land had done the same. I also gave them an account of all the other things which had happened in Mexico, such as seemed to me to be appropriate to the occasion, and I told them that I had received your Majesty's commands to visit and examine the whole country, omitting none of it, and also to establish towns of Christians to instruct them how they should order their lives, both for the preservation of their persons and property, and for the salvation of their souls; and that this was the reason of my coming, and that they might feel sure that great advantages and no harm would arise from it. That those who were obedient to your Majesty's Royal commands would be well treated and maintained in justice, but that those who rebelled against them would be chastised. I told them much more to the same effect, but so as not to trouble your Majesty with too long a letter, and as it is not of great importance, I will not relate it here. I gave as presents to the messengers some small articles which they think much of, although they are of little value to us, and they went off very happily and returned some days afterwards, as I had asked

them to do, with supplies of food and men to fell trees on the site of the town, for it was covered with thick forest. The Chiefs however did not come to see me, but I took no notice of this as though it was a matter of no importance, but I asked them to send messages to all the neighbouring pueblos to report what I had said to them and to ask them on my behalf to come and help to build the town. This they did, so that in a few days' time people from fifteen or sixteen pueblos arrived, or rather I should say from fifteen or sixteen lordships in the neighbourhood. All showed signs of good will and offered themselves as subjects and vassals to your highness, and they came in sufficient numbers both to supply us with food on which we could live until the ships which I had sent to the islands could bring us stores, and to clear the forest from the site of the town.

At this time I despatched three ships and later on I bought and despatched another which had arrived in Port, and in them I sent all the sick and wounded who had remained alive. One of these ships sailed for the ports of New Spain, and I wrote fully to your Majesty's officers whom I had left there in my place, and to all the councils giving them an account of what I had done here and telling them how necessary it was for me to stay for some time longer in these parts; begging them to be steadfast in their duty and giving my advice about certain matters where it was needed. I gave orders that this vessel should go by way of the Island of Cosumel and should bring thence some Spaniards whom a certain Valenzuela, who had made off with the ship and robbed the town which Cristóbal de Olid had first founded, had left abandoned there, and were said to be more than sixty persons. The other ship which I bought later [in a small bay near the town] I sent to the Island of Cuba to the town of Trinidad, to bring meat, horses and men and to return as soon as possible. The other vessel I sent to the Island of Jamaica for the same purpose. The caravel and the launch which I built I sent to the Island of Hispaniola, with a servant of mine in it by whom I wrote to your Majesty and to the lawyers who live there. As it afterwards appeared not one of these vessels made the voyage which I had ordered: the ship which should have gone to Trinidad in Cuba went to the port of Guaniguanico and they had to send fifty leagues by land to the town of Havana to look for cargo. It was the first to return, and when it arrived it brought me news

that the ship which had gone to New Spain had taken the people from the Island of Cosumel and had afterwards gone ashore on the Island of Cuba at the point called San Antonio or Corientes ; everything on board had been lost and the Captain, a cousin of mine named Avalos, and two Franciscan friars who had been with me, and over thirty other persons whose names they brought me, had been drowned. Those who escaped to land wandered about in the forest not knowing whither they were going, and almost all had died of hunger, so that out of more than eighty persons only fifteen remained alive. By good fortune the survivors had reached the port of Guaniguanico, where the other ship of mine was at anchor, and where there was a farm of a settler from Havana, whence my ships were being loaded ; for there were plentiful supplies there, and there those who had survived were cared for. God ~~shows~~ how deeply I felt this loss, for besides losing kindred and servants I lost many corselets, guns, and crossbows, not to mention other arms which were in the ship. I regretted above all that my despatches had not reached their destination, and this your Majesty will understand later on. The other ship which should have gone to Jamaica, and that which should have gone to Hispaniola, got to Trinidad in the Island of Cuba and there they found the Licentiate Alonzo de Zuazo whom I had left as a Justicia Mayor, and one of the Governors of New Spain. There was also in the port a ship which the lawyers who reside in Hispaniola had despatched to New Spain to verify the news of my death which was current there and when the Captain of this ship heard about me he changed his destination and brought me thirty two horses, some saddlery, and some stores of food, thinking to sell them better where I was living. By this ship the Licentiate Alonzo de Zuazo wrote to tell me that there were many scandals and disturbances among the officials of your Majesty in New Spain, and that the report had been spread abroad that I was dead ; that two of the officials had proclaimed themselves Governors and had made the people swear allegiance to them, and had taken the same Licentiate Alonzo de Zuazo and two other officials prisoners, as well as Rodrigo de Paz to whom I had left the charge of my house and estate, which they had plundered. That they had turned out of office the two judges whom I had appointed and installed others of their own party in their places, and he told me of many other things

which they had done, but it is a long story, and as I send your Majesty the letters in the original, so that you may see them, I will not repeat them here.

Your Majesty may imagine what I felt at hearing this news, especially at hearing how these people were requiting my services, robbing my house as a reward, even if it were true that I was dead. They even said to give colour to their acts that I owed your Majesty over sixty thousand gold dollars, and they know well that it is not the case; on the contrary I am owed more than one hundred and fifty thousand gold dollars which I have spent, and not spent amiss, in the service of your Majesty.

I at once began to consider how I could right this wrong. On the one hand it seemed to me that I had better put myself on board that ship and go and correct and punish such insolence, for all there seemed to think that when holding office abroad "*Si no hacen befa no portan penacho.*" Just in the same way another Captain whom the Governor Pedro Arias sent to Nicaragua also revolted from his obedience, as I will tell your Majesty more fully later on. On the other hand it grieved me to leave the country I was visiting in the circumstances then affecting it, for that would be to ensure its ruin, and I feel certain that your Majesty will draw great profit from it and that it will prove a second Culua, for I have received information of great and rich provinces under the rule of powerful Chiefs, especially of a province named Eneitapalan,¹ in another language called Xucutaco, which I have heard about for the last six years, and throughout my journey I have come in the direction in which it lies, and I now hear for certain that it is only eight or ten days' journey from the town of Trujillo, that is to say fifty or sixty leagues distant.

About this place there are such reports that one wonders at the stories told, even if two thirds of them be false, such as that it is much richer than Mexico and equals it in the grandeur of its pueblos and the number and civilization of its people. So, being in this state of perplexity, I bethought me that nothing could be well done and well planned if it is not done by the hand of the Doer and Planner of all things, so I ordered masses to be said and processions and other sacrifices to be made, praying God to

¹ Hueitapalan in other copies.

set me on the road which would lead best to his service. After this had continued for some days it seemed to me that I ought to postpone all else, and go to repair the damage which had been done. So I left in that town thirty five horsemen and fifty foot, and in charge of them as my lieutenant I left a cousin of mine named Hernando de Saavedra, brother of Juan de Avalos who died in the ship which was coming to this city. After giving him his instructions and preparing everything as well as I could for his government, and after saying farewell to those native chiefs who had come to visit me, I went on board the ship with my household servants and I sent to tell the people of Naco to go overland by the route which Francisco de las Casas had taken, that is by the South coast, so as to come out where Pedro de Alvarado is stationed, for that road was already well known and safe, and they were a large enough party to travel anywhere without danger. I sent to the other town of Natividad de Nuestra Señora instructions for the people there to follow them. After this I embarked in good weather but after having the last anchor weighed the breeze dropped so that we could not start.

Next morning news reached the ship that among the people left in the town there was some grumbling from which trouble might arise as soon as I had gone; so on this account and because it was not weather for sailing I went on shore again and made enquiries, and after I had punished some of the ringleaders everything settled down quietly. I was two days on shore as there was no wind to carry us out of the harbour, and on the third day, the weather being favourable, I went on board and set sail, and after sailing two leagues and doubling the point which runs out on one side of the harbour, the main yard broke and I was obliged to return to port for repairs. I was there another three days repairing and then set out again in very good weather, which continued for two nights and one day, but after making over fifty leagues we were struck by a heavy Norther, right in our teeth, which carried away the mizzen mast near the mast head, and we were compelled to run for port, which was done with much difficulty. On our arrival in port we all gave thanks to God, for it had seemed as though we must be lost.

I and all those with me arrived so worn out that some rest was

necessary, so while the weather was settling and the ship was being repaired I landed with all my people. Seeing that after going to sea three times in good weather I was each time turned back I began to think that it was not the will of God that I should leave this country, and I thought this the more because some of the Indians who had been peacefully disposed were now giving trouble. I therefore turned again and commended myself to God and ordered processions to be made and masses to be said, and I came to the conclusion that by sending in that ship, in which I had intended to go to New Spain, full powers from me to my cousin Francisco de las Casas, and by writing to the Councils and Officials of your Majesty reprimanding them for their mistakes, and also by sending some of the Indian Chiefs that were with me so that the natives might know for certain that I was not dead as had been reported, all might yet be set right, and an end put to the troubles which had begun in Mexico. I therefore made my arrangements but omitted to provide for many things which I should have provided for, had I known at that time of the loss of the first ship which I had despatched. These omissions were owing to my already having given very full instructions which should have been received many days before; in particular this was the case with regard to the despatch of ships to the South Sea, for which instructions had been sent in the ship which was lost. After sending off this ship to New Spain, as I was suffering from the hardships which I had endured at sea, and am suffering from them still, I was not able to make any journeys inland, and as I had also to await the arrival of the ships coming from the Islands and had many other matters to attend to, I sent the lieutenant, whom I had left in charge of the town, with thirty horsemen and some others on foot to make an expedition into the country. They travelled thirty five leagues from the town through a beautiful valley with many large pueblos in it, abounding in all the products of the country and well suited for rearing cattle and for the cultivation of all our own plants. They had no hostile encounters with the natives, and by talking to them through an interpreter and through those natives of the country who were already on friendly terms with us, they gained their goodwill, and more than twenty Chiefs of the principal pueblos came to visit me, and with every evidence of being well disposed offered themselves as subjects to your Highness, promising obedience to your

Royal commands; and these promises they have kept and still keep, and up to the day of my departure I was never without some of them in my company, as they were coming and going every day, bringing supplies of food and doing everything that we asked them to do. May it please God so to keep them that they may come to that state and condition which your Majesty desires and which I believe they will attain, for from such a good beginning one cannot look for a bad ending unless it should come from the fault of those who have charge of them.

The Province of Papayeca and that of Chapagua had been as I have said, the first to offer themselves for your Majesty's service and to become our friends nevertheless it was they who began to give trouble when I embarked; on my return they were somewhat scared, and I sent messengers to them to restore their confidence. Some of those of Chapagua came in, but they were not chiefs, and the women and children left their pueblos and carried off their property although some men were left behind and came to our town to work. I made many appeals to them to return to their own pueblos but they would never come, but answered saying "Not to day but to morrow." I managed to lay hands on their Chiefs, who are three in number, one called Thicohuytl, another called Poto, and the third Mendereto, and made them prisoners and gave them a certain time within which I told them that their people must leave the mountains and come back to their pueblos, and I made them understand that should they not do so they would be chastised as rebels. The people returned to their homes and I released the Chiefs, and now they are peaceably settled and work very well. The people of Papayeca never wished to come back, particularly their Chiefs, and all their people remained in the forest with them and left their pueblos desolate, and although many efforts were made to persuade them to do so they never cared to come under our rule. So I sent among them a company of horse and foot accompanied by many Indians who were natives of the country. One night they surprised one of the two Chiefs of the country, whose name was Pizacura, and took him prisoner. On my asking him why he continued hostile and did not wish to come under our rule, he said that he would have already come in had it not been for his companion named Mazatl, who had the larger following and who would not consent to it. He said that if we would free him he would act as

a spy and help us to capture Mazatl, and that if he were hanged the people would be pacified and return to their pueblos, for he could collect them if Mazatl were not there to oppose him. So he was released, and this was the cause of more harm as has since been found out. Certain friendly Indians, natives of that country, spied out the said Mazatl and guided some Spaniards to his hiding place, where they captured him: when Mazatl was told what his companion Pizacura had said of him, and was also told that within a certain named time his people must leave the mountains and return to live in their houses, he refused to accept any terms, so he was put on his trial and sentenced to death, which sentence was carried out on his person. It was a great lesson to the others, and at once some of the people from pueblos which were disposed to revolt returned to their houses, and there is now no pueblo which is not settled, with women and children living in it, except that of Papayeca, which has never been resettled. After Pizacura was released a suit was instituted against the tribe, and war was made on them and about a hundred prisoners was taken, who were enslaved, and among them Pizacura himself was captured. I did not wish to sentence him to death although, in accordance with the suit brought against him, I could have done so, I preferred to take him with me to the City of Tenochtitlan, together with two other Chiefs of other pueblos, which had been somewhat rebellious, in order that they might see how matters are managed in New Spain, and then to send them home again so that they might tell their countrymen how natives are treated there and how they serve us, so that they might follow their example. Pizacura died of an illness, but the other two Chiefs are well and I will send them home on the first opportunity. With the capture of this man and of another who seemed to be his natural heir, and with the punishment inflicted by enslaving over one hundred prisoners, all that Provincè was made secure, and when I left all the pueblos were inhabited, settled, and divided among the Spaniards, and appeared to serve them with good will.

At this time there arrived at that town of Trujillo a Captain and about twenty men, some of them belonging to the Company which I had left in Naco under Gonzalo de Sandoval, while the others were of the Company of Francisco Hernández, a Captain

whom Pedro Arias de Ávila, your Majesty's Governor, had sent to the Province of Nicaragua, from whom I learnt that there had arrived at Naco a Captain of the said Francisco Hernández with about forty men, both horse and foot, who were on their way to the port in the Bay of San Andrés to seek the Bachelor Pedro Moreno, whom the Judges who reside in the Island of Hispaniola had sent to these parts as I have already told your Majesty. It appears that Pedro Moreno had written to the said Francisco Hernández advising him to rebel against the Governor, as he had already done to the people who were left behind by Gil González and Francisco de las Casas, and that this Captain was coming to speak to him on behalf of the said Francisco Hernández, and to consult with him about shaking off his allegiance to the Governor and transferring it to the Judges who reside in the Island of Hispaniola; for so it appears from certain letters which they were carrying. I sent them back at once and wrote to Francisco Hernández and to all the people who were with him, and particularly to some of the Captains of his Company who were known to me, reprimanding them for their breach of faith and pointing out how that Bachelor had deceived them, and how badly your Majesty was served by such conduct, and other things which I thought proper to write to them in order to lead them away from the wrong path which they were taking. Because one of the reasons which they gave as warranting their proposal was that the said Pedro Arias de Ávila was so far away that to provide themselves with the necessaries of life was a great trouble and expense, and that they were still ill provided for and were always in great need of provisions and other things from Spain; and that from those ports which I had founded in your Majesty's name they could obtain them more easily; and that the Bachelor had written to them that he had left all that coast settled under the authority of the Judges and was coming back himself immediately with many men and plentiful supplies—I wrote to him that I would leave orders at those pueblos that they should be supplied with all the things that they might send for, and that they should be treated on a friendly footing in matters of business, and that one and all we were and are your Majesty's vassals and in your Royal service and that they were to understand that this offer was made on condition that they remained obedient to their Governor, as they

were bound to do, and on no other condition whatever. As they told me that at the present time their greatest want was shoes for their horses and tools for mining, I gave them two mules of my own laden with horseshoes and iron tools and then sent them off. When they arrived where Gonzalo de Sandoval was stationed he gave them two more mules of mine, laden with horseshoes which I had stored there.

As soon as these men had departed there came to me some natives of the Province of Huilacho, which is sixty five leagues from this town of Trujillo, from whom I had received messages some time before offering themselves as your Majesty's vassals. They told me that twenty horsemen and forty men on foot had arrived in their country with many Indians from other Provinces whom they brought as friends, and that they had received insults and damage at their hands, and that their wives, children, and property had been seized by them; and they prayed me to assist them as they had offered themselves as my friends, and I had promised to support and defend them against anyone that did them harm. Soon after this Hernando de Sandoval, my cousin, whom I had appointed my lieutenant in these parts, who was at that time pacifying the Province of Papayeca, sent me two men of the company against whom these Indians had come to lodge their complaint. They said they were coming at their Captain's orders to search for this town of Trujillo, and that the Indians had told them that it was near and that they could come without fear as all the country was at peace. From these men I learnt that they were of the Company of Francisco Hernández and that they came in search of this port, and that they had as Captain Gabriel de Rojas. I at once despatched with these two men, and the Indians who had come to complain, and an Alguacil with an order to the said Gabriel de Rojas to leave the Province at once, and to restore to the natives all the men, women, and goods, which had been taken from them, and in addition to this I wrote him a letter saying that if he were in need of anything he should let me know as I would willingly let him have it if I had it to give. When Gabriel de Rojas read the letter and received my orders he at once obeyed them and the natives of the Province became quite contented, although some time afterwards the same Indians returned to tell me that after the departure of the Alguacil whom I had sent with them

some of their people had been carried off as prisoners. I wrote again to Francisco Hernández offering, if it were in my power, to supply him with anything that he or his people were in need of—for I thought that that would be doing good service to your Majesty—and enjoining on him obedience to his Governor. I do not know what took place there later on, I only know from the Alguacil whom I sent there, and from those who went with him, that when they were all there together a letter reached Gabriel de Rojas from his Captain, Francisco Hernández, in which he begged him to join him in all haste, as there was much dissension among the men who had remained with him, and that two of his Captains had risen against him, one named Soto and the other Andrés Garabito, who said that they had risen against him because they knew that he wished to shake off his obedience to the Governor. Affairs were in such a condition that misfortune was bound to follow both to the Spaniards and to the Natives, and your Majesty can judge how great is the evil which follows from these discords, and how necessary it is to punish those who cause and promote them.

I wished to go at once to Nicaragua, hoping to put matters right, as it would have been a great service to your Majesty if I had been able to accomplish it, and as I was making my preparations, and having a road opened through a rather rough pass, the ship which I had sent to New Spain arrived at the Port of Trujillo, having on board a cousin of mine, a friar of the Order of San Francisco called Brother Diego Altamirano, from whom and from the letters which he brought me I heard of the many disturbances, scandals, and dissensions, which had occurred and were occurring among the officers of your Majesty whom I had left in my place, and of the great need that there was for my returning to put a stop to them. On this account I gave up my journey to Nicaragua and my return by the Southern coast, where I think that God and your Majesty might have been well served on account of the many and great Provinces which lie on the road, and although some of them are at peace they could have been better organized in your Majesty's service by my passing through them, especially those of Utatlan and Guatemala where Pedro de Alvarado is stationed, and where, since they rebelled against certain illtreatment which they received, they have never been pacified; on the contrary they have done and are doing

much damage to the Spaniards who are settled there and to the friendly Indians in the neighbourhood. It is a rough country and the people are numerous, brave, and cunning in warfare, and they have invented many methods both of offence and defence, such as pits and other ingenious devices for killing horses, and they have succeeded in killing many of them. So skilfully do they fight that although Pedro de Alvarado has made war on them, and is still waging it, with more than two hundred horsemen and five hundred foot soldiers and five thousand and at times as many as ten thousand friendly Indian allies, he has never been able to bring his foes into obedience to your Majesty and is not yet able to do so; on the contrary every day they fortify their positions more strongly and recruit their ranks with new comers. I believe however that, had God been willing I should go there, by persuasion or by some other method I could bring them to a right way of thinking, for in some Provinces which revolted on account of the illtreatment received during my absence, and against whose people over one hundred horse and three hundred foot with much artillery and a great number of Indian allies have been sent under the command of the Veedor, who was acting as Governor, nothing could be done; on the contrary ten or twelve Spaniards and many friendly Indians were killed and no good was effected. Yet on my sending a messenger to say that I was coming, when they heard news of my arrival, without the least delay the chief personages of the province which is called Coatlan came to see me and told me the cause of their rising which was quite a just one, for the Spaniards who held them in encomienda had burnt eight of their Chiefs, of whom five had died at once and the others a few days afterwards, and when the people demanded justice it was not given to them. I consoled them in a way which left them contented and they are now peaceably settled and render their services, as they did before I left Mexico, without fighting or any other risk. The same thing I think will happen to some other pueblos in the same condition in the Province of Coatzacoalcas, for on hearing of my return to this country they will become peaceable again without my even having to send a messenger to them.

Already most Catholic Lord, I have told your Majesty about certain Islands, which are opposite the Port of Honduras, called "Los Guanajos," and how some of them are deserted

because the fleets which have visited them have carried off many of the Natives as slaves, and how in some of them there still remain some Natives. Now I learnt that, from the Islands of Cuba and Jamaica, a new expedition was being prepared against them, to carry off the remainder of the Natives and to pillage and destroy them. In order to put a stop to this I sent a caravel to seek out the ships of this expedition at the Islands, and to order them in your Majesty's name not to proceed against or to do any harm to the Natives, as I intended to settle them peaceably and bring them under obedience to your Majesty; for by means of some of the Natives who had come over to live on the mainland I had come to an understanding with them. The caravel came upon one of the ships of the expedition commanded by Rodrigo de Merlo at one of the Islands called Huitila, and the Captain of the caravel brought him with him, and also his crew and all the people whom they had captured in the Island, to the place where I was living. I at once had the Natives carried back to the Islands where they had been captured, but I did not proceed against the Captain as he produced a licence for his proceedings signed by the Governor of the Island of Cuba; power to grant such licences having been given by the lawyers who reside in Hispaniola. So I dismissed him and his crew without other punishment than taking away from them the Natives whom they had captured for slaves in the Islands. The Captain and the greater number of those who came in his company remained as settlers in these towns, as the land seemed to them to be good.

When the Chiefs of those Islands knew of the good deed that I had done for them, and heard from the Natives of *Tierra-firme* the good treatment that I had accorded to them, they came to me and thanked me for my kindness and offered themselves as subjects and vassals of your Highness, and begged to know in which way they could serve you. In your Majesty's name I ordered them to plant many corn fields for in truth they can be of no use in any other way, and they carried to each Island a written notification for any Spaniards who might come there, in which I assured them in the name of your Majesty that they should not in any way be molested. The people begged me to send them some Spaniards, one to be stationed on each Island, but on account of my approaching departure I could not arrange

for this but left orders with my Lieutenant Hernando de Saavedra to see to it.

I embarked in the ship which had brought me the news from Mexico, and in it and in two other vessels which I had there I embarked some of those men whom I had brought in my company, amounting to twenty men and horses, and of the rest some of my followers remained as settlers in those towns and others were awaiting me on the road, believing that I would return by land. To them I sent orders that they should return to Mexico, telling them of my departure and of the cause of it. Up to the present they have not arrived but I have news of their coming.

Having settled matters in those towns which I had founded in your Majesty's name, with the greatest grief and regret at not being able to finish my work and leave them in a condition in which I should like to see them, on the 25th April I put out to sea with those three ships and the weather was so favourable that in four days I found myself within one hundred and fifty leagues of the Port of Chalchicuela. There a heavy gale struck us and we could make no headway; thinking that it would subside I kept the sea for a day and a night, but the weather was so bad that it began to damage the ships and I was obliged to bear away for the Island of Cuba, and in six days reached the Port of Havana, where I went ashore and was well received by the inhabitants of that town; for there were among them many of my old friends whom I knew when I was living in the Island.

As the ships in which we had come had suffered from the bad weather at sea it was necessary to overhaul them, and this detained me ten days. In order to hasten my journey I bought another ship which was in port being careened, and I left behind the ship in which I had come as it was leaking badly.

The day after my arrival at that port a ship came from New Spain and the next day another arrived and on the third day still another, and from them I learnt that the city had settled down into peace and tranquillity after the death of the Factor and Vedor, although I was told that there had been some riots for which the ringleaders had been punished. I was delighted to hear this news for I had been very much distressed at having to turn aside when on the way to Mexico and it had caused me much uneasiness.

From Havana I wrote a short letter to your Majesty and then put to sea on the 16th May, and I took with me about thirty natives of Mexico, whom the ships (which had arrived in Havana) had brought here secretly, and in eight days I arrived off the Port of Chalchicuela, but I could not go into harbour because of the change in the weather and so I anchored two leagues off the shore. Towards evening we set out in the ship's boats and in a brigantine which we had found abandoned at sea, and I got on shore that night and went on foot to the town of Medellin, four leagues from where we landed, without any one of the town knowing of our arrival. I went at once to the church to give thanks to God, and when this was known the townspeople came and rejoiced with me and I with them. That night I despatched messengers both to the City of Mexico and to all the towns in the land, telling them of my coming and arranging certain matters which it seemed to me would promote the service of your Majesty and the good of the country.

Resting from the fatigues of the journey I stayed in that town eleven days, and there came to me many of the Chiefs of pueblos and other natives of those parts, who expressed delight at my return, and then I set out for this City and was fifteen days on the road. All the way I received visits from large numbers of natives, some of whom came more than eighty leagues to see me, for all had couriers stationed at intervals on the road so as to be warned of my arrival and be awaiting me; so that they arrived very quickly from all parts and great distances to greet me, and they were moved to tears as I was also. They made many pitiful speeches, telling me of the troubles they had suffered in my absence and the illtreatment that they had received, so that it wrung the hearts of all those who heard them. As it would be difficult to give your Majesty an account of all that they told me, though some of the stories are well worthy of being written down, I will leave them to be told by word of mouth. When I arrived at the City, the Spanish settlers and the natives from all parts of the country who had come together received me with great signs of happiness and rejoicings, as though I had been their own father. Your Majesty's Treasurer and Accountant came out to meet me, with many people on horse and on foot in procession, showing the same good will as the others had done. Thus we proceeded to the church and monastery of

San Francisco to give thanks to God for having safely brought me through so many dangers and hardships to a haven of rest, and permitting me to see this land, which was torn by dissensions, restored to peace and order.

I stayed with the friars for six days, confessing my sins to God. Two days before leaving the monastery a messenger came from the town of Medellin to tell me that certain ships had arrived in port, and that it was said that on board of one of them there was a Judge of Enquiry who had come at your Majesty's commands. The messenger could tell me no more about the matter and I therefore thought that, hearing of the dissensions which had occurred amongst the officers whom I had left in charge of the country and not knowing of my return to Mexico, your Majesty had sent to enquire into matters. God knows how rejoiced I was to hear of it, for it would be most painful for me to be the judge in this case; for as I have myself suffered personally and my property has been destroyed by the acts of these tyrants, I believe that whatever judgment I should give would be thought by the evil-minded to be dictated by passion, which is a thing I most detest, although judging by my acts I could not be so much moved by passion as to make it possible for me to punish them in excess of their faults. On receipt of this news I at once despatched a messenger to the port to ascertain the truth, and to order the Lieutenant and Justices of the town of Medellin that, in whatever capacity that Judge might be coming, as he came at your Majesty's commands he should be properly received, and lodged and entertained in a house which I own in that town, whither I sent orders that everything should be put at the disposal of the Judge and of his followers; but I afterwards learnt that he did not wish to receive such attentions.

The day after the despatch of this messenger was the feast of St John, and as we were keeping holiday, watching bullfights jousting with reeds, and [holding] other games, another messenger arrived, bringing me a message from the said Judge and one from your Sacred Majesty, from which I learnt the reason of his coming and how your Sacred Majesty had sent him to make enquiry into my acts during the time that your Majesty had been trusting me with the government of this country. At this I was truly delighted, both at the great mercy vouchsafed to

me by your Sacred Majesty wishing to be informed of my services and my faults, and at the benignity with which your Highness let me know in your letter your Royal intention and willingness to grant me grace, for the one and the other I kiss the royal feet of your Catholic Majesty a hundred thousand times, and may it please God to turn to His use the great honour done me, and that I may deserve even a small part of the mercies granted me in that your Catholic Majesty should know my wishes, for the fact that you knew my wishes would in itself be to me no small reward.

In the letter that Louis Ponce, Judge of Residencia, wrote to me, he told me that he was leaving for this City immediately, and as there are two principal roads by which it can be approached, and he did not tell me in his letter by which he would come, I at once sent out along each of the roads servants of mine to attend on him, accompany him, and show him the way. But so great was the haste with which Louis Ponce travelled that although I made these arrangements with all speed my servants met him only twenty leagues from the City, and although my messengers say that he expressed pleasure at seeing them he would not accept their services. I regretted his not accepting them for he had real need of them on account of the rapidity with which he travelled; on the other hand I was pleased, for it showed him to be a just man who wished to exercise his office in an upright manner, and as he was coming to take my Residencia did not wish to give any cause for suspicions. Arriving within two leagues of the City he slept there that night, and I made preparations for his reception on the following morning. He sent to tell me that I should not come out to meet him in the morning as he wished to stay there to dine; he asked me to send him a chaplain to say mass. This I did, but suspecting (as it proved to be) an excuse to avoid a public reception I was on my guard, but he was up so early in the morning that although I wasted no time I met him when he was already within the City, and we went together to the monastery of San Francisco to hear mass.

When mass was over I told him that if he would like to exhibit his commission he could do so, for all the Municipal Officers of the City were there present with me, as were also your Majesty's Treasurer and Accountant. However he did not wish to present

his commission, saying that he would defer it to another day, and so it happened that the next day in the morning we all came together in the Cathedral, all the Municipal Officers, your Majesty's Officers, and myself, and there the commission was presented and by me and by all the officials was accepted, kissed, and placed on our heads as orders of our King and natural Chief, to be obeyed and fulfilled in their entirety and by all, as your Sacred Majesty sent them to us to be treated. Then all the wands of office were laid down and all the other formalities complied with, as your Catholic Majesty may learn from the detailed account sent by the Notary of the Cabildo who kept the record. Then my "residencia" was publicly proclaimed in the Market Square and I remained seventeen days in the City without any questions being asked me, and during this time the said Louis Ponce, Judge of Residencia, fell ill and all those who came in the fleet with him and God willed that he should die of that disease, and more than thirty more of those who came in the fleet with him, among them two Friars of the Order of Santo Domingo who accompanied him, and at the present time there are still many people ill and in danger of death, for this disease which they brought with them seems almost like the plague. Some of the people living here have caught it and two of them have died, and there are many more who have not yet recovered.

As soon as the said Louis Ponce departed this life he was buried with all the solemnity and honour due to an Envoy sent by your Majesty. Then the municipality of this city and the deputies from all the towns who were here present, most earnestly requested me, on behalf of your Catholic Majesty, to resume charge of the Government and the Administration of Justice as I had before held it under your Majesty's command and Royal instruction; giving me their reasons for wishing it and pointing out the inconvenience which would arise from my not accepting it. All of this your Sacred Majesty can see from the copy of the proceedings which accompanies this letter. I answered, excusing myself from the task, as will be seen in the same copy. Later on other petitions were made to me and there were pointed out to me other and more pressing difficulties which would arise if I did not accept the office. Against all I have kept my resolve up to the present, and have not accepted office, although it has not escaped my observation that the course that I am following presents some

difficulties. Wishing however that your Majesty should feel quite certain of honesty and fidelity in your Service, and holding this to be the most important thing of all—for if this is not believed of me the good things of this world would be worthless to me, and I should prefer to die—I have subordinated all to this end, and have given all possible support to maintain in office one Márcos de Aguilar whom the said Licenciado Louis Ponce had appointed his Chief Alcalde, and I have begged him to continue my Residencia to the end. This however he does not wish to do, saying that he has no authority to do so, which has caused me great grief, for it is not without sufficient reason that I have the greatest desire that your Majesty should be fully informed of my services and my faults, and so sure am I that on this account your Catholic Majesty will grant me great and increasing favour, not judging from the little that my talents are capable of accomplishing, but from the much that your Majesty is bound to give to one who has served you with the fidelity with which I have served you.

I therefore humbly beseech your Majesty, with all the earnestness of which I am capable, not to let this matter remain in suspense, but that the evil and the good of my services should be clearly declared and made public, for as this is a point of honour, to reach which I have suffered great hardships and risked such great dangers, God could not will it nor could your Sacred Majesty's goodness permit that I should lose it through the foul tongues of the envious and ill-disposed. I therefore beg and pray your Majesty that in payment of my services I should receive no other favour than this, and I pray God that if I am wanting in honour I may cease to live.

In my opinion, most Catholic Prince, from the time that I first entered into these transactions I have had many powerful rivals and enemies, but however great their hostility and malice it has not been sufficient to obscure the fame of my services and my fidelity; so being hopeless of effecting it they have sought two means by which it seems to me they have been able to place a mist or darkness before the eyes of your Highness, by which they have moved your Majesty from the Catholic and Holy purpose which your Majesty has always acknowledged of recompensing and paying me for my services.

One way is to accuse me before your Highness of the crime of

treason, saying that I have not obeyed your Majesty's commands, and that I do not hold this land in your powerful name but in a tyrannical and unspeakable way, giving as proof of this some depraved and diabolical reasons formed from false and not from true assumptions; but these people if they should see my true works and were true judges would see that they had a very different meaning, for up to now there has never been, nor will there be so long as I live, any letter or command of your Majesty which has come to me or has been brought to my notice which has not been, is not, and will not be, fulfilled and obeyed in every respect. At this present time the malice of those who spread such reports is most clearly shown, for had they been true I should not have travelled six hundred leagues from this City over dangerous roads and through desert country and have left this land in the care of your Majesty's officials, whom one would naturally believe to be the persons most zealous in the service of your Highness, although their deeds did not correspond to the confidence which I placed in them. The other way of discrediting me is to say that I hold a great or the greater number of the natives of this land as my slaves, from whom I benefit and profit and from whom I have drawn great sums of gold and silver which I have stored away, and that I have spent over sixty thousand gold dollars from the rents due to your Catholic Majesty without any reason for such outlay and that I have not sent to your Excellency the whole of the gold which is due as Royal Rent, but that I keep it here under specious pretences for purposes which I cannot accomplish. I can readily believe that, such rumours being current about me, they would have done their best to give colour to them, but I am fully confident that they are only such as when put to the test will prove to be false. As to the report that I own a large portion of the land, I own it to be true and that I have for my share a large amount of gold, but I declare that it has not been so much as to prevent my being poor, and at the present time in debt for five hundred thousand pesos de oro without having a Castellano with which to pay it; for if I have had much I have spent more, not in buying estates or other properties for myself, but in extending in this City the lordship and Royal property of your Highness by the aid of this wealth, and by personally undergoing many hardships, risks, and dangers I have conquered

and annexed many kingdoms and lordships for your Excellency, and these deeds not even the viperous tongues of the ill-disposed could hide or obscure. Looking over my account books it will be seen that more than three hundred thousand pesos de oro were spent out of my own fortune on these conquests, and when what I owned was exhausted I spent sixty thousand pesos de oro belonging to your Majesty—not for my own use, for they never passed through my hands—in the payments of my warrants for the costs and expenses of these later conquests, and whether or not they were profitably spent the facts are patent to all. As to what they say about my not having sent the rents to your Majesty, it is easy to show how false it is, for in the short time that I have been in this land I maintain as a fact that I have sent to your Majesty from this country more treasure than all the Islands and Tierra-firme put together, although they have been discovered and settled for thirty years and their discovery and settlement cost the Catholic Sovereigns, your Ancestors, a great expenditure of treasure, which has not been the case in this conquest.

Not only has that been sent to your Majesty which was yours by right, but also that which belonged to me and to those who aided me, and we have sent in abundance and have not counted what we spent of our own in your Royal service. When I sent the first account of our expedition to your Majesty by the hands of Alonso Hernández Portocarrero and Francisco de Montejo, not only did I send the Royal Fifth part of the spoil, but all that was captured, for it seemed just that your Majesty should enjoy the first fruits of the conquest. Afterwards, of all that was taken in the City when Montezuma its Chief was alive, a fifth part of the gold amounting to over thirty thousand Castellanos was given to your Majesty; I speak of that which was melted into ingots. The jewels should have been divided so that the soldiers should have had their shares, but both they and I were delighted to renounce our shares so that they could all be sent to your Majesty, and they were worth more than five hundred thousand pesos de oro. Both gold and jewels were lost, for they were taken from us when the natives rose and drove us out of the City at the time of the landing of Narvaez; but that, although I may have deserved it for my sins, was not on account of my negligence.

When later on the City was conquered and brought under your Majesty's rule, the same thing was done, the Royal Fifth of the gold melted down was put aside for your Majesty, and I persuaded my companions that all the jewels which had been taken should be given without division to your Majesty, and these were not of less value than those taken on the first occasion; and thus with all care and despatch I sent them all with thirty three thousand pesos de oro in bars in the care of Julian Alderete, who at that time was your Majesty's Treasurer, but they were captured by the French. That was not my fault but rather the fault of those who did not provide in time a fleet to go for it to the Azores, as they should have done for a remittance of such importance.

At the time that I left this City for the Gulf of Higuera I sent to your Majesty sixty thousand pesos de oro by Diego de Ocampo and Francisco de Montejo, and more was not sent because it seemed to me, and also the officers of your Catholic Majesty, that in sending so much at a time we were exceeding and avoiding the orders which your Majesty had sent to these parts about the shipment of gold, but we ventured to do it, knowing the need of treasure that your Majesty had at that time. With this I myself sent to your Highness by Diego de Soto, a servant of mine, all that I possessed so that I had not a peso de oro left. I sent it in the form of a silver cannon which cost me in the making and other expenses thirty five thousand pesos de oro, and I also sent some jewels of gold and stones which I owned. I sent them not so much on account of their intrinsic value—although that was not a small matter to me—as because the French had carried off the first ones which I had sent and it weighed on my mind that your Sacred Majesty had not seen them, and so that you should see a specimen, however poor, you might know from it what the rest of it was like. As it is therefore clear that I wished to serve your Catholic Majesty with zeal, goodwill, and all that I possessed, I do not know what reason there can be to suppose that I should keep for myself that which belongs to your Highness.

I have also heard, Powerful Lord, that your Sacred Majesty has been informed that I hold in this land two hundred millions of rent from the provinces which I have assigned to myself, and as my wish has always been that your Catholic Majesty should know

for certain my devotion to your Royal Service—in fact that you may be satisfied that I always have told and will tell the truth—I could not do a better thing to prove it than to make over this over-estimated payment of rent to your Majesty. By doing this I hope to gain many things, but above all that your Majesty should lose all suspicion, which it is here publicly said that your Majesty entertains of me. On this account I beg your Majesty to receive for your own service all that I possess here and grant me the favour of twenty millions of rent in those kingdoms [Spain] and there will remain to your Majesty the one hundred and eighty millions, and I will do service in your Majesty's Royal presence where I think no one will surpass me in devotion, nor will they be able to throw doubt on my services. In matters concerning this country I think that I shall be of use to your Majesty, for I shall know as one who has been an eye witness how to advise your Majesty as to what tends most to the advantage of the Imperial service, and how to avoid being deceived by false reports. I can assure your Majesty that it will be no slight service that I shall be able to render at Court by advising what should be done to preserve this land, and to bring the natives of it to a knowledge of our religion, and to insure to your Majesty a large permanent and increasing revenue, which may continually go on increasing and not diminish as have done those of the Islands and Tierra-firme owing to the want of good Government, and because the Catholic Sovereigns your Excellency's parents and predecessors received advice from those not zealous in their service, but swayed by personal interest, as indeed has always been the case with those who have given information to their Highnesses and to your Majesty about these countries. What was the use of conquering them and supporting them all this time, and in overcoming so many obstacles and difficulties to that end, if nothing is left in them to develop.

There are two things which make me long for your Majesty to allow me to serve you at Court, the first and most important is to satisfy your Majesty and all the world of my loyalty and fidelity to your service, and I place this the first of all the advantages that may accrue to me in this world, for it is to gain the name of a servant of your Majesty and of the Imperial and Royal Crown that I have gone through so many and so great perils, and have

suffered incomparable hardships, and this not for greed of treasure. If indeed such a desire had influenced me I had already gained sufficient for a squire such as I am, and I would not have spent it nor given up my desires in order to follow this other end which I have held as the great object to be attained. Nevertheless for my sins I have not been able to attain it, nor do I think that in the present instance I shall be able to do myself justice if your Majesty will not do me this great favour which I entreat of you. And so, as it shall not appear as though I were asking your Excellency too much on purpose to give you a reason to refuse it, and although it may be all that falls to my lot, and it is small enough for one to come without dishonour after having held in this country the charge of Government in your Majesty's name, and having so greatly increased the patrimony and Royal rule of your Majesty in these parts, placing under your Imperial sway so many provinces containing such noble towns and cities, and doing away with so many idolatries and other offences offered to our Creator, and bringing many of the natives to a knowledge of Him and planting in them our Sacred Catholic faith so securely that, if there be no opposition from those who think ill of such efforts and would direct their zeal to other ends, in a short time there could be established in these lands a new church where God our Lord would be served better than in any church in the world. I repeat that if your Majesty will grant me the favour to order me to be paid ten millions of rent within those kingdoms [Spain] I renouncing all that I have here, and that I may go there [to Spain] to serve you, it will be to me no small favour, for in this way my desire will be satisfied which is to serve your Majesty in your Royal presence, so that your Celestial Highness may be assured of my fidelity and may accept my humble services.

The other thing is—and I have no doubt about it whatever—that on hearing from me about the affairs of this land and even of the Islands you will be able more readily to govern them in a way that will conduce to the service of God and of your Majesty, for there [in Spain] I should be given credit for what I said, which is not given to me when I write from here where all that I do will always be attributed, as it has been hitherto, to passion and personal interest, and not to the zeal which as a

vassal of your Majesty I owe to your Royal Service; and so great is my desire to kiss your Majesty's royal feet and to serve in your presence that I know not how to give expression to it.

If your Greatness cannot do or has not the opportunity of doing me the favour which I ask, which is that your Majesty will support me in Spain and allow me to serve you there as I long to do, may I beg your Highness to do me the favour to allow me to retain in this land all that I already possess here or whatever my agents may ask of your Majesty in my name, making it my legal heritage for myself and my heirs, so that I should not return to Spain begging my bread.

I shall consider it a distinguished favour if your Majesty will send me permission to depart and satisfy my longing, for I trust to the Catholic Conscience of your Sacred Majesty not to leave me in poverty when the loyalty of my deeds and intentions is clearly established.

The arrival of the Judge of Residencia seemed to afford me a good opportunity to fulfil my desire, and I even began to put it into execution, but there were two things which stopped me, one of which was the want of money for expenses on the way; because my house had been robbed and plundered as I believe your Majesty has already been informed. The other was a fear lest a rising of the Natives should take place if I left the country, and that quarrels would arise between the Spaniards themselves which, judging from what had happened before, was quite possible.

Whilst I was writing this despatch to your Sacred Majesty a messenger came from the South Sea with a letter, from which I learn that a vessel has arrived on the coast near a town called Tehuantepec, and according to a letter which the Captain of the ship sent me, which I forward to your Majesty, this vessel is one of the fleet which your Sacred Majesty sent to the Islands of Maluco under the Captain Loaisa.

As your Majesty will learn the incidents of the voyage from the letter written by the Captain of the ship I will not repeat the story, and will only tell your Majesty what I did in the matter, which was to send a person at once to the place where the ship had arrived with orders that if the Captain wished to return home at once he should be supplied with everything necessary for his voyage, and that nothing should be denied him; that the

messenger should obtain from the Captain a very full account of his late voyage and the route that he had followed, so that I could send it to your Majesty and that your Majesty should receive full particulars as early as possible. In case the ship should stand in need of repairs I sent a pilot to take her to the Port of Zacatula (where I have three ships ready to start), so that she may be repaired there and everything done which may conduce to your Majesty's service and the success of the voyage. I will send your Majesty the report about the ship as soon as it comes to hand, so that your Majesty may be fully informed and may send your Royal Commands in the matter.

My ships in the South Sea are, as I have informed your Majesty, quite ready to start on their voyage, for as soon as I arrived in this City I pressed on their preparation and they would already have started had it not been for the want of certain arms, artillery and ammunition, which are being brought from Spain to place in them, so that they will start well found, and I trust in God that on behalf of your Majesty I shall be doing a great service by means of this voyage. Even if we do not discover a Strait I think that we shall discover this way a route to the Spice Islands so that your Majesty may be kept informed within the year of all that happens in that land.

If your Majesty would be pleased to grant me those favours which I asked for in a certain petition which I made to your Majesty concerning this discovery, I offer myself to discover from here all the spice and other Islands there may be between Maluco, Melaca and China, and so to arrange matters that your Majesty should not obtain the spices by way of exchange as the King of Portugal does, but hold them as your own property, and that the natives of those Islands should own and serve you as King and Natural Lord, for I offer, if the said grants are made, to go in person or to send such a fleet that it will be possible to subdue them, found settlements, build forts, and supply them with artillery and munitions of war, so that they can be defended against native princes and even against others from a distance.

If your Majesty will grant me the favour of entrusting me with this expedition and conceding me what I have petitioned, I believe that it will redound to your Majesty's service, and I submit that if it does not turn out as I say your Majesty should have me punished as one who lies to his King.

Since my return I have also arranged to send expeditions, both by land and sea, to form settlements on the Rio Tabasco, which is also called the Rio Grijalva and to conquer many provinces in its neighbourhood so that God and your Majesty may be served. The ships which come from and go to those parts will be better protected when those places and coast are better settled and brought to order, for many ships have gone ashore there and, as the inhabitants have not been conquered, the shipwrecked crews have been murdered.

I have also sent to the Province of the Zapotecs, about which your Majesty has already been informed: three companies have entered the province from different directions so as to finish the conquest as quickly as possible; this will certainly be most advantageous both because the natives of the province do great damage to the other natives who are friendly to us, and because it is the land richest in mines in all New Spain, and when it is conquered your Majesty will receive great benefit from it.

I have also arranged an expedition and have collected the people needed to form a settlement on the Rio de las Palmas, which is on the North coast below the Rio Panuco towards Florida, as I have heard that there is good land and a good harbour there, and I have no doubt but that God and your Majesty will be well served there as in all other parts, as I have very good reports of that country.

Between the North Coast and the Province of Michoacan there is a settlement of people known as the Chichimecas. They are a barbarous people and not so civilized as those of these Provinces, so I have now sent sixty horse and two hundred foot soldiers, accompanied by many friendly Indians, to learn the secret of that Province and people. They have been instructed that they are (if they find among the people any aptitude for living as these other Indians live, accepting our Religion, and acknowledging the service which they owe to your Majesty) to bring about a peaceful settlement and take them under your Majesty's rule, and to settle themselves among them on the land which seems most suitable; but that if on the other hand they do not find them such as I have described above, and they show no signs of submission, they are to make war upon them and capture them for slaves, for there is no alternative in this country. These barbarians must either acknowledge their

service to your Majesty or else be brought in as slaves, and as they are an almost savage people, in the latter case your Majesty would be served and the Spaniards benefited, for they could be used to bring gold out of the mines, and by contact with us it is possible that some of them may be converted and saved.

I have learnt that amongst these people there is a district thickly populated, where there are many fine pueblos in which the Indians live in the same way as the Indians do here, and it is reported that some of these pueblos have been visited by Spaniards; I think it most probable that we shall make a settlement in that district, as there are most favourable reports of its richness in silver.

Most powerful Lord, I despatched, two months before I left this City for the Gulf of Higuera, a Captain to the town of Coliman, which is on the South Sea one hundred and four leagues from this city, with orders to march down the South Coast for a distance of one hundred and fifty or two hundred leagues for the purpose of finding out the secret of that coast, and to ascertain if there were any harbours. This Captain did as I had ordered and marched one hundred and thirty leagues through the land, and sent me accounts of the many harbours which he found on the coast—a service of no small importance as so few had been discovered up to that time; and he sent news of many large pueblos and a numerous population, very skilful in war, with whom he had had some encounters, and had brought many of them to peace. He did not proceed further, as his force was small and he found no forage for his horses.

In the report which he brought me was the account of a very large river which the natives had told him was ten days further on; about it and the people living in its neighbourhood they told him many strange things. I am about to send him back again with a stronger force better equipped for war so that he may go and find out the secret of that river which from the size and breadth ascribed to it might turn out to be a strait. When he returns I will let your Majesty know what he finds out about it.

Nearly every one of the Captains of these expeditions is ready to set out; I pray God to guide them, to His service. For my own part, although I may not meet with your Majesty's

approval I shall not cease to work in your service and I do not think it possible that in the course of time your Majesty will fail to recognise my fidelity ; but if this should not happen I must be satisfied with doing my duty and knowing that my services, and the loyalty with which I have performed them, are patent to all the world, and I would wish for no other inheritance for my children.

Invincible Cæsar, may the Lord God preserve the life and high estate of your sacred Majesty for all time, as your Majesty may wish.

From this City of Temuxtitan [Tenochtitlan], September 3rd, 1526.



APPENDIX A.

THE IZTAPALAPA CAUSEWAY.¹

THERE is some difficulty in fixing the exact position of the Iztapalapa Causeway, and I have endeavoured in these notes to ascertain the correct position from the narratives of the conquerors and such side lights as later writers and maps throw on the subject.

It is as well first to quote in full the descriptions by Cortés and Bernal Díaz.

Second Letter of Cortés.

"The City of Iztapalapa has from twelve to fifteen thousand 'vecinos' (families) and stands on the shore of a great salt lake, half of it in the water and the other half on dry land

"The day after arriving at this City, I set out, and after marching half a league I entered on a Causeway which goes for two leagues across the middle of this lake until it reaches the great city of Tenochtitlan which is built in the middle of the same lake. This Causeway is as broad as two lances and very well built, so that eight horsemen abreast could march along it, and in these two leagues from one end to the other of the said Causeway there are three cities, the greater part of one of them named Mesicalsingo (Mexicaltzingo) is built in this same lake and the other two, one named Niciaca² and the other

¹ I am deeply indebted to Professor E. Seler, of Berlin, for many references to early authorities and the correct location of the site of Acachinanco.

² Niciaca : Professor Seler says that this is Mixiuacan the South-East spur of the district of Zoquipan, which is the South-East division of the City of Mexico.

Huchilohuchico (Churubusco) are on the shores of it, with many of their houses in the water. The first of these cities may have 3000 'vecinos' (families), the second more than 6000, and the third 4000 or 5000. In all of them there are very good buildings of houses and towers, especially the houses of the chieftains and principal persons, and those of the Mosques and oratories where they keep their Idols So I followed along the said Causeway and half a league before arriving at the body of the city of Tenochtitlan, at the entrance of another causeway which comes from the dry land (Tierra firme) to join this other,¹ there is a very strong fortification with two towers surrounded by a wall twice the height of a man (de dos estados), with its parapet embattled along all the enclosure that it makes with the two causeways, and there are only two gates, one for entry and the other for exit. Here there came out to see and speak to me nearly a thousand chieftains . . . and thus I stood waiting almost an hour while each one paid his respects. Already near the city is a wooden bridge ten paces wide, and the Causeway is open here so that the water may have space to go in and out, for it rises and falls, and also as a defence to the city, for they can place and remove some very broad and long beams of which the bridge is made as often as they like, and of these [bridges] there are many throughout the city, as further on, in the story that I shall tell about these things, your Highness will see.

"When we had passed this bridge, the Lord Montezuma came out to receive us with nearly two hundred chieftains . . . and they came in two processions very close to the walls of the street, which is very handsome and straight, and one can see from one end of it to the other, and it is two thirds of a league long, and on one side and the other

¹ The small causeway leading to Coyoacan.

are very good and large houses both dwelling houses and mosques."

The following is the parallel passage from Bernal Díaz :—

"Early next day we left Iztapalapa with a large escort of those great Caciques whom I have already mentioned. We advanced along the Causeway which is here eight paces in width, and goes so straight to the City of Mexico that it does not seem to me to turn either much or little, but broad as it is, it was so crowded with people that there was hardly room for them all, some of them going to, and others returning from Mexico, besides those who had come out to see us, so that we were hardly able to get by the crowds that came, and the towers and Cues were full of people, and the canoes from all parts of the lake.

"But let us get on and march along the Causeway. When we arrived where another small causeway branches off (leading to Coyoacan, which is another city) where there are some buildings like towers, many more chieftains and Caciques approached clad in very rich mantles, the brilliant liveries of one chieftain differing from those of another, and the causeways were crowded with them.

"The Great Montezuma had sent these great Caciques in advance to receive us, and when they came before Cortés they bade us welcome in their language, and, as a sign of peace, they touched their hands against the ground, and kissed the ground with their hands.

"There we halted for a good while, and Cacamatzin the Lord of Texcoco and the Lord of Iztapalapa and the Lord of Tacuba, and the Lord of Coyoacan went on in advance to meet the Great Montezuma who was coming near in a rich litter accompanied by other great Lords and Caciques who possessed vassals. When we arrived near to Mexico, where there were some other

small towers the great Montezuma got down from his litter," etc., and the meeting between Cortés and Montezuma took place.

The first point to settle is the position of the Causeway connecting the Iztapalapa peninsula and the land to the west. As this Causeway was built as a dam to hold back the water of Lake Xochimilco from flowing into the waters of Lake Texcoco it naturally took the shortest course and ran nearly east and west. It seems probable that the Causeway followed the line of the present road known as the Puente de Churubusco. This Causeway or *Calsada* was in later years known as the Calzada de Mexicaltzingo, because, after leaving Iztapalapa, it passed through or near that town, and for the sake of clearness it will be so called in this note.

The main Causeway of Iztapalapa (or as it was afterwards called the Calzada de San Anton) ran in a northerly direction from the western end of the Calzada de Mexicaltzingo, direct to the City of Mexico, "which goes straight to the City of Mexico and does not seem to me to turn either much or little" (B.D.) that is along the line now followed by the Electric Tramway.¹ From the point of junction of the two causeways, which was probably at or near the spot where the Puente de Churubusco now crosses the tramway line, a road can be seen on the modern map passing the convent of Churubusco and entering Coyoacan, and this is probably the line of road or causeway which at the time of the Conquest connected the city of Coyoacan with the Iztâpalapa Causeway and Mexico.

Cortés says that on setting out from Iztapalapa "after

¹ The tramway from Mexico, after leaving the Puente de Churubusco, goes on through Churubusco to San Anton and Tlalpam, probably following an ancient line of road between the Pedregal or great lava field and the lake.

marching half a league (*i.e.* along the Mexicaltzingo Causeway) I entered on a causeway which goes for two leagues across the middle of the lake until it reaches the great City of Tenochtitlan."

Bernal Díaz makes no mention of the Mexicaltzingo Causeway and begins his description with the straight (Iztapalapa) Causeway across the lake.

The following quotations tend to confirm the location of the Causeway given above:—

"The next day the Alguacil Mayor with the people who were with him in Iztapalapa, both Spaniards and allies, left for Coyoacan, and from there [Iztapalapa] to the mainland there is a causeway about a league and a half long. When the Alguacil Mayor began his march, at the distance of about a quarter of a league he reached a small city [Mexicaltzingo] which also stood in the water, but through many parts of it he could ride on horseback. . . . and he burned the city, and because I had heard that the Indians had broken much of the Causeway [of Mexicaltzingo] I sent two sloops to help them to pass, and they made a bridge of them so the soldiers could cross, and when they had passed over they went to lodge at Coyoacan, and the Alguacil Mayor with ten horsemen took the road along the Causeway to where we had our camp"¹ [*i.e.* to Acachinanco along the Iztapalapa Causeway].

"The Causeway of Mexicaltzingo, which holds back the lake of Chalco, and which begins at the town of Iztapalapa [and passes] through that of Mexicaltzingo is 5200 varas long and eleven varas wide."²

¹ Extract from the description of the siege in the Third Letter of Cortés.

² "Relacion Universal Legitima y Verdadera del sitio en que esta fundada la Muy Noble, etc. . . Ciudad de Mexico," by Don Fernando de Cepeda and Don Fer. Alonzo Cárillo. 1637. 1 vara = 33 inches.

5200 varas is approximately the distance from the west end of the Puente de Churubusco to the modern Plaza of Iztapalapa.

Most of the earlier maps show this Causeway running from Mexicaltzingo towards Coyoacan and some of them also show a second causeway running parallel to it further to the South, connecting Culhuacan with Tasqueña, a road which still exists, and was probably formed some years after the conquest when the level of the lakes was already lowered.

Following the Iztapalapa Causeway towards Mexico "half a league before arriving at the body of the city of Tenochtitlan, at the entrance of another causeway which comes from the dry land to join this other," [leading to Coyoacan according to Bernal Díaz] "there is a strong fortification," etc. (Cortés's Second Letter). The site of this fortification was known as Acachinanco; it was here that Cortés met the deputation of chieftains from the city, and it is here that during the siege of the city he established his headquarters. Acachinanco corresponds with the spot where the tramway line crosses the Rio de la Piedad. Quotations from authorities, on which this location is based, will be found at the end of this Appendix.

Before proceeding along the Causeway it is as well to consider the small causeway which Bernal Díaz speaks of as "leading to Coyoacan." If it went to that city, it must have gone towards the Western end of it, otherwise it would have been of little practical use, as its course would have been too nearly parallel to that of the Iztapalapa Causeway. It may have followed the line of a road shown on the Upsala map, a road which still exists. It must have been, as Bernal Díaz says, a small causeway (Calzadilla) and therefore easily broken down, for it is a curious fact

that no use was made of it during the siege, and it is never mentioned again.

Proceeding along the Causeway from Acachinanco: "Already near the city is a wooden bridge ten paces wide," etc. (Cortés's Second Letter). "When we arrived near to Mexico, where there were some other small towers, the great Montezuma got down from his litter," etc. (Bernal Díaz). A bridge over a drainage canal still marks the site of this opening in the Causeway, and it is now known as the Puente de San Antonio Abad, named after the church of San Antonio,¹ which was built near or on the site of the "Idol towers" called Xoluco.²

Between the bridge at Xoluco and the great square of the city the road was crossed by two principal canals, one at Huitzilan, just to the south of what was formerly called the Hospital of La Concepcion and is now known as the Hospital de Jesus Nazareno, and the other on entering the Great Square of which the canal formed the southern boundary.

To return to the entry of the Spaniards into the city.

The deputation of chieftains which had gone to Acachinanco had returned to the city to warn Montezuma

¹ This site, is that occupied afterwards by the church of San Antonio Abad. When the island was not inhabited, this was the first site occupied by the Aztecs, and was called Nexticpac. The temple found on this site by the Conquerors was called Xoluco. On the 19th January, 1530, the Cabildo gave a Solar (ground plot) to Alonzo Sánchez, "because he said that at his own expense he wished to build a hermitage to Señor San Antonio, the said (Cabildo) marked out for him where he could construct the said hermitage which is on the Causeway which goes from this city to Iztapalapa, to the extent of one solar in length on the left hand, to the point of an island that is there." So one can note that in 1530 the waters of the lake reached this site, and this was the limit of the city and island in this direction. (Orozco y Berra, "Hist. de Mexico," vol. iv, p. 289).

² Much confusion has arisen from the name Xoluco being attributed to the fort at Acachinanco, which Prescott, Orozco y Berra and other historians call the fort of Xoloc.

(who had probably halted at Huitzilan) of the approach of the Spaniards. Cortés and his soldiers then followed them along the Causeway, and, after passing the bridge at Xoluco, met Montezuma, who got down from his litter. The meeting therefore took place somewhere between the two bridges of Xoluco and Huitzilan. After the meeting Montezuma returned to his Palace, and the Spaniards followed him along the street, and were conducted to the Palace of Axayacatl, the late Emperor of Mexico and the father of Montezuma, situated at the N.E. corner of the Great Square.

The width of the Iztapalapa Causeway cannot be determined with exactitude. Bernal Díaz says "eight paces." Cortés says "the length of two lances and that eight horsemen could march abreast along it." The Anonymous Conqueror gives the width of the causeways as thirty paces or more. The "Relacion Universal," published more than one hundred years after the Conquest, gives the width of the Mexicaltzingo Causeway at that time as eleven varas, and says that the Causeway of San Anton (Iztapalapa) was seven thousand varas in length and ten in width. That the width could not have been much less than thirty feet is shown by Cortés's description of his camp at Acachinanco during the siege. "On one side and the other of the two towers on the Causeway, where I was lodged, they [the Indian allies] built so many huts that between the first house and the last there was [a distance] of more than three or four shots of a crossbow, and Your Majesty can see how broad was this causeway that goes through the deepest part of the lake, that on one side and the other there were these houses and there was a street left in the middle, along which we could go at pleasure on foot or on horseback, and there were always in camp, between Spaniards and Indians who attended on them, more than two thousand persons."

Sahagun. Historia de la Conquista de Mexico. Book 12.
Ch. 30.

(The first day of the siege of Mexico City.)

"How the sloops which were built in Texcoco came against Mexico and they came across the lake towards a landing place called Acachinanco, which is near to Mexico, in the direction of San Anton, the church that stands near to the houses of Alvarado."

"As soon as the twelve sloops arrived, all assembled in Acachinanco, and the Marquis moved to Acachinanco."

Betancurt. Teatro Mexicano. Sucesos Militares. Ch. x.

(After the capture of Guatemoc.)

"and so as to guard the three kings who were prisoners he [Cortés] sent them in the sloops to Acachinanco, together with the ladies, for greater security."

Sahagun. Historia de la Conquista. Book 12. Ch. 16.

(The first entry of the Spaniards into Mexico).

"How Montezuma went out peaceably to receive the Spaniards at the place they call Xoluco which is on the canal which is near the houses of Alvarado a little this side of the place they call Vitzillan [Huitzilan] Montezuma reached the Spaniards at the place they call Vitzillan, which is near the hospital of La Concepcion [Jesus Nazareno]."

Sahagun. Book 12. Ch. 30.

(During an attack on the City).

"The Spaniards reached a place called Vitzillan, which is near the church of San Pablo; there, another thick wall had been placed and on the flanks of it were a great many Mexicans; the Sloops were delayed there while the cannon were got ready to destroy the wall."

Tezozomoc. Cronica Mexicana, written about 1598.

(The priest of the goddess Chalchiuhtlicue charged to receive the fountain Acuecuexatl brought from Coyoacan to Mexico by Ahuitzotl).

"And going in procession they reached the spot called Mazatlan and when the water, which was called Acuecuexatl arrived, he began to cut the heads off of Quail, and as soon as he had finished drinking the water he saluted it saying, 'You are very welcome, Lady. I come to receive you for you will arrive at your own house in the midst of the dense reed thicket, Mexico, Tenochtitlan

"When the water reached Acachinanco, where there is an enclosure and a Hermitage of San Esteban,¹ they took one of their children and opening his chest with a (stone) knife they sprinkled the water with the hot blood, and as the water carried along the heart of the child, it began, at once to boil up, and increased in such a way that it rose above the wooden bridge where the people were passing.

"When the water reached Xoloco they cut the head off another child and there at the bridge they had a canoe placed where the water fell and it was running in all directions carrying a conduit of water for the palace. On arriving at Ahuitzilan which is now the hospital of Our Lady [now Jesus Nazareno] the water poured into another conduit and was brought down and distributed:—there also another child was decapitated and sacrificed to the water, and it went straight on passing through the Royal Palace: and went on to fall into the district called *Apahuastlan*, which is now the district of Tlaltelolco Santiago, in the enclosure that now stands there behind the hermitage of La Asumpcion de Nuestra Señora, and there they sacrificed another child."

Tezozomoc. Ch. 69.

" . . . they called to Tlillancalqui to arrange the captives from Aculnahuac in Cuyanacazco, on the Causeway which is now that of Our Lady of Guadalupe—and the captives from Tacuba they put in a place which they call Mazatzintamalco which is now close to the orchard of the Marques

¹ The road running from the site of Acachinanco to the Viga Canal is still called the Calzada de San Esteban, and the hermitage of San Esteban is marked close by the Viga Canal on the map of Mexico in the book by M. Chappe d'Anteroche, published in Paris in 1772.

del Valle. In the same way he called to Tocuiltecatl, and said that the captives from Cuahuacan, Xocotitlan, Matlatzinco, and Coatlapan, and those called the Chinampanecas, Culhuacan, Mizquic, etc., should arrange their captives in another place, which was Acachinanco, where the first cross¹ was placed, which now stands in the direction of Cuyuacan, on the high road which now enters Mexico."

Tezozomoc. Ch. 67.

"... they came all together, those from Tlaxcala, Huexotzinco and Cholula, with the Mexican Ambassadors and by nightfall they were in the place called Apanoayan, and when they reached it they rested; and the Mexicans said to them: 'Gentlemen and brothers, we must enter by night into the city of Mexico so that the Mexicans shall not see you ;' with this they all went on with the greatest caution. As soon as they arrived at Acachinanco the Mexicans said to them 'We are already in Tenochtitlan'."

¹ See Map of Mexico from the Upsala Museum.

APPENDIX B.

THE TACUBA (TLACOPAN) CAUSEWAY.

THERE is no difficulty in locating this Causeway as it still exists as the main road from the great Plaza of Mexico to the town of Tacuba. The difficulty lies in locating and identifying the *cortaduras* or openings for the canals which passed through the Causeway from North to South. This is a matter which will have to be further dealt with when describing the early maps of the city. It suffices for the present to state that the three principal openings (which in ordinary circumstances were crossed by wooden bridges) were named:—

Tecpantzingo, now the Puente de Mariscal.

Tolteacalli, near the Church of San Hipólito.

Toltecaacalopan, now the Puente de Alvarado.

It was at the first of these, Tecpantzingo, that Cortés placed the portable wooden bridge which he had constructed, and it was here that it stuck fast.

Tolteacalli was the opening where the greatest slaughter took place, and it was to mark the spot that a small Hermitage was there set up by one Juan Garrido, almost immediately after the capture of the city, and was named La Ermita de los Martires, and dedicated to San Hipólito in commemoration of San Hipólito's day, 13th August, 1521, on which the city fell.

Toltecaacalopan retains the name, given to it at the time of the Conquest, of Alvarado's leap.

Cortés, in his Second Letter states that there were eight bridges, and Orozco y Berra suggests that three

of these were between the Great Plaza and Tecpantzingo, and that two other openings were made by the Mexicans at the time to increase the difficulties of the Spaniards.

The three openings between the Great Plaza of Tenochtitlan and Tecpantzingo, from which the bridges had been removed, had probably been sufficiently filled in during the previous day's fighting and presented no difficulty to the flight of the Spaniards on the Noche Triste.

The distances traversed on the Noche Triste are approximately as follows :—

	<i>Yards.</i>	<i>Miles.</i>
From the Spanish quarters to Tecpantzingo	1000	} say $1\frac{1}{4}$
„ Tecpantzingo to Toltéacalli	740	
„ Toltéacalli to Toltécaacalopan	500	
„ Toltécaacalopan to the Ahuehuete Tree at Popotla on the margin of the lake		$2\frac{1}{4}$
„ The Ahuehuete Tree to the Plaza of Tacuba		1
„ Tacuba to Los Remedios		$4\frac{1}{2}$
		<hr/> 9

APPENDIX C.

ITINERARY.¹

12th Oct., 1519.	The Spaniards march from Tlaxcala to a camp by a river.
13th " "	Enter Cholula.
1st Nov., 1519.	Leave Cholula for the Ranchos de Yscalpan.
2nd " "	Yscalpan to Ithualco (near the summit of the Pass).
3rd " "	Ithualco to Amecameca.
6th " "	Amecameca to Ayotzingo.
7th " "	Ayotzingo to Iztapalapa.
8th " "	Iztapalapa to the City of Mexico.
12th " "	The Spaniards visit Tlaltelolco.
14th(?) "	The Seizure of Montezuma.

Pánfilo de Narvaez probably landed in Mexico about the middle of April.

Cortés remained in the City of Mexico from the 8th November, 1519, until early in May, 1520, when he marched against Narvaez.

Early in May, 1520. Cortés marched from the City of Mexico to Cholula by way of the Pass between the Volcanoes. At Cholula he joined forces with Juan Velásquez de Leon and Rodrigo Rangel, whom he had previously sent on expeditions towards the coast, and thence he despatched Juan González de Heredia to fetch long lances from Chinantla.

¹ Orozco y Berra has made a careful examination of the evidence relating to this period, and the dates given in this Itinerary are in accordance with his conclusions. On p. 254 Bernal Diaz says: "Our escape [from the city] was on the tenth of the Month of July, and this celebrated battle of Otumba on the fourteenth of the Month of July." In this he differs from Cortés and all the other authorities.

- Early in May, 1520. Cholula to Tepeaca,
Where Cortés met Padre Olmedo returning from his Mission to Narvaez.
- Tepeaca to Quecholac,
Where Cortés met Alonzo de Mata and his four witnesses.
- Quecholac to Ahuilizapan (Orizaba),
Where Cortés was delayed by the rain for two days, and whence he despatched Pero Hernández and Rodrigo Alvarez Chico with a peremptory order to Narvaez.
- Ahuilizapan to Cuautochco (Huatusco, in the State of Vera Cruz),
Where Cortés was met by two Clerics, Juan Ruiz de Guevara and Juan de Leon, and by Andrés de Duero, emissaries from Narvaez.
- Cuautochco to Tampaniquita,
Where Cortés was joined by Sandoval and his company and whence he despatched a letter, signed by his followers, to Narvaez by the hands of Padre Olmedo and Bartolomé de Usagre.
- Tampaniquita to Mitalaguita (Mictlancuauhtla).
Here Cortés was joined by Tovilla, who had come from Chinantla with long lances, and by
- 26th May, 1520. Bartolomé de Usagre, who returned from the camp of Narvaez in company with Andrés de Duero and two Cuban Indians.
- 27th May, „ Andrés de Duero set out on his return to Cempoala about midday. In the afternoon Cortés sent Juan Velásquez de Leon, adorned with his Fanfaronas, to Cempoala, and in the evening himself marched with his troops in the direction of Cempoala, camping for the night on the bank of a stream.
- 28th May, „ Juan Velásquez de Leon reached Cempoala at dawn. Cortés marched at dawn and rested during the heat of the day on the banks of the Rio de Canoas (or de la Antigua), where he was met by Padre Olmedo and Juan Velásquez de Leon, who were returning from Cempoala. Cortés continues his march, and crossing the Rio Chachalacas in the night,

29th May, 1520. Attacks Narváez before dawn and defeats and captures him.

Barrientos arrives with the warriors from Chinantla.

Cortés despatched Spanish messengers (probably at once) to carry the news of his victory to the City of Mexico.

1st June, „ Cortés gives orders for expeditions under Juan Velásquez de Leon to proceed to Panuco, and under Diego de Ordás to proceed to Coatzacoalcos; within a few days these expeditions were recalled.

(The massacre of Mexicans in the City by Alvarado probably took place on the 16th May.)

Arrival of native messengers with the news that Alvarado was besieged in his quarters in the City.

About 10th June. Spanish messengers return from the City of Mexico and confirm the bad news and state that the sloops built for the navigation of the Lake had been destroyed.

Cortés promptly leaves Cempoala and following the route of his former journey inland (see vol. i, pp. 215-217) on the

17th June, 1520. Arrived at Tlaxcala.

Leaving Tlaxcala for Texcoco by way of Calpulalpan.

Arrived at Texcoco.

23rd June, „ Left Texcoco and going round the North end of the Lakes camped within three leagues of the City. (This necessitated a march of about forty miles.)

24th June, „ Entered Mexico at mid-day.

25th, Monday „ Cortés liberates Cuitlahuac.
Mexicans attack the Spaniards.

26th, Tuesday „ The Spaniards sally from their quarters.
Hard fighting all day long. During the night the Spaniards begin to construct "burros" or moveable wooden towers.

27th, Wednesday. At work on the "burros" all day. The Mexicans keep up an incessant attack on the Spanish quarters. Montezuma is persuaded to address his countrymen from the roof and is wounded by a shower of stones ; the first stone is said to have been cast by Guatemoc.

28th, Thursday. The Spaniards under the protection of the "burros" make a determined but unsuccessful attack on the Mexicans. Later in the day they succeed in an attack on the Great Teocalli, killing all its defenders. During the evening the Spaniards destroyed a large number of houses on the street leading towards Tacuba.

29th, Friday . The Spaniards make a sally in the direction of Tacuba, capturing four bridges and filling in the "cortaduras" or water openings with material from the houses destroyed. Guards were left at these bridges during the night to prevent their recapture.

Death of Montezuma (according to Bernal Diaz, according to Orozco y Berra, Montezuma died on 30th June).

30th, Saturday. The Spaniards were occupied during the morning in clearing the road and causeway towards Tacuba ; then, after some fruitless negotiations, the Mexicans resumed their attack and captured the bridges which, however, were again recaptured by the Spaniards, who had determined to escape from the City during the night.

The Spaniards and their allies left their quarters just before midnight, carrying with them the portable wooden bridge on which to cross the several "cortaduras" or water openings. This portable bridge stuck fast at the "cortadura" known as Tecpantzingo (now the Puente de Mariscal). The greatest slaughter of the Spaniards and their allies took place at Toltocalli near San Hipólito) where the bridge over the "cortadura" had been destroyed by the Mexicans. Cortés and the remnant of his followers reached Tacuba and then continued their flight, during

1st July, Sunday. the morning to the hill of Totoltepec (now the site of the Church of Nuestra Señora de Los Remedios), where they took refuge in the enclosure of a Mexican Teocalli.

The night of 30th June-1st July is known as the Noche Triste.

At midnight continuing their retreat under the guidance of some Tlaxcalans,

2nd, Monday . The Spaniards reached Teocalhuican, a town of the Otomies, where they were well received.

3rd, Tuesday . Marched from Teocalhuican by way of Cuauhtitlan and Tepotzotlan to Citlaltepec.

4th, Wednesday. At Citlaltepec the Spaniards rested for a day, finding abundant provisions.

5th, Thursday . Marched from Citlaltepec to Xoloc.

6th, Friday . Marched from Xoloc to Zacamolco, on the hill of Aztaquemecan ; here the Spaniards fed on a dead horse.

7th, Saturday . Soon after leaving Zacamolco, on the plain of Tonanpoco not far from Otumba, the Spaniards encountered the Mexican forces and fought the great battle of Otumba. After defeating the Mexicans the Spaniards continued their march to the small village of Apam.

8th, Sunday . Marched from Apam and crossing the Tlaxcalan frontier reached Hueyotlipan (Gualioapar, B.D.), where they rested for three days.

9th or 10th . Arrival of the Tlaxcalan Caciques, who welcomed the Spaniards to their country.

12th . . . The Spaniards marched to Tlaxcala, where they rested for twenty days.

Early in August. The Spaniards left Tlaxcala for Tepeaca, and marching by short stages they reached Acatzingo (Acacingo), where they rested for five days.
After fighting a battle they entered Tepeaca.

About 4th Sep- Cortés founded the Town of Segura de la Frontera

No dates can be ascribed with certainty to the various expeditions sent out from Tepeaca, which continued to be the headquarters of the Spaniards until Cortés returned to Tlaxcala about the middle of December.

26th December. Cortés holds a review of his forces at Tlaxcala.

28th „ The Spaniards and their allies marched out of Tlaxcala on their way to Texcoco.

APPENDIX.

DIARY OF THE SIEGE OF MEXICO.

IN compiling a Diary of the Siege many difficulties are met with. Neither Cortés nor Bernal Díaz are accurate in the matter of dates, and they not only contradict one another but often contradict themselves.

In the year 1521 Easter fell on the 31st March.

One point on which both are agreed is that the division of the forces and the announcement of the commands was made on the second day of the feast of Espiritu Santo, which feast in the year 1521 fell on Sunday, 19th May. The second day of the feast would therefore be the 20th May, and Bernal Díaz says that the companies of Alvarado and Olid had orders to start on the day following (21st May), but on account of the defection and execution of Xicotencatl (of which Cortés makes no mention) that their departure was delayed until the next day (22nd May). Nevertheless, Bernal Díaz says the companies of Alvarado started on the 13th May, and Cortés gives the date as the 10th May.

Then, again, Bernal Díaz, twice over, mentions ninety-three days as the length of the siege. The siege, we know for certain, ended on the 13th August, so that to make up ninety-three days he must have begun his count on the 13th May.

It is impossible to reconcile these various statements, and in the following Diary the departure of Alvarado and Olid from Texcoco is assumed to have taken place on the 22nd May, as that date fits in best with the events that follow.

The next certain date is (31st May) "Friday, the day after the feast of Corpus Christi," on which day Cortés says that Sandoval left Texcoco for Iztapalapa, and he himself embarked in the sloops and fought a battle on the lake.

The disaster to the Spaniards, when so many of the soldiers were captured alive and dragged off to be sacrificed to Huitzilopochtli, may, with some certainty, be dated Sunday, 31st June. In July, the mention by Cortés of the Feast of Santiago, enables some dates to be fixed, and San Hipolito's day, 13th August, is definitely given both by Cortés and Bernal Díaz as the date of the capture of Guatemoc and the termination of the siege.

Between these fixed points the dates of the different events can only be approximated from such indications as "after having heard Mass" (probably a Sunday or Feast day), "already more than forty-five days had been spent in this siege," "Three or four days passed in concerting this plan," "The next day," etc.

After drawing up the following Diary from the Narratives of Cortés and Bernal Díaz, I compared it with the dates given by Orozco y Berra, in his *History of Mexico*, and found that there was hardly any difference.

Cortés being himself in command and writing his letters to the Emperor within nine months of the end of the siege (the Third Letter is dated 15th May, 1522) is more trustworthy in the matter of dates and the sequence of events than Bernal Díaz, who wrote many years afterwards and frequently repeats himself and places events in the wrong order.

It has not been thought necessary to disentangle the events described by Bernal Díaz in his narrative of the siege, but merely to place occasionally a date in a footnote, to enable the reader to refer to the Diary.

DIARY OF THE SIEGE.

April.

28. Cortés holds a review. The launches are launched in the Canal.
- M. 29. Messengers sent to Tlaxcala and other towns warning the Native Contingents to be ready to march in ten days.

May.

- S. 19. Feast of Espiritu Santo.
- M. 20. Cortés divides his forces and appoints Commanders.
- T. 21.
- W. 22. Alvarado and Olid leave Texcoco for Acolman.
- Th. 23. Alvarado and Olid march to Citlaltepec.
- F. 24. Alvarado and Olid march to Guatitlan.
- Sat. 25. Alvarado and Olid march by Tenaynca and Azcapotzalco to Tacuba.
- S. 26. *After hearing Mass* (B.D.), Alvarado and Olid cut off the water from Chapultepec and make a reconnoissance on Tacuba Causeway.
- M. 27. Olid leaves Tacuba for Coyoacan, finds it deserted, goes to look at the Causeway to Mexico, which he finds broken.
- T. 28. }
- W. 29. } Alvarado remains in camp at Tacuba.
- Th. 30.¹ }
- F. 31. Sandoval leaves Texcoco for Iztapalapa, and attacks that town. Cortés sets out from Texcoco with the launches, attacks the Peñon (del Marques), fights a battle with the canoes in the lake, and lands on the Iztapalapa Causeway at Acachinanco, which he makes his headquarters.

Olid, from Coyoacan, fights his way along the Causeway and joins Cortés at Acachinanco; as Cortés says that Olid was helped by the launches "which sailed near the Causeway," it must have been the Iztapalapa Causeway along which he marched; he apparently returned to his headquarters at Coyoacan that night.

June.

- Sat. 1. Cortés, reinforced by some of Olid's troops, reaches the first houses in the City.
- Enlarges or makes a breach in the Iztapalapa Causeway, so that the launches can pass to the west side.
- S. 2.

¹ Feast of Corpus Christi.

June.

- M. 3.
 T. 4.
 W. 5.
 Th. 6.
 F. 7.
 Sat. 8. Alvarado reports Tepeacac Causeway open.
 S. 9. Sandoval arrives at Tepeacac.
 M. 10. Cortés captures Xoloc and reaches the Plaza.
 T. 11. Cortés pushes his attack.
 W. 12.
 Th. 13. }
 F. 14. } No fighting from Cortés's side.
 Sat. 15. }
 S. 16. General assault. Cortés reaches the Plaza. Burns Montezuma's Palaces.
 M. 17. Cortés captures two bridges on the Tacuba street.
 Alvarado writes from the Causeway.
 Iztapalapa, Churubusco, Culhuacan, Mexquic, and Cuitlahuac seek peace and build huts for Spaniards on Iztapalapa Causeway.
 T. 18. } Continual attacks on the City, with the assistance of a
 W. 19. } fleet of Canoes provided by the towns on the lake, in
 Th. 20. } all 100,000 Indian allies. Cortés captured and filled up
 F. 21. } three bridges on the Tacuba street. Sandoval and
 Sat. 22. } Alvarado also advanced successfully, and the Spaniards appeared to have captured three-quarters of the City.
 S. 23. Defeat of Alvarado at the large water-opening.
 M. 24. Cortés visits Alvarado's camp.
 T. 25. }
 W. 26. } Alvarado on the defensive while recovering from his
 Th. 27. } defeat. Cortés made continual attacks, and after consulting his officers made plans for a combined attack
 F. 28. } on Sunday (B.D.), 30th June.
 Sat. 29. }
 S. 30. Defeat of Cortés. Many Spaniards captured alive. Alvarado fairly successful. Cortés made his attack from the Tacuba street along the three streets running north from Tacuba street towards Tlatelolco. The Spaniards probably crossed the large water-opening which originally divided Tenochtitlan from Tlatelolco, and it was on the Causeway connecting the two Cities that they met with their disaster.

July.

- M. 1.
 T. 2. Cuernavaca begs Cortés for help. Cortés despatches Andrés de Tápia with a force to their assistance.

July.

- W. 3. } Andrés de Tápia absent on expedition to Malinalco.
 Th. 4. } No advance was made on Alvarado's part during the next
 F. 5. } few days. A large water-opening was filled in.
 Sat. 6. } Cortés¹ kept up attack at intervals as far as the Plaza,
 S. 7. } and Chichimecatecle advanced from Alvarado's camp
 M. 8. } without the assistance of the Spaniards, but nothing of
 T. 9. } importance appears to have taken place until
 W. 10. Return of Andrés de Tápia (?).
 Th. 11.
 F. 12. The Otomies beg Cortés for help. Cortés despatches
 Sandoval with a force to their assistance.
 Sat. 13. Alvarado's camp attacked by full force of Mexicans at dawn.
 Cortés sends reinforcements.
 S. 14.
 M. 15. Native Allies begin to rejoin the Spaniards. Powder and
 arms arrived from a vessel which had put into Vera Cruz.
 Forty-fifth day of siege.
 T. 16.
 W. 17. Sandoval returns from his Expedition (?).
 Th. 18. Mexicans propose peace on condition that the Spaniards
 leave the country.
 F. 19. Cortés determines on the systematic destruction of buildings.
 Sat. 20.
 S. 21. { General attack on the City. Cortés slaughters great
 M. 22. { numbers by an ambush in the Plaza, and finally clears
 T. 23. { the Plaza of Tenochtitlan of the enemy. Clears and
 W. 24. { fills up Tacuba street (so that communication was
 Th. 25. { effected with Alvarado's Camp although the forces did
 not join hands), and Guatemoc's palace on Tacuba
 street was destroyed.
 Th. 25. SANTIAGO'S DAY, Cortés crossed and filled in the broad
 water space between Tenochtitlan and Tlatelolco.
 F. 26. Cortés reaches Sta Ana (Xacaculco), and finds the heads of
 Spaniards in a temple.
 Sat. 27. Alvarado reaches the Market-place of Tlatelolco and sets
 fire to the great temple.
 S. 28. Cortés and Alvarado meet in the Market-place of Tlatelolco.

¹ A few days after the defeat many of the native allies deserted the Spaniards and returned to their homes, disheartened by the Spaniards' failure to capture the City and scared by a prophecy of the God Huichilobos that all the Spaniards would be killed within eight or ten days.

July.

M. 29. Catapult brought to Tlatelolco.

T. 30. No fighting.

W. 31. No fighting.

August.

Th.	1.	{	Between Monday, 29th July, and the capture of Guatemala on the 13th August, the dates of events cannot be stated with any certainty. The Spaniards were tired out and the Mexicans utterly exhausted, and apparently for some days no fighting took place. During part of this time the Spaniards were at work on a Catapult which proved a complete failure. Throughout these last days Cortés made efforts to induce the Mexicans to give in without further fighting and slaughter.
F.	2.		
Sat.	3.		
S.	4.		
M.	5.		
T.	6.		

W. 7. After unsuccessful negotiations P. de Alvarado was ordered to attack a quarter containing more than a thousand houses (probably to the N. of the Plaza of Tlatelolco), and drove out the Mexicans with fearful slaughter.

Th. 8. More unsuccessful negotiations.

F. 9. A Texcocan chieftain, who had been taken prisoner, was freed and sent back to Guatemala with messages of peace, but Guatemala ordered him to be killed at once and sacrificed to the Gods. The Mexicans then made their final attack on the Spaniards.

Sat.	10.	{	Two days of fruitless negotiation.
S.	11.		

M. 12. The Mexicans ask Cortés to meet Guatemala in the Market-place. Guatemala fails to appear, and after waiting for three or four hours Cortés ordered his troops and the allies to attack, with the result that the Mexican killed, wounded, and prisoners numbered more than 40,000.

T. 13. *San Hipólito's Day.* Finally, on this day Cortés, Alvarado and the Indian Allies made an attack on the extreme N.E. corner of the City, where the wretched half-starved remnant of the Mexicans still held out. Sandoval, with the launches, cut off the retreat of the Mexican canoes towards the lake, and amid scenes of awful carnage the last houses of the City were captured and Guatemala who attempted to escape in a canoe, was taken prisoner.

GLOSSARY OF MEXICAN, SPANISH, AND OTHER FOREIGN WORDS.

Acales (Mex.), ships, from a = water and calli = a house.

Adelantado, governor-in-chief.

Alacranes, the name of a dangerous reef, from alacran, a scorpion.

Alala, an Indian exclamation.

Alcalde, chief magistrate or mayor.

Alférez, ensign or standard-bearer.

Alguacil, a constable.

Alguacil Mayor, chief constable.

Alguacil del Real, constable or storekeeper.

Amales, amal (Mex.), paper, letters.

Atalaya, a watch-tower.

Arriero, a multerer, carrier.

Arroba, a Spanish weight of 25 lbs.

Atlatl (Mex.), a spear-thrower or throwing-stick (tiradera, Span.).

Audiencia, a court of judicature, the law officers appointed to hold a judicial inquiry.

Barranca, a ravine.

Cacao, Cacahuatl (Mex.), the fruit of *Theobroma Cacao*. Chocolate, made from the cacao fruit, takes its name from the Mexican word chocolatl.

Cacique, a Cuban word meaning chieftain.

Cucica, the female form of the title Cacique.

Calachoni, Calachone, Calachione, Calacheoni or Calachuni, the title of chieftain among the Mayas.

Camarero, chamberlain.

Cedula (real), Royal letters patent.

Ceiba, Bombax ceiba, the silk-cotton tree.

Cenote, Tznóte, deep natural wells or caverns in the limestone rock whence the natives of Yucatan obtain water.

Chalchihuite, Chalchivies or Chalchihuys (B.D.), Chalchihuitl (Mex.), Jadeite, highly valued by the Indians as a precious stone.

Compadre, godfather, friend.

Copal, a resinous substance burnt for incense, the gum of the *Rhus copallinum*.

Cue, a shrine, temple, a word picked up by the Spaniards in the Antilles.

Despoblado, uninhabited country.

Enaguas, petticoats, or the upper skirt of a woman's dress.

Encomienda. The Indians, at first slaves, were next subjected to the system of *repartimientos*, that is, divided among masters, who had a property in their labour, not in their persons; and, lastly, they were distributed in *encomiendas*, paying to the *encomendero*, or owner of the district, a tribute or produce-rent, in return for protection (Herman Merivale—Lectures on Colonisation).

Escopeteros, musketeers.

Fraile de la Merced, a friar of the Order of Mercy.

Hennequen, or sisal hemp; *enequen* (B. D.), a species of aloe (*Agave Ixtli*); the fibre is now largely used for cordage.

Hidalgo a gentleman by birth.

Huajolotes (Mex.), turkeys.

Jiquipil (Maya), a body of warriors eight thousand strong.

Lienzo, a painting on linen or cotton cloth.

Lope luzio (Totonac), prince or great lord. Used by the Spaniards as a nickname for the Totonac Indians.

Macana or *Maquihuitl* (Mex.), a wooden sword edged with sharp pieces of flint or obsidian.

Maestresala, the chief waiter in a nobleman's household.

Mamei, the fruit of the Mamie Zapote tree.

Mastel, a loin cloth.

Monte, in Spanish meaning a mountain, a hill is used in Spanish America in the way *bush* is used in Australia or *veldt* in South Africa.

Nahuatatos (Mex.), interpreters.

Pelota, a Basque and Spanish ball game.

Penacho, a tuft of feathers, a plume.

Petaca, a trunk or leather-covered hamper.

Petate, a plaited mat; *Petlatl* (Mex.).

Piragua, a large canoe.

Plaza, a square, market-place.

Pueblo, a town or village, used especially to designate a township or community of American Indians.

Regidor, magistrate, prefect.

Repartimiento. See *Encomienda*.

Residencia, the examination and formal account demanded of a person holding public office.

Rubrica, the flourish which forms part of the signature of a Spaniard.

Salitrales, salt marshes.

Tacal Naguas (Mex.), wizards, soothsayers.

Tamenes (Mex.), porters, carriers.

Tapias, mud walls, walls made of earth stamped into a mould.

Tatúan (B. D.), *Tlatōan* (Mex.), a chieftain.

Teleciguata, a great lady.

Teocalli (Mex.), a temple, usually raised on a pyramidal foundation.

Tepuzques (B. D.), the Mexican word for cannon, from *Tepusque*, iron.

Tianguez or *Tianguz* (Mex.), a market or market-place.

Tiradera, an *Atlatl* (Mex.) or spear-thrower, throwing-stick.

Tonatio (B. D.), *Tonatiuh* (Mex.), the sun, or child of the sun; the name given by the Mexicans to Pedro de Alvarado.

Tortilla, a little cake; the thin cake made from maize, the staple food of the Mexicans.

Tuna, the prickly pear, fruit of the Nopal Cactus (*Opuntia*).

Vecino, a neighbour, a citizen.

Vecdor (obsolete), overseer, official in charge of stores.

Xexenes, a small kind of mosquito.

Yuca, Yuca de Casave, *Jatropha Manihot*, or *Manihot utilisima*. Cassava bread is made from the root of *Jatropha Manihot*.

PLACE - NAMES.

Acalá, a province situated about 18° Lat. N., 91° 30' Long. W. Gueacala or Hueyacala, Great Acalá.

Altlatlaya (B. D.), (Atalaya) from Atalaya, a watch tower.

Axaruco or Ajaruco. On the north coast of Cuba.

Ayagualulco (B. D.), Ahualolco (O. y B.).

Cempoala, Cenpoal (B. D.).

Chanpoton (Potonchan). See note on pages 21-22.

Chichimecatecle (B. D.), Chichimecatecutli (O. y B.).

Cholula, Cholulan.

Coatzacoalcos, Guaçacalco or Guaçagualco (B. D.).

Cotaxtla, or Cuetlaxtla, Cotastan or Cotustan (B. D.).

Cauhtémoc, Guatemuz (B. D.); Guatemucin (C.); Guatemoc, successor to Montezuma and Cuiclahuac as ruler of Mexico.

Culua, Culoa or Ulua. The land of the Mexicans.

Estomies (B. D.) or Otomis: this tribe is reputed to be the earliest settled in Central Mexico.

Huexotzingo, Huexocingo, Guaxocingo or Guaxalcingo (B. D.), a district and town allied to Tlaxcala; Guaxolocingo (B. D.), a chieftain of Tlaxcala (?).

Huichilobos (B. D.), Huitzipochtli, the Mexican God of War.

Kukulcan or Cukulcan, the Maya Culture God, the same as the Mexican God Quetzalcoatl.

Malinchi or Malinche, the name given to Cortés by the Mexicans, see p. 273.

Montezuma (B. D.), Motecuhzoma (O. y B.), Motecutzōma.

Papaloapan, Papaloaba (B. D.).

Pitalpitoque (B. D.), Cuiclalpitoc (O. y B.). A Mexican chieftain called by the Spaniards Ovandillo.

Potonchan (Chanpotan). See note on pp. 21-22.

Quetzalcoatl, from the bird Quetzal (*Tragopan resplendens*), and Coatl, a serpent. The Serpent-bird God, the Culture God of the Mexicans. The same as the Maya God Kukulcan.

Quiahuitztlan, Quiahuyztlan (B. D.).

Tehuacingo, Teoacingo, Tehuacacingo or Tevacingo (B. D.), Tehuatzinco.

Tendile (B. D.). Teuhtilli, Governor of Cuertaxtla.

Tenochtitlan, the City of Mexico ; Tenuztitlan (B. D.), Temixtitan (C.).

Tezcatēpuca (B. D.), Tezcatlipoca or Tetzcatlipoca, the Mexican God of Hell.

Tlātelolco or Tlatelulco. The northern division of the City of Mexico.

Tzumpantzingo, Çunpanzingo (B. D.), Çinpançingo (B. D.), Teocadçunpançingo (B. D.), possibly Teoll (God) or Teocalli (Temple). Tzumpantzingo, the part of the town or district where the temples stood.

Ulua, see Culua.

Xicotenga (B. D.), Xicotēncatl.

B. D. = Bernal Díaz.

O. y. B. = Orozco y Berra.

C. = Hernando Cortés.

INDEX.

Acalá, the great, town, xxvii
Acalá, the lesser, town, xxvii
Acalá, Province of, Cortés enters, 1525, xxviii

Acales, 166, 271

Adelantado, 37, 65, 192, 213

Agave Ixtli, 51

Aguilar, Jerónimo de, of Ecija, in captivity at Cape Catoche, 1511-1519, 95, 195; his return to Cortés, 1519, 100, 109; interpreter to Cortés, 133, 134, 218, 244, 273

Aguilar, Marcos de, Governor of New Spain, 1527, xxxii

Alacranes, 102

Alala, 119

Alaminos, Anton de, of Palos, pilot, with Juan Ponce de Leon in Florida, 1513, 27; chief pilot, 1517, 12, 18; 1518, 25, 44, 213; 1519, 99, 136, 146, 152; pilot of the Cortés deputation to Spain, 1519, 194

Alaric, King of the Goths, 67

Albuquerque, Duke of, cousin of Don Francisco de la Cueva, 282

Alcalde, 73

Aldrovandi, founds his museum at Bologna, 301; receives from the Medici some of the gifts of Cortés, *ib.*

Alexander King of Macedon, 72, 252

Alférez, 227

Alguacil, lxii, 194

Alguacil Mayor, 78, 157, 208

Alguacil del Real, 157

Alligators, 27

Aloe, 51

Alonso de Villanueva, Hernando, *el Manquillo*, 167

Altamirano, family of, 72

Atlatlaya (Atalaya), 216

Alvarado, Gómez de, with his four brothers joins Cortés at Trinidad, 77, 154

Alvarado, Gonzalo de, with his four brothers joins Cortés at Trinidad, 77, 154

Alvarado, Jorge de, with his four brothers joins Cortés at Trinidad, 77, 154

Alvarado, Juan de, the elder, a bastard, with his four brothers joins Cortés, 77, 154

Alvarado, Doña Leonor de, daughter of Pedro de Alvarado, and Doña Luisa, 282; wife of Don Francisco de la Cueva, *ib.*

Alvarado, Pedro de, a captain in the expedition of Grijalva, 1518, 36, etc., 50; his return to Cuba, xii, 57, 63; with his four brothers joins Cortés at Trinidad, 77, 89; ordered to proceed by land to Havana, S. coast of Cuba, 82; sent in the *San Sebastian* to Cape San Antonio, 90; his sorrel mare, 86, 117, 141, 162, 177; sent by Cortés from Tabasco to explore inland, 1519, 113; his expedition to Coxtatla, 160; captain of expeditions, 1519, 157; commands the army of Cortés at Cempoala, 211; receives from Cortés Doña Luisa, daughter of Xicotenga, the elder, 1519, 282; their children and descendants, *ib.*; sent to reconnoitre Mexico, 1519, 294; his return, *ib.*; his Mexican name, *Tonatio*, 295, 296; his fleet to Peru, 283; perpetrates a massacre of Indians in the Teocalli, xvii; commands the section of Tlacopan, at siege of Mexico, May, 1521, xxi; Rio de Alvarado named after, 1518, 50, 131; Commendador of the Order of Santiago, 37, 283; Governor of Guatemala, xxxvi, 37, 283; Decree of Royal Council of the Indies sent to, 1541, xxxvi; his death, 1542, xxxvii

Alvarado (Papaloapan), Rio de, xii, lxiii, 50, 57, 59, 131

Alvarez, Juan, *el Manquillo*, of Huelva, pilot, 1517, 12; 1518, 37; with Juan Velásquez de Leon, 1519,

- 104; with Francisco de Montejo, 1519, 146
- Alvarez de Pinedo**, Alonzo, Captain, on the Rio Panuco, 212; his voyage from Florida, *ib.*
- Amadis**, story of, xv
- Amates**, 94
- Amazons**, race of, 105
- America**, cereals of the East unknown in, xlviii; iron implements not found in, xlviii; North-west coasts first populated, xlviii
- America**, Central, xlv; ancient monuments of. *See* Maudslay, Anne Carey, and Alfred Percival, *A Glimpse at Guatemala*, 1899; weapons of war rare in the native sculptures, li
- American Anthropologist*, N.S., vol. vii, No. 2, April-June, 1905, cited, 302
- American Antiquarian*, 1896, 108
- American** antiquities, British Museum, 300, 302
- Angulo y Garcicaro**, —, joins Cortés at Havana, 84
- Annual Report of the Bureau of American Ethnology*, 1903-1904, 215
- Anonymous Conqueror**, the, his original MS. lost, xlv.
- Anthony**, Saint, of Padua, iv
- Antilles**, the, xv, 17
- Aqueducts**, of Mexico, 285
- Aquitiaño**, Juan Perez de. *See* Perez de Aquitiaño, Juan.
- Aranda**, —, a settler in Tabasco, 1523, 133
- Arbenga**, a Levantine, artilleryman to Cortés, 85, 93
- Archæologia*, vol. liv, London, 1895, cited, 302
- Argueta**, Don Juan I., Secretary of the Interior and Justice, Guatemala, 1901, forwards the copy of the Díaz MS. to Genaro García, vi, vii
- Arias de Avila**, Pedro (Pedrarias), Governor of Tierra Firme, accompanied by Bernal Díaz del Castillo, 1514, xi, 10; father-in-law of Vasco Núñez de Balboa, *ib.*; their disputes, *ib.*
- Arias de Peñalosa**, Doña, daughter of Pedro Arias de Ávila, wife of Vasco Núñez de Balboa, 10
- Armour**, Padded cotton, used by the Spaniards in Mexico, 43, 74, 85
- Arriero*, *El*, 87, 177
- Arroba*, 211
- Arrows** and bows, Mexican, lvii
- Artiaga** (Artiago), Juan Perez de. *See* Perez de Artiaga, Juan.
- Artists**, Mexican, 140, 141
- Ascension**, Bay of, Yucatan, 1518, 41
- Asia**, xlviii
- Astecs**, or Mexicans, origin of, lv
- Atalaya** (Atlaltlaya), 216
- Atlaltl*, lvii, 285, 301, 302
- Atti della R. Accademia dei Lincei*, Rome, 1885, cited, 302
- Attila**, King of the Huns, 67
- Audiencia*, xxxiii, 200
- Ávila**, Alonzo de, a captain in the expedition of Grijalva, 1518, 36, etc., 61, 63; joins Cortés at Trinidad, 77, 110; his parched sorrel horse, 86, 117; a partisan of Cortés, 154; Accountant of Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz, 1519, 157; his arrogance, 167; superseded by Gonzalo de Sandoval, 212; denounces the Teocalli massacre, 1520, xvii; owner of village of Chipiana, 34; captured by the French, 38
- Ávila**, Hernando López de. *See* López de Ávila, Hernando.
- Ávila**, Pedro de, of Havana, 33
- Ávila**, Pedro Arias de. *See* Arias de Ávila, Pedro.
- Axaruco** (Jaruco), Cuba, port, lxiii, lxiv, 13, 14, 38
- Ayagualulco** (La Rambla), xii, lxiii, 49, 50, 131
- Ayagualulco**, town, overrun by Cortés, xxvi; Cortés, bridge at, xxix
- Azores**, 202
- Aztec Empire**, 132
- Aztec Tradition**, 261
- Baena**, —, a Spanish settler at Trinidad, joins Cortés, 77; his dappled horse, 87
- Baeza**, Gaspar de, 1566, cited, xl
- Bahama Channel**, 194, 199, 200, 202
- Bahia de la Ascension**, lxiii
- Bajos*, 108
- Bajos de Sisal**, lxiv
- Balboa**, Vasco Núñez de. *See* Núñez de Balboa, Vasco.
- Banderas**, Rio de (Jamapa), lxiii, 50, 56, 131, 150
- Barba**, Pedro, lieutenant of Diego Velásquez in Havana, 84; ordered to arrest Cortés, 88
- Barcelona**, Charles V. creates Hernando Cortés Marques del Valle de Guajaca at, July 6, 1529, 3

- Barrancas*, xlv
Batabano, lxiv
Battle and the Ruins of Cintla, 1896.
 See Brinton, Daniel Garrison.
Bay of Ascension, Yucatan, 1518, 41
Bayamo, Pedro de Moron, a settler, of, 87, 117, 181
Becerra, Captain Bartolomé, a *Conquistador* and *Regidor* of Guatemala, father-in-law of Bernal Díaz del Castillo, xxxv
Becerra, Teresa, eldest daughter of Captain Bartolomé Becerra, marries Bernal Díaz del Castillo, 1535, xxxv
Benavente, Fray Toribio, called *Motolinia*, Franciscan, of, xxv
Benitez, Juan, a crossbowman, 93
Berendt, Dr. C. H., at Cintla, 1869, 108; his notes used by Daniel Garrison Brinton, 1896, *ib.*
Bermudez, Agustin, proposed as Captain of the Third Expedition, 1519, 69
Bernal, Harbour, Spain, 146
Bernal (Quiahuitztlan), Harbour, 146, 174
Berra, Manuel Orozco y. See Orozco y Berra, Manuel.
Berrio, a Spanish soldier, killed in Florida, 1518, 29; at Cozumel, 96, 206
Bibliotheca Mexicana, 1755. See Eguirra y Eguen, Juan José de
Biscay, 157
Blanca, Isla, xii, lxiii, 54, 131
Boca de Términos (Puerto Deseado or Real), lxiii, lxiv, 44, 105; Bernal Díaz del Castillo at the, 1518, xii, 44
Bologna, the Aldrovandi Museum at, contained some of the gifts of Montezuma, 301; Charles V. crowned King of the Romans by Clement VII. at, 1529-30, 301; University of, 301
Bonacca, Island, Honduras, 12
Books, Paper, 162
Borgia, Caesar, lviii
Borrego, Antonio Velásquez. See Velásquez Borrego, Antonio.
Boto, Alonso, captured in Yucatan, 1518, 24
Bows and arrows, Mexican, lvii
Branding with a hot iron, xviii
Brigantine, 92
Brinton, Daniel Garrison, *The Battle and the Ruins of Cintla*, 1896, 108
British Honduras, xlii
British Museum, Christy Collection, 302; Department of British and Medieval Antiquities, possesses three of the masks presented by Montezuma to Cortés, 300
Brózik, Károly, *Castillo de Bernal. Mexico, felfedezése és meghódítása. Adolgota dr. Brózik Károly*, Budapest, 1878, cited, iii
Bureau of American Ethnology, *Annual Report*, 1903-1904, cited, 215
Burgos, Bishop of. See Rodríguez de Fonseca, Juan.
Cabildo, 194
Cabo Rojo, xiii, lxiv, 60
Cabrera, Don Manuel Estrada. See Estrada Cabrera, Don Manuel.
Cacamatzin, Lord of Tetzucoco, welcomes Cortés, 1519, xiv; surrendered to Cortés, xvi
Cacao, xxxii, 169
Cáceres, Juan de, *Mayordomo* of Cortés, 86
Cachula, Spanish raid on, 1520, xviii
Cachulco, Range, xxxiii
Cacica, 132, 185, 195, 282
Cacique, a Cuban word, xv, lvi, 15, 39, 48, 52, 91, 97
Cacique, the fat, of Cempoala, 164, etc., 211
Cæsar, Julius, his crossing the Rubicon, 210
Caicedo, Lope Ochoa de. See Ochoa de Caicedo, Lope.
Cairo, Great, 14
Calacheoni, 111
Calachiones, 98, 102, 109
Calachones (Calachiones), 109
Calachonis, 126
Calachumi, 24
Caltanmi, Valley, 217
Camacho, of Triana, Pilot, 1517, 12; 1518, 37; 1519, 90, 91
Camarero, 86
Camomiles, 265
Campeche (San Lázaro), lxiii, lxiv, 22, 43, 63, 93; discovered by the Spaniards, 1517, 18
Canarreo, village, 33
Cannibalism in Mexico, 186, 196, 226
Canoas (Tanguijo), Río de, xiii, lxiv, 60
Canoes, Cuba, 33; Yucatan, 14
Canyons, xlv

- Cape Catoche**, xi, lxiii, lxiv, 8, 15, 18, 19, 31, 52, 91; Jerónimo de Aguilar and Gonzalo Guerrero in captivity at, 1511-1519, 195; Bernal Díaz del Castillo at, March, 1517, xi, 8, 15, 18, 19, 31; Juan de Grijalva rounds, 1518, 41
- Cape Guaniguanico**, Cuba, 39, 84
- Cape of the Palms**, 107
- Cape Rojo**, lxiv; farthest point reached by Juan de Grijalva, 1518, 146; Bernal Díaz del Castillo at, 1518, lxiii, 60
- Cape San Antonio**, Cuba, lxiii, lxiv, 14, 39, 90
- Caras de Indios*, 126
- Carbonero**, Pedro, 251
- Cárdenas**, xvi
- Cardona**, Antonio Serrano de. *See* Serrano de Cardona, Antonio
- Carenas**, Puerto de. *See* Puerto de Carenas.
- Carlos V.** *See* Charles V., Emperor of Germany.
- Carranza**, Baltasar Dorantes de. *See* Dorantes de Carranza, Baltasar.
- Carta de Vera Cruz*, July 10, 1519, lxiii, 21, 41, 43, 113, 118, 123, 194, 300
- Cartas y Relaciones de Hernan Cortés al Emperador Carlos V.*, 1866. *See* Cortés, Hernando.
- Carthaginians**, the, 72
- Casa de Contratacion de Sevilla**, 300
- Casas**, Bartolomé de Las, *Bishop of Chiapas*, Dominican Friar, Parish Priest of Yaguarama (1474-1569), 34; his conversation with Cortés, 1542, 84; *Historia de las Indias*, 1527-59, Madrid, 1875-76, cited, lxv, 76, 84; describes (cap. cxxi) the gifts of Cortés to Charles V. at Valladolid, April 1520, 301; opposes the *Encomienda* system, 1550, xxxvii; receives a letter from Bernal Díaz del Castillo as to his poverty, Feb. 20, 1558, xxxviii
- Casas**, Francisco de Las, cuts the throat of Cristóbal de Olid, xxx
- Cascacatan** (Cuzcatlan), xxxi
- Cascorro**, —, of Moguer, a seaman, 39
- Cassava Bread**, 12, 32, 36, 38, 56, 69, 74, 78, 84, 85, 87, 147, 181, 198, 206
- Castil Blanco**, Portugal, 217, 219, 225
- Castilan*, 19, 93
- Castille**, 6, 7, 11, 51, 72, 205, 236; admiral of, 192; merchandise of, landed at San Juan de Ulúa, 56
- Cata Francia, Montesinos*, 131
- Catalan**, Juan, artilleryman to Cortés, 85
- Catalina**, Doña, niece of the fat Cacique, 1519, 185, 191
- Catalonia**, battlefields of, 67; Charles V. in, October, 1519, 300
- Catoche*, 15
- Catoche**, battle of, 1517, 51; Cape, xi, lxiii, lxiv, 8, 15, 18, 19, 31, 52, 91
- Cecilia**, Santa. *See* Santa Cecilia
- Cedula*, 3
- Ceiba**, Cortés at the, 1519, 112, 130
- Cempoala**, battle of, 1520, xvii; Caciques of, 163, 241, 246; allies of Cortés, 259, 297; march of Cortés from, to Tlascala, 1519, 215; Itinerary, 216; Bernal Díaz del Castillo at, 1519, lxiii, 162, 195; Idols in, destroyed by Cortés, 1519, 187, 281
- Cenis*, 98
- Cenotes**, xlvii
- Central America**, xlv; a *Glimpse at Guatemala, and some Notes on the Ancient Monuments of Central America*, by Anne Cary and Alfred Percival Maudslay, 1899, liv; native sculpture, absence of bows and arrows, lvii; native sculptures, weapons of war rare, li; ruined towns abandoned long before the Spanish Conquest, liv
- Cermelo**, Juan, a partisan of Diego Velásquez, 206; sentenced to death by Cortés, 207; but alive in 1520, *ib.*
- Cervantes**, the mad, a buffoon in Cuba, 71
- Ceyconacan**, 217
- Chalchihuites**, 47, 52, 147, 220, 264, 284
- Chalchihuitli*, 47
- Chalco**, assisted by Cortés, 1520, xix
- Champoton**. *See* Chanpoton.
- Chamula**, town of, assigned to Bernal Díaz del Castillo for his bravery, xxiv; *Encomienda*, taken away from Bernal Díaz del Castillo, 1527, xxxii, xxxiii
- Chanpotón** (Potonchan), lxiii, 46, 47, 108; its site, 21; Bernal Díaz at, 1517, xi, 5, 51; 1518, xii, 5, 21, 51; 1519, lxiii
- Chaparrastiques**, the, xxxi

Chapultepec, a rocky hill and a spring, near Mexico City, 285

Charles V., Emperor of Germany, King of Spain. *See* Spain, Kings of.

Charts, 15, 18

Chiapas, xlv, 1, 206; Bishop of, Bartolomé de Las Casas, 34; expedition against, 1523, xxiii; natives of, greatest warriors in whole of New Spain, *ib.*; town, enlarged at expense of Bernal Díaz del Castillo, 1527, xxii, xxxvi

Chichén-Itzá, Yucatan, founded by the Mayas, li; women depicted in a Nahuatl mural painting at, lii

Chichimecatecle (Chichimecatecuhli), 236, 271

Chichimecatecuhli (Chichimecatecle), a Cacique, of Tlascala, 1519, 236; his dispute with Xicotenga, 239; his audience of Cortés, 271

Chili, 244

Chipiána, village, 34

Cholula, Central Mexico, 1, 223, 284, 287; Cortés advances on, 291; ambassadors from Cholula to Cortés, 296; Cortés massacres the Indians at, 1519, xiv

Cholulteca-Malalaca, town, Bernal Díaz del Castillo passes through, xxxi

Chontal, 21, 261

Chontal Tongue, 21

Christy, Collection, British Museum, 302

Chuntales, 261

Ciguatépécad, xxvii

Cimatán, Bernal Díaz del Castillo marches against, xxvi

Cimatán, xxxiii

Cingapacinga (Tizapanecingo), a fortified town, not on modern maps, 178; the expedition of Cortés against, 182, 196

Cinpancingo (Tzumpantzinco), town, 251

Cintla, town, subject to Tabasco, 117; battle of, March 25, 1519, lxiv, 118, etc.; *The Battle and the Ruins of Cintla*, by Daniel G. Brinton, 1896, 108

Citla, province, xxxiii

Ciudad Rodrigo, de Moro, a native of, 184

Clement VII. [Giulio de Medici], crowned Charles V. as King of the Romans at Bologna, 1529-30, 301

Coatzacoalcos, Rio de, xli, lxiii lxiv, 50, 61, 131

Coatzacoalcos (Guaacalco), town, lxii; welcomes Juan de Grijalva, 1518, 61; Cortés arrives at, xxvi, 133; Bernal Díaz del Castillo returns to, 1528, xxxiii; Indians of, of no profit to Bernal Díaz del Castillo, xxxii; Sandoval reaches, xxii; *Visitador General* of, Bernal Díaz del Castillo, 1531, xxxiv

Cockscomb Range, British Honduras, xlv

Cocochima (Xico), 216

Cocotlan (Zautla), 217

Cofre de Perote, 13,403 feet, 215, 216

Colección, *Colección de Documentos Inéditos para la Historia de España*, Madrid, 1842, cited, 300; *Colección de Documentos para la Historia de México*, 1258-66. *See* García Icazbalceta, Joaquín.

Colección de Documentos Inéditos relativos al Descubrimiento, Conquista y Organización de las Antiguas Posesiones Españolas de Ultramar, 1898, 21, 44; *Nueva Colección de Documentos para la Historia de México*, 1886-92. *See* García Icazbalceta, Joaquín.

Córida (Culúa), 49. *See also* Ulúa.

Columbus, Christopher, ix

Compadre, 77

Conchillos, Lope de, Secretary of the Royal Council of the Indies, 1518, 65, a partisan of Francisco de Garay, 213

Cones, rose, 164, 275

Cones catóche, 15

Congress of Valladolid. *See* Valladolid.

Conil, near Cape Catoche lxiv

Conquistadores, 63, 67, 205

Conquistadores of 1519, names of some of the, 74

Copal, 20, 62, 257, 258, 265, 271

Copan, woman prominently placed in the native sculptures, li

Copilco, town, Cortés at, xxvii

Copper Axes, 60, 61

Córdoba, Juan de Torres de. *See* Torres de Córdoba, Juan de.

Córdova, Francisco Hernández de. *See* Hernández de Córdoba, Francisco.

Cordovans, 152

Coria, Bernaldino de, a partisan of Diego Velásquez, 206; a settler in Chiapas, *ib.*; reports to Cortés, 207

Corral, —, Ensign, 1519, 157, 227; 237

Cortés, Hernan, born 1485, died Dec. 4, 1547, 68; *Cartas de Relacion*, Five Letters on the Conquest of Mexico to Charles V., 1519-1526, xliii, 194; *Cartas y Relaciones de Hernan Cortés al Emperador Carlos V.* [1519-1544] *Collegidas e ilustradas por Don Pascual de Gayangos*, Paris, 1866, xvii; letters, first, from Vera Cruz, 1519, still unknown, xliii, 194; second, from Segura de la Frontera (Tepeaca), Oct. 30, 1520, xliii, 287; third, from Coyoacan, May 15, 1522, xliii, fourth, from Temixtitlan (Mexico), Oct. 15, 1524, *ib.*; fifth, from Temixtitlan, Sept. 3, 1526, Hakl. Soc., Ser. 1, 40, 1868, xlv; first letter, July, 1519 (probably in the Royal Private Library of the Kings of Spain), cited, 11, 113, 194, 300; letter to Charles V. from the army of Cortés, 1519, 194, etc., 273, two copies made, 198; husband of Doña Catalina Juarez la Marceyda, 70; *Alcalde* of Santiago Baracoa, 73; his artillery, 85; his *Cumarer*, Rodrigo Ranguel, 86; household of, organised at Havana, 86; his *Encomienda* in Cuba, 70, 73; as "gentil corsario," 84; his first Maestresala, Guzman, 86; his Mayordomo, Juan de Cáceres, 86; appointed Captain-General of the Third Expedition, 1519, 70; his preparations for the third expedition, 1519, 72, etc.; takes leave of Diego Velásquez, 75; Diego Velásquez attempts to revoke his commission to, 79, etc.; Diego Velásquez sends Gaspar de Garnica to arrest, 88; his flagship aground near Isle of Pines, Cuba, 83; his dark chesnut horse, dies at San Juan de Ulúa, 86; his horse, *el Arriero*, 177; sets sail for the Island of Cozumel, 90; reviews his army in Cozumel, 92; his first battle in New Spain, 120; exchanges presents Montezuma, 139, 140; explains the Christian religion to the Mexicans, 1519, 148, 149; his partisans intrigue for him at San Juan de Ulúa, 1519, 154; elected Captain-General by his soldiers 1519, 156, 195; his alliance with the Totonacs, 174; prepares his expedition to Mexico; 208; his march from Cempoala to

Tlaxcala, August 16, 1519, 215, Itinerary, 216; his expedition to Tzumpantzinco, 1519, 248; his entry into Tlaxcala, Sept. 23, 1519, 217, 274; his treatment of the Tlaxcalan spies, 1519, 259; questions the Caciques of Tlaxcala as to the state of Mexico, 1519, 283; receives at Tlaxcala four ambassadors with gifts from Montezuma, 1519, 293; sends the gifts of Montezuma to Charles V., July, 1519, 300; his first letter, July, 1519, to the Emperor, not yet discovered, probably in the Royal Private Library of the Kings of Spain, *ib.*; his bridges at Ayagualulco and Tayca compared by travellers to the Pillars of Hercules, xxix; *Cartas y Relaciones*, Paris, 1866, cited, xvii; commands the third expedition from Cuba, 1519, xiii, 64, etc.; his cavalry officers, 1519, 117; renounces the control of Diego Velásquez at the *Ceiba*, 1519, 112; his expedition to Cingapacinga, 1519, 182; gives a magnificent reception at Mexico, June 18, 1524, to Fray Martin de Valencia and twelve Franciscans, xxv; created Marqués del Valle de Guajaca (Oaxaca) by Charles V., Barcelona, July 6, 1529, 3, 9; his standard, 77, 228; at Santiago, 69, etc.; at Trinidad, 77, etc.

Cortés, Marqués del Valle de Guajaca, son of Hernan, Francisco López de Gómara dedicates his *Istoria* to, 1552, 68

Cortés, Martin, father of Hernan, 72, 203; son of Hernan Cortés and of Doña Marina, 129

Coruña, Charles V. embarks at, for Flanders, May, 1520, 300

Costa de Mala Pelea, 22, 25

Cotastan (Cotaxtla), 160

Cotaxtla (Cuetlaxtla), 138, 139, 160

Cotton, quilted, defensive armour in Mexico and Yucatan, lviii, 16, 19, 118, 285; adopted by the Spaniards, 1518, 43, 74, 85, 116

Cotton Shirts, 33

Cotustan, province, 139

Coyococnacan (Ixuacan de los Reyes), 217

Coyoacan, Hernando Cortés writes Charles V. from, May 15, 1522, xliii

Coyohuacan, causeway of, 1519, xv

Coyotes, xxvii

- Cozumel** (Santa Cruz), lxiii, lxiv, 85; Island of, Bernal Díaz del Castillo at, 1518, xii, xiii, 39; 1519, 90; Cortés sets sail for, 90; Caciques of, 1519, 103
- Crests**, feathered, Mexican head-dresses, 22, 118
- Cristóbal**, San. *See* San Cristóbal
- Crossbowmen**, Spanish, 1519, 92, 164, 218, 233, 235, 272
- Cuadçinpacingo**, Tlascala, Nicotencia's camp at, 1519, 235
- Cuauhtémoc**, Lord of Tlatelolco, surrendered to Cortés, 1519, xvi; defeats Cortés, 1520, xviii; Lord of Mexico, xx; accompanies Cortés to the Hibueras, xxvi; executed by Cortés at Izancánac, 1525, xxviii
- Cuba**, island, lxiv, 251, 255; Adelantado of, Diego Velásquez, 192; conquest of, by the Spaniards, 11; Bernal Díaz del Castillo flees to, 1514, xi; *Encomiendas*, 36; expedition of Francisco Hernández de Córdova from, 1517, 8; expedition of Juan de Grijalva from, 1518, 36, etc.; return of Juan de Grijalva to, xlv; Governor of, Diego Velásquez, xi, 65; his appointment as Adelantado of, 192
- Cue** (Antilles), temple, xv, 17, 62, 67, 104, 161, 167, 187, 190, 219, 234, 274, 281, 287, 291
- Cuellar**, Diego Valásquez, a native of, 11
- Cuesco**, a Cacique, father of Doña Francisca, 185, 191
- Cuetlaxtla** (Cotaxtla), Teuhtilli, Governor of, 138, 139
- Cueva**, Don Francisco de la, husband of Doña Leonor de Alvarado, 282
- Cuitláhuac**, Lord of Iztapalapan, surrendered to Cortés, 1519, xvi; defeats Cortés, 1520, xviii
- Culúa**, 49, 128; language of, 160; people of, 56, 152, 160, 178
- Çunpanzingo** (Tzumpantzinco), town, 224, 248, 251
- Cuzcatlan** (Cascacatan), xxxi
- Darien**, Jerónimo de Aguilar at, 1511, 101
- Dedo mayor**, 143
- Deer**, 162
- Denkwürdigkeiten des Hauptmanns Bernal Díaz del Castillo**, 1838. *See* Díaz del Castillo, Bernal.
- Descado**, Puerto (Boca de Términos), lxiii, lxiv
- Despoblado**, 217
- Diamantes torcidos**, 140
- Diamonds**, Blue, 47
- Díaz**, Juan, of Seville, priest, in the Expedition of Grijalva, 1518, 37, etc.; with Cortés, 1519, 98, 138; at Cintra, 130; in Tlascala, 236, 277; a partisan of Diego Velásquez, 206; priest; author of *Itinerario de Grijalva*, 1518, lxiv, lxv, 21, 39, 41, 43, 63, 98, 105; its date, 105
- Díaz del Castillo**, Bernal (1492-1581), Biography of, by Genaro García, ix-xlii; a relation of Diego Velásquez, Governor of Cuba, xi, 9, 74; emigrated to America, 1514, x, 10; one of the first conquerors of New Spain, 5; the only Spaniard to serve in three successive expeditions to New Spain, 9; joins Hernán Cortés, 1519, 74; appointed *Visitador General* of Coatzacoalcos and Tabasco, 1531, xxxiv; *Regidor* of Santiago de Guatemala, 5; father of Diego, a half-caste, xxxv; *Historia verdadera de la Conquista de la Nueva España*, 1514-1568, original MS., 297 leaves, in old leather binding, holograph, xli; *Historia verdadera de la Conquista de la Nueva España*, original MS. still in Guatemala, 1908, ii; *Historia verdadera de la Conquista de la Nueva España*, the text corrupted by Fray Alonso Remón, 1632, ii, etc.; *Historia verdadera de la Conquista de la Nueva España*, 1904, photographic reproduction of the original MS. presented by Guatemala to Mexico, Oct. 20, 1895, vi; *The True History of the Conquest of New Spain*, translated by A. P. Maudslay, 1908, i, etc.; his death in Guatemala, c. 1581, xli
- Díaz del Castillo**, Diego, a half-caste, a natural son of Bernal, xxxv
- Díaz del Castillo**, Don Francisco, "The Graceful," father of Bernal, ix, 5; *Regidor* of Medina del Campo, x, 5; eldest son of Bernal, born 1536, xxxv
- Diez Rejón**, Doña María, mother of Bernal Díaz del Castillo, ix
- Documentos Inéditos**. *See* Colección
- Domingo**, Santo. *See* Santa Domingo
- Dominguez**, Gonzalo, his dark chestnut horse, 87, 117

- Dominican Friar**, Bartolomé de Las Casas, 34
- Dominicans**, black cloaks of, 55, 189, 274
- Don Carlos**. See Charles V.
- Dorantes de Carranza**, Baltasar, xxxv
- Duero**, river, 131
- Duero**, Andrés de, Secretary to Diego Velásquez, 159, 199; partner of Hernan Cortés, 1519, 70; advises a speedy embarkation, 75, 80, 81, 88
- Duero**, Tudela de. See Tudela de Duero
- Ecija**, Jerónimo de Aguilar, of, 95, 100
- Eguiaza y Eguren**, Juan José de, Bishop of Yucatan, *Bibliotheca Mexicana*, Mexico, 1755, cited, iv
- Eguren**, Juan José de Eguiana y. See Eguiaza y Eguren, Juan José de
- Egypt**, Joseph in, 134
- Elvira**, Doña, daughter or niece of Mase Escasi, given to Juan Velásquez de Leon, 1519, 282
- Emeralds**, 147
- Enaguas**, 15
- Enciso y Valdivia**, —, his lawsuit with Jerónimo de Aguilar, 1511, 102
- Encomienda**, xxvi, xxviii, xxxii, 74; system attacked by Bartolomé de Las Casas, 1550, xxxvii
- Encomiendas**, Cuba, 36, 70, 73
- Epítome de la Biblioteca Oriental i Occidental Nautica i Geografica**, 1629. See Leon Pinelo, Antonio de
- Escalante**, Juan de, joins Cortés at Trinidad, 77, 89; ordered to sail along north coast of Cuba, 82; his light chestnut horse, 87, 117; in command of a ship under Cortés, 1519, 98; *Alguacil Mayor* of Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz, 1519, 157; a partisan of Cortés, 1519, 154, 158, 208; commandant of Vera Cruz, 209, 210, 268; fights against Quauhpopoca, xvi
- Escobar**, the page, 74; in command of a ship under Cortés, 1519, 99, 105; imprisoned by Cortés, 1519, 159
- Escopeteros**, 92
- Escudero**, Pedro, joins Hernan Cortés, 1519, 74; imprisoned by Cortés, 1519, 159; a partisan of
- Diego Velásquez, 206; sentenced to death by Cortés, 207
- Espíritu Santo**, Coatzaacoalcos, town of, founded by Cortés, xxii; Bernal Díaz del Castillo, Regidor of, xxiii, xxxiii
- Estero de los Lagartos**, lxiii, 27
- Estomies**, the, 261
- Estrada**, Alonzo de, Governor of New Spain, 1527, xxxii
- Estrada Cabrera**, Don Manuel, President of Guatemala, presents an exact copy of the Díaz MS. to Genaro García, Sept., 1901, vi, vii
- Estramadura**, 71
- Ethnographical Museum**, Florence, 302; Rome, 301
- Falconets**, 85, 92
- Farfan**, Pedro Sánchez, See Sánchez Farfan, Pedro
- Feather head-dresses**, Mexican, 229
- Feria**, Conde de, a relative of Vasco Porcallo, 69
- Ferdinand V.**, King of Castile. See Spain, Kings of
- Fernández de Oviedo y Valdés**, Gonzalo, *Oviedo de la natural historia de las Indias*, 1526, cited, lxxv
- Fernando**, Don. See Ferdinand V., of Castile
- Fewkes**, Dr. J. W., on the ruins of Xico Viejo, 1903-1904, 215
- Figueroa**, Fray Luis de, Geronimite Friar, Santo Domingo, 1519, 200
- Fiscal**, the. See Villalobos, Don Juan de
- Flanders**, Charles V. in, 7, 65, 202; embarks at Coruña for, May, 1520, 300
- Flemish Hat**, red, 223, 225; offered to the Tlascalan idols, 1519, 233
- Florence**, Ethnographical Museum, purchases two atlals for 500 lire, 1903, 302; Medici Museum, 301; Museum of Natural History, 301; Nobleman's Palace, two atlals found in a garret of a, 1903, 302; sold to the Ethnographical Museum, *ib.*; officina delle pietre dure, 302
- Florentine Glass**, 145
- Florida**, xi, lxiii; coast of, 212; discovered by Juan Ponce de Leon, March 27, 1513, 27; Bernal Díaz in Florida, 1518, 28
- Fly-whisks**, Mexican, 169, 196
- Fonseca**, Juan Rodríguez de. See Rodríguez de Fonseca, Juan
- Foxes**, xxvii

Fraille de la Merced, lxiii

Francia, 131

Francisca, Doña, daughter of Cuesco, a Cacique, 1519, 185, 191; given to Alonzo Hernández Puertocarrero, 191

Franciscans, ascent of Popocatepétl by Franciscan Friars, 288; twelve, entertained by Cortés at Mexico. June 18, 1524, xxv

Francisco, an Indian, baptised, 1518, 54, 56; interpreter to Cortés, 1519, 128

Francisco, Captain. See Hernández de Córdoba, Francisco

Franks, Sir Augustus Wollaston, K.C.B., purchases some of the gifts of Montezuma in Northern Italy, 302

French, the, capture Alonzo de Ávila, 38

Frontera, port, Rio de Grijalva, replaces Tabasco, 108

Fuentes y Guzmán, Don Francisco Antonio de, great-great-grandson of Bernal Díaz del Castillo, iii; *Historia de Guatemala*, 1882-83, cited, ii-v

Fumigation, Mexican, 48, 53

Gaal, Moses, translator, 1899, cited, iii

Garay, Francisco de, Governor of Jamaica, 212; his Mayordomo, Torralva, 213; his commission as Adelantado N. of the Rio San Pedro, 213

Garía, Bartolomé, owner of gold mines, his dark chesnut horse, 87, 117, 177; joins Cortés at Trinidad, 78

Garía, Don Genaro, editor, *Historia verdadera de la Conquista de la Nueva España*, por Bernal Díaz del Castillo, 1904, i, etc.; translation of extracts from his Introduction, i-xlii; *Caracter de la Conquista Española en América y en México*, 1900, vi

Garía Icazbalceta, Joaquín, *Colección de Documentos para la Historia de México*, 2 tom., 1858-66, *Nueva Colección*, 5 tom., 1886-92, cited, 273

Garciarco, Angulo y. See Angulo y Garciarco

Garnica, Gaspar de, sent by Diego Velásquez to arrest Cortés, 88

Gayángos, Don Pascual de, *Cartas y Relaciones de Hernán Cortés al*

Emperador Carlos V. Colegidas e ilustradas por Don Pascual de Gayángos, Paris, 1886, xvii; *Fifth Letter of Hernán Cortés to the Emperor Charles V.*, Sept. 3, 1526, Hakl. Soc., Ser. I, 40, 1868, xlii

Gentil Corsario, 84

Gentiles, 32

Geronimite Friars, Santo Domingo, 1519, 200, 201

Gibraleon (Gibraltar), 96, 206

Gibraltar, Peñates of, 96, 206

Giglioli, Professor H., Director of the Museum of Natural History, Florence, his statement on the gifts of Cortés, 301

Giovio, Paulo, *Bishop of Nocera, the Elder, Pauli Jovii Novocomensis . . . Historiarum sui Temporis Tomus Primus (Secundus)*, Florentiæ, 1550-52, cited, xl, 53; his mis-statements, 66

Gli antichi oggetti messicani incrostati di mosaico esistenti nel Museo preistorico ed etnografico di Roma, 1885. See Pigorini, Luigi.

Glimpse at Guatemala, and some Notes on the Ancient Monuments of Central America, 1899. See Maudslay, Anne Cary, and Alfred Percival

Globus, June 6, on Mexican Masks, 302

Godoy, Diego de, King's Notary, 1519, 110, 112, 156, 174, 231; fights a sword duel with Bernal Díaz del Castillo at Espíritu Santo, xxiv

Gods, Mexican. See Huitzilopochtli; Tezcatlipuca

Gold, in Mexico, xiv, 55, 144

Golden Ducks, fish, etc., brought from Yucatan to Cuba by the Spaniards, 1518, 31

Gomara, Francisco López de. See Lopez de Gomara, Francisco.

Gonzáles, Alonzo, of San Cristóbal de Havana, Chaplain to the Expedition of 1517, 13, 17

González de Ávila, Gil, cuts the throat of Cristóbal de Olid, xxx

González de Barcia Carballido y Zuñiga, Andrés, defends Alonzo Remon, iv

Gonzalo de Salazar, agent, falsely reports death of Cortés, xxx, xxxi

González de Trujillo, Pedro, his chesnut horse, 87, 117

Gran Cairo, Yucatan, lxiii

Grande, Rio, 146

Great Cairo, discovery of, 1517, 14

Grenadillas, 218

Greyhounds, two, with Cortés, 1519, 140

Grijalva, Juan de, a kinsman of Diego Velásquez, 35, 36; the second discoverer of Mexico, 196; commands the expedition of 1518 from Cuba, xii, 8, 9, 35, etc.; his bravery, 57; returns to Cuba, 63; reaches Cape Rojo, 1518, xiii, 146; *Itinerario de Grijalva*, by Juan Diaz, priest, xlv, lxx, 21, 39, 41, 43, 63, 98; Cortés lodges in his house at Trinidad, 77; Rio de Grijalva (Tabasco), named after, 1518, 46; proposed as captain of the third expedition, 1519, 69

Grijalva (Tabasco), Rio de, xii, xlv, lxiii, 21, 45, 103

Guaacalco (Coatzacoalcas), lxii

Guaachula, Spanish raid on, 1520, xviii

Guaacualco, town, xxx

Guaajaca (Oaxaca), Marques del Valle de. *See* Cortés, Hernando

Gualpitán, town, assigned to Bernal Díaz del Castillo, April 3, 1528, xxxiii

Guanahataveyes, land of the, Cuba, 14

Guanajes, islands, 1517, 12

Guanajuato, State of, 261

Guaniguanico, Cape, Cuba, 39, 84

Guatemala, xlv, l, 185; Audiencia of, Alonso López Zerrato, President, 1550, xxxvii; Bernal Díaz del Castillo passes through, xxxii; Díaz MS. still in, 1908, ii; a photographic reproduction presented by Guatemala to Mexico, Oct. 90, 1895, vi; Festival of Santa Cecilia, 1557, and of Saint James the Apostle, 1560, Bernal Díaz del Castillo carries the banner, xxxix; *A Glimpse at Guatemala*, by Anne Cary and Alfred Percival Maudslay, London, 1899, liv; Governor of, Pedro de Alvarado, 1541, xxxvi, 37, 283; Alonso Maldonado, 1542, xxxvii; Licentiate of, borrow the Díaz MS. from the author, vii; Mexican Empire extended to, lvi; *Regidor* of, Captain Bartolomé Becerra, xxxv; Santiago de, 5; volcanoes of, 288

Guatémoc, captured by Cristóbal de Guzman, 86; torture of, by Cortés, lix; executed by Cortés, *ib.*

Guaxoban, a Cacique, of Tlascala, 236

Guaxocingo (Huexotzinco), province, 246, 248, 257; town, 287, 291

Guaxolocingo (Huexotzinco), Cacique, of Tlascala, his audience of Cortés, 1519, 271

Guayabos, the, xviii

Guazpaltepeque, province, 139

Guerrero, Gonzalo, of Palos, in captivity at Cape Catoche, 1511-1519, 95, 102, 195; his Indian wife, 95

Gutierrez, joins Cortés at Havana, 84

Guxalcingo (Guaxocingo), 257

Guzman, ——— de, Captain, partisan of Diego Velásquez, 1519, 199; first Maestresala of Cortés, his early death, 86

Guzman, Cristóbal de, Mayordomo of Cortés, captured Guatemoc, 86

Guzmán, Francisco Antonio de Fuentes y. *See* Fuentes y Guzman, Francisco Antonio de

Guzman, Pedro del, a crossbowman, 93

Hannibal, 72

Havana, the, district, Cuba, 13, 14; North Coast of Cuba, 82; (Puerto de Carenas), South Coast of Cuba, lxiii, lxiv, 13, 31, 69; Cortés sails from Trinidad to, 82, etc.; *El Marien*, 198

Havana, San Martin, a soldier, of, 50

Huexotzinco, a Cacique, of Tlascala, 1519, 239

Hell, Mexican god of, 150

Hemp, Sisal, 51

Hempen shoes, 218

Hennequen, 51, 274, 275, 277

Hercules, pillars of, xxix

Heredia, ———, joins Hernan Cortés, 1519, 74; a Biscayan musketeer, sent by Cortés to Cingapacinga, 179; his service in Italy, *ib.*

Heredia, José María de, *Les Trophées*, Paris, 1893, cited, ii; *Véridique Histoire de la Conquête de la Nouvelle-Espagne. Par . . . Bernal Diaz del Castillo . . . Traduite . . . par José María de Heredia*, Paris, 1877-87, cited, ii

Hernández, Francisco. *See* Hernández de Córdova, Francisco

Hernández de Córdova, Francisco, the first discoverer of Mexico, 196; Captain, his voyage of discovery, 1517, xi, 5, etc., 22, 35, 39, 51, 58, 93, 103; his two partners, ii; his death at Santispiritus, 1518, 31

- Hernández Puertocarrero**, Alonzo, cousin of the Count of Medellín, 78, 129, 203; joins Cortés at Trinidad, 78, 89; in command of a ship, under Cortés, 1519, 98; presented by Cortés with a grey mare, 79, 86, 117; presented by Cortés with Doña Marina, 1519, 129; a partisan of Cortés, 1519, 154; first Alcalde of Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz, 1519, 157; appointed Proctor to Spain for the soldiers of Cortés, 1519, 193; at Valladolid, 203, 300; in charge of the gifts of Montezuma sent by Cortés to Charles V., 300
- Herrera Tordesillas**, Antonio de, *Historia General de los Hechos de los Castellanos en las Islas i Tierra Firme del Mar Oceano*, Madrid, 1601-1615, cited, i, lxxv
- Hibueras**, the, Honduras, Cortés sets out for, xxv
- Hidalgos*, 37
- Hijo-d'algo*, a gentleman by birth, ix, 72
- Hispaniola**, 14
- Histoire Véridique de la Conquête de la Nouvelle-Espagne*, 1876. See Díaz del Castillo, Bernal.
- Historia Antigua y de la Conquista de México*, 1880. See Orozco y Berra, Manuel
- Historia de Guatemala*, 1882-83. See Fuentes y Guzmán, Francisco Antonio de
- Historia de la América, Central*, 1879-1905, etc. See Milla, José
- Historia de las Indias*, 1527-59. See Casas, Bartolomé de las
- Historia General de las Cosas de Nueva España*, 1829-1830. See Sahagun, Bernardino de
- Historia General de los Hechos de los Castellanos en las Islas i Tierra Firme del Mar Oceano*, 1601-15. See Herrera Tordesillas, Antonio de
- Historia Verdadera de la Conquista de la Nueva España*, 1904. See Díaz del Castillo, Bernal
- Honduras**, xxv; British, xlv; Cape of, xli, 5; Governor of, Francisco de Montejo, 38; Cristóbal de Olid revolts in, 1523, 133; march of Hernando Cortés to, 1525-26, xlv
- Horses**, list of, shipped by Cortés at Havana, 86, 87
- Huajolotes*, 139
- Huasteca**, land of the, lii; absence of Maya hieroglyphs, *ib.*
- Huelva**, Juan Alvarez, of, 13
- Huexotzinco** (Guaxolocingo), 271, 284; volcanoes of, 288
- Hueyacalá**, town, Cortés in search of, xxvii
- Huichilobos**. See Huitzilopochtli.
- Huitzilopochtli** (Huichilobos), Mexican god of war, liii, lxii, 141, 142, 151, 170
- Hundred Fathom Line**, Mexico, ninety miles from shore in parts, xlvii
- Icazbalceta**, Joaquin García. See García Icazbalceta, Joaquin
- Idols**, Pottery, Yucatan, 17, 19, 44, 54; brought to Cuba by the Spaniards, 1518, 31; in Cempoala, destroyed by Cortés, 1519, 187; in Cozumel, 91, 97; pilgrimages to the, 97; in Tlascala, 1519, 279
- Illescas**, Gonzalo, de, *Chronicle*, 1564, cited, xl, 53; misstatements of, 66
- Incense**, ceremonial use by Mexicans, etc., 138, 147, 162, 168, 209, 257, 271, 274
- Indian Girls**, eight, baptised at Cempoala, 1519, 191
- Indian Prisons**, 289
- Indian Sceptres**, 302
- Indians**, bravery of the, as attested by Díaz, 66
- Indies**, Royal Council of the Indies. See Spain: Royal Council of the Indies
- Infante*, 197
- Influence de la pression de l'air sur la vie de l'homme*. See Jourdanet, D.
- Inguijuela*, 93
- Invierno*, 60
- Iquinnapa**, town, Cortés at, xxvii
- Ircio**, Pedro de, wrongly described by López de Gómara as Commandant of Vera Cruz, 210
- Iron Implements**, not found in America, xlviii
- Isabel**, Doña. See Isabella, of Castile
- Isabella**, of Castile, the Catholic (1474-1504). See Spain, Kings of
- Isagoge Histórico apologético*, Madrid, 1892, cited, iii, v
- Ishuacan**, 217
- Isla Blanca**, 1518, xii, lxiii, 54, 131
- Isla de las Mujeres**, 105
- Isla de Sacrificios**, lxiii, 54, 131; Bernal Díaz del Castillo on the, 1518, xii, 54
- Isla Verde**, 1518, xii, lxiii, 54, 131

Islands of the Guanajes, 1517, 12
Islands of Tercera. See Azores
Isle of Pines, Cuba, 83, 85
Istoria, *La istoria de las Indias y conquista de Mexico*, 1552. See López de Gómara, Francisco
Italy, Heredia's service in, 179
Itinerario de Grijalva. See Díaz, Juan, Priest
Itzcalpan, Cortés passes through, 1519, xiv
Itztapa, town, Cortés at, xxvii
Itztapalapa, causeway of, 1519, xv; destroyed, 1520, xix
Itztapalapan, Cuicláhuac, Lord of, 1519, xvi
Itztapalatengo, Cortés passes through, 1519, xiv
Ixhuatan, Cortés passes through, 1519, xiv
Ixtacamastitlan, 217
Ixtacihuatl, volcanic peak, xlv
Ixtacmaxtitlan, 215-217
Ixtamaxtitlan, 217
Ixuacan (Theuhixuacan), 215, 217
Ixuacan de los Reyes (Coycoccnac), 217
Izancánac, Province of Acalá, Cuauh-témoc and Tetepanquetzatl executed by Cortés at, 1525, xxviii
Iztacmastitan, 217
Iztacmixtitlan, 217
Jadeite, 47
Jalapa, Cortés passes through, 1519, xiv, 215, 218
Jamaica, 31; Francisco de Garay, Governor of, 212; an Indian woman of, in Santa Cruz, 1518, 40
Jamapa (de Banderas), Rio, lxiii, 50, 56, 131
Jaramillo, Juan, marries Doña Marina at Orizaba, 1523, 133, 134
Jardines, near the Isle of Pines, Cortés runs aground near, 83
Jaruco (Axaruco), Cuba, port, lxiii, lxiv, 13, 14, 38
Javelins, Mexican, lvii
Jerez, Gonzalo Mexía, of, 39
Jerez, Pedro de, finances Hernan Cortés, 1519, 73
Jerusalem, sacked by Titus, 32
Jews, shipped by Titus to Yucatan, 32
Jiquipil, 47
Joanagacapa, town, assigned to Bernal Díaz del Castillo, 1542, xxxvii
Joseph, the patriarch, 134
Jourdanet, Denis, *Histoire Véridique de la Conquête de la Nouvelle-*

Espagne . . . par . . . Bernal Díaz del Castillo . . . Traduction par D. Jourdanet, Paris, 1876, cited, ii; 1877, iii; *Influence de la pression de l'air sur la vie de l'homme*, 2 tom., Paris, 1875, cited, ii
Jovio, Paulo, Bishop of Nocera. See Giovio, Paulo.
Juanes, —, of Fuentarabia, joins Cortés at Trinidad, 77
Juarez, Juan, brother-in-law of Hernan Cortés, 70
Juarez la Marcyda, Doña Catalina, wife of Hernan Cortés, sister of Juan Juarez, 70
Juan, Master, a surgeon, at the siege of Mexico, 1521, xxii
Juarros, Padre Domingo, cited, v
Julian, a cross-eyed Indian, of Yucatan, 17; taken to Cuba, 1518, 31, 37, 40; with the Grijalva expedition, 46, 52; his death, 91
Julianillo. See Julian
Julius Cæsar, 72
Keatinge, Maurice, *The True History of the Conquest of Mexico*, by Captain Bernal Díaz del Castillo, . . . Translated . . . by Maurice Keatinge, Esq., London, 1800, ii; 1803, iii
King of the Romans, Charles V., crowned, at Bologna, 1529-30, 301
Kukulcan, or Quetzalcoatl, liii
La Antigua (Vera Cruz). See Antigua, La
Labrada, Fray Rodrigo de, opposes the *Encomienda* system, 1550, xxxvii
Labrets, golden, 162, 165
Lagartos, Estero de los, 27
Lagartos, Rio de, lxiv
Laguna de Términos, 22, 44
La Natividad. See Natividad, La
La Rambla (Ayagualulco. See Rambla, La
Lapis lazuli, 139
Lares, —, the good horseman, joins Cortés at Trinidad, 77; his chesnut horse, 87, 117
Lares, Amador de, royal accountant, Cuba, 199; partner of Hernan Cortés, 1519, 69, 80, 81, 88
Lares, Martin Ramos de. See Ramos de Lares, Martin
Las Casas, Bartolomé de, Bishop of Chiapa. See Casas, Bartolomé de Las
Lázaro, son of Marta, 133

- Lázaro**, town, 108, 109; Bernal Díaz del Castillo at, 1517, xi, 22
- Lazo de la Vega**, Pedro, messenger of Diego Velásquez, joins Cortés, 81
- Lehmann**, Dr. W., on Mexican Masks, *Globus*, June 6, 1907, 302
- Leo X.** [Giovanni de Medici], Pope, died 1521, 301
- Leon**, Antonio de. *See* Leon Pinelo, Antonio de
- León**, Don Emilio, Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary of Guatemala to Mexico, presents to Mexico a photographic reproduction of the Díaz MS., Oct. 20, 1895, vi
- Leon**, Juan Ponce de. *See* Ponce de Leon, Juan
- Leon**, Juan Velásquez de. *See* Velásquez de Leon, Juan
- Leon Pinelo**, Antonio de, *Epitome de la Biblioteca Oriental i Occidental Nautica i Geografica*, Madrid, 1629, 1737, cited, ii, iii
- Levantine Sailors**, in the expedition of Juan de Grijalva, 30
- Lienzos**, lvii
- Lions**, 123
- Loa**, Guillen de la, notary, captured by Cortés, 212, 214
- Lockhart**, John Ingram, *The Memoirs of the Conquistador Bernal Díaz del Castillo . . . Translated . . . by John Ingram Lockhart*, London, 1844, cited, ii
- Locusts**, at Battle of Chanpotan, 1518, 43
- Lombards**, 140, 141
- Lope luxio*, 151, 152, 162, 165
- López**, Alvaro, a Spanish carpenter, at Cozumel, 98; at Cintla, 1519, 127
- López**, Benito, stipendiary, delimits Coatzacoalcos and Tabasco, 1531, xxxiv
- López**, Pero, saves the army of Cortés, xxvii
- López de Ávila**, Hernando, his sorrel mare, 86
- López de Gomara**, Francisco, *La Istoria de las Indias*, 1552, cited, xiv, xl, lxxv, 53, 118, 224; misstatements of, 66, 76, 82, 103, 121, 132-134, 142, 150, 158, 160, 161, 166, 174, 188, 191, 209, 210, 215, 244, 245, 263; his misstatements due to the Royal Council of the Indies, 68; dedicates his *Istoria*, 1552, to the son of Hernan Cortés, 68
- López de Jimena**, Gonzalo, and his brother joins Cortés at Trinidad, 78
- López Zerrato**, Alonzo, the Licentiate, President of the Audiencia of Guatemala, 1550, xxxvii, xxxviii
- Los Martires.** *See* Martires, Los
- Lugo**, Francisco de, a kinsman of Bernal Díaz, 154; a captain, under Cortés, 1519, 104; sent by Cortés from Tabasco to explore inland, 1519, 113; a partisan of Cortés, 1519, 154; his lurcher, 221; at Tlascala, 1519, 281
- Luisa**, Doña, daughter of Xicotenga, the elder, given to Pedro de Alvarado, 1519, 282; their children and descendants, *ib.*
- Lurcher**, left at the Puerto de Términos, 45, 106; of Francisco de Lugo, its effect on the Indians, 221
- Macana*, or *Maquahuítl*, lvii, 24, 42, 114
- Macedonia**, Alexander, King of, 72
- Macuahuitl*, 24
- Madrigal**, Juan Santistéban, of, 39
- Maestresala*, 86, 192
- Maestro de Campo**, 58, 77, 157
- Magueys**, 230
- Majahua**, Punta, 60
- Majorada Monastery**, Santo Domingo, 200
- Mala Pelea**, Costa de, 22, 25
- Maldonado**, Alonzo, the Licentiate, Governor of Guatemala, 1542, xxxvii
- Malinche (Malinchi)**, 271, 273, 277, 293
- Malinchi (Malinche)*, 271
- Mameies**, 52
- Mangroves**, 110
- Maniani**, Bernal Díaz del Castillo passes through, xxxi
- Manihoc utilissima**, 12
- Manquillo*, El. *See* Alonzo de Villanueva, Hernando; *see also* Alvarez, Juan, of Huelva
- Manual del Tesorero de la Casa de Contratacion de Sevilla*, 1842, cited, 300
- Manzanedo**, Fray Bernardino, de, Geronimite Friar, 1519, 200
- Maps**, MS. Map of Patiño, 178
- Maquahuítl*, or *Macana*, lvii, 24, 42, 114
- Margajita**, 139
- Margaritas*, 139
- Marien**, El, Havana, the farm of Francisco de Montejo, 1519, 198
- Marín**, Luis, arrives at Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz, 1519, 192; a captain in the expedition against Mexico,

- ib.*; his mare, *ib.*; sets out with Bernal Díaz del Castillo to fight natives of Chiapas, 1523, xxiii
- Marina**, Doña, of Tabasco, 1519, 126; a Cacica, biography of, 132, etc.; mistress of Alonso Hernández Puertocarrero, 129; of Hernán Cortés, *ib.*; mother of Martín Cortés, *ib.*; marries Juan Jaramillo at Orizaba, 1523, 133; interpreter to Cortés, 1519, 134, etc.; 218, 219, 244, 273; Marina's Captain, 273
- Marta**, mother of Doña Marina, 133
- Martin**, Benito. *See* Martínez, Benito
- Martín de Valencia**, Fray, with his twelve Franciscan companions, entertained by Cortés at Mexico, June 18, 1524, xxv
- Martínez**, Benito, Chaplain to Diego Velásquez, 65; his mission to Spain, 1518, *ib.*, 74; 1519, 203
- Martínez del Freginal**, —, two brothers, join Cortés at Havana, 84
- Martires**, Los, lxiii, 30
- Maschere di cattivi turchesi*, 302
- Maschere e strumenti de popoli barbari*, 302
- Mase Escasi** (Maxixcatzin), 236, 245, 265, 271, 275
- Masks**, Mosaic, 301
- Masonry Houses**, Yucatan, 1518, 37, 41
- Mastetes*, 15
- Matanzas**, lxiii; etymology of, 38; port, Grijalva sails from, April 8, 1518, xii, 38
- Matlatan**, town of, xxii
- Maudslay**, Alfred Percival, *A Glimpse at Guatemala*, London, 1899, liv
- Maudslay**, Anne Cary, *A Glimpse at Guatemala, and some Notes on the Ancient Monuments of Central America*, by Anne Cary and Alfred Percival Maudslay, London, 1899, cited, liv
- Maxixcatzin** (Mase Escasi), a Cacique of Tlascala, 1519, 236, 245; declares for peace, 246, 257, 265; visits Cortés, 271; welcomes Cortés to Tlascala, 275; opposes proposal of Cortés to attack Montezuma, 290
- Maya Language**, xv
- Maya race**, its high culture, 1
- Maya script**, at Monte Alban, state of Oaxaca, li; no inscriptions as yet found in Central Mexico, li
- Maya sculptures**, absence of bows and arrows, lvii
- Maya Quiché race**, probably descendants of Mayas and their Nahuá conquerors, lii; occupied the Highlands of Guatemala, 1519, *ib.*
- Mayas**. *See* also Tzendals
- Mayas**, described by Bernal Díaz del Castillo, liv; not subdued by the Spaniards till 1547, lv
- Mayordomo*, 74
- Mazapa**, river, Cortés ascends the, xxvii
- Mazariegos**, Diego de, robs Bernal Díaz del Castillo of three *encomiendas*, 1527, xxxii
- Mazatecas**, country of the, Cortés in the, 1525, xxviii
- Medellín**, Estramadura, Hernán Cortés, a native of, 69, 71
- Medellín**, a woman of, carried off to the Indies, 203; Count of, 78, 129, 203
- Medici**, Giovanni de, Pope, as Leo X., d. 1521, 301
- Medici**, Giulio de, Pope, as Clement VII., 301
- Medici Arms**, stamped on leathern case of the two atlants in the Florentine Museum, 1903, 302
- Medici Collection**, Dispersal of the, 302
- Medici Museum**, Florence, 301
- Medina**, Antonio de, welcomes Bernal Díaz to Trinidad, 34
- Medina del Campo**, Bernal Díaz del Castillo born at, 1492, ix, 5; Santo Domingo, 200
- Medina Rio Seco**, Francisco de Saucedo, a native of, 192
- Mejía**, Gonzalo. *See* Mexía, Gonzalo
- Méjico*, Colua, 49
- Melchior**, a cross-eyed Indian, of Yucatan, 17; taken to Cuba, 1518, 31, 40; interpreter with the Grijalva expedition, 46; accompanies Cortés, 1519, 91, 94, 97; deserts Cortés, 113, 127; his murder, 128
- Melchorejo**. *See* Melchior
- Memoirs of the Conquistador, Bernal Díaz del Castillo*, 1844. *See* Díaz del Castillo, Bernal
- Memorie della R. Accademia dei Lincei*, Rome, 1885, cited, 302
- Mendoza**, Don Antonio de, First Viceroy of Mexico, 1535-1540; arrives in Mexico, 1535, xxxiv
- Merced**, Fraile de la, lxii

Merced, Padre de la, lxii; *see also*

Olmedo, Bartolomé del

Mesa, —, an artilleryman, 85, 93.

117, 137

Mexia, Gonzalo, of Jerez, 39; joins

Cortés at Trinidad, 77; appointed

Royal Treasurer by Cortés, 1519,

150; Treasurer of Villa Rica de la

• Vera Cruz, 1519, 157; sent by

Cortés to Acalá, xxvii; Treasurer

in Mexico, 77

Mexican Artists, depict the

Spaniards for Montezuma, 1519,

140

Mexicans, or Aztecs, armour of the,

lvii, 285; extent of their empire,

lvi; origin of, lv

Mexico, City, aqueducts of, 285;

causeways of, 284; description of,

by the anonymous conqueror, xlv;

described by Olintecle to Cortés,

1519, 220; by the Caciques of

Teascala, 1519, 284; Cortés marches

on, 1519, xlii; siege of, by the

Spaniards, 21 May, 1521, lasted

eighty-five days, xx, etc.; Cortés

gives a magnificent reception to

Fray Martin de Valencia and twelve

Franciscans, June 18, 1524, xxv;

Hernando Cortés writes to Charles

V. from, Oct. 15, 1524, and Sept.

3, 1526, xliii, iv; Bernal Díaz del

Castillo returns by land to, 1527,

xxxii

Mexico, Empire of, *Cariques* of, lvi

Mexico, cannibalism in, 1519, 186,

196, 226; Central, 261; *Collección*

de Documentos para la Historia de

México, por Icazbalceta, 273; gold

in, xiv, 55, 144; golden ornaments

in, 1519, 144; Gulf of, xlvii, 212;

province of, 20, 47, 48, 51; Con-

quest of New Spain, ii, 66.

Governors of New Spain: Marcos

de Aguilar, 1527, xxxii; Alonso de

Estrada, 1527, xxxii; Gonzalo de

Sandoval, 1527, xxxii, 78; first

Christian women in, 1519, 129;

first Spanish vassals in, 1519, 129;

hundred fathom line ninety miles

from shore in parts, xlvii; *lienzos*,

lvii; native sculptures, absence of

bows and arrows, lvii; native

tribes at the time of the Spanish

Conquest, 1519, lv, etc.; origin of

its inhabitants, xlvii; picture writ-

ings, lvii; pictures of Mexican

battles in Teascala, 1519, 285;

rivers of, xlvii; tax gatherers of

Montezuma in, 168; temples of,

xv, 17, 62, 67; valley of, xxlii;

Viceroy of: Don Antonio de Men-

doza, 1535-1540, xxxiv

Micapa, town, assigned to Bernal

Díaz del Castillo, April 3, 1528,

xxxiii

Micapy, *Encomienda*, taken away

from Bernal Díaz del Castillo, 1527,

xxxii

Michoacan, the Tarascos of, lv

Milla, Don José, *Historia de la*

América Central, Guatemala, 1879-

1905, etc., cited, v

Millan, Juan, the astrologer, opposes

the nomination of Cortés, 80, 81

Minxes, the, xxiii

Misten, town, assigned to Bernal

Díaz del Castillo, 1542, xxxvii

Mitre, of tiger skins, 299

Mixtecs, the, of Oaxaca, lv

Moguer, Cascorro, of, 39

Moguer, Sopuesta, of, 37

Monjaraz, Andrés de, a follower of

Cortés, 89

Monjaraz, Gregorio de, a follower of

Cortés, 89

Monroy, family of, 72

Monte, xxvii

Monte Alban, State of Oaxaca, Maya

script at, li

Montejo, Francisco de, a captain in

the Expedition of Grijalva, 1518,

36, etc., 52, 60, 61, 63, 146; joins

Cortés at Havana, 84, 89; his

parched sorrel horse, 86, 117; in

command of a ship under Cortés,

1519, 98; his expedition to Quia-

huitzlan, 146; first Alcalde of Villa

Rica de la Vera Cruz, 1519, 157;

appointed to interview Cortés' sol-

diers as to the present to Charles V.,

1519, 193; appointed Proctor to

Spain for the soldiers of Cortés,

1519, 193; persuades Alaminos to

anchor at El Marien, 198; informs

Velásquez of his mission, *ib.*; in

charge of the gifts of Montezuma

sent by Cortés to Charles V., 300;

defeated by the Mayas, 1527, liv;

Adelantado of Yucatan and Gover-

nor of Honduras, 38, 84

Montesinos, 131

Montezuma. *See* Motecuhzoma

Morante, Cristóval, partner of Fran-

cisco Hernández de Córdova, 1517,

11

Morla, Francisco de, commissioned

by Diego Velásquez to arrest the

fleet of Cortés at Trinidad, 80;

joins Hernan Cortés, 1519, 74; his

- ship loses its rudder, 90; his dark chestnut horse, 87, 117; his dapple grey horse, 121; in command of a ship under Cortés, 1519, 99
- Moro**, —, de, of Ciudad Rodrigo, a soldier under Cortés, 1519, 184; sentenced to death for looting, *ib.*; killed in Guatemala, 185
- Moron**, Pedro de, a settler at Bayamo, his dappled grey horse, 87, 117, 181; a partisan of Diego Velásquez, 181; at the battle of Tehuacingo, Sept. 2, 1519, 232; his death, 233
- Mosaic Knife-handles**, 301
- Mosaic Masks**, 301
- Mosaic of Turquoise**, 299
- Mosquitos**, 55, 56, 62, 146, 152
- Mossagate**, 139
- Motagua**, river, 1
- Moteczuhzoma** (Montezuma), ninth *Cacique* of Mexico, lvi, 51, 52, 55; tribute rolls of, xxii; his ambassadors to Cortés, 1519, 137, 138, 195, 264; *Cacique* of Mexico, sends presents of gold to Cortés, 1519, xiv, 55, 139, 143, 264, 269; refuses to interview Cortés, 1519, 147; sends four noble ambassadors with gold and embroidered cloth to Cortés at Tlascala, 1519, 293; Montezuma's gifts to Cortés, 299-302; three of the four masks now in the British Museum, 1908, 300; the fourth in Rome, 302; probably sent to Charles V. with the first letter of Cortés, 300
- Motolinia**, the poor friar, Indian name of Fray Toribio de Benavente, xxv
- Mugeres**, Isla de las, 105
- Mugeres**, Punta de las, lxiv, 105
- Muñoz**, Don Juan Bautista, the historian of Spanish America (1745-1799), iv
- Murcia**, a quack doctor, at the siege of Mexico, 1521, xxii
- Museo preistorico ed etnografico**, Rome, 301, 302
- Nacaxuxuyca**, town, Cortés at, xxvii
- Naco**, town, Cortés arrives at, xxx
- Naguas** (*enaguas*), 15
- Nahua Language**, xv
- Nahua Race**, xlix; their names and dialects found as far east as Nicaragua, li; their form of government, 224
- Nahuatlato**, 152
- Najara**, Juan de, joins Cortés at Havana, 84; a deaf player of Pelota in Mexico, 84
- Napoleon I.**, Emperor, his Old Guard, lxi
- Narvaez**, Panfilo de, sent by Diego Velásquez to punish Cortés, 1520, xvii; of Valladolid, Captain-General of the fleet of Diego Velásquez, 1519, 201; defeat of, xlv
- Natividad**, La (Puerto de Caballos), founded by Cortés, xxx
- Nero**, Emperor of Rome, 207
- New Spain**. See Mexico
- Nicaragua**, Nahuatl names and dialects found as far east as, li; volcanoes of, 288
- Nombre de Dios**, Bernal Díaz del Castillo at, 1514, xi, 10
- Nopal Cactus**, 269
- Norte**, xlvii, 20, 55, 56, 130
- Nortes**, Gines, brings supplies to Cortés, 92; in command of a brigantine under Cortés, 1519, 99
- Norther**. See Norte
- Nuestra Señora de Marzo**, 117
- Nueva Colección de Documentos*. See Colección
- Núñez**, —, Licentiate, Reporter to the Royal Council of the Indies, 1519, 204
- Núñez**, Andrés, a boat builder, 213
- Núñez de Balboa**, Vasco, son-in-law of Pedro Arias de Ávila, xi, 10; conqueror of Tierra-firme, 10, 11
- Oaxaca** (Guajaca), 3; Bernal Díaz del Castillo passes through, xxxii; the Mixtecs, of, lv; State of, li
- Obsidian**, 24, 114
- Ochoa de Caicedo**, Lope, a Biscayan, partner of Francisco Hernández de Córdova, 1517, 11; Alguacil del Real, 1519, 157
- Ocoliztli**, town, Cortés arrives at, xxx
- Officina delle pietre dure**, Florence, 302
- Ojeda**, Isabel de, wife of Antonio de Villaroel, 117
- Old Guard**, Napoleon's, lxi
- Oli**, Xpol de (Cristóbal de Ólid), lxii
- Ólid**, Cristóbal de, sent by Velásquez to search for Grijalva expedition, 58; joins Cortés at Trinidad, 77, 89; *Maestro de Campo* under Cortés, 1519, 58, 77, 157; his dark chestnut horse, 86, 117; in command of a ship under Cortés, 1519, 98; a partisan of Cortés, 1519, 154; his

- revolt in Honduras, 1523, xxv, 133, his throat cut by Gil González de Avila and Francisco de Las Casas, xxx
- Olintecle**, Cacique of Xocotlan, 219; his description of the city of Mexico, 220
- Olmedo**, Bartolomé del, Friar of the Order of Mercy, chaplain to Cortés, 1519, 117, 128, 130, 138, 148, 190, 198, 221, 236, 177; informs Cortés of his proposed arrest, 1529, 88; not in Guatemala at the Conquest, iv, v
- Olmitépec**, Bernal Díaz del Castillo passes through, xxxii
- Onicaxinal**, river, Cuba, 33
- Opuntia*, 269
- Orange Trees**, first planted in New Spain, 1518, 62, 63
- Ordás**, Diego de, chief Mayordomo of Diego Velásquez, 1519, 74, 83, 85; commissioned by Diego Velásquez to arrest fleet of Cortés at Trinidad, 80, 81; supports Cortés, 88; sent to rescue two Spanish captives at Cape Catoche, 94; his grey mare, 87; in command of a ship under Cortés, 1519, 98; imprisoned by Cortés, 1519, 159; appointed to interview Cortés' soldiers as to the present to Charles V., 1519, 193; his ascent of Popocatepetl, 1519, 287; his view of Mexico city, 288; obtains Royal assent to bear Popocatepetl on his coat-of-arms, 288; his nephew, at Puebla, 288
- Order of Mercy**, Friars of the, 88; Bartolomé del Olmedo, *ib.*; Friar Alonzo Remón, of the, ii, v
- Orizaba**, town, xxii, 133; snow-capped volcano, 17,365 feet, xlv, 216
- Orozco**, Francisco de, captain of artillery to Cortés, 93; his previous service in Italy, *ib.*
- Orozco y Berra**, Manuel, *Historia Antigua y de la Conquista de México*, 1880, cited, lxv, 33, 44, 60, 137, 143, 178, 212
- Orteguilla**, a page, 1519, xvi, xxxv
- Ostiz**, —, the musician, joins Cortés at Trinidad, 78; his dark chesnut horse, *el Arriero*, 87, 117, 123; acquired by Cortés, 1519, 177
- Osorio**, Baltazar, robs Bernal Díaz del Castillo of three *encomiendas*, 1527, xxxii
- Otomé**, 229
- Otomies**, the, 217, 229, 261; their headquarters, 261
- Ovandillo**. See Pitalpitoque
- Oviedo y Valdes**, Gonzalo Fernández de. See Fernández de Oviedo y Valdés, Gonzalo
- Ozotequipa**, town of, xxii
- Ozúcar**, Spanish raid on, 1520, xviii
- Pacheco**, —, joins Cortés at Havana, 84
- Pacific Ocean**, Expedition of Vasco Núñez de Balboa to the, 10
- Padre de la Merced*, lxii. See also Olmedo, Bartolomé del
- Padua**, Saint Anthony, of, iv
- Paladin Roldan**, 131
- Palms**, Cape of the, 107
- Palos**, Anton de Alaminos, of 12
- Palos**, Gonzalo Guerrero, of, 95, etc.
- Panuco**, province, 8, 59
- Panuco**, 146
- Panuco**, Rio, lii, liii, 212
- Papa*, 20, 47, 55, 62, 97
- Papaloapan** (Alvarado), Rio de, xii, lxiii, 50, 57, 59
- Paper Books**, 162
- Paris**, city, 131
- Parrots**, 162, 257
- Pascua Florida**, 27
- Passion Flower**, 218
- Patiño**, manuscript map of, 178
- Paula García Paláez**, Don Francisco de, Bishop of, cited, v
- Paynala**, town, 132
- Payne**, Edward John, liii
- Pear**, prickly, 269
- Pedernales**, range of the, xxviii
- Pedrarias**, Dávila. See Arias de Avila, Pedro
- Pedro**, Maestre, *el de la Arpa*, 213
- Peláez**, García, *Memoria para la Historia del Antiguo Reyno de Guatemala*, 1851-52, cited, xxxix
- Pelota*, played in Mexico, 84
- Penachos*, lviii
- Peñalosa**, —, of Segovia, 37
- Peñates*, of Gibraltar, 96, 206; sentenced by Cortés, 207
- Perez de Aquitiano**, Juan, 273
- Perez de Artiaga**, Juan, of Puebla, 1519, 273; called Malinche, *ib.*
- Perez Malinche**, Juan. See Perez de Artiaga, Juan
- Perote**, 216
- Peru**, still unknown to the Spaniards, 1519, 200; first discovered in 1533, 17, 32, 59; Pedro de Alvarado's fleet to, 283
- Petaca*, 139

Petapa, Bernal Díaz del Castillo passes through, xxxii

Petates, 48, 143

Philip II., King of Spain (1556-98), received a copy of the Díaz MS., ii; receives a petition from Bernal Díaz del Castillo, praying for admission to the Royal Household, 1552, xxxviii; Royal Decree as to Diego Díaz del Castillo and his brothers, xxxv; as to the petition of Bernal Díaz del Castillo, Dec. 1550, xxxvii

margaritas, 139

Pigorini, Professor Luigi, of the Museo preistorico ed etnografico, Rome, discovered some of the gifts of Montezuma in the attics of the Bologna University, 301; discovers the mask of Tlaloc, 302

Pigorini, Luigi, *Gli antichi oggetti messicani incrostati di mosaico esistenti nel Museo preistorico ed etnografico di Roma*, 1885, cited, 302

Pigs, wild, at Cozumel, 1519, 100

Pillars of Hercules, xxix

Pineapples, 52

Pineda, Diego de. *See* Pinedo, Diego de

Pinedo (Pineda), Alonzo Álvarez de. *See* Álvarez de Pinedo, Alonzo

Pinedo, Diego de, joins Cortés at Trinidad, 78

Pinelo, Antonio de Leon. *See* Leon Pinelo, Antonio de

Pines, Isle of, Cuba, 83, 85

Piraguas, 14, 15, 136

Pitalpitoque (Ovandillo), a chief under Montezuma, ambassador to Juan de Grijalva, 137; to Cortés, *ib.*, 138, 176

Pizarro, family of, 72

Placel, 108

Plaza, 16, 222

Polynesians, drifting in the Pacific, xlviii

Pompey, 72

Ponce de Leon, Juan, discovered Florida on Easter Sunday (Pascua Florida), March 27, 1513, 27

Pontuchan (Chanpotón), 22

Popocatepetl, volcanic peak, xlv; volcano, active in 1519, 287; ascent of Diego de Ordás, 1519, *ib.*; its eruption in, 1539, 288; Teules of, 287

Popoloatán, province of Citla, town, assigned to Bernal Díaz del Castillo, April 3, 1528, xxxiii

Porcallo, Vasco, a relative of the Conde de Feria, proposed as Captain of the third expedition, 1519, 69; nominated by Diego Velásquez to supersede Cortés, 80

Port of Trinidad, Hernán Cortés leaves, Feb. 18, 1519, xiii

Portugal, 219

Portuguese diver, at Havana, 1518, 31; soldier, captured in Yucatan, 1519, 44; soldiers, with Cortés, 1519, 219

Potonchan (Santa Maria de la Victoria), at mouth of Rio de Grijalva, 21; subsequently called Tabasco, 108; *see* also Chanpotón; Province of Cimatan, assigned by Cortés to Bernal Díaz del Castillo, xxiii

President of the Council. *See* Spain: Royal Council of the Indies

Puebla, Diego de Ordás's nephew at, 288

Puebla, Juan Perez de Artiaga, a settler of, 273

Puebla, plain of, 216

Pueblo, lv, 8, 11

Puerto de la Leña, 217

Puerto de Nombre de Dios, 216, 217

Puertocarrero, Alonzo Hernández. *See* Hernández Puertocarrero

Puerto de Caballos (La Natividad), founded by Cortés, xxx

Puerto de Carenas (Havana), lxiii, lxiv, 13, 31

Puerto de Términos, lxiv, 45

Puerto Deseado (Boca de Términos), lxiii, lxiv

Puerto Escondido, 44

Puerto Real (Boca de Términos), lxiii, lxiv, 44

Pulido, El. *See* Saucedo, Francisco de

Punta de las Mujeres, lxiv, 105

Punta Majahua, 60

Pyrites, eyes of, 300

Quauhpopoca, a Cacique, burnt to death by Motecuhzoma, 1519, xvi

Queretaro, State of, 261

Quetzalcoatl, or Kukulkan, liii; mask of, now in the British Museum, 300; temple of, 299; its ornaments presented by Montezuma to Cortés, *ib.*; their description, *ib.*

Quilahuiztlan, harbour of, discovered by Francisco de Montejo, 1519, 146, 153; Bernal Díaz del

- Castillo at, 1519, xiii, 162, 167, 195
- Quiché.** See Maya Quiché race.
- Quintalbor,** a Mexican chief, double to Cortés, 143, 147
- Quiteria,** Juan de, killed at battle of Chanpotón, 1518, 43
- Rabona, La,** the bob-tailed grey mare of Juan Velásquez de Leon, 86
- Rambla, La** (Ayagualulco), xii, lxiii, 49, 50, 131; Bernal Díaz del Castillo at, 1518, xii
- Ramos de Lares,** Martin, a Biscayan, joins Hernan Cortés, 1519, 74, 93
- Ranchos,** 137, 258, 270
- Rangel,** Rodrigo, his expedition against the Zapotecs, xxiv; against Tabasco, *ib.*
- Ranguel,** Rodrigo, *Camarero* of Cortés, 86
- Read,** Charles Hercules, President of the Society of Antiquaries, his account of Montezuma's gifts, *Archæologia*, vol. liv, 1895, 302
- Reale Accademia dei Lincei,** Rome, *Memorie*, vol. xii, pp. 336-342, 1885, cited, 302
- Reale Audiencia,** 200
- Regidor,** x, lxii
- Rehfues,** Philipp Joseph von, *Denkwürdigkeiten des Hauptmanns Bernal Díaz del Castillo . . . übersetzt . . . von Ph. J. von Rehfues*, Bonn, 1838, cited, ii; 1843, iii
- Relacion de la Villa de Santa Maria de la Victoria,** 1579, printed 1898, 21, 108
- Relacion de Melchor de Aljara Santa Cruz,** 1898, 44, 132
- Relacion hecha por el Señor Andrés de Tápia sobre Conquista de México,** 16th cent. MS., 1866. See Tápia, Andrés de
- Relaciones de Yucatan,** 1898-1900, cited, 21, 44, 108, 261
- Remón,** Friar Alonzo, of the Order of Mercy, editor, Madrid, 1632, ii, 39, 62, 68, 82
- Reogel,** Rodrigo, joins Cortés at Trinidad, 78
- Repartimiento,** xxxiii
- Residencia,** 200
- Resin,** 20, 53, 62
- Rio de Alvarado** (Papaloapan), xii, lxiii, 50, 57, 59, 131
- Rio de Banderas** (Jamapa), lxiii, 50, 56, 131; Juan de Grijalva at the, 1518, 150; Bernal Díaz del Castillo at the, 1518, xii, 50, 56
- Rio de Canoas** (Tanguijo), xiii, lxiv; Bernal Díaz del Castillo at the, 1518, xiii, 60
- Rio de Coatzacoalcas,** xii, lxiii, lxiv, 50, 61, 131; Bernal Díaz del Castillo at the, 1518, xii, 61
- Rio Grande,** 146
- Rio de Grijalva** (Tabasco), xii, xlvi, lxiii, 21, 45, 103; Cortés arrives at the, 1519, 107; Province of the, 53
- Rio Jamapa** (de Banderas), lxviii, 50
- Rio de Lagartos,** lxiv
- Rio Panuco,** lii, liii; Alonzo Alvarez de Pineda on the, 212, 213
- Rio de Papaloapan** (Alvarado), xii, lxiii, 59; Bernal Díaz del Castillo at the, 1518, xii, 50, 57
- Rio San Pedro and San Pablo,** 213
- Rio de Santo Antón** (de Tonalá), xii, lxiii, lxiv, 50
- Rio de Tabasco** (Grijalva), lxiii; Bernal Díaz del Castillo at the, 1518, xii, 45; Cortés arrives at the, 1519, 107
- Rio Tanguijo** (de Canoas), xiii, lxiv
- Rio de Tonalá** (Santo Antón), xii, lxiii, lxiv; Bernal Díaz del Castillo at the, 1518, xii, 50, 61
- Ritter,** Karl (—), translator, 1848, cited, ii
- Rivadeneira,** 217
- Rivera,** Padre Agustin, *Anales Mexicanos*, cited, lxiv, 216
- Roatan,** island, Honduras, 12
- Rodríguez,** Alonzo, owner of gold mines, joins Cortés at Trinidad, 78
- Rodríguez,** Sebastian, joins Cortés at Havana, 84
- Rodríguez de Fonseca,** Don Juan, Bishop of Burgos, Archbishop of Rosano, President of the Royal Council of the Indies, supporter of Diego Velásquez, 1518, 65, 159, 197, 200, 203; his law-suits, 12; states Diego Velásquez to be discoverer of Yucatan, 33; his contemptuous reception of the Proctors of the army of Cortés, 1519, 202; a partisan of Francisco de Garay, 213; his downfall, 1521, 204
- Rodríguez Cabrillo de Medraño,** Juan, cited, ii
- Rójas,** —, joins Cortés at Havana, 84
- Rójas,** —, *el Río*, 84
- Rójas,** Gabriel de, Captain, partisan of Diego Velásquez, 1519, 199

Rojo, Cape, xiii, lxiv, 60, 146
Roldan, Paladin, 131
Romans, the, 72, 160, 210, 252 :
 King of the, Charles V. crowned
 as, 1529-30, 301
Rome, Ethnographical Museum. *See*
infra: Museo preistorico ed etno-
 grafico; Montezuma's gifts probably
 sent by Charles V. to, 301; Museo
 preistorico ed etnografico, formed by
 Prof. Luigi Pigorini, 301; contains
 some of the gifts of Montezuma,
ib., 302; described in *Memorie della*
R. Accademia dei Lincei, Rome,
 vol. xii, 1885, 302; Popes of :
 Leo X., d. 1521, 301; Clement
 VII., 301; Reale Accademia dei
 Lincei, 302
Romero, Alonzo, Alguacil del Real,
 1519, 157
Romero, Don José, of the Mexican
 Foreign Office, his famous library,
 lxi
Rosano, Archbishop of. *See* Rodri-
 guez de Fonseca, Juan
Royal Council of the Indies. *See*
 Spain
Royal Fifth. *See* Spain
Ruano, Juan, of Cuba, joins Hernan
 Cortés, 1519, 74, 181
Rubicon, 210
Rubrica, xlii
Ruins of Tulum, 41

Sacrifices, human, 55, 56
Sacrificios, Isla de, xii, lxiii, 54, 131
Sahagun, Bernardino de, *Historia*
General de las Cosas de Nueva
España, 3 tom., 1829-1830, cited,
 299
Saint Anthony, of Padua, iv
Saint George, gold medal of, pre-
 sented by Cortés to Montezuma,
 140
Saint James the Apostle, Festival
 of, Guatemala, 1560, Bernal Díaz
 del Castillo carries the banner,
 xxxix
Salazar, Don Ramon A., cited, v
Saldaña, a soldier, 118
Salitrales, 217
Salt Marshes, 174
San Antonio (Tonalá), 131
San Antonio, Cape, Cuba, lxiii,
 lxiv, 14, 39, 90
San Cristóbal de Havana, Cuba,
 lxiv, 13; Bernal Díaz goes over-
 land to, 33
San Juan de Junio, 1520, xviii

San Juan de Ulúa, Island, lxiv,
 59; the Spaniards arrive at, 1518,
 55; origin of its name, 56; mer-
 chandise of Castille landed at, 56;
 Cortés arrives at, 1519, 131, 136;
 the Proctors of the army of Cortés
 embark at, July 6, 1519, 198, 202
San Lázaro (Campeche), lxiii, lxiv,
 18, 43, 63
San Martin, Sierra de, lxiii, 50, 59,
 131
San Martin, a soldier, of Havana,
 range named after, 1518, 50
San Martin, Fray Tomás de, opposes
 the *Encomienda* system, 1550,
 xxxvii
San Pedro, his alleged appearance
 at the battle of Cintla, 121
San Pedro de la Victoria, 121
San Pedro and San Pablo, Rio,
 213
San Sebastian, Spanish ship, with
 Cortés, 57, 82, 90, 98
Sanchez, Gaspar, nephew of the
 Treasurer of Cuba, joins Cortés at
 Trinidad, 78
Sánchez Farfan, Pedro, of Trini-
 dad, his wife's romance, 39; joins
 Cortés at Trinidad, 77; captures
 Pánfilo de Narvaez, 1520, xvii
Sand Dunes, 140, 151, 162, 263
Sandoval, —, of Tudela de Duero,
 part owner of village of Chipiana,
 34
Sandoval, Gonzalo de, receives his
 first command, 211; his renown as
 a captain, 157; 1520, xvii, 34;
 takes Bernal Díaz del Castillo to
 the conquest of Tuxtépec, xxii;
 sends him clothes, gold, and cacao
 on his return to Mexico, 1527,
 xxxii; *Alguacil Mayor* in Mexico,
 78; Governor of New Spain with
 Alonzo de Estrada, 1527, xxxii, 78
Santa Cecilia, festival of, Bernal
 Díaz del Castillo carries the banner,
 1557, at Guatemala, xxxix
Santa Clara, —, joins Cortés at
 Havana, 84
Santa Cruz, festival of, May 3, 39
Santa Cruz, Melchor de, his map of
 Mexico, 1579, 22
Santa Cruz, Melchor de Alfiaro,
Relacion de Melchor de Alfiaro Santa
Cruz, 1898, 44, 132
Santa Cruz (Cozumel), island, lxiii,
 lxiv, 85; discovered by the
 Spaniards on the day of Santa Cruz,
 May 3, 1518, 39, 41
Santa Maria, 280

Santa Maria de la Victoria (Tabasco), lxiv ; as Tabasco on map of Melchor de Santa Cruz, 1579, 22 ; disappears soon after, *ib.*, formerly called Potonchan, 108 ; origin of the name, 120 ; *Relacion de la Villa de Santa Maria de la Victoria*, 1579, printed 1898, 21, 108

Santa Maria de Sevilla, 101

Santiago, 111, 231 ; his alleged appearance at the battle of Cintla, 121 ; Order of, Pedro de Alvarado, Comendador of the, 37, 283

Santiago Baracoa, Alcalde of, Hernan Cortés, 73

Santiago de Cuba, lxiii, lxiv, 31, 35, 88, 154 ; the Grijalva expedition returns to, 1518, 63, 69 ; Cortés sails from, Nov. 18, 1518, 76, 77

Santiago de Guatemala, Bernal Díaz del Castillo, *Regidor* of, 5

Santiago de la Victoria, 121

Santispíritus, Cuba, Francisco Hernández de Córdova dies at, 1518, 31 ; Cortés writes for volunteers to, 78 ; list of his adherents from, *ib.*

Santisteban, Juan, of Madrigal, 39

Santo Antón (Tonalá), Rio de, xii, lxiii, lxiv, 50, 61

Santo Domingo, Fray Alonzo de, Geronimite Friar, 1519, 200

Santo Domingo, island, 31, 101 ; Geronimite Friars, Governors of, 1519, 200 ; Reale Audiencia, 1519, 200

Santo Domingo, Zuazo, Licentiate, of, 200

Santo Domingo de la Calzada, Bernaldino Yñiguez, of, 13

Saucedo, Francisco de, *el Pulido*, of Medina Rio Seco, 1519, 192 ; *Maestresala* to the Admiral of Castille, *ib.* ; his horse, *ib.*

Savannas, 117, 120, 162

Scipio, 72

Seborucos, 34

Sedeño, Juan, a settler at Havana, sells a ship with freight to Cortés, 79 ; of Santispíritus, joins Cortés at Trinidad, 78 ; two others of the same name in the expedition, *ib.* ; his chesnut mare, 87, 123 ; his wealth, 87

Segovia, Peñalosa, native of, 37

Segura de la Frontera (Tepeaca), founded by Hernan Cortés, 1520, xviii ; Hernando Cortés writes to Charles V. from, Oct. 30, 1520, xliii

Serrano de Cardona, Antonio, 117 ; formerly Antonio de Villaroel, *ib.*

Sevilla, Mexico, 165

Seville, Casa de Contratacion, 300

Seville, Juan Díaz, native of, 37 ; the Proctors of the army of Cortés arrive at, 1519, 202

Shoals of the Martyrs, the, lxiii, 30

Sienchimalen (Nico), 216

Sienchimatli (Nico), 216

Sierra de San Martín, lxiii, 50, 59, 131

Sierra de Tuxpan, lxiv, 59

Sierra de Tuzpa, 59

Sierra de Tuztla, 59

Sisal, Bajos de, lxiv

Sisal Hemp, 51

Skulls, human, in piles at Xocotlan, 222

Slavery, Spanish view of, 12

Slings, Mexican, lviii

Snow Mountains, Mexico, 50, 131

Socochima (Nico Viejo), 215, 218

Soconusco, Bernal Díaz del Castillo passes through, xxvii

Sodomy, 184, 186, 189, 221

Sopuesta, ———, of Moguer, pilot, 1518, 37

Soto, Diego de, of Toro, joins Cortés at Havana, 84 ; Mayordomo to Cortés in Mexico, 84

South Sea. See Pacific Ocean

Spain, Kings of : Ferdinand V., of Castile (II. of Arragon), the Catholic, King of Spain, jointly with his wife, Isabella of Castile, 1479-1516, ix, 10 ; Isabella, of Castile, the Catholic, Queen of Leon and Castile (1474-1504), Queen of Spain, jointly with her husband, Ferdinand V. (1479-1504), ix, 10 ; Charles V., Emperor of Germany, ix, 5, 138, 165 ; in Flanders, 1519, 7, 33, 65 ; receives news of the discovery of Yucatan, *ib.* ; five letters from Hernando Cortés on Conquest of Mexico, 1519-1526, xliii, iv, 194 ; letter from the army of Cortés, 1519, 194, 273 ; two copies made, 198 ; the partisans of Cortés make a successful appeal to, 1519, 204 ; receives, April, 1520, at Valladolid, a letter from the Municipality of Vera Cruz, July 10, 1519, on the Conquest of Mexico, xliii, 21, 41, 43, 194, 300 ; also the gifts, 300 ; creates Hernando Cortés Marques del Valle de Guajaca at

- Barcelona, July 6, 1529, 3, 91
Philip II. (1556-1598), ii
- Spain.** Royal Chroniclers of, had access to the Díaz MS., ii; Royal Council of the Indies, Juan Rodríguez de Fonseca, President of the, 1518, 33, 65; Diego Velásquez sends a letter to, claiming discovery of Yucatan, 1518, 32; appoints Diego Velásquez Adelantado of Cuba, 65; responsible for the misstatements in the *Historia* of F. López de Gómara, 68; Bernal Díaz del Castillo appeals to the, 1540, xxxv; Royal Fifth, tax of the, 7, 13, 59, 62, 63, 150, 156, 195; towns in, formally granted titles of honour, ix
- Spaniards**, two, in captivity at Cape Catoche, 1519, 93, 195
- Spanish Cloth**, 162
- Spears**, Mexican, lvii, 285
- Stone Houses**, Yucatan, 1518, 37, 41
- Stone Knives**, 62, 285
- Tabasco**, Lord of Potonchan, 21, 45
- Tabasco**, province, 1579, 21
- Tabasco** (Grijalva), Rio de, xii, xlv, lxiii, 45, etc., 51, 103, 107
- Tabasco**, State of, rainfall in the, xlvii; Cortés proposes to advance to, 1519, 95; (Santo Maria de la Victoria), formerly called Potonchan, 108; Mexican Empire extended to, lvi; Bernal Díaz del Castillo at, 1519, xiii; Rodrigo Rangel's expedition against, xxiv; town, enlarged at expense of Bernal Díaz del Castillo, 1527, xxxii, xxxvi; *Visitador General* of, Bernal Díaz del Castillo, 1531, xxxiv
- Tacal naguas*, 241, 246
- Tamaulipas**, State of, lii
- Tamenes*, 125, 166
- Tanguijo** (de Canoas), Rio, xiii, xlv, 60
- Tania**, Cortés' army lost near, xxix
- Tápia**, Andrés de, *Relacion hecha por el Señor Andrés de Tápia sobre la Conquista de México*, sixteenth century MS., 1866, cited, xlv, 216, 224; sent to welcome Jerónimo de Aguilar, 1519, 100; welcomes Bernal Díaz del Castillo to Mexico, 1527, xxxii
- Tápia**, Bernaldino Vázquez de. *See* Vázquez de Tápia, Bernaldino
- Tapias**, 175
- Tarascos**, the, of Michoacan, lv
- Tatalteco**, province, 139
- Tatuan**, 136
- Taxagual**, town, 108
- Tayasal**, Cortés enters, xxviii
- Tayca**, xxix
- Teacacingo** (Tevacingo), camp of Cortés at, 1519, 234, 248
- Tecamachalco**, Spanish raid on, 1520, xviii
- Tecapacaneca**, Cacique of Topey-anco, 1519, 236; his audience of Cortés, 271
- Tecle*, 185
- Tecoac**, Otomé, town, 229
- Tecoacñunpancingo**, camp of Cortés at, 1519, 248
- Tehuacacingo** (Tehuacingo), 224, 233
- Tehuacingo** (Tehuacacingo), 224; battle of, Sept. 2, 1519, 232, etc.
- Tehuantepec**, Bernal Díaz del Castillo passes through, xxxii; isthmus of, xlv, li
- Tejutla**, 217
- Telegiguata**, 127
- Texutla**, Cortés passes through, 1519, xiv, 218
- Temastépec**, xxvii
- Temixtitlan** (Mexico City), xliii, xlv; Hernando Cortés writes to Charles V. from, Oct. 15, 1524, and Sept. 3, 1526, xliii, iv
- Temples**, Mexican, xv, 17, 62, 67
- Tendile**. *See* Teuhtlilli
- Tenochtitlan**, island of, Mexicans established on, fourteenth century, lv; Motecuhzoma conducts the Spaniards into the, 1519, xv
- Tenochtitlan** (Tenutzitlan), city of, conquered by the Spaniards, 6; Cortés reaches, June 24, 1520, xviii
- Tenochtitlan**, the Great, Cortés, master of, August, 1521, xxi
- Tenochtitlan** (Mexico), *Pueblo of*, lv
- Tenutzitlan** (Tenochtitlan), city of, 6
- Teoacingo**, 234, 248
- Teocalli**, massacre in the, 1520, xvii
- Teotihuacan**, Central Mexico, 1
- Tepeaca** (Segura de la Frontera), xviii, xliii
- Tepetitan**, town, Cortés at, xxvii
- Tepeyácac**, Spanish raid on, 1520, xviii
- Tepusques*, 180, 272
- Tepustle*, 124
- Terceira**, Azores, 202
- Tercera**. *See* Terceira
- Términos**, Boca de (Puerto Deseado or Real), lxiii, lxiv, 44, 105

- Términos**, Laguna de, 22, 24
Términos, Puerto de, lxiv, 45
Tertian fever, 249
Tescatepuca (Tetzcatlipoca), idol, San Juan de Ulúa, 55, 56
Tetepanquetzatl, Lord of Tlacopan, cousin of Cuauhtémoc, executed by Cortés at Izancán, 1525, xxviii
Tetzcatlipoca, idol, San Juan de Ulúa, 55, 56
Tetzco (Tetzco), Cacamatzin, lord of, 1519, xiv
Tetzco, Spanish headquarters at, 1520, xix
Teuhtilli (Tendile), Governor of Cueltaxtla, ambassador to Cortés, 138
Teules, 144, 172, 177, 188, 221, 240, 241, 247, 281, 294
Tevacingo (Tencacingo), 234
Tezcatepuca (Tetzcatlipoca), 151
Tetzcatlipoca, Mexican God of Hell, 151; mask of, now in the British Museum, 300; ornaments of, presented by Montezuma to Cortés, 299
Theuhixuacan (Ixuacan), 215, 217
Tianguez (Tianguez), 186
Tierra caliente, xlv
Tierra fría, xlv
Tierra-firme, the Spanish Main, 10; governor of, Pedro Arias de Ávila, 1514, 10, 11
Tierra templada, xlv, xlvii
Tiger Skins, mitre of, 299
Tigers, 123
Tiradera, lvii
Titus, 32
Tizapanecingo (Cingapacinga), N. W. of Cempoala, 178
Tlacopan, Totoquihuatzin, Lord of, 1519, xvi; Tetepanquetzatl, Lord of, 1525, xxviii
Tlacopan, section of, at siege of Mexico, May, 1521, xxi
Tlacotalpa, town, 50
Tlacotalpan, lxiii
Tlaloc (Tlalocantecutli), 299
Tlaloc, mask of, discovered by Prof. Luigi Pigorini in Florence, 302
Tlalocantecutli (Tlaloc), ornaments of, presented by Montezuma to Cortés, 299
Glamanalco, Cortés passes through, 1519, xiv
Tlapa, Province of Cimatan, town, assigned by Cortés to Bernal Díaz del Castillo, xxiii
Tlapa, *Encomienda*, taken away from Bernal Díaz del Castillo, 1527, xxxii, xxxiii
- Tlatelolco**, Cuauhtémoc, Lord of, 1519, xvi
Tlateluclo, Island of, Mexicans established on, 14th century, lv
Tlati, 32
Tlatoan, 136
Tlaxcala, Caciques of, 261, 265, 267, 269, 289; their audience of Cortés, 1519, 271; their reception of Cortés in their city, Sept. 23, 1519, 274; five of their daughters presented to Cortés, 279; oppose proposals of Cortés to march against Montezuma, 290
Tlaxcala, city, the first mass said in, Sept., 1519, 277; pictures of Mexican battles, 285; prehistoric man in, 286; priests of, 274; republic of, 224, 265; standards of the, 236; wars in, 133, 224, etc.; wizards of, 241
Tlaxcala, march of Cortés from Cempoala to, 1519, 215; Itinerary, 216; Cortés enters the city of, 217; Cortés flies to, 1520, xviii; Cortés attacked by the Indians of, 1519, xiv, xxiii; capital of, xiv; plain of, 216; its boundaries, 224; tableland of, 216
Tlaxcalans, united action of the, lv
Toltecs, a branch of the Nahua race, xlix; Tula, their capital, *ib.*
Tonalá (Santo Antón), Rio de, xii, lxiii, 50, 61
Tonalá (San Antonio), 131
Tonalá, town, welcomes Juan de Grijalva, 1518, 61; town, overrun by Cortés, xxvi
Tonatio, Child of the Sun, Mexican name of Pedro de Alvarado, 295, 296
Topeyanco, Tecapacaneca, Cacique of, 236, 271
Toribio, *de Benavente*, Fray, called *Motolinía*, a Franciscan, entertained by Cortés at Mexico, June 18, 1524, xxv
Toro, Diego de Soto, of, 84
Torquemada, Juan de (—), *Veinte i un libros rituales y Monarchia Indiana*, 1615, 1723, cited, i
Torralva, —, Mayordomo to Francisco de Garay, 213
Torres de Córdoba, Juan de, an old soldier, left by Cortés as a hermit at Cempoala, 1519, 190, 192
Tortillas, 250
Totonac Sierra, towns of the, 246
Totonacs, the, lii, 168, 169, 173; alliance with Cortés, 1519, 174,

- 246, 252, 269; language of the, 151, 165, 188; messengers from the, 1519, 151, etc.
- Totoquihuatzin**, Lord of Tlacopan, surrendered to Cortés, 1519, xvi
- Tria**, Jaime, finances Hernan Cortés, 1519, 73
- Tria**, Jerónimo, finances Hernan Cortés, 1519, 73
- Triana**, Camacho, of, 12, 37
- Trinidad**, port of, xiii, lxiv; Bernal Díaz visits, 33, 76; list of the adherents of Cortés from, 77, 78; Baena, a settler, at, 87; town, Pedro Sánchez Farfan, of, 39
- Trophées*, les, 1893. See Heredia José María de.
- Trujillo**, Pedro González de. See González de Trujillo, Pedro
- Tudela de Duero**, 34
- Tula**, capital of the Toltecs, xlix, 1; on the head waters of the Rio Panuco, liii
- Tulum**, ruins of, 41
- Tu me lo ruegas y yo me lo quiero*, 156
- Tuna**, 269, 276
- Turkeys**, 139
- Turquoise**, mosaic of, 299
- Turtle Shell**, shields of, 49
- Tustepeque** (Tuxtepec), province, 139
- Tuxpan**, 1518, xiii
- Tuxpan**, Sierra de, lxiv, 59
- Tuxtepec** (Tustepeque), province, 139
- Tuxtépec**, conquest of, by the Spaniards, xxii
- Tuxtla**, 1518, xiii
- Tuxtla**, Sierra de, 59
- Tuztla**, Sierra de, 59
- Tzendals**, of the Maya stock, 109
- Tzendes*, xlvii
- Tzompantzingo** (Cunpanzingo), 224, 263, 269; battle of, 1519, 224, 237, etc.; town, expedition of Cortés to, 1519, 243, 259
- Ulúa**, 56. See also Colua (Coloa).
- Ulúa**, San Juan de, lxiv, 55, etc.
- Ulúa**, sand dunes of, 1518, xii; 1519, xiii
- Ulúa**, Pánfilo de Narvaez arrives at, March, 1520, xvii
- Umbria**, Gonzalo de, a pilot, a partisan of Diego Velásquez, 206; sentenced to mutilation by Cortés, 207; the sentence not carried out, *ib.*
- Usagre**, Bartolomé de, artilleryman to Cortés, 85, 93
- Usumacinta**, river, xli, 1
- Uxmal**, Yucatan, founded by the Mayas, li
- Valdés**, Gonzalo Fernández de Oviedo y. See Fernández de Oviedo Valdés, Gonzalo
- Valdivia**, Enciso y. See Enciso y Valdivia
- Valencia**, Fray Martín de, xxv
- Valencia**, 213
- Valenzuela**, Maria de, wife of Pánfilo de Narvaez, 1519, 201
- Valladolid**, compared to Cholula, 292; Charles V. receives the gifts and letter of the Municipality of Vera Cruz, of July 10, 1519, in April, 1520, at, 300; Congress of, 1550, Bernal Díaz del Castillo summoned as oldest *Conquistador* of New Spain, xxxvii; Pánfilo de Narvaez, of, 1519, 201; the proctors of the army of Cortés arrives at, October, 1519, 202, 300
- Valle de Guajaca** (Oaxaca), Marquis del. See Cortés, Hernando Varas lostadas, lvii
- Vásquez de Tápia**, Bernaldino, sent to reconnoitre Mexico, 1519, 294; his return, *ib.*
- Vásquez**, Friar Francisco, cited, iv, v
- Vásquez de Ayllon**, Oidor Lucas, xvii
- Vecinos*, 108
- Veedor*, an obsolete word, 13, 37
- Veinte**, *Los Veinte i un libros rituales y Monarchia Indiana*, 1615. See Torquemada, Juan de
- Velásquez**, Bernardino, kinsman of Diego Velásquez, proposed as captain of the third expedition, 1519, 69
- Velasquez**, Diego, Governor of Cuba; a relation of Bernal Díaz, xi, 9, 11, 57; brother-in-law of Francisco Verdugo, Chief Alcalde of Trinidad, 80; organises a second expedition under Juan de Grijalva from Cuba, 1518, 35, etc.; organises a third expedition from Cuba, 1519, xiii, 69, etc.; his commission to Cortés, 159; writes to Royal Council of the Indies to announce his discovery of Yucatan, 1518, 33; his petition to the Council, 64, etc.; sponsor to Hernan Cortés at his wedding, 70; attempts to revoke his commission to Cortés, 79, etc.; his farm at Guaniguanico, 84; sends

- Gaspar de Garnica to arrest Cortés, 88; partisans of, in the expedition of Cortés, 1519, 149, 152, 158; authorised by Royal Decree to trade and found settlements, 1519, 192; appointed Adelantado of Cuba, *ib.*; *residencia* of, ordered by the Geronimite Friars, 1519, 200; organises a fleet against Cortés, 1519, 201
- Velasquez Borrejo**, Antonio, proposed as captain of the third expedition, 1519, 69
- Velásquez de Leon**, Juan, a kinsman of Diego Velásquez, joins Cortés at Trinidad, 78; ordered to arrest Cortés, 88; his grey mare, *la Rabona*, 86, 117; in command of a ship under Cortés, 1519, 98, 104; imprisoned by Cortés, 1519, 159; at Tlascal, 1519, 281
- Venice**, Mexico, compared by Bernal Díaz to, 51
- Vera Cruz** (Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz), founded by Hernán Cortés, 1519, xiii, 156, 174, 268
- Vera Cruz**, La Antigua, the third site, 162
- Vera Cruz** (Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz), origin of its name, 156
- Vera Cruz**, its pillory and gallows, 1519, 157; its Alcaldes and Regidores, *ib.*; port of, 55; town, Alonso Hernández Puertocarrero and Francisco de Montejo sail from, July, 1519, 300; town, municipality of, letter to Charles V., of July 10, 1519, replaces lost first letter of Cortés, xliii, 21, 41, 43, 113, 118, 123, 194, 300; accompanied by an inventory of Cortés' presents, but excluding the masks, etc., of Montezuma, 300; state of, lii; state of, rainfall in the, xlvii
- Verde**, Isla, xii, lxiii, 54, 131
- Verdugo**, Francisco, Chief Alcalde of Trinidad, brother-in-law of Diego Velásquez, 83; receives the Governor's orders to arrest Cortés, *ib.*; supports Cortés, 81, 88
- Véridique Histoire de la Conquête de la Nouvelle-Espagne**, 1877-88. See Díaz del Castillo, Bernal
- Vespasian**, 32
- Villalobos**, Don Juan de, Licentiate, declares Bernal Díaz del Castillo not to be a *Conquistador*, 1540, xxxvi
- Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz**. See Vera Cruz
- Villaroel**, Antonio de, standard bearer, 1519, 117, 157; husband of Isabel de Ojeda, *ib.*; afterwards Antonio Serrano de Cardona, *ib.*
- Villa Viciosa**, 165
- Visitador General*, xxxiv
- Volcanic mountains**, Mexico and Central America, xlv
- Wafers**, consecrated, 269, 277
- Wax**, Mexican, 190
- Weevils**, 56, 147, 152
- West Indies**, 31, 59
- Wheels**, of gold and silver, sent by Montezuma to Cortés, 143, 144
- Woman**, prominent in sculptures at Copan, li; in Yucatan only represented in mural painting at Chichén-Itzá, lii
- Xalacingo**, 217, 225; Cortés passes through, 1519, xiv; Spanish raid on, 1520, xviii
- Xexenes*, 152
- Xicalango**, Laguna de Términos, an outlying stronghold of the Aztec Empire, 44, 132
- Xico**, Mexico, 215, 216
- Xico Viejo** (Socochema), 215
- Xicochimalco**, Cortés passes through, 1519, xiv
- Xicochimalco** (Xico), 216
- Xicotencia**, the Elder, Cacique, of Tlascal, 1519, 236, 245; declares for peace, 246, 257, 265, 267; his audience of Cortés, 271; welcomes Cortés to Tlascal, 275; opposes proposal of Cortés to march against Montezuma, 290
- Xicotencia**, Captain-General of the Tlaxcalans, 217, 224, 231; his red and white livery, 231, 265; his camp, 235; his army, 236; its dissensions, 239; his night attack on Cortés, 242; declares against peace, 247; comes to Cortés to sue for peace, 265; his appearance, 267
- Xicotencatl** (Xicotencia), 224
- Xicotenga** (Xicotencia), 231, 235
- Xocotla** (Zautla), 217; Cortés passes through, 1519, xiv
- Xocotlan**, 217
- Yaguarama**, village, Bartolomé de Casas, parish priest of, 34
- Yáñez**, Alonso, a Spanish carpenter, at Cozumel, 98; at Cintla, 1519, 127; his wife remarries, xxx
- Yllescas**, Gonzalo de, cited, xl, 53, 66

Vázquez, Bernandino, of Santo Domingo de la Calzada, *veedor* in the Expedition of 1517, 13

Ysabel, Doña. See Isabella, of Castile, the Catholic

Yuca, 32

Yucatan, Adelantado of, Francisco de Montejo, 38, 84; etymology of, 1518, 32, 35; Province of, first discoverer of, 7, 14, etc; Juan de Grijalva coasts along, 1518, 105; language of, 15; masonry houses, 1518, 37, 41; native sculptures, javelins and spears represented, lvii; native sculptures warlike in character, liii; women only once depicted, at Chichén-Itzá, *ib.*; *Relaciones de Yucatan*, Madrid, 1898, 21, 44, 108, 261; ruined towns abandoned long before the Spanish Conquest, liv; Peninsula of, xlv

Yucutlan, 32

Zacatani, 217; Spanish raid on, 1520, xviii

Zacatépec, town, assigned to Bernal Díaz del Castillo, 1542, xxxvii

Zaclotan (Zautla), 217

Zaguatan, town, Cortés at, xxvii

Zapata, Luis, the Licentiate, Member of the Royal Council of the Indies, 65; a partisan of Francisco de Garay, 213

Zapote, fruit, 48, 52

Zapotecs, the, xxiii, lv; Rodrigo Rangel's expedition against, xxiv

Zaragoza, Luis de, a Spanish soldier, 1519, 99

Zautla (Nocotlan), 216, 217

Zerrato, Alonzo López. See López Zerrato, Alonzo

Zocotlan (Zautla), 216, 275

Zuazo, ----, Licentiate, of Santo Domingo, 1519, 200

INDEX.

Acachinanco (the fort of Xoloc of *Prescott and Orozco y Berra*), 311-17. *See also* references at end of Appendix A.

Acacingo. *See* Ayotzingo.

Adobes (sun-dried bricks), used for breastworks, 7; as building material, 51

Aguilar, Jeronimo de, interpreter, 5, 13, 27, 56, 70, 83, 87, 92, 98, 127, 149, 173

Aguilar, Hernando de, the iron forger (Maxahierro), 302

Ajusco, volcano and mountain range, 45

Arbardillas, Las (the pack saddles), nickname of the companions of Ramirez the elder, 286

Albarradon of Netzahualcoyotl, the great dyke across the lake of Texcoco built by Netzahualcoyotl, 47; separated the salt water of Lake Texcoco from the fresh water of the Lake of Mexico, 48; openings for canoes, 48; decay of, 49

Alcántara the elder, Juan de, chosen to receive the share of spoil due to the settlers at Villa Rica, 219; killed by the Mexicans, 255, 259, 287

Alguacils, in market-place, 72

Almeria, 89

Amadel, Francisco de, sailing master of Juan de Burgos's ship, joins Cortés, 304

Alvarado, Pedro de, captain, 86, 92, 104; cheats Montezuma at play, 105; excessive talker, 105; named *Toncio* by the Mexicans, 105, 110, 112, 113; to be left in command at Mexico, 171; received instructions from Cortés, 174; besieged in Mexico city, 219; sends letter to Cortés, 220; makes his report to Cortés in Mexico, 223; rebuked by Cortés, 224; his anecdotes about the fighting, 225; commands the rear guard on the Noche Triste, 243; his escape, 246; "Alvarado's Leap," 247

Alvarado, Puente de, on the Tacuba Causeway, the site of Toltecaacapan, 318

Álvarez el chico, Francisco, accountant of New Spain, sent on mission to Santo Domingo, 298

Amadis, legend of, 37

Amal (Mex.) = paper, made from the bark of a tree, 64; sold in market, 72

Amaya, kinsman of Diego Velásquez, envoy of Narvaez to Sandoval, 159, 165

Ambassadors, sent by Montezuma to Cortés, 5; detained by Cortés, 6; placed under guard, 11; summoned before Cortés, 16; return to Montezuma, 19; another embassy of five chieftains invite the Spaniards to Mexico, 25; an embassy of four chieftains bring presents at Amecameca, 33; attempt to bribe Cortés to retreat, 33; Cacamatzin sent to meet Cortés, 35; addresses Cortés, 36

Amecameca (Mecameca), town, 29, 30

Animals in Montezuma's menagerie fed on the bodies of sacrificed Indians, 66, 67

Anonymous conqueror, quoted, 50; describes city of Mexico, 50, 314

Aqueduct, from Chapultepec, 49, 75, 82

Aquino, Marcos de, Mexican artist, 68

Argüello, captured by the Mexicans, 90; his head sent to Montezuma, 91

Armour, of quilted cotton, 65

Armory, contents of Montezuma's, 65

Arroba, a Spanish weight = 25 lbs., 139

Arvenga, 113; an artilleryman, 206

Atzacualco, town of, at the north end of great dyke, 47

Atzacapotzalco, metal workers at, 67; melt down the treasure of Montezuma, 137, 138; make gold chains for captains, 141; for Juan Velásquez de Leon, 144

Audiencia, the Royal, of Santo Domingo, 154; forbid the sailing of Diego Velásquez's fleet, 155; hear of the arrest of Lucas Vásquez, 168

Aviary, description of Montezuma's, 65, 66

Ávila, Alonzo de, Captain, 92, 103, 111, 112; rebukes and insults Cortés, 218, 227; at the Battle of Otumba, 253; accountant of New Spain, 298; sent on mission to Santo Domingo, 298; Cortés's reasons for sending him, 303

Axayaca (Axayacatl), Ruler of Mexico, father of Montezuma, 43; Spaniards lodged in the palace of, 43; conquers Tlatcōlco, 1473, 50; his treasure discovered by Spaniards, 84

Ayotes, edible gourds, 255

Ayotzingo (Acacingo), town on the margin of the lake, 30; Spaniards pass the night at, 35; suggested as a headquarters, 304

Azoteas (flat roofs of the houses) at Cholula are fortified, 5, 7; in Mexico used for defence, 234

Barahona, Sancho de, a soldier imprisoned by Narvaez, 168; released by Cortés, 215

Barba, Captain Pedro, arrives in his ship at Villa Rica, 274; arrested by Caballero, 275; joins Cortés, is made captain of the crossbowmen, 276, 289

Barrientos, left by Pizarro at the mines near Tuxtepec, 134; arrives at Cempoala with Chinantec Indians, 214; returns with them to Chinantla, 215

Barrios, Andrés de, "The Dancer," brother-in-law of Cortés, his lawsuit about Mestitan, 284

Beds, Mexican, 43, 151

Beltran, Doctor, Oidor of the Royal Council of the Indies, 285

Berger, Benito de, a fifer, 190

Bermúdez, Augustin, proposes to visit Cortés's camp, 184; chief constable to Narvaez, 188; Cortés wishes to gain over, 188; advises Narvaez not to arrest Juan Velásquez, 193; makes submission to Cortés, 212; returns to Cuba a rich man, 296, 297

Bernal, "the rock of the ugly name" and harbour near Villa Rica, 282

Blow Guns, sent by Montezuma to the Emperor Charles V, 137, 138

Bono de Quexo, Juan, a captain, 167; under Narvaez, 193; captured at Cempoala, 209; returns to Cuba a rich man, 297

Books of Accounts kept on native paper (Amal) by Montezuma's stewards, 64, 80

Botello, the astrologer, his forecasts, 242; his death, 249; his notes and papers, 249

Brand, used for marking slaves, 273, 293

Bridge, portable, made to facilitate escape from Mexico, 243; put in its place, 244; becomes immovable, 245; great slaughter at, 248, 249

Burgos, Bishop of. *See* Rodríguez de Fonseca.

Burgos, Juan de, owner of ship from Spain and the Canary Islands, joins Cortés, 304

Buros. *See* Engines.

Caballero. *See* Cavallero.

Cacahuateros, vendors of Cacas, 71

Cacamatzin, nephew of Montezuma Cacique of Texcoco, sent to Ayotzingo on an Embassy to Cortés, 35, 40, 42; plans a conspiracy, 115; defies Cortés, 117; makes plans for attacking the Spaniards, 119, 120; is seized by Montezuma's orders and brought to Mexico, 121; defies Montezuma, 121; is sent to Cortés as a prisoner, 122; his death, 249

Cacao, drink made from, 63

Çacatami (Zocotla, Castil Blanco), town of, expedition against, under Sandoval, 287; story apparently repeated, 290

Cachula, town of, 263, 274. *See* Quecholac.

Cáceres, Juan de, the rich, 303

Cacique, the fat, of Cempoala, 27, 170; warms Narvaez to beware of the activity of Cortés, 198; wounded at Cempoala, 213

Camargo, captain of a ship in F. de Garay's expedition, sent to Panuco, 282; arrives with ship at Villa Rica, 282; arrives at Tepeaca (Frontera), 283; his death, 283; his companions nick-named "Verdigris bellies," 283

Canary Islands, ship arrives from, 304

Canillas, a drummer, 190

Canoes, supply food to the city, 75

- Cántaro* (Span.), a vessel for holding water, 81
- Cárdenas**, a pilot from Triana, disappointment at share of spoil, 141; Cortés appeases him with gifts, 143; hostile to Cortés on return to Spain, 143; returns to Cuba a rich man, 297
- Carrasco**, Gonzalo, a soldier under Narvaez posted as a spy, 199; is captured, 207; returned to Cuba a rich man, 297; later on a resident at Puebla, 297
- Casas**, Fray Bartolomé de las, Bishop of Chiapas, gives false account of Cholula massacre, 20; accuses Alvarado of attacking the Mexican chieftains in order to rob them of their jewels, 225
- Causeways**, of Cuiclahuac, 37, 47; to the city of Mexico, 47; Zumpango and Zaltocan, 47; of Iztapalapa, 39, 40, 74; of Tacuba, 74; of Tepeaca or Tepeaquilla (Guadalupe), 75
- Cavallero**, Pedro, master of one of Narvaez's ships, appointed by Cortés Admiral of the Sea, 216, 259, 260; arrests Pedro Barba, 275, 276
- Cempoalans**, warn Cortés of the treachery of the Cholulans, 7; refuse to go to Mexico and return to their homes, 26, 27; revolt, 87, 88, 89
- Cervantes**, the Comedador Leon de, returned to Cuba a rich man; returned later on to Mexico, 297
- Cervantes**, the jester, left by Pizarro at the mines near Tuxtepec, 134; joins Narvaez, 156; given a good thrashing at Cempoala, 213
- Chalchihuite* (Jadeite) considered a precious stone by the Indians, 33, 67, 137, 138; exchanged for food, 257
- Chapultepec** (the hill of the grasshopper) spring and aqueduct, 49, 75
- Chalco**, town of, 18, 28, 30, 34; Lake of, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49
- Chiapas**, frontier of, 89
- Chichimecatecle**, his kind reception of the Spaniards after their flight from Mexico, 257; offers his services to Cortés and becomes a Christian, 301
- Chiconahutla**, volcano, 45
- Chimalhuacan**, volcanic cone in Valley of Mexico, 45
- Chimaloacan** (Chimal), town of, South of Amecameca, 30
- Chinampas*, floating gardens, 46; at Xochimilco, 46, 47; at Iztapalapa, 47; description of, 47
- Chinantecs**, land of the, 127; gold mines in, 128; their hatred of Mexico, 133; send deputation to Cortés, 134; their long spears, 185, ordered to make spears for the Spaniards, 186
- Chinantla**, Indians from (Chinantecs), arrive at Cempoala, 214; thanked by Cortés and return to their homes, 215
- Cholula**, Spaniards march to city of, 1; reception at, 2; enter the city, 4; courts where the Spanish camped, 10; the massacre at, 15; new Cacique appointed, 17; situation of the city, 18; the Great Cue, 18, 82; again fully peopled, 22; a city of the older culture, 46; manufacture of earthenware, 63
- Cholulans**, protest against Tlaxcalans entering their city, 2; costume, 2; address Cortés, 3; fortify the *azoteas* and prepare pitfalls for the Spaniards, 5, 7; stop the supplies of food, 5; offer human sacrifices, 8, 17; confident of victory, 8; massacred by the Spaniards, 15; pardoned by Cortés, 16; make friends with Tlaxcalans, 17; re-people the city, 17; makers of pottery, 18; discard their principal idol, 21
- Churubusco** (Huchilohuchico, Cortés, Huitzilopochco, Mex.), town of, 308; Puente de, 310; convent of, 310
- Cingapacinga**, 20, 24
- Clavigero's History of Mexico**, map showing Chinampas, 46
- Coastoca** (Coixtlahuaca), town of, 127
- Coate**, Mexican captain, burned to death, 99
- Coatzacoalcos**, Mexican frontier guard at, 89, 127; native map showing river, 129; expedition of Ordás to, 131
- Cochineal**, sold in market-place, 72
- Coçotlan**. See Caçatami.
- Concepcion**, La, hospital of, now Hospital de Jesus Nazareno, 313
- Copal* (*Copalli*, Mex.), a resin used as incense, 76
- Copan**, in Honduras, a city of the older culture, 46
- Cartaduras* (Span.), openings in the

causeways for the passage of canals, 318

Cortés, Hernando, addresses his troops before entering Cholula, 2; addresses Cholulans, 3; detains Montezuma's ambassadors, 6; sends for two of the principal priests, 6; asks for carriers for the baggage, 7, 8; again summons the priests, 10; takes counsel with his captains, 10; hears of plot through Doña Marina, 13; prepares to punish the Cholulans, 14; addresses the Caciques and priests, 14, 15; gives signal for the massacre, 15; pardons the Cholulans, 16; establishes friendship between Tlaxcalans and Cholulans, 17; appoints Cacique of Cholula, 17; preaches Christianity, 17; releases prisoners fattened for sacrifice, 20; sends a message to Montezuma, 22, 23; receives ambassadors from Montezuma, 25; invited to Mexico, 25; allows the Cempoalans to return home, 27; leaves Cholula, 28; receives presents and advice from Indians at Yscalpan, 28; hears of blocked road and ambush, 29; summons Mexican ambassadors, 29; chooses the blocked road, 30; arrives at Amecameca, 30; receives presents from Indians who complain of Montezuma's rule, 31; promises to redress wrongs, 32; receives embassy from Montezuma, 33; forbidden to enter Mexico, 33; replies to the ambassadors, 34; enters Iztapalapa, 37; marches along Iztapalapa Causeway, 39, 40; meets Montezuma, 41; enters Mexico, 43; receives visit from Montezuma, 53, 55; returns Montezuma's visit, 55; explains Christianity, 56; visits market-place and temple at Tlaltelolco, 69-83; ascends steps of temple, 74; converses with Montezuma and offends him, 76, 79; returns to quarters, 83; examines Axayacas treasure, 84; advised to seize Montezuma, 86; carries off Montezuma to the Spaniards quarters, 92-95; removes Montezuma's shackles, 98; orders materials for building sloops, 104; plays at totolouque with Montezuma, 105; orders two sloops to be built, 109; allows Montezuma to go hunting, 112; hears of Cacamatzin's conspiracy, 116; advises Montezuma

in the matter, 117; Cacamatzin sent to him as a prisoner, 121; imprisons other Caciques and attaches them all to a chain, 122; asks Montezuma to give his fealty to the Emperor, 124; sends out expeditions to examine mines, 127; demands tribute from Montezuma, 135; receives Montezuma's treasure, 137; takes a fifth of the spoil, 140; smoothes over discontent at the unfair division of spoil, 141; orders service of plate, 141; placates the grumblers, 143; imprisons Mejía and Juan Velásquez, 144; gains permission to set up a Christian altar in the Great Temple, 147, 148; threatens to carry Montezuma to Spain, 150; hears of the arrival of Narvaez, 158; conciliates the envoys from Narvaez, 162; writes a letter to Narvaez and to Andrés de Duero, 164; determines to leave Mexico and to attack Narvaez, 171; takes leave of Montezuma, 174; orders Sandoval to join him, 175; meets Alonzo de Mata, 176; arrives at Tanpaniginta, 176; is joined by Sandoval, 176; again writes a letter to Narvaez and orders the Padre de la Merced to carry it, 179-181; fully informed of what is going on, 184; bribes Andrés de Duero, 187, 188; sends Juan Velásquez de Leon to the camp of Narvaez, 189; marches towards Cempoala, 190; addresses his troops, 200-204; gives directions for the attack on Narvaez, 204; offers rewards for the capture of Narvaez, 205; orders the advance, 207; orders the followers of Narvaez to yield under pain of death, 209; defeats Narvaez, 209, 210; interview with Narvaez, 211; receives the submission of the followers of Narvaez, 212; receives the Indian allies from Chinantla, 213; sends Francisco de Lugo to seize the ships of Narvaez's fleet, 215; releases prisoners captured at Cempoala, 217; orders their arms to be restored to them, 217; rebuked by Alonzo de Avila and the Padre de la Merced, 217; hears of massacre by Pedro de Alvarado in Mexico, and makes forced marches to the city, 220; receives complaints from Montezuma, 220; persuades the followers of Narvaez to accompany him to

Mexico, 221 ; reaches Tlaxcala then passes through Texcoco, reaches Mexico, 222 ; rebuffs Montezuma, 222 ; having boasted of his power to the followers of Narvaez is irritated at finding the Spaniards isolated 226 ; abuses Montezuma, 227 ; rebuked by his captains, 227 ; makes offensive remarks about Montezuma, 227 ; hears news that the Mexicans intend to attack, 228 ; sends out party under Ordás, 228 ; hard pressed during first day's fighting, 230 ; loses ten or twelve men during second day's fighting, 231 ; his bravery when attacking the Teocalli, 234 ; returns to quarters, 236 ; determines to sue for peace, 236 ; sends for Montezuma, 237 ; weeps over Montezuma's death, 238 ; makes another unsuccessful sally, 240, 241 ; determines to leave Mexico city, 242 ; prepares a moveable bridge, ; gives orders for the retreat, 243 ; gives over the spoil to the soldiers, 244 ; his escape on the Noche Triste, 245 ; attempts to return along the causeway, meets Alvarado, 246 ; camps at Los Remedios, 248 ; reaches Cuautitlan, 250 ; at the battle of Otumba, 251 ; charges the Mexican host, 253 ; receives the Mexican standard from Juan de Salamanca, 253 ; when in sight of Tlaxcala, he addresses his followers, 256 ; reaches Tlaxcalan territory, 256 ; met by the Tlaxcalan chief, 257 ; reaches the city of Tlaxcala, lodges with Mase Escasi, 258 ; hears of the loss of treasure, 259 ; writes to Villa Rica, 259 ; determines to go to Tepeaca, 263 ; asks Tlaxcalans for assistance, 269 ; sends messengers to Tepeaca, 270, 271 ; defeats the Mexican garrison, 272 ; enters Tepeaca, 273 ; appoints Pedro Barba, captain of his crossbowmen, 276 ; receives reinforcements, 276, 277 ; sends expedition against Guacachula, 278 ; reproves Cristóbal de Olid, 279 ; joined by men from Garay's expedition, 282-6 ; sends Sandoval on expedition against Xalacingo and Cacatami, 286-92 ; his renown throughout New Spain, 289 ; settles disputes between natives, 290 ; orders slaves to be branded, 293 ; attempts to allay discontent, 294 ; issues proclamation about the

possession of gold, which is completely ignored, 295 ; allows some followers of Narvaez to return to Cuba, 297 ; sends Diego de Ordás and Alonzo de Mendoza on a mission to Spain, and Alonzo de Ávila and Francisco Álvarez on a mission to Santo Domingo, 298 ; begs the Geronomite Friars to send favourable report to Spain, 299 ; suspected of secreting gold, 300 ; orders Martín López to cut the timber for thirteen sloops, 300 ; moves headquarters to Tlaxcala, 301 ; sends to Villa Rica for ship's rigging, etc., 302 ; reasons why Cortés sent Alonzo de Ávila to Santo Domingo, 303 ; orders headquarters to be moved to Texcoco, 304 ; buys a ship arrived from Spain and its cargo, 304

Cortés, Martín, father of Hernando, said to receive share of spoil, 142

Cotaras, sandals, made of henequen fibre, 71

Cotaxtla, near Vera Cruz, feather work from, 68

Coyoacan (Cuyucan, B.D.), City Caciques of, bring presents, 38 ; small causeway of, 40 ; Cacique of, 40, 42 ; seized and imprisoned by Montezuma, 115, 122 ; the road to, 310-12

Crespillo, El, Mexican artist,

Cruces, Las, mountain range, 45

Cruz, Juan de la, Mexican artist, 68

Cuautitlan, Spaniards arrive at, a town afterwards given to Alonzo de Ávila, 250

Cucuyos, Cuban name for fire-flies, mistaken for match fires, 210

Cue, a word used in the Antilles = temple. See Temple.

Cuernavaca, town surrounded by barrancas, 46

Cuesco, a Cacique of Cempoala, nephew of the fat Cacique, 27

Cuicuatzin, named Don Carlos, and appointed to succeed his brother Cacamatzin as Cacique of Texcoco, 122

Cuitlahuac (Coadlabaca, B.D.; modern Tlahua), causeway of, 27, Cacique of, 38, 42

Cuitlahuac (Coadlabaca, B.D.), Lord of Iztapalapa, made Cacique of Mexico, 238 ; dies from smallpox, 273

Culuacan, town of, lake narrows near, 48

Cuylonemiquis = where they killed the Mexican profligates, battlefield near Coatzacoalcas, 132

Cuzula (Sosola) in Oaxaca, 126

Dancers, kept by Montezuma, 68

Daughters of Mexican chieftains, living in retirement like nuns, weave feather fabrics, 68

Daughter of Montezuma seized on her way from Tacuba, 228

Davila, Alonzo, the accountant, 138; takes charge of the King's share of the spoil during the Noche Triste, 243

Díaz de Auz, Miguel, an Aragonese, one of F. de Garay's captains, 283; attacked by Indians at Panuco, 284; arrives at Villa Rica, 284; joins Cortés at Tepeaca, 284; his lawsuit against Andrés de Barrios, 284; his conduct in court, 285; reproved by the President of the Court, 285, 287

Díaz del Castillo, Bernal, accompanies Cortés on his first visit to Montezuma, 55; beholds the treasure of Axayaca, 85; joins others in advising Cortés to seize Montezuma, 86; accompanies Cortés when Montezuma was seized, 92; recalls the adventures of his youth, 100; begs for and receives a pretty maiden from Montezuma, 107, 108; his habits acquired during the Conquest persisted in during his life, 152; serves under Pizarro in the attack on Narvaez, 204; promises to aid Sandoval in the battle, 206; hands over Narvaez to Sandoval, 209; helps to seize Salvatierra and Diego Velásquez, 209; placed in guard over Narvaez, 211; marches with Cortés to Mexico, 221; does not believe that Alvarado attacked the Mexicans in order to rob them of their jewels, 225; describes the attack on the Spanish quarters, 232; describes the Spaniards' attack on the Great Cue, 235; secures four Chalchihuites from the spoil, 244; during the flight on the Noche Triste, 244-8; crosses the moveable bridge, 245; reaches Tacuba, 246; did not accompany expedition to Guacachula and Izucar, 280; nor to Cacatami and Xalacingo, ill with fever and vomiting blood, 289

Díaz, Doctor Bernal de Luco, Oidor of the Council of the Indies,

Díaz, Juan, the priest, his share of the spoil, 140; remains in Mexico with Alvarado, 174

Division of spoil, 139; great discontent at, 293-4

Dogs, sold for food in market place, 72

Domínguez, Gonzalo, fighting in Mexico, 241; at the battle of Otumba, 252, 253

Drawbridges, 75; wooden drawbridges between the houses, 231, 233

Drum, on the Temple at Tlaltelolco, 77

Duero, Andrés de, Secretary to Diego Velásquez, a native of Tudela de Duero, remonstrates with Narvaez, 181, 182; agrees to visit Cortés, 184; his partnership with Cortés, 187; dines with Cortés and returns to Cempoala, 188; advises Narvaez not to arrest Juan Velásquez, 193; submits to Cortés, 212; returns to Cuba a rich man, 296, 297

Earthenware made at Cholula, 63

Elvira, Doña, daughter of Mase Escasi, killed on the Noche Triste, 258

Encomienda, See Glossary, vol. i.

Engines like towers, built of strong timber, 232, Spaniards attack the Mexicans with, 233

Escalante, Juan de, Alguacil Mayor, in command at Villa Rica, letter from Cortés to, 27; news of his death reaches Mexico, 87; account of his defeat and death, 88-92

Escalona, the younger, left by Pizarro at the mines near Tuxtepec, 134; joins Narvaez, 156; severely wounded at Cempoala, 213

Espinar, Juan de, a very rich man joins Cortés, 304

Espíritu Santo, the feast of, kept by Cortés at Tanpaniguita, 188; the battle cry of Cortés at Cempoala, 206, 208

Estrada, Maria de, her escape on the Noche Triste, 250

Estrella, La, volcanic cone, 45

Fanfarrona, a heavy gold chain, 189

Feather work, 67, 68

Florin, Juan, French Corsair, 218

Fonseca, Juan Rodríguez de. See Rodríguez.

Francisca, Doña, the Mexican maiden given by Montezuma to Bernal Díaz, 108

Franciscan monks, the first friars sent to New Spain, 21; investigate the Cholula massacre, 21

Fuentes, de, standard bearer of Narvaez, killed at Cempoala, 212

Galleguillo, el, the little Galician, deserts Narvaez and joins Cortés, 198; reported to Cortés as missing, then found asleep, 207

Gamarra, a captain under Narvaez, 193; captured at Cempoala, 209

Garay, Francisco de, Governor of Jamaica, sends expedition to Panuco, 283

Garay, Francisco de, engineer, quoted, 48

García de Loysa, Rev. Fray, Archbishop of Seville, President of the Council of the Indies, reproves Miguel Díaz de Auz, 285

Garcia, Alonzo, the carter, killed at Cempoala, 213; probably the same as Alonzo Hernández. *See* Hernández Carretero, Alonzo.

Gardens, floating. *See* Chinampas.

Gardens, at Iztapalapa, 38; at Mexico city, 68

Garrisons, Mexican, at Tepeaca, 270; a Guacachula and Izucar, 274; their bad conduct, 277

Geronimite Friars, 154, 168

Gold, placed in thin quills, used for exchange in the market, 73

Gold Mines, search for, 126-29

Goldsmiths, at Atzacapotzalco, 67

Gomara, Francisco Lopes de, historian, makes erroneous statements, 91, 129; about Alvarado's leap, 247; more misstatements, must have been bribed to make them, 265, 267; his gross exaggerations, 268; misstatements about the expedition against Guacachula, 281, 282

Grado, Alonzo de, sent to take command at Villa Rica, 101; fails in his duty, 102; sent under arrest to Mexico City, 103; placed in the stocks, 103; restored to Cortés's favour, 103; appointed auditor, 103

Grijalva, Juan de, his voyage of discovery, 129, 131

Guacachula, Mexican garrison posted at, 274; commit outrages, 277; in-

habitants of, appeal to Cortés, 278; assist Spanish troops, 279; town entered by Spaniards, 280

Guadalupe, Sierra de, 45

Guaniguanico, in Cuba, 154

Guatemala, frontier of, 89

Guatémoc, Mexican Cacique, 80; chosen as ruler of Mexico, 273; married to a daughter of Montezuma, 273; post garrisons on the frontiers, 274; garrisons Guacachula and Izucar, 277

Gualtitan. *See* Cuautitlan.

Guaolipar. *See* Hueyotlipan.

Guatitlan, Rio de, 45. *See* Cuautitlan.

Guayavas, town of the, 273

Guerra (war), Brand used for marking slaves, 273, 293

Guevara, a priest sent by Narvaez to Sandoval, 159; seized by Sandoval and sent to Mexico, 161, 162; returns to Cempoala, 162; reports to Narvaez, 165; bribed by Cortés, 177, 188

Guidela, a jester, a follower of Narvaez, 212

Guzman, Cristóbal de, steward to Cortés, 243

Hawk, the story of the, 113, 114

Henequen (Agave Ixtli), the fibre used for ropes and sandals, 71

Heredia, the elder, left by Pizarro at the mines near Tuxtepec, 134

Hernández Carretero, Alonzo, joins Narvaez, 156. Probably the same as Alonzo Garcia, the carter, killed at Cempoala. *See* Garcia, Alonzo.

Hernández, Pedro, secretary to Cortés, 126; countersigns proclamation, 205; takes charge of Carrasco, 207

Huchilohuchico. *See* Charubusco.

Huexotzingo, town and district, 10, 18, 28, 29, 34, 40

Hueyotlipan, a Tlaxcalan town, the Spaniards reach, 256

Huichilobos (Huitzipochtli), war god of the Mexicans, 9, 19, 24, 32, 35; temple and idol at Tlaltelolco described, 73-83; seal of the god used by Montezuma, 94; Indians massacred by Alvarado during the festival of, 220; Spaniards attack the Teocatli of, 233; and reach its summit, 234; temple and idol partly burned, 235

Huitzilan, Temple and bridge of, site now occupied by the Hospital de

- Jesus Nazareno, 313, 314. *See also* references at the end of Appendix A.
- Hurtado, a soldier under Narvaez, posted as a spy, 199; flees to warn Narvaez, 207
- Illescas, Dr., copies Gomara's misstatements, 268
- Image of Our Lady, placed in safety by Montezuma, 235
- Infante, a title given to the sons and nephews of the King of Spain, except the heir-apparent, 201
- Ircio, Pedro de, Gomara's erroneous statements concerning, 91; accompanies Sandoval to Villa Rica, 102; promoted to be Captain, 102; Gomara's misstatements concerning, 130
- Islands in lakes favorite sites for Indian towns, 46
- Ilhualco, Spaniards camp at, between the volcanoes, 30
- Ixtaccihuatl, volcano (17,342 ft.), 45
- Iztapalapa, City of, Spaniards arrive at, 37, 38; palaces, gardens, ponds, 38; city built half in the water, 39; Spaniards depart from, 39; Cacique of, 40; south end of great dyke, 47; Cacique of, 115; seized and imprisoned by Montezuma, 122
- Iztapalapa, Causeway, 39, 40, 74. *See* Appendix A, 307-17
- Iztapalatengo: No such town known, evidently written in mistake for Ayotzingo, 35
- Izucar, Mexican garrison at, 274; town captured by C. de Olid, 280
- Jalacingo. *See* Xalacingo.
- Jesters and dancers employed by Montezuma, 63
- Jesus Nazareno, Hospital of, formerly La Concepcion, 313
- Jiménes, returned to Cuba a rich man, 297; later on settled in Oaxaca, 297
- Joan de Leon. *See* Juan de Leon.
- Jovio, Pablo, historian, copies Gomara's misstatements, 268
- Juan de Leon, a priest, bribed by Cortés, 188; advises Narvaez not to arrest Juan Velásquez, 193
- Juarez, Doña Catalina, wife of Cortés, resident in Cuba, 297
- Juarez, Juan, brother-in-law of Cortés, resident in Cuba, 297
- Lacandones, a wild tribe of Guatemala, their island homes, 46
- Lapidaries at Atzacapotzalco, 67
- Lares, Amador de, his partnership with Cortés; 187; his death, 187
- Lares, the good horseman fighting in Mexico; 241; his death, 248
- Lencero, a soldier under Narvaez, arrives at Tlaxcala with his companions, "Lencero's help," 260
- Liquidambar, smoked with tobacco, 64; sold in market, 72
- Lomos Recios, Los de los (the strongbacks), nickname of the companions of Miguel Diaz de Auz, 286
- López, Francisco, arrives at Tepeaca with Pedro Barba, afterwards Regidor of Guatemala, 276
- López, Martin, shipwright, builds two sloops for the lake, 109, 110; sent to Villa Rica to build ships, 151; sets fire to the Temple at Cempoala, 208; ordered to cut timber for thirteen sloops, 300
- López, Pedro, flogged for disrespect to Montezuma, 106, 108
- Lugo, Bishop of, Oidor of the Royal Council of the Indies, 285
- Lugo, Francisco de, Captain, 84, 92; sent to seize the ships of Narvaez's fleet, 215; rebukes Cortés, 227
- Luis, Alonzo, sent by Cortés to bring back members of Pizarro's expedition, 134
- Luisa, Doña, daughter of Xicotenga, 243; her escape on the Noche Triste, 250
- Lyscano, a soldier killed during the first day's fight in the city, 229
- Maestre Juan, surgeon to Narvaez 210
- Magney (Agave Americana, the American Aloe), wine (pulque) made from, 18, 49
- Maldonado, Alvaro, the fierce, 297; husband of Maria Rias, 297
- Maldonado, the broad, 279
- Maldonado, the husband of Doña Maria del Rincon, 297
- Maldonado, a native of Medellin, returned to Cuba a rich man, 297
- Malinché, Mexican name for Cortés, 8, 31, 32, 37, 44
- Malinaltepec, in Oaxaca, 126, 127; gold brought from, 133
- Mantas. *See* Engines.
- Map, on henequen cloth, given by Montezuma to Cortés, 129

- Margaritas**, ornamental stones given by Cortés as presents, 36, 41
- Marin**, Luis, at the battle of Otumba, 266
- Marina**, Doña, interpreter to Cortés, 5, 13, 15, 27, 31, 41, 42, 54, 56, 70, 83, 92, 127, 149, 151, 173, 174; hears of the plot of the Cholulans from an old woman, 11, 12; reports it to Cortés, 13; advises Montezuma to go quietly with the Spaniards, 95; during the Noche Triste, 243; her escape from Mexico, 250
- Mariscala**, Puente de, on the site of Tecpantzingo, 318
- Market Place** (Mex. Tianguiz) of Tlaltelolco visited by the Spaniards and described, 70-83
- Martin**, Rodrigo, captain of artillery, 154, 181
- Mase Escasi** (Maxixcatzin), the blind Cacique of Tlaxcala, warns Cortés against entering Mexico, 26; refuses to join expedition against Narvaez, 175; his kind reception of the Spaniards after their flight from Mexico, 257; supplies Indian auxiliaries for attack on Tepeaca, 269; dies of smallpox, 301
- Mass**, celebrated in Spanish quarters, 84
- Mata**, Alonzo de, a notary, 170; attempts to serve documents on Cortés, 176; returns to Cempoala, 176
- Matalcingo**, near Toluca, the Cacique of, heir to the kingdom of Mexico, 115; refuses to join Cacamatzin's conspiracy, 116; refuses to pay tribute to the Emperor, 124; province of, 127, 131; Cacique of again refuses to pay tribute, 135; arrested by Montezuma and handed over to Cortés and attached to the chain, 136
- Mazagatos**, habian escapado de la de, Spanish proverb (having just got out of one difficulty), 281
- Mecameca**. See Amecameca.
- Mejía**, Gonzalo, the treasurer, 138; accuses Juan Velásquez de Leon, quarrels and fights with him, 144; accuses Cortés of theft of spoil, 144; takes charge of the king's share of the spoil during the Noche Triste, 243
- Menagerie**, in Mexico City, 66, 67
- Merced**, the Padre de la (Fray Bartolomé de Olmedo), 18; celebrates Mass in Mexico, 84; restrains Cortés's ardour, 75, 111, 123, 126, 139; his share of the spoil, 140; arrives at Narvaez's camp, 165; again sent to the camp of Narvaez at Cempoala, 181; converses with Narvaez, 183; meets Juan Velásquez de Leon, 193; advises Narvaez not to arrest Juan Velásquez, 193; persuades Narvaez to review his troops, 194; returns to Cortés's camp, 197; makes fun of his visit to Narvaez, 197; persuades Montezuma to address his people, 237
- Mesa**, the Sicilian, an artilleryman, 113, 206
- Mestitan**, Indian township, lawsuit about, 285
- Mexicaltzingo**, town of, 48; lake narrows near the, 307; Calzada de, 310, 311, 314
- Mexico**, the Lake of, separated from the salt water of Lake Texcoco, 48
- Mexico**, the Valley of, description, 45, 50; soil, 49; drainage, 49
- Mexico**, City of, Spaniards enter the city on 8th November, 1519, 44; almost destroyed by floods between years 1440 and 1450, 47; population, 49; description of, 50; by the anonymous conqueror, 50; by Cortés, 51; cleanliness of the city, 52
- Michoacan** (Mehuacan, B.D.), Mexican guard at frontier of, 89
- Mitla**, in Oaxaca, a city of the older culture, 46
- Mitlanguita**, town near Cempoala,
- Mixiuacan** (Niciaca), the S.E. spur of the City of Mexico, 307
- Mixquic**, town on Lake Chalco, 46, 50
- Monjaraz**, Andrés de, soldier, 304
- Monjaraz**, father of La Monjaraza, joins Cortés, 304; killed by the Indians, 305
- Monjaraz**, Gregorio de, soldier, 304
- Montezuma** (Motecuhzoma), Ilhucamina, ruler of Mexico from 1440 to 1469, 47
- Montezuma Xocoyotzin** plans an attack on the Spaniards at Cholula, 5; sends ambassadors to Cortés, 5; hesitates to attack the Spaniards, 9; receives news of the massacre at Cholula, 19; consults his idols, 23; sends six chieftains to Cholula with presents for Cortés, 25; in-

- vites the Spaniards to Mexico, 25; sends embassy to Cortés at Amecameca, 33; attempts to bribe Cortés to retreat, 33; forbids Cortés to enter Mexico, 33; sends Cacamatzin to meet Cortés, 35; meets Cortés at the entrance of the City of Mexico, 41; welcomes Cortés in Axayaca's palace, 43; visits Cortés, distributes gifts, 54; receives Cortés's return visit, 55-59; his good manners, 60; description of his appearance and mode of living, 60-64; his household, 64; meets Cortés at Tlaltelolco, shows him his idols, 75, 76; offended at Cortés's remarks, 78; offers sacrifices, 78; seized by Cortés and carried off to the Spanish quarters, 93-95; his treatment as a prisoner, 95, 96; put in shackles, 97; plays at Totoloque, 105; gives a pretty Indian woman to Bernal Díaz, 107, 108; anecdotes of, during his captivity, 106-109; permitted to go and sacrifice to his idols, 110; goes sailing on the lake in a sloop, 112; treated with respect by the Spaniards, 113; hears of Cacamatzin's conspiracy, 116; orders Cacatmazin to be seized, 121; imprisons other Caciques, 122; addresses his chieftains, 124; gives fealty and vassalage to the Emperor, Charles V., 125, 126; pays tribute to the Emperor and gives over his treasure to Cortés, 136-7; intercedes for Juan Velásquez, 145; offers Cortés his daughter in marriage, 146; asks Cortés and the Spaniards to leave the city, 150; sends supplies to Narvaez's fleet, 157; bewildered at hostility of Narvaez towards Cortés, 172; hears of the defeat of Narvaez, 222; rebuffed by Cortés, 222; sent for to address the people, 237; speaks from the battlement, 238; wounded by a shower of stones, 238; his death, 238; his body handed over to the Mexicans, 240
- Morante**, Cristóbal de, ship's captain, lost with his ship near the Sierra de San Martín, 155
- Morejon de Lobera**, Rodrigo, native of Mérida del Campo, arrives with his vessel at Villa Rica, 276, 277; joins Cortés, 287
- Morena Medrano**, Pedro, 175
- Morla**, Francisco de, fighting in Mexico, 241; his death, 248
- Motolinea**, Fray Toribio, a Franciscan friar, comments on Cholula massacre, 21
- Nahuatatos*, interpreters, 281
- Narvaez**, Panfilo de, expedition under, 153; arrives at San Juan de Ulúa, 156; sends messages to Montezuma abusing Cortés, 157; sends envoys to Sandoval, 160; receives the envoys' report, 165; abuses the Padre de la Merced, 165-6; his stinginess, 167; arrests Lucas Vasquez de Ayllon and sends him to Castile, 166, 7; desertions from, 169; moves camp to Cempoala, 169; receives the Padre de la Merced, is advised to imprison him, 181; converses with the Padre, 183; reads the letter from Cortés, 184; prepares plot for the capture of Cortés, 184; receives Juan Velásquez de Leon, 191; dissuaded from arresting Juan Velásquez, 193; reviews his troops on the advice of the Padre de la Merced, 194; entertains Juan Velásquez at dinner, 195; tells Juan Velásquez to leave the camp, 196; warned by the fat Cacique of Cortés's activity, 198; makes feeble preparations for resisting attack, 199; offers rewards for the death of Cortés or Sandoval, 199; attacked by Cortés at Cempoala, 207; wounded and loses an eye, 208; captured by Pedro Sánchez Farfán, 209
- Narvaez**, followers of, curse Cortés, 236; refuse to march to Tepeaca, 263; draw up petition, 263; resume their obedience to Cortés, 264; refuse to advance on Guacachula, 278; reproved by Olid, 279; advance continued, 280; ask permission to return to Cuba, 296; a number of them set sail, 297
- Netzahualcoyotl**, King of Texcoco, builds the great dyke known as the Albarradon of Netzahualcoyotl, 47
- Netzahualcoyotl**. See Netzahualcoyotl.
- Niciaca**. See Mixiuacán.
- Noche Triste**, arrangements for the retreat, 243; beginning of the retreat, 244; attack by the Mexicans,

- 244, the bridge sticks fast, 245; escape of Cortés and the Tlaxcalans carrying the treasure, 245; Spaniards reach Tacuba, 246; Cortés and the horsemen attempt to return, 246; Alvarado's escape, 247; Spaniards reach Los Remedios, 248; distance marched by the Spaniards, 319
- Novenas*, religious services extending over nine days, 248
- Nuñez**, Andrés, shipwright, 109; sent to Villa Rica to build ships, 151; helps to cut the timber for thirteen sloops, 302
- Oblanca**, Gonzalo de, arrested by Narvaez, dies in prison, 167
- Ocampo**, Gonzalo de, writes satirical verses, Alvarado's Leap, 247
- Ocote* (Mex.), pitch pine, used for torches, 72
- Olea**, Cristóbal de, a valiant soldier who twice saved Cortés's life, 267
- Olid**, Cristóbal de, at Cholula, 16, 112; Captain of the Guard over Montezuma, 145, 149; sent to search for Narvaez's horsemen, 211; brings the horsemen into camp, 212; rebukes Cortés, 227; persuades Montezuma to address his people, 237; during the flight on the Noche Triste, 243; at the Battle of Otumba, 252, 253; command of expedition against Guacachula, 278; persuaded by his soldiers to turn back, 279; reprimanded by Cortés, 279; captures Guacachula, 280; captures Izucar, 280; twice wounded, 280; returns to Tepeaca, 281
- Olla* (Span.), an earthenware vessel for holding water, 81
- Olmedo**, Fray Bartolomé de. *See* Merced, the Padre de la.
- Ooze**, from the lakes, curdled and made into a sort of bread, 72
- Oñás**, Diego de, Captain, 86, 104, 287; sent on expedition to Coatzacoalcos, 129; returns to Mexico and reports to Cortés, 131, 132; told off to arrest Salvatierra, 205; sent to search for Narvaez's horsemen, 211; brings the horsemen into camp, 212; ordered to form a settlement at Coatzacoalcos, 216; order cancelled, marches with Cortés to Mexico, 221; sent out with troops to meet the Mexican attack, 228; wounded and driven back to the Spanish quarters, 229; fights in the van on the Noche Triste, 243; sent on a mission to Spain, made Comendador of Santiago, 298; allowed the volcano (Popocatepetl) as armorial bearings, 298
- Orizaba**, town of, 127
- Orozca**, Francisco de, to remain on guard at Segura de la Frontera, 300
- Orozco y Berra**, historian of Mexico, quoted, 51
- Orteguilla**, Cortés's page, understood something of the Mexican language, 70, 83, 114, 123, 124, 145, 149, 151, 172
- Otumba**, battle of, 251-5; fought on 14th July, 1520, 254
- Pachuca**, mountain range of, 45
- Pack saddles**, the (Las Albardillas), nickname of the companions of Ramírez the elder, 286
- Palenque**, in Chiapas, a city of the older culture, 46
- Pan pachol**, a sort of wafer bread, 64
- Panuco**, Mexican frontier guard at, 89; native map showing, 129
- Papaloapan River**, 127
- Papalote**, Indian town near Villa Rica, 160, 176, 178
- Papayo**, mountain peak, 45
- Paper**, made from bark of a tree. *See* Amal.
- Pavesina*, a shield, 214
- Pedregal** (Span., a place full of stones), the great lava field near Mexico City, 310
- Peñon**, del Marqués (de Tepepolco), an Island in the Lake of Texcoco. Montezuma goes hunting on, 112
- Pictures of battles**, sent to Montezuma, 54, 56; of Narvaez's fleet, 158; of the battle round the great Teocalli in Mexico, 255; of the battle of Otumba, 254
- Pinedo**, Álvarez, a captain in Garay's expedition, killed at Panuco, 282
- Pitalpitoque** (Orandillo), Mexican Ambassador, 54
- Pitch**, for the sloops, from pine woods near Huexotzingo, 303
- Pizarro**, Captain, a kinsman of Cortés, 127; sent to search for gold mines, 128; returns to Mexico and reports to Cortés, 133; censured by Cortés, 134; commands a company in the attack on Narvaez, 204

- Popocatepetl**, volcano (17,887 ft.), 45
- Potonchan**, 20, 24, 54
- Priests of the Temples**, 81, 82
- Quecholac** (Cachula), town of, 263, 269, 273
- Quesada**, Bernaldino de, returns to Cuba a rich man, 297
- Quetzalpopoca** (Quauhpopoca, O. y B.), Mexican captain, burned to death by the order of Cortés, 99, 131
- Quezales** (Quetzal, Trogon), 66
- Quiahuitztlan**, town of, 88
- Quiavit**, Mexican captain, burned to death, 99
- Quintalbor**, Mexican Ambassador, 54, 56
- Rainfall**, Valley of Mexico, 45
- Ramírez the Elder**, captain of a ship in Garay's expedition, 285; joins Cortés at Tepeaca, 286, 287; helps to cut timber for the thirteen sloops, 302
- Relacion Universal**, quoted, 311, 314
- Remedios**, Nuestra Señora de los, built on site of Cue where Spaniards rested on the Noche Triste, 248
- Rio Antigua**, third site of the City of Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz, 190
- Rio de las Balsas**, 126
- Rio**, Juan del, an orderly to Cortés, accompanies Velásquez de Leon to the camp of Narvaez, 190, 191; watches the review of Narvaez's troops, 194; returns to Cortés's camp, 195
- Road**, blocked by the Mexicans, 28-30, 31
- Rodríguez Cabrillo**, Juan, obtains pitch for the sloops, later on a settler in Guatemala, commands Pedro de Alvarado's fleet, 303
- Rodríguez de Fonseca**, Don Juan, Bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosanio, President of the Council of the Indies, 153; supports Diego Velásquez, 153, 168; orders the arrest of Cortés, 275
- Rojas**, a captain under Narvaez, killed at Cempoala, 212
- Royal Fifth**, a tax on loot taken from Montezuma's treasure, 139, 140; of the branded slaves, 293
- Sacrifices** (human) by the Cholulans, 8; prisons for fattening victims, 20; at Tlaltelolco, 77, 111
- Sagredo**, native of Medillin, joins Cortés, 305
- Salamanca**, Juan de, his bravery at the battle of Otumba, 252; captures the Mexican standard and presents it to Cortés, 253; later on received it from the King as his coat of arms, 253; his deeds retold, 267; a native of Ontiveras, 267; Alcalde of Coatzacoalcas, 267
- Saltocan**. *See* Xaltocan.
- Salvatierra** (Veedor), a captain under Narvaez, clamours against Cortés, 164; advises Narvaez, 167, 170; robbed of his horse by the followers of Sandoval, 177, 184; advises Narvaez to arrest Juan Velásquez, 193; captured by Sandoval, 209; shows cowardice at Cempoala, 213
- San Anton**, Calzada de, 310
- San Antonio Abad**, Puente de, near the site of Xoluco, 313
- San Cristóbal**, Lake of, the, 45, southern part of Lake Xaltocan, 46
- San Hipólito**, the church built near Tolteacalli to mark the site of the slaughter on the Noche Triste, and in honour of the Saint on whose feast day (13th Aug., 1521) the city was captured, 318
- San Juan de Junio**, Midsummer Day, 24th June, 1520, the Spaniards entered Mexico after defeating Narvaez, 254
- Sandoval**, Gonzalo de, Captain, 86, 92; appointed Alguacil Mayor, 101; takes over command at Villa Rica, 102, 156; hears of the arrival of Narvaez, 160; seizes the Envoys from Narvaez and sends them to Mexico, 161; receives deserters from Narvaez's camp, 171; joins Cortés at Tanpaniguita, 176; tells Cortés the story about robbing Salvatierra of his horse, 177; marches with Cortés towards Cempoala, 190; given a written order to capture or kill Narvaez, 204; attempts to rush the temple at Cempoala, 208; captures Narvaez, then attacks and captures Salvatierra and Diego Velásquez, 209; fighting in Mexico, 241; during the Noche Triste, 243; at the battle of Otumba, 252, 253; his expedition against Cacatami and Xalacingo, 286-9; returns to Tepeaca with great spoil, 289; story apparently repeated, 290-292

- Santa Catarina**, volcanic cone of, 45
Santa Cruz, a native of Burgos, sent to Villa Rica for sails, rigging, etc., for the sloops, 302
Santa Maria, Santa Maria, the battle cry of Narvaez at Cempoala, 200, 206
Santiago, Church of, on site of Temple of Huichilobos at Tlaltelolco, treasure discovered when building foundations, 79, 80; the saint helps the Spaniards in battle, 225
Santo Domingo, monks of, 20
Sauzedo, Francisco de, "the elegant," the story of the hawk, 114; his death, 248
Seal, the seal of Huichilobos, used by Montezuma to enforce commands, 94
Sedeño, Juan, his share of the loot, 140
Silversmiths, at Atzcapotzalco, 67
Slaves, sold in market at Tlaltelolco, 71; branded at Tepeaca, 293
Slavery, notarial statement, giving rebel Indians into, 272
Sloops, materials for building to be sent from Villa Rica, 104; arrive in Mexico, 109; two sloops built, 110; launched, 112
Smallpox, introduced into Mexico by a follower of Narvaez, great mortality, 219
Snakes, in Montezuma's menagerie, 67
Soconosco, Mexican frontier guard at, 89
Solis, Pedro de (Solis behind the door), accompanies Guevara and Vergara to Mexico, 162; son-in-law of Ortega, 299; sent to Jamaica to buy horses, 299
Springs (ojos de agua), fresh water, in the valley of Mexico, 48, 49; found in the city of Mexico by Alvarado when besieged, 225
Stilts, used by dancers, 68
Steel Knives, sold in market place, 72
Strong Backs, The (Los de los lomos recios) nickname of the companions of Miguel Díaz de Auz, 286
Swine, killed on the march to Cempoala, 190
Tabaco. See Tobacco.
Tabasco, 20, 24, 54; native map showing, 129
Tacuba (Tlacopan), Cacique of, 40, 42; Causeway of, 47; Cacique of, 115; seized and imprisoned by Montezuma, 122; Spaniards reach Tacuba on the Noche Triste, 247
Tacuba (Tlacopan) Causeway. See Appendix B, 318, 319
Tamazula (Tamazola or Tamazulapa), a town in Oaxaca, 127
Tamazulapa, 126. See Tamazula.
Tanpaniguita, town near Cempoala, 175, 176
Tapaneca, a Cacique of Tlaxcala, his reception of the Spaniards after their flight from Mexico, 257
Tápia, Andrés de, appointed to a command, 303
Tápia, name given to Montezuma's steward, 64
Tápia, a drummer in Narvaez's army, 212
Tatacul (Mex.) = sin, 78
Tayasal, island town in the Lake of Peten, 46
Tecamachalco, town of, 18, 269, 273, 274
Tecpantzingo, now the Puente de Mariscala, 318, 319
Tehuacan, town of, 127
Telapon, mountain peak, 45
Teleciguata (Tequeçihuata, B. D.), (Mex.) = a great lady, 92, 224
Temple (Cue) of Huichilobos and Tezcatepuca at Tlaltelolco, visited by the Spaniards and described, 69-83; view from the summit, 74; cues or temples painted on the banners of the Conquistadores, 79; offerings placed in foundations of temples, 79; at Texcoco, 83; at Cholula, 18, 83
Tendile (Teuhtlilli), Mexican Ambassador, 54, 56
Tenis (Tanetze), in Oaxaca, 126
Tenochtitlan (Tenustitan, B. D.), the City of Mexico, Spaniards enter the city, 44, 46; population, 49; conquers Tlaltelolco, 1473, 50; Teocalli of, 50
Teotihuacan, a city of the older culture, 46
Teocalli (Mex. Teul = god, Calli = house) of Tenochtitlan and of Tlaltelolco, 50. See Temple.
Tepeaca, town of, 18, 263, 269; surrenders to the Spaniards, 273; named La Villa de Segura de la Frontera, 273; Municipal Officers appointed, 273
Tepepolco. See Peñon del Marqués.

- Tepetattle* (Mex.), volcanic ash and scoria, 49
- Tepetexcoco**, people of, present at the battle of Otumba, 254
- Tepusques* (Mex.) = cannon, metal, 7, 26
- Tezcat* (Mex.) = a mirror,
- Tezcatepuca** (Tetzcatlipoca from *Tezcat* (Mex.) = Mirror), the god of hell, 9, 19; temple and idol at Tlaltelolco described, 73-83; Indians massacred by Alvarado during festival of, 220
- Teules*, Mexican name for gods, Spaniards taken for, 20, 33, 43
- Texcoco**, City of, temple at, 83; size of city, 115; chosen as headquarters, 304
- Texcoco**, Lake of, 45, 46, 47; its salt water, 48; dyke dividing lake, 48; the home of wild fowl, 48
- Texcoco**, Cacique of. *See* Cacamatzin.
- Tezontle* (Mex.), a volcanic stone used for building, 51
- Tinaja* (Span.) an earthenware vessel for holding water, 81
- Tlahua**. *See* Cuitlahuac.
- Tlaloc**, mountain peak, 45
- Tlalpam**, town of, 310
- Tlaltelolco**, Northern half of the City of Mexico, originally an independent town, 46; conquered by Axayaca, 50; visited by the Spaniards, 70-83
- Tlamanalco**, town, 29, 30, 40
- Tlaxcala**, town of and province, 18, 20, 24, 40
- Tlaxcalans**, ordered to camp outside the city of Cholula, 3; warn Cortés that the Cholulans intend to attack, 8; fight their way into Cholula and pillage the city, 15; ordered by Cortés to free their prisoners, 16; make friends with Cholulans, 17; accompany the Spaniards and help to clear the road to Mexico, 29; send a supply of food to Cortés in Mexico, 171; told off to carry the moveable bridge, 242; carry the gold from Mexico on the Noche Triste, 244; act as guides, 248, 250; their bravery at the battle of Otumba, 253; their kind reception of the Spaniards after their flight from Mexico, 257; their loyalty, 262; their bravery at Guacachula, 280; in the expeditions against Çacatami and Xalaçingo, 288-92
- Tobacco**, smoked by Montezuma, sold in market-place, 72
- Tochel**, Cacique of Coatzacoalcas, 131
- Tolteacalli**, near the Church of San Hipólito, 318
- Toltecaacalopan**, now the Puente de Alvarado, 318
- Tonatio** (Child of the Sun), Mexican's name for Pedro de Alvarado, 105, 172, 173
- Totoloque**, Mexican game, played by Montezuma and his captors, 105, 123
- Totonac Indians**, with Juan de Escalante defeated and killed, 87; complain of Mexican exactions, 89
- Tovilla** arrives in camp with the spears made by the Chiriantecs, 186
- Tradition**, men to come from direction of the sunrise to rule over Mexico, 54, 124
- Trujillo**, de, a sailor, behaves disrespectfully to Montezuma, 106
- Tula**, town of, belonging to the Cacique of Matalçingo, 124
- Tustepec**. *See* Tuxtepec.
- Tuxpan**, 89
- Tuxtepec**, town in Oaxaca, 126, 127; gold brought from, 128, 133; seventy-two Spanish soldiers and five Spanish women massacred at, 255
- Umbria**, Gonzalo de, 126; sent in search of gold mines, 128; returns to Mexico and reports to Cortés, 130, 131
- Usagre**, the artilleryman of Narvaez brother of Bartolomé de, 181
- Usagre**, Bartolomé de, an artilleryman, accompanies the Padre de la Merced to the camp of Narvaez, 181, 206
- Vargas**, father-in-law of Cristóbal Lobo, later on a settler in Guatemala, 297
- Vargas, the handsome**, a settler of Trinidad, returns to Cuba a rich man, 297
- Vásquez de Ayllon**, Lucas, the licentiate and Oidor, despatched to Cuba, 155; accompanies expedition under Narvaez, 155; favours the cause of Cortés, 166; seized by Narvaez and sent to Castile, 167; persuades the captain to land him at Santo Domingo, 168

- Velasco**, Don Luis de, Spanish Vice-roy, 49
- Velasco**, Melchior de, returned to Cuba a rich man, 297; later on a settler in Guatemala, 297
- Velásquez**, Diego, Governor of Cuba, 102; value of his ships set aside from the loot, 140; prepares an expedition to go to Mexico, 154
- Velásquez**, Diego, nephew of the Governor of Cuba, 195; insults Juan Velásquez de Leon, 195; taken prisoner, 209; given into the care of Juan Velásquez de Leon, 213
- Velásquez de Leon**, Juan, captain, 84, 86, 92; upbraids Cortés for hesitating, 94; captain of the guard over Montezuma, 104, 105, 110, 113; orders gold chains, pieces of plate, 144; quarrels with Mejía, 144; imprisoned by Cortés, 144; set free and sent to Cholula, 145; sent by Cortés to the camp of Narvaez, 189; reaches Cempoala, 191; meets Narvaez, 191; attempts to conciliate Narvaez, 194; watches a review of Narvaez's troops, 194; dines with Narvaez, 195; quarrels with Diego Velásquez, the nephew of the Governor of Cuba, 195; returns to Cortés's camp, 196; reports to Cortés, 197; told off to arrest Diego Velásquez, 205; ordered to form a settlement at Panuco, 216; order cancelled, marches with Cortés to Mexico, 221; rebukes Cortés, 227; fighting in Mexico, 241; his death, 248
- Velásquez**, the licentiate Gutierrez, Oidor of the Council of the Indies, 285
- Velásquez**, the humpback, returns to Cuba a rich man, 297
- Vera Cruz**, Villa Rica de la, 127; settlers demand their share of spoil, 219
- Vergara**, a notary, sent by Narvaez to Sandoval, 159; seized by Sandoval and sent to Mexico, 161, 162; returns to Cempoala, 162
- Viga Canal**, 47, 52
- Villa Rica**. *See* Vera Cruz.
- Villa de Segura de la Frontera**, 273. *See* Tepeaca.
- Xalaçingo**, town of, expedition against under Sandoval, 287
- Xalatecinco**. *See* Xalaçingo.
- Xaltocan**, Lake of, 45, 46, 49; people of, present at the battle of Otumba, 254
- Xicales** (Mex.) = gourds (Spanish, jicara), 62; used for washing out gold 128
- Xicotenga**, the elder, Cacique of Tlaxcala, warns Cortés against entering Mexico, 26; refuses to join expedition against Narvaez, 175; his kind reception of the Spaniards after their flight from Mexico, 257; angry at his son's treachery, 262; supplies Indian auxiliaries for attack on Tepeaca, 269; offers his services to Cortés, 301; baptised in Tlaxcala, and named Don Lorenzo Vargas, 302
- Xicotenga**, the younger, commander of the Tlaxcalan armies, proposes to join the Mexicans and kill the Spaniards, 260, 261; rebuked by the Tlaxcalan Caciques and thrown out by his father, 262
- Xochimilco**, Lake of, 45, 46, 50, 310
- Xoluco**, site of a Mexican temple near the Puente de San Antonio Abad, 313, 314. *See also* references at end of Appendix A.
- Yañes**, Alonzo, a carpenter, discovers the treasure of Axayaca, 84
- Yecapistla**, town surrounded by barrancas, 46
- Ypiris**, red-coloured wading birds, 66
- Yscalpan** (Calpan), Ranchos of, Spaniards halt at, 28
- Yuste**, Juan, a follower of Narvaez, captured at Cempoala, 209
- Yxoxol** (Mex.) = cheating, word used by Montezuma about Alvarado, 105
- Zacatula**, province of, 126; gold found in the, 128, 130
- Zapotecs**, costume of, 2; gold mines in land of the, 128
- Zocotla**. *See* Çacatami.
- Zuazo**, the licentiate, sent to take the residentia of Diego Velásquez, 154
- Zumpango**, Lake of, 45, 46, 49



INDEX.

- Acolman**, Pueblo of, subject to Texcoco, Spaniards pass a night at, 37; again pass a night at, 86; dispute over quarters at, 103
- Admiral of Santo Domingo**, 364
- Adriano de Lobayna**, Governor of Castile, elected Pope, 315; deprives Rodríguez de Fonseca of his authority over the Indies, 318; appoints Cortés Governor of New Spain, 318; sends Bulls of Absolution to Mexico, 319
- Adzes**, wooden, 307
- Agualulco** (*see* Ayagualulco), River of, 314
- Aguilar**, Conde de. *See* Arrellano.
- Aguilar**, Hernando de, blacksmith, 29, 351
- Aguilar**, Jerónimo de, interpreter, 5, 20, 22, 58, 64, 131, 161, 183, 212
- Aguilar**, Marcos de, 342
- Aguítlan**, Pueblo of, conferred on Francisco de las Casas, 336
- Ahuaxpitzactzin**, son of Nezahualpilli, appointed Cacique of Texcoco, baptised as Don Hernando Cortés, 8; promises to assist the Spaniards, 9
- Alacranes**, Los, a shoal, 269
- Alamilla**, de, a defender of Santistevan and friend of Sandoval, 265
- Alaminos**, Anton de, pilot, gives information to Garay, 246
- Alba**, the dawn watch, 121
- Albornoz**, Rodrigo de, arrives in Mexico, 343; grumbles against Cortés, 362, 365-7
- Alcuadete**, Conde de, 366
- Alderete**, Julian de, treasurer, arrives from Spain, 55; joins expedition round the lakes, 57; a leader in attack on hill-fortress, 63; ascends Cue at Tacuba, 83; blamed by Cortés for defeat, 146; on the distribution of spoil, 197; writes to the Emperor, 220; his death, 343
- Allies**, native, desert the Spaniards, 155; rejoin the Spaniards, 161
- Alvarado**, Gómez, brother of Pedro de Alvarado, plot to kill when at Tututepec, 244
- Alvarado**, Gonzalo de, brother of Pedro de Alvarado, in charge at Vera Cruz, 205; removed from that position, 208; plot to kill when at Tututepec, 244
- Alvarado**, Gonzalo de, a settler in Guatemala, compiles history of conquest of Guatemala, 282
- Alvarado**, Pedro de, joins expedition to Saltocan, 31; with Cortés on expedition round the lakes, 57; plot to kill him and others, 87; appointed commander of a division during the siege, headquarters at Tacuba, 99, 100; intercedes fruitlessly for Nicotenga, 103; dispute with Olid about quarters, 103; arrives at Tacuba, 104; cuts off water at Chapultepec, 105; fights on the causeway, 105; blamed by Olid for rashness, 108; fights his way along the causeway, 111; moves his camp to the causeway, 119, 120; arranges night watches, 121; orders half the horsemen to sleep on the causeway, 125; suffers a reverse, 126; wounded, 136; general attack, 141; is driven back, 142; hears the death drum sound, 142; holds his own against Mexican attack, 143; reaches Tlatelolco, 172; returns to Tacuba at the end of the siege, 183; appointed to take charge of docks, 194; meets Cristóbal de Tápia, 206; sent to Tututepec, 242; imprisons the cacique, 243; his extortions, 243; founds town of Segura, 243; frustrates conspiracy against his life, 244; returns to Mexico, 244; sent to Santistevan with message for Garay, 252; intercedes with Cortés on Garay's behalf, 255; commands expedition to Guatemala, 272; fights battle at Zapotitlan, 273; enters Quetzaltenango, 275; enters Utatlan, 277; discovers plot and leaves the town, 278; burns the Cacique of Utatlan, 278; enters City of Guatemala (Iximché), 279;

- fights battle on shore of Lake of Atitlan, 280; enters Pueblo of Atitlan, 281; returns to Guatemala, 281; 338
Alvarado, Jorge de, captain under his brother Pedro during the siege, 100; plot to kill when at Tututepec, 244
Álvarez, Juan, the younger, sent to Colima, 201, 238; his uncertain fate, 239
Amables = papers, or letters, 165
Arauz, Doña Félipa de, a Portuguese wife of Cristóbal de Olid, 202, 373
Armenta, in charge of San Gil de Buena Vista, 373
Arms, Coat of, granted to Hernando Cortés, 185; to Diego de Ordaz, 335
Arrellano, Don Carlos de, Conde de Aguilar, 354
Arrow heads of copper, 8,000 provided by Indians, 91
Atenco, Pueblo, near Texcoco, asks for peace, 9
Atitlan, Pueblo and Lake of, 280; Caciques of Atitlan ill-treat Alvarado's messengers, 280; pueblo deserted, 281
Atzacotzalco, Spaniards find the town deserted, 35; Spaniards again pass by, 85
Avalos, a relation of Cortés, 341
Ávila, Alonso de, returns from Santo Domingo, 218; Cortés suspicious of, 219; Cuautitlan allotted to, 219; Sent as proctor to Spain, 220; captured by the pirate, Juan Florin, 224; imprisoned in France, 225, 330, 333, 355
Ayagualulco, Rio de, 236, 237, 314, 346
Azamaz, Diego, a settler at Coatzacoalcos, 235
Baama, Rio de, 371
Bahama Channel, 223
Baldenebro rides with Andrés de Tápia to Alvarado's camp, 145; sent to meet Cristóbal de Tápia, 206
Banner, golden, sent to Cortés from Texcoco, 4
Banquet, given by Cortés at Coyacan when the siege was ended, 187, 188
Barba, Pedro, wounded in attack on hill-fortress, 61, 62; a leader in attack on another hill-fortress, 63, 64; captain of crossbowmen, 78, 92; captain of launch, 97; death of, 124
Barrientos, Hernando de, writes from Chinantla, 98
Barrios, married to the sister of Cortés's wife, 341
Bejar, Duke of, supports Cortés at the Court of Spain, 316, 354; arranges a marriage for Cortés, 354, 355, 360, 365
Bello, Juan, sent the expedition against Olid, 368
Bendaval, Francisco Martin, page to Cortés, captured and sacrificed, 83
Bermuda, La, wife of Olmos de Portillo, 188; wife of Hernan Martin, 188
Bernaldino, the Levantine, hanged by Pedro de Alvarado, 244
Bodyguard, appointed to protect Cortés, 89
Bones of giants sent to Spain, 220
Bono de Quexo, Juan, a Biscayan, arrives at Coatzacoalcos with decrees, 240; returns to Spain, 241
Briones, a native of Salamanca, arrives from Spain, 56; captain of a launch, 97; fails to subdue the Zapotecs, 229, 230; a settler at Coatzacoalcos, 235; accompanies Cortés's wife to Mexico, 237; accompanies Olid to Honduras, 284; advises Olid to revolt, 286; deserts Olid, 371; hanged in Guatemala as a mutineer, 371
Burgos, Juan de, brings ship from Spain, 92
Burros. *See* Mantas.
Bustamante, Luis de, a settler at Coatzacoalcos, 235
Cacamatzin, 25
Cáceres, Juan de, married to Mari Hernández, 188
Cachula (Quechulac), Pueblo of, 339
Camargo, commands survivors of expedition sent by Garay, arrives at Vera Cruz, 247
Canal at Texcoco, 9; Indians at work on, 10; 8,000 Indians employed, 29
Cannibalism, 189
Caravajal, captain of launch, 97
Cárdenas, arrives in Castile, 321; summoned before Commissioners, 324, 331; receives Royal Grant, 333
Carvajal, Antonio de, arrives from Spain, 56; the deaf, captain of launch, 97
Castellar, Pedro, a settler at Coatzacoalcos, 235
Castilblanco, 4

- Castillo**, Alonzo de, the decided (de lo pensado), sent to explore land of the Zapotecs, 231
- Castillo**, the deliberate (de los pensamientos) 232
- Castillo** the elegant (el galan), 232
- Catalan**, Juan, makes charms to cure wounds, 118
- Catapult**, made at Tlatelolco, fails to work, 178
- Catiriuario**, Murcurino, Grand Chancellor, 323
- Cerda**, Antonio de la, 259
- Chalchocueca** River (Rio de Banderas), 233, 270
- Chalco**, Pueblo of, begs for peace, 16; to be assisted against Mexico, 17; prepared for defence, 18; sends deputation to Cortés, 20; cacique appointed by Cortés, 21; makes friendship with Tlaxcala, 24; again begs for assistance, 39; defeats the Mexicans unaided by the Spanish, 40; again defeats Mexicans, 52
- Chamula**, Pueblo of, 289; rises in revolt, 303; attacked by the Spaniards, 305; abandoned by natives, 308; allotted by Bernal Díaz, 309; gold from, 314
- Chapultepec**, water supply renewed from, 356
- Chiapas**, 236, 289; a populous city, 296; captured by the Spaniards, 302
- Chiapanecs**, great warriors, 293; and hunters, 294; make peace with Spaniards, 302
- Chichimecatecle**, appointed Captain of Tlaxcalans, 1; brings timber for the launches, 27; joins expedition to Saltocan, 30, 31; reports Nicotenga's desertion, 102; remains faithful when native allies desert the Spaniards, 155; his bravery during the siege, 189
- Chila**, River, north of Rio Panuco, 212, 214
- Chimal** or Chimaluacan, Pueblo of, cacique appointed by Cortés, 21; Sandoval's expedition passes a night at, 44; Cortés passes night at, 58
- Chinantla**, Pueblo of, Hernando de Barrientos sends report from, 99, 235, 236, 289
- Chirino**, Pedro Almíndez, the Veedor, arrived in Mexico, 343
- Cholula**, very small reinforcement from, 161, 338
- Chontalpa**, 289, 314, 346
- Churubusco**, Pueblo of, 82, 109; sues for peace, 133
- Cimatán**, 235, 236; revolt of, 239, 289, 290, 313; Rangel's expedition to, 345, 351
- Cingapacinga**, 338
- Cintla**, 289
- Ciudad Real**, Chiapas of the Spaniards, 309
- Citla**, Province of, 233, 235
- Coanacotzin**, Lord of Texcoco, begs for peace and friendship, 5, 6; flees to Mexico, 7; kills his brother Cuicuitzcatzin, 8
- Coatepeque**, between Texcoco and Rio Frio, 2 n.; army sleeps at, 3
- Coatlinchan**, Guatinchan or Guaxuntan in the text, 6; Spaniards destroy Idols at, 6; asks for peace, 9; Mexicans advance on, 15
- Coatzacoalcos**, 233, town of Espíritu Santo founded at, 234, 235; settlers at, 290, 340, 344, 345
- Cobos**, Francisco de los, 334, 355
- Colmenero**, captain of a launch, 97
- Colima**, expedition against, under Juan Alvarez, 238; under Cristóbal de Olid, 238; under Sandoval, 239; 340
- Commissions**, brought by Cristóbal de Tápio, 204, 206
- Conchillas**, Lope de, Secretary to Council of the Indies, 247
- Contreras**, Alonzo de, 284
- Copanahuastla**, Pueblo of, 303
- Copilco**, Province of, 235, 236; revolt of, 239; 346
- Corral**, Cristóbal del, standard-bearer, at attack on hill-fortress, 60; sent to examine stronghold, 65; at council of war, 137
- Cortés**, Hernando, asks for help from Tlaxcala, 1; receives overtures of peace from Texcoco, 5; enters Texcoco, 7; appoints a Cacique of Texcoco, 8; leads expedition to Iztapalapa, 11; goes to Coatlinchan, 15; arranges to protect the maize fields, 16; sends Sandoval to Chalco, 17; appoints Caciques of Chalco, etc., 21; sends peaceful messenger to Guatemoc, 21; drives Mexicans from the maize fields, 23; sends Sandoval to Tlaxcala to bring timber for the launches, 24; leads expedition to Saltocan, 32; arrives at Tacuba, 35; fierce fighting with the Mexicans, 36; returns to Texcoco, 37, 38; misunderstanding with Sandoval, 52, 53; leads expe-

dition round the lakes, 57; attacks and captures two hill-fortresses, 59-66; visits Oaxtepec, 67; visits Tepostlan, 68; captures Cuernavaca, 68, 69; marches to Xochimilco, 70-72; narrowly escapes capture in battle, 73; praises vigilance of Bernal Díaz, 77; addresses his army, 80; retreats from Xochimilco, 81; his lament at Tacuba, 84; returns to Texcoco, 86; plot to kill him and others, 87; seizes Villafañá, reads names of conspirators, 89; appoints body-guard, 89; makes preparations for the siege, 92, 93; holds a review of his forces, 94; appoints crews to launches, 94; issues proclamation, 95; chooses captains for launches, 97; meets Nicotenga and his Tlaxcalans, 98; divides his forces and appoints commanders, 99-102; orders Nicotenga the younger to be executed, 103; ends dispute between Alvarado and Olid, 104; sails from Texcoco with thirteen launches, 109; attacks Tepepolco (Peñon del Marqués), 109; defeats the canoes on the lake, 110; lands on the causeway at Acachinanco, 111 *n.*; goes to assistance of Sandoval, 112; distributes the launches among the different commands, 116; employs men of the lake towns to build ranchos, 133; holds council of war, 137; orders general attack, 138; disastrous result, 139; narrowly escapes capture, 140; depressed by defeat, 144; blames Julian de Alderete, 146; interview with Sandoval, 146, 147; accepts Ixilxochitl's advice and orders troops to rest from attack, 157; addresses native reinforcements, 161; makes overtures of peace to Guatemoc, 164; repeats overtures, 170; reaches Zacaculco, finds heads of Spaniards in a tower, 172; reaches Tlatelolco, 174; prepares an ambush, 174; begs Guatemoc to surrender, 175; orders catapult to be constructed, 178; receives Guatemoc after his capture, 182; returns to Coyoacan at the end of the siege, 183; receives a grant of arms from the Emperor, 185; ill from stench of decaying bodies, 186, 187; gives banquet at Coyoacan, 188; orders water-pipes to be repaired and city to be rebuilt, 193; accused of secreting the gold, 197;

answers verses on the wall, 199; appoints commissioners to settle debts, 200; orders formation of settlements, 201; hears of the arrival of Cristóbal de Tápiá, 205; sends to make a settlement at Panuco, 207; arranges rebuilding of Mexico, 209; arrives at Panuco, 211; defeats the Huastecs, 211-215; founds the town of Santistevan del Puerto, 215; returns to Mexico, 218; sends proctors to Spain, 220; the private treasure of Montezuma, etc., 220; asks permission to capture Diego Velásquez, 223; sends Alvarado to Tututepec, 242; sends notification to Garay, 252; proposes to marry his daughter to Garay's son, 256; ill with a broken arm, 261; sends Sandoval to Santistevan, 261; praises Sandoval, 267; appoints Diego de Ocampo as judge, 267; sends money to Juan de Grijalva, 268; sends Garay's followers back to Culua, 268; appoints Zuazo as Chief Alcalde, 271; sends Alvarado to Guatemala, 272; sends Luis Marin to Chiapas, 292; reproves Alonso de Grado, 314; appointed Governor of New Spain by Pope Adrian, 318; charges advanced against, at Court, 321; his case tried before Commissioners, 323-332; judgment given in his favour, 333; receives Royal decrees appointing him Governor, 336; his excuses for his mistakes, 343; sends Rangel against the Zapotecs, 344; sends treasure to the Emperor, 352; loses favour at Court, 354; rebuilds Mexico, 356; receives Franciscan Friars, 358, 359; sends treasure to the Emperor, 360; his complaints against Velásquez, 361; renewed complaints against Cortés, 363; sends Las Casas against Olid, 368

Cortés, Don Hernando, baptismal name of Ahuaxpitzactzin Cacique of Texcoco, 8; tutors assigned to, 8; gives assistance to Spaniards, 11

Cortés, Martin, father of Hernando Cortés, 88, 225, 316; summoned before Commissioners, 324; treasure sent to him from Mexico, 352; 359, 361, 364

Council of War held during siege, 137

Coyoacan, Pueblo of, 81; Spaniards arrive at, 82; headquarters of Olid, 100; Guatemoc sent prisoner to,

* 183; banquet at, 188; Cortés resides at, 208

Coyumelapa, Pueblo of, 312

Cuajiniquilapa, Pueblo in Guatemala, 282

Cue at Tlatelolco, used as signal station by the Mexicans, 119; Spaniards sacrificed on, 149; captured by the Spaniards, and the shrines set on fire, 173

Cuellar, Juan de, rides with Tápia to Alvarado's camp, 145

Cuenca, Simon de, in command at Medellin, 270; sends supplies to Zuazo, who was shipwrecked, 270

Cuernavaca (Coadlabaca), captured by Spaniards, 68-70; caciques make peace, 69; begs assistance of Spaniards, 169; relieved by Sandoval, 170

Cuitlahuac, Lord of Iztapalapa, King of Mexico, 10

Culuacan, Pueblo of, sues for peace, 133

Currency debased, 200

Davila, Juan, 259

Destrada, Maria, wife of Pedro Sánchez Farfan, 9, 188

Díaz, Bernal, ascends the Cue at Texcoco, 7; goes twice to protect the maize fields, 16; badly wounded, 48; joins expedition round the lakes, 57; scales the hill-fortress, 60, 61; sent to examine stronghold, 65; dispute with Pedro de Ircio over loot, 66; crosses barranca at Cuernavaca along the branches of a tree, 68; on the march to Xochimilco, goes ahead to look for water, 71; carries water to Cortés, 72; night watches at Xochimilco, Cortés praises his vigilance, 77; serves under Pedro de Alvarado at Tacuba during the siege, 100; narrow escape from capture, 127; terror on hearing death drum and horn, 142; helps to rescue launch, 148; praised to Cortés by Sandoval, 152; describes his sensation of fear, 190; records his service, 191; asks leave to accompany Sandoval, 203; sent to explore land of the Zapotecs, 231; settles at Coatzaacoalcos, 235; sent on expedition to Cimatán, 290, 291; wounded in the throat, 290, 291; escapes in a canoe, 290, 291; false report of his death, 290, 291; arrives at Coatza-

acoalcos, 290, 291; starts on expedition to Chiapas, 290, 291; acts as scout, 294; leads assault at Chamula, 308; receives Pueblo of Chamula in allotment, 309; also Pueblo of Teapa, 312; quarrels with Diego de Godoy, and fights him to stop branding of prisoners, 313; reads letter from Don Hernando of Hungary to Cortés, 335; reads reports from proctors, etc., 337; recites grievances against Cortés, 338, 342; accompanies Rangel on expedition against the Zapotecs, 344; accompanies Rangel on expedition to Cimatán, 346; leads the advance, 346; censured Rangel, 349

Díaz de Auz, Miguel, captain of a launch, 97; in command of Garay's ships, 247

Díaz, Juan, a priest, 89; says Mass at Tacuba, 105

Díaz de la Reguera, Alonso, arrives from Spain, 56

Diosdada, Antonio, 237

Dominguez, Gonzalo, cavalryman, thrown from his horse and killed, 46

Dominican Friars arrive in Mexico, 359

Drum, death, sounded on Cue, 142, 149, 154, 159

Duero, Andrés de, 318, 328

Emperor, The (Charles V.) orders support to be given to Cortés, 226; returns to Castile, 319; confirms appointment of Cortés as Governor of New Spain, 319; deprives Diego Velásquez of his government of Cuba, 319; appoints Commissioners to hear evidence in disputes between Cortés and Velásquez, 323; writes a letter to Cortés, 334; wishes to send and punish Cortés, 364; appoints Luis Ponce de Leon to take the "Residencia" of Cortés, 366

Encomenderos, killed by Indians, 290

Escobar, Bachelor of Arts, appointed tutor of the Cacique of Texcoco, 8

Escuintepeque (Escuintla or Mataguescuintla), Pueblo of, 281; attacked by Alvarado, 282

Espíritu Santo, Feast of, review of troops held on, 93, 94; name given to settlement at Coatzaacoalcos, 234

Estrada, Alonso de, His Majesty's Treasurer, arrives in Mexico, 343

- Factor**, The. *See* Salazar Gonzalo de.
- Farfan**, Pedro Sánchez, appointed Captain of Texcoco, 8; husband of Maria Destrada, 9; accompanies Texcocans to Mexico, 161
- Figueroa**, Gonzalo de, 259
- Fire** made with sticks, 270
- Florin**, Juan, French pirate, captures Alonzo de Ávila and the treasure of Montezuma, 224; captured by the Spaniards, 224; hanged at Pico, 225, 333, 356
- Fonseca**, Alonzo de Azevedo, Archbishop of Santiago, 336
- Fonseca**, Antonio de, Señor de Coca y Alexos, brother of the Bishop of Burgos, 320
- Fonseca**, Doña Petronilla de, 221, 318, 325
- Fonseca**. *See* Rodriguez de.
- Food**, scarcity of, during the siege, 119, 122, 130
- Franciscan Friars** arrive at Vera Cruz, 356; their reception in Mexico, 358
- Fray Francisco de los Angeles**, 357; General of the Franciscans, 357
- Fray Martin de Valencia**, 356, 358
- Fray Tomas Ortiz**, Prior of Dominican Friars, 359
- Fray Toribio Motolinia**, 357
- Galgas**, name for rocks or boulders, 60
- Galindez de Caravajal**, Doctor Lorenzo, 323
- Gallego**, Pedro, Page to Cortés, captured and sacrificed, 83
- Garay**, Francisco de, Governor of Jamaica, prepares a fleet to send to Panuco, 207; appointed Adelantado of the Rio San Pedro and San Pablo, 247; despatches expeditions to Panuco, 247; leads another expedition himself, 248; reaches the Rio de Palmas, 249; arrives at Panuco, 250; failure of his expedition, 251; appeals to Cortés, 255; arrives at the City of Mexico, 256; his relations with Cortés, 256; his interview with Narvaez, 257; his illness and death, 259; his son chosen to succeed him, 259, 322; his case before the Commissioners, 328; judgment postponed, 333
- Garay**, followers of, massacred by Indians, 260; survivors return to Cuba, 268
- Garayana**, name to be given to a town founded by Francisco de Garay, 249
- Geronomite Friars**, angry with Cristóbal de Tápia, 207; give Cortés authority to brand slaves, etc., 219; 319, 326
- Godoy**, Diego de, a settler at Coatzacoalcas, 235; a King's Notary, stirs up strife at Chiapas, imprisoned by Luis Marin, set free, 311; quarrels and fights with Bernal Díaz about branding prisoners, 313
- Golfo Dulce**, 369, 370
- Gomara**, Francisco López de, misstatements in his history, 41, 42
- Gonzáles de Ávila**, Gil, 369; founds San Gil de Buena Vista, 373; taken prisoner by Olid, 369, 373; plots Olid's death, 371; stabs Olid with a knife, 372; decides to go to Mexico, 374
- Gonzáles de Benavides**, Gil, 226
- González de Trujillo**, Pedro, 71
- Grado**, Alonzo de, a settler at Coatzacoalcas, 235; goes on expedition to Chiapas, 292; quarrels with Luis Marin, is put in fetters, sent back to Mexico, 311; comes before Cortés, 314; reconciled to Cortés, 315
- Great Captain**, The, Gonzalvo de Cordova, 178
- Grijalva**, Juan de, in command of some of Garay's vessels, 249; surrenders his ship to Vallejo, 254; possible successor to Garay, 259; receives two thousand pesos from Cortés and returns to Cuba, 268; 317, 324
- Guacachula**, Pueblo of, 4, 339
- Guanaxes**, Islands of, 324
- Guatemala**, expedition to, under P. de Alvarado, 272, 278; enmity towards Utatlan, 279; caciques send embassy to Alvarado, 279; city entered by Alvarado, 279
- Guatemoc**, rejects overtures from Cortés, 22; determines to attack Chalco, 51; failure of his expedition, 52, 53; sends reinforcements to Xochimilco, 75-77; sends fleet of canoes to Mexicaltzingo, 112; arranges forces to defend each causeway, 119; plans night attacks, 121; sends hands and feet of sacrificed Spaniards to friendly towns, 151; receives messengers from Cortés, inclined to make peace, after consulting his chieftains, determines to die fighting,

- 166; begs help from Mataltzingo and Malinalco, 168, 169; again refuses overtures of peace, 171; retreats to N. W. quarters of the City, 174; fails to keep appointment, 177; flees from Mexico, 180; captured by García Holguín, 181; brought before Cortés, 182; sent to Coyoacan, 183; description of, 184; put to the torture, 195, 322; 330, 339; meets the Franciscan Friars, 358
Guautilán, Pueblo of, Spaniards pass the night at, find the town deserted, 34; again pass a night at, 86
Guelamo, Peñol de, subdued by P. de Alvarado, 273
Guerrero or Guerra, drowned at Chiapas, 301
Gueyguistlan, Pueblo of, 303; rises in revolt, 304, 306, 309; captured, 310
Guimango (Guymango), Pueblo of, 314
Gutierre de Badajos, attacks the Great Cue at Tlatelolco, 173
Guzman, Cristóbal de, Mayor-domo to Cortés, made prisoner by the Mexicans while assisting Cortés, 141; kept alive for twelve days, then sacrificed, 159; made to instruct the Mexicans in use of cross-bow, 160
Guzman, Nuño de, Governor of Panuco, 218
Havana, 285; C. de Olid, arrives at, 286
Hernández, Alonso, captured and sacrificed, 80
Hernández de Cordova, Francisco, 316, 324
Hernández, Mari, wife of Juan de Cáceres, 188
Hernández Puertocarrero, Alonso, 317, 325, 355
Hernando of Hungary, King of the Romans, writes to Cortés, 334
Higueras and Honduras, news of gold mines in, 283; expedition despatched to, 285, 286, 360; rebels against Cortés, 361
Hill-fortress (Tlayacapan), besieged by Cortés, 60; another hill-fortress attacked, 63, 64
Hipólito, San, feast day 13th Aug., 1521, end of the siege of Mexico, 183
Holguín, Garci, captain of launch, 97; pursues and captures Guatemoc, 180; disputes capture with Sandoval, 181; end of the dispute, 184
Honduras. See *Higueras and Honduras*.
Horn, sounded on the Cue, signal to fight to the death, 142, 158, 167
Huaspaltepec, Cuazpaltepec in the text, and pueblos on the Rio de Villa Alta, 232, 235, 236, 289
Huastecs, Huastecas in the text, defeated by Cortés, 211, 213; their evil habits, 218
Huexotla, pueblo near Texcoco, asks for peace, 97.
Huexotzingo, Pueblo of, helps Chalco to defeat the Mexicans, 52; reinforcements from, 161
Huichilobos, oracles encourage Mexicans, 154; promises them victory, 159
Ircio, Pedro de, insults the standard-bearer Volante, 37; stops Bernal Díaz from seizing loot, 66, 67; captain under Sandoval during the siege, 101; stationed at Vera Cruz, 201; accompanies Rangel against the Zapotecs, 343-5; returns to Villa Rica, 345
Istapangajoya (Panguaxoya), Pueblo of, 312
Ixililxochitl, remains faithful when native allies desert the Spaniards, 155; advises Cortés to starve the Mexicans out, 157; sends for reinforcements, 161; his bravery during the siege, 189; named Don Carlos, 189
Ixtapa, Pueblo of, 294
Iztapalapa, expedition to, 10; the city flooded, 12; attacked by Sandoval, 108; sues for peace, 133, 339
Izucar, Pueblo of, 4, 339
Jalacingo, 4
Jalpa (Ulapa), Pueblo of, 314
Jaramillo, Juan, sent to examine hill-fortress, 65; captain of launch, 97; rescues another launch, 144
Juan, Maestre, surgeon, 199
Juarez, Señora Doña Catalina, la Marcyda, wife of Cortés, arrives in Mexico, 236; at Coatzacoalcos, 237; reaches City of Mexico, 237; dies of asthma, 238; accusations against Cortés concerning, 322, 333
Juarez, Juan, brother-in-law to Cortés, 236

Lament, Cortés's, at Tacuba, 84
Lances, edged with flint, 305
Lara, Juan de, captured and sacrificed, 80
Lasao, Monsieur de, 315, 323
Las Casas, Francisco de, sails for Mexico, 335; Cortés appoints him captain, 336; receives grants of pueblos, 341; leads expedition against Olid, 368; reaches Triunfo de la Cruz, 368; his ships wrecked, 369; taken prisoner by Olid, 370; plots Olid's death, 371; stabs Olid with a knife, 372; decides to return to Mexico, 374
Launches, built at Texcoco, protected against raids, 29; ready to sail, 91; crews and captains chosen for, 96, 97; sail from Texcoco, 109; battle with canoes on the lake, 109; distributed among different commands, 116; some impaled on stakes, 117; cruise in the lake to capture canoes, 123; Mexican stratagems to destroy, 123, 124, chase canoes bringing food and water, 130; ambushes frustrated, 132; one captured and rescued, 144; another impaled, but breaks away, 144; two missing launches reported safe, 147; method of escaping impalement, 157; no longer fear the Mexicans, 160; capture most of the spoil 186
Lawyers, settlers' petition to keep them out of the country, 221; forbidden to enter New Spain, 334
Ledesma, Licentiate, a settler at Coatzacoalcos, 235
Lema, captain of a launch, 97
Lerma, severely wounded while defending Cortés, 140
Linpias, Juan de, captain of launch, 97; his launch impaled, breaks the stakes and escapes, 144
Llerena appointed Commissioner to settle debts, 200
Loa, Guillen de la, rides with Tápia to Alvarado's camp, 145
López de Aguirre, Juan, a settler at Coatzacoalcos, 235
López, Elvira (La Larga), wife of Juan de Palma, afterwards of Argeta, 237
López, Geronimo, deputy of Fray Pedro Melgarejo, afterwards Secretary in Mexico, 56
López, Martin, in charge of the timber for the launches, 27; builds the launches, 28, 32

López, Pedro, Licentiate, attends Garay in his last illness, 259
López de Recalte, Juan, officer of the House of Trade, Seville, 222, 317, 362
López, Vicente, ordered to conquer Panuco, 201
Lucas, Alonso, 341
Lugo, Francisco de, accompanies Sandoval on expedition to Chalco, 17; captain under Olid during the siege, 100; at council of war, 137; rides with Sandoval to Alvarado's camp, 147; a settler at Coatzacoalcos, 235; accompanies Cortés's wife to Mexico, 237
Macanas, 295
Maçapa, River, 290
Maize plantations, near Coatlinchan, protected from Mexican raids, 15; Mexicans driven away from, 23
Malinalco, Pueblo of, send forces to assist Guatemoc, 168, 169
Mantas, movable shelters for besiegers used at Chamula, 306, 308
Manzilla, writes lampoons on wall, 199; a settler at Coatzacoalcos, 235
Marin, Luis, captain, accompanies his friend Sandoval on expedition to Oaxtepec, 44; advises attack on Yecapixtla, 49; captain under Sandoval during the siege, 101; allotted Pueblo of Xaltepec, 232; a settler at Coatzacoalcos, 235; leads expedition against revolted towns, 240; in Guatemala, 282; sends B. Díaz to Cimatan, 290; visits Cortés at Mexico City, 292; leads expedition to Chiapas, 292; receives two wounds in battles, 295; unexpected help from Indians of Xaltepeque, 299, 300; fights battle at the ford, 301; enters Chiapas, 302; attacks Chamula, 305; allies Chamula to Bernal Díaz, 309; wishes to return to Coatzacoalcos, 311; marches towards Cimatan, 312; arrives at Teapa, 312; supports Bernal Díaz in dispute with Godoy, 313; attacks Talatupan, 314; returns to Coatzacoalcos, 314; reports to Cortés, 315
Marina, Doña, Interpreter, 5, 20, 22, 58, 64, 131, 161, 182, 212
Marmolejo, Francisco, a settler at Coatzacoalcos, 235;

- Martin Fray**, de Valencia, Vicar-General of Franciscan Friars, arrives at Vera Cruz, 356; received by Cortés, 358
- Martin**, Padre Benito, 318; (*See* Martínez), 321; summoned before Commissioners, 324
- Martin**, Francisco, accompanying Díaz on expedition to Cimatán, wounded, 290, 312
- Martínez**, a Valencian, killed in attack on hill-fortress, 60
- Martyrs**, Church of the, heads of Spaniards buried in, 172
- Matalcingo**, Pueblo of, gives allegiance to the Spaniards, 38; send forces to assist Guatemoc, 168, 169
- Matlatán** (Matatlan?), pueblo allotted to Bernal Díaz, 233
- Medellín**, a town founded on the Rio de Banderas, 233, 270
- Medina**, Francisco de, Captain, a settler at Coatzacoalcos, 235
- Medina**, Juan de, the squint-eyed, 259
- Medrano**, Pedro Moreno, gunner, brave and helpful conduct of, 143, 149; sent on expedition against Olid, 368
- Melgarejo de Urrea**, Fray Pedro, arrives from Spain with Papal Bulls, 55; accompanies expedition round the lakes, 57; ascends Cue at Tacuba, 83; sent to meet Cristóbal de Tápia, 206; writes to the Emperor, 220; in Spain, 364
- Mendoza**, Alonzo de, 259
- Mendoza**, Don Antonio de, Viceroy of Mexico, 366
- Mexicans** make preparations to defend their city, 29; attack the Spaniards at Tacuba, 36; feign retreat, then drive the Spaniards off the causeway, 37; evacuate the city, 187
- Mexicaltzingo**, Pueblo of, 109; attacked by Sandoval, 112
- Mijes**, The, Minxes in the text, 230
- Mixquic** (Mezquique), Pueblo of, called Venezuela, begs for peace, 15; applies to Cortés for help, 17; sues for peace, 133
- Mocho**, Castro, shipmaster, surrenders his ship to Vallejo, 253
- Modorra**, the second night watch, 121
- Monjaraz**, Andrés de, captain under Pedro de Alvarado during the siege, 100
- Monroy**, one of Cortés's pages, 83
- Montejo**, Francisco de, 317; granted the Government of Yucatan and title of Adelantado, 335; 355
- Montesdoca**, Hernando de, a settler at Coatzacoalcos, 235
- Montezuma**, 327, 338
- Morisco**, El Pueblo, scene of massacre of Spaniards, 24; captured by Sandoval, 25; inhabitants make submission, 26
- Motolinia**, Fray Toribio, the poor friar, 357
- Municipality** of Mexico write to the Emperor, 220
- Múrcia**, a quack apothecary, 199
- Nacajuca** (Encaxuyxuyce), Pueblo of, 314
- Nachapalan**, Pueblo, in district of Panuco, Garay's mutinous soldiers arrive at, 252
- Naco**, Pueblo of, 370
- Nao**, Rodrigo de, accompanies Díaz to Cimatán, 290
- Narvaez**, Panfilo de, ordered to Coyoacan, 208; his advice to Cristóbal de Tápia, brought before Cortés, 209; visits Garay, their conversation, 257; receives permission to return to Cuba, 258; arrives in Castile, 321; addresses the Emperor, 323; summoned before Commissioners, 323, 326; his pleas rejected, 333; 338, 353; renews complaints against Cortés, 364
- Nativity**, Feast of, 1520, march to Texcoco commenced, 2
- Nautla**, Pueblo of, gives allegiance to the Spaniards, 38
- Navarrete y Carracosa**, a defender of Santistevan and friend of Sandoval, 264
- Nórtes**, Jínes, captain of a launch, 97
- Núñez**, Andrés, helps to build the launches, 28
- Núñez**, the licentiate Francisco, a cousin of Cortés, 225; at the Court of Spain, 316; summoned before Commissioners, 324, 361
- Núñez de Mercado**, Juan, sent on expedition against Olid, 368; helps to kill Olid, 372
- Oaxtepec** (Guaxtepec), Pueblo of, 44; captured by Sandoval, 47; beautiful gardens at, 47; visited by Cortés, 67
- Ocampo**, Diego de, brother of Gonzalo de Ocampo, sent to Santi-

- stevan with message to Garay, 252 ;
 Chief Alcalde for Cortés in Mexico,
 253 ; intercedes with Cortés on
 Garay's behalf, 255 ; appointed
 Judge at Santistevan, 267 ; returns
 to Mexico, 268, 286
- Ocampo**, Gonzalo de, a captain in
 Garay's expedition, 251 ; his
 account of Rangel, 351
- Ojeda**, Doctor, attends Garay's last
 illness, 259
- Ojeda**, The One-eyed, Encomendero
 of Tliltepec, 230
- Ojeda**, Ysabel de, wife of Antonio
 Villa Real, 8
- Olea**, Cristóbal de, saves Cortés from
 capture, and is himself severely
 wounded, 74 ; again saves Cortés's
 life, and is himself killed by the
 Mexicans, 140
- Olid**, Cristóbal de, expedition to
 Iztapalapa, 11 ; expedition to
 Saltocan, 31 ; expedition round the
 lakes, 57 ; crosses broken bridge
 into Cuernavaca, 69 ; on march to
 Xochimilco, 71 ; commands division
 during the siege, headquarters at
 Coyoacan, 100 ; dispute with Alva-
 rado about quarters, 103 ; arrives
 at Tacuba, 104 ; cuts off water at
 Chapultepec, 105 ; fights on the
 causeway, 105 ; leaves Tacuba for
 Coyoacan, 107 ; blames Alvarado
 for rashness, 108 ; at Council of
 War, 137 ; helps to rescue Cortés
 from Mexicans, 141 ; ordered to
 Michoacan, 202 ; married to Doña
 Felipa de Arauz, 202 ; returns from
 Michoacan, 210 ; subdues Zacatula
 and Colima, 238-9 ; sent on expedi-
 tion to Honduras, 284 ; his instruc-
 tions from Cortés, 285 ; sails from
 Villa Rica, 285 ; arrives at Havana,
 286 ; enters partnership with Diego
 de Velasquez, 286 ; description of,
 287 ; sails for Honduras, 287 ;
 founds town of Triunfo de la Cruz,
 287 ; expedition despatched against,
 368 ; takes Las Casas and Gil
 González de Avila prisoners, 370 ;
 goes to Naco, 371 ; attacked
 and wounded by Las Casas and
 Gil González, 372, 373 ; beheaded
 in the Plaza at Naco, 372, 373
- Olmos de Portillo**, of Mexico,
 married to La Bermuda, 188
- Ordás**, Diego de, 225 ; opposes
 Rodrigo de Fonseca at the Court of
 Spain, 316 ; summoned before
 Commissioners, 324 ; Commander
 of the Order of Santiago, grant of
 arms, his death, 335 ; 359, 361
- Ordás**, Francisca de, wife of Juan
 Gonzalo de Leon, 188
- Orduña**, the elder, arrives from Spain,
 55
- Orizaba**, a pueblo allotted to Bernal
 Díaz, 233
- Orozco**, Francisco de, sent to settle
 in Oaxaca, 202 ; captain of the
 province, 242
- Ortiz**, Fray Tomas, Prior of Do-
 minican Friars, 359
- Otomies**, The, 186
- Otumba**, Pueblo of, begs for peace,
 14 ; sends messengers to Saltocan,
 31 ; battle of, 339
- Ozotequipa**, a pueblo allotted to
 Bernal Díaz, 233
- Padilla**, Don García de, countersigns
 decree in Valladolid, 334
- Pages**, Cortés's, two of them captured
 and sacrificed, 83
- Palma**, Juan de, 237
- Palmas**, Rio de las, 249, 254, 256,
 329
- Panuco**, province of, rises in revolt,
 210 ; Cortés's expedition to, 211,
 222 ; Garay arrives at, 250, 340
- Papanaguasta** (Papanaguastla), 236,
 289
- Pavesinas**, shields, 305
- Paz**, Rodrigo de, carries Royal War-
 rants to Mexico, 335 ; Cortés con-
 fers favours on, 336, 341
- Pechin**, river, 369, 370, 371
- Peñoles del Marqués**, 339
- Pérez**, Alonso, ascends Cue at Ta-
 cuba, comforts Cortés, 85
- Petapa**, in Guatemala, 282
- Phoenix**, The, a cannon made of gold
 and silver, sent by Cortés to the
 Emperor, 352, 353 ; given to Fran-
 cisco de los Cobos, 355
- Phoenix**, The, name of a tax, 226,
 245
- Pineda** (or Pinedo), Alonso de Álva-
 rez, commands Garay's fleet, killed
 at Panuco, 247
- Pineda** ordered to conquer Panuco,
 201
- Pinola**, 289, 303
- Pipiles**, The, make peace with Alva-
 rado, 281
- Pleurisy**, Garay dies of, prevalent in
 Mexico, 258, 259

- Plot** to kill Cortés, Sandoval, P. de Alvarado and Ardiés de Tápí, 87
- Ponce de Leon**, Luis, 342; ordered to go to New Spain to take the "Residencia" of Cortés, 366
- Portillo**, de, captain of a launch, 97; killed by Mexicans, 124
- Prisoners** fattened for food, 272
- Proclamation** to troops at Texcoco, 94, 95
- Proctors** representing Cortés at the Court of Spain state their case against Diego Velásquez, 316-319
- Prophetess**, Indian, killed in battle, 298
- Puerto Caballos**, 287
- Quechula** (Cachula in the text), 236, 289, 292, 293, 302
- Quetzals** feathers brought as tribute, 310
- Quetzaltenango**, Pueblo of, entered by Alvarado, 274, 275
- Quílenes**, the land of the, 236, 289, 293, 302, 303
- Quillites**, herbs that the Indians eat, used by the Spaniards, 119
- Quíñones**, Antonio de, captain of Cortés bodyguard, 90; sent as proctor to Spain, 220; killed at Terceira, 223, 355
- Ramírez**, old and lame, helps to build the launches, 28; captain of a ship in Garay's expedition, 247
- Rangel**, Rodrigo, in charge at Villa Rica, sends munitions to Cortés, 172; deprived of his office, 205; reinstated, 208; begs leave to conquer the Zapotecs, 343; starts on expedition, 344; commands expedition against Cimatan, 345-351; his foolish conduct, 351
- Rapapelo**, Mexia, a settler at Coatzacoalcos, 235
- Review** of troops, held at Texcoco, 93, 94
- Ribera**, Juan de, the Squint-eyed, 342; sent with treasure to Castile, 352, 353; betrays his trust, 353; his death, 356
- Rijoies**, Tomás de, one of Cortés's pages, 83
- Rocha**, Doctor de la, 323
- Rodríguez**, Alonso, killed in attack on hill-fortress, 60
- Rodríguez de Fonseca**, Don Juan, Bishop of Burgos and Archbishop of Rosano, secures commission as governor for Cristóbal de Tápia, 204; accused of intercepting letters, 221; sends decrees by Juan Bono de Quexo, 240; appoints Garay Adelantado, 247; hostility towards Cortés, 315; his authority challenged, 316, 319; deprived of his authority over the Indies by Pope Adrian, 318; retires to Toro, 320, 331 supports complaints against Cortés, 321
- Rodríguez**, Ysabel, married to — Guadalupe, 188
- Rojas**, Manuel, 318, 321; summoned before Commissioners, 324
- Ruiz de la Mota**, Gerónimo, arrives from Spain, 56; captain of a launch, 97
- Saavedra**, a relation of Cortés, 341
- Sacrifice** of Spanish prisoners on the Great Cue, within sight of the army, 149, 154
- Salamanca**, Juan de, a settler at Coatzacoalcos, 235
- Salazar**, Gonzalo de, His Majesty's factor, arrives in Mexico, 343
- Salazar de la Pedrada**, appointed in charge of docks and fort, 194
- Saltocan** (Naltocan), pueblo of, expedition against, 30-34; inhabitants destroy the causeway, 32, 33; inhabitants flee from the town, 34
- Sánchez**, Gaspar, killed in attack on hill-fortress, 60
- Sánchez**, Gonzalo, a Portuguese keeps watch at Nochimilco with Díaz, 77
- Sandoval**, Gonzalo de, leads expedition to Chalco, 17; defeats the Mexicans, 18; upbraids his rear guard, 19; received in Chalco, 20; sent to Tlaxcala to bring timber for the launches, 24; captures "el Pueblo Morisco," 26; meets the Tlaxcalans with the timber, 27; left in command at Texcoco, 31; leads expedition to Oaxtepec, 44-51; fights battle near Chimal, 45; captures Oaxtepec, 46, 47; captures Yecapixtla, 49-51; returns to Texcoco, 51; Cortés resents his return, 52; misunderstanding corrected, 53; left in command at Texcoco, 58; meets Cortés at Acolman, 86; plot to kill him and others, 87; commands division during the siege, 100; attacks Iztapalapa, 108; attacks Mexicaltzingo, 112; supported by Cortés and the launches,

- 112; ordered to go to Tepeaquilla, 112; receives three wounds during a combined attack, 145; rides to Cortés's camp, 146; interview with Cortés, 146; sent to Alvarado's camp, 147; again wounded, 148, 149; returns to Cortés's camp, 152; commends Bernal Díaz to Cortés, 152; goes to relief of Cuernavaca, 170; joins Cortés at Tlatelolco, 174; sent to attack Guatemoc, 179; claims Guatemoc as his captive, 181; returns to Tepeaquilla at the end of the siege, 183; ordered to form settlements at Tuxtepec and Coatzacoalcos, 201; meets Cristóbal de Tápia, 206; arrives at Tuxtepec, 228; sends expeditions into Zapotec country, 229-232; allots Zapotec pueblos, 232, 233; founds town of Espíritu Santo at Coatzacoalcos, 234; accompanies Cortés's wife to Mexico, 237; subdues Colima and Zacatula, 239; sent to Santistevan with message for Garay, 252; intercedes with Cortés on Garay's behalf, 255; sent to Santistevan to avenge massacre of Garay's followers, 261; defeats the enemy and reaches Santistevan, 264; badly wounded, 265; releases prisoners, 265; rebukes Garay's followers, 266; praised by Cortés, 267; returns to Mexico, 268
- San Juan**, Martín de, ship-master, a native of Lepusco, surrenders ship under his command to Vallejo, 253
- Santa Clara** appointed Commissioner to settle debts, 200
- Santistevan del Puerto**, town founded, 215, 251, 260
- Seals** killed for food by castaways, 216, 270
- Segura**, town founded by Alvarado at Tututepec, 243; settlement abandoned, 245
- Sharks** attack shipwrecked sailors, 269
- Silversmiths** hanged for forgery, 201
- Sinkers**, for fishing nets, made of gold and copper, 283
- Skins of horses**, tanned, found in Cue at Pueblo Morisco, 26
- Slaves**, branding of, at Texcoco, 54; discontent at arrangements for, 55, 90; by Alvarado at Utatlan, 279
- Slings** used in warfare, 305
- Smallpox** spreads throughout Mexico, 4
- Smoke signals** made by people of Texcoco, 3; made by people of Iztapalapa, 108; made by people of Chiapas, 294
- Soconusco**, Province of, Alvarado arrives at, 273, 302
- Sotello**, de, a native of Seville, constructs a catapult, 178
- Soto**, Diego de, a native of Toro, sent to meet Cristóbal de Tápia, 206; left in charge of Mexico, 210; sent with treasure to Castile, 352, 353
- Spoil**, distribution of, 197
- Spring** of brackish water in the city destroyed, 163; other springs opened, 167
- Stirrups** made of gold for Alvarado, 243
- Strait**, or sea passage, Cortés ordered to search for, 283, 285
- Sulusuchiapa** (Silo Suchiapa), Pueblo of, 312
- Sun**, golden, recovered from a water tank, 195
- Tabasco**, 236, 289, 338
- Taborda**, turbulent follower of Garay, 259
- Tacuba**, Spaniards enter the town, 35; again enter the town, 83, 339
- Tacuba**, The Lord of, put to the torture, 195
- Talarbadones**, shields made of wood, 307
- Talatupan** (Tactotalpa?), 345
- Tápia**, Andrés de, expedition to Iztapalapa, 11; expedition round the lakes, 57; rides into Cuernavaca over broken bridge, 69; plot to kill him and others, 87; captain under Olid during the siege, 100; at Council of War, 137; is wounded, sent as messenger to Alvarado, 145; sent to meet force from Mataltzingo and Malinalco, 169; sent to meet Cristóbal de Tápia, 206
- Tápia**, Cristóbal de, Veedor of the Island of Santo Domingo, arrives at Vera Cruz, 204; illness of, 206; returns to Santo Domingo, 207, 318; arrives in Castile, 321, 322; summoned before Commissioners, 323, 332, 339, 353
- Tapilula** (Tapeola), Pueblo of, 312
- Teapa** (Atcapan), Pueblo of, 312; allotted to Bernal Díaz, 312
- Tecomayacate**, Pueblo of, 312

- Tehuantepec**, Teguantepeque in the text, Pueblo of the Zapotecs, send presents to Cortés, 242; visited by P. de Alvarado, 273, 293, 302
- Tenayuca**, Pueblo of (El Pueblo de las Sierpes), Spaniards find the town deserted, 35; again pass through, 85
- Teotitan Copilco** (Copileco), Pueblo of, 314, 346
- Tepaneca** or Tecapaneca, a cacique from Topeyanco, 161, 162
- Tepeaca**, 4
- Tepeaca** (in Chiapas), 235, 236
- Tepeca**, 236, 289
- Tepezcuco** (Tepetexcoco), Pueblo of, begs for peace, 14; sends messengers to Saltoan, 31; gives information to the Spaniards, 33
- Tepostlan**, Pueblo of, Cortés burns half the houses, Spaniards pass the night in, 67, 68
- Tepusque** = copper, used as a slang term, 200
- Tepuzuntlan**, Pueblo of, 292
- Terceira**, Island of, 223
- Tesmoluca** (San Martin Tesmelucan), Spaniards camp at, 2, *n.*
- Texcoco**, embassy from, 4; occupied by Spaniards, 7; cacique appointed, 8; launches sail from, 109; 339
- Thirst**, death from, on the march between Cuernavaca and Xochimilco, 70, 71
- Tigers** (Jaguas) sent to Spain, 220; killed on board ship, 223
- Tiltepec**, a town of the Zapotecs, 230
- Timber** for building launches, anxiety about, 17; brought to Texcoco, 27, 28
- Tirado**, son-in-law of Ramires, writes lampoons on wall, 199
- Tlamanalco**, Pueblo of, begs for peace, 16; badly treated by Mexicans, assisted by the Spaniards, 17; cacique appointed by Cortés, 21; again begs for assistance, 39; Spaniards pass the night at, 58
- Tlaxcala**, three battles of, 338
- Tlaxcalans** promise assistance to Cortés, 1; ordered not to do damage, 5; anxious to fight against Mexicans, 10; two men drowned at Iztapalapa, 12; wish to go home with booty, 17; make friends with people of Chalco, 24; bring timber for the launches, 27; enter Texcoco, 28; join expedition to Saltoan, 31; on expedition round the lakes, 57; advised of expedition against Mexico, 93; arrive at Texcoco commanded by Xicotenga, the younger, 97; distributed under different commanders, 100; fight manfully, 124; one thousand killed or wounded, 139; eighty remain faithful when others desert, 155; reinforcements reach Mexico, 161
- Tlayacapan**, probable site of hill-fortress, 59, *n.*
- Tochel**, Cacique of Coatzacoalcas, 234
- Tonalá**, 346
- Tonalá**, River of, 314
- Tonatio**, Mexican name given to Pedro de Alvarado, 242
- Torralva**, Juan, Mayor-domo of Garay sent on mission to Spain, 246
- Torre**, Juan de la, 341
- Torre**, Luis de la, 341
- Treasure**, Private, of Montezuma, sent to Spain, 220; other treasure sent, 352, 355
- Treasurer**. See Estrada, Alonzo de.
- Trebejo**, a soldier, reveals conspiracy against the Alvarados, 244
- Tribute books** of Montezuma, 202
- Triunfo de la Cruz**, town founded by C. de Olid, 287, 368
- Trujillo**, settlement formed at, 373
- Turtles** as food for shipwrecked sailors, 270
- Tututepec** (Tututepeque in the text), Pedro de Alvarado sent to form a settlement at, 207, 241; settlement abandoned, 245, 340
- Tuxpan**, Pueblo of, gives allegiance to the Spaniards, 38
- Tuxtepec** (Tuxtepeque in the text), Sandoval sent to form a settlement at, 207, 339
- Ulloa**, Lorenzo de, 259
- Umbria**, Gonzalo de, arrives in Castile, 321; summoned before Commissioners, 323, 331; receives Royal Grant, 333
- Usagre**, the gunner, sent to Guatemala, 272
- Utatlan**, Pueblo of, 274; assembly of warriors at, 276; entered by Alvarado, 277; chieftains plan to burn the town, 277; Alvarado and Spaniards leave the town, 278; Cacique burned to death, 278
- Valdenebro**, 71
- Valenzuela**, Maria de, wife of Narvaez, begs Cortés to release her husband, 258

- Valiente**, Antonio, 342
- Vallejo**, Pedro de, Cortés's lieutenant at Santistevan, receives message from Garay, 251; communicates with Cortés, 252; Garay's ships surrender, 253; takes Juan de Grijalva prisoner and releases him, 254; death of, 260
- Vargas** Licentiate, member of Council of the Indies, 247, 323
- Vargas**, Don Lorenzo de. *See* Xicotenga, the elder.
- Vásquez de Ayllon**, Lucas, a licentiate, a ship belonging to, arrives at Villa Rica, 171; 319, 326
- Vega**, Hernando de, Lord of Graxales, 323
- Velásquez**, Bernaldino, Proctor for Diego Velésquez at the Court of Spain, 321
- Velásquez**, Diego. Forms partnership with C. de Olid to sieze Honduras, 286, 288; 315; deprived of the Government of Cuba, 319; his case tried before Commissioners, 323-332; judgment given against him, 333; notified of the Royal decrees, his illness and death, 335; advises Olid to rebel, 361
- Vera Cruz**, Villa Rica de la, law suits over allotments, 236
- Verdugo**, Francisco, a leader in attack on hill-fortress, 63; captain under Olid during the siege, 100; at council of war, 137
- Viboras**, Las, shoal, Zuazo wrecked on, 269
- Villafañá**, Antonio de, plots to kill Cortés and others, 87; seized by Cortés, tried and hanged, 89, 339
- Villafuerte**, sent to Zacatula, 202, 238
- Villanueva**, Alonzo de, Garay lodges in the house of, 257
- Villa Real**, Antonio de, appointed tutor to the Cacique of Texcoco, 8; husband of Isabel de Ojeda, accompanies Texcocans to Mexico, 161
- Villa Rica** (Vera Cruz), 284, 285, 338
- Villegas** arrives in Mexico, 237; receives grants of pueblos, 342
- Vitoria**, City of, 315
- Volante**, Juan, a standard-bearer insulted by Pedro de Ircio, 37
- Wreck**, of vessel from Vera Cruz with supplies for Panuco, 216; of Zuazo on "Las Viboras," 269
- Xagua**, a port in Cuba, 248, 268
- Xaltepec**, or Jaltepec, a pueblo of the Xapotecs, 230; allotted to Luis Marin, 232; revolts of, 239; 289
- Xaltepec**, people of, captives in Chiapas assist the Spaniards, 299, 300, 302; found town of Xaltepec, ten leagues from Chiapas, 304
- Xicalango**, 304
- Xicotenga**, the elder, promises help to the Spaniards, 1, 189
- Xicotenga**, the younger, arrives at Texcoco, 98; leaves secretly for Tlaxcala, 102; refuses to return, and is hanged by order of Cortés, 103
- Xicotengas**, two sons of Xicotenga, the elder, their bravery during the siege, 189
- Ximenes**, Francisco, accompanies Diaz to Cimatan, 290
- Xochimilco**, Pueblo of, Spaniards arrive at, 72; battles at, 73-78; Spaniards retreat from, 81, 339
- Yautepec**, Pueblo of, gives fealty to Spaniards, 67, 68
- Yecapixtla** (Acapistla), Pueblo of, 48; refuses Sandoval's overtures, 49; attacked and captured by Sandoval, 50, 51
- Ysasaga**, Pedro de, official of the House of Trade at Seville, 222, 317, 362
- Ystatan** (Ishuatan?), people of, released from slavery in Chiapas, 305
- Yuste**, Juan, killed at "el Pueblo Morisco," 26
- Zacaculco** (Sta. Anna), Cortés finds the heads of Spaniards in tower at, 172
- Zacatula**, expeditions against, under Villafuerte, 238; Cristóbal de Olid, 238; Sandoval, 239, 340
- Zacotile**, a root used to make paste, 92
- Zacualco**, 346
- Zaltocan** (Xaltocan), expeditions to, 339
- Zambrana**, La (the festive), wife of Villegas, 237
- Zamora**, captain of a launch, 97
- Zapata**, Licentiate, member of Council of the Indies, 247
- Wall**, "a blank wall is the paper of fools," 199
- Watch-fires** of the Mexicans, 128

Zapoteca, Briones invades the land of the, 229; their arms, 229; 235, 236, 302; Rangel's expedition against, 344; 352

Zapotitlan, group of villages, 273

Zinacantan, Pueblo of, 236, 289, 293,

303, 305, 308, 309, 310, 312

Zoques, land of the, 236, 289, 293, 303

Zuazo, Licentiate. appointed to take the Residencia of Diego Velásquez, 248; unable to accompany Garay to Mexico, 249; wrecked on Las Viboras, 269; rescued and goes to Mexico, appointed Chief Alcalde, 270-1

Zuñiga, Doña Juana de, her marriage with Cortés arranged, 354, 360, 365

INDEX.

- Acalá**, 13, 19; reached by Bernal Díaz, 20, 23, 24
- Acales**—ships, 24
- Acaltecas**, Pueblo, 62, 86, 118
- Acapulco**, 178, 187
- Accountant**, The. *See* Albornoz.
- Acrobats** taken on expedition to Honduras, 4
- Açula**, 59
- Admiral** of Castile, The, 145, 146, 148, 200
- Aguilar**, Alonzo de, becomes a Friar, 243
- Aguilar**, Conde de, 142, 143, 146, 148
- Aguilar**, Gerónimo, the Interpreter, 247
- Aguilar**, Hernando de, goes with Bernal Díaz in search of food, 41
- Aguilar**, Marcos de, Licentiate, 105; appointed by will Governor to succeed Luis Ponce de Leon, 114; refuses to take a colleague, 116; death of his son, 117; rejects petition of Luis Sánchez and Bernal Díaz, 122; sends expedition to Chiapa, 125; his death and will, 126, 312
- Alamilla**, Fulano de, 233
- Alaminos**, Anton de, and his son, pilots, 245, 246
- Alarcon**, Hernando de, Head Steward of Viceroy, Captain-General of expedition to Cibola, 202
- Alavez**, Melchior de, 230
- Albera**, a soldier, 251
- Albornoz**, Rodrigo de, the Accountant, appointed Lieutenant-Governor, 2; writes to Spain against Cortés, 72; ejected from Government and imprisoned, 72, 73; re-appointed Governor by Cortés, 87-90; meets Cortés at Texcoco, 107; goes to Spain, 129; returns to Mexico married, given pueblo of Guazpaltepeque. License to set up Sugar Factory at Cempoala, 162; grant of Guazpaltepeque rescinded, 164
- Almestra**, Alonzo de, 237
- Almodóvar**, the elder, his son Alvaro de Modóvar, and two nephews, 237
- Alonzo**, Luis, 238
- Altamirano**, Fray Diego de, 88; sent on a mission to Cortés, 92; arrives at Trujillo, 95
- Altamirano**, Licentiate Juan, given Power of Attorney by Cortés, 138; protests in Court against the depositions of the Factor Salazar and attempts to stab him, is imprisoned, but soon released, 158
- Alvarado**, Gomes de, died in Peru, 226
- Alvarado**, Gonzalo de, 121, 226
- Alvarado**, Jorge de, 72, 76; takes refuge in Monastery of San Francisco, 78, 88, 89, 107; his marriage, 125; goes as Captain to Guatemala, 125; his Residencia taken, 157; 226, 320
- Alvarado**, Juan de, of Chiribitio, 206
- Alvarado**, Juan de, a bastard, brother of Pedro de Alvarado, 226
- Alvarado**, Juan de, nephew of Pedro de A., appointed joint Commander of fleet, 207
- Alvarado**, Pedro de, proposal that he should govern Mexico, 76; threatened by the Factor, 76; 87, 107; meets Luis Marin at Chuluteca Malalaca, 118; at Guatemala (Iximché), 120; returns with Marin to Mexico, 121; goes to Spain, 125; 201; Governor and Adelantado of Guatemala, second marriage with Beatriz de la Cueva, prepares powerful fleet, 204, 205; meets the Viceroy and inspects fleet, 206; reaches Natividad; hurries to render assistance to Nochistlan, 207; his death, 208; 222, 223, 226; his age and appearance, 252; story of the massacre of Mexicans repeated, 302, 303; his government of Guatemala and first marriage to Francisca de la Cueva, Voyage to Peru, 320; repeats story of his death, 321, 322

- Alvarez**, a soldier and seaman, 247
Alvarez, Juan, "el Mariquillo," a pilot, 245
Alvarez Chico, Francisco, 227, 228
Alvarez Chico, Juan, 227, 228
Alvarez, Rubaco, Juan, a Portuguese, 240
Amate, paper made from bark of a tree, 263
Amaya, 234
Angulo, Fulano de, 234
Aparicio, 241
Aragon, Juan de, 235
Arbitez, Fulano de, Governor of Honduras, 328
Arbolanche, Fulano, 236
Archiaga, Archilaga, or Artiaga, Captain of Factor's Guard, 78, 89, 90
Arévalo, settler at Villa Rica, 242
Arguello, a soldier, 239
Arias de Avila, Pedro, sends Francisco Hernández to Nicaragua, 67; condemns Hernández to death, 83; 119, 331
Arias de Peñalosa, Doña Maria, married to Rodrigo de Contreras, 331
Arias de Peñalosa, Doña Isabel, wife of Balboa, 68
Armenta, Lieutenant of Gil González, hanged by the settlers, 44, 45
Art and Trade among the Indians, 268, 269
Arroyuelo, a crossbowman, 239
Assignment, Perpetual, discussions, regarding, 281; decision postponed, 285
Astorga, a settler in Oaxaca, 249
Audiencia, Royal, appointed for Mexico, 130; arrives in Mexico, 154; failure of their Proclamation, against descendants, of Jews and Moors, 161; Members of Audiencia dismissed, 163; New Audiencia arrives, 169; its Residencia taken on arrival of Viceroy, 173
Ávila, Alonso de, 224; sent to Spain with the treasure of Montezuma, captured by the Pirate Florin, a prisoner in France, accompanies Montijo to Yucatan, gives Power of Attorney to Gil González de Benavides to hold the pueblo of Cuantitlan, 225 (note) and 318; his appearance and character, 255, 256; blames Alvarado for massacre of Mexicans, 304
Ávila de Benavides, Gil Gonzáles de. *See* Gonzáles)
- Ávila**, Gaspar de, and two others of the name, 240
Ávila, Sancho de, 237 (note)
Avalos or Ahalos, a relation of Cortés, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3; at the crossing of the Rio Dulce, 47; falls ill, 62; sent in command of ship to Santo Domingo, 63; shipwrecked and reaches Havanna, 64; a brother of Sayavedra, 85
Ayagualulco, 10
- Baena**, Fulano de, 239
Balahama, Rio, 69
Balboa, Vasco Nuñez de, 68, 331
Baldovinos, a soldier, 249
Balverde, hanged for plotting, 94
Bandadas, of Avila, two brothers, 240
Baptism, of Indians, 265
Barco, Francisco del, 233
Bargas, two brothers, 234
Barrientos, Alonzo de, 236
Barrios, Fulano de, married to a sister-in-law of Cortés, 113; law suits about Mistitan, 113
Barrios, Fulano de, killed in expedition against the Zapotecs
Barros de Sanmillan, Doctor, Oidor of Audiencia of Guatemala, 324; takes royal seal to Panama and becomes President of the Audiencia, 325
Bejar, Duque de. *See* Zuñiga Don Alvaro de.
Bejel, Benito de, 242
Beltran, Doctor, 200
Benítez, a soldier, 228
Berguillos, Fulano, 243
Berrio, Chief Alcalde of Oaxaca, 162; dies in prison, 171
Beserra de Mendoza, Diego, in command of expedition to the South Sea, 181; killed by his pilot, Ortuño Ximénes, 182
Bishop of Tlaxcala. *See* Garçes.
Bocanegra of Cordova, 105, 108
Branding Slaves. Licenses granted by the Oidores, 161; licenses revoked, 163; branding stopped by order of the Audiencia, 171, 225 (note); detailed account, 306-311; in Honduras, 328
Bridges, built by Cortés on expedition to Honduras, 10, 13, 21, 36, 37, 39

Briseño, Francisco, Licentiate, Governor of Guatemala, 325; his good works, 326, 328

Burgueno, Hernando, 236

Cabrera, Fulano de, 80

Cacao, 330

Cáceres, a soldier, 241

Cáceres, Juan, the rich, buys masses celebrated for soul of Cortés, 123, 248

Caciques, become horsemen, 270

California, 186, 188

Campañon, a captain under Pedrarias, 119

Campo, Diego de, given Power of Attorney by Cortés, 138

Canillas, Fulano de, 238

Cannibalism, on the expedition to Honduras, 15; in Mexico, 263

Caravajal, Antonio, goes as Proctor to Spain, 166, 167

Cárdenas, a soldier, 239

Cárdenas, the pilot, 239, 245, 246

Carmona, Anton de, the buskin maker, owner of ship, 50; falls ill, 63

Carmonas, two brothers, 234

Carranza, Mayor-domo to Cortés, on expedition to Honduras, 3, 21, 63

Casas, Fray Bartolomé de las, Bishop of Chiapa, 281; opposes Perpetual Assignment, 283

Castañeda, Rodrigo de, 231

Castilla, Luis de, 206

Casualties, Spanish, the numbers of Spaniards killed, 294-298

Catalan, Alonzo, 238

Cayzedo, 227

Cazalote, 22

Cazonzin, Cacique of Jalisco, hanged, 168

Ceiba trees, crosses cut on, 17, 28; used for making a canoe, 119

Cereceda, Governor of Honduras, 328

Cermeño, Juan, 235

Cespedes, Luis de, Governor of Yucatan, 319

Chacujal, or Cinacantencintle, on Rio Polochic, 51

Chalchihuites, 17

Chalco, 121

Chamula, 18

Chaparristiques, Las, Pueblos, 119

Chapultepec, 193

Chilapa, Rio de 11: crossed in canoes, 12

Chinantla, 213

Chiribitio, Pueblo of, 206

Chirinos, Pedro Almiraz. The Veedor, accompanies Cortés to Coatzacoalcos, 4; attentions to Cortés, 5, 6; given authority to act as Governor, and return to Mexico, 7; assumes government of Mexico, 72; leads expedition against Zapotecs, 73; his commission revoked by Cortés, 87; arrested and imprisoned in a cage, 90; released, 133

Chontalpa, La, Province of, 11

Christian appearances among the Indians, 265, 267

Choluteca Malalaca, Pueblo of, 118, 119

Churches, church ornaments, bells and choirs, 265, 266

Cibola, the Seven Cities, 175, 201, 202

Ciciliano, Juan, 238

Cieza, Fulano de, 235

Ciguatanejo, Port of, 179

Ciguatpecad, 15, 17, 18, 19, 20

Cimatan, expedition to; outpost of Mexican Empire (note), 9; rises in revolt, 10

Ciguenza, Cardinal de, deceived by the "Master of Rhodes," 197, 198; President of Council, 199

Cinacantencintle, Pueblo on Rio Polochic, called Chacujal by Cortés, 51

Clara, Santa, 234

Coatlan, the Rock of, 75, 97, 101

Cobos, Don Francisco de los, Knight Commander of Leon, 74, 124; praises Cortés to the Emperor, 145, 147; 148, 149, 200

Cogolludo's History of Yucatan, extract from, 34, 35 (note)

Comacho, a pilot, 245

Contreras, Rodrigo de, Governor of Nicaragua, 331; dismissed, 332

Corral, Cristóbal de, Standard-bearer, 228

Corral, Francisco, 227

Cortejo, follower of Alonzo de Herrera, arrested, his right hand struck off, 133

Cortés, Catalina de Arrellano, daughter of Don Hernando, died young, 212

Cortés, Hernando. Sets out for Honduras, appoints Lieutenant-Governors for Mexico, 2; reception at Coatzacoalcos, 6; gives powers to Factor and Veedor, 7; leaves Coatzacoalcos, 10; at Istapa, 12;

at Ciguatpecad, 17; starts for Acalá, 21; suffers from hunger, 22; consults Caciques of Acalá, 24; orders Guatemoc to be hanged, 27; hurt by a fall, 29; visits Island of Tayasal, 34; crosses Rio Dulce, 45; meets the followers of Gil González, 46; on expedition up Rio Dulce, 50-53; at Chacujal, 51; is wounded, 52; goes to Puerto de Caballos, 53; arrives at Trujillo, 60; pardons men from Panuco, 60; El Capitan hue hue de Marina, 62; sends a report to Santo Domingo, 63; sends a ship to Islands of the Guanages, 64, 65; illness of, 70; hears bad news from Mexico, letter from Zuazo, 71; reported to have been killed, 74; accused of marking gold with false die, 78; depressing effect of Zuazo's letter, 79; plans to return to Mexico, 80; sends presents to Francisco Hernandez, 80; sends Diego de Goday to Naco, 81; sets sail for Mexico, returns to Trujillo, 83; his bad health, 83; his letter to Sandoval, 84; sends Dorantes on secret mission to Mexico, 87; agrees to return to Mexico, 96; sails for Havana, 97; arrives Port of Medellin, 98; Vera Cruz, 99; reception by the Indians, 100; arrival in Mexico, 101; his houses, 101; receives letters from His Majesty, 104; conducts Luis Ponce de Leon into the city, 107; asks Luis Ponce to exhibit the Royal Decrees, 108; interview with Luis Ponce, 109; defeats intrigues of Fray Tomas Ortiz, 111, 112; his Residencia begun, 113; accused of poisoning Luis Ponce and Garay, 115, 128; affronted by Alonzo de Estrada, 133; banished from Mexico City, 134; prepares to go to Spain, 135; shows his loyalty, 136; buys ships for his voyage, 140; embarks at Vera Cruz, arrives in Spain, 141; at Sandoval's death bed, 142; his devotions at N. S. de Guadalupe, meets Doña Maria de Mendosa and her sister, 143; his attention to those ladies, 144; an offer of marriage; arrives at Court (Toledo) 145; his reception by the Emperor, created Marques del Valle and Knight of Santiago and Captain-General of New Spain and the South Sea, 146, 147; his behaviour

annoys some grandees, 147; begins to lose favour with the Emperor, accompanies the Emperor to Barcelona, 149; preparations for his marriage, gifts of jewels to Doña Juana de Zuñiga, 149; offers to send expeditions to the South Sea, 150; sends Juan de Herreda on a mission to the Pope, 151; claims made against him before the Audiencia, 159, 160; returns to Mexico, 176; dispute about number of vassals, 177; resides at Cuernavaca, begins to build ships, 178; sends expedition to the Moluccas, 179; despatches another expedition of two ships to the South Sea, 180; failure of expedition, despatches third expedition, 181; its failure, 182, 183; prepares to lead expedition himself, 183; reaches Santa Cruz, 184; failure of the expeditions, 185; discovers California, 186; returns to Cuernavaca, 187; sends ships on another expedition under Francisco de Ulloa, 187, 188; gives a great banquet, 193; lamed by blow on his instep, 196; goes to Spain, received with distinction at Court, 199; his Residencia taken, 200; refused leave to return to Mexico, 200; joins the Emperor's fleet against Algiers, his ship wrecked, loss of jewels, 209; goes to Seville to meet his daughter, his illness, goes to Castilleja de la Cuesta, his death, 211; and burial, 211, 212; his age, his sons and daughters, 212, 213; his will, his coat-of-arms, 213; appearance and disposition, 214; dress and ornaments, 215; his obstinacy and valour, 216-219; his habits, 220

Cortés, Juana, daughter of Don Hernando, married to Hernando Enriquez, 212

Cortés, Leonor, daughter of Don Hernando, married Juanes de Toluca, 212

Cortés, Luis, bastard son of Don Hernando, Comendador of Santiago, 212

Cortés, Maria, eldest daughter of Hernando Cortés, her marriage with Don Álvaro Pérez Osorio broken off, 211; married to the Conde de Luna de Leon, 212

Cortés, Martin, father of Don Hernando, 72, 113; death of, 139

- Cortés, Martin**, eldest son of Don Hernando and successor to the title, 212
- Cortés, Martin**, son of Doña Marina, shipwrecked, 209; Comendador of Santiago, 212
- Copilco**, 10, 11
- Coyoacan**, 134; convent founded at, 213
- Cozumel**, 63
- Crosses** cut on Ceiba trees, 17, 28
- Cuantitlan**, Pueblo of, 225 (note), 318
- Cuellar**, Fulano de, 230
- Cuellar**, Juan de, 230
- Cuenca**, Simon de, Mayor-domo to Cortes, to take command of vessel with supplies, 8, 17; death of, 18, 74, 227
- Cuernavaca**, 133, 178, 187
- Cues** or Temples, 263
- Cueva**, Doña Beatriz de la, second wife of Pedro de Alvarado, 204, 321
- Cueva**, Doña Francisca de la, wife of Pedro de Alvarado, her death, 204, 320
- Cueva**, Don Pedro de la, ordered to Mexico to investigate, 129; his voyage postponed, 130; his friendship with Cortés, 151
- Cueva**, Francisco de la, Licentiate, Lieutenant-Governor of Guatemala, 321
- Cuscatlan** (a Province of Salvador), 119, 120
- Cuyuacan**, 54
- Deer**, hunted by Spaniards, 31; considered as gods, 31
- Delgadillo**, Oidor of the Royal Audiencia, 154, 161; accepts bribes, 162; dismissed from office, 163, 164, 165; his Residencia taken, 170; fined and imprisoned, 171; sent back to Spain, 172
- Delgadillo**, Alcalde Mayor of the Zapotecs, 162; dies in prison, 171
- Dialogue** with "Fame," 275-277
- Diaz**, Cristóbal, crossbowman, 238
- Diaz del Castillo**, Bernal, goes on Expedition to Cimatán, 9; joins Cortés, 11; sent ahead to Acalá, 19; brings food for the Spaniards, 21; other expeditions in search of food, 25, 37-39; 40, 41; at the crossing of Rio Motagua, 55; reproved by Sandoval, 56; arrives at Naco, 56; unwell, 57; sent from Naco to Trujillo, 69; meets Cortés, 70; begs Cortés to take him with him to Mexico, 80; starts overland for Mexico with Luis Marin, 81; reaches Naco, 82; his anger at a letter from Cortés, 84; his horses, 85; sent to Trujillo for news, reaches Olancho, 117; returns to Luis Marin, 118; reaches Mexico, 121; lodges with Andrés de Tápia, 122; has interview with Marcos de Aguilar, 122; Proctor for Coatzacoalcos, 155; fined and banished from City by the Audiencia, 159; signs statement in favour of Cortés, banishment repealed, 160; goes to Spain, 199; returns to Mexico, 200; comments on Cortés's reports, 223; record of services, 251; his accurate memory, 258, 259; his character as a soldier, 261; the oldest of the Conquistadores, 273; summoned to Spain, 281; attends Council on Perpetual Assignment, 284; returns from Court, 285; defends himself against his critics, 286-291; record of battles in which he was engaged, 291-294; destroys the iron for branding slaves, 309; appointed Inspector-General of Coatzacoalcos and Tabasco, 310; shocked at treatment of Honduras, 329
- Díaz**, Gaspar, a soldier, becomes a hermit, 244
- Díaz de Herrera**, Diego, Governor of Honduras, 328
- Díaz de Lugo**, Doctor Juan Bernal, 200
- Díaz**, Juan, a presbyter, 237
- Díaz**, Juan, of Burgos, 238
- Díaz**, Miguel, his lawsuit about Pueblo of Mestitan, 113
- Domínguez**, Gonzalo, 227; his appearance and character, 257
- Donayre**, Francisco, a furrier, 85
- Dorantes**, Martin, sent by Cortés to Mexico, 87; reaches the City in disguise, 88, 90
- Drunkenness** among Indians, 263
- Duran**, Alonzo, 242
- Earthquakes** in Guatemala, 120, 326, 327
- Education** among the Indians, 268
- Emperor**, The (Charles V.), expresses approval of Cortés, 95; displeased with Cortés, appoints Alonzo de Estrada sole Governor, 129; receives Cortés at Court, 146; and

- visits him when ill, 147; prepares fleet against Algiers, 209
- Empress, The**, Doña Isabel, jealous of Cortés's gifts to his wife, 150; her death, 199
- Enríquez**, Don Enrique, 209
- Enríquez**, a soldier, 246
- Escalante**, a soldier, becomes a Friar, 243
- Escalante**, Juan de, 224
- Escalona**, a youth, 242
- Escobar**, hanged for plotting, 94, 248
- Escobar**, Alonzo, 248
- Escobar**, bachelor, an apothecary, 248
- Escudero**, Pedro, 235
- Espinosa**, throe of the name, 241
- Esquivel**. See Luis de Esquivel.
- Estrada**, Alonzo de, the Treasurer, appointed Lieutenant-Governor, 2, 25; ejected from Government and imprisoned, 72, 73; re-appointed Governor by Cortés, 87-90; quells the plot to release the Factor, 94; 107; becomes Governor on death of Aguilar, 126; appointed sole Governor by the Emperor, 129; sends out various expeditions, 130-132; banishes Cortés from Mexico City, 134; his Residencia taken by the Royal Audiencia, 157; his death, 157
- Factor**. See Gonzales de Salazar.
- "Fame,"** a dialogue, 275-277
- Farfan**, Luis, 249
- Fenced Pueblo**, The, 31
- Festival** in Celebration of Peace between Spain and France, 188-198
- Figuerola**, sent on Expedition against Zapotecs, wounded in dispute with Herrera, 131; excavates Indian graves and finds golden jewels, returns to Mexico, sails for Spain, lost at sea, 132
- Fish**, caught in lake, 32
- Flamenco**, Juan, falls ill, 63, 233
- Flores**, Cristóbal, 226
- Flores** de Oaxaca, Francisco, 228
- Florians**, two brothers, 234
- Florin**, Juan, French Pirate, 225 (note)
- Franciscan Friars**, accompany expedition to Honduras, 3, 16, 61; fall ill, 62; accompanying expedition to the South Sea; landed at Jalisco, 182
- Friars**, arrival of Franciscans and Dominicans in New Spain, 264
- Fuensalida**, Padre Bartolome de, 34, 35
- Gallego**, Alvaro, 245
- Gallego**, Pedro, 242
- Gallego**, Rivadeo, 244
- Galleguillo**, 244
- Gaona**, Fulano de, 248
- Garavito**, Fulano, friend of Pedrarias, 82; his old feud with Cortés, 83; meets Luis Marin at Chuluteca, 119
- Garces**, Don Fray Julian, first Bishop of Tlaxcala, acts as mediator between Cortés and the Treasurer, 135; a second attempt, his praise of Cortés, 137
- García**, Bartolomé, 250
- García de Loayza**, Don Fray, Knight Commander of St. John of Rhodes, in command of a fleet from Spain for Chiua, 179
- García de Loaysa**, President of the Indies, 139, 148
- García**, Juan, a blacksmith, 245
- García**, Martin, the Valencian, Alguacil, 19, 236
- Garci-Caro**, Falconer, on expedition to Honduras, 3, 234
- Garay**, Francisco de, 111
- Garnica**, Gaspar de, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3
- Garro**, Pedro de, arrested by Sandoval and brought to Naco, 67, 80; returns to Nicaragua, 82; flees from Pedrarias and joins Sandoval, 83
- Gasca**, Licentiate de la, goes to Court, 280; Bishop of Palencia, 281; opposes Perpetual Assignment, 283
- Genovés**, Lucas, 246
- Genovés**, Juan, 246
- Genovés**, Fulano, 246
- Geronimite Friars**, 63
- Gines Nortes**. See Nortes.
- Girimonga**, 59
- Godoy**, Diego de, left as Captain at Puerto de Caballos, 58; sent to Naco, 81, 97, 105, 110
- Golfo Dulce**, 43; Cortés crosses the river, 45
- Gomara**, Francisco López de, 286-288
- Gómez**, Juan, 234
- González**, Pedro, servant of the Factor, 90
- González de Ávila**, Gil, 34, 43, 46, 49, 60, 63; arrives in Mexico, 76; arrested by the Factor and sent to Spain, 77

- Gonzáles de Benavides**, Gil, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3; lawsuit about Cuautitlan, his sons beheaded, 225, 226 (note), 318
- Gonzáles de Najera**, Francisco, 234
- Gonzáles de Trujillo**, Pedro, hanged by order of Nuño de Guzman, 126
- Gonzáles Sabote**, Pedro, appointed guard to the Factor, 78, 89, 247
- Government**, Local, among the Indians, 269, 270
- Grado**, Alonso de, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3; married a daughter of Montezuma, 228
- Granado**, Fulano, 231
- Grijalva**, Hernando de, Captain of a vessel on expedition to the South Sea under Beserra, 181; separates from Beserra, discovers uninhabited Island of San Tome, 182
- Guadalupe** (Spain), 143
- Guañura**, native name of Trujillo, 329
- Guanages** Islands, 61, Indians from complain to Cortés, 64
- Guaniguanico**, Sierra of, 64
- Guaspaltepec** or Guazpaltepecque, an encomienda of Sandoval, 5, 6; given to the Accountant Alborno, 162; gift rescinded, 164
- Guatemala** (Antigua), 120
- Guatemala**, Government of, 320-325
- Guatemala** (Iximché), 120
- Guatemoc**, Mexican Cacique. Taken by Cortés on expedition to Honduras, 2, 15; in plot to kill Spaniards, 26; confession, speech and death, 27-29
- Guautilan**. See Cuautitlan.
- Guayabal**, Bay of, 185
- Gueacalá**, 12. See Aculá.
- Gueatasta**, 18
- Guerrero**, Augustin, Mayor - domo to the Viceroy, 196, 206
- Guinea**, steward, on expedition to Honduras, 3, 16, 21; falls ill, 63
- Gutierrez**, Francisco, 234
- Gutiérrez**, Fulano, 233
- Gutiérrez de la Cavalleria**, Doña Marina, wife of Alonso de Estrada, pleads for better treatment of Cortés, 134
- Guzman**, a locksmith, employed by conspirators to make keys, 93; reveals the plot, 94
- Guzman**, Juan de Enríquez, 125; Captain in Chiapa, his Residencia taken, 130
- Guzman**, Luis de, Captain of Artillery, 78, 89, 90; his marriage, 125
- Guzman**, Nuño de, Governor of Punuco, 72; orders Pedro Gonzáles to be hanged, 126; made President of the Royal Audiencia, 154, 161; gives franchises for branding slaves, 162; dismissed from office, 163-165; settles Province of Jalisco, 167; hangs the Cacique Cazonzin, 168; his Residencia ordered, he refuses to leave Jalisco, his Residencia to be taken in Jalisco, 170; returns on parole to Mexico, 173; imprisoned and released, 174; his Residencia taken by Vásquez Coronado, 175; sends expedition to Island of Santa Cruz (note), 183; goes as a prisoner to Spain, 188; in favour with Viceroy, 189; always to remain at the Court of Spain, 200, 313, 318
- Guzman**, Pedro de, 238
- Hennequen** cloth used for a map, 12, 14
- Hermadad**, The, 108
- Hernández de Alanís**, Gonzalo, 232
- Hernández**, Diego, 239
- Hernández**, Francisco, sent to Nicaragua, 67, 68; receives presents from Cortés, 80; beheaded by order of Pedro Arias de Ávila, 331
- Hernández**, Gonzalo, ill-treated by the Factor, 79
- Hernández Paulo**, Alonso, and two nephews, 237
- Hernández**, Pedro, Secretary to Cortés, 238
- Hernández**, Pero, Governor of Sonconusco, flees to Castile, 330, 331
- Hernández Puertocarrero**, Alonso, record of services, 231
- Hernández**, Santos, 230
- Herrada**, Juan de, sent by Cortés on a mission to the Pope, 151, returns to Mexico, thence to Peru, tutor to Don Diego Almagro, 152; made Conde Palatino, 153
- Herrera**, Alonso de, Captain of expedition against the Zapotecs, 125; wounds Figueroa, 131; his arrest ordered, escapes to mountains, 133, 241
- Herrera**, Doctor, Oidor under the Viceroy, 315, 323
- Holguin**, García, 160
- Honduras**, Governors of, 328, 329
- Horse**, belonging to Cortés, left at Tayasal, worshipped by Indians, 34, 35

- Hospital** (de Jesus) founded by Cortés in Mexico, 213
- Huexotzingo**, Volcano near, used as coat-of-arms by Ordaz, 74
- Huisquil**, (note) 13
- Huitzilopochtli** or **Huichilobos**, 75
- Hurones**, Gonzalo, 249
- Hurtado de Mendosa**, Diego, in command of expedition to the South Sea, 180; failure of expedition, Hurtado lost, 181, 188
- Iguanas**, good to eat, 32
- Iquinuapa**, 10
- Ircio**, Pedro de, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3; offers to go in search of food refused, 37, 38, 40, 41, 224; his appearance, age and character, 255
- Istapa**, 11, 12
- Itzáes**, Indians of the Lake of Peten, 34 (note)
- Iztapalapa**, 106, 107, 121
- Jaen**, Cristóbal de, 246
- Jalisco**, 182, 183, 185, 188, 318, 319
- Jaramillo**, Juan, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3; married to Doña Marina, 5; loses his baggage in river, 6, 51, 226
- Juarez la Marcaida**, Doña Catalina, wife of Cortés, 113, 160
- Jarra**, Rodrigo de, 233
- Jiménes**, two brothers, 234
- Juarez**, the elder, Fulano, 234
- Juarez**, Juan, brother-in-law of Cortés, brings wicked claim against Cortés, 113
- Juggler**, taken on expedition to Honduras, 4; dies on the road, 14, 15; Indian jugglers taken to Spain, 138, 144, 151
- Lacandones**, a tribe of uncivilized Indians, 30
- Lagos**, a soldier, 237
- Landecho**. See Martínez de.
- La Purificación**, Port of, 201, 205; pueblo of, 208
- La Rabida**, Monastery of, 141, 142
- Lares**, the good horseman, his appearance and character, 257
- Lares**, a crossbowman, 227
- Lares**, Fulano, 227
- Larios**, 234
- Las Casas**, Fray Bartolomé de, 102, 285
- Las Casas**, Francisco de, 1, 34, 44, 60, 63; arrives in Mexico, 76; arrested by Factor and sent to Spain, 77, 87, 96
- Lempa**, River, 119
- Lencero**, owner of inn, 242
- Leon**, Juan, settler at Villa Rica, 242
- Leon**, Luis de, manager of festival celebrating peace, 189
- Lerma**, a soldier, 244
- Lerma** (or Lema), Hernando de, 234
- Limpías Caravajal**, Juan de, 230, 285
- Loa**, Guillen de la, 249
- Loayza**, Catalina de, married to the Accountant Alborno, 162
- Loayza**, Licentiate, Oidor under the Viceroy, returns to Spain, 173
- Loayza**, Licentiate of Talavera, in Guatemala, 324; Oidor in Chili, 325
- López Cerrato**, Alonzo, President of the Audiencia of Guatemala, 323
- López**, Alvar, 240
- López de Ávila**, Hernan, accompanies expedition for Honduras, 3; returns to Mexico invalided, 7, 235
- López**, Benito, a curate, destroys the iron for branding slaves, 309; appointed Inspector-General of Coat-zacoalcos and Talasco, 310
- López**, Gonzalo, Proctor from Mexico to Spain, 281
- López de Gimena**, Gonzalo, 230
- López de Gimena**, Juan, 230
- López de Villa Nueva**, Diego, 118
- López**, Pedro, Licentiate, Doctor, on the expedition to Honduras, 3; escapes from shipwreck, reports to Audiencia of Santo Domingo, falls ill, 62, 64; attends Luis Ponce, 114
- López**, Martin, shipwright, 231
- López**, Pero or Pedro, a pilot, on expedition to Honduras, 14
- López**, Pedro, a crossbowman, 245
- López**, Roman, 230
- López**, Tomas, Licentiate, Oidor in Guatemala, 323
- Loyalty** of Mexico to Spain, 272
- Lugo**, Bishop of, 200
- Lugo**, Francisco de, 225, 226
- Luis**, Alonzo or Juan, "el niño," 236
- Lyntorno**, a soldier, becomes a friar, 244 "
- Madrigal**, settler at Villa Rica, 242
- Maestre**, Pedro, the harpist, 249
- Magalanes**, a Portuguese, 240

- Maldonado**, Oidor of the Royal Audiencia, 154; dies of pleurisy, 155
- Maldonado**, Alonzo, Oidor of Royal Audiencia 169; made Governor of Guatemala, 172, 173; rescues Cristóbal de Onate at Nochistlan, 208; returns to Spain, 322, 323
- Maldonado**, Fulano, Captain of ship, 202
- Maldonado**, the broad, 227
- Maldonado** of Medellin, a youth, 241
- Maldonado** of Vera Cruz, 241, 242
- Maniani**, 86, 118
- Manzanilla**, Juan de, 242; Pedro de, 242
- Mansilla**, Juana de, wife of Alonzo Valiente, refuses to re-marry, whipped through the streets, 75; publicly honoured in Mexico, 91
- Mañuelo**, Rodrigo, Maestresala on expedition to Honduras, 3
- Mañueco**, Rodrigo, death of, 81
- Map**, made by natives, 12, 14, 24
- Marcos de Niza**, Fray, reports on Cibola, 202
- Maria de Valenzuela**, wife of Pánfilo de Narvaez, 159
- Marin**, Luis, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3, 18, 24, 47, 49; sent from Naco to Trujillo, 69; ordered to return to Naco, 80; leaves for Mexico, 81; left in command by Sandoval, 86, 110; sends for news to Trujillo, 117; continues his march, 118; meets Pedro de Alvarado, 118; reaches Mexico, 121, 122; his age and appearance, 255
- Marina**, Doña, Interpreter, taken by Cortés on expedition to Honduras, 2; married to Juan Jaramillo, 5; as interpreter, 15, 24, 27, 28, 32, 33, 42, 51, 60; El Capitan hue hue de Marina, 62
- Marmolejo**, Francisco, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3; goes in search of food, 40; sent by Luis Marin to Trujillo for news, 117
- Martin de Alpedrino**, Alonzo, a Portuguese, 240
- Martin de Ayomonte**, Diego, 239
- Martin**, Don Fray, appointed Bishop of Las Charcas, 280; opposes Perpetual Assignment, 283
- Martin de Gamboa**, Cristóbal, 227
- Martínes** of Fronegal, two brothers 237
- Martínez de Landecho**, Juan, President of the Audiencia of Guatemala, 323, 324; his death at Panama, 325
- Martyn**, Hernan, a blacksmith, 245
- Maseguals** or Mazeguals = vassals, 65
- Masses** celebrated for soul of Cortés, bought by Juan Cáceres, 123
- Master of Rhodes**, nickname of a settler, 191; his adventures in Spain with quack remedies, 197, 198
- Matienzo**, Oidor of Royal Audiencia, 154, 161; a hard drinker, 162; dismissed from office, sent to Panuco to enquire about branding slaves, 163, 164, 165; his Residencia taken, 170; fined and imprisoned 171; sent back to Spain, 172
- Mazariegos**, Diego de, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3; goes with Bernal Díaz to search for food, 25; at the crossing of the Rio Motagua, 55; sent as Captain to Chiapa, 130
- Mazatecas**, Land of the, or land of deer, 30, 31
- Maçapa**, River (Rio de dos Bocas), 10
- Mechuacan**, Indians from, die on the expedition to Honduras, 15
- Medellin**, Port of, 98; sickness at, 115
- Medina**, Francisco de, on expedition to Honduras, 10, 17; death of, 18, 74, 227
- Medina**, Francisco, of Medina del Campo, becomes a friar, 243
- Medina Sidonia**, Duque de, gives reception to Cortés at Seville, 143
- Méndez**, Fulano, 248
- Mendoza**, Antonio de, appointed Viceroy of New Spain, 173; gives a great banquet, 193; sends to quell revolt at Nochistlan, 200, 201; sends expedition to discover Cibola, 201; meets Pedro de Alvarado at Chiribitio, 206; discussions regarding Alvarado's fleet, 207; sends three ships to Spice Islands, 208, 209; his Residencia, 315; made Viceroy of Peru, his death, 316
- Mendoza**, Doña Maria de, wife of Don Francisco de Cobos, Comendador - Mayor of Leon, meets Cortés at Guadalupe, 144, 145, 148, 149; deceived by the Master of Rhodes, 197, 198, 200
- Merchants**, Indian, captured on the Rio Dulce, 49

- Mesa**, a soldier, 236
Mexia, Gonzalo, nicknamed Rapa-Mpelo, sent to Acalá, 19
Mexia, Licentiate, Oidor under the M^oViceroy, 315; in Guatemala, 324; President of Audiencia of Santo Domingo, 324
Mistitan, Pueblo, subject of lawsuit, 113
Mijes rise in revolt, 73; expeditions against, 130-132
Mol, Andrés de, 250
Moluccas, The, expeditions to, 179, 180
Mondejar, Marquis, President of the Council of the Indies, and others discuss the Perpetual Assignment, 281-285
Monjaraz, Andrés de, on expedition against the Zapotecs, 73, 226; his appearance and age, 256
Monroy, Alonzo de, "el manco," 236
Montañez, Alvaro, on expedition to Honduras, 3
Montañez, Rabanal, 238
Montejo, Francisco de, Adelantado of Yucatan, 224, 225 (note); his appearance, age and character, 253, 319, 323
Montejo, Francisco de, page to Cortés on expedition to Honduras (son of the Adelantado of Yucatan), 3
Morales, Alcalde of Vera Cruz, 242
Moreno Medrano, Pedro, 88, 99, 230, 285
Moreno the Bachelor, attempts to steal Indians from the Guanages, 65; consulted by Francisco Hernández, 67
Morillas, a soldier, 249
Morla, Francisco de, 227
Morla of Ciudad Rodrigo, 227
Moron, Fulano, 233
Moron, Fulano, of Gines, 227
Motagua, Rio, 54
Motilla, Sandoval's celebrated horse, 85, 253
Motolinea, Fray Toribio, charged with conversion of natives, 2, 88
Musicians taken on expedition to Honduras, 3, 16; die of hunger, 26

Nacajuca, 11
Naco, 44, 49, 53, 54, 59, 66, 81, 82, 117
Najara, Juan de, 231
Narvaez, Panfilo de, granted the conquest of Rio de Palmas, 72, 111; his appearance, age and character, 258
Nasao, Conde de, 147-149
Natividad, La. See Puerto de Caballos.
Natividad, Port of, on Pacific Coast, 187, 207
Navarrete, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3, 232
Navarro, a soldier, 242
Nicaragua, Government of, 331, 332
Nicuesa, a soldier killed by Indians, 119
Nieto, Antonio, elected leader by followers of Gil González, 45, 47
Nito, 28, 34, 46
Nochistlan, in Jalisco, 200
Nórtes, Gines, appointed guard of the Factor, 78, 89, 90, 238
Núñez, Andrés, 249
Núñez de Balboa, Vasco, beheaded by order of Pedro Arias de Ávila, 68, 331
Núñez de Mercado, Juan, 88, 238

Oaxaca, 121, 131
Ocampo, Gonzalo Rios de (or Rodriguez or Diego), accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3; as equerry, 4; defamatory libels, 7, 91; arrested by Cortés, 102
Ocaña, a Notary, arrested by Cortés, 102
Ochoa, a Basque, 246
Oculizte, 42, 43
Ojeda, the squint-eyed, 5, 231
Ojeda Doctor, attends Luis Ponce, 114
Olancho, 62, Indians of, complain to Cortés, 96; also called Guayape, 117
Olea, Cristóbal de, record of services, 229; his appearance, age and character, 256
Olid, Cristóbal de, 1, 34, 43, 56, 60, 63, 110, 223
Olintepec, 121
Olmedo, Fray Bartolomé de, 237
Olmedo, Rogel de, Oidor in Guatemala, 323
Onate, Cristóbal de, Acting Governor of Jalisco, 175, 202; begs help at Nochistlan from Pedro de Alvarado, 207; nearly defeated, rescued by Maldonado, 208
Orantes, Martin de. See Dorantes.
Orbita, Padre Juan de, 34, 35 (note)
Ordás, Diego de, returns from Spain with the Order of San-

- tiago, 74; goes to Xicalango, reports that Cortés is dead, 74; sails for Cuba, 74; returns, 122; denies reporting that Cortés was dead, 123; advises Cortés to assume more state, 124; dies in the Marañon, 226; his appearance, age and character, 254, 255
- Orduña**, Francisco de, the Elder, takes the Residencia of Jorge de Alvarado, 157, 320
- Orosco**, Francisco de, 236
- Ortega**, the Bachelor of, acts as Chief Alcalde, 94
- Ortequilla**, page to Montezuma, 248
- Ortiz**, a musician, 250
- Ortiz**, Alonzo, carries news to Cortés, 44
- Ortiz de Argueta**, Alonzo, Governor of Honduras, 329
- Ortiz**, Fray Tomas, 105; complains of poisoned food at feast, 106; present at interview between Luis Ponce and Cortés, 109; his intrigues defeated, 111, 112; says that Sandoval and Cortés poisoned Luis Ponce and Garay, 115
- Ortuño de Lango**, in command of a tender arrives at Tehuantepec from the China fleet, 179
- Osorio**, Baltazar, Captain of an expedition to Tabasco, 125, 230
- Pacayas**, Inflorescence of Palm, used as food, 48
- Pacheco**, 233
- Pacheco**, Pedro de, Governor of Soconusco, his death, 331
- Page** of Sandoval, condemned to lose his hand, 133
- Palma**, Pedro de, 250
- Palmas**, Rio de, 72
- Palm nuts**, as food, 21, 48
- Panuco**, 60, 72
- Papayeca**, 62
- Parada**, Oidor of the Royal Audiencia, 154; dies of pleurisy, 155
- Pardo**, Bartolomé, 235
- Paredes**, a soldier, 245
- Pastrana**, hanged for plotting, 94
- Paynado**, Fulano, 244
- Paz**, Rodrigo de, appointed Alguacil and Mayor-domo, 2, 4, 72; imprisoned, 73; tortured and hanged, 76-78
- Peace**, celebrations of, between Spain and France, 188-198
- Pedernales**, Sierra de los, 36
- Pedrarias** de Avila. See Arias de Avila.
- Pedraza**, Diego de, Master Surgeon, on the expedition to Honduras, 3
- Peña**, sent by the Factor with despatches to Spain, 76
- Peñalosa**, 247
- Peñates**, Los, of Gibraltar, 251
- Perales**, Falconers, on expedition to Honduras, 3
- Peralta**, Don Gaston de, Marques de Falces, appointed Viceroy, 317
- Pererelmayte**, Alonzo, 247
- Pérez de Cabrera**, Juan, Governor of Honduras, 329
- Pérez**, Juan, 233
- Perez**, Malinche or Artiaga, 247
- Peron**, Pedro, 241
- Perpetual Assignment**, 155, 282-285
- Petapa Pueblo**, 120
- Phoenix**, The, a cannon, 290
- Pichin**, Rio, 69
- Pilar**, Fulano de, 231
- Pineda** or **Pinedo**, 245
- Pinto**, Niño, 243
- Piuzons**, The, of Palos, 251
- Pizarro**, Fulano, a Captain, 240
- Pizarro**, Hernando, arrives at Court from Peru, 199; made prisoner, 200
- Plazuela**, 247
- Plot** to murder Spaniards, 26
- Polanco**, de, 234
- Poison Grass**, 69
- Ponce de Leon**, Licentiate, ordered to take the Residencia of Cortés, reaches San Juan de Ulúa, 103; corresponds with Cortés, 104; misinformed by enemies of Cortés, 105; arrives at Iztapalapa, 106; enters Mexico with Cortés, 107; exhibits the Royal Decrees, 108; takes over the Government, 109; interview with Cortés, 109; falls ill of sleeping-sickness, 113; appoints Marcos de Aguilar as his successor, his death, 114, 115; buried at Monastery of San Francisco, 115
- Ponce de Santiago**, 248
- Pope Clement**, 151
- Porras**, a great singer, 249
- Portillo**, Sindos de, 243
- Proaño**, Chief Alguacil, 105, 108
- Proaño**, Fulano, his dispute with Alonzo de Estrada, 127
- Puebla**, Lance-page to Cortés on expedition to Honduras, 3
- Puebla**, Tirado de la, 232
- Puerto de Caballos**, or Natividad, 53, 58, 59, 205, 206
- Fuerto**, Juan del, 237

- Quemera**, pueblo, 69
Quequexque, roots of, used as food, 13 (note)
Quesada of Ledesma, Doctor, Oidor under the Viceroy, 173; appointed to count Cortés's vassals, 177, 315, 323
Quespan, 66
Quijada, Licentiate, Governor of Yucatan, 319
Quimiztlan, Quismistan or Quimistan, 56, 59
Quintero, a soldier, becomes friar, 243
Quintero, a shipmaster, 250
Quiñones, Antonio de, Captain of Cortés's bodyguard, sent as Proctor to Spain, killed at Terceira, 225 (note)
Quiñones, Pedro Ramírez de, 323
Quirova, or Quivoga, **Vasco de**, Oidor of the Audiencia of Mexico, 170; appointed Bishop of Mechucan, 172, 281; supports Perpetual Assignment, 281-283
- Rafts**, used in crossing rivers, 12
Ramires the Elder, 249
Ramírez de Quiñones, Pedro, 323
Ramírez de Villa Escusa, Don Sebastian, Bishop of Santo Domingo, President of Audiencia, 169; returns to Spain, made Bishop of Tuy and Leon and Chancellor of Valladolid, and Bishop of Cuenca, his death, 172, 310, 314
Rangel, Rodrigo, 235
Rapelo, nickname of Gonzalo Mexia, 19
Realgar = red sulphide of arsenic, 106, 128
Residencia General proclaimed against Cortés, 112
Retamales, a soldier, 238
Revolts in Mexico, 327, 328
Rewards, insufficient, 278
Ribera, Pedro de, 19
Rico de Alanis, Juan, 232
Rio, Juan del, 232
Rios, Gregorio, a Portuguese, 240
Rivas, Altas or Altias, killed by Juan Velásquez de Leon, 254
Rodas, Andrés de, 235
Rodrigo, Fray, Dominican Friar, 283
Rodríguez, Alonso, 250
Rodríguez Margariño, Francisco, 228
Rodríguez, Sebastian, 247
Rojas, Fulano de, 249
- Rojas**, Captain under Pedrarias, 96; ejected from Olancho by Sandoval, 97
Romero, Alonso, 243
Ruano, Juan, 228
Rubios, Palacios, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3; death of his horse, 31; breaks his leg, 436
Ruiz de Alanis, Juan, 232
Ruiz de Esquivel, Mayor-domo to Cortés, 139; his mysterious death, 140
Ruiz de la Mota, Gerónimo, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3
Ruiz de la Parra, Juan, 233
Ruiz de Rojas, Marcos, Captain of ship, 202
- Sacachul**, Cacique of Old Guatemala (Iximché), 120
Sacachules, birds like pheasants kept by Indians, 51
Sacrifices, human, 262
Salazar, Chamberlain, on expedition to Honduras, 3
Salazar, Gonzalo de, the Factor, accompanies Cortés to Coatzacoalcos, 4; attentions to Cortés, 5; given authority to act as Governor, and returns to Mexico, 7; assumes government of Mexico, 72, 73; puts on mourning for Cortés, proclaims himself Captain-General, 74; brings suits against Conquistadores, sends despatches to Spain, 76-78; fortifies his house, 78; his commission revoked by Cortés, 87; imprisoned in a cage, 90, 124; released, 133; makes friends with Nuño de Guzman, prevents the Perpetual Assignment, 156; embarks for Spain, shipwrecked and returns to Mexico, 156; makes claims against Cortés, 157; 165
Salazar de la Pedrada dies of pleurisy, 105
Saldaña, a soldier, 248
Salmeron, Oidor of Royal Audiencia, 170; returns to Spain, 171
Sánchez, Captain Miguel or Luis, 122
San Alifonso, town founded in Zapotec country, 132
San Anton, Cape of, 64
Sánchez, Gaspar, 250
Sánchez, Gonzalo, a Portuguese, 240
Sánchez, Farfan, Pedro, 248
Sandoval, Gonzalo de, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3, 22, 23

- 24, 38, 40, 41; goes ahead to the Rio Dulce, 43; meets the followers of Gil González, 44; returns to Cortés, 45; at the crossing of the Rio Dulce, a quarrel with Sayavedra, 47, 48, 49; ordered to go to Naco, 53, 54; arrives at Naco, 56, 57, 59; arrests Pedro de Garro, 67; pleads for patience with Cortés, 85; visits Cortés at Trujillo, 86; expels Rojas from Olancho, 97; accused of poisoning Luis Ponce and Garay, 115; 117; acts as intercessor for Bernal Díaz, 122; becomes joint Governor with A. de Estrada, 127; affronted by Estrada, 133; prepares to go to Spain, 135; embarks at Vera Cruz, reaches Spain, robbed of his gold, his death at Palos, 141; burial at La Rabida, 142; 222, 223; his appearance, age and character, 223-4.
- San Francisco**, Monastery of, as a place of refuge, 88
- Sandoval**, Tello de, takes Residencia of the Viceroy and Oidores, becomes President of the Council of the Indies, 315
- San Gil de Buena Vista**, 34, 46, 49
- San Juanes**, two of the name, 241
- San Miguel**, Fulano de, Chamberlain, on expedition to Honduras, 3
- San Pedro and San Pablo**, River, 184
- Santa Cruz**, Burgalés, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3; given Power of Attorney by Cortés, 138
- Santa Cruz**, Island of, 182, 183
- Santiago**, Fulano de, 248
- Santiago Señor**, the church of, 75
- Santillana**, Licentiate, Oidor under the Viceroy, 173, 315
- Santistevan**, the Elder, 235
- Santo Domingo**, Admiral of, ordered to arrest Cortés, 103
- Santa Domingo**, 'Royal Audiencia of, 63, 64
- Sauzedo**, Francisco de, "el galan," 227
- Sauzedo**, Pedro de, the flat-nosed, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3; 85, 86
- Sayavedra**, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3; a relation of Cortés, quarrels with Sandoval, 47, 48, made Captain-General of Trujillo, 60; on expedition, 62, 86; fails to deliver letters from Cortés, 97, 117, 118
- Sayavedra Zeron**, Álvaro de, in command of expedition to the Moluccas, 179, 180, 209
- Sedeño**, Juan, 239
- Serna**, Fulano de la, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3, 231
- Serrano**, a crossbowman, 250
- Siguenza**, Cardinal de, 142
- Silver Mines**, 273
- Sinacatencintla**. See Cinacatencintle.
- Sindos de Portillo**. See Portillo.
- Sleeping Sickness**, 113, 115, 117
- Soconusco**, 121, bad government of, 329-331
- Sodomy** practised in the hot country, 263
- Solis**, an old man, 228
- Solis**, "He of the Orchard," 228
- Solis, Pedro de**, "Behind the door," 228
- Solis**, Pedro, Casquete, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3; his horse drowned in the Rio Dulce, 48, 228
- Sopuesta del Candado**, a pilot, 245, 246
- Sória**, Diego de, 238
- Sória**, Bernaldino de, 235
- Swine**, great herd of, taken on expedition to Honduras, 4, 16
- Tabasco**, Caciques from, supply expedition with provisions, 11; expedition to settle, 125
- Tacuba**, Cacique of. Taken by Cortés on expedition to Honduras, 2; hanged for complicity in plot, 27, 29
- Talavera**, Alonso de, 242
- Talchinalchapa**, 66
- Tamales**, an Indian cooked food, 29
- Tamastepec**, 13 (and note), 15, 17
- Tania**, 39
- Tápia**, Andrés de, 72; takes refuge in Monastery of San Francisco, 78, 88, 89; steward of feast given to Luis Ponce, 106; accused of giving poison, 107; acts as intercessor for Bernal Díaz, 122; prepares to go to Spain, 135; accompanies Cortés on expedition to Santa Cruz, 184, 224; his appearance, age and character, 257; writes to Bernal Díaz, 285
- Tápia, Cristóbal de**, 105, 111
- Tápia**, Pedro de, 245

- Tápia**, Mexican Cacique, informs Cortés of plot against the Spaniards, 26
- Tapizuelo**, Mexican Cacique, taken by Cortés on expedition to Honduras, 2
- Tarifa**, a soldier, drowned in the Rio Dulce, 48, 247, 248; another of the same name, 247
- Tatahuitalpan**, 13 (note)
- Tayasal**, 33, 34
- Tayca**, 36, 39
- Teapa**, an Encomienda of Bernal Díaz, 11
- Tecomajaca**, an Encomienda of Bernal Díaz, 11
- Tehuantepec**, 121, 178, 179, 181-184
- Tejada** of Logroño, Licentiate, Oidor under the Viceroy, 173, 315, 316
- Tepetitan**, 11, 12, 13 (note)
- Terrazas**, Francisco de, 228
- Texcoco**, 100
- Tiltepeques**, Zapotec Pueblos, 131
- Tipu**, 34, 35 (note)
- Tlaxcala**, 100
- Tlatelolco**, 75
- Tobilla**, a soldier, 229
- Tonalá**, 10
- Torre**, Fulano de la, ordered to take Residencia of Nuño de Guzman, 170; arrives in Mexico, arrests Nuño de Guzman, 174; trick played on him, his death, 174, 175, 315
- Tostado**, Pedro, and his son, 249
- Trade and Art** among the Indians, 268, 269
- Trade and tribute** from America to Spain, 271
- Treasurer**. *See* Alonso de Estrada
- Trebejo**, a soldier, 250
- Triunfo de la Cruz**, 17, 69
- Trujillo**, 54, 83, 95
- Trujillo**, three soldiers of this name 232
- Tzimin Chac**, God of Thunder, 35 (note)
- Ulloa**, Francisco de, left in charge of Cortés's Santa Cruz expedition, 187; sent in command of another expedition to California, murdered on his return, 187, 188
- Umbria**, Gonzalo de, 235; a pilot, 246
- University of Mexico**, 272
- Valderrama**, de, Oidor, 317
- Valencia**, Pedro de, 250
- Valenciano**, Pedro, 247
- Valenzuela**, Maria de, wife of Pánfilo de Narvaez, 159
- Valiente**, Alonso, accompanies expedition to Honduras, 3, 7, 9; given Power of Attorney by Cortés, 138
- Valladolid**, Fulano de, 233
- Valladolid**, the stout, 233
- Varela**, Fulano de, 233
- Vargas** Carvajal, Juan de, Governor of Honduras, 329
- Vasco de Quirova**, Oidor of Royal Audiencia, 170. *See* Quirova.
- Vásquez Coronado**, Francisco, Conqueror of Cibola, takes Residencia of Nuño de Guzman, marries daughter of Alonso de Estrada, his death, 175, 201, 202
- Vásquez Coronado**, Juan, appointed Governor of Nicaragua and Costa Rica, lost at sea, 332
- Vásquez**, Fulano, a soldier, 239
- Vásquez**, Martín, 247
- Vásquez de Tápia**, Bernaldino, Oes as Proctor to Spain, 165-167, 229
- Veedor**. *See* Chirinos.
- Vejarano**, Zervan, Butler, on expedition to Honduras, 3
- Velasco**, Don Luis de, Viceroy for sixteen years, 317
- Velásquez**, the Bachelor Fulano, a priest, 45
- Velásquez**, Gutiere, Licentiate, 199
- Velásquez de Leon**, Juan, 224; his appearance, age and character, 254
- Velásquez**, Juan, Mexican Cacique, taken by Cortés on expedition to Honduras, 2; informs Cortés of plot against the Spaniards, 26; his death, 121
- Velásquez**, Luis, 236
- Vena**, Licentiate, practises frauds on the Viceroy and Audiencia, flogged and banished, 316
- Vendabal**, Francisco Martin, sacrificed alive, 232
- Villafuerte**, Fulano de, 233
- Villalobos**, a Cosmographer, appointed joint-captain of fleet, 206, 207; commands expedition to Spice Islands, reported taken prisoner, 209
- Villalobos**, Gregorio de, Mayor-domo to Cortés, 102
- Villalobos**, Fulano de, 232
- Villandrano**, 230

- Villanueva**, reproved by Sandoval, 56
Villanueva, two of the name, Portuguese, 240
Villanueva, Alonzo, Proctor from Mexico to Spain, 281
Villareal, Antonio de, husband of Ysabel de Ojeda, deprived of the Pueblo of Cuernavaca, 164; changed his name to Antonio Serrano de Cardona, 228
Villaroel. See Villareal.
Villa Sinda, a soldier, 241
Villegas, deprived of his Encomienda, 164
- Xagua**, Rio, 69
Xaso, Juan de, Maestresala on expedition to Honduras, 3
Xicalango, outpost of Mexican Empire, 9 (note), 18, 74, 123
Xicotenga (Don Lorenzo de Vargas), his son taken to Spain by Cortés, 138
Ximénez, Ortuño, Cosmographer-pilot, on expedition to the South Sea, 181; kills his Captain Becerra, discovers Island of Santa Cruz, 182; is killed by natives, 183
- Yañes**, Alonzo, 240
Yllescas, Historian, 286, 288
Ynis, Juan de, 233
Ynojosa, goes with Bernal Díaz in search of food, 41
- Ysquierdo**, Martin, 241
Yucatan, Governors of, 319
- Zaballos**, arrives in Mexico with Power of Attorney on behalf of Panfilo de Narvaez, 159; lodges claims against Conquistadores, 159
Zacatula, 178
Zaguatan, 11
Zamorano, friend of Pedrarias, 82
Zamudio, a soldier, 246
Zapote, a fruit, 43, 57
Zapotecs, rise in revolt, 73; expedition against, 125, 130, 131
Zaragosa, an old man, father of the Notary, 239
Zaragosa, Luis de, 232
Zaynos of Toro, Oidor of Royal Audiencia, 169; returns to Spain, 171, 317
Zinacan, Cacique of Old Guatemala (Iximché), 120
Zuazo, Licentiate, appointed chief Alcalde of Mexico, 2, 4; arrives at Trujillo, 71, 72, 73; arrested by the Factor and sent to Cuba, 77-79; his letter to Cortés, 79, 96
Zuñiga, Fray Antonio de, 212
Zuñiga, Doña Juana de, niece of the Duque de Bejar, betrothed to Cortés, 145, 148; sends help to Cortés at Santa Cruz, 186; 212
Zuñiga, Don Alvaro de, Duque de Bejar, 72; intercedes for Cortés, 103; and advises him, 139, 142, 143, 145-148, 200

The Hakluyt Society.

(Founded 1846.)

1916.

President.

ALBERT GRAY, Esq., C.B., K.C.

Vice-Presidents.

THE RIGHT HON. THE LORD BELHAVEN AND STENTON.

THE RIGHT HON. THE LORD PECKOVER OF WISBECH.

Treasurer.

EDWARD HEAWOOD, Esq.

Council.

BOLTON GLANVILL CORNEY, Esq.,
I.S.O.

M. LONGWORTH DAMES, Esq.

WILLIAM FOSTER, Esq., C.I.E.

F. H. H. GUILLEMARD, Esq., M.D.

SIR EVERARD IM THURN, K.C.M.G.,
C.B.

JOHN SCOTT KELTIE, Esq., LL.D.

SIR FREDERIC G. KENYON, K.C.B.,
F.B.A., LL.D.

SIR CHARLES LUCAS, K.C.B.,
K.C.M.G.

ADMIRAL SIR ALBERT HASTINGS
MARKHAM, K.C.B.

ALFRED P. MAUDSLAY, Esq.

LT.-COL. SIR MATTHEW NATHAN,
G.C.M.G., R.E.

ADMIRAL OF THE FLEET THE RIGHT HON.
SIR EDWARD HOBART SEYMOUR,
G.C.B., O.M., G.C.V.O., LL.D.

H. R. TEDDER, Esq.

LIEUT.-COL. SIR RICHARD CARNAC
TEMPLE, BART., C.I.E.

BASIL HOME THOMSON, Esq.

Hon. Secretary.

J. A. J. DE VILLIERS, Esq.,
BRITISH MUSEUM, W.C.

Clerk and Assistant Treasurer.

MR. SAMUEL JOHN EVIS,
ROYAL GEOGRAPHICAL SOCIETY, KENSINGTON GORE, S.W.

Bankers in London.

MESSRS. BARCLAY & CO., LTD., 1, PAUL MALL EAST, S.W.

Bankers in New York.

THE GUARANTY TRUST COMPANY OF NEW YORK, 140, BROADWAY.

Agent for Distribution and Sale of Volumes.

MR. BERNARD QUARITCH, 11, GRAFTON STREET, NEW BOND STREET, W.

Annual Subscription.—One Guinea (in America, five dollars).

The Hakluyt Society, established in 1846, has for its object the printing of rare and valuable Voyages, Travels, Naval Expeditions, and other geographical records. Books of this class are of the highest interest to students of history, geography, navigation, and ethnology; and many of them, especially the original narratives and translations of the Elizabethan and Stuart periods, are admirable examples of English prose at the stage of its most robust development.

The Society has not confined its selection to the books of English travellers, to a particular age, or to particular regions. Where the original is foreign, the work is given in English, fresh translations being made, except where it is possible to utilise the spirited renderings of the sixteenth or seventeenth century. The works selected for reproduction are printed (with rare exceptions) at full length. Each volume is placed in the charge of an editor especially competent—in many cases from personal acquaintance with the countries described—to give the reader such assistance as he needs for the elucidation of the text. As these editorial services are rendered gratuitously, *the whole of the amount received from subscribers is expended in the preparation of the Society's publications.*

One hundred volumes (forming Series I., see pages iv. to xiv.) were issued from 1846 to 1898; thirty-nine volumes of Series II. (see pages xv. to xviii.) have been issued in the seventeen years ending 1915. A brief index to these is given on pages xx. to xxv., and a list of works in preparation on page xix.

THE Annual Subscription of ONE GUINEA—entitling the member to the year's publications—is due on January 1, and may be paid to

Messrs. BARCLAY and CO., 1, Pall Mall East, London, S.W. ;
The GUARANTY TRUST CO., 140, Broadway, New York.

Members have the sole privilege of purchasing back or current issues of the Society; these tend to rise in value, and those which are out of print are now only to be obtained at high prices.

The present scale of charges is as follows :—

FIRST SERIES, <i>Sets</i> , omitting Nos. 1 to 14, 16, 17, 19, 22, 25, 32, 36, 37, 39, and 42 (76 vols)	£40 0s. 0d.
<i>Single Copies</i> .— Nos. 29, 31, 34, 46, 47, 51, 53, 55, 56, 58, 60 to 73, 77, 79, 80, 82 to 87, 90 to 94, 96, 97, 98, at	10s. 6d.
Nos. 28, 30, 41, 43, 48, 49, 50, 57, 74, 76, 78, 81, 83, 89, 95, 100, at	15s. 0d.
Nos. 20, 21, 23, 26, 27, 33, 35, 38, 40, 43, 44, 54, 59, 75, 99, at	25s. 0d.
SECOND SERIES, Nos. 11 to 22, 28, 29, 31, 35, 39, at	10s. 6d.
Nos. 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 30, 32, 37, 38, 40, at	15s. 0d.
Nos. 33, 34, 36, 41, at	20s. 0d.

All other issues of this Series are out of print.

Gentlemen desiring to be enrolled as members should send their names to the Hon. Secretary, with the form of Banker's Order enclosed in this Prospectus. Applications for back volumes should be addressed to the Society's Agent, MR. QUARITCH, 11, Grafton Street, New Bond Street, London, W.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

NOTE.—This Bibliography does not pretend to be exhaustive. A more complete List will be issued with the final Volume of this Translation. A Bibliography of the Maps of Mexico will be issued with Volume II.

1. **Abelin**, Johann Philipp.—*Neue Welt und Amerikanische Historien*. Alles aus verschiedenen Historien-Schreibern . . . getragen . . . durch J. L. Gottfriedt [*i.e.* Johann Philipp Abelin].

J. T. de Bry: Frankfurt a/M., 1631. fol.

[G. 6635. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville. —1655. 566. k. 12.]

2. **Aglío**, Augustine.—*Antiquities of Mexico*. Comprising Fac-similes of ancient Mexican Paintings and Hieroglyphics, preserved in the Royal Libraries of Paris, Berlin, and Dresden, in the Imperial Library of Vienna, in the Vatican Library, in the Borgia Museum at Rome, in the Library of the Institute at Bologna, and in the Bodleian Library at Oxford. Together with *The Monuments of New Spain*, by M. Dupaix. With their respective scales of measurement and accompanying descriptions. The whole illustrated by many valuable inedited Manuscripts. By Augustine Aglio [and Edward King, Viscount Kingsborough.] In seven [or rather 9] volumes. [With pp. 1-60 of vol. 10.]

Published by A. Aglio, 36, Newman Street; to be had also of Whittaker, Treacher, and Co., Ave-Maria Lane: [Henry G. Bohn:]

London, MDCCCXXX-XLVIII. fol.

[564. h. 1-9.]

- 2 a. Vol. 1.—Copy of the Collection of Mendoza, preserved in the Bodleian Library at Oxford. 73 Pages. Marked Arch. Seld. A. 1. Cat. MSS. Angl. 3134.

Copy of the Codex Telleriano-Remensis, preserved in the Royal Library at Paris. 93 Pages. Marked 14 Reg. 1616. [A copy by Pedro de los Rios, a Dominican Monk, of a Mexican Calendar.]

Fac-simile of an Original Mexican Hieroglyphic Painting, from the Collection of Boturini. 23 Pages.

Fac-simile of an Original Mexican Painting, preserved in the Collection of Sir Thomas Bodley, in the Bodleian Library at Oxford. 40^o Pages. Marked Arch. Bodl. A. 75. Cat. MSS. Angl. 2858.

Fac-simile of an Original Mexican Painting, preserved in the Selden Collection of MSS. in the Bodleian Library at Oxford. 20 Pages. Marked Arch. Seld. A. 2. Cat. MSS. Angl. 3135.

Fac-simile of an Original Mexican Hieroglyphic Painting, preserved amongst the Selden Collection in the Bodleian Library at Oxford. A Roll, marked Arch. Seld. A. Rot. 3. Cat. MSS. Angl. 3207. 1830. fol.

[564. h. 1.]

- 2 b. Vol. 2. Copy of a Mexican MS. preserved in the Library of the Vatican. 149 Pages. Marked No. 3738.

Fac-simile of an Original Mexican Painting given to the University of Oxford by Archbishop Laud, and preserved in the Bodleian Library. 46 Pages. Marked Laud B. 65. nunc 678 Cat. MSS. Angl. 546.

Fac-simile of an Original Mexican Painting preserved in the Library of the Institute at Bologna. 24 Pages.

Fac-simile of an Original Mexican Painting preserved in the Imperial Library at Vienna. 66 Pages.

Fac-similes of Original Mexican Paintings deposited in the Royal Library at Berlin by the Baron de Humboldt, and of a Mexican Bas-Relief preserved in the Royal Cabinet of Antiques.

1830. fol.

[564. h. 2.]

- 2 c. Vol. 3. Fac-simile of an Original Mexican Painting preserved in the Borgian Museum, at the College of Propaganda in Rome. 76 Pages.

Fac-simile of an Original Mexican Painting preserved in the Royal Library at Dresden. 74 Pages.

Fac-simile of an Original Mexican Painting in the possession of M. de Fejérváry, at Pess in Hungary. 44 Pages.

Fac-simile of an Original Mexican Painting preserved in the Library of the Vatican. 96 Pages.

1830. fol.

[564. h. 3.]

- 2 d. Vol. 4. Monuments of New Spain, by M. Dupaix, from the original drawings executed by order of the King of Spain. In three parts.

Specimens of Mexican Sculpture, in the possession of M. Latour Allard, in Paris.

Specimens of Mexican Sculpture preserved in the British Museum.

Plates copied from the Giro del Mondo of Gemelli Careri. With an engraving of a Mexican Cycle, from a Painting formerly in the possession of Boturini.

Specimen of Peruvian Quipus, with Plates representing a carved Peruvian Box containing a collection of supposed Peruvian Quipus.

1830. fol.

[564. h. 4.]

- 2 e. Vol. 5. Extrait de l'Ouvrage de M. de Humboldt sur les Monumens de l'Amérique. pp. 1-36

Explicacion de la Coleccion de Mendoza. pp. 37-126.

Explicacion del Codex Telleriano-Remensis, pp. 127-158

Codice Mexicano, che si conserva nella Biblioteca Vaticana, al No. 3738. MS. pp. 159-206.

Viages de Guillermo Dupaix sobre las Antigüedades Mejicanas. pp. 207-343.

Libro Sexto de la Retorica y Filosofia, Moral y Teologia de la Gente Mexicana, donde hay cosas muy curiosas tocantes a los primores de su lengua, y cosas muy delicadas tocante a las virtudes morales. Por el M. R. P. Frayle Bernardino de Sahagun, de la Orden de los Frayles Menores de la Observancia. (Indice.) pp. 345-493.

1830. fol.

[564. h. 5.]

- 2 f. Vol. 6. The Interpretation of the Hieroglyphical Paintings of the Collection of Mendoza. pp. 3-94.

The Explanation of the Hieroglyphical Paintings of the Codex Telleriano-Remensis. [An Original Mexican Calendar, painted on paper of the Agave, resembling this Codex, is preserved in the Library of the Chamber of Deputies, at Paris.] pp. 95-153.

The Translation of the Explanation of the Mexican Paintings of the Codex Vaticanus. No. 3738. pp. 155-420.

The Monuments of New Spain, by M. Dupaix. [English Translation.] pp. 421-540.

1830. fol.

[564. h. 6.]

- 2 g. Vol. 7. Historia Universal de las Cosas de Nueva España. Por el M. R. P. Fr. Bernardino de Sahagun, de la Orden de los Frayles Menores de la Observancia. pp. vii. 1-464.

1830. fol.

[564. h. 7.]

- 2 h. Vol. 8. Supplementary Notes to the Antiquities of Mexico. [Continuation of Notes at end of vol 6.] pp. 1-268.

Supplementary Extracts from Spanish Authors. De la Monarquía Indiana de Torquemada, Acosta, Historia Natural, García, sobre el Origen de los Indios. pp. 1-89.

Sermam do Auto da Fé. Que se celebrou na Praça do Rocio desta Cidade de Lisboa, junto dos passos da Inquisição, em 6 de Setembro de 1705, em presença de suas Altezas. Pregado pelo Illustrissimo e Reverendissimo Senhor Dom Diogo da Annunçiação Justiniano, do Conselho de Sua Magestade, que Deos guarde, e Arcebispo que foy de Cranganor. Lisboa: Na officina de Antonio Pedro Ozogalrão. 6 Setembro, 1705. pp. 91-115.

Respuesta al Sermon predicado por el Arçobispo de Cranganor en el Auto da Fe, celebrado en Lisboa, en 6 Septiembre, Año de 1705. Por el Author de las Noticias Reconditas de la Inquiziçion, Obra Posthuma.

Impresso en Villa-Franca, por Carlos Vero, à la Insignia de la Verdad. pp. 117-157.

Historia del Origen de las Gentes que poblaron la America Septentrional, que llaman la Nueva-España. Con noticia de los primeros que establecieron la Monarquía que en ella floreció de la nacion Tolteca, y noticias que alcanzaron de la Creacion del Mundo. Su autor el Licenciado Don Mariano Fernandez de Echevarria y Veitia, Caballero Profeso del Orden Militar de Santiago. pp. 159-217.

Tercera (Cuarta) Noticia de la Segunda Parte de las Noticias Historiales de las Conquistas de Tierra Firme en el Nuevo Reyno de Granada, por Fr. Pedro Simon, ofrecida à Nuestro Invictissimo Cesar Filipo IV. en el Real Consejo de Indias, Año 1624. [Published for the first time, and copied from the MS. of the Author.] pp. 219-271.

History of the North American Indians, their Customs, &c. By James Adair. [1775.] pp. 273-400.

[Cinco] Cartas Ineditas de Hernando Cortés. Escritas à S. M. desde 15 de Mayo de 1522 hasta 10 de Octubre de 1530 . . . Y al fin un Memorial que presentó á S. M. en Valladolid á 3 de Febrero de 1544, &c. pp. 401-424.

1848. fol.

[564. h. 8.]

- 2 i. Vol. 9. *Cronica Mexicana de Fernando de Alvarado Tezozomoc* (Advertencia del Padre Francisco García Figueroa.) pp. 1-196. *Historia Chichimeca*. Por Don Fernando de Alva Ixtlilxochitl. pp. 197-468. 1848. fol.
[564. h. 9.]
- 2 j. Vol. 10. *Ritos Antiguos, Sacrificios é Idolatrias de los Indios de la Nueva España y de su conversion á la Fée y quienes fueron los que primero la predicaron*. (Epistola Proemial de un Frayle Menor al Ilustrísimo Señor Don Antonio Pimentel, sexto Conde de Benavente.) pp. 1-60. [On page 60 of vol. 10 : "End of vol. 1X., which concludes the work."] 1848. fol.
[564. h. 9.]
3. **Alcedo**, Antonio de.—*Diccionario geográfico-histórico de las Indias Occidentales ó America : es á saber ; de los Reynos del Peru, Nueva España, Tierra-Firme, Chile, y Nuevo Reyno de Granada . . . Escrito por el Coronel D. Antonio de Alcedo, etc.* 3 vols.
Benito Cano : Madrid, 1786-88. 8°.
[178. i. 19-21. From the Library of Sir Joseph Banks.—K. 279. i. 15-19. From the Library of King George III.—G. 2975-9. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.]
4. ———.—*The Geographical and Historical Dictionary of America and the West Indies. Containing an entire Translation of the Spanish Work of Colonel Don Antonio de Alcedo, Captain of the Royal Spanish Guards, and Member of the Royal Academy of History. With large Additions and Compilations from Modern Voyages and Travels, and from original and authentic information. By G. A. Thompson, Esq. In Five Volumes.*
Printed for James Carpenter, Old Bond-Street ; Longman, Hurst, Rees, Orme, and Brown, Paternoster-Row ; White, Cochrane and Co., and Murray, Fleet-Street, London ; Parker, Oxford ; and Deighton, Cambridge, 1812-1815. 4°.
[797. i. 30.—K. 146. d. 15-19. From the Library of King George III.]
- 4a. ———.—*Atlas to Thompson's Alcedo, or Dictionary of America and West Indies. Collated with all the most recent authorities, and composed chiefly from scarce and original documents for that work, by A. Arrowsmith, Hydrographer to His Royal Highness the Prince Regent.* 5 Maps.
Printed by George Smeeton : London, 1819. fol.
[Maps 92. f. 19.—K. 12. TAB. 45. From the Library of King George III.—G. 2980-82. Without Title. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.]
5. **Aldrovandi**, Ulisse.—*Ulyssis Aldrovandi, Patricii Bononiensis, Musæum Metallicum in Libros IIII. distributum Bartholomæus Ambrosinus Labore et Studio composuit cum Indice copiosissimo. Marcus Antonius Bernia propriis impensis in lucem edidit. Ad Serenissimum Rantium II Farnesium Parmæ Placentiæ, etc. Ducentum VI.* (Vol. xii. *Opera Aldrovandi*.) pp. 979.
Typis Io. Baptistæ Ferronij : Bononiæ, 1648. fol.
[K. 38. g. 12. From the Library of King George III.—459. b. 7. From the Library of Sir Joseph Banks, with his Book-plate.]

1579.

6. **Alfaro de Santa Cruz, Melchior.**—Relación de Melchor de Alfaro Sant Cruz, 1579. (Relaciones Histórico-Geográficas de las Provincias de Yucatán. Tabasco-Relaciones de Yucatán. [Edited by José María Asensio y Toledo.] Tom. 1. pp. 318-341.—In "Colección de Documentos Inéditos relativos al Descubrimiento, Conquista y Organización de las Antiguas Posesiones Españolas de Ultramar. Segunda Serie, publicada por la Real Academia de la Historia. Tomo núm. 11.")

Establecimiento Tipográfico, Sucesores de Rivadensyra: Madrid, 1898. 8°.

[9551. g.]

7. **Alva Ixtlilxochitl, Fernando d'.**—Cruautés Horribles des Conquérants du Mexique, et des Indiens qui les aidèrent à soumettre cet Empire à la couronne d'Espagne. Mémoire de Don Fernando d'Alva Ixtlilxochitl. Supplément à l'*Histoire* du Père Sahagun. Publié et dédié au gouvernement suprême de la confédération mexicaine, par Charles-Marie de Bustamante. *México: de l'Imprimerie du citoyen Alexandre Valdès.* [Translated by Henri Ternaux-Compans.] (In "Voyages, Relations et Mémoires Originaux pour servir à l'Histoire de la Découverte de l'Amérique. Publiés pour la première fois en français par H. Ternaux-Compans." tom. 8. pp. 312.)

Arthus Bertrand: Paris, MDCCCXXXVIII. 8°.

[G. 15810. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville. —1196. i. 6.]

8. —.—Histoire des Chichimèques, ou des anciens Rois de Tezcuco. Par Don Fernando d'Alva Ixtlilxochitl. Traduite sur le manuscrit espagnol . . . Inédite. 2 pts. (In "Voyages, Relations, et Mémoires Originaux pour servir à l'Histoire de la Découverte de l'Amérique, publiés pour la première fois en Français, par H. Ternaux-Compans." Tom. 12, 13.)

Arthus Bertrand: Paris, MDCCCL. 8°.

[G. 15814-5. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville. —1196. i. 7, 8.]

9. —.—Orribili Crudelta dei Conquistatori del Messico e degl' Indiani che gli Aiutarono a sottomettere questo Impero alla Corona di Spagna. Memoria di Don Fernando d'Alva Cortes Ixtlilxochitl. Pubblicata e dedicata al Governo Supremo della Confederazione Messicana da Carlo Maria de Bustamante. Versione di Felice Scifoni. (In "Raccolta di iaggi dalla Scoperta del Nuovo Continente fino à di nostri. Compilata da F. C. Marmocchi." tom. 11. pp. 275-436.)

Eratelli Giachetti: Prato, 1843. 8°.

[1424. i. 5.]

10. **Alvarado, Pedro de.**—Di Pietro d'Alvarado a Fernando Cortese. Lettere di Pietro d'Alvarado, nelle quali racconta le guerre & battaglie fatte nell'acquisto di Ciapotulan, Chicaltenego & Vilatan, & de pericoli ne quale incorse come fece abbruciar li Signori di Vilatan, & parimente essa città & constitui Signori i lor figliuoli: di due montagne, una d'allumi, l'altra di zolfo. *Di Vilatan a gli undici d'Aprile.* (In "Terzo Volume

delle Navigazioni et Viaggi Raccolto già da M. Gio. Battista Ramusio." fol. 296-298.)

In Venetia: nella Stamperia de' Giunti, l'Anno MDLXV. fol.

[G. 6820.—From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—679. h. 10. From the Library of the Rev. Clayton Mordaunt Cracherode. With the arms and cyphers of Jacques Auguste de Thou, and his first wife, Marie Barbançon.]

11. ———.—Altra Relation fatta per Pietro d'Alvarado a Fernando Cortese. Nella quale si contiene l'acquisto di molte città & provincie, le guerre, scaramucce, & battaglie, tradimenti & ribellioni che vi sono seguite, com' egli edificò una città, di due montagne, una che getta fuoco, l'altra che eshala fumo, d'un fiume che arde tutto, & d'un altro freddo & come l'Alvarado d'una saetta rimase storpiato. *Di questa città di Sant' Iago a ventotto di Luglio, 1524.* (In "Terzo Volume delle Navigazioni et Viaggi. Raccolto già da M. Gio Battista Ramusio." fol. 298-300.)

In Venetia: nella Stamperia de' Giunti, l'Anno MDLXV. fol.

[G. 6820. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—679. h. 10. From the Library of the Rev. Clayton Mordaunt Cracherode. With the arms and cyphers of Jacques Auguste de Thou, and his first wife, Marie Barbançon.]

12. ———.—Atra Relacion hecha por Pedro de Alvarado a Hernando Cortés, en que se refiere la Conquista de muchas Ciudades, las Guerras, Batallas, Traiciones, i Rebeliones, que sucedieron, i la Poblacion que hygo de una Ciudad. De dos Volcanes: uno, que exalaba Fuego, i otro Humo, de un Rio hirviendo, i otro frio, i como quedó Alvarado herido de un Flechazo. (In "Historiadores Primitivos de las Indias Occidentales, que juntó, traduxo en parte, y sacó á luz, ilustrados con eruditas Notas, y copiosos Indices, el Ilustrísimo Señor D. Andres Gonzalez Barcia, del Consejo, y Camara de S. M. Divididos en tres Tomos, cuyo contenido se verá en el folio siguiente." Tom. 1. Part 2. pp. 161-166.)

Madrid, año MDCCXLIX. fol.

[K. 145. f. 9. From the Library of King George III.]

13. ———.—Lettres de Pédro de Alvarado à Fernand Cortés. (Seconde Lettre. Santiago, le 28 de juillet, 1524. In "Voyages, Relations et Mémoires Originaux pour servir à l'Histoire de la Découverte de l'Amérique. Publiés pour la première fois en Français par H. Ternaux-Compans.—Tom. x. Recueil de Pièces relatives à la Conquête du Mexique. Inédit. pp. 107-150.)

Arthur Bertrand: Paris, MDCCCXXXVIII. 8°.

[G. 15812. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—1196. i. 7.]

14. **Alvarado Tezozomoc**, Fernando de.—Histoire du Mexique. Par Don Alvaro Tezozomoc. Traduite sur un manuscrit inédit par H. Ternaux-Compans. 2 tom.

Chez P. Jannet: Paris, 1853. 8°.

[9771. d. 21.]

15. ———.—Cronica Mexicana. Escrita por D. Hernando Alvarado Tezozomoc, hácia el año de MDXCVIII, anotada por el Sr. Lic. D. Manuel Orozco y Berra, y precedida del Codice Ramirez, Manuscrito del siglo xvi intitulado: Relacion del origen de los Indios que habitan esta Nueva España segun sus historias, y de un examen de ambas obras, al cual va anexo un estudio de Cronologia Mexicana por el mismo Sr.

Orozco y Berra. Jose M. Vigil, Editor. [With a preface by José F. Ramirez, and 11 Plates of drawings of Indians.] (Biblioteca Mexicana.) pp. viii, 712.

Imprenta y Litografía de Ireneo Paz: México, 1878-81. 8°.

[9771. g. 3.]

16. **Alzate y Ramirez**, Joseph Antonio de.—Observaciones Meteorológicas de los últimos nueve meses de el año de mil setecientos sesenta y nueve. Hechas en esta Ciudad de Mexico. Por D. Joseph Antonio de Alzate y Ramirez. pp. 14.

Impresas con las licencias necesarias en México: en la Imprenta del Lic. D. Joseph de Jauregui, en la Calle de S. Bernardo, Año de 1770. 4°.

[8755. bbb. 36.]

17. **Amandus**, of Zieriksee.—Chronica Compendiosissima ab exordio mundi usq' ad annum Domini millesimum, quingentesimū, trigesimū quartum: per venerandum patrem, F. Amandum Zierixensem, ordinis Fratrum Minorū, regularis observantiae, virum en Divinis & humanis rebus peritissimum . . . Adjectæ sunt . . . Aliæ quoq' tres epistolæ, ex nova maris Oceani Hispania ad nos transmissæ, de fructu mirabili illic surgentis novæ Ecclesiæ, ex quibus animus Christianus merito debeat lætari.

Antverpiæ: apud Simonem Cocum, Anno Domini, MCCCCXXXIV, Mense Maio. 12°.

[9006. a. 24. Letters from Martinus de Valentia, and Petrus de Gante, alias de Mura.]

18. **Anghiera**, Pietro Martin d'.—The History of Travayle in the West and East Indies, and other countreys lying eyther way, towards the fruitfull and ryche Moluccaes. As Moscouia, Persia, Arabia, Syria, Ægypte, Ethiopia, Guinea, China in Cathayo, and Giapan. With a discourse of the Northwest passage. Gathered in parte, and done into Englyshe [from Pietro Martire d'Anghiera, and others] by Richarde Eden. Newly set in order, augmented, and finished by Richard Willes. (An Abridgement of P. Martyr his 5, 6, 7 and 8 Decades, and particularly of Ferd. Cortesius conquest of Mexico. By R. W. [i.e., Richard Willes.]) [Dedicated to the Lady Brigit, Countesse of Bedforde.] ff. 466.

Imprinted at London by Richarde Iugge, 1577. 4°.

[K. 304. d. 10. From the Library of King George III.—G. 7305. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—979. c. 28. From the Library of Sir Joseph Banks. Wants Title-page, and 8 pages of preliminary matter.]

19. **Anonymous Conqueror**.—Relacion Anonyma de la Conquista de la Nueva España.—In "Colección de Documentos para la Historia de México." Publicada por Joaquín García Icazbalceta. Tom. i.

J. M. Andrade: México, 1858. 8°.

[9771. f. 15.]

20. **Armin**, Theodor.—Das alte Mexico und die Eroberung Neuspaniens durch Ferdinand Cortez. Nach W. Prescott und Bernal Díaz, sowie unter Benutzung der Schriften von Alexander von Humboldt, des Abbé Brasseur, des Abt Fr. X. Clavigero u. A. Bearbeitet von Th. Armin. Mit über 120 in den Text gedruckten Abbildungen, sechs Tonbildern, einem Frontispice, sowie einer Karte von Anahuac. pp. xiv. 376.

Verlag von Otto Spamer: Leipzig, 1865. 8°.

[9771. ccc. 2.]

21. **Athanasius, Inca, of Cusco.**—West-Indische Spiegel. Waer inne men sien kan alle de Eylanden, Provintien, Lantschappen, het Machtige Ryck van Mexico, en 't Gout en Silver-rycke Landt van Peru. 'Tsampt de Coursen, Havenen, Klippen, Koopmanschappen, etc., soo wel inde Noort als in de Zuyt-zee. Als mede hoe die vande Spanjaerden eerst ge invadeert syn. Door Athanasium Inga, Peruacn., van Cusco. pp. 435.

't Amstelredam: By Broer Jansz. ende Jacob Pietersz, Wachter, Boeckvercooper op den Dam in de Wachter, Anno 1624. 4°.

[G. 7158. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville. With a fine engraved Title-page, giving a portrait of Motenchuma, etc., and 3 Maps, and 6 Illustrations.—10408. d. 11.—Another copy is in the John Carter Brown Library.]

22. **Bandelier, Adolph Francis Alphonse.**—Notes on the Bibliography of Yucatan and Central America. Comprising Yucatan, Chiapas, Guatemala (the Ruins of Palenque, Ocosingo, and Copan), and Oaxaca (Ruins of Mitla). A List of some of the writers on this subject from the Sixteenth Century to the present time. By Ad. F. Bandelier. From Proceedings of the American Antiquarian Society, October 21, 1880. (New Series. Vol. 1. pp. 82-118.)

Press of Chas. Hamilton: Worcester, [Mass.] 1881. 8°.

[Ac. 5798/2.]

23. ———.—Report of an Archæological Tour in Mexico in 1881. By A. F. Bandelier. (Papers of the Archæological Institute of America. American Series. 11). Second edition. pp. x. 326.

Published for the Institute by Cupples, Upham and Co.: Boston,

[Mass.]; N. Trübner and Co.: London, 1885. 8°.

[Ac. 5790/8.]

24. **Batres, Leopoldo.**—Arqueologia Mexicana. Civilizacion de algunas de las diferentes tirbus que habitaron el territorio hoy Mexicano en la antigüedad. pp. 100. 5 Chromos. 26 Plates.

Mexico, 1888. 8°.

[Not in the British Museum.]

25. ———.—Clasificacion del tipo etnico de las tribus zapoteca del estado de Oaxaca y Acolhua del Valle de México. pp. 8. 2 Plates.

México, 1890. 8°.

[Not in the British Museum.]

26. **Beaufoy, Mark.**—Mexican Illustrations, founded upon facts, indicative of the present condition of Society, Manners, Religion, and Morals among the Spanish and Native Inhabitants of Mexico. With observations upon the Government and resources of the Republic of Mexico, as they appeared during part of the years 1825, 1826, and 1827. Interspersed with occasional remarks upon the climate, produce, and antiquities of the country, mode of working the mines, &c. By Mark Beaufoy, late of the Coldstream Guards. Illustrated. pp. xii. 312.

Carpenter and Son: London, 1828. 8°.

[792. e. 16.—10410. d. 26. (2.)]

27. **Berendt, Carl Hermann, M.D.**—Report of Explorations in Central America. By Dr. C. H. Berendt. [Dated: New York, December 24, 1867.] (In the 22nd *Annual Report of the Board of Regents of the Smithsonian Institution*. 1867. pp. 420-426.)
Government Printing Office: Washington, 1868. 8°. [R. Ac. 1875/3.]
28. ————Analytical Alphabet for the Mexican & Central American Languages. By C. Hermann Berendt, M.D. Published by the American Ethnological Society. [With a Biographical Note on Dr. C. H. Berendt, and on his Maya Dictionary.] pp. iv. 8.
Reproduced in Fac-simile by the American Photo-Lithographic Company (Osborne's Process): New York, 1869. 8°. [12907. dd. 5.]
29. ————A Dictionary of the Maya Language. With a comparative review of all the Indian Languages spoken between the Isthmuses of Tehuantepec and Honduras, embracing more than 600 words in each, which comprises all the Languages belonging to the Maya Family. 2500 quarto pages. MS. 1869. 4°. [Described in his "Analytical Alphabet." 1869. p. iv.]
30. ————Los Escritos de D. Joaquin García Icazbalceta. (*Revista de Mérida*. Tom. 11.)
Mérida de Yucatán, 1870.
 [Not in the British Museum.]
31. ————Cartilla en Lengua Maya para la enseñanza de los niños indígenas.
Mérida, 1871. 8°
 [Not in the British Museum.]
32. ————El Ramie. Tratado sobre el cultivo y algunas noticias de esta planta. (*Revista de Mérida*.)
Mérida de Yucatán, 1871.
 [Not in the British Museum.]
33. ————Mexico. [Dr. C. H. Berendt compiled the article: Mexico, in:] Deutsch-amerikanisches Conversations-Lexicon . . . Bearbeitet von Prof. Alexander J. Schem. Band 7. pp. 261-288.
E. S. Aeiger: New York, 1872. 8°. [735. c. 7.]
34. ————Die Indianer des Isthmus von Tehuantepec. (*Zeitschrift für Ethnologie*. Band 5.)
Berlin, 1873. 8°. [P. P. 3863. b.]
35. ————Zur Ethnologie von Nicaragua. (In *Correspondenz-Blatt der deutschen Gesellschaft für Anthropologie, Ethnologie, und Urgeschichte*. Redigirt von Dr. A. v. Frantzius in Heidelberg. No. 9. September, 1874. pp. 70-72.)
Friedrich Vieweg und Sohn: Braunschweig, 1875. 4°. [P. P. 3947. d.]

36. ———. —Remarks on the Centres of Ancient Civilization in Central America, and their Geographical Distribution. Address read before the American Geographical Society. July 10, 1876. With a Map.
New York, 1876. 8°. [Not in the British Museum.]
37. ———. —Remarks on the Centres of Ancient Civilisation in Central America, &c. By C. H. Berendt, M.D. (In *Petermann's Mittheilungen*, 1877. p. 82.)
Justus Perthes: Gotha, 1877. 4°. [R. P. P. 3946.]
38. ———. —Collections of Historical Documents in Guatemala. By Dr. C. H. Berendt. (In the 31st *Annual Report of the Board of Regents of the Smithsonian Institution*. 1876. pp. 421-423.)
Government Printing Office: Washington, 1877. 8°. [R. Ac. 1875/3.]
39. **Beristain de Souza Fernandez de Lara**, José Mariano. —Biblioteca Hispana Americana Septentrional . . . La escribia . . . J. M. Beristain de Souza. [Tom. 2 & 3 edited by José Rafael Enriquez Trespalacios Beristain.] 3 tom.
México, 1816-19. 8°. [10880. g. 32.—1883. 11904. a. 22.]
40. **Bibliotheca Mejicana**. —Bibliotheca Mejicana. A Catalogue of an extraordinary Collection of Books and Manuscripts, almost wholly relating to the History and Literature of North and South America, particularly Mexico. pp. ii. 312.
London, 1869. 8°. [Not in the British Museum.]
41. **Bienvenida**, Lorenzo de. —Lettre du Chapelain Frère Lorenzo de Bienvenida à Philippe II., alors Prince Héritaire. [Report on Yucatan.] *De Yuacan*, le 10 de février, 1548. *Simancas*.—In "Voyages, Relations, et Mémoires Originaux pour servir à l'Histoire de la Découverte de l'Amérique. Publiés pour la première fois en Français par H. Ternaux-Compans."—Tom. x. Recueil de Pièces relatives à la Conquête du Mexique. Inédit. pp. 307-343.)
Arthur Bertrand: Paris, MDCCCXXXVIII. 8°. [G. 15812. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—1196. i. 7.]
42. **Bird**, Robert Montgomery. —The Infidel, or, The Fall of Mexico. A Romance. By the Author of "Calavar" [Robert Montgomery Bird]. Second Edition. 2 vols.
Carey, Lea & Blanchard: Philadelphia, 1835. 8°. [12703. e. 20.]
43. ———. —Cortes, or, The Fall of Mexico. By Dr. Bird, Author of "Calavar". 3 vols.
Richard Bentley: London, 1835. 8°. [N 1170.—Another edition of *The Infidel*.]

44. **Brasseur de Bourbourg**, Étienne Charles.—Collection de Documents dans les Langues Indigènes, pour servir à l'étude de l'histoire et de la philologie de l'Amérique Ancienne. [Edited by the Abbé Étienne Charles Brasseur de Bourbourg.] 4 tom.

Aug. Durand: Paris, 1861-68. 8°.

[7703. aa. 2-5.]

- 44 a. ———.—Tom. 1. Popol Vuh. Le Livre Sacré et les Mythes de l'antiquité Américaine, avec les Livres héroïques et historiques des Quichés. Ouvrage original des Indigènes de Guatémala. Texte Quiché et traduction française en regard, accompagnée de notes philologiques et d'un commentaire sur la mythologie et les migrations des peuples anciens de l'Amérique, *etc.*, composé sur des documents originaux et inédits. Par l'Abbé Brasseur de Bourbourg. pp. cclxxix. 368.

1861. 8°.

[7703. aa. 2.]

- 44 b. ———.—Tom. 2. Gramatica de la Lengua Quiché. Grammaire de la langue Quiché, espagnole-française, mise en parallèle avec ses deux dialectes, Cakchiquel et Tzutuhil. Tirée des manuscrits des meilleurs auteurs, guatémaliens. Ouvrage accompagné de notes philologiques, avec un vocabulaire comprenant les sources principales du Quiché comparées aux langues germaniques, et suivi d'un essai sur la poésie, la musique, la danse et l'art dramatique chez les Mexicains et les Guatémaltèques avant la Conquête. Servant d'introduction au Rabinal-Achi, drame indigène (transcrite pour la première fois par Bartolo Zig), avec sa musique originale, texte Quiché et traduction française en regard. Recueilli par l'Abbé Brasseur de Bourbourg, *etc.* 2 pts.

1862. 8°.

[7703. aa. 3.]

- 44 c. ———.—Tom. 3. Relation des Choses de Yucatan de Diego de Landa. [1573-1579.] Texte espagnol et traduction française en regard, comprenant les signes du calendrier et de l'alphabet hiéroglyphique de la langue Maya, accompagné de documents divers historiques et chronologiques, avec une grammaire et un vocabulaire abrégés Français-Maya. Précédées d'un essai sur les sources de l'histoire primitive du Mexique et de l'Amérique Centrale, *etc.*, d'après les monuments égyptiens et de l'histoire primitive de l'Égypte d'après les monuments américains. Par l'Abbé Brasseur de Bourbourg, *etc.* pp. cxii. 516.

1864. 8°.

[7703. aa. 4.]

- 44 d. ———.—Tom. 4. Quatre Lettres sur le Mexique. Exposition absolue du système hiéroglyphique mexicain, la fin de l'âge de pierre, époque glaciaire temporaire, commencement de l'âge de bronze, origines de la civilisation et des religions de l'antiquité d'après le Teo-Amoxltli et autres documents mexicains, *etc.* Par M. Brasseur de Bourbourg, *etc.* pp. xx. 463.

1868. 8°.

[7703. aa. 5.]

45. ———.—Bibliothèque Mexico-Guatémaliennne précédée d'un coup d'œil sur les études Américaines dans leur rapports avec les études classiques et suivie du tableau par ordre alphabétique des ouvrages de linguistique Américaine contenus dans le même volume, redigée et mise en ordre d'après les documents de sa collection Américaine. pp. xlvii. 183.
Paris, 1871. 8°.
 [O1197. k. 18.—11902. g. 5.]
46. **Brinton**, Daniel Garrison.—The Battle and the Ruins of Cintla. By Daniel G. Brinton, M.D., LL.D., D.Sc., Professor of American Archaeology and Linguistics in the University of Pennsylvania. Illustrated. Reprinted from the *American Antiquarian*, vol. xvii, No. 5. September, 1896. [pp. 259-268.] pp. 12.
Chicago, 1896. 8°.
 [P. P. 1925. l.—07703. g. 10. (4).— Principally derived from notes made by the late Dr. C. H. Berendt, who visited and surveyed the Ruins of Cintla in March and April, 1869.]
47. ———.—The Missing Authorities on Mayan Antiquities. By Daniel G. Brinton, M.D. From the *American Anthropologist*, for June, 1897. Vol. x. pp. 183-191.
Judd & Detweiler: Washington, D.C., 1897. 8°.
 [Ac. 6239/2.—07703. g. 10. (7.)]
48. ———.—Were the Toltecs an Historic Nationality? By Daniel G. Brinton, M.D., Professor of American Archaeology and Linguistics in the University of Philadelphia. Read before the American Philosophical Society, Sept. 2, 1887. pp. 15.
Press of MacCalla & Company: Phila., 1887. 8°.
 [10408. cc. 34. (2.)]
49. **Britton**, John.—Sheridan and Kotzebue. The Enterprising Adventures of Pizarro. Preceded by a brief Sketch of the Voyages and Discoveries of Columbus and Cortez. To which are subjoined the Histories of Alonzo and Cora, on which Kotzebue founded his two celebrated Plays of *The Virgin of the Sun* and *The Death of Rolla*. Also varieties and oppositions of criticisms on the Play of *Pizarro*. With biographical sketches of Sheridan and Kotzebue. The whole forming a comprehensive account of those Plays and the grand Ballads of Cora, and Rolla and Cora at the Royal Circus, and Royal Amphitheatre . . . Dedicated to R. B. Sheridan, Esq. [By John Britton.]
Published by J. Fairburn, No. 146, Minories; and sold by Hurst, No. 32, and by West and Hughes, No. 40, Paternoster Row; also by all the Booksellers and Stationers in Town and Country: London, 1779. 8°.
 [1343. l. 19.]
50. **Caballero**, Ramon Diosdado.—L'Eroismo di Ferdinando Cortese confermato contro le Censure Nemiche. [By Ramon Diosdado Caballero.] pp. viii. 195.
Presso Antonio Fulgoni: Roma, MDCCCVI. 8°.
 [12403. aa. 12. With the Book-plate of Francesco Carafa, Duca di Forli.]

51. **Cabrera de Cordova**, Luis.—Extrait de l'Histoire de Philippe II., Roi d'Espagne. Par Luis Cabrera de Cordone, historiographe de ce royaume. *Madrid: Luis Sanchez, imprimeur du roi*, 1619, in folio. Découverte du Nouveau-Mexique à la Nouvelle-Espagne, &c. ("In Voyages, Relations, et Mémoires Originaux pour servir à l'Histoire de la Découverte de l'Amérique. Publiés pour la première fois en Français par H. Ternaux-Compans.")—Tom. x. Recueil de Pièces relatives à la Conquête du Mexique. Inédit. pp. 429-450.)
Arthur Bertrand: Paris, MDCCCXXXVIII. 8°.
 [G. 15812. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—1196, i. 7.]
52. **Calvete de Estrella**, Juan Cristóbal.—De Rebus Gestis Ferdinandi Cortesii. 1548-1560. (With Vida de Cortes. In "Coleccion de Documentos para la Historia de México." Publicada por Joaquín García Icazbalceta. Tom. 1.)
J. M. Andrade: México, 1858. 8°.
 [9771. f. 15.]
53. **Campbell**, John, LL.D.—The Expedition of Hernan Cortés for the Reduction of New Spain, from the Time of his being appointed to that Command, unto his being obliged to return to the Island of Cozumel. (In "Navigantium atque Itinerantium Bibliotheca, or, A Complete Collection of Voyages and Travels . . ." Originally published in Two Volumes in folio, by John Harris, D.D., and F.R.S. Now carefully revised, with large additions, and continued down to the present time [by John Campbell], &c. Vol. 2. Book 1. Chapter III. pp. 63-135). [With Two Plates: The Interview of Cortés and Montezuma in the City of Mexico. pp. 97. J. Mynde sc.—Antient Mexico. p. 114.]
Printed for T. Woodward, S. Birt, D. Browne, T. Longman, [and 11 others]: London, M.DCC.XLVIII. fol.
 [455. g. 1, 2. From the Library of, and with the Book-plate of, Sir Joseph Banks.—572. l. 3, 4.]
- 53 a. ———.—[Another edition.]
Printed for T. Osborne, H. Whitridge, C. Bathurst [and 15 others]: London, MDCCCLIV. fol.
 [G. 7041. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—K. 209. h. 8. From the Library of King George III.]
54. **Carderera y Solano**, Valentin.—Iconografía Española. Coleccion de Retratos, Estatuas, Mausoleos y demas Monumentos inéditos de Reyes, Reinas, Grandes Capitanes, Escritores, &c., desde el siglo XI hasta el XVII. Copiados de los originales por D. Valentin Carderera y Solano, pintor honorario de S. M., . . . Con texto biografico y descriptivo, en Español y Francés, por el mismo autor. 2 tom. 84 Plates.
Imprenta de Don Ramon Campuzano: Madrid, 1855 y 1864. fol.
 [1752. c. 4.—Plate 72. Portrait of Cortés.]
55. **Casas**, Bartolomé de las, *Bishop of Chiapa*.—Historia de las Indias. Por Fr. Bartolomé de las Casas. Publicada ahora por vez primera, conforme á los originales del Autor, que se custodian en la Biblioteca de la Academia de la Historia y en la Nacional de esta Corte. [1527-1559.]

(In "Colección de Documentos Inéditos para la Historia de España. Por el Marqués de la Fuensanta del Valle y D. José Sancho Rayon." Tom. 62-66.)

Imprenta de Miguel Genesta: Madrid, 1875-76. 8°.

[9197. ff.]

56. ———. —An Account of the First Voyages and Discoveries made by the Spaniards in America. Containing the most Exact Relation hitherto publish'd, of their unparallel'd Cruelties on the Indians, in the destruction of above Forty Millions of People. With the Propositions offer'd to the King of Spain, to prevent the further Ruin of the West-Indies. By Don Bartholomew de las Casas, Bishop of Chiapa, who was an Eyewitness of their Cruelties. Illustrated with Cuts. To which is added, The Art of Travelling, shewing how a Man may dispose his Travels to the best advantage. [With 2 Plates of 22 Scenes.] pp. 248. 40.

London: Printed by J. Darby for D. Brown at the Black Swan and Bible without Temple-Bar, J. Harris at the Harrow in Little Britain, and Andr. Bell at the Cross-keys and Bible in Cornhill, MDCXCIX. 8°.

[G. 15933. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.]

57. ———. —Lettere di Bartolommeo di las Casas a Filippo II., Re di Spagna. (In "Raccolta di Viaggi dalla Scoperta del Nuovo Continente fino a' di nostri. Compilata da F. C. Marmocchi." tom. 11. pp. 461-546.)

Fratelli Giachetti: Prato, 1843. 8°.

[1424. i. 5.]

58. **Catherwood, Frederick.** —Views of Ancient Monuments in Central America, Chiapas and Yucatan. By F. Catherwood, Archt. Owen Jones Chromolith. pp. 24. Outline Map, with Sites. 25 Plates.

F. Catherwood: London, 1844. fol.

[1263. i. 19.]

59. **Cepeda, Fernando de, and Carrillo, Fernando Alfonso.** —Relacion Universal Legitima y Verdadera del Sitio en que esta fundada la muy noble, insigne, y muy leal Ciudad de México, cabeça de las Provincias de toda la Nueva España. Lagunas, Rios, y Montes que la cñen y rodean. Calçadas que las dibiden. Y Azequias que la atraviesan. Ynundaciones que à padecido desde su Gentilidad. Remedios aplicados. Desagues propuestos, y emprendidos. Origen y fabrica del de Gueguetocar y estado en que oy se halla. Ymposiciones, derramas, y gastos que se an hecho. Forma con que se à auctuado desde el año de 1553 hasta el presente de 1637. De Orden y mandató del Excellētissimo Señor D. Lope Diez de Armēdariz, Marques de Cadereita, del Consejo de Guerra de su Majestad, su Mayordomo, Virrey, Governador y Capitā General de la Nueva España, y Presidente de la Real Audiēcia que en esta Ciudad reside. Dispuesta y ordenada por el Licenciado Don Fernando de Cepeda, Relator della. Y Don Fernando Alfonso Carrillo, Escrivano Mayor del Cavildo. Corregida, ajustada, y concertada con el Licenciado Don Juan de Albares Serrano, del Consejo de su Magestad Oydor mas antiguo de la dicha Real Audiencia. 3 parts.

En México: en la Imprenta de Francisco Salbago, Ministro del S. Officio, Año de 1637. fol.

- 59 a. ———. —Impressa, y Publicada esta Relacion en 7 de Abril deste Año se presentó contra ella por parte de Don Antonio Urrutia de Vergara ante el señor Virrey una petició de addiciones, pretendiendo no averse hecho con el ajustamiento que se devia, etc.

México, à 22 de Julio de 1637. fol.

[K. 145. e. 15.—From the Library of King George III.]

60. **Cervántes de Salazar**, Francisco. —México en 1554. Tres Diálogos Latinos que Francisco Cervántes Salazar escribió é imprimió en México en dicho Año. Los reimprime, con Traducción Castellana y Notas, Joaquin García Icazbalceta, etc. [Dedicated to Señor Don José María Andrade.] pp. L. 344.

Antigua Librería de Andrade y Morales, Portal de Agustinos núm. 3: México, 1875. 8°.

[10480. ee. 3.—180 copies only printed.]

61. **Chappe d'Auteroche**, Jean. —Voyage en Californie pour l'Observation du Passage de Venus sur le Disque du Soleil, le 3 Juin 1769. Contenant les observations de ce phénomène, & la description historique de la route de l'Auteur à travers le Mexique. Par feu M. Chappe d'Auteroche, de l'Académie Royale des Sciences. Rédigé & publié [with "Histoire Abrégée de la Parallaxe du Soleil"], par M. de Cassini fils, de la même Académie, Directeur en survivance de l'Observatoire Royal de Paris, &c. [At Page 32: Plan de la Ville de Mexico. De la Gardette sculp. This finely engraved Plan measures 20½ x 15 Inches, and has been reproduced in fac-simile by Mr. Donald Macbeth for the Second Volume of the present work.] pp. 172.

À Paris: Chez Charles-Antoine Jombert, Libraire du Roi pour l'Artillerie & le Génie, rue Dauphine, à l'Image Notre-Dame; (de l'Imprimerie de Fr. Ambroise Didot, rue Pavée), M.DCC.LXXII. 4°.

[K. 145. d. 7. From the Library of King George III.—983. d. 23. From the Library of Sir Joseph Banks.]

62. ———. —A Voyage to California, to observe the Transit of Venus. By Mons. Chappe d'Auteroche. With an Historical Description of the Author's Route through Mexico, and the Natural History of that Province. Also, A Voyage to Newfoundland and Sallee, to make experiments on Mr. Le Roy's Time Keepers. By Monsieur de Cassini. pp. 215. [With a reduction of the Plan of the City of Mexico, engraved by M. de La Gardette, 10 x 7½ Inches.]

Printed for Edward and Charles Dilly, in the Poultry: London, MDCCCLXXVIII. 8°.

[792. g. 31. (2.) From the Library of King George III., though not placed with the Royal Collection. At page 104 is the following note: "We are farther obliged to Don Alzate for a very accurate map of Mexico, which he has delineated from the best accounts of such travellers as he is within reach of consulting in that country. He has also sent us a map, drawn up in Cortès's life time, by which it is evident that in those early times they already knew California to be a peninsula, and the extent of it was as well ascertained as it has since been by later discoveries. Had this map been published in his time, it would have saved many disputes about California. The readiness of Don [Joseph Antonio de] Alzate y Ramirez to communicate to us whatever might be interesting in a country so near to us, together with his talents and personal qualities, have deserved the encomiums, and excited the gratitude of the members of the Academy [Académie Royale des Sciences], who have testified their sense of his merit, by admitting him to be one of their correspondents."]

63. **Charnay**, Désiré.—Le Mexique. Souvenirs et Impressions de Voyage. 1858-1861. pp. 439.

E. Dentu : Paris, 1863. 8°.

[10480. bb. 29.]

64. ———.—Les Anciennes Villes du Nouveau Monde. Voyages d'explorations au Mexique et dans l'Amérique Centrale. Par Désiré Charnay. 1857-1882. Ouvrage contenant 214 gravures et 19 cartes ou plans. pp. xii. 469.

Hachette et Cie. : Paris, 1885. fol.

[1789. d. 10.]

65. **Clavigero**, Francesco Saverio.—Storia Antica del Messico. Cavata da' migliori storici Spagnuoli, e da' Manoscritti, e dalle pitture antiche degl' Indiani. Divisa in dieci libri, e corredata di carte geografiche, e di varie figure: e Dissertazioni sulla Terra, sugli Animali, e sugli abitatori del Messico. Opera dell' Abate D. Francesco Saverio Clavigero. 2 tom. 21 Plates. 2 Maps.

Per Gregorio Biasini all' Insegna di Pallade : in Cesena, MDCCCLXXX-I. 4°.

[K. 145. c. 7-10. From the Library of King George III.—983. d. 21, 22. From the Library of Sir Joseph Banks.]

66. ———.—The History of Mexico. Collected from Spanish and Mexican Historians, from Manuscripts, and Ancient Paintings of the Indians. Illustrated by Charts, and other Copper Plates. To which are added, Critical Dissertations on the Land, the Animals, and Inhabitants of Mexico. By Abbé D. Francesco Saverio Clavigero. Translated from the original Italian by Charles Cullen, Esq. In Two Volumes.

Printed for G. G. J. and J. Robinson, No. 25, Pater-noster Row, London, MDCCLXXXVII. 4°.

[K. 147. d. 13, 14. From the Library of King George III.—984. f. 19, 20. From the Library of Sir Joseph Banks.]

- 66 a. ———.—The Second Edition. In Two Volumes.

Printed for J. Johnson, St. Paul's Churchyard, by Joyce Gold, Shoe Lane : London, 1807. 4°.

[1771. f. 17.]

67. ———.—Historia Antigua de Megico. Sacada de los mejóres Historiadores españoles, y de los manuscritos, y de las pinturas antiguas de los Indios. Dividida en diez libros. Adornada con mapas y estampas, e ilustrada con Disertaciones sobre la tierra, los animales, y los habitantes de Megico. Escrita por D. Francisco Saverio Clavigero, y traducida del Italiano por José Joaquin de Mora. 2 tom.

Londres : lo publica R. Ackermann, Strand, y en su establecimiento en Megico : asimismo en Colombia, en Buenos Ayres, Chile, Peru, y Guatemala, 1826. 8°.

[1061. k. 17, 18.]

68. **Codex Ramirez.**

See Ramirez, José Fernando. 1903.

69. **Codex Troano-Americano.**—La Conquista de México efectuada por Hernán Cortés. Según el Códice Jeroglífico Troano-Americano. Edición especial, que con preliminares de la clave jeroglífica, dedica al Señor Presidente de la República Mexicana, General Don Porfirio Díaz el Presbítero Dámaso Sotomayor, Miembro no residente de la Asociación Americanista de Francia. [Illustrated.] pp. 40.

Tipografía de la Oficina Impresora del Timbre: México, 1897. fol.
[7705. h. 36.]

Cortés, Hernando, Marqués del Valle de Guajaca.

[FIVE LETTERS.]

70. ———.—Cartas de Relacion [I-V] de Fernando Cortés sobre el Descubrimiento y Conquista de la Nueva España. [1519-1526.] (In "Biblioteca de Autores Españoles, desde la formación del lenguaje hasta nuestros días. Historiadores Primitivos de Indias. [Tom. 1.] Colección dirigida é ilustrada por Don Enrique de Vedría." Tom. XXII. pp. xv-xvii. 1-153.)

Imprenta y Estercotipia de M. Rivadeneyra: Madrid, 1852. 8°.
[2044. a.]

71. ———.—Cartas y Relaciones de Hernan Cortés al Emperador Carlos V. [1519-1544.] Colegidas é ilustradas por Don Pascual de Gayángos, etc. pp. li. 575.

Imprenta Central de los Ferro-Carriles, A. Chaix y Ca.: Paris, 1866. 8°.
[9771. f. 16.]

72. ———.—Lettres de Fernand Cortes à Charles-Quint sur la Découverte et la Conquête du Mexique. Traduites par Désiré Charnay. Avec Préface du docteur E. T. Hamy, membre de l'Institut. pp. x. 387.]

Hachette et Cie.: Paris, 1896. 8°.
[9551. dd. 6.]

73. ———.—Letters of Cortés. The Five Letters of Relation from Fernando Cortés to the Emperor Charles V. Translated, and Edited, with a Biographical Introduction and Notes compiled from Original Sources, by Francis Augustus MacNatt. 2 vols.

G. P. Putnam's Sons: New York and London, 1908. 8°.
[9551. g. 3.]

[LETTERS TWO TO FIVE.]

74. ———.—The Despatches of Hernando Cortés, the Conqueror of Mexico addressed to the Emperor Charles V., written during the Conquest, and containing a narrative of its events. [Letters 2 to 5.] Now first translated into English from the Original Spanish, with an Introduction and Notes, by George Folsom, one of the Secretaries of the New York Historical Society, &c., &c. pp. xii. 431.

Wiley and Putnam: New York & London, 1843. 8°.
[1446. k. 1.]

[LETTERS TWO TO FOUR.]

75. ———.—Carta de Relacion, embiada a su Sacra Magestad del Emperador Nuestro Señor por el Capitan General de la Nueva España, llamado D. Fernando Cortés, etc. [Printed by Jacobo Cromberger, Sevilla, Nov. 8, 1522.] (Carta Tercera, etc.—Carta o Quarta Relacion, etc.—In

"Historiadores Primitivos de las Indias Occidentales, que juntó, tradujo en parte, y sacó á luz, ilustrados con eruditas Notas, y copiosos Indices, el Ilustrísimo Señor D. Andres Gonzalez Barcia, del Consejo, y Camara de S. M. Divididos en tres Tomos, cuyo contenido se verá en el folio siguiente. Tom. 1. Part 2. pp. 1-156.)

Madrid, Año MDCCXLIX. fol.

[K. 145. f. 9. From the Library of King George III.]

76. ———.—Historia de Nueva-España. Escrita por su esclarecido Conquistador, Hernan Cortés. Aumentada con otros Documentos, y Notas por el Ilustrísimo Señor Don Francisco Antonio Lorenzana, Arzobispo de Mexico. [Illustrated. With a Map: Plano de la Nueva España, en que se señalan los Viages que luzo el Capitan Hernan Cortés assi antes como despues de conquistado el Imperio Mexicano. Dispuesto por D^a. Iph. Ant^o. de Alzate y Ramirez. Año de 1769. Navarro delin. 1770.

At Page 1 is a double Plate: El Grande Templo de Mexico. Navarro sculpio en Mexico. Calle de los Donzeles. Año 1769.

At Page 2 is a Plate: Los Meses de el Año Mexicano, &c. Manuel Villavicencis sc. En Mexico.

Pages 11-36: Gobierno Politico de Nueva España. A List of the Viceroys of Mexico, 1535-1769.

Page 176. Cordillera de los Pueblos que antes de la Conquista pagaban Tributo á el Emperador Muctezuma y en que especie y cantidad. 32 engraved Plates.] pp. xvi. 400.

En México en la Imprenta del Superior Gobierno, del Br. D. Joseph Antonio de Hegal en la Calle de Tiburcio, Año de 1770. fol.

[K. 145. d. 14. From the Library of King George III.—G. 6393. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—With a List of the 45 Viceroys of Mexico, 1535-1766. pp. 13-36.]

77. ———.—Correspondance de Fernand Cortès avec l'Empereur Charles-Quint sur la Conquête du Mexique. Traduite par M. le Vicomte de Flavigny, Lieutenant-Colonel de Dragons, & Chevalier de l'Ordre Royal & Militaire de Saint-Louis. (Voyage de Fernand Cortès dans la Peninsule de la Californie. Avec une note de toutes les expéditions, qui y ont été faites jusqu' en 1769, pour l'intelligence des desseins de Fernand Cortès & de sa troisième [or rather quatrième] Lettre.) pp. xxvi. 508.

À Paris: Chez Cellot & Jombert Fils jeune, Libraires, rue Dauphine, la seconde porte cochère à droite, au fond de la cour, [1778.] 12°.

[K. 278. c. 20.—From the Library of King George III.—The Fourth Letter is dated: *le 15 Octobre, 1724*, in error for 1524.]

- 77 a. ———.—[Another edition. Dedicated to Madame la Marquise de Polignac.] pp. xvi. 471.

Chez J. J. Kesler: à Francfort, 1779. 8°.

[1446. h. 5.—With the Book-plate of the Duke of Sussex. *Perkins and Heath. Patent Hardened Steel Plate.*—Purchased June 24, 1845.]

78. —. —Historia de Méjico. Escrita por su esclarecido Conquistador, Hernan Cortés. Aumentada con otros Documentos y Notas por D. Francisco Antonio Lorenzana, Antiguo Arzobispo de Méjico. [1770.] Revisada y adaptada á la ortografía moderna por D. Manuel Del Mar. [With 3 Illustrations, and a Noticia Histórica de Hernan Cortés.] pp. 110. 614.

La publican los Sres. White, Gallaher y White, en la Imprenta de Vanderpool y Cole: Nueva [sic] York, 1828. 8°.

[9771. c. 30.]

79. —. —Drei Berichte des General-Kapitains von Neu-Spanien Don Fernando Cortes an Kaiser Karl V. Aus dem Spanischen übersetzt, mit einem Vorworte und erläuternden Anmerkungen von Dr. Carl Wilhelm Koppe, Königl. Preuss. Geh. Regierungs-Rath. Mit einer Karte und einem Fragment des in Hieroglyphen abgefassten Alt-Mexikanischen Tribut-Registers. pp. xxxi. 512. F. P.

Verlag von Theodor Chr. Fr. Enslin: Berlin, 1834. 8°.

[10480. c. 2. Purchased July 23, 1863.]

80. —. —Lettres de Fernand Cortès à Charles-Quint. Complétées par les Récits de Antoine de Solis. Réduites et annotées par Vallée, de la Bibliothèque Nationale. (*Bibliothèque d'Aventures et de Voyages.*) pp. viii. 275.

Maurice Dreyfous: Paris, 1879. 8°.

[9771. bb. 4.]

[LETTERS TWO & THREE.]

81. —. —Praeclara Ferdinãdi Cortesii de Nova maris Oceani Hispania Narratio Sacratissimo ac Invictissimo Carolo Romanorũ Imperatori semper Augusto, Hispaniarũ, &c., Regi Anno Domini M.D.XX transmissa: In qua Continentur Plurima scitu & admiratione digna Circa egregias earũ pũntiarũ Urbes, Incolarũ mores, puerorũ Sacrificia, & Religiosas Personas, Potissimũq' de Celebrĩ Civitate Temixtitan Variisq' illis mirabilib' que legẽtẽ mirifice delectabũt p' Doctorẽ Petrũ saguor-gnanũ Foro Juliensẽ Reveñ. D. Joan. de Revelles Episco. Viẽñesis Secretariũ ex Hispano Idiomate in latine versa. (De rebus et Insulis noviter Repertis a Sereniss. Carolo Imperatore, Et Variis earum gentium moribus. [By Pietro Martire d'Anghiera.]) ff. 49. 12.

Impressa in Celebrĩ Civitate Norimberga. Cõventui Imperiali presidente Serenissimo Ferdinando Hispaniarũ Infãte, & Archiduce Austriẽ Sac: Ro. Imp: Locũt. Generali. Per Tridericum Peypus, Arthimesius. Anno Dñi. M.D.XXIII. Quar. No. Mar. fol.

[C. 20. e. 9. (1.) With a Map of the City of Mexico, slightly mutilated, and with a wood-cut portrait of Pope Clement VII., at the end of the *Argumentum Libri*.—G. 7032. (2.) Wants the Map.]

- 81 a. —. —Tertia Ferdinãdi Cortesii Sac. Caesar. et Cath. Majesta. in Nova Maris Oceani Hispania Generalis præfecti p̃clara Narratio, In qua Celebris Civitatis Temixtitan expugnatio, aliarũq' Provinciarũ, que defecerant recuperatio continetur, In quarũ expugnatione, recuperationeq' Præfectus, una cum Hispanis Victorias æterna memoria dignas consequutus est, præterea In ea Mare del Sur Cortesium detexisse recẽseĩ, quod nos Australe Indicũ Pelagus putam', & alias innumeras Provincias Aurifodinis, Unionibus, Variisq' Gemmarum generibus refertas, Et postremo illis innotuisse in eis quoq' Aromatac contineri,

Per Doctorē Petrum Savorgnanū Forojuliensem Revū. in Christo patr
dñi Jo. de Revelles Episcopi Viēfensis Secretarium Ex Hyspan
ydiomate In Latinum Versa. ff. 51.

*Impressum in Imperiali Civitate Norimberga, Per Discretum
& providum Virum Fædericū Arthemesium Civem ibidem, Ann
Virginē partus Millesimo quingentesimo vigesimo quarto. [1524.
fol.*

[C. 20. e. 9. (2.)—G. 7032. (3.) From the Library of the Right
Hon. Thomas Grenville.—With a Portrait of Charles V. above the
Title, and on the *verso* a large plate of the Arms of Germany and
Spain, encircled by the Collar of the Golden Fleece.—Mr. Grenville's
copy is bound up with Simon Grynaeus: *Novus Orbis*, Apud Io
Hervagium: Basileae, Anno M.D.XXXII, in contemporary binding.

82. ———.—De Insulis Nuper Inventis Ferdinandi Cortesii ad Carolum V.
Rom. Imperatorein Narrationes, cum alio quodam Petri Martyris ad
Clementem VII. Pontificem Maximum consimilis argumenti libello.
His accesserunt Epistolæ duæ, de felicissimo apud Indos Evangelii
incremento, quas superioribus hisce diebus quidam fratres Mino. ab
India in Hispaniam transmiserunt. Item Epitome de inventis nuper
Indiæ populis idolatris ad fidem Christi, atq' adeo ad Ecclesiam
Catholicam convertendis, Autore R. P. F. Nicolao Herborn, regularis
observantia; ordinis Minorum Generali Commissario Cismontano.

(Ferdinandi Cortesii de Nova Maris Oceani Hispania Narratio
secunda.—Tertia Ferdinandi Cortesii Sac. Caes. et Cath. Ma. in Nova
maris Oceani Hispania generalis præfecti præclara narratio . . . Per
Doctorem Petrum Savorgnanum Forojuliensem . . . ex Hispano
idionate in Latinum versa.)

*Coloniæ: ex officina Melchioris Novesiani, Anno M.D.XXXII. Decimo
Kalendas mensis Septembris; Coloniæ: Impensis honesti civis
Arnoldi Birckman. Anno Domini M.D.XXXII. Mense Septembri.
Venduntur in pingui Gallina. [1532.] fol.*

[C. 20. e. 16.—G. 6814. From the Library of the Right Hon.
Thomas Grenville.—982. i. 18. From the Library of Sir Joseph
Banks. Cropped.—On the Title-page is a Portrait of Charles V.,
crowned, surrounded by a border containing 25 Coats of Arms
of countries and towns ruled by the Emperor. The Portrait also
occurs in front of the Second and of the Third Letter.—The
Printer's Device of the "honestus civis" in the imprint is a hen-
roost guarded by two foxes!]

83. ———.—[Another edition.] In "Novus Orbis Regionum ac Insularum
veteribus Incognitarum cum Tabula Cosmographica, & aliquot aliis
consimilis argumenti libellis, nunc novis navigationibus auctus, quorum
omnium catalogus sequenti patebit pagina." [Edited by Simon Gry-
naeus.] pp. 536-677.

*Basileæ: per Joannem Hervagium, Anno M.D.LV. Mense Septembri.
[1555.] fol.*

[G. 7034. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—
With the rare Map: *Typus Cosmographicus Universalis*.—K. 216.
d. 1. From the Library of King George III. With the Map.]

- 83 a. ———.—[Another edition.] In "Novus Orbis, id est, Navigationes
Primæ in Americam: quibus adjunximus Gasparis Varrerii Discursum
super Ophyra Regione." [Edited by Simon Grynaeus.] pp. 175-570.
Apud Johannem Leonardi Berewout: Roterodami, Anno M.D.CXVI. 8°.
[G. 6901. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—
1060. a. 23. (1, 2.)]

84. ———. —Epitome de la Seconde narration de la mer Oceane de Ferdinant Cortese: trāslatée de latin en françoys, à très noble adolescēt mōsieur Charles duc Dāgoulesme tiers filz du très-chrestien roy de frāce Françoys premier de ce nom. [October 30, 1520.] Epitome de la Tierce narration de Ferdinant Cortese. [May 15, 1522.]

In "Extraict ou Recueil des Isles nouvellemēt trouvées en la grand mer Oceane ou temps du roy Despaigne Fernād & Elizabeth sa femme, faict premièrement en latin par Pierre Martyr de Millan, & depuis translaté en languaige françoys. Item trois Narrations: dont la première est de Cuba, & commence au fueillet 132. La seconde, qui est de la mer Oceane, commence au fueillet 155. La tierce, qui est de la prinse de Tenustitan, commence au fueillet 192. ff. 207.

On les vend à Paris, rue saint Jehan de Beauvais, chez Simon de Colines au soleil dor. (Imprimé à Paris par Simon de Colines, libraire juré de l'université de Paris, Lan de grâce, Mil cinq cēs trente-deux, le douzième jour de Janvier.) [1532.] 4°.

[K. 279. h. 33. —From the Library of King George III. —979. l. 28. From the Library of Sir Joseph Banks. With the autographs of two former owners: Sir Henry Spelman, (1564-1641), & Daines Barrington (1727-1800). —1061. c. 9. From the Library of King Henry VIII. Bound in red silk.]

85. ———. —Ferdinandi Cortesii von dem Newen Hispanien so im Meer gegem Niedergang zuo gantz lustige und fruchtreiche Historien an den grossmächtigsten unüberwindtlichisten Herren Carolum V., Römischen Kaiser, &c., Künig in Hispanien, &c. Die erst im M.D.XX jar zugeschriben in wellicher gründtlich und glaubwürdig erzelt wirdt der Abendtländern und sonderlich der Hochberümpften statt Temixtitan eroberung. Die andere im 1524 jar Wie Temixtitan so abgefallen wider erobert Nachmals andere herzliche syg sampt der erfindung des Meers Sur So man für das Indianisch Meer achtet. Darzu auch von vilen andern Landschaften Indie So erfunden von dem 1536 biss auf das 42 jar. Wellicher vilfältige frucht nutz und lustparkait in ainer Suñ auff das kürtzezt ainer yetwedern Historien volgendes Tittel begriffen und angezaigt wirdt. Erstlich in Hispanischer Sprach von Cortesio selbst beschriben Nachmals von Doctor Peter Savorgnan auss Friaul in Lateinische sprach Transferiert Entlich aber in Hochteutsche sprach zu ehren und auss underthänigster gehorsame dem Allerdurchleuchtigsten Grossmächtigsten Fürsten un Herrn Herrn Ferdinanden Römischen zu Hungern und Böhem &c. Künigen Infantē in Hispanien Ertzhertzen zu Osterreich &c., von Xysto Betaleio un Andrea Diethero von Augspurg baiden daselbst gemainer Statt Lateinischen Schulmaistern. ff. 2 parts. ff. 39. 60.

Getruckt inn der Kaiserlichen Reichs Statt Augspurg durch Philipp Ulhart In der Kirchgassen bey S. Ulrich, Anno Domini M.D.L. [1550.] fol.

[G. 6816. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville. — G. 6817. Another copy of the Third Letter, without the Supplement. ff. 50.]

[FIRST LETTER.]

The First Letter of Cortés to the Emperor Charles V. has been lost, but is replaced by the Letter of the Municipality of Vera Cruz to the Emperor, dated July 10, 1519.

86. ———. —Carta de Relacion. (In "Colección de Documentos Inéditos para la Historia de España." Tom. I.)
Madrid, 1842. 8°.
[9107. ff.]

87. ———. —Carta de Relacion. In "Biblioteca de Autores Españoles desde la formacion del lenguaje hasta nuestros dias. Historiadores Primitivos de Indias. [Tom. I.] Colección dirigida é ilustrada por Don Enrique de Vedia." Tom. XXII.)

M. Rivadeneyra: Madrid, 1852. 8°.

[2044. a.]

[SECOND LETTER.]

October 30, 1520.

88. ———. —Carta de relació ébiada a su S. majestad del épador nño señor por el capitā general de la nueva spaña : llamado fernādo cortes. En la q̄l haze relació dlas tierras y provicias sin cuēto q̄ hā descubierto nuevamēte enel yucatā del año de xix a esta pte : y ha sometido a la corona real de su S. M. En especial haze relació de una grādissima provincia muy rica llamada Culua : éla q̄l ay muy grādes ciudades y de maravillosos edificios : y de grādes tratos y riq̄zas. Entre las q̄les ay una mas maravillosa y rica q̄ todas llamada Timixtitā : q̄ esta por maravillosa arte edificada sobre una grāde laguna. dela q̄l ciudad y provincia es rey un grādissimo señor llamado Muteequna : dōde le acacierō al capitā y a los españoles espātosos cosas de oyr. Cuenta largamēte del grādissimo señorío del dicho Muteequna y de sus ritos y ceremonias. y de como se sirve. [G. L. 28 leaves. sig. a-d. 47 to 49 lines in a full page. On the Title a woodcut, representing the Emperor Charles V. seated on a Throne.]

La presente carta de relacion fue impressa en la muy noble & muy leal ciudad de Sevilla : por Jacobo cröberger aleman. A. viii dias de Noviembre. Año de M. d. & xxii. [November 8, 1522.] fol.

[C. 20. e. 26. (1.)—G. 6815. (1.) From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.]

- 88 a. ———. —[Another edition.] Carta de relacion embiada a su S. majestad del Emperador nuestro señor por el Capitan general de la nueva España : llamado Fernando cortes, etc. [G. L. 28 leaves. sig. a-d. 48 lines to a full page. On the Title is a woodcut, representing the Emperor Charles V., with a suite of eight persons, receiving the letter from a messenger with five companions. Above the dedication, folio 1, verso, is a woodcut of Cortés, and two of his vessels.]

La presente carta de relacion fue impressa en la muy noble & muy leal ciudad de Caragoça : por George Coci, Aleman. A. v. dias de Enero. Año de M. d. & xxiii. fol.

[G. 6815. (2.) From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.]

89. ———. —La preclara Narratione di Ferdinando Cortese della Nuova Hispagna del Mare Oceano, al Sacratissimo & Invictissimo Carlo di Romani Imperatore sempre Augusto Re Dhispagna, & cio che siegue, nell año del Signore M.D.XX. trasinessa : Nella quale si cōtēgono molte cose degne di scienza, & ammiratione, circa le cittadi egregie di quelle Provincie costumi dhabitatori, sacrifici di Fanciulli, & Religiose persone, Et massimamente della celebre citta Temixtitan, & varie cose maravigliose di quella, e quali diletteranno mirabilmente il lettore per il Dottore Pietro Savorgnano Forojuliense Del Riverendo Messer Giovañi de Revelles Vescovo di Vienna Secretario dal iddioma Hispagnuolo in lingua latina. Conversa Nel Anno M.D.XXIII. di Primo Marzo : Hora nelledesso Millesimo di xvii. Agosto. Voi Candidissimi lettori leggerete con diletatione & piacere grandissimo la prefata Narratione di

Ferdinando Corte se dalla Facòdia latina al splendore della lingua volgare p' Messer Nicolo Liburnio cò fidelta & diligeza tradotta al cómodo, & sodiffatione de gl'honesti & virtuosi ingegni.

Stampata in Venetia per Bernardino de Viano de Lexona Vercellese. Ad instantia de Baptista de Pederzani Briziani. Anno domini M.D.XXIII. Adi XX. Agosto. [August 20, 1524.] 4°.

[9771. b. 11. With the rare wood-cut Plan of the City of Mexico, and a large Printer's Device, an elephant carrying a castle, on a single leaf, following the Colophon.—G. 6763. Wants the Plan. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—1446. h. 12. With the Book-plate of Augustus Frederick, Duke of Sussex. Wants the Plan, & also the Printer's Device.]

90. ———. —Di Fernando Cortese la Seconda Relatione della Nuova Spagna. Perche la Prima da lui fatta, benché da noi diligentemente ricercata non habbiamo potuto infino a hoggi ritrovare. Al Sereniss, et Invittiss. Imperatore Carlo V. *Della Città della Securezza de confini della Nuova Spagna del Mare Oceano, alli 30 d'Ottobre, 1520.* (In "Terzo Volume delle Navigationi et Viaggi. Raccolto già da M. Gio. Battista Ramusio." fol. 225-254.)

In Venetia: nella Stamperia de' Guinti, l'Anno MDLXV. fol.

[G. 6820.—From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—679. h. 10. From the Library of the Rev. Clayton Mordaunt Cracherode. With the arms and cyphers of Jaques Auguste de Thou, and his first wife, Marie Barbançon.]

91. ———.—Lettere di Ferdinando Cortes al Serenissimo ed Invittissimo Imperatore Carlo V. Intorno ai fatti della Nuova Spagna o Messico. Dalla Città della Sicurezza dei Confini della Nuova Spagna del Mare Oceano; addi 30 ottobre 1520. (In "Raccolta di Viaggi dalla Scoperta del Nuovo Continente fino a' di nostri. Compilata da F. C. Mar-mocchi." tom. 11. pp. 69-275.)

Fratelli Giachetti: Prato, 1843. 8°.

[1424. i. 5.]

92. ———.—Fernand Cortez, Voyageur espagnol, 1519-1547. [With a French translation of the Second Letter, October 30, 1520.] Bibliographie. (In "Voyageurs Anciens et Modernes, ou Choix des Relations de Voyages les plus intéressantes et les plus instructives depuis le cinquième siècle avant Jésus-Christ jusqu' au dix-neuvième siècle avec Biographies, Notes et Indications Iconographiques par M. Edouard Charton, Redacteur en Chef du *Magasin Pittoresque*." Tom. 3. pp. 357-424.)

Aux Bureaux du "Magasin Pittoresque": Paris, 1869. 8°.

[2060. b.—10027. g. 2.]

[THIRD LETTER.]

May 15, 1522.

93. ———.—Carta tercera de relació: embiada por Fernão cortes capitan & justicia mayor del yucatan llamado la nueva españa del mar oceano: al muy alto y potentissimo cesar & ivictissimo señor dō Carlos emperador semper augusto y rey de españa nuestro señor: de las cosas sucedidas & muy dignas de admiracion en la conquista y recuperacion de la muy grande & maravillosa ciudad de Temixtitan: y de las otras provincias a ella sujetas que se rebelaron. En la qual ciudad & dichas provincias el dicho capitan y espafioles configuieron grandes y señaladas victorias dignas de perpetua memoria. Assi mesmo haze relacion como

hã descubierto el mar del Sur : y otras muchas & grãdes provincias muy ricas de minas de oro : y perlas : y piedras preciosas : & aun tener noticia que ay especeria. [G. L. 30 leaves. sig. a-d. 48 lines in a full page. With a woodcut of Charles V., as in the Second Letter. 1522.]

La p̄sente carta d' relacio fue impressa e la muy noble & muy leal ciudad d' sevilla por Jacobo croberger alemã : acabo se a. xxx. dias de março : año d' mill & quiniētōs & xxiii. [March 30, 1523.] fol.

[C. 20. e. 26. (2.)—G. 6815. (3.) From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.]

94. ———. —Di Fernando Cortese la Terza Relatione della Nuova Spagna. *Della Città di Cuioacan di questa sua nuova Spagna del mare Oceano, Alli quindici di Maggio, L'anno del Signore 1522.* (In "Terzo Volume delle Navigazioni et Viaggi. Raccolto gia da M. Gio Battista Ramusio." fol. 254-284.)

In Venetia : nella Stamperia de' Giunti, l'Anno MDLXV. fol.

[G. 6820.—679. h. 10.]

[FOURTH LETTER.]

October 15, 1524.

95. ———. —La quarta relacion q̄ Fernãdo cortes governador y capitan general por su majestad en la nueva España d'el mar oceano embio al muy alto & muy potentissimo invictissimo señor don Carlos emperador semper augusto y rey de España nuestro señor : en la qual estan otras cartas & relaciones que los capitanes Pedro de alvarado & Diego godoy embiaron al dicho capitan Fernando cortes. [G. L. 22 leaves, the last blank. sig. a-c. 50 lines in a full page. On the Title page is a woodcut ornamental border, and above the Title a double-headed eagle, with the Royal Arms of Spain, and the Pillars of Hercules.]

Fue impressa la presente carta de relacion en la ymperial ciudad de Toledo por Gaspar de avila. Acabo se a veynte dias del mes de Octubre. Año del nascimiento de nuestro salvador Jesu Christo de mil & quinientos & veynte y cinco años. [October 20, 1525.] fol.

[C. 20. e. 26. (3.)—G. 6815. (4.) From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.]

96. ———. —Di Fernando Cortese la Quarta Relatione della Nuova Spagna. *Dalla gran città di Temistitan di questa nuova Spagna il quindici d'Ottobre del 1524.* (In "Terzo Volume delle Navigazioni et Viaggi. Raccolto gia da M. Gio. Battista Ramusio." fol. 284-296.)

In Venetia : nella Stamperia de' Giunti, l'Anno MDLXV. fol.

[G. 6820.—679. h. 10.]

[FIFTH LETTER.]

September 3, 1526.

97. ———. —The Fifth Letter of Hernan Cortés to the Emperor Charles V., Containing an Account of his Expedition to Honduras in 1525-26. Translated from the Original Spanish by Don Pascual de Gayángos. pp. xvi. 156. Hakluyt Society Publications. First Series. Vol. 40.

Hakluyt Society : London, 1868. 8°.

[R. Ac. 6172/35.]

[MONTEZUMA'S PRESENTS.]

98. ———.—Inventory of Presents of Montezuma. (In "Colección de Documentos Inéditos para la Historia de España." Tom. i. p. 461.) Madrid, 1842. 8°.
99. ———.—Inventory of Presents of Montezuma. (In "Historia Antigua de Méjico . . . Escrita por D. Francisco Saverio Clavigero, y traducida del Italiano por José Joaquín de Mora. México, 1844. 8°.
- [This Inventory was collated in 1754 by Juan Batista Muñoz with the copy in the Manual del Tésorero in the Casa de la Contratación at Sevilla.]

[APPENDIX.]

100. ———.—The Conquest of Mexico by Hernando Cortés. [With ten Engravings.] pp. viii. 252. (In "The World Displayed, or, A Curious Collection of Voyages and Travels, selected from the Writers of all Nations. [With an Introduction by Samuel Johnson.] . . . The Fourth Edition. Vol. II.) Printed for T. Carnan, and F. Newbery, Jun., at 65 in St. Paul's Church-Yard: London, MDCCLXXVII. 12°.
- [1424. b. 2.—With the Book-plate of Mr. Calverley.]
101. ———.—The Voyage and Expedition of H. Cortés, and Conquest of Mexico. [With a Plate, W. G. del. I. Ray sc.] pp. 60. London: Printed by T. Maiden, Sherbourn-Lane, for Ann Lemoine, White Rose Court, Coleman-Street, and J. Roe, No. 90, Houndsditch, [1806.] 12°.
- [9771. aa. 6.]
102. ———.—Conquête du Pérou [or rather, Mexico]. Par Fernand Cortez. (In *Nouvelle Bibliothèque des Voyages Anciens et Modernes*. [Edited by Auguste Duponchel.] Tom. 12. pp. 78-130.) P. Duménil: Paris, [1842.] 8°.
- [1424. c. 6.]
103. ———.—Sumario de la Residencia tomada à D. Fernando Cortés, Gobernador y Capitan General de la N. E., y à otros gobernadores y oficiales de la misma. [1528-1537.] Paleografiado del original por el Lic. Ignacio Lopez Rayon. (In "Archivo Mexicano.") 2 tom. Tipografia de Vicente García Torres: México, 1852-53. 8°.
- [9771. c. 31.]
104. ———.—*Bibliography*.
See Charton, Édouard. 1869.
105. ———.—*Biography*.
See Trueba y Cosío, Joaquín Telesfors de. 1829.
106. ———.—See Prescott, William Hickling. 1843.
1844.
1875.
1906.
107. ———.—See Charton, Édouard. 1869.
108. ———.—See Helps, Sir Arthur, K.C.B. 1871.
109. ———.—See Haebler, Konrad. 1887.

110. ———.—*Conquest of Mexico.*
See López de Gómara, Francisco. 1552.
111. ——— See Anghiera, Pietro Martire d'. 1577.
112. ——— See Campbell, John. 1748.
1764.
113. ——— See Dilworth, W. H., A. M. 1759.
114. ——— See Curths, Carl. 1828.
115. ——— See Cubitt, George, *Wesleyan Minister.* 1848.
1878.
116. ——— See D., H. P. [*i.e.* Henry Peter Dunster.] 1860.
117. ——— See Dalton, William, *Miscellaneous Writer.* 1862.
1872.
118. ——— See Codex Troano-Americano. 1897.
119. ———.—*Elogios.*
See Lasso de la Vega, Gabriel. 1601.
120. ———.—*Eroismo.*
See Caballero, Ramon Diosdado. 1806.
121. ———.—*Hechos.*
See Lasso de la Vega, Gabriel. 1588.
122. ———.—*Naves.*
See Fernández Duro, Cesáreo. 1882.
123. ———.—*Report of Alvarado.*
See Alvarado, Pedro de. 1565.
1749.
1838.
124. ———.—*Report of Godoy.*
See Godoy, Diego. 1565.
1749.
1838.
125. ———.—*Romances in which Cortés appears.*
See Bird, Robert Montgomery. 1835.
126. ———.—*Viaje.*
See Soto Hall, Máximo. 1900.
127. ———.—*Voyages & Discoveries.*
See Britton, John. 1799.
128. Cubitt, George, *Wesleyan Minister.*—Cortés, or, The Discovery and Conquest of Mexico. By George Cubitt. (Memorable Men and Memorable Events.) pp. 160.
John Mason: London, 1848. 12°.
[1156. a. 18.]

129. ———.—Cortés, or, The Discovery and Conquest of Mexico. By George Cubitt. [With an Illustration of the Colossal Head at Izamal.] pp. 142.
Wesleyan Conference Office: London, [1878.] 8°.
 [9772. aa. 5.]
130. **Curths, Carl.**—Die Eroberung Mexico's durch Hernandez Cortez. Historisches Gemälde für die Jugend. Von Carl Curths, Verfasser der Fortsetzung der von Schiller begonnenen Geschichte des Abfalls der vereinigten Niederlande. Zweite Ausgabe. [With a preface by August Rücker.] pp. xxx. 277.
August Rücker: Berlin, [1828.] 8°.
 [1446. h. 3. A new issue of the first edition of 1818, with a new Title-page.]
131. **D., H. P. [i.e., HENRY PETER DUNSTER.]** Conquest of Mexico and Peru, by Hernando Cortés and Francis Pizarro. Illustrated. [By H. P. D., i.e. Henry Peter Dunster.] pp. 295.
James Blackwood: London, [1860.] 8°.
 [9772. a. 12.]
132. **Dalton, William, Miscellaneous Writer.**—Cortés and Pizarro. The Stories of the Conquests of Mexico and Peru. With a sketch of the early adventures of the Spaniards in the New World. Re-told for youth by William Dalton . . . With Illustrations by John Gilbert. pp. x. 499.
Griffin, Bohn, and Co.: London, 1862 [1861]. 8°.
 [9781. a. 15.]
- 132a. ———.—[Another edition.] Stories of the Conquests of Mexico and Peru . . . By William Dalton . . . With Illustrations by Godwin. pp. viii. 499.
James Blackwood & Co.: London, [1872.] 8°.
 [9772. aaa. 40.]
133. **Díaz, Juan, Clerigo.**—Qui comincia lo Itinerario de Lisola de Iuchathan novamente ritrovata per il Signor Ioan de Grisalve Capitan Generale de Larmata del Re de Spagna & per il suo Capellano composta.
 (In "Itinerario de Ludovico de Varthema Bolognese ne lo Egypto ne la Suria ne la Arabia deserta & Felice ne la Persia ne la India ne la Ethiopia. La sede el vivere & costūi de la p'fate, puicie. Et al p'sente agiōtovi alcūe isole novamēte ritrovate.")
Impresso in Vinetia per Zorzi di Rusconi Milanese, nell' anno della Incarnazione del nostro Signore Jesu Christo, M.D.XX. adi III. de Marzo. Regnando lo inclito Principe Duca de Venetia. 12°.
 [C. 32. a. 36.—Purchased June 11, 1868.—Registro. A—N. Tutti sono Quaderni.]
134. ———.—Qui comincia lo Itinerario de Lisola de Iuchatan novamente ritrovata per il Signor Ioan de Grisalve Capitan Generale de Larmata del Re de spagna & p' il suo Capellano cōposta. (In "Itinerario de Ludovico de Varthema Bolognese," etc.)
Impresso in Venetia Nell' anno della Incarnazione del nostro Signore Jesu Christo Del M.D.XXVI. Adi XVI. Aprile. Regnando Lo Inclito Principe Andrea Gritti. 12°.
 [10027. aa. 4 Purchased July 6, 1876.—With the Book-plate of I. Lee, of Doctors' Commons.]

135. ———.—Qui comincia lo Itinerario de' Lisola de Iuchatan novamente ritrovata per il Signor Ioan de Grisalve Capitan Generale de Larmata del Re de Spagna & p' il suo Capellano còposta. (In "Itinerario de Ludovico de Varthema Bolognese," etc. fol. 89-100.)
Stampato in Vinegia per Francesco di Alessandro Bindone, & Mapheo Pasini compagni, a santo Moyse al segno de Langelo Raphael, nel M.D.XXXV. del mese d'Aprile. 12°.
 [G. 7062. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville. On the last leaf is the Printer's Device, the Archangel Raphael & Tobias.—790 a. 12. Damaged, and imperfect.]
136. ———.—Itinéraire du Voyage de la Flotte du Roi Catholique à l'Île de Yucatan dans l'Inde. Fait en l'an 1518, sous les ordres du capitaine général, Juan de Grijalva. Rédigé et dédié à S. A. [Don Diégo Colomb] par le chapelain en chef [Juan Díaz] de ladite flotte. (In "Voyages, Relations et Mémoires Originaux pour servir à l'Histoire de la Découverte de l'Amérique. Publiés pour la première fois en Français par H. Ternaux-Compans.—Tom. x. Recueil de Pièces relatives à la Conquête du Mexique. Inédit." pp. 1-47.)
Arthur Bertrand: Paris, MDCCCXXXVIII. 8°.
 [G. 15812. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—1196. i. 7.]
137. ———.—Itinerario del Viaggio che la Flotta del Re Cattolico fece nel 1518 nell' Yucatan sotto gli ordini del Capitano Generale Giovanni di Grijalva. Compilato e dedicato a S. A. Don Diego Colombo Ammiraglio e Vicere delle Indie da Giovanni Díaz, Primo Cappellano della Flotta Medesima. (In "Raccolta di Viaggi dalla Scoperta del Nuovo Continente fino a' di nostri. Compilata da F. C. Marmocchi." Tom. 11. pp. 43-67.)
Fratelli Giachetti: Prato, 1843. 8°.
 [1424. i. 5.]
138. ———.—Itinerario de la Armada del Rey Católico á la Isla de Yucatan, en la India, el año 1518, en la que fué por Comandante y Capitan General Juan de Grijalva. Escrito para Su Alteza por el Capellan Mayor de la dicha Armada.—Itinerario de larmata del Re Catholico, etc. (Texto italiano y traduccion.—In "Coleccion de Documentos para la Historia de Mexico. Publicada por Joaquin García Icazbalceta." Tom. 1. pp. 281-308.)
Libreria de J. M. Andrade: México, 1858. 8°.
 [9771. f. 15.]
139. Díaz del Castillo, Bernal.—Carta de Bernal Díaz del Castillo al Emperador D. Carlos dando cuenta de los abusos que se cometian en la gobernacion de las provincias del Nuevo Mundo.—*Santiago de Guatemala*, 22 de febrero de 1552. (In *Cartas de Indias*. pp. 38-44.)
Imprenta de Manuel G. Hernandez: Madrid, 1877. fol.
 [1857. b. 5.—Maps 36. e. 1.]
140. ———.—Carta de Bernal Díaz del Castillo al Rey D. Felipe II., en la que denuncia algunos abusos cometidos con los indios, y pide se le nombre fiel-ejecutor de Guatemala, en atencion á los servicios que expone. *Guatemala*, 20 de febrero de 1558. [Facsimile E.] (In *Cartas de Indias*. pp. 45-47, & Facsimile E, 6 pages.)
Imprenta de Manuel G. Hernandez: Madrid, 1877. fol.
 [1857. b. 5.—Maps 36. e. 1.]

141. ———.—*Historia Verdadera de la Conquista de la Nueva-España.* Escrita por el Capitan Bernal Díaz del Castillo, uno de sus Conquistadores. Sacada á luz por el P. M. Fr. Alonso Remon, Predicador, y Coronista General del Orden de Nuestra Señora de la Merced Redempcion de Cautivos. Á la Catholica Magestad del Mayor Monarca Don Felipe Quarto, Rey de las Españas y Nuevo Mundo, N. Señor. ff. 254.

En Madrid: en la Imprenta del Reyno, Año de 1632. fol.

[G. 6417. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—K. 145 e. 18. From the Library of King George III.—674. k. 16. From the Library of the Rev. Clayton Mordaunt Cracherode.]

142. ———.—*Historia Verdadera de la Conquista de la Nueva España.* Escrita por el Capitan Bernal Díaz del Castillo, uno de sus Conquistadores. Sacada á luz por el P. M. Fr. Alonso Remon, Predicador y Coronista General del Orden de N. S. de la Merced, Redencion de Cautivos. Á la Catholica Magestad del Mayor Monarca D. Filipe IV., Rey de las Españas y Nuevo Mundo, N. S. ff. 256.

En Madrid: en la Empronta del Reyno, [1632.] fol.

[601. l. 10. With an engraved pictorial Title-Page by J. de Courbes.—601. l. 24. Wants the Title-Page and preliminary leaves.—fol. 255, 256 contain a new chapter: "Este capitulo, que es el ultimo del original, por parecer escusado, se dexo de imprimir; y oy a peticion de un Curioso se añade.]

143. ———.—*Historia Verdadera de la Conquista de la Nueva España.* Escrita por el Capitan Bernal Díaz del Castillo, uno de sus Conquistadores. 4 tom.

En Madrid: en la Imprenta de Don Benito Cano, Año de 1795, 1796. 8°.

[1197. b. 11, 12.]

144. ———.—*The True History of the Conquest of Mexico.* By Captain Bernal Díaz del Castillo, one of the Conquerors. Written in the year 1568 . . . Translated from the original Spanish by Maurice Keatinge, Esq. [With a plan of the City and Lake of Mexico.] pp. viii. 515.

London: Printed for J. Wright, Piccadilly, by John Dean, High Street: Congleton, 1800. 4°.

[G. 4293. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville. K. 145. d. 1.]

145. ———.—*The True History of the Conquest of Mexico.* By Captain Bernal Díaz del Castillo, one of the Conquerors. Written in the year 1568 . . . Translated from the original Spanish by Maurice Keatinge, Esq. Second Edition. 2 tom.

Cushing & Appleton: Salem, 1803. 8°.

[Not in the British Museum.]

146. ———.—*History of the Discovery and Conquest of Mexico.* Written in the year 1568, by Captain Bernal Díaz del Castillo, one of the Conquerors. [Based on the translation by Maurice Keatinge, 1800.] In "A General

History and Collection of Voyages and Travels . . . By Robert Kerr, F.R.S. and F.A.S., Edin." Vols. 3, 4. Pt. 2. Bk. 2. Ch. 5.—Sect. 1-24.

Edinburgh: Printed by George Ramsay and Company, for William Blackwood, South Bridge Street; J. Murray, Fleet Street, R. Baldwin, Paternoster Row, London; and J. Cumming, Dublin. 1811-12. 8°.

[1045. d. 3, 4.]

147. ———.—Denkwürdigkeiten des Hauptmanns Bernal Díaz del Castillo, oder Wahrhafte Geschichte der Entdeckung und Eroberung von Neu-Spanien, von einem der Entdecker und Eroberer selbst geschrieben. Aus dem Spanischen ins Deutsche übersetzt, und mit dem Leben des Verfassers, mit Anmerkungen und andern Zugaben versehen von Ph. J. von Rehfues. 4 Bde.

Bei Adolph Marcus: Bonn, 1838. 8°.

[9771. b. 17.]

- 147 a. ———.—Denkwürdigkeiten, &c. Zweite vermehrte Ausgabe. 4 Bde.

Adolph Marcus: Bonn, 1843-44. 8°.

[Not in the British Museum.]

148. ———.—The Full and True History of the Conquest of Mexico, by Cortez . . . By Captain Bernal Díaz del Castillo, one of the Conquerors. Translated . . . by Arthur Prynne.

Joel Munsell: Albany, [1839.] 8°.

[Not in the British Museum.—Jos. Sabin. No. 19982.]

149. ———.—The Memoirs of the Conquistador Bernal Díaz del Castillo. Written by himself. Containing a true and full account of the Discovery and Conquest of Mexico and New Spain. Translated from the original Spanish by John Ingram Lockhart, F.R.A.S., Author of "Attica and Athens." 2 vols.

J. Hatchard and Son; 187, Piccadilly: London, MDCCCXLIV. 8°.

[1197. h. 20, 21.]

150. ———.—Die Entdeckung und Eroberung von Mexico. Nach des Bernal Díaz del Castillo gleichzeitiger Erzählung bearbeitet von der Uebersetzerin des Vasari. Mit Vorwort von Karl Ritter. 2 Bde.

Friedrich und Andreas Perthes: Hamburg und Gotha, 1848. 8°.

[9771. b. 29.]

151. ———.—Verdadera Historia de los Sucesos de la Conquista de la Nueva-España. Por el Capitan Bernal Díaz del Castillo, uno de sus Conquistadores. (In "Biblioteca de Autores Españoles, desde la formación del lenguaje hasta nuestros días. Historiadores Primitivos de Indias. (Tom. II.) Colección dirigida é ilustrada por Don Enrique de Vedia." Tom. XXVI. pp. v.-viii. 1-317.)

Imprenta y Estereotipo de M. Revadeneyra: Madrid, 1853. 8°.

[2044. a.]

- 151a. ———.—[A Reprint.]

Madrid, 1877. 8°.

[Not in the British Museum.]

152. ———. —Historia Verdadera de la Conquista de la Nueva España. Escrita por el Capitan Bernal Díaz del Castillo, uno de sus Conquistadores. 4 tom.
Tipografía de R. Rafael, Calle de Cadena, número 13: México, 1854. 8°.
 [9771. ee. 8.]
153. ———. —Verdadera Historia de los Sucesos de la Conquista de la Nueva España. Por Bernal Díaz del Castillo. 3 tom.
Tejado: Madrid, 1862. 8°.
 [Not in the British Museum.]
154. ———. —Historia Verdadera de la Conquista de la Nueva España. Escrita por el Capitan Bernal Díaz del Castillo, uno de sus conquistadores. (*Biblioteca Histórica de la Iberia. Tom. 4-6.*) 3 tom.
Imprenta de I. Escalante y Comp., Bajos de San Agustín núm. 1.: México, 1870. 8°.
 [Not in the British Museum.]
155. ———. —Histoire Véridique de la Conquête de la Nouvelle-Espagne. Écrite par le Capitaine Bernal Díaz del Castillo, l'un de ses Conquistadores. Traduction par D. Jourdanet. 2 tom.
Lahure: Paris, 1876. 8°.
 [Not in the British Museum.—250 copies printed for private circulation.]
156. ———. —Histoire Véridique de la Conquête de la Nouvelle-Espagne. Écrite par le Capitaine Bernal Díaz del Castillo, l'un de ses Conquistadores. Traduction par D. Jourdanet. Deuxième édition corrigée, précédée d'une préface nouvelle, accompagnée de notes, et suivie d'une étude sur les sacrifices humains et l'anthrophagie chez les Aztèques. [With a list of 1377 Conquistadores, and 5 Maps.] pp. xxxii. 928.
G. Masson: Paris, MDCCCLXXVII. 8°.
 [9772. f. 4.]
157. ———. —Véridique Histoire de la Conquête de la Nouvelle-Espagne. Par le Capitaine Bernal Díaz del Castillo, l'un des Conquistadores. Traduite de l'espagnol avec une introduction et des notes par José Maria de Heredia. 4 tom.
Alphonse Lemerre: Paris, 1877-87. 8°.
 [9771. bb. 2.]
158. ———. —Ifjusági iratok tára. Az orsz. közepisk. tanáregyesület kiadványa. Kilián Fr. biz. Franklin társulat nyomása. Szerk. dr. Kármán Mór. iv. Castilloi Díaz Bernal. Mexico felfedezése es meghódítása. Átdolgozta dr. Brózik Károly. pp. iv. 194.
"Franklin: Budapest, 1878. 12°.
 [Not in the British Museum.]
159. ———. —Historia Verdadera de la Conquista de la Nueva España. Escrita por el Capitan Bernal Díaz del Castillo, uno de sus Conquistadores. 3 tom.
Tipografía de Angel Bassols y Hermanos, Segunda calle de Mesones, núm. 22: México, 1891-92. 8°.
 [Not in the British Museum.]

160. ———.—Torténelmi Konyotár. Franklin. társulat. Cortez Hernando, Mexico meghóditoja. Díaz Bernal után elmeséli Gaál Mozes. (No: 86 of the Collection.) pp. 124.
Franklin társulat: Budapest, 1899. 12°.
 [Not in the British Museum.]
161. ———.—Historia Verdadera de la Conquista de la Nueva España. Por Bernal Díaz del Castillo, uno de sus Conquistadores. Unica edición hecha según el Códice Autógrafo. La publica Genaro García. (Bibliografía.) [With a Portrait, and coat of arms, of Bernal Díaz del Castillo.] 2 tom.
Oficina Tipográfica de la Secretaría de Fomento: México, 1904. 8°.
 [2398. g. 5.]
162. **Díaz de la Calle, Juan.**—Memorial Informatorio al Rey Nuestro Señor, en su Real y Supremo Consejo de las Indias, Camara, y Junta de Guerra. En Manos del Señor Juan Baptista Saenz Navarrete, Cavallero de la Orden de Alcantara, de su Consejo, su Secretario en él, y el de la Camara, y Junta. Contiene lo que su Magestad provee en su Còsejo, y Junta, y por las dos Secretarias de la Nueva España, y Pirù, Ecclesiastico, Secular, Salarios, Estipendios, y Presidios, su Gente, y Costa, y de que Cajas, y Hazienda Real se paga; valor de las Encomiendas de Indios, y otras cosas curiosas, y necessarias. Por Juan Díez de la Calle. ff. 32.
[Madrid,] Año de MDCXXXV. 4°.
 [K. 279. h. 25. (1.) From the Library of King George III.]
163. ———.—Memorial y Noticias Sacras, y Reales del Imperio de las Indias Occidentales. Al Muy Catolico, Piadoso, y Poderoso Señor Rey de las Españas, y Nuevo Mundo, D. Felipe IV., N. S. en su Real y Supremo Consejo de las Indias, Camara, y Junta de Guerra en manos de Juà Baptista Saenz Navarrete, Cavallero de la Ordè Militar de Alcantara, de su Consejo, y su Secretario en el, y en el de la Camara, y Junta: Con firmador de los privilegios Reales de Castilla. Comprehende lo Ecclesiastico, Secular, Politico, y Militar, que por su Secretaria de la Nueva-España se provee: Presidios, gente, y costas, valor de las Encomiendas de Indios, y otras cosas curiosas, necesrias [sic], y dignas de saberse. Escriviale por el año de 1646 Juan Díaz de la Calle, Oficial Segundo de la misma Secretaria. ff. 183. 5. 8.
[Madrid, 1646.] 4°.
 [K. 279. h. 25. (2.)—798. f. 3.]
164. **Dilworth, W. H., A.M.**—The History of the Conquest of Mexico. By the celebrated Hernan Cortés. Containing a Faithful and Entertaining Detail of all his Amazing Victories, in that vast Empire, its Laws, Customs, Religions, &c. A Work abounding with Strokes of Generalship, and the most refined Maxims of Civil Policy. To which is added, The Voyage of Vasca de Gama, extracted from Osorio, Bishop of Sylves. Published for the Improvement and Entertainment of the British Youth of both Sexes. By W. H. Dilworth, A.M. pp. 1-127.
Printed for William Anderson, at the Oxford-Theatre, Paternoster-Row: London, MDCCCLIX. 12°.
 [9772. aa. 13. Wants all after page 127.]

165. **Dunster, Henry Peter**.—Conquest of Mexico and Peru, by Hernando Cortés and Francis Pizarro. Illustrated. [By H. P. D., i.e. Henry Peter Dunster.] pp. 295.
James Blackwood: London, [1860.] 8°.
 [9772. a. 12.]
166. **Dupaix, Guillelmo**.—The Monuments of New Spain. By M. Dupaix. With their respective scales of measurement and accompanying descriptions. (In Aglio, Augustine: *Antiquities of Mexico*. vols. 4, 6.)
A. Aglio: London, 1830. fol.
 [564. h. 4, 6.]
167. **Duran, Diego**.—Historia de las Indias de Nueva-España y Islas de Tierra Firme. Por el Padre Fray Diego Duran, Religioso de la Orden de Predicadores, Escritor del siglo XVI. La publica con un atlas de [66 coloured] estampas, notas é ilustraciones José F. Ramirez, Individuo de varias Sociedades Literarias Nacionales y extranjeras. [Tom. 2. edited by Gumesindo Mendoza, Director del Museo Nacional, Mexico.] 2 tom.
Imprenta de J. M. Andrade y F. Escalante; Ignacio Escalante: Mexico, 1867-80. 4°.
 [9771. g. 8.]
168. **Encyclopedias**.—Diccionario Enciclopedico Hispano-Americano de Literatura, Ciencias y Artes. Edicion profusamente ilustrada. 25 tom.
Montaner y Simón: Barcelona, 1887-99. 4°.
 [2103. c, d.]
169. **Fernandez de Echeverría y Veytia, Mariano**.—Historia Antigua de Méjico. Escrita por el Lic. D. Mariano Veytia. La publica con varias notas y un apendice el C. F. Ortega. [With a portrait of the Author.] 3 tom.
Imprenta a Cargo de Juan Ojeda: Méjico, 1836. 8°.
 [9771. a. 11.]
170. **Fernández de Oviedo y Valdés, Gonzalo**.—Oviedo de la natural hystoria de las Indias. G. L. Pt. 1. ff. 52.
Por industria de maestre Remó de Petras: en la cibdad de Toledo, MDXXVI. fol.
 [G. 6268.—From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—With a large plate of the arms of Charles V. on the title-page.—795. l. 17. (1.)—982. i. 9. From the Library of Sir Joseph Banks.]
171. ———.—La historia general de las Indias. (Escripita por el capitan gonzalo hernandez de Oviedo y Valdes.) ff. 193.
En la emprèsa de Juan Cromberger: Sevilla, 1535. fol.
 [C. 20. d. 4.—From the Library of Sir Joseph Banks.—With a finely engraved title-page, with the arms of Charles V., and the Pillars of Hercules, surrounded by an ornamental border. On fol. cxlii is the autograph signature of the author, and on the verso is a large plate of the author's coat of arms.]

172. ———.—*Coronica de las Indias. La hystoria general de las Indias agora nuevamente impresa corregida y emendada. (Libros de los infortunios y naufragios de casos acaecidos en las mares de las Indias, yslas y tierra firme del mar oceano, con el qual se da fin a la primera parte de la general & natural hystoria de las Indias.—Libro xx. De la segunda parte de la general historia de las Indias . . . que trata del estrecho de Magallans.) Y con la conquista del Peru [por Francisco de Xéres].* G. L. Pts. 1, 2.

Juan de Junta: Salamanca, 1547; Francisco Fernandez de Córdoba: Valladolid, 1557. fol.

C. 33. m. 3. (1.)—This work was arranged for publication in three parts, forming together 50 *Libros*, numbered consecutively. The *Libro de los infortunios y naufragios*, of which chapters 1-21 only are here printed with Part 1, was to form Libro 1. No more was published after Book 1 of Part 2 which forms "Libro xx" of the entire work. The *Conquista del Perú* was bound up with this edition.—K. 146. e. 10. From the Library of King George III. Another copy of Part 1.—G. 6269. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville. Another copy of Part 11.—On the Title-page of Part 1 is a large plate of the arms of Charles V., with the Pillars of Hercules.]

173. **Fernández Duro**, Cesáreo.—*Las Joyas de Isabel la Católica, las Naves de Cortés, y el Salto de Alvarado. Epístola dirigida al Ilmo Señor Don Juan de Dios de la Rada y Delgado por Cesáreo Fernández Duro.* pp. 53.

Imprenta de Manuel G. Hernandez: Madrid, 1882. 8°.

[1918o. ff. 6.]

174. **Fernández Leal**, Manuel, *Ministro de Fomento*.—*Códice Fernández Leal. Publicado por el Dr. Antonio Peñafiel.* pp. 8. 14 Plates, 12 in colour.

Oficina Tipografica de la Secretaria de Fomento: México, 1895. fol.

[1701. c. 7.]

175. **Francesco**, *de Bologna, Monk*.—*Lettre du Révérend Père Francesco de Bologne, écrite de la ville de Mexico dans l'Inde, ou la Nouvelle-Espagne, au Révérend Père Clément de Monélia, Provincial de Bologne, et à tous les révérends pères de cette province. Traduite en langue vulgaire par un frère dudit ordre de l'Observance. Venise: de l'Imprimerie de Paulo Danza. (In "Voyages, Relations, et Mémoire Originaux pour servir à l'Histoire de la Découverte de l'Amérique Publiés pour la première fois en Français par H. Ternaux-Compans.—Tom. x. Recueil de Pièces relatives à la Conquête du Mexique. Inédit." pp. 205-221.)*

Arthur Bertrand: Paris, MDCCCXXXVIII. 8°.

[G. 15812. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—1196. 1. 7.]

176. ———.—*Lettera del Reverendo Padre Francesco da Bologna, scritta dalla Città di Messico nell' India o Nuova Spagna al Reverendo Padre Clemente da Monelia, Provinciale di Bologna, ed a tutti i reverendi Padri di quella provincia tradotta in lingua volgare da un Frate dello stesso Ordine dell' Osservanza. (In "Raccolta di Viaggi dalla Scoperta del Nuovo Continente fino a di nostri. Compilata da F. C. Mar-mocchi." tom. 11. pp. 547-558.)*

Fratelli Giachetti: Prato, 1843. 8°.

[1424. i. 5.]

177. **García, Genaro.**—Carácter de la Conquista Española en América y en México. Según los Textos de los Historiadores Primitivos. Por Genaro García. pp. 456.
Oficina Tipográfica de la Secretaría de Fomento: México, 1901. 8°.
[9770. h. 12.]
178. ———.—El Plan de Independencia de la Nueva España en 1808. Por Genaro García. [With a Bibliography.] pp. 72.
Imprenta del Museo Nacional: México, 1903. fol.
[9770. i. 13.—No. 114 of 150 copies.]
179. **García, Genaro, and Pereyra, Carlos.**—Documentos Inéditos ó muy Raros para la Historia de México. Publicados por Genaro García y Carlos Pereyra. Tom. 1-16, etc.
Librería de la Vda. de Ch. Bouret: México, 1905-1908, etc. 8°.
[9772. cc.]
180. **García, Gregorio, Dominican.**—Historia Ecclesiastica y Seglar de la Yndia Oriental y Occidental, y Predicacion del Sancto Evāgelio en ella por los Apostoles. Averiguad por el P. Presentado Fr. Gregorio García, de la Orden de Predicadores. En que hallara el lector cursado en letras, discursos que deleyten su entendimiento, y el curioso Romancista, cosas de mucho gusto, piedad y devocion: particularmente desde el segundo libro de este Tratado. A la Sacratissima y siempre Virgen Maria del Rosario. (Tabla.) ff. 250.
Impresso en Baeca: por Pedro de la Cuesta, Año de 1626. 12°.
[K. 296. g. 32.]
181. ———.—Origen de los Indios de el Nuevo Mundo, e Indias Occidentales. Averiguado con discurso de opiniones por el Padre Presentado Fray Gregorio García, de la Orden de Predicadores. Tratase en este Libro varias cosas, y puntos curiosos, tocantes á diversas ciencias y facultades, con que se haze varia historia, de mucho gusto para el ingenio y entendimiento de hombres agudos y curiosos. Dirigido al Angelico Dotor Santo Thomas de Aquino. (Tabla.) pp. 535.
En Valencia: en casa de Pedro Patrio Mey, junto a San Martin, MDCVII. 12°.
[1061. b. 11.]
182. ———.—Origen de los Indios de el Nuevo Mundo e Indias Occidentales. Averiguado con discurso de opiniones por el Padre Presentado Fr. Gregorio García, de la Orden de Predicadores. Tratase en este Libro varias cosas, y puntos curiosos, tocantes á diversas Ciencias, i Facultades, con que se hace varia Historia, de mucho gusto para el Ingenio, i Intendimiento de Hombres agudos i curiosos. Segunda Impresion. Enmendada y añadida de algunas opiniones, ó cosas notables en maior prueba de lo que contiene, con Tres Tablas mui puntuales de los Capítulos, de las Materias, y Autores, que las tratan. Dirigido al Angelico Doct. S^{to}. Tomas de Aquino. (Tabla.) pp. 336.
En Madrid: En la Imprenta de Francisco Martinez Abad, Año de 1729. fol.
[G. 7225. L.P. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—K. 146. e. 4. From the Library of King George III. Cropped.]

183. **García de Palacio, Diego.**—Carta dirigida al Rey de España. Por el Licenciado Dr. Don Diego García de Palacio, Oydor de la Real Audiencia de Guatemala. Año 1576. Being a Description of the Ancient Provinces of Guazacapan, Izalco, Cuscatlan, and Chiquimula, in the Audiencia of Guatemala. With an account of the Languages, Customs and Religion of their Aboriginal Inhabitants, and a Description of the Ruins of Copan. pp. 131. (In "Collection of Rare and Original Documents and Relations concerning the Discovery and Conquest of America, chiefly from the Spanish Archives. Published in the Original, with Translations, illustrative Notes, Maps, and Biographical Sketches. By E. G. Squier, M.A., F.S.A." No. 1.)
Charles B. Norton : New York, MDCCCLX. 4°.
[1955]. c. 18.]
184. **García Icazbalceta, Joaquín.**—Apuntes para un Catálogo de Escritores en Lenguas Indígenas de América. Por Joaquín García Icazbalceta. pp. xiii. 157.
Se han impreso 60 ejemplares en la imprenta particular del autor México, 1866. 12°.
[11901. aa. 30.—No. 51 of 60 copies printed.]
185. ———.—Bibliografía Mexicana del Siglo XVI. Primera Parte. Catálogo razonado de Libros impresos en México de 1539 á 1600. Con Biografías de autores y otras ilustraciones. Precedido de una noticia acerca de la introducción de la imprenta en México. Por Joaquín García Icazbalceta . . . Obra adornada con facsímiles fotolitográficos y fototipográficos. pp. xxix. 423.
Librería de Andrade y Morales, Sucesores : México, 1886. 8°.
[11901. k. 26.—11905, f. 30.]
186. ———.—Colección de Documentos para la Historia de México. Publicada por Joaquín García Icazbalceta. 2 tom.
Librería de J. M. Andrade ; Antigua Librería : México, 1858-66. 8°.
[1971. f. 15.]
187. ———.—Nueva Colección de Documentos para la Historia de México. Publicada por Joaquín García Icazbalceta. 5 tom.
Antigua Librería de Andrade y Morales, Sucesores : Francisco Díaz de León : México, 1886-92. 8°.
[1971. bbb. 2.]
- 187 a. ———.—Tom. 1.—Cartas de Religiosos de Nueva España. 1539-1594.
1886. 8°.
- 187 b. ———.—Tom. 2.—Códice Franciscano. Siglo XVI. Informe de la Provincia del Santo Evangelio al Visitador Lic. Juan de Ovando, Informe de la Provincia de Guadalajara al Mismo. Cartas de Religiosos. 1533-1569.
1889. 8°.
- 187 c. ———.—Tom. 3.—Pomar y Zurita. Pomar. Relación de Tezcoco. Zurita. Breve Relación de los Señores de la Nueva España. Varias Relaciones Antiguas. Siglo XVI.
1891. 8°.

- 187 d. e. ———. —Tom. 4, 5. —Códice Mendieta. Documentos Franciscanos. Siglos XVI y XVII. [Part 1. 1557-1583. Part 2. 1585-1622.] (Códice de Tlatelolco. —Anales de Tecamachalco.)

1892. 8°.

188. ———. —Obras de D. J. García Icazbalceta. [With a Portrait.] 10 tom. (Biblioteca de Autores Mexicanos. Historiadores. Tom. 1-3, 6, 9, 12, 14, 18, 20, 23.)

Imp. de V. Agüeros : México, 1896-99. 8°.

[12231. c. 11.]

189. **García Peláez**, Francisco de Paula, *Bishop of Guatemala*. —Memoria para la Historia del Antiguo Reyno de Guatemala. 2 tom.

Guatemala, 1851-52. 8°.

[Not in the British Museum.]

190. **Giovio**, Paulo, *Bishop of Nocera, the Elder*. —Pauli Iovii Novocomensis, episcopi Nucerini, Historiarum sui temporis Tomus Primus (Secundus). [With a Prefatory Letter by Andreas Alcianus.] 2 tom.

Florentie : in officina Laurentii Torrentini Ducalis Typographi,
MDL, MDLII. fol.

[K. 212. g. 1. From the Library of King George III.]

191. **Godoy**, Diego. —Relation fatta per Diego Godoi a Fernando Cortese. Lettere di Diego, nelle quali tratta del scoprimento & acquisto di diverse città & provincie : delle guerre & battaglie che per tal cosa fueron fatte, la maniera dell' arme da combattere et da coprirsi che usano quelli, della provincia di Chamula, di alcune strade molto difficili & pericolose, de portamenti del reggente, & della divisione de beni che già furono divisi in quelle bande. (In "Terzo Volume delle Navigazioni et Viaggi. Raccolto già da M. Gio. Battista Ramusio." fol. 300-304.)

In Venetia : nella Stamperia de' Giunti, l'Anno. MDLXV. fol.

[G. 6820. —From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville. —679. h. 10. From the Library of the Rev. C. M. Cracherode. With the arms and cyphers of Jacques Auguste de Thou, and his first wife, Marie Barbançon.]

192. ———. —Relacion hecha por Diego Godoy, a Hernando Cortés, en que trata del Descubrimiento de diversas Ciudades, i Provincias, i Guerra, que tuvo con los Indios, i su modo de pelear : De la Provincia de Chamula, de los Caminos difíciles, i peligrosos ; i repartimiento que hizo de los Pueblos. (In "Historiadores Primitivos de las Indias Occidentales, que juntó, traduxo en parte, y sacó á luz, ilustrados con eruditas Notas, y copiosos Indices, el Ilustrísimo Señor D. Andres Gonzalez Barcia, del Consejo, y Camara de S. M. Divididos en tres Tomos, cuyo contenido se verá en el folio siguiente." Tom. 1. Part 2. pp. 166-173.)

Madrid, Año MDCCXLIX. fol.

[K. 145. f. 9. From the Library of King George III.]

193. ———. —Relation de Diégo de Godoi, adressée à Fernand Cortés. (In "Voyages, Relations, et Mémoires Originaux pour servir à l'Histoire de la Découverte de l'Amérique. Publiés pour la première fois en Français par H. Ternaux-Compans.—Tom. x. Recueil de Pièces relatives à la Conquête du Mexique. Inédit." pp. 151-191.)
Arthur Bertrand: Paris, MDCCCXXXVIII. 8°.
 [G. 15812. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—1196. i. 7.]
194. **González Obregón, Luis.**—El Capitan Bernal Díaz del Castillo, Conquistador y Cronista de Nueva España. Noticias biográficas y bibliográficas compiladas por Luis González Obregón. pp. 88. ii.
Oficina Tip. de la Secretaria de Fomento: México, 1894. 8°.
 [10600. g. 21. (1.)]
195. **Gottfried, Johann Ludwig, pseud. [i.e., Johann Philipp Abelin].**—Neue Welt und Amerikanische Historien. Alles aus verschiedenen Historien-Schreibern . . . getragen . . . durch J. L. Gottfried.
J. T. de Bry: Frankfurt a/M., 1631. fol.
 [G. 6635. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—1655. 566. k. 12.]
196. **Grijalva, Juan de, Augustinian.**—Cronica de la Orden de N. P. S. Augustin en las provincias de la nueva españa. En quatro edades desde el año de 1533 hasta el de 1592. Por el P. M. F. Joan de Grijalva, prior del convento de N. P. S. Augustin de México. Dedicada a la provincia del S^oS. nombre de Jesus de México. ff. 224.
México: En el Religiosissimo convento de S. Augustin, y imprenta de Joan Ruyz, Año de 1624. fol.
 [4785. g. 39.—With an engraved Title-page.]
197. **Gunckel, Lewis Winters.**—The Direction in which Mayan Inscriptions should be read. By Lewis W. Gunckel. From the *American Anthropologist* for May, 1897. Vol. x. pp. 146-162.
Judd & Detweiler: Washington, D.C., 1897. 8°.
 [Ac. 6239/2.—07703. g. 10. (8.)]
198. **Haebler, Konrad.**—Aus dem Leben des ersten Vicekönigs von Mejiko. Von Dr. Konrad Häbler in Dresden. (In "Historisches Taschenbuch. Begründet von Friedrich von Raumer. Herausgegeben von Wilhelm Maurenbrecher." Folge 6. Jahrgang 6. pp. 123-137.)
F. A. Brockhaus: Leipzig, 1887. 8°.
 [P. P. 3625.]
199. **Heger, Franz.**—Altmexicanische Reliquien aus dem Schlosse Ambras in Tirol. Von Franz Heger. Mit fünf Tafeln in Lichtdruck, davon eine in Farbendruck. (In "Annalen des K. K. Naturhistorischen Hofmuseums. Redigirt von Dr. Franz Ritter von Hauer." Band VII. 1892. pp. 379-400.)
Alfred Holder: Wien, 1892. 8°.
 [Ac. 2911.]

200. **Helps, Sir Arthur, K.C.B.**—The Life of Hernando Cortes. By Arthur Helps, Author of "The Spanish Conquest in America." [Dedicated to Thomas Carlyle.] 2 vols.
Bell and Daldy: London, 1871. 8°.
 [2402. b. 15.]
201. **Heredia, José Maria de.**—Les Trophées. Par José-Maria de Heredia. [Poems.] Sixième édition. pp. iv. 218.
Alphonse Lemerre: Paris, MDCCCXCIII. 8°.
 [11483. d. 21.—1895. 11483. aa. 40.—1905. 011843. eec. 67. The First Edition is not in the British Museum.]
202. **Herrera Tordesillas, Antonio de.**—Historia General de los Hechos de los Castellanos en las Islas i Tierra Firme del Mar Oceano. Escrita por Antonio de Herrera, Coronista Mayor de su M^a.: de las Indias y su Coronista de Castilla. En quatro [or rather, nine] Decadas desde el Año de 1492 hasta el de 1531. Al Rey Nu^{ro}. Señor. 3 vols.
En Ma^a.: en la Emplenta Real[?]; por Juan Flamenco; por Juan de la Cuesta, Año M.DCI, M.DCXVI, M.DCI. fol.
 G. 7206-8. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—601. k. 12-15.—601. k. 8-11. The Ninth Decade is entitled: *Descripcion de las Indias Orientales, 1601*. The Decades have finely engraved Title-pages, with medallion portraits, battle-scenes, &c. Four are reproduced in this volume. See pages 36, 58, 62, 287.]
203. ———.—Descripcion de las Indias Orientales de Antonio de Herrera, Coronista Mayor de su Mag^d. de las Indias, y su Coronista de Castilla. Al Rey Nu^{ro}. Señor. [Edited by Andrés Gonzalez de Barcia Carbalido y Zuñiga.] 4 tom.
En Madrid: En la Oficina Real de Nicolas Rodriguez Franco, Año de 1730. fol.
 [K. 145. f. 5-8. From the Library of King George III.—The Colophon of Tom. 4 reads: *En la Imprenta de Francisco Martinez Abad, Año de MDCCXXVIII.*]
204. **Hochstetter, Ferdinand von.**—Ueber Mexicanische Reliquien aus der Zeit Montezuma's in der K. K. Ambraser Sammlung. Von Ferdinand von Hochstetter, wirklichem Mitgliede der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften. Mit fünf Tafeln [in Colour] und einer Abbildung im Texte. Vorgelegt in der Sitzung am 5 December, 1883. (In "Denkschriften der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften. Philosophisch-Historische Classe." Band 35. pp. 83-104.)
In Commission bei Carl Gerold's Sohn: Wien, 1885. 4°.
 [Ac. 810/12.]
205. **Ibarra, Francisco de.**—Mémoire des services rendus par le Gouverneur Don Francisco de Ibarra pendant la conquête et la colonisation qu'il a faites dans les provinces de Copala, de la Nouvelle-Biscaye, de Chiametla, et en découvrant des mines. Extrait des enquêtes instruites d'office à la requête dudit gouverneur, et présentées au conseil en 1574. Copala, Nouvelle-Biscaye et Chiametla, année 1554, et suivantes. *Simancas*. (In "Voyages, Relations, et Mémoires Originaux pour

servir à l'Histoire de la Découverte de l'Amérique. Publiés pour la première fois en Français par H. Ternaux-Compans.—Tom. x. Recueil de Pièces relatives à la Conquête du Mexique. Inédit." pp. 367-399.)

Arthur Bertrand: Paris, MDCCCXXXVIII. 8°.

G. 15812. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.
—1196. i. 7.]

206. **Indias.**—*Cartas de Indias.* Publicales por primera vez el Ministerio de Fomento. [Dedicated to King Alfonso XII. by the Conde de Toreno. Letters of Columbus, Vespucci, Bartolomé de Las Casas, Bernal Díaz del Castillo, & others, on matters relating to the Spanish Indies. Together with Notes, a Geographical Vocabulary, Biographical Notes, a Glossary, Facsimiles of MSS., of signatures of Conquistadores, &c., and of 3 Maps.—No. vi. Carta de Bernal Díaz del Castillo al Emperador D. Carlos dando cuenta de los abusos que se cometian en la gobernacion de las provincias del Nuevo Mundo. SANTIAGO DE GUATIMALA, 22 de febrero de 1552. No. vii. Carta de Bernal Díaz del Castillo al Rey D. Felipe II., en la que denuncia algunos abusos cometidos con los indios, y pide se le nombre fiel-ejecutor de Guatimala, en atencion á los servicios que expone: GUATIMALA, 20 de febrero de 1558. See Facsimile E.] pp. xvi. 877.

Imprenta de Manuel G. Hernandez: Madrid, 1877. fol.

[1857. b. 5.—Maps 36. e. 1.]

207. ———.—*Isagoge Historico Apologetico general de todas las Indias y especial de la Provincia de S^a. Vicente Ferrer de Chiapa y Goathemala de el Orden de Predicadores.* Libro inédito. [Edited by José Maria Reina Barrios.] pp. 445.

Tipografia de Tomas Minuesa de los Rios: Madrid, 1892. 8°.

[Not in the British Museum.—A copy in the Library of Alfred P. Maudslay.]

208. **John Carter Brown Library.** *Bibliotheca Americana.* A Catalogue of Books relating to North and South America, in the Library of John Carter Brown, of Providence, R. I. Part I. 1493 to 1600. (Part II. 1601 to 1700.) With Notes by John Russell Bartlett. 2 vol.

Providence [Rhode Island], 1865, 66. 8°.

[11901. d. 10.]

- 208 a. ———.—[Another edition.] Part I. 1482-1601. (Part II. 1600-1700. Second Edition.—Part III. Vol. 1, 2. 1701-1800.) With Notes by John Russell Bartlett. 4 vol.

Providence [Rhode Island], 1875, 82, 70, 71. 8°.

[11901. d. 11.]

209. **Jourdanet, Denis.**—*Influence de la pression de l'Air sur la vie de l'Homme. Climats d'altitude et climats de montagne.* Par D. Jourdanet, Docteur en Médecine, Chevalier de la Légion d'Honneur. Gravures par Boetzel, cartes en couleurs dessinées et gravées chez Erhard. 2 tom.

G. Masson: Paris, 1875. 8°.

[7686. g. 2.]

210. ———.—*Le Mexique et l'Amérique Tropicale. Climats, Hygiène et Maladies.* Par D. Jourdanet, Docteur en Médecine des Facultés de Paris et de Mexico. Avec une carte de Mexique. pp. 459.

J. B. Baillière et Fils: Paris, 1864. 8°.

[7687. aa. 22.]

211. **Juarros, Domingo.**—A Statistical and Commercial History of the Kingdom of Guatemala in Spanish America. Containing important particulars relative to its productions, manufactures, customs, &c. &c. &c. With an account of its Conquest by the Spaniards, and a narrative of the principal events down to the present time. From original Records in the archives, actual observation, and other authentic sources. By Don Domingo Juarros, a native of New Guatemala. Translated by J. Bailly, Lieutenant R.M. Embellished with two Maps. pp. viii. 520.
Printed for John Hearne, 81 Strand, by J. F. Dove, St. John's Square: London, 1823. 8°.
 [G. 15997.—From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.
 —798. f. 2.]
212. **Lasso de la Vega, Gabriel.**—Primera Parte de Cortés valeroso, y Mexicana, de Gabriel Lasso de la Vega, criado del Rey nuestro señor, natural de Madrid. Dirigida a Don Fernando Cortés, nieto de don Fernando Cortés, Marques del Valle, descubridor y conquistador del Nuevo Mundo. [With an oval portrait: Ferdinandus Cortesius, Dux invictissimus ætatis 63. Below are the arms of Cortes.] ff. 193.
En Madrid: En casa de Pedro Madrigal, Año M.D.LXXXVIII. 4°.
 [1071. m. 7. (2.)]
213. ———.—Elogios en Loor de los Tres Famosos Varones Don Iayme, Rey de Aragon, Don Fernando Cortes, Marques del Valle, y Don Alvaro de Baçan, Marques de Santacruz. Cõpuestos por Gabriel Lasso de la Vega, Cõtino del R.N.S. Dirigidos a Don Gaspar Galçaran de Castro y Pinos, Cõde de Guimaran, Vizcõde de Ebol, &c. [fol. 34-95 relate to Cortés. With the Portrait and Arms of Cortés, as in "Primera Parte de Cortés Valoroso." 1588.] ff. 144.
En Çaragoça por Alonso Rodriguez, Año 1601. 8°.
 [614. b. 19.—1450. a. 12.]
214. **Leon Pinelo, Antonio de.**—Epitome de la Biblioteca Oriental i Occidental, Nautica i Geografica. Al Excelentiss. Señor D. Ramiro Nuñez Perez Felipe de Guzman, . . . Duque de Medina de las Torres . . . Por el Licenciado Antonio de Leon, Relator del Supremo i Real Consejo de las Indias. (Apendice.) pp. 186. xii.
En Madrid: Por Juan Gonzalez, Año de MDCXXIX. 4°.
 [G. 647. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—619. d. 27. On the back of the binding of the copy is the monogram $\Phi\Phi$, intertwined, to be found on all books purchased for the Jesuits' College at Paris, from the legacy bequeathed to them by Nicolas Fouquet, 1615-1680, Finance Minister of Louis XIV.]
215. ———.—Epitome de la Bibliotheca oriental y occidental, nautica y geografica de Don Antonio de Leon Pinelo, del Consejo de su Mag. en la Casa de la Contratacion de Sevilla, y Coronista Mayor de las Indias. Añadido y enmendado nuevamente, en que se contienen los Escritores de las Indias Orientales y Occidentales y Reinos convecinos . . . Al Rey Nuestro Señor. Por Mano del Marques de Torre-Nueva, su Secretario del Despacho Universal de Hacienda, Indias y Marina. [Edited by Andrés Gonzalez de Barcia Carballido y Zuñiga.]
En la Oficina de Francisco Martinez Abad: en Madrid, Año de MDCCXXXVII-VIII. fol.
 [G. 489. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—K. 125. g. 14. From the Library of King George III.—620. i. 5.]

216. **Lopez Cogolludo, Diego.**—Historia de Yucathan. Compuesta por el M. R. P. Fr. Diego Lopez Cogolludo, lector jubilado, y padre perpetuo de dicha provincia. Consagrada, y dedicada Al Excelentissimo Señor Don Fernando Joachin Faxardo de Requesens y Zuñiga, Marqués de los Velez, Molina y Martorel, Señor de las Varonias de Castelvi, de Rosanes, Molins de Rey, y otras en el Principado de Cataluña, Señor de las Villas de Mula, Alhama y Librilla, y de las siete del Rio de Almanzora las Cuevas, y Portilla, Alcayde perpetuo de los Reales Alcazares, de las Ciudades de Murcia, y Lorca, Adelantado, y Capitan Mayor del Reyno de Murcia, Marquesado de Villena, Arcediano de Alcaraz, Campo de Montiel, Sierra de Segura, y sus Partidos, Comendador de la Encomienda de los Bastimentos de Castilla, del Orden de Santiago, Gentilhombre de Camara de su Magestad de sus Consejos de Estado, y Guerra, Presidente en el de Indias, y Superintendente General de la Real Hacienda, &c. Sacala a luz el M. R. P. Fr. Francisco de Ayeta, Predicador, Ex-Custodio del Nuevo Mexico, Comissario General del Santo Oficio, Custodio actual de la Prouincia del Santo Euangelio en el Reyno de la Nueva España, y Procurador General en esta Corte de todas las Prouincias de la Religion Serafica del dicho Reyno. pp. 26. 760. 31.
En Madrid: Por Juan Garcia Infanzon, Año 1688. fol.
[K. 147. d. 1. From the Library of King George III.]
217. ———.—Historia de Yucatan. Escrita en el Siglo XVII. Por el R. P. Fr. Diego López Cogolludo. Provincial que fue de la Orden franciscana. [Two volumes in one.] pp. vi. 615, 663. Tercera Edicion. *Merida: Imprenta de Manuel Aldana Rivas. 1867, 68. 4°.*
[9771. d. 13.]
218. ———.—Los Tres Siglos de la Dominacion Española en Yucatan, o Sea Historia de Esta Provincia, desde la Conquista Hasta la Independencia. Escribióla el R. P. Fr. Diego López Cogolludo, provincial que fue de la orden franciscana; y la continúa un yucateco. Tomo 1°. pp. ix. 481.
Campeche: Impreso por José María Peralta. 1842. 8°.
[9771. c. 17.]
219. **López de Gómara, Franciso.**—La istoria de las Indias y conquista de Mexico. [Por Francisco Lopez de Gómara.] ff. 139.
Fue Impresa en casa de Agustin Millan: Çaragoça, 1552. fol.
[983. g. 17. From the Library of Sir Joseph Banks.—On the title-page is a large woodcut of the arms of Charles V., with the Pillars of Hercules, 7 x 9½ inches.]
220. ———.—Historia de Mexico. Con el Descubrimiento de la nueva España, conquistada por el muy illustre y valeroso Principe don Fernando Cortes, Marques del Valle. Escrita por Francisco Lopez de Gomara, clérigo. Añadiose de la nuevo descripcion y traça de todas las Indias, con una Tabla alphabetica de las materias, y hazañas memorables enella contenidas. [At folio 8 is a Facsimile of the Map: Brevis exacta' Totius Novi Orbis ejusq' Insularum Descriptio Recens a Joan. Bellerio edita. By Ja^a. A. Burt. Purchased 11 August, 1871.] ff. 349.
En Anvers: En casa de Juan Steelsio; Impresso en Anvers por Juan Lacio, 1554. 8°.
[G. 6309. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—1661. b. 7. From the Library of Queen Mary I. With the original Map.—This work is another edition of Part II. of *La Istoria de las Indias, 1552.*]

221. ———.—*Historia del Illustriss. et Valorosiss. Capitano don Ferdinando Cortes, Marchese della Valle, et quando discoperse, et acquisto la Nuova Hispania. Scritta per Francesco Lopes de Gomara in lingua Spagnuola, & hora tradotta nella Italiana per Augustino de Cravaliz.* ff. 240.
Impressa in Roma per Valerio & Luigi Dorici fratelli nel MDLVI. 8°.
 [G. 6760. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.
 —The Colophon reads: *In Roma per Valerio Dorico, & Luigi fratello Bresciani, nel MDLVI.*—There is also a second Title-page: *Historia di Mexico, &c. In Roma: Appresso Valerio & Luigi Dorici fratelli, MDLV.*]
222. ———.—*Historia di Don Ferdinando Cortés, Marchese della Valle, Capitano Valorissimo. Con le sue maravigliose prodezze, nel tempo che scoprì, & acquistò la nuova Spagna. (In "Historia delle Nuove Indie Occidentali. Con tutti i Discoprimenti & cose notabile, avvenute dopo l'acquisto di esse. Parte seconda. Composta da Francesco Lopez di Gomara in lingua Spagnuola. Tradotta nella Italiana da Agostino di Cravaliz.") [Dedicated "Al Signor Cosmo de Medici, Principe della Republica Fiorentina."] ff. 348.*
In Venetia: Per Francesco Lorenzini da Turino, MDLX. 8°.
 [1061. b. 26.]
- 222 a. ———.—[Another edition, wanting the Title-page. Dedicated to Ridolfo Pio, Prince of Carpi, Cardinal.] ff. 355.
In Venetia per Giovanni Bonadio, MDLXIII. 8°.
 [1061. b. 27.]
223. ———.—*Historia di Don Ferdinando Cortes, Marchese della Valle, Capitano Valorissimo. Con le sue maravigliose prodezze, nel tempo che scoprì, & acquistò la nuova Spagna. Parte Terza [of *Historia delle Nuove Indie Occidentali*. Edited by Agostino di Cravaliz.] Composta da Francesco Lopez di Gomara in lingua Spagnuola. Tradotta nella Italiana per Agostino di Craualiz. pp. 343.*
In Venetia: Appresso Camillo Franceschini, 1576. 12°.
 [G. 14934. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.
 —K. 278. a. 33. From the Library of King George III. With the arms of King William III. on the covers.]
224. ———.—*The Pleasant Historie of the Conquest of the Weast India, now called new Spayne, atchieved by the worthy Prince Hernando Cortés, Marques of the valley of Huaxacac, most delectable to Reade. Translated out of the Spanishe tongue [from Francisco Lopez de Gomara] by T. N. [Thomas Nicholas.] Anno 1578. B. L. pp. 412.*
Imprinted at London by Henry Bynneman, [1578.] 4°.
 [G. 7091. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.
 —1196. b. 28. Wants 2 leaves at end.]
225. ———.—*Voyages et Conquestes du Capitaine Ferdinand Courtois, és Indes Occidentales. Histoire traduite de langue Espagnole, par Guillaume le Breton, Nivernois. ff. 416.*
À Paris: Chez Abel L'Angeleur, au premier pilier de la grand' Sale du Palais, M.D.LXXXVIII. 8°.
 [1061. a. 25.—Wants the last leaf.]

226. ———. —The Pleasant Historie of the Conquest of the West India, now called new Spaine. Achieved by the most woorthie Prince Hernandó Cortés, Marques of the Valley of Huaxacac, most delectable to reade. Translated out of the Spanish tongue [from Francisco Lopez de Gomara], by T. N. [Thomas Nicholas], Anno 1578. pp. 412.
London: Printed by Thomas Creede, 1596. 4°.
 [G. 2473. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville. With the book-plate of Lord Shelburne.—K. 278. a. 1.—1196.
 b. 30. With the Book-plates of Sir Peter Thompson, F.R.S., and James Bindley, F.S.A.]
227. ———. —Historia de las Conquistas de Hernando Cortés. Escrita en Español por Francisco Lopez de Gomara. Traducida [from Part II. of *la Historia de las Indias*] al Mexicano y aprobado por verdadera por D. Juan Bautista de San Anton Muñon Chimalpain Quauhtlehuanitzin, Indio Mexicano. Publicala para instruccion de la juventud nacional, con varias notas y adiciones, Carlos Maria de Bustamante. (Suplemento . . . ó sea: Memoria sobre la guerra del Mixtón en el Estado de Xalisco, cuya capital es Guadalupe. pp. 39. *México. 1827. Imprenta de Galvan á cargo de Mariano Arévalo.*) 2 tom.
Imprenta de la testamentaria de Antiveros: México, Año de 1826
 [-27]. 4°.
 [9771. b. 6. (1, 2.)]
228. ———. —Cenni sulla Scoperta della Penisola di Yucatan, fatta de Francesco Hernandez di Cordova, l'anno 1517. Estratti dalla Storia Generale delle Indie di Francesco Lopes di Gomara. (In "Raccolta di Viaggi dalla Scoperta del Nuovo Continente fino a' di nostri. Compilata da F. C. Marmocchi." tom. II. pp. 35-41.)
Fratelli Giachetti: Prato, 1843. 8°.
 [1424. i. 5.]
229. **Maudslay, Alfred Percival.** —Explorations in Guatemala, and examination of the newly discovered Indian Ruins of Quiriguá, Tikal, and the Usumacinta. By A. P. Maudslay. Read . . . December 11th, 1882. With Map and Plans. (In *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society*, April, 1883. pp. 185-204.)
Edward Stanford: London, 1883. 8°.
 [R. Ac. 6170/2.]
230. ———. —Explorations of the Ruins and Site of Copan, Central America. By A. P. Maudslay. Read . . . June 28th, 1886. With Map, Plan, & Plate. (In *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society*, Sept. 1886. pp. 568-595.)
Edward Stanford: London, 1886. 8°.
 [R. Ac. 6170/2.]
231. **Maudslay, Anne Cary, and Alfred Percival.** —A Glimpse at Guatemala, and some Notes on the Ancient Monuments of Central America. By Anne Cary Maudslay and Alfred Percival Maudslay. With Maps, Plans, Photographs, and other Illustrations. pp. xvii. 289.
John Murray: London, 1899. 4°.
 [TAB. 443. c. 1.]

232. **Mendieta**, Gerónimo de. — *Historia Eclesiástica Indiana*. Obra escrita a fines del Siglo xvi. Por Fray Gerónimo de Mendieta, de la Orden de San Francisco. La publica por primera vez Joaquín García Icazbalceta. (Con algunas advertencias del P. Fray Joan de Domayquía, Predicador y Guardian de S. Francisco de la dicha Ciudad de Vitoria . . . Dirigida á Nuestro P. Fr. Antonia de Trejo, Lector Jubilado, y Comisario General de todas las Indias.) pp. xlv. 790.
Antigua Librería, Portal de Agustinos, No. 3: México, MDCCCLXX. 8°.
[4765. f. 13.]
233. **Mendoza**, Antonio de, *Conde de Tendilla, Viceroy of Mexico*. — *Avis du Vice-roi Don Antonio de Mendoza sur les Prestations personnelles et les Tamemes. 1550. Simancas.* (In "Voyages, Relations, et Mémoires Originaux pour servir à l'Histoire de la Découverte de l'Amérique. Publiés pour la première fois en Français par H. Ternaux-Compans. — Tom. x. Recueil de Pièces relatives à la Conquête du Mexique. Inédit." pp. 345-365.)
Arthur Bertrand: Paris, MDCCCXXXVIII. 8°.
[G. 15812. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.
— 1196. i. 7.]
234. **Mexico**. — *Relatione d'alcune cose della Nuova Spagna, & della gran città di Temistitan Messico. Fatta per un gentil' huomo del Signor Fernando Cortese.* [With a View of a Mexican Temple, and of the City of Temistitan.]
("In Terzo Volume delle Navigazioni et Viaggi. Raccolto gia da M. Gio. Battista Ramusio." fol. 304-310.)
In Venetia: nella Stamperia de' Giunti, l'Anno MDLXV. fol.
[G. 6820. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville. — 679. h. 10. With the arms and cyphers of Jacques Auguste de Thou, and his first wife, Marie Barbançon.]
235. ———. — *Ritos Antiguos, Sacrificios é Idolatras de los Indios de la Nueva España y de su conversion á la Fe, y quienes fueron las que primero la predicaron. Va dividido el libro en tres tratados. Copiada del códice x. 11-21 de la Biblioteca del Escorial. [c. 1560.]* (In "Coleccion de Documentos Inéditos para la Historia de España. Por los Señores Marques de Miraflores y D. Miguel Salva, Individuos de la Academia de la Historia." tom. 53. pp. 295-575.)
Imprenta de la Viuda de Calero: Madrid, 1869. 8°.
[9197. ff.]
236. **Archivo Mexicano**. Documentos para la Historia de Mexico. 2 tom.
Tipografía de Vicente García Torres: México, 1852-53. 8°.
[9771. c. 31.]
237. ———. — *Documentos para la Historia de Méjico.* (Diario de Mexico, 1548-1798.) Prima Serie. 7 tom.
Imprenta de Juan R. Navarro: Méjico, 1853-54. 8°.
[9771. bbb. 22.]
- 237 a. ———. — Segunda Serie. 4 tom.
Imprenta de F. Escalante y Comp.: México, 1854-55. 8°.
[9771. bbb. 23.]

- 237 b. ———.—Tercera Serie. Tom. 1. (Supplement.) [With Notes by Francisco García Figueroa.]
Imprenta de Vicente García Torres. México, 1856. fol.
 [9771. h. 9.]
- 237 c. ———.—Cuarta Serie. [Documents relating to Sonora, Sinaloa, Nueva Vizcaya, & Nueva California. With Notes by Francisco García Figueroa.]
Imprenta de Vicente García Torres: México, 1856-57. 8°.
 [9771. bbb. 24.]
238. ———.—Documentos Historicos de Méjico. [Edited by Luis García Pimentel.]
En casa del Editor: Méjico; A. Donnamette: Paris; Gabriel Sánchez: Madrid, 1903, 1904, etc. 8°.
 [9770. h.]
- 238 a. ———.—Tom. 1. Memoriales de Fray Toribio de Motolinia. [c. 1540.] Manuscrito de la Coleccion del Señor Don Joaquin García Icazbalceta. Publicalo por primera vez su hijo Luis García Pimentel. Con una lámina. pp. x. 364.
 1903. 8°.
- 238 b. ———.—Tom. 2. Relacion de los Obispos de Tlaxcala, Michoacan, Oaxaca y otros lugares en el siglo xvi. Manuscrito de la Coleccion del Señor Don Joaquin García Icazbalceta. Publicalo por primera vez su hijo Luis García Pimentel. pp. 190.
 1904. 8°.
239. **Michoacan, Mexico.**—Relacion de las ceremonias y ritos, poblacion y gobierno de los Indios de la provincia de Mechuacan, hecha al Ilmo. Sr. D. Antonio de Mendoza, Virey y Gobernador de Nueva España. Sacada del codice original c. iv. 5, existente en la Biblioteca del Escorial, por Don Florencio Janer [c. 1545.] (In "Colección de Documentos Inéditos para la Historia de España, por los Señores Marques de Miraflores y D. Miguel Salva, Individuos de la Academia de la Historia." tom. 53. pp. 5-293.)
Imprenta de la Viuda de Calero: Madrid, 1869. 8°.
 [9197. ff.]
240. **Milla, José.**—Historia de la América Central, desde el descubrimiento del país por los españoles (1502) hasta su independencía de la España (1821). Precedida de una Noticia Histórica relativa á las naciones que habitaban la América Central á la llegada de los españoles. [Tom. 1, 2.] Por D. José Milla, Sócio Correspondiente de la Real Academia Española, &c. [Tom. 3-5, etc. Obra continuada bajo la administración del Señor General Don José María Reyna Barrios y en virtud de Encargo Oficial por Agustín Gómez Carrillo, Individuo de la Facultad de Derecho de Guatemala, &c.]
Establecimiento Tipográfico de "El Progreso". Tipografía Nacional. Guatemala, 1879-1905, etc. 8°.
 [9772. pp.]

241. **Montúfar**, Alonso, *Archbishop of Mexico*.—Descripción del Arzobispado de México hecha en 1570 [by Alonso Montúfar], y otros documentos. [Edited by Luis García Pimentel.] pp. iv. 464.
Jose Joaquin Terrazas e Hijos Imps. : México, 1897. 8°.
[4745. dd. 13.]
242. **Nepean**, Evan, *Captain*.—An Account of certain Antiquities in the Island of Sacrificios. Communicated to the Society of Antiquaries by Captain Nepean, in a Letter addressed to . . . the Earl of Aberdeen, K.T., President. Followed by a Report upon the examination of them, by Samuel Birch, Esq. (From the *Archæologia*. Vol. xxx. pp. 138-143.) pp. 8.
Printed by J. B. Nichols and Son : London, 1843. 4°.
[2111. c.—7703. a. 20.]
243. **Nuttall**, Zelia. —Preliminary Note of an Analysis of the Mexican Codices and Graven Inscriptions. By Zelia Nuttall, Peabody Museum, Cambridge, Mass. From the *Proceedings of the American Association for the Advancement of Science*. Vol. xxxv. Buffalo Meeting, August 1886. pp. 325-7.
Washington, 1886. 8°.
[R. Ac. 3065.]
244. ———.—The Terracotta Heads of Teotihuacan. By Zelia Nuttall. [With Two Plates.] pp. 37.
American Journal of Archaeology : Baltimore, 1886. 8°.
[P. P. 1925. m.]
245. ———.—Das Prachtstück altmexicanischer Federarbeit aus der Zeit Montezuma's im Wiener Museum. Von Zelia Nuttall, am Peabody Museum für Amerikanische Archæologie u. Ethnologie, Cambridge, Mass. Mit zwei colorirten Tafeln. pp. 29. (In "Abhandlungen und Berichte des Königl. Zoologischen und Anthropologisch-Ethnographischen Museums zu Dresden. 1886/7. Herausgegeben . . . von Dr. A. B. Meyer, K. S. Hofrath und Director des Museums." No. 7. pp. 29.)
Verlag von R. Friedländer & Sohn : Berlin, 1887. 4°.
[Ac. 3562.]
246. ———.—Standard or Head-Dress? An Historical Essay on a Relic of Ancient Mexico. By Zelia Nuttall, Special Assistant of the Peabody Museum. With Three Coloured Plates. (*Archæological and Ethnological Papers of the Peabody Museum, Harvard University*. Vol. 1, no. 1. pp. 52.)
Peabody Museum of American Archaeology and Ethnology : Cambridge, Mass., 1888. 8°.
[R. Ac. 2692. a.]
247. ———.—The Atlatl or Spear-Thrower of the Ancient Mexicans. By Zelia Nuttall, Special Assistant of the Peabody Museum. With Three Plates. (*Archæological and Ethnological Papers of the Peabody Museum, Harvard University*. Vol. 1. no. 3.) pp. 30.
Peabody Museum of American Archaeology and Ethnology : Cambridge, Mass., 1891. 8°.
[R. Ac. 2692. a.]

248. ———. —Noté on the Ancient Mexican Calendar System. By Zelia Nuttall. Communicated to the Tenth International Congress of Americanists, Stockholm, 1894. [With one Plate.] pp. 36.

Bruno Schultze: Dresden, [1894]. 8°.

[8563. bb. 32. (2.)]

249. Orozco y Berra, Manuel.—Memoria para la Carta Hidrográfica del Valle de México, formada por acuerdo de la Sociedad Mexicana de Geografía y Estadística por su Socio Honorario el Sr. Lic. D. Manuel Orozco y Berra, Ingeniero Topógrafo y Antiguo Alumno del Colegio de Minería.

Carta Hidrográfica del Valle de México. Levantada de orden del Ministerio de Fomento por los Ingenieros Miguel Iglesias, Ramon Almaraz, Mariano Santa-Maria y José Antonio de la Peña, bajo la Direccion del Ingeniero Geógrafo Francisco Diaz Covarrubias, Antiguos Alumnos del Colegio Nacional de Minería. 1862. Ramon Almaraz Delineo. H. Salazar Lito°. Año de 1863. Escala a 1:80,000. [26½ × 42 inches.] pp. 185.

Imprenta de A. Boix; à cargo de Miguel Zornoza, Calle del Aguila, número 13: México, 1864. 8°.

[10480. f. 15. With an autograph dedication from the Author to Don José Maria Andrade, and with the Book-plates of J. M. Andrade, and the Emperor Maximilian of Mexico. Purchased April 22, 1869.]

250. ———.—Memoria para el Plano de la Ciudad de México formada de orden del Ministerio de Fomento. Por el Ingeniero Topógrafo Manuel Orozco y Berra. pp. viii. 231.

Plano de la Ciudad de México. Levantado de orden del Ministerio de Fomento por sus Ingenieros, 1867. Ingenieros que se ocuparon del Levantamiento: D. Luis Espinosa, D. Manuel Alvarez, D. Ignacio P. Gallardo, D. Jesus P. Manzano, D. Manuel Espinosa, D. Rafael Barberi y Don José Serrano.

Perimetro del Dique construido al Rededor de la Ciudad de México. Escala de 1:20,000.

Imprenta de Santiago White, Collejon de Sta. Clara, Num. 9: México, 1867. 8°.

[10480. aa. 11.—Maps 37 d. 61 & Maps 76900. (4.)—With a Bibliography of Maps & Plans of Mexico, pp. 1-13.]

251. ———.—Materiales para una Cartografía Mexicana. Por el Ingeniero Lic. Manuel Orozco y Berra . . . Edición de la Sociedad de Geografía y Estadística. pp. xii. 340.

Imprenta del Gobierno, en Palacio, à cargo de José Maria Sandoval: México, 1871. 8°.

[10481. i. 27.]

252. ———.—Historia Antigua y de la Conquista de México. Por el Lic. Manuel Orozco y Berra . . . Se imprime esta obra a expensas y per orden del Supremo Gobierno de la Republica Mexicana. 4 tom.

Tipografía de Gonzalo A. Esteva: México, 1880. 8°.

[9771. ee. 12.]

Atlas. 1 Plan & 18 Plates.

[1880.] fol.

9771. h. 3.]

253. **Peñafiel, Antonio.**—Memoria sobre las Aguas Potables de la Capital de México. Por el Dr. Antonio Peñafiel . . . habiendo colaborado en la Parte química y estadística el Sr. Lamberto Asiain . . . Se publica por acuerdo del Sr. General Carlos Pacheco, Secretario de Fomento. pp. 210.

Oficina Tipográfica de la Secretaría de Fomento: México, 1884. 4°.

[8776. f. 29.]

254. ———.—Nombres Geográficos de México. Catálogo Alfabético de los Nombres de Lugar pertenecientes al Idioma *Nahuatl*. Estudio Jeroglífico de la Matricula de los Tributos del Códice Mendocino. Por el Dr. Antonio Peñafiel . . . Dibujos de las *Antigüedades mexicanas* de Lord Kingsborough por el Sr. Domingo Carral y grabados por el Sr. Antonio H. Galaviz. Se imprime por acuerdo del Sr. Gral. Carlos Pacheco, Secretario de Fomento. pp. 260 & Atlas. 39 Plates.

Oficina Tipográfica de la Secretaría de Fomento: México, 1885. fol.

[12910. k. 8.]

255. ———.—Nomenclatura Geográfica de México. Etimologías de los Nombres de Lugar correspondientes a los principales idiomas que se hablan en la República. Por el Dr. Antonio Peñafiel. 2 Parts.

Oficina Tipográfica de la Secretaría de Fomento: México, 1897. fol.

[1856. a. 13.]

256. ———.—Teotihuacán, Estudio Histórico y Arqueológico. Por el Dr. Antonio Peñafiel. Textos: Castellano, Francés é Inglés. (Prologo por Alfredo Chavero.—Traduction française par Mr. Auguste Genin. —English Translation by Lic. Carlos Fernandez Galan.) Atlas. 91 Plates. 4 Parts.

Oficina Tipográfica de la Secretaría de Fomento: México, 1899-1900. fol.

[1709. b. 1.]

257. ———.—Alfabetos Aztecas. Por el Dr. Antonio Peñafiel. 3^d Edicion. 72 Plates.

México, 1900. fol.

[1754. g. 8.]

258. ———.—Indumentaria Antigua Vestidos Guerreros y Civiles de los Mexicanos. Por el Dr. Antonio Peñafiel. pp. 139. Atlas. 198 Plates.

Oficina Tip. de la Secretaría de Fomento: México, 1903. fol.

[1755. k. 3.]

259. **Pigorini, Luigi.**—Gli antichi oggetti messicani incrostati di mosaico esistenti nel Museo preistorico ed etnografico di Roma. Memoria del Socio corr. Luigi Pigorini letta nella seduta del 17 maggio 1885. Con una tavola [in colours]. (In "Atti della R. Accademia dei Lincei. Anno CCLXXXI. 1883-84. Serie Terza. Memorie della Classe di Scienze Morali, Storiche e Filologiche." Vol. XII. p. 336-342.)

Coi Tipi del Salviucci: Roma, 1885. 4°.

[Ac. 102/3.]

260. **Prescott, William Hickling.**—History of the Conquest of Mexico. With a preliminary view of the ancient Mexican civilization, and the Life of the Conqueror, Hernando Cortés. By William H. Prescott, Author of "The History of Ferdinand and Isabella." In Three Volumes. [Illustrated.]

Richard Bentley: London, MDCCCLIII. 8°.

[G. 14873-75. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—9771. ccc. 8.]

261. ———.—Historia de la Conquista de Mejico. Con un bosquejo preliminar de la civilizacion de los antiguos Mejicanos, y la Vida del Conquistador Hernando Cortes, escrita en Ingles por Guillermo H. Prescott, Autor de la "Historia de Fernando e Isabel," traducida al Castellano por D. Jose Maria Gonzalez de la Vega, y anotada por D. Lucas Alaman. 2 Tom.

Imprenta de V. G. Torres, Calle del Espiritu Santo Num. 2: México, 1844. 8°.

[9771. e. 9. With the Book-plates of the Emperor Maximilian of Mexico, and of J. M. Andrade.]

262. ———.—History of the Conquest of Mexico. By William H. Prescott. Edited by John Foster Kirk. Illustrations on steel. (Edition de Luxe. Vols. 4-6.) 3 vols.

J. B. Lippincott & Co.: Philadelphia, [1875.] 8°.

12297. a. 1. With the Book-plate of H. S. Ashbee.]

263. ———.—History of the Conquest of Mexico. By William H. Prescott. Edited by Wilfred Harold Munro, Professor of European History in Brown University, and comprising the Notes of the Edition by John Foster Kirk. [1875.] (Montezuma Edition. Vols. 1-4.) Illustrated.

J. B. Lippincott Company: London, [1906.] 8°.

[12296. gg. 1.]

264. **Quad, Matthias.**—Enchiridion Cosmographicum: dass ist, Ein Handbüchlin der gantzen Welt gelegenheit also kurtz und nach Notturfft vollkommenlich begreifffende wie solches andere berühmte Cosmographi als Munsterus, Artelius, Wagener, Boterus, &c. vor dieser Zeit der Lenge nach beschrieben . . . Dem gemeinen einfeltigen und frommen Teutschen Leser zu gefallen mit compendioser und richtiger Ordnung in alsolches Format gestellet durch Mattheis Quaden Kupfferstecher. [Mexico. Book 4. pp. 244-251.]

Gedruckt zu Cöln am Rhein: bey Wilhelm Lützenkirchen im jahr 1599. 8°.

[10002. bbb. 10. Purchased April 21, 1876.]

265. **Ramirez, José Fernando.**—Manuscrit Ramirez. Histoire de l'Origine des Indiens, qui habitent la Nouvelle Espagne selon leurs Traditions. Publié par D. Charnay (Lettre Préface de M. le Sénateur Alfredo Chavero à M. Désiré Charnay sur Don José Fernando Ramirez. Tom. XIX. Recueil de Voyages et de Documents pour servir à l'Histoire de la Géographie depuis le XIII^e jusqu'à la fin du XVI^e Siècle. Publié sous la direction de MM. Charles Schefer, membre de l'Institut et Henri Cordier.) pp. xix. 246.

Ernest Leroux: Paris, 1903. 8°.

[10024. i.]

266. **Read**, Charles Hercules, *President of the Society of Antiquaries*.—On an Ancient Mexican Head-piece, coated with Mosaic. By Charles Hercules Read, Esq., Secretary. Read December 14th, 1893.—Note on Mexican Turquoise. By F. W. Rudler, Esq., F.G.S. With 1 coloured Plate & 6 Illustrations in the Text. In *Archæologia*. Vol. LIV. pp. 383-398.

Printed by Nichols and Sons: London, 1895. 4°.

[2111. f.]

267. **Remesal**, Antonio de.—*Historia General de las Indias Occidentales, y particular de la Governacion de Chiapa, y Guatemala*. Escrivese juntamente los principios de la Religion de Nuestro Glorioso Padre Santo Domingo, y de las demas Religiones. Al Conde de la Gomera del Consejo del Rey Nuestro Señor, su Presidente, y Capitan General. Por el Presentado Fray Antonio de Remesal, de la Orden de Predicadores de la Provincia de España. pp. 784.

En Madrid: Por Francisco de Abarca, Año MDCXX. fol.

[G. 6415. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.

—K. 146. e. 18. From the Library of King George III.—601. k. 6.

—601. k. 7.]

268. **Rivera**, Agustin.—*Anales Mexicanos ó sea Cuadro Cronologico de los Hechos mas notables pertenecientes a la Historia de Mexico, desde el siglo vi hasta este año de 1889*. Escritos por Agustin Rivera.

Tipografia de Vicente Veloz; á cargo, de Ausencio Lopez Arce: Lagos [Mexico], 1889. etc. 8°.

[Not in the British Museum.]

269. **Robertson**, William, *D.D., the Historian*.—*The History of America*. By William Robertson, D.D., Principal of the University of Edinburgh, and Historiographer to His Majesty for Scotland. 2 vols. [With 4 Maps.]

London: Printed for W. Strahan; T. Cadell, in the Strand; and J. Balfour, at Edinburgh, MDCCCLXXVII. 4°.

[K. 147. d. 18, 19. From the Library of King George III.—601. k. 1, 2. Wants the maps.]

270. —.—*The History of America*. By William Robertson, D.D. . . . Member of the Royal Academy of History at Madrid. The Thirteenth Edition, in which is included the Posthumous Volume, containing the History of Virginia, to the year 1668, and of New England, to the year 1652. In Four Volumes. [Illustrated.]

Printed for Cadell and Davies; F. C. and J. Rivington; G. Wilkie [and 21 others]: London, 1817. 8°.

[1061. f. 25.]

271. **Rovirosa**, José N.—*Nombres Geográficos del Estado de Tabasco*. Estudio etimológico por el Sr. José N. Rovirosa. Se publica por acuerdo del Señor General Carlos Pacheco, Secretario de Fomento bajo el Cuidado de la Direccion General de Estadística. pp. 36.

Oficina Tip. de la Secretaría de Fomento: México, 1888. fol.

[12903. i. 10. (3.)]

272. **Sahagun, Bernardino de.**—Historia General de las Cosas de Nueva España, que en doce libros y dos volúmenes escribió el R. P. Fr. Bernardino de Sahagun, de la Observancia de San Francisco, y uno de los primeros Predicadores del Santo Evangelio en aquellas regiones. Dala a luz con notas y suplementos Carlos María de Bustamante, Diputado por el Estado de Oaxaca en el Congreso General de la Federación Mexicana, y la dedica a Nuestro Santísimo Padre Pio VIII. 3 tom.

Imprenta del Ciudadano Alejandro Valdés: México, 1829-30. 8°.

[9771. b. 5.]

273. ———.—Historia de la Conquista de México. [Book xii. of the *Historia de las Cosas de Nueva España.*] Escrita por el R. P. Fr. Bernardino Sahagun, del Orden de S. Francisco, y uno de los primeros enviados a la Nueva España para propagar el Evangelio. Publicala por separado de sus demas obras Carlos María de Bustamante, Diputado de la cámara de representantes del congreso general de la federacion por el estado libre de Oaxaca, quien lo dedica á los beneméritos generales Nicolás Bravo y Miguel Barragan, y á sus dignos compañeros en la confinacion que hoy sufren. pp viii. 69.

Imprenta de Galvan á cargo de Mariano Arévalo, calle de Cadena núm. 2: México, 1829. 8°.

[9771. b. 12.]

274. ———.—La Aparicion de N^{tra}. Señora de Guadalupe de México, comprobaba con la refutacion del argumento negativo que presenta D. Juan Bautista Muñoz, fundandose en el testimonio del P. Fr. Bernardino Sahagun; ó sea: Historia Original de este Escritor, que altera la publicada en 1829 en el equivocado concepto de ser la unica y original de dicho autor. (Relacion de la Conquista de esta Nueva-España, como la contaron los soldados indios, que se hallaron presentes. Conviértiéndose en lengua española, llana é inteligible, y bien enmendada en este año de 1585.) Publicala, precediendo una disertacion sobre la Aparicion Guadalupeana, y con notas sobre la conquista de México, Carlos Ma. de Bustamante, Individuo del Supremo Poder Conservador. pp. xxii. 247. [With a Portrait of N. S. de Guadalupe de Mexico, la mas semejante à su Original.]

Impreso por Ignacio Gumplido: México, 1840. 8°.

[9771. b. 10.—Nota. La continuacion de esta historia está en la Memoria de D. Fernando de Alva Ixtilxochitl, publicada por el editor de esta obra en 118 fojas, el año de 1829, intitulada:]

- 274 a. **Alva Ixtilxochitl, Fernando de.**—Horribles Crueldades de los Conquistadores de México, y de los Indios que los auxiliaron para subyugarlo a la corona de Castilla. O sea Memoria escrita por D. Fernando de Alva Ixtilxochitl. Publicala por suplemento a la *Historia* del Padre Sahagun Carlos María de Bustamante, y la dedica al Supremo Gobierno General de la Federación Mexicana. (Décima tertia Relacion de la Venida de los Españoles y Principio de la Ley Evangélica. Escrita por D. Fernando Alva Ixtilxochitl.) pp. xii. 118.

Imprenta del ciudadano Alejandro Valdés: México, Año de 1829. 8°.

[9771. b. 10.]

275. ———.—Histoire Générale des Choses de la Nouvelle-Espagne. Par le R. P. Fray Bernardino de Sahagun. Traduite et annotée par D. Jourdanet, auteur de divers ouvrages sur la Climatologie du Mexique, et traducteur de la Chronique de Bernal Díaz del Castillo, et par Rémi

Simeon, éditeur, avec commentaires, de la Grammaire Nahuatl, du R. P. Fray Andrés de Olmos. pp. lxxix. 898.

G. Masson: Paris, 1880. 8°.

[9771. f. 6.—On p. xvii. are two facsimiles of the signature of Bernal Díaz del Castillo.]

276. **Santa Cruz**, Alonso de.—Die Karten von Amerika in dem Islario General des Alonso de Santa Cruz, Cosmógrafo Mayor des Kaisers Karl V. [1542.] Mit dem spanischen Originaltexte und einer kritischen Einleitung herausgegeben von Franz R. v. Wieser. Festgabe des K. u. K. Oberstkämmer-Amtes für den xvi. Internat. Amerikanisten-Kongress. pp. xx. 59. 15 Plates. [The original MS. is in the Vienna K. K. Hof-Bibliothek.]

Verlag der Wagnerschen Universitäts-Buchhandlung: Innsbruck, 1908. fol.

[Map Department, British Museum.—Plate 6. Cuba. Plate 10. Yucatan.—Plate 11. Temixtitlan.]

277. **Santo María de la Victoria**.—Relación de la Villa de Santa María de la Victoria. 1579. (Relaciones Histórico-Geográficas de las Provincias de Yucatán, Tabasco.—Relaciones de Yucatán. [Edited by José María Asensio.] Tom. 1. pp. 341-374.—In "Colección de Documentos Inéditos relativos al Descubrimiento, Conquista y Organización de las Antiguas Posesiones Españolas de Ultramar. Segunda Serie, publicada por la Real Academia de la Historia. Tomo núm. 11.")

Establecimiento Tipográfico, Sucesores de Rivadeneyra: Madrid, 1898, 1900. 8°.

[9551. g.]

278. **Solis y Ribadeneyra**, Antonio de.—Historia de la Conquista de Mexico, Poblacion, y Progressos de la America Septentrional, conocida por el nombre de Nueva España. Escriviala Don Antonio de Solis, Secretario de su Magestad, y su Chronista mayor de las Indias. Y la pone a los pies del Rey Nuestro Señor por mano del Excelentissimo Señor Conde de Oropesa. pp. 548.

En Madrid: En la Imprenta de Bernardo de Villa-Diego, Impresor de su Magestad, Año M.DC.LXXXIV. fol.

[9771. f. 13. With a second engraved pictorial Title-page: Theod. Ardeman inv. I. F. Leonardo sculp.—With the Crest and Initials of Henri Ternaux-Compans stamped in gold on the covers.]

- 278 a. —.—[Another edition.] Dedicase al Illustrissimo Señor Don Guillen de Rocafull y Rocaberti, por la Gracia de Dios Vizconde de Rocaberti, Conde de Peralada, y de Albatera, &c. pp. 548.

Barcelona: En la Imprenta de Joseph Llois, Impresor de Libros; y a su Costa. Vendese en su Casa, en la calle de Santo Domingo, Año 1691. fol.

[605. l. 12.]

279. —.—The History of the Conquest of Mexico by the Spaniards. Done into English from the original Spanish of Don Antonio de Solis, Secretary and Historiographer to His Catholick Majesty. By Thomas Townsend, Esq.

With 9 Illustrations.

1. Hernan Cortés. Ex pictura Titiani in Œdibus præhon^{blis}. Domini D. Pauli Methuen. Geo. Vertue sculpsit 1724. Frontispiece.

2. Meeting of Cortes and Montezuma in the City of Mexico.
 - I. Schijnnoet invent. et fec. p. 1.
 3. Map of Mexico or New Spain. J. Clark sc. Book I. p. 31.
 4. [Map of] The Lake of Mexico and Parts adjacent. Book I. p. 50.
 5. [View of] The Great Temple of Mexico. Book II. p. 72.
 6. View of the City of Mexico from Tezcuco. J. Clark sc. 1724. Book III. p. 69.
 7. [View of] The City of Mexico. J. Clark sc. 1723. Book III. p. 70.
 8. [View of] The Engagem^{nt}. between y^e Spanish Brigantines and the Canoes of the Mexicans. J. Clark sc. 1723. Book V. p. 124.
 9. Guatimozin taken in his Retreat by Holguin. J. Clark sc. 1724. Book V. p. 146.] Dedicated to James, Duke of Chandos. 3 parts.
- London: Printed for T. Woodward at the Half-Moon, and J. Hooke at the Flower-de-Luce, both against St. Dunstan's Church, in Fleet Street; and J. Peele at Locke's Head in Pater-Noster-Row, M.DCC.XXIV. fol.*
- [601. m. 14.]
280. ———. —The History of the Conquest of Mexico by the Spaniards. Translated into English . . . by Thomas Townsend, Esq., late Lieutenant-Colonel in Brig.-Gen. Newton's Regiment. The whole Translation Revised and Corrected by Nathaniel Hooke Esq., Translator of *The Travels of Cyrus*, and *The Life of the Archbishop of Cambray*. [With the 9 Plates of the 1724 edition.] 2 vols.
- London: Printed for T. Woodward, at the Half-Moon between the Two Temple Gates; and H. Lintot, at the Cross-Keys against St. Dunstan's Church, in Fleet-street, MDCCXXXVIII. 8°.*
- [9771. de. 6. —Purchased November 5, 1895.]
- The Third edition.
- London: Printed for H. Lintot; J. Whiston and B. White, at Mr. Boyle's Head, and L. Davis, at Lord Bacon's Head, both in Fleet-street; and D. Wilson, at Plato's Head, in the Strand, MDCCLIII. 8°.*
- [9771. b. 16. —Purchased June 27, 1850.]
281. **Soto Hall, Máximo.**—De México á Honduras. El Viage de Hernán Cortés. pp. 103.
- Tipografía Nacional: San José, 1900. 8°.*
- [010480. e. 26.]
282. **Spencer, Herbert.**—Herbert Spencer. El Antiguo Yucatán. Traducción [of Sections of Div. II. Part I. B. of "Descriptive Sociology," 1873-81.] hecha por Daniel y Genaro García. (Bibliografía.) pp. 153. 1 Table.
- Oficina Tipográfica de la Secretaría de Fomento: México, 1898. 8°.*
- [9770. cc. 3.]
283. ———. —Herbert Spencer. Los Antiguos Mexicanos. Traducción [of Sections of Div. II. Part I. B. of "Descriptive Sociology," 1873-81.] por Daniel y Genaro García. (Bibliografía.) pp. 229. vi. 3 Tables.
- Oficina Tipográfica de la Secretaría de Fomento: México, 1896. 8°.*
- [9770. dd. 4.]

184. **Stephens**, John Lloyd.—Incidents of Travel in Central America, Chiapas and Yucatan. By John L. Stephens, Author of "Incidents of Travel in Egypt, Arabia Petrea, and the Holy Land," etc. Illustrated by numerous Engravings [by F. Catherwood]. 2 vols.
John Murray: London, MDCCCXLI. 8°.
 [G.15779-80. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—1431. h. 15.—1854. 791. k. 26.]
- 284 a. ———.—New Edition. 2 vols.
John Murray: London, MDCCCXLII. 8°.
 [2374. d. 14. The covers bear the name of *Harper & Bros.: New York.*]
285. **Tápia**, Andrés de.—Relacion hecha por el Señor Andrés de Tápia sobre la Conquista de México. [16th cent. MS. In Real Academia de la Historia, Madrid. Tom. 115. Papeles varios de Jesuitas. Est. 15. gr. 5a.] (In "Coleccion de Documentos para la Historia de México. Publicada por Joaquin García Icazbalceta." Tom. 2. pp. 554-594.)
Antigua Libreria, Portal de Agustinos N. 3: México, 1866. 8°.
 [9771. f. 15.]
286. **Torquemada**, Juan de, a *Franciscan*.—Primera (—Tercera) Parte de los Veinte i un Libros Rituales i Monarchia Indiana. Con el origen y guerras de los Indios Occidentales, de sus Poblaciones, Descubrimiento, Conquista, Conversion y otras cosas maravillosas de la mesma tierra distribuydos en tres tomos. Compuesto por P. Juan de Torquemada, Ministro Provincial de la Orden de Nuestro Serafico Padre San Francisco en la Provincia del Santo Evangelio de México en la Nueva España. [Edited by Andrés Gonzalez de Barcia Carbillado y Zuñiga.] 3 tom.
En Madrid: en la oficina y á costa de Nicolas Rodriguez franco, 1723. fol.
 [K. 146. e. 11-13.—With an engraved pictorial title-page.—From the Library of King George III.]
287. **Trueba y Cosío**, Joaquin Telesforo de.—Life of Hernan Cortes. By Don Telesforo de Trueba y Cosío, Author of "Gomez Arias," "The Castilians," &c. [With an engraved frontispiece: Montezuma shows Cortes his Idols. Drawn by D. O. Hill. Engraved by J. West.] pp. 2. ii. 344. (In "Constable's Miscellany of Original and Selected Publications in the various Departments of Literature, Science, & the Arts." Vol. 49.)
Printed for Constable and Co.: Edinburgh; and Hurst, Chance and Co.: London, 1829. 12°.
 [1157. d. 3.]
288. **Valentini**, Philipp J. J. Mexican Paper. By Ph. J. J. Valentini, Ph.D. (In *Proceedings of the American Antiquarian Society*. New Series. Vol. 1. pp. 58-81.)
Published by the Society: Worcester [Mass.], 1882. 8°.
289. **Vera Cruz**.—Liste Générale des Flottes et Azoques qui sont entrés dans le port de la Vera-Cruz depuis la conquête jusqu'à l'année 1760. [1581-1760.—Copied from a list in the possession of Don Antonio d'Enriquez, Judge in the Maritime Tribunal of Cadiz.] (In "Voyages, Relations,

et Mémoires Originaux pour servir à l'Histoire de la Découverte de l'Amérique. Publiés pour la première fois en Français par H. Ternaux-Compans.—Tom. X. Recueil de Pièces relatives à la Conquête du Mexique. Inédit. pp. 455-470.)

Arthur Bertrand: Paris, MDCCCXXXV III. 8°.

[G. 15812. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville. —1196. i. 7.]

290. **Vetancurt**, Augustin de. Teatro Mexicano. Description Breve de los Sucessos Exemplares, Historicos, Politicos, Militares, y Religiosos del nuevo mundo Occidental de las Indias. Dedicado al Esposo de la que es del mismo Dios Esposa, Padre putativo del Hijo, que es Hijo del mismo Dios Christo, Dios, y hombre verdadero. Al que con el sudor de su rostro sustentó al que todo lo sustenta: Al que fue Angel de Guarda de la Ciudad de Dios milagro de su Omnipotencia, y abismo de la gracia. Maria Señora Nuestra. Al Glorioso Patriarca de la Casa de Dios Señor S. Joseph. Dispuesto por el R. P. Fr. Augustin de Vetancurt, Mexicano, hijo de la misma Provincia, Definidor actual, Ex-Lector de Theologia, Predicador Jubilado General, y su Chronista Apostolico, Vicario, y Cura Ministro, por su Magestad, de la Iglesia Parrochial de S. Joseph de los Naturales de Mexico. 4 parts. Sucessos Naturales, etc. pp. 170. Tratado de la Ciudad de Mexico, y las grandezas que la ilustran despues que la fundaron Españoles. Tratado de la Ciudad de la Puebla de los Angeles, y grandezas que la ilustran. pp. 56. Chronica de la Provincia del Santo Evangelio de Mexico. Quarta parte del Teatro Mexicano, etc. pp. 138.

En Mexico, por Doña Maria de Benavides, Viuda de Juan de Ribera, Año de 1697. fol.

Menologio Franciscano de los Varones Mas Señalados, que con sus vidas exemplares, perfeccion Religiosa, ciencia, predicacion Evangelica, en su vida, y muerte ilustraron la Provincia de el Santo Evangelio de Mexico. Recopiladas por el Padre Fray Augustin de Vetancurt, etc. pp. 156.

En México por Doña Maria de Benavides, Viuda de Juan de Ribera, Año de 1698. fol.

[9771. f. 14.—Purchased June 7, 1862.]

291. **Villa-Senor y Sanchez**, José Antonio de. —Theatro Americano. Description General de los Reynos, y Provincias y de la Nueva-España, y sus Jurisdicciones. Dedicada al Rey Nuestro Señor el Señor D. Phelipe Quinto, Monarcha de las Españas. Su Author D. Joseph Antonio de Villa-Senor, y Sanchez, Contador General de la Real Contaduría de Azoguez, y Cosmographo de esto Reyno. Quien la escribió de Orden del Excelentissimo Señor Conde de Fuen-Clara, Virrey Gobernador, y Capitan General de esta Nueva-España, y Presidente de su Real Audiencia, &c. 2 pts.

Con Licencia en México: En la Imprenta de la Viuda de Joseph Bernardo de Hoyal, Impressora del Real, y Apostolico Tribunal de la Santa Cruzada en todo esta Reyno, Calle del as Capuchinos, Año de 1746-48. fol.

[K. 146. e. 5. From the Library of King George III.]

292. **Viollet le Duc**, Eugène Emmanuel. —Cités et Ruines Américaines. Mitla, Palenqué, Izamal Chichen-itza, Uxmal. Recueillies et Photographiées par Desiré Charnay, avec un Texte Par M. Viollet-le-Duc, Architecte du Gouvernement. Suivi du Voyage et des Documents de l'Auteur.

Ouvrage dédié à S. M. l'Empereur Napoléon III. et publié sous la patronage de Sa Majesté. pp. ix. 543.

Paris: Gide, Editeur, 5, rue Bonaparte. A. Morel et Co., 18, rue Vivienne. 1863. 8°.

[10481. g. 12.—Atlas. 14000. k. 4.]

293. **Vivien de Saint-Martin**, Louis.—Nouveau Dictionnaire de Géographie Universelle . . . Ouvrage commencé par M. Vivien de Saint-Martin . . . et continué par Louis Rousselet. (Tom. 3. Mexico, Mexique. pp. 824-851. With a valuable Bibliography of Books and Maps.)

Hachette et Cie.: Paris, 1887. fol.

[2060. e.]

294. **Ximenez**, Francisco, *Missionary*.—Las Historias del Origen de los Indios de esta Provincia de Guatemala. Traducidas de la Lengua Quiché al Castellano para mas comodidad de los Ministros del S. Evangelio. Por el R. P. F. Francisco Ximenez, Cura Doctrinero por el Real Patronato del Pueblo de S. Thomas Chuila. Exactamente segun el texto español del Manuscrito Original que se halla en la Biblioteca de la Universidad de Guatemala, publicado por la primera vez, y aumentado con una introduccion y anotaciones por el Dr. C. Scherzer. A expensas de la Imperial Academia de las Ciencias. pp. xvi. 216.

En casa de Carlos Gerold é Hijo, Libreros de la Academia Imperial de las Ciencias: Vienna, 1857. 8°.

[9771. d. 14.]

295. **Yucatán**.—Relaciones de Yucatán. Tom. I. II. [Edited by José María Asensio.] (Colección de Documentos Inéditos relativos al Descubrimiento, Conquista y Organización de las Antiguas Posesiones Españolas de Ultramar. Segunda Serie, publicada por la Real Academia de la Historia. Tomo núm. 11, 13.)

Establecimiento Tipográfico, Sucesores de Rivadeneyra: Madrid, 1898, 1900. 8°.

[9551. g.—There seems to be no entry under *Yucatan* for these volumes in the British Museum Catalogue.]

296. **Zarate**, Juan de, *Bishop of Antequera*.—Lettre de Don Juan de Zarate, Evêque d'Antequera, à Philippe II. [Report on the Diocese of Guaxaca, or Oaxaca.] *Simancas*. (In "Voyages, Relations, et Mémoires Originaux pour servir à l'Histoire de la Découverte de l'Amérique. Publiés pour la première fois en Français par H. Ternaux-Compans.—Tom. x. Recueil de Pièces relatives à la Conquête du Mexique. Inédit." pp. 287-306.)

Arthus Bertrand: Paris, MDCCCXXXVIII. 8°.

[G. 15812. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.—1196. i. 7.]

297. **Zurita**, Alonso de.—Rapport sur les différentes classes de chefs de la Nouvelle-Espagne, sur les lois, les mœurs des habitants, sur les impôts établis avant et depuis la conquête, etc., etc. Par Alonso de Zurita, ex-Auditeur à l'Audience Royale de Mexico. Inédit. [From the copy made by Boturini from the original MS. in the Library of the Colegio of Saint Peter and Saint Paul Mexico, case 48. no. 19.] pp. xvi. 418.

(In "Voyages, Relations et Memoires Originaux, pour servir à l'Histoire de la Découverte de l'Amérique, publiés pour la première fois en français par H. Ternaux-Compans." Tom. XI.)

Arthur Bertrand: Paris, MDCCCL. 8°.

[G. 15813. From the Library of the Right Hon. Thomas Grenville.
—1196. i. 7.]

ADDENDA.

González Obregón, Luis.—Época Colonial. México Viejo. Noticias Históricas, Tradiciones, Leyendas y Costumbres por Luis González Obregón. Nueva Edición aumentada y corregida. Con profusión de ilustraciones: dibujos originales, retratos, vistas, planos, sacados de antiguos cuadros al óleo, láminas y litografías; y fotografías, tomadas directamente de monumentos, monedas y medallas. pp. xiii. 742.

*Librería de la Vía de C. Bouret. Paris, 23 Rue Visconti, 23.
México, 14, Cinco de Mayo, 14. 1900. 8°.*

[9770. f. 12.]

———.—Los Precursores de la Independencia Mexicana en el Siglo XVI. pp. 388.

*Librería de la Vía de C. Bouret. Paris, 23 rue Visconti, 23.
México, Calle del 5 de Mayo, 14. 1906. 8°.*

[9772. df. 11.]

WORKS ALREADY ISSUED.

FIRST SERIES.

1847-1898.

1—The Observations of Sir Richard Hawkins, Knt.,

In his Voyage into the South Sea in 1593. Reprinted from the edition of 1622, and edited by ADMIRAL CHARLES RAMSAY DRINKWATER BETHUNE, C.B. pp. xvi. 246. Index.

(*First Edition out of print. See No. 57.*) Issued for 1847.

2—Select Letters of Christopher Columbus,

With Original Documents relating to the Discovery of the New World. Translated and Edited by RICHARD HENRY MAJOR, F.S.A., Keeper of Maps, British Museum, Sec. R.G.S. pp. xc. 240. Index.

(*First Edition out of print. See No. 43.* Two copies only were printed on vellum, one of which is in the British Museum, C. 29. k. 14.)

Issued for 1847.

3—The Discovery of the Large, Rich, & Beautiful Empire of Gulana,

With a relation of the great and golden City of Manoa (which the Spaniards call El Dorado), &c., performed in the year 1595 by SIR WALTER RALEGH, Knt. . . . Reprinted from the edition of 1596. With some unpublished Documents relative to that country. Edited with copious explanatory Notes and a biographical Memoir by SIR ROBERT HERMANN SCHOMBURGK, Ph. D. pp. lxxv. xv. 1 Map. Index.

(*Out of print. Second Edition in preparation.*) Issued for 1848.

4—Sir Francis Drake his Voyage, 1595,

By THOMAS MAYNARDE, together with the Spanish Account of Drake's attack on Puerto Rico. Edited from the original MSS. by WILLIAM DESBOROUGH COOLEY. pp. viii. 65. (*Out of print.*) Issued for 1848.

5—Narratives of Voyages towards the North-West,

In search of a Passage to Cathay & India, 1496 to 1631. With selections from the early Records of . . . the East India Company and from MSS. in the British Museum. Edited by THOMAS RUNDALL. pp. xx. 259. 2 Maps.

(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1849.

6—The Historie of Travalle into Virginia Britannia,

Expressing the Cosmographie and Commodities of the Country, together with the manners and customs of the people, gathered and observed as well by those who went first thither as collected by WILLIAM STRACHEY, Gent., the first Secretary of the Colony. Now first edited from the original MS. in the British Museum by RICHARD HENRY MAJOR, F.S.A., Keeper of Maps, British Museum, Sec. R.G.S. pp. xxxvi. 203. 1 Map. 6 Illus. Glossary. Index.

(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1849.

7—Divers Voyages touching the Discovery of America

And the Islands adjacent, collected and published by RICHARD HAKLUYT, Prebendary of Bristol, in the year 1582. Edited, with notes & an introduction by JOHN WINTER JONES, Principal Librarian of the British Museum. pp. xci. 171. 6. 2 Maps. 1 Illus. Index. (*Out of print.*) Issued for 1850.

8—Memorials of the Empire of Japan.

In the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries. (The Kingdome of Japonia. Harl. MSS. 6249.—The Letters of Wm. Adams, 1611 to 1617.) With a Commentary by THOMAS RUNDALL. pp. xxxviii. 186. 1 Map. 5 Illus.
(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1850.

9—The Discovery and Conquest of Terra Florida,

By Don Ferdinando de Soto, & six hundred Spaniards his followers. Written by a Gentleman of Elvas, employed in all the action, and translated out of Portuguese by RICHARD HAKLUYT. Reprinted from the edition of 1611. Edited with Notes & an Introduction, & a Translation of a Narrative of the Expedition by LUIS HERNANDEZ DE BIEDMA, Factor to the same, by WILLIAM BRECHLEY RYE, Keeper of Printed Books, British Museum. pp. lxvii. 200. v. 1 Map. Index.
(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1851.

10—Notes upon Russia,

Being a Translation from the Earliest Account of that Country, entitled *Rerum Muscoviticarum Commentarii*, by the BARON SIGISMUND VON HERBERSTEIN, Ambassador from the Court of Germany to the Grand Prince Vasiley Ivanovich, in the years 1517 and 1526. Translated and Edited with Notes & an Introduction, by RICHARD HENRY MAJOR, F.S.A., Keeper of Maps, British Museum, Sec. R.G.S. Vol. 1. pp. clxii. 116. 2 Illus.
(Vol. 2 = No. 12.) (*Out of print.*) Issued for 1851.

11—The Geography of Hudson's Bay,

Being the Remarks of Captain W. COATS, in many Voyages to that locality, between the years 1727 and 1751. With an Appendix containing Extracts from the Log of Captain MIDDLETON on his Voyage for the Discovery of the North-west Passage, in H.M.S. "Furnace," in 1741-3. Edited by JOHN BARROW, F.R.S., F.S.A. pp. x. 147. Index.
(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1852.

12—Notes upon Russia.

(Vol. I. = No. 10.) Vol. 2. pp. iv. 266. 2 Maps. 1 Illus. Index.
(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1852.

13—A True Description of Three Voyages by the North-East,

Towards Cathay and China, undertaken by the Dutch in the years 1594, 1595 and 1596, with their Discovery of Spitzbergen, their residence of ten months in Novaya Zemlya, and their safe return in two open boats. By GERRIT DE VEER. Published at Amsterdam in 1598, & in 1609 translated into English by WILLIAM PHILIP. Edited by CHARLES TILSTONE BEKE, Ph.D., F.S.A. pp. cxlii. 291. 4 Maps. 12 Illus. Index.
(*Out of print.* See also No. 54.) Issued for 1853.

14-15—The History of the Great and Mighty Kingdom of China and the Situation Thereof.

Compiled by the Padre JUAN GONZALEZ DE MENDOZA, & now reprinted from the Early Translation of R. Parke. Edited by SIR GEORGE THOMAS STAUNTON, Bart., M.P., F.R.S. With an Introduction by RICHARD HENRY MAJOR, F.S.A., Keeper of Maps, British Museum, Sec. R.G.S., 2 vols. Index.
(Vol. 14 out of print.) Issued for 1854.

16—The World Encompassed by Sir Francis Drake.

Being his next Voyage to that to Nombre de Dios. [By SIR FRANCIS DRAKE, the Younger.] Collated with an unpublished Manuscript of Francis Fletcher, Chaplain to the Expedition. With Appendices illustrative of the same Voyage, and Introduction, by WILLIAM SANDYS WRIGHT VAUX, F.R.S., Keeper of Coins, British Museum. pp. xl. 295. 1 Map. Index.
(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1855.

17—The History of the Two Tartar Conquerors of China,

Including the two Journeys into Tartary of Father Ferdinand Verbiest, in the suite of the Emperor Kang-Hi. From the French of PÈRE PIERRE JOSEPH D'ORLÉANS, of the Company of Jesus, 1688. To which is added Father Pereira's Journey into Tartary in the suite of the same Emperor. From the Dutch of NICOLAAS WITSEN. Translated and Edited by the EARL OF ELLESMERE. With an Introduction by RICHARD HENRY MAJOR, F.S.A., Keeper of Maps, British Museum, Sec. R.G.S. pp. xv. vi. 153. Index.
(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1855.

18—A Collection of Documents on Spitzbergen and Greenland,

Comprising a Translation from F. MARTENS' Voyage to Spitzbergen, 1671 ; a Translation from ISAAC DE LA PEYRÈRE's Histoire du Groenland, 1663, and God's Power and Providence in the Preservation of Eight Men in Greenland Nine Months and Twelve Dayes. 1630. Edited by ADAM WHITE, of the British Museum. pp. xvi. 288. 2 Maps. Index.
Issued for 1856.

19—The Voyage of Sir Henry Middleton to Bantam and the Maluco Islands, Being the Second Voyage set forth by the Governor and Company of Merchants of London trading into the East Indies. From the (rare) Edition of 1606. Annotated and Edited by BOLTON CORNEY. M.R.S.L. pp. xi. 83. 52. viii. 3 Maps. 3 Illus. Bibliography. Index.
(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1856.

20—Russia at the Close of the Sixteenth Century.

Comprising the Treatise, "The Russe Commonwealth" by Dr. GILES FLETCHER, and the Travels of SIR JEROME HORSEY, Knt., now for the first time printed entire from his own MS. Edited by SIR EDWARD AUGUSTUS BOND, K.C.B., Principal Librarian of the British Museum. pp. cxxiv. 392. Index.
Issued for 1857.

21—History of the New World. By Girolamo Benzoni, of Milan.

Showing his Travels in America, from A.D. 1541 to 1556, with some particulars of the Island of Canary. Now first Translated and Edited by ADMIRAL WILLIAM HENRY SMYTH, K.S.F., F.R.S., D.C.L. pp. iv. 280. 19 Illus. Index.
Issued for 1857.

22—India in the Fifteenth Century.

Being a Collection of Narratives of Voyages to India in the century preceding the Portuguese discovery of the Cape of Good Hope ; from Latin, Persian, Russian, and Italian Sources. Now first Translated into English. Edited with an Introduction by RICHARD HENRY MAJOR, F.S.A., Keeper of Maps, British Museum. pp. xc. 49. 39. 32. 10. Index.
(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1858.

23—Narrative of a Voyage to the West Indies and Mexico,

In the years 1599-1602, with 4 Maps and 5 Illustrations. By SAMUEL CHAMPLAIN. Translated from the original and unpublished Manuscript, with a Biographical Notice and Notes by ALICE WILMERE. Edited by NORTON SHAW. pp. xcix. 48.
Issued for 1858.

24—Expeditions into the Valley of the Amazons, 1539, 1540, 1639,

Containing the Journey of GONZALO PIZARRO, from the Royal Commentaries of Garcilasso Inca de la Vega ; the Voyage of Francisco de Orellana, from the General History of Herrera ; and the Voyage of Cristoval de Acuña. Translated and Edited by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. pp. lxiv. 190. 1 Map. List of Tribes in the Valley of the Amazons.
Issued for 1859.

25—Early Voyages to Terra Australis,

Now called Australia. A Collection of documents, and extracts from early MS. Maps, illustrative of the history of discovery on the coasts of that vast Island, from the beginning of the Sixteenth Century to the time of Captain Cook. Edited with an Introduction by RICHARD HENRY MAJOR, F.S.A., Keeper of Maps, British Museum, Sec. R.G.S. pp. cxix. 200. 13. 5 Maps. Index. *(Out of print.) Issued for 1859.*

26—Narrative of the Embassy of Ruy Gonzalez de Clavijo to the Court of Timour, at Samarcand, A.D., 1403-6.

Translated for the first time with Notes, a Preface, & an introductory Life of Timour Beg, by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. pp. lvi. 200. 1 Map. *Issued for 1860.*

27—Henry Hudson the Navigator, 1607-13.

The Original Documents in which his career is recorded. Collected, partly Translated, & annotated with an Introduction by GEORGE MICHAEL ASHER, LL.D. pp. ccxviii. 292. 2 Maps. Bibliography. Index. *Issued for 1860.*

28—The Expedition of Pedro de Ursua and Lope de Aguirre,

In search of El Dorado and Omagua, in 1560-61. Translated from Fray PEDRO SIMON'S "Sixth Historical Notice of the Conquest of Tierra Firme," 1627, by WILLIAM BOLLAERT, F.R.G.S. With an Introduction by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. pp. lii. 237. 1 Map. *Issued for 1861.*

29—The Life and Acts of Don Alonzo Enriquez de Guzman,

A Knight of Seville, of the Order of Santiago, A.D. 1518 to 1543. Translated from an original & inedited MS. in the National Library at Madrid. With Notes and an Introduction by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. pp. xxxv. 168. 1 Illus. *Issued for 1862.*

30—The Discoveries of the World

From their first original unto the year of our Lord 1555. By ANTONIO GALVANO, Governor of Ternate. [Edited by F. DE SOUSA TAVARES.] Corrected, quoted, & published in England by RICHARD HAKLUYT, 1601. Now reprinted, with the original Portuguese text (1563), and edited by ADMIRAL CHARLES RAMSAY DRINKWATER BETHUNE, C.B. pp. iv. viii. 242. *Issued for 1862.*

31—Mirabilia Descripta. The Wonders of the East.

By FRIAR JORDANUS, of the Order of Preachers & Bishop of Columbum in India the Greater, circa 1330. Translated from the Latin Original, as published at Paris in 1839, in the *Recueil de Voyages et de Mémoires*, of the Société de Géographie. With the addition of a Commentary, by COL. SIR HENRY YULE, K.C.S.I., R.E., C.B. pp. iv. xviii. 68. Index. *Issued for 1863.*

32—The Travels of Ludovico di Varthema

In Egypt, Syria, Arabia, Persia, India, & Ethiopia, A.D. 1503 to 1508. Translated from the original Italian edition of 1510, with a Preface, by JOHN WINTER JONES, F.S.A., Principal Librarian of the British Museum, & Edited, with Notes & an Introduction, by the REV. GEORGE PERCY BADGER. pp. cxi. 341. 1 Map. Index. *(Out of print.) Issued for 1863.*

33—The Travels of Pedro de Cieza de Leon, A.D. 1532-50,

From the Gulf of Darien to the City of La Plata, contained in the first part of his Chronicle of Peru (Antwerp, 1554). Translated & Edited, with Notes & an Introduction, by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. pp. xvi. lvii. 438. Index.

(Vol. 2 = No. 68.)

Issued for 1864.

34—Narrative of the Proceedings of Pedrarias Davila

In the Provinces of Tierra Firme or Castilla del Oro, & of the discovery of the South Sea and the Coasts of Peru and Nicaragua. Written by the Adelantado Pascual de Andagoya. Translated and Edited, with Notes & an Introduction, by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. pp. xxix. 88. 1 Map. Index.

Issued for 1865.

35—A Description of the Coasts of East Africa and Malabar

In the beginning of the Sixteenth Century, by DUARTE BARBOSA, a Portuguese. Translated from an early Spanish manuscript in the Barcelona Library, with Notes & a Preface, by LORD STANLEY OF ALDERLEY. pp. xi. 336. 2 Illus. Index.

Issued for 1865.

36-37—Cathay and the Way Thither.

Being a Collection of mediæval notices of China, previous to the Sixteenth Century. Translated and Edited by COLONEL SIR HENRY YULE, K.C.S.I., R.E., C.B. With a preliminary Essay on the intercourse between China & the Western Nations previous to the discovery of the Cape Route. 2 vols. 3 Maps. 2 Illus. Bibliography. Index.

(Out of print; see also Ser. II., Vol. 33.) Issued for 1866.

38—The Three Voyages of Sir Martin Frobisher,

In search of a Passage to Cathaia & India by the North-West, A.D. 1576-8. By GEORGE BEST. Reprinted from the First Edition of HAKLUYT's Voyages. With Selections from MS. Documents in the British Museum & State Paper Office. Edited by ADMIRAL SIR RICHARD COLLINSON, K.C.B. pp. xxvi. 376. 2 Maps. 1 Illus. Index.

Issued for 1867.

39—The Philippine Islands,

Moluccas, Siam, Cambodia, Japan, and China, at the close of the 16th Century. By ANTONIO DE MORGÁ, 1609. Translated from the Spanish, with Notes & a Preface, and a Letter from Luis Vaez de Torres, describing his Voyage through the Torres Straits, by LORD STANLEY OF ALDERLEY. pp. xxiv. 431. 2 Illus. Index.

(Out of print.) Issued for 1868.

40—The Fifth Letter of Hernan Cortes

To the Emperor Charles V., containing an Account of his Expedition to Honduras in 1525-26. Translated from the original Spanish by DON PASCUAL DE GAYANGOS. pp. xvi. 156. Index.

Issued for 1868.

41—The Royal Commentaries of the Yncas.

By the YNCA Garcilasso de la Vega. Translated and Edited, with Notes & an Introduction, by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B. F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. Vol. I. (Books I.-IV.) pp. xi. 359. 1 Map. Index.

(Vol. 2. = No. 45.)

Issued for 1869.

42—The Three Voyages of Vasco da Gama.

And his Viceroyalty, from the Lendas da India of GASPAR CORREA; accompanied by original documents. Translated from the Portuguese, with Notes & an Introduction, by LORD STANLEY OF ALDERLEY. pp. lxxvii. 430. xxxv. 3 Illus. Index.

(Out of prints) Issued for 1869.

43—Select Letters of Christopher Columbus,

With other Original Documents relating to his Four Voyages to the New World. Translated and Edited by RICHARD HENRY MAJOR, F.S.A., Keeper of Maps, British Museum, Sec. R.G.S. Second Edition. pp. iv. 142. 3 Maps. 1 Illus. Index.

(First Edition=No. 2.)

Issued for 1870.

44—History of the Imāms and Seyyids of 'Omān,

By SALĪL-IBN-RAZĪK, from A.D. 661-1856. Translated from the original Arabic, and Edited, with a continuation of the History down to 1870, by the REV. GEORGE PERCY BADGER, F.R.G.S. pp. cxxviii. 435. 1 Map. Bibliography. Index.

Issued for 1870.

45—The Royal Commentaries of the Yncas.

By the YNCA GARCILASSO DE LA VEGA. Translated & Edited with Notes, an Introduction, & an Analytical Index, by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. Vol. II. (Books V.-IX.) pp. 553.

(Vol. I.=No. 41.)

Issued for 1871.

46—The Canarian,

Or Book of the Conquest and Conversion of the Canarians in the year 1402, by Messire JEAN DE BÉTHENCOURT, Kt. Composed by Pierre Bontier and Jean le Verrier. Translated and Edited by RICHARD HENRY MAJOR, F.S.A., Keeper of Maps, British Museum, Sec. R.G.S. pp. lv. 229. 1 Map. 2 Illus. Index.

Issued for 1871.

47—Reports on the Discovery of Peru.

I. Report of FRANCISCO DE XERES, Secretary to Francisco Pizarro. II. Report of MIGUEL DE ASTETE on the Expedition to Pachacamac. III. Letter of HERNANDO PIZARRO to the Royal Audience of Santo Domingo. IV. Report of PEDRO SANCHO on the Partition of the Ransom of Atahualpa. Translated and Edited, with Notes & an Introduction, by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. pp. xxii. 143. 1 Map. *Issued for 1872.*

48—Narratives of the Rites and Laws of the Yncas.

Translated from the original Spanish MSS., & Edited, with Notes and an Introduction, by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. pp. xx. 220. Index.

Issued for 1872.

49—Travels to Tana and Persia,

By JOSAFÁ BARBARO and AMBROGIO CONTARINI. Translated from the Italian by WILLIAM THOMAS, Clerk of the Council to Edward VI., and by E. A. ROY, and Edited, with an Introduction, by LORD STANLEY OF ALDERLEY. pp. xi. 175. Index. A Narrative of Italian Travels in Persia, in the Fifteenth and Sixteenth centuries. Translated and Edited by CHARLES GREY. pp. xvii. 231. Index.

Issued for 1873.

50—The Voyages of the Venetian Brothers, Nicolo & Antonio Zeno,

To the Northern Seas in the Fourteenth century. Comprising the latest known accounts of the Lost Colony of Greenland, & of the Northmen in America before Columbus. Translated & Edited, with Notes and Introduction, by RICHARD HENRY MAJOR, F.S.A., Keeper of Maps, British Museum, Sec. R.G.S. pp. ciii. 64. 2 Maps. Index.

Issued for 1873.

51—The Captivity of Hans Stade of Hesse in 1547-55,

Among the Wild Tribes of Eastern Brazil. Translated by ALBERT TOOTAL, of Rio de Janeiro, and annotated by SIR RICHARD FRANCIS BURTON, K.C.M.G. pp. xcvi. 169. Bibliography.

Issued for 1874.

52—The First Voyage Round the World by Magellan. 1518-1521.

Translated from the Accounts of PIGAFETTA and other contemporary writers. Accompanied by original Documents, with Notes & an Introduction, by LORD STANLEY OF ALDERLEY. pp. lx. 257. xx. 2 Maps. 5 Illus. Index.

Issued for 1874.

53—The Commentaries of the Great Afonso Dalboquerque,

Second Viceroy of India. Translated from the Portuguese Edition of 1774, and Edited by WALTER DE GRAY BIRCH, F.R.S.L., of the British Museum. Vol. 1. pp. lx. 256. 2 Maps. 1 Illus. (Index in No. 69.)

(Vol. 2=No. 55. Vol. 3=No. 62. Vol. 4=No. 69.) *Issued for 1875.*

54—The Three Voyages of William Barents to the Arctic Regions, in 1594, 1595, & 1596.

By GERRIT DE VEER. Edited, with an Introduction, by Lieut. KOOLEMANS BEYNEN, of the Royal Netherlands Navy. Second Edition. pp. clxxiv. 289. 2 Maps. 12 Illus.

Issued for 1876.

(First Edition=No. 13.)

55—The Commentaries of the Great Afonso Dalboquerque,

Second Viceroy of India. Translated from the Portuguese Edition of 1774, with Notes and an Introduction, by WALTER DE GRAY BIRCH, F.R.S.L., of the British Museum. Vol. 2. pp. cxxxiv. 242. 2 Maps. 2 Illus. (Index in No. 69.)

Issued for 1875.

(Vol. 1=No. 53. Vol. 3=No. 62. Vol. 4=No. 69.)

56—The Voyages of Sir James Lancaster, Knt., to the East Indies,

With Abstracts of Journals of Voyages to the East Indies, during the Seventeenth century, preserved in the India Office, & the Voyage of Captain JOHN KNIGHT, 1606, to seek the North-West Passage. Edited by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. pp. xxii. 314. Index.

Issued for 1877.

57—The Hawkins' Voyages

During the reigns of Henry VIII, Queen Elizabeth, and James I. [Second edition of No. 1.] Edited by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. pp. lii. 453. 1 Illus. Index.

Issued for 1877.

(First Edition=No. 1.)

58—The Bondage and Travels of Johann Schiltberger, a Native of Bavaria, in Europe, Asia, & Africa.

From his capture at the battle of Nicopolis in 1396 to his escape and return to Europe in 1427. Translated from the Heidelberg MS., Edited in 1859 by Professor KARL FR. NEUMANN, by Commander JOHN BUCHAN TELFER, R.N.; F.S.A. With Notes by Professor P. BRUUN, & a Preface, Introduction, & Notes by the Translator & Editor. pp. xxii. 263. 1 Map. Bibliography. Index.

Issued for 1878.

59—The Voyages and Works of John Davis the Navigator.

Edited by ADMIRAL SIR ALBERT HASTINGS MARKHAM, K.C.B. pp. xcv. 392. 2 Maps. 15 Illus. Bibliography. Index.

Issued for 1878.

The Map of the World, A.D. 1600.

Called by Shakspeare "The New Map, with the Augmentation of the Indies." To illustrate the Voyages of John Davis. *Issued for 1878.*

60-61--The Natural & Moral History of the Indies.

By Father JOSEPH DE ACOSTA. Reprinted from the English Translated Edition of Edward Grimston, 1604; and Edited by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. Vol. 1, The Natural History Books, I.-IV. pp. xlv. 295. Vol. 2, The Moral History Books, V.-VII. pp. xiii. 295-551. Index. *Issued for 1879.*

Map of Peru.

To Illustrate Nos. 33, 41, 45, 60, and 61.

Issued for 1879.

62--The Commentaries of the Great Afonso Dalboquerque,

Second Viceroy of India. Translated from the Portuguese Edition of 1774, with Notes & an Introduction, by WALTER DE GRAY BIRCH, F.S.A., of the British Museum. Vol. 3. pp. xlv. 308. 3 Maps. 3 Illus. (Index in No. 69.) *Issued for 1880.*

63--The Voyages of William Baffin, 1612-1622.

Edited, with Notes & an Introduction, by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. pp. lix. 192. 8 Maps. 1 Illus. Index. *Issued for 1880.*

64--Narrative of the Portuguese Embassy to Abyssinia

During the years 1520-1527. By Father FRANCISCO ALVAREZ. Translated from the Portuguese & Edited, with Notes & an Introduction, by LORD STANLEY OF ALDERLEY. pp. xxvii. 416. Index. *Issued for 1881.*

65--The History of the Bermudas or Summer Islands.

Attributed to Captain NATHANIEL BUTLER. Edited from a MS. in the Sloane Collection, British Museum, by General SIR JOHN HENRY LEFROY, R.A., K.C.M.G., C.B., F.R.S. pp. xii. 327. 1 Map. 3 Illus. Glossary. Index. *Issued for 1881.*

66-67--The Diary of Richard Cocks,

Cape-Merchant in the English Factory in Japan, 1615-1622, with Correspondence (Add. MSS. 31,300-1, British Museum). Edited by SIR EDWARD MAUNDE THOMPSON, K.C.B., Director of the British Museum. Vol. 1. pp. liv. 349. Vol. 2, pp. 368. Index. *Issued for 1882.*

68--The Second Part of the Chronicle of Peru, 1532-1550

By PEDRO DE CIEZA DE LEON. 1554. Translated and Edited, with Notes & an Introduction, by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. pp. lx. 247. Index. *Issued for 1883.*
(Vol. 1=No. 33.)

69--The Commentaries of the Great Afonso Dalboquerque,

Second Viceroy of India. Translated from the Portuguese Edition of 1774, with Notes & an Introduction, by WALTER DE GRAY BIRCH, F.S.A., of the British Museum. Vol. 4. pp. xxxv. 324. 2 Maps. 2 Illus. Index to the 4 vols. *Issued for 1883.*
(Vol. 1=No. 53. Vol. 2=No. 55. Vol. 3=No. 62.)

70-71--The Voyage of John Huyghen van Linschoten to the East Indies.

From the Old English Translation of 1598. The First Book, containing his Description of the East. In Two Volumes, Edited, the First Volume, by the late ARTHUR COKE BURNELL, Ph.D., C.I.E., Madras C.S.; the Second Volume, by PIETER ANTON TIELE, of Utrecht. Vol. 1. pp. lii. 307. Vol. 2. pp. xv. 341. Index. *Issued for 1884.*

72-73—Early Voyages and Travels to Russia and Persia,

By ANTHONY JENKINSON and other Englishmen, with some account of the first Interchange of the English with Russia and Central Asia by way of the Caspian Sea. Edited by EDWARD DELMAR MORGAN, and CHARLES HENRY COOTE, of the British Museum. Vol. 1. pp. clxii. 176. 2 Maps. 2 Illus. Vol. 2. pp. 177-496. 2 Maps. 1 Illus. Index.

Issued for 1885.

74-75—The Diary of William Hedges, Esq.,

Afterwards SIR WILLIAM HEDGES, during his Agency in Bengal; as well as on his Voyage out and Return Overland (1681-1687). Transcribed for the Press, with Introductory Notes, etc., by R. BARLOW, and Illustrated by copious Extracts from Unpublished Records, etc., by Col. Sir HENRY YULE, K.C.S.I., R.E., C.B., LL.D. Vol. 1. The Diary, with Index. pp. xii. 265. Vol. 2. Notices regarding Sir William Hedges, Documentary Memoirs of Job Charnock, and other Biographical & Miscellaneous Illustrations of the time in India. pp. ccclx. 287. 18 Illus.

Issued for 1886.

(Vol. 3=No. 78.)

76-77—The Voyage of François Pyrard, of Laval, to the East Indies,

The Maldives, the Moluccas and Brazil. Translated into English from the Third French Edition of 1619, and Edited, with Notes, by ALBERT GRAY, K.C., assisted by HARRY CHARLES PURVIS BELL, Ceylon C. S. Vol. 1. pp. lviii. 1 Map. 11 Illus. Vol. 2. Part I. pp. xlvii. 287. 7 Illus.

Issued for 1887.

(Vol. 2. Part II.=No. 80.)

78—The Diary of William Hedges, Esq.

Vol. 3. Documentary Contributions to a Biography of Thomas Pitt, Governor of Fort St. George, with Collections on the Early History of the Company's Settlement in Bengal, & on Early Charts and Topography of the Hugli River. pp. cclxii. 1 Map. 8 Illus. Index to Vols. 2, 3.

Issued for 1888.

(Vols. 1, 2=Nos. 74, 75.)

79—Tractatus de Globis, et eorum usu.

A Treatise descriptive of the Globes constructed by Emery Molyneux, and Published in 1592. By ROBERT HUES. Edited, with annotated Indices & an Introduction, by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. To which is appended,

Sailing Directions for the Circumnavigation of England,

And for a Voyage to the Straits of Gibraltar. From a Fifteenth Century MS. Edited, with an Account of the MS., by JAMES GAIRDNER, of the Public Record Office; with a Glossary by EDWARD DELMAR MORGAN. pp. 1. 229. 37. 1 Illus. 1 Map.

Issued for 1888.

80—The Voyage of François Pyrard, of Laval, to the East Indies, the Maldives, the Moluccas, and Brazil.

Translated into English from the Third French Edition of 1619, and Edited, with Notes, by ALBERT GRAY, K.C., assisted by HARRY CHARLES PURVIS BELL, Ceylon Civil Service. Vol 2. Pt. II. pp. xii. 289-572. 2 Maps. Index.

Issued for 1889.

(Vol 1. Vol. 2. Pt. I.=Nos. 76, 77.)

81—The Conquest of La Plata, 1535-1555.

I.—Voyage of ULRICH SCHMIDT to the Rivers La Plata and Paraguai, from the original German edition, 1567. II. The Commentaries of Alvar Nufiez Cabeza de Vaca. From the original Spanish Edition, 1555. Translated, with Notes and an Introduction, by H. E. DON LUIS L. DOMINGUEZ, Minister Plenipotentiary of the Argentine Republic. pp. xlvii. 282. 1 Map. Bibliography. Index.

Issued for 1889.

82-83—The Voyage of François Leguat, of Bresse, 1690-98.

To Rodriguez, Mauritius, Java, and the Cape of Good Hope. Transcribed from the First English Edition, 1708. Edited and Annotated by Capt. SAMUEL PASFIELD OLIVER, (late) R.A. Vol. 1. pp. lxxxviii. 137. 1 Illus. 6 Maps. Bibliography. Vol. 2. pp. xviii. 433. 5 Illus. 5 Maps. Index.

Issued for 1890.

84-85—The Travels of Pietro della Valle to India.

From the Old English Translation of 1664, by G. HAVERS. Edited, with a Life of the Author, an Introduction & Notes by EDWARD GREY, late Bengal C. S. Vol. 1. pp. lvi. 192. 2 Maps. 2 Illus. Bibliography. Vol. 2. pp. xii. 193-456. Index.

Issued for 1891.

86—The Journal of Christopher Columbus

During his First Voyage (1492-93), and Documents relating to the Voyages of JOHN CABOT and GASPAR CORTE REAL. Translated, with Notes & an Introduction, by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. pp. liv. 259. 3 Maps. 1 Illus. Index.

Issued for 1892.

87—Early Voyages and Travels in the Levant.

I.—The Diary of Master THOMAS DALLAM, 1599-1600. II.—Extracts from the Diaries of Dr. JOHN COVEL, 1670-1679. With some Account of the Levant Company of Turkey Merchants. Edited by JAMES THEODORE BENT, F.S.A., F.R.G.S. pp. xlv. 305. Illus. Index.

Issued for 1892.

88-89—The Voyages of Captain Luke Foxe, of Hull, and Captain Thomas James, of Bristol,

In Search of a N.-W. Passage, 1631-32; with Narratives of the Earlier North-West Voyages of Frobisher, Davis, Weymouth, Hall, Knight, Hudson, Button, Gibbons, Bylot, Baffin, Hawkrigge, & others. Edited, with Notes & an Introduction, by ROBERT MILLER CHRISTY, F.L.S. Vol. 1. pp. ccxxxi. 259. 2 Maps. 2 Illus. Vol. 2. pp. viii. 261-681. 3 Maps. 1 Illus. Index.

Issued for 1893.

90—The Letters of Amerigo Vespucci

And other Documents illustrative of his Career. Translated, with Notes & an Introduction, by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. pp. xlv. 121. 1 Map. Index.

Issued for 1894.

91—Narratives of the Voyages of Pedro Sarmiento de Gamboa to the Straits of Magellan, 1579-80.

Translated and Edited, with Illustrative Documents and Introduction, by SIR CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., ex-Pres. R.G.S. pp. xxx. 401. 1 Map. Index.

Issued for 1894.

92-93-94—The History and Description of Africa,

And of the Notable Things Therein Contained. Written by AL-HASSAN IBN-MOHAMMED AL-WEZAZ AL-FASI, a Moor, baptized as GIOVANNI LEONE, but better known as LEO AFRICANUS. Done into English in the year 1600 by John Pory, and now edited with an Introduction & Notes, by Dr. ROBERT BROWN. In 3 Vols. Vol. 1. pp. viii. cxi. 224. 4 Maps. Vol. 2. pp. 225-698. Vol. 3. pp. 699-1119. Index.

Issued for 1895.

95—The Chronicle of the Discovery and Conquest of Guinea.

Written by GOMES EANNES DE AZURARA. Now first done into English and Edited by CHARLES RAYMOND BEAZLEY, M.A., F.R.G.S., and EDGAR PRESTAGE, B.A. Vol. 1. (Ch. i.—xl.) With Introduction on the Life & Writings of the Chronicler. pp. lxxvii. 127. 3 Maps. 1 Illus.
(Vol. 2=No. 100.) *Issued for 1896.*

96-97—Danish Arctic Expeditions, 1605 to 1620. In Two Books.

Book 1. The Danish Expeditions to Greenland, 1605-07; to which is added Captain JAMES HALL'S Voyage to Greenland in 1612. Edited by CHRISTIAN CARL AUGUST GOSCH. pp. xvi. cxvii. 205. 10 Maps. Index.
Issued for 1896.

Book 2. The Expedition of Captain JENS MUNK to Hudson's Bay in search of a North-West Passage in 1619-20. Edited by CHRISTIAN CARL AUGUST GOSCH. pp. cxviii. 187. 4 Maps. 2 Illus. Index.
Issued for 1897.

98—The Topographia Christiana of Cosmas Indicopleustes, an Egyptian Monk.

Translated from the Greek and Edited by JOHN WATSON MCCRINDLE, LL.D., M.R.A.S. pp. xii. xxvii. 398. 4 Illus. Index.
Issued for 1897.

99—A Journal of the First Voyage of Vasco da Gama, 1497-1499.

By an unknown writer. Translated from the Portuguese, with an Introduction and Notes, by ERNEST GEORGE RAVENSTEIN, F.R.G.S. pp. xxxvi. 250. 8 Maps. 23 Illus. Index.
Issued for 1898.

100—The Chronicle of the Discovery and Conquest of Guinea.

Written by GOMES EANNES DE AZURARA. Now first done into English and Edited by CHARLES RAYMOND BEAZLEY, M.A., F.R.G.S., and EDGAR PRESTAGE, B.A. Vol. 2. (Ch. xli.—xcvii.) With an Introduction on the Early History of African Exploration, Cartography, &c. pp. cl. 362. 3 Maps. 2 Illus. Index.
(Vol. 1=No. 95.) *Issued for 1898.*

WORKS ALREA

SECOND SERIES, 1899, etc.

1-2—The Embassy of Sir Thomas Roe to the Court of the Great Mogul, 1615-19.

Edited from Contemporary Records by WILLIAM FOSTER, B.A., of the India Office. 2 vols. Portrait, 2 Maps, & 6 Illus. Index.
(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1899.

3—The Voyage of Sir Robert Dudley to the West Indies and Guiana in 1594.

Edited by GEORGE FREDERIC WARNER, Litt.D., F.S.A., Keeper of Manuscripts, British Museum. pp. lxvi. 104. Portrait, Map, & 1 Illus. Index.
(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1899.

4—The Journeys of William of Rubruck and John of Pian de Carpine To Tartary in the 13th century. Translated and Edited by H. E. the Hon. WM. WOODVILLE ROCKHILL. pp. lvi. 304. Bibliography. Index. (*Out of print.*) Issued for 1900.

5—The Voyage of Captain John Saris to Japan in 1613.

Edited by H. E. SIR ERNEST MASON SATOW, G.C.M.G. pp. lxxxvii. 242. Map, & 5 Illus. Index.
(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1900.

6—The Strange Adventures of Andrew Battell of Leigh in Essex.

Edited by ERNEST GEORGE RAVENSTEIN, F.R.G.S. pp. xx. 210. 2 Maps. Bibliography. Index.
(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1900.

7-8—The Voyage of Mendana to the Solomon Islands in 1568.

Edited by the LORD AMHERST OF HACKNEY and BASIL THOMSON. 2 vols. 5 Maps, & 33 Illus. Index.
(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1901.

9—The Journey of Pedro Teixeira from India to Italy by land, 1604-05;

With his Chronicle of the Kings of Ormus. Translated and Edited by WILLIAM FREDERIC SINCLAIR, late Bombay C. S., with additional Notes, &c., by DONALD WILLIAM FERGUSON. pp. cvii. 292. Index.
(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1901.

10—The Portuguese Expedition to Abyssinia in 1541, as narrated by

CASANOVOSO and BERMUDEZ. Edited by RICHARD STEPHEN WHITEWAY, late I.C.S. With a Bibliography, by BASIL H. SOULSBY, F.S.A., Superintendent of the Map Department, British Museum. pp. cxxxii. 296. Map, & 2 Illus. Bibliography. Index.
(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1902.

11—Early Dutch and English Voyages to Spitzbergen in the Seventeenth Century,

Including HESSEL GERRITZ. "Histoire du Pays nommé Spitsberghe," 1613, translated into English, for the first time, by BASIL H. SOULSBY, F.S.A., of the British Museum: and JACOB SEGERSZ. van der Brugge, "Journael of Dagb Register," Amsterdam, 1634, translated into English, for the first time, by J. A. J. DE VILLIERS, of the British Museum. Edited, with introductions and notes by SIR MARTIN CONWAY. pp. xvi. 191. 3 Maps, & 3 Illus. Bibliography. Index.
Issued for 1902.

12—The Countries round the Bay of Bengal.

Edited, from an unpublished MS., 1669-79, by THOMAS BOWREY, by Col. SIR RICHARD CARNAC TEMPLE, Bart., C.I.E. pp. lvi. 387. 19 Illus. & 1 Chart. Bibliography. Index. *Issued for 1903.*

13—The Voyage of Captain Don Felipe Gonzalez

in the Ship of the Line San Lorenzo, with the Frigate Santa Rosalia in company, to Easter Island, in 1770-1771. Preceded by an Extract from Mynheer JACOB ROGGEVEEN's Official Log of his Discovery of and Visit to Easter Island in 1722. Translated, Annotated, and Edited by BOLTON GLANVILL CORNEY, Companion of the Imperial Service Order. With a Preface by Admiral SIR CYPRIAN BRIDGE, G.C.B. 3 Maps & 4 Illus. Bibliography. Index. pp. lxxvii. 176. *Issued for 1903.*

14, 15—The Voyages of Pedro Fernandez de Quiros, 1595 to 1606.

Translated and Edited by SIR CLEMENTS MARKHAM, K.C.B., Pres. R.G.S., President of the Hakluyt Society. With a Note on the Cartography of the Southern Continent, and a Bibliography, by BASIL H. SOULSBY, F.S.A., Superintendent of the Map Department, British Museum. 2 vols. 3 Maps. Bibliography. Index. *Issued for 1904.*

16—John Jourdain's Journal of a Voyage to the East Indies, 1608-1617.

(Sloane MS. 858, British Museum). Edited by WILLIAM FOSTER, B.A., of the India Office. pp. lxxxii. 394. With Appendices, A—F, and a Bibliography, by BASIL H. SOULSBY, F.S.A. 4 Maps. Index. *Issued for 1905.*

17—The Travels of Peter Mundy in Europe and Asia, 1608-1667.

(Bodleian Library. Rawl. MSS. A. 315.) Vol. I. Travels in Europe, 1608-1628. Edited by Lieut.-Col. SIR RICHARD CARNAC TEMPLE, Bart., C.I.E., Editor of "A Geographical Account of Countries round the Bay of Bengal." 3 Maps & 3 Illus. With a Bibliography, alphabetically arranged. Index. pp. lxxiii. 284. *Issued for 1905.*

(Vol. II = No. 35.)

18—East and West Indian Mirror.

By JORIS VAN SPEILBERGEN. An Account of his Voyage Round the World in the years 1614 to 1617, including the Australian Navigations of JACOB LE MAIRE. Translated from the Dutch edition, "Oost ende West-Indische Spiegel, &c.," *Nicolaes van Geelkercken: Leyden, 1619*, with Notes and an Introduction, by JOHN A. J. DE VILLIERS, of the British Museum. With a Bibliography & Index by BASIL H. SOULSBY, F.S.A. 26 Illus. & Maps. Index. pp. lxi. 272. *Issued for 1906.*

19, 20.—A New Account of East India and Persia.

In eight Letters, being Nine Years' Travels, begun 1672, and finished 1681. By JOHN FRYER, M.D., Cantabrig., and Fellow of the Royal Society. Printed by R. R. for R. Chiswell; at the Rose and Crown in St. Paul's Churchyard, London, 1698. Fol. Edited, with Notes and an Introduction, by WILLIAM CROOKE, B.A., Bengal Civil Service (retired), Editor of "Hobson Jobson," &c., &c. Vol. I-II. (Vol. I) Map & 6 Illus. pp. xxxviii. 353; (Vol. II) Map. pp. 371. *Issued for 1909 and 1912.*

(Vol. III = No. 39.)

21—The Guanches of Tenerife, The Holy Image of Our Lady of Candelaria.

With the Spanish Conquest and Settlement. By the FRIAR ALONSO DE ESPINOSA, of the Order of Preachers. 1594. Translated and Edited, with Notes and an Introduction, by SIR CLEMENTS MARKHAM, K.C.B., President of the Hakluyt Society. With a Bibliography of the Canary Islands, A.D. 1341-1907, chronologically arranged, with the British Museum press-marks, and an alphabetical list of authors, editors, and titles. 2 Maps, by SIR CLEMENTS MARKHAM, and 4 Illus. Index. pp. xxvi. 221. *Issued for 1907.*

22—History of the Incas.

By PEDRO SARMIENTO DE GAMBOA. 1572. From the MS. sent to King Philip II. of Spain, and now in the Göttingen University Library. And The Execution of the Inca Tupac Amaru. 1571. By Captain BALTASAR DE OCAMPO. 1610. (British Museum Add. MSS. 17, 585.) Translated, and Edited, with Notes and an Introduction, by SIR CLEMENTS MARKHAM, K.C.B. 2 Maps and 10 Illus. Index. pp. xxii. 395.

— Supplement. A Narrative of the Vice-Regal Embassy to Vilcabambal 1571, and of the Execution of the Inca Tupac Amaru, Dec. 1571. By FRIAR GABRIEL DE OVIEDO, of Cuzco, 1573. Translated by SIR CLEMENTS MARKHAM, K.C.B. Index. pp. 397-412. *Issued for 1907.*

23, 24, 25—Conquest of New Spain.

The True History of the Conquest of New Spain. By BERNAL DÍAZ DEL CASTILLO, one of its Conquerors. From the only exact copy made of the Original Manuscript. Edited and published in Mexico, by GENARO GARCÍA, 1904. Translated into English, with Introduction and Notes, by ALFRED MAUDSLAY, M.A., Hon. Professor of Archaeology, National Museum, Mexico. Vols. I-III. (Vol. I) pp. lxxv. 396. 3 Maps. 15 Illus.; (Vol. II) pp. xvi. 343. Map and 13 Panoramas and Illus.; (Vol. III) pp. 38. 8-Maps and Plans in 12 sheets. *Issued for 1908 and 1910.*
(Vol. IV and V = Nos. 30 and 40.)

26, 27.—Storm van's Gravesande.

The Rise of British Guiana, compiled from his despatches, by C. A. HARRIS, C.B., C.M.G., Chief Clerk, Colonial Office, and J. A. J. DE VILLIERS, of the British Museum. 2 vols. 703 pp. 3 Maps. 5 Illus. *Issued for 1911.*

28.—Magellan's Strait.

Early Spanish Voyages, edited, with Notes and Introduction, by Sir CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, K.C.B. pp. viii. 288. 3 Maps. 9 Illus. *Issued for 1911.*

29.—Book of the Knowledge.

Book of the Knowledge of all the Kingdoms, Lands and Lordships that are in the World. . . . Written by a Spanish Franciscan in the Middle of the XIV Century; published for the first time, with Notes, by MARCOS JIMENEZ DE LA ESPADA. Translated and Edited by SIR CLEMENTS MARKHAM, K.C.B. With 20 Coloured Plates. pp. xiii. 85. *Issued for 1912.*

30.—Conquest of New Spain.

The True History of the Conquest of New Spain. By BERNAL DIAZ DEL CASTILLO. . . . Edited by GENARO GARCÍA. Translated, with Notes, by ALFRED P. MAUDSLAY, M.A., Hon. Professor of Archaeology. Vol. IV. pp. xiv. 395. 3 Maps and Plan. 3 Illus. *Issued for 1912.*
(Vols. I-III = Nos. 23-25.)

31.—The War of Quito.

The War of Quito, by CIEZA DE LEON. Translated and Edited by SIR CLEMENTS MARKHAM, K.C.B. pp. xii. 212. *Issued for 1913.*

32.—The Quest and Occupation of Tahiti.

The Quest and Occupation of Tahiti by Emissaries of Spain during the years 1772-1776. Compiled, with Notes and an Introduction, by B. GLANVILLE CORNEY, I.S.O. Vol. I. pp. lxxxviii. 363. 3 Charts, 8 Plans and Illus. *Issued for 1913.*
(Vol. II = No. 36.)

33.—Cathay and the Way Thither.

Cathay and the Way Thither. Being a Collection of Mediaeval Notices of China. Translated and Edited by Colonel SIR HENRY YULE, K.C.S.I., R.E., C.B. New Edition, revised throughout by Professor HENRI CORDIER, de l'Institut de France. Vol. II. pp. xii. 367. Map & 6 Illus. *Issued for 1913.*
(Vols. I, III-IV = Nos. 38, 37 and 41.)

34.—New Light on Drake.

New Light on Drake. Spanish and Portuguese Documents relating to the Circumnavigation Voyage. Discovered, translated, and annotated by Mrs. ZELIA NUTTALL. pp. lvi. 443. 3 Maps and 14 Illus. *Issued for 1914.*

35.—The Travels of Peter Mundy.

The Travels of Peter Mundy in Europe and Asia, 1608-1667. Edited by SIR RICHARD CARNAC TEMPLE, Bart., C.I.E. Vol. II. pp. lxxix. 437. 2 Maps and 29 Illus. *Issued for 1914.*
(Vol. I = No. 17.)

36.—The Quest and Occupation of Tahiti.

The Quest and Occupation of Tahiti. Edited by B. GLANVILLE CORNEY, I.S.O. Vol. II. pp. xlvii. 521. 8 Plans and Illus. *Issued for 1915.*
(Vol. I = No. 32.)

37.—Cathay and the Way Thither.

Cathay and the Way Thither. Being a Collection of Mediaeval Notices of China previous to the XVth century. Translated and edited by COLONEL SIR HENRY YULE, K.C.S.I., R.E., C.B. A new edition by PROFESSOR HENRI CORDIER, de l'Institut de France. Vol. III. pp. xv. 270. Map and Portrait. *Issued for 1914.*
(Vols. I, II and IV = Nos. 38, 33 and 41.)

38.—Cathay and the Way Thither.

Cathay and the Way Thither. Being a collection of mediaeval notices of China previous to the XVth century. Translated and edited by COLONEL SIR HENRY YULE, K.C.S.I., R.E., C.B. A new edition by PROFESSOR HENRI CORDIER, de l'Institut de France. Vol. I. pp. xxiii. 318. Map and Portrait. *Issued for 1915.*
(Vols. II, III and IV = Nos. 33, 37 and 41.)

39.—A New Account of East India and Persia.

A New Account of East India and Persia. In eight Letters, being Nine Years' Travels, begun 1672, and finished 1681. By JOHN FRYER, M.D. Edited, with Notes and an Introduction, by WILLIAM CROOKE, B.A., Bengal Civil Service (retired). Vol. III and last. pp. viii. 271. *Issued for 1915.*
(Vols. I-II = Nos. 19, 20.)

EXTRA SERIES.

1-12—The Principal Navigations, Voyages, Traffiques, & Discoveries of the English Nation,

Made by Sea or Over-land to the remote and farthest distant quarters of the earth at any time within the compass of these 1600 yeeres. By RICHARD HAKLUYT, Preacher, and sometime Student of Christ Church in Oxford. With an Essay on the English Voyages of the Sixteenth Century, by WALTER RALEIGH, Professor of the English Language in the University of Oxford. Index by Madame MARIE MICHON and Miss ELIZABETH CARMONT. 12 vols. James MacLehose & Sons: Glasgow, 1903-5. (*Out of print.*)

13—The Texts & Versions of John de Plano Carpini and William de Rubruquis.

As printed for the first time by HAKLUYT in 1598, together with some shorter pieces. Edited by CHARLES RAYMOND BEAZLEY, M.A., F.R.G.S. pp. xx. 345. Index. University Press: Cambridge, 1903. (*Out of print.*)

14-33—Hakluytus Posthumus or Purchas His Pilgrimes.

Contayning a History of the World in Sea Voyages and Lande Travells by Englishmen and others. By SAMUEL PURCHAS, B.D. 20 vols. Maps & Illus. With an Index by Madame MARIE MICHON. James MacLehose and Sons: Glasgow, 1905-7.

THE ISSUES FOR 1916 WILL BE:

SERIES II.

Vol. 40.—The True History of the Conquest of New Spain. By BERNAL DIAZ DEL CASTILLO. Translated, with Notes, by A. P. MAUDSLAY. Vol. V and last.

Vol. 41.—Cathay and the Way Thither. New edition. Vol. IV and last.

OTHER VOLUMES IN ACTIVE PREPARATION ARE:

Ia Guerra de Chupas. By CIEZA DE LEON. Translated and edited by SIR CLEMENTS MARKHAM. [*In Press.*]

William Lockerby's Journal in Fiji, 1808. Edited by SIR EVERARD F. IM THURN, K.C.M.G., C.B., and L. C. WHARTON, B.A.

Jons Olafssonar Indiafara. An English Translation by MISS BERTHA PHILLIPPS. Edited by SIR R. C. TEMPLE, Bart., C.I.E. Two Vols.

A Description of the Coasts of East Africa and Malabar in the beginning of the Sixteenth Century, by DUARTE BARBOSA, a Portuguese. A new translation by MR. LONGWORTH DAMES.

The Travels of Peter Mundy in Europe and Asia, 1608-1667. Edited by SIR RICHARD CARNAC TEMPLE, Bart., C.I.E. Vol. III and last.

The Annals of Peru, 1498-1642. By FERNANDO MONTESINOS. Translated and edited by PHILIP AINSWORTH MEANS. Two Vols.

INDEX

TO THE FIRST AND SECOND SERIES OF THE SOCIETY'S
PUBLICATIONS, 1847-1916.

- Abd-er-Razzak, i. 22
 Abyssinia, i. 32, 64 ; ii. 10
 Acosta, Joseph de, i. 60, 61
 Acuña, Cristoval de, i. 24 ; ii. 22
 Adams, Will., i. 8, 66, 67 ; ii. 5
 Africa, i. 21, 58, 82, 83, 92-94, 95, 100
 Africa, East, i. 32, 35, 64 ; ii. 10
 Africa, West, ii. 6
 Aguirre, Lope de, i. 28, 47
 Alaminos Auton de, ii. 23
 Albuquerque, Afonso de, i. 53, 55, 62, 69
 Alcock, Thomas, i. 72, 73
 Alessandri, Vincentio d', i. 49
 Al Hassan Ibn Muhammad. *See* Hasan
 Alvarado, Pedro de, ii. 23
 Alvarez, Francisco, i. 64
 Alvo, Francisco, i. 52
 Amapaia, i. 3
 Amat y Junient, Manuel de, Viceroy of Peru, ii. 13
 Amazon, i. 24
 America, Central, i. 40
 America, North, i. 2, 4, 6, 7, 9, 11, 18, 21, 23, 43, 50, 65, 96, 97
 America, South, i. 3, 21, 24, 28, 33, 34, 41, 43, 45, 47, 51, 60, 61, 68, 76, 77, 80, 81, 91 ; ii. 3, 13, 14, 15, 22
 Amherst of Hackney, Lord, ii. 7, 8
 Andagoya, Pascual de, i. 34 ; ii. 22
 Andrew, Bishop of Zayton, i. 36 ; ii. 37
 Angiolello, Giovanni Maria, i. 49
 Angola, ii. 6
 Aquines, Juan. *See* Hawkins, Sir John.
 Arabia, i. 32 ; ii. 16
 Arctic Regions, i. 13, 54, 88, 89, 96, 97
 Arias, Dr. Juan Luis, i. 25 ; ii. 14, 15
 Arias d'Avila, Pedro, i. 21, 34, 47 ; ii. 22, 23
 Arringa y Rivera, Julian de, ii. 13
 Arromaia, i. 3
 Asher, George Michael, i. 27
 Asia, i. 5, 8, 13-15, 17, 19, 22, 26, 35-39, 42, 44, 49, 53-55, 58, 62, 66, 67, 69-78, 80, 82, 83, 87 ; ii. 1, 2, 4, 5, 12, 16, 17, 35
 Astete, Miguel de, i. 47 ; ii. 22, 35
 Atahualpa, i. 47, 68 ; ii. 22
 Australasia, i. 25 ; ii. 7, 8, 14, 15, 18
 Avila, Francisco de, i. 48 ; ii. 22
 Avila, Pedro Arias d'. *See* Arias d'Avila.
 Azov, i. 49
 Azurara, Gomes Eannes de. *See* Eannes.
 Badger, George Percy, i. 32, 44
 Baffin, William, i. 5, 63, 88, 89
 Balak, John, i. 13, 54
 Bantam, i. 19
 Barbaro, Giosafat, i. 49
 Barbosa, Duarte, i. 35, 52
 Barcelona MSS., i. 35
 Bardsen, Ivar, i. 50
 Barentsz., William, i. 13, 27, 54
 Barker, Edmund, i. 56
 Barlow, R., i. 74, 75, 78
 Barrow, John, F.R.S., i. 11
 Battell, Andrew, ii. 6
 Beazley, Charles Raymond, i. 95, 100 ; Extra Ser. 13
 Behrens, Carl Friedrich, ii. 13
 Beke, Charles Tiltstone, i. 13, 54
 Bell, Harry Charles Purvis, i. 76, 77, 80
 Belmonte y Bermudez, Luis de ii. 14, 15
 Bengal, i. 37, 74, 75, 78 ; ii. 12
 Bent, James Theodore, i. 87
 Benzoni, Girolamo, i. 21
 Bermudas, i. 65, 86
 Bermudez, João, ii. 10
 Beste, George, i. 38
 Béthencourt, Jean de, i. 46 ; ii. 21
 Bethune, Charles Ramsay Drinkwater, i. 1, 30
 Beynen, Koolenans, i. 54
 Biedma, Luis Hernandez de, i. 9
 Bilot, Robert, i. 88, 89
 Birch, Walter de Gray, i. 53, 55, 62, 69
 Bollaert, William, i. 28
 Bond, Sir Edward Augustus, K.C.B., i. 20
 Bontier, Pierre, i. 46 ; ii. 21
 Boty, Iver, i. 13
 Bowrey, Thomas, ii. 12

- Bracciolini, Poggio, i. 22
 Brazil, i. 51, 76, 77, 80
 Bridge, Admiral Sir Cyprian Arthur George, G.C.B., ii. 13
 British Guiana, ii. 26, 27
 British Museum MSS., i. 2, 4, 5, 6, 8, 16, 20, 25, 38, 52, 53, 55, 62, 65-67, 69; ii. 13, 16, 22
 Brown, Dr. Robert, i. 92-94
 Brugge, Jacob Segersz. van der. *See* Segersz., Jacob
 Bruun, Philip, i. 58
 Burrell, Arthur Coke, C.I.E., i. 70, 71
 Barre, Walter, i. 19
 Burrough, Christopher, i. 72, 73
 Burrough, William, i. 72, 73
 Burton, Sir Richard Francis, K.C.M.G., i. 51
 Butler, Nathaniel, i. 65, 86
 Button, Sir Thomas, i. 5, 88, 89
 Bylot, Robert, i. 5, 63, 88, 89

 Cabeça de Vaca, Alvar Nuñez. *See* Nuñez Cabeça de Vaca.
 Cabot, John, i. 86
 Cabot, Sebastian, i. 5, 12
 Cambodia, i. 39
Canarian, The, i. 46; ii. 21
 Canary Islands, i. 21, 46; ii. 21
 Candelaria, Our Lady of, ii. 21
 Cape of Good Hope, i. 22, 36, 37, 82, 83
 Carmonat, Elizabeth, Extra Ser. 12
 Carpino Joannes, de Plano. *See* Joannes.
 Caspian Sea, i. 72, 73
 Cassano, Ussan, i. 49
 Castanhoso, Miguel de, ii. 10
 Castilla del Oro, i. 34, 47
 Cathay, i. 5, 13, 36-38, 54; ii. 19, 20, 33, 37, 38, 41
 Champlain, Samuel, i. 23
 Chanca, Dr., i. 2, 43
 Charles V., Emperor, i. 40, 47; ii. 22, 23, 24
 Charnock, Job, i. 74, 75, 78
 Cheinic, Richard, i. 72, 73
 China, i. 5, 13-15, 17, 36, 37, 39, 54; ii. 19, 20; ii. 33, 37
 Christy, Robert Miller, i. 88, 89
 Cieza de Leon, Pedro de, i. 33, 68; ii. 22, 31
 Cinnamon, Land of, i. 24
 Clavigo, Ruy Gonzalez de. *See* Gonzalez de Clavigo.
 Cliffe, Edward, i. 16
 Clifford, George, i. 59
 Coats, William, i. 11
 Cocks, Richard, i. 8, 66, 67
 Cogswell, Joseph G., i. 27
 Collinson, Sir Richard, K.C.B., i. 38

 Columbus, Christopher :
 Journal, i. 86
 Letters, i. 2, 43
 Congo, ii. 6
 Contarini, Ambrogio, i. 49
 Conti, Nicolò, i. 22
 Conway, Sir William Martin, ii. 11
 Cooley, William Desborough, i. 4
 Cook, Captain James, i. 25
 Coote, Charles Henry, i. 72, 73
 Cordier, Henri, ii. 33, 37, 38, 41
 Corney, Bolton, i. 19
 Corney, Bolton Glanvill, I.S.O., ii. 13, 32, 36
 Correa, Gaspar, i. 42
 Corte Real, Gaspar, i. 86
 Cortés, Hernando, i., 21, 40; ii. 23, 24, 25
 Cosmas Indicopleustes, i. 98
 Covell, John, i. 87
 Crosse, Ralph, i. 56
 Crooke, William, ii. 19, 20
 Cumberland, Earl of, i. 59
 Cuzco, i. 47; ii. 22

 Dalboquerque, Afonso. *See* Albuquerque.
 Dallan, Thomas, i. 87
 Dalrymple, Alexander, i. 25; ii. 14, 15
 Dampier, William, i. 25
 Danish Arctic Expeditions, i. 96, 97
 Darien, Gulf of, i. 33
 Dati, Giuliano, i. 2, 43
 Davila, Pedrarias. *See* Arias d'Avila.
 Davis, Edward, ii. 13
 Davis, John, i. 5, 59, 88, 89
 De Villiers, John Abraham Jacob, ii. 11, 18, 26, 27
 Diaz, Juan, *Clerigo*, ii. 23
 Diaz del Castillo, Bernal, ii. 23, 24, 25, 30, 40
 Digges, Sir Dudley, i. 63
 Dominguez, Don Luis L., i. 81
 Douck, Adrian van der, i. 27
 Dorado, El, i. 3, 28; ii. 26, 27
 Doughty, Thomas, i. 16
 Downton, Nicholas, i. 56
 Drake, Sir Francis, i. 4, 16; ii. 34
 Drake, Sir Francis, the Younger, i. 16
 Drake, John, ii. 34
 Dryandri, Joh., i. 51
 Duckett, Jeffrey, i. 72, 73
 Dudley, Sir Robert, ii. 3
 Dutch Voyages, i. 13; ii. 11, 13, 18

 East India, ii. 19, 20, 39
 East India Company, i. 5, 19
 East Indies. *See* India.
 Easter Island, ii. 13
 Eannes, Gomes, de Zurara, i. 95, 100

- Egerton MSS., ii. 13
 Eden, Richard, i. 12
 Edwards, Arthur, i. 72, 73
 Egypt, i. 32
 El Dorado, i. 3, 28 ; ii. 26, 27
 Ellesmere, Earl of, i. 17
 Elvas, Gentleman of, i. 9
 Emerica, i. 3
 England, Circumnavigation of, i. 79
 Engronelandia, i. 50
 Enriquez de Guzman, Alonzo, i. 29
 Eslanda, i. 50
 Espinosa, Alonso de, ii. 21
 Estotilandia, i. 50
 Ethiopia. *See* Abyssinia.
 Europe, i. 10, 12, 13, 18, 20, 49, 54, 58, 64, 72, 73, 79 ; ii. 9, 11, 17
 Ferguson, Donald William, ii. 9
 Fernandez de Quiros, Pedro de. *See* Quiros
 Figueroa, Christoval Suarez de. *See* Suarez de Figueroa.
 Fletcher, Francis, i. 16
 Fletcher, Giles, i. 20
 Florida, i. 7, 9
 Fort St. George, i. 74, 75, 78
 Foster, William, B.A., ii. 1, 2, 16
 Fotherby, Robert, i. 63
 Fox, Luke, i. 5, 88, 89
 Foxe, Luke. *See* Fox.
 Frislanda, i. 50
 Frobisher, Sir Martin, i. 5, 38, 88, 89
 Fryer, John, ii. 19, 20, 39
 Furnace, H.M.S., i. 11
 Gairdner, James, i. 79
 Galvão, Antonio, i. 30
 Gama, Christovão da, ii. 10
 Gama, Vasco da, i. 42, 99
 Gamboa, Pedro Sarmiento de. *See* Sarmiento de Gamboa.
 Garcia, Genaro, ii. 23, 24, 25, 30
 Garcilasso de la Vega, *el Inca*, i. 24, 41, 45 ; ii. 22
 Gastaldi, Jacopo, i. 12
 Gatonbe, John, i. 63
 Gayangos, Pascual de, i. 40 ; ii. 22
 Gerritsz., Hessel, i. 27, 54 ; ii. 11
 Gibbons, William, i. 5, 88, 89
 Gibraltar, Straits of, i. 79
 Globes, i. 79
God's Power & Providence, i. 18
 Goes, Benedict, i. 36, 37
 Gonzalez de Clavijo, Ruy, i. 26 ; ii. 21
 González y Haedo, Felipe, ii. 13
 Gosch, Christian Carl August, i. 96, 97
 Gray, Albert, K.C., i. 76, 77, 80
 Great Mogul, ii. 1, 2
 Greenland, i. 18, 50, 96, 97
 Grey, Charles, i. 49
 Grey, Edward, i. 84, 85
 Grijalva, Juan de, ii. 23
 Grimston, Edward. *See* Grimstone.
 Grimstone, Edward, i. 60, 61
 Guanches, ii. 21
 Guiana, i. 3 ; ii. 3
 Guinea, i. 95, 100 ; ii. 6
 Hackitt, Thomas, i. 7
 Hakluyt, Richard :
 Divers Voyages, i. 7
 Galvano, i. 30
 Principall Navigations, i. 16, 20, 38, 59 ; *Extra Ser.* 1-12
 Terra Florida, i. 9
 Will of, i. 7
 Hall, James, i. 5, 88, 89, 96, 97
 Harleian MSS., i. 8
 Harris, C. A., ii. 26, 27
 Hasan Ibn Muhammad, al Wazzân, al Fâsi, i. 92-94
 Havers, George, i. 84, 85
 Hawkins, Sir John, i. 1, 57
 Hawkins, Sir Richard, i. 1, 57
 Hawkins, William, i. 57
 Hawkridge, William, i. 88, 89
 Hedges, Sir William, i. 74, 75, 78
 Heidelberg MS., i. 58
 Herberstein, Sigismund von, i. 10, 12
 Hernandez de Biedma, Luis, i. 9
 Herrera, Antonio de, i. 24 ; ii. 22, 23
 Hervé, Juan, ii. 13
 Honduras, i. 40
 Horsey, Sir Jerome, i. 20
 Houtman's Abrolhos, i. 25
 Howard, Eliot, ii. 12
 Hudson, Henry, i. 13, 27, 88, 89
 Hudson's Bay, i. 11, 96, 97
 Hues, Robert, i. 79
 Hugli River, i. 78 ; ii. 12
 Ibn Batuta, i. 36, 37
 Icaria, i. 50
 Imâms and Seyyids of 'Omân, i. 44
 Incas, i. 41, 45, 47, 48 ; ii. 22
 Incas, Rites and Laws, i. 48 ; ii. 22
 Incas, Royal Commentaries, i. 41, 45 ; ii. 22
 India, i. 5, 22, 32, 38, 42, 53, 55, 56, 69, 62, 70, 71, 74-78, 80, 84, 85 ; ii. 1, 2, 9, 12, 16, 17
 India Office MSS., i. 5, 56, 66, 67
 Indian Language, *Dictionary of the*, i. 6
 Italy, ii. 9
 James I., i. 19
 James, Thomas, i. 5, 88, 89
 Janes, John, i. 59
 Japan, i. 8, 38, 66, 67 ; ii. 5

- Java, i. 82, 83
 Jeannin, P., i. 27
 Jenkinson, Anthony, i. 72, 73
 Joannes, de Plano Carpino, ii. 4 ;
 Extra Ser. 13
 Jones, John Winter, i. 7, 22, 32
 Jordanus [Catalani], i. 31, 36 ; ii. 37
 Jourdain, John, ii. 16
 Jovius, Paulus, i. 12
 Juet, Robert, i. 27

 Keeling, William, i. 56
 Knight, John, i. 5, 56, 88, 89

 Lambrechtsen, i. 27
 Lancaster, Sir James, i. 56
 La Peyrère, Isaac de, i. 18
 La Plata, City, i. 33
 La Plata, River, i. 81
 Lefroy, Sir John Henry, K.C.M.G.,
 i. 65, 86
 Leguat, François, i. 82, 83
 Le Maire, Jacob, ii. 18
Lendas da India, i. 42
 Leo Africanus, i. 92-94
 Leone, Giovanni, i. 92-94
 Leupe, P. A., i. 25
 Levant, i. 87
 Le Verrier, Jean, i. 46 ; ii. 21
 Lezu, Gaspar Gonzalez de, i. 39 ; ii.
 14, 15
 Linschoten, Jan Huyghen van, i. 70, 71

 McCrindle, John Watson, i. 89
 Madras, i. 74, 75, 78
 Madrid MSS., i. 29
 Magellan, Ferdinand, i. 52
 Magellan, Straits of, i. 91 ; ii. 18
 Major, Richard Henry, i. 2, 6, 10, 12,
 14, 15, 17, 22, 25, 43, 46, 50
 Malay Archipelago, ii. 16, 18
 Malabar, i. 35
 Maldive Islands, i. 76, 77, 80
 Maluco Islands. *See* Molucca Islands.
 Manoa, i. 3
 Marignolli, John de', i. 37 ; ii. 37
 Markham, Sir Albert Hastings, K.C.B.,
 i. 59
 Markham, Sir Clements Robert, K.C.B.,
 i. 24, 26, 28, 29, 33, 34, 41, 56, 57,
 60, 61, 63, 68, 79, 86, 90, 91 ; ii. 14,
 15, 21, 22, 28, 29, 31
 Martens, Friedrich, i. 18
 Maudslay, Alfred Percival, ii. 23, 24,
 25, 30, 40
 Mauritius, i. 82, 83
 Maynarde, Thomas, i. 4
 Mendaña de Neyra, Alvaro, i. 25, 39 ;
 ii. 7, 8, 14, 15
 Mendoza, Juan González de, i. 14, 15

 Mexico, i. 23 ; ii. 23, 24, 25, 30, 40
 Michon, Marie, *Extra Ser.*, 12, 33
 Middleton, Christopher, i. 11
 Middleton, Sir Henry, i. 19, 56
Mirabilia Descripta, i. 31
 Mogul, The Great, ii. 1, 2
 Molucca Islands, i. 19, 39, 52, 76, 77,
 80
 Molyneux, Emery, i. 79
 Montecorvino, John of, i. 36 ; ii. 37
 Montezuma, i. 61 ; ii. 23, 24
 Morga, Antonio de, i. 39 ; ii. 14, 15
 Morgan, Henry, i. 59
 Morgan, Edward Delmar, i. 72, 73,
 79, 83, 86
 Mundy, Peter, ii. 17, 35
 Munk, Jens, i. 96, 97
 Münster, Sebastian, i. 12
 Muscovy Company, i. 7, 63 ; ii. 11

 Neumann, Karl Friedrich, i. 58
 New Hebrides, ii. 14, 15
 New Spain, ii. 23, 24, 25, 30, 40
 New World, i. 2, 43
 Nicaragua, i. 34
 Nicopolis, i. 58
 Nikitin, Athanasius, i. 22
 Nombre de Dios, i. 16
 Norsemen in America, i. 2, 50
 North-East Voyages, i. 13
 North-West Passage, i. 5, 11, 38, 56,
 88, 89, 96, 97
 Northern Seas, i. 50
 Nova Zembla, i. 13, 54
 Nuñez Cabeça de Vaca, Alvar, i. 81
 Nuttall, Mrs. Zelia, ii. 31

 Ocampo, Baltasar de, ii. 22
 Odoric, Friar, i. 36 ; ii. 33
 Olaondo, Alberto, ii. 13
 Olid, Cristóval de, ii. 23
 Oliver, Samuel Pastfield, i. 82, 83
 Omagua, i. 28
 'Omân, i. 14
 Ondegardo, Polo de, i. 48 ; ii. 22
 Orellana, Francisco de, i. 24
 Orléans, Pierre Joseph d', i. 17
 Ormuz, Kings of, ii. 9
 Oviedo, Gabriel de, ii. 22

 Pachacamac, i. 47 ; ii. 22
 Pacific Ocean, i. 1, 34, 57 ; ii. 13, 18
 Paraguay, River, i. 81
 Parke, Robert, i. 14, 15
 Pascal of Vittoria, i. 36 ; ii. 37
 Pegolotti, i. 37 ; ii. 37
 Pellham, Edward, i. 18
 Pelsart, Francis, i. 25
 Pereira, Thomas, i. 17
 Persia, i. 32, 49, 72, 73 ; ii. 19, 20, 39

- Peru, i. 33, 34, 41, 45, 47, 60, 61 68 ;
ii. 22
Peru, Chronicle of, i. 33, 68
Philip, William, i. 13, 54
Philippine Islands, i. 39
Pigafetta, Antonio, i. 52
Pitt Diamond, i. 78
Pitt, Thomas, i. 74, 75, 78
Pizarro, Francisco, i. 21, 47 ; ii. 22
Pizarro, Gonzalo, i. 21, 24, 47 ; ii. 22
Pizarro, Hernando, i. 47 ; ii. 22
Pochahontas, i. 6
Pool, Gerrit Thomasz., i. 25
Portugal, i. 64 ; ii. 10
Pory, John, i. 92-94
Powhatan, i. 6
Prado y Tovar, Don Diego de,
ii. 14, 15
Prestage, Edgar, i. 95, 100
Prester John, i. 64 ; ii. 10
Pricket Abacuk, i. 27
Public Record Office MSS., i. 38
Puerto Rico, i. 4
Purchas, Samuel, i. 13, 56, 63 ; Extra
Ser. 14-33
Pyrard, François, i. 76, 77, 80
- Quatreinère, i. 22
Quiros, Pedro Fernandez de, i. 25,
39 ; ii. 14, 15
Quito, The War of, ii. 31
- Raleigh, Sir Walter, i. 3
Raleigh, Walter, *Professor*, Extra
Ser. 12
Ramusio, Giovanni Battista, i. 49, 52
Rashiduddin, i. 37 ; ii. 37
Ravenstein, Ernest George, i. 99 ;
ii. 6
Rawlinson MSS., ii. 17
Recueil de Voyages, i. 31
Remón, Alonzo, ii. 23
Ribault, John, i. 7
Rockhill, William Woodville, ii. 4
Rodriguez, Island, i. 82, 83
Roe, Sir Thomas, ii. 1, 2
Roggeveen, Jacob, ii. 13
Roy, Eugene Armand, i. 49
Rubruquis, Gullielmus de, ii. 4 ; Ex-
tra Ser. 13
Rundall, Thomas, i. 5, 8
Russe Commonwealth, i. 20
Russia, i. 10, 12, 20, 72, 73
Rye, William Brenchley, i. 9
- Salil-Ibn-Ruzaik, i. 44
Samarcand, i. 26
Sancho, Pedro, i. 47 ; ii. 22
Santo-Stefano, Hieronimo di, i. 22
Saris, John, i. 8 ; ii. 5
- Sarmiento de Gamboa, Pedro, i. 91 ;
ii. 22, 34
Satow, Sir Ernest Mason, G.C.M.G.,
ii. 5
Schiltberger, Johann, i. 58
Schmidel, Ulrich, i. 81
Schmidt, Ulrich. *See* Schmidel.
Schomburgk, Sir Robert Hermann
i. 3
Schouten, Willem Cornelisz., ii. 18
Seory, Sir Edmund, ii. 21
Seaman's Secrets, i. 59
Segersz., Jacob, ii. 11
Sellman, Edward, i. 38
Shakspere's "New Map," i. 59
Sharpeigh, Alexander, i. 56
Shaw, Norton, i. 23
Siam, i. 39
Silva, Nuno da, ii. 34
Simon, Pedro, i. 28
Sinclair, William Frederic, ii. 9
Sloane MSS., i. 25, 65 ; ii. 16
Smith, Capt. John, i. 65, 86
Smith, Sir Thomas, i. 19, 63, 65
Smyth, William Henry, i. 21
Solomon Islands, ii. 7, 8, 14, 15
Soltania, Archbishop of, i. 36 ; ii. 37
Somers, Sir George, i. 65
Soto, Ferdinando de, i. 9, 47
Soulsby, Basil Harrington, ii. 10, 11,
14, 15, 16, 18
Sousa Tavares, Francisco de, i. 30
South Sea. *See* Pacific Ocean.
Spanish MSS., i. 29, 48
Spanish Voyages, i. 25, 39 ; ii. 7, 8,
13, 14, 15
Speilbergen, Joris van, ii. 18
Spitsbergen, i. 13, 18, 54 ; ii. 11.
Staden, Johann von, i. 51
Stanley of Alderley, Lord, i. 35, 39,
42, 52, 64
Staunton, Sir George Thomas, Bart.,
i. 14, 15
Stere, William, i. 13
Storm van 's Gravesande, ii. 26, 27
Strachey, William, i. 6
Suarez de Figueroa, Christoval, i. 57 ;
ii. 14, 15
Summer Islands, i. 65, 86
Syria, i. 32
- Tabasco, ii. 23
Tahiti, ii. 13, 32, 36
Tamerlane, The Great, i. 26
Tana (Azov), i. 49
Tapia, Andrés de, ii. 23
Tartary, i. 17 ; ii. 1, 2, 4
Tavares, Francisco de Sousa. *See*
Sousa Tavares, F. de.
Teixeira, Pedro, ii. 9

- Telfer, John Buchan, i. 58
 Temple, Sir Richard Carnac, Bart.,
 ii. 12, 17, 35
 Tenerife, ii. 21
 Terra Australis, i. 25
 Terra Florida, i. 9
 Thomas, William, i. 49
 Thompson, Sir Edward Maunde,
 K.C.B., i. 66, 67
 Thomson, Basil Home, ii. 7, 8
 Thorne, Robert, i. 7
 Tibet, i. 36, 37 ; ii. 33
 Tiele, Pieter Anton, i. 70, 71
 Tierra Firme, i. 28, 34, 47
 Timour, Great Khan, i. 26
 Toledo, Francisco de, Viceroy of Peru,
 ii. 22
 Tootal, Albert, i. 51
Topographia Christiana, i. 98
 Torquemada, Fray Juan de, ii. 14, 15
 Torres, Luis Vaez de, i. 25, 39 ; ii. 14,
 15
 Toscanelli, Paolo, i. 86
 Towers, Gabriel, i. 19
Tractatus de Globis, i. 79
 Transylvanus, Maximilianus, i. 52
 Tupac Amaru, *Inca*, ii. 22
 Turberville, George, i. 10
 Turkey Merchants, i. 87

 Ursua, Pedro de, i. 28, 47

 Valle, Pietro della, i. 84, 85
 Varthema, Ludovico di, i. 19, 32
 Vaux, William Sandys Wright, i. 16
 Vaz, Lopez, i. 16
 Veer, Gerrit de, i. 13, 54
 Velasco, Don Luis de, ii. 34
 Velásquez, Diego, ii. 23

 Vera Cruz, ii. 23
 Verarzanus, John, i. 7, 27
 Verbiest, Ferdinand, i. 17
 Vespucci, Amerigo, i. 90
 Vilcapampa, ii. 22
 Virginia Britannia, i. 6
 Vivero y Velasco, Rodrigo de, i. 8
 Vlamingh, Willem de, i. 25
 Volkersen, Samuel, i. 25

 Warner, George Frederic, Litt.D., ii. 3
 Weigates, Straits of, i. 13, 54
 West Indies, i. 4, 23 ; ii. 3, 23
 Weymouth, George, i. 5, 88, 89
 White, Adam, i. 18
 Whiteway, Richard Stephen, ii. 10
 Wichhorský, i. 22
 William of Rubruck. *See* Rubruquis,
 Guilielmus de
 Wilmore, Alice, i. 23
 Winter, John, i. 16
 Witsen, Nicolaas, i. 17, 25
 Wolstenholme, Sir John, i. 63, 88, 89
World's Hydrographical Description,
 i. 59
 Wright, Edward, i. 59

 Xeres, Francisco de, i. 47 ; ii. 22

 Yncas. *See* Incas.
 Yucatan, ii. 23
 Yule, Sir Henry, K.C.S.I., i. 31, 36,
 37, 74, 75, 78 ; ii. 19, 20, 33, 37,
 38, 41

 Zurate, Don Francisco de, ii. 34
 Zeno, Antonio, i. 50
 Zeno, Caterino, i. 49
 Zeno, Nicolo, i. 50
 Zychman, i. 51

LAWS OF THE HAKLUYT SOCIETY.

I. The object of this Society shall be to print, for distribution among the members, rare and valuable Voyages, Travels, Naval Expeditions, and other geographical records.

II. The Annual Subscription shall be One Guinea (for America, five dollars, U.S. currency), payable in advance on the 1st January.

III. Each member of the Society, having paid his Subscription, shall be entitled to a copy of every work produced by the Society, and to vote at the general meetings within the period subscribed for; and if he do not signify, before the close of the year, his wish to resign, he shall be considered as a member for the succeeding year.

IV. The management of the Society's affairs shall be vested in a Council consisting of twenty-two members, viz., a President, three Vice-Presidents, a Treasurer, a Secretary, and sixteen ordinary members, to be elected annually; but vacancies occurring between the general meetings shall be filled up by the Council.

V. A General Meeting of the Subscribers shall be held annually. The Secretary's Report on the condition and proceedings of the Society shall be then read, and the meeting shall proceed to elect the Council for the ensuing year.

VI. At each Annual Election, three of the old Council shall retire.

VII. The Council shall meet when necessary for the dispatch of business, three forming a quorum, including the Secretary; the Chairman having a casting vote.

VIII. Gentlemen preparing and editing works for the Society shall receive twenty-five copies of such works respectively.

LIST OF MEMBERS.—1916.*

Members are requested to inform the Hon. Secretary of any errors or alterations in this List.

- 1899 Aberdare, The Right Hon. Lord, 83, Eaton Square, S.W.
 1847 Aberdeen University Library, Aberdeen.
 1913 Abraham, 2nd Lieut. H. C., c/o Messrs. Cox & Co., 16, Charing Cross, W.
 1895 Adelaide Public Library, North Terrace, Adelaide, South Australia.
 1847 Admiralty, The, Whitehall, S.W. [2 COPIES.]
 1847 Advocates' Library, 11, Parliament Square, Edinburgh.
 1847 All Souls College, Oxford.
 1847 American Geographical Society, 11, West 81st Street, New York City, U.S.A.
 1901 Andrews, Capt. F., R.N., H.M. Dockyard, Malta.
 1906 Andrews, Michael C., Esq., 17, University Square, Belfast.
 1847 Antiquaries, The Society of, Burlington House, Piccadilly, W.
 1909 Armstrong, Capt. B. H. O., R.E.
 1847 Army and Navy Club, 36, Pall Mall, S.W.
 1847 Athenæum Club, Pall Mall, S.W.
 1912 Aylward, R. M., Esq., 7^a Avenida Sur, No. 87, Guatemala.
- 1899 Baer, Joseph & Co., Messrs., Hochstrasse 6, Frankfort-on-Main, Germany.
 1847 Bagram, John Ernest, Esq., 10, Old Post Office Street, Calcutta.
 1909 Baldwin, Stanley, Esq., M.P., Astley Hall, nr. Stourport.
 1899 Ball, John B., Esq., Ashburton Cottage, Putney Heath, S.W.
 1893 Barclay, Hugh Gurney, Esq., Colney Hall, Norwich.
 1911 Barwick, G. F., Esq., British Museum.
 1899 Basset, M. René, Directeur de l'Ecole Supérieure des Lettres d'Alger, Villa Louise, rue Denfert Rochereau, Algiers.
 1894 Baxter, Hon. James Phinney, Esq., 61, Deering Street, Portland, Maine, U.S.A.
 1913 Beaumont, Lieut. H., Rhoscolyn, Holyhead, N. Wales.
 1904 Beeten, Charles Gilbert, Esq., 110, South Hanover Street, Carlisle, Pa., U.S.A.
 1899 Belfast Library and Society for Promoting Knowledge, Donegall Square North, Belfast.
 1913 Belfield, T. Broom, Esq., 1905, Spring Garden Street, Philadelphia, Pa., U.S.A.
 1896 Belhaven and Stenton, Col. The Right Hon. the Lord, R.E., 41, Lennox Gardens, S.W. (*Vice-President*).
 1913 Bennett, Ira A. Esq., Editor *Washington Post*, Washington, D.C., U.S.A.
 1847 Berlin Geographical Society (Gesellschaft für Erdkunde), Wilhelmstrasse 23, Berlin, S.W., 48.
 1847 Berlin, the Royal Library of, Opernplatz, Berlin, W.
 1847 Berlin University, Geographical Institute of, Georgenstrasse 34-36 Berlin, N.W. 7.
 1914 Bernice Pauahi Bishop Museum, Honolulu, Hawaii Island.
 1913 Beuf, L., 6, Via Caroli, Genoa.
 1913 Bewsher, F. W., Esq.
 1911 Bingham, Professor Hiram, Yale University, New Haven, Connecticut.
 1899 Birmingham Central Free Library, Ratcliff Place, Birmingham.
 1847 Birmingham Old Library, The, Margaret Street, Birmingham.

- 1910 Birmingham University Library.
 1899 Board of Education, The Keeper, Science Library, Science Museum, South Kensington, S.W.
 1847 Bodleian Library, Oxford.
 1894 Bonaparte, H. H. Prince Roland Napoléon, Avenue d'Jéna 10, Paris.
 1847 Boston Atheneum Library, 10½, Beacon Street, Boston, Mass., U.S.A.
 1847 Boston Public Library, Copley Square, Boston, Mass., U.S.A.
 1912 Bourke, Hubert, Esq., Feltham, Harlow, Essex.
 1899 Bowdoin College, Brunswick, Maine, U.S.A.
 1894 Bower, Major-General Hamilton, c/o Messrs. Cox and Co., 16, Charing Cross.
 1912 Boyd-Richardson, Lieutenant S. B., R.N., Wade Court, Havant, Hants.
 1914 Braislin, Dr. William C., 556, Washington Avenue, Brooklyn, U.S.A.
 1906 Brereton, The Rev. William, The Rectory, Steeple Gidding, Peterboro'.
 1893 Brighton Public Library, Royal Pavilion, Church Street, Brighton.
 1890 British Guiana Royal Agricultural and Commercial Society, Georgetown, Demerara.
 1847 British Museum, Department of British and Mediæval Antiquities.
 1847 British Museum, Department of Printed Books.
 1896 Brock, Henry G., Esq., 1612, Walnut Street, Philadelphia, Pa., U.S.A.
 1909 Brooke, John Arthur, Esq., J.P., Fenay Hall, Huddersfield.
 1899 Brookline Public Library, Boston, Mass., U.S.A.
 1899 Brooklyn Mercantile Library, 197, Montague Street, Brooklyn, N.Y., U.S.A.
 1899 Brown, Arthur William Whiteley, Esq., 62, Carlisle Mansions, Carlisle Place, Victoria Street, S.W.
 1916 Browne, Prof. Edward G., M.A., M.B., Firwood, Trumpington Road, Cambridge.
 1896 Buda-Pesth, The Geographical Institute of the University of, Hungary.
 1910 Buenos Aires, Biblioteca Nacional, c/o E. Terquem, 19, Rue Scribe, Paris.
 1890 Burns, Capt. John William, Leesthorpe Hall, Melton Mowbray.
 1914 Byers, Gerald, Esq., c/o Messrs. Butterfield and Swire, Shanghai.
 1913 Cadogan, Lieut.-Commander Francis, R.N., Hatherop Castle, Fairford, Gloucestershire.
 1903 California, University of, Berkeley, Cal., U.S.A.
 1847 Cambridge University Library, Cambridge.
 1911 Canada, Department of the Naval Service, Ottawa.
 1847 Canada, The Parliament Library, Ottawa.
 1896 Cardiff Public Library, Trinity Street, Cardiff.
 1847 Carlisle, Rosalind, Countess of, Castle Howard, York.
 1847 Carlton Club Library, 94, Pall Mall, S.W.
 1899 Carnegie Library, Pittsburgh, Pa., U.S.A.
 1914 Casserly, John Bernard, Esq., San Mateo, California, U.S.A.
 1910 Cattarns, Richard, Esq., 7, Gloucester Terrace, Regent's Park, N.W.
 1899 Chambers, Captain Bertram Mordaunt, R.N., c/o Messrs. Cocks, Biddulph and Co., 43, Charing Cross, S.W.
 1910 Chapelot et Cie., 30, Rue et Passage Dauphine, Paris.
 1913 Charleston Library, Charleston, U.S.A.
 1910 Chicago, Geographical Society of, P.O. Box 223, Chicago.
 1899 Chicago Public Library, Chicago, Ill., U.S.A.
 1899 Chicago University Library, Chicago, Ill., U.S.A.
 1896 Christ Church, Oxford.
 1847 Christiania University Library, Christiania, Norway.
 1899 Cincinnati Public Library, Ohio, U.S.A.
 1907 Clark, Arthur H., Esq., Caxton Buildings, Cleveland, Ohio.
 1913 Clark, James Cooper, Esq., Ladyhill House, Elgin, N.B.
 1913 Clarke, Sir Rupert, Bart., Clarke Buildings, Bourke Street, Melbourne.
 1903 Clay, John, Esq., University Press, and Burrell's Corner, Cambridge.

- 1913 Coates, O. R., Esq., British Consulate-General, Shanghai.
 1847 Colonial Office, The, Downing Street, S.W.
 1899 Columbia University, Library of, New York, U.S.A.
 1896 Conway, Sir William Martin, Allington Castle, Maidstone, Kent.
 1903 Cooke, William Charles, Esq., Vailima, Bishopstown, Cork.
 1847 Copenhagen Royal Library (Det Store Kongelige Bibliothek), Copenhagen.
 1894 Cora, Professor Guido, M.A., Via Nazionale, 181, Rome.
 1847 Cornell University, Ithaca, New York, U.S.A.
 1903 Corney, Bolton Ghanvill, Esq., L.S.O., c/o Royal Geographical Society, Kensington Gore, S.W.
 1899 Corning, C. R., Esq., 36 Wall Street, New York.
 1893 Cow, John, Esq., Elfinward, Hayward's Heath, Sussex.
 1902 Cox, Alexander G., Esq., Engineer-in-Chief's Office, Canton-Hankow Railway, Hankow, China.
 1908 Crewdson, W., Esq., J.P., Southside, St. Leonards-on-Sea.
 1904 Croydon Public Libraries, Central Library, Town Hall, Croydon.
 1893 Curzon of Kedleston, The Right Hon. Earl, G.M.S.I., G.M.I.E., 1, Carlton House Terrace, S.W.
 1911 Cutting, Lady Sybil, c/o the Earl of Desart, 2, Rutland Gardens, S.W.
- 1913 Dalglish, Percy, Esq., Guatemala, C.A.
 1847 Dalton, Rev. Canon John Neale, C.V.O., C.M.G., 4, The Cloisters, Windsor.
 1913 Dames, Mansell Longworth, Esq., Crickmere, Edgeborough Road, Guildford.
 1899 Dampier, Gerald Robert, Esq., I.C.S., Dehra Dun, N.W.P., India.
 1847 Danish Royal Naval Library (Marinens Bibliothek), Gronningen, Copenhagen K.
 1912 Dartmouth College Library, Hanover, N.H., U.S.A.
 1908 Darwin, Major Leonard, late R.E., 12, Egerton Place, S.W.
 1894 De Bertodano, Baldomero Hyacinth, Esq., Cowbridge House, Malmesbury, Wilts.
 1911 Delbanco, D., Esq., 9, Mincing Lane, E.C.
 1899 Detroit Public Library, Michigan, U.S.A.
 1893 Dijon University Library, Rue Monge, Dijon, Côte d'Or, France.
 1899 Dresden Geographical Society (Verein für Erdkunde), Kleine Brüdergasse 211, Dresden.
 1902 Dublin, Trinity College Library.
 1910 Dunn, J. H., Esq., Coombe Cottage, Kingston Hill, S.W.
- 1899 École Française d'Extrême Orient, Hanoi, Indo-Chine Française.
 1913 École des Langues Orientales Vivantes, Paris.
 1892 Edinburgh Public Library, George IV. Bridge, Edinburgh.
 1847 Edinburgh University Library, Edinburgh.
 1847 Edwards, Francis, Esq., 83, High Street, Marylebone, W.
 1913 Eliot, Sir Charles, K.C.M.G., C.B., The University, Hong Kong.
 1906 Enoch Pratt Free Library, Baltimore, Md., U.S.A.
 1912 Ewing, Arthur, Esq.
- 1910 Fairbrother, Colonel W. T., C.B., Indian Army, Bareilly, N.P., India.
 1911 Fayal, The Most Noble the Marquis de, Lisbon.
 1899 Fellowes Athenæum, 46, Millmont Street Boston, Mass., U.S.A.
 1894 Fisher, Arthur, Esq., The Mazzy, Tiverton, Devon.
 1896 Fitzgerald, Major Edward Arthur, 5th Dragoon Guards.
 1914 FitzGibbon, F. J., Esq., Casilla 179, Oruro, Bolivia, via Panama.
 1847 Foreign Office of Germany (Auswärtiges Amt), Wilhelmstrasse, Berlin, W.

- 1893 Forrest, George William, Esq., C.I.E., Rose Bank, Iffley, Oxford.
 1902 Foster, Francis Apthorp, Esq., Edgartown, Mass., U.S.A.
 1893 Foster, William, Esq., C.I.E., India Office, S.W.
- 1911 Garcia, Señor Genaro, Apartado 337, Mexico D.F.
 1913 Gardner, Harry G., Esq., Hongkong and Shanghai Bank, Hankow, China.
 1847 George, Charles William, Esq., 51, Hampton Road, Bristol.
 1901 Gill, William Harrison, Esq., Marunouchi, Tokyo (c/o Messrs. Nichols Ocean House, 24/5, Great Tower Street, E.C.
 1847 Glasgow University Library, Glasgow.
 1913 Glyn, The Hon. Mrs. Maurice, Albury Hall, Much Hadham.
 1880 Godman, Frederick Du Cane, Esq., D.C.L., F.R.S., 45, Pont Street, S.W.
 1847 Göttingen University Library, Göttingen, Germany.
 1914 Gottschalk, Hon. A. L. M., American Consul-General, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil
 1877 Gray, Albert, Esq., C.B., K.C. (*President*), Catherine Lodge, Trafalgar Square Chelsea, S.W.
 1903 Greenlee, William B., Esq., 130 Kenesaw Terrace, Chicago, Ill., U.S.A.
 1899 Grosvenor Library, Buffalo, N.Y., U.S.A.
 1847 Guildhall Library, E.C.
 1887 Guillemard, Francis Henry Hill, Esq., M.A., M.D., The Old Mill House, Trumpington, Cambridge.
- 1910 Hackley Public Library, Muskegon, Mich., U.S.A.
 1847 Hamburg Commerz-Bibliothek, Hamburg, Germany.
 1901 Hammersmith Public Libraries, Carnegie (Central) Library, Hammersmith, W.
 1898 Hannen, The Hon. Henry Arthur, The Hall, West Farleigh, Kent.
 1913 Hargreaves, Walter Ernest, Esq., Nazeing, Essex.
 1906 Harrison, Carter H., Esq., 3171, Hudson Avenue, Chicago, U.S.A.
 1913 Harrison, George L., Esq., 400, Chestnut Street, Philadelphia.
 1905 Harrison, William P., Esq., 2000, W. Madison Street, Chicago, Ill., U.S.A.
 1847 Harvard University, Cambridge, Mass., U.S.A.
 1899 Harvie-Brown, John Alexander, Esq., Dunipace, Larbert, Stirlingshire.
 1913 Hay, E. Alan, Esq., 14, Kensington Court, W.
 1887 Heawood, Edward, Esq., M.A., Church Hill, Merstham, Surrey (*Treasurer*).
 1899 Heidelberg University Library, Heidelberg (Koestersche Buchhandlung).
 1904 Henderson, George, Esq., 13, Palace Court, W.
 1915 Henderson, Capt. R. Ronald, Little Compton Manor, Moreton-in-Marsh.
 1899 Hiersemann, Herr Karl Wilhelm, Königsstrasse, 3, Leipzig.
 1874 Hippisley, Alfred Edward, Esq., 8, Herbert Crescent, Hans Place, W.
 1913 Holman, R. H., Esq., "Wynostay," Putney Hill, S.W.
 1913 Hong Kong University, c/o Messrs. Longmans & Co., 38, Paternoster Row, E.C.
 1899 Hoover Herbert Clarke, Esq., The Red House, Hornton Street, Kensington, W.
 1887 Horner, Sir John Francis Fortescue, K.C.V.O., Mells Park, Frome, Somerset.
 1911 Hoskins, G. H., Esq., Sydney.
 1915 Howland, S. S., Esq., c/o Messrs. N. M. Rothschild and Sons, New Court, St. Swithin's Lane, E.C.
 1890 Hoyt Public Library, East Saginaw, Mich., U.S.A.
 1909 Hubbard, H. M., Esq., H6, The Albany, Piccadilly, W.
 1899 Hügel, Baron Anatole A. A. von, Curator, Museum of Archæology and Ethnology, Cambridge.
 1913 Hughes, R. H., Esq.
 1894 Hull Public Libraries, Baker Street, Hull.
 1913 Humphreys, John, Esq.

- 1912 Illinois, University of, Urbana, Ill., U.S.A.
 1899 Im Thurn, Sir Everard, K.C.M.G., C.B., 39, Lexham Gardens, W.
 1847 India Office, Downing Street, S.W. [20 COPIES.]
 1899 Ingle, William Bruncker, Esq.
 1892 Inner Temple, Hon. Society of the, Temple, E.C.
 1916 Ireland, National Library of, Dublin.
 9
 1899 Jackson, Stewart Douglas, Esq., 61, St. Vincent Street, Glasgow.
 1898 James, Arthur Curtiss, Esq., 92 Park Avenue, New York City, U.S.A.
 1896 James, Walter B., Esq., M.D., 7, East 70th Street, New York City, U.S.A.
 1912 Jenkins, Captain F. W. R., Apartado 331, Guatemala.
 1907 Johannesburg Public Library, Johannesburg, South Africa.
 1847 John Carter Brown Library, 357, Benefit Street, Providence, Rhode Island, U.S.A.
 1847 John Rylands Library, Deansgate, Manchester.
 1847 Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Md., U.S.A.
 1899 Johnson, W. Morton, Esq., Woodleigh, Altrincham
 1910 Jones, L. C., Esq., M.D., Falmouth, Mass., U.S.A.
 1914 Jones, Livingston E., Esq., Germantown, Pa., U.S.A.
 1913 Jowett, The Rev. Hardy, Ping Kiang, Hunan, China.
 1903 Kansas University Library, Lawrence, Kans., U.S.A.
 1887 Keltie, John Scott, Esq., LL.D., 1, Kensington Gore, S.W.
 1909 Kesteven, C. H., Esq., 2, Hungerford Street, Calcutta.
 1899 Kiel, Royal University of, Kiel, Schleswig-Holstein.
 1907 Kindberg, Herrn Captain J. P., Göteborg, Sweden.
 1898 Kinder, Claude William, Esq., C.M.G., "Bracken," Churt, Nr. Farnham, Surrey.
 1890 King's Inns, The Hon. Society of the, Henrietta Street, Dublin.
 1899 Kitching, John, Esq., Oakland, Queen's Road, Kingston Hill, S.W.
 1912 Koebel, W. H., Esq., Author's Club, 2, Whitehall Court, S.W.
 1913 Koloniaal Instituut, Amsterdam.
 1910 Koninklijk Instituut voor de Taal Land en Volkenkunde van Nederlandsch Indie. The Hague.
 1899 Langton, J. J. P., Esq., 802, Spruce Street, St. Louis, Mo., U.S.A.
 1899 Larchmont Yacht Club, Larchmont, N.Y., U.S.A.
 1913 Laufer, Berthold Esq., Field Museum of Natural History, Chicago.
 1899 Leeds Library, 18, Commercial Street, Leeds.
 1899 Lehigh University, South Bethlehem, Pa., U.S.A.
 1893 Leipzig, Library of the University of Leipzig.
 1912 Leland Stanford Junior University, Library of, Stanford University, Cal. U.S.A.
 1912 Lind, Walter, Esq., 1° Calle, Guatemala, C.A.
 1847 Liverpool Free Public Library, William Brown Street, Liverpool.
 1896 Liverpool Geographical Society, 14, Hargreaves Buildings, Chapel Street, Liverpool.
 1899 Liverpool, University of Liverpool.
 1911 Loder, Gerald W. E., Esq., F.S.A., Wakehurst Place, Ardingly, Sussex.
 1899 Loescher, Messrs. J., and Co., Via Due Macelli, 88, Rome.
 1847 London Institution, 11, Finsbury Circus, E.C.
 1847 London Library, 12, St. James's Square, S.W.
 1899 London University, South Kensington, S.W.
 1895 Long Island Historical Society, Pierrepont Street, Brooklyn, N.Y., U.S.A.

- 1899 Los Angeles Public Library, Los Angeles, Cal., U.S.A.
 1899 Lowrey, Joseph, Esq., The Hermitage, Loughton, Essex.
 1912 Luard, Major Charles Eckford, M.A., D.S.O., Indore, Central India.
 1880 Lucas, Sir Charles Prestwood, K.C.B., K.C.M.G., 65, St. George's Square, S.W.
 1895 Lucas, Frederic Wm., Esq., 21, Surrey Street, Strand, W.C.
 1912 Lukach, H. C. Esq., M.A., Government House, Cyprus.
 1898 Lydenberg, H. M., Esq., New York Public Library, Fifth Avenue and Forty-second Street, New York City, U.S.A.
 1880 Lyons University Library, Lyon, France.
 1899 Lyttleton-Amesley, Lieut.-General Sir Arthur Lyttelton, K.C.V.O., Templemere, Otlands Park, Weybridge.
 1899 Macrae, Charles Colin, Esq., 93, Onslow Gardens, S.W.
 1908 Maggs Brothers, Messrs., 109, Strand, W.C.
 1847 Manchester Public Free Libraries, King Street, Manchester.
 1916 Manchester University (c/o J. E. Cornish, St. Ann's Square).
 1899 Manierre, George, Esq., 112w, Adams Street, Chicago, Ill., U.S.A.
 1880 Markham, Admiral Sir Albert Hastings, K.C.B., Belmont Paddocks, Faversham
 1892 Marquand, Henry, Esq., Whitegates Farm, Bedford, New York, U.S.A.
 1899 Martelli, Ernest Wyne, Esq., 4, New Square, Lincoln's Inn, W.C.
 1847 Massachusetts Historical Society, 1154, Boylston Street, Boston, Mass. U.S.A.
 1905 Mandslay, Alfred Percival, Esq., Morney Cross, Hereford.
 1899 McClurg, Messrs. A. C., & Co., 215-221, Wabash Avenue, Chicago, Ill. U.S.A.
 1914 Means, Philip A., Esq., 196, Beacon Street, Boston, Massachusetts, U.S.A.
 1913 Mensing, A. W. M., Esq. (Frederik Muller and Co.), Amsterdam.
 1901 Merriman, J. A., Esq., c/o T. M. Merriman, Esq., 96, Finchley Road Hampstead, N.W.
 1911 Messer, Allan E., Esq., 2, Lyall Street, Belgrave Square, S.W.
 1913 Meyendorff, Baron de, Ambassade de Russie, Madrid.
 1893 Michigan, University of, Ann Arbor, Mich., U.S.A.
 1899 Middletown, Conn., Wesleyan University Library, U.S.A.
 1904 Mikkelsen, Michael A., Esq., 610, South Fifth Avenue, Mt. Vernon, New York
 1547 Mills, Colonel Dudley Acland, R.E., Droaks, Beaulieu, Hants.
 1912 Milward, Graham, Esq., 77, Colmore Row, Birmingham.
 1896 Milwaukee Public Library, Milwaukee, Wisconsin, U.S.A.
 1895 Minneapolis Athenaeum, Minneapolis, Minn., U.S.A.
 1899 Minnesota Historical Society, St. Paul, Minnesota, U.S.A.
 1899 Mitchell Library, 21, Miller Street, Glasgow.
 1899 Mitchell, Wm., Esq., 14, Forbesfield Road, Aberdeen.
 1899 Monson, The Right Hon. Lord, C.V.O., Burton Hall, Lincoln.
 1901 Moreno, Dr. Francisco J., La Plata Museum, La Plata, Argentine Republic.
 1893 Morris, Henry Cecil Low, Esq., M.D., The Steyne, Bognor, Sussex.
 1899 Morrison, George Ernest, Esq., M.D., H.B.M. Legation, Peking.
 1911 Morrison, R. E., Esq., Ardoch, Partickhill, Glasgow.
 1899 Morrisson, James W., Esq., 200-206, Randolph Street, Chicago, Ill., U.S.A.
 1913 Moule, The Rev. A. C., Littlebredy, Dorchester.
 1895 Moxon, Alfred Edward, Esq., c/o Mrs. Gough, The Lodge, Souldern, near Banbury.
 1899 Mukhopadhyay, Hon. Sir Asutosh, Kt., C.S.I., D.Sc., LL.D., 77 Russa Roa North, Bhowanipur, Calcutta.
 1847 Munich Royal Library (Kgl. Hof u. Staats-Bibliothek), Munich, Germany.
 1913 Natal Society's Library, Pietermaritzburg, S. Africa.
 1899 Nathan, Lt.-Col. Sir Matthew, G.C.M.G., R.E., Brandon House, Kensington Palace Gardens, W.

- 1894 Naval and Military Club, 94, Piccadilly, W.
 1909 Nebraska University Library, Lincoln, Nebraska, U.S.A.
 1913 Needham, J. E., Esq., Bombay Club, Bombay.
 1880 Netherlands, Royal Geographical Society of the (Koninklijk Nederlandsch Aardrijkskundig Genootschap), Singel 421, Amsterdam.
 1899 Netherlands, Royal Library of the, The Hague.
 1847 Newberry Library, The, Chicago, Ill., U.S.A.
 1847 Newcastle-upon-Tyne Literary and Philosophical Society, Westgate Road, Newcastle-on-Tyne.
 1899 Newcastle-upon-Tyne Public Library, New Bridge Street, Newcastle-on-Tyne.
 1894 New London Public Library, Conn., U.S.A.
 1899 New South Wales, Public Library of, Sydney, N.S.W.
 1899 New York Athletic Club, Central Park, South, New York City, U.S.A.
 1895 New York Public Library, 40, Lafayette Place, New York City, U.S.A.
 1847 New York State Library, Albany, New York, U.S.A.
 1894 New York Yacht Club, 37 West 44 Street, New York City, U.S.A.
 1897 New Zealand, The High Commissioner for, 13, Victoria Street, S.W.
 1911 Nijhoff, Martinus, The Hague, Holland.
 1896 North Adams Public Library, Massachusetts, U.S.A.
 1893 Northcliffe, The Right Hon. Lord, Elmwood, St. Peter's, Thanet.
 1899 Nottingham Public Library Sherwood Street, Nottingham.
- 1916 Ober, John Hambleton, Esq., Charles and Saratoga Streets, Baltimore, Ind., U.S.A.
 1890 Oriental Club, 18, Hanover Square, W.
 1902 Otani, Kozui, Esq., Nishi Honganji, Horikawa, Kyoto, Japan.
 1899 Oxford and Cambridge Club, 71, Pall Mall, S.W.
 1847 Oxford Union Society, Oxford.
- 1911 Pan-American Union, Washington, D.C., U.S.A.
 1847 Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale, Rue de Richelieu, Paris.
 1847 Paris, Institut de France, Quai de Conti 23, Paris.
 1899 Parlett, Harold George, Esq., H.B.M. Consulate, Dairen, Japan.
 1880 Peabody Institute, Baltimore, Md., U.S.A.
 1847 Peckover of Wisbech, The Right Hon. Lord, Bank House, Wisbech (*Vice-President*).
 1893 Peek, Sir Wilfred, Bart., c/o Mr. Grover, Rousdon, Lyme Regis.
 1911 Penrose, R. A. F., Esq., Bullitt Buildings, Philadelphia, U.S.A.
 1899 Pequot Library, Southport, Conn., U.S.A.
 1913 Petersen, V., Esq., Chinese Telegraph Administration, Peking, China.
 1880 Petherick, Edward Augustus, Esq., Commonwealth Library, Melbourne, Australia.
 1895 Philadelphia Free Library, Pa., U.S.A.
 1899 Philadelphia, Library Company of, N.W. corner Juniper & Locust Streets, Philadelphia, Pa., U.S.A.
 1899 Philadelphia, Union League Club, 8, Broad Street, Philadelphia, Pa., U.S.A.
 1899 Philadelphia, University Club, 1510 Walnut Street, Philadelphia, Pa., U.S.A.
 1909 Plymouth, Officers' Library, Royal Marine Barracks.
 1899 Plymouth Proprietary and Cottonian Library, Cornwall Street, Plymouth.
 1899 Portico Library, 57, Mosley Street, Manchester.
 1912 Provincial Library of British Columbia, Victoria, British Columbia.
 1911 Pykett, The Rev. G. F., Anglo-Chinese School, Methodist Epis. Mission, Penang.

- 1894 Quaritch, Bernard, Esq., 11, Grafton Street, New Bond Street, W.
(12 copies).
- 1913 Queen's University, The, Kingston, Ontario, Canada.
- 1913 Quincey, Edmund de Q., Esq., Oakwood, Chislehurst.
- 1890 Raffles Museum and Library, Singapore.
- 1847 Reform Club, 104, Pall Mall, S.W.
- 1895 Rhodes, Josiah, Esq., The Elms, Lytham, Lancashire.
- 1907 Ricketts, D. P., Esq., Imperial Chinese Railways, Tientsin, China.
- 1882 Riggs, T. L., Esq., 1311, Mass. Avenue, Washington, D.C., U.S.A.
- 1911 Rio de Janeiro, Archivo Publico Nacional, Sa da Republica, No. 26.
- 1906 Rotterdamsch Leeskabinet, Rotterdam.
- 1911 Royal Anthropological Institute, 59, Great Russell Street, W.C.
- 1847 Royal Colonial Institute, Northumberland Avenue, W.C.
- 1896 Royal Cruising Club, 1, Bolton Street, Piccadilly, W.
- 1847 Royal Engineers' Institute, Chatham.
- 1847 Royal Geographical Society, Kensington Gore, W.
- 1890 Royal Scottish Geographical Society, Synod Hall, Castle Terrace, Edinburgh.
- 1897 Royal Societies Club, 63, St. James's Street, S.W.
- 1847 Royal United Service Institution, Whitehall, S.W.
- 1899 Runciman, The Right Hon. Walter, M.P., Doxford, Chathill, Northumberland.
- 1904 Ruxton, Captain Upton Fitz Herbert, Little Drove House, Singleton,
Sussex.
- 1900 Ryley, John Horton, Esq., 8, Rue d'Auteuil, Paris.
- 1915 San Antonio, Scientific Society of, 1 & 3, Stevens Buildings, San Antonio,
Texas, U.S.A.
- 1899 St. Andrews University, St. Andrews.
- 1899 St. Deiniol's Library, Hawarden, Flintshire, N. Wales.
- 1890 St. Louis Mercantile Library, St. Louis, Mo., U.S.A.
- 1899 St. Martin's-in-the-Fields Free Public Library, 115, St. Martin's Lane, W.C.
- 1847 St. Petersburg University Library, St. Petersburg.
- 1894 St. Vladimir University, Kiev, Russia.
- 1911 Saise, Walter, Esq., D.Sc., M. Inst. C.E., Stapleton, Bristol.
- 1913 Sally, George, Esq., 65, Great Russell Street, W.C. (2 copies.)
- 1899 San Francisco Public Library, San Francisco, Cal., U.S.A.
- 1899 Selater, Dr. William Lutley, 10, Sloane Court, S.W.
- 1899 Seattle Public Library, Seattle, Washington, U.S.A.
- 1894 Seymour, Admiral of the Fleet the Right Hon. Sir Edward Hobart, G.C.B.,
O.M., G.C.V.O., LL.D., Queen Anne's Mansions, St. James's Park, S.W.
- 1898 Sheffield Free Public Libraries, Surrey Street, Sheffield.
- 1914 Sheppard, S. T., Esq., Byculla Club, Bombay, No. 8.
- 1847 Signet Library, 11, Parliament Square, Edinburgh.
- 1890 Sinclair, Mrs. William Frederic, 102, Cheyne Walk, Chelsea, S.W.
- 1910 Skimming, E. H. B., Esq., 6, Cleveland Terrace, W.
- 1913 Skinner, Major R. M., R. A. M. Corps, c/o Messrs. Holt and Co., 3, Whitehall
Place, S.W.
- 1912 Skipper, Mervyn G., Esq., care of Eastern Extensions Tel. Co., Electra House,
Finsbury Pavement, E.C.
- 1904 Smith, John Langford, Esq., H. B. M. Consular Service, China, c/o E. Green-
wood, Esq., Frith Knowl, Elstree.
- 1906 Smith, J. de Berniere, Esq., 4, Gloucester Terrace, Regent's Park, N.W.
- 1913 Smith, The Right Hon. James Parker, Linburn, Kirknewton, Midlothian.
- 1899 Società Geografica Italiana, Via del Plebiscito 102, Rome.
- 1847 Société de Géographie, Boulevard St. Germain, 184, Paris.
- 1899 South African Public Library, Queen Victoria Street, Cape Town, South Africa

- 1904 Stanton, John, Esq., High Street, Chorley, Lancashire.
 1912 Stein, Herr Johann, K. Ungar. Universitäts - Buchhandlung, Kolozsvár, Hungary.
 1847 Stevens, Son, and Stiles, Messrs. Henry, 39, Great Russell Street, W.C.
 1847 Stockholm, Royal Library of (Kungl. Biblioteket), Sweden.
 1895 Stockton Public Library, Stockton, Cal., U.S.A.
 1905 Storey, Albert H., Esq., Ridgefield, Ct., U.S.A.
 1890 Strachey, Lady, 67, Belsize Park Gardens, N.W.
 1904 Suarez, Colonel Don Pedro (Bolivian Legation), Santa Cruz, 74, Compayne Gardens, N.W.
 1909 Swan, J. D. C., Dr., 25, Ruthven Street, Glasgow.
 1908 Sydney, University of, New South Wales.
 1899 Sykes, Colonel Sir Percy Molesworth, K.C.I.E., C.M.G., Kashgar.
 1916 Soutter, Lieut.-Commander James J., H.M.S. Malaya, c/o G.P.O.
- 1914 Taylor, Frederic W., Esq., 1529, Niagara Street, Denver, Colorado, U.S.A.
 1910 Teleki, Count Paul, Jozsef-tér., 7, Budapest V.
 1899 Temple, Lieut.-Col. Sir Richard Carnac, Bart., C.I.E., The Nash, nr. Worcester.
 1894 Thomson, Basil Home, Esq., 81, Victoria Road, Kensington, W.
 1906 Thynson, Colonel Charles FitzGerald, late 7th Hussars, St. James's Club, 106, Piccadilly, W.
 1915 Thorne, J.A., Esq., I.C.S., Calicut, Malabar, India.
 1916 Thompson, Lieut. H. H., R.N.V.R., c/o The Admiralty, S.W.
 1904 Todd, Commander George James, R.N., The Manse, Kingsbarns, Fife.
 1896 Toronto Public Library, Toronto, Ont., Canada.
 1890 Toronto University, Toronto, Ont., Canada.
 1911 Tower, Sir Reginald, K.C.M.G., C.V.O., 8, Baker Street, Portman Square, W.
 1847 Travellers' Club, 106, Pall Mall, S.W.
 1899 Trinder, Arnold, Esq., River House, Walton-on-Thames.
 1913 Trinder, W. H., Esq., The Old Vicarage, Kingswood, Surrey.
 1847 Trinity College, Cambridge.
 1847 Trinity House, The Hon. Corporation of, Tower Hill, E.C.
 1911 Tuckerman, Paul, Esq., 59, Wall Street, New York, U.S.A.
 1890 Turnbull, Alexander H., Esq., Elibank, Wellington, New Zealand.
 1902 Tweedy, Arthur H., Esq., Widmore Lodge, Widmore, Bromley, Kent.
- 1847 United States Congress, Library of, Washington, D.C., U.S.A.
 1899 United States National Museum (Library of), Washington, D.C., U.S.A.
 1847 United States Naval Academy Library, Annapolis, Md., U.S.A.
 1847 Upsala University Library, Upsala, Sweden (c/o Simpkin, Marshall).
- 1911 Van Ortoy, Professor F., Université de Gand, Belgium.
 1913 Vasquez, Señor Don Ricardo, Guatemala, C.A.
 1899 Vernon, Roland Venables, Esq., Colonial Office, Downing Street, S.W.
 1899 Victoria, Public Library, Museums, and National Gallery of, Melbourne, Australia.
- 1847 Vienna Imperial Library (K. K. Hof-Bibliothek), Vienna.
 1905 Vienna, K. K. Geographische Gesellschaft, Wollzeile 33, Vienna.
 1887 Vignaud, Henry, Esq., I.L.D., 2, Rue de la Mairie, Bagneux (Seine), France.
 1912 Villa, Dr. F. Luis de, Banco Colombiano, Guatemala, C.A.
 1909 Villiers, J. A. J. de, Esq., British Museum (*Hon. Secretary*) (2).